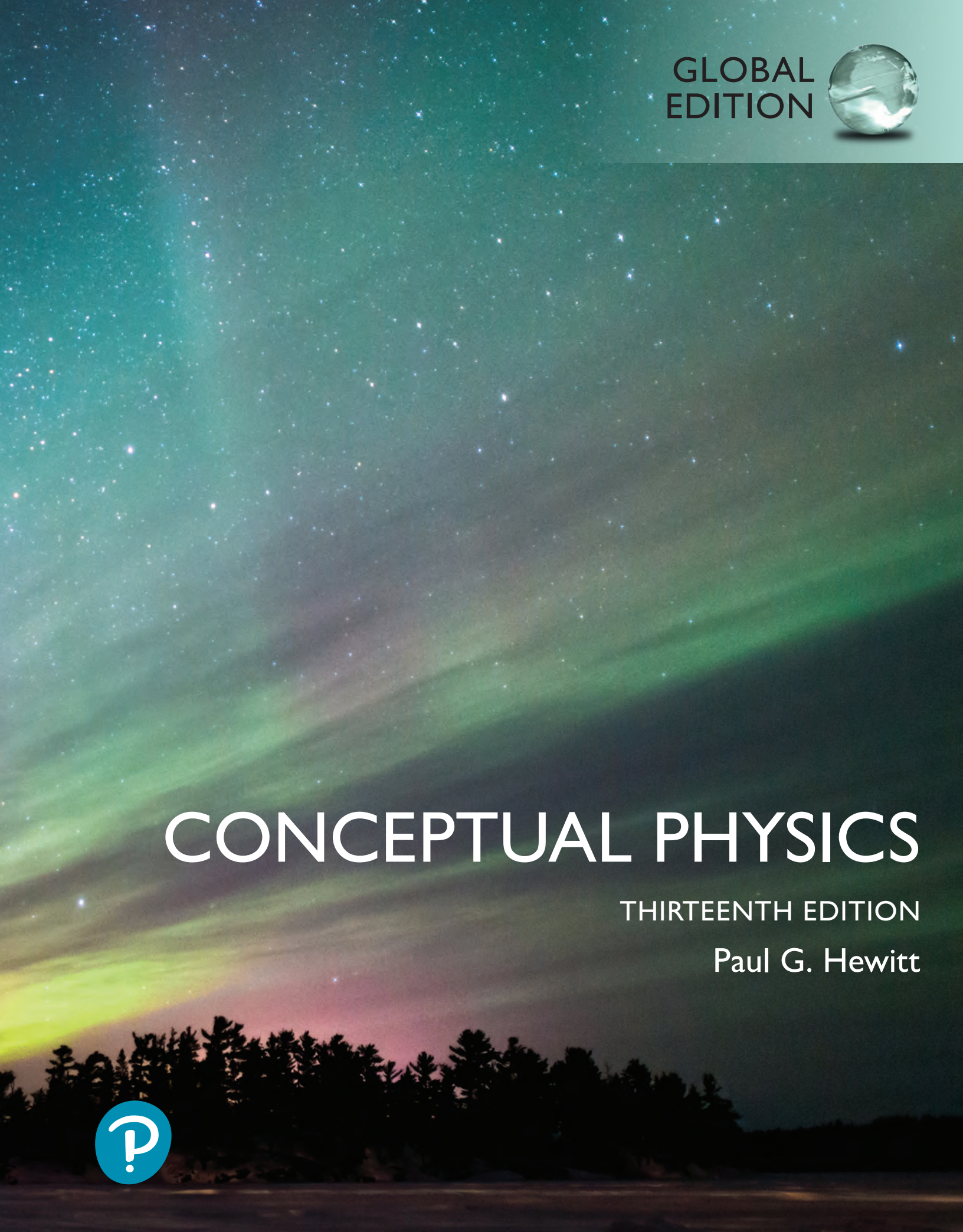

GLOBAL
EDITION
CONCEPTUAL PHYSICS
THIRTEENTH EDITION
Paul G. Hewitt

CONCEPTUAL Physics

THIRTEENTH EDITION
GLOBAL EDITION

written and illustrated by

Paul G. Hewitt

City College of San Francisco

Pearson

Credits and acknowledgments borrowed from other sources and reproduced, with permission, in this textbook appear on the appropriate page of appearance or in the Credits on pages.

Cover image by David Quiring/ Shutterstock

Pearson Education Limited
KAO Two
KAO Park
Hockham Way
Harlow
Essex
CM17 9SR
United Kingdom

and Associated Companies throughout the world

Visit us on the World Wide Web at: www.pearsonglobaleditions.com

© Pearson Education Limited 2023

The rights of Paul G. Hewitt to be identified as the author of this work has been asserted by him in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

Authorized adaptation from the United States edition, entitled Conceptual Physics*, 13th Edition, ISBN 978-0-135-74626-4 by Paul G. Hewitt, published by Pearson Education © 2021.*
All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without either the prior written permission of the publisher or a license permitting restricted copying in the United Kingdom issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency Ltd, Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London EC1N 8TS.

All trademarks used herein are the property of their respective owners. The use of any trademark in this text does not vest in the author or publisher any trademark ownership rights in such trademarks, nor does the use of such trademarks imply any affiliation with or endorsement of this book by such owners. For information regarding permissions, request forms, and the appropriate contacts within the Pearson Education Global Rights and Permissions department, please visit www.pearsoned.com/permissions/.

This eBook is a standalone product and may or may not include all assets that were part of the print version. It also does not provide access to other Pearson digital products like MyLab and Mastering. The publisher reserves the right to remove any material in this eBook at any time.

ISBN 10: 1-292-43733-2 (print)
ISBN 13: 978-1-292-43733-0 (print)
eBook ISBN 13: 978-1-292-43741-5 (uPDF)

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

1 22

Typeset in Times NR MT Pro by B2R Technologies Pvt. Ltd.

To my everything—my wife Lillian

SOME SIGNIFICANT DATES IN THE HISTORY OF PHYSICS

ca. 320 BC	**Aristotle** describes motion in terms of natural tendencies.
ca. 250 BC	**Archimedes** discovers the principle of buoyancy.
ca. AD 150	**Ptolemy** refines the Earth-centered system of the world.
1543	**Copernicus** publishes his Sun-centered system of the world.
1575–1596	**Brahe** measures precise positions of the planets in the sky.
1609	**Galileo** first uses a telescope as an astronomical tool.
1609/1619	**Kepler** publishes three laws of planetary motion.
1634	**Galileo** advances understanding of accelerated motion.
1661	**Boyle** relates pressure and volume of gases at constant temperature.
1676	**Roemer** demonstrates that light has finite speed.
1678	**Huygens** develops a wave theory of light.
1687	**Newton** presents the theory of mechanics in his *Principia.*
1738	**Bernoulli** explains the behavior of gases in terms of molecular motions.
1747	**Franklin** suggests the conservation of electrical "fire" (charge).
1780	**Galvani** discovers "animal electricity."
1785	**Coulomb** precisely determines the law of electric force.
1795	**Cavendish** measures the gravitational constant *G*.
1798	**Rumford** argues that heat is a form of motion.
1800	**Volta** invents the battery.
1802	**Young** uses wave theory to account for interference.
1811	**Avogadro** suggests that, at equal temperature and pressure, all gases have equal numbers of molecules per unit volume.
1815–1820	**Young** and others provide evidence for the wave nature of light.
1820	**Oersted** discovers the magnetic effect of an electric current.
1820	**Ampère** establishes the law of force between current-carrying wires.
1821	**Fraunhofer** invents the diffraction grating.
1824	**Carnot** states that heat cannot be transformed wholly to work.
1831	**Faraday** and **Henry** discover electromagnetic induction.
1842–1843	**Mayer** and **Joule** suggest a general law of energy conservation.
1846	**Adams** and **Leverrier** predict the existence of the planet Neptune.
1865	**Maxwell** gives the electromagnetic theory of light.
1869	**Mendeleev** organizes the elements into a periodic table.
1877	**Boltzmann** relates entropy to probability.
1885	**Balmer** finds numerical regularity in the spectrum of hydrogen.
1887	**Michelson** and **Morley** fail to detect the ether.
1888	**Hertz** generates and detects radio waves.
1895	**Roentgen** discovers X-rays.
1896	**Bequerel** discovers radioactivity.
1897	**Thomson** identifies cathode rays as negative corpuscles (electrons).

1900	**Planck** introduces the quantum idea.
1905	**Einstein** introduces the light corpuscle (photon) concept.
1905	**Einstein** advances the special theory of relativity.
1911	**Rutherford** reveals the nuclear atom.
1913	**Bohr** gives a quantum theory of the hydrogen atom.
1915	**Einstein** advances the general theory of relativity.
1923	**Compton's** experiments confirm the existence of the photon.
1924	**de Broglie** advances the wave theory of matter.
1925	**Goudsmit** and **Uhlenbeck** establish the spin of the electron.
1925	**Pauli** states the exclusion principle.
1926	**Schrödinger** develops the wave theory of quantum mechanics.
1927	**Heisenberg** proposes the uncertainty principle.
1928	**Dirac** blends relativity and quantum mechanics in a theory of the electron.
1929	**Hubble** discovers the expanding universe.
1932	**Anderson** discovers antimatter in the form of the positron.
1932	**Chadwick** discovers the neutron.
1934	**Fermi** proposes a theory of the annihilation and creation of matter.
1938	**Meitner** and **Frisch** interpret results of **Hahn** and **Strassmann** as nuclear fission.
1939	**Bohr** and **Wheeler** give a detailed theory of nuclear fission.
1942	**Fermi** builds and operates the first nuclear reactor.
1945	**Oppenheimer's** Los Alamos team creates a nuclear explosion.
1947	**Bardeen**, **Brattain**, and **Shockley** develop the transistor.
1956	**Reines** and **Cowan** identify the antineutrino.
1957	**Feynman** and **Gell-Mann** explain weak interactions with a "left-handed" neutrino.
1960	**Maiman** invents the laser.
1965	**Penzias** and **Wilson** discover background radiation in the universe left over from the Big Bang.
1967	**Bell** and **Hewish** discover pulsars, which are neutron stars.
1969	**Gell-Mann** suggests quarks as the building blocks of nucleons.
1977	**Lederman** and his team discover the bottom quark.
1981	**Binning** and **Rohrer** invent the scanning tunneling microscope.
1987	**Bednorz** and **Müller** discover high-temperature superconductivity.
1995	**Cornell** and **Wieman** create a "Bose–Einstein condensate" at 20 billionths of a degree.
1998	**Perlmutter, Schmidt,** and **Riess** discover the accelerated expansion of the universe.
2000	**Pogge** and **Martini** provide evidence for supermassive black holes in other galaxies.
2000	Fermilab group identifies the tau neutrino, the last member of the lepton particle group.
2003	Scientists studying radiation in space put the age of the universe at 13.7 billion years.
2004	**Geim** and **Novoselov** discover graphene, a one-atom-thick form of carbon.
2005	**Gerald Gabrielse** measures the magnetism of the electron to 1 part in a trillion.
2006	U.S.–Russian team identifies elements number 116 and 118.
2012	CERN laboratory announces the discovery of the long-sought Higgs boson.
2015	LIGO team detects gravitational waves from coalescing black holes.
2018	Jarillo-Herrero discovers superconductivity in graphene.
2019	Event Horizon Telescope obtains first image of a supermassive black hole.
2020	The catalog of exoplanets (planets orbiting other stars) grows to more than 4,330.

Contents in Brief

Conceptual Physics Photo Album 14
To the Student 16
To the Instructor 17
Acknowledgments 20

1 About Science 22

PART ONE
Mechanics 43

2 Newton's First Law of Motion–Inertia 44
3 Linear Motion 64
4 Newton's Second Law of Motion 84
5 Newton's Third Law of Motion 104
6 Momentum 124
7 Energy 146
8 Rotational Motion 172
9 Gravity 204
10 Projectile and Satellite Motion 230

PART TWO
Properties of Matter 257

11 The Atomic Nature of Matter 258
12 Solids 280
13 Liquids 300
14 Gases 324

PART THREE
Heat 345

15 Temperature, Heat, and Expansion 346
16 Heat Transfer 366
17 Change of Phase 386
18 Thermodynamics 404

PART FOUR
Sound 425

19 Vibrations and Waves 426
20 Sound 446
21 Musical Sounds 466

PART FIVE
Electricity and Magnetism 481

22 Electrostatics 482
23 Electric Current 508
24 Magnetism 532
25 Electromagnetic Induction 550

PART SIX
Light 569

26 Properties of Light 570
27 Color 592
28 Reflection and Refraction 612
29 Light Waves 642
30 Light Emission 664
31 Light Quanta 686

PART SEVEN
Atomic and Nuclear Physics 707

32 The Atom and the Quantum 708
33 The Atomic Nucleus and Radioactivity 724
34 Nuclear Fission and Fusion 748

PART EIGHT
Relativity 771

35 Special Theory of Relativity 772
36 General Theory of Relativity 802

AUTHOR PROFILE 818
APPENDIX A On Measurement and Unit Conversions 820
APPENDIX B More About Motion 824
APPENDIX C Graphing 828
APPENDIX D Vector Applications 831
APPENDIX E Exponential Growth and Doubling Time 834

ODD-NUMBERED ANSWERS 837
GLOSSARY 867
CREDITS 885
INDEX 891

Contents in Detail

Conceptual Physics Photo Album 14
To the Student 16
To the Instructor 17
Acknowledgments 20

1 About Science 22

1.1 Scientific Measurements 23
How Eratosthenes Measured the Size of Earth 23
■ PRACTICING PHYSICS 25
Size of the Moon 26
Distance to the Moon 27
Distance to the Sun 28
Size of the Sun 29
Mathematics—The Language of Science 30
1.2 Scientific Methods 31
The Scientific Attitude 31
Dealing with Misconceptions 34
1.3 Science, Art, and Religion 35
■ FAKE SCIENCE 36
1.4 Science and Technology 36
■ RISK ASSESSMENT 37
1.5 Physics—The Basic Science 37
1.6 In Perspective 39

PART ONE
Mechanics 43

2 Newton's First Law of Motion–Inertia 44

2.1 Aristotle on Motion 45
■ ARISTOTLE (384–322 BC) 46
Copernicus and the Moving Earth 47
2.2 Galileo's Experiments 47
Leaning Tower 47
Inclined Planes 47
■ GALILEO GALILEI (1564–1642) 48
2.3 Newton's First Law of Motion 50
■ PERSONAL ESSAY 51
2.4 Net Force and Vectors 52
2.5 The Equilibrium Rule 53
■ PRACTICING PHYSICS 54
2.6 Support Force 55
2.7 Equilibrium of Moving Things 56
2.8 The Moving Earth 56

3 Linear Motion 64

3.1 Speed 65
Instantaneous Speed 65
Average Speed 66
Motion Is Relative 67
3.2 Velocity 67
Constant Velocity 68
Changing Velocity 68
3.3 Acceleration 68
Acceleration on Galileo's Inclined Planes 70
3.4 Free Fall 71
How Fast 71
How Far 73
How Quickly "How Fast" Changes 75
■ HANG TIME 76
3.5 Velocity Vectors 76

4 Newton's Second Law of Motion 84

4.1 Forces 85
4.2 Friction 86
4.3 Mass and Weight 88
Mass Resists Acceleration 91
4.4 Newton's Second Law of Motion 92
4.5 When Acceleration Is *g*—Free Fall 93
4.6 When Acceleration Is Less Than *g*—Nonfree Fall 94
■ PROBLEM SOLVING 97

5 Newton's Third Law of Motion 104

5.1 Forces and Interactions 105
5.2 Newton's Third Law of Motion 107
Simple Rule to Identify Action and Reaction 108
Defining Your System 108

5.3 Action and Reaction on Different Masses 110
■ PRACTICING PHYSICS: TUG-OF-WAR 112
5.4 Vectors and the Third Law 113
5.5 Summary of Newton's Three Laws 117

6 Momentum 124

6.1 Momentum 125
6.2 Impulse 127
6.3 Impulse-Momentum Relationship 127
Case 1: Increasing Momentum 128
Case 2: Decreasing Momentum Over a Long Time 128
Case 3: Decreasing Momentum Over a Short Time 130
6.4 Bouncing 131
6.5 Conservation of Momentum 132
■ CONSERVATION LAWS 134
6.6 Collisions 135
■ PROBLEM SOLVING 137
6.7 More Complicated Collisions 138

7 Energy 146

7.1 Work 148
7.2 Power 150
Mechanical Energy 151
7.3 Potential Energy 151
7.4 Kinetic Energy 153
7.5 Work–Energy Theorem 154
7.6 Conservation of Energy 156
■ CIRCUS PHYSICS 157
■ JUNK SCIENCE 158
7.7 Machines 158
7.8 Efficiency 159
7.9 Major Sources of Energy 161
Recycled Energy 164

8 Rotational Motion 172

8.1 Circular Motion 173
■ WHEELS ON RAILROAD TRAINS 176
8.2 Centripetal Force 177
■ PRACTICING PHYSICS: WATER-BUCKET SWING 178
8.3 Centrifugal Force 179
Centrifugal Force in a Rotating Reference Frame 179
Simulated Gravity 180
8.4 Rotational Inertia 182
8.5 Torque 185
8.6 Center of Mass and Center of Gravity 186
Locating the Center of Gravity 188
Stability 189
8.7 Angular Momentum 191
8.8 Conservation of Angular Momentum 192

9 Gravity 204

9.1 The Universal Law of Gravity 205
9.2 The Universal Gravitational Constant, *G* 207
9.3 Gravity and Distance: The Inverse-Square Law 209
9.4 Weight and Weightlessness 210
9.5 Ocean Tides 212
■ TIDAL CALENDARS 215
Tides in the Earth and Atmosphere 216
Tidal Bulges on the Moon 216
9.6 Gravitational Fields 217
Gravitational Field Inside a Planet 218
Einstein's Theory of Gravitation 220
9.7 Black Holes 220
9.8 Universal Gravitation 222

10 Projectile and Satellite Motion 230

10.1 Projectile Motion 232
Projectiles Launched Horizontally 232
Projectiles Launched at an Angle 234
■ PRACTICING PHYSICS: HANDS-ON DANGLING BEADS 235
■ HANG TIME REVISITED 238
10.2 Fast-Moving Projectiles—Satellites 238
10.3 Circular Satellite Orbits 240
10.4 Elliptical Orbits 242
■ WORLD MONITORING BY SATELLITE 244
10.5 Kepler's Laws of Planetary Motion 244
■ FINDING YOUR WAY 245
10.6 Energy Conservation and Satellite Motion 246
10.7 Escape Speed 247

PART TWO

Properties of Matter 257

11 The Atomic Nature of Matter 258

11.1 The Atomic Hypothesis 259
■ FALLING ALICE 260
11.2 Characteristics of Atoms 260
11.3 Atomic Imagery 262
11.4 Atomic Structure 264
The Elements 265
11.5 The Periodic Table of the Elements 266
Relative Sizes of Atoms 269
11.6 Isotopes 270
11.7 Molecules 271
11.8 Compounds and Mixtures 272
11.9 Antimatter 273
Dark Matter 274

12 Solids 280

12.1 Crystal Structure 281
■ CRYSTAL POWER 283
12.2 Density 283
12.3 Elasticity 284
12.4 Tension and Compression 286
■ PRACTICING PHYSICS: STICK STRENGTH 287
12.5 Arches 288
■ ADDITIVE MANUFACTURING OR 3-D PRINTING 290
12.6 Scaling 290

13 Liquids 300

13.1 Pressure 301
13.2 Pressure in a Liquid 303
■ WATER AND ITS HISTORY 306
13.3 Buoyancy 307
13.4 Archimedes' Principle 308
■ ARCHIMEDES AND THE GOLD CROWN 309
13.5 What Makes an Object Sink or Float? 309
13.6 Flotation 311
■ FLOATING MOUNTAINS 312
13.7 Pascal's Principle 313
13.8 Surface Tension 315
13.9 Capillarity 316

14 Gases 324

14.1 The Atmosphere 325
14.2 Atmospheric Pressure 326
The Barometer 328
14.3 Boyle's Law 330
14.4 Buoyancy of Air 332
14.5 Bernoulli's Principle 333
Applications of Bernoulli's Principle 334
■ NEWTONIAN AIR LIFT 335
■ PRACTICING PHYSICS 336
14.6 Plasma 337
Plasma in the Everyday World 337
Plasma Power 338

PART THREE

Heat 345

15 Temperature, Heat, and Expansion 346

15.1 Temperature 347
15.2 Heat 349
Measuring Heat 351
15.3 Specific Heat Capacity 351
15.4 The High Specific Heat Capacity of Water 352
15.5 Thermal Expansion 354
Expansion of Water 356
■ LIFE AT THE EXTREMES 358

16 Heat Transfer 366

16.1 Conduction 367
16.2 Convection 369
■ PRACTICING PHYSICS 371
16.3 Radiation 371
Emission of Radiant Energy 372
Absorption of Radiant Energy 373
Reflection of Radiant Energy 374
Cooling at Night by Radiation 375
16.4 Newton's Law of Cooling 376
16.5 The Greenhouse Effect 377
16.6 Climate Change 378
16.7 Solar Power 379
■ SPREADING SOLAR ENERGY 379
16.8 Controlling Heat Transfer 380

17 Change of Phase 386

17.1 Evaporation 387
17.2 Condensation 389
Condensation in the Atmosphere 390
Fog and Clouds 391
17.3 Boiling 391
Geysers 392
Boiling Is a Cooling Process 392
Boiling and Freezing at the Same Time 393
17.4 Melting and Freezing 393
Regelation 394
17.5 Energy and Changes of Phase 395
■ PRACTICING PHYSICS 398

18 Thermodynamics 404

18.1 Absolute Zero 406
Internal Energy 407
18.2 First Law of Thermodynamics 408
18.3 Adiabatic Processes 409
18.4 Meteorology and the First Law 409
18.5 Second Law of Thermodynamics 412
Heat Engines 413
■ THERMODYNAMICS DRAMATIZED! 415
18.6 Energy Tends to Disperse 416
18.7 Entropy 418

PART FOUR
Sound 425

19 Vibrations and Waves 426

19.1 Good Vibrations 427
Vibration of a Pendulum 428
19.2 Wave Description 429
19.3 Wave Motion 430
■ PRACTICING PHYSICS 431
Transverse Waves 431
Longitudinal Waves 432
19.4 Wave Speed 433
19.5 Wave Interference 434
Standing Waves 434
19.6 Doppler Effect 436
19.7 Bow Waves 437
19.8 Shock Waves 439

20 Sound 446

20.1 Nature of Sound 447
Media That Transmit Sound 448
20.2 Sound in Air 448
■ LOUDSPEAKER 450
Speed of Sound in Air 450
■ PRACTICING PHYSICS 451
Energy in Sound Waves 451
■ MEASURING WAVES 452
20.3 Reflection of Sound 452
20.4 Refraction of Sound 453
20.5 Forced Vibrations 455
Natural Frequency 455
20.6 Resonance 456
20.7 Interference 457
20.8 Beats 459
■ RADIO BROADCASTS 460

21 Musical Sounds 466

21.1 Noise and Music 467
21.2 Pitch 468
21.3 Sound Intensity and Loudness 469
21.4 Quality 470
21.5 Musical Instruments 471
21.6 Fourier Analysis 473
21.7 From Analog to Digital 474

PART FIVE
Electricity and Magnetism 481

22 Electrostatics 482

22.1 Electric Forces 484
22.2 Electric Charges 484
22.3 Conservation of Charge 485
■ ELECTRONICS TECHNOLOGY AND SPARKS 486
22.4 Coulomb's Law 487
22.5 Conductors and Insulators 488
Semiconductors 489
Transistors 489
Superconductors 489
22.6 Charging 490
Charging by Friction and Contact 490
Charging by Induction 490

22.7 Charge Polarization 492
■ MICROWAVE OVEN 493
22.8 Electric Field 494
Electric Shielding 496
22.9 Electric Potential 498
Electric Energy Storage 500
Van de Graaff Generator 501

23 Electric Current 508

23.1 Flow of Charge and Electric Current 509
23.2 Voltage Sources 510
23.3 Electrical Resistance 511
23.4 Ohm's Law 512
Ohm's Law and Electric Shock 513
23.5 Direct Current and Alternating Current 515
Converting AC to DC 516
23.6 Speed and Source of Electrons in a Circuit 516
23.7 Electric Power 519
23.8 Electric Circuits 520
Series Circuits 520
Parallel Circuits 521
■ FUEL CELLS 522
■ COMBINING RESISTORS IN A CIRCUIT 523
Parallel Circuits and Overloading 523
Safety Fuses 524

24 Magnetism 532

24.1 Magnetism 533
24.2 Magnetic Poles 534
24.3 Magnetic Fields 535
24.4 Magnetic Domains 536
24.5 Electric Currents and Magnetic Fields 538
■ PRACTICING PHYSICS 539
24.6 Electromagnets 539
Superconducting Electromagnets 540
24.7 Magnetic Forces 540
On Moving Charged Particles 540
On Current-Carrying Wires 541
Electric Meters 541
Electric Motors 542
24.8 Earth's Magnetic Field 543
Cosmic Rays 544
24.9 Biomagnetism 545
■ MRI: MAGNETIC RESONANCE IMAGING 546

25 Electromagnetic Induction 550

25.1 Electromagnetic Induction 551
25.2 Faraday's Law 553
25.3 Generators and Alternating Current 554
25.4 Power Production 555
Turbogenerator Power 555
MHD Power 555
25.5 Transformers 556
25.6 Self-Induction 559
25.7 Magnetic Braking 560
25.8 Power Transmission 560
25.9 Field Induction 561

PART SIX

Light 569

26 Properties of Light 570

26.1 Electromagnetic Waves 572
26.2 Electromagnetic Wave Velocity 572
26.3 The Electromagnetic Spectrum 573
■ FRACTAL ANTENNAS 575
26.4 Transparent Materials 575
26.5 Speed of Light in a Transparent Medium 577
26.6 Opaque Materials 579
Shadows 579
26.7 Solar and Lunar Eclipses 580
26.8 Seeing Light—The Eye 583

27 Color 592

27.1 Color in Our World 593
27.2 Selective Reflection 594
27.3 Selective Transmission 595
27.4 Mixing Colored Lights 596
Primary Colors 597
Complementary Colors 597
27.5 Mixing Colored Pigments 598
The Color Black 600
27.6 Sky Colors 600
Why the Sky Is Blue 601
Why Sunsets Are Red 602
■ PRACTICING PHYSICS 603
Why an Eclipsed Moon Is Red 603
Why Clouds Are White 604

27.7 Water Colors 605
Why Water Is Greenish Blue 605
Why Deep Water Is Black 606

28 Reflection and Refraction 612

28.1 Reflection 613
Principle of Least Time 614
28.2 Law of Reflection 615
Plane Mirrors 615
Diffuse Reflection 617
28.3 Refraction 618
Index of Refraction 620
Mirage 621
28.4 Cause of Refraction 622
■ ISAAC NEWTON AND HIS STUDY OF LIGHT 623
28.5 Dispersion 624
28.6 The Rainbow 625
Alterations in Sky Brightness 626
28.7 Total Internal Reflection 627
28.8 Lenses 629
Image Formation by a Lens 631
■ PINHOLE CAMERA 631
28.9 Lens Defects 633

29 Light Waves 642

29.1 Huygens' Principle 643
29.2 Diffraction 645
X-Ray Diffraction 647
29.3 Superposition and Interference 648
Young's Double Slit Experiment 648
29.4 Single-Color Thin-Film Interference 651
Interference Colors 652
■ PRACTICING PHYSICS 654
29.5 Polarization 654
Three-Dimensional Viewing 656
29.6 Holography 658

30 Light Emission 664

30.1 Light Emission 665
30.2 Excitation 666
30.3 Emission Spectra 668
30.4 Incandescence 670
30.5 Absorption Spectra 671
30.6 Fluorescence 672
30.7 Phosphorescence 674
30.8 Lamps 675
Incandescent Lamp 675
Fluorescent Lamp 675
Light-Emitting Diode 676
30.9 Lasers 677

31 Light Quanta 686

31.1 Birth of the Quantum Theory 687
31.2 Quantization and Planck's Constant 688
■ CONSTANTS IN NATURE 690
31.3 Photoelectric Effect 690
Photovoltaic Cells 692
31.4 Wave–Particle Duality 693
31.5 Double-Slit Experiment 694
31.6 Particles as Waves: Electron Diffraction 695
31.7 Uncertainty Principle 698
31.8 Complementarity 700
■ PREDICTABILITY AND CHAOS 701

PART SEVEN

Atomic and Nuclear Physics 707

32 The Atom and the Quantum 708

32.1 Discovery of the Atomic Nucleus 709
32.2 Discovery of the Electron 710
■ UNIQUE OR IDENTICAL 713
32.3 Atomic Spectra: Clues to Atomic Structure 713
32.4 Bohr Model of the Atom 714
32.5 Explanation of Quantized Energy Levels: Electron Waves 716
32.6 Quantum Mechanics 717
32.7 Correspondence Principle 719
■ HIGGS BOSON 720

33 The Atomic Nucleus and Radioactivity 724

33.1 X-rays and Radioactivity 725
33.2 Alpha, Beta, and Gamma Rays 727
33.3 Neutrinos 728

33.4 Environmental Radiation 729
Units of Radiation 730
Doses of Radiation 731
Radioactive Tracers 732
33.5 The Atomic Nucleus and the Strong Force 732
33.6 Radioactive Half-Life 735
33.7 Radiation Detectors 736
33.8 Transmutation of Elements 738
Natural Transmutation 738
Artificial Transmutation 740
33.9 Radiometric Dating 740
■ FOOD IRRADIATION 742

34 Nuclear Fission and Fusion 748
34.1 Nuclear Fission 750
34.2 Nuclear Fission Reactors 752
■ PLUTONIUM 754
34.3 The Breeder Reactor 755
The Thorium Reactor 756
34.4 Fission Power 756
34.5 Mass–Energy Equivalence 758
■ PHYSICS AT AIRPORT SECURITY 761
34.6 Nuclear Fusion 762
34.7 Controlling Fusion 764

PART EIGHT
Relativity 771

35 Special Theory of Relativity 772
35.1 Motion Is Relative 773
Michelson–Morley Experiment 774
35.2 Postulates of the Special Theory of Relativity 775
35.3 Simultaneity 776
35.4 Spacetime and Time Dilation 778
■ CLOCKWATCHING ON A TROLLEY CAR RIDE 781
The Twin Trip 782
35.5 Addition of Velocities 788
Space Travel 788
■ CENTURY HOPPING 790
35.6 Length Contraction 790
35.7 Relativistic Momentum 792
35.8 Mass, Energy, and $E = mc^2$ 793
35.9 The Correspondence Principle 796

36 General Theory of Relativity 802
36.1 Principle of Equivalence 804
36.2 Bending of Light by Gravity 805
36.3 Gravity and Time: Gravitational Red Shift 807
36.4 Gravity and Space: Motion of Mercury 809
36.5 Gravity, Space, and a New Geometry 810
36.6 Gravitational Waves 812
36.7 Newtonian and Einsteinian Gravitation 813

AUTHOR PROFILE 818

APPENDIX A
On Measurement and Unit Conversions 820

APPENDIX B
More About Motion 824

APPENDIX C
Graphing 828

APPENDIX D
Vector Applications 831

APPENDIX E
Exponential Growth and Doubling Time 834

Odd-Numbered Answers 837

Glossary 867

Credits 885

Index 891

Conceptual Physics Photo Album

Conceptual Physics is a very personal book, reflected in its many photographs of family, along with friends and colleagues worldwide. Many of these people are identified in chapter-opening photos, and, with some exceptions, I'll not repeat their names here. Family and friends whose photos are Part Openers, however, are listed. The book opens on page 21 with great-nephew Evan Suchocki sitting on my lap pondering life's opportunities with his pet chick.

Part One opens on page 43 with little Ian Evans, son of teacher friends Bart and Jill Evans. Part Two opens on page 257 with little Georgia Hernandez, my delightful great-great-niece. Part Three opens on page 345 with four-year-old Francesco Ming Giovannuzzi, grandson of friend Tsing Bardin, page 300. Part Four opens on page 425 with Abby Dijamco, daughter of my last CCSF teaching assistant, dentist Stella Dijamco. In Part Five on page 481 is my great-great-nephew Richard Hernandez, older brother to Georgia. Part Six opens on page 569 with my granddaughter Gracie Hewitt at age four. Part Seven opens with another granddaughter, Kara Mae Hurrell, as a four-year-old tot in a pot on page 707. Part Eight opens on page 771 with young London Dixon, the daughter of my physician's medical assistant, April Dixon.

The two friends most influential in my transition from a life of sign painting to a life of physics are Burl Grey, page 53, and Jacque Fresco, pages 172, 173. For success as an author I credit my friend and physics mentor, Ken Ford, pages 446, 772, to whom previous editions have been dedicated. Longtime best friend Huey Johnson, known as Dan, page 404, has also been personally influential.

Family photos include my first wife, Millie, on page 370. My eldest daughter is Jean Hurrell, page 281, and with her children Marie and Kara Mae on page 519, and both granddaughters shown separately on pages 87 and 122. Jean's husband Phil tinkers with electricity on page 508. My son Paul is with his daughter Grace, page 104, and doing some thermodynamics on page 409. Gracie plays music on page 466 and further speculates about science on page 569. Son Paul's former wife Ludmila is shown with Polaroids on page 656, and their son Alex skateboards on pages 124, 190. My daughter Leslie at age 16 is on page 269, a colorized photo that has been a trademark of *Conceptual Physics* since the third edition. Since then Leslie has been my earth-science coauthor of the *Conceptual Physical Science* textbooks. A more recent photo with her husband Bob Abrams, page 570. Their children, Megan and Emily, are on pages 369 and 230. A grand slam grandchildren photo is on page 599. My late son James is on page 191 with his best friend Robert Baruffaldi, also his cousin. Other photos of James are on pages 470 and 633. James left me my first grandson, Manuel, pages 288, 351, 456.

Millie's relatives include nephew Mike Luna, page 252. Grand-niece Angela Hendricks, page 676, is a teacher and amateur photographer who graciously supplied photos of her cousins Georgia Hernandez and her older brother Richard Hernandez on pages 314, 341, 446, 466 and 481, and her own child Hudson, page 314. Hudson also appears with his dad Jake Hendricks on page 117. Grand-niece Alejuandra Luna leans on Newton's third law, page 122. Great nephew Isaac Jones uses a sparkler, page 349, as his dad Terrence used back in the sixth and seventh editions. Terrence Jones is now on page 346.

A year after Millie's passing in 2004, I married my friend of many years, Lillian Lee. Lillian has wonderfully assisted me in all steps of textbook production, including ancillaries. Of the many photos of Lil throughout this edition, I'll mention two favorites: One with her pet bird Sneezlee on page 600, and the photo with me illustrating the essence of Newton's third law—you cannot touch without being touched—on page 112. Lillian's dad, Wai Tsan Lee, shows magnetic induction on page 537, and mom, Siu Bik Lee, making excellent use of solar energy on page 380 and with solar images on page 631. Lillian's niece Serena Sinn excels in sports, page 146. Lil's nephew Erik Wong with his sister Allison nicely illustrate thermodynamics on page 415.

Photos of my siblings begin with my sister Marjorie, author and theologian emerita at Claremont School of Theology in Claremont, California, illustrating reflection on page 616. Marjorie's daughter, occupational therapist Cathy Candler, page 177, and her son Garth Orr, page 280. Marjorie's daughter Joan Lucas's two children, SpaceX engineer Mike Lucas, page 792, and lawyer Alexandra Lucas, page 570. Marjorie's multitalented son, John Suchocki, page 386, the creator of Conceptual Academy, a chemistry professor and author, and my coauthor of the *Conceptual Physical Science* and *Conceptual Integrated Science* textbooks; he's also a singer-songwriter known as John Andrew strumming his guitar, pages 426, 553. The group listening to music, page 474, is of John and Tracy's Hawaii long-ago wedding party. My brother Dave and his wife Barbara pump water on page 329. Their electrician son Davey is on page 525, and the yum photos of solar cells, page 380, and the GPS unit, page 802, is courtesy of their daughter Dotty Jean Allen. My youngest brother Steve and his daughter Gretchen are shown on page 120. Steve's son, Navy pilot Travis is on page 196, and Steve's teacher daughter Stephanie on pages 639 and 802.

Photos of City College of San Francisco physics-instructor friends open several chapters and are named there. Others include Diana Lininger Markham, pages 172, 202. Fred Cauthen, pages 166, 560. Norman Whitlatch, page 474. Dave Wall, page 570. Roger King, pages 374, 708. Jill Evans, pages, 84, 160, and 508, and Chelcie Liu, page 64.

Suppliers of physics equipment are friends David and Christine Vernier of Vernier Software, page 146, Paul Stokstad of PASCO, page 172, and Peter Rea of Arbor Scientific, page 235.

The following people are personal American friends in order of appearance: Judith Brand, whose skillful edits grace this entire edition, page 22. David Vasquez, pages 22, 163. Will Maynez, pages 44, 136, 361, and 524. Sue Johnson, Huey Johnson's wife, p 64. Lab Manual author Dean Baird, pages 64, 65, 386, 577, 582, and 603. Paul Doherty, pages 104, 105, 570. David Kagan, pages 104, 708. Howie Brand from college days, pages 124, 404. David Manning, pages 140, 197, 324, and his daughter Brady, page 79. Bob Miner, page 149, his wife Ana, page 44, and Ana's daughter Estefania, page 388. Tenny Lim, page 153, draws her bow, a photo that has appeared in every book since the sixth edition. Tenny again on pages 204, 205. Young Andrea Wu, page 170. Marshall Ellenstein, pages 178, 322, 642, 643. Alexei Cogan, page 189. Alan Davis with son William, page 204, and William again, page 532, and a photo taken by his mom Fe, page 609. Chuck Stone, page 233. John Hubisz, page 280. Ray Serway, page 300. Evan Jones, page 324. Fred Myers, pages 324, 325, 532, 612, 732. Helen Yan, pages 366, 367, 642. Dennis McNelis, page 373, and his grandson Myles Dooley, page 443. Exploratorium physicist Ron Hipschman on pages 204, 386, 387, 393, 664. Childhood best friend Paul Ryan is on page 398. Huey and Sue Johnson's grandson Bay Johnson, page 472. Ryan Patterson, page 456. Elan Lavie, page 482. Kirby Perchbacher, pages 306 and 482. Karen Jo Matsler, pages 562 and 612. Bruce Novak, page 574, and his mom Greta Novak on page 322. Charlie Spiegel, page 579. Suzanne Lyons and children Simone and Tristan, page 592. Carlos Vasquez, page 592. Jeff Wetherhold, page 592. Bree Barnett Dreyfuss, page 642. Phil Wolf, page 686. Brad Huff, page 712. Stanley Micklavzina, page 724, Walter Steiger, page 737. Brenda Skoczelas, page 772. Mike and Jane Jukes, pages 800 and 816.

The physics community is global. International friends in order of appearance: My protégé Einstein Dhayal (India), pages 22, 550. Cedric and Anne Linder (Sweden), pages 44, 45. Carl Angell (Norway), page 64. Derek Muller (Canada), pages 124, 125. Peter Hopkinson (Canada), pages 162, 612. Bilal Gunes (Turkey), page 172. Ed van den Berg (Netherlands), page 204, and his wife Daday, page 508. Tomas Brage (Sweden), page 204, and with Barbara Brage, page 404. Ole Anton and Aage Mellem (Norway), page 346. Anette Zetterberg (Sweden), page 346, and husband P. O. page 404, with son Johan on page 324. Johan's wife Sara Bloomberg on page 302. Z. Tugba Kahyaoglu (Turkey), pages 482, 550. Mona El Tawil-Nassar (Egypt), page 500. David Housden (New Zealand), page 522. Roger Rasool (Australia), pages 724 and 736.

These are photographs of people very dear to me, which makes *Conceptual Physics* all the more a labor of love.

To the Student

You know you can't enjoy a game unless you know its rules; whether it's a ball game, a computer game, or simply a party game. Likewise, you can't fully appreciate your surroundings until you understand the rules of nature. Physics is the study of these rules, which show how everything in nature is beautifully connected. So the main reason to study physics is to enhance the way you see the physical world. You'll see the mathematical structure of physics in frequent equations, but more than being recipes for computation, you'll see the equations as **guides to thinking**.

I enjoy physics, and you will too — because you'll understand it. If you get hooked and take a follow-up course, then you can focus on mathematical problems. Go for comprehension of concepts now, and if computation follows, it will be with understanding.

Enjoy your physics!

Paul G. Hewitt

To the Instructor

The sequence of chapters in this Thirteenth Edition is identical to that in the previous edition. Personality profiles continue with every chapter, highlighting a scientist, teacher, or historical figure who complements the chapter material. Each chapter begins with a photo montage of educators, and sometimes their students, who bring life to the learning of physics.

As in the previous edition, Chapter 1, "About Science," begins your course on a high note with coverage of early measurements of the Earth and distances to the Moon and the Sun. New to this edition is how an extension of Eratosthenes' measurements to calculating distances between far-apart schools. And also, a way that students can measure the distance to the Moon with a pea.

Part One, "Mechanics," begins with Chapter 2, which, as in the previous edition, presents a brief historical overview of Aristotle and Galileo, progressing to Newton's first law and to mechanical equilibrium. Force vectors are introduced, primarily for forces that are parallel to one another. Vectors are extended to velocity in the following Chapter 3, and Chapter 5 treats both force and velocity vectors and their components. Vector treatment is gradual, and, understandable.

Chapter 3, "Linear Motion," is the only chapter in Part One that is devoid of physics laws. Kinematics has no laws, only definitions, mainly for *speed*, *velocity*, and *acceleration*—likely the least exciting concepts that your course has to offer. Too often kinematics becomes a pedagogical "black hole" of instruction—too much time for too little physics. Being more math than physics, the kinematics equations can appear to the student as the most intimidating in the book. Although the experienced eye doesn't see them as such, this is how *students* first see them:

$$s = s_0 + \delta t$$

$$s = s_0 t + \tfrac{1}{2}\delta t^2$$

$$s^2 = s_0^2 + 2\delta s$$

$$s_a = \tfrac{1}{2}(s_0 + s)$$

If you wish to reduce class size, display these equations on the first day and announce that class effort for much of the term will be on making sense of them. Don't we do much the same with the standard symbols?

Ask any college graduate two questions: What is the acceleration of an object in free fall? What keeps Earth's interior hot? You'll see what their education focused on because many more will correctly answer the first question than the second. Traditionally, physics courses have been top-heavy in kinematics with little or no coverage of modern physics. Radioactive decay almost never gets the attention given to falling bodies. So my recommendation is to pass quickly through Chapter 3, making the distinction between velocity and acceleration, and then to move on to Chapter 4, "Newton's Second Law of Motion," where the concepts of velocity and acceleration find their application.

Chapter 5 continues with Newton's third law. Many third-law examples via vectors and their components should bring clarity to this commonly misunderstood law of motion. More on vectors is found in Appendix D and especially in the *Practice Book*.

Chapter 6, "Momentum," is a logical extension of Newton's third law. One reason I prefer teaching it before teaching energy is that students find mv much simpler and easier to grasp than $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$. Another reason for first treating momentum is that the vectors of previous chapters are employed with momentum but not with energy.

Chapter 7, "Energy," is a longer chapter, rich with everyday examples and current energy concerns. Energy is central to mechanics, so this chapter has a whopping amount of chapter-end material (117 exercises). Work, energy, and power also get generous coverage in the *Practice Book*.

After Chapters 8 and 9 (on rotational mechanics and gravity), mechanics culminates with Chapter 10 (on projectile motion and satellite motion). Students are fascinated to learn that any projectile moving fast enough can become an Earth satellite. Moving even faster, it can become a satellite of the Sun. Projectile motion and satellite motion belong together.

Part Two, "Properties of Matter," features chapters on atoms, solids, liquids, and gases, which are much the same as the previous edition. New applications, some quite enchanting, enhance the flavor of these chapters.

Parts Three through Eight continue, like earlier parts, with enriched examples of current technology. The chapters with the fewest changes are Chapters 35 and 36 on special and general relativity, respectively.

Unlike the **practice exams** for the eight parts of the book, this thirteenth edition has them for each chapter. Answers are shown upside-down on each exam page. But more than answers are explanations for them. This is good pedagogy, heeding the adage that we learn best from our mistakes. Learning, more than assessment, is the goal. Your students will appreciate knowing why an answer is correct. This may also be a worthwhile in-class activity. Somewhat more detailed explanations are in the Instructor Manual.

The **Instructor Manual** for this edition, like previous ones, features demonstrations and suggested lectures for every chapter. It includes answers to all end-of-chapter material, many more detailed than the odd-numbered ones at the back of the book. If you're new to teaching this course, you'll likely find it enormously useful. It sums up "what works" in my more than 30 years of teaching.

As in previous editions, some chapters include short boxed **essays** on such topics as energy and technology, and magnetically levitated trains. Also featured are boxes on ocean tidal calendars, fuel cells, fractal antennas, constants of nature, and pseudoscience, culminating with the public phobia about food irradiation and anything nuclear. We who teach physics know about the care, checking, and cross-checking that go into understanding something. Fake news and its misconceptions are laughable. But to those who don't work in the science arena, including even your best students, weird stories can seem compelling when purveyors clothe their wares in the language of science while skillfully sidestepping the tenets of science. Our hope is to help stem this rising tide.

End-of-chapter material begins with a **Summary of Terms.** Following are **Reading Check Questions** that summarize the main points of the chapter. Students can find the answers to these questions, word for word, in the reading. The **Plug and Chug** exercises are for familiarity with equations. As introduced in previous editions, many good comments have come from the **Think and Rank** exercises. Critical thinking is required in comparing quantities in similar situations. Getting an answer is not enough; the answer must be compared with others and a ranking from most to least is asked for. I consider this the most worthwhile offering in the chapter-end material.

Think and Explain exercises are the nuts and bolts of conceptual physics. Many require critical thinking, while some are designed to connect concepts to

familiar situations. Most chapters also have **Think and Discuss** sections (which are tailored for student discussion). More math-physics challenges are found in the sets of **Think and Solve** exercises. These problems are much less numerous than Think and Explains and Think and Ranks. Many more problems are available in the student supplement, **Problem Solving in Conceptual Physics,** coauthored with Phil Wolf. While problem solving is not the main thrust of a conceptual course, Phil and I, like most physics instructors, nevertheless love solving problems. In a novel and student-friendly way, our supplement features problems that are more physics than math, nicely extending *Conceptual Physics*—even to student-friendly algebraic courses that feature problem solving. Problem solutions are included in the Instructor Resources area of MasteringPhysics.

The most important ancillary to this book is the **Practice Book,** which contains my most creative writings and drawings. These work pages guide students step by step toward understanding the central concepts. There are one or more practice pages for nearly every chapter in the book. Individual pages can be printed for class distribution. They can be used inside or outside of class. In my teaching I passed out copies of selected pages as home tutors.

The **Laboratory Manual** coauthored with Dean Baird for this edition is the same that accompanied the 12th edition. A great variety of activities and lab exercises, all polished by Dean, are extraordinary.

Next-Time Questions, familiar to readers of *The Physics Teacher* as *Figuring Physics*, are available electronically and are more numerous than ever before. When sharing these with your classes, please do not show the question(s) and the answer(s). Allow sufficient "wait time" between the question and the answer for your students to discuss the answer before showing it "next time" (which at a minimum should be the next class meeting, or even next week). Thus the title named appropriately "Next-Time Questions." More learning occurs when students ponder answers before being given them. Next-Time Questions are available in the Instructor Resource Area of Mastering. Some are also available at the Arborsci.com website.

Hewitt-Drew-It screencasts are simple hand-drawn tutorials narrated by the author. Any of these 149 screencasts can be accessed at www.HewittDrewIt.com. Importantly, these tutorials help to learn *correct* Physics!

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

At the start of each chapter in the printed version of this edition, the icon to the right serves as a call out to videos and screencasts that can be found in the eText.

Mastering Physics

MasteringPhysics, an innovative, targeted, and effective online learning media that is easily integrated into your course using MasteringPhysics to assign tutorials, quizzes, and other activities as out-of-class homework or projects that are automatically graded and recorded. These instructor resources are also available for download. A chapter section guide in the study area summarizes the media available to you and your students, chapter by chapter.

My Lil and I regard this as the best physics book we've ever written. For more information on the support ancillaries, see http://www.pearsonglobaleditions.com, contact your Pearson representative, or contact me at pghewitt@aol.com.

Acknowledgments

I remain enormously grateful to Kenneth Ford for checking accuracy and for his many insightful suggestions. Many years ago, I admired one of Ken's books, *Basic Physics*, which first inspired me to write *Conceptual Physics*. I am now honored that he has devoted so much of his time and energy to making this edition a beautiful book. I am also grateful to long-time friend and science writer Judith Brand, who like Ken, added clarity to my writing. Errors invariably appear after manuscript is submitted, so I take full responsibility for any errors that have survived their scrutiny.

For valued assistance to this edition I am most thankful to my talented wife Lillian for contributing to every stage of this book and its ancillaries, and also to Ken Ford, and Judith Brand. Fred Myers tweaked most chapters and nicely improved explanations of physics topics and clarified end-of-chapter exercises. David Manning made valued suggestions to Think-And-Do Activities. Alan Davis brightened up the chapter on gravity with his ocean tides chart. Jennifer Yeh assisted with profiles of great scientists. Ron Hipschman helped direct improvements throughout the book. Nephew John Suchocki gave valued general advice. For physics advice and accuracy, I turn to David Kagan and Bruce Novak, as well as to Ken Ford. Others listed alphabetically to whom I'm grateful are Robert Austin, Marshall Ellenstein, Scotty Graham, Jerry Hosken, Brad Huff, Evan Jones, Elan Lavie, John McCain, Anne Tabor Morris, Bruce Novak, Dan Styer, Dave Wall, Jeff Wetherhold, Norman Whitlatch, Phil Wolf, and David Vasquez.

For valued suggestions from previous editions, I thank my friends Dean Baird, Tomas Brage, Howard Brand, George Curtis, Alan Davis, Marshall Ellenstein, Mona El TawilNassar, Herb Gottlieb, Jim Hicks, Jerry Hosken, Peter Hopkinson, John Hubisz, Sebastian Kuhn, David Kagan, Carlton Lane, Juliet Layugan, Paul McNamara, Derek Muller, Fred Myers, Diane Riendeau, Gretchen Hewitt Rojas, Chuck Stone, Chris Thron, Lawrence Weinstein, Phil Wolf, and P.O. Zetterberg. Others who provided suggestions in years past include Matthew Griffiths, Paul Hammer, Francisco Izaguirre, Les Sawyer, Dan Sulke, and Richard W. Tarara. I am forever grateful to the input of my Exploratorium friends and colleagues: Judith Brand, Paul Doherty, Ron Hipschman, Eric Muller, and Modesto Tamez.

For the *Problem Solving in Conceptual Physics* ancillary, coauthored with Phil Wolf, we both thank Tsing Bardin, Howard Brand, George Curtis, Ken Ford, Jim Hicks, David Housden, Evan Jones, Chelcie Liu, Fred Myers, Diane Riendeau, Stan Schiocchio, and David Williamson for valuable feedback.

For their dedication, I am grateful to Jeanne Zalesky and the Pearson management team under the wing of Harry Misthos. I thank product managers Jessica Moro and Heidi Allgair, and for development, Judith Brand, and copyeditor Scott Bennett. I am especially grateful to Mary Tindle and for the competence of the production staff at SPI. I have been fortunate to work with this first-rate team!

Paul G. Hewitt
St. Petersburg, Florida

Global Edition

Pearson would like to thank and acknowledge the following people for their work on the Global Edition:

Contributors:

Mark Gino Aliperio, *De La Salle University*
Pankaj Mohanty, *University of Johannesburg*
Mukesh Kumar, *University of the Witwatersrand*
Wayne Rowlands, *Swinburne University of Technology*
Abhishek Pandey, *University of the Witwatersrand*

Reviewers:

Ertugrul Demir, *Yeditepe Üniversitesi*
Iyabo Usman, *University of the Witwatersrand*
Joydeep Chowdhury, *Jadavpur University*
Susan Jacobs, *University of Johannesburg*
Kenneth Hong Chong Ming, *National University of Singapore*

Wow, Great Uncle Paul! Before this chickie exhausted its inner space resources and poked out of its shell, it must have thought it was at its last moments. But what seemed like its end was a new beginning. Maybe we're like chicks breaking out of our shell—but with the realization that we're not apart from nature but very much a part of it. So we should learn nature's rules in order to live together sustainably in this world.

CHAPTER ONE

1 About Science

1.1 Scientific Measurements
- How Eratosthenes Measured the Size of Earth
- Size of the Moon
- Distance to the Moon
- Distance to the Sun
- Size of the Sun
- Mathematics—The Language of Science

1.2 Scientific Methods
- The Scientific Attitude
- Dealing with Misconceptions

1.3 Science, Art, and Religion

1.4 Science and Technology

1.5 Physics—The Basic Science

1.6 In Perspective

1 Circular images of the Sun are cast from above through small openings between tree leaves. 2 Sunlight also indicates daily time for Einstein Dhayal (right) and his friends in India. 3 Science writer Judith Brand holds a pea at just the right distance to eclipse a full moon. A specific number of end-to-end peas can fit in this "right distance." Aha! Does this relate to the number of end-to-end Moons between her eye and the Moon? 4 Phyllis Vasquez holds the basketball to represent Earth. Her five sons, all teachers, ponder how far a tennis ball representing the Moon should be held to approximate the Earth-Moon distance.

Being second best was not all that bad for Greek mathematician Eratosthenes of Cyrene (276–194 BC). He was nicknamed "Beta" by his contemporaries who judged him second best in many fields, including mathematics, philosophy, athletics, and astronomy. Perhaps he took second prizes in running or wrestling contests. He was one of the early librarians at the world's then-greatest library, the Mouseion, in Alexandria, Egypt, founded by Ptolemy I Soter. Eratosthenes was one of the foremost scholars of his time and wrote on philosophical, scientific, and literary matters. His reputation among his contemporaries was immense—Archimedes dedicated a book to him. As a mathematician, he invented a method for finding prime numbers. As a geographer, he measured the tilt of Earth's axis with great accuracy and wrote *Geography,* the first book to give geography a mathematical basis and to treat Earth as a globe divided by latitudes and into frigid, temperate, and torrid zones.

The classical works of Greek literature were preserved at the Mouseion, which was host to numerous scholars and contained hundreds of thousands of papyrus and vellum scrolls. But this human treasure wasn't appreciated by everybody. Much information in the Mouseion conflicted with cherished beliefs held by others. Threatened by its "heresies," the great library was burned and completely destroyed. Historians are unsure of the culprits, who were likely guided by the certainty of their truths. Being absolutely certain, having absolutely no doubts, is *certitude*—the root cause of much of the destruction, human and otherwise, in the centuries that followed. Eratosthenes didn't witness the destruction of his great library, for it occurred after his lifetime.

Today Eratosthenes is most remembered for his amazing calculation of Earth's size, with remarkable accuracy (2000 years ago with no computers and no artificial satellites—using only good thinking, geometry, and simple measurements). In this chapter you will see how he accomplished this.

1.1 Scientific Measurements

Measurements are a hallmark of good science. How much you know about something is often related to how well you can measure it. This was well put by the famous physicist Lord Kelvin in the 19th century: "I often say that when you can measure something and express it in numbers, you know something about it. When you cannot measure it, when you cannot express it in numbers, your knowledge is of a meager and unsatisfactory kind. It may be the beginning of knowledge, but you have scarcely in your thoughts advanced to the stage of science, whatever it may be." Scientific measurements are not something new but go back to ancient times. In the 3rd century BC, for example, fairly accurate measurements were made of the sizes of the Earth, Moon, and Sun, as well as the distances between them.

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

How Eratosthenes Measured the Size of Earth

The size of Earth was first measured in Egypt by Eratosthenes in about 235 BC. He calculated the circumference of Earth in the following way. He knew that the Sun is highest in the sky at noon on the day of the summer solstice (which occurs around June 21 on today's calendars). At this time, a vertical stick casts its shortest shadow. If the Sun is directly overhead, a vertical stick casts no shadow at all. Eratosthenes learned from library information that the Sun was directly overhead at noon on the day of the summer solstice in Syene, a city south of Alexandria (where the Aswan Dam stands today). At this particular time, sunlight shines directly down a deep well in Syene and is reflected back up again. Eratosthenes reasoned that, if the Sun's rays were extended into Earth at this point, they would pass through the center. Likewise, a vertical line extended into Earth at Alexandria (or anywhere else) would also pass through Earth's center.

The Sun is directly overhead at noon only near the equator. Standing in the sunshine at the equator, you cast no shadow at noon. At locations farther from the equator, the Sun is never directly overhead at noon. The farther you stand from the equator, the longer is the shadow your body casts.

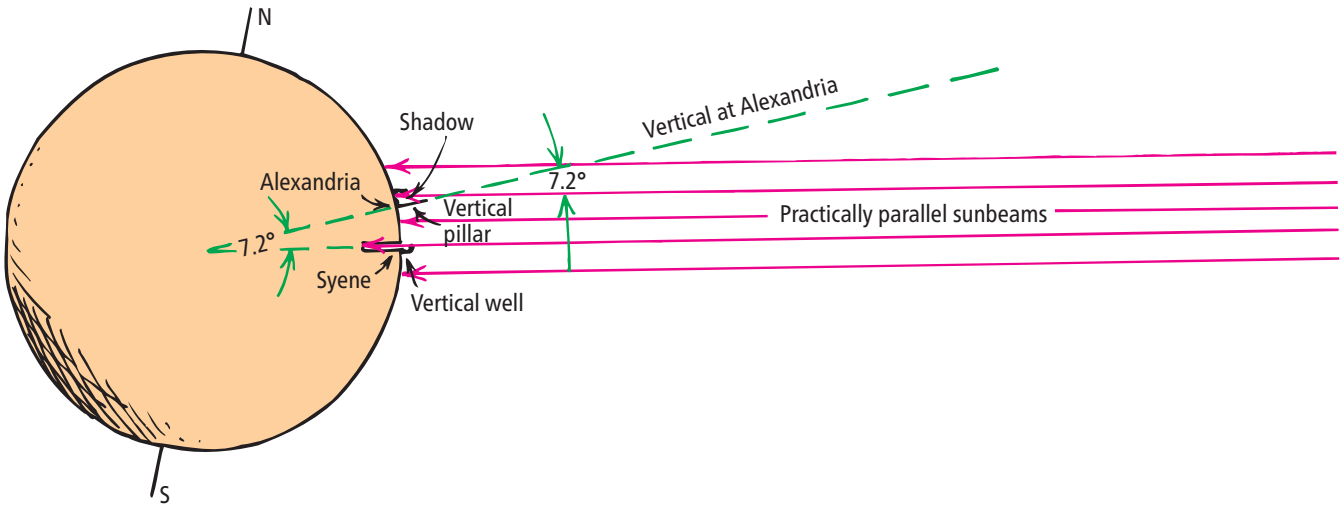


FIGURE 1.1
When the Sun is directly overhead at Syene, sunbeams in Alexandria make a 7.2° angle with the vertical. The verticals at both locations extend to the center of Earth, where they make the same 7.2° angle.

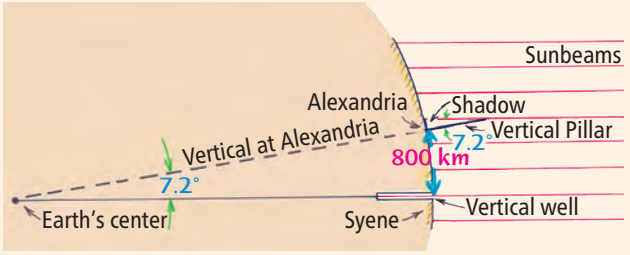
fyi

- **Science** is the body of knowledge that describes the order within nature and the causes of that order. Science is also an ongoing human activity that represents the collective efforts, findings, and wisdom of the human race, an activity that is dedicated to gathering knowledge about the world and organizing and condensing it into testable laws and theories. Science had its beginnings before recorded history and made great headway in Greece in the 4th and 3rd centuries BC, and spread throughout the Mediterranean world. Scientific advance came to a near halt in Europe when the Roman Empire fell in the 5th century. Invading hordes destroyed almost everything in their paths as they overran Europe. Reason gave way to religion, which plunged Europe into the Dark Ages. During this time, the Chinese and Polynesians were charting the stars and the planets and Arab nations were developing mathematics. Greek science was reintroduced to Europe by Islamic influences that penetrated into Spain during the 10th, 11th, and 12th centuries. In the 15th century art and science were beautifully blended by Leonardo da Vinci. Scientific thought was furthered in the 16th century with the advent of the printing press.

At noon of the summer solstice, Eratosthenes measured a 7.2° angle between sunbeams and a vertical pillar in Alexandria (Figure 1.1) . How many 7.2° segments make up Earth's circumference of 360°? The answer is $360°/7.2° = 50$. Since 7.2° is 1/50 of a complete circle, Eratosthenes reasoned that the distance between Alexandria and Syene is 1/50 Earth's circumference. Thus the circumference of Earth becomes 50 times the distance between these two cities. This distance, quite flat and frequently traveled, was measured by surveyors to be about 5000 stadia (800 kilometers). So Eratosthenes calculated Earth's circumference to be 50×5000 stadia $= 250{,}000$ stadia. In kilometers, Earth's circumference $= (50)(800\ \text{km}) = 40{,}000$ km, very close to the currently accepted value of Earth's circumference.

CHECK POINT

If the same 7.2° subtended 500 km (instead of 800 km), would a measure of Earth's circumference be smaller, larger, or the same?



CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Smaller, as Earth's circumference would be $(50)(500\ \text{km}) = 25{,}000$ km.

Seventeen hundred years after Eratosthenes's death, Christopher Columbus studied Eratosthenes's findings before setting sail for the East Indies. Rather than heed Eratosthenes's findings, however, Columbus chose to accept more up-to-date maps that indicated Earth's circumference was one-third smaller. If Columbus had accepted Eratosthenes's larger circumference, then he would have known that he had not landed in China or the East Indies, but rather the Caribbean.

PRACTICING PHYSICS

Earth's Size via Tree/Flagpole Shadows

In measuring the size of Earth, Eratosthenes considered two north–south locations that lie very close to a specific line of longitude. This need not be necessary. A line of longitude is one of many *great circles*. On Earth, *any* great circle, in any orientation, lends itself to a measurement of Earth's circumference.

A great circle is the largest possible circle that can be drawn around a sphere. Through any two points on a sphere such as Earth, whatever the direction of the line separating them, a great circle can be defined and drawn. Commonly charted great circles are Earth's lines of longitude, all passing through the north and south poles. Only one great circle lies along a line of latitude: that of the equator. But there are an infinite number of great circles about Earth, all with their centers at Earth's center (Figure 1.2).

Vertical structures in sunlight, such as pillars and trees, cast shadows. Because sunbeams reaching Earth's surface are parallel to one another, close-by vertical trees cast equal-angle shadows. But due to Earth's curvature, the shadows cast by trees many kilometers away at the same time of day are at different angles to the sunbeams. Due to the Sun's perceived continuous movement across the sky, minutes later a shadow will be at a slightly different angle. Amazingly, shadows cast by trees or other perpendicular structures on different parts of our planet, whether on or off a line of longitude, provide sufficient information for calculating the size of Earth.

Earth's size can be calculated with simply trigonometry when the shadow of one tree points directly toward or away from the second tree. At this special time, the plane of the sunbeams striking Earth coincides with the plane of the great circle defined by the pair of trees. Such is the case in Figure 1.3, where the 10° vertex at Earth's center is equal to the 10° difference in the angles of the sunbeams with vertical trees.

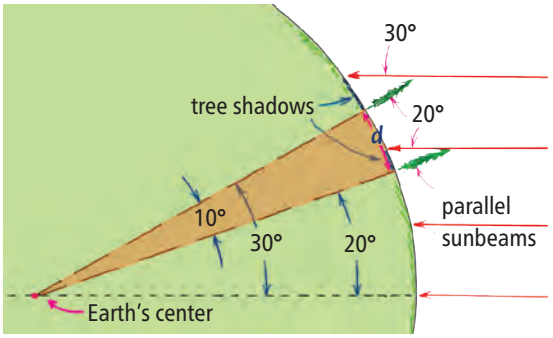


FIGURE 1.3
The two-tree arc *d* subtends an angle of 10° at Earth's center (shown by brown "wedge").

How many 10° segments of Earth make up a full 360° circumference of Earth? The answer is 360°/10° = 36. This tells us that Earth's circumference is simply equal to 36 times the distance between the pair of trees. Mission accomplished!

Flagpoles are even better at casting well-defined shadows. For far-apart cities where the separation distances are known quantities, an interesting science project (or activity) is applying the pair-of-trees idea to shadow-casting flagpoles at your school and a school in another city where your instructor has a teacher friend.

Anywhere on the globe, with rare exceptions, the shadows of a pair of flagpoles in sunlight will align along a great circle at *some* time on *some* day. To calculate Earth's circumference, you must find a date and time when the shadow cast by your school flagpole points directly toward or directly away from the school flagpole in the other city. If the Sun is shining in that other city, shadows there will meet the same criterion at the same time. If the day is cloudy or rainy, or if it's a weekend, be patient: Very nearly the same conditions will apply for several days running. (Caution: Making measurements of incident sunbeams that don't fall on the plane of your great circle involves more complex spherical trigonometry.)

The shadows cast by any pair of vertical structures in sunlight, spaced a known distance apart, provide sufficient information for calculating Earth's circumference.

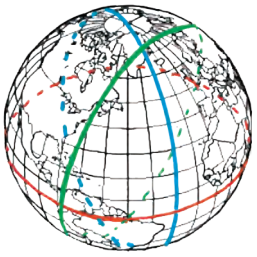
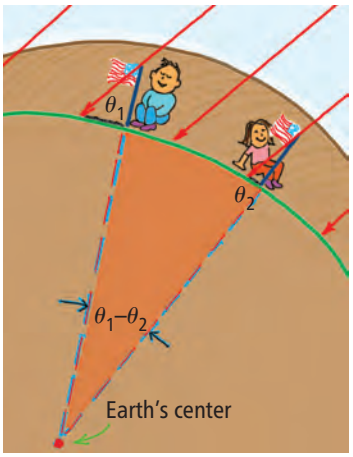


FIGURE 1.2
Three great circles, one at the equator (red), one along a line of longitude (blue), and another in a random direction (green).

Eratosthenes' simultaneous readings were enabled by a shadow near a line of longitude on the summer solstice. With a smartphone he could have calculated Earth's size on any day along any of Earth's great circles, even the equator.



Enjoying flagpole physics.

You have what Eratosthenes could not dream of: the Internet and smartphones, and perhaps a compass to tell when the shadows cast are aligned (the first pointing toward the second and the second away from the first—or, in some cases, each pointing away from the other). Synchronized timing that was a problem for Eratosthenes is given by smartphones. The difference in the two measured angles (or, if the shadows point away from each other, the sum) equals the angle at the vertex at Earth's center where extended vertical lines of each flagpole intersect. Note in the sketch that the difference between sunbeam angles at the two flags equals the vertex angle at Earth's center when the plane of the parallel sunbeams coincides with the plane of the two-flagpole great circle. With good data, estimates of the circumference of Earth can be calculated.

Or consider doing the reverse: Use Earth's 40,000-km circumference as the known value, and find the unknown distance between far-apart flagpoles. Flagpoles would have to be really distant for good results. For example, a 100-kilometer separation distance corresponds to less than a 1° difference in sunbeam angles—difficult to distinguish. It's better that your locations are much farther apart.

Either way—whether you decide to calculate Earth's circumference, or your distance of separation—this is an engaging cooperative activity. Go for it!

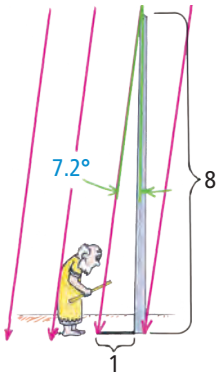


FIGURE 1.4
Two routes to the same solution.

Eratosthenes would have come to the same result by bypassing degrees altogether and comparing the length of the shadow cast by the pillar to the height of the pillar. When Eratosthenes measured the 7.2° angle of sunbeams with the vertical pillar, he also noted that the shadow cast by the pillar was 1/8 the height of the pillar (Figure 1.4). Geometrical reasoning shows, to a close approximation, that the ratio *shadow length/pillar height* is the same as the ratio *distance between Alexandria and Syene/Earth's radius*. So, just as the pillar is 8 times taller than its shadow, the radius of Earth must be 8 times greater than the distance between Alexandria and Syene.

Since the circumference of a circle is 2π times its radius ($C = 2\pi r$), Earth's radius is simply its circumference divided by 2π. In modern units, Earth's radius is 6370 kilometers and its circumference is 40,000 km.

So we learn there is more than one way in which Eratosthenes could measure the size of Earth. This feature of more than one path to a solution will be encountered time and again in chapters that follow. This hallmark of good science is one of many reasons that people devote their careers to physics or physics-related professions. Hats off to physics.

Size of the Moon

Another Greek scientist of the same era as Eratosthenes was Aristarchus, who was likely the first to suggest that Earth spins on its axis once a day, which accounted for the daily motion of the stars. Aristarchus also hypothesized that Earth moves around the Sun in a yearly orbit and that the other planets do likewise.[1] He correctly calculated the Moon's diameter and its distance from Earth. He accomplished all this in about 240 BC, 17 centuries before his findings were fully accepted.

Aristarchus compared the size of the Moon with the size of Earth by watching an eclipse of the Moon. Earth, like any body in sunlight, casts a shadow. An eclipse of the Moon is simply the event in which the Moon passes into this

[1]Aristarchus was unsure of his heliocentric hypothesis, likely because Earth's unequal seasons seemed not to support the idea that Earth circles the Sun. More important, it was noted that the Moon's distance from Earth varies—clear evidence that the Moon does not perfectly circle Earth. If the Moon does not follow a circular path about Earth, it was hard to argue that Earth follows a circular path about the Sun. The explanation, the elliptical paths of planets, was not discovered until centuries later by Johannes Kepler. In the meantime, epicycles proposed by other astronomers accounted for these discrepancies. It is interesting to speculate about the course of astronomy if the Moon didn't exist. Its irregular orbit would not have contributed to the early discrediting of the heliocentric theory, which might have taken hold centuries earlier.

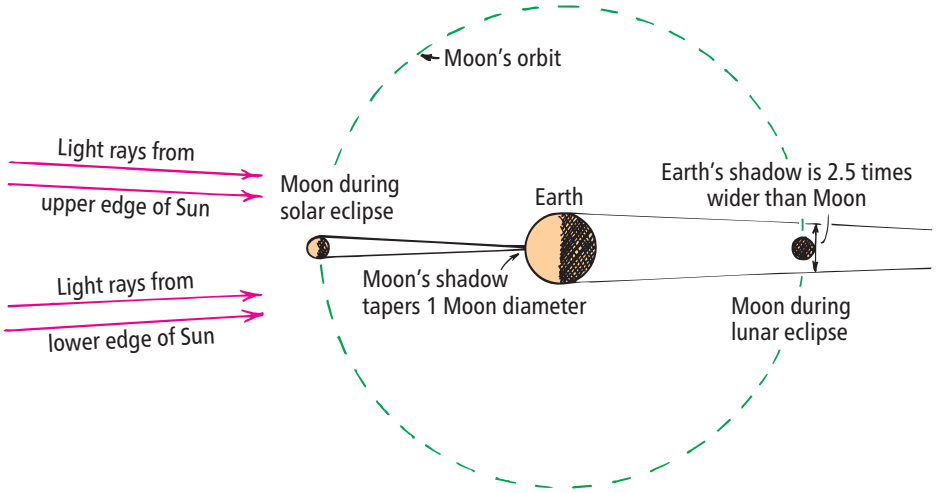


FIGURE 1.5
During a lunar eclipse, Earth's shadow is observed to be 2.5 times as wide as the Moon's diameter. Because of the Sun's large size, Earth's shadow must taper. The amount of taper is evident during a solar eclipse, where the Moon's shadow tapers a whole Moon diameter from Moon to Earth. So Earth's shadow tapers the same amount in the same distance during a lunar eclipse. Therefore, Earth's diameter must be 3.5 Moon diameters.

shadow. Aristarchus carefully studied this event and found that the width of Earth's shadow out at the Moon was 2.5 Moon diameters. This would seem to indicate that the Moon's diameter is 2.5 times smaller than Earth's. That's if light rays from the Sun's opposite edges were exactly parallel to one another. Although solar rays are practically parallel over a short range, their slight tapering due to the Sun's huge size are evident over longer distances, as during the time of a solar eclipse (Figure 1.5), when light rays from both upper and lower edges of the Sun taper to almost a point. Over the Moon–Earth distance the rays taper by about 1 Moon diameter. That same amount of taper over the same distance occurs with Earth's shadow during a lunar eclipse (right side of Figure 1.5). When the tapering of the Sun's rays is taken into account, Earth's diameter must be $(2.5 + 1)$ times the Moon's diameter. In this way, Aristarchus showed that the Moon's diameter is 1/3.5 that of Earth's. The presently accepted diameter of the Moon is 3640 km, within 5% of the value calculated by Aristarchus.

FIGURE 1.6
Correct scale of solar and lunar eclipses, which shows why a perfect lineup of the Sun, Moon, and Earth doesn't occur monthly. (Eclipses are even rarer because the Moon's orbit is tilted about 5° from the plane of Earth's orbit about the Sun.)

Distance to the Moon

Tape a small coin, such as a dime, to a window and view it with one eye so that it just blocks out the full Moon. This occurs when your eye is about 110 coin diameters away from the coin. Then the ratio *coin diameter/coin distance* is about 1/110. Geometrical reasoning from similar triangles shows this is also the ratio *Moon diameter/Moon distance* (Figure 1.7). So the distance from you to the Moon is 110 times the Moon's diameter. The early Greeks knew this. Aristarchus's measurement of the Moon's diameter was all that was needed to calculate the Earth–Moon distance. So the early Greeks knew both the size of the Moon and its distance from Earth.

With this information, Aristarchus calculated the Earth–Sun distance.

fyi

- The 16th-century Polish astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus caused great controversy when he published a book proposing that the Sun is stationary and that Earth revolves around the Sun. These ideas conflicted with the popular view that Earth was the center of the universe. They also conflicted with Church teachings and were banned for 200 years. The Italian physicist Galileo Galilei was arrested for popularizing the Copernican theory and for some astronomical discoveries of his own. Yet, a century later, the ideas of Copernicus and Galileo were generally accepted.

  This kind of cycle happens age after age. In the early 1800s, geologists met with violent condemnation because they differed with the Genesis account of creation. Later in the same century, geology was accepted, but theories of evolution were condemned and the teaching of them was forbidden. Every age has its groups of intellectual rebels who are condemned and sometimes persecuted at the time but who later seem harmless and often essential to the elevation of human conditions. As Count M. Maeterlinck wisely said, "At every crossway on the road that leads to the future, each progressive spirit is opposed by a thousand men appointed to guard the past."

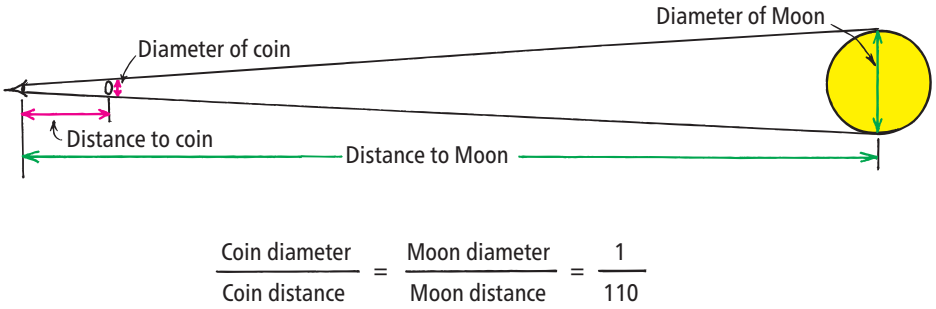

Diameter of Moon
Diameter of coin
Distance to coin
Distance to Moon
Coin diameter / Coin distance = Moon diameter / Moon distance = 1 / 110

FIGURE 1.7
An exercise in ratios: When the coin barely "eclipses" the Moon, the ratio of the diameter of the coin to the distance between you and the coin is equal to the ratio of the diameter of the Moon to the distance between you and the Moon (not to scale here). Measurements give a value of 1/110 for both ratios.

Distance to the Sun

If you were to repeat the coin-and-Moon exercise for the Sun (which would be dangerous to do because of the Sun's brightness), guess what? The ratio *Sun diameter/Sun distance* is also 1/110. This is because the sizes of the Sun and Moon are both the same to the eye. They both taper to the same angle (about 0.5°). However, although the ratio of diameter to distance was known to the early Greeks, diameter alone or distance alone would have to be determined by some other means. Aristarchus found a method for doing this. Here's what he did.

Aristarchus watched for the phase of the Moon when it was *exactly* half full, with the Sun still visible in the sky. Then the sunlight must be falling on the Moon at right angles to his line of sight. This meant that the lines between Earth and the Moon, between Earth and the Sun, and between the Moon and the Sun form a right triangle (Figure 1.8).

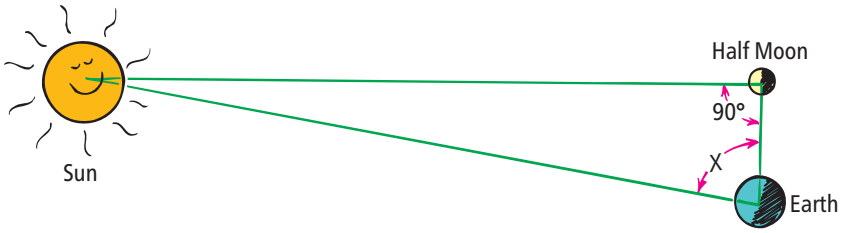


FIGURE 1.8
When the Moon appears exactly half full, the Sun, Moon, and Earth form a right triangle (not to scale). The hypotenuse is the Earth–Sun distance. By simple trigonometry, the hypotenuse of a right triangle can be found if you know the size of either nonright angle and the length of one side. The Earth–Moon distance is a side of known length. Measure angle *X* and you can calculate the Earth–Sun distance.

A rule of trigonometry states that, if you know all the angles in a right triangle plus the length of any one of its sides, you can calculate the length of any other side. Aristarchus knew the distance from Earth to the Moon. At the time of the half Moon he also knew one of the angles: 90°. All he had to do was measure the second angle between the line of sight to the Moon and the line of sight to the Sun. Then the third angle, a very small one, is 180° minus the sum of the first two angles (the sum of the angles in any triangle = 180°).

Measuring the angle between the lines of sight to the Moon and Sun is difficult to do without a modern transit. For one thing, both the Sun and Moon are not points but are relatively big. Aristarchus had to sight on their centers (or either edge) and measure the angle between—quite large, almost a right angle itself! By modern-day standards, his measurement was very crude. He measured 87°, while the true value is 89.8°. He figured the Sun to be about 20 times farther away than the Moon, when in fact it is about 400 times as distant. So, although his method was ingenious, his measurements were not. Perhaps Aristarchus found it difficult to believe the Sun was so far away, and he erred on the nearer side. We don't know.

Today we know the Sun is an average of 150,000,000 kilometers from Earth. It is somewhat closer to Earth in early January (146,000,000 km) and somewhat farther away in early July (152,000,000 km).

CHECK POINT

1. **How did observations of a lunar eclipse enable Aristarchus to estimate the diameter of the Moon?**
2. **Aristarchus was the first to be credited for calculating Earth's distance to the Sun, using the half Moon as a reference. Why was it important that the Moon be in its half-Moon phase?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Aristarchus visually measured that Earth's shadow crossing over the Moon during a lunar eclipse is 2.5 times wider than the Moon. Adding to this the effect of solar-ray tapering, he estimated that Earth's diameter must be 3.5 Moon diameters. Put another way, the Moon's diameter is 1/3.5 that of Earth's. So the Moon's diameter is 1/3.5 the diameter of Earth as measured by his contemporary Eratosthenes.
2. As shown in Figure 1.8, a right triangle is formed by the distance from the Earth to the half Moon, the distance between the Sun and the half Moon, and the distance between the Earth and the Sun. A right triangle is important, for if you know the distance of any side of the triangle you can calculate the distances of the other two sides. From his measurements (imperfect at the time), Aristarchus calculated Earth's distance from the Sun.

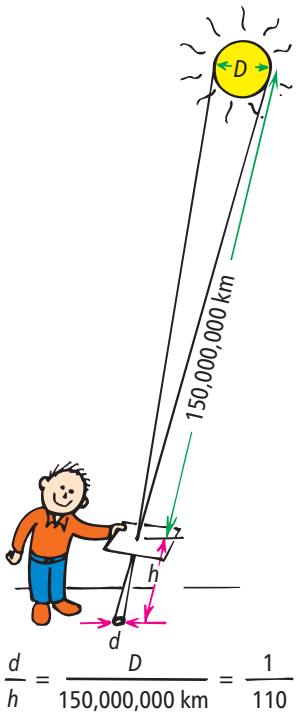


FIGURE 1.9
The round spot of light cast by the pinhole is an image of the Sun. Its *diameter/distance* ratio is the same as the *Sun diameter/Sun–Earth distance* ratio, 1/110. The Sun's diameter is 1/110 its distance from Earth.

Size of the Sun

Once the distance to the Sun is known, the 1/110 ratio of diameter/distance enables a measurement of the Sun's diameter. Another way to measure the 1/110 ratio, besides the method of Figure 1.7, is to measure the diameter of the Sun's image cast through a pinhole opening. You should try this. Poke a hole in a sheet of opaque cardboard and let sunlight shine on it. The round image that is cast on a surface below is actually an image of the Sun. You'll see that the size of the image does not depend on the size of the pinhole but, rather, on how far away the pinhole is from the image. Bigger holes make brighter images, not bigger ones. Of course, if the hole is very big, no image is formed. The size of the hole depends on its distance from the image it casts. The hole in Figure 1.9 can be the size that a sharp pencil makes when poked through cardboard, about 1 millimeter in diameter. The "pinhole" that makes up the opening between tree leaves above Lillian in Figure 1.10 can be a few centimeters wide. In any event, careful measurements show that the ratio of image size to "pinhole" distance is 1/110—the same as the ratio *Sun diameter/Sun–Earth distance* (Figure 1.9).

Have you noticed that the spots of sunlight you see on the ground beneath trees are perfectly round when the Sun is overhead and spread into ellipses when the Sun is low in the sky (Figure 1.10)? These are pinhole images of the Sun, where sunlight shines through openings in the leaves that are small compared with the distance to the ground below. A round spot 10 centimeters in diameter is cast by an opening that is 110 × 10 cm above ground. Tall trees produce large images; short trees produce small images.

Interestingly, at the time of a partial solar eclipse, the image cast by the pinhole will be a crescent shape—the same as that of the partially covered Sun (Figure 1.11). This provides an alternate way to view a partial eclipse without looking at the Sun.

FIGURE 1.10
Small openings between leaves above cast solar images around Lillian.

FIGURE 1.11
The crescent-shaped spots of sunlight are images of the Sun when it is partially eclipsed.

FIGURE 1.12
Renoir accurately painted the spots of sunlight on his subjects' clothing and surroundings—images of the Sun cast by relatively small openings in the leaves above.

CHECK POINT

1. **Using the method shown in Figure 1.9 we learn that our Sun is 110 Suns away. In Figure 1.7 we learn that our Moon is 110 Moons away. Is this a coincidence?**
2. **If the height of the card in Figure 1.9 were positioned so the solar image matched the size of a coin (an accurate means to measure the solar-image diameter), then 110 of these coins would fit end to end in the space between the card and the image below. How many Suns would similarly fit between the Earth and the Sun?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Yes. It is sheer coincidence that both the Sun and Moon subtend the same angle that produces the 1/110 ratio. In past times, the Moon was appreciably closer to Earth, subtending a larger angle. At present, the Moon is receding from Earth—very slowly at about 4 centimeters per year (due to the effect of tidal friction and the conservation of angular momentum). This means that in coming years the Moon will appear smaller in the sky, producing annular rather than total eclipses of the Sun.
2. The answer is 110 Suns would fit in the space between the Sun from Earth. If you perform the similar experiment of a coin taped to your window at the time of a low full Moon, you'll similarly find that 110 coins will fit between the window and your eye—illustrating that 110 Moons would fill the average space between Earth and the Moon.

Mathematics—The Language of Science

Science and human conditions advanced dramatically after the integration of science and mathematics some four centuries ago. When the ideas of science are expressed in mathematical terms, they are unambiguous. The equations of

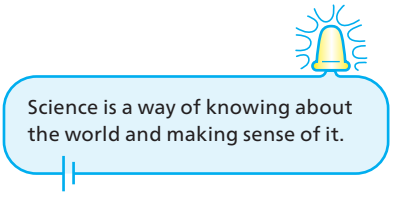
science provide compact expressions of relationships between concepts. They don't have the multiple meanings that so often confuse the discussion of ideas expressed in common language. When findings in nature are expressed mathematically, they are easier to verify or to disprove by experiment. The mathematical structure of physics will be evident in the many equations you will encounter throughout this book. The equations are guides to thinking that show the connections between concepts in nature. The methods of mathematics and experimentation led to enormous success in science.[2]

1.2 Scientific Methods

There is no *one* scientific method. But there are common features in the way scientists do their work, dating back to the Italian physicist Galileo Galilei (1564–1642) and the English philosopher Francis Bacon (1561–1626). They broke free from the methods of the Greeks, who worked "upward or downward," depending on the circumstances, reaching conclusions about the physical world by reasoning from arbitrary assumptions (axioms). The modern scientist works "upward," first examining the way the world actually works and then building a structure to explain the findings.

Although no cookbook description of the **scientific method** is really adequate, some or all of the following steps are likely to be found in the way most scientists carry out their work.

1. Recognize a question or a puzzle—such as an unexplained fact.
2. Make an educated guess—a **hypothesis**—that might resolve the puzzle.
3. Predict consequences of the hypothesis.
4. Perform experiments or make calculations to test the predictions.
5. Formulate the simplest general rule that organizes the three main ingredients: hypothesis, predicted effects, and experimental findings.



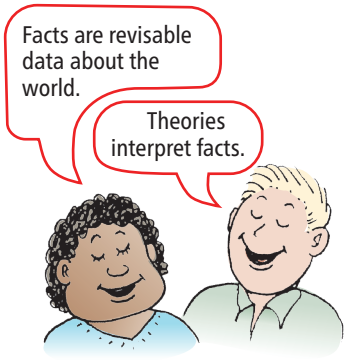
Although these steps are appealing, much progress in science has come from trial and error, experimentation without hypotheses, or just plain accidental discovery by a well-prepared mind. The success of science rests more on an attitude common to scientists than on a particular method. This **scientific attitude** is one of inquiry, integrity, and humility—that is, a willingness to admit error.

The Scientific Attitude

It is common to think of a fact as something that is unchanging and absolute. But, in science, a **fact** is generally a close agreement by competent observers who make a series of observations about the same phenomenon. For example, although it was once a fact that the universe is unchanging and permanent, today it is a fact that the universe is expanding and evolving. A scientific hypothesis, on the other hand, is an educated guess that is only presumed to be factual until supported by experiment. When a hypothesis has been tested over and over again and has not been contradicted, it may become known as a **law** or *principle*.

If a scientist finds evidence that contradicts a hypothesis, law, or principle, then, in the scientific spirit, it must be changed or abandoned—regardless of the reputation or authority of the persons advocating it (unless the contradicting evidence, upon testing, turns out to be wrong—which sometimes happens). For example, the greatly respected Greek philosopher Aristotle (384–322 BC) claimed that an

[2]We distinguish between the mathematical structure of physics and the practice of mathematical problem solving—the focus of most nonconceptual courses. Note the relatively small number of problems at the ends of the chapters in this book, compared with the number of exercises. The focus is on comprehension comfortably before computation. Additional problems are in the *Problem Solving in Conceptual Physics* ancillary book.

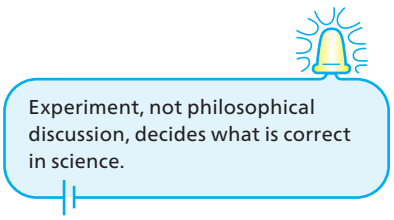


object falls at a speed proportional to its weight. This idea was held to be true for nearly 2000 years because of Aristotle's compelling authority. Galileo allegedly showed the falseness of Aristotle's claim with one experiment—demonstrating that heavy and light objects dropped from the Leaning Tower of Pisa fell at nearly equal speeds. In the scientific spirit, a single verifiable experiment to the contrary outweighs any authority, regardless of reputation or the number of followers or advocates. In modern science, argument by appeal to authority has little value.[3]

Scientists must accept their experimental findings even when they would like them to be different. They must strive to distinguish between what they see and what they wish to see, for scientists, like most people, have a vast capacity for fooling themselves.[4] People have always tended to adopt general rules, beliefs, creeds, ideas, and hypotheses without thoroughly questioning their validity and to retain them long after they have been shown to be meaningless, false, or at least questionable. The most widespread assumptions are often the least questioned. Most often, when an idea is adopted, particular attention is given to cases that seem to support it, while cases that seem to refute it are distorted, belittled, or ignored.

Scientists use the word *theory* in a way that differs from its usage in everyday speech. In everyday speech, a theory is no different from a hypothesis—a supposition that has not been verified. A scientific **theory,** on the other hand, is a synthesis of a large body of information that encompasses well-tested and verified hypotheses about certain aspects of the natural world. Physicists, for example, speak of the quark theory of the atomic nucleus, chemists speak of the theory of metallic bonding in metals, and biologists speak of the cell theory.

The theories of science are not fixed; rather, they undergo change. Scientific theories evolve as they go through stages of redefinition and refinement. During the past hundred years, for example, the theory of the atom has been repeatedly refined as new evidence on atomic behavior has been gathered. Similarly, chemists have refined their view of the way molecules bond together, and biologists have refined the cell theory. The refinement of theories is a strength of science, not a weakness. Many people feel that it is a sign of weakness to change their minds. Competent scientists must be experts at changing their minds. They change their minds, however, only when confronted with solid experimental evidence or when a conceptually simpler hypothesis forces them to adopt a new point of view. More important than defending beliefs is improving them. Better hypotheses are made by those who are honest in the face of experimental evidence.



Away from their profession, scientists are inherently no more honest or ethical than most other people. But in their profession they work in an arena that places a high premium on honesty. The cardinal rule in science is that all hypotheses must be testable—they must be susceptible, at least in principle, to being shown to be *wrong.* In science, it is more important that there be a means of proving an idea wrong than a means of proving it right. This is a major factor that distinguishes science from nonscience. At first this may seem strange because when we wonder about most things, we concern ourselves with ways of finding out whether they are true. Scientific hypotheses are different. In fact, if you want to distinguish whether a hypothesis is scientific or not, check to see if there is a test for proving it wrong. If there is no test for its possible wrongness, then the hypothesis is not scientific. Albert Einstein put it well when he stated, "No number of experiments can prove me right; a single experiment can prove me wrong."

[3]But appeal to *beauty* has value in science. More than one experimental result in modern times has contradicted a lovely theory that, upon further investigation, proved to be wrong. This has bolstered scientists' faith that the ultimately correct description of nature involves conciseness of expression and economy of concepts—a combination that deserves to be called beautiful.

[4]In your education it is not enough to be aware that other people may try to fool you; it is more important to be aware of your own tendency to fool yourself.

Consider the biologist Charles Darwin's hypothesis that life forms evolve from simpler to more complex forms. This could be proved wrong if paleontologists discovered that more complex forms of life appeared before their simpler counterparts. Einstein hypothesized that light is bent by gravity. This might be proved wrong if starlight that grazed the Sun and could be seen during a solar eclipse were undeflected from its normal path. As it turned out, less complex life forms are found to precede their more complex counterparts and starlight is found to bend as it passes close to the Sun, which support the claims. If and when a hypothesis or scientific claim is confirmed, it is regarded as useful and as a steppingstone to additional knowledge.

Contemplate the hypothesis "The alignment of planets in the sky determines the best time for making decisions." Many people believe it, but this hypothesis is not scientific. It cannot be proved wrong, nor can it be proved right. It is *speculation*. Likewise, the hypothesis "Intelligent life exists on other planets somewhere in the universe" is not scientific. Although it can be proved correct by the verification of a single instance of intelligent life existing elsewhere in the universe, there is no way to prove it wrong if no intelligent life is ever found. If we searched the far reaches of the universe for eons and found no life, that would not prove that it doesn't exist "around the next corner." On the other hand, the hypothesis "There is no other intelligent life in the universe" *is* scientific. Do you see why?

The essence of science is expressed in two questions: How would we know? And what evidence would prove this idea wrong? Assertions without evidence are unscientific and can be dismissed without evidence.

A hypothesis that is capable of being proved right but not capable of being proved wrong is not a scientific hypothesis. Many such statements are quite reasonable and useful, but they lie outside the domain of science.

CHECK POINT

Which of these is a scientific hypothesis?

a. Atoms are the smallest particles of matter that exist.

b. Space is permeated with an essence that is undetectable.

c. Albert Einstein was the greatest physicist of the 20th century.

Being scientific is being open to new knowledge.

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Only statement *a* is scientific, because there is a test for falseness. The statement not only *is capable* of being proved wrong but in fact *has* been proved wrong. Statement *b* has no test for possible wrongness and is therefore unscientific—likewise for any principle or concept for which there is no means, procedure, or test whereby it can be shown to be wrong (if it is wrong). Some pseudoscientists and other pretenders to knowledge will not even consider a test for the possible wrongness of their statements. Statement *c* is an assertion that has no test for possible wrongness. If Einstein was not the greatest physicist, how could we know? It is important to note that because the name Einstein is generally held in high esteem, it is a favorite of pseudoscientists. So we should not be surprised that the name of Einstein, like that of Jesus or of any other highly respected person, is cited often by charlatans who wish to bring respect to themselves and their points of view. In all fields, it is prudent to be skeptical of those who wish to credit themselves by calling upon the authority of others.

None of us has the time, energy, or resources to test every idea, so most of the time we accept somebody else's word. How do we know whose word to accept? To reduce the likelihood of error, scientists accept only the word of those whose ideas, theories, and findings are testable—if not in practice, at least in principle. Speculations that cannot be tested are regarded as "unscientific." This has the

Much learning can occur by asking questions. Socrates preached this—hence the Socratic method. Questioning has led to some of the most magnificent works of art and science.

long-run effect of compelling honesty—findings widely publicized among fellow scientists are generally subjected to further testing. Sooner or later, mistakes (and deception) are discovered; wishful thinking is exposed. A discredited scientist does not get a second chance in the community of scientists. The penalty for fraud is professional excommunication. Honesty, so important to the progress of science, thus becomes a matter of self-interest to scientists. There is relatively little bluffing in a game in which all bets are called. In fields of study where right and wrong are not so easily established, the pressure to be honest is considerably less.

Dealing with Misconceptions

The ideas and concepts most important to our everyday life are often unscientific; their correctness or incorrectness cannot be determined in the laboratory. Interestingly enough, it seems that people honestly believe that their own ideas about things are correct, and almost everyone is acquainted with people who hold completely opposite views—so the ideas of some (or all) must be incorrect. How do you know whether or not *you* are one of those holding erroneous beliefs? There is a test. Before you can be reasonably convinced that you are right about a particular idea, you should be sure that you understand the objections and the positions of your most articulate antagonists. You should find out whether your views are supported by sound knowledge of opposing ideas or by your *misconceptions* of opposing ideas. You make this distinction by seeing whether or not you can state the objections and positions of your opponents to *their* satisfaction. Even if you can successfully do this, you cannot be absolutely certain of being right about your own ideas, but the probability of being right is considerably higher if you pass this test.

We each need a knowledge filter to tell the difference between what is valid and what only pretends to be valid. The best knowledge filter ever invented is science.

CHECK POINT

Suppose that in a disagreement between two friends, A and B, you note that friend A only states and restates one point of view, whereas friend B clearly states both her own position and that of friend A. Who is more likely to be correct? *(Think before you read the answer below!)*

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Who knows for sure? Friend B may have the cleverness of a lawyer who can state various points of view and still be incorrect. We can't be sure about the "other guy." The test for correctness or incorrectness suggested here is not a test of others but a test of and for *you.* It can aid your personal development. As you attempt to articulate the ideas of your antagonists, be prepared, like scientists who are prepared to change their minds, to discover evidence contrary to your own ideas—evidence that may alter your views. Intellectual growth often occurs in this way.

Although the notion of being familiar with opposing points of view seems reasonable to most thinking people, just the opposite—shielding ourselves and others from different ideas—has been more widely practiced. We have been taught to discredit unpopular ideas without understanding them in proper context. With the 20/20 vision of hindsight, we can see that many of the "deep truths" that were the cornerstones of whole civilizations were shallow reflections of the prevailing ignorance of the time. Many of the problems that plagued societies stemmed from this ignorance and the resulting misconceptions; much of what was held to be true simply wasn't true. This is not confined to the past. Every scientific advance is by necessity incomplete and partly inaccurate, for the discoverer sees with the blinders of the day and can discard only a part of that blockage.

1.3 Science, Art, and Religion

The search for order and meaning in the world around us has taken different forms: One is science, another is art, and another is religion. Although the roots of all three go back thousands of years, the traditions of science are relatively recent. More important, the domains of science, art, and religion are different, although they often overlap. Science is principally engaged in discovering and recording natural phenomena, the arts are concerned with personal interpretation and creative expression, and religion addresses the source, purpose, and meaning of it all.

Art is about cosmic beauty. Science is about cosmic order. Religion is about cosmic purpose.

Science and the arts are comparable. In the art of literature, we discover what is possible in human experience. We can learn about emotions ranging from anguish to love, even if we haven't experienced them. The arts do not necessarily give us those experiences, but they describe them to us and suggest what may be possible for us. Similarly, knowledge of science tells us what is possible in nature and helps us to predict possibilities in nature even before those possibilities have been experienced. It provides us with a way of connecting things, of seeing relationships between and among them, and of making sense of the great variety of natural events around us. Science broadens our perspective of nature. A knowledge of both the arts and the sciences makes for a wholeness that affects the way we view the world and the decisions we make about the world and ourselves. A truly educated person is knowledgeable in both the arts and the sciences.

Science and religion have similarities also, but they are basically different—principally because their domains are different. The domain of science is nature—the *natural;* the domain of religion is the *supernatural.* Religious beliefs and practices usually involve faith in, and worship of, a supreme being and the creation of human community—not the practices of science. In this respect, science and religion are as different as apples and oranges: They are two different yet complementary fields of human activity.

When we study the nature of light later in this book, we will treat light first as a wave and then as a particle. To the person who knows a little bit about science, waves and particles are contradictory; light can be only one or the other, and we have to choose between them. But to the enlightened person, waves and particles complement each other and provide a deeper understanding of light. In a similar way, it is mainly people who are either uninformed or misinformed about the deeper natures of both science and religion who feel that they must choose between believing in religion and believing in science. Unless one has a shallow understanding of either or both, there is no contradiction in being religious and being scientific in one's thinking.[5]

The belief that there is only one truth and that oneself is in possession of it seems to me the deepest root of all the evil that is in the world.—*Max Born*

Many people are troubled about not knowing the answers to religious and philosophical questions. Some avoid uncertainty by uncritically accepting almost any comforting answer. An important message in science, however, is that uncertainty is acceptable. For example, in Chapter 31 you'll learn that it is not possible to know with certainty both the momentum and position of an electron in an atom. The more you know about one, the less you can know about the other. Uncertainty is a part of the scientific process. It's okay not to know the answers to fundamental questions. Why are apples gravitationally attracted to Earth? Why do electrons repel one another? Why do magnets interact with other magnets? At the deepest level, scientists don't know the answers to these questions—at least not yet. We know a lot about where we are, but nothing really about *why* we are. It's okay not to know the answers to such religious questions. Given a choice between a closed mind with comforting answers and an open and exploring mind without answers, most scientists choose the latter. Scientists in general are comfortable with not knowing.

[5]Of course, this doesn't apply to religious extremists who steadfastly assert that one cannot embrace both their brand of religion and science.

FAKE SCIENCE

For a claim to qualify as "scientific," it must meet certain standards. For example, the claim must be reproducible by others who have no stake in whether the claim is true or false. The data and subsequent interpretations are open to scrutiny in a social environment where it's okay to have made an honest mistake but not okay to have been dishonest or deceiving. Claims that are presented as scientific but do not meet these standards are what we call **pseudoscience,** which literally means "fake science." In the realm of pseudoscience, skepticism and tests for possible wrongness are downplayed or flatly ignored.

Examples of fake science abound. For example, after being officially eliminated in the U.S. in 2000, measles is making a comeback. Officials blame low vaccination rates that are due in part to public distrust of government, science, big pharmaceutical corporations, and antivaccine propaganda. A search for information about vaccines on social media and other parts of the Internet often yields advice that is completely incorrect. The World Health Organization (WHO) has labeled "vaccine hesitancy" one of the top 10 global health threats for 2019. This junk science is now global.

For more examples of fake science, look no further than the Internet. You can find advertisements for a plethora of pseudoscientific products. Watch out for remedies for ailments from baldness to obesity to cancer, for air-purifying mechanisms, and for "germ-fighting" cleaning products in particular. While many such products do operate on solid science, others are pure pseudoscience. Buyer beware!

Humans are very good at denial, which may explain why pseudoscience is such a thriving enterprise. Many pseudoscientists themselves do not recognize their efforts as pseudoscience. A practitioner of "absent healing," for example, may truly believe in her ability to cure people she will never meet except through e-mail and credit card exchanges. She may even find anecdotal evidence to support her contentions. The placebo effect, as discussed in Chapter 20, can mask the ineffectiveness of various healing modalities. In terms of the human body, what people believe *will* happen often *can* happen because of the physical connection between the mind and the body.

That said, consider the enormous downside of pseudoscientific practices. Today, there are many thousands of practicing astrologers in the United States. Do people listen to these astrologers just for the fun of it? Or do they base important decisions on astrology?

Meanwhile, the results of science literacy tests given to the general public show that most Americans lack an understanding of the basic concepts of science. Most American adults are unaware that the mass extinction of the dinosaurs occurred long before the first human evolved; about three-quarters do not know that antibiotics kill bacteria but not viruses. What we find is a rift—a growing divide—between those who have a realistic sense of the capabilities of science and those who do not understand the nature of science and its core concepts or, worse, think that scientific knowledge is too complex for them to understand. Science is a powerful method for understanding the physical world—and a whole lot more reliable than pseudoscience as a means for bettering the human condition.

1.4 Science and Technology

The good thing about science is that it's true whether or not you believe in it.—*Neil deGrasse Tyson*

Science and technology are also different from each other. Science is concerned with gathering knowledge and organizing it. **Technology** enables humans to use that knowledge for practical purposes, and it provides the instruments scientists need for conducting investigations.

Technology is a double-edged sword that can be both helpful and harmful. We have the technology, for example, to extract fossil fuels from the ground and then to burn the fossil fuels for the production of energy. Energy production from fossil fuels has benefited our society in countless ways. On the flip side, the burning of fossil fuels endangers the environment. It is tempting to blame technology itself for problems such as pollution, resource depletion, and even overpopulation. These problems, however, are not the fault of technology any more than a stabbing is the fault of the knife. It is humans who use the technology, and humans who are responsible for how it is used.

No wars are fought over science.

Technology is our tool. What we do with this tool is up to us. The promise of technology is a cleaner and healthier world. Wise applications of technology *can* lead to a better world.

RISK ASSESSMENT

The numerous benefits of technology are paired with risks. When the benefits of a technological innovation are seen to outweigh its risks, the technology is accepted and applied. X-rays, for example, continue to be used for medical diagnosis despite their potential for causing cancer. But when the risks of a technology are perceived to outweigh its benefits, it should be used very sparingly or not at all.

Risk can vary for different groups. Aspirin is useful for adults, but for young children it can cause a potentially lethal condition known as *Reye's syndrome*. Dumping raw sewage into the local river may pose little risk for a town located upstream, but for towns downstream the untreated sewage is a health hazard. Similarly, storing radioactive wastes underground may pose little risk for us today, but for future generations the risks of such storage are greater if there is leakage into groundwater. Technologies involving different risks for different people, as well as differing benefits, raise questions that are often hotly debated. Which medications should be sold to the general public over the counter and how should they be labeled? Should food be irradiated in order to put an end to food poisoning, which kills more than 3000 Americans each year? The risks to all members of society need consideration when public policies are decided.

The risks of technology are not always immediately apparent. No one fully realized the dangers of combustion products when fossil fuels first powered industrial progress. Today an awareness of both the short-term risks and the long-term risks of a technology is crucial.

People seem to have difficulty accepting the impossibility of zero risk. Airplanes cannot be made perfectly safe. Processed foods cannot be rendered completely free of toxicity because all foods are toxic to some degree. You cannot avoid radioactivity because it's in the air you breathe and the foods you eat, and it has been that way since before humans first walked on Earth. Even the cleanest rain contains radioactive carbon-14, not to mention the same in our bodies. Between each heartbeat in each human body, there have always been about 10,000 naturally occurring radioactive decays. You might hide yourself in the hills, eat the most natural of foods, practice obsessive hygiene, and still die from cancer caused by the radioactivity emanating from your own body. The probability of eventual death is 100%. Nobody is exempt.

Science helps to determine the most probable. As the tools of science improve, the assessment of the most probable gets closer to being on target. Acceptance of risk, on the other hand, is a societal issue. Making zero risk a societal goal would consume present and future economic resources. Isn't it more noble to accept nonzero risk and to minimize risk as much as possible within the limits of practicality? A society that accepts no risks receives no benefits.

CHECK POINT

If a classmate is anti-science, does it follow that he or she is also anti-technology? Or conversely, is a classmate who is anti-technology also anti-science?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The classmate may be both, or one or the other. His or her perspective is the result of information acquired between childhood and the present. You may or may not share the same views, depending on how different or similar your backgrounds are. As a matter of self-interest, it is important to not automatically let differences of opinion ruin what could be a valued friendship. When everyone in your vicinity has the same views of science and technology, do yourself a favor and get to know those with opposing views. A wise person is acquainted with more than one point of view.

1.5 Physics—The Basic Science

Science, once called *natural philosophy,* encompasses the study of living things and nonliving things, the life sciences and the physical sciences. The life sciences include biology, zoology, and botany. The physical sciences include geology, astronomy, chemistry, and physics.

Physics is more than a part of the physical sciences. It is the *basic* science. It's about the nature of basic things such as motion, forces, energy, matter, heat,

If I were ever to become a college professor, I would want to teach first-year physics or calculus.
—*Astronaut Scott Kelly*

FIGURE 1.13
Planet Earth's "lifeboat"—a beautiful blend of science and technology.

sound, light, and the structure of atoms. Chemistry is about how matter is put together, how atoms combine to form molecules, and how the molecules combine to make up the many kinds of matter around us. Biology is more complex and involves matter that is alive. So underneath biology is chemistry, and underneath chemistry is physics. The concepts of physics reach up to these more complicated sciences. That's why physics is the most basic science.

There is a pool of good. No matter where you put in your drop, the whole pool rises.—*Will Maynez*

An understanding of science begins with an understanding of physics. The following chapters present physics conceptually so that you can enjoy understanding it.

CHECK POINT

Which of the following activities involves the utmost human expression of passion, talent, and intelligence?

a. painting and sculpture
b. literature
c. music
d. religion
e. science

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

All of them! The human value of science, however, is the least understood by most individuals in our society. The reasons are varied, ranging from the common notion that science is incomprehensible to people of average ability to the extreme view that science is a dehumanizing force in our society. Most of the misconceptions about science probably stem from the confusion between the *abuses* of science and science itself.

Science is an enchanting human activity shared by a wide variety of people who, with present-day tools and know-how, are reaching further and discovering more about themselves and their environment than people in the past were ever able to do. The more you know about science, the more passionate you feel toward your surroundings. There is physics in everything you see, hear, smell, taste, and touch!

1.6 In Perspective

Only a few centuries ago the most talented and most skilled artists, architects, and artisans of the world directed their genius and effort to the construction of the great cathedrals, synagogues, temples, and mosques. Some of these architectural structures took centuries to build, which means that nobody witnessed both the beginning and the end of construction. Even the architects and early builders who lived to a ripe old age never saw the finished results of their labors. Entire lifetimes were spent in the shadows of construction that must have seemed without beginning or end. This enormous focus of human energy was inspired by a vision that went beyond worldly concerns—a vision of the cosmos. To the people of that time, the structures they erected were their "spaceships of faith," firmly anchored but pointing to the cosmos.

Today the efforts of many of our most skilled scientists, engineers, artists, and technicians are directed to building space vehicles that already orbit Earth and others that will voyage beyond. The time required to build these spaceships is extremely brief compared with the time spent building the stone and marble structures of the past. Many people working on today's spaceships were alive before the first jetliner carried passengers. Where will younger lives lead in a comparable time?

We seem to be at the dawn of a major change in human growth, for as little Evan suggests in the photo that precedes the beginning of this chapter, we may be like the hatching chicken that has exhausted the resources of its inner-egg environment and is about to break through to a whole new range of possibilities. Earth is our cradle and has served us well. But cradles, however comfortable, are outgrown one day. So, with the inspiration that in many ways is similar to the inspiration of those who built the early cathedrals, synagogues, temples, and mosques, we aim for the cosmos.

We live in an exciting time!

Chapter 1 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Science The collective findings of humans about nature, and the process of gathering and organizing knowledge about nature.

Scientific method An orderly method for gaining, organizing, and applying new knowledge.

Hypothesis An educated guess; a reasonable explanation of an observation or experimental result that is not fully accepted as factual until tested over and over again by experiment.

Scientific attitude The scientific method inclined toward inquiry, integrity, and humility.

Fact A statement about the world that competent observers who have made a series of observations agree on.

Law A general hypothesis or statement about the relationship of natural quantities that has been tested over and over again and has not been contradicted. Also known as a *principle*.

Theory A synthesis of a large body of information that encompasses well-tested and verified hypotheses about certain aspects of the natural world.

Pseudoscience Fake science that pretends to be real science.

Technology The means of solving practical problems by applying the findings of science.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

1.1 Scientific Measurements

1. Briefly, what is science?
2. Throughout the ages, what has been the general reaction to new ideas about established "truths"?
3. When the Sun was directly overhead in Syene, why wasn't it directly overhead in Alexandria?
4. What is the location of Earth's center relative to a great circle defined by a pair of widely spaced flagpoles on Earth's surface?
5. How does the Moon's diameter compare with the distance between Earth and the Moon?
6. How does the Sun's diameter compare with the distance between Earth and the Sun?
7. Why did Aristarchus choose the time of a half Moon to make his measurements for calculating the Earth–Sun distance?
8. What are the circular spots of light seen on the ground beneath a tree on a sunny day?
9. What is the role of equations in this book?

1.2 Scientific Methods

10. The modern scientist works "upward." Explain.
11. Distinguish among a scientific fact, a hypothesis, a law, and a theory.
12. In daily life, people are often praised for maintaining some particular point of view, for the "courage of their convictions." A change of mind is seen as a sign of weakness. How is this different in science?
13. When does a scientific hypothesis become a law?
14. In daily life, we see many cases of people who are caught misrepresenting things and who soon thereafter are excused and accepted by their contemporaries. How is this different in science?
15. What test can you perform to increase the chance in your own mind that you are right about a particular idea?

1.3 Science, Art, and Religion

16. Why are students of the arts encouraged to learn about science and science students encouraged to learn about the arts?
17. Must people choose between science and religion?
18. Psychological comfort is a benefit of having solid answers to religious questions. What benefit accompanies a position of not knowing the answers?

1.4 Science and Technology

19. Clearly distinguish between science and technology.

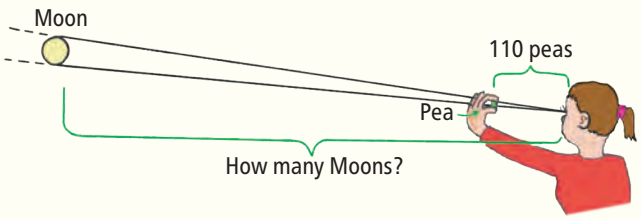
1.5 Physics—The Basic Science

20. Why does an understanding of science begin with an understanding of physics?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

21. Poke a hole in a piece of cardboard and hold the cardboard horizontally in the sunlight (as in Figure 1.9). Note the image of the Sun that is cast below. To convince yourself that the round spot of light is an image of the round Sun, try using holes of different shapes. A square or triangular hole will still cast a round image when the distance to the image is large compared with the size of the hole. When the Sun's rays and the image surface are perpendicular, the image is a circle; when the Sun's rays make an angle with the image surface, the image is a "stretched-out" circle, an ellipse. Let the solar image fall upon a coin, say a dime. Position the cardboard so the image just covers the coin. This is a convenient way to measure the diameter of the image—the same as the diameter of the easy-to-measure coin. Then measure the distance between the cardboard and the coin. Your ratio of image size to image distance should be about 1/110. This is also the ratio of the Sun's diameter to its distance to Earth. Using the information that the Sun is 150,000,000 kilometers from Earth, calculate the diameter of the Sun. (Interesting questions: How many coins placed end to end would fit between the solar image and the cardboard? How many suns would fit between the card and the Sun?)

22. When a full or nearly full moon appears in your view, do a version of Figure 1.7 with a pea instead of a coin. First, measure the diameter of a green pea (or any tiny sphere). With one eye closed, hold the pea at a distance from your open eye that just blocks out (eclipses) the Moon. With the help of a friend measure the distance from your eye to the pea. Compare this distance to the diameter of the pea. Then you know how many peas fit in the space between your eye and the pea. How does this compare with how many moons can fit in the space between you and the Moon?

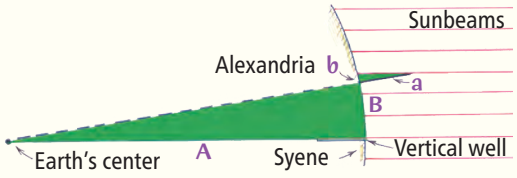


23. Do as Lillian does in Figure 1.10 and observe the round patches of light beneath sunlit trees. Ask friends if they see anything unusual about the shape of the spots of light. Chances are, they don't—until you point out that most of the spots are circular pinhole images of the Sun. When you do this, you'll experience the joy of teaching others to see what they otherwise would miss.

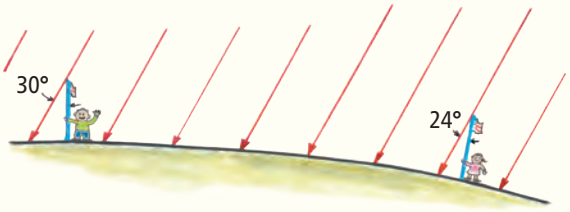
24. Choose a particular day in the very near future—and during that day access the notes on your smart phone and record every time you come in contact with modern technology. Then compose a page or two discussing your dependencies on your list of technologies. Make a note of how you'd be affected if each suddenly vanished, and how you'd cope with the loss.

THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

25. What is the penalty for scientific fraud in the science community?
26. Which of the following are scientific hypotheses? (a) The bacteria E. coli are happier in dark environments. (b) Wind is caused by the motion of trees. (c) There are an infinite number of parallel universes, but no communication is possible between them.
27. If a hypothesis cannot be proved wrong, does it mean that it is scientific?
28. If the Sun's rays were at 45° to a tall vertical flagpole, how would the shadow length compare to the flagpole height?
29. The shadow cast by a vertical pillar in Alexandria at noon during the summer solstice is found to be 1/8 the height of the pillar. The 800-km distance between Alexandria and Syene is 1/8 Earth's radius. From this information, calculate Earth's radius.



30. If Earth were smaller than it is, but the Alexandria-to-Syene distance were the same, would the shadow of the vertical pillar in Alexandria be longer or shorter at noon during the summer solstice?



31. Phil and Nellie measure the angles of sunlight at their school flagpoles when the shadows fall along their common great circle. One angle is 30° and the other is 24°. Using Earth's circumference as 40,000 km, show that Phil and Nellie are 667 km apart.
32. You're a space-faring explorer and discover a spherical planet bathed in sunlight. To determine its size you drive a pair of widely spaced vertical stakes into its surface and wait until the shadow of one stake points to the other stake. Then the cast shadows lie along their own great circle. If sunbeams then make a 20° angle with one stake and 15° with the other, what will be the vertex angle at the planet's center? What other information would you need to calculate the planet's circumference?

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

33. The well-known astronomer and science communicator Carl Sagan (1934–1986) once explained, "science is more than a body of knowledge. It's a way of thinking." Discuss with your classmates how a scientific attitude uses facts, hypotheses, and theories to advance our understanding of the world around us. Compare this to a nonscientific approach.
34. "Imagination is more important than knowledge" is a statement attributed to Albert Einstein, and it highlights the creative aspect of the scientific approach. Discuss with your classmates how this relates to some of the scientific achievements outlined in the chapter (e.g., Eratosthenes' measurement of the size of the Earth).
35. A non-scientist friend tells you that science and religion are both based on references to authority, and that a science textbook (such as this one) is similar to a religious text (such as a bible). What argument(s) could you use to convince your friend that there are important differences between a science textbook and a religious text?

CHAPTER ONE Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. The main thrust of equations in this textbook is
   (a) guides to thinking.
   (b) recipes for solving algebraic problems.
   (c) a route to "plugging and chugging."
   (d) to challenge students weak in math.
2. The classic scientific method includes
   (a) guessing.
   (b) experimenting.
   (c) predicting.
   (d) All of the above
3. If the pillar in Alexandria were taller and the well in Syene were deeper, Eratosthenes's calculation of Earth's size would be
   (a) larger.
   (b) smaller.
   (c) no different.
   (d) impossible to determine.
4. If in the dime-Moon experiment you used a larger coin than a dime, your distance from the taped coin would be
   (a) closer.
   (b) farther.
   (c) the same distance.
   (d) None of these
5. Beneath a sunlit tree are pinhole images of the Sun. If the tree that cast the images is taller, then the images of the Sun are
   (a) larger.
   (b) smaller.
   (c) the same size.
   (d) Impossible to say
6. If the diameter of the solar image cast by a pinhole is the same as the diameter of a particular coin, and 110 coins would fit between the image and the pinhole, the Sun must be
   (a) 55 Sun diameters from Earth.
   (b) 110 Sun diameters from Earth.
   (c) Not enough information
   (d) Impossible to say
7. Which of these is a scientific hypothesis?
   (a) The full Moon is a poor time to make decisions.
   (b) Your truest friends and you have the same astrological sign.
   (c) The dumpster in your back alley is filled with garbage.
   (d) None of the above
8. Which of these is a scientific statement?
   (a) Candied walnuts contain no sugar.
   (b) Things exist that we will never know about.
   (c) Matter is filled with undetectable particles.
   (d) Parts of the universe exist that will never be discovered by humans.
9. Reasonable statements that are not testable
   (a) are a small segment of the scientific method.
   (b) lie outside the domain of science.
   (c) have no value.
   (d) All of the above
10. Science, art, and religion need not contradict one another because
    (a) all three involve different domains.
    (b) choosing the right one means no need to heed the other two.
    (c) choosing religion and art means no need to heed science.
    (d) choosing science means no need to heed religion and art.

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (a): Although the equations of physics are central to choices (b–d), the distinguishing feature of equations in Conceptual Physics is to guide thinking, which is of value in its own right and crucial to understanding whatever math problems are solved. **2. (d):** All of the above, with the reservation that other methods such as trial and error or just plain luck lead to scientific discoveries. **3. (c):** A crucial measurement is the angle of sunbeams with the pillar in Alexandria, which is 7.2 degrees for a short or tall pillar. Another crucial measurement is the distance between Alexandria and Syene, which has nothing to do with this question. So no difference occurs with a taller pillar and deeper well. **4. (b):** A larger coin would have to be positioned farther away to attain the same 1/110 ratio. Conversely, a coin smaller than a dime would be closer to your eye for the same ratio. **5. (a):** The ratio of (diameter of the solar image)/(tree height) is the same ratio (diameter of the Sun)/(distance to the Sun). So taller trees cast larger solar images. **6. (b):** The ratio for the coin (same size as solar image) to its distance to the pinhole is the same ratio as diameter of the Sun to its distance from Earth. Coincidentally, the same occurs for the Moon. Same 1/110 ratio! **7. (c):** Only choice (c) has a test for wrongness. Look and see! The other statements are speculation. **8. (a):** Only (a) has a test for wrongness. Choices (b–d) have no tests for wrongness, and are therefore nonscientific statements that may or may not be true. That each is devoid of any way to show it wrong makes it an unscientific statement. **9. (b):** Domains galore are everywhere, many highly valued and correct. But if not testable, they lie outside the domain of science. Claims that have no test for wrongness, however appealing, lie outside the domain of science. **10. (a):** Conflicts among science, art, and religion mainly occur when an idea or formulation from one domain is applied to a different domain. When ideas are kept within their own domain, conflicts are minimal.

PART ONE

Mechanics

Intriguing! The number of balls released into the array of balls is always the same number that emerges from the other side. But why? There's gotta be a reason—mechanical rules of some kind. I'll know why the balls behave so predictably after I learn the rules of mechanics in the following chapters. Best of all, learning these rules will provide me with a keener intuition for understanding the world around me!

CHAPTER TWO

2 Newton's First Law of Motion–Inertia

2.1 **Aristotle on Motion**
Copernicus and the Moving Earth

2.2 **Galileo's Experiments**
Leaning Tower
Inclined Planes

2.3 **Newton's First Law of Motion**

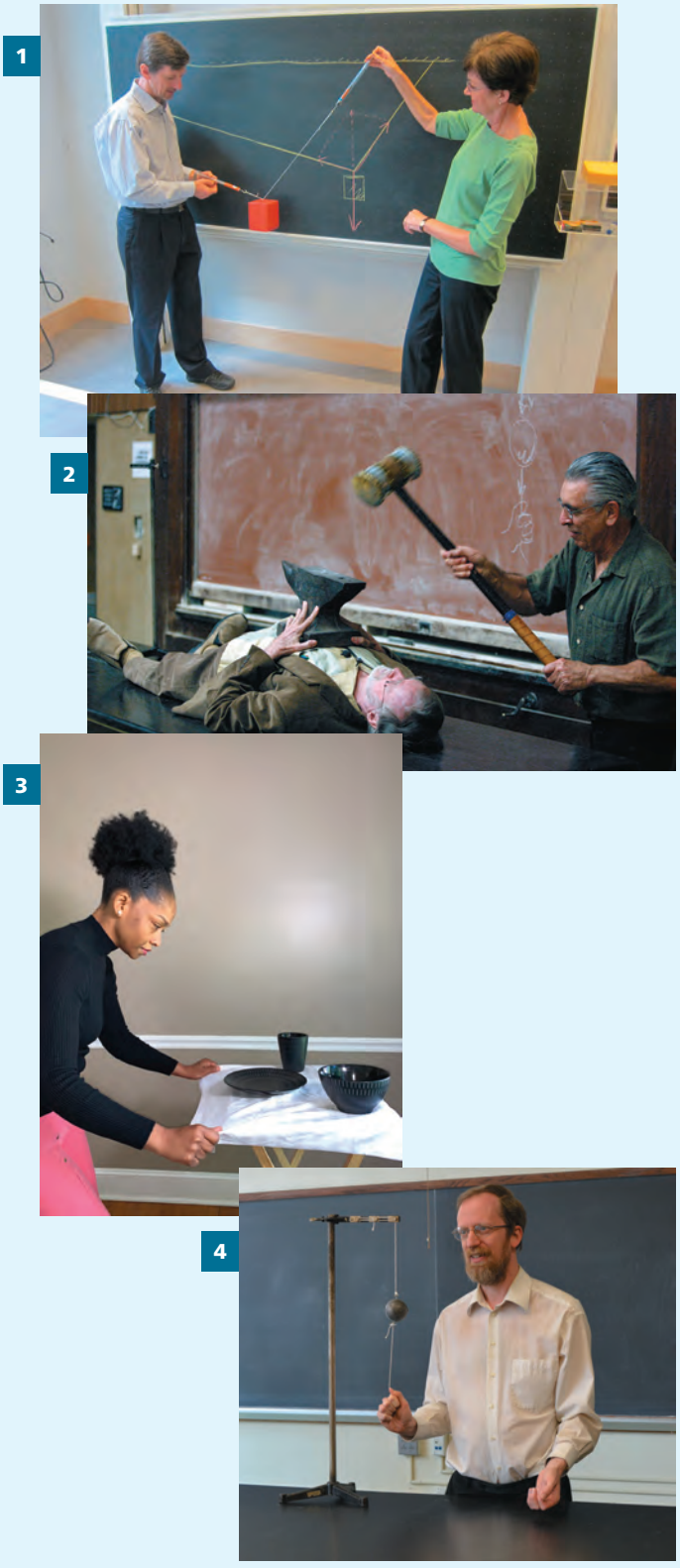
2.4 **Net Force and Vectors**

2.5 **The Equilibrium Rule**

2.6 **Support Force**

2.7 **Equilibrium of Moving Things**

2.8 **The Moving Earth**



1 Cedric and Anne Linder compare the different tensions in the string that supports the red block. **2** Will Maynez shows that the inertia of the anvil on the author's chest is enough to shield the blow of the hammer. **3** Ana Miner in the process of demonstrating Newton's first law. **4** Karl Westerberg asks his students which string, the lower or the upper, will break when he suddenly yanks downward on the lower string.

Not all physics instructors are warm to *Conceptual Physics*. Some prefer a roll-up-the-sleeves approach that immediately gets into problem solving, with little or no time spent on conceptual understanding. In 1992 I was delighted to see an article in the journal *The Physics Teacher* by a professor in South Africa who reported great success with teaching physics conceptually. I contacted him, and we've been friends ever since.

I'm speaking of Cedric Linder, who grew up and taught physics for many years in South Africa before moving to the Department of Physics and Astronomy at Uppsala University in Sweden to establish the first Physics Education Research division in Sweden. In 2014 he received the International Commission on Physics Education ICPE Medal for outstanding contributions to physics education, partially in recognition of his efforts to bring conceptual physics into mainstream physics, and to provide pre- and in-service teacher education. Some physics teachers have a knack for enhancing students' learning experience and make physics a delightful experience. How nice that Cedric and his wife Anne are among this group. Today Cedric and Anne work together in the same research group and feel at home in both Uppsala and Cape Town.

2.1 Aristotle on Motion

Aristotle divided motion into two main classes: *natural motion* and *violent motion*. We briefly consider each, not as study material, but as a background to present-day ideas about motion.

Aristotle asserted that natural motion proceeds from the "nature" of an object, dependent on the combination of the four elements (earth, water, air, and fire) the object contains. In his view, every object in the universe has a proper place, determined by its "nature"; any object not in its proper place will "strive" to get there. Being of the earth, an unsupported lump of clay will fall to the ground; being of the air, an unimpeded puff of smoke will rise; being a mixture of earth and air but predominantly earth, a feather will fall to the ground, but not as rapidly as a lump of clay. Aristotle stated that heavier objects would strive harder and argued that objects should fall at speeds proportional to their weights: The heavier the object, the faster it should fall.

Natural motion could be either straight up or straight down, as with all things on Earth, or it could be circular, as with celestial objects. Unlike up-and-down motion, circular motion has no beginning or end, repeating itself without deviation. Aristotle believed that different rules apply to the heavens and asserted that celestial bodies are perfect spheres made of a perfect and unchanging substance, which he called *quintessence*.[1] (The only celestial object with any detectable variation on its face was the Moon. Medieval Christians, still under the sway of Aristotle's teaching, ignorantly explained that lunar imperfections were due to the closeness of the Moon and contamination by human corruption on Earth.)

Violent motion, Aristotle's other class of motion, resulted from pushing or pulling forces. Violent motion was imposed motion. A person pushing a cart or lifting a heavy weight imposed motion, as did someone hurling a stone or

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

fyi

- Rather than reading the chapters slowly, try reading them quickly and more than once. You'll learn physics better by going over the same material several times. With each time, it makes more sense. Don't worry if you don't understand things right away—just keep reading.

[1]Quintessence is the *fifth* essence, the other four being earth, water, air, and fire.

Aristotelian teaching was characterized by memorization. Experimentation and questioning did not become the norm until Galileo challenged the authority of Aristotle in the 16th century.

winning a tug-of-war. The wind imposed motion on ships. Floodwaters imposed motion on boulders and tree trunks. The essential thing about violent motion was that it was externally caused and was imparted to objects; they moved not of themselves, nor by their "nature," but because of pushes or pulls.

The concept of violent motion had its difficulties because the pushes and pulls responsible for it were not always evident. For example, a bowstring moved an arrow until the arrow left the bow; after that, further explanation of the arrow's motion seemed to require some other pushing agent. Aristotle imagined, therefore, that a parting of the air by the moving arrow resulted in a squeezing effect on the rear of the arrow as the air rushed back to prevent a vacuum from forming. The arrow was propelled through the air as a bar of soap is propelled in the bathtub when you squeeze one end of it.

Aristotle's statements about motion were a beginning in scientific thought, and, although he did not consider them to be the final words on the subject, his followers for nearly 2000 years regarded his views as beyond question. Implicit in the thinking of ancient, medieval, and early Renaissance times was the notion that the normal state of objects is one of rest. Since it was evident to most thinkers until the 16th century that Earth must be in its proper place, and since a force capable of moving Earth was inconceivable, it seemed quite clear to them that Earth does not move.

CHECK POINT

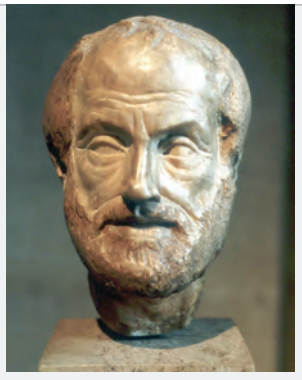
Isn't it common sense to think of Earth in its proper place and that a force to move it *is* inconceivable, as Aristotle held, and that Earth *is* at rest in this universe?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes. Common sense is relative to one's time and place. Aristotle's views were logical and consistent with everyday observations. So, unless you become familiar with the physics to follow in this book, Aristotle's views about motion *do* make common sense. But, as you acquire new information about nature's rules, you'll likely find your common sense progressing beyond Aristotelian thinking.

ARISTOTLE (384–322 BC)

Greek philosopher, scientist, and teacher, Aristotle was the son of a physician who personally served the king of Macedonia. At age 17, Aristotle entered the Academy of Plato, where he worked and studied for 20 years until Plato's death. He then became the tutor of young Alexander the Great. Eight years later, he formed his own school. Aristotle's aim was to systematize existing knowledge, just as Euclid had systematized geometry. Aristotle made critical observations, collected specimens, and gathered together, summarized, and classified almost all existing knowledge of the physical world. His systematic approach became the method from which Western science later arose. After his death, his voluminous notebooks were preserved in caves near his home and were later sold to the library at Alexandria. Scholarly activity ceased in most of Europe through the Dark Ages, and the works of Aristotle were forgotten and lost except in the scholarship that continued in the Byzantine and Islamic empires. Various texts were reintroduced to Europe during the 11th and 12th centuries and translated into Latin. The Church, the dominant political and cultural force in Western Europe, first prohibited the works of Aristotle but then accepted and incorporated them into Christian doctrine.



Copernicus and the Moving Earth

It was in this intellectual climate that the Polish astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus (1473–1543) formulated his theory of the moving Earth. Copernicus reasoned that the simplest way to account for the observed motions of the Sun, Moon, and planets through the sky was to assume that Earth (and other planets) circles around the Sun. For years he worked without making his thoughts public—for two reasons. The first was the fear of persecution; a theory so completely different from common opinion would surely be taken as an attack on established order. The second reason was that he had grave doubts about it himself; he could not reconcile the idea of a moving Earth with the prevailing ideas of motion. Finally, in the last days of his life, at the urging of close friends, he sent his *De Revolutionibus* to the printer. The first copy of his famous exposition reached him on the day he died—May 24, 1543.

Nicolaus Copernicus (1473–1543)

Most of us know about the reaction of the medieval Church to the idea that Earth travels around the Sun. Aristotle's views had become a formidable part of Church doctrine, so to contradict them was to question the Church itself. For many Church leaders, the idea of a moving Earth threatened not only their authority but the very foundations of faith and civilization as well. For better or for worse, this new idea was to overturn their conception of the cosmos—although eventually the Church embraced it.

2.2 Galileo's Experiments

Leaning Tower

It was Galileo, the foremost scientist of the early 17th century, who gave credence to the Copernican view of a moving Earth. He accomplished this by discrediting the Aristotelian ideas about motion. Although he was not the first to point out difficulties in Aristotle's views, Galileo was the first to provide conclusive refutation through observation and experiment.

Galileo easily demolished Aristotle's falling-body hypothesis. Galileo is said to have dropped objects of various weights from the top of the Leaning Tower of Pisa to compare their falls. Contrary to Aristotle's assertion, Galileo found that a stone twice as heavy as another did not fall twice as fast. Except for the small effect of air resistance, he found that objects of various weights, when released at the same time, fell together and hit the ground at the same time. On one occasion, Galileo allegedly attracted a large crowd to witness the dropping of two objects of different weights from the top of the tower. Legend has it that many observers who saw the objects hit the ground together scoffed at the young Galileo and continued to hold fast to their Aristotelian teachings.

All knowledge in pre-scientific times was believed to exist in ancient writings. Knowledge today is acquired by the study of Nature and experimentation.

FIGURE 2.1
Galileo's famous demonstration.

Inclined Planes

Galileo was concerned with *how* things move rather than *why* they move. He showed that experiment rather than logic is the best test of knowledge. Aristotle was an astute observer of nature, and he dealt with problems around him rather than with abstract cases that did not occur in his environment. Motion always involved a resistive medium such as air or water. He believed a vacuum to be impossible and therefore did not give serious consideration to motion in the absence of an interacting medium. That's why it was basic to Aristotle that an object requires a push or pull to keep it moving. And it was this basic principle that Galileo rejected when he stated that, if there is no interference with a moving object, it will keep moving in a straight line forever; no push, pull, or force of any kind is necessary.

GALILEO GALILEI (1564–1642)

Galileo was born in Pisa, Italy, in the same year Shakespeare was born and Michelangelo died. He studied medicine at the University of Pisa and then changed to mathematics. He developed an early interest in motion and was soon at odds with his contemporaries, who held to Aristotelian ideas on falling bodies. Galileo's experiments with falling bodies discredited Aristotle's assertion that the speed of a falling object was proportional to its weight, as discussed earlier. But, quite important, Galileo's findings also threatened the authority of the Church, which held that the teachings of Aristotle were part of Church doctrine. Galileo went on to report his telescopic observations, which got him further in trouble with the Church. He told of his sightings of moons that orbited the planet Jupiter. The Church, however, taught that everything in the heavens revolved around Earth. Galileo also reported dark spots on the Sun, but according to Church doctrine, God created the Sun as a perfect source of light, without blemish. Under pressure, Galileo recanted his discoveries and avoided the fate of Giordano Bruno, who held firm to his belief in the Copernican model of the solar system and was burned at the stake in 1600. Nevertheless, Galileo was sentenced to perpetual house arrest. Earlier, he had damaged his eyes while investigating the Sun in his telescopic studies, which led to blindness at the age of 74. He died four years later. Every age has intellectual rebels, some of whom push the frontiers of knowledge further. Among them is certainly Galileo.

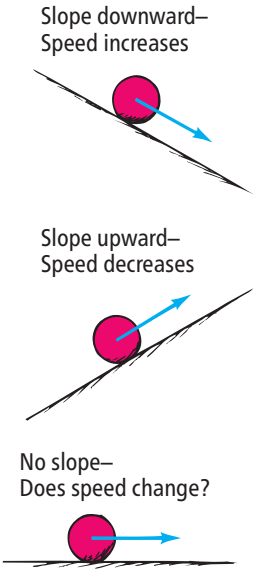


FIGURE 2.2
Motion of balls on various planes.

Galileo tested this hypothesis by experimenting with the motions of various objects on plane surfaces tilted at various angles. He noted that balls rolling on downward-sloping planes picked up speed, while balls rolling on upward-sloping planes lost speed. From this he reasoned that balls rolling along a horizontal plane would neither speed up nor slow down. The ball would finally come to rest not because of its "nature," but because of friction. This idea was supported by Galileo's observation of motion along smoother surfaces: When there was less friction, the motion of objects persisted for a longer time; the less the friction, the more the motion approached constant speed. He reasoned that, in the absence of friction or other opposing forces, a horizontally moving object would continue moving indefinitely.

This assertion was supported by a different experiment and another line of reasoning. Galileo placed two of his inclined planes facing each other. He observed that a ball released from a position of rest at the top of a downward-sloping plane

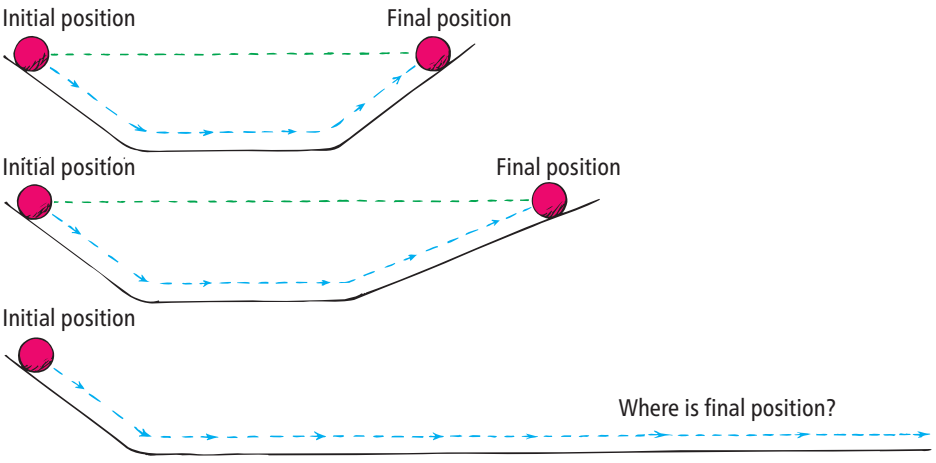


FIGURE 2.3
A ball rolling down an incline on the left tends to roll up to its initial height on the right. The ball must roll a greater distance as the angle of incline on the right is reduced.

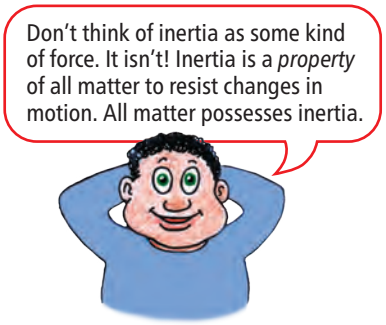
rolled down and then up the slope of the upward-sloping plane until it almost reached its initial height. He reasoned that only friction prevented it from rising to exactly the same height, for the smoother the planes, the closer the ball rose to the same height. Then he reduced the angle of the upward-sloping plane. Again the ball rose to the same height, but it had to go farther. Additional reductions of the angle yielded similar results; to reach the same height, the ball had to go farther each time. He then asked the question "If I have a long horizontal plane, how far must the ball go to reach the same height?" The obvious answer is "Forever—it will never reach its initial height."[2]

Galileo analyzed this in still another way. Because the downward motion of the ball from the first plane is the same for all cases, the speed of the ball when it begins moving up the second plane is the same for all cases. If it moves up a steep slope, it loses its speed rapidly. On a lesser slope, it loses its speed more slowly and rolls for a longer time. The less the upward slope, the more slowly the ball loses its speed. In the extreme case in which there is no slope at all—that is, when the plane is horizontal—the ball should not lose any speed. In the absence of retarding forces, the tendency of the ball is to move forever without slowing down. We call this property of an object to resist changes in motion **inertia.**

Galileo's concept of inertia discredited the Aristotelian theory of motion. Aristotle did not recognize the idea of inertia because he failed to imagine what motion would be like without friction. In his experience, all motion was subject to resistance, and he made this fact central to his theory of motion. Aristotle's failure to recognize friction for what it is—namely, a force like any other—impeded the progress of physics for nearly 2000 years, until the time of Galileo. An application of Galileo's concept of inertia would show that no force is required to keep Earth moving forward. The way was open for Isaac Newton to synthesize a new vision of the universe.

fyi

- Galileo published the first mathematical treatment of motion in 1632—12 years after the Pilgrims landed at Plymouth Rock.


Don't think of inertia as some kind of force. It isn't! Inertia is a *property* of all matter to resist changes in motion. All matter possesses inertia.

CHECK POINT

Would it be correct to say that inertia is the *reason* a moving object continues in motion when no force acts upon it?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

In the strict sense, no. We don't know the reason for objects persisting in their motion when no forces act upon them. We refer to the property of material objects to behave in this predictable way as *inertia.* We understand many things and have labels and names for these things. There are many things we do not understand, and we have labels and names for these things also. Education consists not so much in acquiring new names and labels, but in learning which phenomena we understand and which we don't.

In 1642, several months after Galileo's death, Isaac Newton was born. By the time Newton was 23, he developed his famous laws of motion, which completed the overthrow of the Aristotelian ideas that had dominated the thinking of the best minds for nearly two millennia. In this chapter, we consider the first of Newton's laws, a restatement of the concept of inertia as proposed earlier by Galileo. (Newton's three laws of motion first appeared in one of the most important books of all time, Newton's *Principia.*)

[2]From Galileo's *Dialogues Concerning the Two New Sciences.*

2.3 Newton's First Law of Motion

Aristotle's idea that a moving object must be propelled by a steady force was completely turned around by Galileo, who stated that, in the *absence* of a force, a moving object will continue moving. The tendency of things to resist changes in motion was what Galileo called *inertia*. Newton refined Galileo's idea and made it his first law, appropriately called the **law of inertia.** From Newton's *Principia* (translated from the original Latin):

Every object continues in a state of rest or of uniform speed in a straight line unless acted on by net external force.

The key word in this law is *continues:* An object *continues* to do whatever it happens to be doing unless a force is exerted upon it. If it is at rest, it *continues* in a state of rest. This is nicely demonstrated when a tablecloth is skillfully whipped from under dishes on a tabletop, leaving the dishes in their initial state of rest. Or when riding your skateboard, you fly forward when it hits a curb that abruptly halts its motion. We stress that this property of objects to resist changes in motion is what we call inertia.

FIGURE 2.4
Inertia in action.

fyi

- Much of what you'll learn in this text is in the Check Points. They deserve your attention!

If an object is moving, it *continues* to move without turning or changing its speed. This is evident in space probes that continuously move in outer space. Changes in motion must be imposed against the tendency of an object to retain its state of motion. In the absence of external net forces, sometimes called unbalanced forces, a moving object tends to move along a straight-line path indefinitely.

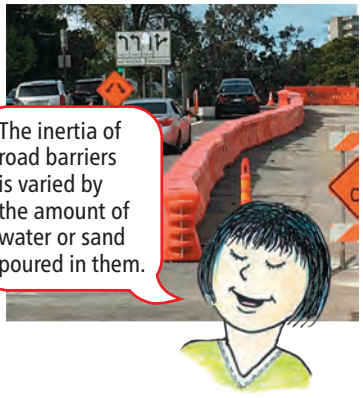
FIGURE 2.5
Examples of inertia.

Why will the coin drop into the glass when a force accelerates the card?

Why is it that a slow continuous increase in the downward force breaks the string above the massive ball, but a sudden increase breaks the lower string?

Why does the downward motion and sudden stop of the hammer tighten the hammerhead?

You can think of inertia as another word for *laziness* (or resistance to change).



The inertia of road barriers is varied by the amount of water or sand poured in them.

CHECK POINT

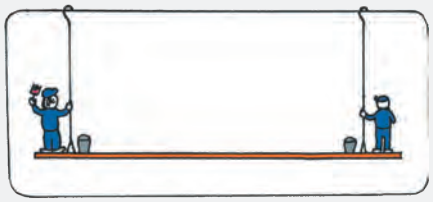
A hockey puck sliding across the ice finally comes to rest. How would Aristotle have interpreted this behavior? How would Galileo and Newton have interpreted it? How would you interpret it? *(Think before you read the answers below!)*

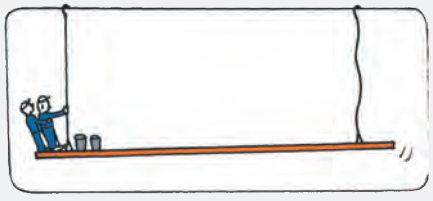
CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

Aristotle would probably say that the puck slides to a stop because it seeks its proper and natural state, one of rest. Galileo and Newton would probably say that, once in motion, the puck continues in motion and that what prevents continued motion is not its nature or its proper rest state, but the friction the puck encounters. This friction is small compared with the friction between the puck and a wooden floor, which is why the puck slides so much farther on ice. Only you can answer the last question.

PERSONAL ESSAY

When I was in high school, my counselor advised me not to enroll in science and math classes and instead to focus on what seemed to be my gift for art. I took this advice. I was then interested in drawing comic strips and in boxing, neither of which earned me much success. After a stint in the army, I tried my luck at sign painting, and the cold Boston winters drove me south to warmer Miami, Florida. There, at age 26, I got a job painting billboards and met a man who became a great intellectual influence on me, Burl Grey. Like me, Burl had never studied physics in high school. But he was passionate about science in general, and he shared his passion with many questions as we painted together. I remember Burl asking me about the tensions in the ropes that held up the scaffold we were on. The scaffold was simply a heavy horizontal plank suspended by a pair of ropes. Burl twanged the rope nearest his end of the scaffold and asked me to do the same with mine. He was comparing the tensions in both ropes—to determine which was greater. Burl was heavier than I was, and he reasoned that the tension in his rope was greater. Like a more tightly stretched guitar string, the rope with greater tension twangs at a higher pitch. The finding that Burl's rope had a higher pitch seemed reasonable because his rope supported more of the load.





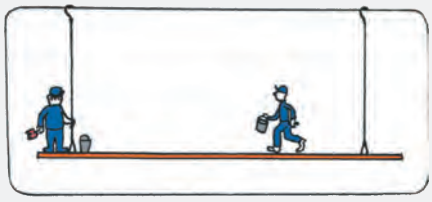
When I walked toward Burl to borrow one of his brushes, he asked if the tensions in the ropes had changed. Did the tension in his rope increase as I moved closer? We agreed that it should have, because even more of the load was supported by Burl's rope. How about my rope? Would its tension decrease? We agreed that it would, for it would be supporting less of the total load. I was unaware at the time that I was discussing physics. Burl and I used exaggeration to bolster our reasoning (just as physicists do). If we both stood at an extreme end of the scaffold and leaned outward, it was easy to imagine the opposite end of the scaffold rising like the end of a seesaw—with the opposite rope going limp. Then there would be no tension in that rope. We then reasoned that the tension in my rope would gradually decrease as I walked toward Burl. It was fun posing such questions and seeing if we could answer them.

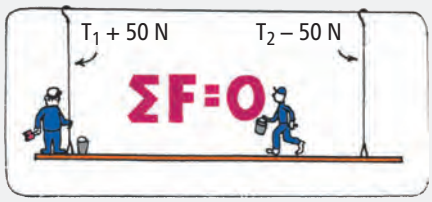
A question that we couldn't answer was whether or not the decrease in tension in my rope when I walked away from it would *exactly* compensate the increase in tension in Burl's rope. For example, if my rope underwent a decrease of 50 newtons, would Burl's rope gain 50 newtons? (We talked pounds back then, but here we use the scientific unit of force, the *newton*—abbreviated N.) Would the gain be *exactly* 50 N? And, if so, would this be a grand coincidence? I didn't know the answer until more than a year later, when Burl's stimulation resulted in my leaving full-time painting and going to college to learn more about science.[3]

At college, I learned that any object at rest, such as the sign-painting scaffold that supported us, is said to be in equilibrium. That is, all the forces that act on it balance to zero. So the sums of the upward forces supplied by the supporting ropes indeed do add up to our weights plus the weight of the scaffold. A 50-N loss in one would be accompanied by a 50-N gain in the other.

We say that the forces on the scaffold balance to zero, which is saying that the net force on the scaffold is zero. In shorthand notation, $\sum \boldsymbol{F} = 0$.

I tell this true story to make the point that one's thinking is very different when there is a rule to guide it. Now





when I look at any motionless object I know immediately that all the forces acting on it cancel out. We view nature differently when we know its rules. Without the rules of physics, we tend to be superstitious and to see magic where there is none. Quite wonderfully, everything is connected to everything else by a surprisingly small number of rules, and in a beautifully simple way. The rules of nature are what the study of physics is about.

[3]I am forever indebted to Burl Grey for the stimulation he provided, for when I continued with formal education, it was with enthusiasm. I lost touch with Burl for 40 years. Then a student in my class at the Exploratorium in San Francisco, Jayson Wechter, who was a private detective, located him in 1998 and put us in contact. Friendship renewed, we once again continued in spirited conversations until the time of his passing at age 93.

2.4 Net Force and Vectors

Changes in motion are produced by a force or combination of forces (in the next chapter we'll refer to changes in motion as *acceleration*). A **force,** in the simplest sense, is a push or a pull. Its source may be gravitational, electrical, magnetic, or simply muscular effort. When more than a single force acts on an object, we consider the ***net* force.** For example, if you and a friend pull in the same direction with equal forces on an object, the forces combine to produce a net force twice as great as your single force. If you both pull with equal forces in *opposite* directions, the net force is zero. The equal but oppositely directed forces cancel each other. One of the forces can be considered to be the negative of the other, and they add algebraically to zero, with a resulting net force of zero.

Figure 2.6 shows how forces combine to produce a net force on a box of cookies. A pair of 5-newton forces in the same direction produce a net force of 10 newtons (the newton, N, is the scientific unit of force). If the 5-newton forces are in opposite directions, the net force is zero. If 10 newtons of force are exerted to the right and 5 newtons to the left, the net force is 5 newtons to the right. The forces are shown by arrows. When the length and direction of such arrows are drawn to scale, we refer to the arrow as a **vector.**

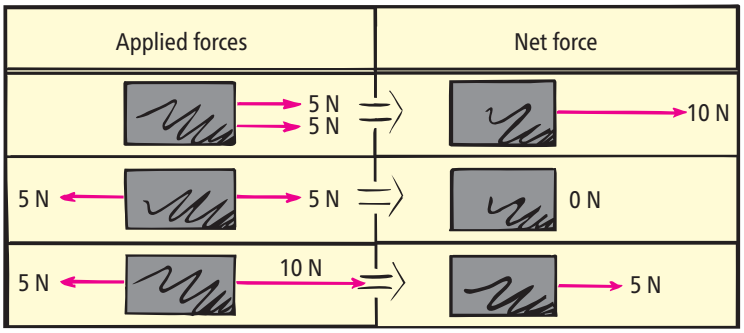
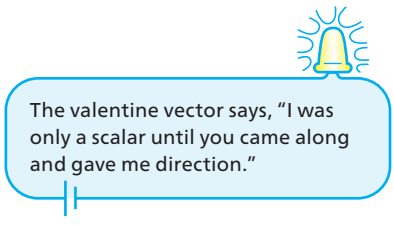


FIGURE 2.6
Net force (a force of 5 N is about 1.1 lb).

FIGURE 2.7
This vector, scaled so that 1 cm equals 20 N, represents a force of 60 N to the right.



Any quantity that requires both magnitude and direction for a complete description is a **vector quantity** (Figure 2.7). Examples of vector quantities include force, velocity, and acceleration. By contrast, a quantity that can be described by magnitude only, not involving direction, is called a **scalar quantity.** Mass, volume, and speed are scalar quantities.

Adding vectors that act along parallel directions is simple enough: If they act in the same direction, they add; if they act in opposite directions, they subtract. The sum of two or more vectors is called their **resultant.** To find the resultant of two vectors that don't act in exactly the same or opposite direction, we construct a parallelogram in which the two vectors are adjacent sides—the diagonal of the parallelogram shows the resultant. In Figure 2.8, the parallelograms are rectangles.

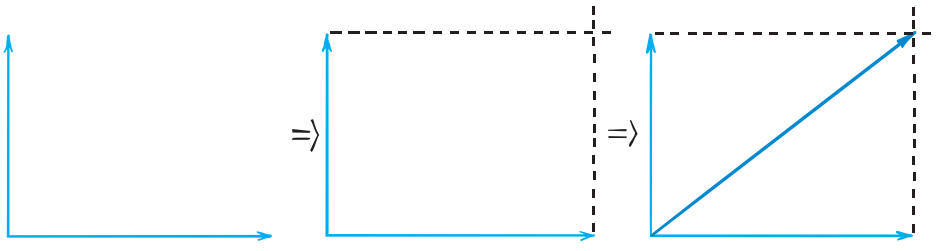


FIGURE 2.8
The pair of vectors at right angles to each other make two sides of a rectangle, the diagonal of which is their resultant.

In the special case of two vectors that are equal in magnitude and perpendicular to each other, the parallelogram is a square (Figure 2.9). Since for any square the length of a diagonal is $\sqrt{2}$, or 1.41, times one of the sides, the resultant is $\sqrt{2}$ times one of the vectors. For example, the resultant of two equal vectors of magnitude 100 acting at a right angle to each other is 141.

More about vectors are in Chapter 5, in Appendix D at the end of this book, and in the *Practicing Physics* book. In the next chapter we'll discuss velocity vectors.

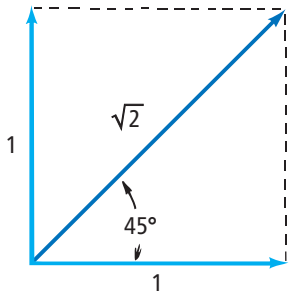


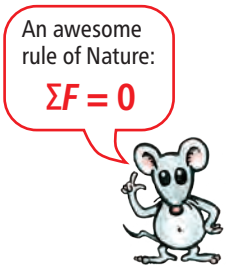
FIGURE 2.9
When a pair of equal-length vectors at right angles to each other are added, they form a square. The diagonal of the square is the resultant, $\sqrt{2}$ times the length of either side.

CHECK POINT

What is the net force of a pair of 1.0-N aligned vectors pointing in the same direction? When they point in opposite directions? When they are at right angles to each other?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

When aligned in the same direction, the net force is 1.0 N + 1.0 N = 2.0 N. When aligned in opposite directions, 1.0 N − 1.0 N = 0 N. When at right angles, net force is $\sqrt{[(1.0\text{ N})^2 + (1.0\text{ N})^2]} = \sqrt{2.0\text{ N}} = 1.4\text{ N}$, at a 45° angle.



2.5 The Equilibrium Rule

If you tie a string around a 2-pound bag of flour and hang it on a weighing scale (Figure 2.10), a spring in the scale stretches until the scale reads 2 pounds. The stretched spring is under a "stretching force" called *tension*. The same scale in a science lab is likely calibrated to read the same force as 9 newtons. Both pounds and newtons are units of weight, which in turn are units of *force*. The bag of flour is attracted to Earth with a gravitational force of 2 pounds—or, equivalently, 9 newtons. Hang twice as much flour from the scale and the reading will be 18 newtons.

Note that there are two forces acting on the bag of flour—tension force acting upward and weight acting downward. The two forces on the bag are equal and opposite, and they cancel to zero. Hence, the bag remains at rest. In accord with Newton's first law, no net force acts on the bag. We can look at Newton's first law in a different light—*mechanical equilibrium*.

When the net force on something is zero, we say that something is in **mechanical equilibrium.**[4] In mathematical notation, the **equilibrium rule** is

$$\Sigma \boldsymbol{F} = 0$$

The symbol Σ stands for "the vector sum of" and $\boldsymbol{F}$ stands for "forces." For a suspended object at rest, like the bag of flour, the rule says that the forces acting upward on the object must be balanced by other forces acting downward to make the vector sum equal to zero. (Vector quantities take direction into account, so if upward forces are +, downward ones are −, and, when added, they actually subtract.)

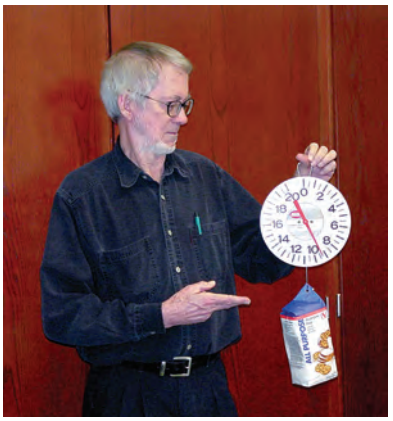
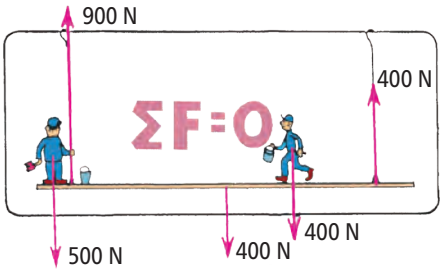


FIGURE 2.10
Burl Grey, who first introduced the author to tension forces, suspends a 2-lb bag of flour from a spring scale, showing its weight and the tension in the string of about 9 N.

[4]Something that is in equilibrium is without a change in its state of motion. When we study rotational motion in Chapter 8, we'll see that another condition for mechanical equilibrium is that the net *torque* equals zero.

In Figure 2.11, we see the forces involved for Burl and Paul on their sign-painting scaffold. The sum of the upward tensions is equal to the sum of their weights plus the weight of the scaffold. Note how the magnitudes of the two upward vectors equal the magnitude of the three downward vectors. The net force on the scaffold is zero, so we say it is in mechanical equilibrium.

FIGURE 2.11
The sum of the upward forces equals the sum of the downward forces. $\Sigma F = 0$ and the scaffold is in mechanical equilibrium.



Everything not undergoing changes in motion is in mechanical equilibrium. That's when $\Sigma F = 0$.

CHECK POINT

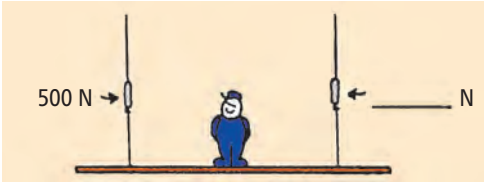
Red force vectors are shown in Figure 2.11. What is the sum of the two upward vectors that represent rope tensions? What is the sum of the three downward weight vectors? What is the vector sum of all vectors?

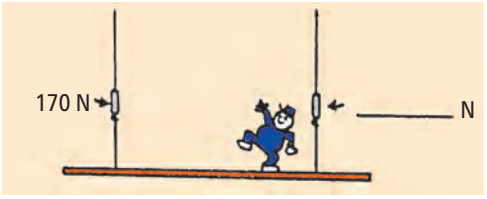
CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

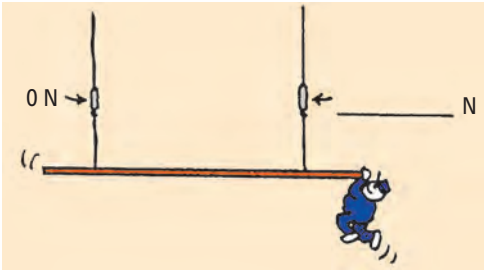
The sum of the two upward vectors is 900 N + 400 N = 1300 N. The sum of the three downward vectors is 500 N + 400 N + 400 N = 1300 N. The sum of all vectors is 1300 N − 1300 N = 0, which means the system is in mechanical equilibrium.

PRACTICING PHYSICS

1. When Burl stands alone in the exact middle of his scaffold, the left scale reads 500 N. Fill in the reading on the right scale. The total weight of Burl and the scaffold must be _____ N.
2. Burl stands farther from the left end. Fill in the reading on the right scale.
3. In a silly mood, Burl dangles from the right end. Fill in the reading on the right scale.







Practicing Physics Answers

Do your answers illustrate the equilibrium rule? In question 1, the right rope undergoes **500 N** of tension because Burl is in the middle and both ropes support his weight equally. Since the sum of upward tensions is 1000 N, the total weight of Burl and the scaffold must be **1000 N.** Let's call the upward tension forces +1000 N. Then the downward weights are −1000 N. What happens when you add +1000 N and −1000 N? The answer is that they equal zero. So we see that $\Sigma F = 0$.

For question 2, did you get the correct answer of **830 N**? Reasoning: We know from question 1 that the sum of the rope tensions equals 1000 N, and since the left rope has a tension of 170 N, the other rope must make up the difference—that is, 1000 N − 170 N = 830 N. Get it? If so, great. If not, talk about it with your friends until you do. Then read further.

The answer to question 3 is **1000 N.** Do you see that this illustrates $\Sigma F = 0$?

2.6 Support Force

Consider a book lying at rest on a table. It is in equilibrium. What forces act on the book? One force is that due to gravity—the *weight* of the book. Since the book is in equilibrium, there must be another force acting on the book to produce a net force of zero—an upward force opposite to the force of Earth's gravity. The table exerts this upward force. We call this the upward *support force.* This upward support force, often called the *normal force,* must equal the weight of the book.[5] If we call the upward force positive, then the downward weight is negative, and the two add to zero. The net force on the book is zero. Another way to say the same thing is $\sum \boldsymbol{F} = 0$.

To understand better that the table pushes up on the book, compare the case of compressing a spring (Figure 2.12). If you push the spring down, you can feel the spring pushing up on your hand. Similarly, the book lying on the table compresses atoms in the table, which behave like microscopic springs. The weight of the book squeezes downward on the atoms, and they squeeze upward on the book. In this way, the compressed atoms produce the support force.

When you step on a bathroom scale, two forces act on the scale. One is your downward push on the scale—the result of gravity pulling on you—and the other is the upward support force of the floor. These forces squeeze a mechanism (in effect, a spring) within the scale that is calibrated to show the magnitude of the support force (Figure 2.13). The force with which you push down on the scale is due to gravity, your weight, which has the same magnitude as the floor's upward support force. When you are in equilibrium your weight equals the force of gravity acting on you.

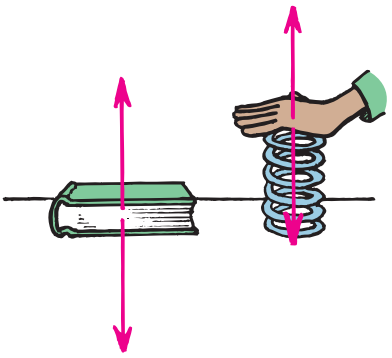


FIGURE 2.12
(Left) The table pushes up on the book with as much force as the downward force of gravity on the book. (Right) The spring pushes up on your hand with as much force as you exert to push down on the spring.

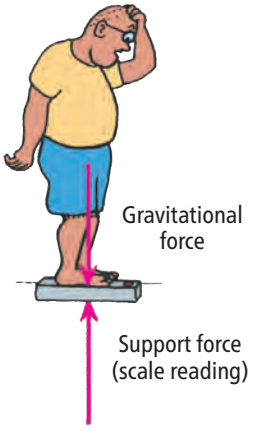
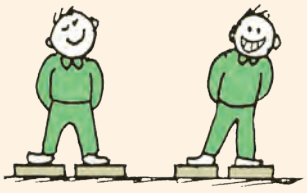


FIGURE 2.13
Your weight is the force you exert on a supporting surface, which when in equilibrium is the force due to gravity on you. The scale reading shows both your weight and the support force.

CHECK POINT

Suppose you stand on two bathroom scales with your weight evenly divided between the two scales. What will each scale read? How about if you stand with more of your weight on one foot than the other?



CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

The readings on both scales add up to your weight. This is because the sum of the scale readings, which equals the supporting normal force by the floor, must counteract your weight so the net force on you will be zero. That is, the vector sum $\sum \boldsymbol{F} = 0$. If you stand equally on each scale, each will read half your weight. If you lean more on one scale than the other, more than half your weight will be read on that scale but less on the other, so they will still add up to your weight. For example, if one scale reads two-thirds your weight, the other scale will read one-third your weight. In whatever case, $\sum \boldsymbol{F} = 0$. Get it?

[5]In geometry, "normal to" means "at right angles to." Since this force pushes up at right angles to the surface, it is called a "normal force."

A zero net force on an object doesn't mean that the object must be at rest, but that its state of motion remains unchanged. It can be at rest or moving uniformly in a straight line.

2.7 Equilibrium of Moving Things

Rest is only one form of equilibrium. An object moving at constant speed in a straight-line path is also in equilibrium. Equilibrium is a state of no change. A bowling ball rolling at constant speed in a straight line is in equilibrium—until it hits the pins. Whether an object is at rest (static equilibrium) or steadily rolling in a straight-line path (dynamic equilibrium), $\Sigma F = 0$.

It follows from Newton's first law that an object that is under the influence of only one force cannot be in equilibrium. The net force couldn't be zero. Only when two or more forces act on an object can it be in equilibrium. We can test whether or not something is in equilibrium by noting whether or not it undergoes changes in its state of motion.

Consider a crate being pushed horizontally across a factory floor (Figure 2.14). If it moves at a steady speed in a straight-line path, it is in dynamic equilibrium. This tells us that more than one force acts—likely the force of friction between the crate and the floor. The fact that the net force on the crate equals zero means that the force of friction must be equal and opposite to our pushing force.

The equilibrium rule, $\Sigma F = 0$, provides a reasoned way to view all things at rest—balancing rocks, objects in your room, or the steel beams in bridges or in building construction. Whatever their configuration, if an object is in static equilibrium, all acting forces always balance to zero. The same is true of objects that move steadily, not speeding up, slowing down, or changing direction. For dynamic equilibrium, all acting forces also balance to zero. The equilibrium rule is one that allows you to see more than meets the eye of the casual observer. It's nice to know the reasons for the stability of things in our everyday world.

There are different forms of equilibrium. In Chapter 8, we'll talk about rotational equilibrium, and, in Part 4, we'll discuss thermal equilibrium associated with heat. Physics is everywhere.

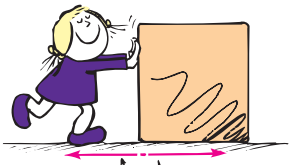


FIGURE 2.14
When the push on the crate is as great as the force of friction that the floor exerts on the crate, the net force on the crate is zero and it slides at an unchanging speed.

CHECK POINT

An airplane flies at constant speed in a horizontal straight path. In other words, the flying plane is in equilibrium. Two horizontal forces act on the plane. One is the thrust of the propeller that pushes it forward, and the other is the force of air resistance that acts in the opposite direction. Which force is greater?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Both forces have the same magnitude. Call the forward force exerted by the propeller positive. Then the backward force of air resistance is negative. Since the plane is in dynamic equilibrium, can you see that the two forces combine to equal zero? Hence the plane neither gains nor loses speed.

2.8 The Moving Earth

When Copernicus announced the idea of a moving Earth in the 16th century, the concept of inertia was not understood. There was much arguing and debate about whether or not Earth moved. The amount of force required to keep Earth moving was beyond imagination. Another argument against a moving Earth was the following: Consider a bird sitting at rest at the top of a tall tree. On the ground below is a fat, juicy worm. The bird sees the worm, drops vertically, and catches it.

This would be impossible, it was argued, if Earth moved as Copernicus suggested. If Copernicus were correct, Earth would have to travel at a speed of 107,000 kilometers per hour to circle the Sun in one year. Convert this speed to kilometers per second and you get 30 kilometers per second. Even if the bird could descend from its branch in 1 second, the worm would have been swept away by the moving Earth a distance of 30 kilometers. It would be impossible for a bird to drop straight down and catch a worm. But birds in fact *do* catch worms from high tree branches, which seemed to be clear evidence that Earth must be at rest.

FIGURE 2.15
Can the bird drop down and catch the worm if Earth moves at 30 km/s?

Can you refute this argument? You can if you invoke the idea of inertia. You see, not only is Earth moving at 30 kilometers per second but so are the tree, the tree branch, the bird on the branch, the worm below, and even the air in between. All are moving at 30 kilometers per second. Things in motion remain in motion if no unbalanced forces are acting upon them. So, when the bird drops from the branch, its initial sideways motion of 30 kilometers per second remains unchanged. It catches the worm, quite unaffected by the motion of its total environment.

Stand next to a wall. Jump up so that your feet are no longer in contact with the floor. Does the 30-kilometer-per-second wall slam into you? It doesn't, because you are also traveling at 30 kilometers per second—before, during, and after your jump. The 30 kilometers per second is the speed of Earth relative to the Sun, not the speed of the wall relative to you.

People 400 years ago had difficulty with ideas like these, not only because they failed to acknowledge the concept of inertia but because they were not accustomed to moving in high-speed vehicles. Slow, bumpy rides in horse-drawn carriages did not lend themselves to experiments that would reveal the effect of inertia. Today we flip a coin in a high-speed car, bus, or plane, and we catch the vertically moving coin as we would if the vehicle were at rest. We see evidence for the law of inertia when the horizontal motion of the coin before, during, and after the catch is the same. The coin keeps up with us. The vertical force of gravity affects only the vertical motion of the coin.

FIGURE 2.16
When you flip a coin in a high-speed airplane, it behaves as if the airplane were at rest. The coin keeps up with you—inertia in action!

CHECK POINT

China's bullet train travels at its top speed, 120 meters per second. If you jump upward in the aisle of the train for 0.5 second, why do you not land 50 meters from your starting point?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

You land exactly at your starting point because during your half-second jump both the train *and you* cover the same straight-line distance. With no external force to change your horizontal motion, Newton's first law tells us that no horizontal change in speed occurs. Although your speed relative to the ground is 120 m/s, your speed relative to the train is zero. We'll say more about relative speeds in the next chapter.

Our notions of motion today are very different from those of our ancestors. Aristotle did not recognize the idea of inertia because he did not see that all moving things follow the same rules. He imagined that the rules for motion in the heavens were very different from the rules for motion on Earth. He saw vertical motion as natural but horizontal motion as unnatural, requiring a sustained force. Galileo and Newton, on the other hand, saw that all moving things follow the same rules. To them, moving things require *no* force to keep moving if there are no opposing forces, such as friction. We can only wonder how differently science might have progressed if Aristotle had recognized the unity of all kinds of motion.

Chapter 2 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Inertia The property of things to resist changes in motion.

Newton's first law of motion (the law of inertia) Every object continues in a state of rest or of uniform speed in a straight line unless acted on by a nonzero net force.

Force In the simplest sense, a push or a pull.

Net force The vector sum of forces that act on an object.

Vector An arrow drawn to scale used to represent a vector quantity.

Vector quantity A quantity that has both magnitude and direction, such as force.

Scalar quantity A quantity that has magnitude but not direction, such as mass and volume.

Resultant The net result of a combination of two or more vectors.

Mechanical equilibrium The state of an object or system of objects for which there are no changes in motion. In accord with Newton's first law, if an object is at rest, the state of rest persists. If an object is moving, its motion continues without change.

Equilibrium rule For any object or system of objects in equilibrium, the sum of the forces acting equals zero. In equation form, $\sum \boldsymbol{F} = 0$.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

Most chapters in this book conclude with a set of questions, activities, problems, and exercises. ***Reading Check Questions*** *are designed to help you comprehend ideas and catch the essentials of the chapter material. Answers can be found within the chapters.* ***Think and Do*** *activities focus on hands-on applications.* ***Plug and Chugs*** *are simple one-step problems for equation familiarization (although none in this chapter). Your math skills are applied to the* ***Think and Solve*** *problems, followed by* ***Think and Rank*** *tasks that prompt comparisons of the magnitudes of various concepts. The most important end-of-chapter items are* ***Think and Explains,*** *which stress synthesizing of material with focus on thinking rather than mere recall of information.* ***Think and Discuss*** *questions follow and, as the name implies, are meant to illicit discussions with your classmates. Put on your thinking cap and begin!*

2.1 Aristotle on Motion

1. Into which two main classes did Aristotle divide motion?
2. What state of motion did Aristotle attribute to Earth?
3. What was the main assumption on which Copernicus based his theory of the moving Earth?

2.2 Galileo's Experiments

4. What did Galileo discover in his legendary experiment on the Leaning Tower of Pisa?
5. What did Galileo discover about moving bodies and force in his experiments with inclined planes?
6. Is inertia the reason balls moving along a horizontal plane ultimately come to rest?

2.3 Newton's First Law of Motion

7. How does Newton's first law of motion relate to Galileo's concept of inertia?
8. Why do space probes continuously move in outer space?
9. How much force is required to keep a moving hockey puck in motion on a perfectly frictionless surface?

2.4 Net Force and Vectors

10. What is the net force on a block that is pulled to the right with 50 pounds of force and to the left with 60 pounds of force?
11. Can a certain force be negative?
12. What is the resultant of a pair of 20-pound forces at right angles to each other?
13. What is the resultant of a 40-N horizontal force and a 30-N vertical force?

2.5 The Equilibrium Rule

14. Can force be expressed in units of pounds and newtons?
15. What is the net force on an object that is pulled with 30 N to the right, 30 N to the left, 40 N upward, and 40 N downward?
16. A person is standing on a painter's scaffold. The right-hand scale reads a higher value than the left scale. Is he nearer the left scale or the right-hand scale?
17. What does it mean to say that something is in mechanical equilibrium?
18. State the equilibrium rule for forces in symbolic notation.

2.6 Support Force

19. A 500-g book lays at rest on top of your head. How much support force does your head provide to the book? What is the net force on the book?
20. When you stand at rest on a bathroom scale, how does your weight compare with the support force by the scale?

2.7 Equilibrium of Moving Things

21. A bowling ball at rest is in equilibrium. Is the ball in equilibrium when it moves at a constant speed along a curved path?

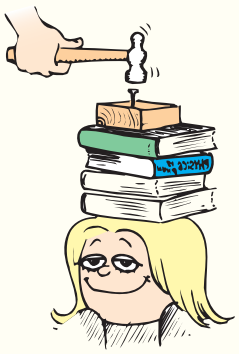
22. What is the net force acting on a body moving at a uniform velocity?
23. A block is being pushed with a force to make it slide at constant velocity. What is the role of friction in deciding the force needed?

2.8 The Moving Earth

24. A boy flips a coin in a moving car. Will he be able to catch the coin as it falls?
25. A bird sitting in a tree is traveling at 30 km/s relative to the faraway Sun. When the bird drops to the ground below, does it still move at 30 km/s, or does this speed become zero?
26. Stand next to a wall that travels at 30 km/s relative to the Sun. With your feet on the ground, you also travel the same 30 km/s. Do you maintain this speed when your feet leave the ground? What concept supports your answer?

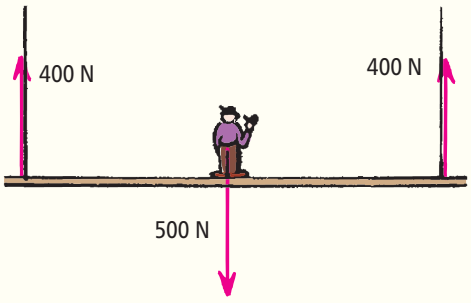
THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

27. Contact your grandparents and tell them about your experience with *Conceptual Physics* and the importance of knowing the rules of nature to better appreciate nature that surrounds us. Tell them that learning the equilibrium rule enhances the way you see structures, from tree branches to the frameworks in the construction of buildings.
28. Place a coin on top of a sheet of paper on a desk or table. Pull the paper horizontally with a quick snap. What concept of physics does this illustrate?
29. Ask a friend to drive a small nail into a piece of wood placed on a stack of books on the top of your head. Why doesn't this hurt you? (Be careful! Wear a helmet and safety glasses in case your friend misses.)

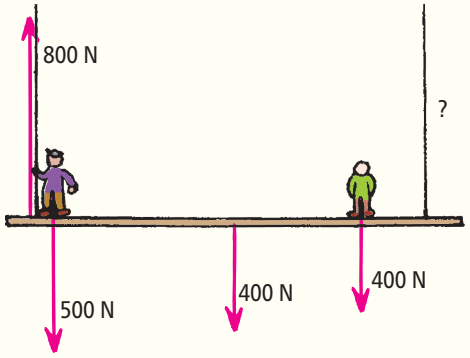


THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

30. Consider two forces, 30 N and 40 N, applied to an object. Calculate the magnitude of the net force when:
    (a) the two forces have the same direction and
    (b) the two forces are perpendicular to each other.
31. A table rests on a floor without being pushed.
    (a) How much friction acts on it?
    (b) If the table is pushed horizontally with 100 N and doesn't slide, how much friction acts on it?
    (c) If a horizontal push of 120 N causes it to slide at constant speed, how much friction acts on it?
32. A person carrying a 10-kg box stands on a bathroom scale that reads 588 N. What are the person's weight and mass?
33. Judy weighs 640 N and stands with one foot on one bathroom scale and the other on a second bathroom scale. If one scale reads thrice as much as the other, find the readings on both scales.
34. The sketch shows a painter's scaffold in mechanical equilibrium. The painter weighs 500 N, and the tensions in each rope are 400 N. What is the weight of the scaffold?

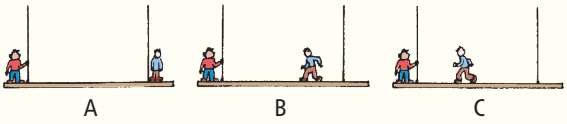


35. A 400 N scaffold supports two painters, one 500 N and the other 400 N. The reading in the left scale is 800 N. What is the reading in the right-hand scale?

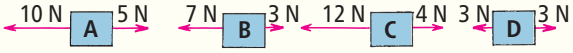


THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

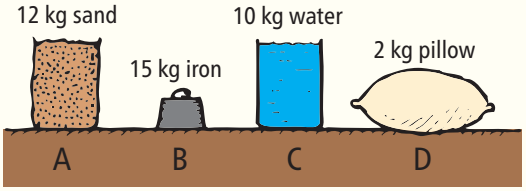
36. The weights of Burl, Paul, and the scaffold produce tensions in the supporting ropes. Rank the tension in the *left* rope, from most to least, in the three situations, A, B, and C.



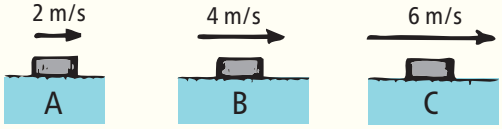
37. For the four situations, A, B, C, D, rank the net force on the block, from least to most.



38. Different materials, A, B, C, and D, rest on a table.
    (a) Rank how much they resist being set into motion, from greatest to least.
    (b) Rank the support (normal) force the table exerts on them, from greatest to least.



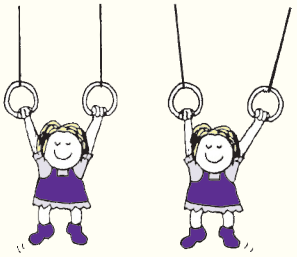
39. Three pucks, A, B, and C, are shown sliding across ice at the noted speeds. Air and ice friction forces are negligible.
    (a) Rank the force needed to keep them moving, from greatest to least.
    (b) Rank the force needed to stop them in the same time interval, from greatest to least.



THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

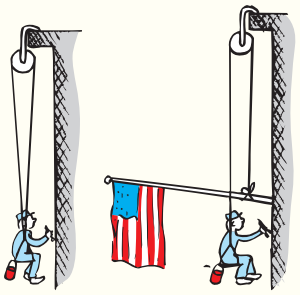
40. Knowledge can be gained by philosophical logic and also by experimentation. Which of these did Aristotle favor, and which did Galileo favor?
41. A ball rolling along a floor doesn't continue rolling indefinitely. Is that because the ball is seeking a place of rest or because some force is acting upon it? If the latter, identify the force.
42. Copernicus postulated that Earth moves around the Sun (rather than the reverse), but he was troubled about the idea. What concept of mechanics was he missing (later introduced by Galileo and Newton) that would have eased his doubts?
43. What Aristotelian idea did Galileo discredit in his fabled Leaning Tower demonstration?
44. What Aristotelian idea did Galileo demolish with his inclined planes experiments?
45. Was it Galileo or Newton who first proposed the concept of inertia?
46. What keeps asteroids moving through space for billions of years?
47. A space probe may be carried by a rocket into outer space. What keeps the probe moving after the rocket no longer pushes it?
48. Why is it important to pull the tablecloth slightly downward when attempting to demonstrate the tablecloth pull in Figure 2.4 (What occurs if you pull slightly upward?)
49. Why is a sharp jerk more effective than a slow pull when tearing a paper towel or plastic bag from a roll?
50. Suppose you are in a car that is traveling on a straight path. Why do you feel an outward pull when the car navigates a sharp curve?
51. When a bus that is moving forward suddenly stops, the passengers are thrown forward. Explain why this happens.
52. Why do you seem to lurch forward in a bus that suddenly slows? Why do you seem to lurch backward when it picks up speed? What law applies here?
53. Consider a pair of forces having the same magnitude of 30 N. What are the maximum and minimum possible net forces for these two forces?
54. Is it safe to say that there is no force acting on an object if it experiences no net force?
55. Can an object be in mechanical equilibrium when only a single non-zero force acts on it? Explain.
56. A hockey puck at rest is in equilibrium. Is it in equilibrium if it slides across ice at constant velocity? Defend your answer.
57. A child is playfully tossed upward by his dad. When the child reaches the top of her trajectory where her speed reduces to zero, is she momentarily in equilibrium? Why or why not?
58. Can a basketball player halfway through a jump in midair be in equilibrium? Why or why not?
59. When you are standing still on the ground, you are in equilibrium. When you jump, your body momentarily stops at the highest point before going back down to the ground. Are you in equilibrium at that instance? Why or why not?

60. Is a vertically tossed ball at the top of its path undergoing a change in its velocity? Why or why not?
61. Nellie Newton hangs at rest from the rings attached by vertical ropes as shown. How does the tension in each rope compare with her weight?



62. A book placed on top of a table is in equilibrium. (a) Is it safe to say that no force acts on it? (b) Or is it safe to say that no net force acts on it? Briefly explain your answer.
63. Nellie Newton hangs at rest from the ends of the rope as shown. How does the reading on the scale compare with her weight?

64. Harry the painter swings year after year from his bosun's chair. His weight is 500 N, and the rope, unknown to him, has a breaking point of 300 N. Why doesn't the rope break when he is supported as shown on the left? One day, Harry is painting near a flagpole, and, for a change, he ties the free end of the rope to the flagpole instead of to his chair, as shown on the right. Why did Harry end up taking his vacation early?



65. How many significant forces act on a book at rest on an inclined plane? Identify the forces.
66. You exert a force when you push your hands against a concrete wall. Why doesn't this force cause your hands to penetrate the wall?
67. As you stand on a floor, does the floor exert an upward force against your feet? How much force does it exert? Why are you not moved upward by this force?
68. If you jounce up and down while weighing yourself on a bathroom scale, the reading will fluctuate. Which fluctuates—the upward support force or the gravitational force on you? Why is your weight reading best shown when you stand at rest on the scale.
69. A bucket of water of weight W hangs steadily by a rope. Identify the forces acting on the bucket.
70. A tractor is pulling a sled horizontally, sliding at constant velocity with a 750-N force. What kind of friction exists between the surfaces of the sled and the ground? How much frictional force is acting on the sled?
71. If you push a crate across the floor in dynamic equilibrium with a force of 500 N, is the friction force between the surfaces of the crate and the floor greater than, less than, or equal to 500 N?
72. If you push a heavy cabinet across the floor at increasing speed with a force of 900 N, is the friction force between the surfaces of the cabinet and the floor greater than, less than, or equal to 900 N?
73. Emily Easygo can paddle a canoe in still water at 8 km/h. How successful will she be at canoeing upstream in a river that flows at 8 km/h?

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

74. A bowling ball rolling along a lane gradually slows as it rolls. How would Aristotle likely interpret this observation? How would Galileo interpret it?
75. In Figure 2.5 why does a slow continuous increase in pull break the string above the massive ball? And why does a sudden increase in pull break the lower string?
76. You are riding on a bullet train traveling at a constant velocity of 320 km/h, and you wonder why you can stand still without being thrown. What could explain this?
77. In answer to the question "What keeps Earth moving around the Sun?" a friend asserts that inertia keeps it moving. Discuss and correct your friend's erroneous assertion.
78. Your doormat at home becomes dirty and dusty. Using Newton's first law, explain briefly how can you quickly clean the doormat of dirt and dust.
79. A person is standing in the back of a truck that is initially at rest. When the truck suddenly starts to move forward, the person falls against the back of the truck. Using Newton's first law, discuss why this happens.
80. Suppose you hit a puck on a frictionless floor. Once released, will the puck continue to slide eternally, or it will come to rest?
81. When people push a stalled car, it moves. Does this violate Newton's first law of motion? Explain your reasoning.
82. Each bone in the skeletal chain of bones forming your spine is separated from its neighbors by disks of elastic tissue. What happens, then, when you jump heavily onto your feet from an elevated position? (*Hint:* Think about the hammerhead in Figure 2.5.) Discuss why you think you are a little taller in the morning than at night.
83. Starting at rest, a box slides down an inclined plane and speeds up with time. Does this violate Newton's first law of motion? Explain your reasoning.

84. A book is at rest on a horizontal plane. If the inclination of the plane is increased while keeping the book at rest, does the magnitude of the normal force change? If yes, how? If not, why not?
85. When you press a book against a concrete wall, you feel a reaction force from the wall. Does this reaction force depend on friction? Briefly explain your reasoning.
86. A photographer aboard a helicopter cruising at constant velocity accidentally drops his camera. If air resistance is ignored, would the camera fall vertically and hit the ground at a distance equal to how far the helicopter had moved forward while the camera was falling, or would it hit the ground at a location right below the helicopter's position? Use Newton's first law to justify your answer.
87. Because Earth rotates once every 24 hours, the west wall in your room moves in a direction toward you at a linear speed that is probably more than 1000 kilometers per hour (the exact speed depends on your latitude). When you stand facing the wall, you are carried along at the same speed, so you don't notice it. But when you jump upward, with your feet no longer in contact with the floor, why doesn't the high-speed wall slam into you?
88. If you toss a coin straight upward while riding in a train, where does the coin land when the motion of the train is uniform along a straight-line track? When the train slows while the coin is in the air?
89. Discuss and answer the preceding question for when the train is rounding a corner.
90. When a ball rolls down an inclined plane, it gains speed because of gravity. When a ball rolls up an inclined plane, it loses speed because of gravity. Why doesn't gravity play a role when it rolls on a horizontal surface?

Please do not be intimidated by the large number of exercises in this book that provide a wide choice for your instructor. If your course work covers many chapters, you'll likely be assigned only a few exercises from each chapter.
Another thing. End-of-chapter exercises are opportunities for mental gymnastics. Be nice to your brain and develop critical thinking. ***THINK*** about the answers. Searching for answers on the web is like having others do your pushups.

CHAPTER TWO Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. According to Galileo, inertia is a
   (a) force like any other force.
   (b) special kind of force.
   (c) property of all matter.
   (d) concept attributed to Aristotle.
2. Galileo's use of inclined planes allowed him to effectively
   (a) slow down the ball's changes in speed.
   (b) reduce the time of the ball's changes in speed.
   (c) eliminate major changes in speed.
   (d) eliminate friction.
3. A space probe flying in remote space continues traveling
   (a) due to a force acting on it.
   (b) in a curved path.
   (c) even if no force acts on it.
   (d) due to gravity.
4. A hockey puck slides along an icy pond. Without any kind of friction, the force needed to sustain sliding is
   (a) none at all.
   (b) equal to the weight of the puck.
   (c) the weight of the puck divided by its mass.
   (d) the mass of the puck multiplied by 10 m/s^2.
5. What is the net force on a box of chocolates when pushed across a table with a horizontal force of 10 N while friction between it and the surface is 6 N?
   (a) 16 N
   (b) 10 N
   (c) 6 N
   (d) 4 N
6. The sum of the forces that act on any object moving at constant velocity is
   (a) zero.
   (b) 10 m/s^2.
   (c) equal to its weight.
   (d) about half its weight.
7. The equilibrium rule $\sum F = 0$ applies to
   (a) objects or systems at rest.
   (b) objects or systems in uniform motion in a straight line.
   (c) both.
   (d) neither.
8. The tensions in each of the two supporting ropes that support Burl and Paul on opposite ends of a scaffold
   (a) are equal.
   (b) depend on the relative weights of Burl and Paul.
   (c) combine to equal zero.
   (d) none of the above
9. A man weighing 800 N stands at rest on two bathroom scales so that one scale shows a reading of 500 N. The reading on the other scale is
   (a) 200 N.
   (b) 300 N.
   (c) 400 N.
   (d) 800 N.
10. If you leap straight up inside a high-speed train while it gains speed, you land
    (a) slightly ahead of your original position.
    (b) at your original position.
    (c) slightly behind your original position.
    (d) none of the above

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (c): By definition, inertia is a property of all matter. It is not a force in any regard. This is a definition, pure and simple.
2. (a): Galileo lacked suitable time devises (clocks had not yet been invented) so he used small-angle inclines to look for a pattern of changes in a ball's downward motion—effectively slowing time. By successively increasing the angle of a plane to vertical, he found the acceleration of the ball to be that of free fall. **3. (c):** In accord with Newton's first law a body in motion tends to remain in motion in a straight-line path unless acted upon by a force. With no applied force, the space probe will move continuously. That's in accord with the law! **4. (a):** In accord with Newton's first law of motion, with no friction to overcome, the puck will slide indefinitely until it encounters a force. So no force is required for sustained motion. **5. (d):** The net force along the table is simply the vector sum of the horizontal forces 10 N − 6 N, which is 4 N. **6. (a):** In accord with Newton's first law, no force is needed for a moving object to continue moving. It will "move of itself." **7. (c):** By definition, the equilibrium rule applies to objects at rest or in straight-line motion—both. **8. (b):** According to the equilibrium rule, the upward tensions must be equal and opposite to the combined weights of Burl and Paul, plus the weight of the scaffold. The tensions are not equal because the weights of Burl and Paul are not equal, nor do they combine to zero. What *does* combine to zero is the vector sum of upward forces (tensions in the two ropes) and downward forces of the weights the ropes support. **9. (b):** This is a numerical example of $\sum F = 0$. What number + 500 N = 800 N? Simple math tells you that number must be 800 N − 500 N = 300 N. **10. (c):** The train *gains speed* while you are airborne. Your horizontal component of speed during your jump remains the same as the speed *when* you jumped. While you are jumping the floor below gains speed, which means you'll land behind your original position.

CHAPTER THREE

3 Linear Motion

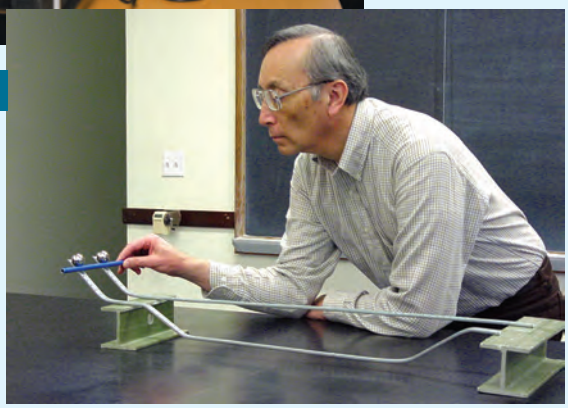
3.1 Speed
- Instantaneous Speed
- Average Speed
- Motion Is Relative

3.2 Velocity
- Constant Velocity
- Changing Velocity

3.3 Acceleration
- Acceleration on Galileo's Inclined Planes

3.4 Free Fall
- How Fast
- How Far
- How Quickly "How Fast" Changes

3.5 Velocity Vectors



1 Dean Baird is a world traveler and nature photographer who enjoys sky diving, bungee jumping, and flightseeing. Here he's embarking on an air tour of Alaskan glaciers. **2** Sue Johnson (the first rower) and her crew win medals for high speed in their racing shell. **3** Carl Angell at the University of Oslo does what Galileo did some 400 years earlier, but with a photogate for measuring the ball's speed. **4** Chelcie Liu asks his students to check their thinking with neighbors and predict which ball will first reach the end of the equal-length tracks.

Dean Baird began his teaching career at Rio Americano High School in Sacramento, California, at the age of 21. He enjoyed teaching physics so much that he advertised his course to the student body so he could fill his schedule with physics classes every period of the day. His colleagues were surprised by the large enrollments in Dean's classes and the unprecedented success of Advanced Placement students on the national exams. As the photo shows, students enjoy Dean's teaching.

In addition to coaching science teams at his school, mentoring statewide workshops for new physics teachers, and serving as an appointed content expert on statewide science exams, he shares his lessons and observations via *The Blog of Phyz* and *phyz.org*. Since the early 2000s, he has authored my physics, physical science, and integrated science laboratory manuals. He is an accomplished photographer, contributing many photos to my books. He hauls his gear to the far corners of the world and hopes to see even more of it.

Dean has been recognized at the local, state, and national levels for outstanding service in physics education. He has been made a Fellow of the American Association of Physics Teachers and was honored with the Presidential Award for Excellence in Mathematics and Science Teaching during the Obama administration.

Dean's specialties as a teacher are curricular diversity and skepticism. He mixes labs, demos, presentations, simulations, and web video with critical thinking lessons to keep students engaged every day.

When it comes to linear motion, the topic of this chapter, Dean knows the trick is to cover the basics with engaging activities and demonstrations, but not to get bogged down in algebraic detail. Too many days spent on motion means less time later when the course gets to the wonder of the blue sky, the beauty of rainbows, and other high-interest topics. He paces his coverage of linear motion as a stepping stone to the delightful topics that await in the chapters beyond.

3.1 Speed

Before the time of Galileo, people described moving things as simply "slow" or "fast." Such descriptions were vague. Galileo is credited with being the first to measure speed by considering the distance covered and the time it takes. He defined **speed** as the distance covered per unit of time.

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

$$\text{Speed} = \frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time}}$$

A cyclist who covers 16 meters in a time of 2 seconds, for example, has a speed of 8 meters per second. Interestingly, Galileo could easily measure distance, but in his day measuring short times was no easy matter. He sometimes used his own pulse and sometimes the dripping of drops from a "water clock" he devised.

Any combination of distance and time units is legitimate for measuring speed; for motor vehicles (or long distances), the units kilometers per hour (km/h) and miles per hour (mi/h or mph) are commonly used. For shorter distances, meters per second (m/s) is more useful. The slash symbol (/) is read as *per* and means "divided by." Throughout this book, we'll primarily use meters per second (m/s). Table 3.1 lists some approximate speeds in different units.[1]

TABLE 3.1
APPROXIMATE SPEEDS IN DIFFERENT UNITS

5 m/s	= 11 mi/h	= 18 km/h
10 m/s	= 22 mi/h	= 36 km/h
20 m/s	= 45 mi/h	= 72 km/h
30 m/s	= 67 mi/h	= 107 km/h
40 m/s	= 89 mi/h	= 142 km/h
50 m/s	= 112 mi/h	= 180 km/h

Instantaneous Speed

Things in motion often have variations in speed. A car, for example, may travel along a street at 50 km/h, slow to 0 km/h at a red light, and speed up to only 30 km/h because of traffic. You can tell the speed of the car at any instant by

[1]Conversion is based on 1 h = 3600 s, 1 mi = 1609.344 m.

FIGURE 3.1
A speedometer gives readings in both miles per hour and kilometers per hour.

looking at its speedometer. The speed at any instant is the **instantaneous speed.** A car traveling at 50 km/h usually goes at that speed for less than 1 hour. If it did go at that speed for a full hour, it would cover 50 km. If it continued at that speed for half an hour, it would cover half that distance: 25 km. If it continued for only 1 minute, it would cover less than 1 km.

Average Speed

In planning a trip by car, the driver often wants to know the time of travel. The driver is concerned with the **average speed** for the trip.

$$\text{Average speed} = \frac{\text{total distance covered}}{\text{time interval}}$$

Average speed can be calculated rather easily. For example, if we travel a distance of 80 kilometers in a time of 1 hour, we say our average speed is 80 kilometers per hour. Likewise, if we travel 320 kilometers in 4 hours,

$$\text{Average speed} = \frac{\text{total distance covered}}{\text{time interval}} = \frac{320\ \text{km}}{4\ \text{h}} = 80\ \text{km/h}$$

We see that, when a distance in kilometers (km) is divided by a time in hours (h), the answer is in kilometers per hour (km/h).

Since average speed is the distance traveled divided by the total time of travel, it doesn't indicate the different speeds and variations that may have taken place during shorter time intervals. On most trips, we experience a variety of speeds, so the average speed is often quite different from the instantaneous speed at any particular moment.

If we know average speed and time of travel, distance traveled is easy to find. A simple rearrangement of our definition gives

$$\text{Total distance covered} = \text{average speed} \times \text{time interval}$$

If your average speed is 80 kilometers per hour on a 4-hour trip, for example, you travel a distance of 320 kilometers (80 km/h × 4 h).

If you're cited for speeding, which does the police officer write on your ticket: your *instantaneous speed* or your *average speed*?

CHECK POINT

1. **What is the average speed of a cheetah that sprints 100 meters in 4 seconds? If it sprints 50 m in 2 s?**
2. **If a car moves with an average speed of 60 km/h for an hour, it will travel a distance of 60 km.**
   a. **How far would it travel if it moved at this rate for 4 h?**
   b. **For 10 h?**
3. **In addition to the speedometer on the dashboard of every car is an odometer, which records the distance traveled. If the initial reading is set at zero at the beginning of a trip and the reading is 40 km one-half hour later, what has been your average speed?**
4. **Would it be possible to attain this average speed and never go faster than 80 km/h?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

*(Are you reading this before you have reasoned the answers in your mind? As mentioned in Chapter 2, when you encounter Check Point questions throughout this book, check your **thinking** before you read the answers. You'll not only learn more; you'll enjoy learning more.)*

1. In both cases the answer is 25 m/s:

$$\text{Average speed} = \frac{\text{total distance covered}}{\text{time interval}} = \frac{100\text{ m}}{4\text{ s}} = \frac{50\text{ m}}{2\text{ s}} = 25\text{ m/s}$$

2. The distance traveled is the average speed × time of travel, so
   a. Distance = 60 km/h × 4 h = 240 km
   b. Distance = 60 km/h × 10 h = 600 km

3. $\text{Average speed} = \frac{\text{total distance covered}}{\text{time interval}} = \frac{40\text{ km}}{0.5\text{ h}} = 80\text{ km/h}$

4. No, not if the trip starts from rest. There are times in which the instantaneous speeds are less than 80 km/h, so the driver must drive at speeds higher than 80 km/h during one or more time intervals in order to average 80 km/h. In practice, average speeds are usually much lower than highest instantaneous speeds.

Motion Is Relative

Everything moves—even things that appear to be at rest. They move relative to the Sun and stars. As you're reading this, you're moving at about 107,000 kilometers per hour relative to the Sun, and you're moving even faster relative to the center of our galaxy. When we discuss the motion of something, we describe the motion relative to something else. If you walk down the aisle of a moving bus, your speed relative to the floor of the bus is likely quite different from your speed relative to the road. When we say a racing car reaches a speed of 300 kilometers per hour, we mean relative to the track. Unless stated otherwise, when we discuss the speeds of things in our environment, we mean relative to the surface of Earth. Motion is relative.

FIGURE 3.2
When you sit on a chair, your speed is zero relative to Earth but 30 km/s relative to the Sun.

CHECK POINT

A hungry mosquito sees you resting in a hammock in a 3-m/s breeze. How fast and in what direction should the mosquito fly in order to hover above you for lunch?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

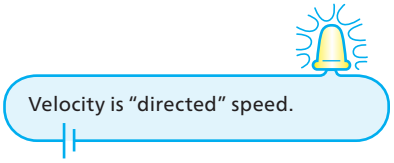
The mosquito should fly toward you into the breeze. When just above you, it should fly at 3 m/s in order to hover at rest. Unless its grip on your skin is strong enough after landing, it must continue flying at 3 m/s to keep from being blown off. That's why a breeze is an effective deterrent to mosquito bites.

If you look out an airplane window and view another plane flying at the same speed in the opposite direction, you'll see it flying twice as fast—nicely illustrating relative motion.

3.2 Velocity

When we know both the speed and the direction of motion for an object, we know its **velocity.** Velocity combines the ideas of speed and direction of motion. For example, if a car travels at 60 km/h, we know its speed. But if we say the car

travels at 60 km/h to the north, we specify its *velocity*. Speed is a description of how fast; velocity is how fast *and* in what direction. A quantity such as velocity that specifies direction as well as magnitude is called a **vector quantity.** Recall from Chapter 2 that force is a vector quantity, requiring both magnitude and direction for its description. Likewise, velocity is a vector quantity. In contrast, a quantity that requires only magnitude for a description is called a **scalar quantity.** Speed is a scalar quantity.



Constant Velocity

Constant speed means steady speed. Something with constant speed doesn't speed up or slow down. Constant velocity, on the other hand, means both constant speed *and* constant direction. Constant direction is a straight line—the object's path doesn't curve. So constant velocity means motion in a straight line at a constant speed.

FIGURE 3.3
The car on the circular track may have a constant speed, but its velocity is changing every instant. Why?

Changing Velocity

If either the speed or the direction changes (or if both change), then the velocity changes. A car on a curved track, for example, may have a constant speed, but, because its direction is changing, its velocity is not constant. We'll see in the next section that it is *accelerating*.

CHECK POINT

1. **"She moves at a constant speed in a constant direction." Rephrase the same sentence in fewer words.**
2. **The speedometer of a car moving to the east reads 100 km/h. The car passes another car that is moving to the west at 100 km/h. Do both cars have the same speed? Do they have the same velocity?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. "She moves at a constant velocity."
2. Both cars have the same speed, but they have opposite velocities because they are moving in opposite directions.

FIGURE 3.4
We say that a body is accelerating when its velocity is changing.

3.3 Acceleration

We can change the velocity of something by changing its speed, by changing its direction, or by changing both its speed *and* its direction. How quickly and in what direction velocity changes is **acceleration:**[2]

$$\text{Acceleration} = \frac{\text{change of velocity}}{\text{time interval}}$$

We are familiar with acceleration in an automobile. When the driver depresses the gas pedal (appropriately called the accelerator), the passengers experience acceleration (or "pickup," as it is sometimes called) as they are pressed against

[2]The phrases "change in" and "difference in" can be represented with the Greek symbol delta, Δ. Then we can express acceleration as $\frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t}$, where Δv is the change in velocity and Δt is the corresponding change in time. The expression gives *average acceleration*. Most accelerated motions treated in this book will be of constant acceleration.

their seats. The key idea that defines acceleration is *change*. Suppose we are driving and, in 1 second, we steadily increase our velocity from 30 kilometers per hour to 35 kilometers per hour, and then to 40 kilometers per hour in the next second, to 45 in the next second, and so on. We change our velocity by 5 kilometers per hour each second. This change in velocity is what we mean by acceleration.

$$\text{Acceleration} = \frac{\text{change of velocity}}{\text{time interval}} = \frac{5\ \text{km/h}}{1\ \text{s}} = 5\ \text{km/h} \cdot \text{s}$$

In this case, the acceleration is 5 kilometers per hour second (abbreviated as 5 km/h · s), in the forward direction. Note that a unit for time enters twice: once for the unit of velocity and again for the time interval in which the velocity is changing. Also note that acceleration is not just the total change in velocity; it is the *time rate of change*, or *change per second*, in velocity.

CHECK POINT

1. **A particular car can go from rest to 90 km/h in 10 s. What is its acceleration?**
2. **In 2.5 s, a car increases its speed from 60 km/h to 65 km/h while a bicycle goes from rest to 5 km/h. Which undergoes the greater acceleration? What is the acceleration of each?**

FIGURE 3.5
Rapid deceleration is sensed by the driver, who seems to lurch forward (in accord with Newton's first law).

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

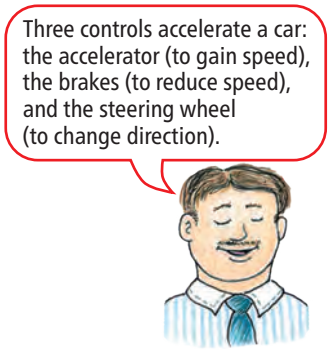
1. The acceleration is 9 km/h · s. Strictly speaking, this would be its average acceleration because there may have been some variation in its rate of picking up speed.
2. The accelerations of both the car and the bicycle are the same: 2 km/h · s.

$$\text{Acceleration}_{\text{car}} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{65\ \text{km/h} - 60\ \text{km/h}}{2.5\ \text{s}} = \frac{5\ \text{km/h}}{2.5\ \text{s}} = 2\ \text{km/h} \cdot \text{s}$$

$$\text{Acceleration}_{\text{bike}} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{5\ \text{km/h} - 0\ \text{km/h}}{2.5\ \text{s}} = \frac{5\ \text{km/h}}{2.5\ \text{s}} = 2\ \text{km/h} \cdot \text{s}$$

Although the velocities are quite different, the rates of *change* of velocity are the same. Hence, the accelerations are equal.

The term *acceleration* applies to decreases as well as to increases in velocity. We say the brakes of a car, for example, produce large retarding accelerations; that is, there is a large decrease per second in the velocity of the car. We often call this *deceleration*. We experience deceleration when the driver of a bus or car applies the brakes and we tend to lurch forward.

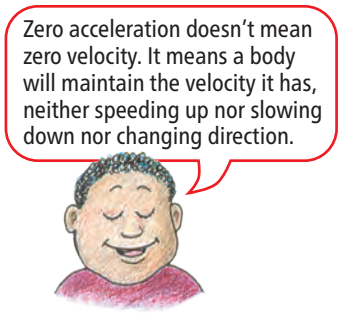

Three controls accelerate a car: the accelerator (to gain speed), the brakes (to reduce speed), and the steering wheel (to change direction).

We accelerate whenever we move in a curved path, even if we are moving at constant speed, because our direction is changing every instant—hence, our velocity is changing. We distinguish speed and velocity for this reason and define *acceleration* as the rate at which velocity changes, thereby encompassing changes both in speed and in direction.

Anyone who has stood in a crowded bus has experienced the difference between velocity and acceleration. Except for the effects of a bumpy road, you can stand with no extra effort inside a bus that moves at constant velocity, no matter how fast it is going. You can flip a coin and catch it exactly as if the bus were at rest. It is only when the bus accelerates—speeds up, slows down, or turns—that you experience difficulty standing.

In much of this book, we will be concerned only with motion along a straight line. When one-way straight-line motion is being considered, it is common to use the terms *speed* and *velocity* interchangeably. When direction doesn't change, acceleration may be expressed as the rate at which *speed* changes.

$$\text{Acceleration (along a straight line)} = \frac{\text{change in speed}}{\text{time interval}}$$


Zero acceleration doesn't mean zero velocity. It means a body will maintain the velocity it has, neither speeding up nor slowing down nor changing direction.

CHECK POINT

1. **What is the acceleration of a race car that whizzes past you at a constant velocity of 400 km/h?**
2. **Which undergoes greater acceleration: an airplane that goes from 1000 km/h to 1005 km/h in 10 seconds or a skateboard that goes from zero to 5 km/h in 1 second?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Zero, because its velocity doesn't change.
2. Both gain 5 km/h, but the skateboard does so in one-tenth the time. The skateboard therefore has the greater acceleration—in fact, ten times greater. A little figuring will show that the acceleration of the airplane is 0.5 km/h · s, whereas the acceleration of the slower-moving skateboard is 5 km/h · s. Velocity and acceleration are very different concepts. Distinguishing between them is very important.

Why do we study idealized cases of balls on smooth planes and falling with no air resistance? Why this focus on idealized cases that don't occur in the everyday world? Few pure examples exist in nature, for most real situations involve a combination of effects. There is usually a "first order" effect that is basic to the situation, but then there are second, third, and even fourth or more order effects also. If we begin studying a concept by considering all effects together, before studying their contributions separately, understanding will be more difficult. Instead, we strip a situation of all but the first order effect, and then we examine that. After a good understanding, we then proceed to investigate the other effects for a fuller understanding. If Galileo hadn't freed his thinking from real-world friction, he might not have made his great discoveries about motion.

Acceleration on Galileo's Inclined Planes

Galileo developed the concept of acceleration in his experiments on inclined planes. His main interest was falling objects, and, because he lacked accurate timing devices, he used inclined planes effectively to slow accelerated motion and to investigate it more carefully.

Galileo found that a ball rolling down an inclined plane picks up the same amount of speed in successive seconds; that is, the ball rolls with unchanging acceleration—constant acceleration. For example, a ball rolling down a plane inclined at a certain angle might be found to pick up a speed of 2 meters per second for each second it rolls. This gain per second is its acceleration. Its instantaneous velocity at 1-second intervals, at this acceleration, is then 0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, and so forth, meters per second. We can see that the instantaneous speed or

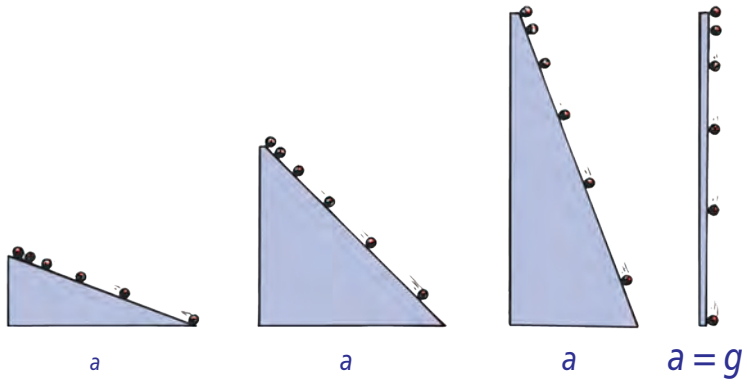


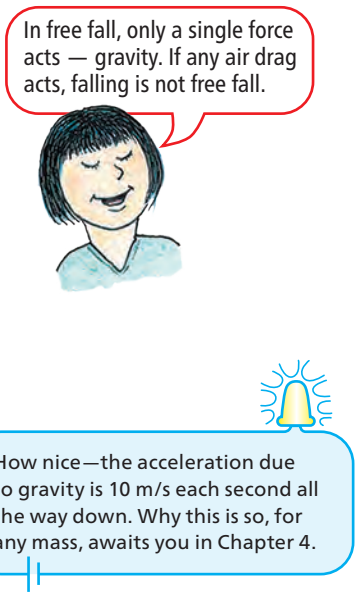
FIGURE 3.6
The steeper the slope of the incline, the greater the acceleration of the ball. What is the ball's acceleration if it falls vertically?

velocity of the ball at any given time after being released from rest is simply equal to its acceleration multiplied by the time:[3]

$$\text{Velocity acquired} = \text{acceleration} \times \text{time}$$

If we substitute the acceleration of the ball in this relationship (2 meters per second squared), we can see that, at the end of 1 second, the ball is traveling at 2 meters per second; at the end of 2 seconds, it is traveling at 4 meters per second; at the end of 10 seconds, it is traveling at 20 meters per second; and so on. The instantaneous speed or velocity at any time is equal to the acceleration multiplied by the number of seconds it has been accelerating.

Galileo found that acceleration down each incline was constant for each incline, with greater accelerations for steeper inclines. The ball attains its maximum acceleration when the incline is tipped vertically. Then it falls with the acceleration of a falling object (Figure 3.6). Regardless of the weight or size of the object, Galileo discovered that, when air resistance is small enough to be ignored, all objects fall with the same unchanging acceleration.


In free fall, only a single force acts — gravity. If any air drag acts, falling is not free fall.
How nice—the acceleration due to gravity is 10 m/s each second all the way down. Why this is so, for any mass, awaits you in Chapter 4.

3.4 Free Fall

How Fast

Things fall because of the force of gravity. When a falling object is free of all restraints—no friction, with the air or otherwise—and falls under the influence of gravity alone, the object is in a state of **free fall.** Table 3.2 shows the instantaneous speeds of a freely falling object at 1-second intervals. The important thing to note in these numbers is the way in which the speed changes. *During each second of fall, the object gains a speed of 10 meters per second.* This gain per second is the acceleration. Free-fall acceleration is approximately equal to 10 meters per second each second or, in shorthand notation, 10 m/s^2 (read as 10 meters per second squared). Again, we see that the unit of time, the second, enters twice—once for the unit of speed and again for the time interval during which the speed changes.

In the case of freely falling objects, it is customary to use the letter g to represent the acceleration (because the acceleration is due to *gravity*). The value of g is very different on the surface of the Moon and on the surfaces of other planets. Here on Earth, g varies slightly in different locations, with an average value equal to 9.8 meters per second each second or, in shorter notation, 9.8 m/s^2. We round

TABLE 3.2
FREE FALL FROM REST

Time of Fall (seconds)	Velocity Acquired (meters/second)
0	0
1	10
2	20
3	30
4	40
5	50
.	.
.	.
.	.
t	$10t$

[3]Note that this relationship follows from the definition of acceleration. For a ball starting from rest, $a = \Delta v/\Delta t$ can be written $a = v/t$ and then rearranged (multiplying both sides of the equation by t) to $v = at$.

this off to 10 m/s^2 in our present discussion and in Table 3.2 to establish the ideas involved more clearly; multiples of 10 are more obvious than multiples of 9.8. Where accuracy is important, the value of 9.8 m/s^2 should be used.

Note in Table 3.2 that the instantaneous speed or velocity of an object falling from rest is consistent with the equation that Galileo deduced with his inclined planes:

$$\text{Velocity acquired} = \text{acceleration} \times \text{time}$$

The instantaneous velocity v of an object falling from rest[4] after a time t can be expressed in shorthand notation as

$$v = gt$$

To see that this equation makes good sense, take a moment to check it with Table 3.2. Note that the instantaneous velocity or speed in meters per second is simply the acceleration $g = 10$ m/s^2 multiplied by the time t in seconds.

Free-fall acceleration is clearer when we consider a falling object equipped with a speedometer (Figure 3.7). Suppose a rock is dropped from a high cliff and you witness it with a telescope. If you focus the telescope on the speedometer, you'd note increasing speed as time progresses. By how much? The answer is, by 10 m/s each succeeding second.

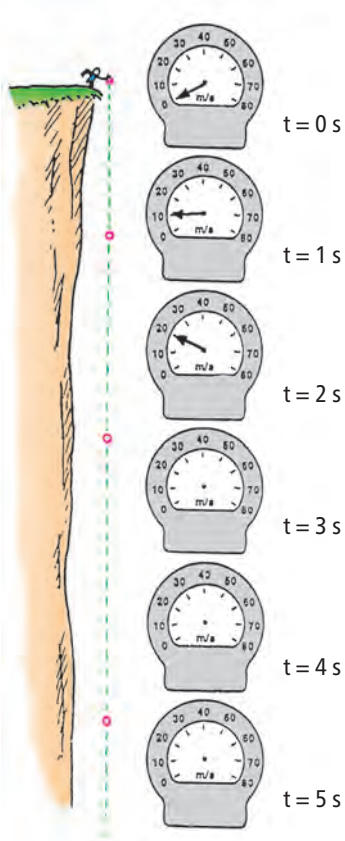


FIGURE 3.7
Pretend that a falling rock is equipped with a speedometer. In each successive second of fall, you'd find the rock's speed increasing by the same amount: 10 m/s. Sketch in the missing speedometer needle at $t = 3$ s, 4 s, and 5 s. (Table 3.2 shows the speeds we would read at various seconds of fall.)

CHECK POINT

What would the speedometer reading on the falling rock shown in Figure 3.7 be 5 s after it drops from rest? How about 6 s after it is dropped? 6.5 s after it is dropped?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

The speedometer readings would be 50 m/s, 60 m/s, and 65 m/s, respectively. You can reason this from Table 3.2 or use the equation $v = gt$, where g is 10 m/s^2.

So far, we have been considering objects moving straight downward in the direction of the pull of gravity. How about an object thrown straight upward? Once released, it continues to move upward for a time and then comes back down. At the object's highest point, when it is changing its direction of motion from upward to downward, its instantaneous speed is zero. Then it starts downward *just as if it had been dropped from rest at that height.*

During the upward part of this motion, the object slows as it rises. It should come as no surprise that it slows at the rate of 10 meters per second each second—the same acceleration it experiences on the way down. So, as Figure 3.8 shows, the instantaneous speed at points of equal elevation in the path is the same whether the object is moving upward or downward. The velocities are opposite, of course, because they are in opposite directions. Note that the downward velocities have a negative sign, indicating the downward direction (it is customary to call *up* positive and *down* negative). Whether the object is moving upward or downward, its acceleration is 10 m/s^2 the whole time.

[4]If, instead of being dropped from rest, the object is thrown downward at speed v_o, the speed v after any elapsed time t is $v = v_o + at = v_o - gt$, with the positive direction upward.

CHECK POINT

A ball is thrown straight upward and leaves your hand at 20 m/s. What predictions can you make about the ball? (Please think about this *before* reading the suggested predictions!)

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

There are several. One prediction is that the ball will slow to 10 m/s 1 second after it leaves your hand and will come to a momentary stop 2 seconds after leaving your hand, when it reaches the top of its path. This is because it loses 10 m/s each second going up. Another prediction is that 1 second later, 3 seconds total, it will be moving downward at 10 m/s. In another second, it will return to its starting point and be moving at 20 m/s. So the time each way is 2 seconds, and its total time in flight is 4 seconds. We'll now treat how far it travels up and down.

How Far

How *far* an object falls is entirely different from how *fast* it falls. With his inclined planes, Galileo found that the distance a uniformly accelerating object travels is proportional to the *square of the time*. The distance traveled by a uniformly accelerating object starting from rest is

$$\text{Distance traveled} = \tfrac{1}{2}(\text{acceleration} \times \text{time} \times \text{time})$$

This relationship applies to the distance something falls. We can express it, for the case of a freely falling object, in shorthand notation as

$$d = \tfrac{1}{2}gt^2$$

in which d is the distance something falls when the time of fall in seconds is substituted for t and squared.[5] If we use 10 m/s^2 for the value of g, the distance fallen for various times will be as shown in Table 3.3.

Note that an object falls a distance of only 5 meters during the first second of fall, although its speed is then 10 meters per second. This may be confusing; we may think that the object should fall a distance of 10 meters. But for it to fall 10 meters in its first second of fall, it would have to fall at an *average* speed of 10 meters per second for the entire second. It starts its fall at 0 meters per second, and its speed is 10 meters per second only in the last instant of the 1-second interval. Its average speed during this interval is the average of its initial and final speeds, 0 and 10 meters per second. To find the average value of these or any two numbers, we simply add the two numbers and divide the total by 2. This equals 5 meters per second, which, over a time interval of 1 second, gives a distance of 5 meters. As the object continues to fall in successive seconds, it will fall through ever-increasing distances because its speed is continuously increasing.

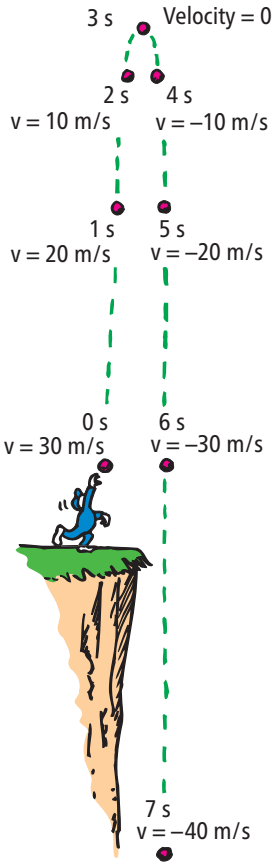


FIGURE 3.8
The rate at which the velocity changes each second is the same.

TABLE 3.3
DISTANCE FALLEN IN FREE FALL

Time of Fall (seconds)	Distance Fallen (meters)
0	0
1	5
2	20
3	45
4	80
5	125
.	.
.	.
.	.
t	$\frac{1}{2}10t^2$

[5]Distance fallen from rest: $d =$ average velocity $\times$ time

$$d = \frac{\text{initial velocity} + \text{final velocity}}{2} \times \text{time}$$

$$d = \frac{0 + gt}{2} \times t$$

$$d = \frac{1}{2}gt^2$$

(See Appendix B for further explanation.)

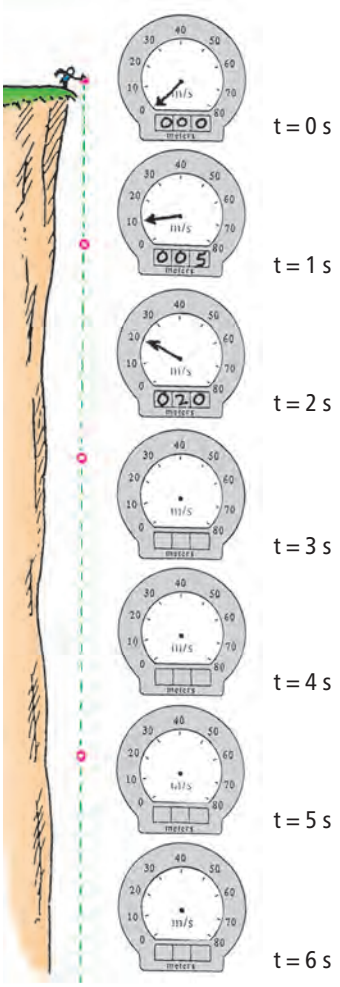


FIGURE 3.9
Pretend that a falling rock is equipped with a speedometer and an odometer. Each second, the speed readings increase by 10 m/s and the distance readings by $\frac{1}{2}gt^2$. Can you complete the speedometer positions and odometer readings?

CHECK POINT

A cat safely steps off a ledge and drops to the ground in 1/2 second.

a. What is its speed on striking the ground?

b. What is its average speed during the 1/2 second?

c. How high is the ledge from the ground?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

a. Speed: $v = gt = 10\ \text{m/s}^2 \times 1/2\ \text{s} = 5\ \text{m/s}$

b. Average speed: $\bar{v} = \dfrac{\text{initial } v + \text{final } v}{2} = \dfrac{0\ \text{m/s} + 5\ \text{m/s}}{2} = 2.5\ \text{m/s}$

We put a bar over the symbol to denote average speed: $\bar{v}$

c. Distance: $d = \bar{v}t = 2.5\ \text{m/s} \times 1/2\ \text{s} = 1.25\ \text{m}$

Or equivalently,

$$d = \tfrac{1}{2}gt^2 = \tfrac{1}{2} \times 10\ \text{m/s}^2 \times \left(\tfrac{1}{2}\text{s}\right)^2 = 1.25\ \text{m}$$

Notice that we can find the distance by either of these equivalent relationships.

Let's return to the rock equipped with a speedometer (Figure 3.9). For the first two seconds of free fall we see the readings for both speed and distance. Distances shown are 5 meters then 20 meters for the first two seconds of fall, which follow the $d = \frac{1}{2}gt^2$ rule. Can you figure the speed and distance readings from three to six seconds?

It is a common observation that many objects fall with unequal accelerations. A leaf, a feather, and a sheet of paper may flutter to the ground slowly. The fact that air resistance is responsible for these different accelerations can be shown very nicely with a closed glass tube containing light and heavy objects—a feather and a coin, for example. In the presence of air, the feather and coin fall with quite different accelerations. But, if the air in the tube is removed by a vacuum pump and the tube is quickly inverted, the feather and coin fall with the same acceleration (Figure 3.10). Although air resistance appreciably alters the motion of things like falling feathers, the motion of heavier objects like stones and baseballs at ordinary low speeds is not appreciably affected by the air. The relationships $v = gt$ and $d = \frac{1}{2}gt^2$ can be used to obtain a very good approximation for most objects falling in air from an initial position of rest.

Take some time to investigate Figure 3.11, which summarizes the essence of this chapter. In a nutshell, the distinction between speed and velocity is shown by car travel and airplane travel from San Francisco. Note how changes in speed affect acceleration by a car speeding up and slowing down, and then circling at a constant speed while accelerating around a circular track. A roller-coaster ride encompasses all. Acceleration is easiest to understand with the simple case of falling bodies.

FIGURE 3.10
A feather and a coin fall at equal accelerations in a vacuum.

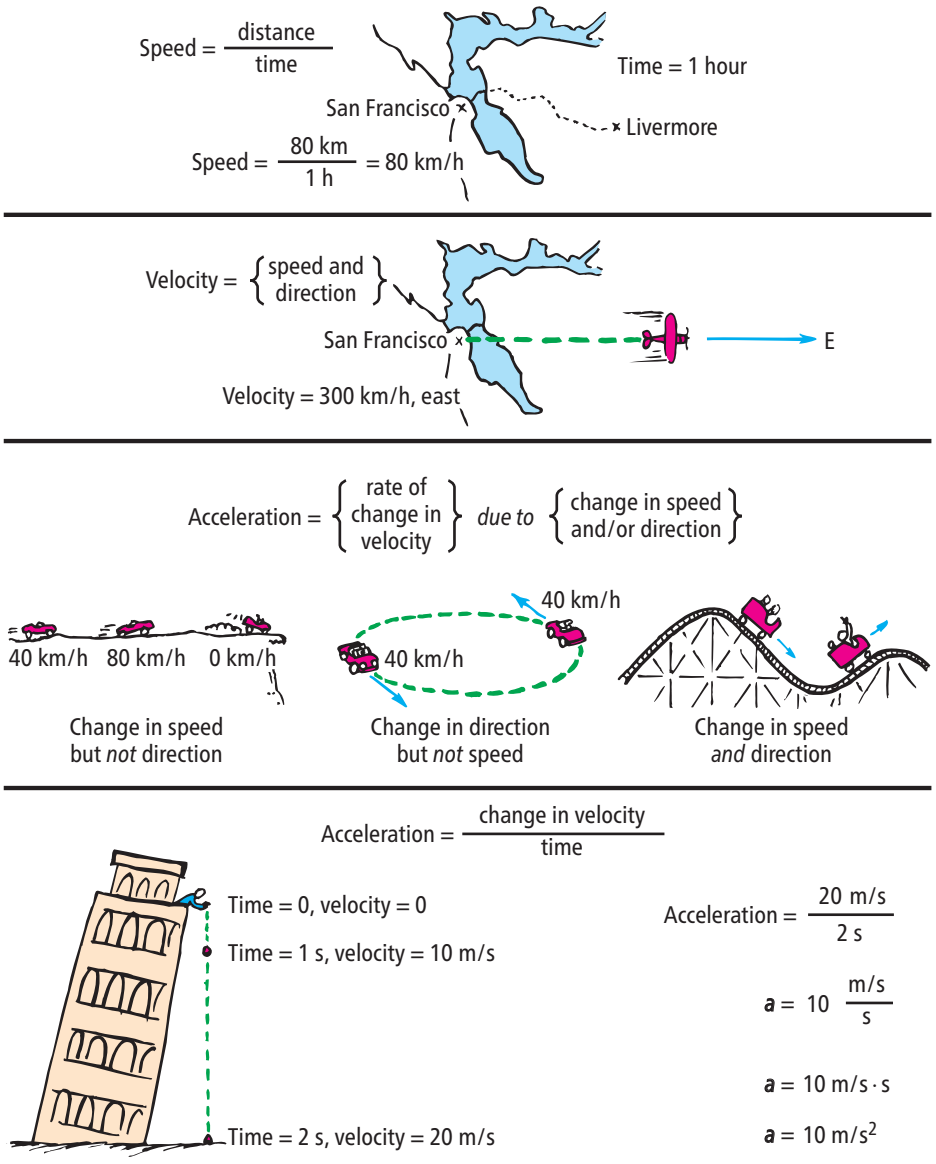

Speed = distance / time
Time = 1 hour
San Francisco
Livermore
Speed = 80 km / 1 h = 80 km/h
Velocity = { speed and direction }
San Francisco
E
Velocity = 300 km/h, east
Acceleration = { rate of change in velocity } due to { change in speed and/or direction }
40 km/h 80 km/h 0 km/h
Change in speed but not direction
40 km/h
40 km/h
Change in direction but not speed
Change in speed and direction
Acceleration = change in velocity / time
Time = 0, velocity = 0
Time = 1 s, velocity = 10 m/s
Time = 2 s, velocity = 20 m/s
Acceleration = 20 m/s / 2 s
a = 10 m/s / s
a = 10 m/s · s
a = 10 m/s²

FIGURE 3.11
Motion analysis.

How Quickly "How Fast" Changes

Much of the confusion that arises in analyzing the motion of falling objects comes about because it is easy to get "how fast" mixed up with "how far." When we wish to specify how fast something is falling, we are talking about *speed* or *velocity,* which is expressed as $v = gt$. When we wish to specify how far something falls, we are talking about *distance,* which is expressed as $d = \frac{1}{2}gt^2$. It is important to understand that speed or velocity (how fast) and distance (how far) are entirely different from each other.

A most confusing concept, and probably the most difficult encountered in this book, is "how quickly does how fast change"—acceleration. What makes acceleration so complex is that it is *a rate of a rate.* It is often confused with velocity, which is itself a rate (the rate of change of position). Acceleration is not velocity, nor is it even a change in velocity. It is important to understand that acceleration is the rate at which velocity itself changes.

HANG TIME

Some athletes and dancers have great jumping ability. Leaping straight up, they seem to "hang in the air," defying gravity. Ask your friends to estimate the "hang time" of the great jumpers—the time a jumper is airborne with feet off the ground. They may say 2 or 3 seconds. But, surprisingly, the hang time of the greatest jumpers is almost always less than 1 second! A longer time is one of many illusions we have about nature.

A related illusion is the vertical height a human can jump. Most of your classmates probably cannot jump higher than 0.5 meter. They can step over a 0.5-meter fence, but, in doing so, their body rises only slightly. The height of the barrier is different from the height a jumper's "center of gravity" rises. Many people can leap over a 1-meter fence, but only rarely does anybody raise the "center of gravity" of their body 1 meter. Even the greatest basketball stars can't raise their body 1.25 meters high, although they *can* easily reach considerably above the more-than-3-meter-high basket.

Jumping ability is best measured by a standing vertical jump. Stand facing a wall with feet flat on the floor and arms extended upward. Make a mark on the wall at the top of your reach. Then make your jump and, at the peak, make another mark. The distance between these two marks measures your vertical leap. If it's more than 0.6 meter (2 feet), you're exceptional.

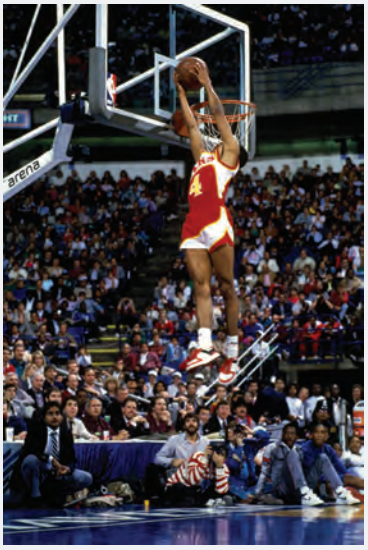
Here's the physics. When you leap upward, jumping force is applied only while your feet make contact with the ground. The greater the force, the greater your launch speed and the higher the jump. As soon as your feet leave the ground, your upward speed immediately decreases at the steady rate of g—10 m/s^2. At the top of your jump, your upward speed decreases to zero. Then you begin to fall, gaining speed at exactly the same rate, g. If you land as you took off, upright with legs extended, then time rising equals time falling. Hang time is the sum of rising and falling times. While you are airborne, no amount of leg or arm pumping or other bodily motions can change your hang time.

The relationship between time up or down and vertical height is given by

$$d = \tfrac{1}{2} g t^2$$

If we know the vertical height d, we can rearrange this expression to read

$$t = \sqrt{\frac{2d}{g}}$$



No basketball player is known to have attained a standing vertical jump of 1.25 meters. Setting d as 1.25 meters and using the more precise value of 9.8 m/s^2 for g, we solve for t, half the hang time, and get

$$t = \sqrt{\frac{2d}{g}} = \sqrt{\frac{2(1.25\ \text{m})}{9.8\ \text{m/s}^2}} = 0.50\ \text{s}$$

Double this (since this is the time for one way of the up-and-down round trip) and we get a record-breaking hang time of 1 second.

We're discussing vertical motion from a standing position here. Running jumps are a different story. When a foot bounds from the floor when running, liftoff speed can be increased. Aha, the increased liftoff speed extends hang time. Either way, whether jumping from rest or running, the jumper's horizontal velocity while airborne remains constant and only the vertical "component" of velocity undergoes change. We will return to this when we treat projectile motion in Chapter 10. Interesting physics!

3.5 Velocity Vectors

Whereas speed is a measure of "how fast," velocity is a measure of both "how fast" and "in which direction." If the speedometer in a car reads 100 kilometers per hour (km/h), you know your speed. If there is also a compass on the dashboard, indicating that the car is moving due north, for example, you know your velocity—100 km/h north. To know your velocity is to know your speed and your direction. Speed is a scalar quantity and velocity is a vector quantity.

Acceleration is also a vector quantity. Acceleration always acts in the direction of net force. In Figure 3.12, notice the relative directions of the red acceleration vectors and blue velocity vectors as a car speeds up, slows down, and changes directions. We see that acceleration and velocity sometimes, but not always, act in the same direction.

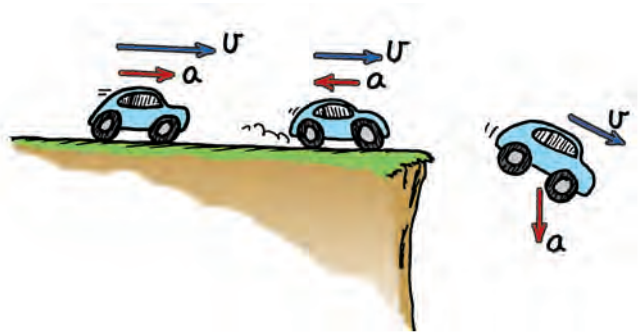


FIGURE 3.12
When you accelerate in the direction of your velocity, you speed up; when you accelerate against your velocity, you slow down; when you accelerate at an angle to your velocity, you change direction.

Vector thinking is important in swimming across a river, for there are two components of velocity to consider: your swimming velocity and the velocity of water flow in the river. To swim across, your swimming motion takes you straight to the opposite bank, but the current carries you along the direction of the river. The combination leads to a diagonal path downriver rather than to the point straight across.

The same is true of an airplane flying in a crosswind. An airplane flying at 120 km/h with no wind will cover 120 km in a one-hour flight. But if it is caught in a 90-km/h crosswind it will be blown off its intended course at an angle (Figure 3.13). The velocity vectors shown in the figure are scaled so that 1 cm represents 30 km/h. Thus, the 120-km/h velocity of the airplane is shown by the 4-cm vector, and the 90-km/h crosswind is shown by the 3-cm vector. The diagonal of the constructed rectangle measures 5 cm, which represents the resulting 150 km/h. So the airplane moves at 150 km/h relative to the ground in a direction rotated 37° from its intended direction.

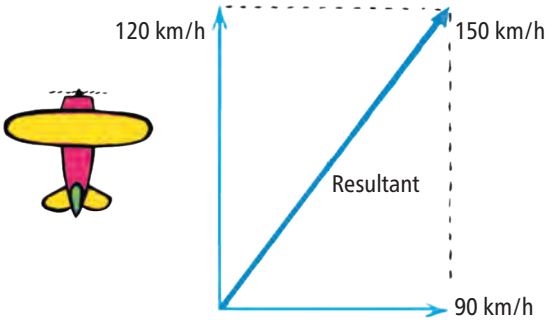


FIGURE 3.13
The 90 km/h crosswind blows the 120-km/h airplane off course at 150 km/h.

The pair of 6-unit and 8-unit vectors at right angles to each other say, "We may be a six and an eight, but together we're a perfect ten."

CHECK POINT

Suppose you swim at a steady speed of 4 m/s in still water. If you attempt to swim directly across a river that flows at 4 m/s, how fast will you be swimming relative to the shore?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Similar to the airplane blown off course, your path across the stream will be the diagonal of a square consisting of a pair of 4-m/s vectors at right angles to each other. Your resulting velocity will be $\sqrt{2}$ times the length of each 4-m/s side. So relative to the shore your swimming speed will be $\sqrt{2} \times 4\ \text{m/s} = 5.7\ \text{m/s}$.

Please remember that it took people nearly 2000 years from the time of Aristotle to reach a clear understanding of motion, so be patient with yourself if you find that you require a few hours to achieve as much!

Chapter 3 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Speed How fast an object moves; the distance traveled per unit of time.

Instantaneous speed The speed at any instant.

Average speed The total distance traveled divided by the time of travel.

Velocity An object's speed and direction of motion.

Vector quantity A quantity that has both magnitude and direction.

Scalar quantity A quantity that has only a magnitude, not a direction.

Acceleration The rate at which velocity changes with time; the change in velocity may be in magnitude, or direction, or both.

Free fall Motion under the influence of gravity only.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

3.1 Speed

1. Differentiate between average speed and instantaneous speed.
2. What kind of speed is registered by an automobile speedometer—average speed or instantaneous speed?
3. What is the average speed, in kilometers per hour, of a car that covers a distance of 10 kilometers in 10 minutes?
4. How far do you travel moving an average speed of 80 km/h for 30 min?
5. As you read the words on this page in your chair, how fast are you moving relative to the chair? Relative to the Sun?

3.2 Velocity

6. Why is velocity a vector quantity?
7. Can an object moving with constant velocity move in a curved path?
8. If a car moving at a steady speed rounds a corner at 60 km/h, does it maintain a constant speed? Maintain a constant velocity? Defend your answers.

3.3 Acceleration

9. A car's velocity increases from 40 to 50 km/h in 10 s when it is moving along a straight path. What is its acceleration?
10. What is the acceleration of a car that maintains a constant velocity of 120 km/h for 10 s?
11. When are you more aware of motion in a vehicle—when it is moving steadily in a straight line or when it is accelerating?
12. Acceleration is generally defined as the time rate of change of velocity. When can it be defined as the time rate of change of speed?
13. What did Galileo discover about a ball's gain in speed when rolling down an inclined plane? What did he discover about the ball's acceleration?
14. What is the relationship between velocity and acceleration? If the acceleration of a ball is 3 m/s^2, what is its velocity 2 seconds after starting from rest?
15. How much acceleration occurs for a ball on an inclined plane raised to be vertical?

3.4 Free Fall

16. How many forces act on a freely falling object?
17. How much air resistance acts on a freely falling object?
18. What is the relationship between instantaneous velocity and g for a freely falling body?
19. What is the speed acquired by a freely falling object 2 seconds after being dropped from a rest position? Will your answer change if the object was not at rest?
20. The acceleration of free fall is about 10 m/s^2. Why does the unit second appear twice?
21. What is the direction of acceleration for a body thrown upward?
22. What is the relationship between distance traveled and time for a uniformly accelerated body?
23. What is the distance fallen for a ball in free fall 1 s after being dropped from a rest position? What is the distance for a 5-s drop?
24. How does friction affect the free fall of an object?
25. Consider these values: 10 m, 10 m/s, and 10 m/s^2. Which value is a measure of speed, which of distance, and which of acceleration?

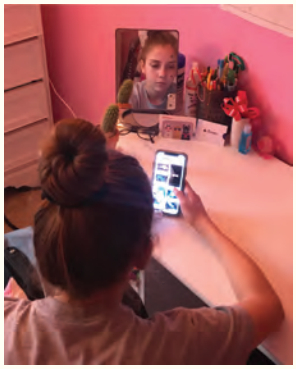
3.5 Velocity Vectors

26. How do speed and velocity differ?
27. Why will you swim faster directly across a river if the river flows at right angles to your intended path?
28. A bird flies at a particular speed in a crosswind that has the same speed. What part of a rectangle formed by velocity vectors represents the resultant speed?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

29. Your grandfather is interested in your educational progress. Without using equations, explain to him the difference between velocity and speed.

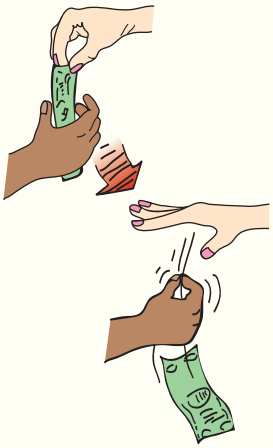
30. Use your smartphone to time how long it takes for a ball (or any object) to fall a given height. Do several trials and average the times. Use $d = \frac{1}{2}gt^2$ to see how close your answer matches the given height. Rearrange the equation to $g = 2d/t^2$ and see how close you get to 10 m/s^2 (or 9.8 m/s^2).



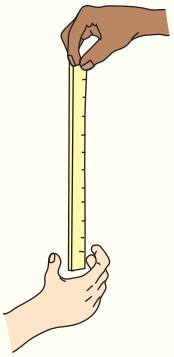
31. Test the accuracy of your *pedometer*, the step counter found in your smartphone or watch. Using a tape measure or meterstick, measure your stride—the distance between your feet when you step. Next, go for a walk while using the map app on your smartphone or watch and measure the distance of your walk. Then multiply the number of steps on your pedometer by your stride length. Did it match the distance that you measured?

32. Try this with your friends. Hold a dollar bill so that the midpoint hangs between a friend's fingers and challenge them to catch it by snapping their fingers shut when you release it. Your friend won't be able to catch it!

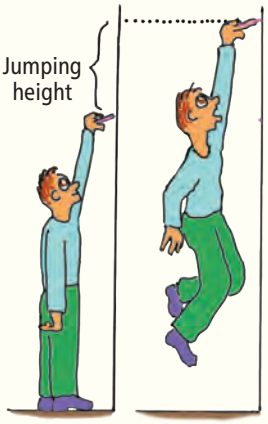
    Explanation: From $d = \frac{1}{2}gt^2$, the bill will fall a distance of 8 centimeters (half the length of the bill) in a time of 1/8 second, but the time required for the necessary impulses to travel from their eye to their brain to their fingers is at least 1/7 second.



33. Compare your reaction time with a friend's reaction time by catching a ruler that is dropped between your fingers. Have a friend hold the ruler as shown and you snap your fingers as soon as you see the ruler released. The number of centimeters that pass through your fingers depends on your reaction time. You can express this in fractions of a second by rearranging $d = \frac{1}{2}gt^2$. Expressed for time, $t = \sqrt{2d/g} = 0.045\sqrt{d}$, where d is in centimeters.



34. Stand flatfooted next to a wall. Make a mark on the wall at the highest point you can reach. Then jump vertically and make another mark. The distance between the two marks is your vertical jumping distance. Use this data to calculate your personal hang time.



PLUG AND CHUG (EQUATION FAMILIARIZATION)

These are "plug-in-the-number" one-step substitution type activities to familiarize you with the equations of the chapter. They are less challenging than Think and Solves.

$$\text{Speed} = \frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time}}$$

35. A man walks 3.0 meters in 1.2 seconds. Calculate the speed at which he is walking.

$$\text{Average speed} = \frac{\text{total distance covered}}{\text{time interval}}$$

36. Show that the average speed of a tortoise that covers a distance of 10 cm in 10 s is 0.01 m/s.

$$\text{Acceleration} = \frac{\text{change of velocity}}{\text{time interval}} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t}$$

37. Calculate the acceleration of a car that starts from rest and reaches 120 km/h in 15 s.

38. Calculate the acceleration of a mongoose when it increases its velocity from rest to 21 m/s in 3 s.

$$\text{Distance} = \text{average speed} \times \text{time}$$

39. If the average speed of a man is 0.9 m/s, then calculate the distance he covers in 10 s.

$$\text{Free-fall distance from rest: } d = \frac{1}{2}gt^2$$

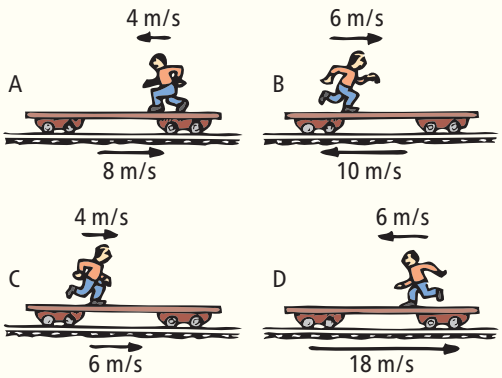
40. Show that a freely falling rock drops a distance of 20 m when it falls from rest for 2 s.

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

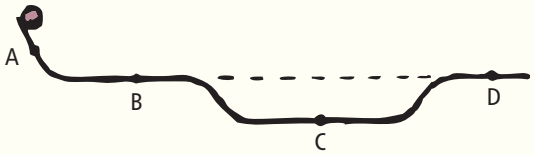
41. What is the instantaneous velocity of a freely falling object 10 s after it is released from a position of rest? (a) What is its average velocity during this 10-s interval? (b) How far will it fall during this time?
42. A car takes 10 s to go from 0 m/s to 25 m/s at constant acceleration. If you wish to find the distance traveled using the equation $d = \frac{1}{2}at^2$, what value should you use for a?
43. A ball is tossed with enough speed straight up so that it is in the air for several seconds.
    (a) What is the velocity of the ball when it reaches its highest point?
    (b) What is its velocity 1 s before it reaches its highest point?
    (c) What is the change in its velocity during this 1-s interval?
    (d) What is its velocity 1 s after it reaches its highest point?
    (e) What is the change in velocity during this 1-s interval?
    (f) What is the change in velocity during the 2-s interval? (Careful!)
    (g) What is the acceleration of the ball during any of these time intervals and at the moment the ball has zero velocity?
44. You toss a ball straight up with an initial speed of 20 m/s. How much time does it take to reach its maximum height (ignoring air resistance)?
45. Surprisingly, very few athletes can jump more than 2 feet (0.6 m) straight up. Use $d = \frac{1}{2}gt^2$ and solve for the time one spends moving upward in a 0.6-m vertical jump. Then double it for the "hang time"—the time one's feet are off the ground.
46. An airplane with an airspeed of 120 km/h lands on a runway where the wind speed is 40 km/h.
    (a) What is the landing speed of the plane if the wind is head on?
    (b) If the wind is a tailwind, coming from behind the airplane?
    (c) What would be the landing speed of the 120-km/h plane landing in a headwind of 120 km/h?
47. What is the speed over the ground of a mosquito flying 2 m/s relative to the air against a 2 m/s headwind?
48. What is the speed over the ground of a mosquito flying 2 m/s relative to the air caught in a 2 m/s right-angle crosswind?
49. Show that the speed of a bird that flies 10 km/h in a crosswind of 10 km/h is about 14 km/h.

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

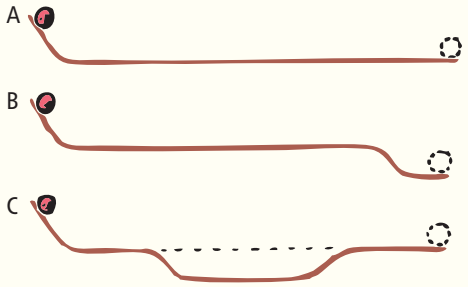
50. Jogging Jake runs along a train flatcar that moves at the velocities shown in positions A–D. Rank the velocity of Jake relative to a stationary observer on the ground from fastest to slowest. (Call the direction to the right positive.)



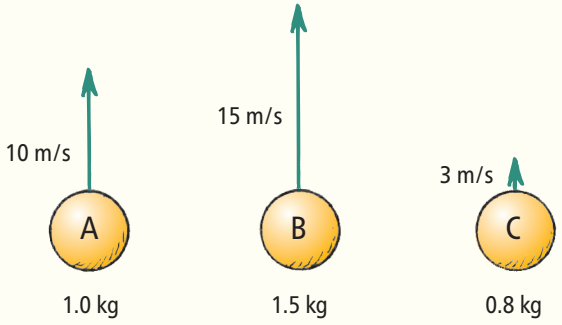
51. A ball released at the left end of the channel iron track continues past the various points as shown. Rank the speed of the ball at points A, B, C, and D, from fastest to slowest. (Watch for tie scores.)



52. A ball is released at the left end of these different tracks bent from equal-length pieces of channel iron.



    (a) Rank the speed of the ball at the right end of the track from fastest to slowest.
    (b) Rank the tracks in terms of the *time* for the ball to reach the end from longest to shortest.
    (c) Rank the tracks in terms of the *average speed* of the ball from greatest to least. Or do all balls have the same average speed on all three tracks?
53. Three balls of different masses are thrown straight upward with initial speeds as indicated.



(a) Rank the speeds of the balls 1 s after being thrown from fastest to slowest.

(b) Rank the accelerations of the balls 1 s after being thrown from greatest to least. (Or are the accelerations the same?)

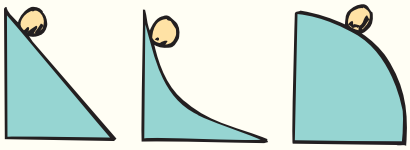
THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

54. Susan Burger can paddle a canoe in still water at 9 km/h. How successful will she be canoeing:
(a) upstream, and
(b) downstream in a river that flows at 9 km/s?
55. One airplane travels due north at 300 km/h, while another travels due south at 300 km/h. Are their speeds the same? Are their velocities the same? Explain.
56. Reckless Rick is driving along the road at 80 km/h and bumps into Hapless Harry, who is directly in front of him and is driving at 88 km/h. What is the speed of the collision?
57. Does the speedometer of a car indicate its average speed or its instantaneous speed?
58. If you are driving at a constant speed on a hill that has serpentine curves, when you turn your car, (a) does its velocity change, and (b) do you accelerate in this process?
59. Name the parameters that tell you (a) how fast you can go and (b) how fast you can get fast.
60. A deer accelerates to a speed of 30 km/h, and a buck accelerates to a speed of 40 km/h. Can you comment on which animal underwent maximum acceleration? Justify your answer.
61. What is the acceleration of a car that moves at a steady velocity of 100 km/h for 10 s? Explain your answer noting this is a question in reading as well as physics.
62. Which is greater, accelerating 25 km/h to 30 km/h or 96 km/h to 100 km/h, both occurring during the same time? Defend your answer.
63. Suppose that a freely falling object were equipped with a speedometer. By how much would its reading in speed increase with each second of fall?
64. Suppose that the freely falling object were equipped with a speedometer and an odometer. Would the readings of the distance fallen each second indicate equal or different falling distances for successive seconds?
65. For an object in free fall, how does its acceleration vary with the distance it travels?
66. Extend Tables 3.2 and 3.3 to include times of fall of 6 to 10 s, assuming no air resistance.
67. A metallic bob is made to fall freely from the top of the Eiffel Tower (300 m). Compute its acceleration:
(a) after 100 meters fall from the starting point and
(b) 100 meters before reaching the ground.
68. How will air drag affect the readings on the falling speedometer?
69. Compare the acceleration of a ball tossed straight upward with a ball simply dropped, neglecting air resistance.
70. When a ballplayer throws a ball straight up, by how much does the speed of the ball decrease each second while ascending? In the absence of air resistance, by how much does it increase each second while descending? What is the time required for rising compared to falling?
71. Billy Bob stands at the edge of a cliff (in Figure 3.8) and throws a ball nearly straight up at a certain speed and another ball nearly straight down with the same initial speed. If air resistance is negligible, which ball will have the greater speed when it strikes the ground below?
72. Billy Bob stands at the edge of a cliff and throws a ball nearly straight up at a certain speed and another ball nearly straight down with the same initial speed. If air resistance DOES affect the speed of the balls, which ball will have the greater speed when it strikes the ground below?
73. Why would it be dangerous to go outdoors on rainy days if there were no air resistance?
74. When you drive forward and apply your brakes, you have a positive velocity and negative acceleration. Cite a driving situation where you experience a negative velocity and a positive acceleration.
75. Why would a person's hang time be considerably greater on the Moon?
76. Why does a stream of water from a faucet get narrower as it falls?
77. If vertically falling rain makes 45-degrees slanted streaks on the side-door windows of a moving vehicle, how does the speed of the vehicle compare with the speed of the falling rain?

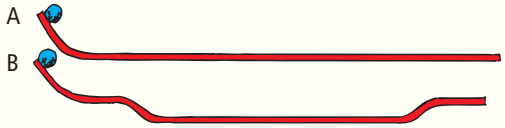
THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

78. If you throw a ball vertically upward against gravity, comment on the directions of the velocity and acceleration.
79. For a linear motion, what does it indicate if the direction of acceleration is opposite to that of the velocity?
80. You observe the speedometer of the car while your mother is driving. If you notice that the speedometer reading remains at 80 km/h while driving on a highway, what would you say about the car's acceleration?
81. Correct your friend who says, "The racing car rounded the curve at a constant velocity of 100 km/h."
82. Can the speed of a ball be zero while its acceleration is not zero? Cite a common example to your classmates.
83. Give an example of something that undergoes acceleration while moving at constant speed. Can something undergo acceleration while traveling at constant velocity? Discuss with your classmates.

84. On which of these hills does the ball roll down with increasing speed and decreasing acceleration along the path? (Use this example if you wish to explain the difference between speed and acceleration.)



85. Which of the three balls on the hilltop shown in the above art start to roll simultaneously, and which will reach the bottom first? Discuss your explanation.
86. Be picky and correct your friend who says, "in free fall, air resistance is more effective in slowing a kilogram of fur than a 1-kilogram bar of iron."
87. If you drop a ball and air resistance is not a factor, its acceleration toward the ground is 10 m/s^2. Would its acceleration after throwing the ball downward be greater than 10 m/s^2? Why or why not?
88. Why might the acceleration of an object thrown downward through the air be appreciably less than 10 m/s^2? Discuss your reason with your classmates.
89. Suppose a car is heading north. Considering the traffic, the car slowed down, causing deceleration. Comment on the direction of acceleration of the car.
90. Madison tosses a ball straight upward, and Anthony drops a ball. Your discussion partner says both balls undergo the same acceleration. What is your response?
91. Two balls are released simultaneously from rest at the left end of equal-length tracks A and B as shown.
    (a) Which ball reaches the end of its track first?
    (b) On which track is the average speed greater?
    (c) Why is the speed of the ball at the end of the tracks the same?



92. We studied idealized cases of balls rolling down smooth planes and objects falling with no air resistance. A classmate complains that all this attention focused on idealized cases is worthless because idealized cases simply don't occur in the everyday world. What positive response can be made for studying ideal cases in nature?
93. Make up a multiple choice question that would check a classmate's understanding of the distinction between speed and velocity.
94. Make up a multiple choice question that would check a classmate's understanding of the distinction between velocity and acceleration.

Remember, Reading Check Questions provide you with a self-check of your grasp of the central ideas of the chapter. The Plug and Chugs and Think and Solves focus on the mathematical nature of chapter material. You can employ your critical thinking with the Think and Ranks. The Think and Explain and Think and Discuss exercises are your "pushups" to round out coverage of the chapter material. Please don't compromise this educational opportunity by searching for answers on the web. THINK, not SEARCH!

CHAPTER THREE Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. If an object moves along a straight-line path at constant speed, then it must be
   (a) accelerating.
   (b) acted on by a force.
   (c) both of these.
   (d) neither of these.
2. The average speed of a ball rolling along a horizontal track will be increased if the track has a
   (a) small upward hump along it.
   (b) downward dip along it.
   (c) both the same if the hump and dip are opposites of each other.
   (d) not enough information
3. A mosquito flying at 2 m/s encounters a 2-m/s breeze blowing in the opposite direction, giving it a resulting speed over the ground of
   (a) 0 m/s.
   (b) 3 m/s.
   (c) 4 m/s.
   (d) 6 m/s.
4. Neglecting air resistance, when you toss a ball upward, by about how much does its upward speed decrease each second?
   (a) 10 m/s
   (b) 10 m/s^2
   (c) The answer depends on the initial speed.
   (d) None of these
5. The acceleration of a block of ice sliding down an inclined plane
   (a) increases with time.
   (b) decreases with time.
   (c) is practically constant.
   (d) need more information
6. During each second of free fall, the speed of a dropped object
   (a) increases by the same amount.
   (b) changes by increasing amounts.
   (c) remains constant.
   (d) doubles.
7. A freely falling object has a speed of 40 m/s at one instant. Exactly 1 s later its speed will be
   (a) the same.
   (b) 10 m/s.
   (c) 45 m/s.
   (d) greater than 45 m/s.
8. Mike stands at the edge of a cliff and throws one ball straight up and another ball straight down, both with the same speed. Neglecting air resistance, which ball hits the ground below with the greater speed?
   (a) The one thrown upward
   (b) The one thrown downward
   (c) neither, both hit with the same speed
   (d) need more information
9. Nellie steps off the edge of a table and lands on the floor below in ¼ second. The height of the table top above the floor is about
   (a) 1/3 m.
   (b) 1/2 m.
   (c) 3/4 m.
   (d) 1 m.
10. The vertical height attained by a basketball player who achieves a hang time of a full 1 s is about
    (a) 0.8 m.
    (b) 1 m.
    (c) 1.2 m.
    (d) 2.5 m.

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (d): Constant speed in a straight line means no net force and no acceleration in accord with the equilibrium rule. Only if the object were accelerating would a force be acting. So choice (d) is the answer. **2. (b):** The ball gains speed moving downward into the dip and loses the gain moving upward. Even so, everywhere in the dip its speed exceeds the speed along the horizontal part of the track. The upward hump decreases average speed. Hence the average speed along the entire track is increased by the presence of the dip. **3. (a):** The two speeds are relative to the ground; 2 m/s minus 2 m/s $= 0$. The mosquito "hovers" at rest above the ground. **4. (a):** Without air resistance, the acceleration of the ball everywhere along its path is g, 10 m/s^2, which means the ball's change in speed is 10 m/s for each second, whatever its initial speed. So the correct answer is (a). Other choices are incorrect. Note that choice (b) is not a speed, but an acceleration, as evidenced by the second squared. **5. (c):** Speed or velocity changes with time, but not acceleration. If the ramp is friction-free without curves or obstructions, acceleration will be constant. **6. (a):** In free fall the acceleration of an object is a constant g, which tells us speed constantly changes by 10 m/s each second. So (a) is the correct answer. Choice (c) may incorrectly confuse acceleration g, a constant, with speed v that changes with time. Choice (b) would apply to falling distance, not speed. Choice (d) indicates a wild guess, ouch! **7. (d):** A freely-falling body near Earth's surface gains a speed of 10 m/s for each second of fall. One second after reaching a speed of 40 m/s, the speed would be 50 m/s, which isn't a choice. Choice (d), however, says "greater than 45 m/s," which is true, making choice (d) the best answer. **8. (c):** The speeds at ground level are the same, because when the ball thrown upward returns to its starting level, it will have its same initial speed as when thrown, which will also be the same speed as when thrown downward. So either way, both hit the ground below at the same speed, but at different times. **9. (a):** Distance fallen from rest at a constant acceleration of 10 m/s^2 over a specific time is given by $d = \frac{1}{2}gt^2 = \frac{1}{2}$ (10 m/s^2)(1/4)$^2 = 0.31$ m $\approx$ 1/3 m. This is a straight plug in using that equation. **10. (c):** Hang-time is calculated from $d = \frac{1}{2}gt^2$. For a full 1-s jump, time up $=$ time down, which is $\frac{1}{2}$ s *either way*. *Then* $d = \frac{1}{2}gt^2 = \frac{1}{2}$(10 m/s^2)$(\frac{1}{2})^2 = 1.25$ m, close enough to 1.2 m that makes choice (c) the best answer.

CHAPTER FOUR

4 Newton's Second Law of Motion

4.1 Forces

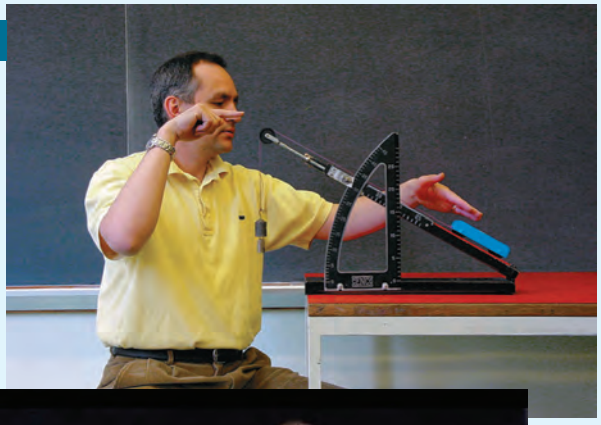
4.2 Friction

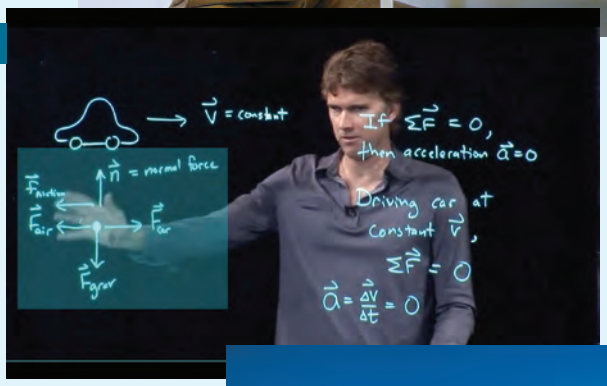
4.3 Mass and Weight
Mass Resists Acceleration

4.4 Newton's Second Law of Motion

4.5 When Acceleration Is *g*—Free Fall

4.6 When Acceleration Is Less Than *g*—Nonfree Fall





1 Efrain Lopez shows that when the forces on the blue block balance to zero, no acceleration occurs. **2** Matt Anderson invented this impressive Learning Glass to teach while facing his students. **3** Wingsuit flyers do what flying squirrels have always done, but faster. **4** Jill Evans asks her class why the heavier ball, when dropped, doesn't fall faster than the lighter ball.

Galileo introduced the concept of *acceleration*, the rate at which velocity changes with time—$a = \Delta v/\Delta t$. But what produces acceleration? That question is answered in Newton's second law. It is *force*. Newton's second law links the fundamental concepts of acceleration and force to Galileo's concept of *mass,* given by the famous equation $a = F/m$. Interestingly, Isaac Newton first became famous not for his laws of motion or even for his law of universal gravitation. His fame began with his study of light, finding that white light was composed of the colors of the rainbow.

Isaac Newton was born prematurely on Christmas Day, 1642, and he barely survived in his mother's farmhouse in England. His father died several months before his birth, and he grew up under the care of his mother and grandmother. As a child, he showed no particular signs of brightness; as a young teen, he was taken out of school to help manage his mother's farm. He had little interest in farming, preferring to read books he borrowed from a neighbor. An uncle, who sensed the scholarly potential in young Isaac, arranged for him to go back to school for a year and then graduate from the University of Cambridge, without particular distinction.

When a plague swept through England, Newton retreated to his mother's farm—this time to continue his studies. There, at the age of 22 and 23, he laid the foundations for the work that was to make him immortal. Legend tells us that seeing an apple fall to the ground led him to consider the force of gravity extending to the Moon and beyond. He formulated and applied the law of universal gravitation to solving the centuries-old mysteries of planetary motion and ocean tides, which we'll return to in Chapter 9.

At the age of 26 Newton was appointed the Lucasian Professor of Mathematics at Trinity College in Cambridge. He had personal conflicts with the religious positions of the College—namely, questioning the idea of the Trinity as a foundational tenet of Christianity at that time. It wasn't until Newton was 42 years of age that he included his three laws of motion in what is generally acknowledged as the greatest scientific book ever written, *Philosophiae Naturalis Principia Mathematica*.

When Newton was 46, his energies turned somewhat from science and he was elected to a one-year term as a member of Parliament. At 57, he was elected to a second term. In his two years in Parliament, he never gave a speech. One day he rose and the House fell silent to hear the great man. Newton's "speech" was very brief; he simply requested that a window be closed because of a draft. He was also a member of the Royal Society and at age 60 was elected president, then was reelected each year for the rest of his life.

Although Newton's hair turned gray at age 30, it remained full, long, and wavy all his life, and, unlike others in his time, he did not wear a wig. He was a modest man, overly sensitive to criticism, and never married. He remained healthy in body and mind into old age. At 80, he still had all his teeth, his eyesight and hearing were sharp, and his mind was alert. In his lifetime he was regarded by his countrymen as the greatest scientist who ever lived. He was knighted by Queen Anne in 1705.

Newton died at the age of 84 and was buried in Westminster Abbey along with England's monarchs and heroes. His laws of motion provided the foundation for the Apollo Program, which 282 years later put humans on the Moon. His first law was the law of inertia, as we saw in Chapter 2. In this chapter we treat his second law of motion.

4.1 Forces

Quite simply, a **force** is a push or pull. The nature of a force may be gravitational, electromagnetic, or one of the interactions that occur between particles at the nuclear level. In Chapters 9 and 10 we'll focus on gravitational forces. In Part 5 we'll study electromagnetic forces, and in Parts 6 and 7 we'll treat the forces within the atomic nucleus. At a deep level, the simple act of kicking a ball involves all these forces. We'll skip over that depth for now and instead treat forces simply as common-sense pushes and pulls, which were good enough for Newton and will be quite adequate as we learn about Newton's three laws of motion.

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

FIGURE 4.1
Kick the ball and it accelerates.

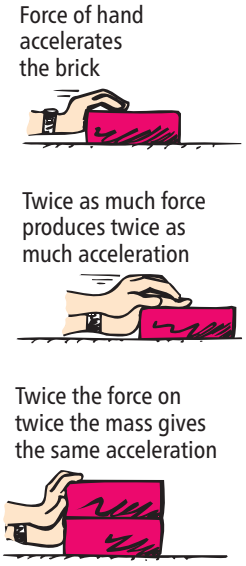

Force of hand accelerates the brick
Twice as much force produces twice as much acceleration
Twice the force on twice the mass gives the same acceleration

FIGURE 4.2
Acceleration is directly proportional to force.

Consider a hockey puck at rest on ice. Hit the puck (apply a force), and it briefly accelerates. When the hockey stick is no longer pushing it—that is, when no unbalanced forces act on the puck—it moves at constant velocity. Apply another force by striking the puck again, and again the motion changes. Unbalanced forces acting on an object cause the object to accelerate. Likewise for kicking a ball (Figure 4.1).

Most often, the applied force is not the only force acting on an object. Other forces may act as well. Recall from Chapter 2 that the combination of forces acting on an object is the *net force*. Acceleration depends on the net force. To increase the acceleration of an object, you must increase the net force acting on it. If you double the net force on an object, its acceleration doubles; if you triple the net force, its acceleration triples; and so on. This makes good sense. We say that an object's acceleration is directly proportional to the net force acting on it, and we write

$$\text{Acceleration} \sim \text{net force}$$

The symbol $\sim$ stands for "is directly proportional to." That means, for instance, if one doubles, the other also doubles.

CHECK POINT

1. **A jumbo jet cruises at a constant velocity of 1000 km/h when the thrusting force of its engines is a constant 100,000 N. What is the acceleration of the jet? What is the force of air resistance on the jet?**
2. **You push on a crate that sits on a smooth floor, and it accelerates. If you apply four times the net force, how much greater will be the acceleration?**
3. **If you push with the same increased force on the same crate on a very rough floor, how will the acceleration compare with pushing the crate on a smooth floor? *(Think before you read the answer below!)***

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The acceleration is zero because the velocity is constant. Zero acceleration means zero net force, which means that the force of air resistance must be equal and opposite to the thrusting force of 100,000 N. The two horizontal forces cancel each other and motion of the aircraft continues unchanged. (Note we don't need to know the velocity of the jet. All we need to know is that velocity is constant, our clue that both acceleration and net force are zero.)
2. The crate will have four times as much acceleration.
3. The crate will have less acceleration because friction will reduce the net force.

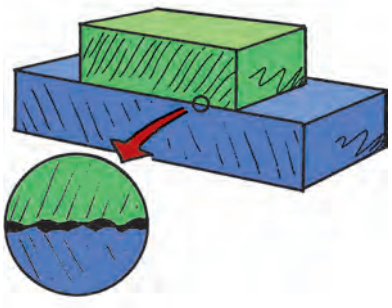


FIGURE 4.3
Friction results from surface irregularities and mutual attractions (stickiness) between atoms in the surfaces of sliding objects.

4.2 Friction

When surfaces slide or tend to slide over one another, a force of **friction** acts. When you apply a force to an object, friction usually reduces the net force and the resulting acceleration. Friction is caused by the irregularities in the surfaces in mutual contact, and it depends on the kinds of material and how much they are pressed together (Figure 4.3). Even surfaces that appear to be very smooth have microscopic irregularities that obstruct motion. Atoms cling together at many points of contact. When one object slides against another, it must either rise over the irregular bumps or else scrape atoms off. Either way requires force.

The direction of the friction force is always in the direction that opposes motion. An object sliding *down* an incline experiences friction directed *up* the incline; an object that slides to the *right* experiences friction toward the *left*. Thus, if an object is to move at constant velocity, a force equal to the opposing force of friction must be applied so that the two forces exactly cancel each other. The zero net force then results in zero acceleration and constant velocity.

No friction exists on a table at rest on a level floor. But if you push it a bit and it doesn't move, a force of friction between the table legs and the floor is produced (Figure 4.4). Still at rest, this tells you that the force of friction is equal and opposite to your push. The table is in static equilibrium. If you push a bit harder, the clinging force of friction may give way and the table slides.[1] If you push it horizontally at a steady speed in a straight-line path, it is in dynamic equilibrium. Your greater push is matched by greater friction. If you push harder and the table gains speed as it slides, then maximum friction exists between the table legs and the floor.

Interestingly, the friction of sliding is somewhat less than the friction that builds up before sliding takes place. Physicists and engineers distinguish between *static friction* and *sliding friction*. For given surfaces, static friction is somewhat greater than sliding friction. A pushed crate requires more force to get it going than to keep it sliding. Before the time of antilock brake systems, slamming on the brakes of a car was quite problematic. When tires lock, they slide, providing less friction than if they are made to roll to a stop. A rolling tire does not slide along the road surface, and the friction is static friction, with more grab than sliding friction. But once the tires start to slide, the friction force is reduced—not a good thing. An antilock brake system keeps the tires below the threshold of breaking loose into a slide.

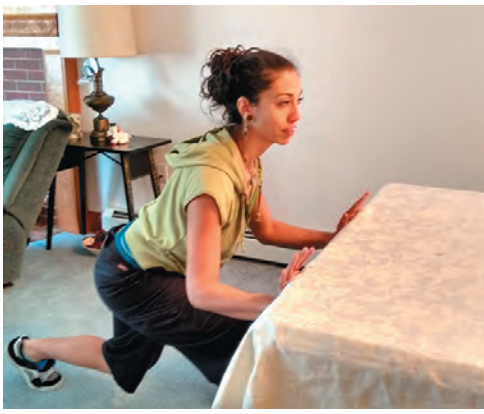


FIGURE 4.4
When Marie's push is as great as the force of friction between the table and the floor, the net force on the table is zero and it slides at an unchanging speed.

CHECK POINT

1. **Marie exerts a 100-N horizontal force on a table on the floor, and it doesn't slide. This indicates that 100 N isn't great enough to make the table slide. How does the friction force between the table and the floor compare with Marie's push?**
2. **She then pushes a little harder—say, with an extra 10 N—and the table still doesn't slide. How much friction acts on the table?**
3. **She pushes still harder, and the table moves. Once in motion, she finds that a push of 115 N is sufficient to keep the table sliding at a constant velocity. How much friction then acts on the table?**
4. **What net force acts on the sliding table when pushed with 125 N while the friction with the floor is 115 N?**
5. **In the above cases, when does *static friction* occur, and when does *sliding friction* occur? When does *no* friction occur?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The force of friction is 100 N in the opposite direction, which opposes motion that would occur otherwise. The fact that the table is at rest is evidence that $\Sigma F = 100\ \text{N} - 100\ \text{N} = 0$, static equilibrium.
2. The friction increases from 100 N to 110 N; again illustrating that $\Sigma F = 110\ \text{N} - 110\ \text{N} = 0$, static equilibrium.

[1]Even though it may not seem so yet, most of the concepts in physics are not really complicated. But friction is different; it *is* a very complicated phenomenon. The findings are empirical (gained from a wide range of experiments) and the predictions approximate (also based on experiment).

3. The friction acting on the table is 115 N, because constant-velocity motion means that $\Sigma F = 115\ \text{N} - 115\ \text{N} = 0$, dynamic equilibrium.
4. The net force is 10 N, because $\Sigma F = 125\ \text{N} - 115\ \text{N}$. In this case, the crate accelerates.
5. When the table is pushed and remains motionless, the force at the floor is *static friction*, which keeps it from sliding. When the table does slide, *sliding friction* occurs, whether velocity changes or it stays constant. No friction occurs when the table is at rest and no horizontal pushes act on it. A friction force occurs only when sliding or when an attempt to slide occurs.

FIGURE 4.5
Friction between the tire and the ground is nearly the same whether the tire is wide or narrow. The purpose of the greater contact area is to reduce heating and wear.

Tires have treads not to increase friction but to displace and redirect water from between the road surface and the underside of the tire. Many racing cars use tires without treads because they race on dry days.

It's also interesting that the force of friction does not depend on speed. A car skidding at low speed has approximately the same friction as the same car skidding at high speed. If the friction force on a tire is 100 newtons at low speed, to a close approximation it is 100 newtons at a higher speed. The friction force may be greater when the tire is at rest and on the verge of sliding, but, once sliding, the friction force remains approximately the same.

More interesting still, friction does not depend on the area of contact. For a narrower tire the same weight is concentrated on a smaller area with no change in the amount of friction. So those extra wide tires you see on some cars provide no more friction than narrower tires. The wider tire simply spreads the weight of the car over more surface area to reduce heating and wear. Similarly, the friction between a truck and the ground is the same whether the truck has four tires or eighteen! More tires spread the load over more ground area and reduce the pressure per tire. The stopping distance when brakes are applied is not affected by the number of tires. But the wear that tires experience very much depends on the number of tires.

Friction is not restricted to solids sliding or tending to slide over one another. Friction occurs also in liquids and gases, both of which are called *fluids* (because they flow). Fluid friction occurs as an object pushes aside the fluid it is moving through. Have you ever attempted a 100-m dash through waist-deep water? The friction of fluids is appreciable, even at low speeds. So, unlike the friction between solid surfaces, fluid friction depends on speed. A very common form of fluid friction for something moving through air is *air resistance,* also called *air drag.* You usually aren't aware of air resistance when walking or jogging, but you notice it at higher speeds when you ride a bicycle or ski downhill. Air resistance increases with increasing speed. A falling sack will reach a constant velocity when the air resistance balances the force due to gravity on the sack.

CHECK POINT

What net force does a sliding crate experience when you exert a force of 110 N and the friction between the crate and the floor is 100 N?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

10 N in the direction of your push (110 N − 100 N). The crate accelerates.

4.3 Mass and Weight

The acceleration imparted to an object depends not only on applied forces and friction forces but also on the inertia of the object, its resistance to changes in its motion. How much inertia an object possesses depends on the amount of matter

in the object—the more matter, the more inertia. In speaking of how much matter something has, we use the term *mass*. Our current understanding of mass delves into its source, the recently discovered Higgs boson. (Intriguing, indeed, and we'll touch on that in Chapter 32.) For now you'll first want to understand mass in its simplest sense—as a measure of the inertia of a material object. The greater the mass of an object, the greater its inertia.

Mass corresponds to our intuitive notion of weight. We casually say that something has a lot of matter if it weighs a lot. But there is a difference between mass and weight. We can define each as follows:

Mass: ***The quantity of matter in an object. It is also the measure of the inertia or sluggishness that an object exhibits in response to any effort made to start it, stop it, or change its state of motion in any way.***

Weight: ***Usually the force upon an object due to gravity.***

We say *usually* in the definition of weight because an object can have weight when gravity is not a factor, such as occurs in a rotating space station. In any event, near Earth's surface and in the absence of acceleration, mass and weight are directly proportional to each other.[2]

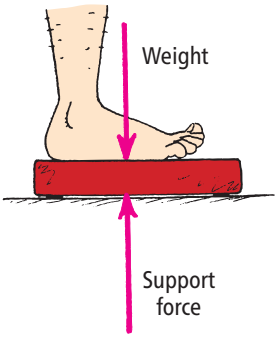


FIGURE 4.6
At equilibrium on a weighing scale, weight (mg) is balanced by an upward support force.

CHECK POINT

1. **Does a 2-kg iron block possess twice as much inertia as a 1-kg iron block? Twice as much mass as a 1-kg iron block? Twice as much volume as a 1-kg iron block? Twice as much weight as a 1-kg iron block weighed in the same location?**
2. **Does a 2-kg iron block possess twice as much inertia as a 1-kg bunch of bananas? Twice as much mass as 1-kg of bananas? Twice as much volume as 1 kg of bananas? Twice as much weight as a 1 kg of bananas when weighed in the same location?**
3. **How does the mass of a bar of gold vary with location?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The answer is yes to all of these questions. A 2-kg block of iron has twice as many iron atoms, and therefore twice the amount of inertia, mass, and weight. The blocks consist of the same material, so the 2-kg block also has twice the volume.
2. Two kilograms of anything has twice the inertia and twice the mass of 1 kg of anything else. Because mass and weight are proportional in the same location, 2 kg of anything will weigh twice as much as 1 kg of anything. Except for volume, the answer to all the questions is yes. Volume and mass are proportional only for the same material—for the same *density* (the same mass per volume). The density of iron is much greater than the density of bananas, so 2 kg of more-compact iron occupies less volume than 1 kg of bananas.
3. It varies not at all! The bar consists of the same number of atoms no matter what the location. Although its weight may vary with location, its mass is the same everywhere. That's why mass rather than weight is preferred in scientific studies.

[2]In Chapter 8 we'll discuss how the support force provided by rotation produces a *simulated gravity*, in which an astronaut in a rotating space habitat experiences weight.

The weight of an object of mass m due to gravity equals mg, where g is the constant of proportionality and has the value 10 N/kg (more precisely, 9.8 N/kg). Equivalently, g is the acceleration due to gravity, 10 m/s^2 (the unit N/kg is equivalent to m/s^2).

The direct proportion of mass to weight tells us that if the mass of an object is doubled, its weight is also doubled; if the mass is halved, the weight is halved. Because of this, mass and weight are often interchanged. Also, mass and weight are sometimes confused because it is customary to measure the quantity of matter in things (mass) by their gravitational attraction to Earth (weight). But mass is more fundamental than weight; it is a fundamental quantity that completely escapes the notice of most people.

There are times when weight corresponds to our unconscious notion of inertia. For example, if you are trying to determine which of two small objects is the heavier one, you might shake them back and forth in your hands or move them in some way instead of lifting them. In doing so, you are judging which of the two is more difficult to get moving, feeling which of the two is more resistant to a change in motion. You are really comparing the inertias of the objects—their masses.

CHECK POINT

If you were a passenger in the International Space Station and were confronted with two cans, one filled with refried beans and the other empty, how could you determine which is full and which is empty?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Shake the cans back and forth! Or move both in any way, and you'll immediately judge which one has a greater resistance to changes in motion. The can of refried beans is harder to shake, so it has more inertia, which is to say it has more mass.

In the United States, the quantity of matter in an object is commonly described by the gravitational pull between it and Earth, or its *weight,* usually expressed in *pounds*. In most of the world, however, the measure of matter is commonly expressed in a mass unit, the **kilogram.** At the surface of Earth, a brick with a mass of 1 kilogram weighs 2.2 pounds. In metric units, the unit of force is the **newton,** which is equal to a little less than a quarter-pound (like the weight of a quarter-pound hamburger *after* it is cooked). A 1-kilogram brick weighs about 10 newtons (more precisely, 9.8 N).[3]

Away from Earth's surface, where the influence of gravity is less, a 1-kilogram brick weighs less. It would also weigh less on the surface of planets that have weaker gravity than Earth. On the Moon's surface, for example, where the gravitational force on things is only one-sixth as strong as on Earth, a 1-kilogram brick weighs about 1.6 newtons (or 0.36 pound). On planets with stronger gravity,

[3]So 2.2 lb equal 9.8 N, or 1 N is approximately equal to 0.22 lb—about the weight of a small apple. In the metric system it is customary to specify quantities of matter in units of mass (in grams or kilograms) and rarely in units of weight (in newtons). In the United States and countries that use the British system of units, however, quantities of matter are customarily specified in units of weight (in pounds). (The British unit of mass, the slug, is not well known.) See Appendix A for more about systems of measurement.

it would weigh more, but the mass of the brick is the same everywhere. The brick offers the same resistance to speeding up or slowing down regardless of whether it's on Earth, on the Moon, or on any other body attracting it. In a drifting spaceship, where a scale with a brick on it reads zero, the brick still has mass. Even though it doesn't press down on the scale, the brick has the same resistance to a change in motion as it has on Earth. Just as much force would have to be exerted by an astronaut in the spaceship to shake it back and forth as would be required to shake it back and forth while on Earth. You'd have to provide the same amount of push to accelerate a huge truck to a given speed on a level surface on the Moon as on Earth. The difficulty of *lifting* it against gravity (weight), however, is something else. Mass and weight are different from each other (Figure 4.7).

FIGURE 4.7
The astronaut in space finds that it is just as difficult to shake the "weightless" anvil as it would be on Earth. If the anvil were more massive than the astronaut, which would shake more: the anvil or the astronaut?

A nice demonstration that distinguishes mass and weight is a massive ball suspended on a string as shown in the Chapter 2 opener photo and in Figure 4.8. The top string breaks when the lower string is pulled with a gradual increase in force, but the lower string breaks when the lower string is jerked. Which of these cases emphasizes the weight of the ball, and which emphasizes the mass of the ball? Note that only the top string bears the weight of the ball. So, when the lower string is gradually pulled, the tension supplied by the pull is transmitted to the top string. The total tension in the top string is the pull *plus* the weight of the ball. When the breaking point is reached, the top string breaks. But, when the lower string is jerked, the mass of the ball—its tendency to remain at rest—is responsible for the lower string breaking.

FIGURE 4.8
Why will a slow, continuous increase in downward force break the string above the massive ball, while a sudden increase will break the lower string?

It is also easy to confuse mass and volume. When we think of a massive object, we often think of a big object. We think of the **volume** of an object—the amount of space the object occupies. An object's volume, however, is not necessarily a good indication of its mass. Which is easier to get moving: a car battery or an empty cardboard box of the same size? So, we find that mass is neither weight nor volume.

CHECK POINT

In which case would it be easier to lift a cement truck: on Earth's surface or on the Moon's surface?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

A cement truck would be easier to lift on the Moon because the gravitational force is less on the Moon. When you *lift* an object, you are contending with the force of gravity (its weight). Although its mass is the same anywhere, its weight is only 1/6 as much on the Moon, so only 1/6 as much effort is required to lift it there. To move the truck horizontally on the Moon, however, you are not pushing against gravity. When mass is the only factor, equal forces will produce equal accelerations, whether the object is on Earth or on the Moon.

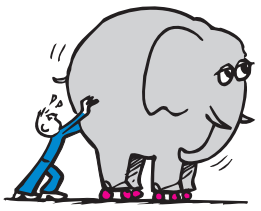


FIGURE 4.9
The greater the mass, the greater the force must be for a given acceleration.

Mass Resists Acceleration

Push your friend on a skateboard and your friend accelerates. Now push equally hard on an elephant on roller skates and the acceleration is much less. You'll see that the amount of acceleration depends not only on the force but also on the mass being pushed. The same force applied to twice the mass produces half the

FIGURE 4.10
An enormous force is required to accelerate this three-story-high earth mover when it carries a typical 350-ton load. Also, enormous-force brakes are required to stop it.

acceleration; for three times the mass, one-third the acceleration. We say that, for a given force, the acceleration produced is inversely proportional to the mass; that is,

$$\text{Acceleration} \sim \frac{1}{\text{mass}}$$

By *inversely* we mean that the two values change in opposite ways. For example, if one value doubles, the other value halves.

CHECK POINT

Fill in the blanks: Shake something to and fro and you're dealing with its _____.

Lift it against gravity and you're dealing with its _____.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS
Mass. Weight.

4.4 Newton's Second Law of Motion

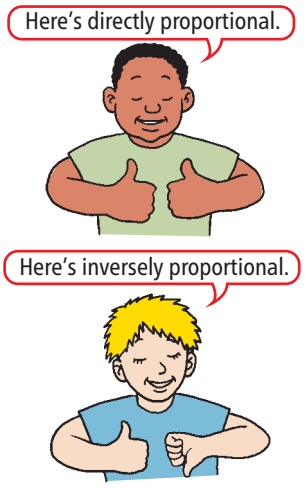
When two things are directly proportional to each other, as one increases, the other increases also. However, when two things are inversely proportional to each other, as one increases, the other decreases.

Newton was the first to discover the relationship among three basic physical concepts—acceleration, force, and mass. He proposed one of the most important rules of nature, his second law of motion. **Newton's second law** states:

> **The acceleration of an object is directly proportional to the net force acting on the object, is in the direction of the net force, and is inversely proportional to the mass of the object.**

In summarized form, this is

$$\text{Acceleration} \sim \frac{\text{net force}}{\text{mass}}$$



As said earlier, the wiggly line ~ as a symbol meaning "is proportional to." We say that acceleration a is directly proportional to the overall net force F and inversely proportional to the mass m. By this we mean that, if F increases, a increases by the same factor (if F doubles, a doubles), but if m increases, a decreases by the same factor (if m doubles, a is cut in half).

By using consistent units, such as newtons (N) for force, kilograms (kg) for mass, and meters per second squared (m/s^2) for acceleration, the proportionality may be expressed as an exact equation:

$$\text{Acceleration} = \frac{\text{net force}}{\text{mass}}$$

In its briefest form, where a is acceleration, F_{net} is net force, and m is mass, the equation becomes

$$a = \frac{F_{net}}{m}$$

An object is accelerated in the direction of the force acting on it. Applied in the direction of the object's motion, a force will increase the object's speed. Applied in the opposite direction, it will decrease its speed. Applied at right angles, it will deflect the object. Any other direction of application will result in a combination of speed change and deflection. *The acceleration of an object is always in the direction of the net force.*

Newton's second law can be rearranged to read $F = ma$. When the force on an object of mass m is due to gravity it is common to call the force *weight*. Then weight $= ma = mg$, where g is the acceleration of free fall. So we express the weight of objects as mg.

CHECK POINT

1. **In Chapter 3, acceleration was defined as the time rate of change of velocity; that is, a = (change in v)/time. Are we in this chapter saying that acceleration is instead the ratio of force to mass; that is, $a = F/m$? Which is it?**
2. **What three controls in an automobile allow the driver to produce acceleration? How does the automobile's mass affect the accelerations?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Acceleration is *defined* as the time rate of change of velocity and is *produced* by a force. How much force/mass (the cause) determines the rate change in v/time (the effect). So in this chapter we define the terms that produce acceleration.
2. The three controls are the accelerator (to increase speed), the brake pedal (to decrease speed), and the steering wheel (to change direction). The greater the mass of the vehicle, the greater the resistance to these changes. (Drivers of massive vehicles adjust to the sluggishness of velocity changes).

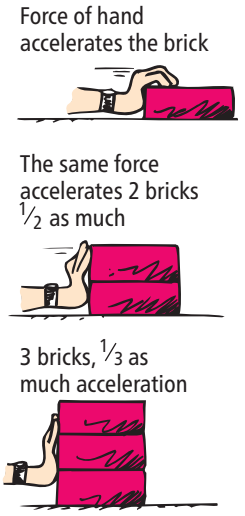


FIGURE 4.11
Acceleration is inversely proportional to mass.

4.5 When Acceleration Is g—Free Fall

Although Galileo introduced the concepts of both inertia and acceleration, and although he was the first to measure the acceleration of falling objects, he could not explain *why* objects of different masses fall with equal accelerations. Newton's second law provides the explanation.

We know that a falling object accelerates toward Earth because of the gravitational pull that Earth exerts on it. When the force of gravity is the only force acting on the object—that is, when friction (such as air resistance) is negligible—we say that the object is in a state of **free fall.**

The greater the mass of an object, the greater is the gravitational force of attraction between it and Earth. The double brick in Figure 4.12, for example, has twice the gravitational attraction of the single brick. Why, then, as Aristotle supposed, doesn't the double brick fall twice as fast? The answer is that the acceleration of an object depends not only on force but also on the object's resistance to motion, its inertia. Whereas a force produces an acceleration, inertia is a *resistance* to acceleration. So twice the force exerted on an object with twice the inertia produces the same acceleration as half the force exerted on an object with half the inertia. Both accelerate equally. The acceleration due to gravity is symbolized by g. We use the symbol g, rather than a, to denote that acceleration is due to gravity alone.

The ratio of gravitational force to mass for freely falling objects equals a constant—g. This is similar to the constant ratio of circumference to diameter for circles, which equals the constant π (Figure 4.13).

We now understand that the acceleration of free fall is independent of an object's mass. A boulder 100 times more massive than a pebble falls with the same acceleration as the pebble because, although the gravitational pull on the boulder is 100 times greater than the force on the pebble, the boulder's resistance to a change in motion (its mass) is 100 times that of the pebble. The greater force offsets the equally greater mass.

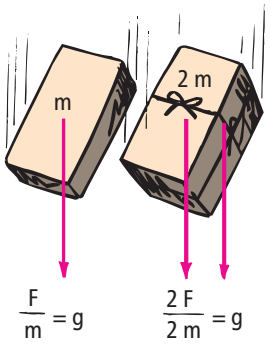


FIGURE 4.12
The ratio of the force of gravity (F) to mass (m) is the same for all objects in the same locality; hence, their accelerations are the same in the absence of air resistance.

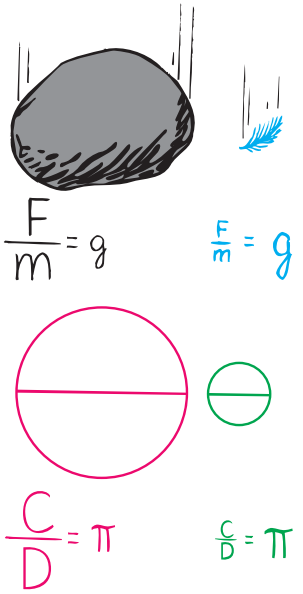


FIGURE 4.13
The ratio of the force due to gravity (F) to mass (m) is the same for both the large rock and the small feather; similarly, the ratio of circumference (C) to diameter (D) is the same for both the large and the small circles.

CHECK POINT

1. **In a vacuum, a coin and a feather fall at the same rate, side by side. Would it be correct to say that equal forces of gravity act on both the coin and the feather when in a vacuum?**
2. **How does the ratio of circumference to diameter for a circle, π, relate to free fall?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. No, no, no, a thousand times no! These objects accelerate equally not because the forces of gravity on them are equal but because the *ratios* of force to mass for each are equal. Although air resistance is not present in a vacuum, gravity is. (Spacecraft orbiting Earth in the vacuum of space are accelerated by Earth's gravity, which is why they don't move off in straight lines.)
2. As Figure 4.13 shows, π is a constant for all circles, large or small. Similarly, the ratio of gravitational force to mass is a constant, g, for all freely falling objects. Amazingly, Galileo was familiar with forces, masses, defined acceleration, and studied free fall. But he never connected the three, $a = F/m$, to beautifully explain free fall. That connection was made by Newton.

4.6 When Acceleration Is Less Than *g*—Nonfree Fall

Objects falling in a vacuum are one thing, but what about the practical cases of objects falling in air? Although a feather and a coin will fall equally fast in a vacuum, they fall quite differently in air. How do Newton's laws apply to objects falling in air? The answer is that Newton's laws apply for *all* objects, whether freely falling or falling in the presence of resistive forces. The accelerations, however, are quite different for the two cases. The important thing to keep in mind is the idea of *net force*. In a vacuum or in cases in which air resistance can be ignored, the net force is due only to gravity. In the presence of air resistance, however, the net force is less than the force due to gravity because of the opposite force arising from air resistance.[4]

When Galileo tried to explain why all objects fall with equal accelerations, wouldn't he have loved to know the rule $a = F/m$?

The force of air drag experienced by a falling object depends on two things. First, it depends on the frontal area of the falling object—that is, on the amount of air the object must plow through as it falls. Second, it depends on the speed of the falling object; the greater the speed, the greater the number of air molecules an object encounters per second and the greater the force of molecular impact. Air drag depends on the size and the speed of a falling object.

In some cases, air drag greatly affects falling; in other cases, it doesn't. Air drag is important for a falling feather. Because a feather has so much area for

[4]In mathematical notation,

$$a = \frac{F_{\text{net}}}{m} = \frac{mg - R}{m}$$

where mg is the force due to gravity and R is the air resistance. Note that when $R = mg$, $a = 0$; then, with no acceleration, the object falls at constant velocity. With elementary algebra we can go another step and get

$$a = \frac{F_{\text{net}}}{m} = \frac{mg - R}{m} = g - \frac{R}{m}$$

We see that the acceleration a will always be less than g if air resistance R impedes falling. Only when $R = 0$ does $a = g$.

an object so lightly pulled by gravity, it doesn't have to fall very fast before the upward-acting air resistance cancels the downward-acting force of gravity. The net force on the feather is then zero and acceleration terminates. When acceleration terminates, we say that the object has reached its **terminal speed.** If we are concerned with direction, down for falling objects, we say that the object has reached its **terminal velocity.**

The same idea applies to all objects falling in air. Consider skydiving. As a falling skydiver gains speed, air drag may finally build up until it equals the gravitational force on the skydiver. If and when this happens, the *net force* becomes zero and the skydiver no longer accelerates; she has reached her terminal velocity. For a feather, the terminal velocity is a few centimeters per second, whereas, for a skydiver, it is about 200 kilometers per hour. A skydiver may vary this speed by varying position. Head or feet first is a way of encountering less air and thus less air drag and attaining maximum terminal velocity. A lower terminal velocity is attained by spreading oneself out like a flying squirrel.

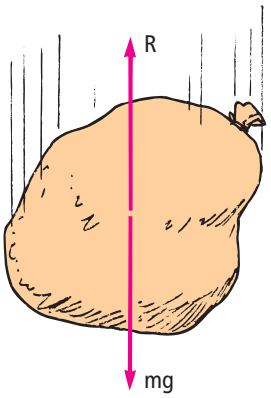


FIGURE 4.14
When the force due to gravity *mg* is greater than the air resistance *R*, the falling sack of mail accelerates. At higher speeds, *R* increases. When $R = mg$, the acceleration reaches zero, and the sack reaches its terminal velocity.

CHECK POINT

Nellie Newton skydives from a high-flying helicopter. As she falls faster and faster through the air, does her acceleration increase, decrease, or remain the same?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Acceleration decreases because the net force on Nellie decreases. Net force is equal to the force of gravity minus the air resistance on her, and since air resistance increases with increasing speed, net force and, hence, acceleration decrease. By Newton's second law,

$$a = \frac{F_{\text{net}}}{m} = \frac{mg - R}{m}$$

where *mg* is the force of gravity and *R* is the air resistance she encounters. As *R* increases, *a* decreases. Note that if Nellie falls fast enough so that $R = mg$, $a = 0$, then with no acceleration she falls at constant speed.

fyi

- Head-first, with arms tucked in, skydivers can reach terminal speeds of about 180 km/h (110 mph). Terminal speeds are lower with a wingsuit and greatly reduced with a parachute. Skydivers and flying squirrels are not alone in increasing their surface areas when falling. When the paradise tree snake (*Chrysopelea paradisi*) jumps from a tree branch, it doubles its width by flattening itself. It acquires a slightly concave shape and maneuvers itself by undulating in a graceful S shape, traveling more than 20 m in a single leap.

Terminal velocities are very much lower if the skydiver wears a wingsuit, shown in Figure 4.15. The wingsuit not only increases the frontal area of the diver but also provides a lift similar to that achieved by flying squirrels when

(a)

(b)

FIGURE 4.15
(a) A flying squirrel increases its frontal area by spreading out, which increases air resistance for a slower fall. (b) This is also true for the wingsuit flyer.

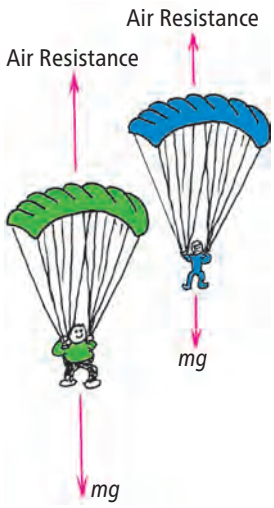


FIGURE 4.16
The heavier parachutist must fall faster than the lighter parachutist for air resistance to cancel the greater gravitational force pulling him down.

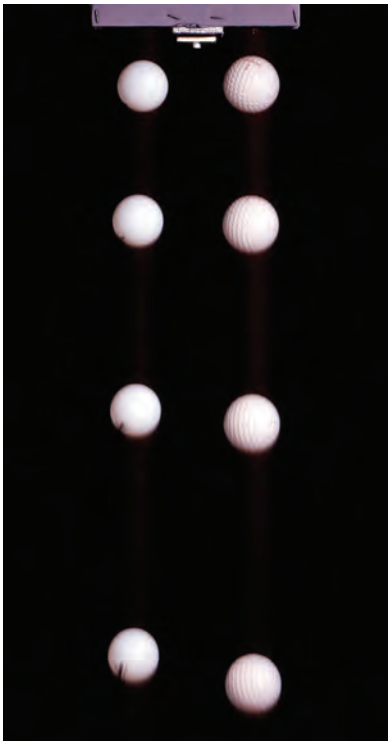


FIGURE 4.17
A stroboscopic study of a ping-pong ball (left) and a golf ball (right) falling in air.

they fashion their bodies into "wings." This exhilarating sport, *wingsuit flying,* goes beyond what flying squirrels can accomplish—a wingsuit flyer can achieve horizontal speeds up to 350 km/h (220 mph), and descent rates as low as 40 km/h (25 mph). Looking more like flying bullets than flying squirrels, these "bird people" use their high-performance wingsuits to glide with remarkable precision. To land safely, parachutes are deployed. At least one wingsuit flyer has landed safely without deploying a parachute.

The large frontal area provided by a parachute produces low terminal speeds for safe landings. To understand the physics of a parachute, consider a man and woman parachuting together from the same altitude (Figure 4.16). Suppose that the man is twice as heavy as the woman and that their same-sized parachutes are initially opened. Having parachutes of the same size means that, at equal speeds, the air resistance is the same on both of them. Who reaches the ground first: the heavy man or the lighter woman? The answer is that the person who falls faster gets to the ground first—that is, the person with the greater terminal speed. At first we might think that, because the parachutes are the same, the terminal speeds for each would be the same and, therefore, that both would reach the ground at the same time. This doesn't happen, however, because air drag depends on speed. Greater speed means greater force of air impact. The woman will reach her terminal speed when the air drag against her parachute equals the force of gravity pulling her downward. When this occurs, the air drag against the parachute of the man will not yet have reached this balance. He must fall faster than she does for the air drag to match the greater force of gravity on him.[5] Terminal velocity is greater for the heavier person, with the result that the heavier person reaches the ground first.

When comparing the effects of air drag on falling objects, think "weight minus air drag." Figure 4.17 shows a ping-pong ball and golf ball falling in air. The weight of the golf ball (right) is large compared to the air drag, so its acceleration of fall is nearly g. In contrast, the weight of the lighter ping-pong ball (left) and its air drag in falling results in a more reduced acceleration. Air drag on the ping-pong ball quickly builds up to equal its lighter weight, and it reaches terminal velocity sooner. The golf ball falls faster and reaches the floor first.

When Galileo allegedly dropped different-weight objects from the Leaning Tower of Pisa, they didn't actually hit at the same time. They almost did. Due to air drag, the heavier one hit slightly before the other. This contradicted the much longer time difference expected by the followers of Aristotle. The behavior of falling objects was never really understood until Newton announced his second law of motion.

There is a moral to be learned here. Whenever you consider the acceleration of something, use the equation of Newton's second law to guide your thinking: the acceleration is equal to the ratio of net force to mass, $a = F/m$. That equation was the foundation for getting men to the Moon. You should consider it quite worthy to be in your intellectual tool kit.

[5]The terminal speed for the twice-as-heavy man will be about 41% greater than the woman's terminal speed, because the retarding force of air resistance is proportional to speed squared. Hence air drag becomes more important for fast-moving things like racing cars and airplanes.

PROBLEM SOLVING

Newton's second law is a highly useful tool in many problem-solving situations. For example, if we know the force that acts on an object in newtons (N), and its mass in kilograms (kg), we can calculate its acceleration in one step. Note that the units N/kg are equivalent to m/s^2.

Problem 1

What is the acceleration produced by a net force of 2000 N exerted on a 1000-kg car?

Solution

Newton's second law tells us

$$a = \frac{F_{net}}{m} = \frac{2000\ \text{N}}{1000\ \text{kg}} = 2\ \text{N/kg} = 2\ \text{m/s}^2$$

Problem 2

Find the amount of force, or thrust, on a 20,000-kg jet plane to achieve an acceleration of 1.5 m/s^2.

Solution

We want a "$F =$" form of Newton's second law, so rearrange $a = F/m$ to read $F = ma$, and calculate

$$\begin{aligned} F &= ma \\ &= (20{,}000\ \text{kg}) \times (1.5\ \text{m/s}^2) \\ &= 30{,}000\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}^2 \\ &= 30{,}000\ \text{N} \end{aligned}$$

The centered dot between "1 kg" and "m/s^2" means that the units are multiplied. So we see that Newton's second law can be expressed as $F = ma$ as well as $a = \frac{F}{m}$.

Problem 3

Consider a problem expressed in symbols only: A force F acts in a forward direction on a carton of doughnuts of mass m, while a friction force f opposes the motion. Find the acceleration of the carton.

Solution

Using Newton's second law

$$a = \frac{F_{net}}{m} = \frac{F - f}{m}$$

Express this in numbers if the mass of the carton is 4.0 kg and the applied force is 12.0 N against a friction force of 6.0 N.

$$a = \frac{F - f}{m} = \frac{12.0\ \text{N} - 6.0\ \text{N}}{4.0\ \text{kg}} = 1.5\ \text{N/kg} = 1.5\ \text{m/s}^2$$

Physics problems are often more complicated than these. Although the focus of *Conceptual Physics* is on understanding concepts in everyday language, problem solving can add to this understanding.

Chapter 4 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Force Any push or pull exerted on an object, measured in newtons (or pounds in the British system).

Friction The resistive force that opposes the motion or attempted motion of an object either past another object with which it is in contact or through a fluid.

Mass The quantity of matter in an object. More specifically, it is the measure of the inertia or sluggishness that an object exhibits in response to any effort made to start it, stop it, deflect it, or change in any way its state of motion.

Weight The force upon an object due to gravity, *mg*. (More generally, the force that an object exerts on a means of support.)

Kilogram The fundamental SI unit of mass. One kilogram (symbol kg) is the mass of 1 liter (1 L) of water at 4°C.

Newton The Standard International (SI) unit of force. One newton (symbol N) is the force that will give an object of mass 1 kg an acceleration of 1 m/s^2.

Volume The quantity of space an object occupies.

Newton's second law The acceleration of an object is directly proportional to the net force acting on the object, is in the direction of the net force, and is inversely proportional to the mass of the object.

Free fall Motion under the influence of gravitational pull only.

Terminal speed The speed at which the acceleration of a falling object terminates because air resistance balances gravitational force.

Terminal velocity Terminal speed with direction specified.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

4.1 Forces

1. What is the simplest and most common type of force?
2. Will the acceleration of an object double if one of the forces acting on it doubles?

4.2 Friction

3. When a crate is pushed horizontally and doesn't slide along a level floor, how great is the force of friction on the crate?
4. Once the crate slides, how hard a push is needed to keep it sliding at constant velocity?
5. Why is it more difficult to get an object moving on a surface than to keep it moving?
6. How does the force of friction for a sliding object vary with the area of contact?
7. Is fluid friction affected by speed?

4.3 Mass and Weight

8. How is mass related to inertia? Does weight depend only upon mass?
9. Fill in the blanks: Shake a heavy box to and fro and you're measuring its _____. Lift it against gravity and you're measuring its _____.
10. Fill in the blanks: The International System (SI) uses metric units. The SI unit for mass is the _____. The SI unit for force is the _____.
11. What is the exact weight of a 2-kilogram brick resting on a table?
12. What is the weight in newtons of a 1-kilogram brick resting on a table?
13. In the string-pull illustration in Figure 4.8, a gradual pull of the lower string results in the top string breaking. Is this due mainly to the ball's weight or its mass?
14. In the string-pull illustration in Figure 4.8, a sharp jerk on the bottom string results in the bottom string breaking. Is this mainly due to the ball's weight or its mass?
15. The same force is applied to two bodies. How will their mass affect acceleration?

4.4 Newton's Second Law of Motion

16. Which three physical parameters does Newton's second law express the relationship between?
17. State Newton's second law with an equation.
18. If the acceleration of a sliding block is quadrupled, what can you infer about the net force?
19. If the mass of a sliding block is doubled while a constant net force is applied, by how much does the acceleration change?
20. If the mass of a sliding block is somehow doubled at the same time the net force on it is doubled, how does the resulting acceleration compare with the original acceleration?
21. What happens to the motion of an object when a force is applied opposite to its direction of motion?

4.5 When Acceleration Is *g*—Free Fall

22. What is the net force acting on a freely falling object?
23. The ratio of circumference/diameter for all circles is π. What is the ratio of force/mass for freely falling bodies?
24. Why do objects with different masses fall at the same rate during free fall?

4.6 When Acceleration Is Less Than *g*—Nonfree Fall

25. What is the net force that acts on a 10-N freely falling object?
26. What is the net force that acts on a 10-N falling object when it encounters 4 N of air resistance? 10 N of air resistance?
27. How does the force of air drag depend upon the speed of a falling object?
28. What is the acceleration of a falling object that has reached its terminal velocity?
29. Suggest a method by which two parachutists with different weights can land on the ground together.
30. If two objects of the same size fall through the air at different speeds, which encounters the greater air resistance?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Text Grandma about what you've learned about Galileo's concepts of acceleration and inertia. State how Galileo was familiar with forces but didn't comprehend, as Isaac Newton later did, the connection of force, acceleration, and mass that explains why heavy and light objects in free fall gain the same speed in the same time. In this text it's okay to use an equation or two as shorthand notation of ideas you'll share with Grandma.
32. Drop a sheet of paper and a coin at the same time. Which reaches the ground first? Why? Now crumple the paper into a small, tight wad and again drop it with the coin. Explain the difference observed. Will they fall together if dropped from a second-, third-, or fourth-story window? Try it and explain your observations.

33. Drop a book and a sheet of paper, and you'll see that the book has a greater acceleration—*g*. Repeat, but place the paper *beneath* the book so that it is forced against the book as both fall, so both fall equally at *g*. How do the accelerations compare if you place the paper on top of the raised book and then drop both? You may be surprised, so try it and see. Then explain your observation

34. Drop two balls of different masses from the same height, and, at small speeds, they practically fall together. Will they roll together down the same inclined plane? If each is suspended from an equal length of string, making a pair of pendulums, and displaced through the same angle, will they swing back and forth in unison? Try it and see; then explain using Newton's laws.
35. You can demonstrate that the net force acting on an object and the resulting acceleration are always in the same direction. Do this with a spool. If the spool is gently pulled horizontally to the right, in which direction will it roll? Does it make a difference if the string is at the bottom or the top of the spool spindle?

PLUG AND CHUG (EQUATION FAMILIARIZATION)

Make these simple one-step calculations and familiarize yourself with the equations that link the concepts of force, mass, and acceleration.

Weight = *mg*

36. Calculate the weight in newtons of a person who has a mass of 100 kg.
37. Calculate the weight in newtons of a 2000-kg elephant.

Acceleration: $a = \frac{F_{\text{net}}}{m}$

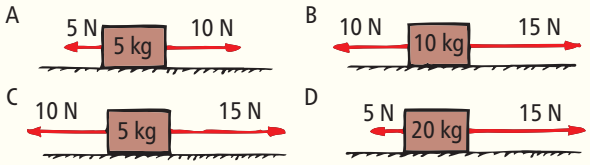
38. Calculate the acceleration of a 2000-kg, single-engine airplane as it begins its takeoff with an engine thrust of 500 N. (FYI: The unit N/kg is equivalent to m/s^2.)
39. Calculate the acceleration of a 300,000-kg jumbo jet just before takeoff when the thrust on the aircraft is 120,000 N.

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

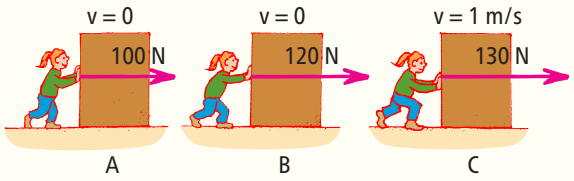
40. What is the net force acting on a 1-kg ball in free fall?
41. What is the net force acting on a falling 1-kg ball if it encounters 2 N of air resistance?
42. Gravity on the surface of the Moon is only 1/6 as strong as gravity on Earth. What is the weight of a 10-kg object on the Moon and on Earth? What is its mass on each?
43. A grocery bag can withstand 300 N of force before it rips apart. How many kilograms of apples can it safely hold?
44. A 40-kg block of cement is pulled sideways with a net force of 200 N. Show that its acceleration is 5 m/s^2.
45. From the previous chapter acceleration is defined; $a = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t}$. Show that the acceleration of a cart on an inclined plane that gains 6.0 m/s every 1.2 s is 5.0 m/s^2.
46. With Newton's second law; $a = \frac{F_{net}}{m}$, show that the acceleration of the cart on an inclined plane is 5.0 m/s^2 when it gains 6.0 m/s every 1.2 s.
47. A simple rearrangement of Newton's second law reads $F_{\text{net}} = ma$. Show that a net force of 84 N exerted on a 12-kg package is needed to produce an acceleration of 7.0 m/s^2.
48. The British system of units includes the slug as a unit of mass, where one slug is the same as 14.6 kg. What is the mass in slugs of a person who weighs 60 kilograms?
49. A mass of 1 kg is accelerated 1 m/s^2 by a force of 1 N. Show that the acceleration would be the same for a force of 2 N acting on a 2 kg mass.
50. A 30,000 kg business jet takes off when the thrust for each of its two engines is 30,000 N. Show that its acceleration is 2 m/s^2.
51. Frances, who has a mass of 85 kg, jumps down from a table. Just as they hit the floor, they are moving at 4.2 m/s, and 0.12 s later they have come to a complete stop.
    (a) Show that their deceleration is 35 m/s2.
    (b) Show that the force on them as they land is 2975 N.
52. A rock band's tour bus, mass *M*, is accelerating away from a STOP sign at rate *a* when a piece of heavy metal, mass *M*/5, falls onto the top of the bus and remains there.
    (a) Show that the bus's acceleration is now 5/6 *a*.
    (b) If the initial acceleration of the bus is 1.2 m/s^2, show that the acceleration of the bus with the heavy metal will be 1.0 m/s^2.

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

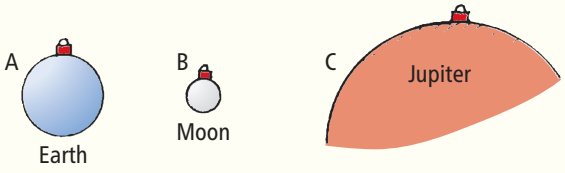
53. Boxes of various masses are on a friction-free level table. Rank each of the following from greatest to least.
    (a) net forces on the boxes.
    (b) accelerations of the boxes.



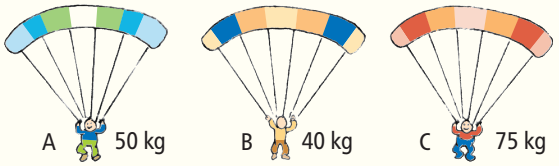
54. The crate is in equilibrium (no acceleration) in all three cases, A, B, and C. Rank them by the amount of friction between the crate and the floor, from greatest to least.



55. A 100-kg tool box is in locations A, B, and C. Rank from greatest to least the
    (a) masses of the 100-kg box.
    (b) weights of the 100-kg box.



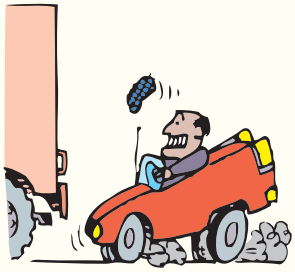
56. Three parachutists, A, B, and C, each have reached terminal velocity at the same distance above the ground below.
    (a) Rank the amount of their terminal velocities from fastest to slowest.
    (b) Rank the landing time from longest to shortest.



THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

57. A race car travels along a race track at a constant velocity of 200 km/h. What horizontal net force acts on the car?
58. If one quantity is *directly proportional* to another quantity, does this mean they are *equal* to each other? Explain briefly, using mass and weight.
59. You are sitting across the table from a friend and skillfully pass a drink bottle to them by giving it just the right push so it slides across the table and comes to rest in front of them. Where in this situation is the force of friction on the bottle equal to zero? Where in this situation is the force on the bottle from you equal to zero?
60. On a long lane, a bowling ball slows down as it rolls. Is any horizontal force acting on the ball? What is your evidence?
61. A motorcycle moves with a constant velocity. Can you conclude that there is no net force acting on it? Is there a net force if it accelerates?
62. Because an object weighs less on the surface of the Moon than on Earth's surface, does it have less inertia on the Moon's surface?
63. Which contains more apples?
    (a) A 1-pound bag of them on Earth or a 1-pound bag of them on the Moon?
    (b) A 1-kilogram bag of apples on Earth or a 1-kilogram bag of apples on the Moon?
64. Gold is sold by weight. Would it best that you purchase it in mountain-high Denver or Death Valley? If it were sold by mass, which of these locations makes the best buy? Defend your answers.
65. The weight of a bowling ball on the Moon is similar to the weight of a basketball on Earth. On Earth, you can comfortably kick a basketball hard enough that it travels 20 m along the ground. Could an astronaut on the Moon do the same with a bowling ball?
66. Your empty hand is not hurt when it bangs lightly against a wall. But why does it hurt if you're carrying a heavy load? Which of Newton's laws is most applicable here?
67. How will your weight change if you were to live on the Moon? Will your mass also change?
68. Two darts with different masses are thrown at a dartboard. If both arrive at the same speed which is more likely to stick into the dartboard, the lighter or the heavier dart? Explain your answer.
69. When a junked car is crushed into a compact cube, does its mass change? Does its weight change? Explain.
70. Suppose you stand on a weighing scale and toss a heavy object upward. What effect does this have on the scale reading?
71. How much has your mass decreased if your weight decreases by 2.0 N?
72. What is your mass in kilograms? Your weight in newtons?
73. You push a heavy crate on a factory floor with a horizontal force F and the crate doesn't move. How much, if any, friction acts on the crate?
74. Marie pushes on a table that slides at a constant speed across the floor.
    (a) What two horizontal forces act on the table?
    (b) Which force is greater?
    (c) Which force is greater if the sliding table gains speed?

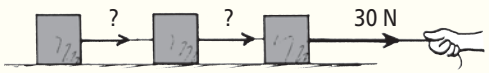
75. A 50-kg acrobat holds tightly to the top of a hanging rope, remaining stationary. They then begin to slide down the rope at a constant speed. What is the size of the friction force on the acrobat (a) when they are not moving, and (b) when they are sliding down the rope?
76. You're driving your car and the engine stops running. You step on the brake pedal to slow the car to half speed. If you release your foot from the brake pedal, will the car spontaneously speed up a bit, or will it continue at half speed and slow due to friction? Defend your answer.
77. When a car is backing out from a driveway, the driver applies the brakes. In what direction is the car accelerating?
78. The auto in the sketch moves forward as the brakes are applied. Do you agree or disagree with a bystander who says that during the interval of braking, the auto's velocity and acceleration are in opposite directions?



79. Aristotle claimed that the speed of a falling object depends on its weight. We now know that objects in free fall, whatever the gravitational forces on them, undergo the same gain in speed. Why do differences in their gravitational forces not affect their accelerations?
80. When blocking in football, a defending lineman often attempts to get his body under the opponent's body to push upward. What effect does this have on the friction force between the opposing lineman's feet and the ground?
81. Free fall is motion in which gravity is the only force acting.
    (a) When a glider is released from its towing airplane, is it in free fall?
    (b) Is the Moon in free fall?
82. When a coin is tossed upward, what happens to its velocity and acceleration while ascending? (Neglect air resistance.)
83. How much force acts on a tossed coin when it is halfway to its maximum height? How much force acts on it when it reaches its peak? (Neglect air resistance.)
84. Two rocks with different masses are thrown vertically upward such that they reach the same maximum height. At the maximum height, how does the gravitational force on the heavier rock compare to the lighter one? How do the accelerations compare?
85. A ball thrown upward is momentarily at rest at the top of its trajectory, and a ball sitting on the ground is also at rest. Does this mean that each ball has no force acting on it?
86. Riding a bicycle up a hill is hard work, because you must create an upward force to counter the downward force of gravity. Why then must you keep pedaling when you are riding at constant speed along a flat path?
87. What is the net force on a small 1-N apple when you steadily hold it above your head? What is the net force on the apple after you release it?
88. Striking a match against the side of a matchbox heats it up enough to light it. Where does the heat come from in this process?
89. A parachutist, after opening her parachute, finds herself gently floating downward, no longer gaining speed. The harness pulls upward while gravity pulls downward. Which of these two forces is greater, or are they equal in magnitude?
90. A raindrop falls an average distance of about 800 m before hitting the ground. Accelerating at around 10 m/s^2 (i.e., acceleration from gravity) for this distance would result in raindrops moving as fast as a bullet. Why don't raindrops cause serious damage when they hit us?
91. When a falling parachutist at terminal speed opens her parachute, in what direction does she accelerate?
92. How does the terminal speed of a parachutist before opening a parachute compare to terminal speed after the parachute is open? Why is there a difference?
93. What is the direction of the net force on a falling object just before it reaches terminal velocity? What about just after it reaches terminal velocity?
94. Why does a cat that accidentally falls from the top of a 50-story building hit a safety net below no faster than if it fell from the twentieth story?
95. Describe the similarities and differences in the motion of a marble falling in air compared to the same marble falling in water.
96. A boulder dropped from the roof of your school falls much more quickly than a ping-pong ball. Didn't Galileo say they would fall with equal accelerations?
97. Imagine that Galileo had dropped two balls of the same mass but different diameters from the top of the Leaning Tower of Pisa. Which one would hit the ground first, and why?
98. A regular tennis ball and another filled with lead pellets are dropped at the same time from the top of a building. Which one hits the ground first? Which one will experience greater air resistance? Defend your answers.
99. Why does a rocket become progressively easier to accelerate as it travels through space? (Hint: About 90% of the mass of a newly fired rocket is fuel. Let $a = F/m$ guide your thinking.)
100. In the absence of air resistance, if a ball is thrown vertically upward with a certain initial speed, on returning to its original level it will have the same speed. When air resistance is a factor, will the ball be moving faster, the same, or more slowly than its throwing speed when it gets back to the same level? Why? (Physicists often use a "principle of exaggeration" to help them analyze a problem. Consider the exaggerated case of a feather, not a ball, because the effect of air resistance on the feather is more pronounced and therefore easier to visualize.)
101. If a ball is thrown vertically into the air in the presence of air resistance, would you expect the time during which it rises to be longer or shorter than the time during which it falls? (Again use the "principle of exaggeration.")

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

102. Explain how Newton's first law of motion can be considered a consequence of Newton's second law.
103. Place a heavy book on a table and the table pushes up on the book. A friend reasons that the table can't push upward on the book because if it did, the book would rise above the table. What do you say to your friend? Why does this upward push not cause the book to rise from the table?
104. Discuss whether or not an object with zero velocity can have nonzero acceleration. If so, give an example; if not, explain.
105. Discuss whether or not a stick of dynamite contains force, distinguishing between *contain* and *exert*.
106. A satellite is orbiting the Earth at a constant speed. Discuss whether or not the satellite has zero acceleration, and therefore, zero net force on it.
107. An astronaut on the Moon lifts a rock over his head and then drops it. Discuss what force(s) act(s) on the rock as it drops.
108. Is changing your mass the only way to change your weight?
109. A heavy crate rests on a flat truck bed. When the truck accelerates, the crate also accelerates and remains in place. Identify and discuss the force that accelerates the crate.
110. Three identical blocks are pulled, as shown, on a horizontal frictionless surface. If tension in the rope held by the hand is 30 N, discuss what the tension is in the other ropes.



111. To pull a wagon across a lawn at a constant velocity, you must exert a steady force. Discuss and reconcile this fact with Newton's first law, which says that motion with constant velocity requires no force.
112. Translate this common saying via Newton's second law: "It's not the fall that hurts you; it's the sudden stop."
113. Sketch the path of a ball tossed vertically into the air. (Neglect air resistance.) Draw the ball halfway to the top, at the top, and halfway down to its starting point. Draw a force vector on the ball in all three positions. Is the vector the same or different in the three locations? Is the acceleration the same or different in the three locations?
114. Discuss how you can change the reading of the bathroom scale you are standing on without changing your mass. Explain in terms of force and acceleration.
115. When you jump vertically, you must initially accelerate upward. Discuss the direction of your acceleration as you land back on the ground.
116. A friend says that a vertically-tossed ball has zero acceleration at the top of its path. A second friend says if acceleration at the top were zero, the ball would remain at rest there. Solve this dilemma by calculating the acceleration of the ball at the top of its path via the equation $a = F/m$ to guide clear thinking.
117. Consider a falling object that experiences the drag force from air. Discuss whether or not the acceleration and velocity of the object ever point in opposite directions.
118. After watching an experiment where a hammer and a feather are dropped, your friend makes the following statement: "It is clear that the feather resists downward motion more than the hammer, so if they are both thrown upward, the feather will go higher than the hammer." Discuss any disagreement you have with this statement.
119. Upon which will air resistance be greater—a sheet of falling paper or the same paper wadded into a ball that falls at a faster terminal speed? (Careful!)
120. Hold a ping-pong ball and a golf ball at arm's length and drop them simultaneously. You'll see them hit the floor at about the same time. But, if you drop them off the top of a high ladder, you'll see the golf ball hit first. Explain and discuss.
121. Consider falling onto a trampoline and bouncing back up to a similar height. Discuss where in this motion the acceleration is downward and where, if anywhere, it is upward.
122. When air drag builds up to equal the combined weight of Dick and Jane in their tandem skydive, a terminal velocity of nearly 200 km/h is reached. How would this terminal velocity compare for each if they fell separately?
123. If you simultaneously drop a pair of tennis balls from the second story of a building, they will strike the ground at the same time. But if one tennis ball is filled with lead pellets, it will fall faster and hit the ground first. Which of the two balls encounters greater air resistance when falling? Why?
124. Design a simple experiment using everyday items that demonstrates how the concept of "all objects fall equally fast" is affected by air drag.

Notice that **THINK and Explains** and **THINK and Solves** emphasize *thinking*. In thinking through solutions, you exercise your brain circuitry—a major part of learning. Please don't short-circuit that thinking by *SEARCHING* on the Internet for solutions. In doing so you lazily bypass the process of forming new connections in your brain that wouldn't occur otherwise. Be nice to your brain!

CHAPTER FOUR Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. As mass is added to a cart pushed by a constant force, its acceleration
   (a) increases.
   (b) decreases.
   (c) remains constant.
   (d) gradually reaches zero.
2. Compared with a 2-kg block of solid iron, a 4-kg block of solid iron has the same
   (a) mass.
   (b) volume.
   (c) weight.
   (d) none of the above
3. An object with a very small mass must also have a very small
   (a) weight.
   (b) volume.
   (c) size.
   (d) all of these.
4. If Marie pushes horizontally on a table, but not hard enough to get it moving, the friction force acting on the table is
   (a) zero.
   (b) equal to the weight of the table.
   (c) equal and opposite to her push.
   (d) none of the above
5. A heavy block is suspended at rest by a vertical rope. When you raise the block at a constant velocity, the rope tension
   (a) is less than its weight.
   (b) equals its weight.
   (c) is greater than its weight.
   (d) is zero.
6. A heavy rock and a light rock in free fall (zero air resistance) have the same acceleration. The reason the heavy rock doesn't have a greater acceleration is that the
   (a) force due to gravity is the same on each.
   (b) air resistance is always zero in free fall.
   (c) inertia of both rocks is the same for both.
   (d) ratio of force to mass is the same for both.
7. You drop a pillow off the edge of the tallest building on your campus. While the pillow falls, its speed
   (a) and acceleration both increase.
   (b) increases and its acceleration decreases.
   (c) and acceleration both decrease.
   (d) decreases and its acceleration increases.
8. A 200-N sack of onions falls from an airplane. When the air resistance of the fall equals 200 N, the acceleration of the sack is
   (a) 0 m/s^2.
   (b) 5 m/s^2.
   (c) 10 m/s^2.
   (d) infinite.
9. The amount of air resistance that acts on a wingsuit flyer (and a flying squirrel) depends on the flyer's
   (a) frontal area.
   (b) speed.
   (c) area and speed.
   (d) acceleration.
10. Toss a ball vertically upward and its acceleration at the top of its path is
    (a) zero.
    (b) 10 m/s^2.
    (c) between zero and 10 m/s^2.
    (d) dependent on the mass of the ball.

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (b): If we read Newton's second law, $a = F/m$, we see that for a constant force F and increasing mass m, acceleration decreases. Let equations guide your thinking. **2. (d):** Density is the same for both blocks, but is not a choice. If you got this question wrong you may have been a victim of exam anxiety. **3. (a):** Mass and weight are directly proportional to each other, which make (a) the correct answer. Volume and size depend on density, so (b) and (c) are poor choices. **4. (c):** The still-at-rest table is in equilibrium. Therefore, her push must be countered by an equal and opposite force of friction. **5. (b):** "Constant velocity" is the key to this question. This means the raised block is in dynamic equilibrium, with tension equal to its weight. **6. (d):** This nicely illustrates Newton's second law—$a = F/m$, where F/m for both rocks is the same, g. This is NOT because of no air resistance, so choice (b) is not the reason. The force due to gravity nor the inertia is the same for the two rocks, which eliminates choices (a) and (c). Big F divided by big m gives the same acceleration as little F divided by little m, making choice (d) correct. (How Galileo would have loved seeing it that way!) **7. (b):** On your campus the pillow falls through air. Try to visualize it plowing through air as it gains speed. It's important to note that the *rate of gaining speed* decreases while it falls, but not speed itself. As speed increases, so does air resistance. That reduces the net force ($mg - R$) on the pillow, which means decreasing acceleration. In no way can acceleration increase during the fall. (If it falls fast enough, air resistance may decrease to zero and the pillow would reach terminal speed.) In the special case of dropping in a vacuum, the pillow would gain speed at a constant acceleration, g. **8. (a):** Only two forces act on the falling sack; weight and air resistance. Since they are equal in magnitude, they cancel to zero and acceleration likewise cancels to zero. **9. (c):** The frontal area of a flyer's body that encounters air as it moves certainly affects gliding, but so also does speed, which makes (c) the best answer. Acceleration may play a role, but a minor one compared with air and speed. **10. (b):** Choice (a) is likely confusing acceleration with velocity. Although the velocity at the top of the path is zero, acceleration is not! Let $a = F/m$ guide your thinking. At the top, the force of gravity F still pulls downward on the ball, and the ball certainly has mass m, so $F/m = mg/m = g$. Not zero! (This question is one that most all get wrong the first time encountered. This author included!)

CHAPTER FIVE

5 Newton's Third Law of Motion

5.1 **Forces and Interactions**

5.2 **Newton's Third Law of Motion**

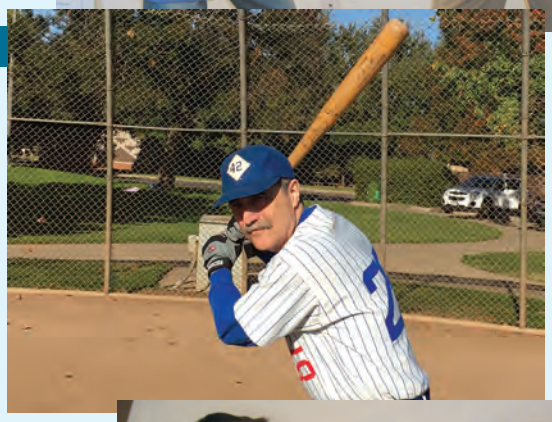
Simple Rule to Identify Action and Reaction

Defining Your System

5.3 **Action and Reaction on Different Masses**

5.4 **Vectors and the Third Law**

5.5 **Summary of Newton's Three Laws**



1 Darlene Librero pulls with one finger; Paul Doherty pulls with both hands. Who exerts more force on the scale? **2** Dave Kagan's bat cannot hit an oncoming ball *unless* the ball simultaneously hits the bat—that's the law! **3** Husband and wife physicists Toby and Bruna Jacobson push on a pair of bathroom scales. Which scale reading is higher? **4** Is Paul touching daughter Gracie, or is Gracie touching her dad? Newton's third law says both: You cannot touch without being touched.

For almost 20 delightful years I taught Conceptual Physics on Wednesday nights at San Francisco's Exploratorium. My classes were greatly enriched by the Exploratorium's founder, Frank Oppenheimer (1912–1985), who frequently sat in on my class and sometimes demonstrated some of his favorite topics (music and wave interference). After Frank died, another great physicist made visits to my classroom, Senior Scientist Paul Doherty (1948–2017). Paul Doherty was as personable and likely as brilliant as Frank, and like Frank could teach—*really* teach! It was an honor and a great pleasure to work with these two very special people!

Whenever I was stumped by some physics, Paul was there with answers. His wonderfully deep knowledge of physics accounts for his many awards and perhaps is why he graduated summa cum laude from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology and earned his physics PhD there four years later.

Paul was a physicist, teacher, author, eclipse chaser, and rock climber—excelling at all. He developed hundreds of science activities, authored dozens of articles, and coauthored a number of books. One of the most popular is the *Exploratorium Science Snackbook,* which has directions for building tabletop versions of Exploratorium exhibits and is valued by science teachers and students worldwide. Some students have even created mini museums to which they invite other classes.

Paul was a consummate showman, performing physics activities at professional meetings in the United States and abroad. He demonstrated the fascination of physics to millions on the *Late Show with David Letterman*. The photo shows how, after striking the end of an aluminum rod to make it ring, Paul squeezes the rod between his fingers to impose a node and choose a frequency.

His rock-climbing took him beyond frequent Yosemite visits, where he climbed the face of El Capitan, to making the first ascent of a 20,000-foot peak in the mountains on the Chile-Argentina border. His lower-altitude activities included doing physics in Antarctica.

An avid eclipse chaser, Paul was part of Exploratorium teams that webcast solar eclipses, often from remote parts of the world. Paul explained the science involved during the webcasts and always did activities with local students leading up to the big event.

How wonderful for teachers and their students that Paul's talent for teaching shined at the Exploratorium Teacher Institute, where he loved to work with secondary school science teachers. His enthusiasm for learning how the world works and for sharing his knowledge inspired teachers for 30 years. Paul beautifully stated the link he saw among scientists, teachers, and students: "Scientists look at the world and see things no one else has seen. Teachers help students see things they have never seen. Students ask questions that help teachers see things they have never seen."

Paul Doherty was a man for all seasons.

5.1 Forces and Interactions

So far we have treated force in its simplest sense—as a push or pull. Yet no push or pull ever occurs alone. Every force is part of an *interaction* between one thing and another. When you push on a wall with your fingers, more is happening than your push on the wall. You're interacting with the wall, which also pushes back on you. This is evident in your bent fingers, as illustrated in Figure 5.1. There is a pair of forces involved: your push on the wall and the wall pushing back on you. These forces are equal in magnitude (have the same strength) and opposite in direction, and they constitute a single interaction. In fact, you can't push on the wall *unless* the wall pushes back on you.[1]

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

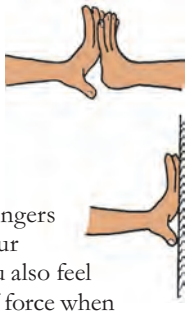


FIGURE 5.1
You can feel your fingers being pushed by your friend's fingers. You also feel the same amount of force when you push on a wall and it pushes back on you. As a point of fact, you can't push on the wall *unless* it pushes back on you!

[1]We tend to think that only living things are capable of pushing and pulling, but inanimate things can do the same. So please don't be troubled about the idea of the inanimate wall pushing on you. It does, just as another person leaning against you would.

FIGURE 5.2
When you lean against a wall, you exert a force on the wall. The wall simultaneously exerts an equal and opposite force on you. Hence you don't topple over.

Consider a boxer's fist hitting a massive punching bag. The fist hits the bag (and dents it) while the bag hits back on the fist (and stops its motion). A pair of forces is involved in hitting the bag. The force pair can be quite large. But what about hitting a piece of tissue paper, as shown in Figure 5.3? The boxer's fist can exert only as much force on the tissue paper as the tissue paper can exert on the fist. Furthermore, the fist can't exert any force at all unless what is being hit exerts the same amount of force back. The pair of forces is tiny. In both cases, the boxer's fist can only exert as much force on the bag or the tissue as the bag or tissue can exert on the fist. An interaction requires a *pair* of forces acting on *two* separate objects.

Other examples: You pull on a rope attached to a cart and acceleration occurs. When you pull, the cart pulls back on you, as evidenced perhaps by the tightening of the rope wrapped around your hand. A hammer hits a stake and drives it into the ground. The stake exerts an equal amount of force on the hammer, which brings the hammer to an abrupt halt. One thing interacts with another—you with the cart, or the hammer with the stake.

Which exerts the force and which receives the force? Isaac Newton's response was that neither force has to be identified as "exerter" or "receiver"; he concluded that both objects must be treated equally. For example, when you pull on the cart, the cart pulls on you. This pair of forces, your pull on the cart and the cart's pull on you, makes up the single interaction between you and the cart. Similarly, the pair of forces exerted on the hammer and the stake make up a single interaction. Such observations led Newton to his third law of motion.

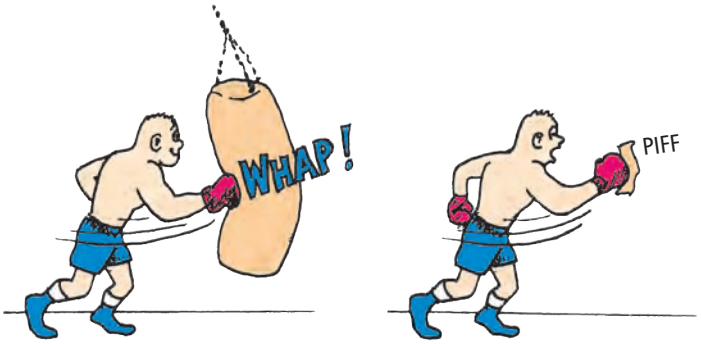
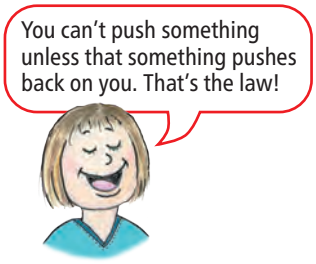


FIGURE 5.3
The boxer exerts a sizable force on the bag, but with the same punch can exert only a tiny force on the tissue paper in midair.



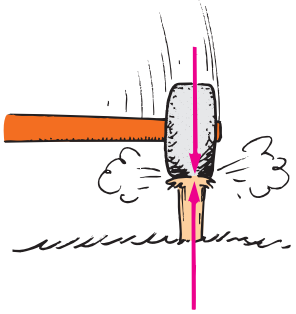


FIGURE 5.4
In the interaction between the hammer and the stake, each exerts the same amount of force on the other.

CHECK POINT

1. **Is it possible to push on something without that same something pushing back on you? Defend your answer.**
2. **When tossing a ball, you exert a force on the ball. Does part of that force remain with the ball after it leaves your hand?**
3. **Does a high-speed baseball possess force?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. No, because every push is one part of a two-push interaction. You can only push on something *if* that something pushes back on you. If it doesn't push back, you have *not* exerted a force on it!
2. No. In tossing a ball your hand presses on the ball while the ball presses on your hand (which is why tossing a ball with a sore hand can be painful). As soon as contact between your hand and the ball ceases, all force by your hand ceases also. From that point on, the ball encounters forces due to gravity and air resistance—but no part of a former force by your hand.
3. No. A speeding baseball may *exert* a force on something when an interaction occurs, but it does not *possess* force as an entity in itself. In following chapters we'll learn that a speeding object possesses kinetic energy and momentum—but not force.

5.2 Newton's Third Law of Motion

Newton's third law states:

> **Whenever one object exerts a force on a second object, the second object simultaneously exerts an equal and opposite force on the first.**

We can call one force the *action force* and the other the *reaction force*. Then we can express Newton's third law in this form:

> **To every action there is always an opposed equal reaction.**

Action and reaction refer to forces. It doesn't matter which force we call *action* and which we call *reaction*. The important thing is that they are co-parts of a single interaction and that neither force exists without the other.

When you walk, you interact with the floor. Your feet push against the floor, and the floor pushes against your feet. The two forces occur at the same time (they are *simultaneous*). Likewise, the tires of a car push against the road while the road pushes back on the tires—the tires and road simultaneously push against each other. In swimming, you interact with the water, pushing the water backward, while the water simultaneously pushes you forward—you and the water push against each other. The reaction forces are what account for our motion in these examples. These forces depend on friction; a person or car on ice, for example, may be unable to exert the action force to produce the needed reaction force. Forces occur in *force pairs*. Neither force exists without the other.

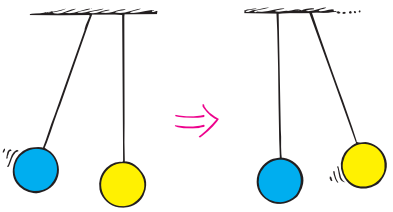
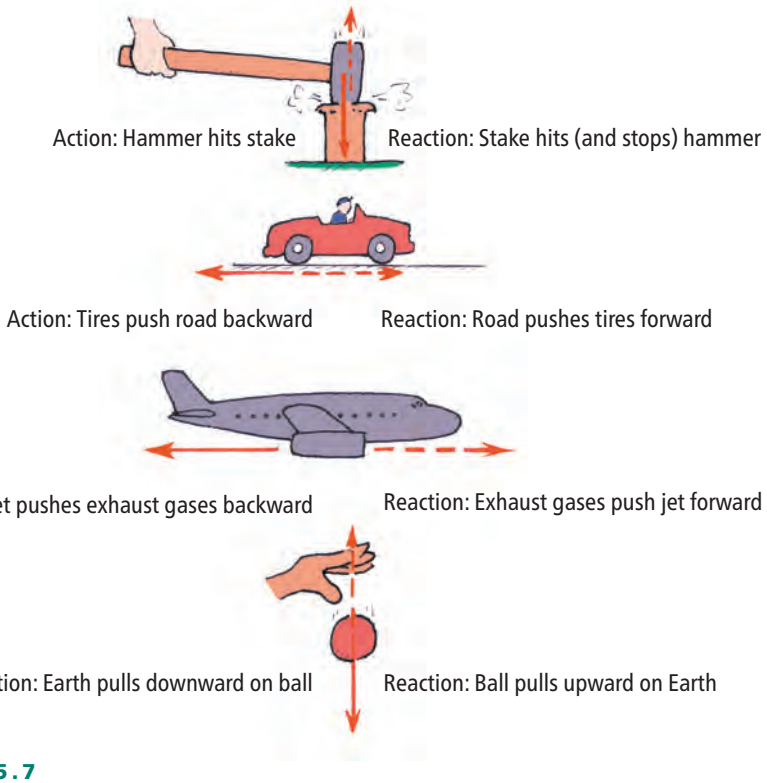


FIGURE 5.5
The impact forces between the blue ball and the yellow ball move the yellow ball and stop the blue ball.

FIGURE 5.6
In the interaction between the car and the truck, is the force of impact the same on each? Is the damage the same?


Action: Hammer hits stake
Reaction: Stake hits (and stops) hammer
Action: Tires push road backward
Reaction: Road pushes tires forward
Action: Jet pushes exhaust gases backward
Reaction: Exhaust gases push jet forward
Action: Earth pulls downward on ball
Reaction: Ball pulls upward on Earth

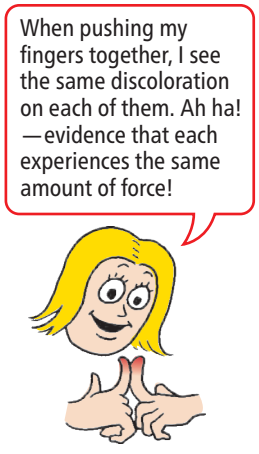

When pushing my fingers together, I see the same discoloration on each of them. Ah ha! —evidence that each experiences the same amount of force!

FIGURE 5.7
Action forces (solid red vectors) and reaction forces (dashed vectors). When "A exerts force on B," the reaction force is simply "B exerts force on A."

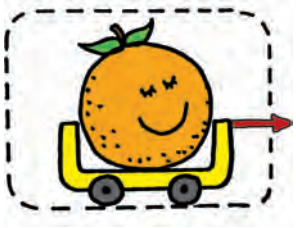


FIGURE 5.8
A force acts on the orange, and the orange accelerates to the right.

Simple Rule to Identify Action and Reaction

There is a simple rule for identifying action and reaction forces. First, identify the interaction—one thing (object A) interacts with another thing (object B). Then, action and reaction forces can be stated in the following form:

Action: Object A exerts a force on object B.

Reaction: Object B exerts a force on object A.

The rule is easy to remember. If action is A acting on B, then reaction is B acting on A. We see that A and B are simply switched around. Consider the case of your hand pushing on a wall. The interaction is between your hand and the wall. We'll say the action is your hand (object A) exerting a force on the wall (object B). Then the reaction is the wall exerting a force on your hand.

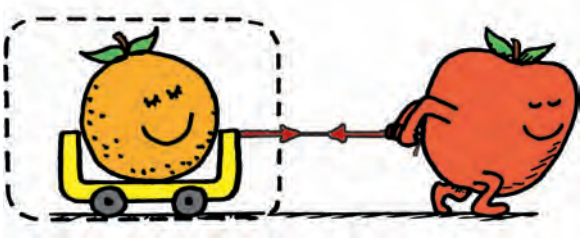
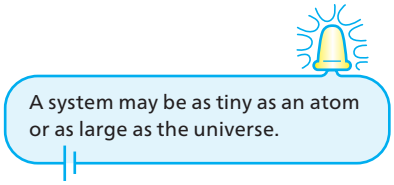


FIGURE 5.9
The force on the orange, provided by the apple, is not canceled by the reaction force on the apple. The orange still accelerates.



Defining Your System

An interesting question often arises: Since action and reaction forces are equal and opposite, why don't they cancel to zero? To answer this question, we must consider the *system* involved. Consider the system consisting of a single orange in Figure 5.8. The dashed line surrounding the orange encloses and defines the system. The vector that pokes outside the dashed line represents an external force on the system. The system accelerates in accord with Newton's second law. In Figure 5.9, we see that this force is provided by an apple, which doesn't change our analysis. The apple is outside the system. The fact that the orange simultaneously exerts a force on the apple, which is external to the system, may affect the apple (another system), but it doesn't affect the orange. You can't cancel a force on the orange with a force on the apple. So, in this case, the action and reaction forces don't cancel and the orange accelerates to the right.

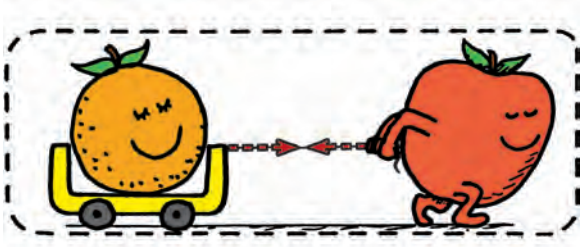


FIGURE 5.10
In the larger system of orange + apple, action and reaction forces are internal and cancel. If these are the only horizontal forces, with no external force, no acceleration of the system occurs.

Now let's consider a larger system, enclosing *both* the orange and the apple. We see the system bounded by the dashed line in Figure 5.10. Notice that the force pair is *internal* to the orange–apple system. Then these forces *do* cancel each other. They play no role in accelerating the *system*. A force external to the system is needed for acceleration. That's where friction with the floor plays a role (Figure 5.11). When the apple pushes against the floor, the floor simultaneously pushes on the apple—an external force on the system. The system accelerates to the right.

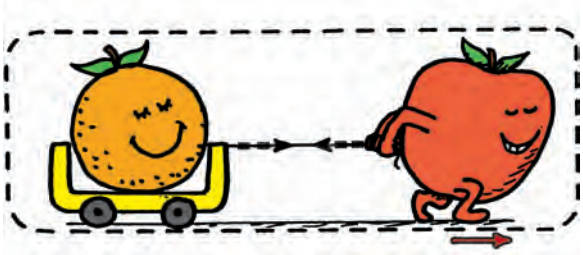


FIGURE 5.11
An external horizontal force occurs when the floor pushes on the apple (reaction to the apple's push on the floor). The orange–apple system accelerates.

Inside a football are trillions and trillions of interatomic forces at play. They hold the ball together, but they play no role in accelerating the ball. Although every one of the interatomic forces is part of an action–reaction pair within the ball, they combine to zero, no matter how many of them there are. A force external to the football, like a kick, is needed to accelerate it. In Figure 5.12, we note a single interaction between the foot and the football.

The football in Figure 5.13, however, does not accelerate. In this case, there are two interactions occurring—two forces acting on the football. If they are simultaneous, equal, and opposite, then the net force is zero. Do the two opposing kicks make up an action–reaction pair? No, because they act on the same object, not on different objects. They may be equal and opposite, but, unless they act simultaneously on different objects, they are not an action–reaction pair. Get it?

If this is confusing, it may be well to note that Newton had difficulties with the third law himself. (See insightful examples of Newton's third law in the *Practicing Physics Book*.)

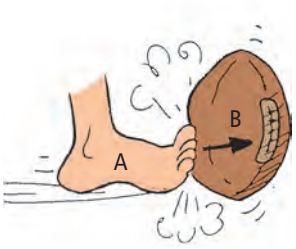


FIGURE 5.12
A acts on B, and B accelerates.

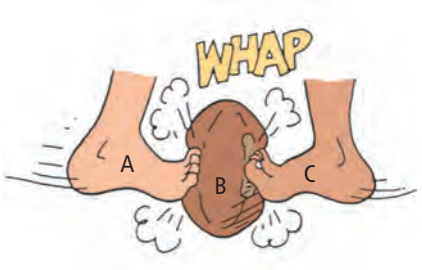


FIGURE 5.13
Both A and C act on B. They can cancel each other. If they do, B does not accelerate.

CHECK POINT

1. **On a cold, rainy day, you find yourself in a car with a dead battery. You must push the car to move it and get it started. Why can't you move the car by remaining comfortably inside and pushing against the dashboard?**
2. **Why doesn't a book sitting on a table ever accelerate "spontaneously" in response to the trillions of interatomic forces acting within it?**
3. **We know that Earth pulls on the Moon. Does it follow that the Moon also pulls on Earth?**
4. **Can you identify the action and reaction forces in the case of an object falling in a vacuum?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. In this case, the system to be accelerated is the car. If you remain inside and push on the dashboard, the force pair you produce acts and reacts within the system. These forces cancel out as far as any motion of the car is concerned. To accelerate the car, there must be an interaction between the car and something external—for example, you on the outside pushing against the road and on the car.
2. Every one of these interatomic forces is part of an action–reaction pair within the book. These forces add up to zero, no matter how many forces there are. This is what makes Newton's *first* law apply to the book. The book has zero acceleration unless an *external* force acts on it.
3. Yes, both pulls make up an action–reaction pair of forces associated with the gravitational interaction between Earth and Moon. We can say that (a) Earth pulls on the Moon and (b) the Moon likewise pulls on Earth, but it is more insightful to think of this as a single interaction—both Earth and the Moon simultaneously pulling on each other, each with the *same* amount of force. You can't push or pull on something unless that something simultaneously pushes or pulls on you. That's the law!
4. To identify a pair of action–reaction forces in any situation, first identify the pair of interacting objects involved—body A and body B. Body A, the falling object, is interacting (gravitationally) with body B, the whole Earth. So Earth pulls downward on the object (call it action), while the object pulls upward on Earth (reaction).

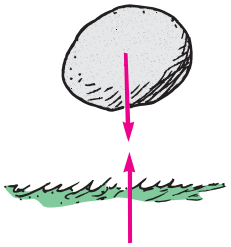


FIGURE 5.14
Earth is pulled up by the boulder with just as much force as the boulder is pulled down by Earth.

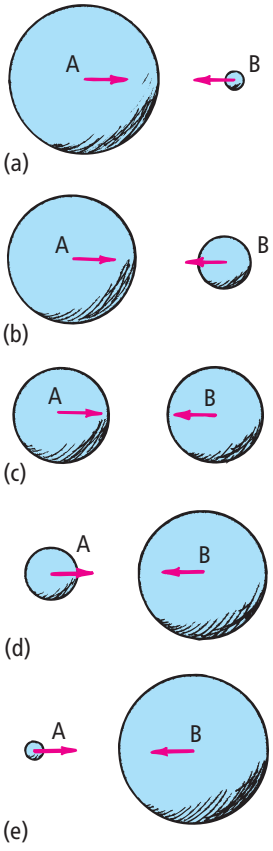


FIGURE 5.15
Which falls toward the other: A or B? Although the forces between each pair are the same, do the accelerations differ?

5.3 Action and Reaction on Different Masses

As strange as it may first seem, a falling object pulls Earth upward with as much force as Earth pulls the object downward. The resulting acceleration of the falling object is evident, while the upward acceleration of Earth is too small to detect. So, strictly speaking, when you step off a curb, the street rises ever so slightly to meet you. You won't sense the street rising, but, it does!

We can see that Earth accelerates slightly in response to a falling object by considering the exaggerated examples of two planetary bodies, parts (a) through (e) in Figure 5.15. The forces between bodies A and B are equal in magnitude and oppositely directed in *each* case. If the acceleration of planet A is not noticeable in (a), then it is more noticeable in (b), where the difference between the masses is less extreme. In (c), where both bodies have equal mass, the acceleration of object A is as evident as it is for B. Continuing, we see that the acceleration of A becomes even more evident in (d) and even more so in (e).

CHECK POINT

1. **Notice that all red force vectors in Figure 5.15 are equal and opposite in length. Does this mean all have the same magnitude—have the same strength?**
2. **Assuming the sizes of the planets correspond to their masses, do equal forces mean that accelerations in all cases (a–e) are equal?**
3. **In which case is the acceleration of planet B the greatest? Least?**
4. **How would the red force vectors be different if the mass of one planet shrunk to zero?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Yes.
2. No! Accelerations are equal only in (c) where planets A and B have equal masses.
3. Acceleration of planet B in (a) is greatest due to its small mass, and least in (e) where its mass is greater.
4. All force vectors would disappear, for no longer would there be a gravitational interaction between two planets.

The role of different masses is evident in a fired cannon. When a cannon is fired, there is an interaction between the cannon and the cannonball (Figure 5.16). A pair of forces acts on both cannon and cannonball. The force exerted on the

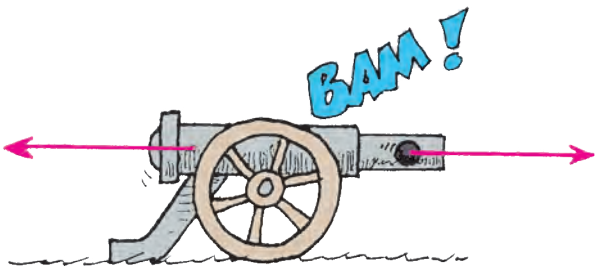


FIGURE 5.16
The force exerted against the recoiling cannon is just as great as the force that drives the cannonball inside the barrel. Why, then, does the cannonball accelerate more than the cannon?

cannonball is as great as the reaction force exerted on the cannon; hence, the cannon recoils. Since the forces are equal in magnitude, why doesn't the cannon recoil with the same speed as the cannonball?

When we analyze changes in motion, Newton's second law reminds us that we must also consider the masses involved. Suppose we let F represent both the action and reaction forces, m the mass of the cannonball, and $\mathcal{M}$ the mass of the much more massive cannon. The accelerations of the cannonball and the cannon are then found by comparing the ratios of force to mass:

$$\text{Cannonball: } \frac{F}{m} = \mathcal{a}$$

$$\text{Cannon: } \frac{F}{\mathcal{M}} = a$$

The exaggerated sizes of the symbols in these equations indicate why the change in velocity of the cannonball is so large compared with the change in velocity of the cannon. A given force exerted on a small mass produces a large acceleration, while the same force exerted on a large mass produces a small acceleration.

If we used similarly exaggerated symbols to represent the acceleration of Earth reacting to a falling object as in Figure 5.14, the symbol m for the Earth's mass would be astronomical in size. The force F due to gravity of the falling object divided by this large mass would result in a microscopic a to represent the acceleration of Earth toward the falling object.

We can extend the idea of a cannon recoiling from the ball it fires to understand rocket propulsion. Consider an inflated balloon recoiling when air is expelled (Figure 5.17). If the air is expelled downward, the balloon accelerates upward. The same principle applies to a rocket, which continuously "recoils" from the ejected exhaust gas. Each molecule of exhaust gas is like a tiny cannonball shot from the rocket (Figure 5.18).

A common misconception is that a rocket is propelled by the impact of exhaust gases against the atmosphere. In fact, before the advent of rockets, it was generally thought that sending a rocket to the Moon was impossible. Why? Because there is no air above Earth's atmosphere for the rocket to push against. But this is like saying a cannon wouldn't recoil unless the cannonball had air to push against. Not true! Both the rocket and the recoiling cannon accelerate because of the reaction forces exerted by the material they fire—not because of any pushes on the air. In fact, a rocket operates better above the atmosphere where there is no air resistance.

Using Newton's third law, we can understand how a helicopter gets its lifting force. The whirling blades are shaped to force air particles down (action), and the air forces the blades up (reaction). This upward reaction force is called *lift*. When lift equals the force due to gravity on the aircraft, the helicopter hovers in midair. When lift is greater, the helicopter climbs upward.

This is true for birds and airplanes. Birds fly by pushing air downward. The air in turn pushes the bird upward. When the bird is soaring, the wings must be shaped so that moving air particles are deflected downward. Slightly tilted wings that deflect oncoming air downward produce lift on an airplane. Air that is pushed downward continuously maintains lift. This supply of air is obtained by the forward motion of the aircraft, which results from propellers or jets that push air backward. The air, in turn, pushes the propellers or jets forward. We will learn in Chapter 14 that the curved surface of a wing is an airfoil, which enhances the lifting force.

We see Newton's third law at work everywhere. A fish pushes the water backward with its fins, and the water pushes the fish forward. When the wind pushes

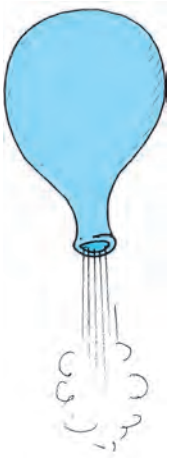


FIGURE 5.17
The balloon recoils from the escaping air, and it moves upward.

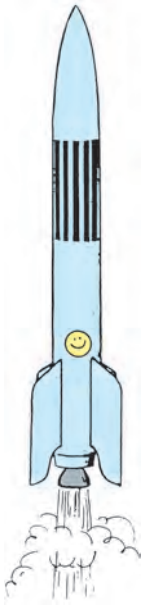


FIGURE 5.18
The rocket recoils from the "molecular cannonballs" it fires, and it moves upward.

Jellyfish have been using rocket or jet propulsion for eons.

FIGURE 5.19
Author and wife Lil demonstrate Newton's third law: You cannot touch without being touched.

FIGURE 5.20
The bricks were originally straight. Do you see the evidence for cars pushing backward on the road as they accelerate forward?

against the branches of a tree and the branches push back on the wind, we have whistling sounds. Forces are interactions between different things. Every contact requires at least a twoness; there is no way that an object can exert a force on nothing. Forces, whether large shoves or slight nudges, always occur in pairs, each of which is opposite to the other. Thus, we cannot touch without being touched.

CHECK POINT

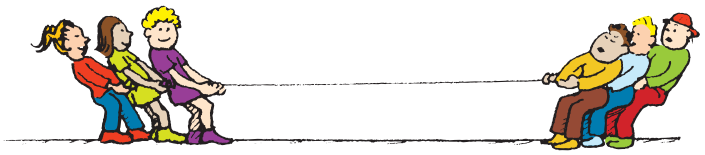
1. **A car accelerates along a road. Identify the force that moves the car.**
2. **A high-speed bus and an innocent bug have a head-on collision. The force of impact splatters the poor bug over the windshield. Is the corresponding force that the bug exerts against the windshield greater, less, or the same? Is the resulting deceleration of the bus greater than, less than, or the same as that of the bug?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. It is the road that pushes the car along. Really! Only the road provides the horizontal force to move the car forward. How does it do this? The rotating tires of the car push back on the road (action). The road simultaneously pushes forward on the tires (reaction). Evidence for this is shown by the wavy pattern of bricks in Figure 5.20. The originally straight-lined bricks at the crosswalk of the two-lane road have been pushed backward to the right when cars accelerate forward to the left. How would the wave pattern of the bricks differ if cars braked to a rapid stop on them? We see physics everywhere!
2. The magnitudes of both forces are the same because they constitute an action–reaction force pair that makes up the interaction between the bus and the bug. The accelerations, however, are very different because the masses are different. The bug undergoes an enormous and lethal deceleration, while the bus undergoes a very tiny deceleration—so tiny that the very slight slowing of the bus is unnoticed by its passengers. But, if the bug were more massive—as massive as another bus, for example—the slowing down would unfortunately be very apparent. (Can you see the wonder of physics here? Although so much is *different* for the bug and the bus, the amount of force each encounters is the *same*. Amazing!)

PRACTICING PHYSICS: TUG-OF-WAR

Perform a tug-of-war between football players and cheerleaders. Do it on a polished floor that's somewhat slippery, with football players wearing socks and cheerleaders wearing rubber-soled shoes. Who will surely win, and why? (*Hint:* Who wins a tug-of-war: those who pull harder on the rope or those who push harder against the floor?)



5.4 Vectors and the Third Law

Just as a pair of vectors at right angles can be combined into one resultant vector, any vector can be resolved into two *component* vectors perpendicular to each other. These two vectors are known as the **components** of the given vector they replace (Figure 5.21). The process of determining the components of a vector is called *resolution*. Any vector drawn on a piece of paper can be resolved into a vertical and a horizontal component.

Vector resolution is illustrated in Figure 5.22. A vector $\boldsymbol{V}$ is drawn in the proper direction to represent a vector quantity. Then vertical and horizontal lines (*axes*) are drawn at the tail of the vector. Next, a rectangle is drawn that has $\boldsymbol{V}$ as its diagonal. The sides of this rectangle are the desired components, vectors V_x and V_y. In reverse, note that the vector sum of vectors V_x and V_y is $\boldsymbol{V}$.

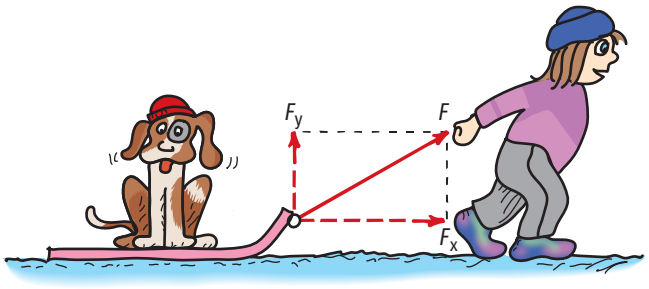


FIGURE 5.21
The force F that Nellie exerts on the sled has a horizontal component F_x and a vertical component F_y. (Not shown are other forces on the sled.)

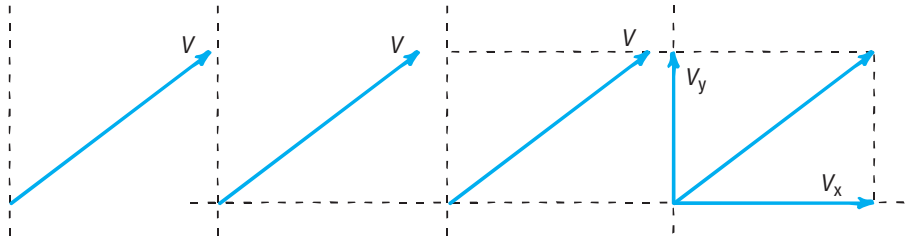
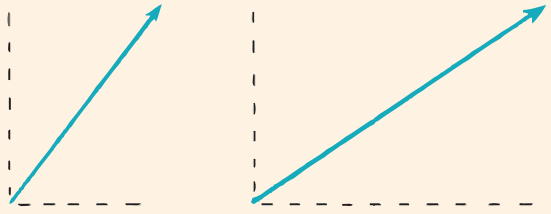


FIGURE 5.22
Construction of the vertical and horizontal components of a vector.

CHECK POINT

With a ruler, draw the horizontal and vertical components of the two vectors shown. Measure the components and compare your findings with the answers given below.



CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

Left vector: The horizontal component is 2 cm; the vertical component is 2.6 cm. Right vector: The horizontal component is 3.8 cm; the vertical component is 2.6 cm.

In previous chapters we used vectors to depict weight and normal forces for objects on supporting surfaces. When a surface is horizontal and only gravity acts on an object, the normal force exerted by the surface has the same magnitude as mg, the force due to gravity. Snowboarder Nellie Newton illustrates this in Figure 5.23a. Newton's third law is evident as Nellie's weight mg is the force she exerts against the surface, while the reaction is the surface exerting an equal and opposite force N on Nellie.

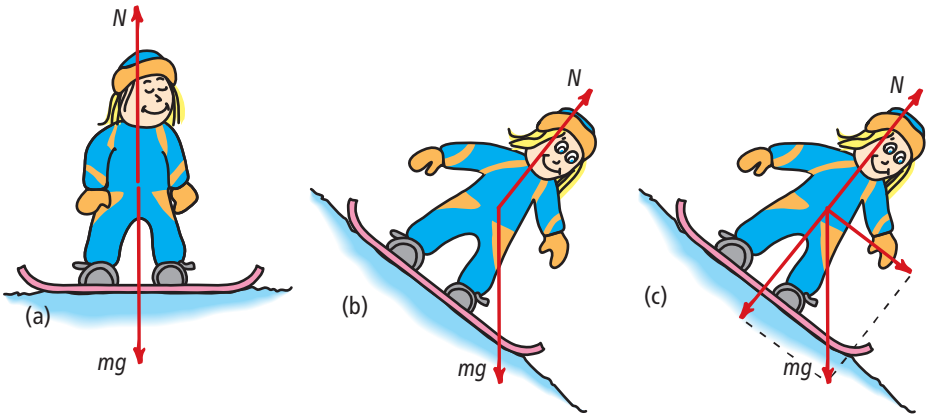


FIGURE 5.23
(a) Nellie Newton presses against the surface, *mg* (action), and the surface presses on Nellie, *N* (reaction). So *mg* and *N* are equal and opposite. (b) Nellie presses with less force against the inclined surface, so in action–reaction fashion, the normal force *N* is correspondingly smaller. (c) The component of *mg* perpendicular to the sloped surface has the same magnitude as *N*; the component of *mg* parallel to the surface provides acceleration.

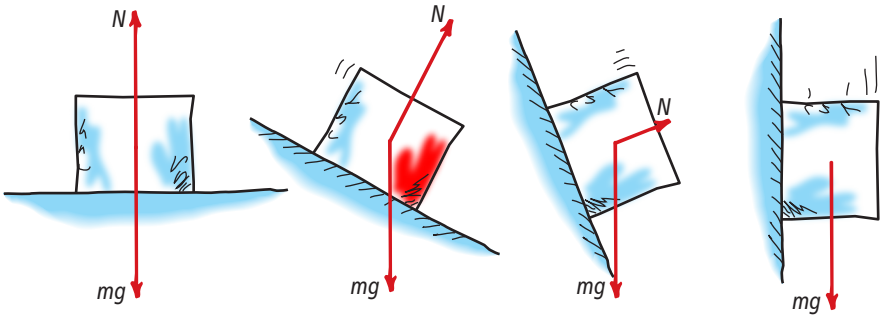


FIGURE 5.24
As the incline steepens, the normal force *N* on a block of ice diminishes, and *N* is zero when the incline is vertical.

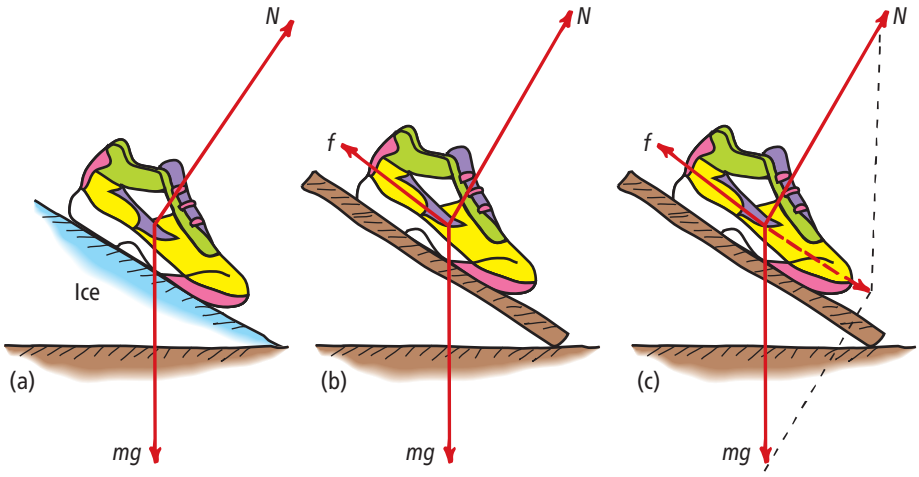


FIGURE 5.25
(a) On friction-free ice, only *mg* and *N* act on the shoe. (b) On the wooden board, a force of friction *f* is present. (c) At equilibrium, the resultant of *N* and *mg* is equal and opposite to *f*.

Suppose, however, that Nellie is on an inclined surface, a hill (Figure 5.23b). Vector *mg* is vertical and acts downward, with only a component of *mg* pressing against the surface. So the normal force *N* is less. If, for example, the surface were vertical, no pressing would occur and *N* would be zero.

Note another thing. The component of *mg* perpendicular to the surface has the same magnitude as *N* (Figure 5.23c). Note also that Nellie's acceleration down the hill is due to the component of *mg* that is parallel to the hill's surface. For steeper hills, this component of *mg* and her acceleration would be greater. If the surface were vertical, acceleration would be a full *g* and Nellie would be in free fall! A block of ice on various friction-free inclines illustrates this diminishing of *N* for steeper slopes (Figure 5.24).

In Figure 5.25 we see three views of a shoe on an incline, first on a friction-free surface where only two forces act on the shoe (Figure 5.25a). When friction

is involved, an additional vector *f* represents the force of friction (Figure 5.25b). Of interest is whether the amount of friction is less than or equal to the resultant of *N* and *mg* (Figure 5.25c). If *f* is less than the resultant, the shoe will accelerate down the ramp. If *f* is equal to the resultant, the shoe will be in equilibrium—which can mean either at rest or, given a nudge, sliding down the incline at constant velocity. Interestingly, the resultant of the normal and gravitational forces acting on the shoe in Figure 5.25 illustrate the *parallelogram rule*,[2] helpful when vectors don't make a right angle to each other. Construct a parallelogram wherein the two vectors are adjacent sides—the diagonal of the parallelogram shows the resultant. Figure 5.25c shows the resultant of *mg* and the normal force *N*. Perhaps in the lab part of your course you'll play around with these ideas.

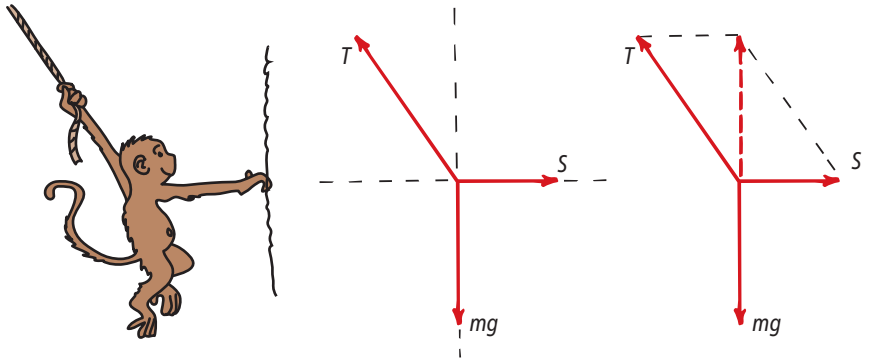


FIGURE 5.26
Monkey Mo and the three forces that provide equilibrium.

In Figure 5.26 we see Monkey Mo suspended at rest in a zoo by holding on to a rope with one hand and the side of the cage with the other. Application of the parallelogram rule shows that the tension *T* in the rope is greater than *mg*. Note that the sideways pull *S* on the cage is less than *mg*. Can you see that *S* is equal to the horizontal component of *T*? And that *mg* is equal to the vertical component of *T*? Analyzing forces in terms of vectors and their components by way of the parallelogram rule is nicely instructive.

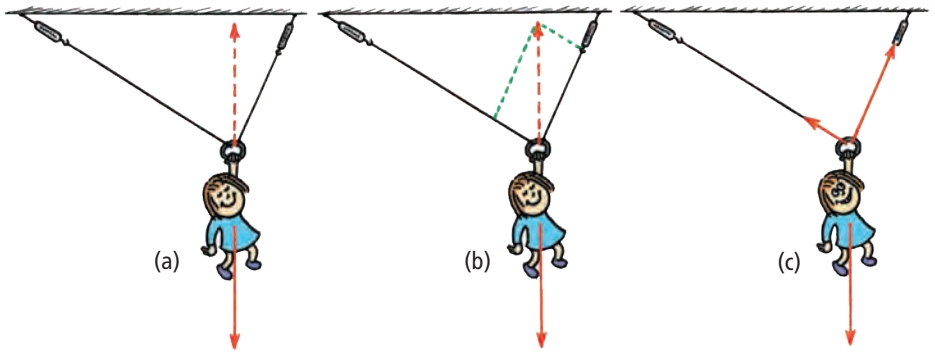


FIGURE 5.27
(a) The force due to gravity on Nellie is shown by the downward vertical vector. An equal and opposite vector is needed for equilibrium, shown by the dashed vector. (b) This dashed vector is the diagonal of a parallelogram defined by the green lines. (c) Both rope tensions are shown by the constructed vectors. Tension is greater in the right rope, the one more likely to break.

Figure 5.27 shows Nellie Newton hanging at rest from a clothesline. Note that the clothesline acts like a pair of ropes that make different angles with the vertical. The three steps show there are three forces acting on Nellie: her weight, a tension in the left-hand side of the rope, and a tension in the right-hand side of the rope. Because of the different angles, different rope tensions will occur in each side. Because Nellie hangs in equilibrium, the two rope tensions must add

[2]A parallelogram is a four-sided figure with opposite sides parallel to each other. Usually, you determine the length of the diagonal by measurement; but, in the special case in which the two vectors X and Y are perpendicular (a square or a rectangle), you can apply the Pythagorean Theorem, $R^2 = X^2 + Y^2$, to find the resultant: $R = \sqrt{X^2 + Y^2}$. If the shoe is in equilibrium, the resultant equals the friction that prevents sliding.

vectorially to be equal and opposite to her weight. Which side has the greater tension? The parallelogram rule shows that the tension in the right-hand rope is greater than the tension in the left-hand rope. If you measure the vectors, you'll see that tension in the right rope is about twice the tension in the left rope. Both rope tensions combine to support Nellie's weight.

CHECK POINT

In Figure 5.27 Nellie is suspended by ropes attached to the ceiling. To the right we see three force vectors that act on Nellie.

1. **Which of the three vectors remains unchanged if the rope angles are changed?**
2. **If the pair of ropes were vertical, how would rope tensions compare with Nellie's weight?**
3. **If the ropes are wider apart with less steep angles, how will rope tensions be affected?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Whatever the rope orientations, Nellie's weight, the downward vector, remains the same.
2. The tension in each rope would be half Nellie's weight, in accord with the equilibrium rule.
3. Rope tensions will be greater. For example, when the ropes are at 60° to the dashed line (the vertical), tension in each rope equals Nellie's weight. Beyond 60°, tensions become greater. As the ropes approach being horizontal, tension increases toward a breaking point, no longer supporting Nellie's weight. (A child can safely hang on a sagging clothesline, but not on a tight nearly horizontal line—snap!)

Figure 5.28 illustrates vector components for velocity. In the absence of air resistance, the horizontal component of velocity remains constant, in accord with Newton's first law. In contrast, the vertical component is under the influence of gravity and lessens with upward motion and gains what it lost in downward motion.

We'll return to vector components of velocity when we treat projectile motion in Chapter 10.

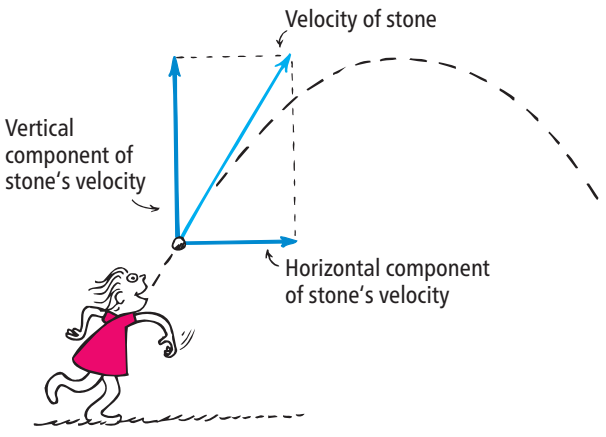


FIGURE 5.28
The horizontal and vertical components of a tossed stone's velocity.

5.5 Summary of Newton's Three Laws

Newton's first law, the law of inertia: An object at rest tends to remain at rest; an object in motion tends to remain in motion at constant speed along a straight-line path. This property of objects to resist change in motion is called *inertia*. Mass is a measure of inertia. Objects will undergo changes in motion only in the presence of a net force.

Newton's second law, the law of acceleration: When a net force acts on an object, the object will accelerate. The acceleration is directly proportional to the net force and inversely proportional to the mass. Symbolically, $a = F/m$. Acceleration is always in the direction of the net force. When objects fall in a vacuum, the net force is simply the pull of gravity—and the acceleration is g (the symbol g denotes that acceleration is due to gravity alone). When objects fall in air, the net force is equal to gravity's pull minus the force of air resistance, and the acceleration is less than g. If and when the force of air resistance equals the gravitational force on a falling object, acceleration terminates, and the object falls at constant speed (called *terminal speed*).

Newton's third law, the law of action–reaction: Whenever one object exerts a force on a second object, the second object exerts an equal and opposite force on the first. Forces occur in pairs, one action and the other reaction, which together constitute the interaction between one object and the other. Action and reaction always occur simultaneously and act on different objects. Neither force exists without the other.

Isaac Newton's three laws of motion are rules of nature that enable us to see how beautifully so many things connect with one another. We see these rules in operation in our everyday environment.

FIGURE 5.30
What is Hudson's acceleration at the top of his trajectory? (Why do those who don't distinguish between velocity and acceleration get this wrong? And why do students who use $a = F/m$ to guide their thinking get it right?)

FIGURE 5.29
Geese fly in a V formation because air pushed downward at the tips of their wings swirls upward, creating an updraft that is strongest off to the side of the bird. A trailing bird gets added lift by positioning itself in this updraft, pushes air downward, and creates another updraft for the next bird, and so on. The result is a flock flying in a V formation.

Chapter 5 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Newton's third law Whenever one object exerts a force on a second object, the second object simultaneously exerts an equal and opposite force on the first.

Components Mutually perpendicular vectors, usually horizontal and vertical, whose vector sum is a given vector.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

5.1 Forces and Interactions

1. Identify the pair of forces involved when you push on an object with your fingers.
2. A boy leans against a wall. What is the force acting on him?
3. Why can't a boxer hit a piece of tissue paper in midair with the same amount of force with which he hits a heavy punching bag?

5.2 Newton's Third Law of Motion

4. Can an action exist without a reaction?
5. If we hit a stake with a hammer, we call the force by the hammer the *action* force. What is the *reaction* force?
6. When you bat a ball, does the ball react at the same time, or a bit later?
7. Identify the force that accelerates the apple–orange system in the text?
8. Since action and reaction forces are equal and opposite, why don't they cancel to zero?
9. When you kick a football you apply a net force to it. If a friend kicks it at the same time with an equal and opposite force, is there a net force to accelerate the ball?

5.3 Action and Reaction on Different Masses

10. Earth pulls down on you with a gravitational force that you call your weight. Do you pull up on Earth with the same amount of force?
11. Because the forces that act on a cannonball and the recoiling cannon from which it is fired are equal in magnitude, why are the accelerations of both so different?
12. Why does a rocket recoil?
13. When does a helicopter hover in midair?
14. Can you physically touch a person without that person touching you with the same amount of force?

5.4 Vectors and the Third Law

15. Do both components of a force vector act on the same object?
16. What happens to the magnitude of the normal vector on a block resting on an incline when the angle of the incline changes to zero from a nonzero value?
17. How great is the force of friction acting on a shoe at rest on an incline compared with the resultant of the vectors mg and N?
18. How do the vertical and horizontal components of velocity change for a ball tossed at an upward angle?

5.5 Summary of Newton's Three Laws

19. Fill in the blanks: Newton's first law is often called the law of _____; Newton's second law is the law of _____; and Newton's third law is the law of _____ and _____.
20. Which of Newton's laws deals with action–reaction pairs?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

21. Hold your hand like a flat wing outside the window of a moving automobile. Then slightly tilt the front edge upward and notice the lifting effect as air bounces from the bottom of your hand. Can you see Newton's laws at work?
22. Try pushing your fingers together. Can you push harder on one finger than the other finger?
23. Mark a spot where you stand. Open the compass app on your smart phone (or use a real compass) and walk 10 steps due north. Then turn 90 degrees east or west and walk 10 more steps. Mark this spot. Now walk directly back to your original spot and count your steps. Was it about 14 steps? Try this again but walk more steps in each right-angle direction. Use $R = \sqrt{A^2 + B^2}$ to check your distance from your starting point.
24. Tie a horizontal string between two points in your vicinity (say the backs of a pair of chairs a meter or so apart). Devise a way to suspend a weight of some kind (say a box of cereal) from the middle of the string. The string is no longer horizontal. Pluck both sides of the stretched string and sense the string tensions (as Burl Grey did on the sign-painting scaffold in Chapter 2). Are tensions the same? Then slide the weight to different positions and note how the angles change. Pluck and sense the different tensions. Are they the same? Which is greater? Share your demonstration with youngsters.
25. When jogging, think about how vectors and their components apply to running up hills and the ease of running down hills. Think Newton's first law when you start, Newton's second law when you change your speed, and Newton's third law with every stride you take. Share these thoughts the next time you contact Grandma or Grandpa.

PLUG AND CHUG (EQUATION FAMILIARIZATION)

Resultant of two vectors at right angles to each other:

$$R = \sqrt{(X^2 + Y^2)}$$

26. Calculate the magnitude of the resultant of a pair of 50-km/h velocity vectors that are at right angles to each other.
27. Calculate the resultant of a vertical vector with a magnitude of 6 units and a horizontal vector with a magnitude of 5 units.

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

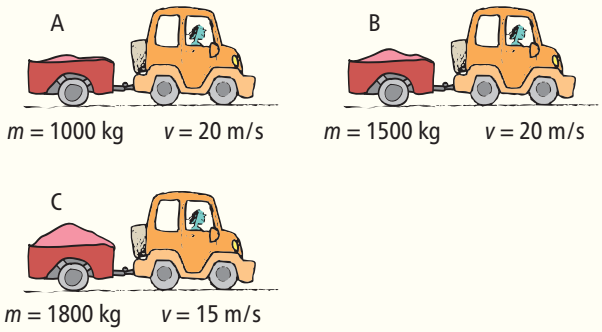
28. An airplane flying at 200 km/h encounters an 80-km/h crosswind (at a right angle to the airplane). What will be the resultant speed.
29. A boxer punches a sheet of paper in midair and brings it from rest up to a speed of 25 m/s in 0.05 s.
    (a) What is the acceleration imparted to the paper?
    (b) If the mass of the paper is 0.003 kg, what force does the boxer exert on it?
    (c) How much force does the paper exert on the boxer?

30. If you stand next to a wall on a frictionless skateboard and push the wall with a force of 30 N, how hard does the wall push on you? If your mass is 60 kg, show that your acceleration is 0.5 m/s^2.

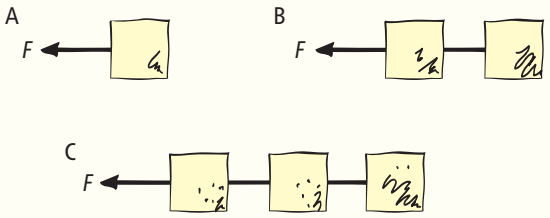
31. Forces of 3.0 N and 4.0 N act at right angles on a block. What should be the mass of the block for the acceleration to be 1 m/s^2?

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

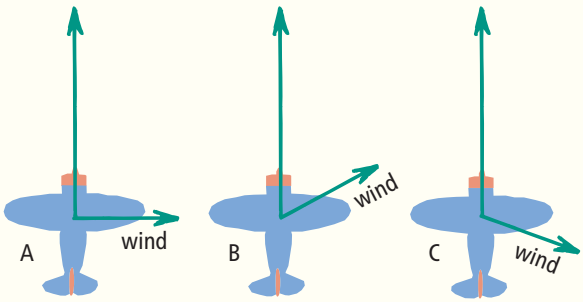
32. A van exerts a force on trailers of different masses m. Compared with the force exerted on each trailer, rank the magnitude of force each trailer exerts on the van. (Or are all pairs of forces equal in magnitude?)



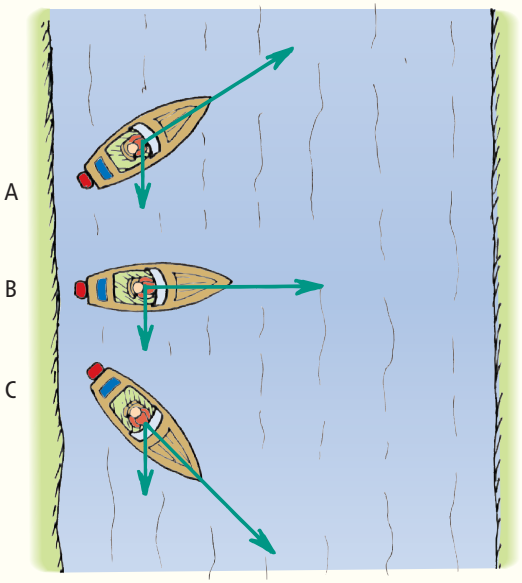
33. All equal-mass boxes are pulled by the same force F along a friction-free surface. Rank the following from greatest to least:
    (a) The acceleration of the boxes.
    (b) The tension in the rope connected to the single boxes to the right in B and C.



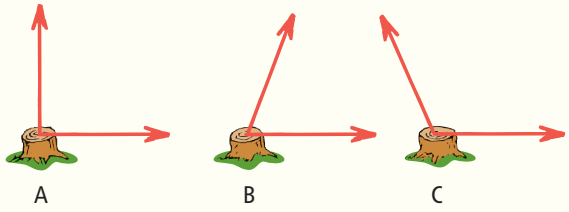
34. A top view of an airplane shows it being blown off course by the wind in three different directions. Use a pencil and the parallelogram rule to sketch the vectors showing the resulting velocities for each case. Rank the speeds of the airplane across the ground from fastest to slowest.



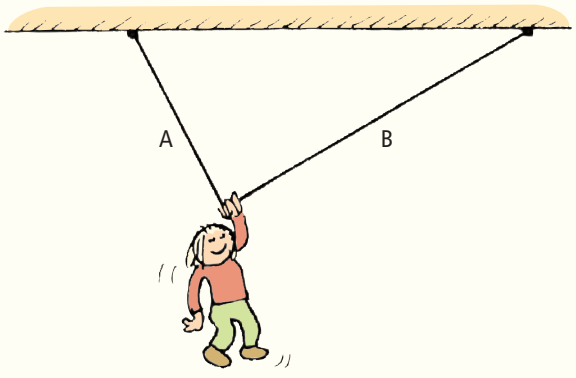
35. Top views show three motorboats crossing a river. All have the same speed relative to the water, and all experience the same river flow. Construct resultant vectors for the three boats. Rank their speeds from most to least for:
    (a) the time to reach the opposite shore.
    (b) the fastest ride.



36. As seen from above, a stubborn stump is pulled by a pair of ropes, each with a force of 200 N, but at different angles as shown. Rank the net force on the stump from greatest to least.



37. Nellie hangs motionless by one hand from a clothesline. Which side of the line, A or B, has the greater tension?



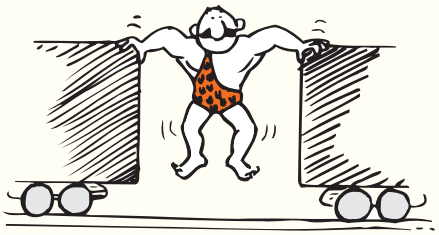
THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

38. Identify action and reaction forces for each of the following interactions:
    (a) A hammer hits a nail.
    (b) Earth gravity pulls down on a book.
    (c) A helicopter or drone blade pushes air downward.
39. The photo shows Steve Hewitt and daughter Gretchen. Is Gretchen touching her dad, or is her dad touching her? Explain.

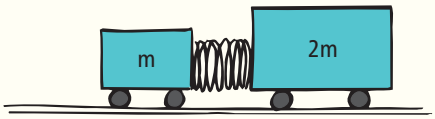
40. When you push against a wall, the wall also pushes you. Which of the two forces is greater?
41. A soldier firing a bullet from a gun feels a force in the opposite direction. Identify the force.
42. When you drop an apple, identify all action–reaction pair of forces that act on it as it falls. Neglect air drag.
43. What are the action and reaction pairs of forces for the following situations?
    (a) A player smashes a volleyball.
    (b) An apple is hanging from the branch of an apple tree.
    (c) A boy jumps on a trampoline.
44. A squash player hits a ball with his racket. The ball bounces against the court wall and returns toward him. What are the main action and reaction pairs (a) when the ball is being hit by the racket, (b) while the ball is in flight, and (c) when the ball hits the wall?
45. You drop a rubber ball on the floor, and it bounces back up. What force acts on the ball to provide the bounce?
46. Within a book on a table, there are billions of forces pushing and pulling on all the molecules. Why do these forces never accelerate the book across the table?
47. If you exert a horizontal force of 200 N to slide a crate across a factory floor at constant velocity, how much friction acts on the sliding book?
48. A sliding book on a horizontal surface at constant velocity is pushed with a force P. The friction acting on the object is $-P$. Do P and $-P$ make an action–reaction pair of forces? Defend your answer.
49. Two forces act on the man standing at rest in the sketch—the downward pull of gravity and the upward support of the floor.
    (a) Are these forces equal and opposite? Defend your answer.
    (b) Do the two forces form an action–reaction pair? Why or why not?
    (c) Identify the action–reaction pair of forces that are not shown in the sketch.

50. Identify all four action–reaction pairs of forces for a book that you push at constant velocity across the top of a table.
51. As a tossed ball sails through the air, a force of gravity mg acts on it. Neglect air drag and identify the reaction to this force. Also identify the acceleration of the ball along its path, even at the top of its path.
52. Why can you exert a greater force on bicycle pedals if you pull up on the handlebars?
53. What is the force responsible for the upward motion of a rope climber?
54. When the athlete holds the barbell overhead, the reaction force is the weight of the barbell on his hand. How does this force vary when the barbell is accelerated upward? Accelerated downward?

55. You push a heavy car by hand. The car, in turn, pushes back with an opposite but equal force on you. Doesn't this mean that the forces cancel one another, making acceleration impossible? Why or why not?
56. The strong man will push the two initially stationary freight cars of equal mass apart before he himself drops straight to the ground. Is it possible for him to give either of the cars a greater speed than the other car? Why or why not?



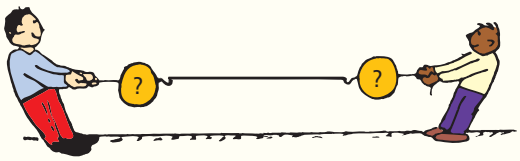
57. Two carts, one twice as massive as the other, fly apart when the compressed spring that joins them is released. What is the acceleration of the heavier cart relative to that of the lighter cart as they start to move apart?



58. A Mack truck and Honda Civic have a head-on collision. Which vehicle experiences the greater impact force? Which vehicle experiences the greater deceleration? Defend your answers.
59. Astronauts Scott and Kjell are joined together by a safety cord and "float" some distance apart in space. If Scott pulls on the cord, will he pull Kjell toward him, or will he pull himself toward Kjell, or will both astronauts move? Explain.
60. Which team wins in a tug-of-war—the team that pulls harder on the rope, or the team that pushes harder against the ground? Explain.
61. In a tug-of-war between Phil and Jean, each pulls on the rope with a force of 250 N. What is the tension in the

rope? If both remain motionless, what horizontal force does each exert against the ground?

62. Your instructor challenges you and your friend to pull on the ends of a horizontal rope attached to a pair of scales in a tug-of-war, but in such a way that the scale readings on the scales are different. Can this be done? Explain.



63. A father-son duo plays tug-of-war with a 12-m rope while standing on a frictionless ice surface. The father is twice as heavy as his son. When they pull on the rope, each of them slides toward the other. How do their accelerations compare, and how far does each slide before they meet?

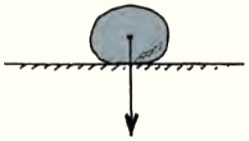
64. What aspect of physics was unknown by the writer of this newspaper editorial that ridiculed early experiments by Robert H. Goddard on rocket propulsion above Earth's atmosphere? "Professor Goddard . . . does not know the relation of action to reaction, and of the need to have something better than a vacuum against which to react . . . he seems to lack the knowledge ladled out daily in high schools."

65. A rowboat heads directly across a river at a speed of 3 m/s. Convince your classmate that if the river flows at 4 m/s, the speed of the boat relative to the riverbank is 5 m/s.

66. If raindrops fall vertically at a speed of 5 m/s, and you are riding a bike along a straight, level road at 12 m/s, then at what speed will the raindrops hit your face?

67. A fighter jet flying at an airspeed of 400 km/h encounters an intense crosswind of speed 300 km/h. What would be the speed of the fighter jet as measured by an observer on the ground?

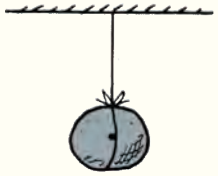
68. A stone is shown at rest on the ground. The vector shows the weight of the stone.



(a) Complete the vector diagram showing another vector that results in zero net force on the stone.

(b) What is the conventional name of the vector you have drawn?

69. A stone is suspended at rest by a string.



(a) Draw force vectors for all the forces that act on the stone.

(b) Should your vectors have a zero resultant? Why or why not?

70. The same stone is being accelerated vertically upward.

(a) Draw force vectors to some suitable scale showing relative forces acting on the stone.

(b) Which is the longer vector, and why?

71. Suppose the string on the stone breaks while pulled upward, and the stone slows to a momentary stop. Draw a force vector diagram of the stone at the top of its path.

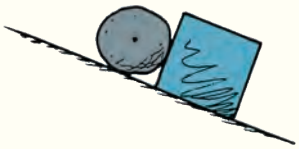
72. What is the acceleration of the upwardly tossed stone at the top of its path?

73. Here the stone is sliding down a friction-free incline.

(a) Identify the forces that act on it, and draw appropriate force vectors.

(b) By the parallelogram rule, construct the resultant force on the stone (carefully showing its direction parallel to the incline—the same direction as the stone's acceleration).

74. The stone is at rest, interacting with both the surface of the incline and the block.



(a) Identify all the forces that act on the stone, and draw appropriate force vectors.

(b) Show that the net force on the stone is zero. (*Hint 1:* There are two normal forces on the stone. *Hint 2:* Be sure the vectors you draw are for forces that act *on* the stone, not *by* the stone on the surfaces.)

75. In Figure 5.25 how does the magnitude of $\boldsymbol{f}$ relate to the vector sum of $\boldsymbol{mg}$ and $\boldsymbol{N}$ when the shoe is in equilibrium? What occurs if $\boldsymbol{f}$ is less than this sum?

76. Refer to Monkey Mo in Figure 5.26. If the rope makes an angle of 45° with the vertical, how will the magnitudes of vectors $\boldsymbol{S}$ and $\boldsymbol{mg}$ compare?

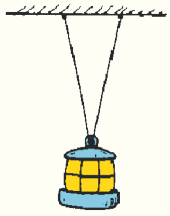
77. Refer to Monkey Mo in Figure 5.26. What will be the magnitude of vector $\boldsymbol{S}$ if the rope that supports Mo is vertical? If the rope were horizontal, how would vector $\boldsymbol{S}$ be different? Why can both vectors $\boldsymbol{T}$ and $\boldsymbol{S}$ not be horizontal?

78. A girl throws a ball upward as shown in Figure 5.27. If air drag is negligible, why does the horizontal component of velocity always remain constant? Why does the vertical component of velocity change?

79. Which is more likely to break—a hammock stretched tightly between a pair of trees or one that sags?

80. A heavy bird sits on a clothesline. Will the tension in the clothesline be greater if the line sags a lot or a little?

81. The rope supports a lantern that weighs 50 N. Is the tension in the rope less than, equal to, or more than 50 N? Use the parallelogram rule to defend your answer.

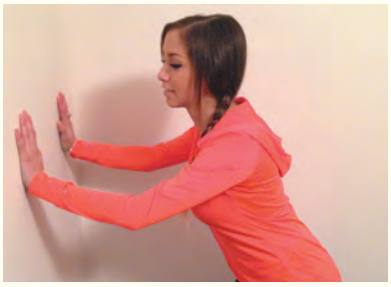


82. What two forces act on a monkey hanging stationary by a vertical vine? Which force, if either, is greater?

83. For a more widely spaced ropes as shown is rope tension increased or decreased?

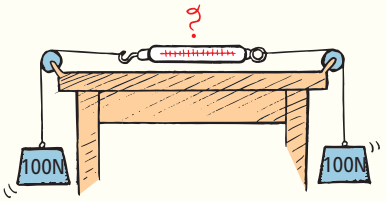
THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

84. In everyday life the telling of a lie sooner or later produces an oppositely desired reaction. Treating a friend harshly results in an equal harshness by that friend. What goes around comes around. Or what you sow is what you reap. Why or why not are these examples of Newton's third law?
85. When you swat a fly with a flyswatter, is the force on the fly *really* as great as the force that "slows" the flyswatter? Defend your answer.
86. The photo shows Kara Mae clearly pushing a wall. Could she push the wall if the wall didn't simultaneously push back on her? Defend your answer.

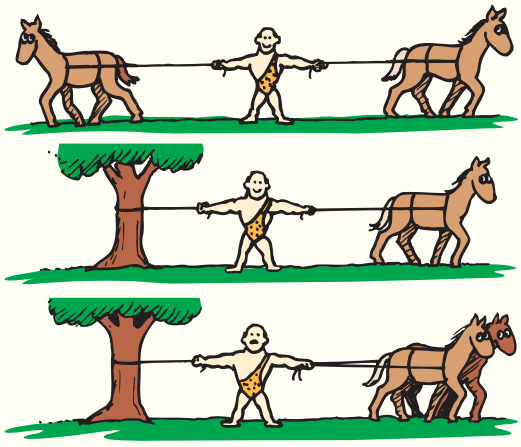


87. A balloon floats motionless in the air. In which direction does the balloon move as the balloonist climbs the supporting cable? Defend your answer.
88. Regarding the orange–apple system discussed in the chapter, would the apple be able to exert the force shown in Figures 5.9–5.11 if the supporting surface were perfectly slippery ice? Defend your answer.
89. If you swim across a river, your swimming motion takes you straight across, but the current carries you along the direction of the river. In terms of vectors, why does the combination lead to a diagonal path?
90. A friend says that Alé cannot push on the tree unless the tree pushes back on her. Another friend says that if Alé pushes quickly, the tree won't push as hard on her. What is your opinion on this?

91. Can a dog wag its tail without the tail in turn "wagging the dog"? (Think of a dog with a relatively massive tail.)
92. A rocket becomes progressively easier to accelerate as it travels through space. Discuss why is this so? (*Hint:* About 90% of the mass of a newly launched rocket is fuel.)
93. When you kick a football that is only partially inflated, can the force of the kick be somewhat greater than the reaction force back on your foot? Defend your answer.
94. Is it true that while you drop from a branch to the ground below, you pull upward on Earth? If so, then why is the acceleration of Earth not noticed?
95. Two 100-N weights are attached to a spring scale as shown. Does the scale read 0, 100, or 200 N, or register some other reading? (*Hint:* Would it read any differently if one of the ropes were tied to the wall instead of to the hanging 100-N weight?)



96. Why is it difficult to accelerate your car when it is on sand, gravel, or freshly fallen snow? Why does sand, gravel, or snow fly backward from the tires?
97. In a game of billiards, does a ball slow down when it hits another ball? Explain your answer.
98. During a football game, when the goalkeeper saves a goal, he feels an impact on his palms and hands. What produces this force?
99. A farmer urges his horse to pull a wagon. The horse refuses, saying that to try would be futile, for it would flout Newton's third law. The horse concludes that she can't exert a greater force on the wagon than the wagon exerts on her, she therefore won't be able to accelerate the wagon. Discuss your reasoning to convince the horse to pull.
100. The strong man can withstand the tension force exerted by the two horses pulling in opposite directions. How would the tension compare if only one horse pulled and the left rope was instead tied to a tree? How would the tension compare if the two horses pulled in the same direction, with the left rope tied to the tree?



CHAPTER FIVE Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. Earth exerts a force on the Moon. The Moon exerts a force on Earth. These two forces make up
   (a) a single interaction.
   (b) two interactions.
   (c) multiple interactions.
   (d) none of the above
2. When you push an ice cube with a 0.5-N force, the ice cube
   (a) accelerates at 10 m/s^2.
   (b) resists being pushed with its own 0.5-N force.
   (c) will likely not move.
   (d) pushes on you with a 0.5-N force.
3. A karate chop delivers a force of 3000 N to a board that breaks. The force that the board exerts on the hand during this event is
   (a) less than 3000 N.
   (b) 3000 N.
   (c) greater than 3000 N.
   (d) More information is needed.
4. The force that propels a rocket is provided by
   (a) gravity.
   (b) Newton's laws of motion.
   (c) its exhaust gases.
   (d) the atmosphere against which the rocket pushes.
5. A flower pot rests on a table. If the action force is Earth pulling downward on the pot, the reaction force is the
   (a) table pushing upward on the pot.
   (b) pot pulling upward on Earth.
   (c) pot pulling upward on both the table and Earth
   (d) none of the above
6. We cannot exert a force on a wall
   (a) if the wall resists our push.
   (b) unless we put our mind to it.
   (c) unless the wall simultaneously exerts the same amount of force on us.
   (d) all of the above
7. Girls wearing gym shoes win in a tug-of-war against boys wearing socks on a smooth floor because the girls are able to
   (a) exert more tension on their rope.
   (b) exert more force against the slippery floor.
   (c) enjoy a psychological advantage over boys.
   (d) none of the above
8. A huge GMC truck and a Honda Civic traveling at the same speed collide head-on. The collision force is greatest on the
   (a) Honda.
   (b) GMC.
   (c) same on both
   (d) cannot be answered without more information
9. A boxer's punch hits with more force when striking a
   (a) heavier opponent.
   (b) lighter opponent.
   (c) same either way.
   (d) none of the above
10. The speed of an airplane caught in a right-angle crosswind
    (a) decreases.
    (b) remains unchanged.
    (c) increases.
    (d) cannot be estimated.

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (a): In nature no single force exists in isolation. Every force has a reaction counterpart force. Earth cannot pull on the Moon unless the Moon pulls with an equal and opposite force on Earth. The Earth-Moon pair of forces make up a single interaction. **2. (d):** This involves Newton's laws. Since the mass of the ice cube isn't given, choice (a) that might involve Newton's second law, $a = F/m$, is eliminated. Choice (c) is nonsense. Newton's third law makes sense, you pushing on ice and ice pushing on you, which unlike confusing choice (b) makes (d) the clearest and best answer. **3. (b):** This is straight-forward Newton's third law (A acts on B, B reacts on A) or in this case, hand acts on board, board reacts on hand. Without this knowledge, choices (a, c, and d) might be popular. We also distinguish between a force and the effect of that force. Although the board wouldn't be hurt, the same force on the hand may hurt a lot. **4. (c):** This involves Newton's third law: Rocket pushes on exhaust gases, exhaust gases push on rocket, making choice (c) a better answer than (a, b). Choice (d) is commonly thought to be correct by those who lack an understanding of Newton's third law. **5. (b):** Follow the rule: A acts on B, B acts on A. The table is not part of the action-reaction pair of forces, so choice (a) is bogus. And the pot pulling up on the table (c) is bogus. Only (b) is correct. **6. (c):** When you push on a wall you interact with the wall. There then exists an action-reaction pair of forces: You pushing wall; wall pushing you, simultaneously, as in choice (c). **7. (b):** In a tug-of-war, rope tension is the same for both sides. What is different is the force the participants exert on the floor. Gym shoes certainly can exert more force on a slippery floor than socks, so the girls win the contest. **8. (c):** A single interaction occurs when the vehicles collide; the force of the truck on the car and the force of the car on the truck. Both action and reaction forces are equal in magnitude. Equal forces does not mean equal damage! When you swat a fly, the force on the fly and the equal and opposite force on your flyswatter may be equal, but the accelerations of each are drastically different. Likewise with the two vehicles. **9. (a):** Think of the boxer hitting a heavy punching bag and hitting a paper napkin. For the same punch, the force against the bag greatly exceeds the force on the napkin. So it is with boxing opponents. Force is greater when interacting with greater mass. Many confronted with this question for the first time get it wrong! **10. (c):** Think vectors: Two velocity vectors at right angles to each other produce a resultant greater than either of the two vectors, just as the diagonal of a rectangle is longer than either of its two sides. The airplane will travel faster in a right-angle crosswind. In non-right-angle crosswinds, the resulting speed can be less.

CHAPTER SIX

6 Momentum

6.1 Momentum

6.2 Impulse

6.3 Impulse-Momentum Relationship

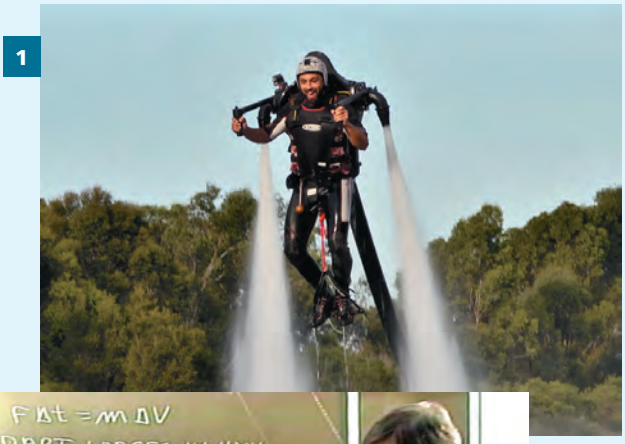
- Case 1: Increasing Momentum
- Case 2: Decreasing Momentum Over a Long Time
- Case 3: Decreasing Momentum Over a Short Time

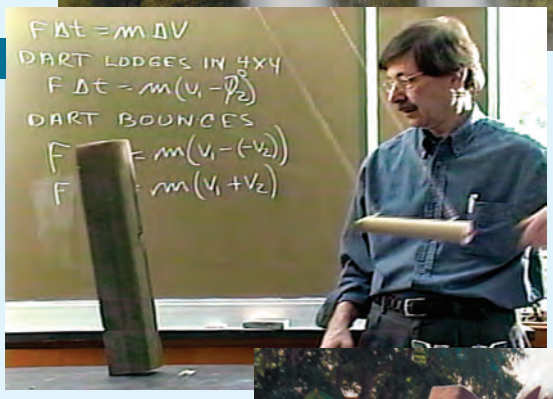
6.4 Bouncing

6.5 Conservation of Momentum

6.6 Collisions

6.7 More Complicated Collisions





1 The impulse of downward spurting water produces an upward momentum that allows Derek Muller to hover in midair. **2** Howie Brand demonstrates the different results when a dart bounces from a wooden block, rather than sticking to it. A bouncing dart produces more impulse, which tips the block. **3** Likewise for the Pelton wheel, where water bouncing from the curved paddles produces more impulse, which imparts more momentum to the wheel. **4** Alex Hewitt enjoys momentum.

Derek Muller found his way into physics teaching through his three passions: understanding the world, helping others, and filmmaking. In childhood he was obsessed with the practical. Instead of playing with toys, he planted gardens with edible plants, farmed silk worms for their precious cocoons, and learned to make pottery from which to eat what he grew. Science seemed like magic, which made it incredibly intriguing. What child, for example, isn't fascinated by the phenomena of magnetism?

His first inspiration for teaching came from his two older sisters, who were skillful at teaching him. He learned much from them and appreciated the care that went with it. From there he played the role of a teacher, passing on his knowledge, mainly of science, to friends and peers throughout middle school and high school. As a tutor, with no finances involved, he experienced the satisfaction of teaching a thing well, cherishing the feeling of being useful. His path then would be education, with physics his favorite subject.

After earning his undergraduate degree in Engineering Physics at Queens University in Canada, he moved to Sydney, Australia, where his continued study earned him a PhD in Physics Education Research. As part of his doctoral research he studied the role of media on student learning. His findings indicated that most novice students learned no physics whatsoever with video lessons on physics (as a disclaimer, my Conceptual Physics videos and Hewitt-Drew-It! tutorials were not part of his study). Derek identified what he saw as the culprit—student misconceptions that related to physics—a root problem. And he found the problem went well beyond physics. Combating science misunderstandings with the general public became Derek's calling.

To surmount common misunderstandings and to clear a path for learning, Derek created a channel on YouTube called *Veritasium* (an element of truth). On this channel he presents videos about physics and other areas of science, in which he engages the public in discussions of science. In the videos Derek points out inconsistencies, directed toward eliciting 'aha moments' of understanding. In 2017 he began uploading videos on his newest channel, *Sciencium*, which is dedicated to videos on recent and historical discoveries in science. Derek has won numerous awards and has become a familiar face on television.

At this present time of transitioning in methods of teaching, the physics community has a great pioneer in Derek Muller. Derek has truly found an effective way to bring an appreciation and understanding of physics to a global audience.

6.1 Momentum

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

We all know that a heavy truck is harder to stop than a small car moving at the same speed. We state this fact by saying that the truck has more *momentum* than the car. And if two cars have the same mass, the faster one is harder to stop than the slower one. So we also say that the faster-moving car has more momentum than the slower one. By **momentum** we mean inertia in motion. More specifically, momentum is defined as the product of the mass of an object and its velocity:

$$\text{Momentum} = \text{mass} \times \text{velocity}$$

Or, in shorthand notation,

$$\text{Momentum} = mv$$

When direction is not an important factor, we can say

$$\text{Momentum} = \text{mass} \times \text{speed}$$

which we still abbreviate mv. Often the symbol p is used for momentum. Then we say $p = mv$.

FIGURE 6.1
The boulder, unfortunately, has considerable momentum.

FIGURE 6.2
Why are the engines of a supertanker normally cut off 25 km from port? Timing is especially important when changing momentum.

We can see from the definition that a moving object can have a large momentum if either its mass or its velocity is large or if both its mass and its velocity are large. The truck has more momentum than the car moving at the same speed because the truck has a greater mass. We can see that a huge ship moving at a low speed can have a large momentum, as can a small bullet moving at a high speed. And, of course, a huge object moving at a high speed, such as a massive truck rolling down a steep hill with no brakes, has a huge momentum, whereas the same truck at rest has no momentum at all—because the v term in mv is zero.

CHECK POINT

1. **When can a 1000-kg car and a 2000-kg truck have the same momentum?**
2. **How does the concept of inertia relate to the concept of momentum?**
3. **A Mars rover in a trial run moves at 12 km/h on Earth. Later on Mars' surface it moves at the same speed. In which location is its momentum greater?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. They will have the same momentum when the car travels twice as fast as the truck. Then (1000 kg $\times$ $2v$) for the car equals (2000 kg $\times$ v) for the truck. Or, if they are both at rest, they have the same momentum: zero.
2. Momentum can be considered "inertia in motion."
3. The rover's momentum (mass $\times$ speed) is the same in both locations. Its weight will differ, but not its mass or momentum at the same speed.

6.2 Impulse

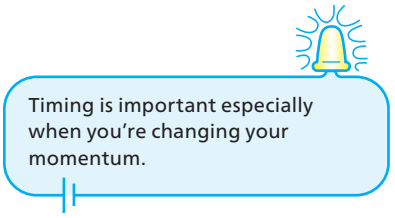
If the momentum of an object changes, then either the mass or the velocity or both change. If the mass remains unchanged, as is most often the case, then the velocity changes and acceleration occurs. What produces acceleration? We know the answer is *force*. The greater the net force acting on an object, the greater its change in velocity in a given time interval and, hence, the greater its change in momentum.

But something else is important in changing momentum: time—how long a time the force acts. If you apply a brief force to a stalled automobile, you produce a change in its momentum. Apply the same force over an extended period of time, and you produce a greater change in the automobile's momentum. A force sustained for a long time produces more change in momentum than does the same force applied briefly. So, both force and time interval are important in changing momentum.

The quantity *force* × *time interval* is called **impulse.** In shorthand notation,

$$\text{Impulse} = Ft$$

FIGURE 6.3
When you push with the same force for twice the time, you impart twice the impulse and produce twice the change in momentum.



CHECK POINT

1. **Does a moving object have impulse?**
2. **Does a moving object have momentum?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. No, impulse is not something an object *has,* like momentum. Impulse is what an object can *provide* or what it can *experience* when it interacts with some other object. An object cannot possess impulse just as it cannot possess force.
2. Yes, a moving object can possess momentum but, like velocity, only in a relative sense—that is, with respect to a frame of reference such as Earth's surface. For example, a fly inside a fast-moving airplane cabin may have a large momentum relative to Earth below, but it has very little momentum relative to the cabin.

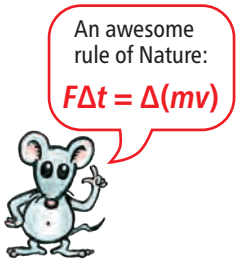
6.3 Impulse-Momentum Relationship

The greater the impulse exerted on something, the greater will be its change in momentum. The exact relationship is

$$\text{Impulse} = \text{change in momentum}$$

We can express all terms in this relationship in shorthand notation using the delta symbol Δ (a Greek letter often used to denote "change in" or "difference in"):[1]

$$Ft = \Delta(mv)$$



[1]This relationship is derived by rearranging Newton's second law to make the time factor more evident. If we equate the formula for acceleration, $a = F/m$, with what acceleration is defined as, $a = \Delta v/\Delta t$, we get $F/m = \Delta v/\Delta t$. From this we derive $F\Delta t = \Delta(mv)$. If we call Δt simply t, the time interval, then $Ft = \Delta(mv)$.

The **impulse–momentum relationship** helps us to analyze many examples in which forces act and motion changes. Sometimes the impulse can be considered to be the cause of a change of momentum. Sometimes a change of momentum can be considered to be the cause of an impulse. It doesn't matter which way you think about it. The important thing is that impulse and change of momentum are always linked. Here we will consider some ordinary examples in which impulse is related to (1) increasing momentum, (2) decreasing momentum over a long time, and (3) decreasing momentum over a short time.

CHECK POINT

What would be the result of dividing $Ft = \Delta(mv)$ by time interval Δt?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

We get Newton's second law of motion: $\frac{Ft}{\Delta t} = \frac{\Delta mv}{\Delta t} = m\left(\frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t}\right) = ma$, another of the delightful connections in physics!

FIGURE 6.4
The force of impact on a golf ball varies throughout the duration of impact.

Case 1: Increasing Momentum

To increase the momentum of an object, it makes sense to apply the greatest force possible for as long as possible. A golfer teeing off and a baseball player trying for a home run do both of these things when they swing as hard as possible and follow through with their swings. Following through extends the time of contact.

The forces involved in impulses usually vary from instant to instant. For example, a golf club that strikes a ball exerts zero force on the ball until contact occurs (Figure 6.4); then the force increases rapidly as the ball is distorted. The force then diminishes as the ball comes up to speed and returns to its original shape. So, when we speak of such forces in this chapter, we mean the *average* force.

CHECK POINT

1. **For the same force, which cannon imparts a greater speed to a cannonball: a long-barreled cannon or a short-barreled cannon?**
2. **Two kids blow peas from two drinking straws—a long straw and a short one. For the same breath, from which straw will a pea go farther?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Speed will be greater for a cannonball fired from a long-barreled cannon because the force on the cannonball is exerted over a longer time, a greater impulse, which produces a greater change in the cannonball's momentum.
2. For the same physics that accounts for a faster cannonball shot from a long-barreled cannon, a pea shot from a long straw should emerge at a greater speed and travel farther. How nice that physics underlies so many things.

Case 2: Decreasing Momentum Over a Long Time

If you were in a car that was out of control and you had to choose between hitting a concrete wall or a haystack, you wouldn't have to call on your knowledge of physics to make up your mind. Common sense tells you to choose the haystack.

But, knowing the physics helps you to understand *why* hitting a soft object is entirely different from hitting a hard one. In the case of hitting either the wall or the haystack, your momentum is brought to zero by the *same* impulse. The same impulse does not mean the same amount of force or the same amount of time; rather, it means the same *product* of force and time. By hitting the haystack instead of the wall, you extend the *time during which your momentum is brought to zero.* A longer time interval reduces the force and decreases the resulting deceleration. For example, if the time interval is extended 100 times, the force is reduced to a hundredth. Whenever we wish the force to be small, we extend the time of contact—hence, the padded dashboards and airbags that save lives in motor vehicles.

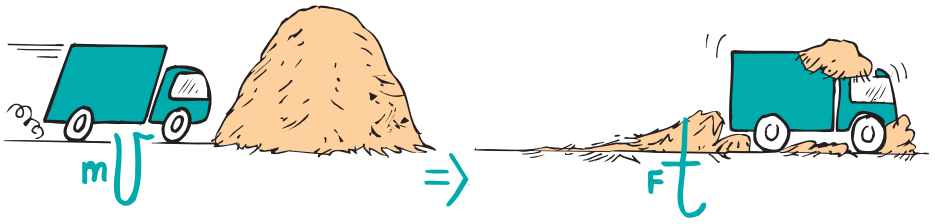


FIGURE 6.5
If the change in momentum occurs over a long time, the hitting force is small.

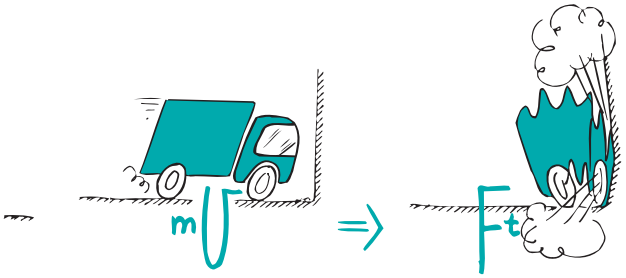


FIGURE 6.6
If the change in momentum occurs over a short time, the hitting force is large.

When you jump from an elevated position down to the ground, what happens if you keep your legs straight and stiff? Ouch! Instead, you bend your knees when your feet make contact with the ground. By doing so you extend the time during which your momentum decreases by 10 to 20 times that of a stiff-legged, abrupt landing. The resulting force on your bones is reduced by 10 to 20 times. A wrestler thrown to the floor tries to extend his time of impact with the mat by relaxing his muscles and spreading the impact into a series of smaller ones as his foot, knee, hip, ribs, and shoulder successively hit the mat. Of course, falling on a mat is preferable to falling on a solid floor because the mat extends the stopping time and so lessens the stopping force.

The safety net used by circus acrobats is a good example of how to achieve the impulse needed for a safe landing. The safety net reduces the stopping force on a fallen acrobat by substantially increasing the stopping time. If you're about to catch a fast baseball with your bare hand, you extend your hand forward so you'll have plenty of room for it to move backward after making contact with the ball. When you extend the time of contact, you reduce the force of the catch.

FIGURE 6.7
A large change in momentum over a long time requires a safely small average force.

CHECK POINT

1. **We all know that a safety net is important for circus acrobats. What physics accounts for this safety?**
2. **A friend remarks that the impulse that halts an acrobat's momentum of fall is the *same* whether by a floor or a safety net. Do you agree?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The physics of net safety is the impulse–momentum relationship. In an accidental fall, momentum gained by the acrobat in falling comes to a halt. On a solid floor this would be devastating. Falling into a net that sags upon impact, the same change in momentum is spread over an extended time and with a correspondingly small force. Be glad the net sags when contact is made!
2. Yes, agree with your friend. Anyone in free fall gains momentum, which is soon stopped by an impulse below. The amount of impulse is the same whether the time of changing momentum is quick or prolonged. Of course the *force* is another story. Often the confusion in learning physics involves distinguishing among definitions. Here we have four: momentum, impulse, force, and time. Learning definitions, as with all your studies, is a necessary step to success in physics.

Case 3: Decreasing Momentum Over a Short Time

When boxing, if you move into a punch instead of away, you're in trouble because contact time is reduced so force is increased (Figure 6.8). Likewise if you catch a high-speed baseball while your hand moves toward the ball instead of away upon contact. Or, when your car is out of control, if you drive it into a concrete wall instead of a haystack, you're really in trouble. In these cases of short contact times, the contact forces are large. Remember that, for an object brought to rest, the impulse is the same no matter how it is stopped. But, if the time is short, the force will be large.

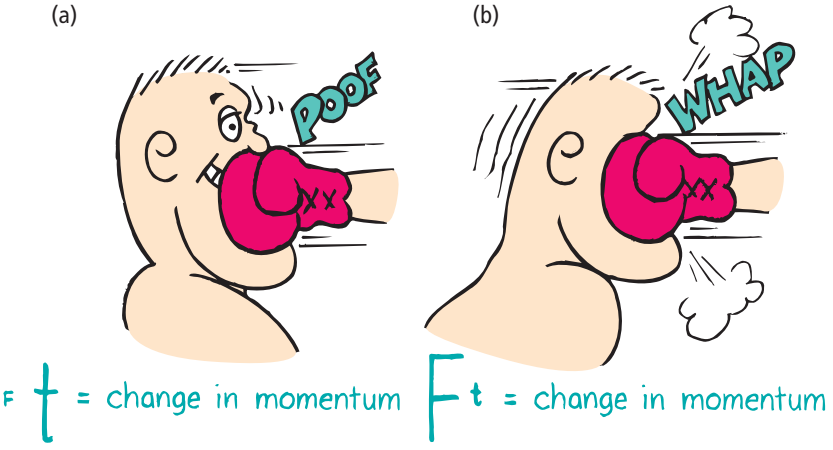


FIGURE 6.8
In both cases, the impulse provided by the boxer's jaw reduces the momentum of the punch. (a) When the boxer moves away (rides with the punch), he extends the time and diminishes the force. (b) If the boxer moves into the gloved fist, the time is reduced and he must withstand a greater force.

FIGURE 6.9
Cassy imparts a large impulse to the bricks in a short time and produces a considerable force.

The idea of a short time of contact explains how a karate expert can split a stack of bricks with the blow of her bare hand (Figure 6.9). She brings her arm and hand swiftly against the bricks with considerable momentum. This momentum is quickly reduced when she delivers an impulse to the bricks. The impulse is the force of her hand against the bricks multiplied by the time during which her hand makes contact with the bricks. By swift execution, she makes the time of contact very brief and correspondingly makes the force of impact huge. If her hand is made to bounce upon impact, the force is even greater. How nice that the impulse-momentum $Ft = \Delta(mv)$ relationship underlies collisions of all kinds.[2]

[2]The t in Ft is assumed to be Δt. If we divide both sides of $Ft = \Delta(mv)$ by time interval Δt we get $Ft/\Delta t = \Delta mv/\Delta t = m(\Delta v/\Delta t) = ma$, a delightful connection to Newton's Second Law, $F = ma$.

CHECK POINT

1. **If the boxer in Figure 6.8 is able to increase the duration of impact to three times as long by riding with the punch, by how much will the force of impact be reduced?**
2. **If the boxer instead moves *into* the punch so as to decrease the duration of impact by half, by how much will the force of impact be increased?**
3. **A boxer being hit with a punch contrives to extend time for best results, whereas a karate expert delivers a force in a short time for best results. Isn't there a contradiction here?**

Different forces exerted over different time intervals can produce the same impulse:

Ft or Ft

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The force of impact will be only a third of what it would have been if he hadn't pulled back.
2. The force of impact will be two times greater than it would have been if he had held his head still. Impacts of this kind account for many knockouts.
3. There is no contradiction because the best results for each are quite different. The best result for the boxer is reduced force, which is achieved by maximizing time, and the best result for the karate expert is increased force delivered in minimum time.

6.4 Bouncing

A flowerpot dropped onto your head bounces quickly. Ouch! If the bouncing took a longer time, as with a safety net, then the force of the bounce would be much smaller.

If a flowerpot falls from a shelf onto your head, you may be in trouble. If it bounces off your head, you may be in more serious trouble. Why? Because impulses are greater when an object bounces. The impulse required to bring an object to a stop and then to "throw it back again" is greater than the impulse required merely to bring the object to a stop. Suppose, for example, that you catch the falling pot with your hands. You provide an impulse to reduce its momentum to zero. If you throw the pot upward again, you have to provide additional impulse. This increased amount of impulse is the same as the impulse your head supplies if the flowerpot bounces from it.

The second photo at the beginning of this chapter shows physics instructor Howie Brand swinging a dart against a wooden block. When the dart has a nail at its nose, the dart comes to a halt as it sticks to the block. The block remains upright. When the nail is removed and the nose of the dart is half of a solid rubber ball, the dart bounces upon contact with the block. The block topples over. The force against the block is greater when bouncing occurs.

The fact that impulses are greater when bouncing occurs was used with great success during the California Gold Rush. Inefficient paddle wheels were used in mining operations at the time. The concept of bouncing was employed by Lester A. Pelton, who designed spoon-shaped buckets that caused the incoming water to bounce upon impact. The bouncing of the water greatly increased the impulse on the wheel. Because Pelton's wheels operated very efficiently in the small flow found in streams located near mines, they were welcomed by the miners.

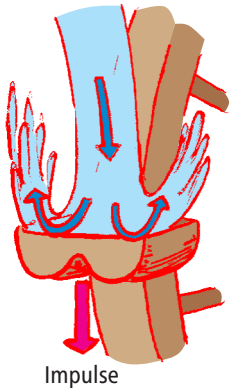


FIGURE 6.10
A Pelton wheel. The curved blades cause water to bounce and make a U-turn, which produces a greater impulse to turn the wheel.

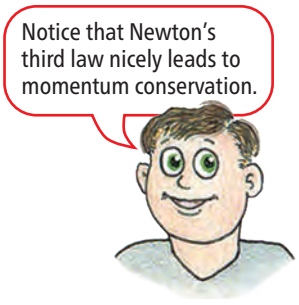
CHECK POINT

1. **In reference to Figure 6.9, how does the force that Cassy exerts on the bricks compare with the force exerted on her hand?**
2. **How will the impulse resulting from the impact differ if her hand bounces back upon striking the bricks?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. In accord with Newton's third law, the forces are equal. Only the resilience of the human hand and the training she has undergone to toughen her hand allow this feat to be performed without broken bones.
2. The impulse will be greater if her hand bounces from the bricks upon impact. If the time of impact is not correspondingly increased, a greater force will then be exerted on the bricks (and her hand!).

6.5 Conservation of Momentum



From Newton's second law, you know that to accelerate an object, a net force must be applied to it. This chapter states much the same thing, but in different language. If you wish to change the momentum of an object, exert an impulse on it.

Only an impulse external to a system can change the momentum of the system. Internal forces and impulses won't work. For example, the molecular forces within a baseball have no effect on the momentum of the baseball, just as a push against the dashboard of a car you're sitting in does not affect the momentum of the car. Molecular forces within the baseball and a push on the dashboard are internal forces. They come in balanced pairs that cancel to zero within the object. To change the momentum of the ball or the car, an external push or pull is required. If no external force is present, then no external impulse is present, and no change in momentum is possible.

CHECK POINT

If you toss a ball horizontally while standing on a skateboard, you'll roll backward with as much momentum as you impart to the ball. Will you roll backward if you instead hold onto the "tossed ball" while going through the motions of tossing it?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

No. Without an external impulse acting on you and the skateboard, you will not roll backward. You may jiggle a bit with the motions, but no net backward motion will occur. In terms of momentum, if no momentum is imparted to the ball, no net momentum will be imparted to you and your board. Try it and see.

As another example, consider the cannon being fired in Figure 6.11. The force on the cannonball inside the cannon barrel is equal and opposite to the force that causes the cannon to recoil. Since these forces act for the same duration of time, the impulses are also equal and opposite. Recall Newton's third law about equal and opposite action and reaction forces. It applies to impulses, too. These impulses are internal to the system comprising the cannon and the cannonball, so they don't change the momentum of the cannon–cannonball system. Before the firing, the system is at rest and the momentum is zero. After the firing, the net momentum, or total momentum, is *still* zero. Net momentum is neither gained nor lost.

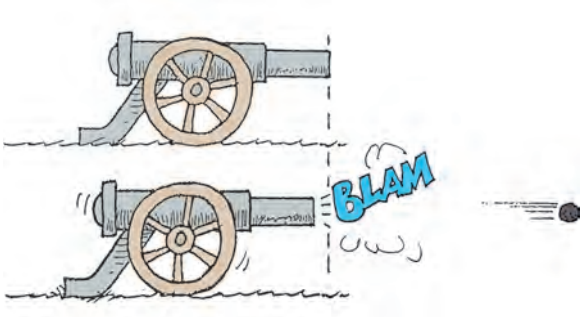


FIGURE 6.11
The momentum before firing is zero. After firing, the net momentum is still zero because the momentum of the cannon is equal and opposite to the momentum of the cannonball.

fyi

- In Figure 6.11, most of the cannonball's momentum is in speed; most of the recoiling cannon's momentum is in mass. So $mV = Mv$.

Momentum, like the quantities velocity and force, has both direction and magnitude. It is a *vector quantity*. Like velocity and force, momentum can be canceled. So, although the cannonball in the preceding example gains momentum when fired and the recoiling cannon gains momentum in the opposite direction, there is no gain in the cannon–cannonball *system*. The momenta (plural form of *momentum*) of the cannonball and the cannon are equal in magnitude and opposite in direction.[3] Therefore, as vectors, they add to zero for the system as a whole. Since no net external force acts on the system, there is no net impulse on the system and no net change in momentum. You can see that, *if no net force or net impulse acts on a system, the momentum of that system cannot change.*

[3]Here we neglect the momentum of ejected gases from the exploding gunpowder, which can be considerable. Firing a gun with blanks at close range is a definite no-no because of the considerable momentum of ejecting gases. More than one person has been killed by close-range firing of blanks. In 1998, a minister in Jacksonville, Florida, dramatizing his sermon before several hundred parishioners, including his family, shot himself in the head with a blank round from a .357-caliber Magnum. Although no slug emerged from the gun, exhaust gases did—enough to be lethal. So, strictly speaking, the momentum of the bullet + the momentum of the exhaust gases is equal to the opposite momentum of the recoiling gun.

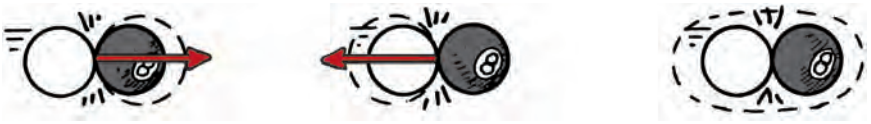
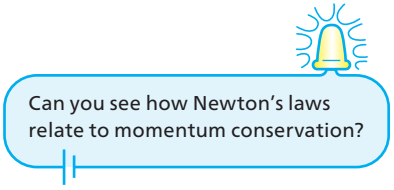


FIGURE 6.12
A cue ball hits an 8 ball head-on. Consider this event in three systems: (a) An external force acts on the 8-ball system, and its momentum increases. (b) An external force acts on the cue-ball system, and its momentum decreases. (c) No external force acts on the cue-ball + 8-ball system, and momentum is conserved (simply transferred from one part of the system to the other).

When momentum, or any quantity in physics, does not change, we say it is *conserved*. The idea that momentum is conserved when no external force acts is elevated to a central law of mechanics, called the **law of conservation of momentum,** which can be stated as follows:

In the absence of an external force, the momentum of a system remains unchanged.

In any system in which all forces are internal—as, for example, cars colliding, atomic nuclei undergoing radioactive decay, or stars exploding—the net momentum of the system before and after the event is the same.



CHECK POINT

1. **Newton's second law states that, if no net force is exerted on a system, no acceleration occurs. Does it follow that no change in momentum occurs?**
2. **Newton's third law states that the force one body exerts on another is equal and opposite to the force the second body exerts on the first. Does it follow that the impulse one body exerts on another is equal and opposite to the impulse the second body exerts on the first?**
3. **What does it mean to say momentum is conserved?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Yes, because no acceleration means that no change occurs in velocity or in momentum (mass × velocity). Another line of reasoning is simply that no net force means there is no net impulse and thus no change in momentum.
2. Yes, because the interaction between both occurs during the same *time interval*. Because the times are equal and the forces are equal and opposite, the impulses *Ft* are also equal and opposite. Like force, impulse is a vector quantity and follows vector rules.
3. To say momentum is conserved is to say that whatever momentum a system possesses, if no external forces act on that system, its momentum perseveres—without change.

CONSERVATION LAWS

A conservation law specifies that certain quantities in a system remain precisely constant, regardless of what changes may occur within the system. It is a law of constancy during change. In this chapter, we see that the total momentum is unchanged during collisions as long as no outside force acts during the collision. We say that momentum is conserved. In the next chapter, we'll learn that energy is conserved as it transforms—the amount of energy in light, for example, transforms completely to thermal energy when the light is absorbed. We'll see, in Chapter 8, that angular momentum is conserved—whatever the rotational motion of a planetary system, its angular momentum remains unchanged so long as it is free of outside influences. In Chapter 22, we'll learn that electric charge is conserved, which means that it can be neither created nor destroyed. When we study nuclear physics, we'll see that these and other conservation laws rule in the submicroscopic world. Conservation laws are a source of deep insights into the simple regularity of nature and are often considered the most fundamental physical laws. Can you think of things in your own life that remain constant as other things change?

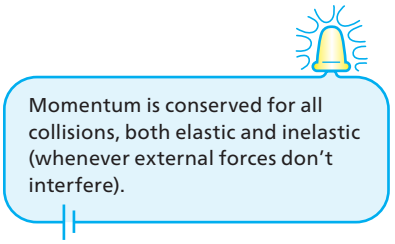
6.6 Collisions

Momentum is conserved in collisions; that is, the net momentum of a system of colliding objects is unchanged before, during, and after the collision. This is because the forces that act during the collision are internal forces—forces acting and reacting within the system itself. There is only a redistribution or sharing of whatever momentum exists before the collision. In any collision, we can say:

Net momentum before collision = net momentum after collision.

This is true no matter how the objects might be moving before they collide.

When a moving billiard ball collides head-on with another billiard ball at rest, the moving ball comes to rest and the other ball moves away with the speed of the colliding ball. We call this an **elastic collision**; ideally, the colliding objects rebound without lasting deformation or the generation of heat (Figure 6.13). But momentum is conserved even when the colliding objects become entangled during the collision. This is an **inelastic collision**, characterized by deformation, or the generation of heat, or both. In a perfectly inelastic collision, the two objects stick together. Consider, for example, the case of a freight car moving along a track and colliding with another freight car at rest (Figure 6.14). If the freight cars are of equal mass and are coupled by the collision, can we predict the velocity of the coupled cars after impact?



Suppose the single car is moving at 10 meters per second (m/s) and the mass of each car is m. Then, from the conservation of momentum,

$$(\text{net } mv)_{\text{before}} = (\text{net } mv)_{\text{after}}$$

$$(m \times 10)_{\text{before}} = (2m \times V)_{\text{after}}$$

By simple algebra, $V = 5$ m/s. This makes sense because, since twice as much mass is moving after the collision, the velocity must be half as great as the velocity before the collision. Both sides of the equation are then equal.

Note the inelastic collisions shown in Figure 6.15. If A and B are moving with equal momenta in opposite directions (A and B colliding head-on), then one of these is considered to be negative, and the momenta add algebraically to zero. After the collision, the coupled wreck remains at the point of impact, with zero momentum. If, on the other hand, A and B are moving in the same direction (A catching up with B), the net momentum is simply the addition of their individual momenta.

If A, however, moves east with, say, 10 more units of momentum than B moving west (not shown in the figure), then after the collision, the coupled wreck

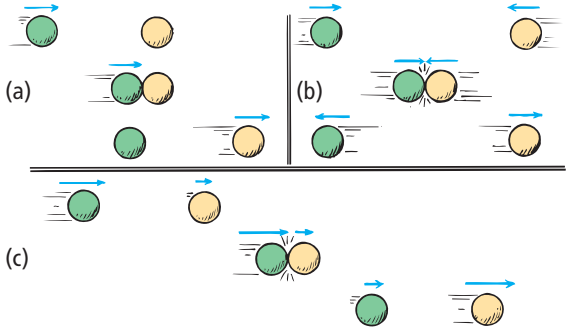


FIGURE 6.13
Elastic collisions of equally massive balls. (a) A green ball strikes a yellow ball at rest. (b) A head-on collision. (c) A collision of balls moving in the same direction. In each case, momentum is transferred from one ball to the other.

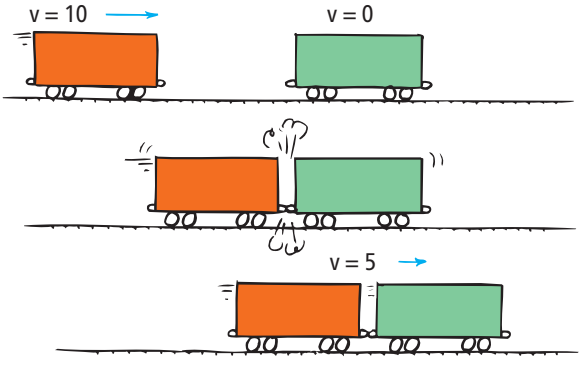


FIGURE 6.14
Inelastic collision. The momentum of the freight car on the left is shared with the same-mass freight car on the right after collision.

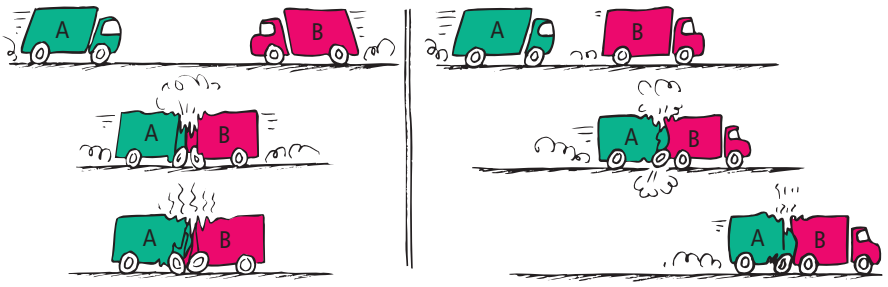


FIGURE 6.15
Inelastic collisions. The net momentum of the trucks before and after the collision is the same.

Galileo worked hard to produce smooth surfaces to minimize friction. How he would have loved to experiment with today's air tracks!

moves east with 10 units of momentum. The wreck will finally come to a rest, of course, because of the external force of friction by the ground. The time of impact is short, however, and the impact force of the collision is so much greater than the external friction force that momentum immediately before and after the collision is, for practical purposes, conserved. The net momentum just before the trucks collide (10 units) is equal to the combined momentum of the crumpled trucks just after impact (10 units). The same principle applies to gently docking spacecraft, where friction is entirely absent. Their net momentum just before docking is preserved as their net momentum just after docking.

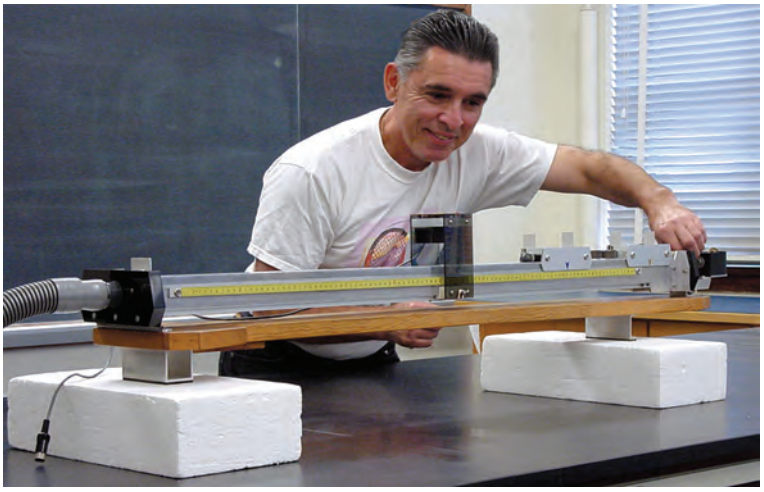


FIGURE 6.16
Will Maynez demonstrates his air track. Blasts of air from tiny holes provide a friction-free surface for the carts to glide upon.

CHECK POINT

Consider the air track in Figure 6.16. Suppose a gliding cart of mass 0.5 kg bumps into, and sticks to, a stationary cart of mass 1.5 kg. If the speed of the gliding cart before the collision is v_{before}, how fast will the coupled carts glide after the collision?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

According to momentum conservation, momentum of the 0.5-kg cart before the collision = momentum of both carts stuck together after the collision:

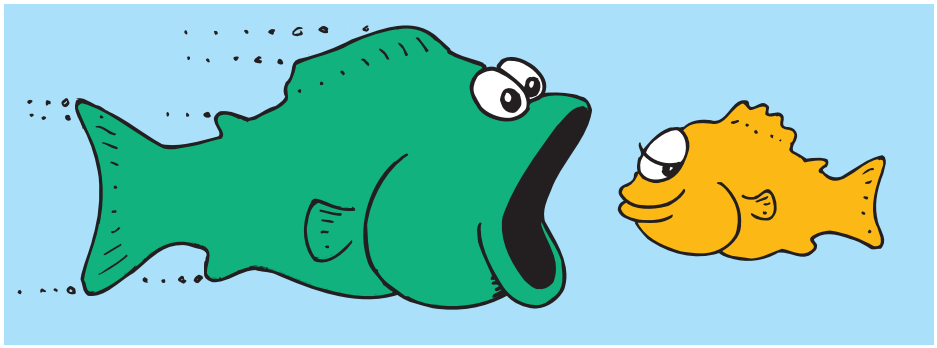
$$(0.5\ \text{kg})v_{before} = (0.5\ \text{kg} + 1.5\ \text{kg})v_{after}$$

$$v_{after} = \frac{(0.5\ \text{kg})v_{before}}{(0.5 + 1.5)\ \text{kg}} = \frac{0.5\ v_{before}}{2} = \frac{v_{before}}{4}$$

This makes sense because four times as much mass is moving after the collision, with the coupled carts gliding 1/4 as fast.

PROBLEM SOLVING

A fish swims toward and swallows a smaller fish at rest, as shown in the sketch. If the larger fish has a mass of 5 kg and swims 1 m/s toward the 1-kg fish, what is the velocity of the larger fish immediately after lunch? Ignore the effects of water resistance.



We find the solution using conservation of momentum:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Net momentum before lunch} &= \text{net momentum after lunch} \\ (5\text{ kg})(1\text{ m/s}) + (1\text{ kg})(0\text{ m/s}) &= (5\text{ kg} + 1\text{ kg})v \\ 5\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s} &= (6\text{ kg})v \\ v &= 5/6\text{ m/s} \end{aligned}$$

We see that the small fish has no momentum before lunch because its velocity is zero. After lunch, the combined mass of both fishes moves at velocity v, which, by simple algebra, is seen to be 5/6 m/s. This velocity is in the same direction as that of the larger fish.

Suppose the small fish in this example is not at rest, but swims toward the left at a velocity of 4 m/s. It swims in a direction opposite that of the larger fish—a negative direction, if the direction of the larger fish is considered positive. In this case,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Net momentum before lunch} &= \text{net momentum after lunch} \\ (5\text{ kg})(1\text{ m/s}) + (1\text{ kg})(-4\text{ m/s}) &= (5\text{ kg} + 1\text{ kg})v \\ (5\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}) - (4\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}) &= (6\text{ kg})v \\ 1\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s} &= 6\text{ kg}\,v \\ v &= 1/6\text{ m/s} \end{aligned}$$

Note that the negative momentum of the smaller fish before lunch effectively slows the larger fish after lunch. If the smaller fish were swimming twice as fast, then

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Net momentum before lunch} &= \text{net momentum after lunch} \\ (5\text{ kg})(1\text{ m/s}) + (1\text{ kg})(-8\text{ m/s}) &= (5\text{ kg} + 1\text{ kg})v \\ (5\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}) - (8\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}) &= (6\text{ kg})v \\ -3\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s} &= 6\text{ kg}\,v \\ v &= -1/2\text{ m/s} \end{aligned}$$

We see the final velocity is −1/2 m/s. What is the significance of the minus sign? It means that the final velocity is *opposite* to the initial velocity of the larger fish. After lunch, the two-fish system moves toward the left. We leave as a chapter-end problem finding the initial velocity of the smaller fish that halts the larger fish in its tracks.

CHECK POINT

A classmate refers to the big fish swallowing a small fish at rest in the Problem Solving box and says that immediately after lunch the fattened fish has a change in both speed and momentum. Do you agree?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

No. Agree about a change in speed, but NOT a change in momentum. In accord with all of the previous examples, the momentum of the two-fish system is the same before and after lunch. The lower speed of the big fish is compensated by its fatter belly, still maintaining its same momentum before lunch. Without careful thought, many readers miss this question.

6.7 More Complicated Collisions

Unlike billiard balls after a collision, nuclear particles experience no air drag or other friction. If they are not deflected by electric or magnetic forces, they fly on in straight lines without losing speed until they hit another particle or undergo radioactive decay.

The net momentum remains unchanged in any collision, regardless of the angle between the paths of the colliding objects. The net momentum when different directions are involved can be expressed with the parallelogram rule of vector addition. We will not treat such complicated cases in great detail here, but we'll show some simple examples to convey the concept.

In Figure 6.17, we see a collision between two cars traveling at right angles to each other. Car A has a momentum directed due east, and car B's momentum is directed due north. If their individual momenta are equal in magnitude, then their combined momentum is in a northeasterly direction. This is the direction the coupled cars will travel after collision. We see that, just as the diagonal of a square is not equal to the sum of two of the sides, the magnitude of the resulting momentum does not simply equal the arithmetic sum of the two momenta before the collision. Recall the relationship between the diagonal of a square and the length of one of its sides (see Figure 2.9 in Chapter 2)—the diagonal is $\sqrt{2}$ times the length of the side of a square. So, in this example, the magnitude of the resultant momentum will be equal to $\sqrt{2}$ times the momentum of either vehicle.

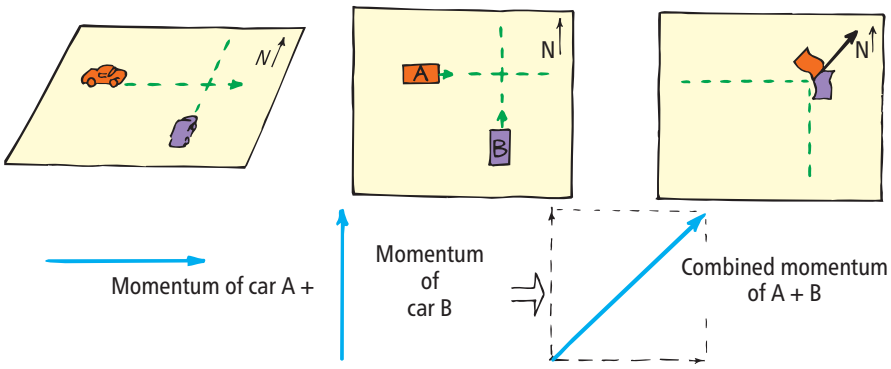


FIGURE 6.17
Momentum is a vector quantity.

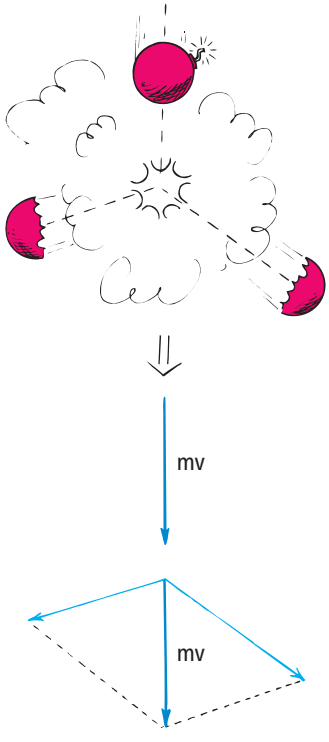


FIGURE 6.18
After the firecracker bursts, the momenta of its fragments add up (by vector addition) to the original momentum.

Figure 6.18 shows a falling firecracker exploding into two pieces. The momenta of the fragments combine by vector addition to equal the original momentum of the falling firecracker.

Whatever the nature of a collision or however complicated it is, the total momentum before, during, and after remains unchanged. This extremely useful law enables us to learn much from collisions without any knowledge of the forces that act in the collisions. We will see, in the next chapter, that energy, is also conserved. By applying momentum and energy conservation to the collisions of subatomic particles as observed in various detection chambers, we can compute the masses of these tiny particles. We obtain this information by determining momenta and energy before and after collisions. On a larger scale, the laws of conservation of momentum and energy yield detailed information about the structure and motion of galaxies. Both conversation laws are far reaching.

Chapter 6 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Momentum The product of the mass of an object and its velocity.

Impulse The product of the force acting on an object and the time during which it acts.

Impulse-momentum relationship Impulse is equal to the change in the momentum of the object that the impulse acts upon. In symbolic notation,

$$Ft = \Delta mv$$

Law of conservation of momentum In the absence of an external force, the momentum of a system remains unchanged. Hence, the momentum before an event involving only internal forces is equal to the momentum after the event:

$$mv_{(\text{before event})} = mv_{(\text{after event})}$$

Elastic collision A collision in which objects rebound without lasting deformation or the generation of heat.

Inelastic collision A collision in which objects become distorted, generate heat, and possibly stick together.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

6.1 Momentum

1. Can a heavy bus and a small bicycle have the same momentum?
2. How does momentum relate to inertia?

6.2 Impulse

3. What do you understand by impulse?
4. How is impulse related to change in momentum?
5. Why does a long cannon impart more speed to a cannonball than a small cannon for the same force?

6.3 Impulse–Momentum Relationship

6. Mathematically express the relationship between impulse and change in momentum.
7. To increase the momentum of an object, should you exert a large force, or extend that force for as long a time as possible—or both? Explain.
8. What is the role of airbags in vehicles in terms of impulse and momentum?
9. What role does duration of contact play in a karate impact?
10. Why should a boxer never move into a gloved fist?

6.4 Bouncing

11. Which baseball undergoes the greatest change in momentum at the same speed immediately after being caught and being thrown?
    (a) One that is caught.
    (b) One that is thrown.
    (c) One that is caught and then thrown back.
12. In the preceding question, which case requires the greatest impulse?
13. Why are buckets rather than flat paddles used in a Pelton wheel?

6.5 Conservation of Momentum

14. Can a net impulse be produced on an automobile if you sit inside and push on the dashboard? Why or why not?
15. Can the internal forces within a soccer ball produce an impulse on the soccer ball to change its momentum? Why or why not?
16. Is it correct to say that, if no net impulse is exerted on a system, then no change in the momentum of the system will occur?
17. State the law of conservation of momentum. Explain it for a system with only internal forces.
18. Between scalar and vector quantities, which can cancel to zero? Explain.

6.6 Collisions

19. Why is momentum conserved during elastic and inelastic collisions irrespective of the state of motion of the objects involved?
20. Billiard ball A rolls at a certain speed and makes a perfectly elastic collision with billiard ball B of the same mass. After the collision, ball A is observed to be at rest. What can you infer about the speed of ball B?
21. If equally massive railroad cars A and B stick together after an inelastic collision, how does their speed after the collision compare with the initial speed of car A?
22. Immediately after a slow-swimming large fish swallows a small fish at rest, does the momentum of the large fish change? Defend your answer.
23. What kind of collision, elastic or inelastic, occurs when a large fish swallows a small fish at rest?

6.7 More Complicated Collisions

24. Two cars traveling along icy roads at right angles to each other undergo an inelastic collision. In what direction does the combined wreck tend to slide?

25. If two cars with equal amounts of momentum have an inelastic collision while traveling along icy roads at right angles to each, at what angle do the entangled cars tend to slide?

26. How would the combined momentum of the two cars before collision compare to the momentum of the entangled cars after collision on a perfectly slippery road?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

27. If you have access to an air track or air table, play around with the carts or air pucks and predict what will happen before you initiate collisions.

28. While watching a game of billiards, pay attention to what a player does when hitting a ball using the cue stick. How do they control the direction and the speed of the ball(s) they hit? Try to observe the motion of a ball in rest after it gets impacted by the striker ball. What direction does it take after the collision? What happens to the motion of the striker ball after the collision?

29. While watching a game of pool or billiards, note that no matter how complicated the collision of balls, the momentum along the line of action of the cue ball before impact is the same as the combined momentum of all the balls along this direction after impact and that the components of momenta perpendicular to this line of action cancel to zero after impact—the same value as before impact in this direction. You'll see both the vector nature of momentum and its conservation more clearly when rotational skidding—"English"—is not imparted to the cue ball. When English is imparted by striking the cue ball off center, rotational momentum, which is also conserved, somewhat complicates analysis. But, regardless of how the cue ball is struck, in the absence of external forces, both linear and rotational momenta are always conserved. Both pool and billiards offer a first-rate exhibition of momentum conservation in action.

30. With your smartphone, find the force a dropped tennis ball (mass of about 50 grams or 0.050 kg) experiences when dropped from 1 meter to the floor. Use the voice memo app to record and "hear" the force of ball impact, then edit the recording to find the duration of the impact time. Next, calculate the speed of the ball when striking the floor using the equation $v = \sqrt{2gh}$, where g is 10 m/s^2 (or 9.8 m/s^2) and h is the height of the drop in meters. Finally, use this data and the impulse–momentum equation to solve for the force. How does this force compare to the weight of the ball? Try this with different surfaces and see if you get different results.

PLUG AND CHUG (EQUATION FAMILIARIZATION)

Momentum: $p = mv$

31. What is the momentum of a 10-kg rubber ball rolling at 2 m/s?

32. What is the momentum of a 50-kg carton that slides at 10 m/s across an icy surface?

Impulse: $I = Ft$

33. What impulse occurs when an average force of 5 N is exerted on a cart for 2 s?

34. Calculate the impulse when the same force of 5 N acts on the cart for thrice the time.

Impulse = change in momentum: $Ft = \Delta mv$

35. What is the impulse on a 4-kg ball rolling at 3 m/s when it bumps into a pillow and stops?

36. How much impulse stops a 40-kg box traveling at 2 m/s when it is stopped by a wall?

Conservation of momentum: $mv_{\text{before}} = mv_{\text{after}}$

37. A 3-kg blob of putty moving at 10 m/s hits a 2-kg blob of putty at rest. Calculate the speed of the stuck-together blobs of putty immediately after the collision.

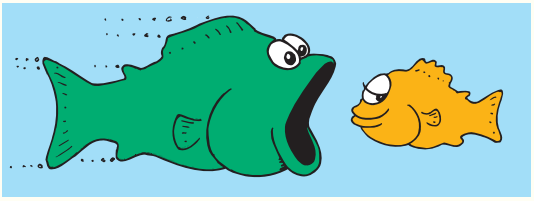
THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

38. Bowling Barry asks how much impulse is needed to stop a 10-kg bowling ball moving at 6 m/s. Show that the answer is 60 N • s.

39. Lil drives her car with a mass of 1000 kg at a speed of 20 m/s. Show that to bring her car to a halt in 10 s road friction must exert a force of 2000 N on the car.

40. A car carrying a 75-kg crash-test dummy drives into a wall at 25 m/s and is brought to rest in 0.1 s. Show that the average force exerted by the seat belt on the dummy is 18,750 N.

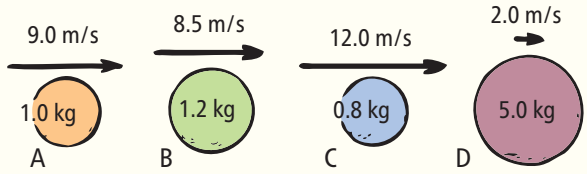
41. Jean (mass 40 kg), standing on slippery ice, catches her leaping dog (mass 15 kg) moving horizontally at 3.0 m/s. Show that the speed of Jean and her dog after the catch is about 0.8 m/s.
42. A toy truck weighs three times as much as a toy car. If the truck moves at a speed of 4 m/s and collides with the car, which is initially at rest, then what would be the speed of the coupled truck and car system after the collision? Assume that after the collision the truck and the car stick together and move as a single body.
43. A 5-kg fish swimming 1 m/s swallows an absentminded 1-kg fish swimming toward it at a speed that brings both fish to a halt immediately after lunch. Show that the speed of the approaching smaller fish before lunch must have been 5 m/s.



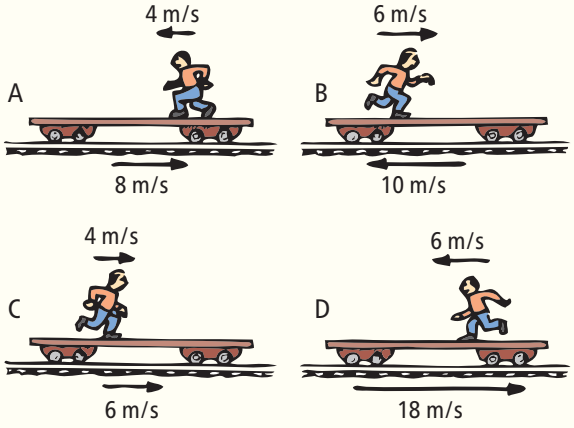
44. Comic-strip Superhero meets an asteroid in outer space and hurls it at 800 m/s, as fast as a speeding bullet. The asteroid is a thousand times more massive than Superhero. In the strip, Superhero is seen at rest after the throw. Taking physics into account, what would be the recoil speed?
45. Two automobiles, each of mass 1000 kg, are moving at the same speed, 20 m/s, when they collide and stick together. Cite the direction and speed the wreckage moves when
    (a) one car was driving north and one south.
    (b) one car was driving north and one east (as shown in Figure 6.17).
46. Show in equation form that the force of an egg tossed at a momentum of p into a sagging sheet in a stopping time t is $F = \Delta p/t$.
47. Show that dividing both sides of $Ft = \Delta(mv)$ by time interval Δt produces Newton's Second Law, $F = ma$. We assume the t in Ft is actually Δt.

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

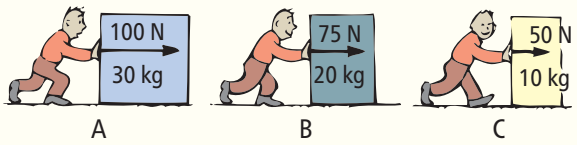
48. The balls have different masses and speeds. Rank the following from greatest to least.



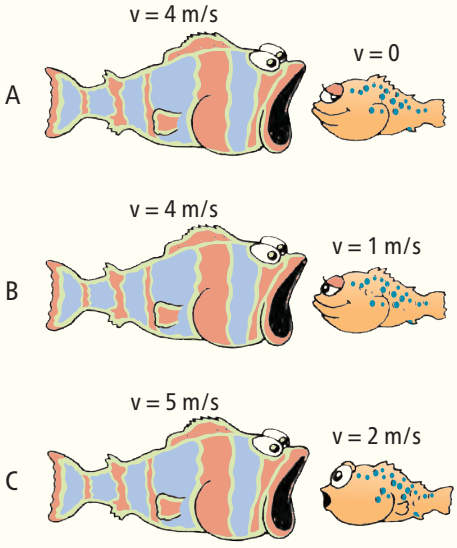
    (a) Momentum
    (b) The impulses needed to stop the balls
49. Jogging Jake runs along a train flatcar that moves at the velocities shown. In each case, Jake's velocity is given relative to the car. Call direction to the right positive. Rank the following from greatest to least.



    (a) The magnitude of Jake's momentum relative to the flatcar
    (b) Jake's momentum relative to a stationary observer on the ground
50. Jake pushes crates starting from rest across his classroom floor for 3 s with a net force as shown. For each crate, rank the following from greatest to least.



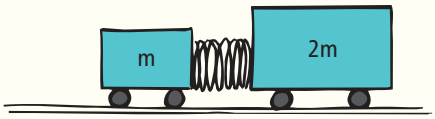
    (a) Impulse delivered
    (b) Change in momentum
    (c) Final speed
    (d) Momentum in 3 s
51. A hungry fish is about to have lunch at the speeds shown. Assume the hungry fish has a mass 5 times that of the small fish. Immediately after lunch, rank the speed of the formerly hungry fish for each case from greatest to least.



THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

52. How can the momentum of a speeding bullet be the same as the momentum of a supertanker moving toward a dock?
53. When a large cargo ship heads for a port, its engines are usually turned off several kilometers from the port. Even when its engines are off, the ship keeps dragging for several minutes before it comes to rest. Why does this happen?
54. Why do helmets provide extra safety to motorcyclists and reduce the risk and severity of injury in accidents?
55. Two similar cars equipped with the same airbags and moving at the same speed collide into a wall. The first car is loaded with items that make it heavier than the second car. In which car do the passengers have a better chance of survival?
56. Why does it make sense to withdraw your hands while catching a ball?
57. In terms of impulse and momentum, why are nylon ropes, which stretch considerably under tension, preferred by mountain climbers?
58. Why would it be a dangerous mistake for a bungee jumper to use a steel cable rather than an elastic cord?
59. When jumping from a significant height, why is it advantageous to land with your knees slightly bent?
60. When a motorcycle accident occurs the rider is taught to slide the bike to a stop. Why is this technique a better alternative to stopping quickly?
61. The basic landing for Parkour training involves a deep knee bend and a forward roll. Explain how momentum and impulse are involved in the landing.
62. You can survive a feet-first impact at a speed of about 12 m/s (27 mi/h) on concrete; 15 m/s (34 mi/h) on soil; and 34 m/s (76 mi/h) on water. Why are the values so different for different surfaces?
63. Why is it important to extend your hand forward when catching a fast-moving baseball with your bare hand?
64. Two football players kick similar balls. The first player kicks a stationary ball, while the second player kicks a moving ball. Assume that the second player kicks the ball in the same direction in which it was initially moving. If both the footballs fly at the same speed after being kicked, then which player had to apply a larger force?
65. Many years ago, automobiles were manufactured to be as rigid as possible, whereas today's autos are designed to crumple upon impact. Why?
66. How does a rocket move up? Why do we see so much vapor and smoke during and after the launch?
67. A lunar vehicle is tested on Earth at a speed of 10 km/h. When it travels as fast on the Moon, is its momentum more, less, or the same? Defend your answer.
68. You can't throw a raw egg against a wall without breaking it. But Peter Hopkinson can throw an egg at the same speed into a sagging sheet without breakage. Explain, using concepts from this chapter.

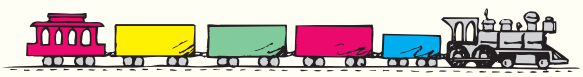
69. Why is it of utmost importance to keep the nozzle of a compressed gas cylinder protected from any impact, even if the gas is nontoxic?
70. Why would it be a poor idea to fire a gun that has a bullet 10 times as massive as the gun? Explain.
71. Why are the impulses that colliding objects exert on each other equal and opposite?
72. If a ball is projected upward from the ground with 10 kg • m/s of momentum, what is Earth's momentum of recoil? Why do we not feel this recoil?
73. While sitting in an airplane you throw an apple vertically upward. At the instance when the apple comes out of your hand, what happens to the horizontal and vertical momenta of the apple as well as the apple and airplane system?
74. Why does a field hockey goalkeeper use several protective gear, such as protective leg pads, helmets, and padded gloves, while a soccer goalkeeper only uses gloves?
75. Why do 8-ounce boxing gloves hit harder than 16-ounce gloves?
76. You jump from a canoe to the nearby dock, expecting an easy landing. Instead you land in the water. What is your explanation for this mishap?
77. Explain how a swarm of bees can have a net momentum of zero.
78. How can a fully dressed person at rest in the middle of a pond on perfectly frictionless ice get to shore?
79. If you throw a ball horizontally while standing on roller skates, you roll backward with a momentum that matches that of the ball. Will you roll backward if you go through the motions of throwing the ball, but not letting go of the ball? Explain.
80. The examples of the two previous exercises can be explained in terms of momentum conservation and in terms of Newton's third law. Assuming you've answered them in terms of momentum conservation, answer them also in terms of Newton's third law (or vice versa, if you answered already in terms of Newton's third law).
81. A pair of carts is connected by a compressed spring. When the spring is released, what are the relative momenta of the carts? What are the relative speeds? Defend your answers.



82. Your friend says that the law of momentum conservation is violated when a ball rolls down a hill and gains momentum. What do you say?
83. What is meant by a *system*, and how is it related to the conservation of momentum?
84. If you toss a ball upward, is the momentum of the moving ball conserved? Is the momentum of the system consisting of ball + Earth conserved? Explain your answers.
85. The momentum of an apple falling to the ground is not conserved because the external force of gravity acts on it. But momentum is conserved in a larger system. Explain.
86. Drop a stone from the top of a high cliff. Identify the system wherein the net momentum is zero as the stone falls.
87. As you toss a ball upward, is there a change in the normal force on your feet? Is there a change when you catch the ball? (Think of doing this while standing on a bathroom scale.) Defend your answer.
88. When you are driving at highway speed, the momentum of a bug is suddenly changed as it splatters onto your windshield. Compared with the change in momentum of the bug, by how much does the momentum of your car change? Explain why.
89. If a tennis ball and a bowling ball collide in midair, does each undergo the same change in momentum? Defend your answer.
90. If a Mack truck and a Mini Cooper have a head-on collision, which vehicle will experience the greater force of impact? The greater impulse? The greater change in momentum? The greater deceleration?
91. Would a head-on collision between two cars be more damaging to the occupants if the cars stuck together or if the cars rebounded upon impact?
92. A 3-kg cart on an air track moves with a speed of 4 m/s to the right, heading toward a 2-kg cart moving to the left at 5 m/s. What is the direction of the two-cart system's momentum?
93. A pair of same-mass same-speed blobs moving at right angles to each other make an inelastic collision. How does the combined momentum compare with their initial momenta?
94. If you and a friend are sitting on a small boat and rowing down a river and your friend suddenly jumps off the boat, what will happen to the speed of the boat?
95. To throw a ball, do you exert an impulse on it? Do you exert an impulse to catch it at the same speed? About how much impulse do you exert, in comparison, if you catch it and immediately throw it back again? (Imagine yourself on a skateboard.)
96. Explain why Howie's block shown in the second of the photos on page 124 topples when the swinging dart bounces from it, but not when it sticks.

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

97. In terms of impulse, what is the benefit of a "runaway truck ramp" on steep mountain roads?
98. It is generally much more difficult to stop a heavy truck than a skateboarder. Discuss a scenario in which the skateboard could require more stopping force. (Consider relative times.)
99. A boxer can punch a heavy bag for more than an hour without tiring but will tire quickly when boxing with an opponent for a few minutes. Why? (*Hint:* When the boxer's fist is aimed at the bag, what supplies the impulse to stop the punches? When the boxer's fist is aimed at the opponent, what or who supplies the impulse to stop the punches that don't connect?)
100. Railroad cars are loosely coupled to provide a time delay from the time the first car is moved until the last cars are moved from rest by the locomotive. Discuss the advisability of this loose coupling and slack between cars from the point of view of impulse and momentum.



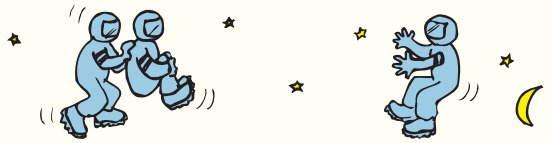
101. We have learned that only external forces can change the velocity of a body. Does the force of the brakes that you apply while riding a bicycle slow it down internally or externally?
102. In Chapter 5, rocket propulsion was explained in terms of Newton's third law. That is, the force that propels a rocket is from the exhaust gases pushing against the rocket, the reaction to the force the rocket exerts on the exhaust gases. Discuss and explain rocket propulsion in terms of momentum conservation.
103. Discuss how the conservation of momentum is a consequence of Newton's third law.
104. A car hurtles off a cliff and crashes on the canyon floor below. Identify the system wherein the net momentum is zero during the crash.
105. (a) How does the momentum of a skydiver change when they jump out of a plane and their parachute is not open yet? What happens to the momentum of the skydiver and earth combined system in this case? (b) How does the momentum of the combined system change when the skydiver opens their parachute?
106. An ice sailcraft is stalled on a frozen lake on a windless day. The skipper sets up a fan as shown. If all the wind bounces backward from the sail, will the craft be set in motion? If so, in what direction?

107. Discuss whether or not your answer to the preceding exercise would be different if the air is brought to a halt by the sail without bouncing.
108. Discuss the advisability of simply removing the sail in the preceding exercises.
109. Which exerts the greater impulse on a steel plate—machine gun bullets that bounce from the plate, or the same bullets squashing and sticking to the plate?

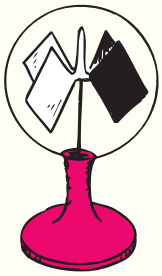
110. Freddy Frog drops vertically from a tree onto a horizontally moving skateboard. The skateboard slows. Discuss two reasons for this, one in terms of a horizontal friction force between Freddy's feet and the skateboard, and one in terms of momentum conservation.

111. You have a friend who says that after a golf ball collides with a bowling ball at rest, although the speed gained by the bowling ball is very small, its momentum after the collision exceeds the initial momentum of the golf ball. Your friend cites the "negative" momentum of the golf ball after collision. Another friend says this is hogwash—that the bowling ball cannot have more momentum because conservation would be violated. Which friend do you agree with?

112. Suppose that there are three astronauts outside a spaceship and that they decide to play catch. All the astronauts weigh the same on Earth and are equally strong. The first astronaut throws the second one toward the third one and the game begins. Describe the motion of the astronauts as the game proceeds. How long will the game last?



113. Light possesses momentum, which can be demonstrated with the radiometer shown in the sketch. Metal vanes painted black on one side and white on the other are free to rotate around the point of a needle mounted in a vacuum. When light is incident on the black surface, it is absorbed; when light is incident upon the white surface, it is reflected. Upon which surface is the impulse of incident light greater, and which way will the vanes rotate? (They rotate in the opposite direction in the more common radiometers in which air is present in the glass chamber; your instructor may tell you why.)



114. Does the bat that hits a fast-moving baseball slow down during the bat–ball collision? Answer in terms of momentum.

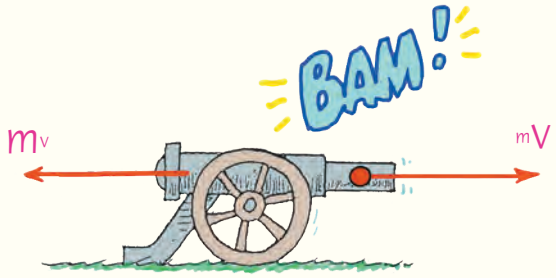
115. A deuteron is a nuclear particle of unique mass made up of one proton and one neutron. Suppose that a deuteron is accelerated to a certain speed in a cyclotron and directed into an observation chamber, where it collides with and sticks to a target particle that is initially at rest and then is observed to move at exactly half the speed of the incident deuteron. Discuss why the observers state that the target particle is itself a deuteron.

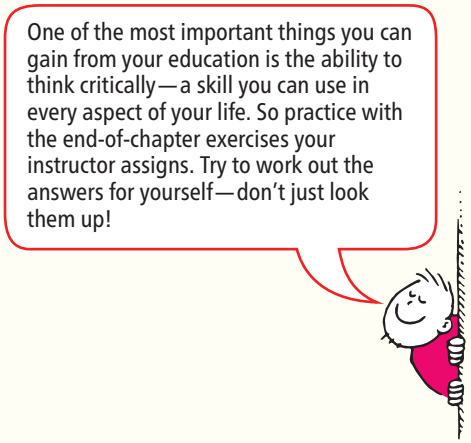
116. A billiard ball will stop short when it collides head-on with a ball at rest. The ball cannot stop short, however, if the collision is not exactly head-on—that is, if the second ball moves at an angle to the path of the first. Do you know why? (*Hint:* Consider momentum before and after the collision along the initial direction of the first ball and also in a direction perpendicular to this initial direction.)

117. A mischievous student places a firecracker in the midst of a motionless cluster of pool balls at rest on a pool table. The bursting firecracker sends the balls scattering in many directions. Convince your study friends that the total momentum of the pool balls *immediately after* the burst is zero.

118. A woodcutter hits a block of wood with an ax. The block breaks into two chunks that fly apart in opposite directions. The chunk that flies to the left covers a larger distance than the chunk that flies to the right. What can one conclude about their momenta, speed, and mass?

119. Explain to a friend the reason for the different-sized symbols for momentum in the sketch.




One of the most important things you can gain from your education is the ability to think critically—a skill you can use in every aspect of your life. So practice with the end-of-chapter exercises your instructor assigns. Try to work out the answers for yourself—don't just look them up!

CHAPTER SIX Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. When riding your bicycle at twice your normal speed your momentum is
   (a) almost twice.
   (b) twice as much.
   (c) four times as much.
   (d) None of the above
2. An iron ball and wooden ball of the same size are dropped simultaneously from a cliff. Ignore air drag. When hitting the ground below, the iron ball has a greater
   (a) speed.
   (b) acceleration.
   (c) momentum.
   (d) All of the above
3. A long-barrel cannon fires a faster cannonball than a short cannon because the ball is given more
   (a) force.
   (b) impulse.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
4. A freight train rolls along a track with considerable momentum. If it rolls at the same speed but has twice the mass, its momentum is
   (a) zero.
   (b) doubled.
   (c) quadrupled.
   (d) unchanged.
5. When freight cars collide, momentum is conserved in
   (a) elastic collisions.
   (b) inelastic collisions.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
6. A rolling freight car collides with an identical freight car at rest. After coupling they roll with a speed of 2 m/s. From this information the initial speed of the rolling freight car was
   (a) 4 m/s.
   (b) 5 m/s.
   (c) 6 m/s.
   (d) 8 m/s.
7. A school bus on a highway brakes to a stop. More braking force is required if the bus has
   (a) more mass.
   (b) more momentum.
   (c) less stopping distance.
   (d) All of the above
8. Whether a vehicle comes to a stop by crashing into a haystack or a brick wall, the impulse is
   (a) greater with the haystack.
   (b) greater with the brick wall.
   (c) the same for both.
   (d) No way to say
9. A big fish swims upon and swallows a small fish at rest. Immediately after lunch, the fattened big fish has a change in
   (a) speed.
   (b) momentum.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
10. An unfortunate bug splatters on the windshield of a moving car. Which of these is the same in magnitude for the bug and the windshield?
    (a) Force.
    (b) Impulse.
    (c) Change in momentum.
    (d) All of the above

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (b): This is a reading test for the equation for momentum, mv. Twice speed v means twice the momentum mv. Sweet and simple.
2. (c): Both will fall with the same acceleration and have the same speed if air drag isn't a factor. The two are distinguished by mass, more for the iron ball than the wooden ball. So the iron ball with greater mass will hit the ground with greater momentum, even at the same speed.
3. (b): For the same force on the cannonball while in the barrel, the longer barrel means more time that the force acts, which gives the cannonball a greater impulse. So we see that the force acts for a longer time. That's greater impulse. **4. (b):** This is a straight-forward reading of the equation for momentum, mv. With other variables unchanged, doubling the mass doubles the momentum. **5. (c):** A feature of momentum conservation is that it holds for both elastic and inelastic collisions. Hence (c) is the best answer. **6. (a):** The total momentum before and after the collision is the same. That means total mv before (which is only mv of the initially rolling car) equals total mv after (which is twice the mass multiplied by 2m/s). With twice the mass after the collision, the initial speed of the oncoming car must have been twice the final speed of 2 m/s. That's 4 m/s. **7. (d):** Certainly a more massive bus is harder to stop. Or saying the same thing, a bus with more momentum is harder to stop. And having to stop in a shorter distance would require more force. These are common sense responses, all in keeping with the impulse-momentum relationship: $Ft = \Delta mv$. **8. (c):** This asks for a clear understanding of "impulse." Impulse is not *force*. Impulse is not *time*. Impulse is the product of both force *and* time, which will equal the change in momentum of the vehicle that comes to rest whether hitting the haystack or the wall. So the change in momentum (not force) is the same for both. If the momentum change is the same for both, then the impulse is also the same for both. Careful reading and thinking is required with this question. **9. (a):** This is an inelastic collision whereby the big fish gains mass and slows during lunch so choice (a) is correct. Not choice (b) because momentum is conserved, not changed. Momentum before lunch (its mass at high speed) is the same after lunch (more mass at less speed). So choice (c), both, is also wrong. **10. (d):** Recall Newton's third law: the force of the car windshield on the bug is the same amount of force as that of the bug on the windshield—equal and opposite. It's easy to see that the amount of time for the splatter is the same for both. If force and time are the same for both, then the impulse is the same for both. And according to $Ft = \Delta mv$, both undergo the same change in momentum. So it's all of the above, a test of careful thinking.

CHAPTER SEVEN

7 Energy

7.1 **Work**

7.2 **Power**
Mechanical Energy

7.3 **Potential Energy**

7.4 **Kinetic Energy**

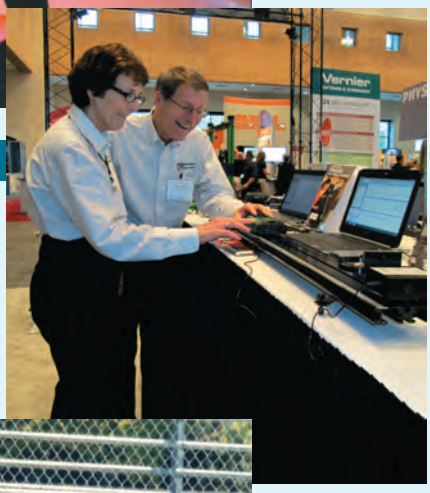
7.5 **Work-Energy Theorem**

7.6 **Conservation of Energy**

7.7 **Machines**

7.8 **Efficiency**

7.9 **Major Sources of Energy**
Recycled Energy



1 A student-made cart powered by a mousetrap adds to Christine Lindström's discussion of energy concepts. **2** Neil deGrasse Tyson laments that if aliens visited us, he'd be embarrassed to tell them we still dig fossil fuels from the ground as a source of energy. **3** Christine and David Vernier nicely demonstrate the cart's motion along a track. **4** First-rate physics students can clearly distinguish between the momentum and kinetic energy that Serena imparts to a batted ball.

One of France's greatest scientists was Émile du Châtelet, who lived during the 1700s when all of Europe was celebrating the achievements of Isaac Newton. She was accomplished not only in science but also in philosophy and even biblical studies. Finding no clear textbooks in physics for her son, she published her own *Institutions de Physique* in 1740. Her greatest accomplishment was being the first to translate Newton's *Principia* into French, with 287 pages of additional commentary, and a new mathematical addendum.

Of du Châtelet's several lovers, Voltaire was the most famous. For 15 years they lived together, collecting a library of more than 20,000 volumes, each encouraging and critiquing the work of the other. Theirs was one of the most exciting and passionate European love stories.

At the time there was a great debate in physics about the nature of the "oomph" possessed by moving objects. Scientists in England claimed that oomph (what we now call kinetic energy) was mass × velocity, whereas scientists such as Gottfried Leibniz in Germany claimed it was mass × velocity squared. The debate was finally settled by observations and a paper published by du Châtelet that cited another scientist's simple experiment to distinguish between the two hypotheses. When a small solid brass sphere is dropped into clay, it makes a dent. If the ball hits with twice the speed, and if its oomph is mass × velocity, then the dent in the clay should be twice as deep. But experiment showed the dent was 4 times as deep (2 squared). Dropping the ball from a higher point so it hit the clay with 3 times the speed produced a dent that was not 3 times as deep but 9 times as deep (3 squared). Since Émile du Châtelet was so highly respected by the scientific community, she ended the controversy by supporting the argument that the oomph of moving things is proportional to mass × velocity squared.

Émile became pregnant at the age of 42, which was dangerous at the time. Doctors then had no awareness that they should wash their hands or sterilize instruments. There were no antibiotics to control infections, which were common. She died a week after childbirth. Voltaire was beside himself: "I have lost the half of myself—a soul for which mine was made." Most of Voltaire's extensive publications came before Émile's death, relatively little afterward. He is said to have grieved for her into his ripe old age.

As we learned in Chapter 6, the product of mass and velocity is what we call *momentum*. In this chapter, we see that the product of mass and velocity squared (together with a factor of ½) is what we call *kinetic energy*. We will now learn about forms of energy, including kinetic energy. Let us begin.

Energy is the most central concept in science. Try to imagine life before energy was something that humans controlled. Imagine home life without electricity, refrigerators, heating and cooling systems, the telephone, radio and TV, the automobile—and your smartphone. We may romanticize a better life without these, but only if we overlook the hours of daily toil that used to be devoted to doing laundry, cooking, and heating our homes. We'd also have to overlook how difficult it was getting a doctor in times of emergency before the advent of the telephone—when a doctor had little more in his bag than laxatives, aspirins, and sugar pills—and when infant death rates were staggering. We have become so accustomed to the benefits of energy at our fingertips that we are only faintly aware of our dependence on dams, power plants, mass transportation, electrification, modern medicine, and modern agricultural science for our very existence. When we dig into a good meal, we give little thought to the energy and technology that went into growing, harvesting, and delivering the food on our table. When we turn on a light, we give little thought to the centrally controlled power grid that links the widely separated power stations by long-distance transmission lines. These lines carry energy that serves the needs of our society. Anyone who thinks of science and technology as "inhuman" fails to grasp the ways in which they make our lives more human. Let's begin our study of energy with a related concept: work.

7.1 Work

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

In Chapter 6, we saw that changes in an object's motion depend both on force and on how long the force acts. In that case, "how long" means time, and we call the quantity (force × time) *impulse*. But "how long" does not always mean time; it can mean distance also. When we consider the quantity (force × *distance*), we are talking about an entirely different concept—*work*. **Work** is the effort exerted on something that will change its energy.

The word *work,* in common usage, means physical or mental exertion. Don't confuse the physics definition of *work* with the everyday notion of work. Work is a transfer of energy.

FIGURE 7.1
Compared with the work done in lifting a load of gravel one story high, twice as much work is done in lifting the same load two stories high. Twice the work is done because the distance is twice as great.

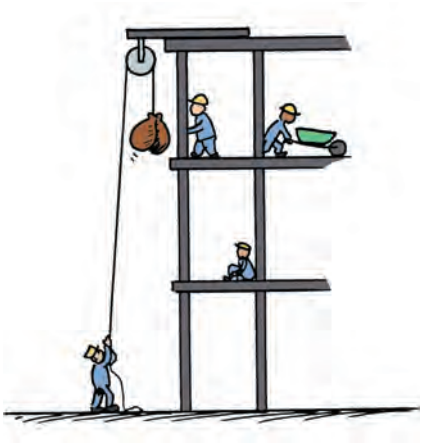


FIGURE 7.2
When twice the load of gravel is lifted to the same height, twice as much work is done because of twice the force needed to lift it. Twice the work is done because the force is twice as great.

When we lift a load of gravel against Earth's gravity, we do work. The heavier the load or the higher we lift the load, the more work we do. Two things enter the picture whenever work is done: (1) the application of a force and (2) the movement of something by that force. For the simplest case, where the force is constant and the motion is in a straight line in the direction of the force,[1] we define the work done on an object by an applied force as the product of the force and the distance through which the object is moved. In shorter form:

$$\text{Work} = \text{force} \times \text{distance}$$
$$W = Fd$$

If we lift two loads of gravel one story up, we do twice as much work as if we lift one load the same distance because the *force* needed to lift twice the weight is twice as much. Similarly, if we lift a load two stories instead of one story, we do twice as much work because the *distance* is twice as great.

FIGURE 7.3
Work is done in lifting the barbell.

[1]Generally, work is the product of only the component of force that acts in the direction of motion and the distance moved. For example, if a force acts at an angle to the motion, the component of force parallel to the motion is multiplied by the distance moved. When a force acts at right angles to the direction of motion, with no force component in the direction of motion, no work is done. A common example is a satellite in a circular orbit; the force of gravity is at right angles to its circular path and no work is done on the satellite. Hence, it orbits with no change in speed.

We see that the definition of work involves both a force and a distance. A weightlifter who holds a barbell weighing 1000 newtons overhead does no work on the barbell. She may get really tired holding the barbell, but, if it is not moved by the force she exerts, she does no work *on the barbell*. Work may be done on the muscles by stretching and contracting, which is force times distance on a biological scale, but this work is not done on the barbell. Instead, the expended energy heats her arms. Lifting the barbell, however, is a different story. When the weightlifter raises the barbell from the floor, she does work on the barbell. Likewise with the simple task of lifting groceries on a shelf.

CHECK POINT

1. **How much work is needed to lift a 200-N bag of groceries to a height of 3 m?**
2. **How much work is needed to lift the bag twice as high?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. $W = Fd = 200\ \text{N} \times 3\ \text{m} = 600\ \text{N} \cdot \text{m} = 600\ \text{J}$
2. Lifting the bag twice as high requires twice the work ($200\ \text{N} \times 6\ \text{m} = 1200\ \text{J}$).

Work generally falls into two categories. One of these is the work done against another force. When an archer stretches her bowstring, she is doing work against the elastic forces of the bow. Similarly, when the ram of a pile driver is raised, work is required to raise the ram against the force of gravity. When you do push-ups, you do work against your own weight. You do work on something when you force it to move against the influence of an opposing force—often friction.

The other category of work is work done to change the speed of an object. This kind of work is done in bringing an automobile up to speed or in slowing it down. Another example of this kind of work is when a club hits a stationary golf ball and gets it moving. In both categories (working against a force or changing speed), work involves a transfer of energy.

Often the applied force in a work situation is not constant, but varies. For example, the force that draws a bow, that stretches a spring, that acts on a cannonball when fired, is not a steady force. In computing work we use the *average* force applied to an object over a distance moved by that force. That distance is the distance covered *while* the force acts, not the distance an object may move when the force ceases to act. The force and distance moved in assessing work make common sense.

The unit of measurement for work combines a unit of force (N) with a unit of distance (m); the unit of work is the newton-meter (N·m), also called the *joule* (J), which rhymes with *cool*. One joule of work is done when a force of 1 newton is exerted over a distance of 1 meter, as in lifting a baseball over your head. For larger values, we speak of kilojoules (kJ, thousands of joules) or megajoules (MJ, millions of joules). The weightlifter in Figure 7.3 does work in kilojoules. To stop a loaded truck in its tracks when it is moving at 100 km/h takes megajoules of work.

FIGURE 7.4
Bob expends energy when he pushes on the wall. If the wall doesn't move, he does no work on the wall and energy expended becomes thermal energy.

CHECK POINT

1. **We do work on a spring when we stretch it. Which requires more work: stretching a strong spring a certain distance or stretching a weak spring the same distance?**
2. **An engineer figures that if a sustained force of 1000 N is applied to a cart of mass 10 kg over a distance of 12 m, the gain in the cart's energy will be 12,000 J. Why is the engineer confident of this answer?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Although the pulling distance is the same, the stronger spring requires a greater average stretching force than the weak spring, so more work is required to stretch the strong spring.
2. First of all, the engineer also knows that the amount of work done on the cart is the same amount of energy gained by the cart. Confidence is bolstered by adherence to the definition of work: $W = Fd = (1000\ \text{N})(12\ \text{m}) = 12{,}000\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m} = 12{,}000\ \text{J}$. Nowhere in this definition is the mass, weight, color, or temperature of the cart relevant. The equation $W = Fd$ is enough to guide a valid answer.

fyi

- Your heart uses slightly more than 1 W of power in pumping blood through your body.

7.2 Power

The definition of work says nothing about how long it takes to do the work. We do the same amount of work when we carry a load of groceries up a flight of stairs whether we walk up or run up. So why are we more tired after running upstairs in a few seconds than after walking upstairs in a few minutes? To understand this difference, we need to talk about a measure of how fast the work is done—*power*. **Power** is the amount of work done per time it takes to do it:

$$\text{Power} = \frac{\text{work done}}{\text{time interval}}$$

The unit of power is the joule per second (J/s), also known as the watt (in honor of James Watt, the 18th-century developer of the steam engine). One watt (W) of power is expended when 1 joule of work is done in 1 second. One kilowatt (kW) equals 1000 watts. One megawatt (MW) equals 1 million watts. In the United States, we customarily rate engines in units of horsepower and electricity in kilowatts, but either may be used. In the SI system of units, automobiles are rated in kilowatts. (One horsepower is 746 watts, so an engine rated at 134 horsepower is a 100-kW engine.)

A high-power engine does work rapidly. An automobile engine that delivers twice the power of another automobile engine does not necessarily produce twice as much work or make a car go twice as fast as the less powerful engine. Twice the power means the engine can do twice the work in the same time or do the same amount of work in half the time. A more powerful engine can get an automobile up to a given speed in less time than a less powerful engine can.

Here's another way to look at power: A liter (L) of fuel can do a certain amount of work, but the power produced when we burn the fuel can be any amount, depending on how *fast* it is burned. It can operate a lawnmower for a half hour or a jet engine for a half second.

FIGURE 7.5
Like all rockets, the *Falcon Heavy* rocket that put Elon Musk's bright red Tesla Roadster into orbit, employs the concepts of thrust (force), work (force × distance), energy (fuel consumption), and power (rate at which energy is expended).

CHECK POINT

1. **How much power is expended in lifting a 4000-N piano a vertical distance of 4 m in 2 s? How much power to do the same in 1 s?**
2. **If a new-model forklift has twice the power of an older one, how much more load can it lift in the same amount of time? If it lifts the same load as the old one, how much faster can it operate?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Power = work done/(time interval) = [(4000 N)(4 m)/(2 s)] = 8000 N · m/s = 8000 W. To do the same job in half the time would take twice the power, 16,000 W.
2. The new forklift delivers twice the power, so it can lift twice the load in the same time or the same load in half the time. Either way, the owner of the new forklift is happy.

Mechanical Energy

When work is done by an archer in drawing a bowstring, the bent bow acquires the ability to do work on the arrow. When work is done to raise the heavy ram of a pile driver, the ram acquires the ability to do work on the object it hits when it falls. When work is done to wind a spring mechanism, the spring acquires the ability to do work on various gears to run a clock, ring a bell, or sound an alarm.

In each case, something has been acquired that enables the object to do work. It may be in the form of a compression of atoms in the material of an object, a physical separation of attracting bodies, or a rearrangement of electric charges in the molecules of a substance. This "something" that enables an object to do work is **energy.**[2] Like work, energy is measured in joules. It appears in many forms that will be discussed in later chapters. For now, we will focus on the two most common forms of **mechanical energy:** the energy due to the position of something (potential energy) and the movement of something (kinetic energy). Energy is most evident when it changes.

fyi

- The concept of energy was unknown to Isaac Newton, and its existence was still being debated in the 1850s. Although familiar, energy is difficult to define because it is both a "thing" and a process—similar to both a noun and a verb. We sense the energy in things only when it is being transferred or being transformed.

7.3 Potential Energy

An object may store energy by virtue of its position. The energy that is stored and held in readiness is called **potential energy** (PE) because in the stored state it has the potential for doing work. A stretched or compressed spring, for example, has the potential for doing work. When a bow is drawn, energy is stored in the bow. The bow can do work on the arrow. A stretched rubber band has potential energy because of the relative positions of its parts. If the rubber band is part of a slingshot, it is capable of doing work. Potential energy is stored energy.

The chemical energy in fuels is also potential energy. It is actually energy of position at the submicroscopic level. This energy is available when the positions of electric charges within and between molecules are altered—that is, when a chemical reaction occurs. Any substance that can do work through chemical action possesses potential energy. Potential energy is found in fossil fuels, electric batteries, and the foods we consume.

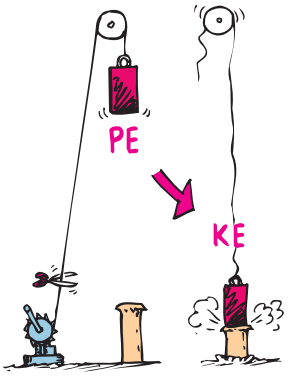


FIGURE 7.6
The potential energy of the elevated ram of the pile driver is converted to kinetic energy when it is released.

[2]Strictly speaking, that which enables an object to do work is its *available energy* because not all the energy in an object can be transformed into work.

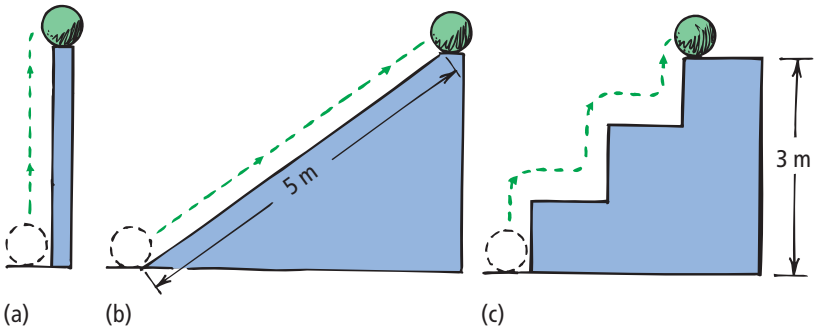


FIGURE 7.7
The potential energy of the 10-N ball is the same (30 J) in all three cases because the work done in elevating it 3 m is the same whether it is (a) lifted with 10 N of force, (b) pushed with 6 N of force up the 5-m incline, or (c) lifted with 10 N up each 1-m stair. No work is done in moving the ball horizontally (if we ignore friction).

Work is required to elevate objects against Earth's gravity. The potential energy due to elevated positions is called *gravitational potential energy*. Water in an elevated reservoir and the raised ram of a pile driver both have gravitational potential energy. Whenever work is done, energy is exchanged.

The amount of gravitational potential energy possessed by an elevated object is equal to the work done against gravity in lifting it. The work done equals the force required to move it upward times the vertical distance it is moved (remember $W = Fd$). The upward force required while moving at constant velocity is equal to the weight, mg, of the object, so the work done in lifting it through a height h is the product mgh:

$$\text{Gravitational potential energy} = \text{weight} \times \text{height}$$
$$\text{PE} = mgh$$

Note that the height is the distance above some chosen reference level, such as the ground or the floor of a building. The gravitational potential energy, mgh, is relative to that level and depends on only mg and h. We can see in Figure 7.7 that the potential energy of the elevated ball does not depend on the path it takes to reach that level.

Potential energy, gravitational or otherwise, has significance only when it *changes*—when it does work or transforms into energy of some other form. For example, if the ball in Figure 7.7 falls from its elevated position and does 30 joules of work when it lands, then it has lost 30 joules of potential energy. The potential energy of the ball or any object is relative to some reference level. Only *changes* in potential energy are meaningful. One of the kinds of energy into which potential energy can change is energy of motion, or *kinetic energy*.

FIGURE 7.8
Both do the same work in elevating the block.

CHECK POINT

1. **How much work is done in lifting the 100-N block of ice a vertical distance of 2 m, as shown in Figure 7.8?**
2. **How much work is done in pushing the same block of ice up the 4-m-long ramp? (The force needed is only 50 N, which is the reason ramps are used.)**
3. **What is the increase in the block's gravitational potential energy in each case?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. $W = Fd = 100\ \text{N} \times 2\ \text{m} = 200\ \text{J}$
2. $W = Fd = 50\ \text{N} \times 4\ \text{m} = 200\ \text{J}$.
3. In both cases the block's potential energy increases by 200 J. The ramp simply makes this work easier to perform.

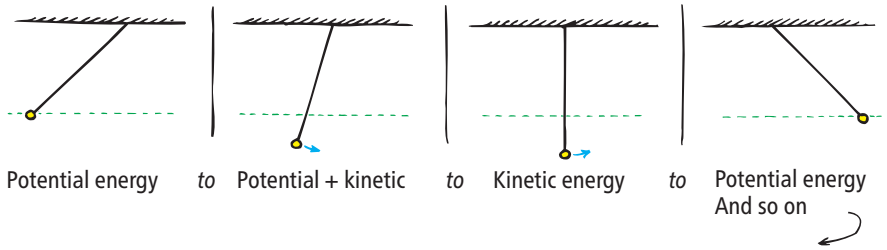


FIGURE 7.9
Energy transitions in a pendulum. PE is relative to the lowest point of the pendulum, when it is vertical.

7.4 Kinetic Energy

If you push on an object, you can set it in motion. If an object is moving, then it is capable of doing work. It has energy of motion. We say it has **kinetic energy** (KE). The kinetic energy of an object depends on the mass of the object as well as its speed. It is equal to the mass multiplied by the square of the speed, multiplied by the constant ½:

$$\text{Kinetic energy} = \tfrac{1}{2}\,\text{mass} \times \text{speed}^2$$

$$\text{KE} = \tfrac{1}{2}\,mv^2$$

When you throw a ball, you do work on it to give it speed as it leaves your hand. The moving ball can then hit something and push it, doing work on what it hits. The kinetic energy of a moving object is equal to the work required to bring it to its speed from rest, or the work the object can do while being brought to rest:

$$\text{Net force} \times \text{distance} = \text{kinetic energy}$$

or, in symbolic notation,

$$Fd = \tfrac{1}{2}\,mv^2$$

Note that the speed is squared, so if the speed of an object is doubled, its kinetic energy is quadrupled $(2^2 = 4)$. Consequently, it takes four times the work to double the speed. Whenever work is done, energy changes. Kinetic energy, like all forms of energy, is expressed in joules.

CHECK POINT

1. **What name is given to the quantity force × distance, what quantity does it change, and in what units are both quantities expressed?**
2. **While traveling in an airplane you notice a pesky bug flying in front of you, just as the captain announces a cruising speed of 800 km/h. Does this mean the KE of the bug is unusually huge?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The quantity *Fd* is called work, which changes energy. Both work and energy have the same unit, the joule.
2. No. Recall that velocity is a relative quantity—how fast relative to what? Likewise for KE. Relative to the ground below, the bug's KE may match that of a socked golf ball. But relative to the airplane interior, the bug's KE is tiny because *v* in $\frac{1}{2}\,mv^2$ is relative to the airplane interior—not to the ground below.

FIGURE 7.10
The potential energy of Tenny's drawn bow equals the work (average force × distance) that she did in drawing the arrow back into position. When the arrow is released, most of the potential energy of the drawn bow will become the kinetic energy of the arrow.

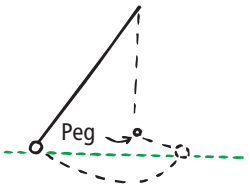
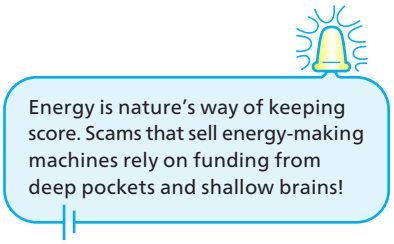


FIGURE 7.11
The pendulum bob will swing to its original height whether or not the peg is present.

FIGURE 7.12
The downhill "fall" of the roller coaster results in its roaring speed in the dip, and this kinetic energy sends it up the steep track to the next summit.

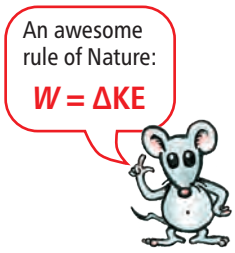

Energy is nature's way of keeping score. Scams that sell energy-making machines rely on funding from deep pockets and shallow brains!

7.5 Work–Energy Theorem

When a car speeds up, its gain in kinetic energy comes from the work done on it. Or, when a moving car slows, work is done to reduce its kinetic energy. We can say:[3]

$$\text{Work} = \Delta\text{KE}$$

Work equals *change* in kinetic energy. This is the **work–energy theorem.** The work in this equation is the *net* work—that is, the work based on the net force. If, for instance, you push on an object and friction also acts on the object, then the change of kinetic energy is equal to the work done by the net force, which is your push minus friction. In this case, only part of the total work that you do changes the object's kinetic energy. The rest is changed by friction into heat energy. If the force of friction is equal and opposite to your push, the net force on the object is zero and no net work is done. Then there is zero change in the object's kinetic energy. The work–energy theorem applies to decreasing speed as well. When you slam on the brakes of a car that skids, the road does work on the car. This work is the friction force multiplied by the distance over which the friction force acts.



Interestingly, the maximum friction that the road can supply to a skidding tire is nearly the same whether the car moves slowly or quickly. A car moving at twice the speed of another car takes four times $(2^2 = 4)$ as much work to stop. Since the frictional force is nearly the same for both cars, the faster one skids four times as far before it stops. So, as accident investigators are well aware, an automobile going 100 km/h has four times the kinetic energy that it would have at 50 km/h, and the car skids four times as far with its wheels locked as it would going 50 km/h. Kinetic energy depends on speed *squared*. The same reasoning applies for antilock brakes (which keep tires from skidding in order to maintain the road's grip on the tires). For the not-quite-skidding tire, the maximum road friction is also nearly independent of the speed, so even with antilock brakes, it takes four times as far to stop at twice the speed.

When an automobile is braked and the tires don't skid, the brake pads convert kinetic energy to heat energy. If the tires skid, the treads and road are

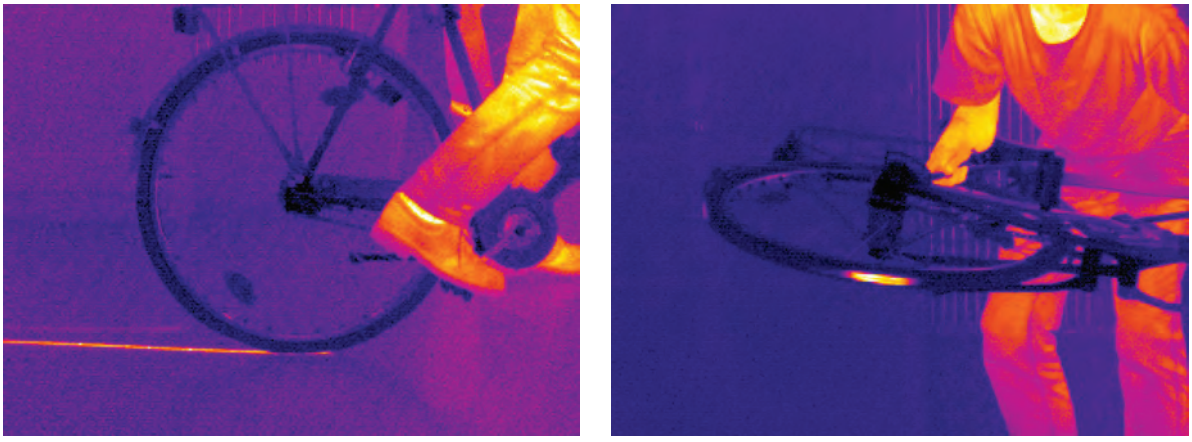


FIGURE 7.13
Due to friction, energy is transferred both into the floor and into the tire when the bicycle skids to a stop. An infrared camera reveals the heated tire track (the red streak on the floor, left) and the warmth of the tire (right). (Courtesy of Michael Vollmer)

[3]This equation can be derived as follows: If we multiply both sides of $F = ma$ (Newton's second law) by d, we get $Fd = mad$. Recall from Chapter 3 that for constant acceleration from rest, $d = \frac{1}{2}at^2$ so we can say that $Fd = ma\left(\frac{1}{2}at^2\right) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)maat^2$, and substituting $v = at$ we get $Fd = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$. That is, Work = KE gained.

heated, not the brakes. Some drivers are familiar with another way to slow a vehicle—shift to low gear and allow the engine to do the braking. Hybrid cars do something similar; they use an electric generator to convert the kinetic energy of the slowing car to electric energy that can be stored in batteries, where it is used to complement the energy produced by gasoline combustion. (Chapter 25 describes how this is done.)

The work–energy theorem can apply to more than changes in kinetic energy. When work is done by an outside force, we can say that work $= \Delta E$, where E stands for all kinds of energy. Work is not a form of energy but a way of transferring energy from one place to another or one form to another.[4]

Kinetic energy and potential energy are two among many forms of energy, and they underlie other forms of energy, such as chemical energy, nuclear energy, and the energy carried by sound and light. Kinetic energy of random molecular motion is related to temperature; potential energies of electric charges account for voltage; and kinetic and potential energies of vibrating air define sound intensity. Even light energy originates from the motion of electrons within atoms. Every form of energy can be transformed into every other form.

CHECK POINT

1. **When you are driving at 90 km/h, how much more braking distance do you need to stop compared with driving at 30 km/h?**
2. **For the same force, why does a cannon with a longer barrel impart more speed to a cannonball?**
3. **Can an object have energy?**
4. **Can an object have work?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Nine times more. The car has 9 times as much kinetic energy when it travels 3 times as fast: $\frac{1}{2}m(3v)^2 = \frac{1}{2}m9v^2 = 9\left(\frac{1}{2}mv^2\right)$. The friction force will ordinarily be the same in either case; therefore, 9 times as much work requires 9 times as much distance.
2. As learned in Chapter 6, a longer barrel imparts more impulse and therefore more speed to a cannonball due to its longer *time* in a longer barrel. In accord with the work–energy theorem, force acting over a longer *distance* imparts more KE and hence more speed. So we see two reasons for cannons with long barrels producing greater cannonball speeds.
3. Yes, but in a relative sense. For example, an elevated object may possess PE relative to the ground below but no energy relative to a point at the same elevation. Similarly, the KE that an object has is relative to a frame of reference, usually Earth's surface. (We will see that material objects have *energy of being,* $E = mc^2$, the congealed energy that makes up their mass. Read on!)
4. No. Unlike momentum or energy, work is not something that an object *has.* Work is *energy in transit*. It is the energy transferred when a force acts on an object as it moves through a distance.

FIGURE 7.14
The PE of the raised ball will become KE when the author releases it.

[4]The first law of thermodynamics, written $\Delta E = W + Q$, states that the change of energy of a system is the work done on it plus the quantity of heat transferred into it.

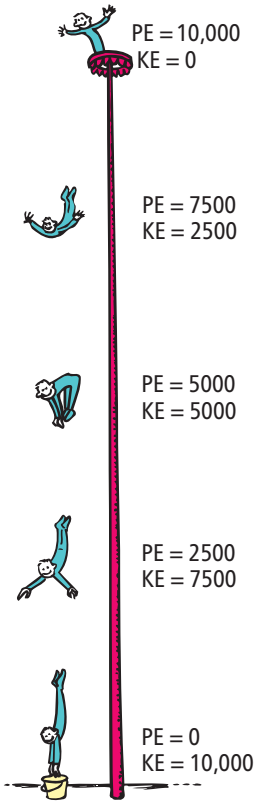


FIGURE 7.15
A circus diver at the top of a pole has a PE of 10,000 J. As he dives, his PE converts to KE. Note that, at successive positions one-fourth, one-half, three-fourths, and all the way down, the total energy is constant.

7.6 Conservation of Energy

More important than knowing *what energy is* is understanding how it behaves—*how it transforms*. We can better understand the processes and changes that occur in nature if we analyze them in terms of energy *changes*—transformations from one form into another—or of transfers from one location to another. Energy is nature's way of keeping score.

Consider the changes in energy in the operation of the pile driver back in Figure 7.6. Work done to raise the ram, giving it potential energy, becomes kinetic energy when the ram is released. This energy transfers to the piling below. The distance the piling penetrates into the ground multiplied by the average force of impact—which is the work done on the pile—is ideally equal to the initial potential energy of the ram. Taking all heat and sound energy into account, we find that energy transforms without net loss or net gain. Quite remarkable!

The study of various forms of energy and their transformations from one form into another has led to one of the greatest generalizations in physics—the **law of conservation of energy:**

> **Energy cannot be created or destroyed; it can be transferred from one object to another or transformed from one form into another, but the total amount of energy never changes.**

When we consider any system in its entirety, whether it be as simple as a swinging pendulum or as complex as an exploding supernova, there is one quantity that isn't created or destroyed: energy. Energy may change form or it may simply be transferred from one place to another, but, as scientists have learned, the total energy score stays the same. This energy score takes into account the fact that the atoms that make up matter are themselves concentrated bundles of energy. When the nuclei (cores) of atoms rearrange themselves, enormous amounts of energy can be released. The Sun shines because some of this nuclear energy is transformed into radiant energy.

Enormous compression due to gravity and extremely high temperatures in the deep interior of the Sun fuse the nuclei of hydrogen atoms together to form helium nuclei. This is *thermonuclear fusion*, a process that releases radiant energy, a small part of which reaches Earth. Part of the energy reaching Earth falls on plants (and on other photosynthetic organisms), and part of this, in turn, is later stored in the form of coal. Another part supports life in the food chain that

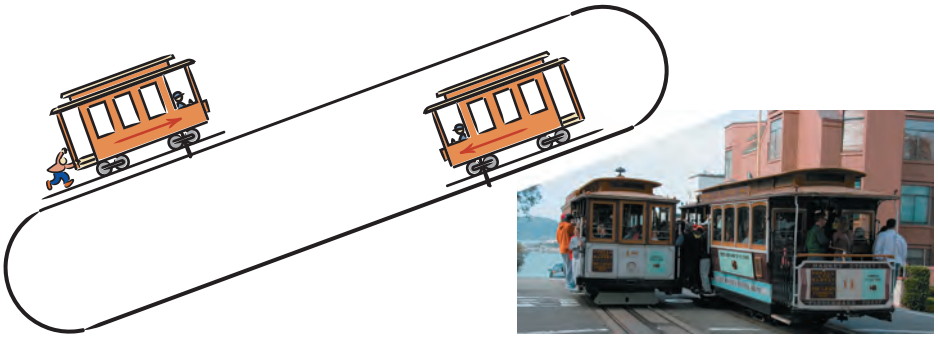


FIGURE 7.16
Cable cars on the steep hills of San Francisco nicely transfer energy to one another via the cable beneath the street. The cable forms a complete loop that connects cars going both downhill and uphill. In this way a car moving downhill does work on a car moving uphill. So, the increased gravitational PE of an uphill car is due to the decreased gravitational PE of a car moving downhill.

CIRCUS PHYSICS

Acrobat Art of mass m stands on the left end of a seesaw. Acrobat Bart of mass M jumps from a height h onto the right end of the seesaw, thus propelling Art into the air.

(a) In the ideal case where all inefficiencies are neglected, how does the PE of Art at the top of his trajectory compare with the PE of Bart just before Bart jumps?

(b) Show that ideally Art reaches a height $\frac{M}{m}h$.

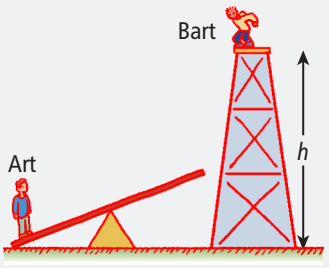
(c) If Art's mass is 40 kg, Bart's mass is 70 kg, and the height of the initial jump was 4 m, show that Art rises a vertical distance of 7 m.

SOLUTION

(a) Ideally, the entire initial PE of Bart before he drops goes into the PE of Art at his peak—that is, at Art's moment of zero KE.

(b)
$$\begin{aligned} PE_{Bart} &= PE_{Art} \\ Mgh_{Bart} &= mgh_{Art} \\ h_{Art} &= \frac{M}{m}h \end{aligned}$$

(c) $$h_{Art}\frac{M}{m}h = \left(\frac{70\text{ kg}}{40\text{ kg}}\right)4\text{ m} = 7\text{ m}$$



begins with plants (and other photosynthesizers), and part of this energy later is stored in oil. Part of the Sun's energy goes into the evaporation of water from the ocean, and part of this returns to Earth in rain that may be trapped behind a dam. By virtue of its elevated position, the water behind a dam has energy that may be used to power a generating plant below, where it will be transformed into electric energy. The energy travels through wires to homes, where it is used for lighting, heating, cooking, and operating electrical gadgets. How wonderful that energy transforms from one form into another!

CHECK POINT

1. **Does an automobile consume more fuel when its air conditioner is turned on? When its lights are on? When its radio is on while the motor is turned off in the parking lot?**
2. **Does the electric power that is generated from wind-powered generators affect the speed of the wind? That is, would locations behind the wind generators be windier if the generators weren't there?**

Inventors take heed: When introducing a new idea, first be sure it is in the context of what is presently known. For example, any new idea should be consistent with the conservation of energy.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The answer to all three questions is *yes* because all the energy consumed ultimately comes from the fuel. Even the energy taken from the battery must be given back to the battery by the alternator, which is turned by the engine, which runs from the energy of the fuel. There's no free lunch!
2. Wind-powered generators subtract KE from the wind, so the wind is slowed by interaction with the blades. So, yes, it would be windier behind the wind generators if they weren't there.

JUNK SCIENCE

Scientists have to be open to new ideas. That's how science grows. But there is a body of established knowledge that can't be easily overthrown. That includes energy conservation, which is woven into every branch of science and supported by countless experiments from the atomic to the cosmic scale. Yet no concept has inspired more "junk science" than energy. Wouldn't it be wonderful if we could get energy at no cost—for nothing—or possess a machine that gives out more energy than is put into it? That's what many practitioners of junk science offer. Gullible speculators invest their money in some of these schemes. But none of the schemes passes the test of being real science. Perhaps some day a flaw in the law of energy conservation will be discovered. If that ever happens, scientists will rejoice at the breakthrough. But so far, energy conservation is as solid as any knowledge we have. Don't bet against it.

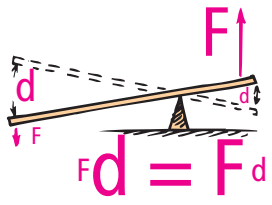


FIGURE 7.17
The lever.

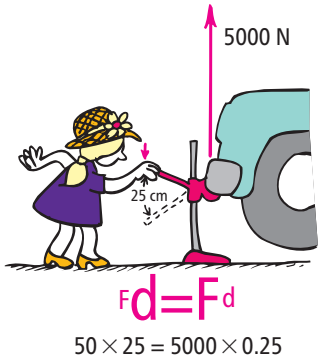


FIGURE 7.18
Applied force × applied distance = output force × output distance.

7.7 Machines

A **machine** is a device that multiplies force or simply changes the direction of force. The principle underlying every machine is the **conservation of energy.** Consider one of the simplest machines, the **lever** (Figure 7.17). At the same time that we do work on one end of the lever, the other end does work on the load. We see that the direction of force is changed: If we push down, the load is lifted up. If the work done by friction forces and the unbalanced weight of the lever are small enough to ignore, then the work input will be equal to the work output:

$$\text{Work input} = \text{work output}$$

Since work equals force times distance, input force × input distance = output force × output distance:

$$(\text{Force} \times \text{distance})_{\text{input}} = (\text{force} \times \text{distance})_{\text{output}}$$

The point of support on which a lever rotates is called a *fulcrum*. When the fulcrum of a lever is relatively close to the load, a small input force will produce a large output force. This is because the input force is exerted through a large distance and the load is moved through a correspondingly short distance. So a lever can be a force multiplier. But no machine can multiply work or multiply energy. That's a conservation-of-energy no-no!

The principle of the lever was understood by Archimedes, a famous Greek scientist in the third century BC. He said, "Give me a place to stand, and I will move the world."

Today, a child can use the principle of the lever to jack up the front end of an automobile. By exerting a small force through a large distance, she can provide a large force that acts through a small distance. Consider the example illustrated in Figure 7.18. Every time the child pushes the jack handle down 25 centimeters, the car rises only a hundredth as far but with 100 times the force. (She's happy that a ratchet holds the car in its raised position while she prepares for her next car-raising stroke.)

Another simple machine is a pulley. Can you see that it is a lever "in disguise"? When used as in Figure 7.19a, the pulley changes only the direction of the force, but when used as in Figure 7.19b, it doubles the output force. Force is increased and distance moved is decreased. As with any machine, forces can change while work input and work output are unchanged.

A block and tackle is a system of pulleys that multiplies force more than a single pulley can. With the ideal pulley system shown in Figure 7.20, the man

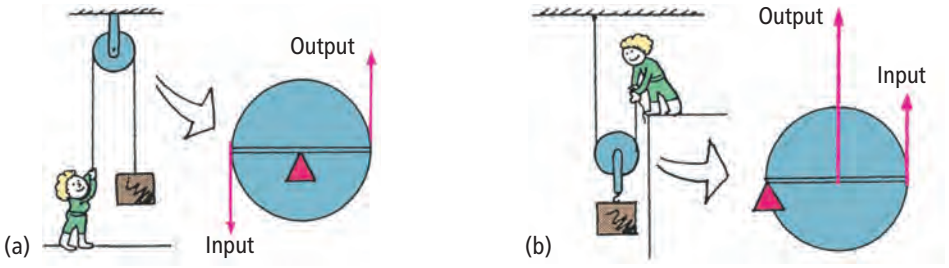


FIGURE 7.19
(a) This pulley acts like a lever with equal lever arms. It changes only the direction of the input force. (b) In this arrangement, a load can be lifted with half the input force. Note that the "fulcrum" is at the left end rather than at the center.

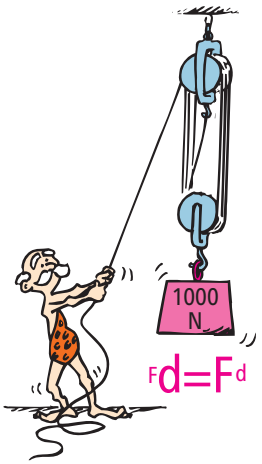


FIGURE 7.20
Applied force × applied distance = output force × output distance.

pulls 10 m of rope with a force of 50 N and lifts a load of 1000 N through a vertical distance of 0.5 m. The energy the man expends in pulling the rope is numerically equal to the increased potential energy of the 1000-N block. Energy is transferred from the man to the load.

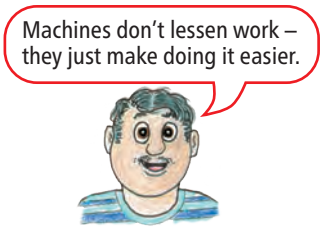
Any machine that multiplies force does so at the expense of distance. Likewise, any machine that multiplies distance, such as your forearm and elbow, does so at the expense of force. No machine or device can put out more energy than is put into it. No machine can create energy; it can only transfer energy or transform it from one form into another.

CHECK POINT

Are the minds of scientists "wired" to see their surroundings in terms of energy—looking for inputs wherever there are outputs—assessing whether or not what they see is consistent with energy conservation?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Generally, yes. Without guides to thinking, most of what we see would seem mysterious—not in a good way. Scientific knowledge most often enlightens!



7.8 Efficiency

The three preceding examples were of *ideal machines*: 100% of the work input appeared as work output. An ideal machine would operate at 100% efficiency. In practice, this doesn't happen, and we can never expect it to happen. In any transformation, some energy is dissipated to molecular kinetic energy—thermal energy—which makes the machine and its surroundings warmer.

Even a lever rocks about its fulcrum and converts a small fraction of the input energy into thermal energy. We may do 100 J of work and get out 98 J of work. The lever is then 98% efficient, and we degrade only 2 J of work input into thermal energy. If the girl back in Figure 7.18 puts in 100 J of work and increases the potential energy of the car by 60 J, the jack is 60% efficient; 40 J of her input work has been applied against friction, making its appearance as thermal energy.

In a pulley system, a considerable fraction of the input energy typically goes into thermal energy. If we do 100 J of work, the forces of friction acting through

A machine can multiply force but never *energy*—no way!

fyi

- A perpetual-motion machine (a device that can do work with no energy input) is a no-no. But perpetual motion itself is a yes-yes. Atoms and their electrons, and stars and their planets, for example, are in a state of perpetual motion. Perpetual motion is the natural order of things.

FIGURE 7.21
Jill Evans brings good energy to her classroom.

the distances through which the pulleys turn and rub about their axles may dissipate 60 J of energy as thermal energy. In that case, the work output is only 40 J and the pulley system has an efficiency of 40%. Some of the input energy may also be "wasted" by going into the potential energy of the pulley system itself as it is raised. The lower the efficiency of a machine, the greater the percentage of energy that is degraded to thermal energy.

Inefficiency exists whenever energy in the world around us is transformed from one form into another. **Efficiency** can be expressed as a ratio:

$$\text{Efficiency} = \frac{\text{useful energy output}}{\text{total energy input}}$$

An automobile engine is a machine that transforms the chemical energy stored in fuel into mechanical energy. The bonds between the molecules in the petroleum fuel break when the fuel burns. Carbon atoms in the fuel combine with oxygen in the air to form carbon dioxide, hydrogen atoms in the fuel combine with oxygen to form water, and energy is released. How nice if all this energy could be converted into useful mechanical energy—that is to say, how nice it would be if we could have an engine that is 100% efficient. This is impossible, however, because much of the energy is transformed into thermal energy, a little of which may be used to warm passengers in the winter but most of which is wasted. Some goes out in the hot exhaust gases, and some is dissipated to the air through the cooling system or directly from hot engine parts.[5]

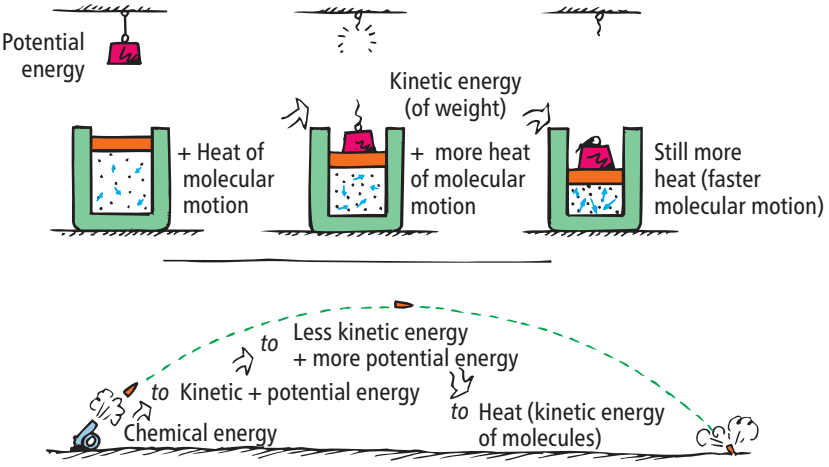

Potential energy
Kinetic energy (of weight)
+ Heat of molecular motion
+ more heat of molecular motion
Still more heat (faster molecular motion)
to
Less kinetic energy + more potential energy
to Kinetic + potential energy
to Heat (kinetic energy of molecules)
Chemical energy

FIGURE 7.22
Energy transitions. The graveyard of mechanical energy is thermal energy.

fyi

- Did you know that the most efficient means of transportation is the human on a bicycle—far more efficient than train and car travel and even that of fish and animals? Hooray for bicycles and those who use them!

Look at the inefficiency that accompanies transformations of energy in this way: In any transformation, there is a dilution of available *useful energy*. The amount of usable energy decreases with each transformation until there is nothing left but thermal energy at ordinary temperature. When we study thermodynamics, we'll see that thermal energy is useless for doing work unless it can be transformed to a lower temperature. Once it reaches the lowest practical temperature, that of our environment, it cannot be used. The environment around us is the graveyard of useful energy.

[5]When you study thermodynamics in Chapter 18, you'll learn that an internal combustion engine *must* transform some of its fuel energy into thermal energy. A fuel cell that powers vehicles, on the other hand, doesn't have this limitation.

CHECK POINT

1. **Consider an imaginary miracle car that has a 100%-efficient engine and burns fuel that has an energy content of 40 MJ per liter. If the total of air drag and overall frictional forces on the car traveling at highway speed is 500 N, how far can the car travel per liter of fuel at this speed?**
2. **If that same car is powered by a 25%-efficient engine, how far can it travel at highway speed on 1 liter of fuel?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. From the definition work = force × distance, simple rearrangement gives distance = work/force. If all 40 million J of energy in 1 L is used to do the work of overcoming the air drag and frictional forces, the distance is

$$\text{Distance} = \frac{\text{work}}{\text{force}} = \frac{40{,}000{,}000\ \text{J/L}}{500\ \text{N}} = 80{,}000\ \text{m/L} = 80\ \text{km/L}$$

   (This is about 190 mi/gal.) The important point here is that, even with a hypothetically perfect engine, there is an upper limit of fuel economy dictated by the conservation of energy.
2. The 25%-efficient car, with everything else the same, can travel one-fourth as far as the ideal car in Question 1, or 20 km on 1 liter of fuel. (That's 47 mi/gal, comparable to what hybrids and other efficient vehicles deliver on the highway.)

7.9 Major Sources of Energy

We're all familiar with energy sources such as solar, wind, and petroleum. Solar, as the name implies, is energy that comes directly from the Sun. Our good old Sun plays a role in a variety of other forms of energy as well. It's the ultimate source for most of our energy.

Solar power is a green energy alternative to fossil fuels. A square kilometer of sunlight at midday can provide a gigawatt of electric power that matches the output of large coal or nuclear power plants. Solar power is a growing green industry. When solar power is combined with traditional fossil fuel power plants we have *solar hybridization*. The oldest and largest solar complex presently in the world is located in northern San Bernardino County, California, which presently generates 354 MW of electricity. With ever increasing newer technology the list of solar plants grows.

FIGURE 7.23
Most spacecraft operating in the inner solar system rely on solar panels for electrical needs. On Earth's surface solar panels are common.

Sooner or later, all the sunlight that falls on Earth will be radiated back into space. Energy in any ecosystem is always in transit—you can rent it, but you can't own it.

We are like tenant farmers chopping down the fence around our house for fuel when we should be using Nature's inexhaustible sources of energy—Sun, wind, and tide. I'd put my money on the Sun and solar energy. What a source of power! I hope we don't have to wait until oil and coal run out before we tackle that.

—Thomas A. Edison

Hydroelectric power generates electricity by taking advantage of the water cycle: Water from the oceans is evaporated by the Sun. Clouds are formed that produce rain or snow. Rainwater flows into rivers and often into reservoirs behind dams, where it is directed to generator turbines. Then it returns to the sea and the cycle continues. Hydropower is a clean, renewable resource. It can have negative environmental effects, however, such as preventing the migration of fish.

Fossil fuels such as coal and petroleum result from the decomposition of organisms that lived millions of years ago, containing energy derived from photosynthesis in the ancient past. Fossil fuels are currently the world's primary energy source. But burning fossil fuels adds carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases to the atmosphere, which leads to global warming. So other energy sources are being implemented to stop the rapid advance of planet-harming climate change.

Wind is caused by the uneven heating of Earth's surface by the Sun, so it can be considered a form of solar power. The energy of wind is used to turn generator turbines within specially equipped windmills. Wind power has a lot to do with location—placing turbines where wind blows steady and strong, and where they are able to overcome the objections of residents who don't want their views and quiet solitude compromised.

Scotland is a very windy place, with wind farms both onshore and offshore that contribute to its reliance on a mix of renewable resources to meet its energy goals. It also has the world's first large-scale **tidal energy** farms. Turbines are placed beneath the surface of the ocean where tidal currents are strong and the water isn't too deep (Figure 7.24). One advantage these turbines have over wind turbines is that they're quiet and out of view. Watch for larger-scale tidal power plants.

FIGURE 7.24
One of the many turbines that tap the energy of tidal currents beneath the ocean surface in northern Scotland.

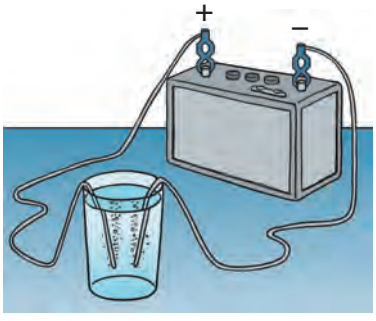


FIGURE 7.25
When electric current passes through conducting water, hydrogen bubbles form at one wire and oxygen bubbles form at the other. This is electrolysis. A fuel cell does the opposite: Hydrogen and oxygen enter a fuel cell and are combined to produce electricity and water.

Hydrogen is the most plentiful element in the solar system, and likely in the universe. It is and has been the signature fuel for launching rockets worldwide. Hydrogen in the liquid phase has been problematic. Taming it has been one of the significant technological achievements of the twentieth century. Zero-emission aircraft will soon be fueled by the combustion of liquid hydrogen with oxygen. Hydrogen is the least polluting of all fuels. Most hydrogen in the United States is produced from natural gas, where high temperatures and pressures separate hydrogen from hydrocarbon compounds. A downside to hydrogen separation from hydrocarbon compounds by traditional methods is the unavoidable production of carbon dioxide, a greenhouse gas. A clean alternative that doesn't produce greenhouse gases employs solar cells to extract hydrogen from water through *electrolysis*. The hydrogen gas produced can be used in fuel cells to nicely power vehicles from motor scooters to freight trains. Figure 7.25 shows how you can perform electrolysis in a lab or at home with a battery in place of solar cells. Place two platinum wires that are connected to the terminals of an ordinary battery into a glass of water (with an electrolyte such as salt dissolved

in the water for conductivity). Be sure the wires don't touch each other. Bubbles of hydrogen form on one wire, and bubbles of oxygen form on the other.

A **hyrogen fuel cell** produces clean power. It is similar to electrolysis but runs in reverse. A fuel cell replaces batteries in a vehicle and is powered by compressed gaseous hydrogen and from oxygen from the air. It emits only heated water vapor and is therefore pollution free. The International Space Station uses fuel cells to meet its electrical needs while producing drinking water for the astronauts. Here on Earth, fuel cells are finding applications in buses, automobiles, and trains (Figure 7.26).

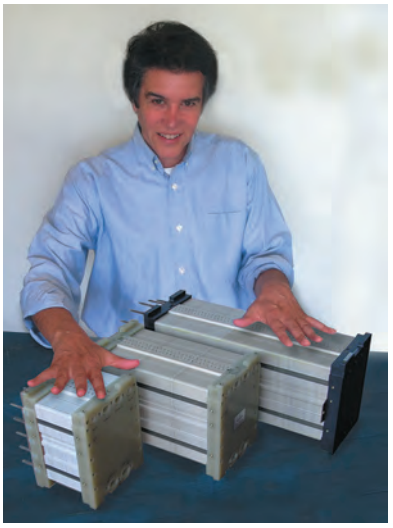


FIGURE 7.26
David Vasquez exhibits three fuel-cell stacks to produce electricity to power motor vehicles, the smallest for a scooter and the larger ones for automobiles.

The hydrogen needed for fuel cells can be produced by conventional means or with solar cells. It's important to know that hydrogen is not a *source* of energy. It takes energy to make hydrogen (to extract it from water or hydrocarbon compounds). Like electricity, it needs an energy source and is a way of storing and transporting that energy. Again, for emphasis, hydrogen is *not* an energy source.

Nuclear fuels such as uranium and plutonium are the most concentrated source of stored usable energy. For the same weight of fuel, nuclear reactions release about 1 million times more energy than do chemical or food reactions. Despite the Fukushima nuclear catastrophe of 2011, if safety concerns are met and problems of storing radioactive wastes are solved, watch for renewed interest in this form of power that doesn't pollute the atmosphere. Interestingly, Earth's interior is kept hot because of nuclear power, which has been with us since time zero.

Geothermal energy is a by-product of nuclear power in Earth's interior and is held in underground reservoirs of hot rock and hot water. Geothermal energy relatively close to the surface is predominantly limited to areas of volcanic activity, such as Iceland, New Zealand, Japan, and Hawaii. In these locations, heated water is tapped to provide steam for driving electric generators.

In other locations, another method holds promise for producing electricity. That's dry-rock geothermal power (Figure 7.27). With this method, water is pumped into hot fractured rock far below the surface. When the water turns to steam, it's piped to a turbine at the surface. After turning the turbine, it's pumped back into the ground for reuse. In this way, electricity is produced cleanly. But as with the practice of fracking in oil production, the downside of dry-rock geothermal power is prodding earthquake activity. Don't look for dry-rock geothermal power plants in regions that are geologically unstable.

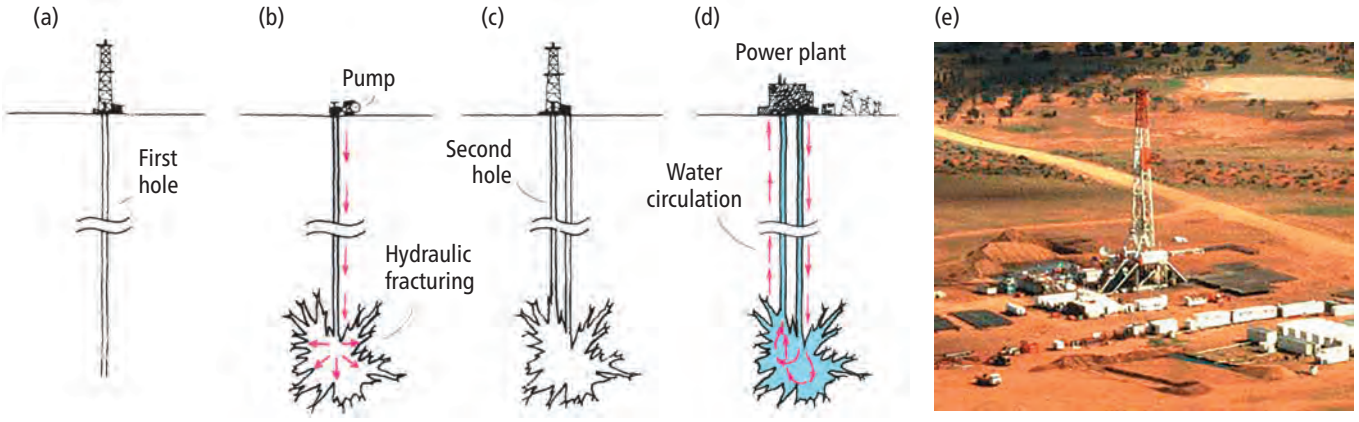


FIGURE 7.27
Dry-rock geothermal power. (a) A hole is sunk several kilometers into dry granite. (b) Water is pumped into the hole at high pressure and fractures the surrounding rock to form cavities with increased surface area. (c) A second hole is sunk nearby. (d) Water is circulated down one hole and through the fractured rock, where it is superheated, before rising through the second hole. After driving a turbine, the water is recirculated into the hot rock again, making a closed cycle. (e) A hot dry rock geothermal instillation in South Australia (courtesy of Geodynamics Limited).

fyi

- Watch for the downscaling of today's large-scale power grids as local solar power becomes more widespread for buildings and vehicles. Smaller local grids in dense urban areas will remain. Big power plants of all kinds may become less common but will still be needed near factories or other installations that are big consumers of electricity. Most steel mills are already powered electrically.

Recycled Energy

Recycled energy is reused energy that otherwise would be wasted. A typical fossil-fuel–fired power plant discards about two-thirds of the energy present in fuel as wasted thermal energy. Only about one-third of the energy input is converted to useful electricity. What other business throws away two-thirds of its input? This was not always so. Thomas Edison's early power plants in the late 1880s converted much more input energy to useful purposes than today's electric-only power plants. Edison used the cast-off heat from his generators to warm nearby homes and factories. The company he founded still delivers heat to thousands of Manhattan buildings via the largest commercial steam system in the world. New York is not alone: Most homes in the region around Copenhagen, Denmark, are warmed by heat from power plants. More than half the energy used in Denmark is recycled energy. In contrast, recycled energy in the United States amounts to less than 10% of all energy used. A principal reason is that power plants are now typically built far from buildings that would benefit from recycled energy. Nevertheless, we can't continue to throw heat energy into the sky in one place and then burn more fossil fuel to supply heat somewhere else. Watch for more energy recycling.

As the world population increases, so does our need for energy, especially since per capita demand is also growing. Guided by the laws of physics, technologists are presently researching newer and cleaner ways to develop energy sources. But they race to keep ahead of a growing world population and greater demands in a world suffering pandemics. As long as controlling population is politically and religiously incorrect, human misery becomes the check to unrestrained population growth. H. G. Wells once wrote (in *The Outline of History*), "Human history becomes more and more a race between education and catastrophe."

Chapter 7 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Work The product of the force and the distance moved by the force:

$$W = Fd$$

(More generally, work is the component of force in the direction of motion times the distance moved.)

Power The time rate of work:

$$\text{Power} = \frac{\text{work done}}{\text{time interval}}$$

(More generally, power is the rate at which energy is expended.)

Energy The property of a system that enables it to do work.

Mechanical energy Energy due to the position of something or the movement of something.

Potential energy Energy that something possesses because of its position.

Kinetic energy Energy that something possesses because of its motion, quantified by the relationship

$$\text{Kinetic energy} = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2$$

Work–energy theorem The work done on an object equals the change in the kinetic energy of the object:

$$\text{Work} = \Delta\text{KE}$$

(Work can also transfer other forms of energy to a system.)

Law of conservation of energy Energy cannot be created or destroyed; it can be transferred from one object to another or transformed from one form into another, but the total amount of energy never changes.

Machine A device, such as a lever or pulley, that increases (or decreases) a force or simply changes the direction of a force.

Conservation of energy The work output of any machine cannot exceed the work input. In an ideal machine, where no energy is transformed into thermal energy, $\text{work}_{\text{input}} = \text{work}_{\text{ouput}}$; $(Fd)_{\text{input}} = (Fd)_{\text{output}}$.

Lever A simple machine consisting of a rigid rod pivoted at a fixed point called the fulcrum.

Efficiency The percentage of the work put into a machine that is converted into useful work output. (More generally, useful energy output divided by total energy input.)

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

7.1 Work

1. In terms of which two parameters is work defined?
2. A person pushes hard against a heavy truck but is unable to move it. Is any work done?
3. How is work related to energy?
4. Does twice as much work on a body mean twice as much change in energy?
5. Which requires more work—lifting a 50-kg sack vertically 2 m or lifting a 25-kg sack vertically 4 m?

7.2 Power

6. True or false: One watt is the unit of power equivalent to 1 joule per second.
7. How many watts are expended when a force of 12 N moves a book 2 m in 3 s?
8. If two identical sacks are lifted the same vertical distance in the same time, how does the power required for each compare?
9. If two sacks, one twice as heavy as the other, are lifted the same vertical distances in the same time, how does the power required for each compare?

7.3 Potential Energy

10. What is potential energy?
11. Two cars are raised to the same elevation on service-station lifts. If one car is thrice as large as the other, compare their gains of potential energy.
12. A block is raised a certain distance by pushing it up an incline. How much potential energy does the block have compared to being raised vertically to the same height?

7.4 Kinetic Energy

13. True or false: Kinetic energy is the energy something has by virtue of motion.
14. When the speed of a moving car is doubled, how much more kinetic energy does it have?

7.5 Work–Energy Theorem

15. What is the evidence for saying whether or not work is done on an object?
16. What is the additional work required to be done to double the speed of a moving car?
17. A worker pushes a box horizontally with 200 N across a 5-m wooden floor. The friction between the box and the floor is a constant 100 N. Calculate the gain in kinetic energy for the box.
18. How does speed generally affect the amount of friction between a road and a skidding tire?

7.6 Conservation of Energy

19. What should be the initial potential energy of a pile driver ram so that when it strikes piles, it delivers 20 kJ of kinetic energy?
20. A peach hanging from a limb has potential energy because of its height. If it falls, what becomes of this energy just before it hits the ground? When it hits the ground?
21. What is the source of energy in sunshine?

7.7 Machines

22. Can a machine multiply input force? Input distance? Input energy? (If your three answers are the same, seek help, for the last question is especially important.)
23. If a machine multiplies distance by a factor of 10, what other quantity is diminished and by how much?
24. A force of 50 N is applied to the end of a lever, which is moved a certain distance. If the other end of the lever moves one-third as far, how much force can it exert?

7.8 Efficiency

25. Give an expression for efficiency. Can a machine ever have an efficiency greater than 100%?
26. If an input of 100 J in a pulley system increases the potential energy of a load by 60 J, what is the efficiency of the system?

7.9 Major Sources of Energy

27. Can wasted thermal energy be reduced?
28. What is the ultimate source of energy for fossil fuels, dams, and windmills?
29. Suggest a clean method for obtaining hydrogen.
30. Is hydrogen a source of energy? Why or why not?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Tie any object from the end of a piece of string and you have a simple pendulum. Swing it to and fro and cite positions of maximum potential energy and maximum kinetic energy. Except for the effects of air resistance, can you see that energy is conserved as it transfers position?
32. Pour some dry sand into a tin can that has a cover. Compare the temperature of the sand before and after you vigorously shake the can for a couple of minutes. Predict what occurs. What is your explanation?
33. With a friend use your smartphone to take a slow motion video of a ball drop. Explain to your friend why the rebound height is less than the initial dropping height—and what became of the "missing energy" of motion and position.
34. Do as physics instructor Fred Cauthen does. Place a tennis ball close to and above the top of a basketball, then drop them together. If the vertical alignment is maintained as they fall to the floor, you'll see that the tennis ball bounces unusually high. Can you reconcile this with energy conservation?

PLUG AND CHUG (EQUATION FAMILIARIZATION)

Work = force × distance: $W = Fd$

35. Calculate the work done when a force of 10 N moves a ball 2 m. (Remember that 1 N·m = 1 J.)
36. Calculate the work done in lifting a 500-N barbell 2.0 m above the floor. (What is the gain of potential energy of the barbell when it is lifted to this height?)

$$\text{Power} = \frac{\text{work}}{\text{time}} = \frac{W}{t}$$

37. How much power is required to give a brick 200 J of PE in a time of 10 s?
38. Show that 1000 W of power is expended when a 500-N crate is lifted 4.0 m above the floor in 2.0 s.

Gravitational potential energy = weight × height: PE = mgh

39. Show that when a 4.0-kg book is lifted 2.0 m its increase in gravitational potential energy is 80 J. (Don't forget g, which can be expressed in units N/kg, equivalent to m/s^2.)
40. Show that the gravitational potential energy of a 1000-kg boulder raised 5.0 m above ground level is 50,000 J.

Kinetic energy = $\frac{1}{2}$ mass × speed^2: KE = $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$

41. Show that the kinetic energy of a 1.0-kg hamster running at 3.0 m/s is 4.5 J. [1 J is equivalent to 1 kg$(m/s)^2$]
42. Calculate the kinetic energy of a 500-kg car moving at 10 m/s.

Work–energy theorem: $W = \Delta KE$

43. Show that 24 J of work is done when a 3.0-kg block of ice is moved from rest to 4.0 m/s.
44. Show that a 2,500,000-J change in kinetic energy occurs for an airplane that is moved 500 m in takeoff by a sustained force of 5000 N.

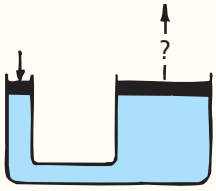
$$\text{Efficiency} = \frac{\text{useful energy output}}{\text{total energy input}} \times 100\%$$

45. Show that a machine that has an input of 100 J and an output of 40 J is 40% efficient.

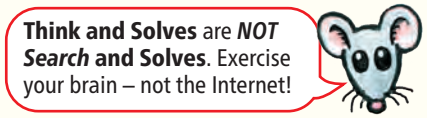
THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

46. How much work is required to lift a 250-kg appliance to the second-story level of a house 6.0 m above street level?
47. This is a typical driver's license question: A car moving at 50 km/h skids 15 m with locked brakes. How far will the car skid with locked brakes at 150 km/h? (Or, translate this to how far at 3 times the speed?)
48. (a) How much work is done when you push a crate horizontally with 100 N across a 10-m factory floor?
    (b) If the force of friction on the crate is a steady 70 N, show that the KE gained by the crate is 300 J.
    (c) What becomes of the "missing energy?"

49. Belly-flop Bernie dives from atop a tall flagpole into a swimming pool below. His potential energy at the top is 10,000 J (relative to the surface of the pool). What is his kinetic energy when his potential energy reduces to 1000 J?
50. Nellie Newton applies a force of 50 N to the end of a lever, which is moved a certain distance. If the other end of the lever moves one-third as far, show that the force it can exert is 150 N.
51. Consider an ideal pulley system. If you pull one end of the rope 1 m downward with a 50-N force, show that you can lift a 200-N load one-quarter of a meter high.
52. In the hydraulic machine shown, when the small piston is pushed down 10 cm, the large piston is raised 1 cm. If the small piston is pushed down with a force of 100 N, what is the most weight that the large piston can support?

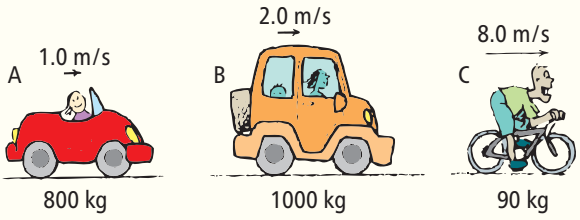


53. How many watts of power do you expend when you exert a force of 50 N that moves a crate 6.0 m in 3.0 s?
54. Does the KE of a car undergo a greater change when it goes from 10 to 20 km/h or from 20 to 30 km/h?
55. Emily drops a banana of mass m over the edge of a bridge of height h and it falls to the river below. From the initial PE of the banana converting to KE, show that the banana hits the water with speed $= \sqrt{2gh}$.
56. A 2.5 g penny is dropped from the top of the Empire State Building, falling 381 m to the sidewalk below. If the penny experiences almost no air resistance as it falls (very unrealistic!), show that its kinetic energy just before striking the sidewalk is nearly 100 J.

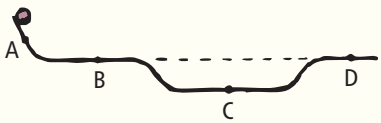


THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

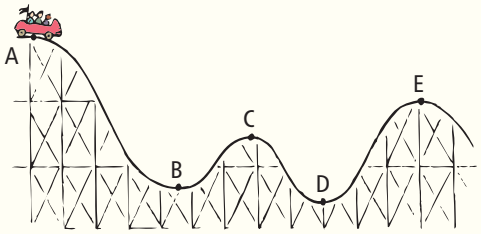
57. The mass and speed of the three vehicles, A, B, and C, are shown. Rank from greatest to least their
    (a) momentum.
    (b) kinetic energy.
    (c) work needed to bring them up to their respective speeds from rest.



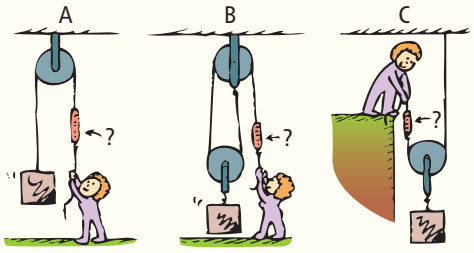
58. A ball is released from rest at the left of the metal track shown. Assume it has only enough friction to roll, but not to lessen its speed. Rank from greatest to least at each point:
    (a) Momentum
    (b) KE
    (c) PE



59. The roller coaster ride starts from rest at point A. Rank from greatest to least at each point:
    (a) Speed
    (b) KE
    (c) PE



60. Rank the scale readings from most to least. (Ignore friction.)



THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

61. Explain why the first hill of a roller coaster is always the highest.
62. Why is no work done on a 25-kg backpack when you walk a horizontal distance of 100 m?
63. At the beach, a relatively slow-moving wave might knock you over, but air moving at a similar speed will not. Explain this difference.
64. Why does one get tired when pushing against a stationary wall when no work is done on the wall?

65. Which is harder to do when stretching a spring 10 centimeters: Stretching it 5 cm to its half-way point, or stretching it from 5 cm to 10 cm?
66. Two people who weigh the same climb a flight of stairs. The first person climbs the stairs in 30 s, and the second person climbs them in 40 s. Which person does more work? Which person uses more power?
67. In determining the potential energy of Tenny's drawn bow (Figure 7.10), (a) would it be an underestimate or an overestimate to multiply the force with which she holds the arrow in its drawn position by the distance she pulled it? (b) Why do we say the work done is the average force × distance?
68. Professional tennis players tend to "follow through" when they hit the ball; this means that they continue to swing the racquet in the direction of the ball for as long as possible. Why is this effective at making the ball move faster?
69. If your friend pushes a lawnmower 4 times as far as you do while exerting only half the force, which one of you does more work? How much more?
70. You are traveling in a car, with a book sitting in your lap, as you pass your friend standing by the roadside. According to you, the book has no kinetic energy, but according to your friend it has a large amount of kinetic energy. Who is correct?
71. The amount of kinetic energy you can give to a thrown object is limited by your body's physiology (muscle strength, joint flexibility, etc.). Explain why taking a run-up allows you to throw a ball with greater speed than if you were standing still.
72. A 250-g object moving at 800 km/h is a very dangerous projectile, possessing a large amount of kinetic energy. Explain why no one is injured when a passenger in a jet airliner at cruising altitude drops their can of soda.
73. At what point in its motion is the KE of a pendulum bob at a maximum? At what point is its PE at a maximum? How do the amounts of PE and KE compare when the bob swings by the point that marks half its maximum height?
74. A physics instructor demonstrates energy conservation by releasing a heavy pendulum bob (in the sketch) and allowing it to swing to and fro. What would happen if, in his exuberance, he gave the bob a slight shove as it left his nose? Explain.

75. On a playground slide, a child has potential energy that decreases by 1000 J while her kinetic energy increases by 800 J. What other form of energy is involved, and how much?
76. Discuss the design of the roller coaster in the sketch in terms of the conservation of energy.

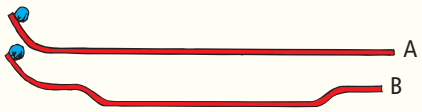
77. You and two classmates are discussing the design of a roller coaster. One classmate says that each summit must be lower than the previous one. Your other classmate says this is nonsense, for as long as the first one is the highest, it doesn't matter what height the others are. What do you say?
78. Someone wanting to sell you a Superball claims that it will bounce to a height greater than the height from which it is dropped. Why are you skeptical?
79. What is your explanation for why a Superball released from rest can't reach its original height when it bounces from a rigid floor?
80. A ball thrown straight up in the air.
    (a) Where in its path is its kinetic energy a maximum?
    (b) Where is its gravitational potential energy at a maximum?
81. Figure 7.18 shows a little girl jacking up a car. How can applying so little force produce sufficient force to raise the car?
82. The mass of a moving object is decreased with no change in speed. If the object's kinetic energy has halved, by what factor did its mass change? By what factor has its momentum changed?
83. A moving object increases its speed such that its momentum has doubled. By what factor has its kinetic energy changed?
84. How fast must a 4-kg ball move to have the same kinetic energy as a 1-kg ball moving at 2 m/s? Do they have the same amount of momentum, and if not which is larger?
85. A 1-kg ball is moving at 2 m/s and a 2-kg ball is moving at 1 m/s. Do the two balls have exactly the same momentum?
86. Can an object ever have a negative value for kinetic energy? Can it have a negative momentum?
87. Can the combined momentum of two moving objects ever be zero? Can their combined kinetic energy be zero?
88. Two objects have the same momentum. Is it necessary that they have the same kinetic energy? Explain.
89. Scissors for cutting paper have long blades and short handles, whereas metal-cutting shears have long handles and short blades. Why do bolt cutters have very long handles and very short blades?
90. An electric car engine and a fan-forced room heater both convert electrical energy into heat and motion. To increase energy efficiency in these two devices, it is desirable to reduce the "lost" energy. Discuss the concept of lost energy for each of the devices.
91. A "perpetual motion machine" is a hypothetical physical system that can do work for an infinite time without an external source of energy. Explain why a massive object moving with no forces acting on it cannot be considered a perpetual motion machine.

92. Your friend likes to drive fast on highways and offers this justification for their speed: "At constant speed, there is no net force required, so the fuel consumption will be the same whether traveling fast or slow and by traveling quickly I spend less time moving." How could you use your knowledge of work and energy to refute their argument?

93. Hydroelectric power stations convert the gravitational potential energy of water stored in a dam into electrical energy. In some facilities, after the water passes through turbines, it is then mechanically pumped back up to the dam ("pumped-storage hydroelectricity"). Explain why the pumps for this cannot be run using the electricity generated by the turbines.

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

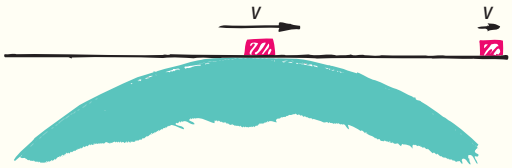
94. Identical balls are released from rest on Tracks A and B, as shown. When they reach the right ends of the tracks, which will have the greater speed? Why is this question easier to answer than the similar two-track question in Chapter 3?



95. A car's suspension system uses springs and "shock absorbers" to make traveling on uneven surfaces safer and more comfortable. In terms of energy transformations, discuss the role of each of these components as a car travels over a bump in the road.

96. Does a car burn more gasoline when its headlights are turned on? Does the overall consumption of gasoline depend on whether or not the engine is running while the headlights are on? Discuss this and defend your answer.

97. Suppose an object is set sliding on an infinite frictionless plane in contact with the Earth's surface, as shown, although not fast enough to fly into space. Describe its motion. (Will it slide forever at a constant velocity? Will it slide to a stop? In what way will its energy changes be similar to that of a pendulum?)



98. The Sun produces twice as much solar energy in 2 hours as it does in 1 hour, while its solar power is the same from one hour to the next. Distinguish between the terms solar energy and solar power.

99. If a golf ball and a ping-pong ball both move with the same kinetic energy, can you say which has the greater speed? Explain in terms of the definition of KE. Similarly, in a gaseous mixture of heavy and light molecules with the same average KE, can you say which have the greater speed?

100. Discuss why one should bother using a machine if it cannot multiply work input to achieve greater work output. What then, is the value of a machine?

101. You tell your friend that no machine can possibly produce more energy than is put into it, and your friend states that a nuclear reactor produces more energy than is put into it. What is your response?

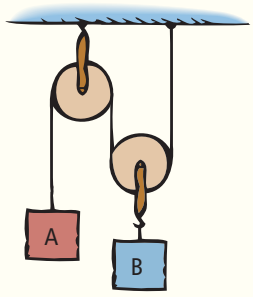
102. This may seem like an easy question for a physics type to answer: With what force does a 10-N rock strike the ground if dropped from a rest position 10 m high? In fact, the question cannot be answered unless you have more information. Discuss why this is so.

103. Your friend is confused about ideas in Chapter 4 that seem to contradict ideas in this chapter. For example, in Chapter 4, we learned that the net force is zero for a car traveling along a level road at constant velocity, and, in this chapter, we learned that work is done in such a case. Your friend asks, "How can work be done when the net force equals zero?" Discuss your explanation.

104. In the absence of air resistance, a ball thrown vertically upward will reach a maximum height where its gravitational PE is exactly equal to its initial KE. When air resistance is taken into account, will the ball's highest point be higher, lower, or the same as without air resistance? If not the same, account for the difference in maximum height.

105. You're on a rooftop and you throw one ball downward to the ground below and another upward. The second ball, after rising, falls and also strikes the ground below. If air resistance can be neglected, and your downward and upward initial speeds of the balls are the same, how will their speeds compare upon striking the ground? (Use energy conservation.)

106. In the pulley system shown, Block A has a mass of 10 kg and is suspended precariously at rest. Assume that the pulleys and string are massless and there is no friction so that the tension in one part of the supporting string is the same at any other part. Discuss why the mass of Block B is 20 kg.

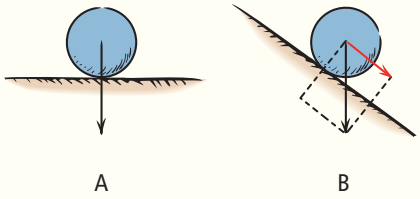


107. Going uphill, the gasoline engine in a hybrid electric car provides 75 horsepower while the total power propelling the car is 90 horsepower. Burning gasoline provides the 75 horsepower. Discuss what provides the other 15 horsepower.

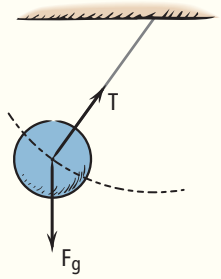
108. When a driver applies the brakes to keep a car going downhill at a constant speed and constant kinetic energy, the potential energy of the car decreases. Where does this energy go? In contrast, discuss where most of it goes with a hybrid electric vehicle.

109. Can an object increase its energy without increasing its momentum? Explain. Can an object change its momentum without changing its energy? Discuss and defend your answer.

110. No work is done by gravity on a bowling ball resting or moving on a bowling lane because the force of gravity on the ball acts perpendicular to the surface. But on an incline, the force of gravity has a vector component parallel to the lane, as sketch B shows. Discuss the two ways this component (a) accounts for acceleration of the ball and (b) the work done on the ball to change its kinetic energy.



111. A bob attached by a string makes a simple pendulum that swings to and fro. (a) Why does the tension force in the string not do work on the pendulum? (b) Why does the force due to gravity on the pendulum at nearly every point do work on the pendulum? (c) What is the single position of the pendulum where "no work by gravity" occurs?



112. You stand at the top of a playground slide, holding two identical balls. You drop one of them over the side, and it falls vertically to the ground. You place the other ball at the top of the slide, and it rolls down to the ground. On which ball, if either, does gravity do the most work? What if the balls had different masses?

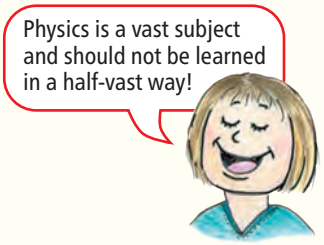
113. If two balls are lifted and released in the swinging-balls apparatus, momentum is conserved as two balls pop out the other side with the same speed as the released balls at impact. But momentum would also be conserved if one ball popped out at twice the speed. Discuss why this never happens. (And explain why this exercise is in Chapter 7 rather than in Chapter 6?)

114. To combat wasteful habits, we often speak of "conserving energy," by which we mean turning off lights and hot water when they are not being used and keeping thermostats at a moderate level. In this chapter, we also speak of "energy conservation." Discuss and distinguish between these two usages.

115. When an electric company can't meet its customers' demand for electricity on a hot summer day, is this an "energy crisis" or a "power crisis"? Discuss.

116. Some of the methods for producing electricity from renewable energy sources include solar panels, wind turbines, and hydroelectricity. Discuss how all three of these are using forms of solar energy.

117. Discuss the involvement of international peace, cooperation, and security in addressing the world's energy needs.



CHAPTER SEVEN Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. If Fast Freda doubles her running speed, she also doubles her
   (a) momentum.
   (b) kinetic energy.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) None of these
2. A model car with three times as much speed as another has kinetic energy that is
   (a) the same.
   (b) twice.
   (c) three times.
   (d) None of these
3. Which of these equations best illustrates the usefulness of automobile air bags?
   (a) $F = ma$
   (b) $Ft = \Delta mv$
   (c) $\text{KE} = 1/2\, mv^2$
   (d) $Fd = \Delta\text{KE}$
4. Which of these equations is best for calculating the distance a fast-moving bike will skid when its brakes are locked?
   (a) $F = ma$
   (b) $Ft = \Delta mv$
   (c) $\text{KE} = 1/2\, mv^2$
   (d) $Fd = \Delta\text{KE}$
5. The power required to raise a 100-kg crate a vertical distance of 2 m in 4 s is
   (a) 200 W.
   (b) 500 W.
   (c) 800 W.
   (d) 2000 W.
6. Jumbo drops from a high pole into water far below. When he is half-way down
   (a) his potential energy is halved.
   (b) he has gained an amount of kinetic energy equal to half his initial potential energy.
   (c) his kinetic and potential energies are equal.
   (d) All of the above
7. Nellie lifts a 100-N crate with an ideal pulley system by pulling a rope downward with 25 N of force. For every 1-m length of rope pulled down, the crate rises
   (a) 25 cm.
   (b) 25 m.
   (c) 50 cm.
   (d) None of these
8. When 100 J of work are put into a device that puts out 40 J of useful work, the efficiency of the device is
   (a) 40%.
   (b) 50%.
   (c) 60%.
   (d) 140%.
9. Dean plays with a popular swinging-balls demo. If two balls are dropped into the array and one ball pops out with twice the speed, this would violate the conservation of
   (a) momentum.
   (b) energy.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) None of these
10. A simple machine CANNOT multiply
    (a) force.
    (b) distance.
    (c) energy.
    (d) In certain cases it can multiply all of these.

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (a): This is a straight-forward reading of the equation for momentum, *mv*. With no mention of other variable changes, doubling the speed doubles the momentum. Kinetic energy, however, would be quadrupled, since it varies with the square of speed *v*. **2. (d):** KE varies with speed squared. So 3 times the speed squared is 9. The model car would have 9 times the KE, which isn't among the choices (a–c), so (d) is the answer. **3. (b):** Air bags reduce injury by extending the brief time of stopping with a corresponding reduction of force. The concepts of force and time typify impulse, Ft. This means that choice (b) is the best answer. The other equations only remotely involve air bags. **4. (d):** A key point in this question involves distance moved. The only equation involving distance is the work-energy equation (d), which says that the skidding force times the skidding distance equals the change in the bike's KE. The other three equations only indirectly involve skidding distance. **5. (b):** Thinking is guided by the definition and equation for power. Power is applied energy divided by the time of application. In this case, energy is PE, $mgh = (100\text{ kg})(10\text{ m/s}^2)(2\text{ m}) = 2000\text{ J}$, which when divided by $4\text{ s} = 500\text{ W}$. **6. (d):** All of these! In accord with energy conservation the initial energy possessed by Jumbo is his PE atop the pole. Half way down the PE is then half. That converts to KE which is the same half of PE in joules. Both PE and KE are the same half way down, so the answer is all of the above. **7. (a):** The crux of this question is energy conservation: $Fd_{\text{input}} = Fd_{\text{output}}$. Input is $Fd = (25\text{ N})(1\text{ m})$. Output is $Fd = (100\text{ N})(?)$. So the crate rises $(25\text{ N·m})/(100\text{ N}) = 0.25\text{ m}$, which equals 25 cm. **8. (a):** This is a straightforward plug-and-chug exercise. Use the equation Efficiency = (useful energy output)/(total energy input). Therefore, Efficiency $= 40\text{ J}/100\text{ J} = 0.40 = 40\%$. **9. (b):** One ball with twice the speed has four times the energy, not twice. This is why the same number of balls emerges with the swinging balls apparatus. Only then is momentum and kinetic energy of the balls the same before impact and after. **10. (c):** This is the most important of the sample questions. Every student should at this point know that energy cannot be created. No machine can multiply energy! Energy is always something that is transformed from one form to another, never capable of being multiplied. Force and distance, yes; energy, never!

CHAPTER EIGHT

8 Rotational Motion

8.1 Circular Motion

8.2 Centripetal Force

8.3 Centrifugal Force

- Centrifugal Force in a Rotating Reference Frame
- Simulated Gravity

8.4 Rotational Inertia

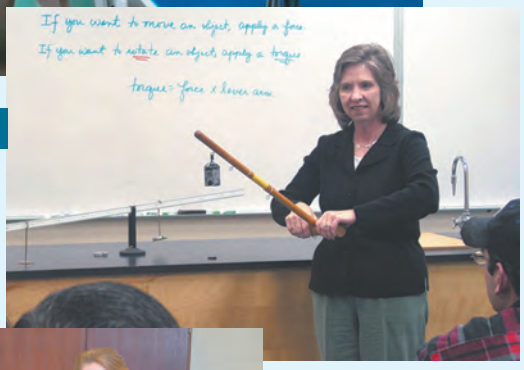
8.5 Torque

8.6 Center of Mass and Center of Gravity

- Locating the Center of Gravity
- Stability

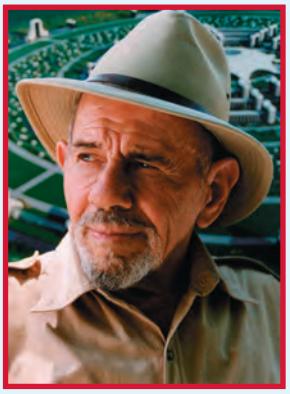
8.7 Angular Momentum

8.8 Conservation of Angular Momentum



1 From what vertical distance above the top of the loop should Paul Stokstad, founder of Pasco, release the car for a successful loop-the-loop motion? **2** Futurist Jacque Fresco, the most passionate teacher I have ever met, inspired my love of teaching. **3** Mary Beth Monroe demonstrates a "torque feeler" before she passes it around for her students to try. **4** Diana Lininger Markham places an open container of water on the green dish, which doesn't spill when swung. Why? **5** Bilal Gunes proposes various presentations of rotational mechanics with Turkish physics teachers.

Futurist thinker Jacque Fresco was the foremost influence in my transition from being a sign painter to pursuing a life in physics. I met Fresco through my sign-painting partner, Burl Grey, in Miami, Florida. My wife Millie and I, along with cartoonist friend Ernie Brown, attended Fresco's dynamic weekly lectures in Miami Beach and sometimes at his home in Coral Gables. Charismatic Jacque has always been a visionary, believing that the best path to a better future is via science and technology and that a community with more engineers than lawyers is likely to be a better one. His topics revolved around the importance of expanded technology to better living, locally and globally. In my experience, Jacque was and is the very best of teachers—an enormous influence on my own teaching. He taught me to introduce concepts new to a student by first comparing them to familiar ideas—teaching by analogy. He felt that little or nothing would be learned if it was not tied to something similar, familiar, and already understood. He always emphasized the central parts of an idea. His students left every lecture with knowledge that was valued. The experience convinced me to take advantage of the GI Bill (I was a noncombat Korean War vet), get a college education, and pursue a career in science.



Jacque Fresco, with his associate, Roxanne Meadows, founded The Venus Project www.thevenusproject.com and the nonprofit organization Resource Based Economy that reflect the culmination of Jacque's life work: The integration of the best of science and technology into a comprehensive plan for a new society based on human and environmental concerns—a global vision of hope for the future of humankind in our technological age. His vision is well stated in his many books, documentaries, and publications, on the web, and in the movie *The Choice is Ours*. Jacque died in 2017 at age 101. Roxanne, along with thousands worldwide, work to bring Fresco's social direction into reality.

In typical lecture lessons, Jacque treated the distinctions between closely related ideas as well as their similarity. I recall one of his lessons that distinguished linear motion from rotational motion. Where does a child move faster on a merry-go-round—near the outside rail or near the inside rail—or is the speed the same in both places? Because the distinction between linear speed and rotational speed is poorly understood, Jacque said that asking this question to different people results in different answers. Just as "tail-end Charlie" at the end of a line of skaters making a turn moves faster than skaters near the center of the curve, so it is that railroad-train wheels on the outside track of a curve travel faster than wheels on the inside track. Jacque explained how the slight tapering of the wheel rims make this possible. This and other similarities and distinctions are treated in this chapter.

8.1 Circular Motion

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

Linear speed, which we simply called *speed* in earlier chapters, is the distance traveled per unit of time. A point on the outside edge of a merry-go-round or turntable travels a greater distance in one complete rotation than does a point nearer the center. Traveling a greater distance in the same time means a greater speed. Linear speed is greater on the outer edge of a rotating object than it is closer to the axis. The linear speed of something moving along a circular path can be called **tangential speed** because the direction of motion is tangent to the circumference of the circle. For circular motion, we can use the terms *linear speed* and *tangential speed* interchangeably. Units of linear or tangential speed are usually m/s or km/h.

Rotational speed (sometimes called *angular speed*) is the number of rotations or revolutions per unit of time. All parts of the rigid merry-go-round and turntable turn about the axis of rotation in the same amount of time. Thus, all parts share the same rate of rotation, or the same *number of rotations or revolutions per unit of time*. It is common to express rotational rates in revolutions

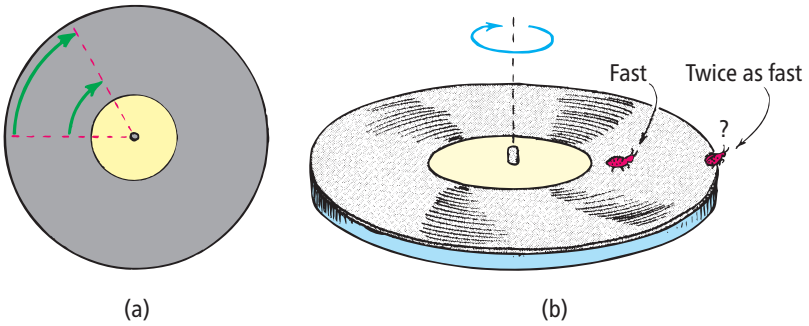


FIGURE 8.1
(a) When the turntable rotates, a point farther from the center travels a longer path in the same time and has a greater tangential speed. (b) A ladybug twice as far from the center moves twice as fast.

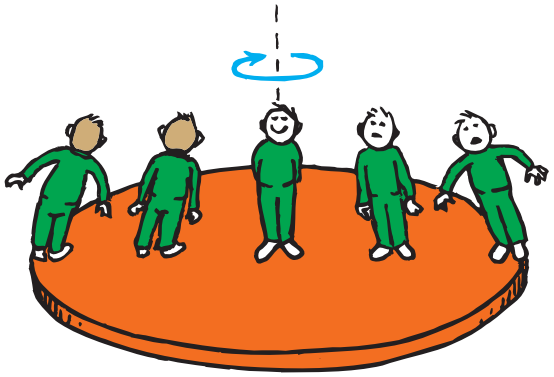
When a row of people, locked arm in arm at the skating rink, makes a turn, the motion of "tail-end Charlie" is evidence of a greater tangential speed.

per minute (rpm).[1] For example, most phonograph turntables, which were common in your grandparent's time, rotate at 78 or $33\frac{1}{3}$ rpm. A ladybug sitting anywhere on the surface of the turntable revolves at 78 or $33\frac{1}{3}$ rpm.

Tangential speed and rotational speed are related. This is evident the first time you ride on a merry-go-round. Or have you ever ridden on a big, round, rotating platform in an amusement park? The faster it turns, the faster your tangential speed. This makes sense; the more rpm, the faster your speed in meters per second. We say that tangential speed is *directly proportional* to rotational speed at any fixed distance from the axis of rotation.

Tangential speed, unlike rotational speed, depends on radial distance (the distance from the axis). At the very center of the rotating platform, you have no tangential speed at all; you merely spin about a point. You rotate. But, as you approach the edge of the platform, you find yourself moving faster and faster. Tangential speed is directly proportional to distance from the axis for any given rotational speed.[2]

FIGURE 8.2
The tangential speed of each person is proportional to the rotational speed of the platform multiplied by the distance from the central axis.



[1]Physics types usually describe rotational speed, ω, in terms of the number of "radians" turned in a unit of time. There are a little more than 6 radians in a full rotation (2π radians, to be exact). When a direction is assigned to rotational speed, we call it *rotational velocity* (often called *angular velocity*). Rotational velocity is a vector whose magnitude is the rotational speed. By convention, the rotational velocity vector lies along the axis of rotation and points in the direction of advance of a conventional right-handed screw.

[2]If you take a follow-up physics course, you will learn that when the proper units are used for tangential speed v, rotational speed ω, and radial distance r, the direct proportion of v to both r and ω becomes the exact equation $v = r\omega$. So the tangential speed will be directly proportional to r when all parts of a system simultaneously have the same ω, as for a wheel or disk (or a flyswatter!).

So we see that tangential speed is proportional to both radial distance and rotational speed:

$$\text{Tangential speed} \sim \text{radial distance} \times \text{rotational speed}$$

In symbolic form,

$$v \sim r\omega$$

where v is tangential speed and ω (the Greek letter omega) is rotational speed. You move faster if the rate of rotation increases (bigger ω). You also move faster if you move farther from the axis (bigger r). Move out twice as far from the rotational axis at the center, and you move twice as fast. Move out three times as far, and you have three times as much tangential speed. If you find yourself in any kind of rotating system, your tangential speed depends on how far you are from the axis of rotation.

When tangential speed undergoes change, we speak of a *tangential acceleration*. Any change in tangential speed indicates an acceleration parallel to tangential motion. For example, a person on a rotating platform that speeds up or slows down undergoes a tangential acceleration. We'll soon see that anything moving in a curved path undergoes another kind of acceleration—one directed to the center of curvature. This is *centripetal acceleration*. In the interest of "information overload," we'll not go into the details of tangential or centripetal acceleration.

fyi

- When an object turns about an internal axis, the motion is a *rotation,* or spin. A merry-go-round, a turntable, and Earth rotate about a central internal axis. The term *revolution*, however, refers to an object moving about an external axis. Earth *revolves* once each year about the Sun, while it *rotates* once each day about its polar axis.

CHECK POINT

1. **We are familiar with the units of linear speed: m/s or km/h. What are the units of tangential speed?**
2. **What are the units of rotational speed ω?**
3. **Why is tangential speed expressed $v \sim r\omega$ and not $v = r\omega$?**
4. **A flea sits on a rotating turntable, midway from the center to the edge. A second flea sits at the edge. Which flea has the higher ω? Which has the higher v?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The units are the same, whether the distance traveled is straight-line or curved.
2. For our purposes, we express rotational speed ω in familiar rotations per minute (rpm). More generally, ω is the rate at which angles expressed in radians are swept out per second.
3. Tangential speed is expressed as the proportion $v \sim r\omega$ because the units of v and $r\omega$ don't match. If ω is expressed in units of radians/second, then units match and the proportion becomes the exact equation $v = r\omega$. To prevent "information overload" (this author's nemesis) we'll forgo a radian treatment and refer the reader to the footnotes at the bottom of the preceding page.
4. Both fleas rotate at the same rpm, ω. The flea at the edge has twice the tangential speed v.

Why in a random walk do you tend to walk in circles after you've made one of your legs longer or shorter than the other?

WHEELS ON RAILROAD TRAINS

What keeps a moving railroad train on the tracks, especially when it rounds a curve? Many people assume the wheel flanges do the job. But if you look at these flanges, you'll likely see that they are rusty. They seldom touch the track, except when they follow slots that switch the train from one set of tracks to another. The wheels of a train stay on the track because their rims are slightly conical—tapered like a cup.

If you roll a tapered cup across a surface, it travels in a curved path (Figure 8.3). The wider part of the cup has a greater radius, rolls a greater distance per revolution, and therefore has a greater tangential speed than the narrower end. If you fasten a pair of cups together at their wide ends (simply taping them together) and roll the pair along a pair of parallel tracks (Figure 8.4), the cups will remain on the tracks. The cups center themselves whenever they tend to roll off center—because different parts of their tapered surface roll at different tangential speeds. The greater speed of the wide-diameter part of the cup shifts it toward the center. If it overshoots the center, the opposite cup shifts it back. Continual shifting and centering keep the cups on the tracks. And so it is with the wheels of railroad trains, where passengers feel the train swaying as these corrective actions occur.

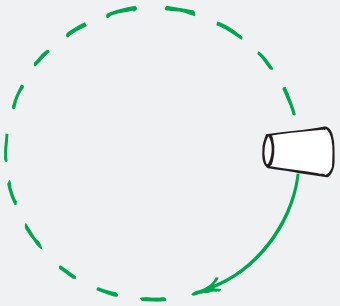


FIGURE 8.3
Because the wide part of the cup rolls faster than the narrow part, the cup rolls in a curve.

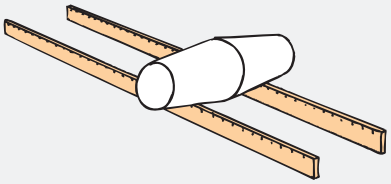


FIGURE 8.4
Two fastened cups stay on the tracks as they roll because, when they roll off center, the different tangential speeds due to the taper cause them to self-correct toward the center of the track.

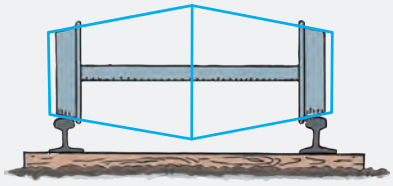


FIGURE 8.5
A pair of wheels form a one-piece wheelset. Wheel rims are slightly tapered (shown exaggerated) like the connected cups.

On any curve, the distance along the outer part is longer than the distance along the inner part (Figure 8.1a). So, whenever a vehicle follows a curve, its outside wheels travel farther and faster than its inner wheels. For an automobile, this is not a problem because the wheels are freewheeling and roll independently of each other. For a train, however, like the pair of fastened cups, pairs of wheels are firmly connected by a rigid axle to form a wheelset (Figure 8.5). Both wheels of a wheelset rotate with the same rpm at all times, although tangential speed of each wheel can differ depending on what part of its tapered rim makes contact with the railroad track. Importantly, the surface of a track is slightly rounded.

When a train travels in a straight-line direction, the wheelset centers on the track, as in Figure 8.5. When rounding a curve, however, the wheelset tends to slide toward the outside of the curve due to its tendency to follow a straight-line path (Figures 8.6 and 8.7). As the outer wheel rides on its wide part the opposite wheel rides on its narrower part. So the faster outer wheel lets the train make the slightly banked curve without wheel scraping and squealing—all thanks to the slightly tapered rim, and to $v \sim r\omega$.

So it's not the flanges that keep a train on the track, but the tapered rims of the wheels. Now if a problem occurs, a strong hurricane wind for example, you'll be glad the flanges are there.

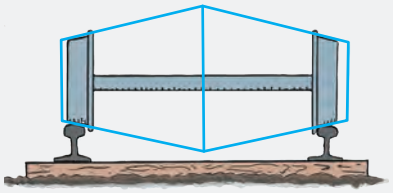


FIGURE 8.6
Wheelset shifts toward the right as the track curves to the left.

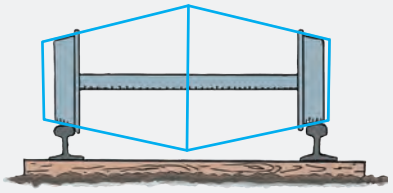


FIGURE 8.7
Wheelset shifts toward the left as the track curves to the right.

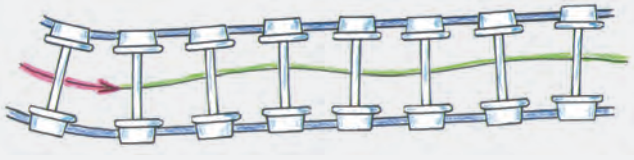


FIGURE 8.8
After rounding a curve, a train often oscillates on the straightaway as the wheels self-correct.

CHECK POINT

For railroad tracks that round a curve, the outer rail is longer than the inner rail. This means the outer wheel of a train must travel farther and therefore faster than the inner wheel. If the outer rail of the curve is 1% longer than the inner rail, does this require a 1% increase in circumference of the outer wheel?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes. The distance along a track is some multiple of a wheel's circumference. To travel 1% farther along the outer track requires a 1% increase in the outer wheel's circumference, so the wheel rides on its wider part (as shown in either Figure 8.6 or Figure 8.7). For example, on a curve where the inner track is 100 m long and the outer track is 101 m long, the outer wheel must travel 101 m in the same time that the inner wheel travels 100 m. The same 1% difference in both wheel circumference and track length means slippage-free rolling.

FIGURE 8.9
Professor Candler asks her class which set of cups will self-correct when she rolls them along a pair of "meterstick tracks."

8.2 Centripetal Force

Any force directed toward a fixed center is called a **centripetal force**. *Centripetal* means "center-seeking" or "toward the center." When we whirl a tin can on the end of a string, we find that we must keep pulling on the string—exerting a centripetal force (Figure 8.10). The string transmits the centripetal force, which pulls the can into a circular path. Gravitational and electrical forces can produce centripetal forces. The Moon, for example, is held in an almost circular orbit by gravitational force directed toward the center of Earth. The orbiting electrons in atoms experience an electrical force toward the central nuclei. Anything that moves in a circular path does so because it's acted upon by a centripetal force.

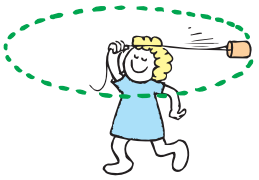


FIGURE 8.10
The force exerted on the whirling can is toward the center.

Centripetal force depends on the mass m, tangential speed v, and radius of curvature r of the circularly moving object. In lab, you'll likely use the exact relationship

$$F = \frac{mv^2}{r}$$

Notice that speed is squared, so twice the speed needs four times the force. The inverse relationship with the radius of curvature tells us that half the radial distance requires twice the force.

Centripetal force is not a basic force of nature; it is simply the name given to any force, whether string tension, gravitational, electrical, or whatever, that is directed toward a fixed center. If the motion is circular and executed at constant speed, this force is at right angles to the path of the moving object.

When an automobile rounds a corner, the friction between the tires and the road provides the centripetal force that holds the car in a curved path (Figure 8.11a). If this friction is insufficient (due to oil or gravel on the pavement, for example), the tires slide sideways and the car fails to make the curve; the car tends to skid tangentially off the road (Figure 8.11b).

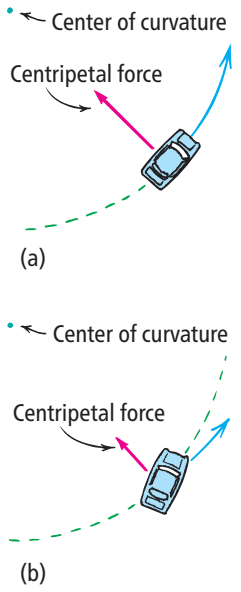


FIGURE 8.11
(a) When a car goes around a curve, a force is needed to push the car toward the center of the curve. (b) A car skids on a curve when the centripetal force (friction of road on tires) is not great enough.

Centripetal force plays the main role in the operation of a centrifuge. A familiar example is the spinning tub in an automatic washing machine (Figure 8.12). In its spin cycle, the tub rotates at high speed and produces a centripetal force on the wet clothes, which are forced into a circular path by the inner wall of the tub. The tub exerts great force on the clothes, but the holes in the tub prevent the exertion of the same force on the water in the clothes. The water escapes tangentially out the holes. Strictly speaking, the clothes are forced away from the water; the water is not forced away from the clothes. Think about that.

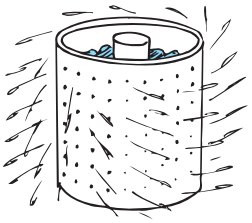


FIGURE 8.12
The clothes are forced into a circular path, but the water is not.

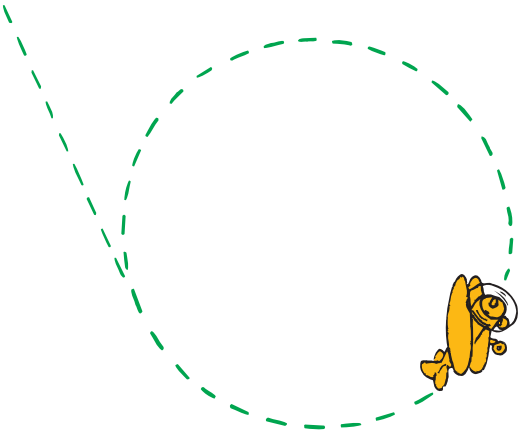


FIGURE 8.13
Large centripetal forces on the wings of an aircraft enable it to fly in circular loops. The acceleration away from the straight-line path the aircraft would follow in the absence of centripetal force is often several times greater than the acceleration due to gravity, g. For example, if the centripetal acceleration is 50 m/s^2 (5 times as great as 10 m/s^2), we say that the aircraft is undergoing 5 g's. Typical fighter aircraft are designed to withstand accelerations up to 8 or 9 g's. Pilots of fighter aircraft wear pressure suits to prevent their blood from flowing away from the head toward the legs, which could cause a blackout.

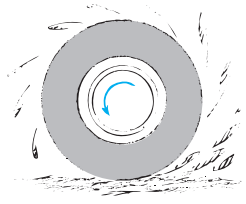


FIGURE 8.14
The centripetal force (adhesion of mud on the spinning tire) is not great enough to hold the mud on the tire, so it flies off in straight-line tangents.

CHECK POINT

1. **If something moves other than in a non-straight-line path, can we say for sure that a net force acts on it?**
2. **Can a centripetal force sometimes act in a direction *away* from the center of rotation?**
3. **Just for fun, and since we're discussing circles, why are maintenance-hole covers circular in shape?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Yes, for sure. That's the law, Newton's first!
2. No. Such a force would be called *centrifugal*. Read on.
3. Not so fast on this one. Give it some thought. If you don't come up with an answer, *then* look at the end of the chapter for an answer.

PRACTICING PHYSICS: WATER-BUCKET SWING

Half fill a bucket of water and swing it in a vertical circle, as Marshall Ellenstein demonstrates. The bucket and water accelerate toward the center of your swing. If you swing the bucket fast enough, the water won't fall out at the top. Interestingly, although the water won't fall *out,* it still falls. The trick is to swing the bucket fast enough so that the bucket falls as fast as the water inside the bucket falls. Can you see that because the bucket is circling, the water moves tangentially—and stays in the bucket? In Chapter 10, we'll learn that an orbiting spacecraft similarly falls while in orbit. The trick is to impart sufficient tangential velocity to the spacecraft so that it falls around the curved Earth rather than into it.

8.3 Centrifugal Force

Although centripetal force is center directed, an occupant inside a revolving or rotating system seems to experience an outward force. This apparent outward force is called **centrifugal force.** *Centrifugal* means "center-fleeing" or "away from the center." In the case of a can whirling at the end of a string, it is a common misconception that a centrifugal force pulls outward on the can. If the string holding the whirling can breaks (Figure 8.15), the can doesn't move radially outward, but goes off in a tangent straight-line path—because *no* force acts on it. We illustrate this further with another example.

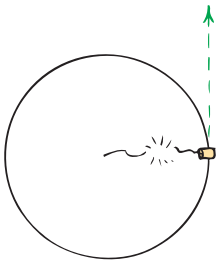


FIGURE 8.15
When the string breaks, the whirling can moves in a straight line, tangent to—not outward from—the center of its circular path.

Suppose you are a passenger in a car that stops suddenly. You pitch forward toward the dashboard. When this occurs, you don't say that something forced you forward. In accord with the law of inertia, you pitched forward because of the absence of a force, which seat belts would have provided. Similarly, if you are in a car that rounds a sharp corner to the left, you tend to pitch outward to the right—not because of some outward or centrifugal force, but because there is no centripetal force holding you in circular motion (again, the purpose of seat belts). The idea that a centrifugal force bangs you against the car door is a misconception. (Sure, you push out against the door, but only because the door pushes in on you—Newton's third law.)

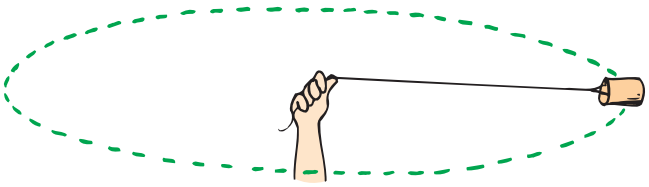


FIGURE 8.16
The only force that is exerted on the whirling can (if we ignore gravity) is directed *toward* the center of circular motion. This is a centripetal force. No *outward* force acts on the can.

Likewise, when you swing a can in a circular path, no force pulls the can outward—the only force on the can is the string pulling it inward. There is no outward force on the can. Now suppose there is a ladybug inside the whirling can (Figure 8.17). The can presses against the bug's feet and provides the centripetal force that holds it in a circular path. From our outside stationary frame of reference, we see no centrifugal force exerted on the ladybug, just as no centrifugal force banged us against the car door. The centrifugal force effect is caused not by a real force, but by inertia—the tendency of the moving object to follow a straight-line path. But try telling that to the ladybug!

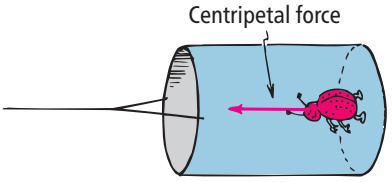


FIGURE 8.17
The can provides the centripetal force necessary to hold the ladybug in a circular path.

Centrifugal Force in a Rotating Reference Frame

If we stand at rest and watch somebody whirling a can overhead in a horizontal circle, we see that the force on the can is centripetal, just as it is on a ladybug inside the can. The bottom of the can exerts a force on the ladybug's feet. If we ignore gravity, no other force acts on the ladybug. But, as viewed from inside the frame of reference of the revolving can, things appear very different.[3]

In the rotating frame of reference of the ladybug, in addition to the force of the can on the ladybug's feet, there is an apparent centrifugal force that is exerted on the ladybug. Centrifugal force *in a rotating reference frame* is a force in its own right, as real as the pull of gravity. However, there is a fundamental difference. Gravitational force is an interaction between one mass and another. The gravity we

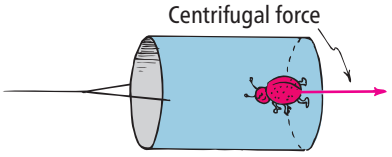


FIGURE 8.18
From the reference frame of the ladybug inside the whirling can, it is being held to the bottom of the can by a force that is directed away from the center of circular motion. The ladybug calls this outward force a *centrifugal* force, which is as real to it as gravity.

[3]A frame of reference in which a free body exhibits no acceleration is called an *inertial* frame of reference. Newton's laws are seen to hold exactly in an inertial frame. A rotating frame of reference, in contrast, is an accelerating frame of reference. Newton's laws are not valid in an accelerating frame of reference.

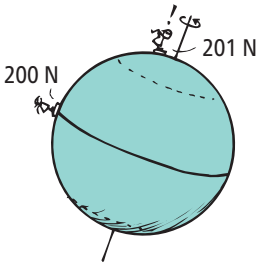


FIGURE 8.19
In the frame of reference of the spinning Earth, we experience a centrifugal force that slightly decreases our weight. Like an outside horse on a merry-go-round, we have the greatest tangential speed farthest from Earth's axis, at the equator. Centrifugal force is therefore greatest for us when we are at the equator and zero for us at the poles, where we have no tangential speed. So, strictly speaking, if you want to lose weight, walk toward the equator!

experience is our interaction with Earth. But for centrifugal force in the rotating frame, no such agent (such as Earth) exists—there is no interaction counterpart. Centrifugal force *feels* like gravity, but there's no *something* pulling. Nothing produces the pulling; the force we feel is instead a result of rotation. No pulling counterpart exists. For this reason, physicists call it an "inertial" force (or sometimes a *fictitious* force)—an *apparent* force—and not a real force like gravity, electromagnetic forces, and nuclear forces. Nevertheless, to observers who are in a rotating system, centrifugal force feels like, and is interpreted to be, a very real force. Just as gravity is ever present at Earth's surface, centrifugal force is ever present in a rotating system.

CHECK POINT

A heavy iron ball is attached by a spring to a rotating platform, as shown in the sketch. Two observers, one on the rotating platform and one on the ground at rest, observe its motion. Which observer sees the ball being pulled outward, stretching the spring? Which sees the spring pulling the ball into circular motion?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

The rotating observer states that a centrifugal force pulls radially outward on the ball, which stretches the spring. The observer at rest states that a centripetal force supplied by the stretched spring pulls the ball into circular motion. Only the observer on the ground at rest can identify an action–reaction pair of forces; where action is spring on ball, reaction is ball on spring. The rotating observer can't identify a reaction counterpart to the centrifugal force because there isn't any!

Simulated Gravity

Consider a colony of ladybugs living inside a balloon bicycle tire with plenty of room inside. If we toss the bicycle wheel through the air or drop it from an airplane high in the sky, the ladybugs will be in a weightless condition. They will float freely while the wheel is in free fall. Now spin the wheel. The ladybugs will feel themselves pressed to the outer part of the tire's inner surface. If the wheel is spun at just the right speed, the ladybugs will experience *simulated gravity* that will feel like the gravity they are accustomed to. Gravity is simulated by centrifugal force. The "down" direction to the ladybugs will be what we would call radially outward, away from the center of the wheel.

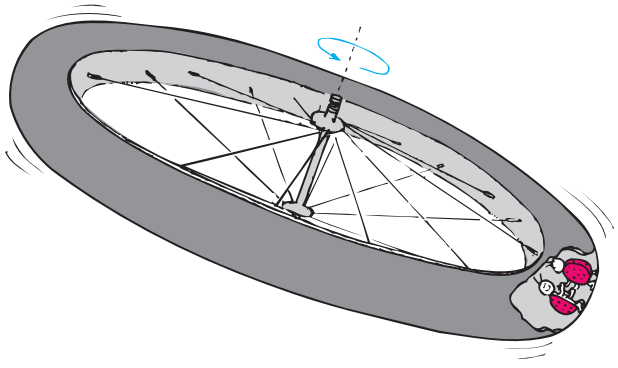


FIGURE 8.20
If the spinning wheel freely falls, the ladybugs inside will experience a centrifugal force that feels like gravity when the wheel spins at the appropriate rate. To the occupants, the direction "up" is toward the center of the wheel and "down" is radially outward.

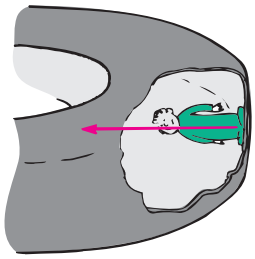


FIGURE 8.21
The interaction between the man and the floor, as seen from a stationary frame of reference outside the rotating system. The floor presses against the man (action), and the man presses back on the floor (reaction). The only force exerted on the man is by the floor. It is directed toward the center and is a centripetal force.

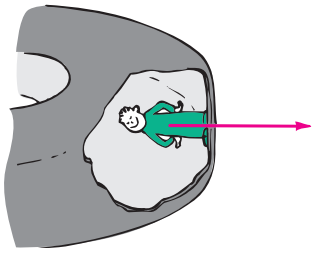


FIGURE 8.22
As seen from inside the rotating system, in addition to the man–floor interaction, there is a centrifugal force exerted on the man at his center of mass. It seems as real as gravity. Yet, unlike gravity, it has no reaction counterpart—there is nothing out there that he can pull back on. Centrifugal force is not part of an interaction, but it is a consequence of rotation. It is therefore called an apparent force, or a *fictitious force*.

Humans today live on the outer surface of this spherical planet and are held here by gravity. The planet has been the cradle of humankind. But we will not stay in the cradle forever. We are becoming a spacefaring people. Occupants of today's space vehicles feel weightless because they experience no *support force*. They're not pressed against a supporting floor by gravity, nor do they spin and experience a centrifugal force. Over extended periods of time, this can cause loss of muscle strength and detrimental changes in the body, such as calcium loss in the bones, as confirmed by astronaut Scott Kelly during his year aboard the International Space Station. But future space travelers need not be subject to weightlessness. Their large space habitats will probably spin, like the ladybug's spinning wheel, effectively supplying a support force and nicely simulating gravity.

A rotating habitat need not be a huge wheel. Gravity could be simulated in a pair of circling pods connected by a long cable.

The significantly smaller International Space Station doesn't rotate. Therefore, its crew members have to adjust to living in a weightless environment. Rotating habitats may follow later, perhaps in huge, lazily rotating structures where occupants will be held to the inner surfaces by centrifugal force. Such a rotating habitat supplies a simulated gravity so that the human body can function normally. Structures of small diameter would have to rotate at high speeds to provide a simulated gravitational acceleration of 1*g*. Sensitive and delicate organs in our inner ears sense rotation. Although there appears to be no difficulty at a single revolution per minute (rpm) or so, many people find it difficult to adjust to speeds greater than 2 or 3 rpm (although some easily adapt to 10 or so rpm). To simulate normal Earth gravity at 1 rpm requires a large structure—one about 2 km in diameter. Centrifugal acceleration is directly proportional to the radial distance from the hub, so a variety of *g* states is possible. If the structure rotates so that inhabitants on the inside of the outer edge experience 1 *g*, then halfway to the axis they would experience 0.5 *g*. At the axis itself they would experience weightlessness (0 *g*). The variety of fractions of *g* possible from the rim of a rotating space habitat holds promise for a different and (at this writing) as yet unexperienced environment. In this still very hypothetical structure, we would be able to perform ballet at 0.5 *g*, diving and acrobatics at 0.2 *g* and lower-*g* states, and three-dimensional soccer (and new sports not yet conceived) in very low *g* states.

CHECK POINT

If Earth were to spin faster about its axis, your weight would be less. If you were in a rotating space habitat that increased its spin rate, you'd "weigh" more. Explain why greater spin rates produce opposite effects in these cases.

CHECK YOUR ANSWER
You're on the *outside* of the spinning Earth, but you'd be on the *inside* of a spinning space habitat. A greater spin rate on the outside of the Earth tends to throw you *off* a weighing scale, causing it to show a decrease in weight, but *against* a weighing scale *inside* the space habitat to show an increase in weight.

8.4 Rotational Inertia

Just as an object at rest tends to stay at rest and an object in motion tends to remain moving in a straight line, *an object rotating about an axis tends to remain rotating about the same axis unless interfered with by some external influence.* (We shall see shortly that this external influence is properly called a *torque.*) The property of an object to resist changes in its rotational state of motion is called **rotational inertia.**[4] Bodies that are rotating tend to remain rotating, while nonrotating bodies tend to remain nonrotating. We delight in seeing how a rotating top keeps rotating, while a top at rest remains at rest—in the absence of outside influences.

Like inertia for linear motion, rotational inertia depends on mass. Once the massive stone of a potter's wheel is rotating, it tends to remain rotating. But, unlike linear motion, rotational inertia depends on the distribution of the mass about the axis of rotation. The greater the distance between an object's mass concentration and the axis, the greater the rotational inertia. This is evident in industrial flywheels that are constructed so that most of their mass is concentrated far from the axis, along the rim. Once rotating, they have a greater tendency to remain rotating. When at rest, they are more difficult to get rotating.

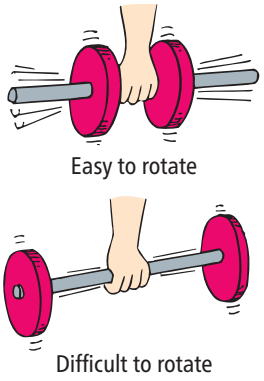


FIGURE 8.23
Rotational inertia depends on the distribution of mass relative to the axis of rotation.

Industrial flywheels provide a practical means of storing energy in electric power plants. When the plants continuously generate electricity, energy that is not needed when power demand is low is diverted to massive flywheels, which are the counterpart of electric batteries—but environmentally sound with no toxic metals or hazardous waste. The whirling wheels are then connected to generators to release the power when it's needed. When flywheels are combined in banks of ten or more connected to power grids, they offset fluctuations between supply and demand and run more smoothly. Cheers for rotational inertia!

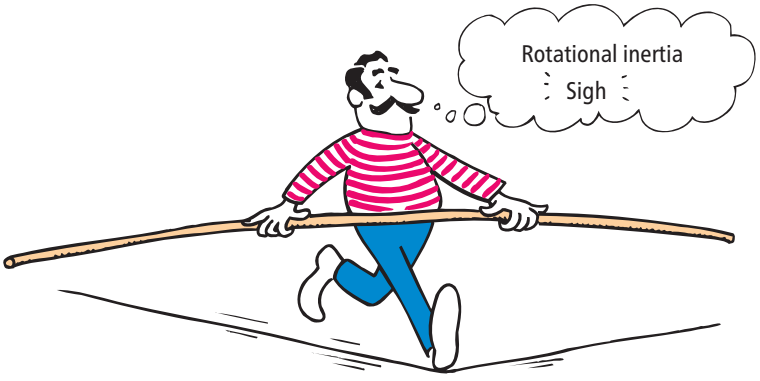


FIGURE 8.24
The tendency of the pole to resist rotation aids the tightrope walker.

The greater the rotational inertia of an object, the greater the difficulty in changing its rotational state. This fact is employed by a circus tightrope walker who carries a long pole to aid balance. Much of the mass of the pole is far from the axis of rotation, its midpoint. The pole, therefore, has considerable rotational inertia. If the tightrope walker starts to topple over, a tight grip on the pole rotates the pole. But the rotational inertia of the pole resists, giving the tightrope walker time to readjust his or her balance. The longer the pole, the better for balance. And better still if massive objects are attached to the ends. But a tightrope walker with no pole can at least extend his or her arms full length to increase the body's rotational inertia.

[4]Often called *moment of inertia.*

The rotational inertia of the pole, or of any object, depends on the axis about which it rotates.[5] Compare the different rotations of a pencil in Figure 8.25. In (a) rotational inertia is very small along the lead. Rotation is easy between your fingertips due to all the mass being very close to the rotational axis. In (b) rotational inertia is greater about the midpoint axis, like that used by the tightrope walker in Figure 8.24. In (c) rotational inertia is greater still about the end of the pencil so that it swings like a pendulum.

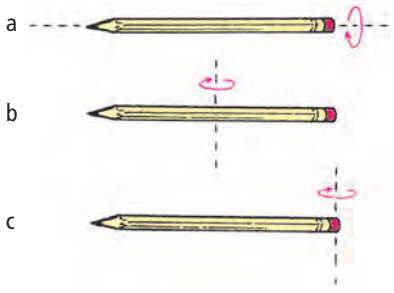


FIGURE 8.25
The pencil has different rotational inertias about different rotational axes.

A long baseball bat held near its narrow end has more rotational inertia than a short bat. Once the long bat is swinging, it has a greater tendency to keep swinging, but it is harder to bring it up to speed. A short bat, with less rotational inertia, is easier to swing—which explains why baseball players sometimes "choke up" on a bat by grasping it closer to the more massive end. Similarly, when you run with your legs bent, you reduce their rotational inertia so that you can rotate them back and forth more quickly. A long-legged person tends to walk with slower strides than a person with short legs. The different strides of creatures with different leg lengths are especially evident in animals. Giraffes, horses, and ostriches run with a slower gait than dachshunds, mice, and bugs.

FIGURE 8.26
You bend your legs when you run to reduce rotational inertia.

Because of rotational inertia, a solid cylinder starting from rest will roll down an incline faster than a hoop. Both rotate about a central axis, and the shape that has most of its mass far from its axis is the hoop. So, for its weight, a hoop has greater rotational inertia and is harder to start rolling. Any solid cylinder will outroll any hoop on the same incline. This doesn't seem plausible at first, but remember that any two objects, regardless of mass, will fall together when dropped. They will also slide together when released on an inclined plane. When rotation is introduced, the object with the greater rotational inertia *relative to its own mass* has the greater resistance to a change in its motion. Hence, any solid

FIGURE 8.27
Short legs have less rotational inertia than long legs. An animal with short legs has a quicker stride than people with long legs, just as a baseball batter can swing a short bat more quickly than a long one.

[5]When the mass of an object is concentrated at the radius r from the axis of rotation (as for a simple pendulum bob or a thin ring), rotational inertia I is equal to the mass m multiplied by the square of the radial distance. For this special case, $I = mr^2$.

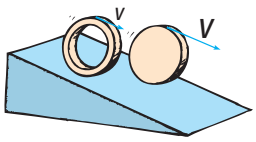
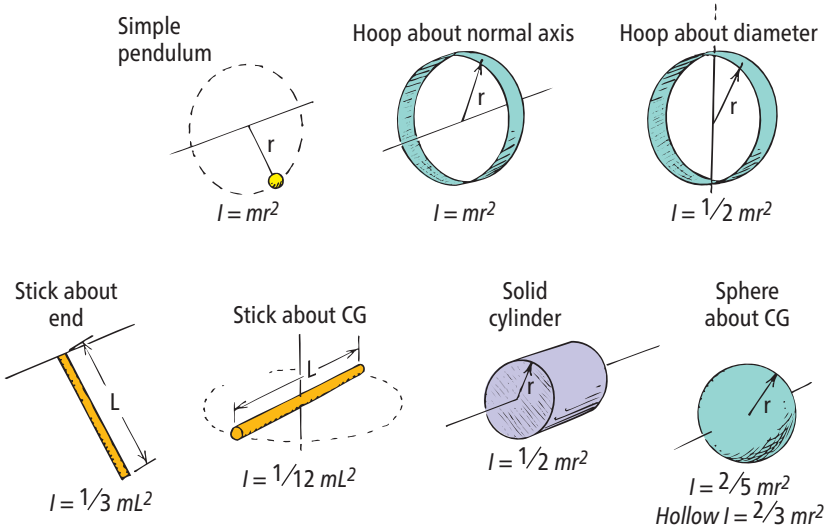


FIGURE 8.28
A solid cylinder rolls down an incline faster than a hoop, whether or not they have the same mass or outer diameter. A hoop has greater rotational inertia relative to its mass than a cylinder does.

cylinder will roll down any incline with greater acceleration than any hollow cylinder, regardless of mass or radius (Table 8.1). A hollow cylinder has more "laziness per mass" than a solid cylinder. Try it and see!

Table 8.1 compares the rotational inertias of objects with various shapes and axes. It is not important for you to learn the equations shown in the figure, but can you see how they vary with the shape and axis?

TABLE 8.1 ROTATIONAL INERTIAS OF VARIOUS OBJECTS



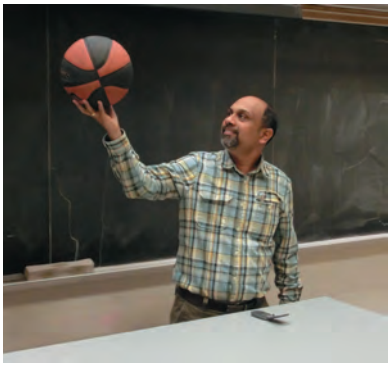
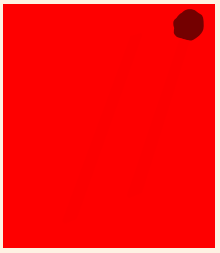


FIGURE 8.29
Sanjay Rebello shows a thin-walled sphere to his class and asks if a thick-walled sphere would have more, or less, rotational inertia.

CHECK POINT

1. **Balance a hammer upright on the tip of your finger. The head is likely heavier than the handle. Is it easier to balance with the end of the handle on your fingertip, with the head at the top, or the other way around?**
2. **Place a pair of metersticks standing nearly upright against a wall. If you release them, they'll rotate to the floor at the same time. But what if one meterstick has a massive hunk of clay stuck to its top end? Will it rotate to the floor in a longer or shorter time?**
3. **Which would spin for a longer time on the tip of one's finger, a basketball of mass 0.62 kg or a same-sized soccer ball of mass 0.42 kg?**



CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Stand the hammer with the handle on your fingertip and the head at the top. Why? Because it will have greater rotational inertia this way and be more resistant to a rotational change. (Try this yourself by balancing a spoon both ways on your fingertip.) Acrobats who balance a long vertical pole have an easier task when their friends are at the top of the pole. A pole empty at the top has less rotational inertia and is more difficult to balance!

Note how rotational inertia very much depends on the location of the axis of rotation. A stick rotated about one end, for example, has four times greater rotational inertia than a stick rotated about its center.

2. Try it and see! (If you don't have clay, fashion something equivalent.)
3. As we see in Table 8.1, the rotational inertia of a hollow ball is $2/3\,mr^2$. The only difference between the two balls is mass m, which is greater for the basketball. Bet on the basketball to spin for a longer time!

8.5 Torque

Hold the end of a meterstick horizontally with your hand. Dangle a weight from it near your hand and you can feel the stick twist. Now slide the weight farther from your hand and you can feel greater twist, even though the weight is the same. The force acting on your hand is the same. What's different is the *torque*.

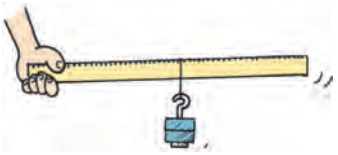


FIGURE 8.30
Move the weight farther from your hand and feel the difference between force and torque.

Torque (rhymes with *dork*) is the rotational counterpart of force. Forces tend to change the motion of things; torques tend to twist or change the rotational motion of things. If you want to make a stationary object move or a moving object change its velocity, apply force. If you want to make a stationary object rotate or a rotating object change its rotational velocity, apply torque.

Just as rotational inertia differs from regular inertia, torque differs from force. Both rotational inertia and torque involve distance from the axis of rotation. In the case of torque, this distance, which provides leverage, is called the *lever arm*. It is the shortest distance between the applied force and the rotational axis. We define **torque** as the product of this lever arm and the force that tends to produce rotation:

$$\text{Torques} = \text{level arm} \times \text{force}$$

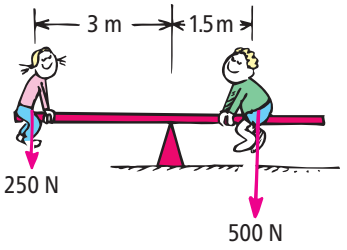


FIGURE 8.31
No rotation is produced when the torques balance each other.

Torques are intuitively familiar to youngsters playing on a seesaw. Kids can balance a seesaw even when their weights are unequal. Weight alone doesn't produce rotation—torque does also—and children soon learn that the distance they sit from the pivot point is every bit as important as their weight. The torque produced by the boy on the right in Figure 8.31 tends to produce clockwise rotation, while torque produced by the girl on the left tends to produce counterclockwise rotation. If the torques are equal, which makes the net torque zero, no rotation is produced.

Suppose that the seesaw is arranged so that the half-as-heavy girl is suspended from a 4-m rope hanging from her end of the seesaw (Figure 8.32). She is now 5 m from the fulcrum, and the seesaw is still balanced. We see that the lever-arm distance is still 3 m and not 5 m. The lever arm about any axis of rotation is the perpendicular distance from the axis to the line along which the force acts. This will always be the shortest distance between the axis of rotation and the line along which the force acts.

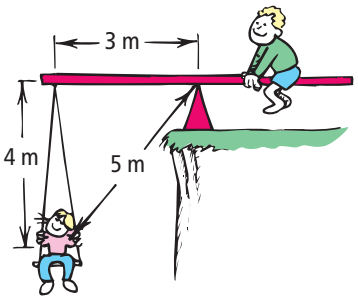


FIGURE 8.32
The lever arm is still 3 m.

This is why the stubborn bolt shown in Figure 8.33 is more likely to turn when the applied force is perpendicular to the handle, rather than at an oblique angle as shown in the left figure. In the left figure, the lever arm is shown by the dashed line and it is shorter than the length of the wrench handle. In the center figure, the lever arm is the same length as the wrench handle. In the right figure, the lever arm is extended with a piece of pipe to provide more leverage and a greater torque.

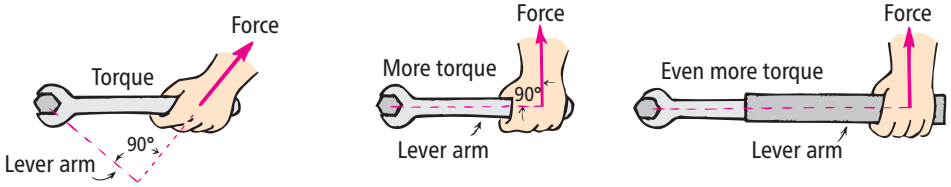


FIGURE 8.33
Although the magnitudes of the forces are the same in each case, the torques are different.

If and when all clocks are digital, will the terms *clockwise* and *counterclockwise* have meaning?

Recall the equilibrium rule in Chapter 2—that the sum of the forces acting on a body or any system must equal zero for mechanical equilibrium; that is, $\Sigma F = 0$. We now see an additional condition. The *net torque* on a body or on a system must also be zero for mechanical equilibrium: $\Sigma\tau = 0$, where τ (the Greek letter tau) stands for torque. Anything that is in mechanical equilibrium doesn't accelerate linearly or rotationally.

CHECK POINT

1. **If a pipe effectively extends a wrench handle to three times its length, by how much will the torque increase for the same applied force?**
2. **Consider the balanced seesaw in Figure 8.31. Suppose the girl on the left suddenly gains 50 N, such as by being handed a bag of apples. Where should she sit in order to be in balance, assuming the heavier boy does not move?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Three times more leverage for the same force produces three times more torque. (Caution: This method of increasing torque sometimes results in shearing off the bolt!)
2. She should sit ½ m closer to the center. Then her lever arm is 2.5 m. This checks: 300 N × 2.5 m = 500 N × 1.5 m.

8.6 Center of Mass and Center of Gravity

Toss a baseball into the air, and it will follow a smooth parabolic path. Toss a baseball bat spinning into the air, and its path is not smooth; its motion is wobbly, and it seems to wobble all over the place. But, in fact, it wobbles about a very special place, a point called the *center of mass (CM)*.

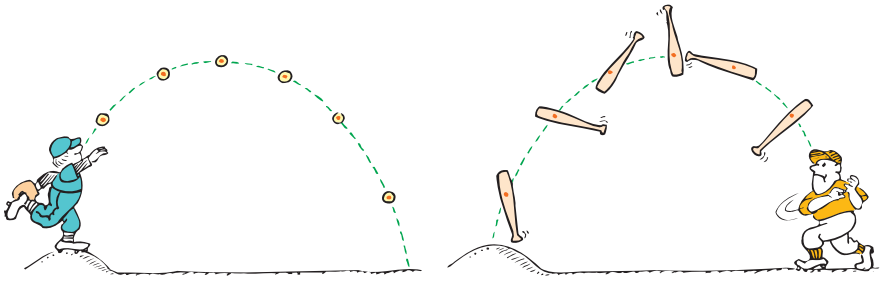


FIGURE 8.34
The center of mass of the baseball and that of the bat follow parabolic trajectories.

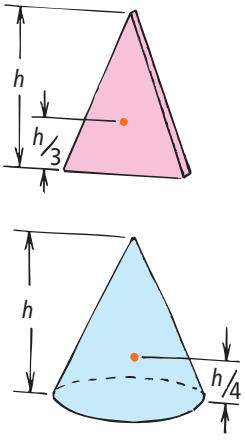


FIGURE 8.35
The center of mass for each object is shown by the red dot.

For a given body, the **center of mass** is the average position of all the mass that makes up the object. For example, a symmetrical object, such as a ball, has its center of mass at its geometrical center; by contrast, an irregularly shaped body, such as a baseball bat, has more of its mass toward one end. The center of mass of a baseball bat, therefore, is toward the thicker end. A solid cone has its center of mass exactly one-fourth of the way up from its base.

Center of gravity (CG) is a term popularly used to express center of mass. The **center of gravity** is simply the average position of the weight distribution. Since weight and mass are proportional, center of gravity and center of mass refer to

the same point of an object.[6] The physicist prefers to use the term *center of mass* because an object has a center of mass whether or not it is under the influence of gravity. However, we shall use either term for this concept, and we shall favor the term *center of gravity* when weight is part of the picture.

The multiple-flash photograph in Figure 8.36 shows a top view of a wrench sliding across a smooth horizontal surface. Note that its center of mass, indicated by the white dot, follows a straight-line path, while other parts of the wrench wobble as they move across the surface. Since there is no external force acting on the wrench, its center of mass moves equal distances in equal time intervals. The motion of the spinning wrench is the combination of the straight-line motion of its center of mass and the rotational motion about its center of mass.

FIGURE 8.36
The center of mass of the spinning wrench (white dot) follows a straight-line path.

If the wrench were instead tossed into the air, no matter how it rotates, its center of mass (or center of gravity) would follow a smooth parabolic arc. The same is true for an exploding cannonball (Figure 8.37). The internal forces that act in the explosion do not change the center of gravity of the projectile. Interestingly enough, if air resistance can be ignored, the center of gravity of the dispersed fragments as they fly through the air will be in the same location as the center of gravity of the cannonball if the explosion hadn't occurred.

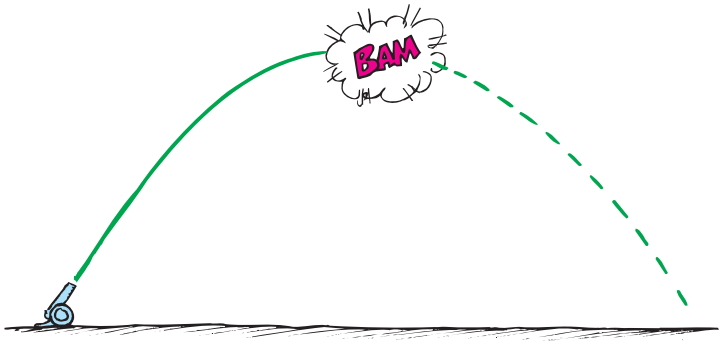


FIGURE 8.37
The center of mass of the cannonball and its fragments moves along the same path before and after the explosion.

CHECK POINT

1. **Where is the CG of a donut?**
2. **Can an object have more than one CG?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. In the center of the hole!
2. No. A rigid object has one CG. If an object is nonrigid, such as a piece of clay or putty, and is distorted into different shapes, then its CG may change as its shape changes. Even then, it has one CG for any given shape.

[6]For almost all objects on and near Earth's surface, these terms are interchangeable. A small difference between center of gravity and center of mass can occur for an object large enough so that gravity varies from one part to another. For example, the center of gravity of the Empire State Building is about 1 millimeter below its center of mass. This is due to the lower stories being pulled a little more strongly by Earth's gravity than the upper stories. For everyday objects (including tall buildings), we can use the terms *center of gravity* and *center of mass* interchangeably.

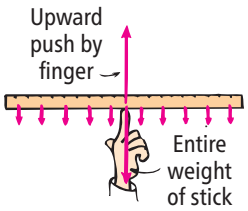


FIGURE 8.38
The weight of the entire stick behaves as if it were concentrated at the stick's center.

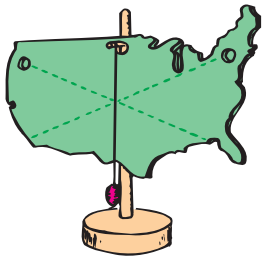


FIGURE 8.39
Finding the center of gravity of an irregularly shaped object.

Locating the Center of Gravity

The center of gravity of a uniform object, such as a meterstick, is at its midpoint because the stick acts as if its entire weight were concentrated there. If you support that single point, you support the entire stick. Balancing an object provides a simple method of locating its center of gravity. In Figure 8.38, the many small arrows represent the pull of gravity all along the meterstick. All of the arrows can be combined into a resultant force acting through the center of gravity. The entire weight of the stick may be thought of as acting at this single point. Hence, we can balance the stick by applying a single upward force in a direction that passes through this point.

The center of gravity of any freely suspended object lies directly beneath (or at) the point of suspension (Figure 8.39). If a vertical line is drawn through the point of suspension, the center of gravity lies somewhere along that line. To determine exactly where it lies along the line, we have only to suspend the object from some other point and draw a second vertical line through that point of suspension. The center of gravity lies where the two lines intersect.

The center of mass of an object may be a point where no mass exists. For example, the center of mass of a ring or a hollow sphere is at the geometrical center where no matter exists. Similarly, the center of mass of a boomerang is outside the physical structure, not within the boomerang material (Figure 8.41).

FIGURE 8.40
The athlete executes a "Fosbury flop" to clear the bar while his center of gravity passes beneath the bar.

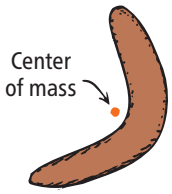
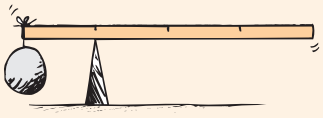


FIGURE 8.41
The center of mass can be outside the mass of a body.

CHECK POINT

1. **Where is the center of mass of Earth's crust?**
2. **A uniform meterstick supported at the 25-cm mark balances when a 1-kg rock is suspended at the 0-cm end. What is the mass of the meterstick?**



CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Like a giant basketball, Earth's crust is a spherical shell with its center of mass at Earth's center.
2. The mass of the meterstick is 1 kg. Why? The system is in equilibrium, so any torques must be balanced: The torque produced by the weight of the rock is balanced by the equal but oppositely directed torque produced by the weight of the stick *applied at its CG, the 50-cm mark.* The support force at the 25-cm mark is applied midway between the rock and the stick's CG, so the lever arms about the support point are equal (25 cm). This means that the weights (and hence the masses) of the rock and stick are also equal. Sweet and simple!

Stability

The location of the center of gravity is important for stability, as Figures 8.42–8.49 show. If we draw a line straight down from the center of gravity of an object of any shape and it falls inside the base of the object, then the object is in stable **equilibrium;** it will balance. If the line falls outside the base, the object is unstable. Why doesn't the famous Leaning Tower of Pisa topple over? As we can see in Figure 8.42, a line from the center of gravity of the tower to the level of the ground falls inside its base, so the Leaning Tower has stood for several centuries. If the tower leaned far enough so that the center of gravity extended beyond the base, then an unbalanced torque would topple the tower.

When you stand erect (or lie flat), your center of gravity is within your body. Why is the center of gravity lower in an average woman than it is in an average man of the same height? Is your center of gravity always at the same point in your body? Is it always inside your body? What happens to it when you bend over?

If you are fairly flexible, you can bend over and touch your toes without bending your knees. Ordinarily, when you bend over and touch your toes, you extend your lower extremity, as shown on the left side of Figure 8.44, so that your center of gravity is above a base of support, your feet. If you attempt to touch your toes when standing against a wall, however, you cannot counterbalance yourself, and your center of gravity soon protrudes beyond your feet, as shown on the right side of Figure 8.44.

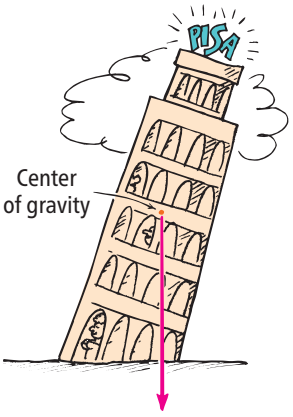


FIGURE 8.42
The center of gravity of the Leaning Tower of Pisa lies above its base of support, so the tower is in stable equilibrium.

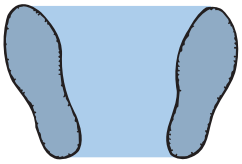


FIGURE 8.43
When you stand, your center of gravity is somewhere above the base area bounded by your feet. Why do you keep your legs far apart when you have to stand in the aisle of a bumpy-riding bus?

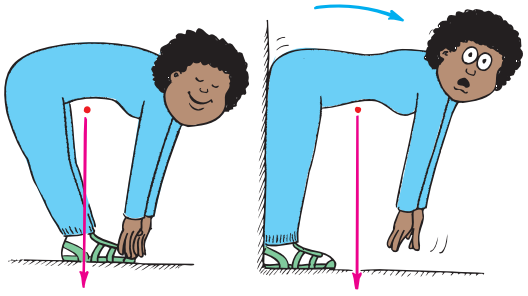


FIGURE 8.44
You can lean over and touch your toes without falling over only if your center of gravity is above the area bounded by your feet.

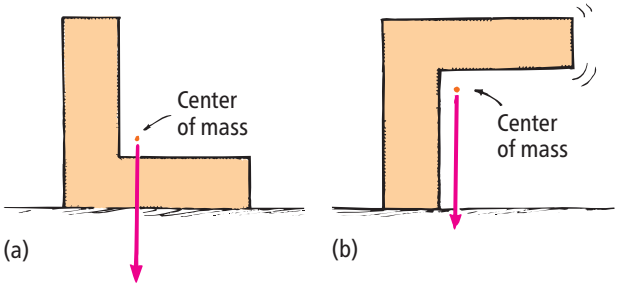


FIGURE 8.45
The center of mass of the L-shaped object is located where no mass exists. (a) The center of mass is above the base of support, so the object is stable. (b) The center of mass is not above the base of support, so the object is unstable and will topple over.

FIGURE 8.46
Where is Alexei's center of gravity relative to his hands?

You rotate because of an unbalanced torque. This is evident in the two L-shaped objects shown in Figure 8.47. Both are unstable and will topple unless fastened to the level surface. It is easy to see that even if both shapes have the same weight, the one on the right is more unstable. This is because of the longer lever-arm distance and, hence, the greater torque.

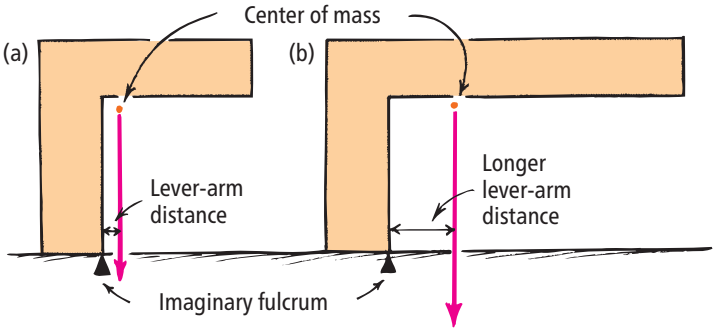


FIGURE 8.47
The greater torque acts on the object in (b) for two reasons. What are they?

FIGURE 8.48
Continuous microprocessor adjustments in Alex Hewitt's one-wheel skateboard align his CG with the wheelbase.

Try balancing the pole end of a broom upright on the palm of your hand. The support base is quite small and relatively far beneath the center of gravity, so it's difficult to maintain balance for very long. After some practice, you can balance the broom if you learn to make slight movements of your hand to respond exactly to variations in balance. You learn to avoid underresponding or overresponding to the slightest variations in balance. The intriguing single-wheel skateboard that Alex enjoys does much the same (Figure 8.48). Variations in balance are quickly sensed by two pressure-sensitive pads connected to a microprocessor under Alex's front foot that makes the device operate. Inside are gyroscopes, not the bulky ones of larger devices, but chip-level sensors that measure rate of rotation and that help balancing. Alex's back foot activates the battery. A bonus feature is the wideness of the single wheel that enables stability over bumpier terrain than conventional skateboards can handle. The corrective adjustments of its microprocessor are quite similar to the way your brain coordinates your adjustive action when balancing a long pole on the palm of your hand. Both feats are truly amazing.

To reduce the likelihood of tipping, it is usually advisable to design objects with a wide base and low center of gravity. The wider the base, the higher the center of gravity must be raised before the object tips over.

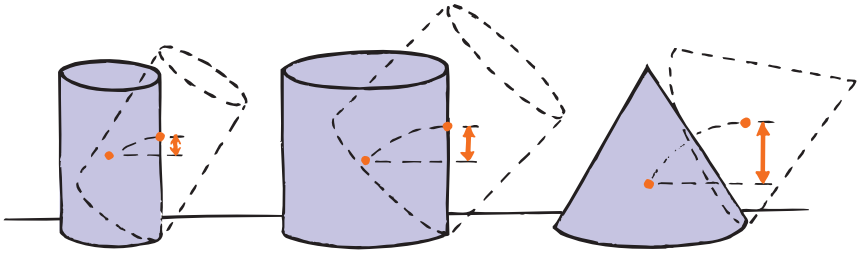
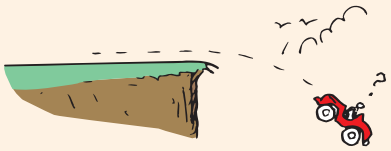


FIGURE 8.49
Stability is determined by the vertical distance that the center of gravity is raised in tipping. An object with a wide base and a low center of gravity is more stable.

CHECK POINT

1. **Why is it dangerous to slide open the top drawers of a fully loaded file cabinet that is not secured to the wall or floor?**
2. **When a car drives off a cliff, why does it rotate forward as it falls?**



CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The file cabinet is in danger of tipping because the CG may extend beyond the support base. If it does, then torque due to gravity tips the cabinet.
2. When all the wheels are on the ground, the car's CG is above a support base and no tipping occurs. But when the car drives off a cliff, the front wheels are first to leave the ground and the car is supported only by the rear wheels. The CG then extends beyond the support base, and a net torque rotates the car. Interestingly, the speed of the car is related to how much time the CG is not supported and, hence, the amount the car rotates while it falls.

8.7 Angular Momentum

Things that rotate, whether a colony in space, a cylinder rolling down an incline, or an acrobat doing a somersault, remain rotating until something stops them. A rotating object has an "inertia of rotation." Recall from Chapter 6 that all moving objects have "inertia of motion" or *momentum*—the product of mass and velocity. This kind of momentum is **linear momentum.** Similarly, the "inertia of rotation" of rotating objects is called **angular momentum.** A planet orbiting the Sun, a rock whirling at the end of a string, and the tiny electrons whirling about atomic nuclei all have angular momentum.

Angular momentum is defined as the product of rotational inertia and rotational velocity:

$$\text{Angular momentum} = \text{rotational inertia} \times \text{rotational velocity}$$

It is the counterpart of linear momentum:

$$\text{Linear momentum} = \text{mass} \times \text{velocity}$$

Like linear momentum, angular momentum is a vector quantity and has direction as well as magnitude. In this book, we won't treat the vector nature of angular momentum (or even of torque, which also is a vector), except to acknowledge the remarkable action of the gyroscope. The rotating bicycle wheel in Figure 8.50 shows

FIGURE 8.50
Angular momentum keeps the wheel axle nearly horizontal when a torque supplied by Earth's gravity acts on it. Instead of causing the wheel to topple, the torque causes the wheel's axle to turn slowly around the circle of students. This is called *precession*.

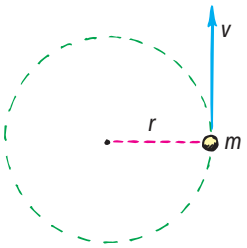


FIGURE 8.51
A small object of mass *m* whirling in a circular path of radius *r* with speed *v* has angular momentum *mvr*.

what happens when a torque caused by Earth's gravity acts to change the direction of its angular momentum (which is along the wheel's axle). The pull of gravity that normally acts to topple the wheel over and change its rotational axis causes it instead to *precess* about a vertical axis. You must do this yourself while standing on a turntable to fully believe it. You probably won't fully understand it unless you do follow-up study sometime in the future.

For the case of an object that is small compared with the radial distance to its axis of rotation, such as a tin can swinging from a long string or a planet orbiting in a circle around the Sun, the angular momentum can be expressed as the magnitude of its linear momentum, *mv*, multiplied by the radial distance, *r* (Figure 8.51). In shorthand notation,

$$\text{Angular momentum} = mvr$$

Angular momentum is imparted to projectiles when set spinning by spiral grooves inside the barrels of guns and cannons. A projectile set spinning tends to remain spinning about an axis that keeps it from tumbling. A projectile that tumbles encounters increased air resistance and loss of speed. Likewise for a tossed American football.

Just as an external net force is required to change the linear momentum of an object, an external net torque is required to change the angular momentum of an object. We can state a rotational version of Newton's first law (the law of inertia):

An object or system of objects will maintain its angular momentum unless acted upon by an external net torque.

Our solar system has angular momentum that includes the Sun, the spinning and orbiting planets, and myriad other smaller bodies. The angular momentum of the solar system today will be its angular momentum for eons to come. Only an external net torque from outside the solar system can change it. In the absence of such a torque, we say the angular momentum of the solar system is conserved.

CHECK POINT

The angular momentum of our solar system nicely remains the same century after century. What would be needed for it to be altered?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

A force external to our solar system would be the culprit. No force internal to the solar system could do it!

8.8 Conservation of Angular Momentum

We learned in Chapter 6 about the conservation of momentum. In Chapter 7 we learned about the conservation of energy. We now learn an equally important conservation law: the **conservation of angular momentum.**

If no external net torque acts on a rotating system, the angular momentum of that system remains constant.

This means that, with no external torque, the product of rotational inertia and rotational velocity at one time will be the same as at any other time.

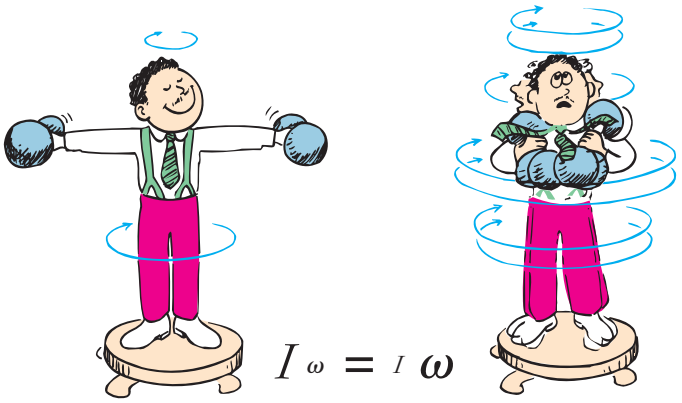


FIGURE 8.52
Conservation of angular momentum. When the man pulls his arms and the whirling weights inward, he decreases his rotational inertia I, and his rotational speed correspondingly increases.

An interesting example illustrating the conservation of angular momentum is shown in Figure 8.52. The man stands on a low-friction turntable with weights extended. His rotational inertia, I, with the help of the extended weights, is relatively large in this position. As he slowly turns, his angular momentum is the product of his rotational inertia and rotational velocity, ω. When he pulls the weights inward, the rotational inertia of his body and the weights is considerably reduced. What is the result? His rotational speed increases! This example is best appreciated by the turning person who feels changes in rotational speed that seem to be mysterious. But it's straightforward physics! This procedure is used by a figure skater who starts to whirl with her arms and perhaps a leg extended and then draws her arms and leg in to obtain a greater rotational speed. Whenever a rotating body contracts, its rotational speed increases.

Similarly, when a gymnast is spinning freely in the absence of unbalanced torques on his or her body, angular momentum does not change. However, rotational speed can be changed by simply making variations in rotational inertia. This is done by moving some part of the body toward or away from the axis of rotation.

If a cat is held upside down and dropped a short distance to the floor below, it is able to execute a twist and land upright, even if it has no initial angular momentum. Zero-angular-momentum twists and turns are performed by turning one part of the body against the other. While falling, the cat bends its spine and swings it around to twist in the opposite direction. During this maneuver

Why do short acrobats have an advantage in tumbling and in other end-over-end rotational motions?

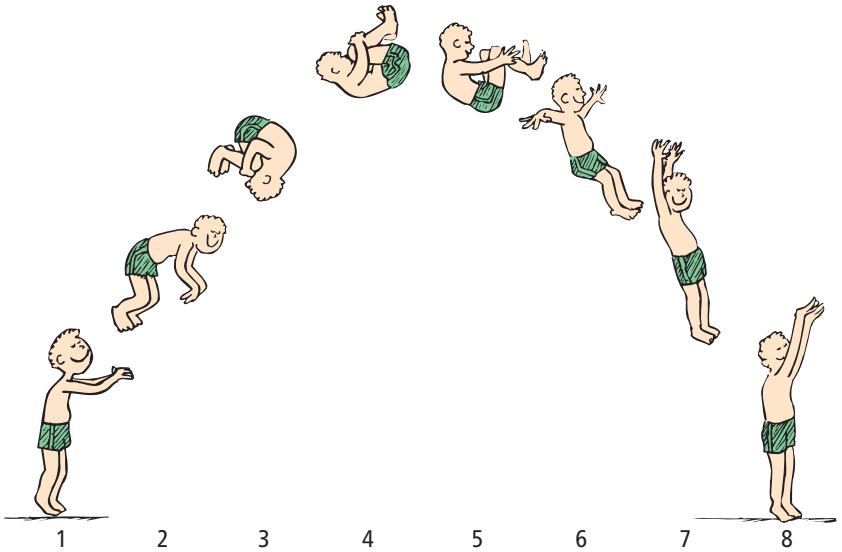


FIGURE 8.53
Rotational speed is controlled by variations in the body's rotational inertia as angular momentum is conserved during a forward somersault. (The vertical scale here is exaggerated.)

FIGURE 8.54
Time-lapse photo of a falling cat.

the total angular momentum remains zero (Figure 8.54). When it is over, the cat is not turning. This maneuver rotates the body through an angle, but it does not create continuing rotation. To do so would violate angular momentum conservation.

Humans can perform similar twists without difficulty, though not as fast as a cat. Astronauts have learned to make zero-angular-momentum rotations as they orient their bodies in preferred directions when floating freely in space.

The law of conservation of angular momentum is seen in the motions of planets and the shapes of galaxies. It is fascinating to note that the conservation of angular momentum tells us that the Moon is getting farther away from Earth. This is because the Earth's daily rotation is slowly decreasing due to the friction of ocean waters on the ocean bottom, just as an automobile's wheels slow down when brakes are applied. This decrease in Earth's angular momentum is accompanied by an equal increase in the angular momentum of the Moon in its orbital motion about Earth, which results in the Moon's increasing distance from Earth and decreasing speed. This increase of distance amounts to one-quarter of a centimeter per rotation. Have you noticed that the Moon is getting farther away from us lately? Well, it is; each time we see another full Moon, it is one-quarter of a centimeter farther away!

CHECK POINT

1. **Is it correct to say that the spinning man in Figure 8.52 increases his angular momentum when he pulls his arms inward?**
2. **Why will a short gymnast more easily perform the somersault shown in Figure 8.53?**
3. **In what sense can we say that a falling cat is a law-abiding creature?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. No. In this maneuver the spinning man's angular *speed* increases when he draws his arms in—not his unchanging angular momentum! A reminder to pay attention to words that are often confused with others.
2. Short gymnasts have smaller rotational inertias than tall gymnasts. Go back to Table 8.1 and note that sticks and stick-like things have rotational inertias that increase with increased length. Smaller rotational inertias mean smaller resistances to changes in rotational motion, which is very favorable to short gymnasts. Note the short gymnasts who win Olympic medals!
3. As a falling cat makes maneuvers to land on its feet, it does so while obeying the laws of physics. (Not only cats: ALL of nature's creatures move in accord with Newton's laws of motion!)

Oh yes—before we end this chapter, we'll give an answer to Check Point Question 3 back on page 178. Maintenance hole covers are circular because a circular cover is the only shape that can't fall into the hole. A square cover, for example, can be tilted vertically and turned so it can drop diagonally into the hole. Likewise for every other shape. If you're working in a maintenance hole and some fresh kids are horsing around above, you'll be glad the cover is round!

Chapter 8 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Tangential speed The linear speed tangent to a curved path, such as in circular motion.

Rotational speed The number of rotations or revolutions per unit of time; often measured in rotations or revolutions per second or per minute. (Scientists usually measure it in radians per second.)

Centripetal force A force directed toward a fixed point, usually the cause of circular motion:

$$F = \frac{mv^2}{r}$$

Centrifugal force An outward force apparent in a rotating frame of reference. It is apparent (fictitious) in the sense that it is not part of an interaction but is a result of rotation—with no reaction-force counterpart.

Rotational inertia The property of an object to resist any change in its state of rotation: If at rest, the body tends to remain at rest; if rotating, it tends to remain rotating and will continue to do so unless acted upon by an external net torque.

Torque The product of force and lever-arm distance, which tends to produce or change rotation:

$$\text{Torque} = \text{lever arm} \times \text{force}$$

Center of mass (CM) The average position of the mass of an object. The CM moves as if all the external forces acted at this point.

Center of gravity (CG) The average position of weight or the single point associated with an object where the force of gravity can be considered to act.

Equilibrium The state of an object in which it is not acted upon by a net force or a net torque.

Linear momentum The product of the mass of an object and its linear velocity.

Angular momentum The product of a body's rotational inertia and rotational velocity about a particular axis. For an object that is small compared with the radial distance, angular momentum can be expressed as the product of mass, speed, and radial distance of rotation.

Conservation of angular momentum When no external torque acts on an object or a system of objects, no change of angular momentum can occur. Hence, the angular momentum before an event involving only internal torques or no torques is equal to the angular momentum after the event.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

8.1 Circular Motion

1. An object is executing circular motion. What is the direction of instantaneous linear speed?
2. Which varies with radial distance on a rotating turntable, tangential speed or rotational speed?
3. A tapered cup rolled on a flat surface makes a circular path. Does this mean the tangential speed of the wide-end rim differs with that of the narrow-end rim?
4. How does the tapered rim of a wheel on a railroad train rolling along a track allow one part of the rim to roll faster than another part?

8.2 Centripetal Force

5. When you whirl a can tied at the end of a string in a circular path, why do you need to keep pulling on the string? What is the role of the string?
6. Is it an inward force or an outward force that is exerted on the clothes during the spin cycle of a washing machine?

8.3 Centrifugal Force

7. What kind of force acts on a ladybug inside a can that is whirled in a circular path?
8. Do seat belts provide a centripetal or centrifugal force on a passenger in a car rounding a curve?
9. Why is centrifugal force in a rotating frame called a "fictitious force"?
10. How can gravity be simulated in an orbiting space station?

8.4 Rotational Inertia

11. How is rotational inertia similar to inertia as studied in previous chapters?
12. Can two objects have the same inertia but a different moment of inertia?
13. As distance increases between most of the mass of an object and its center of rotation, does rotational inertia increase or decrease?
14. Why does bending your legs when running enable you to swing your legs to and fro more rapidly?
15. An object is rolling down an incline. What is the relationship between its acceleration and its rotational inertia?

8.5 Torque

16. How is torque similar to force?

17. When does a force produce zero torque?
18. How do clockwise and counterclockwise torques compare when a system is balanced?

8.6 Center of Mass and Center of Gravity

19. If you toss a stick into the air, it appears to wobble all over the place. Specifically, about what place?
20. Where is its center of mass for a baseball bat—closer to the grip or the thick end?
21. At what part of a meterstick should you place your finger so that it will balance in a horizontal position?
22. Is the center of mass of an irregularly shaped body its geometric center?
23. What is the relationship between the center of gravity and support base for an object in stable equilibrium?
24. Why doesn't the Leaning Tower of Pisa topple over?
25. Is your support base larger, smaller, or the same when you stand with your feet wide apart?

8.7 Angular Momentum

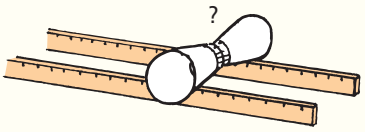
26. How is angular momentum related to inertia?
27. What is needed to change a system's angular momentum?

8.8 Conservation of Angular Momentum

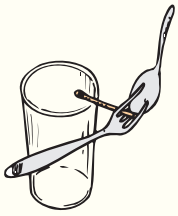
28. If a spinning skater pulls her arms in so as to reduce her rotational inertia by half, by how much will her rate of spin increase?
29. How does Earth's reduction of angular momentum affect the Moon's distance from Earth?
30. How does the angular momentum of a cat change in falling from a tree?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Contact Grandpa and tell him how you're learning to distinguish between closely related concepts by using the examples of force and torque. Tell him how the two are similar, and how they differ. Suggest where he can find "hands-on" things in his home to illustrate the difference between the two. Also cite an example that shows how the net force on an object can be zero, while the net torque isn't, as well as an example showing vice versa. (Now make your Grandpa's day and *send* an actual letter to him!)
32. Take a foam cup with a wide opening and narrow bottom and try to roll it across a table surface. You will notice that the cup won't roll across a straight path but rather in a curve. Why do you think that is?

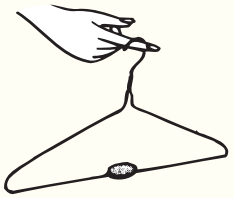


33. Fasten a fork, spoon, and wooden match together as shown. The combination will balance nicely on the edge of a glass. This happens because the center of gravity actually "hangs" below the point of support.

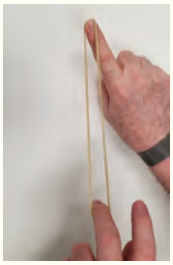
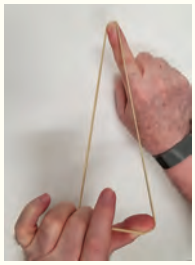
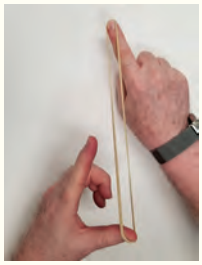


34. Stand with your heels and back against a wall and try to bend over and touch your toes. You'll find that you have to stand away from the wall to do so without toppling over. Compare your minimum heel distance from the wall with that of a friend of the opposite sex. Who can touch their toes with their heels nearer to the wall—males or females? On the average and in proportion to height, which sex has the lower center of gravity?
35. First ask a friend to stand facing a wall with her toes touching the wall, then ask her to stand on the balls of her feet without toppling backward. Explain why your friend won't be able to do it.
36. Stand with your right shoulder and the side of your right foot against a wall. Try lifting your left foot off the ground. Why can you not do this without toppling?
37. Rest a meterstick on two extended forefingers as shown Slowly bring your fingers together. At what part of the stick do your fingers meet? Can you explain why this always happens, no matter where you place your fingers?

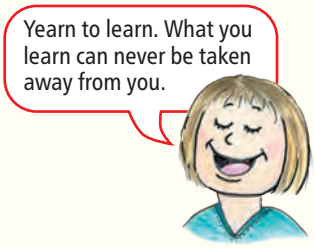
38. Place the hook of a wire clothes hanger over your finger. Carefully balance a coin directly under the hook on the straight wire. You may have to flatten the wire with a hammer or fashion a tiny platform with tape. With a surprisingly small amount of practice you can swing the hanger and balanced coin back and forth and then in a circle. Centripetal force holds the coin in place.



39. Shoot a stretched rubber band—but with more accuracy. Here's how. In shooting, place one end of the band on your index finger and stretch it with your other hand (photo left). Tension in both sides is about the same. Then poke one side of the stretched band to the side using your thumb (photo center), which creates sort of a triangle. This tightens one side, which necessarily loosens the other. Shoot the band (photo right) and you'll impart rotation that adds stability to the flying rubber band—like the spiral grooves in a rifle barrel.

40. Smartphone time. Spin some socks or other clothing in the spin cycle of your washing machine. Your task is to find the number of *g*'s that your socks experience when spinning. Begin by measuring the inner diameter *D* of the washer drum in meters. Find its circumference (the distance your socks will travel in one revolution) using $C = \pi D$. Next, use your smartphone to slow-motion record the revolving socks during the spin cycle and find the time (the period) taken to complete one revolution. Find the speed of the socks by dividing the circumference of the drum by the period. Finally, find how many *g*'s the socks experience using the equation $a = v^2/r$. You'll find that's a lot of *g*'s!



PLUG AND CHUG (EQUATION APPLICATION)

Torque = Lever Arm × Force

41. Calculate the torque produced by a 100-N perpendicular force at the end of a 0.3-m-long wrench.
42. How does the torque produced change if the force reduces to 50 N while keeping the length of the wrench unchanged?

Centripetal Force: $F = \dfrac{mv^2}{r}$

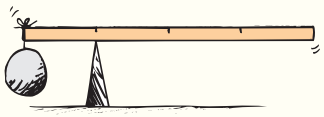
43. A horizontal string whirls a 1-kg can in a circle of radius 2 m with a speed of 2 m/s. Calculate the tension in the string.
44. Show that for a 0.2-kg stone attached at the end of a 0.4-m-long string swung in a vertical circle at the 10 m/s, 50-N force is enough for the stone to go through its top position without having the string go slack.

Angular Momentum = *mvr*

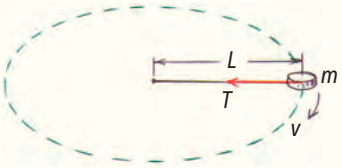
45. Show that the angular momentum of the person in the previous problem is 480 $kg \cdot m^2/s$.
46. What will happen to the angular momentum of a figure skater rotating at a fixed axis if it decreases its speed by half?

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL FORMULATION)

47. A circular race track has two well-defined lanes, the outer one longer than the inner one. The radius of the inner lane is 20.0 m; the radius of the outer lane is 21.0 m. For a 5-lap race, how much head start should a runner on the outer lane have to compensate for the differences of track distances? The circumference of a circle is $C = 2\pi r$.
48. A vintage bicycle has wheels of different sizes. If the front wheel has a diameter of 26 inches while the back wheel has 18 inches diameter, which wheel rotates faster when the bicycle is used?
49. Why is it easier to open a door when the knob is on the opposite side from the hinge? Do you think you would exert the same effort if the knob was located at the center of the door?
50. The rock and meterstick balance at the 25-cm mark, as shown. The meterstick has a mass of 2 kg. What must be the mass of the rock? Would the system still be balanced when the fulcrum is moved to the 75-cm mark?



51. The figure below shows an ice puck of mass *m* revolving on an icy surface in a circle at speed v at the end of a horizontal string of length *L*. Find the tension if the mass of the puck is 4 kg, the length of the string is 2 m, and the speed is 10 m/s.

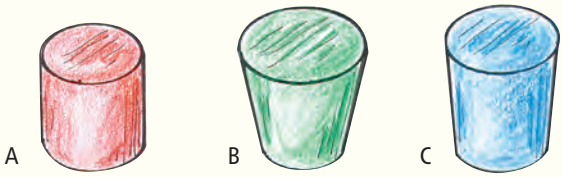


52. A figure skater shows her trick and rotates herself on a fixed axis. If she contracts herself to double the frequency of her rotations, how does the rotational inertia change?

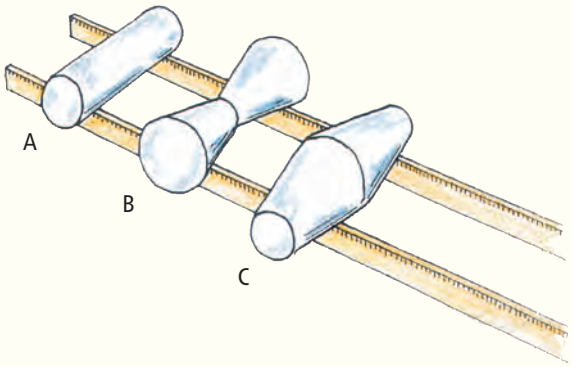
53. A 3.0-kg block travels around a 0.50-m radius circle with an angular velocity of 14 rad/s. Calculate the magnitude of the block's angular momentum about the center of the circle.

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

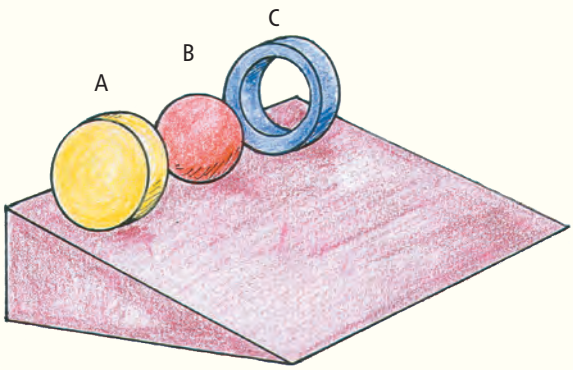
54. The three cups are rolled on a level surface. Rank the cups by the amount they depart from a straight-line path (most curved to least curved).



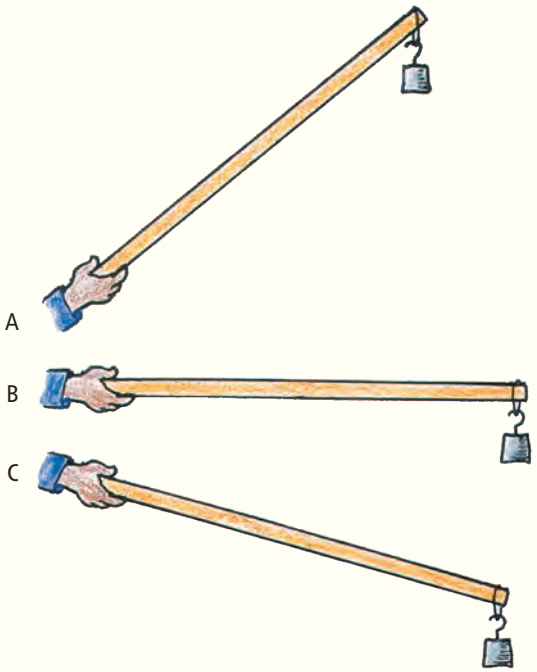
55. Three types of rollers are placed on slightly inclined parallel meterstick tracks as shown. From greatest to least, rank the rollers in terms of their ability to remain stable as they roll.



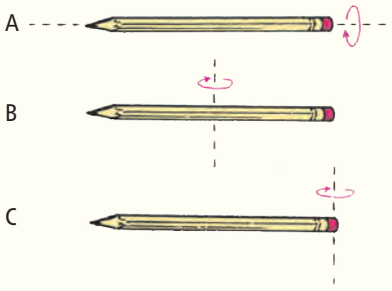
56. Beginning from a rest position, a solid disk A, a solid ball B, and a hoop C race down an inclined plane. Rank them in reaching the bottom: winner, second place, and third place.



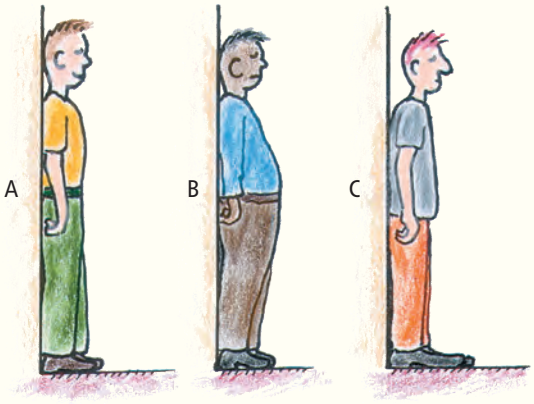
57. You hold a meterstick horizontally with the same mass suspended at the end. Rank the torque needed to keep the stick steady, from largest to smallest.



58. Consider three axes of rotation for a pencil as shown: (A) along the lead; (B) at right angles to the lead at the middle; (C) at right angles to the lead at the eraser at one end. Rate the rotational inertias about each axis from small to large.



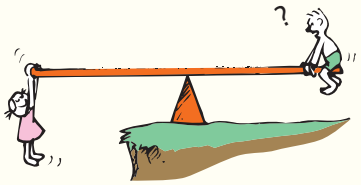
59. Three physics majors in good physical shape stand with their backs against a wall. Their task is to lean over and touch their toes without toppling over. Rank their chances for success from highest to lowest. (Note foot sizes)



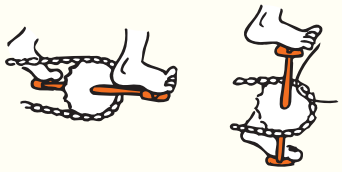
THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

60. Which way is it easier to tighten a bolt—holding the wrench at the end part or the middle of the handle?
61. If the string breaks that holds a whirling can in a circular path, what kind of force causes it to move in a straight-line path—centripetal, centrifugal, or no force? What law of physics supports your answer?
62. While riding on a carnival Ferris wheel, Sam Nasty horses around and climbs out of his chair and along the spoke so he is halfway to the axis. How does his rotational speed compare with that of his friends who remain in the chair? How does his tangential speed compare? Why are your answers different?
63. Dan and Sue cycle at the same speed. The tires on Dan's bike are larger in diameter than those on Sue's bike. Which wheels, if either, have the greater rotational speed?
64. Use the relationship $v \sim r\omega$ to explain why the end of a flyswatter moves much faster than your wrist when swatting a fly.
65. The tapering of wheel rims of railroad trains is especially important on curves. On a curve where the outermost rail is 0.5 % longer than the inner rail, how much wider should the radius of the wide part of the wheel rim be compared with the narrow part?
66. Does the angle of taper at the rims of train wheels relate to the sharpness of curves the train can manage? Speculate about the consequence of train travel around a curve that is too sharp for the rim tapering to accommodate.
67. Flamingos are frequently seen standing on one leg with the other lifted. Is rotational inertia enhanced with long legs? What can you say about the bird's center of mass with respect to the foot on which it stands?
68. The front wheels of a racing vehicle are located far out in front to help keep the vehicle from nosing upward when it accelerates. What physics concepts play a role here?

69. Which will have the greater acceleration rolling down an incline—a bowling ball or a volleyball? Defend your answer.
70. A softball and a basketball start from rest and roll down an incline. Which ball reaches the bottom first? Defend your answer.
71. Discuss how a roll down an incline would help distinguish between two identical-looking spheres of the same weight, one solid and the other hollow.
72. Which will roll down an incline faster—a can of water or a can of ice? Discuss and explain.
73. Is the net torque changed when a partner on a seesaw stands or hangs from her end instead of sitting? (Does the weight or the lever arm change?)



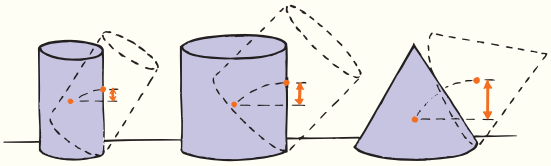
74. In terms of a torque's lever arm, why is a doorknob placed far from the hinges?
75. When you pedal a bicycle, maximum torque is produced when the pedal sprocket arms are in the horizontal position, and no torque is produced when they are in the vertical position. Explain.



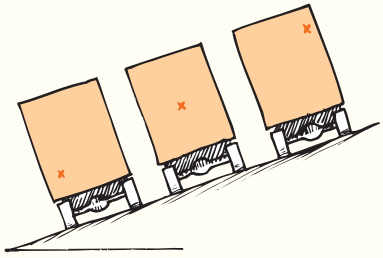
76. When the line of action of a force intersects the center of mass of an object, can that force produce a torque about the object's center of mass?
77. When a bowling ball leaves your hand, it may not spin. But farther along the lane, it does spin. What produces the spinning?

78. Why does sitting closest to the center of a vehicle provide the most comfortable ride in a bus traveling on a bumpy road, in a ship in a choppy sea, or in an airplane in turbulent air?
79. Without anyone holding your feet steady, which is more difficult—doing sit-ups with your knees bent, or with your legs straight out? Defend your answer.
80. Explain why a long pole is more beneficial to a tightrope walker if the pole droops.

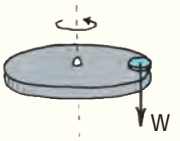
81. Why must you bend forward when carrying a heavy load on your back?
82. Why is the wobbly motion of a single star an indication that the star has one or more planets orbiting around it?
83. Why is it easier to carry the same amount of water in two buckets, one in each hand, than in a single bucket?
84. Make a sketch to show how torque and center of gravity explain why a ball rolls down a hill.
85. Where is the center of mass of Earth's atmosphere?
86. Why is it important to secure file cabinets to the floor or wall, especially cabinets with heavy loads in top drawers? Defend your answer.
87. Describe the comparative stabilities of the three objects shown in terms of work and potential energy.



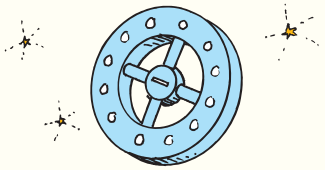
88. The centers of gravity of the three trucks parked on a hill are shown by the Xs. Which truck(s) will tip over? Defend your answer.



89. A racing car on a flat circular track needs friction between the tires and the track to maintain its circular motion. How much more friction is required for twice the speed? Explain how you arrive at your answer.
90. An object is moving with constant speed in a circular path. Is there a force acting on it?
91. As a car speeds up when rounding a curve, does the centripetal force on the car also increase? Defend your answer.
92. When you are in the front passenger seat of a car turning to the left, you may find yourself pressed against the right-side door. Why do you press against the door? Why does the door press on you? Let your explanation involve a centrifugal force and Newton's laws.
93. Explain why a centripetal force does *not* do work on a circularly moving object.
94. The sketch shows a coin at the edge of a turntable. The weight of the coin is shown by the vector **W.** Two other forces act on the coin—the normal force and a force of friction that prevents it from sliding off the edge. Draw force vectors for both of these.

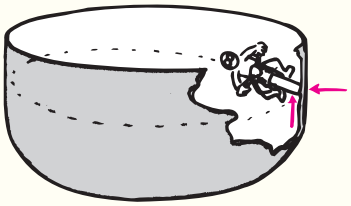


95. The occupant inside a rotating space habitat of the future feels that she is being pulled by artificial gravity against the outer wall of the habitat (which becomes the "floor"). Explain what is happening in terms of Newton's laws and centripetal force.

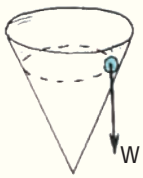


96. The sketch shows a conical pendulum. The bob swings in a circular path. The tension ***T*** and weight ***W*** are shown by vectors. Draw a parallelogram with these vectors and show that their resultant lies in the plane of the circle. (See the parallelogram rule in Chapter 5.) What is the name of this resultant force?

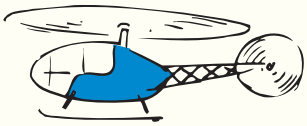
97. A motorcyclist is able to ride on the vertical wall of a bowl-shaped track as shown. Friction of the wall on the tires is shown by the vertical red vector. (a) How does the magnitude of this vertical vector compare with the weight of the motorcycle and rider? (b) Does the horizontal red vector represent the normal force acting on the bike and rider, the centripetal force, both, or neither? Defend your answer.



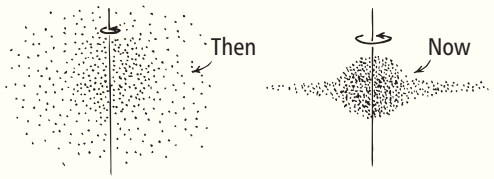
98. Consider a ball rolling around in a circular path on the inner surface of a cone. The weight of the ball is shown by the vector **W.** Without friction, only one other force acts on the ball—a normal force. (a) Draw in the vector for the normal force. (The length of the vector depends on the next step, b.) (b) Using the parallelogram rule, show that the resultant of the two vectors is along the radial direction of the ball's circular path. (Yes, the normal is appreciably larger than the weight!)



99. You sit at the middle of a large turntable at an amusement park as it is set spinning and then allowed to spin freely. When you crawl toward the edge of the turntable, does the rate of the rotation increase, decrease, or remain unchanged? What physics principle supports your answer?
100. A sizable quantity of soil is washed down the Mississippi River and deposited in the Gulf of Mexico each year. What effect does this tend to have on the length of a day? (Hint: Relate this to the previous exercise.)
101. If all of Earth's inhabitants moved to the equator, how would this affect Earth's rotational inertia? How would it affect the length of a day?
102. If the world's populations moved to the North Pole and the South Pole, would the 24-hour day become longer, shorter, or stay the same?
103. If the polar ice caps on Earth's solid surface were to melt, the oceans would be deeper. Strictly speaking, what effect would this have on Earth's rotation?
104. Why does a typical small helicopter with a single main rotor have a second small rotor on its tail? Describe the consequence if the small rotor fails in flight.



105. Scientists believe that our galaxy was formed from a huge cloud of gas. The original cloud was far larger than the present size of the galaxy, was more or less spherical, and was rotating very much more slowly than the galaxy is now. In this sketch, we see the original cloud and the galaxy as it is now (seen edgewise). Explain how the inward pull of gravity and the conservation of angular momentum contribute to the galaxy's present shape and why it rotates faster now than when it was a larger, spherical cloud.

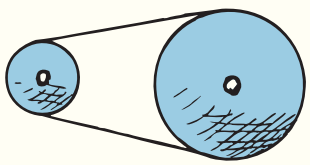


106. Earth is not spherical but bulges at the equator. Jupiter bulges more. What is the cause of these bulges?

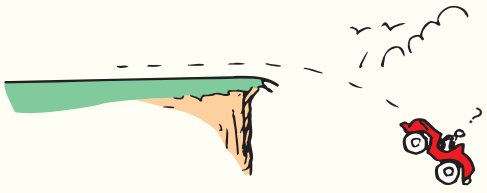
THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

107. An automobile speedometer is configured to read speed proportional to the rotational speed of its wheels. If the oversize wheels of this red car were installed without making speedometer corrections, discuss whether the speedometer reading will be high or low—or no change.

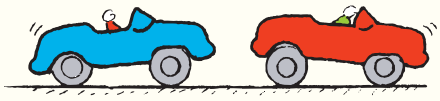
108. A large wheel is coupled to a wheel with half the diameter, as shown. How does the rotational speed of the smaller wheel compare with that of the larger wheel? Discuss the comparisons of the tangential speeds at the rims (assuming the belt doesn't slip).



109. In this chapter, we learned that an object may *not* be in mechanical equilibrium even when $\sum F = 0$. Discuss what else defines mechanical equilibrium.
110. When a car drives off a cliff it rotates forward as it falls. For a higher speed off the cliff, discuss whether it will rotate more, or less. (Consider the time that the unbalanced torque acts.)



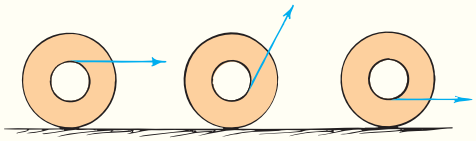
111. Discuss why a car noses up when accelerating and noses down when braking.



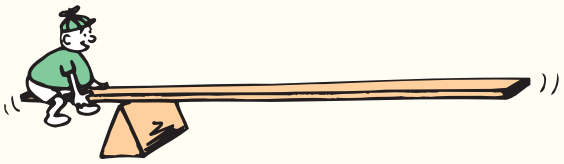
112. Why are lightweight tires preferred over lightweight frames in road bicycle racing? Discuss and explain.

113. Two uniform spheres, S_1 and S_2, have different masses and different rotational inertias. They are simultaneously released from rest at the top of an inclined plane and roll without sliding down the plane. Determine which sphere will get to the bottom first.

114. The spool is pulled in three ways, as shown. There is sufficient friction for rotation. In what direction will the spool roll in each case? Discuss and explain.



115. Nobody at the playground wants to play with the obnoxious boy, so he fashions a seesaw, as shown, so he can play with himself. Discuss how this is done.



116. How can the three bricks be stacked so that the top brick has maximum horizontal displacement from the bottom brick? For example, stacking them like the dashed lines suggest would be unstable and the bricks would topple. (*Hint:* Start with the top brick and work down. At every interface the CG of the bricks above must not extend beyond the end of the supporting brick.)

117. Friction is needed for a car rounding a curve. But, if the road is banked, friction may not be required at all. What, then, supplies the needed centripetal force? (*Hint:* Consider vector components of the normal force on the car.)

118. Under what conditions could a fast-moving car remain on a banked track covered with slippery ice?

119. A long track balanced like a seesaw supports a golf ball and a more massive billiard ball with a compressed spring between the two. When the spring is released, the balls move away from each other. Does the track tip clockwise, tip counterclockwise, or remain in balance as the balls roll outward? What principles do you use for your discussion and explanation?

120. Relative to the tip of Diana's finger, where is the center of mass of the plastic bird? Discuss how this balance can be accomplished during the bird's manufacture.

121. When a long-range cannonball is fired toward the equator from a northern (or southern) latitude, it lands west of its "intended" longitude. Discuss why this is so. (*Hint:* Consider a flea jumping from partway out to the outer edge of a rotating turntable.)

122. When Emily took a ride in a carnival centrifuge, blood was forced to the back of her brain, nearly blacking her out. Discuss and identify the cause of this force.

123. When Evan's friend Maggie took a ride in a fighter jet that made a sharp turn, she experienced a blood clot in her brain. Her medical report stated that the huge acceleration she underwent forced blood to clot. How does this relate to centripetal force?

Choices: Consider this course an educational obstacle, something to ***get through***, which means minimizing your efforts by searching the Internet for answers to these many questions. **Or**, get ***into*** this course! **Think** through your own solutions. A physics way of thinking will become wired in your brain, something you'll always value—a part of who you'll be. **Now** is likely the only time in your life to learn physics. It's worth the effort—go for it!

CHAPTER EIGHT Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. Your pet hamster sits at the edge of grandma's record player rotating at a constant angular speed. If the hamster moves to a point between the center and the edge, its linear speed
   (a) doubles.
   (b) halves.
   (c) remains the same.
   (d) changes to rotational speed.
2. The tapered shape of the wheel rims that ride on railroad tracks allows opposite wheels to
   (a) in effect, vary their diameters.
   (b) travel at different linear speeds for the same rotational speed.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) None of these
3. The rotational inertia of a pencil is greatest about an axis
   (a) along its length, where the lead is.
   (b) about its midpoint, like a propeller.
   (c) about its end, like a pendulum.
   (d) Any place within the pencil is the same.
4. A ring, a disk, and a solid sphere begin rolling down a hill together. Which reaches the bottom first?
   (a) Ring
   (b) Disk
   (c) Sphere
   (d) All reach the bottom at the same time
5. A torque acting on an object tends to produce
   (a) equilibrium.
   (b) rotation.
   (c) linear motion.
   (d) velocity.
6. If you place a pipe over the end of a wrench when trying to rotate a stubborn bolt, effectively making the wrench handle twice as long, you'll multiply the torque by
   (a) two.
   (b) four.
   (c) eight.
   (d) None of the above
7. Two people are balanced on a seesaw. If one person leans inward toward the center of the seesaw, that person's end of the seesaw tends to
   (a) rise.
   (b) fall.
   (c) stay at the same level.
   (d) Need more information
8. Centripetal force does no work on a circularly moving object because
   (a) no change in energy occurs.
   (b) rotational energy transfers to kinetic energy.
   (c) centripetal force has no component in the direction of motion.
   (d) None of the above.
9. A difference between linear momentum and angular momentum involves
   (a) a radial distance.
   (b) two types of speed.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
10. When you do somersaults, you'll more easily rotate when your body is
    (a) straight with both arms above your head.
    (b) straight with both arms at your sides.
    (c) curled into a ball shape.
    (d) No difference

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (b): The relationship $v \sim rw$ tells us that for a constant angular speed ω the linear speed is proportional to r: Halfway from the radius at the edge, r is half, where linear speed is half. **2. (c):** A tapered rim means different wheel diameters that then allow different linear speeds, depending on what part of the rim rides on the tracks. **3. (c):** A pencil's rotational inertia is greatest when the axis of rotation is located at the pencil's end, farthest from most of its mass, when it rotates like a pendulum. **4. (c):** The slowest to roll with be the one with the most rotational inertia. The quickest to roll, the one that gets to the bottom first is the one with the least rotational inertia. Table 8.1 tells us that's a sphere. **5. (b):** By definition a torque produces rotation, or the tendency to rotate. Getting this wrong may alert you to a learning problem! **6. (a):** Torque is directly proportional to its lever arm. Making the lever arm twice means making the torque twice. **7. (a):** For a balanced see-saw, weight $\times$ distance of one side $=$ same on the other side. The person leaning inward in effect reduces the distance to the fulcrum. The result is less applied torque and rising upward. **8. (c):** Don't misread this: Does NO work! No work is done because there is no component of centripetal force along the distance moved. Centripetal force and distance moved are always at right angles to each other. **9. (c):** Momentum is mv; angular momentum is mvr: So the difference involves the presence of r: Also, linear speed v is measured in m/s, while angular speed ω is measured in rpms (or radians per second). So both radial distance and types of speed differ for linear and angular momentum. **10. (c):** One wants minimum rotational inertia (rotational sluggishness) when doing acrobatic maneuvers. The ball shape has less rotational inertia than the other two choices.

CHAPTER NINE

9 Gravity

9.1 The Universal Law of Gravity

9.2 The Universal Gravitational Constant, *G*

9.3 Gravity and Distance: The Inverse-Square Law

9.4 Weight and Weightlessness

9.5 Ocean Tides
- Tides in the Earth and Atmosphere
- Tidal Bulges on the Moon

9.6 Gravitational Fields
- Gravitational Field Inside a Planet
- Einstein's Theory of Gravitation

9.7 Black Holes

9.8 Universal Gravitation

1 Tenny Lim stands next to a model of Curiosity, the rover that she helped land on Mars in 2012. **2** Ed van den Berg asks his class, where between Earth and Moon do the gravitational fields of each cancel to zero? **3** Tomas Brage uses a classroom model of a Cavendish apparatus to measure *G*. **4** Tides specialist Alan Davis and son William, with Exploratorium scientist Ron Hipschman, examine a model of daily ocean tides.

A teacher's influence knows no bounds. Our influence on students goes beyond what feedback makes its way to us. When I'm asked about which of my many students I take the most pride in, and whom I most influenced, my answer is quick: Tenny Lim. In addition to being bright, she is artistic and very dexterous with her hands. She was the top-scoring student in my Conceptual Physics class in 1980 and earned an AS degree in Dental Laboratory Technology. With my encouragement and support, she continued at City College with courses in math and science and decided to pursue an engineering career. Two years later, she transferred to California Polytechnic State University in San Luis Obispo. While earning her BS degree in mechanical engineering, a recruiter from the Jet Propulsion Laboratory (JPL) in Pasadena was impressed that she concurrently took art classes to balance her technical studies. When asked about this, she replied that art was one of her passions. What the recruiter was looking for was someone talented in both art and engineering for JPL's design team. Tenny was hired in the space program and has worked on many space missions, which includes being the lead designer for the descent stage that lowered the rover Curiosity to the surface of Mars in 2012.

Tenny's next project also was the Soil Moisture Active Passive (SMAP) mission, where she designed and built a satellite to measure and distinguish frozen soil moisture from thawed land surfaces. She was the lead mechanical designer on the instrument side of the satellite.

More recently, Tenny also was the mechanical lead designer for Perseverance, the follow-up to Curiosity. Among this new rover's many features is a drill for collecting core samples of rocks that ultimately will return to Earth for investigation in laboratories with room-sized equipment too large to take to Mars. In addition to eyes, Perseverance has ears—a pair of microphones that hear the Martian winds as well as the chipping of rock samples. Perseverance also tests a method for producing oxygen from the thin Martian atmosphere. Most intriguing is *Ingenuity*, a 1.8-kg helicopter that may pave the way to sophisticated drones of future missions. We remember the 20th century by humans reaching the Moon. The 21st century may be remembered for finding life on Mars.

Along with these JPL activities, Tenny continues with her passion for art, much of which is shown in local galleries—and this recent one (pictured) in glass.

Tenny's story exemplifies my advice to young people: Excel at more than one thing.

Pearson eText **ADDITIONAL RESOURCES**
Videos
Screencasts

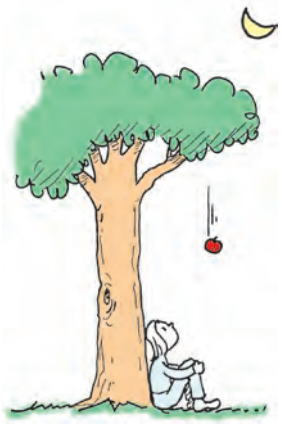
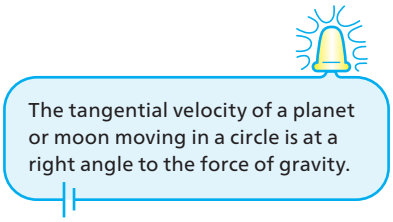


FIGURE 9.1
Could the gravitational pull on the apple reach to the Moon?

9.1 The Universal Law of Gravity

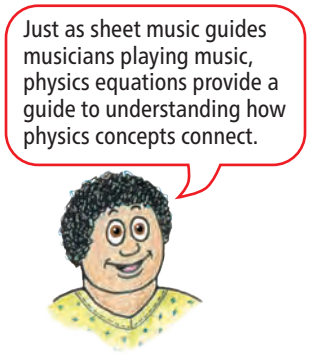
From the time of Aristotle, the circular motion of heavenly bodies was regarded as natural. The ancients believed that the stars, the planets, and the Moon moved in divine circles. As far as the ancients were concerned, this circular motion required no explanation. According to popular legend, Isaac Newton was sitting under an apple tree when the idea struck him that what pulls apples from trees is the same force that keeps the Moon circling Earth. A force of gravity might account for the motions of planets. Others of his time, influenced by Aristotle, supposed that any force on a planet would be directed along its path. Newton, however, reasoned that the force on each planet would be directed toward a fixed central point—toward the Sun. Newton's stroke of intuition, that the force between Earth and an apple is the same force that pulls moons and planets and everything else in our universe, was a revolutionary break with the prevailing notion that there were two sets of natural laws: one for earthly events and another, altogether different, for motion in the heavens. This union of terrestrial laws and cosmic laws is called the *Newtonian synthesis*.

To test his hypothesis that Earth gravity reaches to the Moon, Newton compared the fall of an apple with the "fall" of the Moon. He realized that the Moon falls in the sense that *it falls away from the straight line it would follow if there were no*



forces acting on it. Because of its tangential velocity, it "falls around" the round Earth (more about this in the next chapter). By simple geometry, the Moon's distance of fall per second could be compared with the distance that an apple or anything that far away would fall in 1 second. Newton's calculations didn't check. Disappointed, but recognizing that brute fact must always win over a beautiful hypothesis, he placed his papers in a drawer, where they remained for nearly 20 years. During this time, he founded and developed the field of optics, for which he first became famous.

Newton's interest in mechanics was rekindled with the appearance of a spectacular comet in 1680 and another 2 years later. He returned to the Moon problem at the prodding of his astronomer friend Edmund Halley, for whom the second comet was later named. Newton made corrections in the experimental data used in his earlier method and obtained excellent results. Only then did he publish what is one of the most far-reaching generalizations of the human mind: the **law of universal gravitation.**[1]


Just as sheet music guides musicians playing music, physics equations provide a guide to understanding how physics concepts connect.

Every body attracts every other body with a force that, for any two bodies, is directly proportional to the product of their masses and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between their centers. This statement can be expressed as

$$\text{Force} \sim \frac{\text{mass}_1 \times \text{mass}_2}{\text{distance}^2}$$

Or, in symbolic form,

$$F \sim \frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}$$

where m_1 and m_2 are the masses of the bodies and r is the *radial distance* between their centers. Thus, the greater the masses m_1 and m_2, the greater the force of attraction between them, in direct proportion to the masses.[2] The greater the distance of separation r, the weaker the force of attraction, in inverse proportion to the square of the distance between their centers of mass. Everything pulls on everything else in a beautifully simple way that involves only mass and distance.

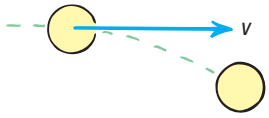


FIGURE 9.2
The tangential velocity of the Moon about Earth allows it to fall around Earth rather than directly into it.

CHECK POINT

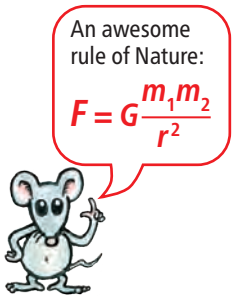
1. **In Figure 9.2, we see that the Moon falls around Earth rather than straight into it. If the Moon's tangential velocity were zero, how would it move?**
2. **According to the equation for gravitational force, what happens to the force between two bodies if the mass of one of the bodies is doubled? If both masses are doubled?**
3. **Gravitational force acts on all bodies in proportion to their masses. Why, then, doesn't a heavy body fall faster than a light body?**

[1]This is a dramatic example of the painstaking effort and cross-checking that go into the formulation of a scientific theory. Contrast Newton's approach with the failure to "do one's homework," the hasty judgments, and the absence of cross-checking that so often characterize the pronouncements of people who advocate less-than-scientific theories.

[2]Note the different role of mass here. Thus far, we have treated mass as a measure of inertia, which is called *inertial mass*. Now we see mass as a property that affects gravitational force, which in this context is called *gravitational mass*. It is experimentally established that the two are equal, and, as a matter of principle, the equivalence of inertial and gravitational mass is the foundation of Einstein's general theory of relativity.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The Moon would fall straight down and crash into Earth!
2. When one mass is doubled, the force between it and the other mass doubles. If both masses double, the force is 4 times as great.
3. You've learned in Chapter 4 that a feather and a coin dropped in a vacuum have equal accelerations because both have the same ratio *weight*/*mass*. Likewise for all heavy and light falling bodies. Recall Newton's second law, $a = \frac{F}{m}$, which tells us $\frac{weight}{mass} = \frac{weight}{mass} = g$, a constant when air resistance isn't a factor. So we see why a boulder doesn't fall faster than a pebble when both are dropped.



9.2 The Universal Gravitational Constant, *G*

The universal law of gravitation can be written as an exact equation when the universal constant of gravitation, G, is used. Again, to emphasize that gravitational effects spread out radially from a source, the symbol r for radial distance is used:

$$F = G\frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}$$

The units of G make the force come out in newtons. The magnitude of G is the same as the gravitational force between two 1-kilogram masses that are 1 meter apart: 0.0000000000667 newton. So

$$G = 6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2$$

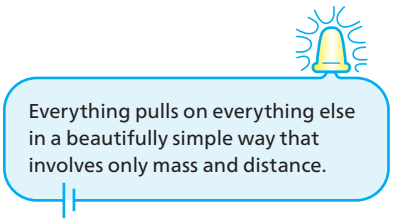
This is an extremely small number.[3] It shows that gravity is a very weak force compared with electrical forces. The large net gravitational force we feel as weight is because of the enormous number of bits of mass in planet Earth that are pulling on us.

Interestingly, Newton could calculate the product of G and Earth's mass, but not either one alone. G alone was first calculated by the English physicist Henry Cavendish in 1798, more than 70 years after Newton's death.

Cavendish calculated G by measuring the tiny force between lead masses with an extremely sensitive torsion balance, as Professor Brage shows in opening photo 3 at the beginning of this chapter. A simpler method was later developed by Philipp von Jolly, who attached a spherical flask of mercury to one arm of a sensitive balance (Figure 9.4). After the balance was put in equilibrium, a 6-ton lead sphere was rolled beneath the mercury flask. The gravitational force between the two masses was measured by the weight needed on the opposite end of the balance to restore equilibrium. All the quantities, m_1, m_2, F, and r, were known, from which the constant G was calculated:

$$G = \frac{F}{\left(\frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}\right)} = 6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N/kg}^2/\text{m}^2 = 6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2$$

FIGURE 9.3
As the rocket gets farther from Earth, the gravitational pull of each on the other decreases.



[3]The numerical value of G depends entirely on the units of measurement we choose for mass, distance, and time. The international system of choice is: for mass, the kilogram; for distance, the meter; and for time, the second. Scientific notation is discussed in Appendix A at the end of this text.

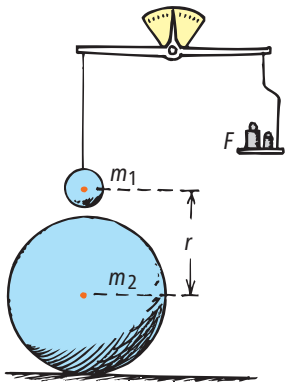


FIGURE 9.4
Jolly's method of measuring G. Spheres of mass m_1 and m_2 attract each other with a force F provided by the weights needed to restore balance.

The value of G shows that gravity is the weakest of the presently known four fundamental forces. (The other three are the electromagnetic force and two kinds of nuclear forces.) We sense gravitation only when masses like that of Earth are involved. If you stand on a large ship, the force of attraction between you and the ship is too weak for ordinary measurement. The force of attraction between you and Earth, however, can be measured: It is your weight, a downward-acting force. We define the direction *downward* as toward Earth's center. Your weight depends not only on your mass but also on your distance from the center of Earth. At the top of a mountain, your mass is the same as it is anywhere else, but your weight is slightly less than it is at ground level. That's because your distance from Earth's center is greater.

Once the value of G was known, the mass of Earth was easily calculated. The force that Earth exerts on a mass of 1 kg at its surface is 10 N (more precisely, 9.8 N). The distance between the 1-kg mass and the center of Earth is Earth's radius, 6.4×10^6 m. Therefore, from $F = G\frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}$, where m_2 is the mass of Earth,

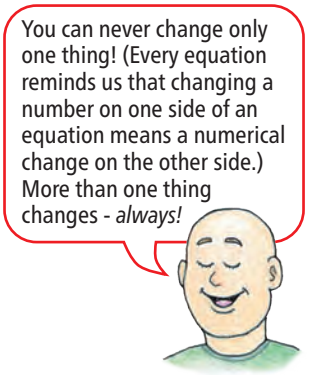
$$9.8\ \text{N} = 6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2 \frac{1\ \text{kg} \times m_2}{(6.4 \times 10^6\ \text{m})^2}$$

which leads to $m_2 = 6.0 \times 10^{24}$ kg.

In the 18th century, when G was first measured, people all over the world were excited about it. That's because newspapers everywhere announced the discovery as one that measured the mass of the planet Earth. How exciting that Newton's equation gives the mass of the entire planet, with all its oceans, mountains, and inner parts yet to be discovered. The calculation of G and the mass of Earth occurred when a great portion of Earth's surface was still uncharted.

CHECK POINT

1. **How does the expression $F \sim a$ differ from $F = ma$?**
2. **How does the expression $F \sim \frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}$ differ from $F = G\frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}$?**
3. **Calculate the gravitational force between Earth and a 1.0-kg object on its surface.**


You can never change only one thing! (Every equation reminds us that changing a number on one side of an equation means a numerical change on the other side.) More than one thing changes - *always!*

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. $F \sim a$ is a direct proportion with no constant of proportionality. $F = ma$ is an exact equation where m serves as a constant of proportionality. When the mass of an object is known, the force needed to provide a specific acceleration can be calculated.
2. $F \sim \frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}$ is a proportion and $F = G\frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}$ is an exact equation. Unless you know the numerical value of G, you can't calculate the force between separated objects.
3. There are two equivalent routes to a calculation: (1) Use the equation $F = G\frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}$, with known values for G, 1.0 kg for m_1, Earth's mass m_2, and Earth's radius r, and your calculation shows $F = 9.8\ N$. (2) Use the equation $F = ma$, where m is 1.0 kg, and a is the acceleration due to gravity g, and get $F = mg = (1\ \text{kg})(9.8\ \text{N/kg}) = 9.8$ N. The units of G, $\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2$ finds the two equations equivalent. (An exercise at the end of the chapter treats this equivalence.)

9.3 Gravity and Distance: The Inverse-Square Law

Gravity gets weaker with distance the same way light from a flame gets dimmer as you move farther from it. Consider the candle flame in Figure 9.5. Light from the flame travels in all directions in straight lines. A patch is shown 1 meter from the flame. Notice that at a distance of 2 meters away, the light rays that fall on the patch spread to fill a patch twice as tall and twice as wide. In other words, the same light falls on a patch with 4 times the area. If the same light were 3 meters away, it would spread to fill a patch 3 times as tall and 3 times as wide, and it would fill a patch 9 times the area. As the light spreads out, its brightness decreases. Can you see that when you're twice as far away, the light appears one-quarter as bright? And can you see that when you're 3 times as far away, the light appears one-ninth as bright? There is a rule here that we call the **inverse-square law:**

> **The intensity of an effect such as illumination or gravitational force changes in inverse proportion to the square of the distance from the source.**

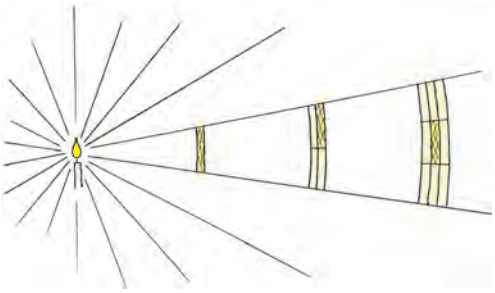


FIGURE 9.5
Light from the flame spreads in all directions. At twice the distance, the same light is spread over 4 times the area; at 3 times the distance, it is spread over 9 times the area.

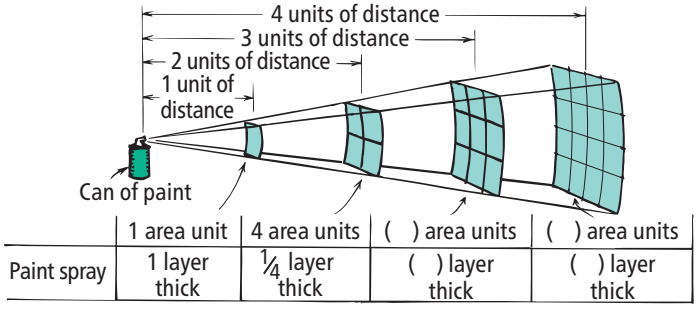


FIGURE 9.6
The inverse-square law. Paint spray travels radially away from the nozzle of the can in straight lines. Like light and gravity, the "strength" of the spray obeys the inverse-square law.

Paint sprayed from the nozzle of a can follows the inverse-square rule, as shown in Figure 9.6. More important, gravity does the same. The greater the distance from Earth's center, the less the gravitational force on an object. In Newton's equation for gravity, the distance term r is the distance between the centers of the masses of objects attracted to each other. Note that the girl at the top of the ladder in Figure 9.7 weighs only one-quarter as much as she weighs on Earth's surface. That's because she is twice the distance from Earth's center.

So, the gravitational attraction between two objects gets appreciably weaker as the objects get farther apart. But, no matter how great the distance, gravity approaches, but never quite reaches, zero. There is still a gravitational attraction between any two masses, no matter how far apart they are. Even if you were removed to the far reaches of the universe, the gravitational influence of Earth would still remain with you. It may be overwhelmed by the influences of nearer or more massive bodies, but its presence is still there. The gravitational influence of every material object, however small or however far away, is exerted through all of space. Study the gravitational force versus distance graph of Figure 9.8.

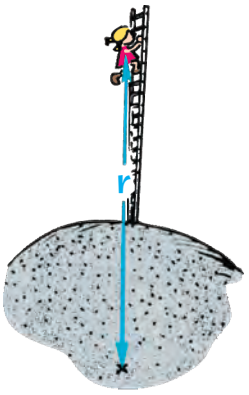


FIGURE 9.7
According to Newton's equation, the girl's weight (not her mass) decreases as she increases her distance from Earth's center.

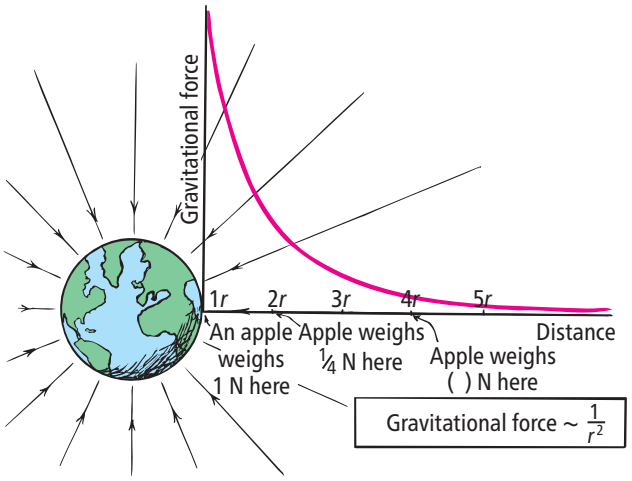


FIGURE 9.8
If an apple weighs 1 N at Earth's surface, it would weigh only 1/4 N twice as far from the center of Earth. At 3 times the distance, it would weigh only 1/9 N. Gravitational force versus distance is plotted in red. What would the apple weigh at 4 times the distance? Five times the distance?

CHECK POINT

1. **By how much does the gravitational force between two objects decrease when the distance between their centers is doubled? Tripled? Increased tenfold?**
2. **The gravitational force on an apple at Earth's surface is 1.0 N. What would the force be if the apple were raised to an altitude that matches Earth's radius?**
3. **Consider an apple at the top of a tree that is pulled by Earth's gravity with a force of 1 N. If the tree is twice as tall, will the force of gravity be 1/4 as strong? Defend your answer.**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The force decreases to 1/4, 1/9, and 1/100 of the original value.
2. Raised by one Earth radius means the apple is twice Earth radius from Earth's center. By the inverse-square law, twice the distance means one-fourth the force; 1/4(1.0 N) = 0.25 N. (This is a shortcut to substituting twice Earth's radius, $2r$, in the equation $F = G m_1 m_2 / r^2$.) Same answer either way.
3. No, because an apple at the top of the twice-as-tall apple tree is not twice as far from Earth's center. The taller tree would need a height equal to Earth's radius (6370 km) for the apple's weight at its top to reduce to 1/4 N. Before its weight decreases by 1%, an apple or any object must be raised 32 km—nearly 4 times the height of Mt. Everest. So, as a practical matter, we disregard the effects of everyday changes in elevation.

9.4 Weight and Weightlessness

The force of gravity, like any force, can produce acceleration. Objects under the influence of gravity accelerate toward each other. Because we are almost always in contact with Earth, gravity is more familiar to us as something that presses us against Earth rather than as something that accelerates us. The pressing against Earth is the sensation we interpret as *weight*.

Stand still on a bathroom scale that is supported on a stationary floor. The gravitational force between you and Earth pulls you against the supporting floor

and the scale. By Newton's third law, at the same time, the floor and scale push upward on you. Located in between you and the supporting floor is a spring-like device inside the scale that is calibrated to show weight (Figure 9.9, which is identical to the earlier Figure 4.6). If you repeat this weighing procedure in a moving elevator, your weight reading varies—not during steady motion, but during accelerated motion. If the elevator accelerates upward, the bathroom scale and floor push harder against your feet. So spring compression inside the scale is greater. The scale shows an increase in your weight. If the elevator accelerates downward, however, the opposite occurs and the scale shows a reduction in your weight.

In Chapters 2 and 4, we generally took the weight of an object to be the force of gravity pulling on it. When an object is in equilibrium on a firm surface, its weight is evidenced by a support force or, when in suspension, by a supporting rope tension. In either case, with no acceleration, weight equals *mg*. However, when we discussed rotating environments in Chapter 8, we learned that a support force can occur without regard to gravity. To generalize, we refine our definition: **Weight:** The force that an object exerts on a supporting surface (or, if suspended, on a supporting rope), which is often, but not always, due to the force of gravity. According to this definition, you are as heavy as you feel. So, in an elevator that accelerates downward, the support force of the floor is less and you weigh less. If the elevator is in free fall, the support force and the reading on a weighing scale are zero. According to the reading, you are **weightless** (Figure 9.10 right). Even in this weightless condition, however, there is still a gravitational force acting on you that causes your downward acceleration. But gravity now is not felt as weight because there is no support force.

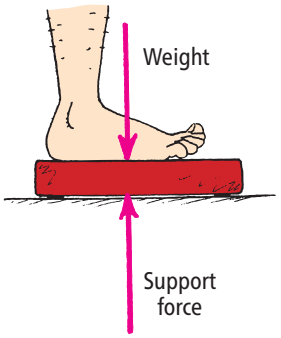


FIGURE 9.9
When you step on a weighing scale, two forces act on it: a downward force of gravity, *mg*, and an upward support force. These two forces are equal and opposite when no acceleration occurs, and they squeeze a spring-like device inside the scale that is calibrated to show your weight.

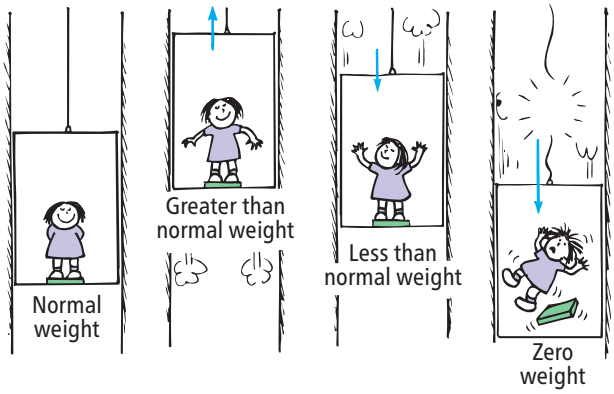
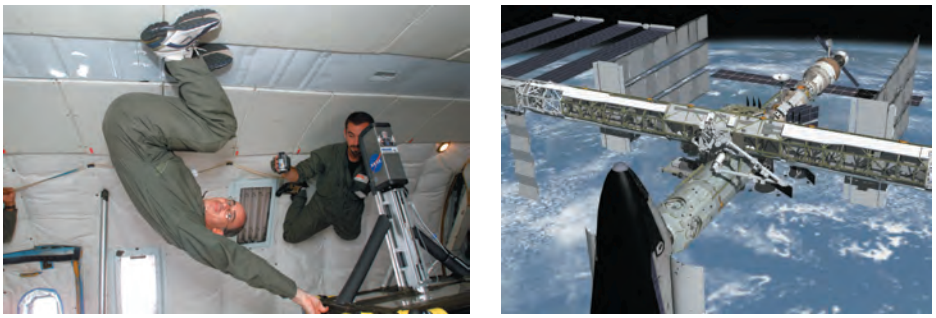


FIGURE 9.10
Your weight equals the force with which you press against the supporting floor. If the floor accelerates up or down, your weight varies (even though the gravitational force *mg* that acts on you remains the same).

Astronauts in orbit are without a support force. They are in a sustained state of *weightlessness,* which isn't the absence of gravity but the absence of a support force. Astronauts sometimes experience "space sickness" until they become accustomed to a state of sustained weightlessness. Astronauts in orbit are in a state of continuous free fall.

The International Space Station shown in Figure 9.11 provides a weightless environment. The station facility and astronauts all accelerate equally toward Earth, at somewhat less than 1 *g* because of their altitude. This acceleration is not sensed at all; with respect to the station, the astronauts experience 0 *g*. Over extended periods of time, this causes loss of muscle strength and other detrimental changes in the body. Future space travelers, however, need not be subjected to weightlessness. As mentioned in Chapter 8, lazily rotating giant wheels or pods at the ends of a tether will likely take the place of today's non-rotating space habitats. Rotation effectively supplies a support force and nicely provides weight.

Astronauts inside an orbiting space vehicle are weightless, even though the force of gravity between them and Earth is only slightly less than at ground level.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 9.11
(a) Astronauts are in free fall and feel weightless due to the absence of a support force. (b) Likewise for inhabitants in ISS who free fall around planet Earth.

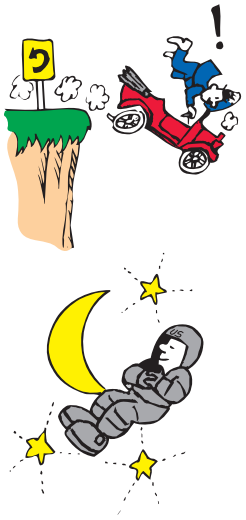


FIGURE 9.12
Both are weightless.

CHECK POINT

1. **In what sense is drifting in space far away from all celestial bodies like stepping down off a stepladder?**
2. **True or false? In addition to no support force, inhabitants of the ISS are weightless because they are beyond the main pull of Earth's gravity.**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. In both cases, you experience weightlessness. Drifting in deep space, you remain weightless because no discernible force acts on you. Stepping from a stepladder, you are only momentarily weightless because of a momentary lapse of support force.
2. False. The pull of Earth's gravity at the altitude of the ISS is about 90% as strong as at Earth's surface. That's why it hugs Earth and doesn't fly off into space. The experience of floating is due to the absence of a support force.

9.5 Ocean Tides

Seafaring people have always known that there is a connection between the ocean tides and the Moon, but no one could offer a satisfactory hypothesis for the two high tides per day. Newton produced the explanation: Ocean tides are caused by *differences* in the gravitational pull between the Moon and Earth on opposite sides of Earth. The gravitational force between the Moon and Earth is stronger on the side of Earth nearer to the Moon, and it is weaker on the side of Earth that is farther from the Moon. This is simply because the gravitational force is weaker with increased distance.

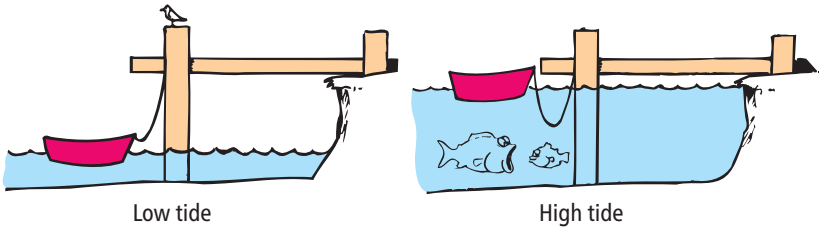


FIGURE 9.13
Ocean tides.

To understand why these different pulls produce tides, let's look at a ball of Jell-O (Figure 9.14). If you exerted the same force on every part of the ball, the ball would remain perfectly round as it accelerated. But if you pulled harder on

one side than the other, the different pulls would stretch the accelerating ball. That's what's happening to this big ball on which we live. Different pulls of the Moon stretch Earth, most notably in its oceans. This stretch and resulting elongation is evident in ocean bulges on opposite sides of Earth. Hence we experience two sets of ocean tides per day—two high tides and two low tides.

On a world average, the ocean bulges are nearly 1 m above the average surface level of the ocean. Earth spins once per day, so a fixed point on Earth passes beneath both of these bulges each day. This produces the two sets of ocean tides per day. Any part of Earth that passes beneath one of the bulges has a high tide. When Earth has made a quarter turn 6 hours later, the water level at the same part of the ocean is nearly 1 m below the average sea level. This is low tide. The water that "isn't there" is under the bulges that make up the high tides. A second high tidal bulge is experienced when Earth makes another quarter turn. As said, we have two high tides and two low tides daily. Interestingly, while Earth spins, the Moon moves in its orbit and appears at the same position in our sky every 24 hours and 50 minutes, so the two-high-tides cycle is actually at 24-hour-and-50-minute intervals. That is why tides do not occur at the same time every day.

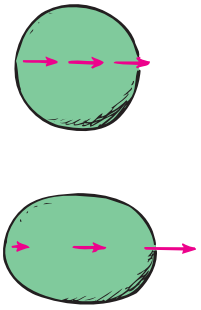


FIGURE 9.14
A ball of Jell-O stays spherical when all parts are pulled equally in the same direction. When one side is pulled more than the other, the ball is elongated.

FIGURE 9.15
The two tidal bulges produced by differences in gravitational pulls remain fixed relative to the Moon, while Earth spins daily beneath them.

The Sun also contributes to ocean tides, although it is less than half as effective as the Moon in raising tides—even though the Sun's pull on Earth is 180 times greater than the Moon's pull on Earth. So, why aren't tides due to the Sun 180 times as large as tides due to the Moon? Again, *difference* is the key. Because of the Sun's great distance, the *difference* in gravitational pulls on opposite sides of Earth is very small. In other words, the Sun pulls almost as hard on the far side of Earth as it does on the near side. The difference in pulling forces ΔF become smaller with increased distance from the Sun. This is shown graphically in Figure 9.16. ΔF, becomes tiny at great distances from the Sun. You'll understand tides more when you tackle "Ocean Tides" in the *Practicing Physics Book*.[4]

When the Sun, Earth, and Moon are aligned, the tides due to the Sun and the Moon coincide. Then we have higher-than-average high tides and lower-than-average low tides. These are called **spring tides** (Figure 9.17). (Spring tides have nothing to do with the spring season.) You can tell when the Sun, Earth, and Moon are aligned by the full Moon or by the new Moon. When the Moon is full, Earth is between the Sun and Moon. (If all three are *exactly* in line, then we have a lunar eclipse because the full Moon passes into Earth's shadow.) A new Moon occurs when the Moon is between the Sun and Earth, when the nonilluminated hemisphere of the Moon faces Earth. (When this alignment is perfect, the Moon blocks the Sun and we have a solar eclipse. More on eclipses in Chapter 26.) Spring tides occur at the times of a new or full Moon.

All spring tides are not equally high because Earth–Moon and Earth–Sun distances vary; the orbital paths of Earth and the Moon are elliptical rather than

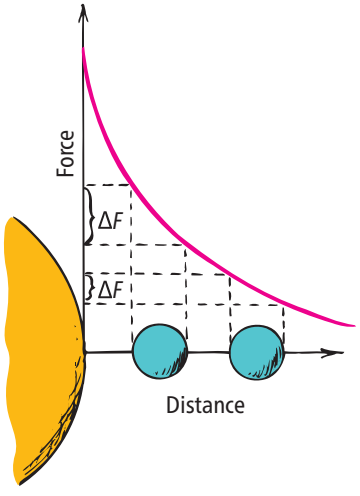


FIGURE 9.16
A plot of gravitational force versus distance (not to scale). The greater the distance from the Sun, the smaller the force F, which varies as $1/\text{Distance}^2$, and the smaller the difference in gravitational pulls on opposite sides of a planet, ΔF.

[4]Newton deduced that *differences* in tidal pulls decrease as the *cube* of the distance between the centers of the bodies. Hence, only relatively close distances result in appreciable tides.

FIGURE 9.17
When the attractions of the Sun and the Moon are lined up with each other, spring tides occur.

circular. The Moon's distance from Earth varies by about 10%, and its effect in raising tides varies by about 30%. The highest spring tides occur when the Moon and Sun are closest to Earth.

When the Moon is halfway between a new Moon and a full Moon, in either direction (Figure 9.18), the tides due to the Sun and the Moon partly cancel each other. Then, the high tides are lower than average and the low tides are not as low as average low tides. These are called **neap tides.**

FIGURE 9.18
When the attractions of the Sun and the Moon are about 90° apart (at the time of a half Moon), neap tides occur.

Another factor that affects the tides is the tilt of Earth's axis (Figure 9.19). Even when the opposite tidal bulges are equal, Earth's tilt causes the two daily high tides experienced in most parts of the ocean to be unequal most of the time.

Tides don't occur in ponds because no part of a pond is significantly closer to the Moon or Sun than any other part. With no differences in pulls, no tides are produced. Similarly for the fluids in your body: Any tides in your body fluids that are caused by the Moon are negligible. You're not tall enough for tides. What microtides the Moon may produce in your body are only about one two-hundredth the tides produced by a 1-kg melon held 1 m above your head (Figure 9.20). So we learn that tidal forces (difference in forces) are of significant size only at close distances from the body that produces them.

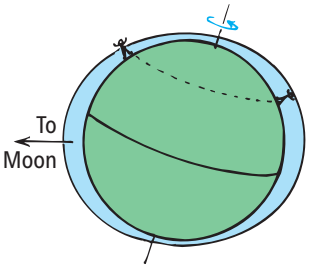


FIGURE 9.19
The inequality of the two high tides per day. Because of Earth's tilt, a person may find the tide nearest the Moon much lower (or higher) than the tide half a day later. Inequalities of tides vary with the positions of the Moon and the Sun.

Our treatment of tides here is quite simplified; tides are actually more complicated. Interfering landmasses and friction with the ocean floor, for example, complicate tidal motions. In many places, the tides break up into smaller "basins of circulation," where a tidal bulge travels like a circulating wave that moves around in a small basin of water that is tilted. For this reason, the high tide may be hours away from the time the Moon is overhead. In midocean, where the range between high and low tides is usually about a meter, variations in range occur in different parts of the world. The range is greatest in some Alaskan fjords and is most notable in the basin of the Bay of Fundy, between New Brunswick and Nova Scotia in eastern Canada, where tidal differences sometimes exceed 15 m. This is largely due to the ocean floor, which funnels shoreward in a V-shape. The tide often comes in faster than a person can run. Don't dig clams near the water's edge at low tide in the Bay of Fundy!

FIGURE 9.20
The tidal force difference due to a 1-kg body 1 m over the head of an average-height person is about 60 trillionths (6×10^{-11}) N/kg. For an overhead Moon, it is about 0.3 trillionth (3×10^{-13}) N/kg. So holding a melon over your head produces about 200 times as much tidal effect in your body as the Moon does.

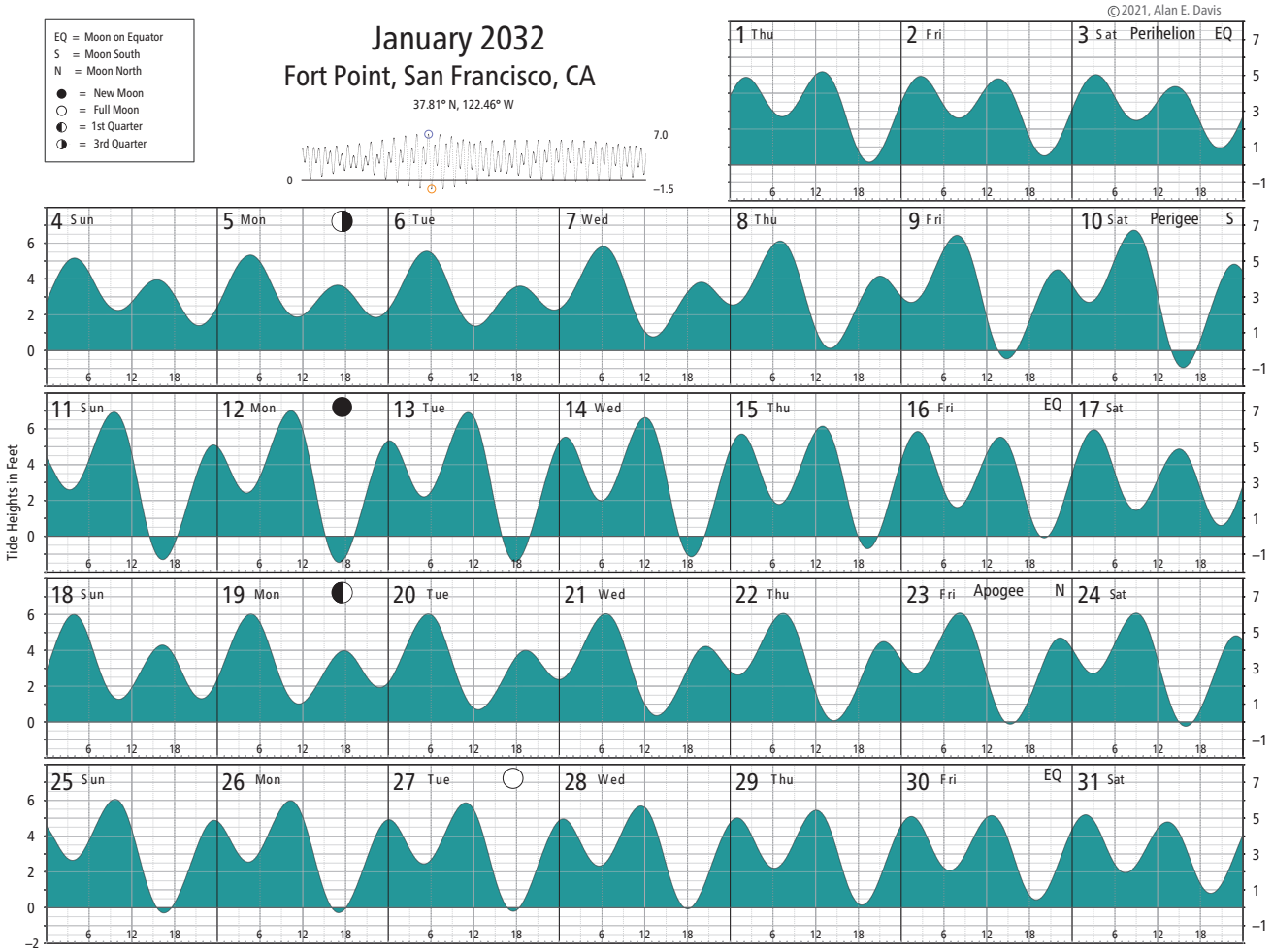
CHECK POINT

We know that both the Moon and the Sun produce our ocean tides. And we know that the Moon plays the greater role because it is closer. Does the Moon's closeness mean that it pulls on Earth's oceans with a greater gravitational force than the Sun?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

No. Although the Sun's pull is much stronger, the *difference* in lunar pulls is greater than the *difference* in solar pulls. So our tides are due primarily to the Moon.

TIDAL CALENDARS



Not for navigation or other critical decisions.

Ocean tide calendars are computerized predictions of ocean tide levels for a given time period. They're useful for selecting a time to fish or dig clams, for planning a beach picnic, for birdwatching, or for tide pooling. Tides are predictable, as indicated by this sample calendar that shows the tidal activity at the entrance to San Francisco Bay for January 2032.

For most days we see in a tidal calendar a pair of crests and dips that correspond to two high tides and two low tides. Tidal heights in the United States are customarily expressed in feet. Each day, the crests and dips in the curve shift forward by nearly an hour. Amplitudes of crests and dips differ as well. Higher crests are most often followed by deeper dips. Like the uniqueness of our fingerprints, no two days have identical tidal patterns. Each location has its own distinct tides as well.

On the calendar, note that on January 12 and 27 when the Moon is new (dark circle) or full (white circle), gravity from the Moon and Sun work together to produce higher than average and lower than average tides called *spring tides*. These days of lowest low tides, and days before and after them, are best for clamming or tide pooling.

The highest tide of the month is on January 12, the day of the New Moon—and it's also the highest tide of the entire year. The same day also has the lowest tides of the month and of the year. On January 10, just two days before the New Moon, the Moon is at *perigee*—closest to Earth—and its gravitational pull is somewhat stronger than at other times. The extremely high tides on January 11–13 are called "king tides," a popular nonscientific term for the very highest tides of the year.

Near the time of the first and third quarter phases of the Moon, as on January 5 and 19, when we see the Moon half illuminated, the Sun and Moon are at right angles to each other. Their nonaligned pulls on Earth's oceans produce tides called *neap tides* that are less pronounced.

On January 3 the Earth is at *perihelion*, its closest point to the Sun for the year, when the Sun's pull is strongest. Six months later, the Earth is farthest from the Sun, and the Sun's pull is slightly weaker. So the highest and lowest tides in 2032 are expected to occur when the Sun and Moon are aligned on January 12.

The small graph at the top-left of the calendar is an overview that shows the range of tides throughout the month. Tide level predictions cannot account for storm surges, or for changes in sea level, which, as of 2021, is rising at about 3 millimeters per year.

Tides in the Earth and Atmosphere

In addition to ocean tides, the Moon and Sun make atmospheric tides—highest and then lowest during a full Moon. Does this explain why some of your friends are weird when the Moon is full?

Earth is not a rigid solid but, for the most part, is a semimolten liquid covered by a thin, solid, and pliable crust. As a result, the Moon–Sun tidal forces produce Earth tides as well as ocean tides. Twice each day, the solid surface of Earth rises and falls as much as 1/4 m! As a result, earthquakes and volcanic eruptions have a slightly higher probability of occurring when Earth is experiencing an Earth spring tide—that is, near a full or new Moon.

We live at the bottom of an ocean of air that also experiences tides. Being at the bottom of the atmosphere, we don't notice these tides (just as creatures in deep water likely don't notice ocean tides). In the upper part of the atmosphere is the ionosphere, so named because it contains many ions—electrically charged atoms that are the result of ultraviolet light and intense cosmic-ray bombardment. Tidal effects in the ionosphere produce electric currents that alter the magnetic field that surrounds Earth. These are magnetic tides. They, in turn, regulate the degree to which cosmic rays penetrate into the lower atmosphere. The cosmic-ray penetration is evident in subtle changes in the behaviors of living things. The highs and lows of magnetic tides are greatest when the atmosphere is having its spring tides—again, near the full and new Moon.

CHECK POINT

Does the mechanism of differences in gravitational pulls on near and far sides of Earth underlie tides in the atmosphere?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Generally, yes. Secondary effects include motions of ions that alter Earth's magnetic field and produce "magnetic tides."

Tidal Bulges on the Moon

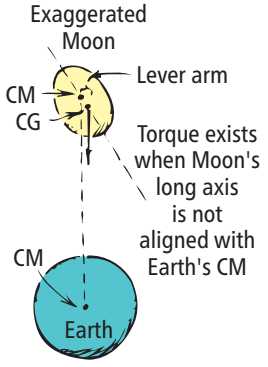


FIGURE 9.21
Earth's pull on the Moon at its center of gravity produces a torque about the Moon's center of mass, which tends to rotate the long axis of the Moon into alignment with Earth's gravitational field (like a compass needle that aligns with a magnetic field). That's why only one side of the Moon faces Earth.

There are two tidal bulges on the Moon for the same reason there are two tidal bulges on Earth—the near and far sides of each body are pulled differently. So the Moon is pulled slightly away from a spherical shape into a football shape, with its long axis pointing toward Earth. But, unlike Earth's tides, the tidal bulges remain in fixed locations, with no "daily" rising and falling of Moon tides. Since the Moon takes 27.3 days to make a single revolution about its own axis (and also about the Earth–Moon axis), the same lunar hemisphere faces Earth all the time. This is not a coincidence; it occurs because the elongated Moon's center of gravity is slightly displaced from its center of mass. So, whenever the Moon's long axis is not lined up toward Earth (Figure 9.21), Earth exerts a small torque on the Moon. This tends to twist the Moon toward aligning with Earth's gravitational field, like the torque that aligns a compass needle with a magnetic field. So we see there is a reason why the Moon always shows us its same face.

Interestingly enough, this "tidal lock" is also working on Earth. Our days are getting longer at the rate of about 2 milliseconds per century. In a few billion years, our day will be as long as a month, and Earth will always show the same face to the Moon. How about that!

CHECK POINT

Why does the pair of bulges on the Moon not produce monthly tides similar to Earth's daily ocean tides?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER
Planet Earth rotates daily beneath its ocean bulges, which accounts for a daily cycle of high and low tides. The Moon does not rotate *beneath* is bulges, but rather *with* its bulges. No rising and falling occurs at any lunar location.

9.6 Gravitational Fields

Earth and the Moon pull on each other. This is *action at a distance* because Earth and the Moon interact with each other without being in contact. We can look at this in a different way: We can regard the Moon as being in contact and interacting with the *gravitational field* of Earth. The properties of the space surrounding any massive body can be looked at as altered in such a way that another massive body in this region experiences a force. This alteration of space is a **gravitational field.** It is common to think of rockets and distant space probes being influenced by the gravitational field at their locations in space, rather than by Earth and other planets or stars. The field concept plays an in-between role in our thinking about the forces between different masses.

A gravitational field is an example of a *force field,* for any body with mass experiences a force in the field. Another force field, perhaps more familiar, is a magnetic field. Have you ever seen iron filings lined up in patterns around a magnet? (Look ahead to Figure 24.2 on page 535.) The pattern of the filings shows the strength and direction of the magnetic field at different points in the space around the magnet. Where the filings are closest together, the field is strongest. The direction of the filings shows the direction of the field at each point.

The pattern of Earth's gravitational field can be represented by field lines (Figure 9.22). Like the iron filings around a magnet, the field lines are closer together where the gravitational field is stronger. At each point on a field line, the direction of the field is along the line. Arrows show the field direction. A particle, astronaut, spaceship, or any body in the vicinity of Earth will be accelerated in the direction of the field line at that location.

The strength of Earth's gravitational field, like the strength of its force on objects, follows the inverse-square law. It is strongest near Earth's surface and weakens with increasing distance from Earth.[5]

The gravitational field at Earth's surface varies slightly from location to location. Above large subterranean lead deposits, for example, the field is slightly stronger than average. Above large caverns, the field is slightly weaker. To predict what lies beneath Earth's surface, geologists and prospectors of oil and minerals make precise measurements of Earth's gravitational field.

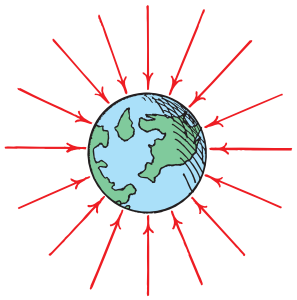


FIGURE 9.22
Field lines represent the gravitational field about Earth. Where the field lines are closer together, the field is stronger. Farther away, where the field lines are farther apart, the field is weaker.

CHECK POINT

1. **A distant rocket is pulled by Earth's gravity. Reword this sentence in terms of a gravitational field.**
2. **Is Earth's gravitational field stronger at sea level than above the highest clouds? Does it extend beyond the farthest planets?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. A distant rocket interacts with Earth's gravitational field.
2. Yes, the field is stronger at sea level because it is closer to Earth's center. And yes, as Figure 9.22 suggests, Earth's gravitational field extends in principle to infinity.

[5]The strength of the gravitational field g at any point is equal to the force F per unit of mass placed there. So $g = F/m$, and its units are newtons per kilogram (N/kg). The field g also equals the free-fall acceleration of gravity. The units N/kg and m/s^2 are equivalent.

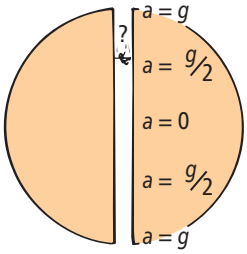


FIGURE 9.23
In the absence of air drag, as you fall faster and faster in a hole bored completely through Earth, your acceleration decreases because the part of Earth's mass beneath you becomes smaller and smaller. Less mass means less attraction until, at the center, where you are pulled equally in all directions, both the net force and the acceleration are zero. Momentum carries you past the center and, against a growing acceleration, to the opposite end of the tunnel, where acceleration is again *g*, directed back toward the center.

Gravitational Field Inside a Planet[6]

The gravitational field of Earth exists inside Earth as well as outside. Imagine a hole drilled completely through Earth from the North Pole to the South Pole (Figure 9.23). Forget about impracticalities, such as the high-temperature molten interior, the rushing of part of the atmosphere filling the hole, and consider the motion you would ideally undergo if you fell into such a hole. You'd fall down, which means toward Earth's center. If you started at the North Pole end, you'd gain speed all the way down to the center, then lose speed all the way "up" to the South Pole. The ideal one-way trip would take nearly 45 minutes. If you failed to grab the edge of the hole when you reached the South Pole, you'd fall back toward the center, and return to the North Pole in another 45 minutes.

Although your speed increases, your acceleration, *a*, will be progressively less as you continue toward Earth's center. Think of it this way: as you fall toward Earth's center, there is less mass pulling you toward the center and more mass above you pulling you back up. When you are at the center of Earth, the pull down is balanced by the pull up, so the net force on you as you whiz with maximum speed past Earth's center is zero. That's right: You'd have maximum velocity and minimum acceleration at Earth's center! The gravitational field of Earth at its center is zero![7]

The composition of Earth varies, being most dense at its core and least dense at the surface. Inside a hypothetical planet of uniform density, however, the gravitational field inside increases linearly—that is, at a steady rate—from zero at its center to *g* at the surface. We won't go into why this is so, but perhaps your instructor will provide the explanation. In any event, a plot of the gravitational field intensity inside and outside a solid planet of uniform density is shown in Figure 9.24.

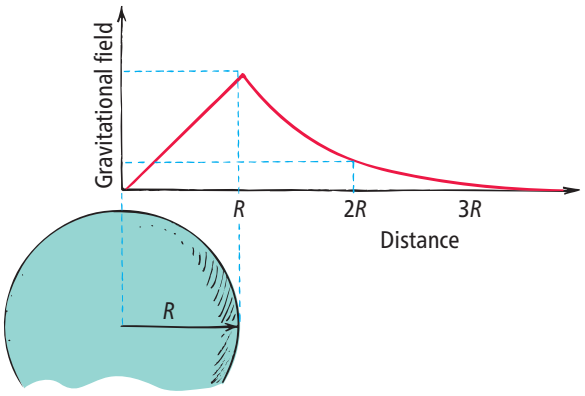


FIGURE 9.24
The gravitational field intensity inside a planet of uniform density is directly proportional to the radial distance from its center and is maximum at its surface. Outside, it is inversely proportional to the square of the distance from its center.

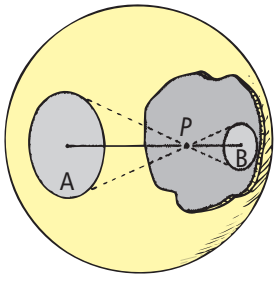


FIGURE 9.25
The gravitational field anywhere inside a spherical shell of uniform thickness and composition is zero because the field components from all the particles of mass in the shell cancel one another. A mass at point *P*, for example, is attracted just as much to the larger but farther region A as it is to the smaller but closer region B.

Imagine a spherical cavern at the center of a planet. The cavern would be gravity-free because of the cancellation of gravitational forces in every direction. Amazingly, the size of the cavern doesn't change this fact—even if it constitutes most of the volume of the planet! A hollow planet, like a huge basketball, would have no gravitational field anywhere inside it. Complete cancellation of gravitational forces occurs everywhere inside. To see why, consider the particle *P* in Figure 9.25, which is twice as far from the left side of the planet as it is from the right side. If gravity depended only on distance, *P* would be attracted only 1/4 as much to the left side as to the right side (according to the inverse-square law).

[6]This section may be skipped for a brief treatment of gravitational fields.

[7]Interestingly enough, during the first few kilometers beneath Earth's surface, you'd actually gain acceleration because the density of the compact center is much greater than the density of the surface material. So gravity would be slightly stronger during the first part of the fall. Farther in, gravity would decrease and would diminish to zero at Earth's center.

But gravity also depends on mass. Imagine a cone reaching to the left from *P* to encompass region A in the figure, and an equal-angle cone reaching to the right to encompass region B. Region A has 4 times the area and therefore 4 times the mass of region B. Since 1/4 of 4 is equal to 1, *P* is attracted to the farther but more massive region A with just as much force as it is to the closer less massive region B. Cancellation occurs. More thought will show that cancellation occurs anywhere inside a planetary shell that has uniform density and thickness. So we see that a gravitational field exists within and beyond the shell. At its outer surface and in the space beyond, the gravitational field is the same as if all the mass of the planet were concentrated at its center. Everywhere inside the hollow part, the gravitational field is zero. Anyone inside would be weightless. I call this "yum-yum" physics!

CHECK POINT

1. **Suppose you stepped into a hole bored clear through the center of Earth and made no attempt to grab the edges at either end. Neglecting air drag and other complexities, what kind of motion would you experience?**
2. **Halfway to the center of Earth, would the force of gravity on you be less than at the surface of Earth?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. You would oscillate back and forth. If Earth were an ideal sphere of uniform density and there were no air drag, your oscillation would be what is called *simple harmonic motion.* Each round-trip would take nearly 90 minutes. We will see in Chapter 10 that an Earth satellite in close orbit about Earth also takes 90 minutes to make a complete round-trip. (This is no coincidence: If you study physics further, you'll learn that "back-and-forth" simple harmonic motion is simply the vertical component of uniform circular motion—interesting stuff.)
2. Yes. A look at the straight-line part of the graph in Figure 9.24 indicates that halfway to Earth's center you'd experience half as much gravitational force as at the surface. That's assuming uniform density of Earth's mass. It's interesting to note that since Earth's core is so dense (about seven times the density of surface rock), the gravitational force halfway down would be somewhat more than half. Exactly how much depends on how Earth's density varies with depth, which is information that is not known today.

Although gravity can be canceled inside a body or between bodies, it cannot be shielded in the same way that electric forces can. In Chapter 22, we will see that electric forces can repel as well as attract, which makes shielding possible. But, since gravity only attracts, a similar kind of shielding cannot occur. Eclipses provide convincing evidence for this. The Moon is in the gravitational field of both the Sun and Earth. During a lunar eclipse, Earth is directly between the Moon and the Sun, and any shielding of the Sun's field by Earth would result in a deviation of the Moon's orbit. Even a very slight shielding effect would accumulate over a period of years and show itself in the timing of subsequent eclipses. But there have been no such discrepancies; past and future eclipses are calculated to a high degree of accuracy using only the simple law of gravitation. No shielding effect in gravity has ever been found.

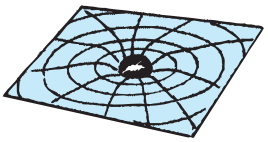


FIGURE 9.26
Warped spacetime. Spacetime near a star is curved in 4 dimensions similar to the 2-dimensional surface of a waterbed when a heavy ball rests on it.

Einstein's Theory of Gravitation

In the early part of the 20th century, a model for gravity quite unlike Newton's was presented by Einstein in his general theory of relativity. Einstein perceived a gravitational field as a geometrical warping of 4-dimensional spacetime; he realized that bodies put dents in space and time somewhat like a massive ball placed in the middle of a large waterbed dents the 2-dimensional surface (Figure 9.26). The more massive the ball, the greater the dent or warp. If we roll a marble across the top of the bed but well away from the ball, the marble will roll in a straight-line path. But if we roll the marble near the ball, it will curve as it rolls across the indented surface of the waterbed. If the curve closes on itself, the marble will orbit the ball in either an oval or a circular path. If you put on your Newtonian glasses, so that you see the ball and the marble but not the bed, you might conclude that the marble curves because it is attracted to the ball. If you put on your Einsteinian glasses, so that you see the marble and the indented waterbed but not the "distant" ball, you would likely conclude that the marble curves because the surface on which it moves is curved—in 2 dimensions for the waterbed and in 4 dimensions for space and time.[8] In Chapter 36, we will treat Einstein's theory of gravitation in more detail.

CHECK POINT

Does Einstein's theory of gravitation invalidate Newton's law of gravity?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

No. Newton's theory of gravitation works perfectly well in our everyday world, while Einstein's theory reaches to domains where enormous forces occur, such as the black holes at the centers of galaxies. More about Einstein's contribution in Part 8.

9.7 Black Holes

Suppose you were indestructible and could travel in a spaceship to the surface of a star. Your weight on the star would depend on your mass, the star's mass, and the distance between the star's center and your center of mass. If the star were to burn out and collapse to half its radius with no change in its mass, your weight at its surface, determined by the inverse-square law, would be 4 times as much (Figure 9.27). If the star were to collapse to a tenth of its radius, your weight at its surface would

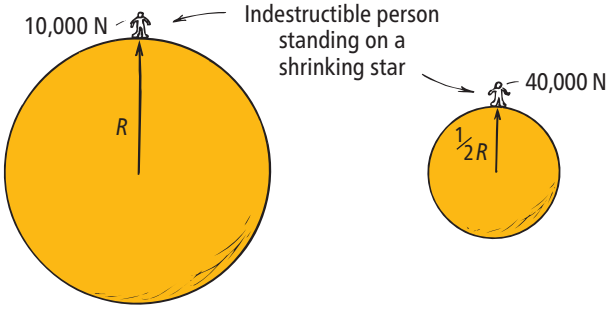


FIGURE 9.27
If a star collapses to half its radius and there is no change in its mass, the gravity at its surface is multiplied by 4.

[8]Don't be discouraged if you cannot visualize 4-dimensional spacetime. Einstein himself often told his friends, "Don't try. I can't do it either." Perhaps we are not too different from the great thinkers around Galileo who couldn't visualize a moving Earth!

be 100 times as much. If the star kept shrinking, the gravitational field at the surface would become stronger. It would be more and more difficult for a starship to leave. The velocity required to escape, the *escape velocity,* would increase. If a star such as our Sun collapsed to a radius of less than 3 km, the escape velocity from its surface would exceed the speed of light, and nothing—not even light—could escape! The Sun would be invisible. It would be a **black hole.**

The Sun, in fact, has too little mass to experience such a collapse, but when some stars with greater mass—now estimated to be at least 1.5 solar masses or more—reach the end of their nuclear resources, they undergo collapse and, unless rotation is fast enough, the collapse continues until the stars reach infinite densities. The gravity near these shrunken stars is so enormous that light cannot escape from their vicinity. They have crushed themselves out of visible existence. The results are black holes, which are completely invisible.

A black hole is no more massive than the star from which it collapsed, so the gravitational field in regions at and greater than the original star's radius is no different after the star's collapse than before. But, at closer distances near the vicinity of a black hole, the gravitational field can be enormous—a surrounding warp into which anything that passes too close—light, dust, or a spaceship—is drawn. Astronauts could enter the fringes of this warp and, if they were in a powerful spaceship, they could still escape. Once within a certain distance, however, they could not escape, and they would disappear from the observable universe. Any object that fell into a black hole would be torn to pieces. No feature of the object would survive except its mass, its angular momentum (if any), and its electric charge (if any).

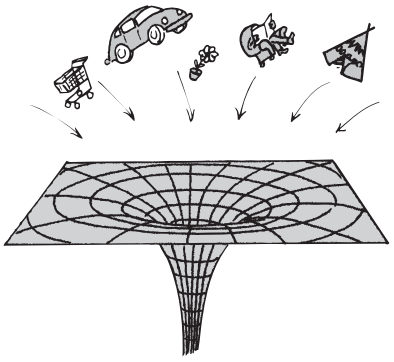


FIGURE 9.28
Anything that falls into a black hole is crushed out of existence. Only mass, angular momentum, and electric charge are retained by the black hole.

FIGURE 9.29
The first image, now historic, of a black hole in the center of the galaxy M87.

Photographing a black hole, recently thought to be impossible, has become a reality (Figure 9.29). The image is actually the shadow of a black hole at the center of M87, a massive galaxy in the nearby Virgo galaxy cluster, 55 million light-years from the Sun. The bright ring in the image is formed by light bent in the intense gravity around the black hole, the mass of which is 6.5 billion times that of the Sun. The 2019 image is a composite of efforts by scientists worldwide.

A theoretical entity with some similarity to a black hole is the "wormhole" (Figure 9.30). Like a black hole, a wormhole is an enormous distortion of space and time. But, instead of collapsing toward an infinitely dense point, the wormhole opens out in some other part of the universe—or even, conceivably, in some other universe! Whereas the existence of black holes has been confirmed, the wormhole remains an exceedingly speculative notion. Some science buffs imagine that the wormhole opens up the possibility of time travel.[9]

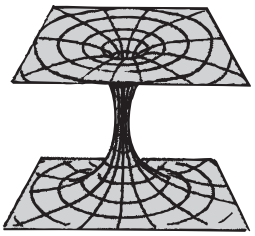


FIGURE 9.30
A speculative wormhole may be the portal to another part of our universe or even to another universe.

[9]Stephen Hawking, a pioneering expert on black holes, was one of the first to speculate about the existence of wormholes. But, in 2003, to the dismay of many science buffs, he announced his belief that they cannot exist.

A black hole can make itself felt by its gravitational influence on nearby matter and on neighboring stars. There is good evidence that some binary star systems consist of a luminous star and an invisible companion with black-hole-like properties orbiting around each other. Even stronger evidence points to more massive black holes at the centers of many galaxies (perhaps all galaxies). In a young galaxy, observed as a "quasar," the central black hole sucks in matter that emits great quantities of radiation as it plunges to oblivion. In some older galaxies, stars are observed circling in powerful gravitational fields around apparently empty centers. These galactic black holes have masses ranging from millions to more than a billion times the mass of our Sun. The center of our own galaxy, though not so easy for us to see as the centers of some other galaxies, almost surely hosts a black hole with a mass of 4 million solar masses. Discoveries are coming faster than textbooks can report. Check your astronomy website for the latest update.

fyi

- Contrary to stories about black holes, they're not aggressive and they don't reach out and swallow innocents at a distance. Their gravitational fields are no stronger than the original fields about the stars before collapse—except at distances shorter than the original star radius. Except when they are too close, black holes shouldn't worry future astronauts.

CHECK POINT

1. **Why are black holes invisible?**
2. **If the Sun collapsed to a black hole, would any term(s) in the equation $F = Gm_1m_2/r^2$ that keeps Earth orbiting the Sun change?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Black holes are invisible because their gravity is so strong that nothing, not even light, can escape a black hole. Note that the bright ring seen in Figure 9.29 is light around the black hole, not light emitted by the black hole itself.
2. No terms change, for the mass of the Sun before and after collapse would be the same, and our distance from its center would remain the same. In fact, Earth would orbit the collapsed Sun as it presently does!

9.8 Universal Gravitation

A sphere has the smallest surface area for any volume of matter.

We all know that Earth is round. But why is Earth round? It is round because of gravity. Everything attracts everything else, and so Earth has attracted itself together as far as it can! Any "corners" of Earth have been pulled in; as a result, every part of the surface is equidistant from the center of gravity. This makes it a sphere. Therefore, we see from the law of gravitation that the Sun, the Moon, and Earth are spherical because they have to be (although rotational effects make them slightly ellipsoidal).

If everything pulls on everything else, then the planets must pull on one another. The force that controls Jupiter, for example, is not just the force from the Sun; there are also pulls from the other planets. Their effect is small in comparison with the pull of the much more massive Sun, but it still shows. Saturn pulls on Jupiter, for example, disturbing Jupiter's otherwise smooth path, and Jupiter does the same to Saturn. Both planets "wobble" in their orbits. The interplanetary forces that cause this wobbling are called *perturbations*.

By the 1840s, studies of the most recently discovered planet at the time, Uranus, showed that the deviations from its orbit could not be explained by perturbations from all other known planets. Either the law of gravitation was failing at this great distance from the Sun or an unknown eighth planet was perturbing the orbit of Uranus. An Englishman, J. C. Adams, and a Frenchman, Urbain

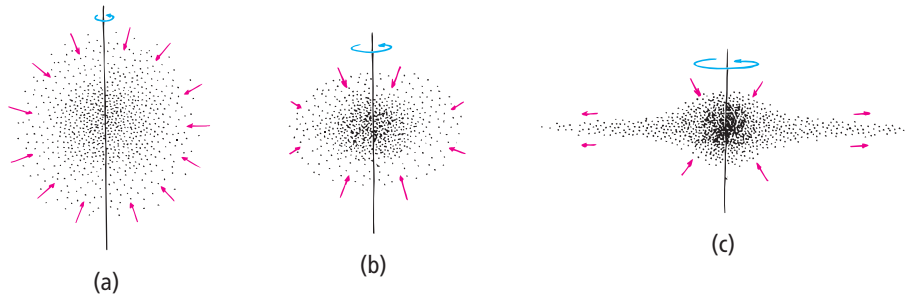


FIGURE 9.31
Formation of the solar system. A slightly rotating ball of interstellar gas (a) contracts due to mutual gravitation and then (b) conserves angular momentum by speeding up. The increased momentum of individual particles and clusters of particles causes them (c) to sweep in wider paths about the rotational axis, producing an overall disk shape. The greater surface area of the disk promotes cooling and condensation of matter in swirling eddies—the birthplace of the planets.

Leverrier, each assumed Newton's law to be valid, and they independently calculated where an eighth planet should be. At about the same time, Adams sent a letter to the Greenwich Observatory in England and Leverrier sent a letter to the Berlin Observatory in Germany, both suggesting that a certain area of the sky be searched for a new planet. The request by Adams was delayed by misunderstandings at Greenwich, but Leverrier's request was heeded immediately. The planet Neptune was discovered that very night!

Subsequent tracking of the orbits of both Uranus and Neptune led to the prediction and discovery of Pluto in 1930 at the Lowell Observatory in Arizona. Whatever you may have learned in your early schooling, astronomers now regard Pluto as a *dwarf planet*, a new category that includes certain asteroids in the Kuiper belt. Regardless of its status, Pluto takes 248 years to make a single revolution about the Sun, so no one will see it in its discovered position again until the year 2178.

Recent evidence suggests that the universe is not only expanding but *accelerating* outward, pushed by an antigravity *dark energy* that makes up some 73% of the universe. Furthermore, the rate at which stars circle within galaxies suggests that there is more pulling on them than just the masses of visible stars; there is also the pull of some new kind of invisible matter, christened *dark matter*, which makes up 23% of the universe. Ordinary matter—the stuff of stars, cabbages, and kings—makes up only about 4%. The concepts of dark energy and dark matter are late-20th- and 21st-century discoveries. The present view of the universe has progressed appreciably beyond the universe as Newton perceived it.

Yet few theories have affected science and civilization as much as Newton's theory of gravity. Newton's insights truly changed the world and elevated the human condition. The successes of Newton's ideas ushered in the Age of Reason. Newton had demonstrated that, by observation and reason, people could uncover the workings of the physical universe. How profound that all the moons and planets and stars and galaxies have such a beautifully simple rule to govern them—namely,

$$F = G\frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}$$

The formulation of this simple rule is one of the major reasons for the success in science that followed, for it provided hope that other phenomena of the world might also be described by equally simple and universal laws.

This hope nurtured the thinking of many scientists, artists, writers, and philosophers of the 1700s. One of these was the English philosopher John Locke, who argued that observation and reason, as demonstrated by Newton, should be our best judge and guide in all things. Locke urged that all of nature and even society should be searched to discover any "natural laws" that might exist. Using Newtonian physics as a model of reason, Locke and his followers modeled a system of government that found adherents in the 13 British colonies across the Atlantic. These ideas culminated in the Declaration of Independence and the Constitution of the United States of America.

fyi

- A widespread assumption is that when Earth ceased to be regarded as the center of the universe, its place and humankind were demoted and no longer considered special. On the contrary, writings of the time suggest that most Europeans viewed humans as filthy and sinful because of Earth's lowly position—farthest from heaven, with hell at its center. Human elevation didn't occur until the Sun, viewed positively, took a center position. We became special by showing we're not so special.

Chapter 9 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Law of universal gravitation Every body in the universe attracts every other body with a force that, for two bodies, is directly proportional to the product of their masses and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between their centers:

$$F = G\frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}$$

Inverse-square law The intensity of an effect such as illumination or gravitational force changes in inverse proportion to the square of the distance from the source.

Weight The force that an object exerts on a supporting surface (or, if suspended, on a supporting rope), which is often, but not always, due to the force of gravity.

Weightless Being without a support force, as in free fall.

Spring tides High or low tides that occur when the Sun, Earth, and the Moon are all lined up so that the tides due to the Sun and the Moon coincide, making the high tides higher than average and the low tides lower than average.

Neap tides Tides that occur when the Moon is midway between new and full, in either direction. Tides due to the Sun and the Moon partly cancel, making the high tides lower than average and the low tides not as low as average.

Gravitational field The influence that a massive body extends into the space around itself, producing a force on another massive body. It is measured in newtons per kilogram (N/kg).

Black hole A concentration of mass that results from gravitational collapse, near which gravity is so intense that not even light can escape.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

9.1 The Universal Law of Gravity

1. What was the prevailing notion regarding the motion of celestial bodies, before Newton?
2. What is the Newtonian synthesis?
3. How is circular motion actually a "fall"?
4. State Newton's law of universal gravitation in words.

9.2 The Universal Gravitational Constant, G

5. Show two formulas: Newton's law of gravity as a proportion and as an exact equation.
6. What is the magnitude of Earth's gravitational force on a 1-kg body at Earth's surface?
7. When G was first measured by Henry Cavendish, newspapers of the time hailed his experiment as the "weighing Earth experiment." Why?

9.3 Gravity and Distance: The Inverse-Square Law

8. How does the force of gravity between two bodies change when the distance between them is tripled?
9. How does the area covered by paint sprayed on a surface change when the sprayer is held twice far away?
10. Where do you weigh less—at the top of a mountain or at ground level? Why?

9.4 Weight and Weightlessness

11. When you weigh yourself on a bathroom scale in an elevator accelerating upward, are the springs in the scale more, or less, compressed? Accelerating downward?
12. When you weigh yourself on a bathroom scale in an elevator moving upward at *constant velocity*, are the springs in the scale more, or less. compressed? Moving downward at *constant velocity*?
13. When is your weight measured as greater than mg?
14. Give an example of when your weight is less than mg. Give an example of when your weight is zero.
15. Why are International Space Station occupants weightless when they are firmly in the grip of Earth's gravity?

9.5 Ocean Tides

16. Do tides depend more on the strength of gravitational pull or on the *difference* in strengths? Explain.
17. Why do both the Sun and the Moon exert a greater gravitational force on one side of Earth than the other side?
18. What is the alignment of the Sun, the Earth, and the Moon during spring tides?
19. Do tides occur in the Earth's interior?
20. What is the position of the Moon during neap tides? Why do ponds never display tides?
21. Would a torque on the Moon occur if the Moon were spherical with both its center of mass and center of gravity in the same location?

9.6 Gravitational Fields

22. Why is a gravitational field an example of a force field?
23. What happens to the acceleration of a body at the center of Earth?
24. For a planet of uniform density, how would the magnitude of the gravitational field halfway to the center compare with the gravitational field at the surface?

25. What would be the magnitude of the gravitational field anywhere inside a hollow, spherical planet?
26. How did Einstein view the curved path of a planet?

9.7 Black Holes

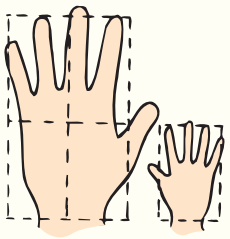
27. If Earth shrank with no change in its mass, what would happen to your weight at the surface?
28. What happens to the strength of the gravitational field at the surface of a star that shrinks?
29. How is a black hole detected?

9.8 Universal Gravitation

30. What great discovery followed finding perturbations in the planet Uranus?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Hold your hands outstretched in front of you, one twice as far from your eyes as the other, and make a casual judgment as to which hand looks bigger. Most people see them to be about the same size, although many see the nearer hand as slightly bigger. Almost no one, upon casual inspection, sees the nearer hand as 4 times as big, but, by the inverse-square law, the nearer hand should appear to be twice as tall and twice as wide and therefore seem to occupy 4 times as much of your visual field as the farther hand. Your belief that your hands are the same size is so strong that you likely overrule this information. Now, if you overlap your hands slightly and view them with one eye closed, you'll see the nearer hand as clearly bigger. This raises an interesting question (that Frank Oppenheimer posed to me years ago when I first taught at the Exploratorium): "What other illusions do you have that are not so easily checked?"



32. Repeat the eyeballing experiment, only this time use two dollar bills—one unfolded, and the other folded along its middle lengthwise, and again widthwise, so it has 1/4 the area. Now hold the two bills in front of your eyes. Where do you hold the folded bill so that it looks the same size as the unfolded one? Nice?

PLUG AND CHUG (EQUATION FAMILIARIZATION)

$$F = G\frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}$$

33. Calculate the force of Earth's gravity on a 2-kg mass at Earth's surface. The mass of Earth is 6.0×10^{24} kg and its radius is 6.4×10^{6} m. Does the result surprise you?
34. Calculate the force of gravity on the same 2-kg mass if it were 12.8×10^{6} m above Earth's surface (i.e., if it were three Earth radii from Earth's center).
35. Calculate the force of gravity between Earth (mass 6.0×10^{24} kg) and the Moon (mass 7.4×10^{22} kg). The average Earth–Moon distance is 3.8×10^{8} m.
36. Calculate the force of gravity between Earth and the Sun (Sun's mass is 2.0×10^{30} kg; average Earth–Sun distance is 1.5×10^{11} m).

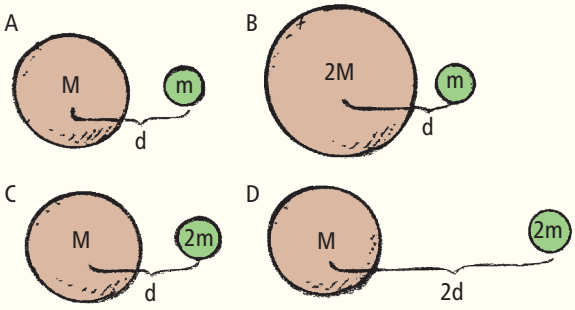
THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

37. Suppose you stood atop a ladder so tall that you were twice as far from Earth's center as you presently are. How would your weight vary from its present value?
38. The gravitational force between two objects of unequal masses is F N. If the mass of one object doubled keeping the same distance between them, show that the gravitational force between these two objects will be $2F$ N.
39. Find the weight of an object on the Moon's surface if its weight on the Earth's surface is W_E.
40. Find the change in the force of gravity between two planets when the distance between them becomes 5 times smaller.
41. Given the value of acceleration due to gravity near the Earth's surface $g_0 = 9.8$ m/s^2, calculate the mass of the Earth. Radius of Earth $= 6400$ km.
42. Calculate the force of gravity a newborn baby of mass 3.0 kg and the obstetrician of mass 100.0 kg exert on each other when the distance between them is 0.5 m. Which exerts more gravitational force on the baby, Mars or the obstetrician? By how much?
43. Many people mistakenly believe that the astronauts that orbit Earth are "above gravity." Calculate g for space shuttle territory, 200 km above Earth's surface. Earth's mass is 6.0×10^{24} kg, and its radius is 6.38×10^{6} m (6380 km). Your answer is what percentage of 10 m/s^2?

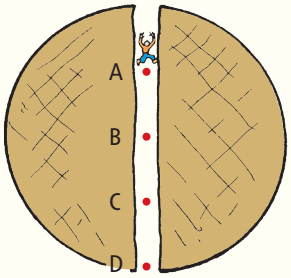
44. Newton's universal law of gravity tells us that $F = G\frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}$. Newton's second law tells us that $a = \frac{F_{net}}{m}$.
    (a) With a bit of algebraic reasoning show that your gravitational acceleration toward any planet of mass M a distance r from its center is $a = \frac{GM}{r^2}$.
    (b) How does this equation tell you whether or not your gravitational acceleration depends on your mass?

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

45. The planet and its moon gravitationally attract each other. Rank the force of attraction between each pair from greatest to least.



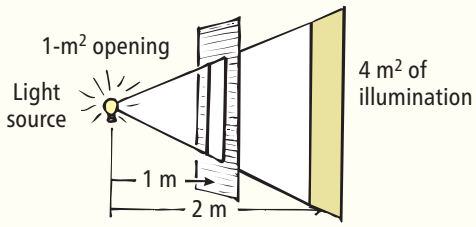
46. If the weight of a body on Earth's surface is W_E then rank its weight on
    (a) The moon.
    (b) Mars.
    (c) Jupiter.
47. Pretend you fall into a hole bored completely through the Earth. Ideally with no obstructions, rank positions A, B, C, and D from most to least for your
    (a) speed.
    (b) acceleration toward Earth's center.



48. Rank the average gravitational force from least to greatest between
    (a) Sun and Pluto.
    (b) Sun and Saturn.
    (c) Sun and Venus.
    (d) Sun and Earth.
49. Rank the acceleration due to gravity of an object of mass m at a distance r from the center of the planet
    (a) Mercury.
    (b) Mars.
    (c) Uranus.
    (d) Pluto.

THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

50. Comment on whether or not the following label on a consumer product should be cause for concern: *CAUTION: The mass of this product pulls on every other mass in the universe, with an attracting force that is proportional to the product of the masses and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between their centers.*
51. Does Earth's gravity pull harder on some people than on others?
52. If there is an attractive force between all objects, why do we not feel ourselves gravitating toward massive buildings in our vicinity?
53. Physicist Paul A. M. Dirac, 1933 Nobel Prize recipient is noted with saying, "Pick a flower on Earth and you move the farthest star!" What did he mean by this statement?
54. Does the Sun pull with greater, less, or the same gravitational force on Mars as Mars pulls on the Sun?
55. A bright light source is located 1 m from a square opening with an area of 1 m^2. Light passing through the opening illuminates an area of 4 m^2 on a wall 2 m from the opening. How much area is illuminated if the wall were moved to distances of 3 m, 5 m, and 10 m from the opening?



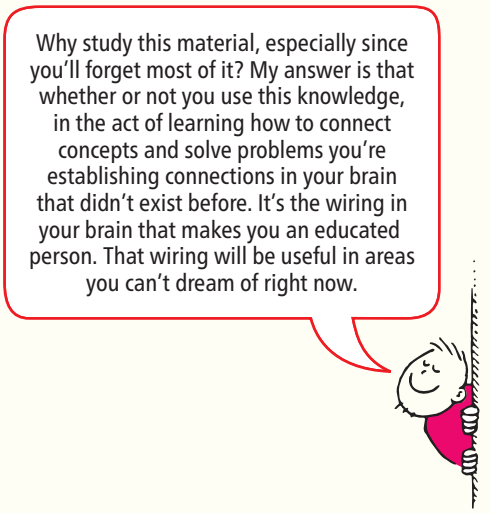
56. At any location on Earth we say the direction of gravitational force is "straight down." Define the direction "down" with respect to gravity.
57. Imagine a situation where Moon suddenly starts moving in a straight-line path. What could be the possible reasons for that to happen? Explain.
58. What would be the force of gravity on a piece of Aluminum rod and a box containing cotton of the same mass? Explain.

59. Is the force of gravity stronger on a sheet of paper than on the same paper crumpled? Defend your answer.
60. How would the force change between a planet and its moon if the moon were boosted to five times its distance from the planet's center? If instead it were brought to one fifth its distance to the planet's center?
61. Ian works on the 20th floor of an office building, and his colleague works on the 10th floor. Is the force of gravity half as much in his colleague's workplace as in Ian's? Explain why or why not.
62. Vehicles like *Curiosity* and *Perserverance* rove over the surface of Mars. Do their weights vary from a valley floor to the top of a tall hill? Explain.
63. Earth is not exactly a sphere but, rather, bulges outward at the equator. Strictly speaking, how does this bulge affect a person's weight when in Singapore and in Hong Kong?
64. Assume that two objects of masses m_1 and m_2 placed at a separation of 1 m interact with their mutual gravitation only. If $m_1 = 2.0$ kg and $m_2 = 4.0$ kg, by how much do the initial accelerations of both objects change if they are placed instead at 2 m?
65. Calculate the change in acceleration due to gravity $\triangle g = g_0 - g$ at $h = 10.0$ k above the Earth's surface, given that radius of the Earth $= 6400$ k, and the value of g_0 at the surface of the Earth is 9.80 m/s^2
66. An apple falls because of the gravitational attraction to Earth. How does the gravitational attraction of Earth to the apple compare? (Does force change when you interchange m_1 and m_2 in the equation for gravity—m_2m_1 instead of m_1m_2?)
67. Will the weight of a body be equal at the Earth's poles and equator? Explain.
68. An astronaut lands on a planet that has the same mass as Earth but three times the diameter. How does the astronaut's weight differ from that on Earth?
69. An astronaut lands on a planet that has the same mass as Earth but 1/4 the diameter. How does the astronaut's weight differ from that on Earth?
70. Why does a person in free fall experience weightlessness, while a person falling at terminal velocity does not?
71. Why do the passengers in high-altitude jet planes feel the sensation of weight, while passengers in an orbiting space vehicle, such as a space shuttle, do not?
72. Is gravitational force acting on you when soaring across the ground in your jetsuit? On an astronaut inside an orbiting space shuttle? Defend your answer.
73. If you drove your car off the edge of a cliff, why would you be momentarily weightless? Would gravity still be acting on you?
74. If you were in a freely falling elevator and you dropped a pencil, it would hover in front of you. Is there a force of gravity acting on the pencil? Defend your answer.
75. When Phil hangs from a single strand of rope, the tension in the rope is 650 N. When he stands motionless on a bathroom scale, what is the reading on the scale?
76. What two forces act on you while you are in a moving elevator? When are these forces of equal magnitude and when are they not?
77. Why does a bungee jumper feel weightless during the jump?
78. Your friend says that the primary reason astronauts in orbit feel weightless is that they are beyond the main pull of Earth's gravity. Why do you agree or disagree?
79. A rocket blasts off a launching pad into outer space. Why does its mass decrease as it accelerates upward?
80. An astronaut in the International Space Station cannot stand on a weighing scale, but *can* inside a rotating space station (not yet built). Explain.
81. The force due to gravity on you is *mg*. Under what condition is *mg* also your weight?
82. Stand on a bathroom scale on a level floor and the scale reading shows the gravitational force on you, *mg*. If the floor is slanted at an angle, the scale reading will be less than *mg*. Discuss why and the reason it is a good idea to measure your weight on a horizontal surface.
83. Suppose you jounce up and down while weighing yourself on your bathroom scale. The weight reading likewise "jounces up and down." Does this mean that the force of gravity, *mg*, varies when you jounce?
84. If somebody tugged hard on your shirt sleeve, it would likely tear. If all parts of your shirt were tugged equally, no tearing would occur. How does this relate to tidal forces?
85. Most people know that the ocean tides are caused principally by the gravitational influence of the Moon, and therefore they think that the gravitational pull of the Moon on Earth is greater than the gravitational pull of the Sun on Earth. What do you think?
86. Is there a torque about the Moon's center of mass when the Moon's long axis is aligned with Earth's gravitational field? Explain how this compares with a magnetic compass.
87. Would ocean tides exist if the gravitational pull of the Moon (and the Sun) were somehow equal on all parts of the world? Explain.
88. Why aren't high ocean tides exactly 12 hours apart?
89. With respect to a tidal calendar, when are the tides lowest and best for digging clams?
90. Whenever the ocean tide is unusually high, will the following low tide be unusually low? Defend your answer in terms of "conservation of water." (If you slosh water in a tub so that it is extra deep at one end, will the other end be extra shallow?)
91. The Mediterranean Sea has very little sediment churned up and suspended in its waters, mainly because of the absence of any substantial ocean tides. Why do you suppose the Mediterranean Sea has practically no tides? Similarly, are there tides in the Black Sea? In the Great Salt Lake? Your county reservoir? A glass of water? Explain.
92. The human body is composed mostly of water. Why does the Moon overhead cause appreciably less tidal effect in the fluid compartment of your body than a 1-kg melon held over your head?
93. If Earth were of uniform density (same mass per volume throughout), what would the value of *g* be inside Earth at half its radius? Defend your answer.
94. Compare the value of acceleration due to gravity g at a distance R and 2R above the Earth's surface. Here, R is the Earth's radius and g $= 10$ m/s^2 at the Earth's surface.

95. Will the value of acceleration due to gravity increase or decrease below the Earth's surface? Explain. The gravitational field due to a uniform sphere (of radius R) at an internal point is proportional to the distance of the point from the centre of the sphere r and given as $\frac{GM}{R^3}r$.
96. It so happens that objects weigh a bit more in very deep mine shafts. What does this tell us about how Earth's density changes with depth?
97. The reading recorder of a spring balance, which is hung from a fixed point (e.g., the ceiling), measures your weight to be m kg. Suddenly the top end of the balance breaks, will the reading recorder show the same value?

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

98. Why are you momentarily weightless in your wingsuit flight when you step off the edge of a high cliff? At that point, is gravity acting on you? Discuss why some people are confused by this.
99. If three particles of equal mass m are placed at the three corners of an equilateral triangle of side a, then what should be the net gravitational force on a particle of mass m placed at the center of this triangle?
100. Somewhere between Earth and the Moon, gravity from these two bodies on a space pod would cancel. Is this location nearer Earth or the Moon? Why?
101. Earth and the Moon are attracted to each other by gravitational force. Does the more massive Earth attract the less massive Moon with a force that is greater, smaller, or the same as the force with which the Moon attracts Earth? (Analogy: With an elastic band stretched between your thumb and forefinger, which is pulled more strongly by the band, your thumb or your forefinger?)
102. Discuss the effect of the Earth's rotation ω on acceleration due to gravity at the poles and equator.
103. The planet Jupiter is more than 300 times as massive as Earth, so it might seem that a body on the surface of Jupiter would weigh 300 times as much as on Earth. But a body would scarcely weigh 3 times as much on the surface of Jupiter as it would on the surface of Earth. Discuss why using the terms in the equation for gravitational force to guide your thinking.
104. Because your weight when standing on Earth equals the gravitational attraction between you and Earth, discuss whether or not your weight will be greater if Earth gained mass. If the Sun gained mass?
105. Discuss and explain why this reasoning is wrong: "The Sun attracts all bodies on Earth. At midnight, when the Sun is directly below, it pulls on you in the same direction as Earth pulls on you; at noon, when the Sun is directly overhead, it pulls on you in a direction opposite to Earth's pull on you. Therefore, you should be somewhat heavier at midnight and somewhat lighter at noon."
106. If the mass of Earth increased, your weight would correspondingly increase. But, if the mass of the Sun increased, your weight would not be affected at all. Why?
107. Strictly speaking, when will the gravitational force between you and the Sun be greater—today at noon, or tomorrow at midnight? Discuss and defend your answer.
108. Does the fact that one side of the Moon always faces Earth mean that the Moon rotates about its axis (like a top) or that it doesn't rotate about its axis? Discuss and defend your answer.
109. What would be the effect on Earth's tides if the diameter of Earth were very much larger than it is? If Earth were as it presently is, but the Moon were very much larger and had the same mass?
110. Which would produce the greatest microtides in your body, Earth, Moon, or the Sun? Discuss and defend your answer.
111. Discuss why tides occur both in Earth's crust and in Earth's atmosphere.
112. Discuss which requires more fuel—a rocket leaving from Earth to the Moon or a rocket returning from the Moon to Earth.
113. If a simple pendulum has a time period of 3 s at the North Pole, then what will be the time period at the equator considering the effect of the Earth's rotation only? (Use the concept discussed in Q.102).
114. If the Sun shrank in size to become a black hole, will the Earth's orbit be affected?
115. If Earth were hollow but still had the same mass and same radius, would your weight in your present location be more, less, or the same as it is now? Discuss and explain.
116. Under what condition will three particles of equal mass m be in equilibrium under the action of their mutual gravitational force? Will the same condition hold in the case of one of the three particles?
117. Some people dismiss the validity of scientific theories by saying that they are "only" theories. The law of universal gravity is a theory. Does this mean that scientists still doubt its validity? Discuss and explain.


Why study this material, especially since you'll forget most of it? My answer is that whether or not you use this knowledge, in the act of learning how to connect concepts and solve problems you're establishing connections in your brain that didn't exist before. It's the wiring in your brain that makes you an educated person. That wiring will be useful in areas you can't dream of right now.

CHAPTER NINE Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. The Moon falls toward Earth in the sense that it falls
   (a) with an acceleration of 10 m/s^2, as do apples on Earth.
   (b) beneath the straight-line path it would follow without gravity.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
2. The force of gravity between two planets depends on their
   (a) planetary compositions.
   (b) planetary atmospheres.
   (c) rotational motions.
   (d) None of these
3. Inhabitants of the International Space Station (ISS) are weightless because
   (a) very little (if any) gravitational attraction to Earth exists there.
   (b) outer space gravity is shielded.
   (c) they lack a support force.
   (d) All of these
4. A spacecraft on its way from Earth to the Moon is pulled equally by Earth and the Moon when it is
   (a) closer to Earth.
   (b) closer to the Moon.
   (c) halfway from Earth to Moon.
   (d) At no point, because Earth always pulls more strongly
5. A weight watcher who normally weighs 400 N stands on top of a very tall ladder so she is one Earth radius above Earth's surface. How much is her weight there?
   (a) 0
   (b) 100 N
   (c) 200 N
   (d) 400 N
6. Inside a freely falling runaway elevator, your
   (a) acceleration is zero.
   (b) weight is zero.
   (c) gravitational interaction with Earth is zero.
   (d) All of the above
7. If the Sun became twice as massive, your attraction to the Sun would double and your weight as measured on Earth would
   (a) double.
   (b) quadruple.
   (c) not change.
   (d) None of these
8. The forces that produce ocean tides are
   (a) multiple sources of gravitation.
   (b) non-aligned gravitational forces.
   (c) unequal forces acting on different parts of a body.
   (d) unequal fluid flow.
9. Tides caused mainly by the Moon occur in Earth's
   (a) oceans.
   (b) atmosphere.
   (c) interior.
   (d) All of the above
10. How far must one travel to escape Earth's gravitational field?
    (a) To a region above Earth's atmosphere
    (b) To a region well beyond the Moon
    (c) To a region beyond the solar system
    (d) Forget it; you can't travel far enough.

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (b): Due to the Moon's great distance from Earth its acceleration toward Earth is very much less than 10 m/s^2 near Earth's surface. All satellites, including the Moon, fall beneath the straight-line path they would follow without gravity. Hence the answer (b). **2. (d):** Use the equation for gravity to guide your answer, $F \sim mM/r^2$. Since there are no equation symbols for planetary compositions, atmospheres, or rotational motions, none of these is the correct answer. Symbols in equations tell you what occurs, and what doesn't occur. **3. (c):** Since the ISS is in a region with about 90% as much gravity as on Earth's surface, and gravity cannot be shielded, only (c) is correct. Weightlessness is due to an absence of a support force, as emphasized in the chapter. **4. (b):** Earth is more massive than the Moon. Only if the masses of the Earth and Moon were equal would equal pulls occur at the halfway point. Because Earth is more massive, forces would be equal at a point closer to the Moon. **5. (b):** This is a straightforward inverse-square law question. The woman weighs 400 N at one Earth radius from Earth's center. An additional 1-Earth radial distance puts her twice as far from Earth's center, which means one-fourth her 400-N weight, 100 N. $[1/(2)^2$ is $1/4]$. **6. (b):** Inside an elevator in free fall you are without a support force and your weight is zero. Interestingly, you're fully under the influence of Earth gravity with an acceleration of g. Only (b) is correct. **7. (c):** Your weight on Earth involves only the interaction between your mass and the mass of Earth. The fact that Earth and Sun attract each other and even with a twice-as-massive Sun is irrelevant to the question asked. **8. (c):** The major reason for ocean tides is stated in (c). The other choices are not general, and have little to do with tides. Unequal forces on a body is the major cause of tides. **9. (d):** Even skimming Section 9.5 cites tides in the ocean, atmosphere, and the semi-molten interior of the Earth, all of which are fluids pulled by unequal forces that are characteristic of tides. **10. (d):** Think the inverse-square law. At a sufficient distance the effect of a field may approach zero, but never reach zero. You can escape the *influence* of Earth's gravity way out there, but never the field itself.

CHAPTER TEN

10 Projectile and Satellite Motion

10.1 **Projectile Motion**
- Projectiles Launched Horizontally
- Projectiles Launched at an Angle

10.2 **Fast-Moving Projectiles—Satellites**

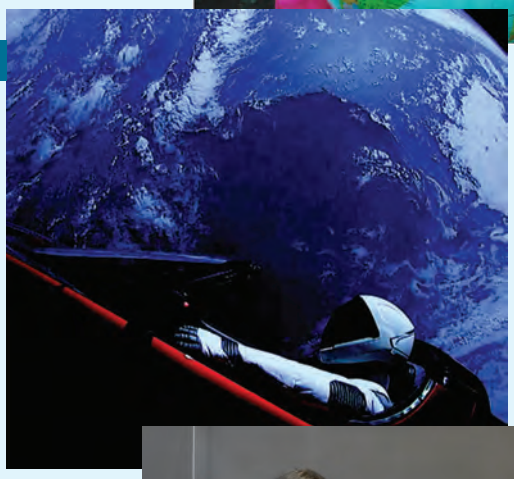
10.3 **Circular Satellite Orbits**

10.4 **Elliptical Orbits**

10.5 **Kepler's Laws of Planetary Motion**

10.6 **Energy Conservation and Satellite Motion**

10.7 **Escape Speed**



1 Sally Ride in her comfort zone! **2** Earth's atmosphere is a small fraction of the width of Emily Abrams's fingers, with the orbiting International Space Station about the distance to her smallest fingernail! **3** Elon Musk's red Tesla Roadster with space-suited mannequin orbits the Sun, launched by SpaceX in 2018. **4** Shruti Kumar asks her class to predict where the projectile will land for a given speed and angle of launch.

Attending professional meetings is energizing for educators. Following an American Association of Physics Teachers meeting in Washington, DC, in 1987, the airplane flight returning to San Francisco was most stimulating. I was traveling with my former student, Helen Yan,* who at the time was studying for her physics degree at UC Berkeley. While I was making revisions to my textbook, Helen was doing her homework. A woman sitting on Helen's right noticed and commented on the enthalpy problems of thermodynamics Helen was working on, saying she remembered such problems from her student days. Helen asked what college she attended. Stanford was the answer. Did she graduate in physics? Yes, with a PhD in physics. We asked if she was employed as a physicist, and she replied that she worked for NASA. Being very curious, we asked what kind of physics at NASA. She said that she was an astronaut. Wow! At that moment we realized we were sitting next to Sally Ride! Sally graciously autographed the copy of *Conceptual Physics* that I was editing.

What's it like in space, we wanted to know. Among the things she told us, I remember her saying that being weightless was *fun*—she loved floating around in the space shuttle. But she also told us what most people don't know—there's a lot of puking in the weightlessness of orbit. A lot!

In my guest talks in previous years with kids in elementary schools, I'd ask how many kids would like to take a ride into orbit some day—to which nearly all raised their hands. When teaching kids after my encounter with Sally Ride, I added what she told me about vomiting, and almost no hands were raised when I asked them about taking a ride into orbit. Uh-oh! After that, I focused on Sally's efforts to get girls involved in science—and *not* on puking. Vomiting is something we all dislike.

As a youngster, Sally enjoyed playing sports and competed in national junior tennis tournaments. Her favorite school subject was math. As an undergraduate at Stanford, she earned a BS in physics and a BA in English. As a grad student, she focused on the physics of the universe, astrophysics. When she was finishing her PhD, she saw an ad in the student newspaper that said NASA was accepting women into its astronaut program for the first time. She applied immediately.

Sally Ride was the first American woman in space and, at age 32, the youngest American. She flew two missions aboard the space shuttle *Challenger* in 1983 and 1984. Her expertise was in maneuvering the 400-kg robotic arm and being conversant with the 800 or so switches on the orbiter's control panel. It was never Sally's intention to make history—but she did. She became an instant superstar, pictured on magazine covers and popular on television talk shows, inspiring others, especially girls, to consider careers in science.

After NASA, Sally became a physics professor and the director of the California Space Institute at UC San Diego. At the same time, she was passionate about STEM education for young people. In 2000, she started her own company, Sally Ride Science, with a few friends. The company created educational programs and products to help motivate young students from all backgrounds, especially girls, to study the sciences. Sally served as president. Sally saw science education as important for *all* students, whether or not they choose a science career. Science literacy was becoming increasingly necessary, she felt, to enable people to make good decisions about issues affecting their lives.

In her personal life she married astronaut Steven Hawley, but they divorced after five years. She was quiet about her relationship with Dr. Tam O'Shaughnessy. Girlhood chums, their friendship developed into a romantic partnership of 27 years. Tam was also one of the founders of Sally Ride Science, now a nonprofit with Tam as executive director.

Sally and Tam chose to keep their relationship private for an important reason: their company depended on corporate sponsorships, and they were afraid they wouldn't have corporate support if their partnership were known. Not until Sally's death did the world learn that she was the first LGBT American woman in space.

Sally's honors were many. She was inducted into the National Women's Hall of Fame and the Astronaut Hall of Fame. In 2013, she was posthumously awarded the Presidential Medal of Freedom by President Obama.

Sally Ride died of pancreatic cancer in 2012 at age 61, but her influence remains. She always ended talks by encouraging her audience to "reach for the stars"—good advice for all of us.

*Helen Yan (see page 366) went on to become a "rocket scientist" at the Lockheed Martin Corporation, and a part-time physics instructor at City College of San Francisco.

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

10.1 Projectile Motion

Without gravity, you could toss a rock skyward at an angle and it would follow a straight-line path. Because of gravity, however, the path curves. A tossed rock, a tennis ball, or any object that is projected by some means and continues in motion by its own inertia is called a **projectile.** To the cannoneers of earlier centuries, the curved paths of projectiles seemed very complex. Today these paths are surprisingly simple when we look at the horizontal and vertical components of velocity separately.

In Figure 10.1 we see the component vectors of a ball's velocity. The horizontal component of velocity is completely independent of the vertical component of velocity when air resistance is small enough to ignore. The constant horizontal-velocity component is not affected by the vertical force of gravity. It is important to stress that each component is independent of the other. Their combined effects produce the trajectories of projectiles.

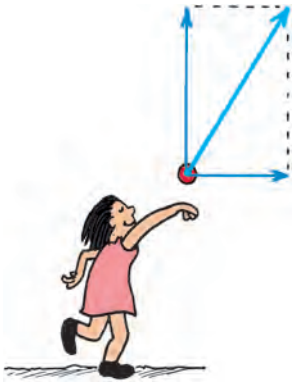


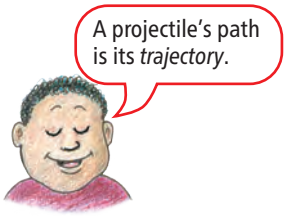
FIGURE 10.1
The velocity of the ball (light blue long vector) has vertical and horizontal components. The vertical component relates to how high the ball will go. The horizontal component relates to the horizontal range of the ball.

CHECK POINT

How does the horizontal component of velocity for a projectile affect the vertical component?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

It doesn't! The message here is important: The horizontal and vertical components of velocity for all projectiles are independent. Each component has no effect on the other.



Projectiles Launched Horizontally

Projectile motion is nicely analyzed in Figure 10.2, which shows a simulated multiple-flash exposure of a ball rolling off the edge of a table. Investigate it carefully, for there's a lot of good physics there. At the left we notice equally timed sequential positions of the ball's horizontal component of motion without the effect of gravity. Next we see vertical motion without a horizontal component. The curved path in the third view is best analyzed by considering the horizontal and vertical components of motion separately. Notice two important things: The first is that the ball's horizontal component of velocity doesn't change as the falling ball moves forward. The ball travels the same horizontal distance in equal times between the flashes. That's because there is no component of gravitational force acting horizontally. Gravity acts only *downward*, so the only acceleration of the ball is *downward*. The second thing to notice is that the vertical positions become farther apart with time. The vertical distances traveled are the same as if the ball were simply dropped. Notice that the curvature of the ball's path is the combination of constant horizontal motion and accelerated vertical motion.

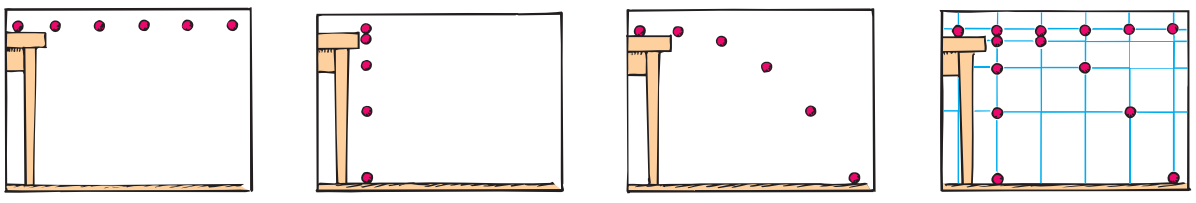

Horizontal motion with no gravity
Vertical motion only with gravity
Combined horizontal and vertical motion
Superposition of the preceding cases

FIGURE 10.2
Simulated photographs of a moving ball illuminated with a strobe light.

The trajectory of a projectile that accelerates in only the vertical direction while moving at a constant horizontal velocity is a **parabola.** When air resistance is small enough to ignore, as it is for a heavy object without great speed, the trajectory of the object is parabolic.

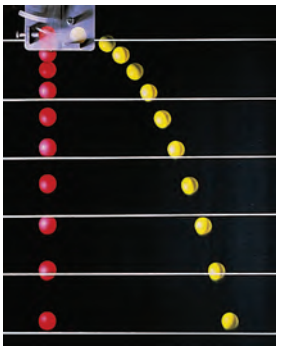


FIGURE 10.3
A strobe-light photograph of two golf balls released simultaneously from a device that allows one ball to drop freely while the other is projected horizontally.

CHECK POINT

At the instant a cannon fires a cannonball horizontally over a level range, another cannonball held at the side of the cannon is released and drops to the ground.

1. **Which cannonball, the one fired horizontally or the one dropped from rest, strikes the ground first?**
2. **If the cannon were pointed at an upward angle, which ball strikes the ground first?**
3. **If the cannon were pointed at a downward angle, which ball strikes the ground first?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Both cannonballs hit the ground at the same time because both fall the same vertical distance. Notice that the physics is the same as shown in Figures 10.2 and 10.3.
2. The dropped cannonball reaches the ground first while the upwardly shot one is still in flight.
3. The fired cannonball reaches the ground before the dropped one.

FIGURE 10.4
The physics of projectile motion nicely apply when she and her skateboard are airborne.

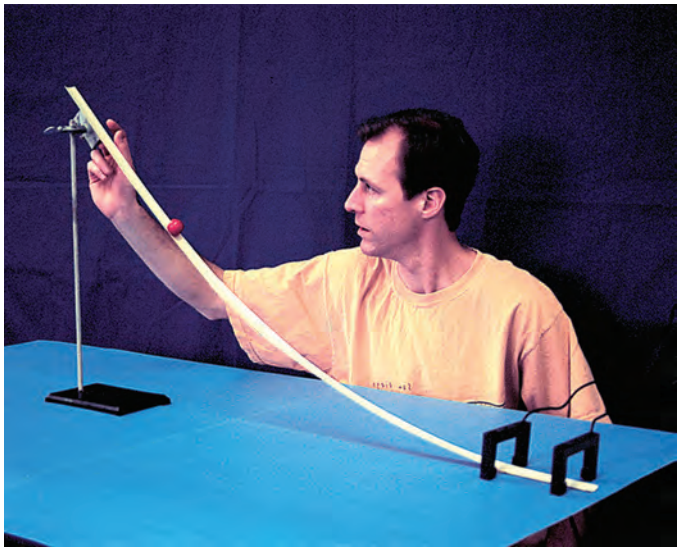


FIGURE 10.5
Chuck Stone releases a ball near the top of a track. His students make measurements to predict where a can on the floor should be placed to catch the ball after it rolls off the table.

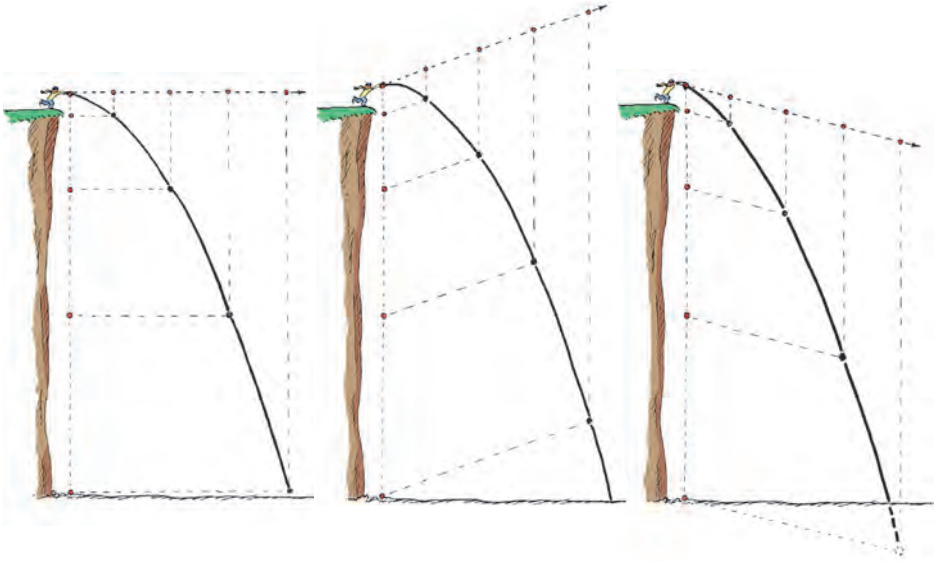


FIGURE 10.6
Whether launched at an upward or downward angle, the vertical distance of fall beneath the idealized straight-line path is the same for equal times.

Projectiles Launched at an Angle

In Figure 10.6 we see the paths of stones thrown horizontally (left), upward (center), and downward (right). The dashed straight lines show the ideal trajectories of the stones if there were no gravity. Notice that the vertical distance beneath the idealized straight-line paths is the same for equal times. This vertical distance is independent of what's happening horizontally.

Figure 10.7 shows specific vertical distances for a cannonball shot at an upward angle. If there were no gravity, the cannonball would follow the straight-line path shown by the dashed line. But there is gravity, so this doesn't occur. What really happens is that the cannonball falls continuously beneath the imaginary line until it finally strikes the ground. Note that the vertical distance it falls beneath any point on the dashed line is the same vertical distance it would fall if it were dropped from rest and had been falling for the same amount of time. This distance, as introduced in Chapter 3, is given by $d = \frac{1}{2}gt^2$, where t is the elapsed time.

We can put it another way: Imagine launching a projectile skyward at some angle and there is no gravity. After so many seconds t, the projectile should be at a certain point along a straight-line path. But, because of gravity, it isn't. Where is it? The answer is that it's directly below this point. How far below? The answer in meters is $5t^2$ (or, more precisely, $4.9t^2$). How about that!

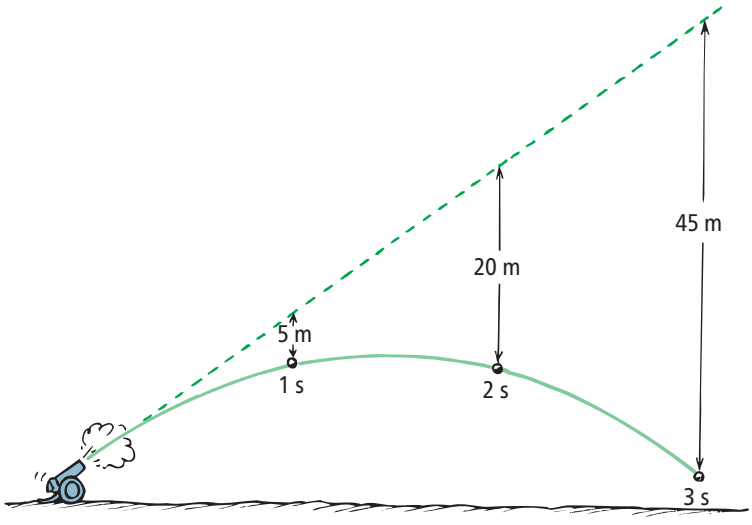
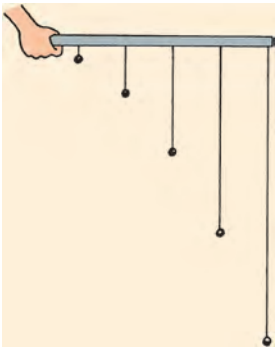


FIGURE 10.7
With no gravity, the projectile would follow a straight-line path (dashed line). But, because of gravity, the projectile falls beneath this line the same vertical distance it would fall if it were released from rest. Compare the distances fallen with those given in Table 3.3 in Chapter 3. (With $g = 9.8\ \text{m/s}^2$, these distances are more precisely 4.9 m, 19.6 m, and 44.1 m.)

PRACTICING PHYSICS: HANDS-ON DANGLING BEADS

Make your own model of projectile paths. Divide a ruler or a stick into five equal spaces. At position 1, hang a bead from a string 1 cm long, as shown. At position 2, hang a bead from a string 4 cm long. At position 3, do the same with a 9-cm length of string. At position 4, use 16 cm of string, and for position 5, use 25 cm of string. If you hold the stick horizontally, you will have a version of Figure 10.6 (left). Hold it at a slight upward angle to show a version of Figure 10.6, center. And at a downward angle to show a version of Figure 10.6, right.



Note another thing from Figure 10.7 and earlier figures. The projectile moves the same horizontal distance in equal time intervals. That's because no acceleration takes place horizontally. The only acceleration is vertical, that of Earth's gravity, which points toward the center of Earth.

FIGURE 10.8
Peter Rea of Arbor Scientific produces this air-powered projectile launcher for outdoor physics classrooms.

CHECK POINT

1. **Suppose the cannonball in Figure 10.7 were fired faster. How many meters below the dashed line would it be at the end of 5 s?**
2. **If the horizontal component of the cannonball's velocity is 20 m/s, how far downrange will the cannonball be in 5 s?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The vertical distance below the dashed line at the end of 5 s is 125 m [$d = 5t^2 = 5(5)^2 = 5(25) = 125$ m]. Interestingly enough, this distance doesn't depend on the angle of the cannon. If air drag is ignored, any projectile will fall $5t^2$ below where it would have reached if there were no gravity.
2. With no air drag, the cannonball will travel a horizontal distance of 100 m [$d = \bar{v}t = (20 \text{ m/s})(5 \text{ s}) = 100$ m]. Because gravity acts only vertically and there is no acceleration in the horizontal direction, the cannonball travels an equal horizontal distance in equal times. This distance is simply its horizontal component of velocity multiplied by the time (and not $5t^2$, which applies to only vertical motion under the acceleration of gravity).

In Figure 10.9, we see vectors that represent both the horizontal and vertical components of velocity for a projectile following a parabolic trajectory. Notice that the horizontal component everywhere along the trajectory is the same, and only the vertical component changes. The actual velocity is represented by the vector that is the diagonal of the rectangle formed by the vector components. At the top of the trajectory, the vertical component is zero, so the velocity at the zenith is only the horizontal component of velocity. Everywhere else along the trajectory, the magnitude of the velocity is greater (just as the diagonal of a rectangle is longer than either of its sides).

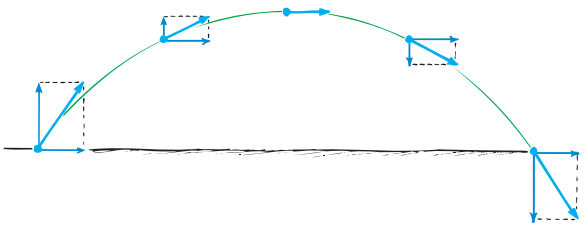


FIGURE 10.9
The velocity of a projectile at various points along its trajectory. Note that the vertical component changes and the horizontal component is the same everywhere.

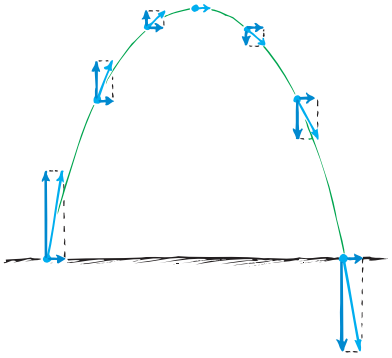


FIGURE 10.10
Trajectory for a steeper projection angle.

Figure 10.10 shows the trajectory traced by a projectile that is launched with the same speed at a steeper angle. Notice that the initial velocity vector has a greater vertical component than when the launch angle is smaller. This greater component results in a trajectory that reaches a greater height. But the horizontal component, which remains constant, is smaller, and the range is smaller.

Figure 10.11 shows the paths of several projectiles, all with the same initial speed but different launching angles. The figure ignores the effects of air drag, so the trajectories are all parabolas. Notice that these projectiles reach different *altitudes,* or heights, above the ground. They also have different *horizontal ranges*, or distances traveled horizontally. The remarkable thing to note is that the same range is obtained from two different launching angles when their angles add up to 90°! An object thrown into the air at an angle of 60°, for example, has the same range as if it were thrown at the same speed at an angle of 30°. For the smaller angle, of course, the object remains in the air for a shorter time. When air drag can be neglected, the maximum range occurs when the launching angle is 45°.

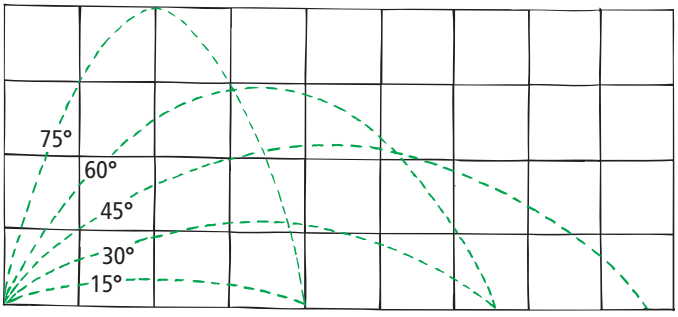


FIGURE 10.11
Ranges of a projectile shot at the same speed at different projection angles.

FIGURE 10.12
With no air drag, maximum range for a batted ball is 45°. Due to air drag, most home runs are batted at angles of 25° to 35°.

CHECK POINT

1. **A baseball is batted at an angle into the air. Once airborne, and ignoring air drag, what is the ball's acceleration vertically? Horizontally?**
2. **At what part of its trajectory does the baseball have a minimum speed?**
3. **Consider a batted baseball that follows a parabolic path on a day when the Sun is directly overhead. How does the speed of the ball's shadow across the field compare with the ball's horizontal component of velocity?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The vertical acceleration is g (directed downward) because the force of gravity is vertical. The horizontal acceleration is zero because no horizontal force acts on the ball.
2. A ball's minimum speed occurs at the top of its trajectory. If it is launched vertically, its speed at the top is zero. If launched at an angle, the vertical component of velocity is zero at the top, leaving only the horizontal component. So the speed at the top is equal to the horizontal component of the ball's velocity at any point. Doesn't this make sense?
3. They are the same!

So if we ignore the effects of air drag, the maximum range for a baseball would occur when it is batted 45° above the horizontal. Without air drag, the ball rises just like it falls, covering the same amount of ground while rising as while falling. But not so when air drag slows the ball. Then its horizontal

speed at the top of its path is less than its horizontal speed when leaving the bat, so *it covers less ground while falling than while rising*. As a result, for maximum range the ball must leave the bat with more horizontal speed than vertical speed—at about 25° to 34°, considerably less than 45°. Likewise for golf balls. (As Chapter 14 will show, the spin of the ball also affects range.) For heavy projectiles like javelins and the shot, air has less effect on range. A javelin, being heavy and presenting a very small cross section to the air, follows an almost perfect parabola when thrown. So does a shot. Aha, but *launching speeds* are not equal for heavy projectiles thrown at different angles. When a javelin or a shot is thrown, a significant part of the launching *force* goes into lifting—combating gravity—so launching at 45° means less launching speed. You can test this yourself: Throw a heavy boulder horizontally and then at an angle upward—you'll find the horizontal throw to be considerably faster. So the maximum range for heavy projectiles thrown by humans is attained with angles smaller than 34°—and not because of air resistance.

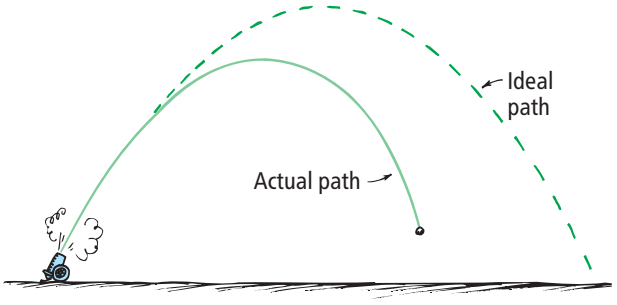


FIGURE 10.13
In the presence of air resistance, the trajectory of a high-speed projectile falls short of the idealized parabolic path.

When air resistance is small enough to be ignored, a projectile will rise to its maximum height in the same time it takes to fall from that height to its initial level (Figure 10.14). This is because its deceleration by gravity while going up is the same as its acceleration by gravity while coming down. The speed it loses while going up is therefore the same as the speed it gains while coming down. So the projectile arrives at its initial level with the same speed it had when it was initially projected.

Baseball games normally take place on level ground. For the short-range projectile motion on the playing field, Earth can be considered to be flat because the flight of the baseball is not affected by Earth's curvature. For very long-range projectiles, however, the curvature of Earth's surface must be taken into account. We'll now see that if an object is projected fast enough, it will fall all the way around Earth and become an Earth satellite.

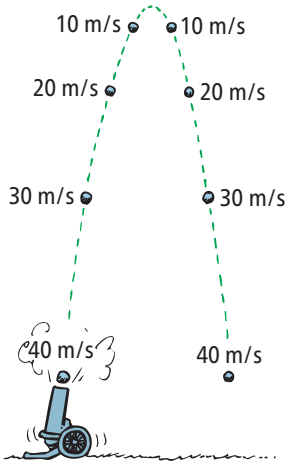
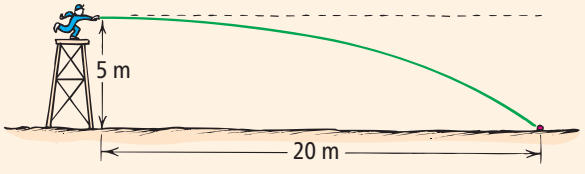


FIGURE 10.14
Without air drag, the speed lost while going up equals the speed gained while coming down: Time going up equals time coming down.

CHECK POINT

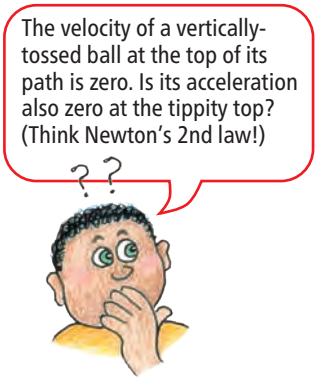
The boy on the tower throws a ball 20 m downrange. What is his pitching speed?



CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The ball is thrown horizontally, so the pitching speed is the horizontal distance divided by the time. A horizontal distance of 20 m is given. How about the time? Isn't the time along the parabola the same time it takes to fall vertically 5 m? Isn't the time 1 s? So the pitching speed is

$$v = \frac{d}{t} = \frac{20\ \text{m}}{1\ \text{s}} = 20\ \text{m/s}$$


The velocity of a vertically-tossed ball at the top of its path is zero. Is its acceleration also zero at the tippity top? (Think Newton's 2nd law!)

HANG TIME REVISITED

In Chapter 3, we stated that airborne time during a jump is independent of horizontal speed. Now we see why this is so—the horizontal and vertical components of motion are independent of each other. The rules of projectile motion apply to jumping. Once one's feet are off the ground, only the force of gravity acts on the jumper (ignoring air resistance). Hang time depends on only the vertical component of liftoff velocity. It so happens, however, that the action of running can make a difference. If the ballplayer is running, the liftoff force during jumping can be appreciably increased by pounding the feet against the ground (and the ground pounding against the feet in action–reaction fashion), so hang time for a running jump can exceed hang time for a standing jump. But again for emphasis: Once the runner's feet are off the ground, only the vertical component of liftoff velocity determines hang time.

10.2 Fast-Moving Projectiles—Satellites

A **satellite** is simply a projectile moving fast enough to orbit its celestial body. An Earth satellite falls continuously around Planet Earth.

A common misconception about satellites that orbit Earth is that they are above Earth's gravity. *Untrue!* What satellites *are* above is Earth's atmosphere, where they are free of air drag that would reduce their orbital speed. To understand satellite motion, investigate little Nellie Newton tossing a ball on her tiny imaginary planet (Figure 10.15). The path of the tossed ball curves due to the planet's gravity, which without gravity would follow a straight-line path. Tossed with sufficient speed, the ball assumes orbital motion.

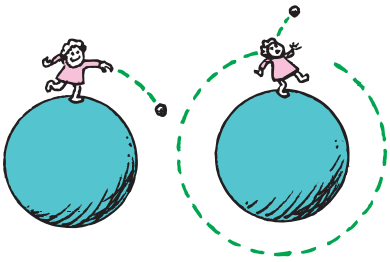


FIGURE 10.15
Nellie tosses a ball at just the right speed for orbit.

Back on Earth (Figure 10.16), Nellie throws a ball horizontally from a cliff 5 meters above the ground below. Whatever her tossing speed, in each of the three cases, the ball drops the same vertical distance in the same time. In the first second after leaving Nellie's hand, the ball will fall a vertical distance of 5 meters below the dashed line—for all speeds. So all three balls will hit the ground in the same time: 1 second. This applies even to higher speeds. For example, if Nellie instead fired a horizontally held rifle from the same cliff, the bullet would hit the ground in 1 second (despite the popular misconception that a high-speed bullet travels in a straight line before later dropping—akin to the momentary straight-line path of the cartoon roadrunner character running off a cliff). Whatever the speed of any projectile, it will fall a vertical distance of 5 meters in its first second of travel. *How about that?*

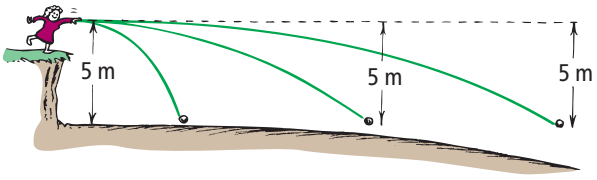


FIGURE 10.16
If you throw a ball at any speed, 1 second later it will have fallen 5 meters below where it would have been if there were no gravity.

In this discussion we've assumed a flat Earth, which is a valid assumption for sports fields. However, Earth's surface is curved. For very high speeds, the curvature of Earth must be taken into account. Consider this intriguing question: What if the speed of a horizontally launched projectile were so great that its curved path matched the curvature of Earth? *Aha!* Without air drag and obstacles in its way, the projectile would be an Earth *satellite*! Let's investigate this.

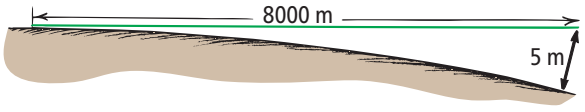


FIGURE 10.17
Earth's curvature drops a vertical distance of 5 m for each 8000-m tangent (not to scale).

It is a geometric fact that the surface of Earth drops a vertical distance of 5 meters for every 8000 meters tangent to the surface (Figure 10.17). A tangent to a circle or to Earth's surface is a straight line that touches the circle or surface at only one place.

We can see that this 5-meter drop in Earth's curvature relates to the familiar 5-meter drop of a projectile in its first second of travel. Perhaps the following Check Point will tie much information together.

CHECK POINT

1. **Calculate the speed of a projectile that covers a distance of 8000 meters in the time it takes for it to fall vertically 5 meters.**
2. **At this high speed, how would the shape of the trajectory compare with Earth's curvature?**
3. **What do we call such a high-speed projectile?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. $\text{Speed} = \dfrac{\text{distance traveled}}{\text{time to fall 5 meters}} = 8000\ \text{m} \div 1\ \text{s} = 8000\ \text{m/s}.$
2. The two curves would match.
3. Ideally, without air drag and obstacles, the projectile would be an Earth satellite!

So, we see that a satellite in close Earth orbit travels at 8000 meters per second, or 8 kilometers per second. If this doesn't seem fast, convert it to kilometers per hour, and you get an impressive nearly 29,000 kilometers per hour (18,000 miles per hour). Quite fast! The process of falling with the curvature of Earth continues from tangent line to tangent line, all around Earth (Figure 10.18). At higher altitudes where distance from Earth's center is greater and gravity is less, speeds are somewhat less than 8 km/s for circular orbits.

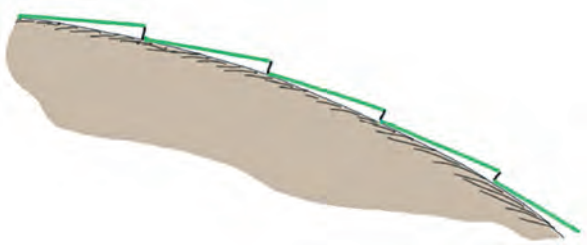


FIGURE 10.18
A succession of 8000-m segments circle Earth. With no air drag or other obstacles, a projectile moving horizontally at 8000 m/s (8 km/s) will orbit Earth!

At orbital speeds, atmospheric friction incinerates projectiles. This happens to grains of sand and other small meteors that graze Earth's atmosphere. They burn up and appear as "falling stars." Hence Earth satellites are launched to altitudes higher than 150 kilometers—to be above the atmosphere—not above gravity.

Isaac Newton understood satellite motion. He reasoned that the Moon is simply a projectile circling Earth under gravitational attraction. This concept is illustrated in Figure 10.19, which is an actual drawing by Newton. He compared the Moon's motion to a cannonball fired from atop a high mountain. He imagined that the mountaintop was above Earth's atmosphere, so that air drag would not slow the motion of the cannonball. If a cannonball were fired with a low horizontal speed, it would follow a curved path and soon hit Earth below. If it were fired faster, its path would be wider and it would hit a place on Earth farther away. If the cannonball were fired fast enough, Newton reasoned, the curved path would circle Earth indefinitely. The cannonball would be in orbit.

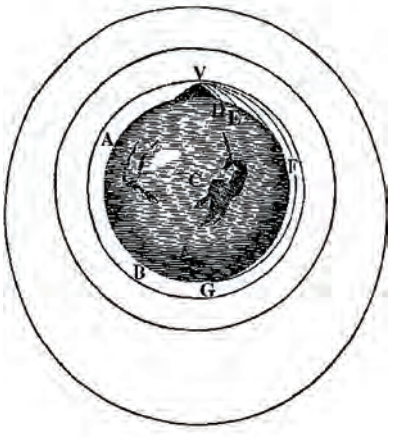


FIGURE 10.19
Original drawing by Isaac Newton showing that a cannonball fired fast enough from a tall mountain could fall all the way around Earth without touching its surface.

Both the cannonball and the Moon continuously circle with a tangential velocity parallel to Earth's surface. This velocity is enough to ensure motion around Earth rather than into it. Without air drag to reduce speed, the Moon or any Earth satellite "falls" around and around Earth indefinitely. Similarly, the planets continuously fall around the Sun in closed paths.

FIGURE 10.20
An Earth satellite is a projectile in a constant state of free fall. Because of its tangential velocity, it falls around Earth rather than vertically into it.

Why don't the planets crash into the Sun? Because of their tangential velocities. What would happen if their tangential velocities were reduced to zero? The answer is simple enough: Their motion would be straight toward the Sun, and they would indeed crash into it. Any objects in the solar system without sufficient tangential velocities have long ago crashed into the Sun. What remains is the harmony we observe.

CHECK POINT

One of the beauties of physics is that there are usually different ways to view and explain a given phenomenon. Is the following explanation valid? Satellites remain in orbit instead of falling to Earth because they are beyond the main pull of Earth's gravity.

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

No, no, a thousand times no! If any moving object were beyond the pull of gravity, it would move in a straight line and would not curve around Earth. Satellites remain in orbit because they *are* being pulled by gravity, not because they are beyond it. For the altitudes of most Earth satellites, Earth's gravitational field is only a few percent weaker than it is at Earth's surface.

10.3 Circular Satellite Orbits

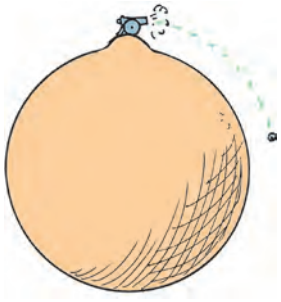


FIGURE 10.21
Fired fast enough, the cannonball will go into orbit.

An 8-km/s cannonball fired horizontally from Newton's mountain would follow Earth's curvature and glide in a circular path around Earth again and again (provided the cannoneer and the cannon got out of the way). Fired at a slower speed, the cannonball would strike Earth's surface; fired at a faster speed, it would overshoot a circular orbit, as we will discuss shortly. Newton calculated the speed for a circular orbit, and because such a cannon-muzzle velocity was clearly impossible, he did not foresee the possibility of humans launching satellites (and likely didn't consider multistage rockets).

Note that, in circular orbit, the speed of a satellite is not changed by gravity: Gravity changes only the direction. We can understand this by comparing a satellite in circular orbit with a bowling ball rolling along a bowling lane. Why doesn't the gravity that acts on the bowling ball change its speed? The answer is that gravity pulls straight downward with no component of force acting forward or backward.

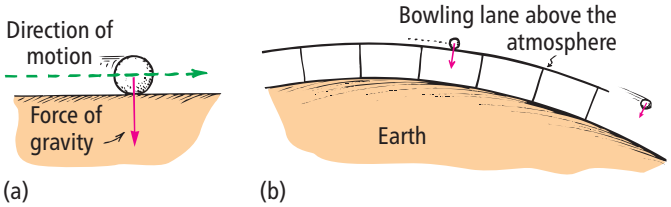


FIGURE 10.22
(a) The force of gravity on the bowling ball is at 90° to its direction of motion, so it has no component of force to pull it forward or backward, and the ball rolls at constant speed. (b) The same is true even if the bowling lane is larger and remains "level" with the curvature of Earth.

Consider a bowling lane that completely surrounds Earth, elevated high enough to be above the atmosphere and air resistance (Figure 10.23). The bowling ball will roll at a constant speed along the lane. If a part of the lane were cut away, the ball would roll off its edge and would hit the ground below. A faster ball encountering the gap would hit the ground farther along the gap. Is there a speed at which the ball will clear the gap (like a motorcyclist who drives off a ramp and clears a gap to meet a ramp on the other side)? The answer is yes: 8 km/s will be fast enough to clear any gap—even a 360° gap. The ball would be in circular orbit.

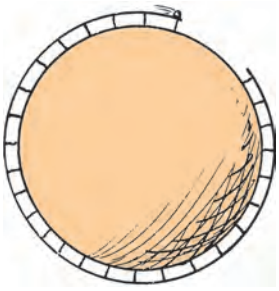


FIGURE 10.23
What speed will allow the ball to clear the gap?

CHECK POINT

1. **Does a satellite in circular orbit always move in a direction perpendicular to the force of gravity that acts on it?**
2. **Does this mean the force of gravity cannot change its speed?**
3. **Can it be truthfully stated that a satellite is in a state of free fall?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Yes. Likewise, the radius of a circle is everywhere perpendicular to its circumference.
2. Yes, no change in speed occurs, only a change in direction.
3. Yes. It falls around the body it is attracted to, rather than straight into it.

For a satellite close to Earth, the period (the time for a complete orbit about Earth) is about 90 minutes. For higher altitudes, the orbital speed is less, the distance is greater, and the period is longer. For example, communication satellites located in orbit 5.6 Earth radii above the surface of Earth have a period of 24 hours. This period matches the period of daily Earth rotation. For an orbit around the equator, these satellites always remain above the same point on the ground. The Moon is even farther away and has a period of 27.3 days. The higher the orbit of a satellite, the less its speed, the longer its path, and the longer its period.[1]

Putting a satellite into Earth orbit requires control over the speed and direction of the rocket that carries it above the atmosphere. A rocket initially fired vertically is intentionally tipped from its vertical course, gaining speed to eventually reach a horizontal speed above the atmosphere. In doing so, usually one or more extra thrusts insures orbital speed. We see this in Figure 10.24, where,

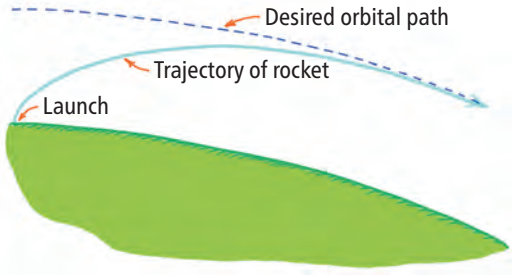


FIGURE 10.24
A rocket launches vertically and then tips to reach a desired path parallel to Earth's surface.

[1]The speed of a satellite in circular orbit is given by $v = \sqrt{\frac{GM}{r}}$, and the period of satellite motion is given by $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{r^3}{GM}}$, where G is the universal gravitational constant (see Chapter 9), M is the mass of Earth (or whatever body the satellite orbits), and r is the distance of the satellite from the center of Earth or other parent body.

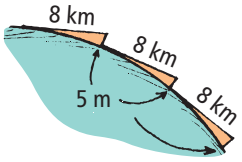
for the sake of simplicity, the satellite is the entire single-stage rocket. With the proper tangential velocity, it falls around Earth, rather than into it, and becomes an Earth satellite.

CHECK POINT

1. **True or false: Space vehicles orbit at altitudes in excess of 150 km to be above both gravity and Earth's atmosphere.**
2. **Satellites in close circular orbit fall about 5 m during each second of orbit. Why doesn't this distance accumulate and send satellites crashing into Earth's surface?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. False. What satellites are above is the atmosphere and air resistance—*not* gravity! It's important to note that Earth's gravity extends throughout the universe in accord with the inverse-square law.
2. In each second, the satellite falls about 5 m below the straight-line tangent it would have followed if there were no gravity. Earth's surface also curves 5 m beneath a straight-line 8-km tangent. The process of falling with the curvature of Earth continues from tangent line to tangent line, so the curved path of the satellite and the curve of Earth's surface "match" all the way around the planet. Satellites do, in fact, crash to Earth's surface from time to time when they encounter air resistance in the upper atmosphere that decreases their orbital speed.



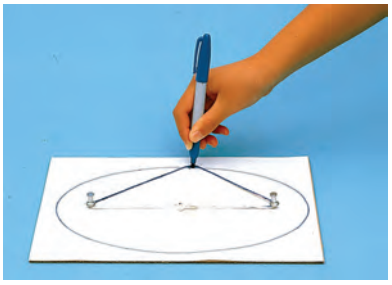


FIGURE 10.25
A simple method for constructing an ellipse.

FIGURE 10.26
Three lamps shining on the ball cast shadows that are all ellipses.

10.4 Elliptical Orbits

If a projectile just above the resistance of the atmosphere is given a horizontal speed somewhat greater than 8 km/s, it will overshoot a circular path and trace an oval path called an **ellipse.** An ellipse is a specific curve: the closed path taken by a point that moves in such a way that the sum of its distances from two fixed points (called *foci*) is constant. For a satellite orbiting a planet, one focus is at the center of the planet; the other focus could be internal or external to the planet. An ellipse can be easily constructed by using a pair of tacks (one at each focus), a piece of string, and a pen or marker (Figure 10.25). The closer the foci are to each other, the closer the ellipse is to a circle. When both foci are together, the ellipse *is* a circle. So we can see that a circle is a special case of an ellipse.

Whereas the speed of a satellite is constant in a circular orbit, the speed varies in an elliptical orbit. For an initial speed greater than 8 km/s, the satellite overshoots a circular path and moves away from Earth, against the force of gravity. It therefore loses speed. The speed it loses in receding is regained as it falls back toward Earth, and it finally rejoins its original path with the same speed it had initially (Figure 10.27). The procedure repeats over and over, and an ellipse is traced each cycle.

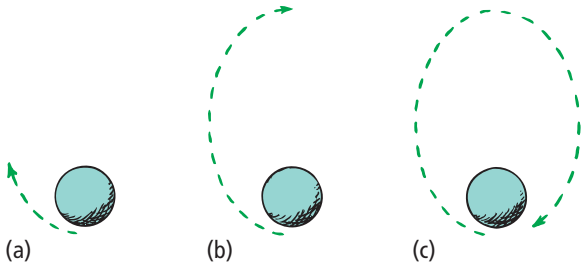


FIGURE 10.27
Elliptical orbit. (a) An Earth satellite that has a speed somewhat greater than 8 km/s overshoots a circular orbit and travels away from Earth. (b) Gravity slows the satellite to a point where it no longer moves farther from Earth. (c) It falls toward Earth, gaining the speed it lost in receding, and follows the same path as before in a repetitious cycle.

CHECK POINT

Can we correctly say that a circular orbit is a special case of an elliptical orbit?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes. We generally say that satellites orbit in elliptical paths, with the circle being a special case.

Interestingly enough, the parabolic path of a projectile, such as a tossed baseball or a cannonball, is actually a tiny segment of a skinny ellipse that extends within and just beyond the center of Earth (Figure 10.28a). In Figure 10.28b, we see several paths of cannonballs fired from Newton's mountain. All these ellipses have the center of Earth as one focus. As the muzzle velocity is increased, the ellipses are less eccentric (more nearly circular—dashed green paths); when the muzzle velocity reaches 8 km/s, the ellipse rounds into a circle and does not intercept Earth's surface. The cannonball coasts in circular orbit. At greater muzzle velocities—solid green paths), orbiting cannonballs trace the familiar external ellipses.

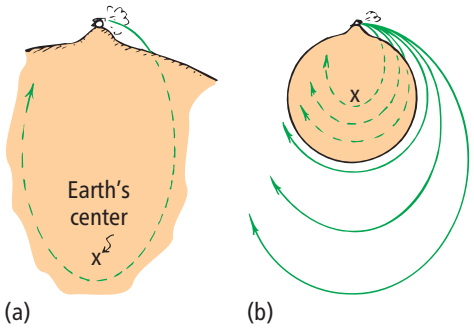
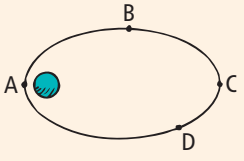


FIGURE 10.28
(a) The cannonball's path, although it approximates a parabola, is really part of an ellipse. Earth's center is the far focus. (b) All paths of the cannonball are ellipses. For less than orbital speeds, the center of Earth is the far focus; for a circular orbit, both foci are Earth's center; for greater speeds, the near focus is Earth's center.

CHECK POINT

The orbital path of a satellite is shown in the sketch. In which of the marked positions, A through D, does the satellite have the greatest speed? The lowest speed?



CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

The satellite has its greatest speed as it whips around position A and has its lowest speed at position C. After passing C, it gains speed as it falls back to A to repeat its cycle.

WORLD MONITORING BY SATELLITE

Satellites are useful in monitoring our planet. Figure A shows the path traced in one period by a satellite in circular orbit launched in a northeasterly direction from Cape Canaveral, Florida. The path is curved only because the map is flat. Note that the path crosses the equator twice in one period because the path describes a circle whose plane passes through Earth's center. Note also that the path does not terminate where it begins. This is because Earth rotates beneath the satellite while it orbits. During the 90-minute period, Earth turns 22.5°, so when the satellite makes a complete orbit, it begins its new sweep many kilometers to the west (about 2500 km at the equator). This is quite advantageous for Earth-monitoring satellites. Figure B shows the area monitored over 10 days by successive sweeps for a typical satellite.

FIGURE A
The path of a typical satellite launched in a northeasterly direction from Cape Canaveral. Because Earth rotates while the satellite orbits, each sweep passes overhead some 2100 km farther west at the latitude of Cape Canaveral.

A dramatic but common example of such monitoring was the 3-year worldwide watch of the distribution of ocean phytoplankton (Figure C). Such extensive information would have been impossible to acquire before the advent of satellites.

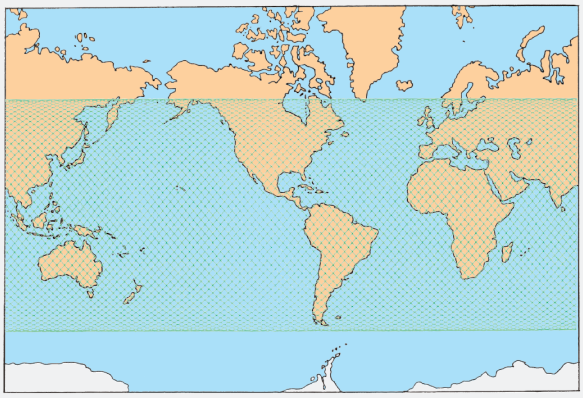


FIGURE B
A typical sweep pattern for a satellite over the period of a week.

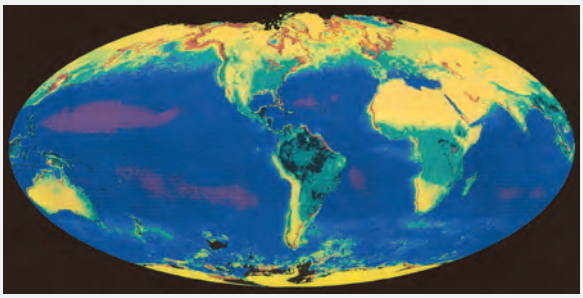


FIGURE C
Phytoplankton production in Earth's oceans over a 3-year period. Magenta and yellow indicate the highest concentrations, while blue indicates moderately high concentrations.

Tycho Brahe (1546–1601)

10.5 Kepler's Laws of Planetary Motion

Newton's law of gravitation was preceded by three important discoveries about planetary motion by the German astronomer Johannes Kepler, who started as a junior assistant to the famed Danish astronomer Tycho Brahe. Brahe directed the world's first great observatory, in Denmark, just before the advent of the telescope. Using huge, brass, protractor-like instruments called *quadrants*, Brahe measured the positions of planets over 20 years so accurately that his measurements are still valid today. Brahe entrusted his data to Kepler. After Brahe's death, Kepler converted Brahe's measurements to values that would be obtained by a stationary observer outside the solar system. Kepler's expectation that the planets would move in perfect circles around the Sun was shattered after years

of effort. He discovered that the paths were ellipses. This is Kepler's first law of planetary motion:

The path of each planet around the Sun is an ellipse with the Sun at one focus.

Kepler also found that the planets do not revolve around the Sun at a uniform speed but move faster when they are nearer the Sun and slower when they are farther from the Sun. They do this in such a way that an imaginary line or spoke joining the Sun and the planet sweeps out equal areas of space in equal times. The triangular area swept out during a month when a planet is orbiting far from the Sun ("triangle" ASB in Figure 10.29) is equal to the triangular area swept out during a month when the planet is orbiting closer to the Sun ("triangle" CSD in Figure 10.29). This is Kepler's second law:

Johannes Kepler (1571–1630)

The line from the Sun to any planet sweeps out equal areas of space in equal time intervals.

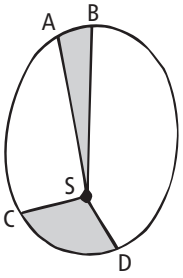


FIGURE 10.29
Equal areas are swept out in equal intervals of time.

Kepler was the first to coin the word *satellite*. He had no clear idea *why* the planets moved as he discovered. Lacking a conceptual model, he didn't see that a satellite is simply a projectile under the influence of a gravitational force directed toward the body that the satellite orbits. You know that if you toss a rock upward, it goes slower the higher it rises because it's moving against gravity. And you know that when the rock returns, it's moving with gravity and its speed increases. Kepler didn't see that a satellite behaves like a projectile, although he realized that a planet slows in going away from the Sun and speeds up in approaching the Sun. A satellite, whether a planet orbiting the Sun or one of today's satellites orbiting Earth, moves slower against the gravitational field and faster with the field. Kepler didn't see this simplicity and instead fabricated complex systems of geometrical figures to make sense of his discoveries. These systems proved to be futile.

After 10 years of searching by trial and error for a connection between the time it takes a planet to orbit the Sun and its distance from the Sun, Kepler discovered a third law. From Brahe's data, Kepler found that any planet's period (T) is related to its average distance from the Sun (r). The third law is:

The square of the orbital period of a planet is directly proportional to the cube of the average distance of the planet from the Sun ($T^2 \sim r^3$ for all planets).

Knowing the size and period of Earth's orbit, we can use Kepler's third law and the orbital period of a planet to compute its average distance from the Sun.

FINDING YOUR WAY

The Global Positioning System (GPS) is a satellite-based navigation system of 24 satellites placed into orbit by the U.S. Department of Defense. Originally intended for military applications, in the 1980s the system was made available for civilian use. GPS works in any weather conditions, anywhere in the world, 24 hours a day. GPS satellites circle Earth twice daily in very precise orbits some 20,000 km high, significantly higher than the International Space Station and a little more than half as high as geostationary satellites. GPS satellites transmit signal information to Earth's GPS devices, which "triangulate" the user's exact location by comparing the time a signal was transmitted by a satellite with the time it was received. The time difference tells the GPS receiver the distance from the satellite. Then, with distance measurements from a few more satellites, the GPS receiver determines the user's position and displays it on the unit's electronic map.

A GPS receiver must be locked on to the signal of at least three satellites to calculate a 2-dimensional position (latitude and longitude) and track movement. With four or more satellites in view, the receiver can determine the user's 3-dimensional position (latitude, longitude, and altitude). Once the user's position has been determined, the GPS unit can calculate other information, such as speed, bearing, track, trip distance, distance to destination, sunrise and sunset times, and more.

fyi

- In 1957 only one artificial satellite orbited Earth—Sputnik, launched by the Soviet Union. Today there are many thousands. Although satellites rarely collide with one another, when they do they add a myriad of small pieces to the growing amount of space junk—problematic for working satellites, the ISS, and astronomers who used to enjoy clear skies.

This means that the ratio T^2/r^3 is the same for all planets. So, if a planet's period is known, its average orbital radial distance is easily calculated (and vice versa).

It is interesting to note that Kepler was familiar with Galileo's ideas about inertia and accelerated motion, but he failed to apply them to his own work. Like Aristotle, he thought that the force on a moving body would be in the same direction as the body's motion. Kepler never appreciated the concept of inertia. Galileo, on the other hand, never appreciated Kepler's work and held to his conviction that the planets move in circles.[2] Further understanding of planetary motion required someone who could integrate the findings of these two great scientists.[3] The rest is history, for this task fell to Isaac Newton.

10.6 Energy Conservation and Satellite Motion

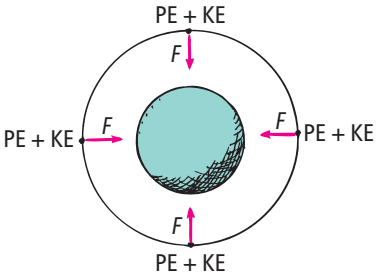


FIGURE 10.30
The force of gravity on the satellite is always toward the center of the body it orbits. For a satellite in circular orbit, no component of force acts along the direction of motion. The speed and thus the KE do not change.

Recall, from Chapter 7, that an object in motion possesses kinetic energy (KE) due to its motion. An object above Earth's surface possesses potential energy (PE) by virtue of its position. Everywhere in its orbit, a satellite has both KE and PE. The sum of KE and PE is a constant throughout the orbit. The simplest case occurs for a satellite in circular orbit.

In a circular orbit, the distance between the satellite and the center of the attracting body does not change, which means that the PE of the satellite is the same everywhere in its orbit. Then, by the conservation of energy, the KE must also be constant. So a satellite in circular orbit coasts at an unchanging PE, KE, and speed (Figure 10.30).

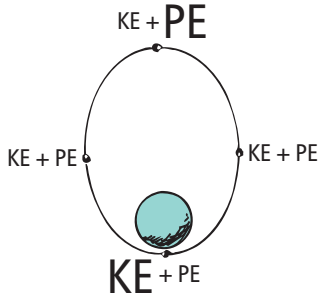


FIGURE 10.31
The sum of KE and PE for a satellite is a constant at all points along its orbit.

In an elliptical orbit, the situation is different. Both speed and distance vary. The PE is greatest when the satellite is farthest away (at the *apogee*) and smallest when the satellite is closest (at the *perigee*). Note that the KE will be smallest when the PE is greatest, and the KE will be greatest when the PE is smallest. At every point in the orbit, the sum of KE and PE is the same (Figure 10.31).

At all points along the elliptical orbit, except at the apogee and the perigee, there is a component of gravitational force parallel to the direction of motion of the satellite. This component of force changes the speed of the satellite. Or we can say that (this component of force) × (distance moved) = ΔKE. Either way, when the satellite gains altitude and moves against this component, its speed and KE decrease. The decrease continues to the apogee. Once past the apogee, the satellite moves in the same direction as the component, and the speed and KE increase. The increase continues until the satellite whips past the perigee and repeats the cycle.

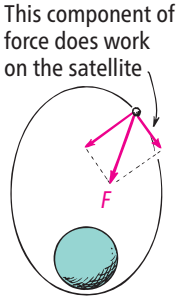


FIGURE 10.32
In an elliptical orbit, a component of force exists along the direction of the satellite's motion. This component changes the speed and, thus, the KE. (The perpendicular component changes only the direction.)

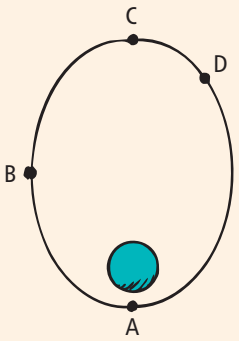
[2]It is not easy to look at familiar things through the new insights of others. We tend to see only what we have learned to see or wish to see. Galileo reported that many of his colleagues were unable or refused to see the moons of Jupiter when they peered skeptically through his telescopes. Galileo's telescopes were a boon to astronomy, but more important than an improved instrument to see things clearer was a new way of understanding what is seen. Is this still true today?

[3]Perhaps your instructor will show that Kepler's third law results when Newton's inverse-square formula for gravitational force is equated to centripetal force, and how it equals a constant that depends on only G and M, the mass of the body about which orbiting occurs. Intriguing stuff!

Wouldn't Newton have relished seeing satellite motion in terms of *energy*—a concept that came much later?

CHECK POINT

1. **The orbital path of a satellite is shown in the sketch. In which marked positions, A through D, does the satellite have the greatest KE? The greatest PE? The greatest total energy?**
2. **Why does the force of gravity change the speed of a satellite when it is in an elliptical orbit but not when it is in a circular orbit?**



CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. KE is maximum at the perigee A, PE is maximum at the apogee C, and the total energy is the same everywhere in the orbit.
2. In a circular orbit, the gravitational force that points to Earth's center is always perpendicular to the orbital path. With no component of gravitational force along the path, only the direction of motion changes—not the speed. In elliptical orbit, however, the satellite moves in directions that are not perpendicular to the force of gravity. Then components of force do exist along the path, which change the speed of the satellite. A component of force along (parallel to) the satellite's path does work to change its KE.

10.7 Escape Speed

We know that a cannonball fired horizontally at 8 km/s from Newton's mountain would find itself in orbit. But what would happen if the cannonball were instead fired at the same speed *vertically*? It would rise to some maximum height, reverse direction, and then fall back to Earth. Then the old saying "What goes up must come down" would hold true, just as surely as a stone tossed skyward will be returned by gravity (unless, as we shall see, its speed is great enough).

In today's spacefaring age, it is more accurate to say "What goes up *may* come down" because there is a critical starting speed that permits a projectile to outrun gravity and to escape Earth. This critical speed is called the **escape speed** or, if direction is involved, the *escape velocity*. From the surface of Earth, the escape speed is 11.2 km/s. If you launch a projectile at any speed greater than that, it will leave Earth, traveling slower and slower, never stopping due to Earth's gravity.[4] We can understand the magnitude of this speed from an energy point of view.

How much work would be required to lift a payload against the force of Earth's gravity to a distance very, very far ("infinitely far") away? We might think that the change of PE would be infinite because the distance is infinite. But gravity diminishes with distance by the inverse-square law. The force of gravity on the payload would be strong only near Earth. Most of the work done in launching a rocket occurs within 10,000 km or so of Earth. It turns out that the change of PE of a 1-kg body moved from the surface of Earth to an infinite distance is 63 million joules (63 MJ).

[4]Escape speed from any planet or any body is given by $v = \sqrt{\frac{2MG}{r}}$, where G is the universal gravitational constant, M is the mass of the attracting body, and r is the distance from its center. (At the surface of the body, r is simply the radius of the body.) For a bit more mathematical insight, compare this formula with the one for orbital speed in footnote 1 on page 241.

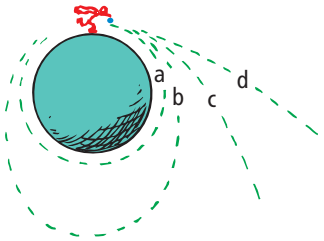
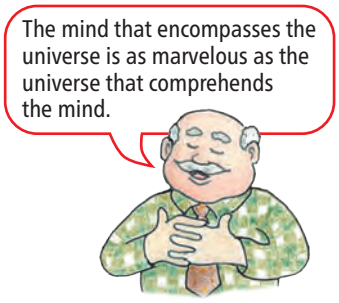


FIGURE 10.33
(a) If Superhero tosses a ball 8 km/s horizontally from the top of a mountain high enough to be just above air resistance, then about 90 minutes later he can turn around and catch it (ignoring Earth's rotation). (b) Tossed slightly faster, the ball will assume an elliptical orbit and return in a slightly longer time. (c) Tossed faster than 11.2 km/s, it will escape Earth. (d) Tossed at more than 42.5 km/s, it will escape the solar system.



So, to lift a payload infinitely far from Earth's surface requires at least 63 MJ of energy per kilogram of load. In practice, this energy is added over a distance as the payload is lifted from Earth's surface. But one can imagine launching the payload like a cannonball, with enough initial speed that it coasts to great distance. It turns out that in the absence of air drag the payload's launch speed, regardless of its mass, must be at least 11.2 km/s. This is called the escape speed from the surface of Earth.[5]

If we give a payload any more energy than 63 MJ per kilogram as it leaves Earth or, for a hypothetical cannonball launch, any more speed than 11.2 km/s, then, if we ignore air drag, the payload will escape from Earth, never to return. As it continues outward, its PE increases and its KE decreases. Its speed becomes less and less, although it is never reduced to zero. The payload outruns the gravity of Earth. It escapes.

The escape speeds from various bodies in the solar system are shown in Table 10.1. Note that the escape speed from the surface of the Sun is 618 km/s. Even at a 150,000,000-km distance from the Sun (Earth's distance), the escape speed to break free of the Sun's influence is 42.5 km/s—considerably greater than the escape speed from Earth. An object projected from Earth at a speed greater than 11.2 km/s but less than 42.5 km/s will escape Earth but not the Sun. Rather than recede forever, it will occupy an orbit around the Sun.

TABLE 10.1 ESCAPE SPEEDS AT THE SURFACE OF BODIES IN THE SOLAR SYSTEM

Astronomical Body	Mass (Earth masses)	Radius (Earth radii)	Escape Speed (km/s)
Sun	333,000	109	618
Sun (at a distance of Earth's orbit)		23,500	42.2
Jupiter	318	11	59.5
Saturn	95.2	9.1	35.5
Neptune	17.1	3.9	23.5
Uranus	14.5	4.0	21.3
Earth	1.00	1.00	11.2
Venus	0.82	0.95	10.4
Mars	0.11	0.53	5.0
Mercury	0.055	0.38	4.3
Moon	0.0123	0.27	2.4

CHECK POINT

How can a projectile escape Earth when the gravitational field of Earth extends to infinity?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Although Earth's gravitational field extends throughout the universe, a fast-enough projectile can reach a location where Earth gravity is trivial compared with other sources of gravity. "Earth's gravitational field is not the only field in town."

[5]Interestingly enough, this might well be called the *maximum falling speed*. The speed of any object, however far from Earth, released from rest and allowed to fall to Earth under only the influence of Earth's gravity, would not exceed 11.2 km/s. (With air friction, it would be less.)

The *Pioneer 10* probe, which presently is well beyond the major planets, was launched from Earth in 1972 with a speed of only 15 km/s. The escape was accomplished by directing the probe to pass just behind giant Jupiter. It was whipped about by Jupiter's great gravitational field, picking up speed in the process—similar to the increase in the speed of a baseball that encounters an oncoming bat (but without physical contact). Its speed of departure from Jupiter was increased enough to exceed the escape speed from the Sun at the distance of Jupiter. *Pioneer 10* is in the outer reaches of the solar system, having passed the orbits of Neptune and Pluto in 1983. Unless it collides with another body, it will wander indefinitely through interstellar space. Like a bottle cast into the sea with a note inside, *Pioneer 10* contains information about Earth that might be of interest to extraterrestrials, in hopes that it will one day "wash up" and be found on some distant "seashore."

FIGURE 10.34
Historic *Pioneer 10,* launched from Earth in 1972, passed the outermost planet in 1983 and is now drifting through the outer reaches of our solar system.

It is important to point out that the escape speed of a body is the initial speed given by a brief thrust, after which there is no force to assist motion. One could escape Earth at *any* sustained speed greater than zero, given enough time. For example, suppose a rocket is launched to a destination such as the Moon. If the rocket engines burn out when still close to Earth, the rocket needs a minimum speed of 11.2 km/s. But if the rocket engines can be sustained for long periods of time, the rocket could reach the Moon without ever attaining 11.2 km/s.

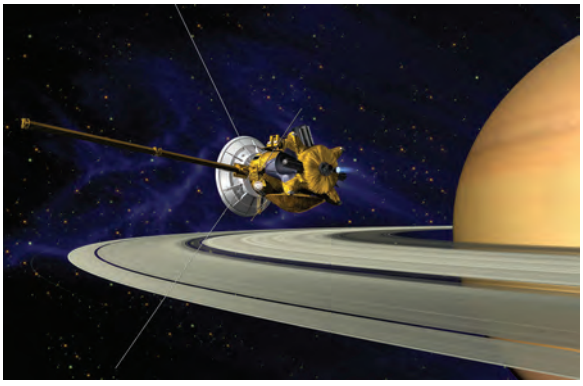


FIGURE 10.35
The European–U.S. spacecraft *Cassini* beams close-up images of Saturn and its giant moon Titan to Earth. It also measures surface temperatures, magnetic fields, and the sizes, speeds, and trajectories of tiny surrounding space particles.

It is interesting to note that the accuracy with which an unmanned rocket reaches its destination is not accomplished by staying on a preplanned path or by getting back on that path if the rocket strays off course. No attempt is made to return the rocket to its original path. Instead, the control center in effect asks: Where is it now and what is its velocity? What is the best way to reach its destination, given its present situation? With the aid of high-speed computers, the answers to these questions are used to find a new path. Then corrective thrusters direct the rocket to this new path. This process is repeated over and over again all the way to the goal.[6]

fyi

- Just as planets fall around the Sun, stars fall around the centers of galaxies. Those with insufficient tangential speeds are pulled into, and are gobbled up by, the galactic nucleus—usually a black hole.

[6]Is there a lesson to be learned here? Suppose you find that you are off course. You may, like the rocket, find it more fruitful to follow a course that leads to your goal as best plotted from your present position and circumstances, rather than try to get back on the course you plotted from an earlier position and under, perhaps, different circumstances.

Chapter 10 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Projectile Any object that moves through the air or through space under the influence of gravity.

Parabola The curved path followed by a projectile under the influence of only constant gravity.

Satellite A projectile or small celestial body that orbits a larger celestial body.

Ellipse The oval shaped path followed by a satellite. The sum of the distances from any point on the path to two points called foci is a constant. When the foci are together at one point, the ellipse is a circle. As the foci get farther apart, the ellipse becomes more "eccentric."

Kepler's laws Law 1: The path of each planet around the Sun is an ellipse with the Sun at one focus.

Law 2: The line from the Sun to any planet sweeps out equal areas of space in equal time intervals.

Law 3: The square of the orbital period of a planet is directly proportional to the cube of the average distance of the planet from the Sun ($T^2 \sim r^3$ for all planets).

Escape speed The speed that a projectile, space probe, or similar object must reach to escape the gravitational influence of Earth or of another celestial body to which it is attracted.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

10.1 Projectile Motion

1. Why do projectiles have curved paths?
2. Why does the vertical component of velocity for a projectile change with time, whereas the horizontal component of velocity doesn't?
3. When a ball is thrown upward at an angle, what happens to the horizontal component of its velocity as it rises? As it falls?
4. When a ball is thrown upward at an angle, what happens to the horizontal component of its velocity as it rises? As it falls?
5. Do your answers to the preceding questions depend on the angle at which the projectile is launched?
6. How many meters does a tossed baseball fall beneath a straight-line path in traveling for 1 s? For 2 s?
7. A ball is launched vertically at 200 m/s. If air resistance is ignored, at what point will its speed return to 200 m/s?
8. A projectile is launched vertically at 50 m/s. If air resistance can be neglected, at what speed will it return to its initial level?

10.2 Fast-Moving Projectiles—Satellites

9. At what horizontal speed will the path of a projectile match the curvature of Earth?
10. Why will the speed of a projectile following Earth's curvature not be changed by gravity?
11. Why is it important that a satellite be above Earth's atmosphere?

10.3 Circular Satellite Orbits

12. Will the force of gravity change the speed of a bowling ball if the bowling lane is inclined?
13. What is the direction of gravitational force on a satellite with respect to its direction of motion?
14. How much time does a satellite in close orbit about the Earth take to complete each revolution?
15. For orbits of greater altitude, is the period longer or shorter?

10.4 Elliptical Orbits

16. Is the speed of a satellite in an elliptical orbit constant? Explain.
17. Is the speed of an Earth satellite in an elliptical orbit greatest at its near or far points?

10.5 Kepler's Laws of Planetary Motion

18. Who gathered the data that showed planets travelling in elliptical paths around the Sun? Who discovered elliptical orbits? Who explained them?
19. According to Kepler's third law, which ratio is always constant for all planets in the solar system?
20. What is the location of the Sun with respect to the orbit of the planet in Kepler's thinking? In Newton's thinking?

10.6 Energy Conservation and Satellite Motion

21. Describe the variations in the potential energy of a satellite when its trajectory is circular and when it is elliptical.
22. At which point in the elliptical orbit of a planet is kinetic energy the greatest? Potential energy?

10.7 Escape Speed

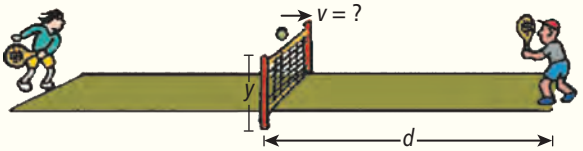
23. Escape speed from Earth is 11.2 km/s. Is it possible to escape from Earth at half this speed? At one-quarter this speed? If so, how?
24. How does escape speed from Mars compare with escape speed from Earth?
25. A space probe can outrun Earth's gravity, but can it reach beyond Earth's gravity?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

26. With stick and strings, make a "trajectory stick" as shown on page 235.
27. With your friends, whirl a bucket of water in a vertical circle fast enough so the water doesn't spill out. As it happens, the water in the bucket *is* falling, but with less speed than you give to the bucket. Tell how your bucket swing links to satellite motion—that satellites in orbit continually fall toward Earth with just the right speed to not get closer to the curved Earth below. Remind your friends that physics is about finding the connections in nature!

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

28. A ball is thrown horizontally from a cliff at a speed of 20 m/s. What will its speed be after 2 s, and after 3 s? Does its horizontal speed also change with time? Give reasons.
29. A cannon has a muzzle speed of 70 m/s. (a) At what angle should it be fired to reach maximum distance R? (b) Calculate R. (c) Calculate the total duration and maximum height to reach R.
30. You kicked a football with a velocity of v_0 m/s, which leaves the ground at an angle of θ_0. Calculate the (a) maximum height it reached during the flight, (b) total time it traveled before hitting the ground and, (c) total distance it covered before hitting the ground.
31. A ball projected with an initial velocity of 200 m/s at an angle of 60° hits a bird on a tree at the top of its trajectory. Ignoring air resistance, calculate the speed at which the ball hits the bird.
32. Students in Chuck Stone's lab (Figure 10.5) measure the speed of a steel ball to be 8.0 m/s when launched horizontally from a 1.0-m high tabletop. Their objective is to place a 20-cm tall coffee can on the floor to catch the ball. Show that they score a bullseye when the can is placed 3.2 m from the base of the table.
33. The period of revolution of two satellites S_1 and S_2, which revolve around a planet in coplanar circular orbits in the same sense are 2 h and 4 h, respectively. If the radius of the orbit of S_2 is 10^7 m, then find the radius of the orbit of S_1.
34. Suppose the steps of a staircase are 0.2 m wide and 0.3 m high. You dropped a ball at the top, and it rolls off with a horizontal velocity of 1.5 m/s. Which steps it will miss before the step where it hit first?
35. A horizontally moving tennis ball barely clears the net, a distance y above the surface of the court. To land within the tennis court the ball must not be moving too fast.



(a) To remain within the court's border, a horizontal distance d from the bottom of the net, show that the ball's maximum speed over the net is

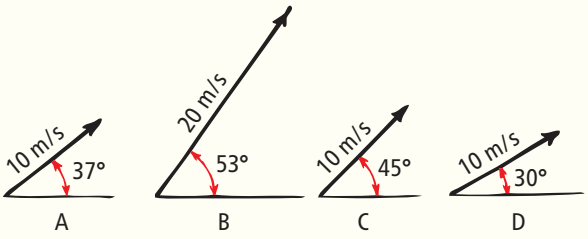
$$v = \frac{d}{\sqrt{\frac{2y}{g}}}$$

(b) Suppose the height of the net is 1.00 m, and the court's border is 12.0 m from the bottom of the net. Use $g = 10\ \text{m/s}^2$ and show that the maximum speed of the horizontally moving ball clearing the net is about 27 m/s (about 60 mi/h).

(c) Does the mass of the ball make a difference? Defend your answer.

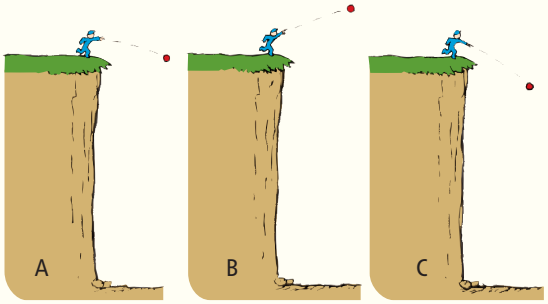
THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

36. A ball is thrown upward at velocities and angles shown. From greatest to least, rank them by their



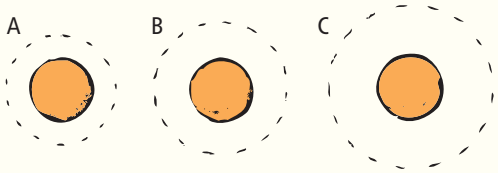
(a) vertical components of velocity.
(b) horizontal components of velocity.
(c) accelerations when they reach the top of their paths.

37. A ball is tossed off the edge of a cliff with the same speed but at different angles, as shown. From greatest to least, rank the



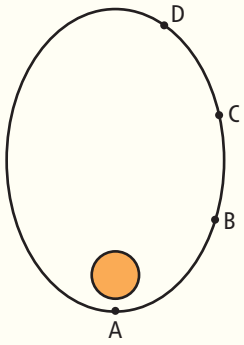
(a) initial PEs of the balls relative to the ground below.
(b) initial KEs of the balls when tossed.
(c) KEs of the balls when hitting the ground below.
(d) times of flight while airborne.

38. The dashed lines show three circular orbits about Earth. Rank the following quantities from greatest to least.



(a) Their orbital speed
(b) Their time to orbit Earth

39. The positions of a satellite in elliptical orbit are indicated. Rank these quantities from greatest to least.



(a) Gravitational force
(b) Speed
(c) Momentum
(d) KE
(e) PE
(f) Total energy (KE + PE)
(g) Acceleration

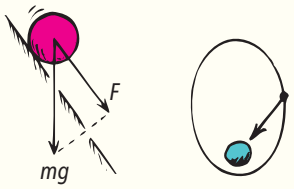
THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

40. When you roll a ball off a tabletop will the time it takes to hit the floor depend on the speed of the ball? (Will a fast ball take a longer time to hit the floor?) Defend your answer.
41. Compared to slowly rolling a ball off a tabletop, will a faster-moving ball hit the floor with a higher *speed?* Defend your answer.
42. If the initial speed of a projectile in x and y direction is given as v_{x0} and v_{y0}, respectively, can we estimate the angle through which the projectile is launched at any time t? Explain.
43. A heavy crate accidentally falls from a high-flying airplane just as it flies directly above Mike's shiny red Corvette in a parking lot. Relative to the Corvette, where does the crate crash?

44. In projectile motion, if we consider air resistance to be negligible, (a) what should be the shape of the path followed by the projectile? (b) For a projectile motion, if $x = v_0 \cos\theta\, t$ and $y = (v_0 \sin\theta)\, t - \frac{1}{2}gt^2$, show that the path is parabolic.
45. Fragments of fireworks beautifully illuminate the night sky. (a) What specific path is ideally traced by each fragment? (b) What paths would the fragments trace in a gravity-free region?

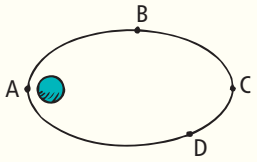
46. In the absence of air resistance, why does the horizontal component of a projectile's motion not change, while the vertical component does?

47. If air drag can be neglected, at what point in its trajectory does an upwardly thrown baseball have its minimum speed? How does this compare with the horizontal component of its velocity at other points?
48. In a projectile motion, the ranges are equal for elevations that exceed or fall short of 45° by equal amounts. Do you agree with this statement? Explain. (Range for a projectile with initial speed v_0 projected at an angle θ_0 is $R = \frac{v_0^2 \sin 2\theta_0}{g}$.)
49. Two golfers each hit a ball at the same speed such that both balls have the same range, but the projection angles are different. What could be the possible angle? Give an example.
50. A care package helicopter flying horizontally at a speed u and an altitude H drops a package on the ground. If a person stands right below the helicopter on the ground, will she be able to catch the care package? Explain.
51. The hang time of a basketball player who jumps a vertical distance of 2 feet (0.6 m) in a standing jump is about 2/3 second. If another jumper jumps twice as high, will hang time be twice as long?
52. Since the Moon is gravitationally attracted to Earth, why doesn't it simply crash into Earth?
53. Do Kepler's Laws apply to satellites orbiting the Earth?
54. Which planets have a more-than-one-Earth-year period, planets nearer than Earth to the Sun, or planets farther from the Sun than Earth?
55. When a satellite coasts in a circular orbit at constant speed about Earth, is it accelerating? If so, in what direction? If not, why not?
56. Does the speed of a falling object depend on its mass? Does the speed of a satellite in orbit depend on its mass? Defend your answers.
57. Sputnik was the first artificial Earth satellite. It's altitude, period, and speed were easily confirmed by observation, but not its mass. This perplexed Dwight D. Eisenhower, the President of the United States, who asked scientists to calculate its mass. Why could they not do so?
58. Which is larger, the diameter of the Sun or the diameter of Moon's orbit about Earth? (Check figures on the inside back cover Physical Data.)
59. A circularly moving object requires a centripetal force. What supplies the centripetal force for satellites that orbit Earth?
60. In what condition does a particle of mass m cease to remain bound and escape from the gravitational attraction of mass M?
61. When a satellite in circular orbit slows, perhaps due to the firing of a "retro rocket," it ends up gaining more speed than it had initially. Why?
62. Earth is closer to the Sun in December than in June. In which of these two months is Earth moving faster around the Sun?
63. Neglecting air resistance, could a satellite be put into orbit in a circular tunnel beneath Earth's surface? Discuss.
64. In the sketch on the left, a ball gains KE when rolling down a hill because work is done by the component of weight (F) that acts in the direction of motion. Sketch in the similar component of gravitational force that does work to change the KE of the satellite on the right.



65. Why is work done by the force of gravity on a satellite when it moves from one part of an elliptical orbit to another, but no work is involved when it moves from one part of a circular orbit to another?
66. For a satellite to be in a circular orbit around a planet, what should be the angle of its velocity to the force of gravity?
67. A satellite is circling around the Earth, situated in between the Earth-Moon system. (a) What should its period be? (b) If the distance is equal to Earth-Moon, should the period be the same as (a)? (Hint: Period of Moon is $T_M = 27.3$ days.)
68. What is unique about a geosynchronous orbit?
69. If you stopped an Earth satellite dead in its tracks, it would simply crash into Earth. Why, then, don't the communications satellites that "hover motionless" above the same spot on Earth crash into Earth?
70. Can a satellite coast in a stable orbit in a plane that doesn't intersect the Earth's center? Defend your answer.
71. What happens to a satellite's period when it reaches a higher Earth orbit?
72. If a flight mechanic drops a toolbox from a high-flying jumbo jet, it crashes to Earth. An astronaut on the orbiting space shuttle in 2008 accidentally dropped a toolbox. Why didn't it crash to Earth in this accidental drop? Defend your answer.
73. How could an inhabitant of the ISS "drop" an object vertically to Earth?
74. A high-orbiting spaceship travels at 7 km/s with respect to Earth. Suppose it projects a capsule rearward at 7 km/s with respect to the spaceship. Describe the path of the capsule with respect to Earth.
75. The orbital velocity of Earth about the Sun is 30 km/s. If Earth were suddenly stopped in its tracks, it would simply fall radially into the Sun. A congressional leader suggests firing a rocket loaded with radioactive wastes into the Sun for permanent disposal. For this to occur, with what speed and in what direction with respect to Earth's orbit should the rocket be fired?
76. What is the advantage of launching space vehicles from high-flying aircraft instead of from the ground?
77. Which requires less fuel, launching a rocket to escape speed from the Moon or from Earth? Defend your answer.
78. What is the maximum possible speed of impact upon the Earth's surface for a faraway body initially at rest that falls to Earth by virtue of Earth's gravity only?

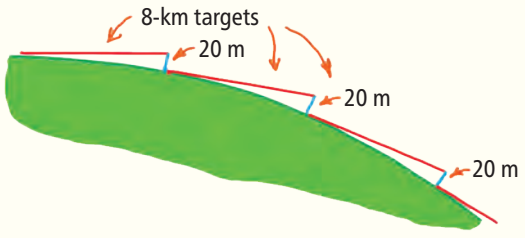
79. Weightlessness: You and your friends are discussing why astronauts are weightless in orbiting space. One of your friends argues that there is no gravity in space since space is a vacuum and there is no air resistance, while another friend suggests that astronauts are too far from the Earth, so gravitation has minimal effect. Who is right in your opinion and why? Or is neither of these arguments appropriate? Defend your answer.
80. The force of gravity on Earth satellites making circular orbits remains constant at all points along the orbit. Why is this not the case for satellites in elliptical orbits?
81. At which of the indicated positions does the satellite in elliptical orbit experience the greatest gravitational force? Have the greatest speed? The greatest velocity? The greatest momentum? The greatest kinetic energy? The greatest gravitational potential energy? The greatest total energy? The greatest angular momentum? The greatest acceleration?



82. Earth is farthest away from the Sun in July, and closest in January. In which of these two months does Earth experience the greatest acceleration in its path around the Sun?
83. At what point in its elliptical orbit about the Sun is the acceleration of Earth toward the Sun at a maximum? At what point is it at a minimum? Defend your answers.

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

84. Mars has about one-ninth the mass of Earth. If Mars were somehow positioned into the same orbit as Earth, discuss how long it would take Mars to circle the Sun compared with Earth. (Longer, shorter, or the same?)
85. Would the speed of a satellite in close circular orbit about Jupiter be greater than, equal to, or less than 8 km/s? Think of "Newton's cannon," in Figure 10.19.
86. Why are satellites normally sent into orbit by firing them in an easterly direction, the same direction in which Earth spins? Discuss why locations near the equator are favored.
87. Suppose a satellite is revolving around the Earth in a circle of radius r km. (a) How would you estimate the projection speed of this satellite in terms of the mass of the Earth, M? (b) Can you express this speed in terms of the radius of the Earth, R? (c) Will you be able to estimate the time period of one revolution with this information?
88. The gravitational potential energy of a particle of mass m at a distance r from the center of a huge spherical body of mass M is $U = -\frac{GMm}{r}$. (a) What is the significance of the negative sign? (b) The kinetic energy of this particle is given as $E = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$, calculate its escape velocity.
89. Earth's surface curves. We've learned that it drops 5 m vertically for every 8-km tangent, which means satellites in close orbit around Earth travel 8 km/s. What speed would be needed to orbit a planet that curves 20 m for each 8-km tangent, assuming the same g as for Earth?



90. A "geosynchronous" Earth satellite can remain nearly directly overhead in Singapore, but not in San Francisco. Discuss why?
91. Why does a satellite burn up when it descends into the atmosphere, but not on the rocket when it ascends through the atmosphere?
92. Estimate the values of the escape velocities on the surface of Earth and the Moon. (Use what you learned in Question 88).
93. A geostationary satellite is established in an orbit in the plane of the equator such that the period is 24 h, and it moves in synchronization with the Earth. Estimate the radius of the geostationary orbit.
94. What is the binding energy of the Earth-particle system? (Use the concept of escape velocity)
95. In an accidental explosion, a satellite breaks in half while in circular orbit about Earth. What is the fate of the half brought momentarily to rest? Discuss what happens to the other half of the satellite.
96. At the Earth's North Pole, an object's exact weight is 10.0 N. Estimate the true weight of this object in a geostationary satellite. The radius of the geostationary satellite orbit is 4.2×10^4 km, and height above the Earth's surface is about 3.6×10^4 km.
97. A rocket coasts in an elliptical orbit around Earth. To attain the greatest amount of KE for escape for a given amount of fuel, should it fire its engines to accelerate forward when it is at the apogee or at the perigee? (*Hint:* Let the formula $Fd =$ KE be your guide to thinking. Suppose the thrust F is brief and of the same duration in either case. Then consider the distance d the rocket would travel during this brief burst at the apogee and at the perigee.)

CHAPTER TEN Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. If you tossed a baseball horizontally in a gravity-free region, it would continue in a straight line. With gravity and one second later it falls about
   (a) 1 m below that line.
   (b) 5 m below that line.
   (c) 10 m below that line.
   (d) None of these
2. When no air resistance acts on a projectile, its horizontal acceleration is
   (a) *g*.
   (b) at right angles to *g*.
   (c) centripetal.
   (d) zero.
3. Without air resistance, a ball tossed at an angle of 40° with the horizontal goes as far downrange as a ball tossed at the same speed at an angle of
   (a) 45°.
   (b) 50°.
   (c) 60°.
   (d) None of these
4. When you toss a projectile sideways, it curves as it falls. It will become an Earth satellite if the curve it makes
   (a) matches the curve of Earth's surface.
   (b) results in a straight line.
   (c) spirals out indefinitely.
   (d) None of these
5. Nellie fires her pellet gun at an angle of 10° above the horizontal, while simultaneously dropping another pellet next to her pellet gun. The pellet to hit the ground first
   (a) is the dropped one.
   (b) is the fired one.
   (c) both hit at the same time.
   (d) depends on the relative masses of the pellets.
6. What holds the International Space Station up so it doesn't crash into Earth?
   (a) Gravitational force.
   (b) Centripetal force.
   (c) Both gravitational and other forces.
   (d) Nothing; no force holds it up.
7. The Moon does not crash into Earth because
   (a) Earth's gravitational field is relatively weak at the Moon.
   (b) the gravitational pull of other planets keeps the Moon up.
   (c) the Moon has a sufficient tangential speed.
   (d) the Moon has less mass than Earth.
8. An Earth satellite in an elliptical orbit has its highest speed
   (a) closest to Earth.
   (b) when getting farther from Earth.
   (c) when farthest from Earth.
   (d) Need more information
9. Which of these vary for satellites in circular orbits?
   (a) Speed
   (b) Momentum
   (c) Kinetic energy
   (d) None of the above
10. A satellite in Earth's orbit is mainly above Earth's
    (a) atmosphere.
    (b) gravitational field.
    (c) Both of these
    (d) Neither of these

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (b): Once the baseball leaves your hand it is in "free fall." It accelerates downward at 10 m/s^2 and in 1 second will drop 5 m beneath the path it would take without gravity. Just because 4.9 m is more precise does not merit (d) as the best answer. The idea is what is important, so the best answer is 5 m below that line, choice (b). **2. (d):** The key idea for projectile motion is that horizontal and vertical motions are independent of each other. Since no horizontal force acts on the projectile, no acceleration occurs horizontally. Horizontal acceleration is zero. Acceleration occurs only vertically, at *g*. **3. (b):** This tests for the complementary angles for the range of projectiles with equal initial speeds. The complement to 40° is 50° (the sum equaling 90°). The same range is reached for both a same-speed projectile launched at 40° as at 50°. **4. (a):** This question tests for an elementary understanding of satellite motion. Choice (a) of matched curves is the crux of satellite motion. The other choices are nonsense. **5 (a):** Don't say they hit the ground at the same time, which would be true if the gun were horizontal at 0°. Because the gun is pointed upward at 10°, the fired pellet spends additional time in the air and the dropped one hits first. Mass does not affect the pellet's downward acceleration *g*. **6 (d):** The centripetal force on a satellite *is* the gravitational force. The only significant force acting on the ISS is gravitation by Earth—which means the ISS is in a state of free fall around Earth. It doesn't fall straight down because it's been imparted with enough tangential velocity to fall in a curved path that continually matches Earth's curvature. Nothing holds it up while this is happening. Nothing. **7. (c):** Like any satellite, tangential speed is the key. If the Moon's tangential speed somehow became zero, it would crash straight into Earth, whatever its mass. **8. (a):** A satellite "whips" around Earth, moving slowly far from Earth and gaining speed when approaching. Its highest speed is where it whips closest to Earth. **9. (d):** Speed remains unchanged in a circular orbit. This means both momentum and kinetic energy also remain unchanged. These do not vary in a circular orbit. **10. (a):** Oops, many students answer (c), both of these. Not so! A satellite must be above Earth's atmosphere. Otherwise air friction would slow its speed. But it is NOT above Earth's gravitational field! If it were above Earth's gravity, it would follow a straight-line path rather than be pulled into orbit by the continual pull of gravity.

This page is intentionally left blank

PART TWO

Properties of Matter

I love water! Every water molecule in every drop of rain has a history that intrigues me. There are more water molecules in a single raindrop than there are drops of water in all the Earth's clouds, lakes, and oceans. Water in its liquid, gaseous, and solid phases has always been with us. Some molecules in this rain were once in the ocean when life first evolved on Earth. Others may have been in the ice during one of Earth's ice ages, or in the clouds that often cling to the peaks of tall mountains. Contemplating H_2O history is as fascinating as learning the nature of water and its phases here in Part 2.

CHAPTER ELEVEN

11 The Atomic Nature of Matter

11.1 **The Atomic Hypothesis**

11.2 **Characteristics of Atoms**

11.3 **Atomic Imagery**

11.4 **Atomic Structure**
The Elements

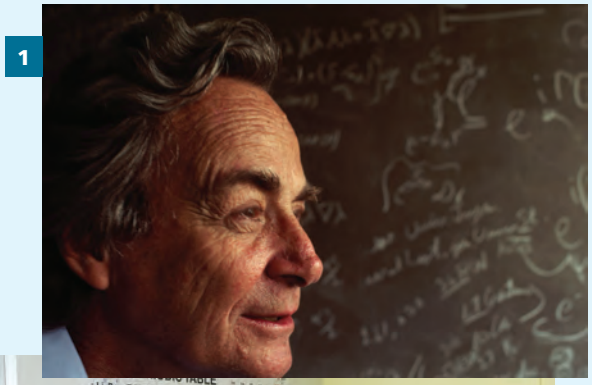
11.5 **The Periodic Table of the Elements**
Relative Sizes of Atoms

11.6 **Isotopes**

11.7 **Molecules**

11.8 **Compounds and Mixtures**

11.9 **Antimatter**
Dark Matter



1 Extraordinary 20th-century physicist Richard P. Feynman. **2** Theodore Gotis readies his class for a journey into atoms, using the periodic table of elements as his road map. **3** A depiction of a DNA molecule, the stuff of life. **4** Tucker Hiatt discusses the properties of buckminsterfullerene—or buckyball for short—made of 60 carbon atoms and resembling the geodesic dome invented by Buckminster Fuller.

Most people, when asked who was the most outstanding physicist of the 20th century, are likely to answer Albert Einstein. When physicists are asked who was the most playful and colorful physicist of the 20th century, if their answer isn't Einstein, it's likely to be Richard Feynman. This chapter is about atoms, the focus of Feynman's work and teaching that led to our further understanding of the atom and a Nobel Prize in Physics for him. If you have read Feynman's book, *Surely You're Joking, Mr. Feynman!*, you'll know that in addition to his love of physics, he was very much interested in how physics is taught—particularly in high school.

I was privileged to be on a panel of teachers with Feynman at a meeting of physics educators in 1987. The panel addressed the question of what kind of physics should be taught in high school. When I arrived at the school where the meeting was held, I spotted Feynman standing in the hall, alone. It was known that Feynman was often alone at such meetings, for teachers were uncomfortable in his presence. What do you talk about to someone like Feynman? I had something to talk about because he had been sent a copy of my brand-new high-school version of *Conceptual Physics*, and I wanted to know his impression of it. To my delight, but not to my surprise, he had read it—from cover to cover, judging by his recommended improvements for the next edition. As his own *Joking* book makes clear, Feynman "did his homework" before giving his presentations. He had read my book and several other high-school books in preparation for this panel, which, sadly, was his last public appearance. We all knew he was fighting cancer.

On the panel I was almost flabbergasted to realize that he and I were debating not how physics should be taught in high schools but rather whether it should be taught at all. Feynman liked extreme points of view, and his position was that physics shouldn't be taught in high school because most of the teachers lacked a passion for the subject. This lack of passion would be communicated to students, who would be better off starting college with a clean slate. My position was that physics should be taught conceptually, with the traditional emphasis on algebraic problem solving relegated to a second course in physics: that a conceptual course in physics should be, like math, English, and history, in the educational mainstream. Feynman countered that a major problem with my position was the inadequate number of trained physics teachers. Where would they come from? My reply was that if we made the course delightful, more than the current percentage of students would like physics, then major in it, and in 10 years be in the ranks of needed teachers.

Ten years later at a physics meeting in Las Vegas, a young man stopped me in the hall to tell me how his encounter with my book had steered him to major in physics and then become a physics teacher. He further expressed a passion for physics. I thought to myself, "Did you hear that, Richard?" For it was true, the conceptual orientation of physics helped increase the ranks of new physics teachers. My motto since has been that if a learner's first course in physics is delightful, then the rigor of a second course will be welcomed.

11.1 The Atomic Hypothesis

The idea that matter is composed of atoms goes back to the Greeks in the 5th century BC. Investigators of nature back then wondered whether matter was continuous or not. We can break a rock into pebbles, the pebbles into fine gravel, the gravel into finer sand that can be pulverized into powder. To the 5th-century Greeks, there was a smallest bit of rock, an "atom," that could not be divided any further.

Aristotle, the most famous of the early Greek philosophers, didn't agree with the idea of atoms. In the 4th century BC, Aristotle taught that all matter is composed of various combinations of four elements—earth, air, fire, and water. This view seemed reasonable because, in the world around us, matter is seen in only four forms: solids (earth), gases (air), liquids (water), and the state of flames (fire). The Greeks viewed fire as the element of change, since fire was observed to produce changes on substances that burned. Aristotle's ideas about the nature of matter persisted for more than 2000 years.

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

fyi

- If, in some cataclysm, all scientific knowledge were destroyed and only one sentence could be passed on to the next generation, Richard Feynman chose: "All things are made of atoms—little particles that move around in perpetual motion, attracting each other when they are a little distance apart, but repelling upon being squeezed into one another." This is the atomic hypothesis.

FALLING ALICE

Imagine that you inhabit the world of Alice in Wonderland when she shrank in size. Pretend that you topple from a chair and fall in slow motion to the floor—and while falling, you continually shrink. You brace yourself for impact on the wood floor. As you get nearer and nearer, becoming smaller and smaller, you notice that the surface of the floor is not as smooth as it first looked. Great crevices appear that are the microscopic irregularities found in all wood. In falling into one of these canyon-sized crevices, you again brace yourself for impact, only to find that the bottom of the canyon consists of many other crevices. Falling farther while growing even smaller, you notice that the solid walls throb and pucker. The throbbing surfaces consist of hazy blobs, mostly spherical, some egg-shaped, some larger than others, and all oozing into each other, forming long chains of complicated structures. Falling still farther, you brace for impact as you approach one of these cloudy spheres, closer and closer, smaller and smaller, and—Wow! You have entered what seems to be a new universe. You fall into a sea of emptiness, occupied by occasional specks whirling past at unbelievably high speeds. You are in an *atom*, as empty of matter as the solar system. The solid floor you have fallen into is, except for specks of matter here and there, mostly empty space. You have entered the world of the atom.

FIGURE 11.1
An early-20th-century model of the atom, with a central nucleus and orbiting electrons, much like a solar system with orbiting planets.

The atomic idea was revived in the early 1800s by an English meteorologist and schoolteacher, John Dalton. He successfully explained the nature of chemical reactions by proposing that all matter is made of tiny particles called **atoms.** He and others of the time, however, had no direct evidence for their existence. Then, in 1827, a Scottish botanist named Robert Brown noticed something very unusual in his microscope. He was studying grains of pollen suspended in water, and he saw that the grains were continuously moving and jumping about. At first he thought the grains were some kind of moving life forms, but later he found that dust particles and grains of soot suspended in water moved in the same way. This perpetual and haphazard jiggling of tiny particles—now called **Brownian motion**—results from collisions between visible particles and invisible atoms. The atoms are invisible because they're so small. Although he couldn't see the atoms, Brown could see the effect they had on particles he *could* see. It's like a supergiant beach ball being bounced around by a crowd of people at a football game. From a high-flying airplane, you wouldn't see the people because they are small relative to the enormous ball, which you would be able to see. The pollen grains that Brown observed moved because they were constantly being jostled by the atoms (actually, by the atomic combinations referred to as molecules) that made up the water surrounding them.

Albert Einstein explained Brownian motion in 1905, the same year he announced the theory of special relativity. Until Einstein's explanation—which made it possible to find the masses of atoms—many prominent physicists remained skeptical about the existence of atoms. So we see that the reality of the atom was not firmly established until the early 20th century.

We can't see atoms because they're too small. We can't see the farthest star either. There's much that we can't see with our eyes. But that doesn't prevent investigation of such things so that we can "see" them via our instruments.

11.2 Characteristics of Atoms

Atoms Are Incredibly Tiny An atom is as many times tinier than you as an average star is larger than you. A nice way to say this is that we stand between the atoms and the stars. Or another way of stating the smallness of atoms is that the diameter of an atom is to the diameter of an apple as the diameter of an apple is to the diameter of Earth. So, to imagine an apple full of atoms, think of the Earth solid-packed with apples. Both have about the same number.

Atoms Are Numerous There are about 100,000,000,000,000,000,000,000 atoms in a gram of water (a thimbleful). In scientific notation, that's 10^{23} atoms. The number 10^{23} is an enormous number, more than the number of drops of water in

all the lakes and rivers of the world. So there are more atoms in a thimbleful of water than there are drops of water in the world's lakes and rivers. In the atmosphere, there are about 10^{23} atoms in a liter of air. Interestingly, the volume of the atmosphere contains about 10^{23} liters of air. That's an incredibly large number of atoms, and the same incredibly large number of liters of atmosphere. Atoms are so small and so numerous that there are about as many atoms in the air in your lungs at any moment as there are breathfuls of air in Earth's atmosphere.

Atoms Are Perpetually Moving In solids, atoms vibrate in place; in liquids, they migrate from one location to another; and in gases, the range of migration is even greater. Drops of food coloring in a glass of water, for example, soon spread to color the entire glass of water. Likewise for a cupful of food coloring thrown into an ocean: It would spread and eventually be found in every part of the world's oceans.

Atoms and molecules in the atmosphere zip around at speeds up to 10 times the speed of sound. They spread rapidly, so some of the oxygen molecules you breathe may have been halfway across the country a few days ago. Taking Figure 11.2 further, we see that your exhaled breaths of air quite soon mix with other atoms in the atmosphere. After the few years it takes for your breath to mix uniformly in the atmosphere, anyone, anywhere on Earth, who inhales a breath of air will take in, on the average, one of the atoms in that exhaled breath of yours. But you exhale many, many breaths, so other people breathe in many, many atoms that were once in your lungs—that were once a part of you—and, of course, vice versa. Believe it or not, with each inhaled breath, you breathe atoms that were once a part of everyone who ever lived! Considering that the atoms we exhale were part of our bodies (the nose of a dog has no trouble discerning this), it can be truly said that we are literally breathing one another.

Atoms Are Ageless Many atoms in your body are nearly as old as the universe itself. When you breathe, for example, only some of the atoms that you inhale are exhaled in your next breath. The remaining atoms are taken into your body to become part of you, and they later leave your body by various means. You don't "own" the atoms that make up your body; you borrow them. We all share from the same atom pool because atoms are constantly rearranged and recycled through biochemical and geochemical processes. Atoms cycle from person to person as we breathe and as our perspiration is vaporized. We recycle atoms on a grand scale.

The origin of the lightest atoms goes back to the origin of the universe, and most heavier atoms are older than the Sun and Earth. There are atoms in your body that have existed since the first moments of time, recycling throughout the universe among innumerable forms, both nonliving and living. You're the present caretaker of the atoms in your body. There will be many who will follow you.

fyi

- How long would it take you to count to 1 million? If each count takes 1 second, counting nonstop to a million would take 11.6 days. To count to a billion (10^9) would take 31.7 years. To count to a trillion (10^{12}) would take 31,700 years. Counting to 10^{23} would take more than 10,000 times the age of the universe!

FIGURE 11.2
There are as many atoms in a normal breath of air as there are breathfuls of air in Earth's atmosphere.

CHECK POINT

1. **Which are older: the atoms in the body of an elderly person or those in the body of a baby?**
2. **The world's population grows each year. Does this mean that the mass of Earth increases each year?**
3. **Are there really atoms that were once a part of Albert Einstein incorporated in the brains of all the members of your family?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The age of the atoms in both is the same. Most of the atoms were manufactured in stars that exploded before the solar system came into existence.

Life is not measured by the number of breaths we take, but by the moments that take our breath away.—*George Carlin*

2. The greater number of people increases the mass of Earth by zero. The atoms that make up our bodies are the same atoms that were here before we were born—we are but dust, and unto dust we shall return. The materials that make up human cells are rearrangements of material already present. The atoms that make up a baby forming in its mother's womb are supplied by the food the mother eats. And those atoms originated in stars—some of them in faraway galaxies. (Interestingly, the mass of Earth *does* increase by the incidence of roughly 40,000 tons of interplanetary dust each year, but not by the birth and survival of more people.)
3. Quite so, and of your favorite hero as well. However, these atoms are combined differently than they were previously. If you experience one of those days when you feel like you'll never amount to anything, take comfort in the thought that many of the atoms that now constitute your body will live forever in the bodies of all the people on Earth who are yet to be. Our atoms are immortal.

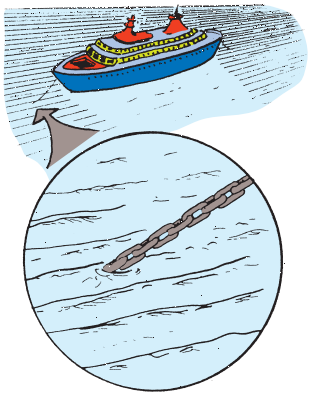


FIGURE 11.3
Information about the ship is revealed by passing waves because the distance between wave crests is small compared with the size of the ship. The passing waves reveal nothing about the chain.

11.3 Atomic Imagery

Atoms are too small to be seen with visible light. Because of diffraction, you can discern details no smaller than the wavelength of light you use to look with. This can be understood by an analogy with water waves. A ship is much larger than the water waves that roll on by it. As Figure 11.3 shows, water waves can reveal features of the ship. The waves *diffract* as they pass the ship. But diffraction is nil for waves that pass by the anchor chain, revealing little or nothing about it. Similarly, waves of visible light are too coarse compared with the size of an atom to show details of atomic size and shape. We will expand on wave diffraction in Chapter 29.

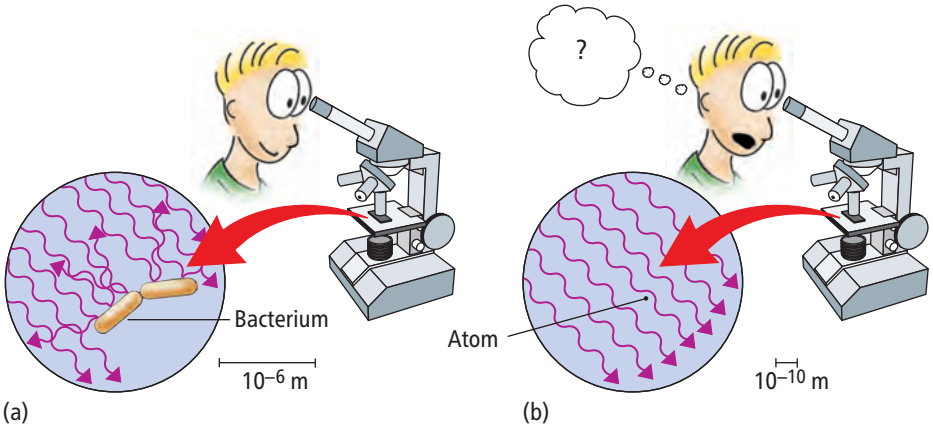


FIGURE 11.4
Microscopic objects can be seen through an optical microscope, but submicroscopic particles cannot. (a) A bacterium is visible because it is larger than the wavelengths of visible light and the bacterium reflects visible light. (b) An atom is invisible because it is smaller than the wavelengths of visible light and does not reflect the light toward our eyes.

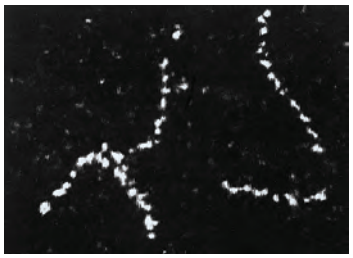


FIGURE 11.5
The dots are chains of thorium atoms imaged with a scanning transmission electron microscope by Albert Crewe in 1970—the first images of single atoms with an electron microscope.

Yet in Figure 11.5 we see a photograph of atoms—the historic 1970 image of chains of individual thorium atoms. The image is actually an electron micrograph taken with a thin electron beam in a scanning electron microscope (SEM) developed by Albert Crewe at the University of Chicago's Enrico Fermi Institute. An electron beam, such as the one that sprays a picture on an early television screen, is a stream of particles that have wave properties. The wavelength of an electron beam is smaller than the wavelengths of visible light, and atoms are

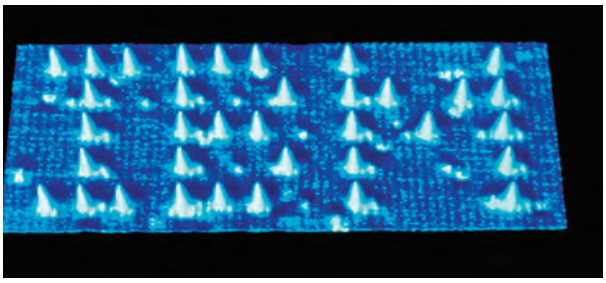


FIGURE 11.6
This image of 35 individual xenon atoms, each carefully prodded into position was created by researchers at the IBM Corporation in 1981.

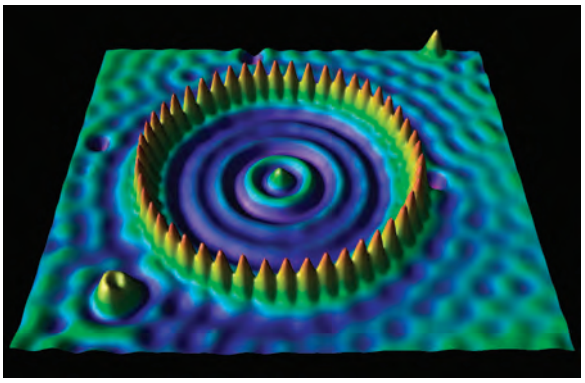
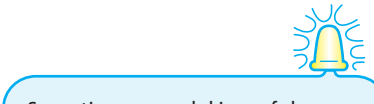


FIGURE 11.7
An image of 48 iron atoms positioned in a circular ring that "corrals" electrons on a copper crystal surface, taken with a scanning tunneling microscope at the IBM Almaden Laboratory in San Jose, California.

larger than the tiny wavelengths of an electron beam. Crewe's electron micrograph is the first high-resolution image of individual atoms.

Researchers at the IBM Zürich Research Laboratory in the 1980s invented a new kind of microscope (1986 Nobel Prize in physics for its inventors) called a *scanning tunneling microscope* (STM) that has no lenses and uses neither light nor particle beams to produce images. Instead, it employs a sharp tip that is scanned over a surface at a distance of a few atomic diameters in a point-by-point and line-by-line fashion. At each point, a tiny electric current, called a tunneling current, is measured between the tip and the surface. Variations in the current reveal the surface topology. Being able to prod the positions of individual atoms, researchers playfully produced the symbolic image of their IBM laboratory shown in Figure 11.6. The image of Figure 11.7 beautifully shows the position of a ring of atoms (not images of atoms themselves). The ripples shown in the ring reveal the wave nature of matter. This image, among many others, opened the field of nanotechnology, and underscores the delightful interplay of art and science.

Because we can't see inside an atom, we construct models. A model is an abstraction that helps us to visualize what we can't see, and, importantly, that enables us to make predictions about unseen portions of the natural world. An early model of the atom (and the one most familiar to the general public) is akin to the model of the solar system (Figure 11.1). Building on that model are ones shown in Figure 11.8. Like the solar system, most of an atom's volume is empty space. At the center is a tiny and very dense nucleus in which most of the mass is concentrated. Surrounding the nucleus are "shells" of orbiting particles.



Sometimes a model is useful even when it's incorrect. Scotsman James Watt constructed a workable steam engine in the 18th century based on a model of heat that turned out to be quite incorrect.

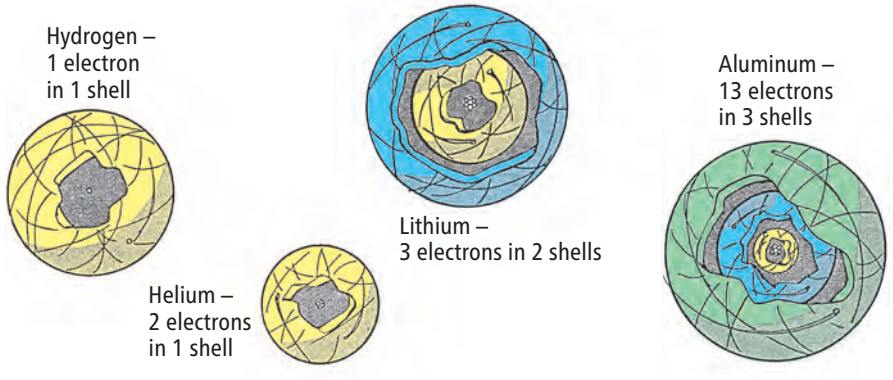
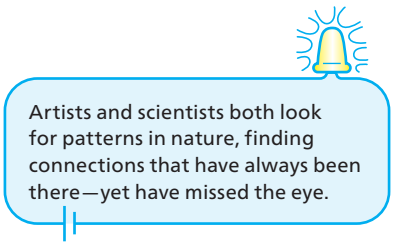


FIGURE 11.8
A simplified model of the atom consists of a tiny nucleus surrounded by electrons that orbit in shells. As the charges of nuclei increase, electrons are pulled closer and the shells become smaller.

These are **electrons,** electrically charged basic units of matter (the same electrons that constitute the electric current in your iPhone). Although electrons electrically repel other electrons, they are electrically attracted to the nucleus, which has a positive charge. As the size and charge of the nuclei increase, electrons are pulled closer and the shells become smaller. Interestingly, the uranium atom, with its 92 electrons, is not appreciably larger in diameter than the lightest atom, hydrogen.

This model was first proposed in the early 20th century, and it reflects a rather simplified understanding of the atom. It was soon discovered, for example, that electrons don't orbit the atom's center like planets orbit the Sun. Like most early models, however, the planetary atomic model served as a useful steppingstone to further understanding and more accurate models. Any atomic model, no matter how refined, is nothing more than a symbolic representation of the atom, not a physical picture of the actual atom.


Artists and scientists both look for patterns in nature, finding connections that have always been there—yet have missed the eye.

CHECK POINT

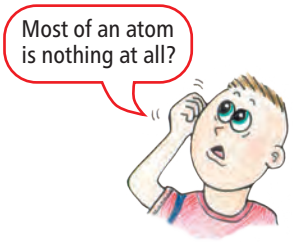
Which is smaller in size: a typical atom or the wavelength of visible light? How does this affect atomic imagery?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

Atoms are smaller than the wavelengths of visible light. The consequence is that atoms cannot be viewed with visible light, no matter the magnification. With visible light there is "nothing" to see.

11.4 Atomic Structure

Nearly all the mass of an atom is concentrated in the **atomic nucleus,** which occupies only a few quadrillionths of its volume. The nucleus, therefore, is extremely dense. If bare atomic nuclei could be packed against each other into a lump 1 centimeter in diameter (about the size of a large pea), the lump would weigh about 100,000,000 tons! So most of an atom is empty space. The reason atoms don't squash into one another has to do with repulsive electrical forces. Huge electrical forces of repulsion prevent such close packing of atomic nuclei because each nucleus is electrically charged and repels all other nuclei. Only under special circumstances are the nuclei of two or more atoms squashed into contact. This can happen when nuclei in a laboratory are slammed into a target or when matter is heated to millions of degrees. A nuclear reaction that results from high temperature is called a *thermonuclear fusion reaction.* It occurs in the centers of stars and ultimately makes them shine. (We'll discuss these nuclear reactions in Chapter 34.)



The principal building block of the nucleus is the *nucleon,* which is in turn composed of fundamental particles called *quarks.* When a nucleon is in an electrically neutral state, it is a **neutron;** when it is in a positively charged state, it is a **proton.** In practice, all protons are identical; no difference can be found among any of them. All are the same size, same mass, and same electric charge. Likewise with neutrons: Each neutron is like every other neutron. The lighter nuclei have roughly equal numbers of protons and neutrons; more massive nuclei have more neutrons than protons. Protons have a positive electric charge that repels other positive charges but attracts negative charges. So like kinds of electric charges repel one another, and unlike charges attract one another.

It is the positive protons in the nucleus that attract a surrounding cloud of negatively charged electrons to constitute an atom. (The strong nuclear force, which binds the protons to neutrons and to each other within the nucleus, is described in Chapter 33.)

CHECK POINT

Are all protons considered to be identical? Are all neutrons considered to be identical?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

Conventional wisdom says yes to both questions. The same is true of all electrons, which are deemed to be identical. Quite interestingly, a very different story applies to matter composed of protons, neutrons, and electrons. There exist no identical fingerprints of people, irises of the eye, or even the leaves of plants. No two faces of people or penguins are identical. Think about that!

The Elements

When a substance is composed of only one kind of atom, it is called an **element.** Atoms are the individual particles that make up a substance. Although the words *element* and *atom* are often used in a similar context, the distinction is that elements are made of atoms and not the other way around. A pure 24-carat gold ring, for example, is composed of only gold atoms. A gold ring with a lower carat value is composed of gold and other elements, such as nickel. The silvery liquid in a barometer or thermometer is the element mercury. The entire liquid consists of only mercury atoms. An atom of a particular element is the smallest sample of that element. So we see that although the words *atom* and *element* are often used interchangeably, *element* refers to a type of substance (one that contains only one type of atom), whereas *atom* refers to the individual particles that make up that substance. For example, we speak of isolating a mercury *atom* from a flask of the *element* mercury.

fyi

- Every word in the English language is made up of a combination of the same 26 letters. Similarly, all material things in the world are composed of different combinations of about 100 different elements.

In the universe at large, hydrogen is the lightest and most abundant element—more than 90% of the atoms are hydrogen atoms. Helium, the second-lightest element, provides most of the remaining atoms in the universe. Heavier atoms in

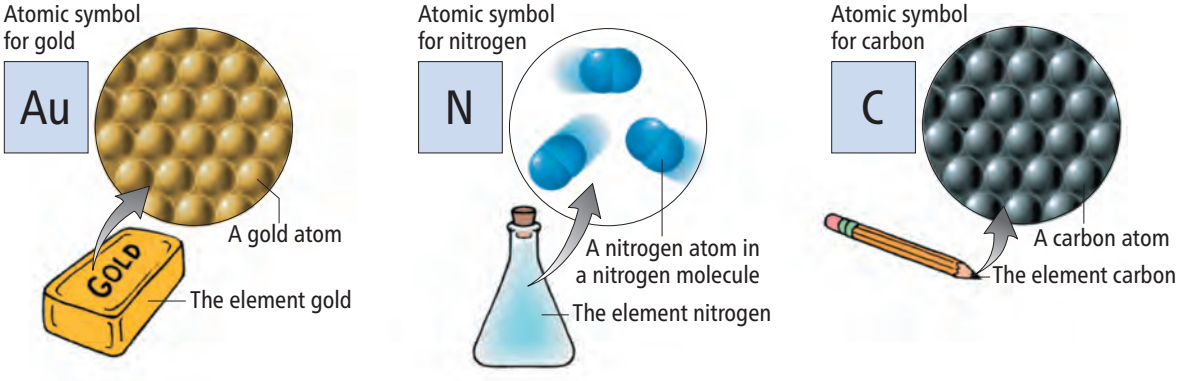


FIGURE 11.9

Any element consists of only one kind of atom. Gold consists of only gold atoms, a flask of gaseous nitrogen consists of only nitrogen atoms, and the carbon of a graphite pencil is composed of only carbon atoms.

our surroundings were manufactured by the fusion of light elements in the hot, high-pressure cauldrons deep within the interiors of stars. The heaviest elements form when huge stars implode and then explode—supernovas. Nearly all the elements on Earth are remnants of stars that exploded long before the solar system came into existence.

To date, 118 elements have been identified. Of these, about 90 occur in nature. The others are produced in the laboratory with high-energy atomic accelerators and nuclear reactors. These laboratory-produced elements are too unstable (radioactive) to occur naturally in appreciable quantities. From a pantry that contains fewer than 100 elements, we have the atoms that make up almost every simple, complex, living, and nonliving substance in the known universe. More than 99% of the material on Earth is formed from only about a dozen of the elements. The other elements are relatively rare. Humans, for example, are composed primarily of five elements: oxygen (O), carbon (C), hydrogen (H), nitrogen (N), and calcium (Ca). The letters in parentheses are the chemical symbols for these elements.

CHECK POINT

What is the difference between an atom and an element?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

An atom is the smallest building block of matter. An element is a material substance made entirely of one type of atom. For example, the substance gold is composed entirely of gold atoms. The terms atom and element can often be used interchangeably.

fyi

- Mercury, atomic number 80, is commonly found in rocks and minerals such as cinnabar ore and fossil fuels. Mercury on its own, undisturbed, is not harmful. But when ore is smashed or coal is burned, mercury is released into the air, where it can waft over hundreds of kilometers, deposited on trees and land or streams, lakes, and oceans. That is where mercury becomes a danger. When it combines with carbon, it becomes methyl mercury, a deadly neurotoxin. Each year about 75 tons of mercury are in coal delivered to U.S. power plants and about $\frac{2}{3}$ of this is emitted to the air.

11.5 The Periodic Table of the Elements

Elements are classified by the number of protons in their nucleus—their **atomic number.** Hydrogen, which contains one proton per atom, has atomic number 1; helium, with two protons per atom, has atomic number 2; and so on in sequence to the heaviest naturally occurring element, uranium, with atomic number 92. The numbers continue beyond atomic number 92 through the artificially produced transuranic (beyond uranium) elements. The arrangement of elements by their atomic numbers makes up the **periodic table of the elements** (Figure 11.10 and Table 11.1).

The periodic table is a chart that lists atoms by their atomic number and also by their electrical arrangements. It bears some resemblance to a calendar with its weeks in rows and its days in columns. Each horizontal row is called a **period,** and each vertical column is called a **group** (or sometimes a *family*). Along a period, each element has atoms with one more proton and electron than the preceding element. This is more easily seen in Table 11.1. As we read down a group, each element has atoms with one more shell than the one above. The inner shells are filled to their capacities, and the outer shell may or may not be, depending on the element. Only the elements at the far right of the table, where Saturdays would be on a calendar, have their outer shells filled to capacity. These are the *noble gases*—helium, neon, argon, krypton, xenon, and radon. The periodic table is the chemist's road map—and much more. Most

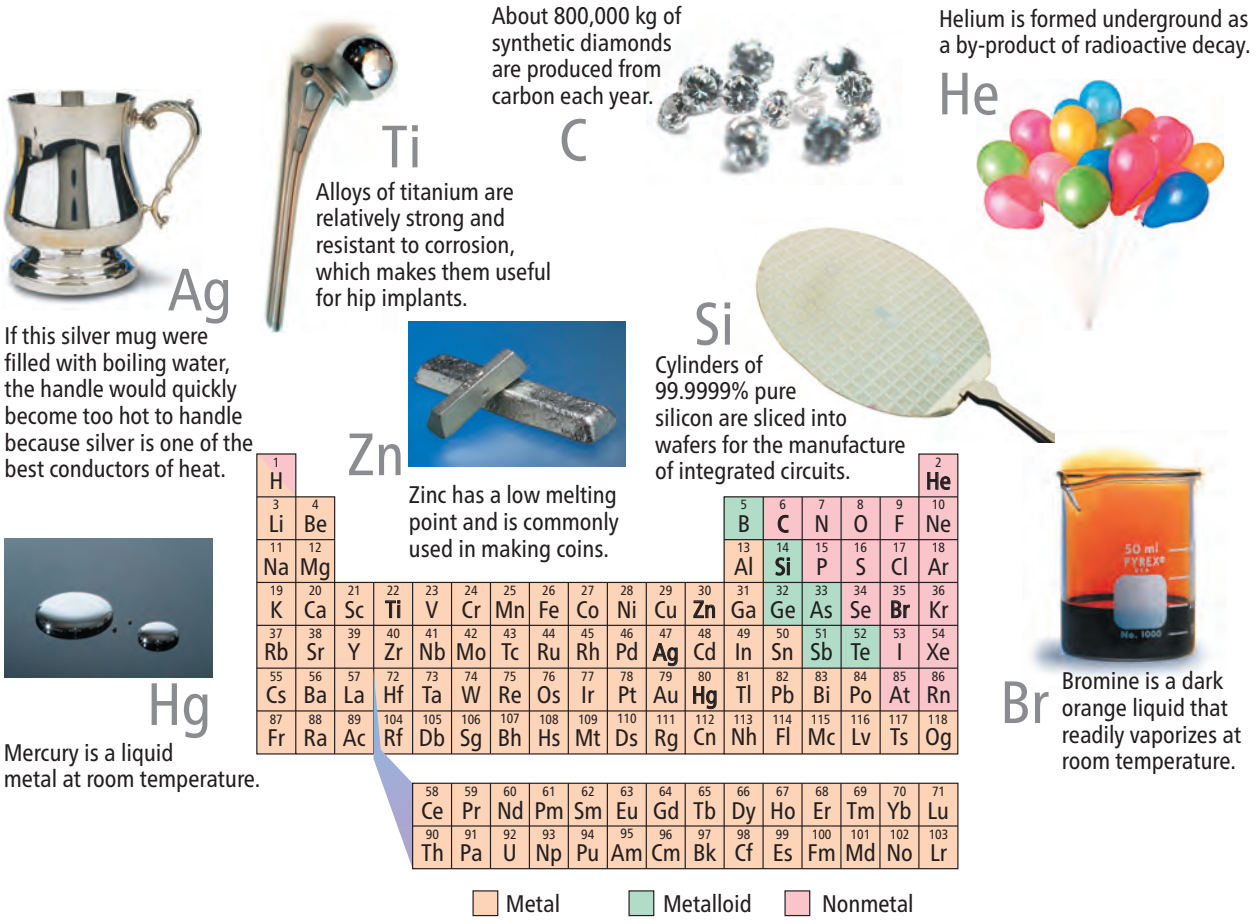

Ag
If this silver mug were filled with boiling water, the handle would quickly become too hot to handle because silver is one of the best conductors of heat.
Ti
Alloys of titanium are relatively strong and resistant to corrosion, which makes them useful for hip implants.
About 800,000 kg of synthetic diamonds are produced from carbon each year.
C
Helium is formed underground as a by-product of radioactive decay.
He
Si
Cylinders of 99.9999% pure silicon are sliced into wafers for the manufacture of integrated circuits.
Zn
Zinc has a low melting point and is commonly used in making coins.
Hg
Mercury is a liquid metal at room temperature.
Br
Bromine is a dark orange liquid that readily vaporizes at room temperature.
Metal
Metalloid
Nonmetal

FIGURE 11.10
The periodic table of the elements, color-coded to show metals, nonmetals, and metalloids. All heaviest elements beyond 104 are highly unstable and exist for a fraction of a second within laboratory settings.

scientists consider the periodic table to be the most elegant organizational chart ever devised. The enormous human effort and ingenuity that went into finding its regularities make a fascinating atomic detective story.[1]

Elements may have up to seven shells, and each shell can hold some maximum number of electrons. The first and innermost shell has a capacity for two electrons, and the second shell can hold up to eight electrons. The arrangement of electrons in the shells dictates such properties as the melting and freezing temperatures, the electrical conductivity, and the taste, texture, appearance, and color of substances. The arrangements of electrons quite literally give life and color to the world.

Models of the atom evolve with new findings. The old orbital model of the atom has given way to a model that views the electron as a standing wave—altogether different from the idea of an orbiting particle. This is the quantum mechanical model, introduced in the 1920s, which is a theory of the small-scale world that includes predicted wave properties of matter. It deals with "lumps" occurring at the subatomic level—lumps of matter or lumps of such things as energy and angular momentum. (More about the quantum in Chapter 31.)

Most of the elements of the periodic table are found in interstellar gases.

[1]The periodic table is credited to Russian chemistry professor Dmitri Mendeleev (1834–1907), who, most important, used the table to predict the existence of elements not then known. Mendeleev was a much loved and devoted teacher whose lecture halls were filled with students wanting to hear him speak. He was both a great teacher and a great scientist. Element 101 is named in his honor.

TABLE 11.1 THE PERIODIC TABLE OF THE ELEMENTS

The number above the chemical symbol is the *atomic number*, and the number below is the *atomic mass* averaged by isotopic abundance in Earth's surface and expressed in atomic mass units (amu). The atomic masses for radioactive elements shown in parentheses are the whole number nearest the most stable isotope of that element

Period \ Group	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
1	1 **H** Hydrogen 1.0079																	2 **He** Helium 4.003
2	3 **Li** Lithium 6.941	4 **Be** Beryllium 9.012											5 **B** Boron 10.811	6 **C** Carbon 12.011	7 **N** Nitrogen 14.007	8 **O** Oxygen 15.999	9 **F** Fluorine 18.998	10 **Ne** Neon 20.180
3	11 **Na** Sodium 22.990	12 **Mg** Magnesium 24.305											13 **Al** Aluminum 26.982	14 **Si** Silicon 28.086	15 **P** Phosphorus 30.974	16 **S** Sulfur 32.066	17 **Cl** Chlorine 35.453	18 **Ar** Argon 39.948
4	19 **K** Potassium 39.098	20 **Ca** Calcium 40.078	21 **Sc** Scadium 44.956	22 **Ti** Titanium 47.88	23 **V** Vanadium 50.942	24 **Cr** Chromium 51.996	25 **Mn** Manganese 54.938	26 **Fe** Iron 55.845	27 **Co** Cobalt 58.933	28 **Ni** Nickel 58.69	29 **Cu** Copper 63.546	30 **Zn** Zinc 65.39	31 **Ga** Gallium 69.723	32 **Ge** Germanium 72.61	33 **As** Arsenic 74.922	34 **Se** Selenium 78.96	35 **Br** Bromine 79.904	36 **Kr** Krypton 83.8
5	37 **Rb** Rubidium 85.468	38 **Sr** Strontium 87.62	39 **Y** Yttrium 88.906	40 **Zr** Zirconium 91.224	41 **Nb** Niobium 92.906	42 **Mo** Molybdenum 95.94	43 **Tc** Technetium (98)	44 **Ru** Ruthenium 101.07	45 **Rh** Rhodium 102.906	46 **Pd** Palladium 106.42	47 **Ag** Silver 107.868	48 **Cd** Cadmium 112.411	49 **In** Indium 114.82	50 **Sn** Tin 118.71	51 **Sb** Antimony 121.76	52 **Te** Tellurium 127.60	53 **I** Iodine 126.905	54 **Xe** Xenon 131.29
6	55 **Cs** Cesium 132.905	56 **Ba** Barium 137.327	57 **La** Lanthanum 138.906	72 **Hf** Hafnium 178.49	73 **Ta** Tantalum 180.948	74 **W** Tungsten 183.84	75 **Re** Rhenium 186.207	76 **Os** Osmium 190.23	77 **Ir** Iridium 192.22	78 **Pt** Platinum 195.08	79 **Au** Gold 196.967	80 **Hg** Mercury 200.59	81 **Tl** Thallium 204.383	82 **Pb** Lead 207.2	83 **Bi** Bismuth 208.980	84 **Po** Polonium (209)	85 **At** Astatine (210)	86 **Rn** Radon (222)
7	87 **Fr** Francium (223)	88 **Ra** Radium 226.025	89 **Ac** Actinium 227.028	104 **Rf** Rutherfordium (261)	105 **Db** Dubnium (262)	106 **Sg** Seaborgium (266)	107 **Bh** Bohrium (264)	108 **Hs** Hassium (269)	109 **Mt** Meitnerium (268)	110 **Ds** Darmstadtium (271)	111 **Rg** Roentgenium (272)	112 **Cn** Copernicum (285)	113 **Nh** Nihonium 284	114 **Fl** Flerovium 289	115 **Mc** Moscovium 289	116 **Lv** Livermorium 293	117 **Ts** Tennessine 294	118 **Og** Oganesson 294

Metal
Metalloid
Nonmetal

Lanthanides	58 **Ce** Cerium 140.115	59 **Pr** Praseodymium 140.908	60 **Nd** Neodymium 144.24	61 **Pm** Promethium (145)	62 **Sm** Samarium 150.36	63 **Eu** Europium 151.964	64 **Gd** Gadolinium 157.25	65 **Tb** Terbium 158.925	66 **Dy** Dyspsrosium 162.5	67 **Ho** Holmium 164.93	68 **Er** 68 Erbium 167.26	69 **Tm** Thulium 168.934	70 **Yb** Ytterbium 173.04	71 **Lu** Lutetium 174.967
Actinides	90 **Th** Thorium 232.038	91 **Pa** Protactinium 231.036	92 **U** Uranium 238.029	93 **Np** Neptunium 237.05	94 **Pu** Plutonium (244)	95 **Am** Americium (243)	96 **Cm** Curium (247)	97 **Bk** Berkelium (247)	98 **Cf** Californium (251)	99 **Es** Einsteinium (252)	100 **Fm** Fermium (257)	101 **Md** Mendelevium (258)	102 **No** Nobelium (259)	103 **Lr** Lawrencium (262)

CHECK POINT

In what way is the periodic table like a calendar?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Both are arrangements of data: horizontal rows, a **period**, are like days of a week. Each vertical column, a **group**, shows a family of elements.

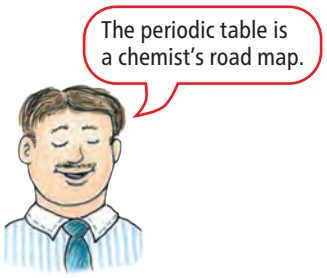
FIGURE 11.11
Both you and Leslie are made of stardust—in the sense that the carbon, oxygen, nitrogen, and other atoms that make up your body originated in the deep interiors of ancient stars that have long since exploded.

Relative Sizes of Atoms

The diameters of the electron shells of atoms are determined by the amount of electric charge in the nucleus. For example, the positive proton in the hydrogen atom easily holds one electron in an orbit at a certain radius. If we double the positive charge in the nucleus, the orbiting electron will be pulled into a smaller and tighter orbit because of the increased electrical attraction. Compared to hydrogen (atomic number 1), the helium atom (atomic number 2) has double the positive charge in the nucleus. That's why the helium atom is *smaller* than the hydrogen atom despite its greater mass.

So the greater the *nuclear charge*, the smaller the atom. But at the same time, the greater the nuclear charge, the more electrons that nucleus is able to hold. That's where it gets a bit complicated because electrons also interact with electrons. They do so following the rules of quantum mechanics, as described in Chapter 32. According to these rules, only so many electrons are permitted within an electron shell. The first and innermost shell can hold only two electrons. So, for an atom with three electrons, such as lithium, we find the first two electrons are in that first shell, while the third electron is forced to reside in the larger second shell. That's why the element lithium (atomic number 3) is markedly larger than the helium atom (atomic number 2).

Note two main concepts: (1) The greater the nuclear charge, the smaller the atom, and (2) there are limits to the number of electrons that can crowd into a particular electron shell. Put all this together and you have the periodic table where you'll find the smallest atoms are to the upper right hand corner and the largest atoms are to the lower left (Figure 11.12).



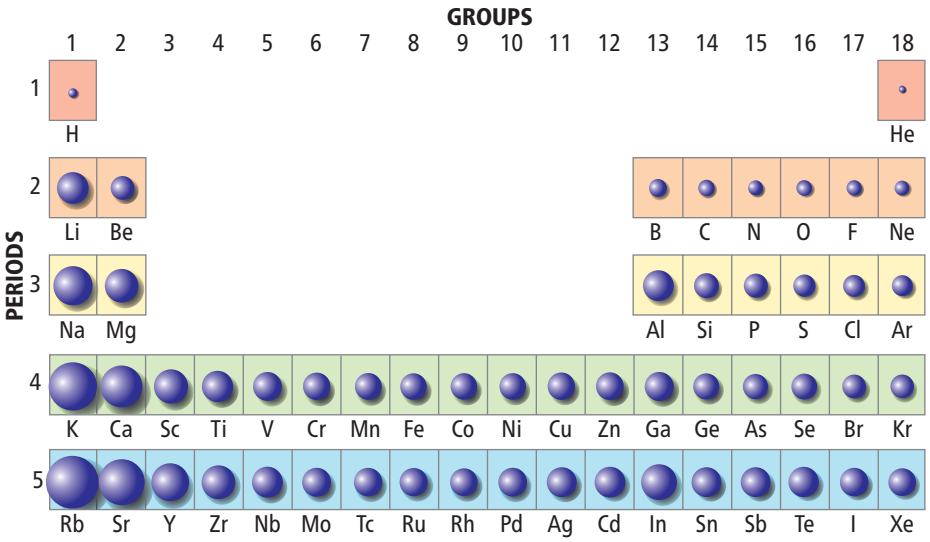

GROUPS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18
PERIODS
1
H He
2
Li Be B C N O F Ne
3
Na Mg Al Si P S Cl Ar
4
K Ca Sc Ti V Cr Mn Fe Co Ni Cu Zn Ga Ge As Se Br Kr
5
Rb Sr Y Zr Nb Mo Tc Ru Rh Pd Ag Cd In Sn Sb Te I Xe

FIGURE 11.12
The sizes of atoms gradually decrease from left to right across the periodic table (only the first five periods are shown here).

CHECK POINT

1. **What fundamental force dictates the size of an atom?**
2. **A marble with twice the diameter of another has 8 times as much mass. Why isn't this true of atoms?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The electrical force dictates the size of an atom.
2. Marbles are solid glass. Atoms are mostly empty space! In terms of material, all atoms are mostly nothing.

11.6 Isotopes

Whereas the number of protons in a nucleus exactly matches the number of electrons around the nucleus in a neutral atom, the number of protons in the nucleus need not match the number of neutrons. For example, most iron nuclei with 26 protons contain 30 neutrons, while a small percentage contains 29 neutrons. Atoms of the same element that have different numbers of neutrons are called **isotopes** of the element. Neutral atoms of a given element's various isotopes all have the same number of electrons and the same number of protons. For the most part, they behave identically. (We shall return to isotopes in Chapter 33.)

We identify isotopes by their *mass number*, which is the total number of protons and neutrons (in other words, the number of nucleons) in the nucleus. A hydrogen isotope that has one proton and no neutrons, for example, has a mass number of 1 and is referred to as hydrogen-1. Likewise, an iron atom with 26 protons and 30 neutrons has a mass number of 56 and is called iron-56. An iron atom with 26 protons and only 29 neutrons is designated as iron-55.

The total mass of an atom is called its *atomic mass*. This is the sum of the masses of all the atom's components (electrons, protons, and neutrons). Because electrons are so much less massive than protons and neutrons, their contribution to atomic mass is negligible. Atoms are so small that expressing their masses in units of grams or kilograms is not practical. Instead, scientists use a specially defined unit of mass known as the **atomic mass unit** or **amu.** A nucleon has a mass of about 1 amu. The amu is defined as exactly 1/12 of the mass of a carbon-12 atom. The periodic table lists atomic masses in units of amu.

Most elements have a variety of isotopes. The atomic mass for each element listed in the periodic table is the weighted average of the masses of these isotopes based on the occurrence of each isotope on Earth. For example, although the predominant isotope of carbon contains six protons and six neutrons, about 1% of all carbon atoms contain seven neutrons. The heavier isotope raises the average atomic mass of carbon from 12.000 amu to 12.011 amu.

Don't confuse mass number with atomic mass. *Mass number* is an integer that specifies an isotope and has no units—it's simply the number of nucleons in a nucleus. *Atomic mass* is an average of the masses of isotopes of a given element, expressed in *atomic mass units* (amu).

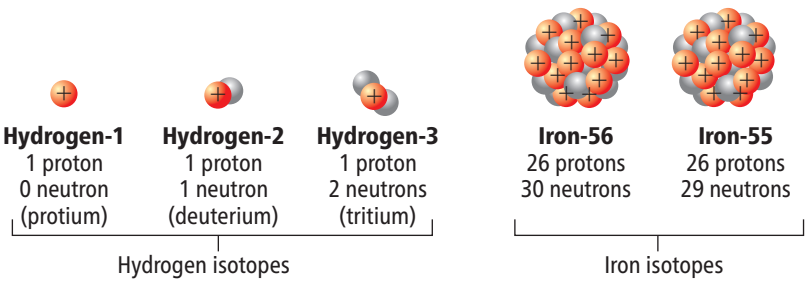


FIGURE 11.13
Isotopes of an element have the same number of protons but different numbers of neutrons and hence different mass numbers. The three hydrogen isotopes have special names: protium for hydrogen-1, deuterium for hydrogen-2, and tritium for hydrogen-3. Of these three isotopes, hydrogen-1 is the most common. For most elements, such as iron, the isotopes have no special names and are indicated merely by mass number.

CHECK POINT

1. **Which contributes more to an atom's mass: electrons or protons? Which contributes more to an atom's volume?**
2. **Which is represented by a whole number: the mass number or the atomic mass?**
3. **Do the two isotopes of iron have the same *atomic number*? The same *atomic mass number*?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Protons contribute more to an atom's mass; electrons contribute more to its volume.
2. The mass number is always given as a whole number, such as hydrogen-1 or carbon-12. Atomic mass, by contrast, is the average mass of the various isotopes of an element and is thus represented by a fractional number.
3. The two isotopes of iron have the same atomic number 26 because they each have 26 protons in the nucleus. They have different atomic mass numbers if they have different numbers of neutrons in the nucleus.

Although H_2O is the major greenhouse gas in the atmosphere, CO_2, the second most prevalent greenhouse gas, is notorious because its increased abundance is attributable to human activity. Since further warming by CO_2 can trigger more H_2O, a present concern is the growing amounts of both gases in the atmosphere.

11.7 Molecules

A **molecule** is the smallest particle of a substance that consists of two or more atoms that bond together by sharing electrons. (We say such atoms are *covalently bonded*.) A molecule may be as simple as the two-atom combination of oxygen, O_2, or the two-atom combination of nitrogen, N_2, which are the elements that make up most of the air we breathe. Two atoms of hydrogen combine with a single atom of oxygen to form a water molecule, H_2O. Changing a molecule by one atom can make a big difference. Replacing the oxygen atom with a sulfur atom produces hydrogen sulfide, H_2S, a strong-smelling, toxic gas.

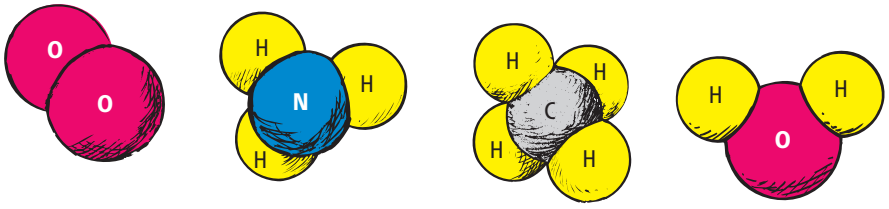


FIGURE 11.14
Models of simple molecules: O_2, NH_3, CH_4, and H_2O. The atoms in a molecule are not just mixed together but are joined in a well-defined way.

CHECK POINT

How many atomic nuclei are in a single oxygen atom? In a single oxygen molecule?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

There is one nucleus in an oxygen atom, O, and two in the combination of two oxygen atoms—an oxygen molecule, O_2.

Energy is required to pull molecules apart. We can understand this by considering a pair of magnets stuck together. Just as some "muscle energy" is required to pull the magnets apart, the breaking apart of molecules requires energy. During photosynthesis, plants use the energy of sunlight to break apart the bonds within atmospheric carbon dioxide and water to produce oxygen gas and carbohydrate molecules. These carbohydrate molecules retain this solar energy until the process is reversed—the plant is oxidized, either slowly by rotting or quickly by burning. Then the energy that came from the sunlight is released back into the environment. So the slow warmth of decaying compost or the quick warmth of a campfire is really the warmth of stored sunlight!

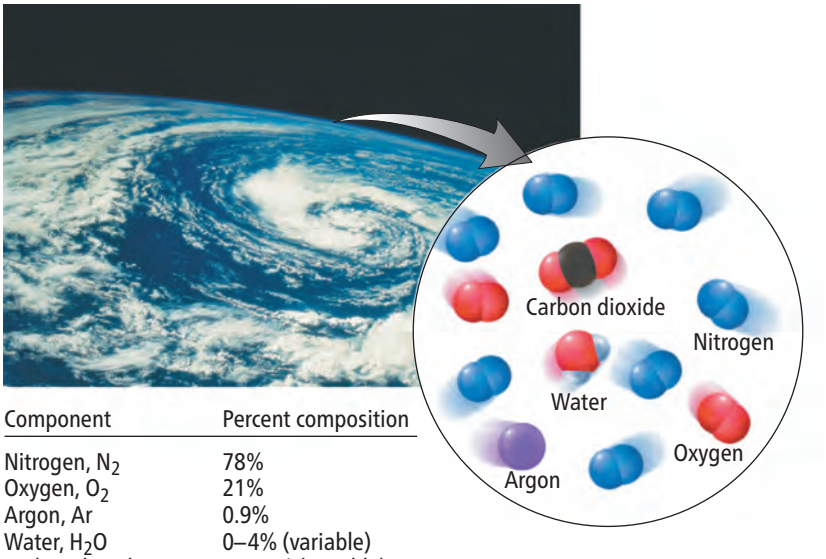
More things can burn besides those that contain carbon and hydrogen. Iron "burns" (oxidizes) too. That's what rusting is—the slow combination of oxygen atoms with iron atoms, releasing energy. When the rusting of iron is speeded up, it makes nice hand-warmer packs for skiers and winter hikers. Any process in which atoms rearrange to form different molecules is called a *chemical reaction*.

Our sense of smell is sensitive to exceedingly small quantities of molecules. Our olfactory organs easily detect small concentrations of such noxious gases as hydrogen sulfide (the stuff that smells like rotten eggs), ammonia, and ether. The smell of perfume is caused by molecules that rapidly evaporate and diffuse haphazardly in the air until some of them get close enough to your nose to be inhaled. They are just a few of the billions of jostling molecules that, in their aimless wanderings, happen to end up in the nose. You can get an idea of the speed of molecular diffusion in the air when you are in your bedroom and smell food very soon after the oven door has been opened in the kitchen.

Smell discrimination for salmon has been measured in parts per *trillion*—quite incredible. When the time comes to return from the ocean to their original habitat, salmon follow their noses. They swim in a direction where concentrations of familiar water become greater. In time, they encounter the source of that water where they spent the first 2 years of their lives.

11.8 Compounds and Mixtures

When atoms of different elements bond to one another, they make a **compound.** Examples of simple compounds include water, ammonia, and methane. A compound is uniquely different from the elements from which it is made, and it can be separated into its constituent elements only by chemical means. Sodium, for example, is a metal that reacts violently with water. Chlorine is a poisonous yellow-green gas. Yet the compound of these two elements is the relatively harmless white crystal (NaCl) that you sprinkle on your potatoes. Consider also that, at ordinary temperatures, the elements hydrogen and oxygen are both gases. When combined, they form the compound water (H_2O), a liquid—quite different.



Component	Percent composition
Nitrogen, N_2	78%
Oxygen, O_2	21%
Argon, Ar	0.9%
Water, H_2O	0–4% (variable)
Carbon dioxide, CO_2	0.034% (variable)

FIGURE 11.15
The Earth's atmosphere is a mixture of gaseous elements and compounds. Some of them are shown here.

Not all substances react with one another chemically when they are brought close together. A substance that is mixed together without chemically bonding is called a **mixture.** Sand combined with salt is a mixture. As mentioned, hydrogen and oxygen gas form a mixture until ignited, whereupon they form the compound water. A common mixture that we all depend on is nitrogen and oxygen together with a little argon and small amounts of carbon dioxide and other gases. It is the air that we breathe.

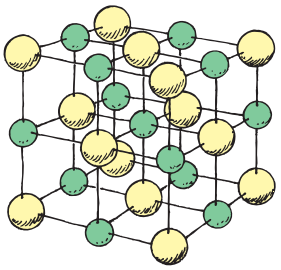


FIGURE 11.16
Table salt (NaCl) is a crystalline compound that is not made of molecules. The sodium (green) and chlorine (yellow) atoms make up a crystal.

CHECK POINT

Is common table salt an element, a compound, or a mixture?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Salt is not an element; if it were, you'd see it listed in the periodic table. Pure table salt is a compound of the elements sodium and chlorine, represented in Figure 11.16. Notice that the sodium atoms (green) and the chlorine atoms (yellow) are arranged in a 3-dimensional repeating pattern—a crystal. Each sodium atom is surrounded by six chlorine atoms, and each chlorine atom is surrounded by six sodium atoms. Interestingly, there are no separate sodium–chlorine groups that can be labeled molecules.[2]

11.9 Antimatter

Whereas matter is composed of atoms with positively charged nuclei and negatively charged electrons, **antimatter** is composed of atoms with negative nuclei and positive electrons, or *positrons.* Antimatter is short-lived on Earth because when matter and antimatter meet, both rapidly annihilate in a puff of radiant energy in accord with $E = mc^2$. Mass converts to pure energy.

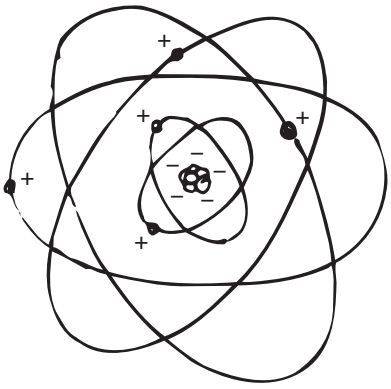


FIGURE 11.17
An atom of antimatter has a negatively charged nucleus surrounded by positrons.

Positrons were first discovered in 1932, found in the debris of cosmic rays bombarding Earth's atmosphere. Today, antiparticles of all types are regularly produced in laboratories using large nuclear accelerators. A positron has the same mass as an electron and the same magnitude of charge, but the opposite sign. Antiprotons have the same mass as protons but are negatively charged. The first complete artificial anti-atom, a positron orbiting an antiproton, was constructed in 1995. Every charged particle has an antiparticle of the same mass and opposite charge. Neutral particles (such as the neutron) also have antiparticles, which are alike in mass and some other properties but opposite in certain other properties. All particles have antiparticles. There are even antiquarks.

Gravitational force does not distinguish between matter and antimatter—each attracts the other. Also, there is no way to indicate whether something is made of matter or antimatter by the light it emits. Only through much subtler, hard-to-measure nuclear effects could we determine whether a distant galaxy is made of matter or antimatter. But, if an antistar were to meet a star, it would be a different story. They would mutually annihilate each other, with most of the matter converting to radiant energy (this is what happened to the anti-atom created in 1995, when it encountered normal matter and rapidly annihilated in a puff of energy). This process, more so than any other known, results in the maximum energy output per gram of substance—$E = mc^2$ with a 100% mass

[2]In a strict sense, common table salt is a mixture—often with small amounts of potassium iodide and sugar. The potassium iodide has virtually eliminated a common affliction of earlier times, a swelling of the thyroid gland known as endemic goiter. Tiny amounts of sugar inhibits the oxidation of iodide ions into iodine, I2, which would otherwise turn the salt mixture yellow.

conversion.[3] (Nuclear fission and fusion, by contrast, convert less than 1% of the matter involved.)

There cannot be both matter and antimatter in our immediate environment, at least not in appreciable amounts or for appreciable times. That's because something made of antimatter would be completely transformed into radiant energy as soon as it touched matter, consuming an equal amount of normal matter in the process. If the Moon were made of antimatter, for example, a flash of energetic radiation would result as soon as one of our spaceships touched it. Both the spaceship and an equal amount of the antimatter Moon would disappear in a burst of radiant energy. We know the Moon is not antimatter because this didn't happen during the Moon missions. (Actually, astronauts weren't in this kind of danger because earlier evidence showed that the Moon is made of ordinary matter.) But what about other galaxies? There is strong reason to believe that in the part of the universe we know (the "observable universe"), galaxies are made of only normal matter—apart from the occasional transitory antiparticle. But what of a universe beyond? Or other universes? We don't know.

Science is a way to teach how something gets to be known, what is not known, to what extent things are known (for nothing is known absolutely), how to handle doubt and uncertainty, what the rules of evidence are, how to think about things so that judgments can be made, and how to distinguish truth from fraud and from show.—*Richard Feynman*

CHECK POINT

If a 1-gram body of antimatter meets a 10-gram body of matter, what mass survives?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Nine grams of matter survive (the other 2 grams are transformed into radiant energy).

Dark Matter

We know that the elements in the periodic table are not confined to our planet. From studies of radiation coming from other parts of the universe, we find that stars and other objects "out there" are composed of the same particles we have on Earth. Stars emit light with the same "fingerprints" (*atomic spectra*; see Chapter 30) as the elements in the periodic table. How wonderful to find that the laws that govern matter on Earth extend throughout the observable universe. Yet there remains one troubling detail: Gravitational forces within galaxies are measured to be far greater than visible matter can account for.

Finding the nature of dark matter and the nature of the energy of empty space are high-priority quests in these times. What we will have learned by 2050 will likely dwarf all that we have ever known.

Astrophysicists talk of the **dark matter**—matter we can't see that tugs on stars and galaxies that we *can* see. In the closing years of the 20th century, astrophysicists confirmed that some 23% of the mass in the universe is contributed by the unseen dark matter. Whatever dark matter is, most or all of it is likely to be "exotic" matter—very different from the elements that make up the periodic table, and different from any extension of the present list of elements. Much of the rest of the universe is *dark energy*, which pushes outward on the expanding universe. Dark matter and dark energy together make up some 96% of the universe. At this writing, the exact nature of dark matter and dark energy remains mysterious. Speculations abound and searches are under way. We shall just have to wait and see.

Richard Feynman often used to shake his head and say he didn't know anything. When he and other top physicists say they don't know anything, they mean

[3]Some physicists speculate that right after the Big Bang, the early universe had billions of times more particles than it has now, and that a near total extinction of matter and antimatter caused by their mutual annihilation left only the relatively small amount of matter now present in the universe.

that what they *do* know is closer to nothing than to what they *can* know. Scientists know enough to realize that they have a relatively small handle on an enormous universe still full of mysteries. From a looking-backward point of view, today's scientists know enormously more than their forebears a century ago, and scientists then knew much more than *their* forebears. But, from our present vantage point, looking forward, there is so much yet to be learned. Physicist John A. Wheeler, Feynman's graduate-school advisor, envisioned the next level of physics going beyond *how* to *why*—to meaning. We have scarcely scratched the surface.

> I can live with doubt and uncertainty and not knowing. I think it is much more interesting to live not knowing than to have answers that might be wrong.—*Richard Feynman*

Chapter 11 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Atom The smallest particle of an element that has all of the element's chemical properties.

Brownian motion The haphazard movement of tiny particles suspended in a gas or liquid that results from their bombardment by the fast-moving atoms or molecules of the gas or liquid.

Electron A negatively charged particle that whizzes about within an atom.

Atomic nucleus The core of an atom, consisting of two basic subatomic particles—protons and neutrons.

Neutron An electrically neutral particle in the nucleus of an atom.

Proton A positively charged particle in the nucleus of an atom.

Element A pure substance that consists of only one kind of atom.

Atomic number The number that designates the identity of an element, which is the number of protons in the nucleus of an atom; in a neutral atom, the atomic number is also the number of electrons in the atom.

Periodic table of the elements A chart that lists the elements in horizontal rows by their atomic number and in vertical columns by their similar electron arrangements and chemical properties. (See Table 11.1.)

Period A horizontal row in the periodic table.

Group A vertical column in the periodic table; also known as a family of elements.

Isotopes Atoms of the same element that contain different numbers of neutrons.

Atomic mass unit (amu) The standard unit of atomic mass, which is equal to 1/12 the mass of the most common atom of carbon.

Molecule Two or more atoms that bond together by a sharing of electrons. Atoms combine to become molecules.

Compound A material in which atoms of different elements are chemically bonded to one another.

Mixture A substance whose components are mixed together without combining chemically.

Antimatter A "complementary" form of matter composed of atoms that have negative nuclei and positive electrons.

Dark matter Unseen and unidentified matter that is evidenced by its gravitational pull on stars in the galaxies. Dark matter along with dark energy constitutes perhaps 96% of the stuff of the universe.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

11.1 The Atomic Hypothesis

1. What was all matter composed of according to Aristotle?
2. How is Brownian motion observed when the atoms responsible for it are invisible under a microscope?
3. Who proposed the idea that matter is composed of atoms? What was Einstein's contribution to this idea?

11.2 Characteristics of Atoms

4. At what type of speeds do atoms and molecules in the atmosphere move? Could you say that we are breathing one another?
5. Approximately how many atoms are present in a gram of water?

11.3 Atomic Imagery

6. What limitation does diffraction place on the level of detail seen in an object?
7. Do we see atoms directly or only indirectly with a scanning electron microscope?
8. What technique is used to observe atoms?
9. What is the purpose of a model in science?

11.4 Atomic Structure

10. What percentage volume does the nucleus occupy in an atom?
11. What are nucleons with a positive charge called?
12. How does the electric charge of an electron compare with the electric charge of a proton?
13. What is the most abundant element in the known universe?
14. How are elements with nuclei heavier than hydrogen and helium formed?
15. Where did the heaviest elements originate?
16. What are the five most common elements in humans?

11.5 The Periodic Table of the Elements

17. What is the basis on which the periodic table of elements is constructed?
18. Are most elements metallic or nonmetallic?
19. How many periods are in the periodic table? How many groups?
20. What kind of attraction pulls electrons close to the atomic nucleus?
21. Why is a helium atom smaller than a hydrogen atom?

11.6 Isotopes

22. How does one isotope differ from another?
23. Can the mass number be less than the atomic number?

11.7 Molecules

24. How does a molecule differ from an atom?
25. Compared with the energy it takes to separate oxygen and hydrogen from water, how much energy is released when they recombine? (Think conservation of energy.)

11.8 Compounds and Mixtures

26. What is a compound? Cite two examples.
27. How is a compound different from a mixture?

11.9 Antimatter

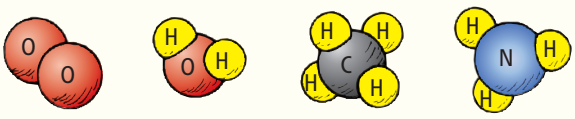
28. How do matter and antimatter differ?
29. What occurs when a particle of matter and a particle of antimatter meet?
30. What is the evidence that dark matter exists?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. A candle will burn only if oxygen is present. Will a candle burn twice as long in an inverted liter jar as it will in an inverted half-liter jar? Try it and see.
32. Brownian motion tells us that all molecules are always moving. Demonstrate this to your friends and fill two clear glasses with water. Put hot water in one of the glasses and cold water in the other. Then drop equal amounts of food coloring into each glass. Which glass of water shows the greater spreading of the coloring, and, why?
33. Text Grandma or Grandpa and explain how long the atoms that make up her or his body have existed and how long they will continue to be around.

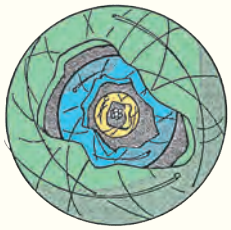
THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

34. Rank the following scientific discoveries from first to last:
    (a) Discovery of the electron
    (b) Discovery of the atom
    (c) Discovery of Brownian Motion
35. Rank these three subatomic particles in order of increasing mass:
    (a) Neutron (b) Proton (c) Electron
36. Consider the following elements: Calcium, Cobalt, and Sodium. Consult the periodic table and rank them from least to most by their (a) atomic number, (b) mass, and (c) number of protons.
37. Rank the number of electrons in the following gaseous elements from most to least: (a) Argon, (b) Chlorine, c) Hydrogen, (d) Nitrogen, and (e) Xenon.
38. Rank the mass of these molecules from most to least.



A B C D

THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)



39. Is the shell model of the atom a scaled-up version of an atom?
40. How do greater numbers of protons in the nucleus of an atom affect the spacing between their electron shells?
41. Both the atoms that compose your body and the floor you stand on are mostly empty space. So why don't you fall through the floor?
42. What is the difference between an element and an atom? Name the lightest element.
43. How many individual atoms are in a H_2S molecule?
44. The average speed of a perfume-vapor molecule at room temperature may be about 300 m/s, but you'll find the speed at which the scent travels across the room is much less. Why?
45. Olympic medals come in gold, silver, and bronze. Which of these is not an element?
46. Which of the following are pure elements: H_2, H_2O, He, NaCl, U?
47. How many elements are in a molecule of sulfuric acid H_2SO_4? How many atoms?
48. What is the cause of the Brownian motion of dust and other small particles? Why aren't larger objects, such as baseballs, similarly affected?
49. You've read in a textbook that each element can only have an equal number of protons and electrons. Do you agree completely, partially, or not at all? Explain.
50. Uranium (atomic number 92), a naturally occurring radioactive element has two primordial isotopes: Uranium-235 and Uranium-238. How many protons and how many neutrons are in each isotope?
51. The nucleus of an electrically neutral iron atom contains 26 protons. How many electrons does this iron atom have?
52. An atom contains 29 electrons, 34 neutrons, and 29 protons. What is the identity of this atom and its atomic number?
53. Use the periodic table to answer the following:
    (a) What nucleus remains if two protons and two neutrons are removed from the nucleus of an oxygen atom?
    (b) What element results when adding a pair of protons to the nucleus of mercury?
    (c) What element results if two protons and two neutrons are ejected from a radium nucleus?
54. You could swallow a capsule of germanium without ill effects. But, if a proton were added to each of the germanium nuclei, why would you not want to swallow the capsule? (Consult the periodic table.)

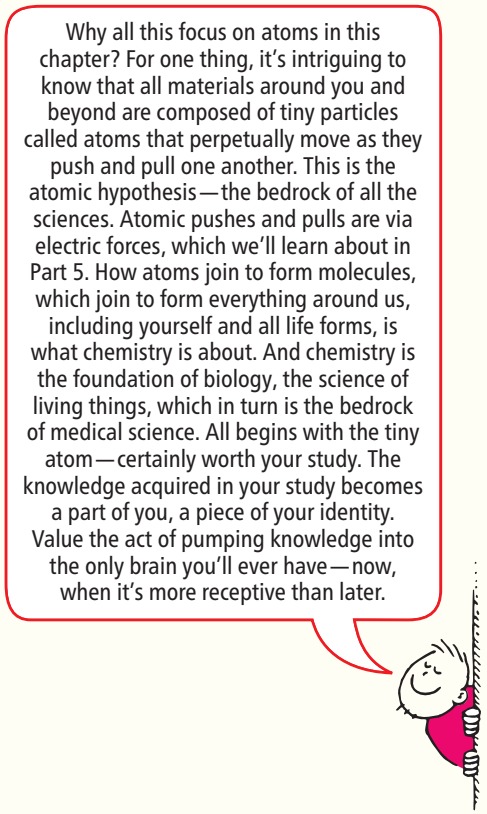
55. The noble gas helium is an inert gas, meaning that it doesn't combine with other elements. Name five other noble gases. (See the periodic table.)
56. Which is heavier: a water molecule, H_2O, or a carbon dioxide molecule, CO_2?
57. Consulting the periodic table, which of the following elements would you predict to have properties most similar to those of potassium (K): Chromium (Cr), sodium (Na), krypton (Kr), arsenic (As), or helium (He)?
58. Which contributes more to an atom's size—electrons or protons? Which contributes more to an atom's mass?
59. A hydrogen atom and a carbon atom move at the same speed. Explain why one of them has a greater kinetic energy than the other.
60. Is it safe to say that a water molecule (H_2O) has similar properties to hydrogen (H) and oxygen (O)?
61. Consulting the periodic table, determine five metallic and five nonmetallic elements and arrange them based on their atomic number from least to greatest.

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

62. When Dimitri Mendeleev published the first periodic table in 1869, he left gaps in it where no current element existed. Discuss with a partner how he knew that the gaps would someday be filled and on what rationale he based this understanding.
63. Where did the carbon atoms in the author's daughter Leslie's hair originate (Figure 11.11)?
64. Is the head of your least favorite politician really made of 99.99% empty space?
65. Explain why a tree gains weight in the process of taking in carbon dioxide, CO_2, and water vapor, H_2O, from the air while also releasing oxygen, O_2.
66. An ant crawls across a surface. Moments later, you notice that other ants are lining up following the same path. Also, when you draw a line across their path, some tend to get lost. Discuss this occurrence from a molecular point of view.
67. How is a campfire's warmth actually stored solar energy?

68. Does the increasing population lead to an increase in the mass of Earth?
69. Is there anything smaller than an atomic nucleus?
70. Discuss why a bucket of golf balls and a bucket of ping-pong balls don't contain the same number of balls.
71. If Earth were filled with ping-pong balls, the number of balls would be roughly equal to the number of atoms in a baseball. How would the number of ping-pong balls compare to the number of electrons in the baseball?

72. Explain to a study partner the distinctions between atomic number, mass number, and atomic mass.
73. Consulting the periodic table of elements, discuss which contains more atoms: a gram of platinum or a gram of titanium.
74. Hydrogen and oxygen always react in a 1:8 ratio by mass to form water. Early investigators thought this meant that oxygen was 8 times more massive than hydrogen. What chemical formula did these investigators assume for water?
75. A beam of protons and a beam of neutrons of the same energy are both harmful to living tissue. The beam of neutrons, however, is less harmful. Suggest why.
76. In what sense can a physicist claim that we are "all one?"
77. Discuss why there is a good chance that at least one of the atoms exhaled by your very first breath will be in your next breath?
78. A friend claims there are atoms in her lungs that were once in the lungs of Cleopatra. Is your friend's claim likely correct, or nonsense?
79. Somebody told your friend that if an antimatter alien ever set foot upon Earth, the whole world would explode into pure radiant energy. Your friend looks to you for verification or refutation of this claim. What do you say?
80. One of our biggest environmental problems is all of the plastic in Earth's oceans. For the most part, is this plastic a compound or a mixture? Discuss with a small group some ideas on how we could clean up our oceans.


Why all this focus on atoms in this chapter? For one thing, it's intriguing to know that all materials around you and beyond are composed of tiny particles called atoms that perpetually move as they push and pull one another. This is the atomic hypothesis—the bedrock of all the sciences. Atomic pushes and pulls are via electric forces, which we'll learn about in Part 5. How atoms join to form molecules, which join to form everything around us, including yourself and all life forms, is what chemistry is about. And chemistry is the foundation of biology, the science of living things, which in turn is the bedrock of medical science. All begins with the tiny atom—certainly worth your study. The knowledge acquired in your study becomes a part of you, a piece of your identity. Value the act of pumping knowledge into the only brain you'll ever have—now, when it's more receptive than later.

CHAPTER ELEVEN Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. Nuclei of atoms that make up a newborn baby were manufactured in
   (a) the mother's womb.
   (b) the food the mother eats before delivery.
   (c) ancient stars.
   (d) the Earth.
2. The difficulty of taking a photograph of an atom with light is
   (a) unwanted diffraction.
   (b) that atoms are smaller than wavelengths of light.
   (c) both of these
   (d) Neither of these
3. Which particle has the least mass?
   (a) Proton
   (b) Electron
   (c) Neutron
   (d) All about the same
4. Atomic number refers to the number of
   (a) protons in the nucleus.
   (b) neutrons in the nucleus.
   (c) nucleons in the nucleus.
   (d) electrons in the nucleus.
5. The nucleus of an electrically neutral iron atom contains 26 protons. How many electrons normally surround this nucleus?
   (a) 1
   (b) 13
   (c) 26
   (d) More than 26
6. Which of these has the greatest number of protons in its nucleus?
   (a) Gold
   (b) Mercury
   (c) Lead
   (d) Silver
7. Two protons added to an oxygen nucleus result in
   (a) nitrogen.
   (b) carbon.
   (c) helium.
   (d) neon.
8. The chemical properties of matter are due mostly to their
   (a) protons.
   (b) electrons.
   (c) neutrons.
   (d) atomic mass numbers.
9. How many atoms are in this carbohydrate molecule, $C_6H_{12}O_6$?
   (a) 3.
   (b) 14.
   (c) 18.
   (d) 24.
10. If a gram of antimatter meets a kilogram of matter, the amount of mass to survive is
    (a) 1 gram.
    (b) 999 grams.
    (c) 1 kilogram.
    (d) 1.1 kilogram.

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (c): Atom manufacture goes back before the formation of the solar system, many from exploding supernovae. Atoms are rearranged in food and in a mother's womb, not formed. **2. (c):** Not only are atoms smaller than the wavelength of visible light, any light that encounters them is diffracted. So both is the best answer. **3. (b):** The mass of the electron is many times smaller than the mass of a nucleon. **4. (a):** By definition, atomic number is equal to the number of protons in the atomic nucleus. **5. (c):** Since the iron nucleus is neutral, as many electrons surround it as there are protons inside. Hence (c) is the correct answer. **6. (c)** The question could be rephrased as which atom has the highest atomic number. A glance at the periodic table tells us that element is lead, with 82 protons. **7. (d):** Oxygen is atomic number 8. Adding 2 protons make it atomic number 10, which in the periodic table is neon. **8. (b):** Chemistry deals with the outer parts of atoms, the electrons that surround atomic nuclei. That's a fact. **9. (d):** We do some counting: $6 + 12 + 6 = 24$, sweet and simple! **10. (b):** One gram of antimatter will annihilate one gram of matter. Then there will be 1000 grams − 1 gram = 999 grams of matter behind. Simple arithmetic combined with a bit of physics knowledge!

CHAPTER TWELVE

12 Solids

12.1 Crystal Structure

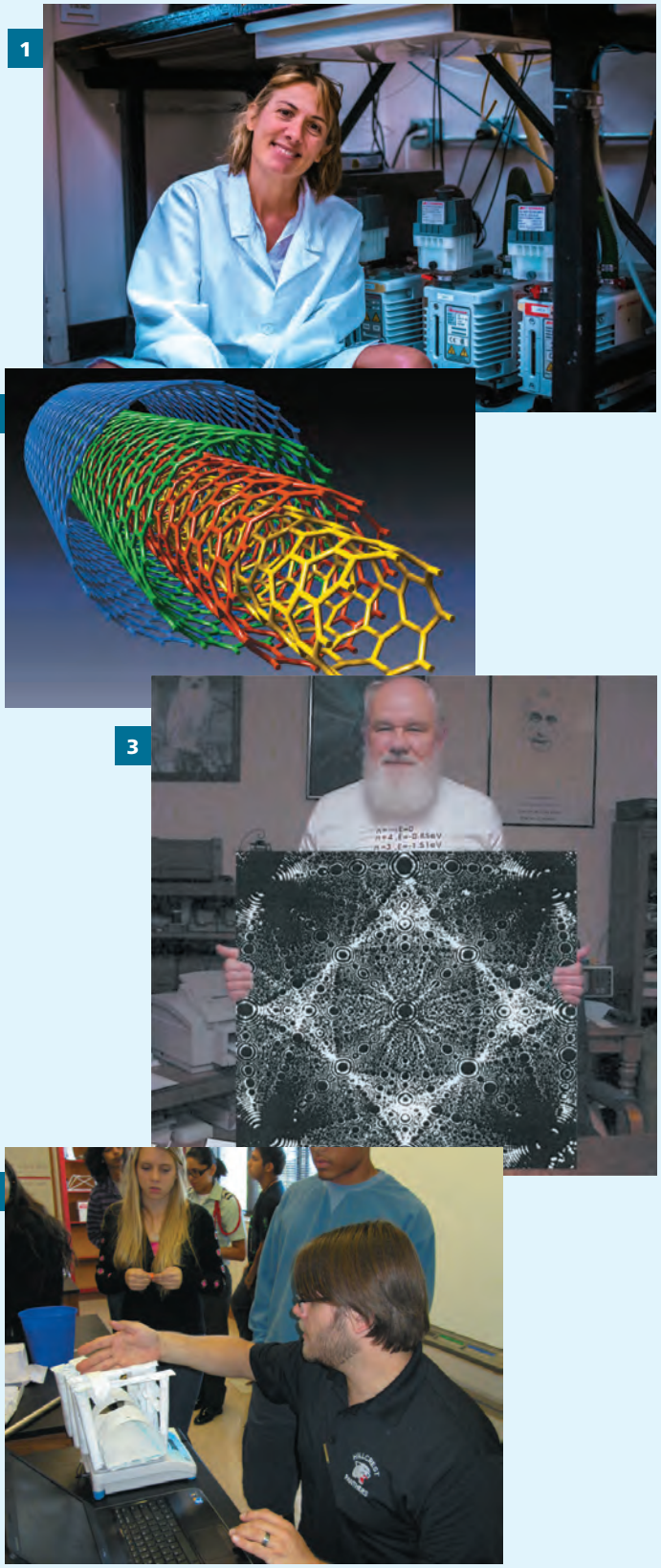
12.2 Density

12.3 Elasticity

12.4 Tension and Compression

12.5 Arches

12.6 Scaling



1 Hope Jahren and her mass spectrograph that measures the number of neutrons in carbon atoms. **2** Carbon nanotubes nested within each other provide the strongest fiber known. A thread 1 millimeter in diameter can support 58,000 N (13,000 pounds). **3** John Hubisz displays an enlarged image of one of Eric Müller's famous micrographs (nicely the cover of this textbook). **4** Students employ principles of scaling when building paper models of bridges in Garth Orr's physics class.

As a child, plant scientist Hope Jahren grew up helping her father in his laboratory in much the same way other kids in Minnesota helped out on the farm. She recounts her experiences in her inspirational book *Lab Girl* (great gifts for my grandchildren). From an early age, Hope learned to unplug and put away instruments, check them for wear and tear, and help fix them if they needed it. Her father worked at a community college and over the years he taught her everything from calculus to chemistry to computer programming to earth science—but physics was his personal favorite. Her father mostly loved the lab sections, and he crafted his own demonstrations of gravity, acceleration, swinging pendulums, optics, glass lenses, and armies of tiny always pointing-north magnets. Hope's dad built these things from balsa wood and wire, ball bearings and fishing line, materials from the hardware store and the hobby shop. Hope loved being in the lab more than anything. Today she does these things in her own lab, still feeling like that child who fell in love with science, building something, making something, testing everything, and above all—having fun.

Hope Jahren's labs, once in Georgia and then in Hawaii, are now in Norway, where she currently holds the J. Tuzo Wilson professorship at the University of Oslo. She is the recipient of three Fulbright Awards and is one of four scientists, and the only woman, to have been awarded both the Donath and Macelwane Medals of the Geological Society of America. Her awards are numerous. Her first book *Lab Girl*, which won the National Book Critics Circle Award, followed by *The Story of More: How We Got to Climate Change and Where to Go from Here*, continue to inspire young people toward a life of science.

How appropriate that we begin our study of solids by honoring a plant scientist. Common plants are solids, being a combination of liquid from the ground and mainly gas from the air. Hence, plants can rightly be considered "solidified air," as illustrated in Figure 12.1.

12.1 Crystal Structure

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

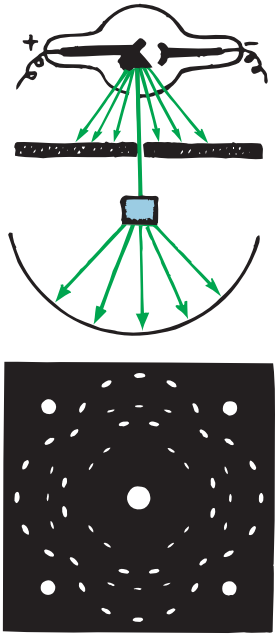
Metals, salts, and most minerals—the materials of Earth—are made up of crystals. People have known for centuries about crystals such as salt and quartz, but it wasn't until the 20th century that crystals were found to be regular arrays of atoms. In 1912, physicists used X-rays to confirm that each crystal is a three-dimensional orderly arrangement—a crystalline latticework of atoms. The atoms in a crystal were measured to be very close together, about the same distance apart as the wavelength of X-rays.

The German physicist Max von Laue discovered that a beam of X-rays directed upon a crystal is diffracted, or separated, into a characteristic pattern (Figure 12.2). X-ray *diffraction patterns* on photographic film show that crystals are neat mosaics of atoms sited on regular lattices, like 3-dimensional chessboards or children's jungle gyms. Such metals as iron, copper, and gold have relatively simple crystal structures. Tin and cobalt are a little more complex. All metals contain a jumble of many crystals, each almost perfect, with the same regular lattice but at some inclination to the crystal nearby. These metal crystals can be seen when a metal surface is *etched*, or cleaned, with acid. You can see the crystal structures on the surface of galvanized iron exposed to the weather, or on brass doorknobs etched by the perspiration of many hands.

Von Laue's photographs of X-ray diffraction patterns fascinated English scientists William Henry Bragg and his son William Lawrence Bragg. They developed a mathematical formula that showed exactly how X-rays should scatter from the various regularly spaced atomic layers in a crystal. With this formula and an analysis of the pattern of spots in a diffraction pattern, they could determine distances between the atoms in a crystal. X-ray diffraction is a vital tool today in the biological and physical sciences.

FIGURE 12.1
Both Jean and the tree are composed of mainly of hydrogen, oxygen, and carbon. Food ingestion supplies these to Jean, whereas most of the tree's carbon and oxygen originates from CO_2 in the air. In this sense, a tree can be thought of as "solid air."

FIGURE 12.2
X-ray determination of crystal structure. The photograph of common table salt (sodium chloride) is a product of X-ray diffraction. X-rays penetrate the salt crystal and reach the photographic film to create the pattern shown. The white spot in the center is due to the main unscattered beam of X-rays. The size and arrangement of the other spots reveal the latticework structure of sodium and chlorine ions in the crystal. A crystal of sodium chloride always produces this same design. Every crystalline structure has its own unique X-ray diffraction image.



Diffraction patterns of DNA (similar to the one in Figure 12.2), made by Rosalind Franklin in 1953 provided the data from which James D. Watson and Francis Crick deduced the double helix structure of DNA.

Noncrystalline solids are said to be *amorphous*. In the amorphous state, atoms and molecules in a solid are without form and distributed randomly. Rubber, glass, and plastic are among the materials that lack an orderly, repetitive arrangement of their basic particles. In many amorphous solids, the particles have some freedom to wander. This is evident in the elasticity of rubber and the tendency of glass to flow when subjected to stress over long periods of time.

Whether atoms are in a crystalline state or in an amorphous state, each atom or ion vibrates about its own position. Atoms are tied together by electrical bonding forces. We'll not discuss **atomic bonding** now, except to mention the four principal types of bonding in solids: ionic, covalent, metallic, and van der Waals, the last being the weakest. Some properties of a solid are determined by the types of bonds it has. More information about these bonds can be found on the Web or in almost any chemistry textbook.

fyi

- Humans have been using solid materials for many thousands of years. The names of the time periods Stone Age, Bronze Age, and Iron Age tell us the importance of solid materials in the development of civilization. The numbers and uses of materials multiplied over the centuries, yet there was little progress in understanding the nature of solids. This understanding had to await discoveries about atoms that occurred in the 20th century. With that knowledge, investigators now invent new materials daily, meeting the demands of today's information age.

FIGURE 12.3
The crystalline structure of diamond is illustrated with sticks representing the covalent bonds responsible for its extreme hardness.

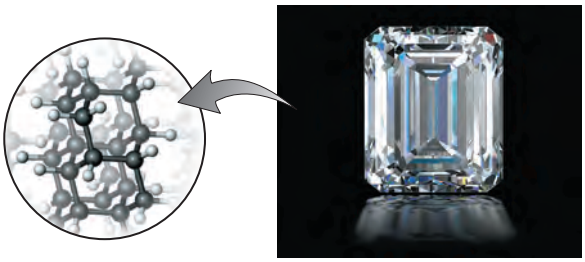
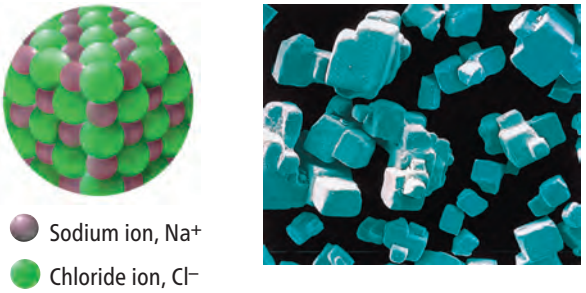


FIGURE 12.4
The cubic crystalline structure of common salt as seen through a microscope. The cubic shape is a consequence of the cubic arrangement of sodium and chloride ions.



The van der Waals force is the mechanism that provides adhesion of the many ridges in the feet of a gecko.

CRYSTAL POWER

The regularly repeating internal structure of atoms in crystals gives them aesthetic properties that have long made them attractive in jewelry. Crystals also have properties that are very important to the electronics and optical industries, and they are used in nearly every type of modern technology. In times past, crystals were valued for their alleged healing powers. This belief continues today, particularly among occultists and crystal healing groups. Crystals are said to channel "good energy" and ward off "bad energy." They carry "vibrations" that resonate with healing "frequencies" that help maintain a beneficial body balance. When properly arranged, crystals are said to provide protection against harmful electromagnetic forces emitted by power lines, cell phones, computer monitors, microwave ovens, and other people. We are told that crystals are "medically proven" to heal and to protect and that such claims are "based on Nobel Prize–winning physics."

Crystals *do* release energy–as every other object does. We'll learn in Chapter 16 that all things radiate energy—and also that all things absorb energy. If a crystal or any substance radiates more energy than it receives, its temperature drops. Atoms in crystals *do* vibrate and *do* resonate with frequencies that match external vibrations—just as molecules in all gases and in all liquids do. If purveyors of crystal power are talking about some kind of energy special to crystals, or to life, no scientific evidence supports this (the discoverer of such a special kind of energy would quickly become world-famous). Of course, evidence for a new kind of energy, such as the dark energy discussed in Chapter 11, could one day be found, but this is not what is claimed by purveyors of crystal power, who assert that modern scientific evidence supports their claims.

Affirmation for crystal power is not experimental; rather, it is confined to *testimonials*. As advertising illustrates, people are generally more persuaded by testimonials than by confirmed facts. Testimonials by people who are convinced of the personal benefits of crystals are common. Being convinced by scientific evidence is one thing; being convinced by wishful thinking, communal reinforcement, or a placebo effect is quite another. None of the claims for the special powers of crystals has ever been backed up by scientific confirmation.

Claims aside, wearing crystal pendants seems to give some people a good *feeling*, even a feeling of protection. These feelings and the aesthetic qualities of crystals are their real virtues. Some people feel that crystals bring good luck, just as carrying a rabbit's foot in your pocket is supposed to do. The difference between crystal power and a rabbit's foot, however, is that the benefits of crystals are couched in scientific terms, whereas claims for the benefits of carrying a rabbit's foot are not. Hence, the purveyors of crystal power are into full-fledged pseudoscience.

12.2 Density

Is iron heavier than wood? The question is ambiguous because it depends on the amounts of iron and wood. A large log is clearly heavier than an iron nail. A better question: Is iron *denser* than wood? The answer is *yes*, iron is denser than wood. The masses of the atoms and the spacing between them determine the **density** of materials. We think of density as the "lightness" or "heaviness" of materials of the same size. It's a measure of the compactness of matter, of how much mass occupies a given space; it is the amount of mass per unit volume:

$$\text{Density} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}}$$

Density is a property of a material; it doesn't matter how much material you actually have. The densities of some materials are listed in Table 12.1. Density is usually expressed in SI units: kilograms per cubic meter, kilograms per liter, or grams per cubic centimeter. Water, for example, has a mass density of 1 g/cm^3 or, equivalently, 1000 kg/m^3. So the mass of a cubic meter of fresh water is 1000 kg, and, equivalently, the mass of a cubic centimeter (about the size of a sugar cube) of fresh water is 1 g.

Density may be expressed in terms of weight rather than mass. This is *weight density*, which is defined as weight per unit volume:

$$\text{Weight density} = \frac{\text{weight}}{\text{volume}}$$

Weight density is measured in N/m^3. Because a 1-kg body has a weight of 9.8 N, weight density is numerically 9.8 × mass density. For example, the weight

FIGURE 12.5
When the volume of the bread is reduced, its density increases.

A cubic meter is a sizable volume and contains a million cubic centimeters. There are a million grams of water in a cubic meter (or, equivalently, a thousand kilograms of water in a cubic meter); hence, 1 g/cm^3 = 1000 kg/m^3.

TABLE 12.1
DENSITIES OF COMMON SUBSTANCES (kg/m³) (FOR DENSITY IN g/cm³, DIVIDE BY 1000)

Solids	Density
Iridium	22,650
Osmium	22,610
Platinum	21,090
Gold	19,300
Uranium	19,050
Lead	11,340
Silver	10,490
Copper	8,920
Iron	7,870
Aluminum	2,700
Ice	919
Liquids	
Mercury	13,600
Glycerin	1,260
Seawater	1,025
Water at 4°C	1,000
Ethyl alcohol	785
Gasoline	680

density of water is 9800 N/m³. In the British system, 1 cubic foot (ft³) of fresh water (almost 7.5 gallons) weighs 62.4 pounds. Thus, in the British system, fresh water has a weight density of 62.4 lb/ft³.

So the density of a material depends on the masses of the individual atoms that make it up and the spacing between those atoms. Iridium, a hard, brittle, silvery-white metal in the platinum family, is the densest substance on Earth. Although the individual iridium atom is less massive than individual atoms of platinum, gold, lead, or uranium, the close spacing of iridium atoms in the crystalline form contributes to its greater density. More iridium atoms fit into a cubic centimeter than other, more massive but more widely spaced atoms. Hence iridium has a whopping density of 22,650 kg/m³.

CHECK POINT

1. ***Here's an easy one:*** **When water freezes, it expands. What does this say about the density of ice compared with the density of water?**
2. ***Here's a slightly tricky one*: Which weighs more: a liter of ice or a liter of water?**
3. **Which has the greater density: 100 kg of lead or 1000 kg of aluminum?**
4. **What is the density of 1000 kg of water?**
5. **What is the volume of 1000 kg of water?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Ice is less dense than water (because it has more volume for the same mass), which is why ice floats on water.
2. Don't say that they weigh the same! A liter of water weighs more. If it is frozen, then its volume will be more than a liter. If you shave the extra part off so that the chunk of ice is the same size as the original liter of water, it will certainly weigh less.
3. Density is a *ratio* of mass to volume (or weight to volume), and this ratio is greater for any amount of lead than for any amount of aluminum—see Table 12.1.
4. The density of *any* amount of water is 1000 kg/m³ (or 1 g/cm³).
5. The volume of 1000 kg of water is 1 m³.

12.3 Elasticity

When an object is subjected to external forces, it undergoes changes in size, or in shape, or in both. The changes depend on the arrangement and bonding of the atoms in the material. A spring, for example, can be stretched or compressed by external forces.

A weight hanging on a spring stretches the spring. Additional weight stretches it further. If the weights are removed, the spring returns to its original length. We say that the spring is *elastic*. When a batter hits a baseball, the bat temporarily changes the ball's shape. An archer, about to shoot an arrow, first bends the bow, which springs back to its original shape when the arrow is released. The spring, the baseball, and the bow are examples of elastic objects. A body's **elasticity** describes how much its shape changes when a deforming force acts on it, and how well it returns to its original shape when the force is removed. Clay, putty, dough, and lead do *not* return to their original shape when a deforming force is

applied and then removed. Materials such as these, which do not resume their original shape after being deformed, are said to be *inelastic*.

When you hang a weight on a spring, the weight applies a force to the spring and this stretches the spring. Twice the weight causes twice as much stretch; triple the force causes triple the stretch. Additional weights stretch the spring further. We can say that

$$F \sim \Delta x$$

That is, the stretch is directly proportional to the applied force (Figure 12.7). This relationship, noted in the mid-17th century by the British physicist Robert Hooke, a contemporary of Isaac Newton, is called **Hooke's law.**[1]

If an elastic material is stretched or compressed beyond a certain amount, it will not return to its original state and will remain distorted. The distance beyond which permanent distortion occurs is called the *elastic limit*. Hooke's law holds only as long as the force does not stretch or compress the material beyond its elastic limit.

FIGURE 12.6
A baseball is elastic.

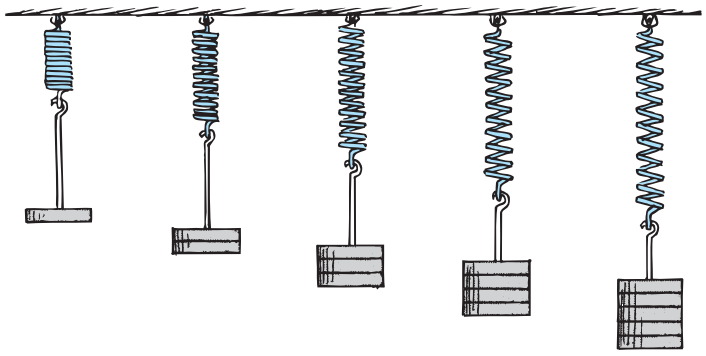


FIGURE 12.7
The stretch of the spring is directly proportional to the applied force. If the weight is doubled, the spring stretches twice as much.

CHECK POINT

1. **A 2-kg antique painting is hung from the end of a spring. The spring stretches a distance of 10 cm. If, instead, a 4-kg painting is hung from the same spring, how much will the spring stretch? If a 6-kg painting is hung from the same spring? (Assume that none of these loads stretches the spring beyond its elastic limit.)**
2. **If a force of 10 N stretches a certain spring 4 cm, how much stretch will occur for an applied force of 15 N?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. A 4-kg load (painting in this case) has twice the weight of a 2-kg load. In accord with Hooke's law, $F \sim \Delta x$, 2 times the applied force results in 2 times the stretch, so the spring stretches 20 cm. The weight of the 6-kg load makes the spring stretch 3 times as far, 30 cm. (If the elastic limit were exceeded, the amount of stretch could not be predicted with the information given.)
2. The spring will stretch 6 cm. By ratio and proportion, $(10\ \text{N})/(4\ \text{cm}) = (15\ \text{N})/(x\ \text{cm})$, which is read: 10 newtons is to 4 centimeters as 15 newtons is to x centimeters; then $x = 6$ cm. If you are taking a lab, you'll learn that the ratio of force to stretch is called the *spring constant, k* (in this case, $k = 2.5\ \text{N/cm}$), and Hooke's law is expressed as the equation $F = k\Delta x$.

fyi

- Robert Hooke, one of England's greatest scientists, was the first to propose a wave theory of light and the first to describe the cell (for which he became known as the father of microscopy). As an artist and surveyor, he helped Christopher Wren rebuild London after the great fire in 1666. As a physicist, he collaborated with Robert Boyle and other physicists of his time and was chosen to head the Royal Society. Upon Hooke's death, Isaac Newton became president of the Royal Society, and he jealously destroyed everything he could of Hooke's work. No paintings or likenesses of Robert Hooke survive today.

[1]The proportion $F \sim \Delta x$ becomes an equation when the *spring constant* k is introduced; $F = kx$, or $F = -kx$, depending on which direction the spring is compressed or stretched. Although useful for a myriad of objects that stretch or compress, Hooke's law is not a law with the stature of Newton's laws of motion and of gravitation since it depends on the material used.

12.4 Tension and Compression

When something is pulled on (stretched), it is said to be in *tension*. When it is pushed in (squashed), it is in *compression*. If you bend a ruler (or any stick), the outer curved part is in tension. The inner curved part, which is pushed in, is in compression. Tension causes things to get longer and thinner, whereas compression causes things to get shorter and wider. This is not obvious for most rigid materials, however, because the lengthening or shortening is very small.

fyi

- The enamel in your teeth is the hardest substance in your body.

Steel is an excellent elastic material because it can withstand large forces and then return to its original size and shape. Because of its strength and elastic properties, it is used to make not only springs but construction girders as well. Vertical girders of steel used in the construction of tall buildings undergo only slight compression. A typical 25-meter-long vertical steel girder (column) used in high-rise construction is compressed about a millimeter when it supports a 10-ton load. This can add up. A 70- to 80-story building can compress the huge steel columns at its base by some 2.5 centimeters (a full inch) when construction is completed.

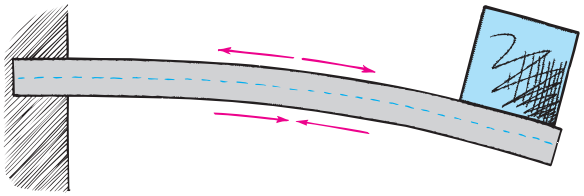
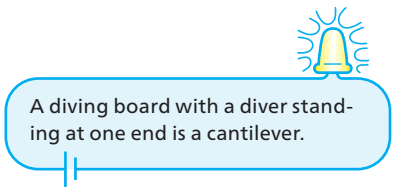


FIGURE 12.8
The top part of the beam is stretched and the bottom part is compressed. What happens in the middle portion, between the top and bottom?

More deformation occurs when girders are used horizontally, where their tendency is to sag under heavy loads. When a horizontal beam is supported at one or both ends, it is under both tension and compression from its weight and the load it supports. Consider the horizontal beam supported at one end (known as a cantilever beam) in Figure 12.8. It sags because of its own weight and the load it supports at its end. A little thought will show that the top part of the beam tends to be stretched. Atoms tend to be pulled apart. The top part is slightly longer and is under tension. More thought reveals that the bottom part of the beam is squashed. Atoms there are squeezed together—compressed. The bottom part is slightly shorter because of the way it is bent. Can you see that, somewhere between the top and bottom, there is a region in which nothing happens, in which there is neither tension nor compression? This is the *neutral layer*.



A diving board with a diver standing at one end is a cantilever.

The horizontal beam shown in Figure 12.9, known as a simple beam, is supported at both ends and carries a load in the middle. Here there is compression in the top of the beam and tension in the bottom. Again, a neutral layer exists along the middle portion of the thickness of the beam all along its length.

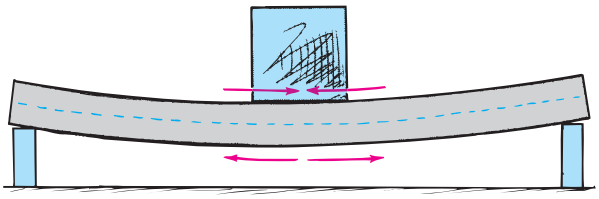
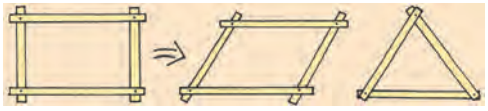


FIGURE 12.9
The top part of the beam is compressed and the bottom part is stretched. Where is the neutral layer (the part that is not under stress due to tension or compression)?

PRACTICING PHYSICS: STICK STRENGTH

If you nail four sticks together to form a rectangle, they can be deformed into a parallelogram without too much effort. But, if three sticks are nailed together to form a triangle, the shape cannot be changed without actually breaking the sticks or dislodging the nails. The triangle is the strongest of all the geometrical figures, which is why you see triangular shapes in bridges. Go ahead and nail three sticks together and try this, and then look at the triangles used in strengthening structures of many kinds.



With the neutral layer in mind, we can see why the cross-section of steel girders has the form of the letter I (Figure 12.10). Most of the material in these I-beams is concentrated in the top and bottom *flanges*. When the beam is used horizontally in construction, the stress is predominantly in the top and bottom flanges. One flange is squeezed while the other is stretched, with the two flanges supporting virtually all stresses in the beam. Between the flanges is a relatively stress-free region, the *web*, that acts principally to hold the top and bottom flanges well apart. Because of the web, comparatively little material is needed. An I-beam is nearly as strong as a solid rectangular bar of the same overall dimensions, with considerably less weight. A large rectangular steel beam on a certain span might fail under its own weight, whereas an I-beam of the same depth could support much added load.

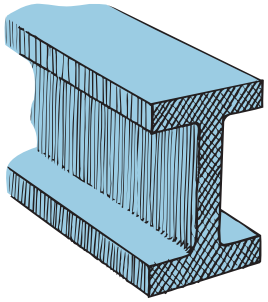


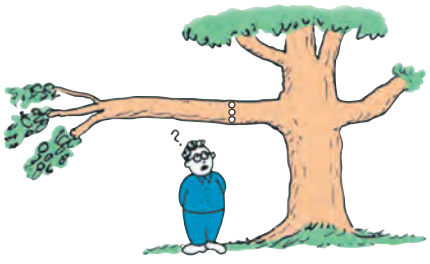
FIGURE 12.10
An I-beam is like a solid bar with some of the steel scooped out from its middle, where it is needed least. The beam is therefore lighter, but it has nearly the same strength.

FIGURE 12.11
The upper half of each horizontal branch is under tension because of the branch's weight, while the lower half is under compression. In what location is the wood neither stretched nor compressed?

The steel of I-beams and other structures is giving way to carbon fibers as a building material. Woven carbon filaments are similar to glass and plastic fibers, but compared to steel are many times stronger and many times lighter. Composites of carbon fiber are now popular in cars, aircraft, ships, and wind turbines.

CHECK POINT

1. **When you walk on floorboards in an old house that sag due to your weight, where is the neutral layer?**
2. **Suppose you drill a hole horizontally through a tree branch as shown. Where will the hole weaken the branch the least: through the upper portion, the middle portion, or the lower portion of the branch?**



CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The neutral layer is midway between the top and bottom surfaces of the floorboards.
2. Drill the hole horizontally through the middle of the branch, through the neutral layer—a hole at that location will hardly affect the branch's strength because fibers there are neither stretched nor compressed. Wood fibers in the top part are being stretched, so drilling a hole there may result in fibers pulling apart. Fibers in the lower part are compressed, so drilling a hole there might cause the hole to be crushed under compression.

12.5 Arches

Stone breaks more easily under tension than compression. The roofs of stone structures built by the Egyptians during the time of the pyramids were constructed with many horizontal stone slabs. Because of the weakness of these slabs under the forces produced by gravity, many vertical columns had to be erected to support the roofs. Likewise for the temples in ancient Greece. Then came arches—and fewer vertical columns.

FIGURE 12.12
Common semicircular stone arches, which have stood for centuries.

FIGURE 12.13
The horizontal slabs of stone in the roof cannot be too long because stone easily breaks under tension. That is why many vertical columns are needed to support the roof.

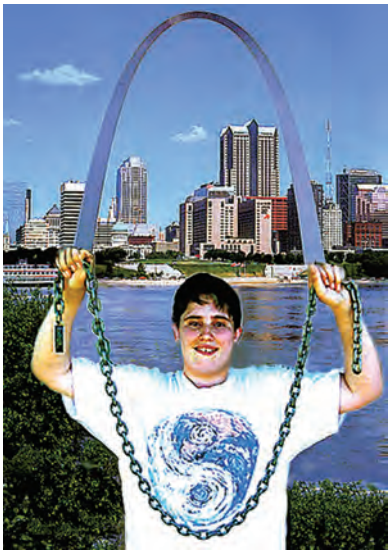


FIGURE 12.14
Both the curve of a sagging chain held by Manuel and the Gateway Arch in St. Louis are catenaries.

Look at the tops of windows in old brick buildings. Chances are the tops are arched. Likewise for the shapes of old stone bridges. When a load is placed on a properly arched structure, the compression strengthens rather than weakens the structure. The stones are pushed together more firmly and are held together by compressive forces. With just the right shape of the arch, the stones do not even need cement to hold them together.

When the load being supported is uniform and extends horizontally, as with a bridge, the proper shape is a parabola, the same curve followed by a thrown ball. The cables of a suspension bridge provide an example of an "upside-down" parabolic arch. If, on the other hand, the arch is supporting only its own weight, the curve that gives it maximum strength is called a *catenary*. A catenary is the curve that is formed by a rope or chain hung between two points of support. The tension along every part of the rope or chain is parallel to the curve. So, when a freestanding arch takes the shape of an inverted catenary, compression within it is everywhere parallel to the arch, just as tension between adjacent links of a hanging chain is everywhere parallel to the chain. The Gateway Arch, which graces the waterfront of St. Louis, Missouri, is a catenary (Figure 12.14).

If you rotate an arch through a complete circle, you have a dome. The weight of the dome, like that of an arch, produces compression. Modern domes, such as the Astrodome in Houston, are inspired by 3-dimensional catenaries, and they cover vast areas without the interruption of columns. There are shallow domes (the Jefferson Memorial) and tall ones (the U.S. Capitol). And long before these, there were the igloos in the Arctic.

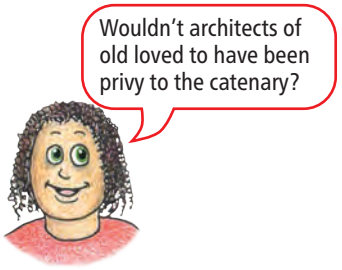


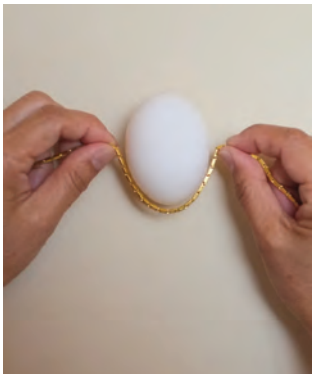
FIGURE 12.15
The weight of the Jefferson Memorial dome produces compression, not tension, so no support columns are needed in the middle.

CHECK POINT

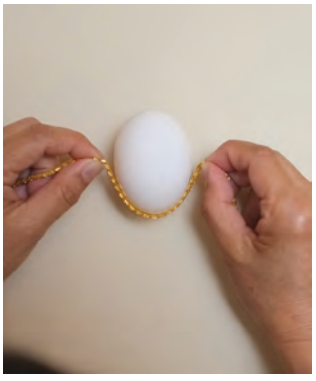
How does the shape of the St. Louis Gateway Arch and the sag of Manuel's chain (Figure 12.14) relate to the shape of an egg?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

All three are catenaries! Just as tension vectors all along Manuel's sagging chain are parallel to the chain itself, and compression vectors due to the weight of the arch are parallel to the arch itself, compression of an egg along its long axis resists its being crunched by strong hands. As the photos show, both ends of an egg are catenaries—which accounts for their strength. When you can't break an egg by crushing it along its long axis with your hands, think of Manuel and the Gateway Arch!



(a)



(b)

fyi

- A catenary arch could even be made with slippery blocks of ice! Provided that the compressive forces between blocks are parallel to the arch and that temperature doesn't rise enough to cause melting, the arch will remain stable.

ADDITIVE MANUFACTURING OR 3-D PRINTING

In manufacturing over the centuries, artisans have started with a piece of material and removed bits by cutting and drilling until a finished product was produced—a *subtractive process*. But nature has always done it differently in biological processes. Rather than shaving off material (and discarding it), nature builds things atom by atom—an *additive process*. For decades, ink-jet printers have done much the same, precisely spraying a series of blobs of ink to produce images, blob by blob. Amazingly, this has progressed to the deposition of blobs of material to make three-dimensional objects. Following a digital model, the printer repetitively deposits layer upon layer of the specified material to create a final product, which can be of almost any geometrical shape. This transformative manufacturing processes is 3-D printing.

Human organs and body parts have been manufactured from layers of living cells deposited onto a gel medium or sugar matrix. As of this writing, 3-D printing of human organs is still experimental. But it's expected that patients will be able to receive printed livers, kidneys, and even hearts in the not-too-distant future. Hip and knee replacements have long been commonplace. And 3-D printing is not limited to small things—3-D concrete layers can produce buildings and bridges.

Today we view yesterday's lighting of homes via candlelight as sadly inferior to our electric lights. Will we not tomorrow view traditional methods of manufacturing and construction as similarly antiquated? We now advance to 4-D printing, in which an object can be triggered to change shape after being printed. When medical stents, for example, reach their destination they'll open up—as will a variety of medical valves. Applications are seemingly without limit. Check the Web to keep up with the phenomenal growth of additive manufacturing.

CHECK POINT

Why is it easier for a chick inside an eggshell to poke its way out than it is for a chicken on the outside to poke its way in?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

To poke its way into a shell, a chicken on the outside must contend with compression, which greatly resists shell breakage. But, when a chick pokes from the inside, only the weaker shell tension must be overcome. To see that the compression of the shell requires greater force, try crushing an egg along its long axis by squeezing it between your thumb and fingers. Surprised? Try it along its shorter diameter. Surprised? (Do this experiment over a sink with some protection, such as gloves, for possible shell splinters.)

fyi

- Watch for a completely biodegradable material composed of sugar cane waste (bagasse) and bamboo pulp to replace plastic in coffee cups and other disposable items—all of which once used can be dumped in landfills with a clear conscience.

Scaling was studied by Galileo, who differentiated the bone sizes of various creatures.

12.6 Scaling[2]

Have you ever noticed how strong an ant is for its size? An ant can carry the weight of several ants on its back, whereas a strong elephant would have great difficulty carrying even a single elephant. How strong would an ant be if it were scaled up to the size of an elephant? Would this "super ant" be several times stronger than an elephant? Surprisingly, the answer is *no*. Such an ant would be unable to lift its own weight off the ground. Its legs would be too thin to support its greater weight, and they would likely break.

[2]Material in this section is based on two delightful and informative essays: "On Being the Right Size" by J. B. S. Haldane, and "On Magnitude" by Sir D'Arcy Wentworth Thompson, both in James R. Newman (ed.), *The World of Mathematics*, vol. II (New York: Simon & Schuster, 1956).

There is a reason for the thin legs of an ant and the thick legs of an elephant. As the size of a thing increases, it grows heavier much faster than it grows stronger. You can support a toothpick horizontally at its ends and notice no sag. But support an entire tree trunk of the same kind of wood horizontally at its ends and you'd notice an appreciable sag. Relative to its weight, the toothpick is much stronger than the tree. **Scaling** is the study of how the volume and shape (size) of any object affect the relationships among its strength, weight, and surface area.

Strength is related to the area of the cross-section (which is 2-dimensional and is measured in *square* centimeters), whereas *weight* relates to volume (which is 3-dimensional and is measured in *cubic* centimeters). To understand this square–cube relationship, consider the simplest case of a solid cube of matter—say, a small sugar cube. Any 1-cubic-centimeter cube has a cross-section of 1 square centimeter; that is, if we sliced through the cube parallel to one of its faces, the sliced area would be 1 square centimeter. Compare this with a cube made of the same material that has double the linear dimensions—a cube 2 centimeters on each side. As shown in Figure 12.16, its cross-sectional area is 2×2, or 4 square centimeters, and its volume is $2 \times 2 \times 2$, or 8 cubic centimeters. Therefore, the larger cube is 4 times as strong but 8 times as heavy. Careful inspection of Figure 12.16 shows that, for increases of linear dimensions, the cross-sectional area and total area grow as the square of the increase, whereas the volume and weight grow as the cube of the increase.

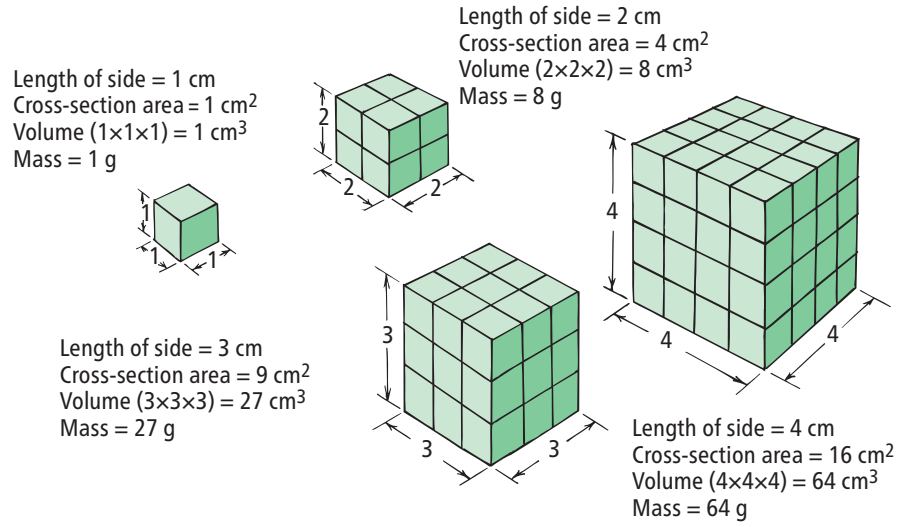
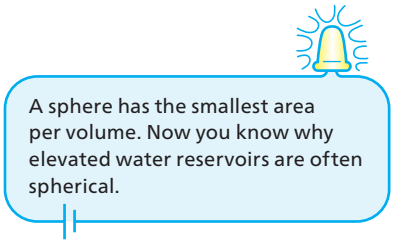

Length of side = 1 cm
Cross-section area = 1 cm²
Volume (1×1×1) = 1 cm³
Mass = 1 g
Length of side = 2 cm
Cross-section area = 4 cm²
Volume (2×2×2) = 8 cm³
Mass = 8 g
Length of side = 3 cm
Cross-section area = 9 cm²
Volume (3×3×3) = 27 cm³
Mass = 27 g
Length of side = 4 cm
Cross-section area = 16 cm²
Volume (4×4×4) = 64 cm³
Mass = 64 g

FIGURE 12.16
As the linear dimensions of an object change by some factor, the cross-sectional area changes as the square of this factor, and the volume (and hence the weight) changes as the cube of this factor. We see that, when the linear dimensions are doubled (factor 2), the area grows by $2^2 = 4$ and the volume grows by $2^3 = 8$.



Volume (and thus weight) increases much faster than the corresponding increase of cross-sectional area. Although Figure 12.16 demonstrates the simple example of a cube, the principle applies to an object of any shape. Consider a football player who can do many pushups. Suppose he could somehow be scaled up to twice his size—that is, twice as tall and twice as broad, with his bones twice as thick and every linear dimension increased by a factor of 2. Would he be twice as strong and be able to lift himself with twice the ease? The answer is *no*. Although his twice-as-thick arms would have 4 times the cross-sectional area and be 4 times as strong, he would be 8 times as heavy. For comparable effort, he would be able to lift only half his weight. At his increased weight, he would be weaker than before.

We find in nature that large animals have disproportionately thick legs compared with those of small animals. This is because of the relationship between

FIGURE 12.17
Scaled-up chairs at the Exploratorium, each double in size.

fyi

- Leonardo da Vinci was the first to report that the cross-sectional area of a tree trunk is equal to the combined cross-sectional surface areas produced by making a horizontal slice through all of the branches farther up on the tree (but perpendicular to each branch). Likewise for the cross-sectional areas of capillaries with the cross-section of the vein that supplies blood to them.

volume and area—the fact that volume (and weight) grows as the cube of the factor by which the linear dimension increases, while strength (and area) grows as the square of the increase factor. So we see that there is a reason for the thin legs of a deer or an antelope, as well as for the thick legs of a rhinoceros, a hippopotamus, or an elephant. Interestingly, the need for large creatures to have strong thick legs is nicely sidestepped for whales, where the buoyancy of water provides support. Even hippos spend much of their time in water.

A knowledge of scaling tells us that we can't take seriously the great strengths attributed to King Kong and other fictional giants. The fact that the consequences of scaling are conveniently ignored is one of the differences between science and science fiction.

Important also is the comparison of total surface area to volume (Figure 12.18). Total surface area, just like cross-sectional area, grows in proportion to the square of an object's linear size, whereas volume grows in proportion to the cube of the linear size. So, as an object grows, its surface area and volume grow at different rates, with the result that the ratio of surface area to volume *decreases*. In other words, both the surface area and the volume of a growing object increase, but the growth of surface area *relative to* the growth of volume decreases. Not many people really understand this concept. The following examples may be helpful.

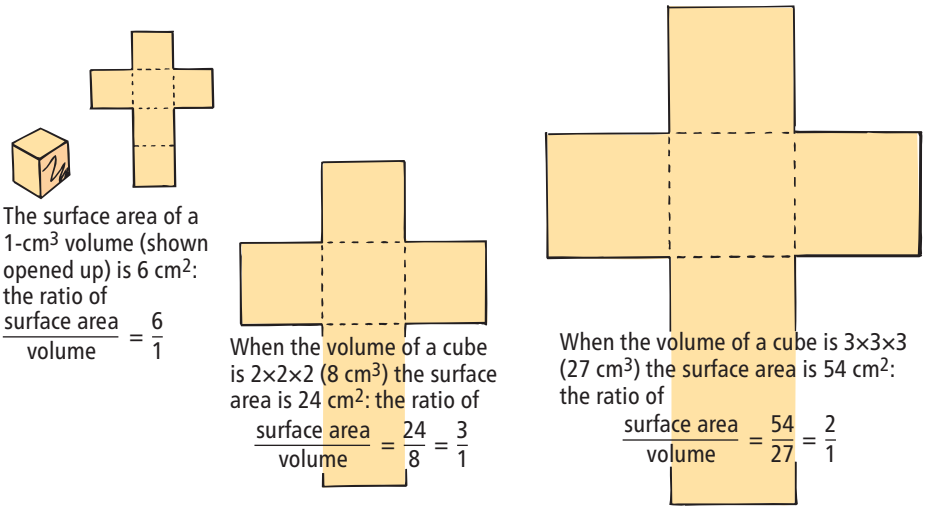

The surface area of a 1-cm³ volume (shown opened up) is 6 cm²: the ratio of surface area / volume = 6/1
When the volume of a cube is 2×2×2 (8 cm³) the surface area is 24 cm²: the ratio of surface area / volume = 24/8 = 3/1
When the volume of a cube is 3×3×3 (27 cm³) the surface area is 54 cm²: the ratio of surface area / volume = 54/27 = 2/1

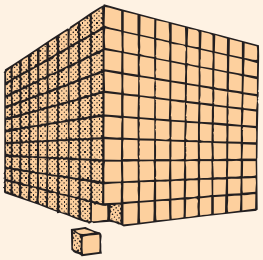
FIGURE 12.18
As the size of an object increases, there is a greater increase in its volume than in its surface area; as a result, the ratio of surface area to volume decreases.

A chef knows that more potato peelings result from peeling 5 kg of small potatoes than from peeling 5 kg of large potatoes. Smaller objects have more surface area per kilogram. Thin french fries cook faster in oil than thicker french fries. Flattened hamburgers cook faster than meatballs of the same mass. Crushed ice cools a drink much faster than a single ice cube of the same mass because crushed ice presents more surface area to the beverage. Steel wool rusts away at the sink while steel knives rust more slowly. Iron rusts when exposed to air, but it rusts much faster, and is soon eaten away, if it is in the form of small strands or filings.

Burning is an interaction between oxygen molecules in the air and molecules on the surface of the fuel. That's why chunks of coal burn while coal dust explodes when ignited, and why we light fires with several thin pieces of wood instead of the same mass of wood as a single log. These are all consequences of the fact that volume and area are not in direct proportion to each other.

CHECK POINT

1. **Consider a 1-cm^3 cube scaled up to a cube 10 cm long on each edge.**
   a. **What is the volume of the scaled-up cube?**
   b. **What is its cross-sectional surface area?**
   c. **What is its total surface area?**
2. **If you were somehow scaled up to twice your size while retaining your present proportions, would you be stronger or weaker? Explain your reasoning.**



CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. a. The volume of the scaled-up cube is $(10\text{ cm})^3$ or 1000 cm^3.
   b. Its cross-sectional surface area is $(10\text{ cm})^2$ or 100 cm^2.
   c. Its total surface area = 6 sides $\times$ area of a side = $6 \times (10\text{ cm})^2 = 600\text{ cm}^2$.
2. Your scaled-up self would be 4 times as strong because the cross-sectional area of your twice-as-thick bones and muscles would increase by 4. You could lift a load 4 times as heavy. But your weight would be 8 times greater than before, so you would not be stronger relative to your greater weight. You would have 4 times the strength but carry 8 times the weight, which gives you a strength-to-weight ratio only half its former value. So, if you can barely lift your own weight now, when scaled up you could lift only half your new weight. Your strength would increase, but your strength-to-weight ratio would decrease. Stay as you are!

FIGURE 12.19
The African elephant has less surface area relative to its weight than many other animals. It compensates for this with its large ears, which significantly increase its radiating surface area and promote cooling of the body.

The large ears of African elephants are nature's way of compensating for the small ratio of surface area to volume for these large creatures. The large ears may enhance hearing, but, even better, they enhance cooling. The rate at which a creature generates heat is proportional to its mass (or volume), but the heat that it can dissipate is proportional to its surface area. If an African elephant didn't have large ears, it would not have enough surface area to cool its huge mass. The large ears greatly increase its overall surface area, which facilitates cooling in hot climates.

At the microscopic level, living cells must contend with the fact that the growth of volume is faster than the growth of surface area. Cells obtain nourishment by diffusion through their surfaces. As cells grow, their surface area increases, but not fast enough to keep up with their increasing volume. For example, if the surface area increases by 4, the corresponding volume increases by 8. Eight times as much mass must be sustained by only 4 times as much nourishment. At some size, the surface area isn't large enough to allow sufficient nutrients to pass into the cell, which places a limit on how large cells can grow. So cells divide, and there is life as we know it. That's nice.

Not so nice is the fate of large animals when they fall. The saying "The bigger they are, the harder they fall" holds true and is a consequence of the small ratio of surface area to weight. Air resistance to movement through the air depends on the surface area of the moving object. If you fell off a cliff, even with air resistance, your speed would increase at the rate of very nearly 1 *g*. Your terminal speed (the speed at which the force of air resistance on you equals your weight) would be large unless you wore a parachute to increase your surface area. Small animals need no parachute.

FIGURE 12.20
The long tail of the monkey not only helps in maintaining balance but also effectively radiates excess heat.

Let's see how scaling affects small creatures. If your linear dimensions got smaller by a factor of 10, your area would decrease by a factor of 100, but your weight would decrease by 1000. Being this small means that you'd have 10 times as much surface area relative to your weight, so you would have a much lower terminal speed. This is why an insect can fall from the top of a tree to the ground below without harm. The ratio of surface area to weight is in the insect's favor—in a sense, the insect is its own parachute.

The dissimilar consequences of a fall are just one illustration of the different relationships that large organisms and small organisms have with the physical environment. The force of gravity is tiny for insects compared with the cohesion forces (stickiness) between their feet and the surfaces they walk on. That's why a fly can walk up a wall or along the ceiling completely ignoring gravity. Humans and elephants can't do that. The lives of small creatures are ruled not by gravity but by such forces as surface tension, cohesion, and capillarity, which we'll treat in the next chapter.

It is interesting to note that the heart rate of a mammal is related to the size of the mammal. The heart of a tiny shrew beats about 30 times faster than the heart of an elephant. In general, small mammals live fast and die young; larger animals live at a leisurely pace and live longer. Don't feel bad about a pet hamster that doesn't live as long as a dog. All warm-blooded animals have about the same life span—not in terms of years, but in the average number of heartbeats (about 800 million). Humans are the exception: We live two to three times longer than other mammals of our size.

Researchers are finding that, when something shrinks enough—whether it's an electronic circuit, a motor, a film of lubricant, or an individual metal or ceramic crystal—it stops functioning as a miniature version of its larger self and starts behaving in new and different ways. Palladium metal, for example, which is normally composed of grains about 1000 nanometers in size, is found to be five times as strong when formed from 5-nanometer grains.[3] Scaling is enormously important as more devices are being miniaturized. Nanotechnology works at the interface between physics, chemistry, biology, and engineering, and that's an interface where there are so many potential outcomes that we can't envision.

fyi

- Raindrops can get as large as 8 mm in diameter. Drops about 1 mm in diameter are spherical; at 2 mm, they flatten like a hamburger bun; and at 5 mm, air resistance distorts them to parachute shapes. When circulation tosses raindrops back up into the air, often repeatedly, they may freeze and form hail. Hailstones can be several centimeters in diameter.

CHECK POINT

1. **Which has more skin: an elephant or a mouse?**
2. **Which has more skin per body weight: an elephant or a mouse?**
3. **Why the different answers to what might seem like a repeated question?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. An elephant has more skin.
2. A mouse has more skin *per body weight* than an elephant.
3. The first question asks for a surface area. The second asks for a *ratio*: one thing compared with another. In this instance, we compare the surface area *per* weight of the animal. A ratio involves more thinking.

[3]A nanometer is one-billionth of a meter, so 1000 nanometers is one-millionth of a meter, or one-thousandth of a millimeter. Small indeed!

Chapter 12 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Atomic bonding The linking together of atoms to form larger structures, including solids.

Density The mass of a substance per unit volume:

$$\text{Density} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}}$$

Weight density is weight per unit volume:

$$\text{Weight density} = \frac{\text{weight}}{\text{volume}}$$

Elasticity The property of a material by which it changes shape when a deforming force acts on it and returns to its original shape when the force is removed.

Hooke's law The amount of stretch or compression of an elastic material is directly proportional to the applied force: $F \sim \Delta x$. When the spring constant k is introduced, $F = k\Delta x$.

Scaling The study of how volume and shape affect the relationships among weight, strength, and surface area.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

12.1 Crystal Structure

1. What are crystals made of? What type of radiation is used to determine the crystalline arrangement of atoms?
2. Between crystalline and noncrystalline substances, in which do molecules continually vibrate?
3. What is meant by saying a solid material is amorphous?

12.2 Density

4. Between a 500-g iron ball and a 1-kg iron ball, which one has the higher density?
5. A material has a density of 1000 kg/m^3. How much would a 10-cm^3 portion of the material weigh?
6. How does close packing of iridium atoms affect the density of iridium?
7. What is the mass density of water? What is water's normal weight density?

12.3 Elasticity

8. Why is a metal spring said to be elastic?
9. What happens when the external force applied to an inelastic material is removed?
10. What is Hooke's law? Does it apply to elastic materials or to inelastic materials?
11. Does Hooke's law apply to spring compressions, or only stretches?
12. Is the elastic limit a limiting force or a limiting distance?
13. If a suspended 1-kg object stretches a spring by 4 cm, how much will the spring be stretched when it supports a 3-kg object?
14. If in the previous question, the suspension of 3 kg exceeds the spring's elastic limit, by how much does the spring stretch? Explain.

12.4 Tension and Compression

15. Can tension and compression exist together?
16. Why are triangular shapes preferred during the construction of bridges and similar mechanical structures?
17. Why are the cross sections of metal beams in the shape of the letter I instead of solid rectangles?
18. Which part of an I-beam, the flanges or the web, experiences tension and compression forces when supporting a load?

12.5 Arches

19. Why were multiple vertical columns needed to support the roofs of stone buildings in ancient Egypt and Greece?
20. Why are the tops of windows in old brick buildings arched in shape?
21. What is the optimum shape of the curve of an arch that supports only its own weight?
22. Why are vertical columns not needed to support the middle of domed stadiums, such as the Jefferson Memorial?

12.6 Scaling

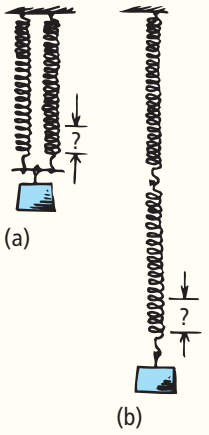
23. As the size of an animal increases, does strength also increase in proportion? Justify your answer with at least one real-life example.
24. What is the volume of a sugar cube that measures 1 cm on each side? What is the cross-sectional area of the cube? The total surface area?
25. If the linear dimensions of an object are doubled, by how much does the surface area increase? By how much does the volume increase?
26. A brass cube has a mass of 4 kg. What is the mass of a brass cube twice as tall and twice as wide?
27. Why do we get more potato peels by peeling 5 kg of small potatoes than by peeling 5 kg of large potatoes?
28. How will our weight change if our linear dimensions reduce by a factor of 10?
29. A popular saying is "The bigger they are, the harder they fall." Does this relate more to a small or a large ratio (surface area)/(volume)?
30. Why can small creatures fall considerable distances without injury, while humans need parachutes to do the same?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

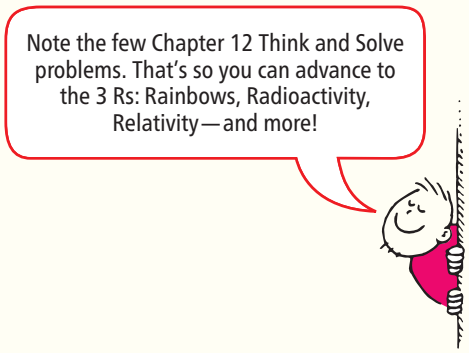
31. Find a region where snow falls, collect some snowflakes on a black cloth and quickly examine them with a magnifying glass. Note the many hexagonal crystalline structures, among the most beautiful sights in nature.
32. Simulate atomic close packing with a couple of dozen or so pennies. Arrange them in a square pattern so each penny inside the perimeter makes contact with four other pennies. Then arrange them hexagonally, so contact with six others occurs. Compare the areas occupied by the same number of pennies close packed both ways.
33. Are you slightly longer while lying down than you are tall when standing up? Make measurements and see.
34. As shown on page 289, hold an egg vertically and droop a small chain beside it. Can you see that the chain follows the contour of the egg—shallow sag for the more rounded end, and deeper sag for the more pointed end? Nature has not overlooked the catenary!
35. If you stand on an egg, you'll break it. How about a dozen eggs? Show your friends that you can stand on a pair of egg cartons each filled with a dozen vertical eggs. It's best to place a small board on top of both cartons for stability when you step on and off. Then explain to your friends the physics of catenaries for this feat.
36. With a magnifying glass, carefully investigate a common zipper. Fascinating!

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

37. Calculate the mass of a small aluminum cube 10 cm on a side. Do the same for gold. You can easily lift the aluminum. How about the gold?
38. Calculate the mass and weight of a liter of water. (For the density of water, use 1000 kg/m^3)
39. A spring stretches by 2 cm when a load of 20 N is suspended from it. What load should be suspended from it to stretch it to 6 cm without reaching its elastic limit?
40. Another spring stretches 4 cm when a load of 10 N is suspended from it. How much will the spring stretch if an identical spring also supports the load as shown in (a) and (b)? (Neglect the weights of the springs.)



41. You have a bag that contains wooden cubes of 1 cm on a side. (a) Calculate the surface area of one cube. (b) How many cubes would you need to stack to create a bigger cube with 3 cubes on a side?
42. A vendor is selling you a metallic cube that is 10 cm on a side, which he claims is made of pure gold, at a cheap price. Being suspicious, you weigh it and find that its mass is 15 kg. Do you think that the gold cube is genuine or fake? (The density of gold is 19.3 g/cm^3.)


Note the few Chapter 12 Think and Solve problems. That's so you can advance to the 3 Rs: Rainbows, Radioactivity, Relativity—and more!

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

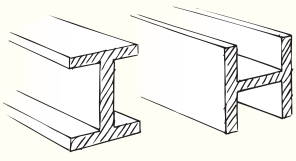
43. Consult Table 12.1 and rank the density of the following materials from least to greatest: (a) Silver, (b) Aluminum, (c) Platinum, (d) Glycerine, and (e) Mercury.
44. Consult Table 12.1 and rank the volume of 1 kg of each material from least to greatest: (a) Copper, (b) Gold, (c) Iron, and (d) Iridium.

THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

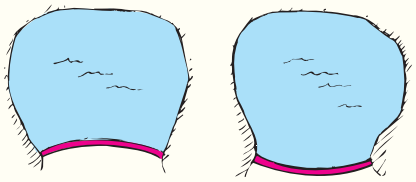
45. The stronger the atomic bond between the atoms in solid, the less likely they will be broken apart. What can be said about the atomic bonds in crayons used by kids when creating their art?
46. If you consume 10 g of salt every day, and your friend consumes 10000 mg of salt every day, which one of you consumes more salt?

47. Why does ice float in liquid water although it is made of the same molecules?
48. In pondering trees, Phil suggests that most of their mass comes from the soil. Jean says that if this is so, as trees grow taller, the surrounding ground should lower. Your turn: From where do trees get their mass?
49. Silicon is the chief ingredient of both glass and semiconductor devices, yet the physical properties of glass are different from those of semiconductor devices. Explain.
50. What evidence can you cite to support the claim that crystals are composed of atoms that are arranged in specific patterns?
51. What happens to the size of an air-filled rubber balloon when it is cooled? Explain.
52. How does the density of a 100-kg iron block compare with the density of an iron filing?
53. Why does a liter of ice weigh less than a liter of water?
54. To sink easily, divers usually exhale as much air as possible before going underwater. Why do you think they do so?
55. Which is heavier: a cube of silver or a cube of lead of the same size?
56. Which has more volume: a pound of copper or a pound of aluminum?
57. To test the elasticity of a steel ball, should you shake it to and fro or drop it on a steel anvil?
58. Why does the suspended spring stretch more at the top than at the bottom?

59. If the spring in the sketch above were supporting a heavy weight, how would the sketch be changed?
60. When you bend a meterstick, one side is under tension and the other is under compression. Explain which side is which.
61. Tension and compression occur in a horizontal beam when supporting a load. In a comparison of Figures 12.8 and 12.9, in which is tension greater than compression on the top side of the beam? In which is tension greater than compression at the bottom side of the beam?
62. Suppose you're constructing a balcony that extends beyond the main frame of your house. In a concrete overhanging slab, explain why steel reinforcing rods should be embedded in the top of the slab.
63. Can a horizontal I-beam support a greater load when the web is horizontal or when the web is vertical? Explain.



64. The sketches are of top views of a dam to hold back a lake. Which of the two designs is preferable? Why?



65. You notice that the bottom of most water bottles is concave (bending inward). What could be the reason behind this? Why don't manufacturers design bottles with convex bottoms (bending outward)?
66. Consider two bridges that are exact replicas of each other except that every dimension of the larger bridge is exactly twice that of the other—that is, twice as long, structural elements twice as thick, etc. Give a convincing explanation as to which bridge is more likely to collapse under its own weight.
67. Only with great difficulty can you crush an egg when squeezing it along its long axis, but it breaks easily if you squeeze it sideways. Why?

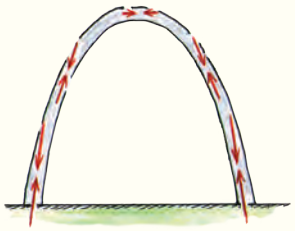
68. Archie designs an arch of a certain width and height to serve as an outdoor sculpture in a park. To achieve the size and shape for the strongest possible arch, he suspends a chain from two equally elevated supports as far apart as the arch is wide and allows the chain to hang as low as the arch is high. He then designs the arch to have exactly the inverted shape of the hanging chain. Explain why.

69. The photo shows a semicircular arch of stone. Note that it must be held together with steel rods to prevent outward movement. If the shape of the arch were not a semicircle but the shape used by Archie in the previous exercise, would the steel rods be necessary? Explain.

70. A candymaker making taffy apples decides to use 100 kg of large apples rather than 100 kg of small apples. Will the candymaker need to make more or less taffy to cover the apples? Why?
71. Why is it easier to cool a glass of water using small ice cubes rather than a big chunk of ice?
72. Explain why a chunk of coal burns when ignited, whereas coal dust explodes.
73. Why does snow melt faster under the Sun than a chunk of ice of the same volume?
74. You need to boil a gallon of water. In your kitchen, you find two pots that you can use, a normal pot and a second pot that is wider in diameter. Which pot will you use to boil the water faster?
75. You place two chocolates of the same volume, one a sphere and the other a cube, in a warm room. Which do you think would melt slower?
76. As you increase the amount of water in a container, the mass also increases. Does the density also increase? Why or why not?
77. Why is it faster to burn crushed charcoal than the same mass of larger chunks?
78. When you feel cold, someone advises you to curl your body into a ball. Do you think this would be effective?
79. Which do you think has more rust: a spherical iron or a cylindrical iron of the same volume?
80. Give an explanation of why thin french fries cook faster than thick fries.
81. If you are boiling whole potatoes and getting impatient, why is it a good idea to cut them into chunks?
82. Why are mittens warmer than gloves on a cold day? And which parts of the body are most susceptible to frostbite? Why?
83. A dog has more skin per bodyweight than an elephant. How does this affect the amount of food each creature eats?
84. Both a gorilla and a mouse mistakenly run off the edge of the same high cliff. How does scaling aid the mouse, but not the gorilla?
85. How does scaling relate to the fact that the heartbeat of large creatures is generally slower than the heartbeat of smaller creatures?
86. The human lungs have a volume of only about 6 L, yet an internal surface area of nearly 130 m^2. Why is this important, and how is this possible?
87. What does the concept of scaling have to do with the fact that living cells in a whale are about the same size as those in a mouse?
88. Which fall faster: large or small raindrops? Defend your answer.

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

89. Is iron necessarily heavier than cork? Explain.
90. The uranium atom is the heaviest and most massive atom among the naturally occurring elements. Why, then, isn't a solid bar of uranium the densest metal?
91. To make a string stronger, you wind it up multiple times. Why is this effective even though the thickness of each single strand is the same?
92. Why do you suppose that girders are so often arranged to form triangles in the construction of bridges and other structures? (Compare the stability of the nailed-together sticks that are featured at the top of page 287.)
93. Discuss the similarities and the differences between the two catenaries below: a dangling chain at the left and an arch at the right. What can you say about the red force vectors at the apex of their curves? Which force vectors represent tension and which compression?



94. Suspension bridges such as the Golden Gate Bridge in California are supported by cables. Your friend says that only tension forces play a role in such bridges, and that compressive forces play no role. Do compressive forces play a role? If so, where?
95. You are about to make a batch of cake batter following the instructions from a cookbook. However, your baking pan is shallower and wider than the one suggested. Should you adjust the baking time to achieve a desirable outcome?
96. Nourishment is obtained from food through the inner surface area of the intestines. Why is it that a small organism, such as a worm, has a simple and relatively straight intestinal tract, while a large organism, such as a human being, has a complex and extensively folded intestinal tract?
97. Who has more need for a drink in a dry desert climate: a child or an adult?
98. Why doesn't a hummingbird soar like an eagle and an eagle flap its wings like a hummingbird?
99. What is the advantage to a gymnast of being short in stature?
100. Can you relate the idea of scaling to the governance of small versus large groups of citizens? Explain.

CHAPTER TWELVE Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. The crystals in matter are held together by
   (a) cohesive forces.
   (b) amorphous forces.
   (c) electrical forces.
   (d) excess neutrons.
2. If the mass of an object were doubled while its volume remained the same, its density would
   (a) be half.
   (b) double.
   (c) stay the same.
   (d) be four times as great.
3. If the volume of an object were doubled while its mass remained the same, its density would
   (a) be half.
   (b) double.
   (c) stay the same.
   (d) be four times as great.
4. A spring is 50 cm long. Suspending a 100-N block from it increases its length to 60 cm. An additional 100-N block suspended to the spring makes the spring length
   (a) 60 cm.
   (b) 70 cm.
   (c) 80 cm.
   (d) 100 cm.
5. When a load is placed on the middle of a horizontal beam supported at each end, the top part of the beam undergoes
   (a) tension.
   (b) compression.
   (c) Either of these
   (d) None of these
6. A catenary in nature is evident in
   (a) eggs.
   (b) a necklace drooping between your fingers.
   (c) the domes of some modern buildings.
   (d) All of the above
7. Lillian sees a chair scaled up by three at the Exploratorium. In attempting to lift it, she finds the chair is
   (a) three times as heavy.
   (b) six times as heavy.
   (c) nine times as heavy.
   (d) more than nine times as heavy.
8. One kilogram of peaches has more skin area than one kilogram of
   (a) blueberries.
   (b) grapefruits.
   (c) grapes.
   (d) All of the above
9. A solid glass ball weighs 1 N. One with twice the diameter weighs
   (a) 2 N.
   (b) 3 N.
   (c) 4 N.
   (d) more than 4 N.
10. Eight little spheres of mercury coalesce to form a single sphere. Compared to the combined surface areas of the eight little spheres, the surface area of the big sphere is
    (a) one eighth.
    (b) one quarter.
    (c) one half.
    (d) the same.

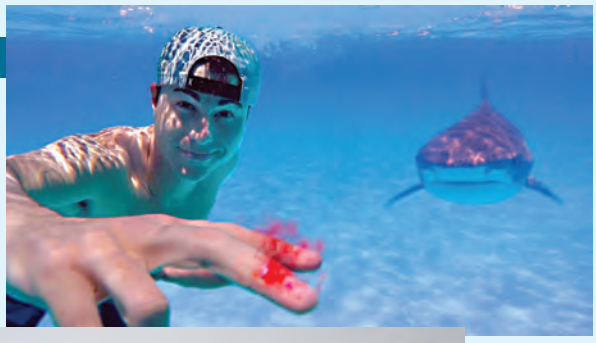
Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

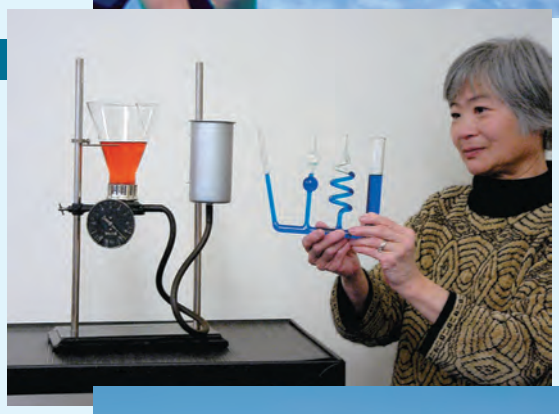
1. (c): Choices (a) and (b) are electrical forces, so (c) is the best answer. Neutrons do not bond crystals together. **2. (b):** The equation guides our thinking: Density = mass/volume. Doubling mass with no change in volume tells us $2m/\text{vol} =$ double the density. Mass would be more compact in the object. **3. (a):** Increased volume means a less compact object. Density = $m/(2\text{ vol})$ gives ½ the density. **4. (b):** We're told 100 N will stretch the spring an additional 10 cm (60 cm − 50 cm = 10 cm). For a constant spring constant k, an additional 100 N will stretch the spring 10 cm more, which equals 70 cm. Or by $F = kx$; 100 N = k(60 cm − 50 cm) = k(10 cm), so spring constant k = 100 N/10 cm = 10 N/cm. From $F = kx$, $x = F/k$ = (100 N)/(10 N/cm) = 10 cm, which added to 60 cm = 70 cm. **5. (b):** The loaded beam sags in its midpoint, which means that the bottom part is stretched a bit, which further means the top part is compressed a bit. So compression occurs in the top of the beam. **6. (d):** All choices are cited in Section 12.5. **7. (d):** Weight scales up as the cube of increased dimensions. So the 3 times as high chair is 3^3 times as heavy, which is 27 times as heavy (more than 9 times as heavy). **8. (b):** Per kilogram, smallest objects have more surface area. Of the choices, only grapefruits are larger than peaches. Like equal masses of sand and gravel, one kilogram of peaches has more surface area than one kilogram of grapefruits. Note that one kilogram of peaches has less surface area, not more, than one kilogram of either blueberries or grapes. **9. (d):** The rule: area goes up as the square and volume goes up as the cube for linear increases. A glass ball of twice the diameter has twice × twice × twice the volume. That's 8 times the volume, or, 8 times the weight, more than 4 N! **10. (c):** Think cubes rather than spheres, and the physics of scaling is the same. Using Figure 12.16 as a guide, eight 1 × 1 × 1 cm cubes combine to become a single 8-cube block. Before combining, each cube has 6 sides, with surface area 6 square cm. The total surface area of the 8 cubes will then be 8 × 6 = 48 square cm. Combine all 8 cubes and you create a 2 × 2 × 2 unit cube with 6 sides. Each side has 4 square cm. The total area of this larger, combined cube is 6 sides × 4 square cm = 24 square cm, which is half of the combined surface areas of the eight little cubes—or spheres.

CHAPTER THIRTEEN

13 Liquids

13.1 Pressure
13.2 Pressure in a Liquid
13.3 Buoyancy
13.4 Archimedes' Principle
13.5 What Makes an Object Sink or Float?
13.6 Flotation
13.7 Pascal's Principle
13.8 Surface Tension
13.9 Capillarity

1


2


3

4

1 YouTuber Mark Rober in his zany way tests a shark's sense of smell for blood—with his own! 2 When showing Pascal's vases, Tsing Bardin asks her class how the same levels of colored water relate to the saying "Water seeks its own level." 3 The Falkirk Wheel in Scotland lifts boats 18 m from a lower body of water to a higher one with ease. While one water-filled gondola rotates upward, the other rotates downward, always balanced regardless of the weights of the boats it may or may not carry. 4 Physics textbook author Ray Serway entertains his grandchildren with surface tension.

Blaise Pascal was an outstanding 17th-century scientist, writer, and theologian. While investigating the physics of fluids, he invented the hydraulic press, which uses hydraulic pressure to multiply force. He also invented the syringe. Pascal's notoriety was fostered by his commentary on Evangelista Torricelli's experimentation with barometers. Pascal questioned what force kept some mercury in the tube and what filled the space above the mercury in the tube. Most scientists at the time, in the spirit of Aristotle, didn't believe a vacuum was possible and thought some invisible matter was present in the "empty space." Pascal conducted new experiments and contended that, indeed, a near-vacuum occupies the space above the column of liquid in a barometer tube.

Pascal, in poor health all his life, enlisted his brother-in-law to carry a barometer up the slope of a high mountain to investigate the effect on the mercury level in the tube. As Pascal hypothesized, the level of mercury dropped with increased altitude. Pascal conducted a more modest version of the experiment by carrying a barometer up to the top of a church bell tower, a height of about 50 meters. Again the mercury level dropped, but not as much. These and other experiments of Pascal were hailed throughout Europe as establishing the principle and value of the barometer.

To answer the contention that some invisible matter must exist in the empty space, Pascal called on the scientific method and replied: "In order to show that a hypothesis is evident, it does not suffice that all the phenomena follow from it; instead, if it leads to something contrary to a single one of the phenomena, that suffices to establish its falsity." His insistence on the existence of the vacuum also created conflict with other prominent scientists, including Descartes.

Pascal's work with hydraulics led him to what is now called Pascal's principle: A change in pressure at any point in an enclosed fluid at rest is transmitted undiminished to all points in the fluid. Ropes and pulleys have given way to this principle, as hydraulic devices multiply forces unimagined before the time of Pascal.

Although a devout theologian, Pascal took issue with some of the dogmas of the time. Some of his writings on religion were banned by the Church. As a scientist, he is remembered for the hydraulics that subsequently changed the technological landscape; as a theologian, he is remembered for his many assertions, one of which relates to centuries of the human landscape: "Men never do evil so cheerfully and completely as when they do so from religious convictions."

Today, in honor of his scientific contributions, the name Pascal has been given to the SI unit of pressure and to a computer programming language. In literature, Pascal is regarded as one of the most important authors of the mid-17th century. His use of satire and wit has influenced writers around the world.

13.1 Pressure

A contained liquid exerts forces against the walls of its container. To discuss the interaction between the liquid and the walls, it is convenient to introduce the concept of pressure. **Pressure** is a force divided by the area over which the force is exerted:[1]

$$\text{Pressure} = \frac{\text{force}}{\text{area}}$$

As an illustration of the distinction between pressure and force, consider the two books in Figure 13.1. The books are identical, but one stands on its end and the other rests on its side. Both books are of equal weight and therefore exert the

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

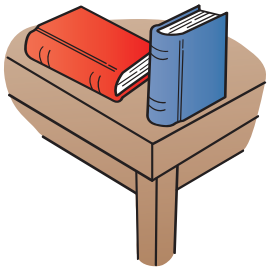


FIGURE 13.1
Although the weight of both books is the same, the upright book exerts greater pressure against the table.

[1]Pressure may be measured in any unit of force divided by any unit of area. The standard international (SI) unit of pressure, the newton per square meter, is called the pascal (Pa). A pressure of 1 Pa is very small and approximately equals the pressure exerted by a dollar bill resting flat on a table. Science types more often use kilopascals (1 kPa = 1000 Pa).

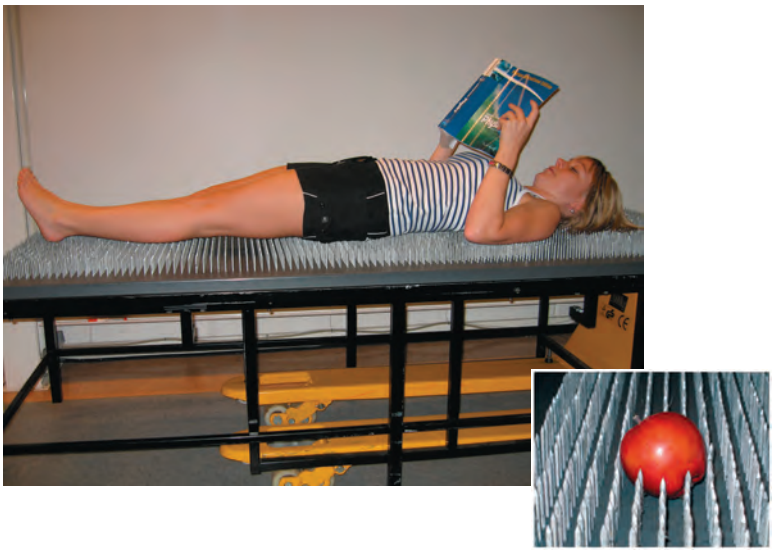


FIGURE 13.2
Physicist Sara Blomberg lies without harm on the bed of nails because her weight is distributed over hundreds of nails, which makes the pressure at the point of each nail safely small. The inset photo of the dropped apple attests to the sharpness of the nails.

same force on the surface (each would register the same on a bathroom scale), but the upright book exerts a greater *pressure* against the surface. If the book were tipped up so that its contact with the table were on a single corner, the pressure would be greater still.

CHECK POINT

1. **How does pressure relate to force?**
2. **How much average force does each of the 600 nails exert on 60-kg Sara in Figure 13.2? What is the average force per nail for 300 nails of support? For one nail?**
3. **What is the pressure that a 10-kg beaker of water at rest exerts on a supporting surface?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. By definition, pressure is a measure of the force per area over which the force is exerted. Whereas force is a vector quantity (that can be canceled), pressure is a scalar quantity. Pressures only add. For example, you can't cancel the pressure on a surface with some other pressure also acting on it.
2. We convert mass 60 kg to the force of gravity that Sara exerts on the nails. 60 kg $\times$ 10 N/1 kg $=$ 600 N. The force per nail is then 600 N/600 nails $=$ 1 N per nail, which is quite tolerable, like the weight of an apple on each nail. For half as many nails the pressure is 600 N/300 nails $=$ 2 N per nail, a bit uncomfortable. For one nail, pressure is 600 N/1 nail $=$ 600 N per nail (a giant no no!).
3. This question has no answer. Pressure involves force per area: We're given the force, the 10-kg beaker weighs 100 N, but not the area of contact. If the question instead asked for the water pressure at a certain depth within the beaker, as we shall see in Section 13.2, the answer would be weight density of water (10,000 N/m^3) $\times$ depth in meters. We'll return to a version of this question in the next Check Point.

13.2 Pressure in a Liquid

When you swim under water, you can feel the water pressure acting against your eardrums. The deeper you swim, the greater the pressure. The pressure you feel is due to the weight of the water above you. As you swim deeper, there is more water above you and therefore greater pressure. The pressure a liquid exerts depends on its depth.

The pressure of a liquid also depends on the density of the liquid. If you were submerged in a liquid more dense than water, the pressure would be correspondingly greater. The pressure due to a liquid is precisely equal to the product of weight density and depth:[2]

$$\text{Liquid pressure} = \text{weight density} \times \text{depth}$$

Simply put, the pressure a liquid exerts against the sides and bottom of a container depends on the density and the depth of the liquid. If we ignore atmospheric pressure, at twice the depth, the liquid pressure against the bottom is twice as great; at three times the depth, the liquid pressure is threefold; and so on. Or, if the liquid is two or three times as dense, the liquid pressure is correspondingly two or three times as great for any given depth. Liquids are practically incompressible; that is, their volume can hardly be changed by pressure (water volume decreases by only 50 millionths of its original volume for each atmosphere increase in pressure). So, except for small changes produced by temperature, the density of a particular liquid is practically the same at all depths.

fyi

- Molecules that make up a liquid can flow by sliding over one another. A liquid takes the shape of its container. Its molecules are close together and greatly resist compressive forces, so liquids, like solids, are difficult to compress.

FIGURE 13.3
Blood pressure in the upper arm is the same as the blood pressure in the heart because both are at the same level in the patient's body.

FIGURE 13.4
Liquid pressure dependence on depth is not a problem for the giraffe due to its large heart and intricate system of blood vessels in its brain to prevent fainting when suddenly raising its head, or brain hemorrhaging when lowering its head.

[2]This equation is derived from the definitions of pressure and weight density. Consider an area at the bottom of a vessel of liquid. The weight of the column of liquid directly above this area produces pressure. From the definition,

$$\text{Weight density} = \frac{\text{weight}}{\text{volume}}$$

we can express this weight of liquid as

$$\text{Weight} = \text{weight density} \times \text{volume}$$

where the volume of the column is simply the area multiplied by the depth. Then we get

$$\text{Pressure} = \frac{\text{force}}{\text{area}} = \frac{\text{weight}}{\text{area}} = \frac{\text{weight density} \times \text{volume}}{\text{area}} = \frac{\text{weight density} \times (\cancel{\text{area}} \times \text{depth})}{\cancel{\text{area}}}$$

$$= \text{weight density} \times \text{depth}$$

For total pressure, we add to this equation the pressure due to the atmosphere on the surface of the liquid.

CHECK POINT

What is the pressure of water against the bottom of a 20-cm tall 10-kg beaker of water resting on a supporting surface?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Water pressure is weight density of water (10,000 N/m^3) $\times$ depth in meters, which is (10,000 N/m^3) $\times$ (0.20 m) = 2000 N/m^2. Notice that the weight of water in the beaker is not a factor. Density and depth are all you need to know for pressure in still water.[3]

If you press your hand against a surface, and somebody else presses against your hand in the same direction, then the pressure against the surface is greater than if you pressed alone. Likewise with the atmospheric pressure that presses on the surface of a liquid. The total pressure of a liquid, then, is weight density multiplied by depth *plus* the pressure of the atmosphere. When this distinction is important, we will use the term *total pressure*. Otherwise, our discussions of liquid pressure refer to pressure without regard to the normally ever-present atmospheric pressure (more about atmospheric pressure in the next chapter).

It is important to recognize that the pressure does not depend on the *amount* of liquid present. Volume is not the key—depth is. The average water pressure acting against a dam depends on the average *depth* of the water, not on the volume of water held back, as shown in Figure 13.5.

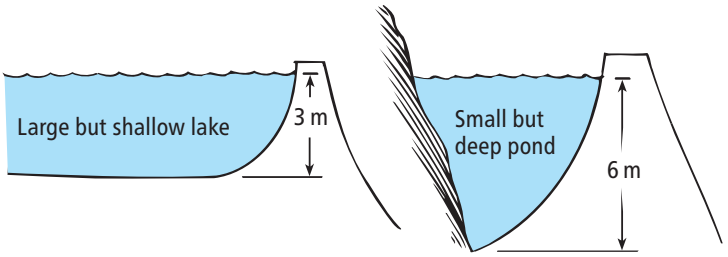


FIGURE 13.5
The large, shallow lake exerts only one-half the average pressure that the small, deep pond exerts.

You'll feel the same pressure whether you dunk your head a meter beneath the water surface in a small pool or to the same depth in the middle of a large lake. The same is true for a fish. Look at the connecting vases in Figure 13.6. If we hold a goldfish by its tail and dunk its head a couple of centimeters under the surface, the water pressure on the fish's head will be the same in any of the vases. If we release the fish and it swims a few centimeters deeper, the pressure on the fish will increase with depth and be the same no matter which vase the fish is in. If the fish swims to the bottom, the pressure will be greater, but it makes no difference what vase it swims in. All the vases are filled to equal depths, so the water pressure is the same at the bottom of each vase, regardless of its shape or volume. If water pressure at the bottom of a vase were greater than water pressure at the

[3]The density of fresh water is 1000 kg/m^3. Since the weight (mg) of 1000 kg is 1000 kg $\times$ 10 N/kg = 10,000 N, the weight density of water is 10,000 newtons per cubic meter (or, more precisely, 9800 N/kg using g = 9.8 N/kg). The water pressure beneath the surface of a lake is simply equal to this density multiplied by the depth in meters. For example, the water pressure is 10,000 N/m^2 at a depth of 1 m and 100,000 N/m^2 at a depth of 10 m. In SI units, pressure is measured in pascals, so this would be 10,000 Pa and 100,000 Pa, respectively, or, in kilopascals, 10 kPa and 100 kPa. For the total pressure in these cases, add the pressure of the atmosphere, 101.3 kPa.

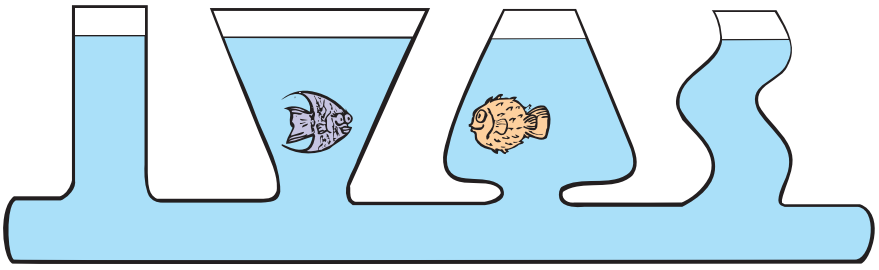


FIGURE 13.6
Liquid pressure is the same for any given depth below the surface, regardless of the shape of the containing vessel. Liquid pressure = weight density × depth (for total pressure, add the air pressure at the top).

bottom of a neighboring narrower vase, the greater pressure would force water sideways and then up the narrower vase to a higher level until the pressures at the bottom were equalized. But this doesn't happen. Pressure is dependent on depth, not volume, so we see that there is a reason why water seeks its own level.

The fact that water seeks its own level can be demonstrated by filling a garden hose with water and holding the two ends at the same height. The water levels will be equal. If one end is raised higher than the other, water will flow out of the lower end, even if it has to flow "uphill" part of the way. This fact was not fully understood by some of the early Romans, who built elaborate aqueducts with tall arches and roundabout routes to ensure that water would always flow slightly downward at every location along its route from the reservoir to the city. If pipes were laid in the ground and followed the natural contour of the land, in some places the water would have to flow uphill, and the Romans were skeptical of this. Careful experimentation was not yet the mode, so the Romans built unnecessarily elaborate aqueducts.

fyi

- Not all Romans in ancient times believed that water couldn't flow uphill, as evidenced by some pipe systems back then that ran upward as well as downward.

FIGURE 13.7
Roman aqueducts assured that water flowed slightly downhill from reservoir to city.

An experimentally determined fact about liquid pressure is that it is exerted equally in all directions. For example, if we are submerged in water, no matter which way we tilt our heads we feel the same amount of water pressure on our ears. Because a liquid can flow, the pressure isn't only downward. We know pressure acts sideways when we see water spurting sideways from a leak in the side of an upright can. We know pressure also acts upward when we try to push a beach ball beneath the surface of the water. The bottom of a boat is certainly pushed upward by water pressure.

When liquid presses against a surface, there is a net *force* that is *perpendicular* to the surface. Although pressure doesn't have a specific direction, force does. Consider the triangular block in Figure 13.8. Focus your attention on only the

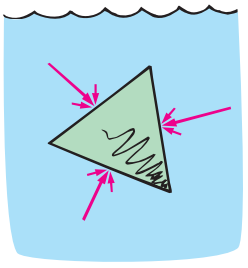


FIGURE 13.8
The forces of a liquid pressing against a surface add up to a net force that is perpendicular to the surface.

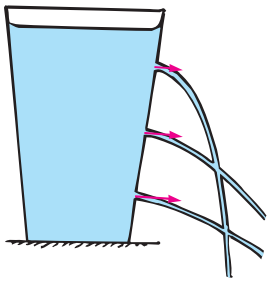


FIGURE 13.9
The force vectors act perpendicularly to the inner container surface and increase with increasing depth.

three points midway along each surface. Water is forced against each point from many directions, only a few of which are indicated. Components of the forces that are not perpendicular to the surface cancel each other out, leaving only a net perpendicular force at each point.

That's why water spurting from a hole in a bucket initially exits the bucket in a direction at right angles to the surface of the bucket in which the hole is located. Then it curves downward due to gravity. The force exerted by a fluid on a smooth surface is always at right angles to the surface.[4]

CHECK POINT

1. **Suppose that you raise one foot when you are standing on a bathroom scale. Does the pressure you exert on the scale change? Is there a difference in the scale reading?**
2. **How does the water pressure 1 m below the surface of a small pond compare with the water pressure 1 m below the surface of a huge lake?**
3. **How does the water pressure 1 m below the surface of ocean water compare with the water pressure 1 m below the surface of a huge lake?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. When you shift your weight by standing on one foot, the pressure on the scale's surface doubles. But the scale doesn't measure pressure—it measures weight. Except for some jiggling as you shift your weight, the scale reading stays the same.
2. Because both densities and depths are the same, the two pressures are the same.
3. Because ocean water is saltwater, its density is greater than the density of lake fresh water, pressure at equal depths is greater in saltwater.

WATER AND ITS HISTORY

In a remarkable novel *Half Broke Horses*, Jeannette Walls tells of her grandfather Jim Smith teaching his grandchildren about water: "The miraculous thing about water is that it never comes to an end. All the water on the earth had been here since the beginning of time and has just moved around from rivers and lakes and oceans to clouds and rain puddles and then sunk through the soil to underground streams, to springs and wells, where it got drunk by people and animals and went back to rivers and lakes and oceans.

The water you kids were playing in had probably been to Africa and the North Pole. Genghis Khan or Saint Peter or even Jesus himself might have drunk it. Cleopatra might have bathed in it. Crazy Horse might have watered his pony with it. Sometimes water was liquid. Sometimes it was rock hard—ice. Sometimes it was soft—snow. Sometimes it was visible but weightless—clouds. And sometimes it was completely invisible—vapor—floating up into the blue sky like the souls of dead people. There was nothing like water in the world. It made the desert bloom but

also turned rich bottomland into swamp. Without it we'd die, but it could also kill us, and that was why we loved it, even craved it, but also feared it. Never take water for granted. Always cherish it. Always beware of it."

[4]The speed of liquid out of the hole is $\sqrt{2gh}$, where h is the depth below the free surface. Interestingly, this is the same speed the water (or anything else) would acquire if freely falling the same vertical distance h.

13.3 Buoyancy

Anyone who has ever lifted a heavy submerged object out of water is familiar with *buoyancy*, the apparent loss of weight experienced by objects submerged in a liquid. For example, lifting a large boulder off the bottom of a riverbed is a relatively easy task as long as the boulder is below the surface. When the boulder is lifted above the surface, however, the force required to lift it is increased considerably. This is because, when the boulder is submerged, the water exerts an upward force on it that is exactly opposite to the direction of gravity's pull. This upward force is called the **buoyant force,** and it is a consequence of pressure increasing with depth. Figure 13.10 shows why the buoyant force acts upward. Forces due to water pressure are exerted everywhere against the boulder in a direction perpendicular to its surface, as shown by the vectors. Force vectors against the sides at equal depths cancel one another, so there is no horizontal buoyant force. Force vectors in the vertical direction, however, don't cancel. Pressure is greater against the bottom of the boulder because the bottom is deeper. So upward forces against the bottom are greater than downward forces against the top, producing a net force upward—the buoyant force.

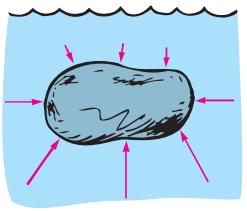


FIGURE 13.10
The greater pressure against the bottom of a submerged object produces an upward buoyant force.

Understanding buoyancy requires understanding the expression "volume of water displaced." If a stone is placed in a container that is brimful of water, some water will overflow (Figure 13.11). Water is *displaced* by the stone. A little thought will tell us that the *volume of the stone*—that is, the amount of space it takes up—is equal to the *volume of the water displaced*. If you place any object in a container partly filled with water, the level of the surface rises (Figure 13.12). By how much? By exactly the same amount as if a volume of water were poured in that equals the volume of the submerged object. This is a good method for determining the volume of irregularly shaped objects: *A completely submerged object always displaces a volume of liquid equal to its own volume.*

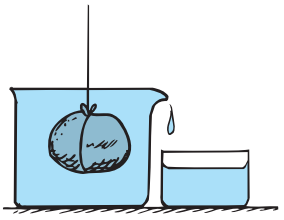


FIGURE 13.11
When a stone is submerged, it displaces a volume of water equal to the volume of the stone.

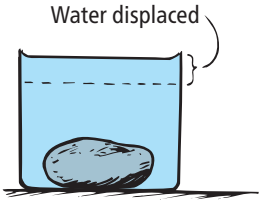


FIGURE 13.12
The increase in the water level is the same as if you poured in a volume of water equal to the stone's volume.

CHECK POINT

1. **How does the volume of a completely submerged object compare with the volume of water displaced?**
2. **How does the weight of a completely submerged object compare with the weight of water displaced?**
3. **A recipe calls for a specific amount of butter. How does the displacement method relate to the use of a kitchen measuring cup?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. It's the same. Common sense tells us that the volume of a submerged object will displace just as much volume of water. Note how Question 2 differs.
2. Unanswerable. Who knows if we don't know the density of the object? Only if the densities of both are the same will the answer be "the same." Be careful with "weight" and "volume" in this chapter.
3. Put some water in the cup before you add the butter. Note the water-level reading on the side of the cup. Then add the butter and you'll note the water level rise. Because butter floats, poke it beneath the surface. When you subtract the lower-level reading from the higher-level reading, you know not only the volume of water displaced but also the volume of the butter.

FIGURE 13.13
A liter of water occupies a volume of 1000 cm^3, has a mass of 1 kg, and weighs 10 N (or, more precisely, 9.8 N). Its density may therefore be expressed as 1 kg/L and its weight density as 10 N/L. (Seawater is slightly denser.)

13.4 Archimedes' Principle

The relationship between buoyancy and displaced liquid was first discovered in the 3rd century BC by the Greek scientist Archimedes. It is stated as follows:

An immersed object is buoyed up by a force equal to the weight of the fluid it displaces.

This relationship is called **Archimedes' principle.** It applies to liquids and gases, both of which are fluids. If an immersed object displaces 1 kg of fluid, the buoyant force acting on it is equal to the weight of 1 kg.[5] By *immersed*, we mean either *completely* or *partially submerged*. If we immerse a sealed 1-L container halfway into the water, it will displace a half-liter of water and be buoyed up by a force equal to the weight of a half-liter of water—no matter what is in the container. If we immerse it completely (submerge it), it will be buoyed up by a force equal to the weight of a full liter of water (1 kg of mass). If the container is fully submerged and isn't squeezed smaller, the buoyant force will equal the weight of 1 kg of water at *any* depth. This is because, at any depth, the container can displace no greater volume of water than its own volume. And the weight of this displaced water (not the weight of the submerged object!) is equal to the buoyant force.

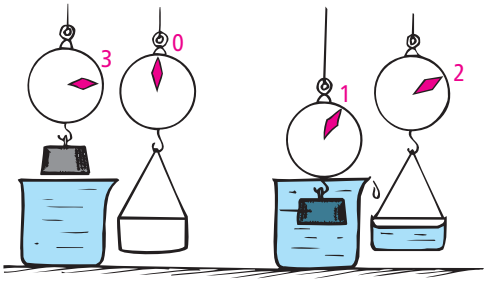


FIGURE 13.14
Objects weigh more in air than in water. When a 3-kg block is submerged, the scale reading reduces to 1 kg. The "missing" weight is equal to the weight of the 2 kg of water displaced, which equals the buoyant force.

If a 30-kg object displaces 20 kg of fluid upon immersion, its apparent weight will be equal to the weight of 10 kg (100 N). Note that, in Figure 13.14, the 3-kg block has an apparent weight equal to the weight of a 1-kg block when submerged. The apparent weight of a submerged object is its usual weight in air minus the buoyant force.

Perhaps your instructor will summarize Archimedes' principle by way of a numerical example to show that the difference between the upward-acting and the downward-acting forces due to the similar pressure differences on a submerged cube is numerically identical to the weight of fluid displaced. If the density is nearly constant, as it is for most liquids, it makes no difference how deep the cube is placed. Although the pressures are greater with increasing depths, the *difference* between the pressure up against the bottom of the cube and the pressure down against the top of the cube is the same at any depth (Figure 13.15). Whatever the shape of the submerged body, the buoyant force is equal to the weight of fluid displaced.

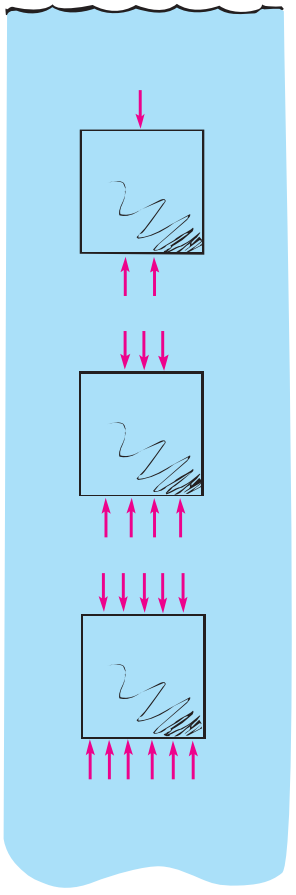


FIGURE 13.15
The difference between the upward and downward forces acting on the submerged block is the same at any depth.

[5]In lab, you may find it convenient to express the buoyant force in kilograms, even though a kilogram is a unit of mass and not a unit of force. So, strictly speaking, the buoyant force is the *weight* of 1 kg, which is 10 N (or, precisely, 9.8 N). Or we could as well say that the buoyant force is *1 kilogram weight*, not simply 1 kg.

If you stick your foot in water, it's immersed. If you jump into the water and sink beneath the surface, immersion is total and you're submerged.

CHECK POINT

1. **True or false: Archimedes' principle tells us that any object that displaces 10 N of liquid will be buoyed up with 10 N.**
2. **A 1-L container completely filled with lead has a mass of 11.3 kg and is submerged in water. What is the buoyant force acting on it?**
3. **As a boulder thrown into a deep lake sinks deeper and deeper into the water, does the buoyant force on it increase or decrease?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. True. It's only the weight of the displaced liquid that counts. (Also look at it in a Newton's third law way: If the immersed object pushes 10 N of fluid aside, the displaced fluid reacts by pushing back on the immersed object with 10 N.)
2. The buoyant force equals the weight of the liter of water displaced—not the weight of the lead! One L of water has a mass of 1 kg and weighs 10 N. So the buoyant force on it is 10 N.
3. The buoyant force remains unchanged as the boulder sinks because the boulder displaces the same volume and the same weight of water at any depth.

ARCHIMEDES AND THE GOLD CROWN

According to legend, Archimedes (287–212 BC) had been given the task of determining whether a crown made for King Hiero II of Syracuse was of pure gold or contained some less expensive metals such as silver. Archimedes' problem was to determine the density of the crown without destroying it. He could weigh the crown, but determining its volume was a problem. The story tells us that Archimedes came to the solution when he noted the rise in water level while immersing his body in the public baths of Syracuse. Legend reports that he excitedly rushed naked through the streets shouting "Eureka! Eureka!" ("I have found it! I have found it!").

What Archimedes discovered was a simple and accurate way of finding the volume of an irregular object—the displacement method of determining volumes. Once he knew both the weight and volume, he could calculate the density. Then the density of the crown could be compared with the density of gold. Archimedes' insight preceded Newton's laws of motion, from which Archimedes' principle can be derived, by almost 2000 years.

Legend has it that the crown was not of pure gold.

13.5 What Makes an Object Sink or Float?

It's important to remember that the buoyant force acting on a submerged object depends on the *volume* of the object. Small objects displace small amounts of water and are acted on by small buoyant forces. Large objects displace large amounts of water and are acted on by larger buoyant forces. It is the *volume* of the submerged object—not its *weight*—that determines the buoyant force. The buoyant force is equal to the weight of the *volume of fluid* displaced. (Misunderstanding this idea is the root of much confusion that people have about buoyancy.)

The weight of an object does play a role, however, in floating. Whether an object will sink or float in a liquid depends on how the buoyant force *compares with the object's weight*. This, in turn, depends on the object's density. Consider these three simple rules:

1. **An object more dense than the fluid in which it is immersed will sink.**
2. **An object less dense than the fluid in which it is immersed will float.**
3. **An object that has a density equal to the density of the fluid in which it is immersed will neither sink nor float.**

fyi

- People who can't float are, 9 times out of 10, men. Most men are more muscular and slightly denser than women. Also, cans of diet soda float, whereas cans of regular soda sink in water. What does this tell you about their relative densities?

Rule 1 seems reasonable enough because objects denser than water sink to the bottom, regardless of the water's depth. Scuba divers near the bottoms of deep bodies of water may sometimes encounter a waterlogged piece of wood hovering above the ocean floor (with a density equal to that of water at that depth), but never do they encounter hovering rocks!

From Rules 1 and 2, what can you say about people who, try as they may, cannot float? They're simply too dense! To float more easily, you must reduce your density. The formula *weight density* = *weight*/*volume* says you must either reduce your weight or increase your volume. Wearing a life jacket increases volume while correspondingly adding very little to your weight. It reduces your overall density.

Rule 3 applies to fish, which neither sink nor float. A fish normally has the same density as water. A fish can regulate its density by expanding and contracting an air sac in its body that changes its volume. The fish can move upward by increasing its volume (which decreases its density) and downward by contracting its volume (which increases its density).

For a submarine, weight, not volume, is varied to achieve the desired density. Water is taken into or blown out of its ballast tanks. Similarly, the overall density of a crocodile increases when it swallows stones. From 4 kg to 5 kg of stones have been found in the stomachs of large crocodiles. Because of this increased density, the crocodile swims lower in the water, thus exposing itself less to its prey (Figure 13.16).

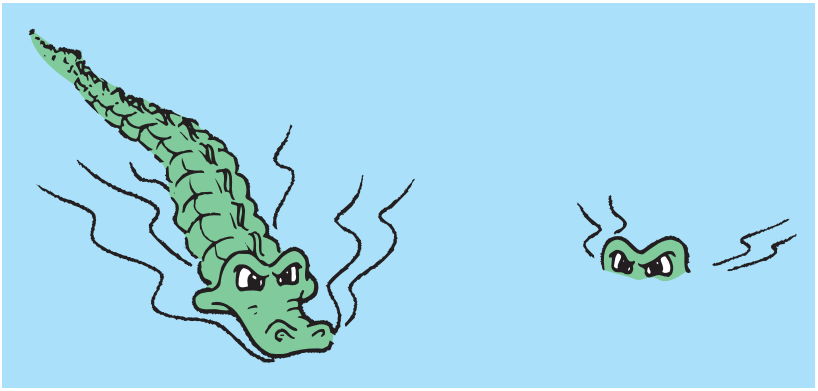


FIGURE 13.16
(Left) A crocodile coming toward you in the water. (Right) A crocodile of greater density coming toward you in the water.

CHECK POINT

1. **Two solid blocks of identical size are submerged in water. One block is lead and the other is aluminum. Upon which is the buoyant force greater?**
2. **If a fish makes itself denser, it will sink; if it makes itself less dense, it will rise. In terms of the buoyant force, why is this so?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The buoyant force is the same on both blocks because they displace the same volume of water. For submerged objects, the buoyant force is determined by only the volume of water displaced, not the object's weight.
2. When the fish makes itself more dense by decreasing its volume, it displaces less water, so the buoyant force decreases. When the fish makes itself less dense by expanding its volume, more water is displaced and the buoyant force increases.

13.6 Flotation

The earliest boats were made of wood. Before vessels were made of iron and other metals, the idea of floating iron might have seemed strange. Today it is easy for us to understand how a ship made of iron can float.

Consider a 1-ton block of solid iron. Because iron is nearly 8 times denser than water, the block displaces only 1/8 ton of water when submerged, which is not enough to keep it afloat. Suppose we reshape the same iron block into a bowl (Figure 13.17). It still weighs 1 ton. But when we put it in water, it displaces a greater volume of water than when it was a block. The deeper the iron bowl is immersed, the more water it displaces and the greater the buoyant force acting on it. When the buoyant force equals 1 ton, the bowl will sink no farther.

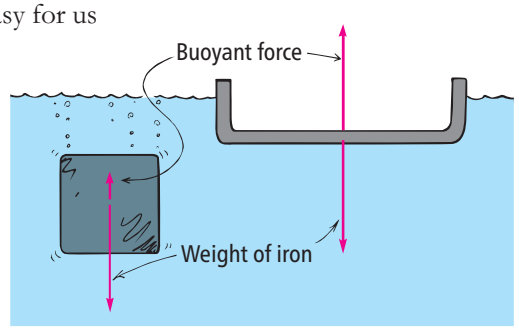


FIGURE 13.17
An iron block sinks, while the same quantity of iron shaped like a bowl floats.

When any boat displaces a weight of water equal to its own weight, it floats. This is called the **principle of flotation:**

A floating object displaces a weight of fluid equal to its own weight.

Every ship, every submarine, and every blimp must be designed to displace a weight of fluid equal to its own weight. Thus, a 10,000-ton ship must be built wide enough to displace 10,000 tons of water before it sinks too deep in the water. The same holds true for vessels in air. A blimp that weighs 100 tons displaces at least 100 tons of air. If it displaces more, it rises; if it displaces less, it falls. If it displaces exactly its weight, it hovers at constant altitude.

FIGURE 13.18
The weight of a floating object equals the weight of the water displaced by the submerged part.

For a given volume of displaced fluid, a denser fluid exerts a greater buoyant force than a less dense fluid. A ship, therefore, floats higher in saltwater than in fresh water because saltwater is slightly denser. Similarly, a solid chunk of iron floats in mercury, even though it sinks in water.

The physics of Figure 13.20 is nicely employed by the Falkirk Wheel, a unique rotating boat lift that replaced a series of 11 locks in Scotland. Connected to its 35-m-tall wheel are two gondolas brimful of water. When one or more boats enter a gondola, the water overflow weighs exactly as much as the boat(s). So the water-filled gondolas always weigh the same whether or not they carry boats, and the wheel always remains balanced. Therefore, in spite of its enormous mass, the wheel rotates each half revolution with very little power input.

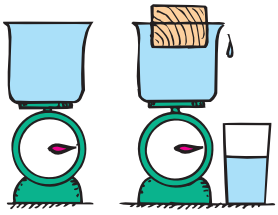


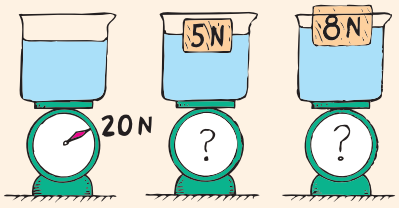
FIGURE 13.19
A floating object displaces a weight of fluid equal to its own weight.

FIGURE 13.20
The Falkirk Wheel has two balanced water-filled gondolas, one going up and one going down. The gondolas rotate as the wheel turns, so the water and boats don't tip out.

Only in the special case of floating does the buoyant force acting on an object equal the object's weight.

CHECK POINT

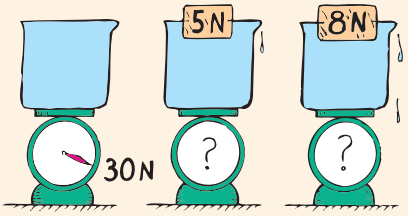
1. **A beaker more than half full of water weighs 20 N. What will be the scale reading when**



   (a) a 5-N block of wood floats in it?

   (b) an 8-N block of wood floats in it?

2. **The same beaker when brimful of water weighs 30 N. What will be the scale reading, after overflow, when**



   (a) a 5-N block of wood floats in it?

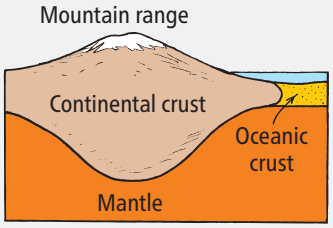
   (b) an 8-N block of wood floats in it?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The scale readings will increase as weight is added: (a) 20 N + 5 N = 25 N, (b) 20 N + 8 N = 28 N.
2. For the brimful beaker, the displacement of water by the floating blocks causes water to overflow. (a) The 5-N block causes an overflow of 5 N of water, and (b) the 8-N block spills 8 N of water. So the scale reading doesn't change; it remains 30 N.

FLOATING MOUNTAINS

Mountains float on Earth's semiliquid mantle just as icebergs float in water. Both the mountains and icebergs are less dense than the material they float upon. Just as most of an iceberg is below the water surface (90%), most of a mountain (about 85%) extends into the dense semiliquid mantle. If you could shave off the top of an iceberg, the iceberg would be lighter and be buoyed up to nearly its original height before its top was shaved. Similarly, when mountains erode they are lighter, and are pushed up from below to float to nearly their original heights. So when a kilometer of mountain erodes away, some 85% of a kilometer of mountain returns. That's why it takes so long for mountains to weather away. Mountains, like icebergs, are bigger than they appear to be. The concept of floating mountains is *isostasy*—Archimedes' principle for rocks.



CHECK POINT

A river barge loaded with gravel approaches a low bridge that it cannot quite pass under. Should gravel be removed *from* or added *to* the barge?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Ho, ho, ho! Do you think ol' Hewitt is going to give ***all*** the answers to Check Point questions? Good teaching is asking good questions, not providing all the answers. You're on your own with this one!

13.7 Pascal's Principle

One of the most important facts about fluid pressure is that a change in pressure at one part of the fluid will be transmitted undiminished to all other parts of the fluid. For example, if the pressure of city water is increased at the pumping station by 10 units of pressure, then the pressure everywhere in the pipes of the connected system will be increased by 10 units of pressure (provided that the water is at rest). This rule, discovered in the 17th century by Blaise Pascal, is called **Pascal's principle:**

A change in pressure at any point in an enclosed fluid at rest is transmitted undiminished to all points in the fluid.

Fill a U-tube with water and place pistons at each end, as shown in Figure 13.21. Pressure exerted against the left piston will be transmitted throughout the liquid and against the bottom of the right piston. (The pistons are simply "plugs" that can slide freely but snugly inside the tube.) The pressure that the left piston exerts against the water will be exactly equal to the pressure the water exerts against the right piston. This is nothing to write home about. But suppose you make the tube on the right side wider and use a piston of larger area: Then the result will be impressive. In Figure 13.22 the piston on the right has 50 times the

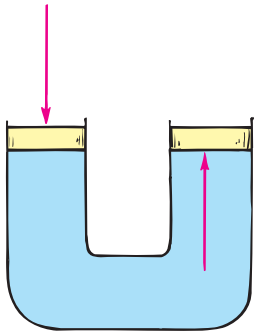


FIGURE 13.21
The force exerted on the left piston increases the pressure in the liquid and is transmitted to the right piston.

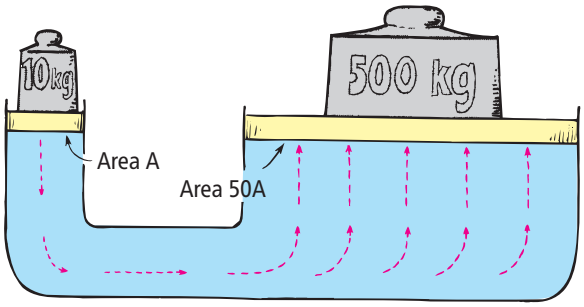


FIGURE 13.22
A 10-kg load on the left piston will support 500 kg on the right piston.

area of the piston on the left (let's say that the left piston has a cross-sectional area of 100 square centimeters and the right piston has a cross-sectional area of 5000 square centimeters). Suppose a 10-kg load is placed on the left piston. Then an additional pressure (nearly 1 N/cm^2) due to the weight of the load is transmitted throughout the liquid and up against the larger piston. Here is where the difference between force and pressure is evident. The additional pressure is exerted against every square centimeter of the larger piston. Since there is 50 times the area, 50 times as much force is exerted on the larger piston. Thus, the larger piston will support a 500-kg load—50 times the load on the smaller piston!

This *is* something to write home about because we can multiply forces using such a device. One newton of input produces 50 newtons of output. By further increasing the area of the larger piston (or reducing the area of the smaller piston), we can multiply the force, in principle, by any amount. Pascal's principle underlies the operation of all hydraulic devices, the simplest being the hydraulic press.

The hydraulic press does not violate energy conservation because a decrease in distance moved compensates for the increase in force. When the small piston in Figure 13.22 is moved downward 10 centimeters, the large piston will be raised only 1/50 of this, or 0.2 centimeter. The input force multiplied by the distance moved by the smaller piston is equal to the output force multiplied by the distance moved by the larger piston; this is one more example of a simple machine operating on the same principle as a mechanical lever.

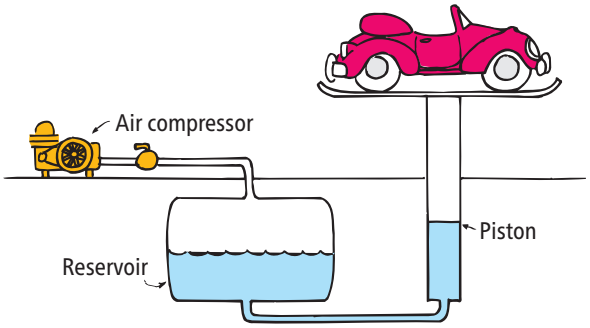


FIGURE 13.23
Pascal's principle in a service station.

FIGURE 13.24
Gears, pulleys, and cables have given way to hydraulic pistons in almost all construction machines.

Pascal's principle applies to all fluids, whether gases or liquids. A typical application of Pascal's principle for gases and liquids is the in-ground auto lift seen in older service stations (Figure 13.23). Increased air pressure produced by an air compressor is transmitted through the air to the surface of oil in an underground reservoir. The oil, in turn, transmits the pressure to a piston, which lifts the automobile. The relatively low pressure that exerts the lifting force against the piston is about the same as the air pressure in automobile tires.

Hydraulics is employed by modern devices ranging from very small to enormous. Note the hydraulic pistons in almost all construction machines where heavy loads are involved. The many applications of Pascal's principle have truly changed the landscape of our world.

CHECK POINT

1. **As the automobile in Figure 13.23 is being lifted, how does the oil-level change in the reservoir compare with the distance the automobile moves?**
2. **If a friend commented that a hydraulic device is a common way of multiplying energy, what would you say?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The car moves up a greater distance than the oil level drops, since the area of the piston is smaller than the surface area of the oil in the reservoir.
2. No, no, no! Although a hydraulic device, like a mechanical lever, can multiply *force*, it always does so at the expense of distance. Energy is the product of force and distance. If you increase one, you decrease the other. No device has ever been found that can multiply energy!

13.8 Surface Tension

Suppose you suspend a bent piece of clean wire from a sensitive spiral spring (Figure 13.25), lower the wire into water, and then raise it. As you attempt to free the wire from the water surface, you see from the stretched spring that the water surface exerts an appreciable force on the wire. The water surface resists being stretched because it has a tendency to contract. This is evident when a fine-haired paintbrush is wet. When the brush is under water, the hairs are fluffed pretty much as they are when the brush is dry, but when the brush is lifted out of the water, the surface film of water contracts and pulls the hairs together (Figure 13.26). This contractive tendency of the surface of liquids is called **surface tension.**

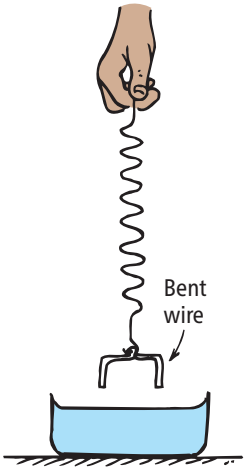


FIGURE 13.25
When the bent wire is lowered into the water and then raised, the spring will stretch because of surface tension.

Surface tension accounts for the spherical shape of liquid drops. Raindrops, oil drops, and falling drops of molten metal are all spherical because their surfaces tend to contract and force each drop into the shape that has the smallest surface area. This is a sphere, the geometrical figure that has the smallest surface area for a given volume. For this reason, the mist and dewdrops on spider webs or on the fuzzy leaves of plants are nearly spherical blobs. (The larger they are, the more gravity will flatten them.)

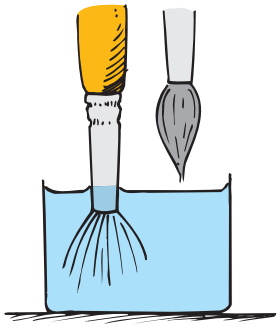


FIGURE 13.26
When the brush is taken out of the water, the hairs are held together by surface tension.

FIGURE 13.27
Small blobs of water are drawn by surface tension into spherical shapes.

Surface tension is caused by molecular attractions. Beneath the surface, each molecule is attracted in every direction by neighboring molecules, resulting in no tendency to be pulled in any specific direction. A molecule on the surface of a liquid, however, is pulled only by neighboring molecules on each side and downward from below; there is no pull upward (Figure 13.28). These molecular attractions thus tend to pull the molecule from the surface into the liquid, and this tendency minimizes the surface area. The surface behaves as if it were tightened into an elastic film. This is observed when a dry steel needle or paper clip seems to float on still water. Figure 13.29 shows a paper clip not floating *in* the

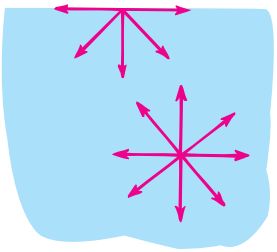


FIGURE 13.28
A molecule at the surface is pulled only sideways and downward by neighboring molecules. A molecule beneath the surface is pulled equally in all directions.

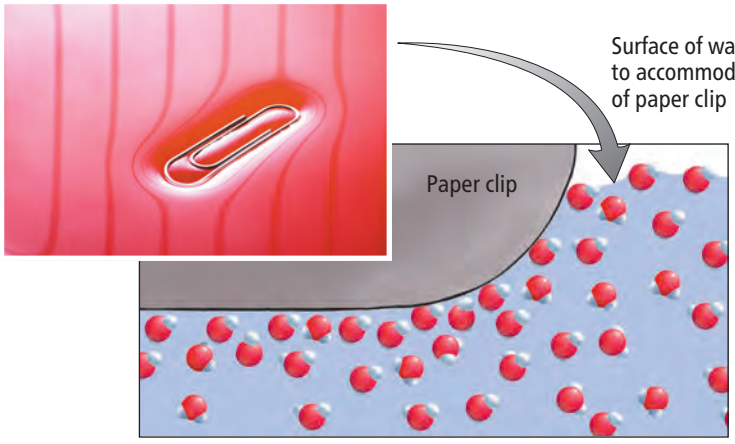


FIGURE 13.29
A paper clip rests on water, pushing the surface down slightly without sinking.

FIGURE 13.30
Bubble Master Tom Noddy blows bubbles within bubbles. The large bubble is elongated due to blowing, but it will quickly settle to a spherical shape due to surface tension.

water, but resting *on* the water. The slight depression in the water surface is caused by the weight of the clip, which pushes down on the water. The elastic tendency found at the surface is surface tension, enough to support the weight of the clip. Surface tension allows certain insects, such as water striders, to run across the surface of a pond.

The surface tension of water is greater than that of other common liquids, and pure water has a stronger surface tension than soapy water. We can see this when a little soap film on the surface of water is effectively pulled out over the entire surface. This minimizes the surface area of the water. The same thing happens for oil or grease floating on water. Oil has less surface tension than cold water, and it is drawn out into a very delicate membrane, a film that covers the whole surface. This spreading is apparent in oil spills. Hot water, however, has less surface tension than cold water because the faster-moving molecules are not bonded as tightly. This allows the grease or oil in hot soups to float in little bubbles on the surface of the soup. When the soup cools and the surface tension of the water increases, the grease or oil is dragged out over the surface of the soup. The soup becomes "greasy." Hot soup tastes different from cold soup primarily because the surface tension of water in the soup changes with temperature.

CHECK POINT

1. **What geometrical shape has the smallest surface area for a given volume?**
2. **How does the interatomic bonding of molecules in a liquid affect its surface tension?**
3. **How does weakening of bonding between molecules in a liquid affect surface tension?**
4. **Which favors water-striding insects that skip across a water surface—warm water or cool water?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. A sphere.
2. The greater the bonding between the molecules in a liquid, the greater the surface tension.
3. Weaker bonding results in a lowering of surface tension.
4. Cooler water with its somewhat greater surface tension is more favorable to water striders than warmer water. Interestingly, they are proficient in both warm and cool water.

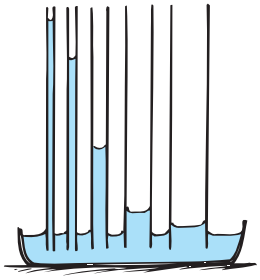


FIGURE 13.31
Capillary tubes.

13.9 Capillarity

When the end of a thoroughly clean glass tube with a small inside diameter is dipped into water, the water wets the inside of the tube and rises in it. In a tube with a bore of about 1/2 millimeter in diameter, for example, the water rises slightly higher than 5 centimeters. With a still smaller bore, the water rises much higher (Figure 13.31). This rise of a liquid in a fine hollow tube or in a narrow space is called **capillarity.**

When you think of capillarity, think of molecules as sticky balls. Water molecules stick to glass more than to each other. The attraction between unlike

substances such as water and glass is called *adhesion*. The attraction between like substances, molecular stickiness, is called *cohesion*. When a glass tube is dipped into water, the adhesion between the glass and the water causes a thin film of water to be drawn up over the inner and outer surfaces of the tube (Figure 13.32a). Surface tension causes this film to contract (Figure 13.32b). The film on the outer surface contracts enough to make a rounded edge. The film on the inner surface contracts more and raises water with it until the adhesive force is balanced by the weight of the water lifted (Figure 13.32c). In a narrower tube, the weight of the water in the tube is small and the water is lifted higher than it would be if the tube were wider.

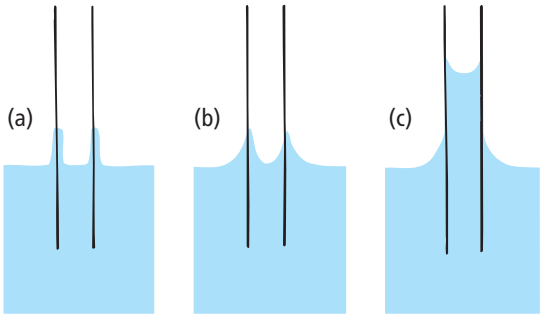


FIGURE 13.32
Hypothetical stages of capillary action, as seen in a cross-sectional view of a capillary tube.

If a paintbrush is dipped partway into water, the water will rise up into the narrow spaces between the bristles by capillary action. If your hair is long, let it hang into the sink or bathtub, and water will seep up to your scalp in the same way. This is how oil soaks upward in a lamp wick and water soaks into a bath towel when one end hangs in water. Dip one end of a lump of sugar in coffee, and the entire lump is quickly wet. Capillary action is essential for plant growth. In trees it brings water to the high branches and leaves from the plant's roots and transports sap and nourishment from the leaves to the roots. Just about everywhere we look, we can see capillary action at work. That's nice.

But, from the point of view of an insect, capillarity is not so nice. Recall from Chapter 12 that, because of an insect's relatively large surface area, it falls slowly in air. Gravity poses almost no risk at all—but not so with capillarity. Being in the grip of water may be fatal to an insect—unless it is equipped for water like a water strider.

CHECK POINT

1. **What is the difference between *adhesion* and *cohesion*?**
2. **Which of the two is stronger for upward capillarity of sap in a tree?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Adhesion is the force between a liquid and the inner surface of its tube. Cohesion is the binding force between molecules in a liquid.
2. When the attraction of sap for wood (adhesion) is stronger than the cohesive forces between sap molecules (cohesion), upward capillarity occurs.

Chapter 13 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Pressure The ratio of force to the area over which that force is distributed:

$$\text{Pressure} = \frac{\text{force}}{\text{area}}$$

$$\text{Liquid pressure} = \text{weight density} \times \text{depth}$$

Buoyant force The net upward force that a fluid exerts on an immersed object.

Archimedes' principle An immersed body is buoyed up by a force equal to the weight of the fluid it displaces.

Principle of flotation A floating object displaces a weight of fluid equal to its own weight.

Pascal's principle The pressure applied to a motionless fluid confined in a container is transmitted undiminished throughout the fluid.

Surface tension The tendency of the surface of a liquid to contract in area and thus to behave like a stretched elastic membrane.

Capillarity The rise of a liquid in a fine, hollow tube or in a narrow space.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

13.1 Pressure

1. Compare the pressure against the floor standing on one foot versus standing on both feet.
2. Which exerts greater pressure on your body: lying on a bed of many nails or a bed of a few nails?

13.2 Pressure in a Liquid

3. How does pressure at the bottom of a body of water relate to the weight of water above each square meter of the bottom surface?
4. If you swim beneath the surface in saltwater, will the pressure be greater than in freshwater at the same depth? Why or why not?
5. How does water pressure 2 m below the surface of a small pond compare with water pressure 2 m below the surface of a huge lake?
6. When a hole is punched in a container filled with water, why does the emerging water curve downward and not fall vertically?

13.3 Buoyancy

7. Why is it easier to lift an object submerged in a liquid?
8. What is the basic cause of the buoyancy experienced by submerged objects?
9. How does the volume of a completely submerged object compare with the volume of water displaced?

13.4 Archimedes' Principle

10. What is the maximum volume of water that can be displaced by an object immersed in water?
11. Does Archimedes' principle apply only to liquids?
12. What is the mass of 1 L of water? What is its weight in newtons?
13. If a 1-L container is immersed halfway into water, what is the volume of water displaced? What is the buoyant force on the container?

13.5 What Makes an Object Sink or Float?

14. How does the buoyant force on a floating object compare with the weight of water displaced?
15. What happens when an object is immersed in a fluid that has a higher density than the object?
16. Does the buoyant force on a submerged object depend on the volume of the object or the weight of the object?
17. Fill in the blanks: An object denser than water will _____ in water. An object less dense than water will _____ in water. An object with the same density as water will _____ in water.
18. How is a crocodile able to swim lower in water? How do fish regulate their density?

13.6 Flotation

19. It was emphasized earlier that buoyant force does not equal an object's weight but does equal the weight of displaced water. Now we say buoyant force equals the object's weight. Isn't this a grand contradiction? Explain.
20. State the principle of flotation. Why does an iron bowl experience higher buoyant force than a block of iron of the same weight?

13.7 Pascal's Principle

21. How is the law of conservation of energy not violated during the operation of the hydraulic press?
22. If the pressure in a hydraulic press is increased by an additional 10 N/cm^2, how much extra load will the output piston support if its cross-sectional area is 50 cm^2?

13.8 Surface Tension

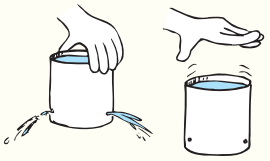
23. Why are raindrops and oil drops generally spherical in shape?
24. Is the surface tension of oil or water greater?

13.9 Capillarity

25. Distinguish between *adhesive* and *cohesive* forces.
26. How does the height to which water is lifted in a capillary tube relate to adhesion and the weight of water lifted?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

27. Place an egg in a pan of tap water. Then dissolve enough salt in the water until the egg floats. How does the density of an egg compare to the density of tap water? To that of saltwater?
28. If you punch a couple of holes in the bottom of a water-filled container, water will spurt out because of water pressure. Now drop the container, and, as it freely falls, note that the water no longer spurts out! If your friends don't understand this, could you explain it to them?



29. Float a water-soaked ping-pong ball in a can of water held more than a meter above a rigid floor. Then drop the can. Careful inspection will show the ball was pulled beneath the surface as both the ball and the can dropped. (What does this say about surface tension?) More dramatically, when the can makes an impact with the floor, what happens to the ball, and why? Try it and you'll be astonished! (*Caution:* Unless you're wearing safety goggles, keep your head away from above the can when it makes an impact.)
30. Soap greatly weakens the cohesive forces between water molecules. Add some oil to a bottle of water and shake it until the oil and water mix. Notice that the oil and water quickly separate as soon as you stop shaking the bottle. Now add some liquid soap to the mixture. Shake the bottle again and you will see that the soap makes a fine film around each little oil bead and requires a longer time for the oil to coalesce after you stop shaking the bottle. This is how soap works in cleaning. It breaks the surface tension around each particle of dirt so that the water can reach the particles and surround them. The dirt is carried away in rinsing. Soap is a good cleaner only in the presence of water.
31. Sprinkle some black pepper on the surface of some pure water in a saucer. The pepper floats. Add a drop of liquid dish soap to the surface, and the pepper grains repel from the soap droplet. Stir gently once or twice and watch the pepper sink.
32. Mix two parts cornstarch to one part water and you create Oobleck. This is a non–Newtonian fluid that is a liquid but behaves like a solid when pressure is applied. Do this with kids.

PLUG AND CHUG (EQUATION FAMILIARIZATION)

$$\text{Pressure} = \frac{\text{force}}{\text{area}}$$

33. Calculate the pressure a 2-N book exerts on the table it rests on if its area of contact is 50 cm^2.
34. Show that the pressure on your finger is 50 N/cm^2, which is 500 kPa, when you balance a 5-kg ball on the tip of your finger, which has an area of 1 cm^2.

$$\text{Pressure} = \text{weight density} \times \text{depth}$$

(Use 10,000 N/m^3 for the weight density of water and neglect the pressure due to the atmosphere in the calculations below.)

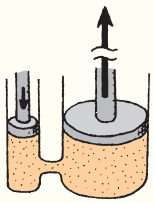
35. Show that the water pressure at the bottom of a 10-m-deep pool is 100,000 N/m^2, which is approximately 100 kPa.
36. How tall must a filled water tower be if the pressure at the base is 250 kPa?

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

37. A 1-m-tall barrel is filled with water (with a weight density of 10,000 N/m^3). Show that the water pressure on the bottom of the barrel is 10,000 N/m^2, or equivalently, 10 kPa.
38. The water pressure at the bottom of a 0.50-m filled container is 5000 Pa. Compare how the pressure varies to that of a wider container with the same height.
39. The top floor of a building is 20 m above the basement. Show that the water pressure in the basement is nearly 200 kPa greater than the water pressure on the top floor.
40. A dike in Holland springs a leak through a hole of area 1 cm^2 at a depth of 2 m below the water surface. How much force must a boy apply to the hole with his thumb to stop the leak, and in effect, hold back the whole ocean? Could he do it?
41. You throw a 1-kg wooden cube into a lake and notice that it barely floats. Calculate the wood's approximate volume. With the information provided, can you determine the dimension of the cube?
42. A stone hangs from a spring balance. It reads 40 N in air and 32 N when the stone is submerged in water. (a) What is the buoyant force on the stone? (b) What does the balance indicate when the stone is submerged in a liquid with a density that is twice that of water?

43. As part of your homework, your teacher asks you to determine the authenticity of a 1-kg, irregularly shaped aluminum sample. If the density of aluminum is 2.7 g/cm^3, what volume of water should be displaced when you submerge the sample into a container of water to confirm its authenticity?

44. In the hydraulic pistons shown in the sketch, the small piston has a diameter of 2 cm and the other piston, 8 cm. How much force must be applied to the smaller piston to obtain a force of 1600 N at the larger piston?

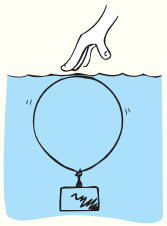


THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

45. Rank the water pressures at the bottom of the container in increasing order for the following:
    (a) A 4-cm diameter, 20-cm-tall container of water,
    (b) A 4-cm diameter, 10-cm-tall container of water,
    (c) A 8-cm diameter, 20-cm-tall container of water, and
    (d) A 8-cm diameter, 10-cm-tall container of water.

46. A basketball floats in various liquids. Rank the percentage of its volume above the water line, from most to least for the following: Floating in
    (a) freshwater.
    (b) saltwater.
    (c) mercury.

47. Think about what happens to the volume of an air-filled balloon on top of water and beneath the water surface. Then rank the buoyant force on a weighted balloon in water, from most to least, when it is
    (a) barely floating with its top at the surface.
    (b) pushed 1 m beneath the surface.
    (c) pushed 2 m beneath the surface.



THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

48. What common liquid covers more than two-thirds of our planet, makes up 60% of our bodies, and sustains our lives and lifestyles in countless ways?

49. Why does a sharp knife cut better than a dull knife? Defend your answer in terms of pressure.

50. Explain why a sewing needle is more effective at popping a balloon as compared to a wooden stick, using the same amount of force.

51. Which exerts more pressure on the ground—a 5000-kg elephant or a 50-kg lady standing on spike heels? (Which will be more likely to make dents in a softwood floor?) Approximate a rough calculation for each.

52. Why are persons confined for a long period of time less likely to develop bedsores on their bodies lying on a waterbed rather than on an ordinary mattress?

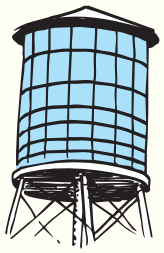
53. Why is blood pressure measured in the upper arm, at the elevation of your heart?

54. Why does your body get more rest when you're lying down than when you're sitting? Is blood pressure in your legs greater?

55. When you are standing, blood pressure in your legs is greater than in your upper body. Would this be true for an astronaut in orbit? Defend your answer.

56. If the water faucets upstairs and downstairs are turned fully on, will more water per second flow out of the upstairs faucets or the downstairs faucets? Or will it be the same?

57. The sketch shows a wood reservoir reinforced with metal hoops that supplies water to a farm. (a) Why is it elevated? (b) Why are the hoops closer together near the bottom part of the tank?



58. A block of aluminum with a volume of 10 cm^3 is placed in a beaker of water filled to the brim. Water overflows. The same is done in another beaker with a 10-cm^3 block of lead. Does the lead displace more, less, or the same amount of water as the aluminum does?

59. A block of aluminum with a mass of 1 kg is placed in a beaker of water filled to the brim. Water overflows. The same is done in another beaker with a 1-kg block of lead. Does the lead displace more, less, or the same amount of water as the aluminum does?

60. A block of aluminum with a weight of 10 N is placed in a beaker of water filled to the brim. Water overflows. The same is done in another beaker with a 10-N block of lead. Does the lead displace more, less, or the same amount of water as the aluminum does? (Why do your answers differ from the previous questions?)

61. When would the weight of a completely submerged object be the same as the weight of water displaced?

62. In which of the two situations is the pressure exerted on the ground by a person greater: when he stands with both feet on the ground, or when he lies down on the ground?

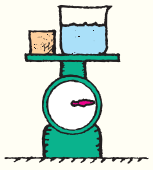
63. Does volume determine the pressure exerted by a liquid?

64. When you are wading barefoot at the beach, why do the stones at the bottom hurt your feet less when you're standing in deep water?

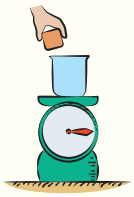
65. Give a convincing reason as to why is it easier to float in saltwater than in freshwater.

66. If liquid pressure were the same at all depths, would there be a buoyant force on an object submerged in the liquid? Explain.

67. A can of diet soda floats in water, whereas a can of regular soda sinks. Explain this phenomenon first in terms of density, then in terms of weight versus buoyant force.
68. Why will a block of iron float in mercury but sink in water?
69. The Himalayas are slightly less dense than the mantle material upon which they "float." Do you suppose that, like floating icebergs, they are deeper than they are high?
70. Why is a high mountain composed mostly of lead an impossibility on Earth?
71. How much force is needed to hold a nearly weightless but rigid 1-L carton beneath the water surface?
72. Why will a volleyball held beneath the water surface have more buoyant force than if it is floating?
73. Why does an inflated beach ball pushed beneath the water surface swiftly shoot above the water surface when released?
74. Why is it inaccurate to say that heavy objects sink and light objects float? Give exaggerated examples to support your answer.
75. Why is the buoyant force on a submerged submarine appreciably greater than the buoyant force on it while it is floating?
76. Will a rock gain or lose buoyant force as it sinks deeper in water? Or will the buoyant force remain the same at greater depths? Defend your answer.
77. Will a swimmer gain or lose buoyant force as she swims deeper in the water? Or will her buoyant force remain the same at greater depths? Defend your answer and contrast it with your answer to the previous question.
78. Why does your density change when you are submerged underwater but the density of a submerged rock does not?
79. A ship sailing from the ocean into a freshwater harbor sinks slightly deeper into the water. Does the buoyant force on the ship change? If so, does it increase or decrease?
80. The buoyant force supplied by fluid around a 15-N human brain is about 14.5 N. Does this mean that the weight of fluid surrounding the brain is at least 14.5 N? Defend your answer.
81. Two separate containers are filled to the surface. One contains water with density 1.0 g/cm^3, and the other contains oil with density 0.7 g/cm^3. If you place an identical object that floats in both, which of the two will displace more liquid?
82. When an ice cube in a glass of water melts, does the water level in the glass rise, fall, or remain unchanged? Does your answer change if the ice cube has many air bubbles? How about if the ice cube contains many grains of heavy sand?
83. When the wooden block is placed in the beaker, what happens to the scale reading? Answer the same question for an iron block.



84. This time a wooden block is placed in a beaker that is brim full of water. What happens to the scale reading after the water has overflowed. Answer the same question for an iron block.



85. One gondola in the Falkirk Wheel carries a 50-ton boat, while the other carries a 100-ton boat. Why do the gondolas nevertheless weigh the same?
86. A 50-ton boat and a 100-ton boat float side-by-side in the gondola of the Falkirk wheel, and the opposite gondola carries no boats at all. Why do the gondolas nevertheless weigh the same?
87. A small aquarium half-filled with water is on a spring scale. Will the reading of the scale increase or remain the same if a fish is placed in the aquarium? (Will your answer be different if the aquarium is initially filled to the brim?)
88. What would you experience when swimming in water in an orbiting space habitat where simulated gravity is *g*? Would you float in the water as you do on Earth?
89. We say that the shape of a liquid is that of its container. But, with no container and no gravity, what is the natural shape of a blob of water? Why?
90. If you release a ping-pong ball beneath the surface of water, it will rise to the surface. Would it do the same if it were inside a big blob of water floating weightless in an orbiting spacecraft?
91. So you're on a run of bad luck, and you slip quietly into a small, calm pool as hungry crocodiles lurking at the bottom are relying on Pascal's principle to help them to detect a tender morsel. What does Pascal's principle have to do with their delight at your arrival?
92. In the hydraulic arrangement shown, the larger piston has an area that is 50 times that of the smaller piston. The strong man hopes to exert enough force on the large piston to raise the 10 kg that rest on the small piston. Do you think he will be successful? Defend your answer.

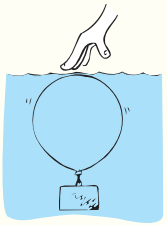
93. In the hydraulic arrangement of Figure 13.22, the multiplication of force is equal to the ratio of the areas of the large and small pistons. Some people are surprised to learn that the area of the liquid surface in the reservoir of the arrangement of Figure 13.23 is immaterial. What is your explanation to resolve this confusion?
94. Why will hot water flow more readily than cold water through small leaks in a car radiator?
95. Why can't a heavy paper clip rest on the surface of still water like a small dry paper clip without sinking?
96. Why will a steel razor blade carefully placed on the water surface not sink but a chunk of steel will sink?
97. You dip your finger into water and into mercury. Which of these liquids better wets your finger?

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

98. Discuss the physics concept in the photo of physics instructor Marshall Ellenstein who is walking barefoot on broken glass in his class. Why is he careful that the broken pieces are small and numerous? (The Band-Aids on his feet are for humor!)

99. Discuss which teapot holds more liquid, and why.

100. There is a legend of a Dutch boy who bravely held back the whole North Sea by plugging a hole in a dike with his finger. Discuss whether or not this is possible and reasonable. (See also Think and Solve 40.)
101. There is a story about Pascal's assistant climbing a ladder and pouring a small container of water into a tall, thin, vertical pipe inserted into a full wooden barrel of water below. The barrel burst when the water in the pipe reached about 12 m. This was all the more intriguing because the weight of the added water in the tube was very small. Discuss and explain.
102. Ever wonder about the condition of flushing toilets at the same time in a high-rise? Speculate about the various plumbing schemes that engineers apply to high-rise plumbing design so that sewage doesn't make a one-way impact on the basement level. (Check your speculations with a plumbing engineer.)
103. Discuss how you could use a garden hose filled with water to determine equal elevations for distant points for laying a level foundation for a home on a hilly, bushy terrain.
104. When the tank for your gas grill runs dry and you refill the tank with propane, it weighs considerably more. Use this experience to explain why Scuba divers wear weighted suits to keep them slightly negatively buoyant at the end of the dive when all of the gas has been used in the tanks.
105. A scuba diver breathes air from a canister that is compressed to the same pressure as the surrounding water. Why, then, should a scuba diver never hold his breath as he ascends? If you don't know this answer, go to your local dive shop and explore this topic.
106. A piece of iron placed on a block of wood makes it float lower in the water. If the iron were instead suspended beneath the wood, would the wood float as low, lower, or higher than when the iron is on top? Discuss.
107. Why do ships weighing thousands of tons float in water? Discuss your answer using concepts from this chapter.
108. If a submarine starts to sink, will it continue to sink to the bottom if no changes are made? Discuss.
109. Why do you sink to the bottom of a swimming pool when you blow all of the air out of your lungs?
110. A barge filled with scrap iron is in a canal lock. If the iron is thrown overboard, does the water level at the side of the lock rise, fall, or remain unchanged? This makes for a good discussion!
111. Would the water level in a canal lock go up or down if a battleship in the lock sank? Another good discussion.
112. A balloon is weighted so that it is barely able to float in water. If it is pushed beneath the surface, will it return to the surface, stay at the depth to which it is pushed, or sink? In your discussion, consider any change in the balloon's density.



113. You are given the choice between two identical size life preservers, the first a light one filled with Styrofoam and the second a very heavy one filled with gravel. If you submerge both life preservers in water, upon which will the buoyant force be greater? Upon which will the buoyant force be ineffective? Discuss why your answers differ.
114. On a boat ride, the skipper gives you an extra-large life preserver filled with lead pellets. When he sees the skeptical look on your face, he says that you'll experience a greater buoyant force if you fall overboard than your friends wearing regular-sized Styrofoam-filled life preservers. Is he being truthful?
115. Greta Novak is remarkably floating in the very-salty Dead Sea. How does the buoyant force on her compare when floating in fresh water? In answering this, discuss differences in volume of water displaced in the two cases.

116. Would buoyancy occur in the absence of weight? Discuss the buoyancy that would or wouldn't occur in the International Space Station.
117. If the gravitational field of Earth were to increase, would a fish float to the surface, sink, or stay at the same depth?

CHAPTER THIRTEEN Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:.

1. Which will remain the same for two identical books, one lying flat and the other standing on its end?
   (a) Weight
   (b) Pressure
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
2. Water pressure on a submerged object is greatest against its
   (a) top.
   (b) bottom.
   (c) sides.
   (d) Same against all surfaces
3. Buoyant force acts upward on a submerged object because
   (a) it acts in a direction to oppose gravity.
   (b) the weight of fluid displaced reacts with an upward force.
   (c) pressure against its bottom is greater than pressure against its top.
   (d) None of the above
4. The buoyant force acting on a 10-ton ship floating in the ocean is
   (a) less than 10 tons.
   (b) 10 tons.
   (c) more than 10 tons.
   (d) Depends on the density of sea water
5. Buoyant force is greater on a submerged 10-newton block of
   (a) lead.
   (b) aluminum.
   (c) Same on each
   (d) Not enough information to say
6. A lobster crawls onto a bathroom scale on the ocean floor. Its weight compared to its weight above the surface is
   (a) greater.
   (b) less.
   (c) the same.
   (d) Not enough information to say
7. A key feature of the Falkirk Wheel in Scotland is that opposite gondolas have the same weight when both are brim-full of water
   (a) and boats in each have about equal weights.
   (b) and at least one boat is in each gondola.
   (c) regardless of the weights of boats or no boats in each.
   (d) None of the above
8. A large ice cube containing an iron railroad spike floats in a brim-full container of water. When the ice cube melts,
   (a) water spills over.
   (b) no change in water level occurs.
   (c) water level in the container drops.
   (d) Not enough information to say
9. If a weighted air-filled balloon sinks in deep water, it will
   (a) likely sink to an equilibrium level before reaching the bottom.
   (b) likely burst if water pressure is great enough.
   (c) be acted on by a continuously decreasing buoyant force.
   (d) None of the above
10. A consequence of surface tension for water is
    (a) capillary action.
    (b) wet sand being firmer than dry sand.
    (c) the different tastes of hot and cold oily soup.
    (d) All of the above

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (a): Weight is the force due to gravity on the book, *mg*, which doesn't change with orientation of the book. Pressure is that same force per area of contact, with less area of contact when standing than lying flat. So weight remains the same while pressure differs. **2. (b):** Pressure depends on depth and fluid density. Since the bottom of an object is always deeper than the top, the bottom receives more pressure for the same density of fluid. **3. (c):** Directly and simply put, the BF exerted on a submerged object acts upward because fluid pressure up against its bottom is greater than the downward fluid pressure against its top surface. The bottom of any submerged object is simply deeper in the fluid. **4. (b):** For any ship floating at rest, the net force acting on it is zero – that's 10 tons downward, 10 tons, upward. The 10-ton ship is in equilibrium, no matter the density of the water. **5. (b):** A 10-ton block of aluminum has more volume than a 10-ton block of lead. So when submerged, the aluminum block with its greater volume displaces more fluid than the more compact block of lead, meaning more BF on the block of aluminum. **6. (b):** The reading on a weighing scale is *mg* downward minus BF upward. In air, the BF of displaced air is negligible. But not negligible for a weighing scale submerged in ocean water. In effect, the BF "lifts" one off the scale, lowering the scale reading, whether for a lobster or a scuba diver. **7. (c):** Just as a brim-full container of water has the same weight whether or not a block of wood floats in it, likewise for the gondolas. Brim full of water, the gondolas have the same weight whatever may be floating in them. **8. (c):** Just as water level drops when a heavy boulder is tossed overboard from a boat, the water level drops when the floating ice cube releases its iron cargo. When iron is floating in a boat or in frozen ice, it displaces its weight of water. When submerged it displaces its volume of water, significantly less. Water level drops. **9. (c):** A sinking balloon experiences increasing pressure by the surrounding water as it sinks deeper. This increased pressure causes the balloon to shrink. Its volume is decreased, which in turn decreases the volume of displaced water, with reduced BF acting on it. **10. (b):** All these are examples from the book, except for the firmness of wet sand, in which the attraction between the water molecules on sandy surfaces by surface tension pulls grains of sand together.

CHAPTER FOURTEEN

14 Gases

14.1 **The Atmosphere**

14.2 **Atmospheric Pressure**
The Barometer

14.3 **Boyle's Law**

14.4 **Buoyancy of Air**

14.5 **Bernoulli's Principle**
Applications of Bernoulli's Principle

14.6 **Plasma**
Plasma in the Everyday World
Plasma Power

1 Fred Myers inspires children with physics that he hopes in teen years will be a part of their educational mainstream. **2** Professors P. O. and Johan Zetterberg pull on a classroom model of von Guericke's hemispheres in Sweden. **3** A print of Otto von Guericke's 1642 demonstration of atmospheric. **4** With a spool and piece of card Evan Jones plays with Bernoulli. **5** Dave Manning validates buoyancy with his students at Thaddeus Stevens College during a hot air balloon launch.

In most of the world, physics is included in the educational mainstream. Students in high schools around the world, with some exceptions, take physics either before or at the same time that they take chemistry and biology. In the United States it's quite different: biology first, then chemistry, and then maybe physics in the junior or senior year. To teachers like Fred Myers at the prestigious Choate Rosemary Hall in Connecticut, this sequence seemed upside down. Even though physics is generally acknowledged to be the foundation of chemistry, and chemistry the foundation of biology. Fred was among the few in the United States to invert the traditional sequence and teach physics in the ninth grade—before chemistry and biology. To assist in this endeavor Fred adopted the second edition of *Conceptual Physics*, a book that his students found motivating, and that they actually read.

Enthused by his success with high school freshmen, Fred earned a second master's degree and moved to public school teaching at Farmington High School in Connecticut where he successfully implemented a physics-then-chemistry-then biology curriculum. After helping to found the Connecticut Association of Physics Teachers and serving as president for several years, Fred published articles advocating "The Right-Side-Up Science Sequence," which became better known as "physics first." One of Fred's articles caught the interest of physics Nobel Laureate Leon Lederman, who became a spokesman for a nationwide "physics first" movement. Fred was one of the teachers who convinced me to write a high school version of *Conceptual Physics* to assist in that growing movement.

Fred's engaging and high-energy teaching, and his many contributions to science education, were recognized by The 1990 Presidential Award for Excellence in Science Teaching, presented to him by then President George W. Bush. Other awards included the Milken Family Foundation Award, The Christa McAuliffe Award, AAPT's Janet Guernsey Award for Excellence in Physics Teaching, among others. How nice that Fred is one of the teachers highly recognized for doing what he loves to do—instill in his students a love and appreciation of the beauty of physics.

In 2006, Fred accepted the administrative position of Director of Science for the Glastonbury School District in Connecticut. Due to his prior efforts, this district had already adopted a *physics first* approach, and continued administrative efforts boosted student achievement to even higher levels. All students at Glastonbury took physics, and about half of them elected to take a second physics course (Advanced Placement Physics). Much of Fred's nine years at Glastonbury were spent improving the quality of the elementary and middle school science curricula, placing emphasis on teacher learning and training at those grade levels.

Fred and his wife Bonny have now retired to a North Carolina beach area. His passion for teaching endures in speaking engagements to young and old. His legacy includes changing the perception of physics courses from the "killer courses" to a delightful encounter with the most fundamental science course in the world—physics.

14.1 The Atmosphere

We live at the bottom of an ocean of air that we call the atmosphere. Its thickness is determined by two competing factors: the kinetic energy of its molecules, which tends to spread the molecules apart, and gravity, which tends to hold them near Earth. If Earth's gravity were somehow turned off, atmospheric molecules would dissipate and disappear. Or if gravity acted but the molecules moved too slowly to form a gas (as might occur on a remote, cold planet), our "atmosphere" would be a liquid or solid layer, just so much more matter lying on the ground. There would be nothing to breathe. The atmosphere keeps us alive and warm, and without it, we would perish within minutes.

But our atmosphere is a happy compromise between energetic molecules that tend to fly away and gravity that holds them back. Without solar energy, air molecules would lie on Earth's surface the way popcorn settles at the bottom of a popcorn popper. But, if heat is added to the popcorn and to the atmospheric gases, both bumble their way up to higher altitudes. Pieces of popcorn in a popper attain speeds of a few kilometers per hour and reach altitudes up to

Pearson eText **ADDITIONAL RESOURCES**
Videos
Screencasts

That's right. Ninety-nine percent of Earth's atmosphere is below an altitude of 30 km (only 0.5% of Earth's radius).

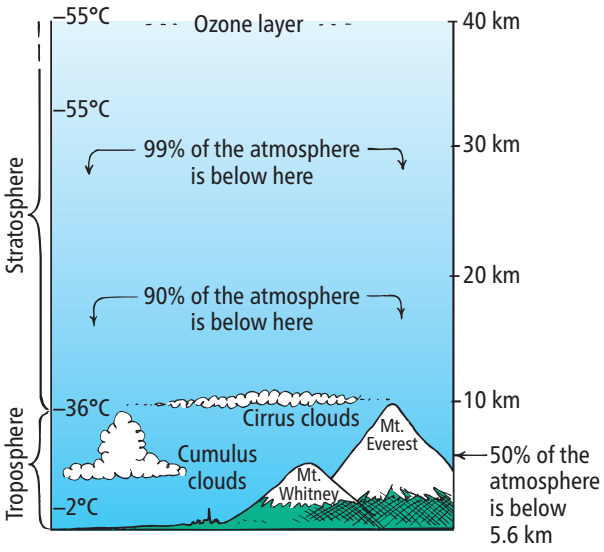


FIGURE 14.1
The atmosphere. Air is more compressed at sea level than at higher altitudes. Like feathers in a huge pile, what's at the bottom is more squashed than what's nearer the top.

a meter or two; molecules in the air move at speeds of about 1600 kilometers per hour and bumble up to many kilometers in altitude. Fortunately, there is an energizing Sun, there is gravity, and Earth has an atmosphere.

The exact height of the atmosphere has no real meaning because the air gets progressively thinner and thinner the higher one travels upward. Eventually, it thins out to emptiness in interplanetary space. Even in the vacuous regions of interplanetary space, however, there is a gas density of about one molecule per cubic centimeter. This is primarily hydrogen, the most plentiful element in the universe. About 50% of the atmosphere is below an altitude of 5.6 km (18,000 ft), 75% is below 11 km (36,000 ft), 90% is below 18 km (60,000 ft), and 99% is below about 30 km (100,000 ft) (Figure 14.1). Earth's atmosphere, like the watery ocean, is ideally spherical, having little or no regard for the topography of Earth's surface beneath. A look at Figure 14.1 makes clear that less air exists above a mountain than above lower regions. Hence, atmospheric pressure is significantly less in mountainous Denver than in costal San Francisco. A detailed description of the atmosphere can be found on various Web sites.

fyi

- Gases as well as liquids flow; hence, both are called *fluids*. A gas expands indefinitely and fills all the space available to it. Only when the quantity of gas is very large, such as in the atmosphere of a planet or a star, do gravitational forces limit the size or shape of a gas.

CHECK POINT

1. **Why does Earth have an atmosphere, whereas the Moon does not?**
2. **The surface of a lake is distinct and well defined. Why doesn't the atmosphere similarly have a well-defined surface?**
3. **Why do your ears sometimes pop when you change altitude—say, moving in a skyscraper elevator or descending in an airplane?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. In short, gravity: Gravitation on Earth is strong enough to keep air molecules from escaping; the weaker gravitation on the Moon cannot.
2. Think density. The density of water in a lake is constant throughout; whereas, the density of gas in the atmosphere varies with altitude, being very thin in the upper regions where no well-defined surface is formed.
3. A change in altitude means a change in air pressure, as discussed in the next section, and this causes a temporary imbalance in the pressures on the two sides of your eardrum.

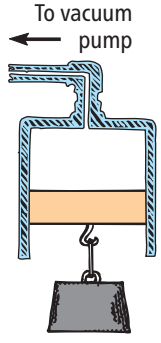


FIGURE 14.2
Is the piston that supports the load pulled up or pushed up?

14.2 Atmospheric Pressure

The atmosphere, much like the water in a lake, exerts pressure. For example, when the air pressure inside a cylinder like the one shown in Figure 14.2 is reduced, there is an upward force on the piston from the air outside. This force is great enough to lift a heavy weight. If the inside diameter of the cylinder is 10 cm or more, a person can be suspended by this force.

Contrary to common thought, what the experiment of Figure 14.2 does *not* show is a "force of suction." If we say there is a force of suction, then we assume that a vacuum can exert a force. But what is a vacuum? It is an absence of matter; it is a condition of nothingness. How can nothing exert a force? The piston

holding the weight up in Figure 14.2 is not sucked upward. The piston is pushed upward by the weight of the atmosphere against its bottom surface.

Just as water pressure is caused by the weight of water, **atmospheric pressure** is caused by the weight of air. We have adapted so completely to the invisible air that we don't feel it, and we sometimes forget that it has weight. Perhaps a fish "forgets" about the weight of water in the same way. The reason we don't feel this weight crushing against our bodies is that the pressure inside our bodies balances the pressure of the surrounding air. There is no net force for us to sense.

At sea level, 1 m^3 of air has a mass of about 1.25 kg. So the air in your kid sister's small bedroom weighs about as much as she does! The density of air decreases with altitude. At 10 km, for example, 1 m^3 of air has a mass of about 0.4 kg. To compensate for this, airplanes are pressurized; the additional air needed to fully pressurize a modern jumbo jet, for example, is more than 1000 kg. Air is heavy if you have enough of it. If your kid sister doesn't believe that air has weight, you can show her why she falsely perceives the air to be weight-free. If you hand her a plastic bag of water, she'll tell you that it has weight. But, if you hand her the same bag of water while she's submerged in a swimming pool, she won't feel its weight. That's because she and the bag are surrounded by water. Likewise with the air that is all around us.

Consider the mass of air in an upright 30-km-tall bamboo pole that has an inside cross-sectional area of 1 cm^2. If the density of the air inside the pole matches the density of the air outside, the mass of enclosed air would be about 1 kg. The weight of this much air is about 10 N. So the air pressure at the bottom of the bamboo pole would be about 10 N per square centimeter ($10\ N/cm^2$). Of course, the same is true without the bamboo pole. There are 10,000 cm^2 in 1 m^2, so a column of air 1 m^2 in cross-section that extends up through the atmosphere has a mass of about 10,000 kg. The weight of this air is about 100,000 N (10^5 N). This weight produces a pressure of $100{,}000\ N/m^2$—or, equivalently, 100,000 pascals or 100 kilopascals. To be more exact, the average atmospheric pressure at sea level is 101.3 kilopascals (101.3 kPa).[1]

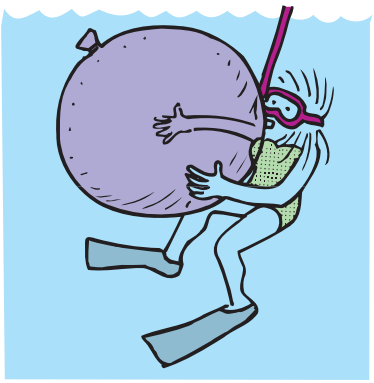


FIGURE 14.3
You don't notice the weight of a bag of water while you're submerged in water. Similarly, you aren't aware of the weight of air while you are submerged in our "ocean" of air.

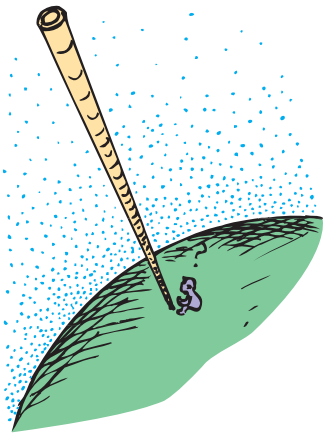


FIGURE 14.4
About 1 kg of air (~10 N) would fill a bamboo pole reaching 30 km to the "top" of the atmosphere.

FIGURE 14.5
Ann Brandon fascinates her students when she rides on a cushion of air blown through a hole in the middle of this jumbo air puck.

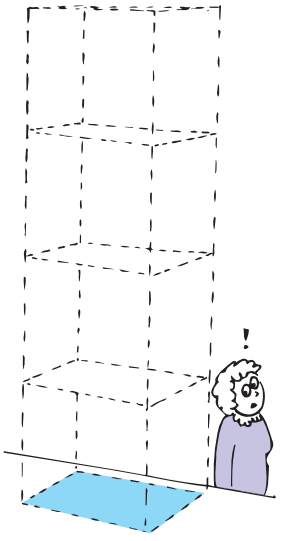


FIGURE 14.6
The weight of air bearing down on a 1-m^2 surface at sea level is about 100,000 N. In other words, atmospheric pressure is about $10^5\ N/m^2$, or about 100 kPa.

[1]The pascal ($1\ N/m^2$) is the SI unit of pressure. The average pressure at sea level (101.3 kPa) is often called 1 atmosphere. In British units, the average atmospheric pressure at sea level is $14.7\ lb/in^2$.

fyi

- Many deep-sea creatures experience enormous water pressures on their bodies, but they suffer no ill effects. As for us at the bottom of Earth's atmosphere, no net force or strain is exerted on them because the pressures inside their bodies match the surrounding fluid pressure. For many creatures, but not all, problems occur when they change depth too suddenly. Scuba divers, for example, who make the mistake of rising to the surface too quickly experience pain and possible death from rapid decompression—a condition known as the bends. (*Scuba* is an acronym for Self-Contained Underwater Breathing Apparatus.) Marine biologists are looking for ways to bring depth-sensitive deep-sea creatures to the surface without killing them.

TABLE 14.1
DENSITIES OF VARIOUS GASES

Gas	Density (kg/m^3)*
Dry air	
0°C	1.29
10°C	1.25
20°C	1.21
30°C	1.16
Hydrogen	0.090
Helium	0.178
Nitrogen	1.25
Oxygen	1.43

*At sea-level atmospheric pressure and at 0°C (unless otherwise specified)

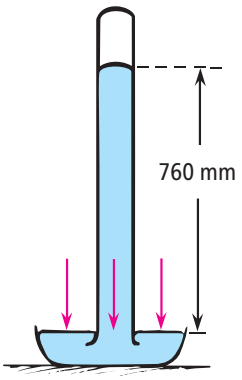


FIGURE 14.7
A simple mercury barometer.

The pressure of the atmosphere is not uniform. Besides altitude variations, atmospheric pressure varies from one locality to the next, and from day to day. This leads to moving weather fronts and storms that shape our weather. When a high-pressure system approaches, you can expect cooler temperatures and clear skies. When a low-pressure system approaches, expect warmer weather, rain, and storms. Measurement of changing air pressure is important to meteorologists when predicting the weather.

CHECK POINT

1. **What is the main cause of atmospheric pressure?**
2. **In what part of the atmosphere is the greatest density of air?**
3. **About how many kilograms of air occupy a classroom that has a 200-m^2 floor area and a 4-m-high ceiling? (Assume a chilly temperature of 10°C.)**
4. **Why doesn't the pressure of the atmosphere break windows?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The weight of the air.
2. Density is greatest at Earth's surface.
3. At normal classroom temperature the mass of air is 1000 kg. The volume of air is area × height = 200 m^2 × 4 m = 800 m^3; each cubic meter of air has a mass of about 1.25 kg, so 800 m^3 × 1.25 kg/m^3 = 1000 kg.
4. Atmospheric pressure is exerted on both sides of a window, so no net force is exerted on the glass. If, for some reason, the pressure is reduced or increased on one side only, as when a tornado passes by, then watch out! Reduced outside air pressure created by a tornado can be disastrous.

The Barometer

In 1643, Italian physicist and mathematician Evangelista Torricelli found a way to measure the pressure that air exerts—he invented the first **barometer.** A simple mercury barometer is illustrated in Figure 14.7. It consists of a mercury-filled glass tube, somewhat longer than 76 cm, immersed in a dish (reservoir) of mercury. When Torricelli tipped the mercury-filled tube upside down and placed it mouth downward in a dish of mercury, the mercury in the tube dropped to a level at which the weight of the mercury in the tube was balanced by the atmospheric force exerted on the reservoir. The empty space trapped above, except for some mercury vapor, is a vacuum. The vertical height of the mercury column remains constant even when the tube is tilted, unless the top of the tube is less than 76 cm above the level in the dish—in which case the mercury completely fills the tube.

The balance of mercury in a barometer is similar to the way a playground seesaw balances when the torques of people at its two ends are equal. The barometer "balances" when the weight of the liquid in the tube exerts the same pressure as the atmosphere outside. Whatever the width of the tube, a 76-cm column of mercury weighs the same as the air that would fill a super-tall 30-km tube of the same width. If the atmospheric pressure increases, then the atmosphere pushes down harder on the mercury and the column of mercury is pushed higher than 76 cm (760 mm). The mercury is literally pushed up into the tube of a barometer by the weight of the atmosphere. Atmospheric pressure is measured by the height of a mercury column on a barometer, and it is still often expressed in millimeters or inches of mercury. The more common scientific unit is the kilopascal.

Could water be used to make a barometer? The answer is *yes*, but the glass tube would have to be much longer—13.6 times as long, to be exact. You may recognize this number as the density of mercury relative to that of water. An amount of water 13.6 times the volume of mercury is needed to provide the same weight as the mercury in the tube. So the tube would have to be at least 13.6 times taller than the mercury column. That's 13.6 × 0.76 m, or 10.3 m high—too tall to be practical.

What happens in a barometer is similar to what happens during the process of drinking through a straw. By sucking on the straw placed in the drink, you reduce the air pressure in the straw. The weight of the atmosphere on the drink pushes liquid up into the reduced-pressure region inside the straw. Strictly speaking, the liquid is not sucked up; it is pushed up by the pressure of the atmosphere. If the atmosphere is prevented from pushing on the surface of the drink, as in the party-trick bottle with the straw passing through an airtight cork stopper, one can suck and suck and get no drink.

If you understand these ideas, you can understand why at normal atmospheric pressure there is a 10.3-m limit on the height that water can be lifted with vacuum pumps. The old-fashioned farm-type pump, like the one shown in Figure 14.9, operates by producing a partial vacuum in a pipe that extends down into the water below. The weight of the atmosphere on the surface of the water simply pushes the water up into the region of reduced pressure inside the pipe. Can you see that, even with a perfect vacuum, the maximum height to which water can be lifted is 10.3 m?

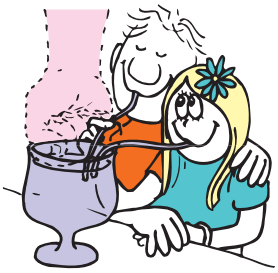


FIGURE 14.8
Strictly speaking, these two do not suck the soda up the straws. They instead reduce the pressure in the straws and allow the weight of the atmosphere to push the liquid up into the straws. Could they drink a soda this way on the Moon?

FIGURE 14.9
The atmosphere pushes water from below up into a pipe that is partially evacuated of air by the pumping action.

When the handle is pumped, the air in the pipe is "thinned" as it expands to fill a larger volume. Atmospheric pressure on the well surface pushes water up into the pipe, causing water to overflow at the spout.

CHECK POINT

1. **A 30-km-tall glass tube filled with atmospheric air has weight. What height of water in a similar tube would have the same weight?**
2. **What is the maximum height to which water can be sucked up through a straw?**
3. **Why won't a vacuum pump operate in a well deeper than 10.3 m at normal atmospheric pressure?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Water at a height of 10.3 m will match the weight of the atmosphere in the taller tube.
2. At sea level, however strong your lungs may be, or whatever device you use to make a vacuum in the straw, the water cannot be pushed up by the atmosphere higher than 10.3 m.
3. The atmosphere is not heavy enough to push water higher than 10.3 m.

FIGURE 14.10
An aneroid barometer (top) and its cross-section (bottom).

A small portable instrument that measures atmospheric pressure is the *aneroid barometer*. The classic model shown in Figure 14.10 uses a metal box that is partially exhausted of air and has a slightly flexible lid that bends in or out with changes in atmospheric pressure. The motion of the lid is indicated on a scale by a mechanical spring-and-lever system. Since the atmospheric pressure decreases with increasing altitude, a barometer can be used to determine elevation. An aneroid barometer calibrated for altitude is called an *altimeter* (altitude meter). Some altimeters are sensitive enough to indicate a change in elevation of less than a meter.

Vacuums are produced by pumps, which work by virtue of a gas tending to fill its container. If a space with lower pressure is provided, gas will flow from the region of higher pressure to the region of lower pressure. A vacuum pump simply provides a region of lower pressure into which fast-moving gas molecules randomly move. The air pressure is repeatedly lowered by piston and valve action. The best vacuums manageable with mechanical pumps are about 1 Pa. Better vacuums, down to 10^{-8} Pa, are attainable with vapor-diffusion or vapor-jet pumps. Sublimation pumps can reach 10^{-12} Pa. Greater vacuums are very difficult to attain.

fyi

- For international flights on aircraft, a cabin pressure of three-quarters normal atmospheric pressure is the lowest permitted.

CHECK POINT

Why is there no atmospheric pressure in a vacuum?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Pressure is the result of a force distributed over an area. In a vacuum, a region of nothingness, nothing exists to exert a force.

14.3 Boyle's Law

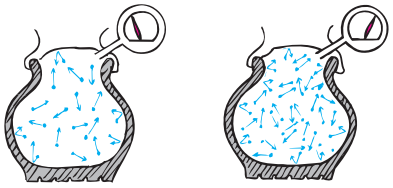


FIGURE 14.11
When the density of gas in the tire is increased, the pressure is increased.

The air pressure inside the inflated tires of an automobile is considerably higher than the atmospheric pressure outside. Due to compression, the density of the air inside is also greater than the density of the air outside. To understand the relationship between *pressure* and *density*, think of the molecules of air (primarily nitrogen and oxygen) inside the tire, which behave like tiny ping-pong balls—perpetually moving helter-skelter and banging against one another and against the inner walls. Their impacts produce a jittery force that appears to our coarse senses as a steady push. This pushing force averaged over a unit of area provides the pressure of the enclosed air.

Suppose that there are twice as many molecules in the same volume (Figure 14.11). Then the air density is doubled. If the molecules move at the same average speed—or, equivalently, if they have the same temperature—then the number of collisions is doubled. This means that the pressure is doubled. So pressure is proportional to density.

We can also double the air density by compressing the air to half its volume. Consider the cylinder with the movable piston in Figure 14.12. If the piston is pushed downward so that the volume is half the original volume, the density of molecules doubles and the pressure correspondingly doubles. Decrease the volume to a third of its original value, and the pressure increases by three, and so forth (provided that the temperature remains the same and the number of molecules remains the same).

Is the atmospheric pressure actually different over a few centimeters' difference in altitude? The answer is yes, as evidenced by any helium-filled balloon that rises in air. The atmospheric pressure up against the bottom surface of the balloon is greater than the atmospheric pressure down against the top.

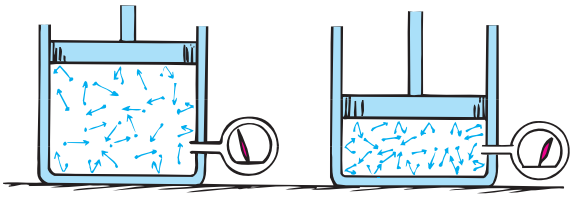


FIGURE 14.12
When the volume of a gas is decreased, its density and therefore pressure are increased.

Notice in this example involving pistons that *pressure and volume are inversely proportional*; if you double one, for example, you halve the other.[2] We can write this as

$$P \sim \frac{1}{V}$$

where P stands for pressure and V for volume. We can write this relationship as

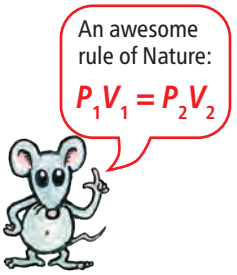
$$PV = \text{constant}$$

Another way to express this is

$$P_1V_1 = P_2V_2$$

Here P_1 and V_1 represent the original pressure and volume, respectively, and P_2 and V_2 represent the second pressure and volume. Or, put more graphically,

$$_PV = P_V$$



This relationship between pressure and volume is called **Boyle's law,** after physicist Robert Boyle, who, with the help of fellow physicist Robert Hooke, made this discovery in the 17th century. Boyle's law applies to ideal gases. An ideal gas is one in which the disturbing effects of the forces between molecules and the finite size of the individual molecules can be ignored. Air and other gases under normal pressures approach ideal-gas conditions.

CHECK POINT

1. **A piston in an airtight pump is withdrawn so that the volume of the air chamber is increased three times. What is the change in pressure?**
2. **A scuba diver 10.3 m deep breathes compressed air. If she holds her breath while returning to the surface, by how much will the volume of her lungs tend to increase?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The pressure in the piston chamber is reduced to one-third. This is the principle that underlies a mechanical vacuum pump.
2. Atmospheric pressure can support a column of water 10.3 m high, so the pressure in water due to its weight alone equals atmospheric pressure at a depth of 10.3 m. If we take the pressure of the atmosphere at the water's surface into account, the total pressure at this depth is twice atmospheric pressure. Unfortunately for the scuba diver, her lungs will tend to inflate to twice their normal size if she holds her breath while rising to the surface. A first lesson in scuba diving is not to hold your breath when ascending. To do so can be fatal.

fyi

- A tire pressure gauge at a service station doesn't measure absolute air pressure. A flat tire registers zero pressure on the gauge, but a pressure of about 1 atmosphere exists there. Gauges read "gauge" pressure—pressure greater than atmospheric pressure.

[2] A general law that takes temperature changes into account is $\frac{P_1V_1}{T_1} = \frac{P_2V_2}{T_2}$, where T_1 and T_2 represent the first and second *absolute* temperatures, measured in the SI unit called the *kelvin* (see Chapters 15 and 18).

14.4 Buoyancy of Air

A crab lives at the bottom of its ocean of water and looks upward at a jellyfish floating above it. Similarly, we live at the bottom of our ocean of air and look upward at balloons drifting above us. A balloon is suspended in air and a jellyfish is suspended in water for the same reason: Each is buoyed upward by a displaced weight of fluid equal to its own weight. In one case, the displaced fluid is air; in the other case, it is water. As discussed in Chapter 13, objects in water are buoyed upward because the pressure that acts up against the bottom of the object exceeds the pressure that acts down against the top. Likewise, the air pressure that acts up against an object in air is greater than the air pressure above that pushes down. The buoyancy, in both cases, is numerically equal to the weight of the fluid displaced. **Archimedes' principle** holds for air just as it does for water:

An object surrounded by air is buoyed up by a force equal to the weight of the air displaced.

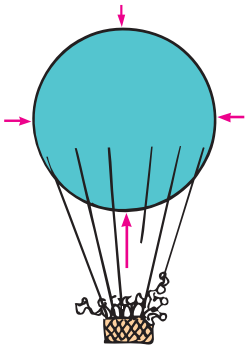


FIGURE 14.13
All bodies are buoyed up by a force equal to the weight of the air they displace. Why, then, don't all objects float like this balloon?

We know that a cubic meter of air at ordinary atmospheric pressure and room temperature has a mass of about 1.2 kg, so its weight is about 12 N. Therefore, any 1-m^3 object in air is buoyed up with a force of 12 N. If the mass of the 1-m^3 object is greater than 1.2 kg (so that its weight is greater than 12 N), it falls to the ground when released. If an object of this size has a mass less than 1.2 kg, it rises in the air. Any object that has a mass that is less than the mass of an equal volume of air will rise in air. Another way to say this is that any object less dense than air will rise in air. Gas-filled balloons that rise in air are less dense than air.

The greatest buoyancy would be achieved if a balloon were evacuated, but this isn't practical. The weight of a structure needed to keep an evacuated balloon from collapsing would more than offset the advantage of the extra buoyancy. So balloons are filled with gas less dense than ordinary air, which keeps the balloon from collapsing while keeping it light. In sport balloons, the gas is simply heated air. In balloons intended to reach very high altitudes or to stay up for a long time, helium is usually used. Its density is low enough so that the combined weight of helium, balloon, and whatever the cargo happens to be is less than the weight of the air it displaces.[3] Low-density gas is used in a balloon for the same reason that cork or Styrofoam is used in a swimmer's life preserver. The cork or Styrofoam possesses no strange tendency to be drawn toward the surface of water, and the gas possesses no strange tendency to rise. Both are buoyed upward like anything else. They are simply light enough for the buoyancy to be significant.

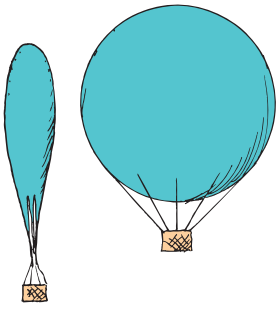


FIGURE 14.14
(Left) At ground level, the balloon is partially inflated. (Right) The same balloon is fully inflated at high altitudes where the surrounding pressure is lower.

Unlike water, the atmosphere has no definable surface. There is no "top." Furthermore, unlike water, the atmosphere becomes less dense with altitude. Whereas cork floats to the surface of water, a released helium-filled balloon does not rise to any atmospheric surface. How high will a balloon rise? We can state the answer in several ways. A gas-filled balloon will rise only so long as it displaces a weight of air greater than its own weight. Because air becomes less dense with altitude, a lesser weight of air is displaced per given volume as the balloon rises. Since most balloons expand as they rise, their buoyancy stays fairly constant until they can't expand anymore. When the weight of the displaced air equals the total weight of the balloon, the upward motion of the balloon will cease. We can express the same idea when we say that when the buoyant force on the balloon equals its weight, the balloon will cease rising. Equivalently, when the density of the balloon (including its load) equals the density of the surrounding air, the

[3]Hydrogen is the least dense gas and was used in passenger-carrying balloons from the late 1700s to the mid-1900s. Because hydrogen is highly flammable, however, as evident in the Hindenburg disaster of 1937, it is seldom used anymore.

balloon will cease rising. Helium-filled toy balloons usually break when released in the air because the expansion of the helium they contain stretches the rubber until it ruptures. Large dirigible airships are designed so that when they are loaded, they will slowly rise in air; that is, their total weight is a little less than the weight of the air displaced. When in motion, the ship may be raised or lowered by means of horizontal fin-like "elevators."

Thus far, we have treated pressure only as it applies to stationary fluids. Motion produces an additional influence.

fyi

- A typical good-sized cloud bank contains a million or so tons of water, all in the form of suspended water drops.

CHECK POINT

1. **Is there a buoyant force acting on you? If there is, why aren't you buoyed up by this force?**
2. **(This one calls for your best thinking!) How does buoyancy change as a helium-filled balloon ascends?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. There is a buoyant force acting on you, and you *are* buoyed upward by it. You don't notice it only because your weight is so much greater.
2. If the balloon is free to expand as it rises, the increase in volume is counteracted by a decrease in the density of higher-altitude air. So, interestingly, the greater volume of displaced air doesn't weigh more, and buoyancy stays the same. If a balloon is not free to expand, buoyancy will decrease as a balloon rises because of the less-dense displaced air. Usually, balloons expand as they rise initially, and, if they don't finally rupture, the stretching of their fabric reaches a maximum, and they settle where their buoyancy matches their weight. As Figure 14.14 shows, high-altitude balloons appear very under-inflated at launch.

14.5 Bernoulli's Principle

Consider a continuous flow of water through a pipe. Because water doesn't "bunch up," the amount of water that flows past any given section of the pipe is the same as the amount that flows past any other section of the same pipe—even if the pipe widens or narrows. For continuous flow, a fluid speeds up when it goes from a wide to a narrow part of the pipe and slows when it goes from a narrow to a wide part of the pipe. This is evident in a broad, slow-moving river that flows more swiftly as it enters a narrow gorge of much the same depth. It is also evident when water flowing from a garden hose speeds up when you squeeze the end of the hose to make the stream narrower.

This change of speed with changing cross-section is a consequence of what we call the *principle of continuity*, which is the subject of the next two fyi's. For flow to be continuous in a confined region, it speeds up when moving from a wider region to a narrower one.

The motion of a fluid in steady flow follows imaginary *streamlines*, represented by thin lines in Figure 14.16 and in other figures that follow. Streamlines are the smooth paths of bits of fluid. The lines are closer together in narrower regions, where the flow speed is greater. (Streamlines are visible when smoke or other visible fluids are passed through evenly spaced openings, as in a wind tunnel.)

FIGURE 14.15
Because the flow is continuous, water speeds up when it flows through the narrow and/or shallow part of the brook.

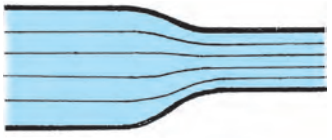


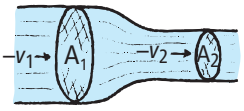
FIGURE 14.16
Water speeds up when it flows into the narrower pipe. The close-together streamlines indicate increased speed and decreased internal pressure.

fyi

- Because the volume of water flowing through a pipe of different cross-sectional areas A remains constant, the speed of flow v is high where the area is small and the speed is low where the area is large. This is stated in the equation of continuity:

$$A_1v_1 = A_2v_2$$

The product A_1v_1 at any point 1 equals the product A_2v_2 at any point 2.



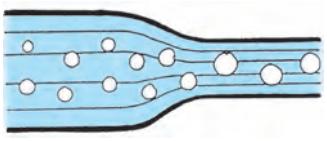


FIGURE 14.17
Internal pressure is higher in slower-moving water in the wide part of the pipe, as evidenced by the more-squeezed air bubbles. The bubbles are bigger in the narrow part because the internal pressure there is lower.

fyi

- If you've wondered how slight breezes turn into brisk winds at the top of hills, think of the principle of continuity! Although there is no pipe to constrain the airflow, it is nevertheless similarly constrained and speeds up.

A fire hose is fat when it is not spurting water. When the water is turned on and the hose spurts, why does it become thinner?

Daniel Bernoulli, an 18th-century Swiss scientist, studied fluid flow in pipes. His discovery, now called **Bernoulli's principle,** can be stated as follows:

Where the speed of a fluid increases, internal pressure in the fluid decreases.

And vice versa: Where the speed decreases, the internal pressure increases. This principle holds for smooth steady flow (called *laminar* flow) along streamlines of constant-density fluid. At speeds above some critical point, however, the flow may become chaotic (called *turbulent* flow) and follow changing, curling paths called *eddies*. This exerts friction on the fluid and dissipates some of its energy. Then Bernoulli's principle doesn't apply well.

Where streamlines of a fluid are closer together, flow speed is greater and pressure within the fluid is less. Changes in internal pressure are evident in water that contains air bubbles (Figure 14.17). The volume of an air bubble depends on the surrounding water pressure. Where water gains speed, pressure is lowered and the bubbles become bigger. In water that slows, pressure is increased and the bubbles are squeezed to a smaller size.

Bernoulli's principle is a consequence of the conservation of energy, although, surprisingly, he developed it long before the concept of energy was formalized.[4]

The decrease of fluid pressure with increasing speed may at first seem surprising, particularly when thinking of the misfortune of people struck by the high-speed water of a water cannon. It is important to distinguish between the pressure *within* a fluid, internal pressure, and the pressure exerted *by* the fluid on something that interferes with its flow. Internal pressure within flowing water and the external pressure it can exert when making impact on whatever it encounters are two different pressures. When the momentum of moving water (or anything else) is suddenly reduced, the impulse it exerts can be huge. A dramatic example is the use of high-speed jets of water to cut concrete, granite, and steel in industrial machine shops. The water has very little internal pressure, but the pressure the jets of water exert on these solids that interrupt its flow is enormous.

CHECK POINT

How does Bernoulli's principle relate to a fast-moving wind that blows a trash can across the street?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

It doesn't. Bernoulli's principle involves only internal pressures, such as those between air molecules that make up the wind, and not the external pressure that the wind exerts against the trash can.

Applications of Bernoulli's Principle

Anyone who has ridden in a convertible car with the canvas top up has noticed that the roof puffs upward as the car moves. This is Bernoulli in action! The pressure outside against the top of the fabric, where air speed has increased in moving up and over the car, is lower than the static atmospheric pressure inside the car. The result is an upward net force on the fabric.

[4]In mathematical form: $\frac{1}{2}mv^2 + mgy + PV =$ constant (along a streamline); where m is the mass of some small volume V, v its speed, g the acceleration due to gravity, y its elevation, and P its internal pressure. If mass m is expressed in terms of density, ρ, where $\rho = m/V$, and each term is divided by V, Bernoulli's equation reads: $\frac{1}{2}\rho v^2 + \rho gy + P =$ constant. Then all three terms have units of pressure. If y does not change, an increase in v means a decrease in P, and vice versa. Note when v is zero Bernoulli's equation reduces to $\Delta P = -\rho g \Delta y$ (weight density × depth).

Consider wind blowing across a peaked roof. Just as liquid gains speed when it enters a constricted pipe, the wind gains speed as it is similarly constricted in flowing up and over the roof. Its gain of speed is indicated by the crowding of streamlines in Figure 14.18. The pressure along the streamlines is reduced where they are closer together. The greater pressure inside the roof can lift it off the house. During a severe storm, the difference in outside and inside pressures doesn't need to be very great for the roof to be lifted up and blown with the wind.

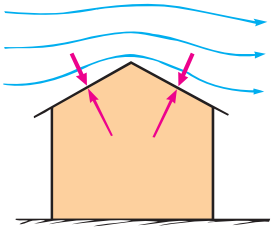


FIGURE 14.18
The air pressure above the roof is lower than the air pressure beneath the roof.

If we think of the blown-off roof as an airplane wing, we can better understand the lifting force that supports a heavy aircraft. In both cases, regions of reduced pressure above and greater pressure below push the roof or the wing upward. Importantly, for the canvas top of a car, the roof, and the wing, the force exerted by the air is *transverse* to the general direction of the airflow, unlike the water-jet effect mentioned above.

CHECK POINT

In terms of pressure, what is the effect of faster-moving air above a wing than below? How does Newton's third law explain wing lift?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

Via Bernoulli, the pressure within faster-moving air above the wing is reduced and exerts less pressure against the wing surface than slower-moving air below exerts on the bottom surface. Additionally, as a wing deflects air downward, the wing is pushed upward. These are two different ways to explain the force we call lift.

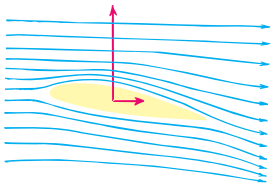


FIGURE 14.19
The vertical vector represents the net upward force (lift) that results from higher air pressure below the wing than above the wing. The horizontal vector represents air drag.

We all know that a baseball pitcher can impart a spin on a ball to make it curve off to one side as it approaches home plate. Similarly, a tennis player can hit a ball so that it curves. A thin layer of air is dragged around the spinning ball by friction, which is enhanced by the baseball's threads or the tennis ball's fuzz.[5]

NEWTONIAN AIR LIFT

Pressure differences are only one way to understand wing lift. Another way uses Newton's third law. First of all, we know that the forward propulsion of an airplane is explained by action and reaction forces. Jets or propellers force air backward while in third-law fashion the air pushes the aircraft forward. Newton's third law also plays a role in holding an airplane up. Wings of an airplane encounter the air at an angle called the *angle of attack*. Fast-moving air that meets the bottom surface of a tipped wing is forced downward (action). Then the downward-swept air reacts by pushing the wing upward (reaction). This means that airplanes can fly upside down if the nose of the plane is tilted upward relative to the air flow. Whether flying right-side up or upside down, the wings of an aircraft deflect air downward while the air swept downward reacts by pushing the wings upward. We call the resulting force *lift*.

Lift is greater for large wing areas and when the plane is traveling fast. A glider has a very large wing area relative to its weight, so it doesn't have to be going very fast for sufficient lift. At the other extreme, a fighter plane designed for high-speed flight has a small wing area relative to its weight. Consequently, it must take off and land at high speeds.

Air lift provides a nice example to remind us that there is often more than one way to explain the behavior of nature. To experience lift for yourself, when riding in a car, place your hand out the window and pretend it's a wing. Tip it up slightly so air is forced downward. Up goes your hand!

[5]If you study the curving of balls further, look into the Magnus effect, which deals with friction and viscosity.

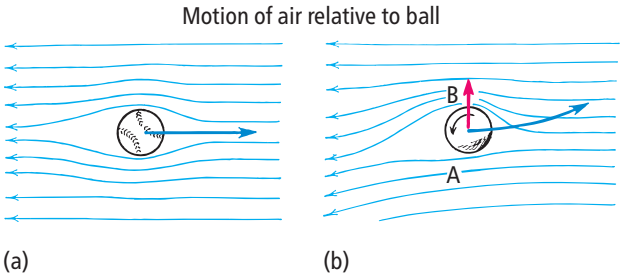


FIGURE 14.20
(a) The streamlines are the same on either side of a nonspinning baseball. (b) A spinning ball produces a crowding of streamlines. The resulting "lift" (red arrow) causes the ball to curve, as shown by the blue arrow.

The moving layer of air produces a crowding of streamlines on one side. Note in Figure 14.20b that the streamlines are more crowded at B than at A for the direction of spin shown. Air pressure is greater at A, and the ball curves as indicated.

Recent findings show that many insects increase their lift by employing motions similar to those of a curving baseball. Interestingly, most insects do not flap their wings up and down. They flap them forward and backward, with a tilt that provides an angle of attack. Between flaps, their wings make semicircular motions to create lift.

A familiar hand-operated sprayer utilizes Bernoulli's principle (Figure 14.21). When you push a plunger, air is forced from a wider to a narrower channel and emerges with lower than normal atmospheric pressure above the open end of a tube inserted into the flow of liquid. Atmospheric pressure on the liquid below then pushes the liquid up into the tube, where it is carried away by the stream of air.

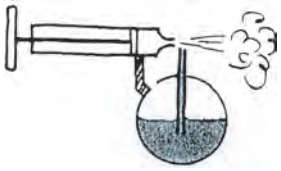


FIGURE 14.21
Why does the liquid in the reservoir go up the tube?

Bernoulli's principle explains why trucks that pass closely on the highway are drawn toward each other, and why passing ships run the risk of a sideways collision. Water that flows between the ships travels faster than water that flows past the outer sides. Streamlines are closer together between the ships than outside, so the water pressure that acts against the hulls is reduced between the ships. Even a slight reduction of pressure against the relatively huge surface area at the sides of the ships can produce significant force. Unless the ships are steered to compensate for this, the greater pressure against the outer sides of the ships forces them together. Figure 14.22 shows how to demonstrate this in your kitchen sink or bathtub.

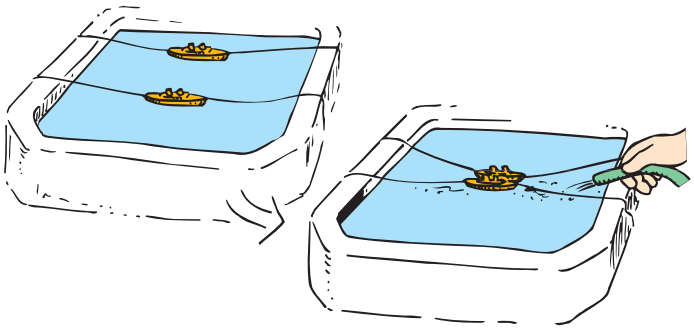


FIGURE 14.22
Loosely moor a pair of toy boats side by side in your sink. Then direct a stream of water between them. The boats will draw together and collide. Why?

Bernoulli's principle plays a small role when your bathroom shower curtain swings toward you in the shower when the water is on full blast. The pressure in the shower stall is slightly reduced with fluid in motion, and the relatively greater pressure outside the curtain pushes it inward. Like so much in the complex real world, this is but one physics principle that applies in this situation. More important is the convection of air in the shower. In any case, the next time you're taking a shower and the curtain swings in against your legs, think of Daniel Bernoulli.

PRACTICING PHYSICS

Fold the end of a filing card down to make a little bridge or tunnel. Place it on a table and blow through the arch as shown. No matter how hard you blow, you will not succeed in blowing the card off the table (unless you blow against the side of it). Try this with your friends who have not taken physics. Then explain it to them!

CHECK POINT

1. **Is the fluid that goes up the inside tube in a hand sprayer *pushed* up the tube or *sucked* up the tube?**
2. **A windy day makes for waves in a lake or the ocean. How does Bernoulli's principle assist in creating higher waves?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The fluid is pushed up by the pressure of the atmosphere on its surface.
2. The troughs of the waves are partially shielded from the wind, so air travels faster over the crests. Pressure over the crests is therefore lower than down below in the troughs. The higher pressure in the troughs aids in pressing water up into the crests.

FIGURE 14.23
The curved shape of an umbrella can be disadvantageous on a windy day.

14.6 Plasma

In addition to solids, liquids, and gases, there is a fourth phase of matter—**plasma** (not to be confused with the clear liquid part of blood, also called plasma). Plasma is the least common phase in our everyday environment, but it is the most prevalent phase of matter in the universe as a whole. The Sun and other stars are largely plasma.

A plasma is an electrified gas. The atoms that make it up are *ionized*, stripped of one or more electrons, with a corresponding number of free electrons. Recall that a neutral atom has as many positive protons inside the nucleus as it has negative electrons outside the nucleus. When one or more of these electrons is stripped from the atom, the atom has more positive charge than negative charge and becomes a *positive ion*. (Under some conditions, it may have extra electrons—in which case it is a *negative ion*.) Although the electrons and ions are themselves electrically charged, the plasma as a whole is electrically neutral because there are still equal numbers of positive and negative charges, just as there are in an ordinary gas. Nevertheless, a plasma and a gas have very different properties. The plasma readily conducts electric current, absorbs certain kinds of radiation that pass unhindered through a gas, and can be shaped, molded, and moved by electric and magnetic fields.

Our Sun is a ball of hot plasma. Plasmas on Earth are created in laboratories by heating gases to very high temperatures, making them so hot that electrons are "boiled" off the atoms. Plasmas may also be created at lower temperatures by bombarding atoms with high-energy particles or radiation.

Plasma in the Everyday World

If you're reading this by light emitted by a fluorescent lamp you don't have to look far to see plasma in action. Within the glowing tube is plasma that contains argon and mercury ions (as well as many neutral atoms of these elements). When you turn the lamp on, a high voltage between electrodes at each end of the tube causes electrons to flow. These electrons ionize some atoms, forming plasma, which provides a conducting path that keeps the current flowing. The current activates some mercury atoms, causing them to emit radiation, mostly in the invisible ultraviolet region. This radiation causes the phosphor coating on the tube's inner surface to glow with visible light.

Similarly, the neon gas in an advertising sign becomes a plasma when its atoms are ionized by electron bombardment. Neon atoms, after being activated by electric current, emit predominantly red light. The different colors seen in these signs correspond to plasmas made

FIGURE 14.24
The gas in advertising signs becomes a plasma when illuminated.

FIGURE 14.25
Streets are illuminated at night by glowing plasmas.

up of different kinds of atoms. Argon, for example, glows blue, and helium glows pink. Sodium vapor lamps used in street lighting emit yellow light stimulated by glowing plasmas (Figure 14.25). More efficient LED lighting is now replacing plasmas.

The aurora borealis and the aurora australis (called the northern and southern lights, respectively) are glowing plasmas in the upper atmosphere. Layers of low-temperature plasma encircle the whole Earth. Occasionally, showers of electrons from outer space and radiation belts enter "magnetic windows" near Earth's poles, crashing into the layers of plasma and producing light.

Plasma Power

A higher-temperature plasma is the exhaust of a jet engine, a weakly ionized plasma. But when small amounts of potassium salts or cesium metal are added, it becomes a very good conductor and, when directed into a magnet, can generate electricity! This is MHD power, the **m**agneto**h**ydro**d**ynamic interaction between a plasma and a magnetic field. (We will discuss the mechanics of generating electricity in this way in Chapter 25.) Low-pollution MHD power is currently being used in a few places in the world. Looking forward, perhaps we will see more plasma power with MHD.

fyi

- High-frequency radio and TV waves pass through the atmosphere and out into space. Hence you have to be in the "line of sight" of broadcasting or relay antennas to pick up FM and TV signals. But layers of plasma some 80 km high, which make up the ionosphere, reflect lower-frequency radio waves. That explains the reception of radio stations long distances away on your lower-frequency AM radio. At night, when the plasma layers are settled closer together and are more reflective, you can sometimes receive very distant stations on your AM radio.

CHECK POINT

A friend distinguishes an ion from a plasma by claiming an ion is an atom with one or more electrons stripped off, whereas a plasma is a mixture of atoms with all electrons stripped off. Do you agree with your friend?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER
Agree with your friend.

An even more promising achievement will be plasma power of a different kind—the controlled fusion of atomic nuclei. We will treat the physics of fusion in Chapter 34. The benefits of controlled fusion may be far-reaching. Fusion power may not only make electric energy abundant but also provide the energy and means to recycle and even synthesize elements.

Humankind has come a long way with the mastery of the first three phases of matter. Our mastery of the fourth phase may bring us much further.

Chapter 14 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Atmospheric pressure The pressure exerted against bodies immersed in the atmosphere. It results from the weight of air pressing down from above. At sea level, atmospheric pressure is about 101 kPa.

Barometer A device that measures atmospheric pressure.

Boyle's law The product of pressure and volume is a constant for a given mass of confined gas, as long as the temperature remains unchanged:

$$P_1V_1 = P_2V_2$$

Archimedes' principle An object immersed in a fluid is buoyed up with a force equal to the weight of the displaced fluid.

Bernoulli's principle Where the speed of a fluid increases, the internal pressure in the fluid decreases.

Plasma An electrified gas that contains ions and free electrons. Most of the matter in the universe is in the plasma phase.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

14.1 The Atmosphere

1. What energy source produces the motion of gases in the atmosphere? What prevents air molecules from flying off into space?
2. What percentage of the atmosphere is below an altitude of 11 km? How will the percentage change if the altitude is 18 km?

14.2 Atmospheric Pressure

3. Why do we not feel atmospheric pressure?
4. What would be the approximate mass of 1 m^3 of air at an altitude of 10 km?
5. What is the approximate mass of a column of air 1 cm^2 in area that extends from sea level to the upper atmosphere? What is the weight of this amount of air?
6. What is the pressure at the bottom of the column of air referred to in the previous question?
7. How does the pressure at the bottom of a 76-cm column of mercury in a barometer compare with atmospheric pressure?
8. How does the weight of mercury in a barometer compare with the weight of an equal cross section of air from sea level to the top of the atmosphere?
9. Why would a barometer constructed of water be too tall for practical use.
10. Why do we have to suck on a straw if atmospheric pressure is responsible for the rising liquid? Give an example to prove that sucking on a straw alone will not always result in a rising column of liquid.
11. How does an aneroid barometer respond to any change in atmospheric pressure? What is an altimeter?

14.3 Boyle's Law

12. What happens to the density of air in a party balloon when it is squeezed to half its volume (assume constant temperature)?
13. What happens to the air pressure inside a balloon when it is squeezed to half its volume (assume constant temperature)?
14. Does a flat tire have any pressure?

14.4 Buoyancy of Air

15. A 1-N balloon is suspended in air, drifting neither up nor down.
    (a) How much buoyant force acts on it?
    (b) What happens if the buoyant force decreases?
    (c) What happens if it increases?
16. What is the buoyant force experienced in air by an object of 1-m^3 volume? What happens if the object weighs more than the buoyant force?
17. Why are balloons filled with a gas that is less dense than ordinary air?

14.5 Bernoulli's Principle

18. What do closely bunched streamlines indicate?
19. Is pressure greater or less in regions where streamlines are crowded?
20. What happens to the internal pressure in a fluid flowing in a horizontal pipe when its speed increases? When its speed decreases?
21. Distinguish between internal fluid pressure and pressure a fluid may exert on objects?
22. Why does a fighter plane need to move at high speeds to generate sufficient lift?
23. Is fluid that goes up the inside tube in a hand sprayer pushed up the tube or sucked up the tube? Explain.

14.6 Plasma

24. How does a plasma differ from a gas?
25. Cite at least three examples of plasma in your daily environment.
26. What can be produced when a plasma beam is directed into the field of a strong magnet?

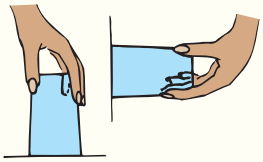
THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

27. Use the barometer app on your smartphone and find activities to change your altitude. That can be driving in a hilly or mountainous area or riding in the elevators of high-rise buildings. Notice the changes in atmospheric pressure.
28. Place a wooden shingle on a table so that it overhangs the edge a bit. If you give it a karate chop it will fly across the room. But if you cover the shingle with a flattened sheet of newspaper and strike the overhanging part of the shingle with a stick or your hand (be careful of splinters), it will break. What role is played by the weight of the atmosphere on the paper?
29. Compare the internal pressure in the tires of a car to the external pressure exerted by the tires on the road. To find the tire pressure against the road, you need the weight of your car, listed in your car manual or on the Web. Divide the weight by 4 to get the approximate weight supported by one tire. You can closely approximate the area of contact of a tire with the road by tracing the edges of tire contact on a sheet of paper marked with 1-inch squares beneath the tire. After you calculate the pressure of the tire against the road, compare it with the air pressure in the tire, via an air gauge. Are the pressures nearly equal? If not, which is greater?

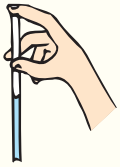
30. You ordinarily pour water from a full glass into an empty glass by placing the full glass above the empty glass and tipping. Have you ever poured air from one glass into another? The procedure is similar. Lower two glasses in water, mouths downward. Let one fill with water by tilting its

mouth upward. Then hold the water-filled glass mouth downward above the air-filled glass. Slowly tilt the lower glass and let the air escape, filling the upper glass. You will be pouring air from one glass into another!

31. Raise a submerged upside-down glass that is full of water above the waterline, but with its mouth beneath the surface. Why does the water not run out? How tall would a glass have to be before water began to run out? (You won't be able to do this indoors unless you have a ceiling that is at least 10.3 m higher than the waterline.)
32. Place a card over the open top of a glass filled to the brim with water and invert it. Why does the card stay in place? Try it sideways.



33. Invert a water-filled pop bottle or a small-necked jar. Notice that the water doesn't simply fall out but gurgles out of the container. Air pressure won't let it escape until some air has pushed its way up inside the bottle to occupy the space above the liquid. How would an inverted, water-filled bottle empty on the Moon?
34. Heat a small amount of water to boiling in an aluminum soda-pop can and invert it quickly into a dish of cooler water. Surprisingly dramatic!
35. Lower a narrow glass tube or drinking straw into water and place your finger over the top of the tube. Lift the tube from the water and then lift your finger from the top of the tube. What happens? (You'll do this often in a chemistry lab.)



36. Do as Evan Jones shows in Photo 4 at the beginning of this chapter and push a pin through a small card and place it in the hole of a thread spool. Try to blow the card from the spool by blowing through the hole. Try it in all directions.

37. Hold a spoon in a stream of water as shown and feel the effect of the differences in pressure.

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

38. Estimate the buoyant force that air exerts on a cubic art installation of side 1.60-m, displayed on a street.
39. Calculate the mass of air displaced by a massive gas-filled balloon with a diameter of 4 meters.
40. You notice a 50-gram, gas-filled balloon just floating at rest near the ground surface. (a) Show that the weight of the displaced air by the balloon is 0.49 N. (b) Show that the volume of the balloon is 0.042 m^3.
41. An airplane has a total wing surface of 100 square meters. At a certain speed the difference in air pressure below and above the wings is 4% of atmospheric pressure. Show that the lift on the airplane is 400,000 N.
42. The weight of the atmosphere above 1 square meter of Earth's surface is about 100,000 N. Density, of course, becomes less with altitude. If the density of air were a constant 1.2 kg/m^3, calculate where the top of the atmosphere would be.
43. The "depth" of the atmosphere is about 30 km, and Earth's radius is about 6370 km. Suppose that the Earth is perfectly spherical and estimate the approximate volume of the Earth's atmosphere.

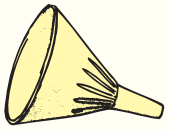
THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

44. Rank the volume of air in the glass, from greatest to least, when it is held
    (a) near the surface as shown.
    (b) 1 m beneath the surface.
    (c) 2 m beneath the surface.

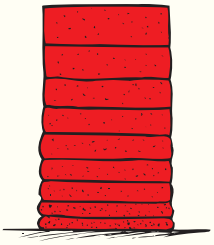
45. Rank the buoyant force supplied by the atmosphere, from least to most, on the following objects of equal masses:
    (a) Aluminum, (b) Concrete, (c) Iron, and (d) water.
46. Rank the amount of lift on a commercial airplane, from most to least, at different points of its travel with an atmospheric pressure difference of: (a) 2.8 N/m^2, (b) 3.4 N/m^2, (c) 3.2 N/m^2, and (d) 2.6 N/m^2.

THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

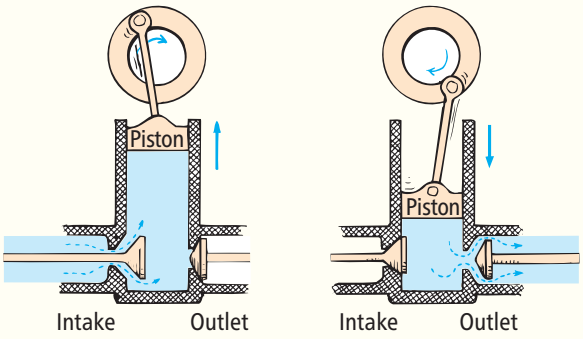
47. How does atmospheric pressure at the bottom of a deep well compare to normal atmospheric pressure? Defend your answer.
48. The effective height of the atmosphere is about 30 km in New York City and in San Francisco, but it is not in Denver, Colorado? What is different about Denver?
49. Why is a soft, underinflated football at sea level much firmer when it is at a high elevation in the mountains?
50. What is the purpose of the ridges that prevent the funnel from fitting tightly in the mouth of a bottle?



51. How does the air density in a deep mine compare with the air density at Earth's surface? Why is this so?
52. When an air bubble rises in water, what happens to its mass, volume, and density?
53. What is the likely reason for airplane windows being much smaller than bus windows?
54. We can understand how pressure in water depends on depth by using a stack of bricks. The pressure below the bottom brick is determined by the weight of the entire stack. Half way up the pressure is half. But how about bricks illustrating atmospheric pressure? Why will foam rubber bricks be a better choice than regular bricks?



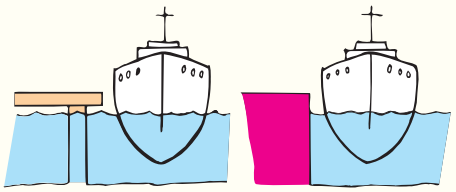
55. The "pump" in a vacuum cleaner is merely a high-speed fan. Would a vacuum cleaner pick up dust from a rug on the Moon? Explain.
56. When the piston of the mechanical pump is lifted, the intake valve opens and water fills the space as shown. When the piston is moved downward, the outlet valve opens and water is pushed out. What changes in design, if any, would be needed to convert this pump into an air compressor?



57. If a liquid only half as dense as mercury were used in a barometer, how high would its level be on a day of normal atmospheric pressure?
58. Why does the size of the cross-sectional area of a mercury barometer not affect the height of the enclosed mercury column?
59. How deep a container could mercury be drawn from with a siphon under ideal conditions?
60. If mercury were somehow replaced with a denser liquid in a mercury barometer, would the height of the liquid column be greater than or less than the height of the mercury? Why?
61. Would it be slightly more difficult to drink soda through a straw at sea level or on top of a very high mountain? Or the same? Defend your answer.
62. Richard's pump can operate at a certain maximum well depth in Pocatello, Idaho. Would this maximum depth be greater than, less than, or the same as if he pumps water in sea-level San Francisco?

63. Will a vacuum pump pull water deeper than 10.3 meters if the atmospheric pressure is significantly greater than normal? Defend your answer.
64. Would a bottle of helium gas weigh more or less than an identical bottle filled with air at the same pressure? How about compared to an identical bottle containing a vacuum?
65. When you replace helium in a balloon with less-dense hydrogen, does the buoyant force on the balloon change if the balloon remains the same size? Explain.
66. A steel tank filled with helium gas doesn't rise in air, but a balloon containing the same helium rises easily. Why?
67. What change in pressure occurs in a party balloon that is squeezed to one-third its volume with no change in temperature?
68. Why is the gas pressure inside an inflated rubber balloon always greater than the air pressure outside?
69. What happens to the speed of water ejected from a hose when you squeeze the opening and make it smaller?
70. High-speed water from a water cannon knocks people off their feet. Yet we're told that pressure within the high-speed water is low. Is this not a contradiction?
71. Why do airplanes normally take off facing the wind?
72. What provides the lift to keep a Frisbee in flight?
73. When a steadily flowing gas flows from a larger-diameter pipe to a smaller-diameter pipe, what happens to (a) its speed, (b) its pressure, and (c) the spacing between its streamlines?
74. Why does a frisbee glide longer in the air as compared to a baseball when thrown?

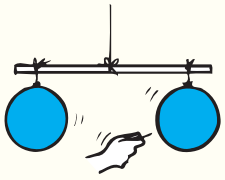
75. Why do airplanes extend wing flaps that increase the area and the angle of attack of the wing during takeoffs and landings? Why are these flaps pulled in when the airplane has reached cruising speed?
76. How is an airplane able to fly upside down? (Think angle of attack.)
77. Why are runways longer for takeoffs and landings at high-altitude airports, such as in Denver and Mexico City?
78. How will two dangling vertical sheets of paper move when you blow between them? Try it and see.
79. Wharves are made with pilings that permit the free passage of water. Why would a solid-walled wharf be disadvantageous to ships attempting to pull alongside?



THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

80. If you count the tires on a large tractor-trailer that is unloading food at your local supermarket, you may be surprised to count 18 tires. Why so many tires? (*Hint:* Consider Think and Do activity 29.)
81. Two teams of eight horses each were unable to pull the Magdeburg hemispheres apart (Photo 3 at the opening page of this chapter). Suppose that two teams of nine horses each could pull them apart. Would one team of nine horses succeed if the other team were replaced with a strong tree? Discuss and defend your answer.
82. When boarding an airplane, you bring a bag of chips (or any item in an airtight package) and, while in flight, you notice that the bag puffs up. Discuss why this happens.
83. The pressure exerted against the ground by an elephant's weight distributed evenly over its four feet is less than 1 atmosphere. Discuss why you would be crushed beneath the elephant's foot, while you're unharmed by the atmospheric pressure?
84. Your friend says that the buoyant force of the atmosphere on an elephant is significantly greater than the buoyant force of the atmosphere on a small helium-filled balloon. Discuss your response.
85. Why is it so difficult to breathe when snorkeling at a depth of 1 m and practically impossible at a 2-m depth? Why can't a diver simply breathe through a hose that extends to the surface?
86. A little girl sits in a car at a traffic light holding a helium-filled balloon in a relatively airtight car. When the traffic light turns green, the car accelerates forward, her head pitches backward but the balloon pitches forward. Explain why.

87. How does the concept of buoyancy complicate an old question "Which weighs more, a pound of lead or a pound of feathers"?
88. Discuss which will register the greater scale weight: an empty flattened balloon or the same balloon filled with air. Defend your answer, then try it and see.
89. Two identical balloons of the same volume are filled with air to more than atmospheric pressure and suspended horizontally on the ends of a stick. One balloon is punctured. Discuss the balance of the stick. If it tips, in which direction?



90. Two balloons have the same weight and volume are filled with equal amounts of helium. One is rigid and the other is free to expand as the pressure outside decreases. When both balloons are released, discuss which will rise higher.
91. A helium-filled balloon and a basketball have the same volume. Upon which is the buoyant force of the surrounding air more? Discuss why the balloon is at the ceiling of a room, whereas the basketball is on the floor. Would it make a difference if the basketball were filled with helium?
92. Imagine a huge space colony that consists of a rotating air-filled cylinder. Discuss how the density of air at "ground level" would compare to the air densities "above."
93. Discuss whether or not a helium-filled balloon could "rise" in the atmosphere of a rotating space habitat.
94. For the flight of balloons we credit Archimedes. For the flight of airplanes we primarily credit Bernoulli. Why do we credit Newton for the flight of drones?

95. Discuss whether or not lower pressure is the result of fast-moving air, or fast-moving air is the result of lower pressure. Give one example supporting each point of view. (In physics, when two things are related—such as force and acceleration or speed and pressure—it is usually arbitrary which one we call *cause* and which one we call *effect*.)

CHAPTER FOURTEEN Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. Atmospheric molecules do not fly off into outer space due to
   (a) their chaotic speeds.
   (b) their relatively low densities.
   (c) Earth gravitation.
   (d) cohesive forces.
2. Atmospheric pressure is caused by the
   (a) density of the atmosphere.
   (b) weight of the atmosphere.
   (c) temperature of the atmosphere.
   (d) solar energy on the atmosphere.
3. When a gas in a container is squeezed to half its volume, its density
   (a) halves.
   (b) doubles.
   (c) quadruples.
   (d) remains the same.
4. Archimedes' principle applies to
   (a) liquids.
   (b) gases.
   (c) fluids.
   (d) All of the above
5. As a balloon high in the atmosphere descends, it undergoes a decrease in
   (a) volume.
   (b) density.
   (c) weight.
   (d) mass.
6. An object in a vacuum has no
   (a) buoyant force.
   (b) mass.
   (c) weight.
   (d) temperature.
7. An empty jar is pushed open-side downward into water so that trapped air cannot escape. As it is pushed deeper, the buoyant force on the jar
   (a) increases.
   (b) decreases.
   (c) increases, then decreases.
   (d) decreases, then increases.
8. The principle of continuity states that for fluid flow to be continuous it must
   (a) speed up in narrow regions of flow.
   (b) slow down in wide regions of flow.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
9. When you blow air between a pair of closely-spaced ping-pong balls suspended by strings, the balls tend to swing
   (a) toward each other.
   (b) away from each other.
   (c) in circular paths.
   (d) away from the air stream, but not necessarily toward or away from each other.
10. Which of the following bodies is comprised mostly of plasma?
    (a) Earth
    (b) Moon
    (c) Sun
    (d) All of these

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (c): With no Earth gravitation, unfastened things would not exist on Earth. All would be swept off as Earth whirls about the Sun, especially atmospheric molecules. And without atmospheric pressure on the surfaces of bodies of water, their molecules as well would evaporate and be swept off Earth's surface—with or without any cohesive forces. **2. (b):** Pressure is due to some kind of applied force. The force in the case of Earth's atmospheric pressure is simply the weight of air, which presses against Earth's surface. Density, temperature, and solar energy are not the causes. **3. (b):** When the volume is squeezed to half, the density doubles according to the definition of density: Density equals mass per volume. A mass divided by half the volume results in half the density. **4. (d):** Archimedes' principle applies to both water and air, both of which are fluids. Hence (d) is the correct answer. **5. (a):** A descending balloon enters a region of greater atmospheric pressure, which squeezes it smaller. Hence its volume decreases. But its density increases, and its mass and weight remain unchanged. So (a) is the correct answer. **6. (a):** An object in a vacuum still has mass, weight, and temperature. Since a vacuum is an absence of fluid, there is none to displace which means that an object in a vacuum cannot experience a buoyant force. **7. (b):** Air in the glass displaces water. Near the surface, the interior of the glass is mainly air, which displaces water that contributes to a buoyant force on the glass. As the glass is pushed deeper, air is squeezed to a smaller volume, which means less displacement of water. Less water displaced means less buoyant force. So as the glass is pushed deeper, the buoyant force on it decreases. **8. (c):** Volume of flow is the same in narrow or wide regions, the difference being the speed of flow. Think of water flowing in a brook. Observation will show that it speeds up when flowing through narrow places and slows when flowing through wider spaces. So our answer is (c). **9. (a):** The blown air must speed up when passing through the narrow part between the balls, in accord with the principle of continuity. A speedup of air means a reduction in its pressure, in accord with Bernoulli. This results in the balls swinging toward each other due to unaffected air pressure on the outer surfaces of the balls. **10. (c):** The Earth and Moon are solids, and definitely not a gas or plasma. Only the Sun is composed of a plasma.

This page is intentionally left blank

PART THREE

Heat

Although the temperature of these sparks exceeds 2000°C, the heat they impart when they strike my skin is very small—which illustrates that temperature and heat are different concepts. Learning to distinguish between closely related concepts is the challenge and essence of Conceptual Physics.

CHAPTER FIFTEEN

15 Temperature, Heat, and Expansion

15.1 **Temperature**

15.2 **Heat**
Measuring Heat

15.3 **Specific Heat Capacity**

15.4 **The High Specific Heat Capacity of Water**

15.5 **Thermal Expansion**
Expansion of Water

1 The Hewitts next to slow-moving lava in Hawaii. **2** Anette Zetterberg asks her students to predict whether the ball can pass through the hole when the ring is heated. **3** Agricultural technologist Terrence Jones services a computerized field transmitter that monitors soil moisture, temperature, and humidity at six depths—information useful to ensuring grapes are at the ideal level of ripeness to begin the winemaking process. **4** Ole Anton Haugland holds an "empty" can upside down. Aage Mellem places a flame at its opening, heating and expanding the air inside that in turn inflates the red balloon—aha, just as occurs in the operation of a hot-air balloon.

I remember, as a child, that whenever my family drove past the Massachusetts Institute of Technology in Cambridge, a few miles from my home in Saugus, the name RUMFORD inscribed at the top of one of the prominent buildings was pointed out to me. I was told that our family is descended from this great scientist and diplomat.

Rumford was born Benjamin Thompson in Woburn, Massachusetts, in 1753. By age 13, he demonstrated unusual skill with mechanical devices and had an almost faultless command of language and grammar. Soon he was attending science lectures at Harvard University. At the age of 19, he became a schoolmaster in Concord (earlier called Rumford), New Hampshire. There he met and married a rich widow 14 years his senior. Then, during the outbreak of the American Revolution, he sided with those loyal to England, for a time spying on their behalf. Facing arrest in 1776, he abandoned his wife and daughter and fled just ahead of a mob armed with hot tar and bags of feathers. He made his way to Boston during the evacuation of British troops and caught a ship to England. Once there, his scientific career prospered. His experiments with gunpowder were so successful that at age 26 he was elected to the prestigious Royal Society. He eventually made his way to Bavaria, where he was made a count by the Bavarian prince for whom he was making cannons. He chose the name Count Rumford, after Rumford, New Hampshire.

A cannon is made by first casting a large metal cylinder in a foundry. The cylinder is then turned on a lathe, where the barrel is bored by advancing a stationary drill bit down the casting. Rumford's lathe was horse-driven, as was common at the time. Rumford was puzzled about the huge amounts of heat given off in the process. The notion of heat at the time, a hypothetical fluid called caloric, didn't fit the evidence. With a dull drill, the amount of heat was greater. As long as the horses kept at their work, more and more heat was produced. The source of heat was not something in the metal, but the motion of the horses. This discovery occurred long before friction was seen as a force, and before the concept of energy and its conservation were understood. Rumford's careful measurements convinced him of the falseness of the caloric theory of heat. Nevertheless, the caloric theory of heat as a fluid held sway for many years. Over time, Rumford's experiments were repeated and led to the connection between heat and work.

Rumford's achievements weren't limited to science. For example, while in Munich, he put unemployed beggars to work making uniforms for the Army. He also put them to work on public projects, one of which is now the famous English Gardens. A bronze statue of Count Rumford stands there as testimony of the gratitude of the citizens of Munich.

Rumford's many inventions made him a wealthy man. In 1796, he gave $5000 each to the Royal Society of Great Britain and to the American Academy of Arts and Sciences to fund medals to be awarded every two years for outstanding scientific research on heat or light. Over the years, a galaxy of scientific stars in Europe and America have received the medals, including Michael Faraday, James Maxwell, Louis Pasteur, and Thomas Edison. The residue of Rumford's estate was left to Harvard University, where it was used to establish the present Rumford Professorship.

Rumford was honored worldwide. In 1805 he wooed and married Madame Lavoisier, widow of Antoine Lavoisier. The marriage was brief, however, and they soon separated. Rumford settled in Paris and continued his scientific work, extending the long list of his many inventions, until his death in 1814.

What an incredible relative!

15.1 Temperature

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

All matter—solid, liquid, gas, and plasma, is composed of continuously jiggling atoms or molecules. Because of this random motion, the atoms and molecules in matter have kinetic energy. The average kinetic energy of the individual particles produces an effect we can sense—warmth. The quantity that indicates warmth with respect to some standard is called **temperature.** The first "thermal meter" for measuring temperature, the *thermometer*, was invented by Galileo in 1602 (the word *therm* is from the Greek term for "heat"). The familiar thermometer, a glass rod with a liquid in the interior that rises and falls with temperature, was invented by Gabriel Fahrenheit in the early 1700s and quickly came into widespread use. Fahrenheit devised a numeric scale and marked them on his thermometers. For nearly 300 years the favored liquid to use in the interior of his thermometers was

FIGURE 15.1
Can we trust our sense of hot and cold? Will both fingers feel the same temperature when removed and placed in the warm water?

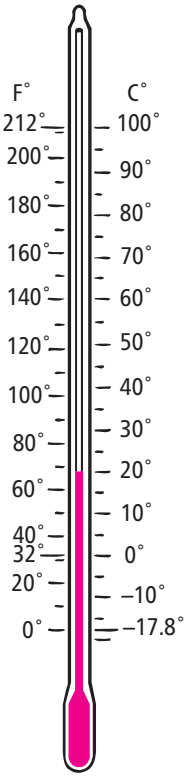


FIGURE 15.2
Fahrenheit and Celsius scales on a thermometer.

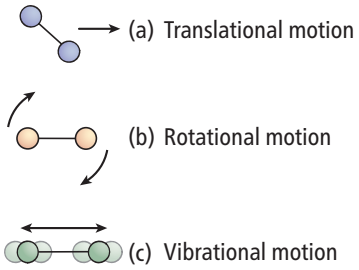


FIGURE 15.3
Particles in matter move in different ways. They move from one place to another, they rotate, and they vibrate to and fro. All these modes of motion, plus potential energy, contribute to the overall energy of a substance. Temperature, however, is defined by translational motion.

mercury, which is now phasing out because of the toxicity of mercury. We express the temperature of some quantity of matter by a number that corresponds to its degree of hotness or coldness on some chosen scale.

Nearly all materials expand when their temperature is raised and contract when their temperature is lowered. Most thermometers measure temperature by means of the expansion or contraction of a liquid, usually mercury or colored alcohol, in a glass tube with a scale.

On the most widely used temperature scale, the international scale, the number 0 is assigned to the temperature at which water freezes and the number 100 to the temperature at which water boils (at sea-level atmospheric pressure). The space between is divided into 100 equal parts called *degrees*; hence, a thermometer so calibrated has been called a *centigrade thermometer* (from *centi*, "hundredth," and *gradus*, "step"). However, it is now called a *Celsius thermometer* in honor of the man who first suggested the scale, the Swedish astronomer Anders Celsius (1701–1744).

Another temperature scale, the Fahrenheit scale, is popular in the United States. On this scale, the number 32 is assigned to the temperature at which water freezes, and the number 212 is assigned to the temperature at which water boils. Such a scale makes up a Fahrenheit thermometer, named after its illustrious originator, the German physicist Daniel Gabriel Fahrenheit (1686–1736). The Fahrenheit scale will become obsolete if and when the United States goes metric.[1]

The temperature scale favored by scientists is the Kelvin scale, named after the Scottish physicist William Thomson, 1st Baron Kelvin (1824–1907). This scale is calibrated not in terms of the freezing and boiling points of water but in terms of energy itself. The number 0 is assigned to the lowest possible temperature—**absolute zero,** at which a substance has absolutely no kinetic energy to give up.[2] Absolute zero corresponds to −273°C on the Celsius scale. Units on the Kelvin scale have the same size increments as degrees on the Celsius scale, so the temperature of melting ice is 273 K. There are no negative numbers on the Kelvin scale. We won't treat this scale further until we study thermodynamics in Chapter 18.

Arithmetic formulas used for converting from Fahrenheit to Celsius, and vice versa, are popular in classroom exams. Such arithmetic exercises are not really physics, and the probability that you'll have the occasion to do this task elsewhere is small, so we will not be concerned with them here. Besides, this conversion can be very closely approximated by simply reading the corresponding temperatures from the side-by-side scales in Figure 15.2.

Temperature is related to the random motion of atoms and molecules in a substance. (For brevity, in this chapter we'll simply say *molecules* to mean *atoms and molecules*.) More specifically, temperature is a measure of the average "translational" kinetic energy of random molecular motion (motion that carries the molecule from one place to another) in a substance as shown in Figure 15.3. Molecules may also rotate or vibrate, with associated rotational or vibrational kinetic energy—but these motions are not translational and don't define temperature.

[1]The conversion to Celsius would put the United States in step with the rest of the world, where the Celsius scale is the standard. But, Americans are slow to convert. Changing any long-established custom is difficult, and the Fahrenheit scale does have some advantages in everyday use. For example, its degrees are smaller (1°F = 5/9°C), which gives greater accuracy when reporting the weather in whole-number temperature readings. Then, too, people somehow attribute a special significance to numbers increasing by an extra digit. Thus, when the temperature of a hot day is reported to reach 100°F, the idea of heat is conveyed more dramatically than by stating that the temperature is 38°C. Like so much of the British system of measure, the Fahrenheit scale is geared to human beings.

[2]Even at absolute zero, a substance has what is called "zero-point energy," which is unavailable energy that cannot be transferred to a different substance. Helium, for example, has enough motion at absolute zero to avoid freezing. The explanation for this involves quantum theory.

CHECK POINT

True or false: Temperature is a measure of the total kinetic energy in a substance.

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

False. Temperature is a measure of the *average* (not *total*!) translational kinetic energy of molecules in a substance. For example, there is twice as much total molecular kinetic energy in 2 L of boiling water as in 1 L—but the temperatures of the two volumes of water are the same because the *average* translational kinetic energy per molecule is the same in each.

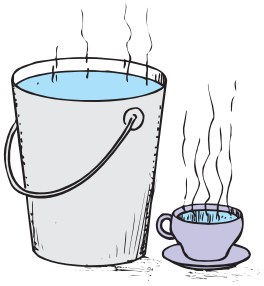


FIGURE 15.4
There is more molecular kinetic energy in the container filled with warm water than in the small cupful of higher-temperature water.

The effect of translational kinetic energy versus rotational and vibrational kinetic energy is dramatically demonstrated by a microwave oven. The microwaves that bombard your food cause certain molecules in the food, mainly water molecules, to flip to and fro and to oscillate with considerable rotational kinetic energy. But oscillating molecules don't cook food. What does raise the temperature and cook the food, and swiftly, is the translational kinetic energy imparted to neighboring molecules that are bounced off the oscillating water molecules. (To picture this, imagine a bunch of marbles set flying in all directions after encountering the spinning blades of a fan—also, see page 493.) If neighboring molecules didn't interact with the oscillating water molecules, the temperature of the food would be no different than before the microwave oven was turned on.

Interestingly, what a thermometer really displays is its *own* temperature. When a glass thermometer is in thermal contact with something whose temperature we wish to know, energy will flow between the two until their temperatures are equal and thermal equilibrium is established. If we know the temperature of the thermometer, we then know the temperature of what is being measured. A thermometer should be small enough that it doesn't appreciably alter the temperature of what is being measured. If you are measuring the air temperature of a room, then your thermometer is small enough. But, if you are measuring the temperature of a drop of water, contact between the drop and the thermometer may change the drop's temperature—a classic case of the measuring process changing the thing that is being measured. Modern thermometers bypass the expansion of liquid in a glass tube and measure temperature by the infrared radiation emitted by objects. These are the now popular IR thermometers (next chapter).

FIGURE 15.5
The temperature of the sparks is very high, about 2000°C. That's a lot of energy per molecule of spark. Because of the few molecules per spark, however, the internal energy is safely small. Temperature is one thing; transfer of energy is another.

15.2 Heat

If you touch a hot stove, energy enters your hand because the stove is warmer than your hand. When you touch a piece of ice, however, energy transfers from your hand into the colder ice. The direction of spontaneous energy transfer is always from a warmer object to a neighboring cooler object. The energy transferred from one object to another because of a temperature difference between them is called **heat.**

It is important to point out that matter does not *contain* heat. This was discovered by Rumford in his cannon-boring experiments, as mentioned earlier. Rumford, and other investigators that followed, realized that matter contains molecular kinetic energy and possibly potential energy, *not heat*. Heat is *energy in transit* from a body of higher temperature to one of lower temperature. Once transferred, the energy ceases to be heat. (As an analogy, work is also energy in transit. A body does not *contain* work. It *does* work or has work done on it.) In earlier chapters, we called the energy that results from heat flow *thermal energy* to make clear its link to heat and temperature. In this chapter, we will use the term that scientists prefer, *internal energy*.

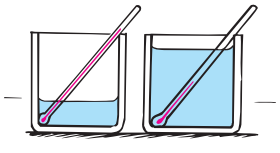
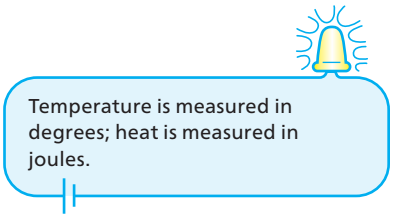


FIGURE 15.6
Although the same quantity of heat is added to both containers, the temperature increases more in the container with the smaller amount of water.



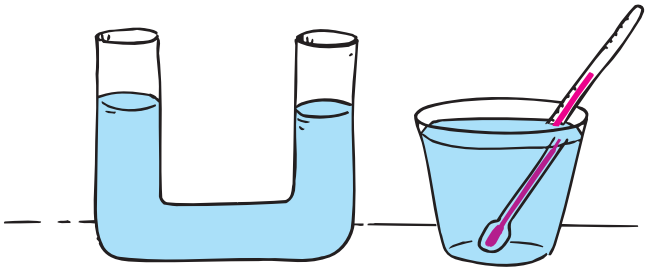
Internal energy is the grand total of all the energies inside a substance. In addition to the translational kinetic energy of jostling molecules in a substance, there is energy in other forms. There is rotational kinetic energy of molecules and kinetic energy due to internal movements of atoms within molecules. There is also potential energy due to the forces between molecules. So a substance does not contain heat—it contains internal energy.

When a substance absorbs or gives off heat, the internal energy of the substance increases or decreases. In some cases, as when ice is melting, the added heat does not increase the molecular kinetic energy but goes instead into other forms of energy. The substance undergoes a change of phase, which we will cover in detail in Chapter 17.

For two things in thermal contact, heat flow is from the higher-temperature substance to the lower-temperature substance. This is not necessarily a flow from a substance with more internal energy to a substance with less internal energy. There is more internal energy in a bowl of warm water than there is in a red-hot thumbtack; yet, if the tack is immersed in the water, heat flows from the hot tack to the warm water and not the other way around. Heat never flows of itself from a lower-temperature substance into a higher-temperature substance.

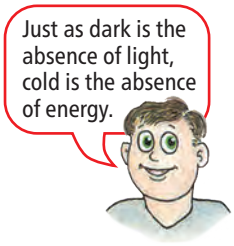
How much heat flows depends not only on the temperature difference between substances but on the amount of material as well. For example, a barrelful of hot water will transfer more heat to a cooler substance than will a cupful of hot water. There is more internal energy in the larger volume of water.

FIGURE 15.7
Just as water in the two arms of the U-tube seeks a common level (where the pressures at any given depth are the same), the thermometer and its immediate surroundings reach a common temperature (at which the average molecular KE is the same for both).



CHECK POINT

1. **Suppose you apply a flame to 1 L of water for a certain time and its temperature rises by 2°C. If you apply the same flame for the same time to 2 L of water, by how much will its temperature rise?**
2. **If a fast marble hits a random scatter of slow marbles, does the fast marble usually speed up or slow down? Of the initially fast-moving marble and the initially slow ones, which lose(s) kinetic energy and which gain(s) kinetic energy? How do these questions relate to the direction of heat flow?**



CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Its temperature will rise by only 1°C because there are twice as many molecules in 2 L of water, and each molecule receives only half as much energy on average.
2. A fast-moving marble slows when it hits slower-moving marbles. It transfers some of its kinetic energy to the slower ones. Likewise with the flow of heat. Molecules with more kinetic energy that are in contact with molecules that have less kinetic energy transfer some of their excess energy to the less energetic ones. The direction of energy transfer is from hot to cold. For both the marbles and the molecules, however, the *total* energy before and after contact is the same.

Measuring Heat

So heat is the flow of energy from one thing to another due to a temperature difference. Since heat energy is in transit, it is measured in joules. In the United States, a more common unit of heat is the *calorie*. The calorie is defined as the amount of heat required to change the temperature of 1 gram of water by 1 Celsius degree.[3]

The energy ratings of foods and fuels are determined by burning them and measuring the energy released. (Your body "burns" food at a slow rate.) The heat unit used to label foods is actually the kilocalorie, which is 1000 calories (the heat required to raise the temperature of 1 kilogram of water by 1°C). To distinguish this unit from the smaller calorie, the food unit is sometimes called a *Calorie* (with a capital *C*). It is important to remember that the calorie and Calorie are units of energy. These names are historical carryovers from the early idea that heat is an invisible fluid called *caloric*. This view persisted, even after Rumford's experiments to the contrary, into the 19th century.

We now know that heat is a form of energy transfer, not a separate substance, so it doesn't need its own separate unit. Someday the calorie may give way to the joule, an SI unit, as the common unit for measuring heat. (The relationship between calories and joules is that 1 calorie = 4.19 joules.) In this text, we'll learn about heat with the conceptually simpler calorie—but, in the lab, you may use the joule equivalent, where an input of 4.19 joules raises the temperature of 1 gram of water by 1°C.

FIGURE 15.8
In science lab, 1 calorie = 4.19 joules. In the kitchen, 1 Calorie = 1000 calories = 4190 joules, as Chef Manuel Hewitt attests. A potato provides slightly more than twice as many Calories of energy per gram as a carrot.

CHECK POINT

1. **An iron tack and a big iron bolt, both red-hot at the same temperatures, are dropped into identical containers of same-temperature water. Which one raises water temperature more?**
2. **Which raises the water temperature more: the addition of 1 calorie or 4.19 J?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The iron bolt, having more internal energy at the same temperature of the smaller tack, raises the temperature of water more. This example underscores the difference between temperature and internal energy.
2. Neither. They expressed the same amount of energy in different units.

Both heat and work are "energy in motion"—energy being transferred from one substance to another. Both are measured in energy units, usually joules.

15.3 Specific Heat Capacity

You've likely noticed that some foods remain hotter much longer than others do. If you remove a piece of toast from a toaster and pour hot soup into a bowl at the same time, a few minutes later the soup is still pleasantly warm, while the toast has cooled off considerably. Similarly, if you wait a short while before eating a slice of hot roast beef and a scoop of mashed potatoes, both initially at the same temperature, you'll find that the meat has cooled off more than the potatoes.

Different substances have different capacities for storing internal energy. If we heat a pot of water on a stove, we might find that it requires 15 minutes to raise it from room temperature to its boiling temperature. But if we put an equal mass of iron on the same flame, we would find that the water would rise through

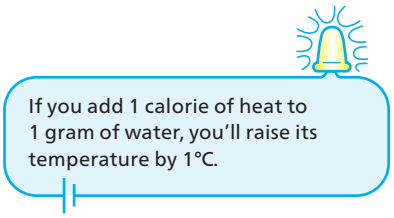
FIGURE 15.9
The filling of hot apple pie may be too hot to eat even though the crust is not.

[3]A less common unit of heat is the British thermal unit (BTU). The BTU is defined as the amount of heat required to change the temperature of 1 lb of water by 1 Fahrenheit degree. One BTU equals 1054 J.

the same temperature range in only about 2 minutes. For silver, the time would be less than a minute.

Different materials require different quantities of heat to raise the temperature of a given mass of the material by a specified number of degrees. This is partly due to different materials absorbing energy in different ways. The energy may be spread around among several kinds of energy, including molecular rotation and potential energy, which raises the temperature less. Except for special cases such as helium gas, the energy is always shared among different kinds of motion, but in varying degrees.

Whereas 1 gram of water requires 1 calorie of energy to raise its temperature 1 Celsius degree, it takes only about one-eighth as much energy to raise the temperature of a gram of iron by the same amount. Water absorbs more heat per gram than iron for the same change in temperature. We say water has a higher **specific heat capacity** (sometimes simply called *specific heat*).



The specific heat capacity of any substance is defined as the quantity of heat required to change the temperature of a unit mass of the substance by 1 Celsius degree.

If we know the specific heat capacity c, then the quantity of heat Q transferred when a mass m of a substance undergoes a change in temperature ΔT is *specific heat capacity* $\times$ *mass* $\times$ *temperature change*. In equation form, $Q = cm\Delta T$.

We can think of specific heat capacity as thermal inertia. Recall that *inertia* is a term used in mechanics to mean the resistance of an object to a change in its state of motion. Specific heat capacity is a sort of thermal inertia because it signifies the resistance of a substance to a change in its temperature.

CHECK POINT

1. **Does a substance with a low specific heat capacity warm quickly or slowly when heat is applied?**
2. **Why does a piece of watermelon stay cool for a longer time than sandwiches when both are removed from a picnic cooler on a hot day?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. It warms quickly. Low specific heat capacity means a quicker change in temperature.
2. Water in the watermelon has more "thermal inertia" than sandwich ingredients, and it resists changes in temperature much more. This thermal inertia is specific heat capacity.

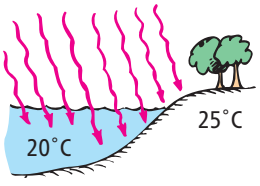


FIGURE 15.10
Because water has a high specific heat capacity and is transparent, it takes more energy to warm the water than to warm the land. Solar energy incident on the land is concentrated at the surface, which becomes hot much quicker.

15.4 The High Specific Heat Capacity of Water

Water has a much higher capacity for storing energy than all but a few uncommon materials. Due to water's strong hydrogen bonds, a relatively small amount of water absorbs a large quantity of heat for a correspondingly small temperature rise. Because of this, water is a very useful cooling agent in the cooling systems of automobiles and other engines. If a liquid of lower specific heat capacity were used in cooling systems, its temperature would rise higher for a comparable absorption of heat.

Water also takes a long time to cool, a fact that explains why, in earlier times, people used hot-water bottles on cold winter nights. Today, in many places,

electric blankets have replaced them. This tendency of water to resist changes in temperature improves the climate in many locations. The next time you are looking at a world globe, notice the high latitude of Europe. If water did not have a high specific heat capacity, the countries of Europe would be as cold as the northeastern regions of Canada, because both Europe and Canada receive about the same amount of sunlight per square kilometer. The Atlantic current known as the Gulf Stream carries warm water northeast from the Caribbean. It retains much of its internal energy long enough to reach the North Atlantic off the coast of Europe, where it then cools. The energy released, about 1 calorie per degree for each gram of water that cools, transfers to the air, where it is carried by the westerly winds over the European continent.

A similar effect occurs in the United States. The winds in the latitudes of North America are westerly. On the West Coast, air moves from the Pacific Ocean to the land. Because of water's high specific heat capacity, an ocean does not vary much in temperature from summer to winter. The water is warmer than the air in the winter and cooler than the air in the summer. In winter, the water warms the air that moves over it, and the air warms the coastal regions of North America. In summer, the water cools the air, and the coastal regions are cooled. On the East Coast, air moves from the land to the Atlantic Ocean. Land, with a lower specific heat capacity, gets hot in the summer but cools rapidly in the winter. As a result of water's high specific heat capacity and the wind directions, the West Coast city of San Francisco is warmer in the winter and cooler in the summer than the East Coast city of Washington, DC, which is at about the same latitude.

Islands and peninsulas that are more or less surrounded by water do not have the same extremes of temperatures that are observed in the interior of a continent. When air is hot in summer months, water cools it. When air is cold in winter months, water warms it. Water moderates temperature extremes. The high summer and low winter temperatures common in Manitoba and the Dakotas, for example, are largely due to the absence of large bodies of water. Europeans, islanders, and people who live near ocean air currents should be glad that water has such a high specific heat capacity. San Franciscans are!

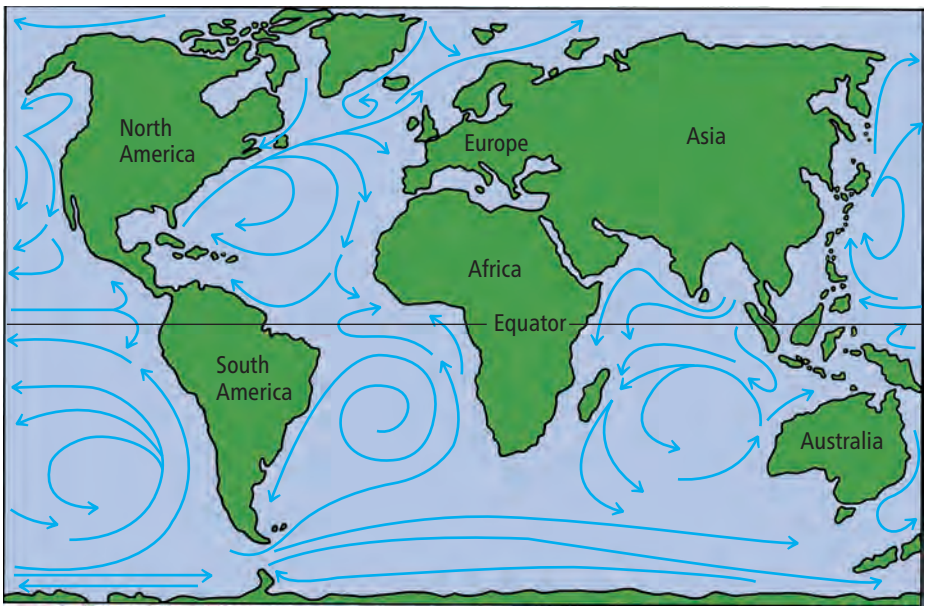


FIGURE 15.11
Many ocean currents, shown in blue, distribute heat from the warmer equatorial regions to the colder polar regions.

Climate is about average behavior, whereas weather is about the fluctuations. Climate refers to the type of clothes in your closet. Weather tells you which to wear each day.

fyi

- Just as the outer side of a carousel platform always provides the fastest ride, locations closer the Earth's equator travel fastest and farthest than locations farther from the equator. Things moving toward the equator that are not fixed to the ground, such as air, water, and airplanes, can't keep up with the faster-moving ground beneath them. They tend to swerve. This is the *Coriolis effect*. So ocean currents heading toward the equator tend to deviate to the west, while currents heading away from the equator deviate to the east. That's why ocean currents in the Northern Hemisphere tend to circulate clockwise, while currents in the Southern Hemisphere tend to circulate counterclockwise, as is evident in Figure 15.11.

CHECK POINT

Which has a higher specific heat capacity: water or sand?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Water has a higher specific heat capacity. Water has greater thermal inertia and takes a longer time to warm in the hot sunlight and a longer time to cool on a cold night. Sand has a low specific heat capacity, as evidenced by how quickly the surface warms in the morning sunlight and how quickly it cools at night. (Walking or running barefoot across scorching sand in the daytime is a much different experience than walking on cool sand in the evening.)

15.5 Thermal Expansion

When the temperature of a substance is increased, its molecules or atoms jiggle faster and move farther apart, on the average. The result is an expansion of the substance. With few exceptions, all forms of matter—solids, liquids, gases, and plasmas—generally expand when they are heated and contract when they are cooled.

In most cases involving solids, these changes in volume are not very noticeable, but careful observation usually detects them. Power lines become longer and sag more on a hot summer day than on a cold winter day. A metal lid on a glass jar can often be loosened by heating the lid under hot water. If one part of a piece of glass is heated or cooled more rapidly than adjacent parts, the resulting expansion or contraction may break the glass, especially if the glass is thick. Pyrex heat-resistant glassware is an exception because it's specially formulated to expand very little with increasing temperature (about a third as much as ordinary glass).

The expansion of substances must be accommodated in structures and devices of all kinds. A dentist uses filling material that has the same rate of expansion as teeth. The aluminum pistons of some automobile engines are just a bit smaller in diameter than the steel cylinders to allow for the much greater expansion rate of aluminum. Civil engineers use reinforcing steel that has the same expansion rate as concrete. Long steel bridges commonly have one end fixed while the other end rests on rockers (Figure 15.12). The Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco contracts more than a meter in cold weather. The roadway itself is segmented with tongue-and-groove–type gaps called *expansion joints* (Figure 15.13). Similarly, concrete roadways and sidewalks are intersected by gaps, sometimes filled with tar, so that the concrete can expand freely in summer and contract in winter.

FIGURE 15.12
One end of the bridge is fixed, while the end shown rides on rockers to allow for thermal expansion.

FIGURE 15.13
This gap in the roadway of a bridge is called an expansion joint; it allows the bridge to expand and contract.

In times past, railroad tracks were laid in 12-meter segments connected by joint bars, with gaps for thermal expansion. In summer months, the tracks expanded and the gaps were narrow. In winter, the gaps widened, which was responsible for a more pronounced clickity-clack when the trains rolled along the tracks. We don't hear clickity-clacks these days because someone got the bright idea to eliminate the gaps by welding the tracks together. Doesn't expansion in the summer heat cause the welded tracks to buckle, as shown in Figure 15.14? Not if the tracks are laid and welded on the hottest summer days! Track shrinkage on cold winter days stretches the tracks, which doesn't cause buckling. Stretched tracks are okay.

FIGURE 15.14
Thermal expansion. The extreme heat on a hot summer day caused the buckling of these railroad tracks.

CHECK POINT

1. **Why do both a party balloon and a railroad track increase in size when their temperatures rise?**
2. **Why do they decrease in size when cooled?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Heated molecules in each jiggle faster and occupy more space, much more for the balloon because it is gaseous.
2. When each is cooled, molecules jiggle slower and settle into less space.

Different substances expand at different rates. When two strips of different metals—say, one of brass and the other of iron—are welded or riveted together, the greater expansion of one metal results in the bending of the strip, as shown in Figure 15.15. Such a compound thin bar is called a *bimetallic strip*. When the strip is heated, one side of the double strip becomes longer than the other, causing the strip to bend into a curve. In contrast, when the strip is cooled, it tends to bend in the opposite direction because the metal that expands more also shrinks more. The movement of the strip may be used to turn a pointer, regulate a valve, or close a switch. Bimetallic strips are used in oven thermometers, electric toasters, and a variety of devices.

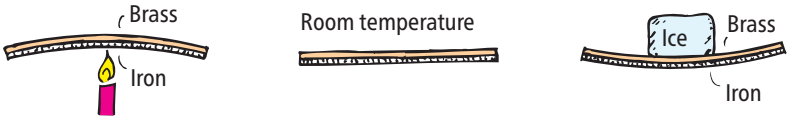


FIGURE 15.15
A bimetallic strip. Brass expands more when heated than iron does and contracts more when cooled. Because of this behavior, the strip bends as shown.

A practical application of different rates of expansion is the thermostat (Figure 15.16). The back-and-forth bending of the bimetallic coil opens and closes an electric circuit. When the room becomes too cold, the coil bends toward the brass side, which activates an electrical switch that turns on the heat. When the room becomes too warm, the coil bends toward the iron side, which activates an electrical switch that turns off the heating unit. Refrigerators are equipped with thermostats to prevent them from becoming either too warm or too cold.

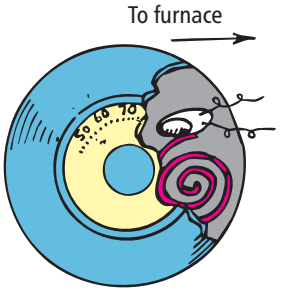


FIGURE 15.16
A pre-electronic thermostat. When the bimetallic coil expands, the drop of liquid mercury rolls away from the electrical contacts and breaks the electric circuit. When the coil contracts, the mercury rolls against the contacts and completes the circuit.

Liquids expand appreciably with increases in temperature. In most cases, the expansion of liquids is greater than the expansion of solids. The gasoline overflowing a car's tank on a hot day is evidence for this. If the tank and its contents expanded at the same rate, they would expand together and no overflow would occur. Similarly, if the expansion of the glass of a thermometer were as great as the expansion of the mercury, the mercury would not rise with increasing temperature. The reason the mercury in a thermometer rises with increasing temperature is that the expansion of liquid mercury is greater than the expansion of glass.

FIGURE 15.17
Place a dented ping-pong ball in boiling water, and you'll remove the dent. Why?

CHECK POINT

To repair a dented ping-pong ball, why is it a good idea to place it in boiling water?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Expansion of air inside the ping-pong ball will likely pop it back to its original shape.

Expansion of Water

Water, like most other substances, expands when heated. But, interestingly, it *doesn't* expand in the temperature range between 0°C and 4°C. Something quite fascinating happens in this range. Ice has a crystalline structure, with open-structured crystals. Water molecules in this open structure occupy a greater volume than in the liquid phase (Figure 15.18). This means that ice is less dense than water.

fyi

- Snowflakes form mainly from water vapor rather than liquid water. Truly symmetrical snowflakes are the exception rather than the rule. Many mechanisms interrupt perfect snowflake growth. Like everything else, no two are identical. In 1611, the astronomer Kepler wrote a paper on six-cornered snowflakes. Fifty-four years later, physicist Robert Hooke used his early microscope to sketch the forms of snowflakes.

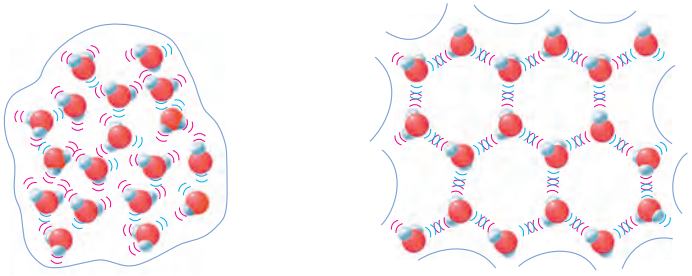


FIGURE 15.18
Liquid water is more dense than ice because water molecules in a liquid are closer together than water molecules frozen in ice, where they have an open crystalline structure.

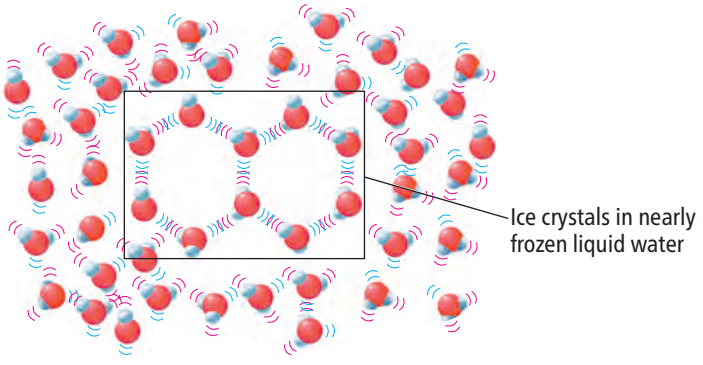
CHECK POINT

What's inside the open spaces of the water crystals shown in Figures 15.18 and 15.19? Is it air, water vapor, or nothing?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

There's nothing at all in the open spaces. It's empty space—a void. If there were air or vapor in the open spaces, the illustration should show molecules there—oxygen and nitrogen for air and H_2O for water vapor.

FIGURE 15.19
The open structure of the 3-dimensional ice crystals that form as water freezes creates a microscopic slush that slightly increases the volume of the water.



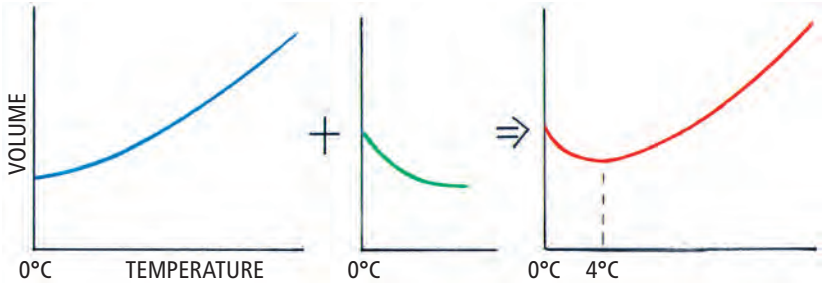


FIGURE 15.20
The blue curve indicates the normal expansion of water with increasing temperature. The green curve indicates the contraction of ice crystals in ice water as they melt with increasing temperature. The red curve shows the result of both processes.

When ice melts, not all the open-structured crystals collapse. Some microscopic crystals remain in the ice-water mixture, making up a microscopic slush that slightly "bloats" the water, increasing its volume slightly (Figure 15.19). This results in ice water being less dense than slightly warmer water. As the temperature of water at 0°C is increased, more of the remaining ice crystals collapse. The melting of these crystals further decreases the volume of the water. The water undergoes two processes at the same time—expansion and contraction (Figure 15.20). Volume tends to increase due to greater molecular motion with increased temperature, while volume at and near 0°C decreases as ice crystals collapse upon melting. The collapsing effect dominates until the temperature reaches 4°C. After that, expansion overrides contraction because most of the microscopic ice crystals have melted by then (Figure 15.21).

When ice water freezes to become solid ice, its volume increases by nearly 10% and its density is lowered. That's why ice floats on water. Like most other substances, solid ice contracts with further cooling. This behavior of water is

fyi

- How does rock salt spread on icy roads in winter help to melt ice? It so happens that salt in water separates into sodium and chlorine ions, which when they join water molecules, give off energy that melts microscopic parts of an icy surface. The pressure of automobiles rolling along the salt-covered icy surface forces the salt into the ice, enhancing the melting process. The only difference between the rock salt and the salt you sprinkle on popcorn is the size of the crystals.

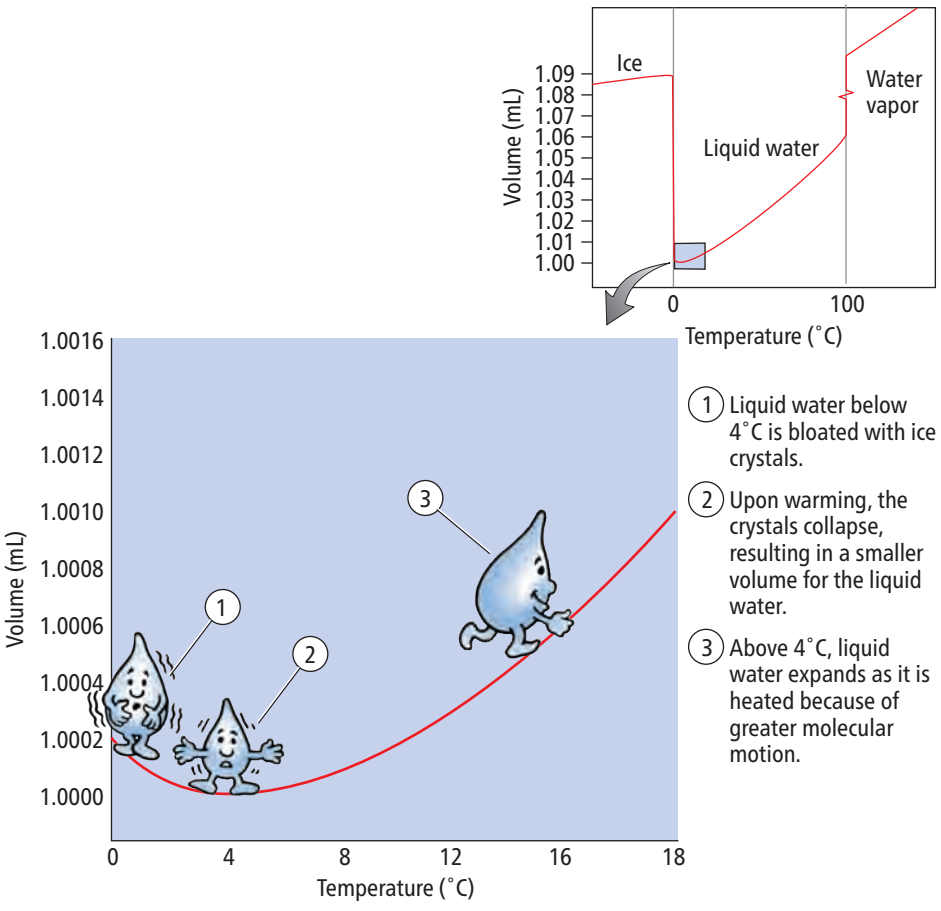
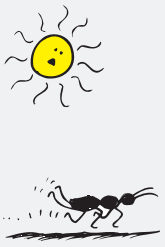


FIGURE 15.21
Between 0°C and 4°C, the volume of liquid water decreases as the temperature increases. Above 4°C, water behaves the way other substances do: Its volume increases as its temperature increases. The volumes shown are for a 1-gram sample.

LIFE AT THE EXTREMES

Some deserts, such as those on the plains of Spain, the Sahara in Africa, and the Gobi in central Asia, reach surface temperatures of 60°C (140°F). Too hot for life? Not for certain species of ants of the genus *Cataglyphis*, which thrive at this searing temperature. At this extremely high temperature, the desert ants can forage for food without danger from the presence of lizards, which would otherwise prey upon them. Resistant to heat, these ants can withstand higher temperatures than any other creatures in the desert (except microbes). Unique triangular hairs over a silvery coat on the topsides of their bodies both reflects visible and near-infrared light, in addition to radiating heat away. They scavenge the desert surface for the corpses of those creatures that did not find cover in time, touching the hot sand as little as possible while often sprinting on four legs with two held high in the air. Although their foraging paths zigzag over the desert floor, their return paths are almost straight lines to their nest holes. They attain speeds of 100 body lengths per second. During an average six-day life, most of these ants retrieve 15 to 20 times their weight in food.

From deserts to glaciers, a variety of creatures have invented ways to survive the harshest regions of the world. A species of worm thrives in the glacial ice in the Arctic. There are insects in the Antarctic ice that pump their bodies full of antifreeze to ward off becoming frozen solid. Some fish that live beneath the ice are able to do the same. Then there are bacteria that thrive in boiling hot springs as a result of having heat-resistant proteins.



An understanding of how creatures survive at the extremes of temperature can provide clues for practical solutions to the physical challenges that humans face. Astronauts who venture from Earth, for example, will need all the techniques available for coping with unfamiliar environments.

very important in nature. If water were most dense at 0°C, it would settle to the bottom of a pond or lake. Water at 0°C, however, is less dense and "floats" at the surface. So again we see why ice forms at the surface.

So a pond freezes from the surface downward. In a cold winter, the ice will be thicker than in a milder winter. The water temperature at the bottom of an ice-covered pond is 4°C, which is relatively warm for the organisms that live there. Interestingly, very deep ponds and lakes are normally not ice covered even in the coldest of winters. This is because all the water must be cooled to 4°C before lower temperatures can be reached. For deep water, the winter is not long enough to reduce an entire pond to 4°C. Any 4°C water lies at the bottom. Because of water's high specific heat capacity and poor ability to conduct heat, the bottom of a deep body of water in a cold region remains at a constant 4°C year-round. Fish should be glad that this is so. We should *all* be glad that ice is less dense than liquid water, otherwise all winter lakes and ponds would freeze solid!

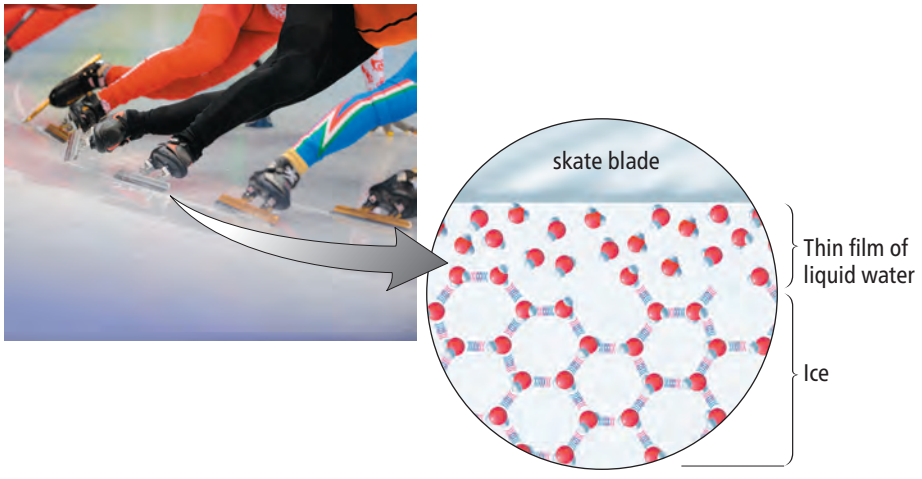


FIGURE 15.22
Ice is slippery because its crystalline structure is not easily maintained at the surface.

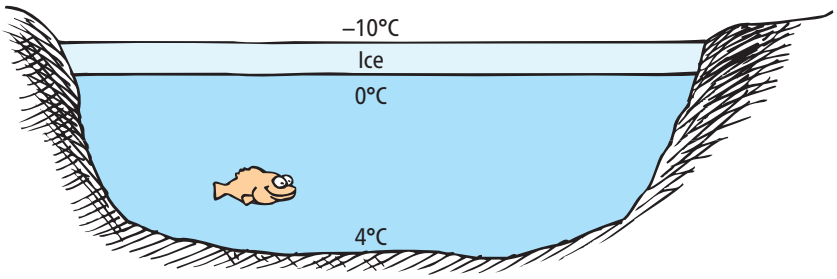


FIGURE 15.23
As water is cooled at the surface, it sinks until the temperature of the entire lake is 4°C. Only then can the surface water cool to 0°C without sinking. Once ice has formed, temperatures lower than 4°C can extend down into the lake.

CHECK POINT

1. **What was the precise temperature at the bottom of Lake Michigan, where the water is deep and the winters long, on New Year's Eve in 1901?**
2. **Why do fish benefit from water being most dense at 4°C?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. 4°C because the temperature at the bottom of any body of water containing any 4°C water has a bottom temperature of 4°C, for the same reason that rocks are at the bottom. Rocks are more dense than water, and 4°C water is more dense than water at any other temperature. So both rocks and 4°C water sink to the bottom. Water is also a poor heat conductor, so if the body of water is deep and in a region of long winters and short summers, the water at the bottom likely remains a constant 4°C year-round.
2. Since water is most dense at 4°C, colder water rises and freezes on the surface, which means that fish remain in relative warmth!

Chapter 15 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Temperature A measure of the average translational kinetic energy per molecule in a substance, measured in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit or in kelvins (K).

Absolute zero The lowest possible temperature that a substance may have—the temperature at which molecules of the substance have their minimum kinetic energy.

Heat The energy that flows from a substance of higher temperature to a substance of lower temperature, commonly measured in calories or joules.

Internal energy The total of all molecular energies, kinetic plus potential, that are internal to a substance.

Specific heat capacity The quantity of heat per unit mass required to change the temperature of a substance by 1 Celsius degree.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

15.1 Temperature

1. What is meant by temperature? What is the underlying cause of warmth produced by matter?
2. What happens to kinetic energy at absolute zero?
3. Which form of energy determines temperature: translational kinetic energy, rotational kinetic energy, vibrational kinetic energy, or all of these?
4. Why should a thermometer be smaller than the object of which the temperature is being measured?

15.2 Heat

5. Is there a distinction between thermal energy and internal energy? Which term do physicists prefer?
6. What is internal energy? What are the different constituents of internal energy?
7. Does a hot object contain internal energy or heat? Or do the two terms mean the same thing?
8. What is the role of temperature with regard to the direction of internal energy flow?
9. How is the energy value of foods determined?
10. How is the unit of heat known as a 'calorie' defined?
11. How many joules are needed to change the temperature of 1 gram of water by 1°C?

15.3 Specific Heat Capacity

12. Why does iron warm faster than water upon the application of heat?
13. Does a substance that heats up quickly have a high or a low specific heat capacity?

15.4 The High Specific Heat Capacity of Water

14. Northeastern Canada and much of Europe receive about the same amount of sunlight per unit area. Why, then, is Europe generally warmer in the winter?
15. According to the law of conservation of energy, if ocean water cools, something else should warm. What is it that warms?
16. Why do islands and peninsulas surrounded by water not experience extreme temperatures?

15.5 Thermal Expansion

17. Why is it important that the material used in dental fillings has a rate of thermal expansion that matches the tooth material itself?
18. Why does a bimetallic strip bend with changes in temperature?
19. What would have happened if the glass of a thermometer expanded as much as mercury?
20. When the temperature of ice-cold water is increased slightly, does it undergo a net expansion or a net contraction?
21. Mention the temperature range where water doesn't expand upon heating.
22. Does "microscopic slush" in water tend to make it denser or less dense?
23. What happens to the amount of "microscopic slush" in cold water when its temperature is increased?
24. At what temperature do the combined effects of contraction and expansion produce the smallest volume for water?
25. Why does all the water in a lake have to be cooled to 4°C before surface water can be cooled below 4°C?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

26. Blow up a balloon to its maximum capacity, tie it shut (make sure it is tight), and place it into the refrigerator overnight. How does it appear in the morning? How does it appear on the kitchen table an hour or so later? What is happening?
27. When taking a brisk walk use your smartphone to measure the Calories you burn. Then go to your cupboard and find an equivalent amount of Calories of food. Does this make you want to reevaluate what you eat each day?
28. How much energy is in a nut? Burn it and find out. The heat from the flame is energy released when carbon and hydrogen in the nut combine with oxygen in the air (oxidation reactions) to produce CO_2 and H_2O. Pierce a nut (pecan or walnut halves work best) with a bent paper clip that holds the nut above the table surface. (Be sure to put something fireproof underneath.) Above this, secure a can of water so that you can measure its temperature change when the nut burns. Use about 10^3 cm (10 mL) of water and a Celsius thermometer. As soon as you ignite the nut with a match, place the can of water above it and record the increase in water temperature once the flame burns out. The number of calories released by the burning nut can be calculated by the formula $Q = cm\Delta T$, where c is its specific heat (1.0 cal/g•°C), m is the mass of water, and ΔT is the change in temperature. The energy in food is expressed in terms of the Calorie, which is 1000 of the calories you'll measure. So to find the number of Calories, divide your result by 1000. (See Think and Solve 33.)
29. Connect with your grandparents or other people older than you and describe how you're learning to see connections in nature that have been elusive to you until now and how you're learning to distinguish between related ideas. Use temperature and heat as examples.

PLUG AND CHUG (EQUATION FAMILIARIZATION)

The quantity of heat Q released or absorbed from a substance of specific heat c (which can be expressed in units cal/g•°C *or* J/kg•°C*) and mass m (in* g *or* kg*), undergoing a change in temperature* ΔT *is* $\boldsymbol{Q = cm\Delta T}$

30. How much energy in calories is required to raise the temperature of 200 g of water from 20°C to 30°C? For the specific heat capacity *c*, use 1 cal/g·°C.
31. Use the same formula to calculate the heat required in joules to raise the temperature of the same mass (0.2 kg) of water through double the temperature interval. For the specific heat capacity *c*, use 4190 J/kg·°C.
32. Use the same formula to show that 4,190 joules are required to raise the temperature of a kilogram of water by 1 °C, which is the definition of specific heat capacity.

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

33. Will Maynez burns a 0.6-g peanut beneath 50 g of water, which increases in temperature from 22°C to 50°C. (The specific heat capacity of water is 1.0 cal/g•°C.)
    (a) Assuming that 40% of the heat released by the burning peanut makes its way to the water (40% efficiency), show that the peanut's food value is 3500 calories (equivalently, 3.5 Calories).
    (b) Then show how the food value in calories per gram is 5.8 kcal/g (or 5.8 Cal/g).

34. If you wish to warm 150 kg of water by 20°C for your bath, show that the amount of heat needed is 3000 kcal (3000 Cal, more than the amount of food energy the average human needs per day!). Then show that this is equivalent to about 12,600 kJ.
35. Calculate the amount of heat needed to raise the temperature of a 300-g aluminum cube from 30°C to 50°C. The specific heat of aluminum is 910 J/kg•°C.

To solve the problems below, you will need knowledge of the average coefficient of linear expansion, α*, which differs for different materials. We define* α *to be the change in length (L) per unit length—or the fractional change in length—for a temperature change of °C. That is,* $\Delta L/L$ *per °C. For aluminum,* $\alpha = 24 \times 10^{-6}/°C$*, and for steel,* $\alpha = 11 \times 10^{-6}/°C$*.*

The change in length ΔL *of a material is given by* $\Delta L = L\alpha\Delta T$*.*

36. A 1-meter-long bar expands by 0.3 cm when heated. If a 200-m bar of the same material is heated to the same temperature, calculate its final length.
37. Suppose that the 1.3-km main span of steel for the Golden Gate Bridge had no expansion joints. Show that for an increase in temperature of 20°C the bridge would be nearly 0.3 m longer.
38. Imagine a 40,000-km steel pipe that forms a ring to fit snugly entirely around the circumference of Earth. Suppose that people along its length breathe on it so as to raise its temperature by 1°C. The pipe gets longer—and is also no longer snug. How high does it stand above ground level? Show that the answer is an astounding 70 m higher! (To simplify, consider only the expansion of its radial distance from the center of Earth, and apply the geometry formula that relates circumference *C* and radius *r*, $C = 2\pi r$.)

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

39. The same heat Q is absorbed by different substances with the same mass, which results in the following: (a) the temperature of substance A increases by 10°C, (b) the temperature of substance B increases by 6°C, (c) the temperature of substance C increases by 24°C, and (d) the temperature of substance D increases 15°C. Rank the specific heat of the substances from least to greatest.
40. Four blocks of metals of different sizes at the same temperature are placed on a hot stove. Their specific heat capacities are listed below. If all were able to increase their temperature by 5°C, rank their mass from greatest to least: (a) Steel, 450 J/kg•°C; (b) Aluminum, 910 J/kg•°C; (c) Iron, 470 J/kg•°C; and (d) Copper, 390 J/kg•°C.

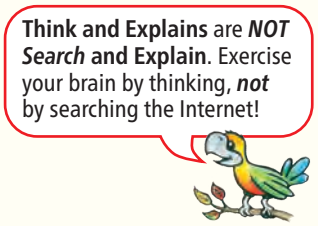
41. Three kinds of thin metal rods of the same length and initial temperature are placed on a tray and heated. Rank the expansion of these metal wires from least to greatest: (a) Brass, $\alpha = 2.0 \times 10^{-5}/°C$, (b) Aluminum, $\alpha = 2.4 \times 10^{-5}/°C$, and (c) Steel, $\alpha = 1.2 \times 10^{-5}/°C$.

42. The same temperature change ΔT is experienced by different wires with the same initial lengths, which results in the following observations: (a) the length of wire A increases by 1.0 mm, (b) the length of wire B increases by 1.6 mm, (c) the length of wire C increases by 0.7 mm, and (d) the length of wire D increases by 1.2 mm. Rank the coefficient of linear expansion of the wires in decreasing order.

THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

43. Why can't you establish whether you have a high temperature by touching your own forehead?
44. In a conference room are chairs, a table, and people. Compared to the temperature of air in the room, which of these has a temperature (a) lower than, (b) greater than, or (c) equal to the air temperature?
45. Is it possible for the Kelvin and Fahrenheit scales to agree numerically at a specific reading?
46. Which is larger: a Celsius degree or a kelvin?
47. Which is the largest unit of heat transfer: Calorie, calorie, or joule?
48. Are the oscillating molecules of water responsible for food getting cooked in a microwave oven?
49. On average, which has more kinetic energy: a molecule in a gram of ice water or a molecule in a gram of steam? Defend your answer.
50. For the same mass, which will heat up faster when placed in an oven: iron or lead? Justify your answer.
51. Would using a mercury thermometer be effective enough if you wanted to measure the temperature of a drop of hot water? Why or why not?
52. Consider two glasses of same-temperature water, one filled and the other half-full. In which glass are the water molecules moving faster on average? In which is there greater internal energy? In which will more heat be required to increase the temperature by 1°C?
53. Why does the pressure of gas enclosed in a rigid container increase as the temperature increases?
54. Equally increasing the temperature of two different objects of the same length does not necessarily produce the same increase in length. Why not?
55. Which likely has the greater specific heat capacity: an object that cools quickly or an object of the same mass that cools more slowly?
56. Why do we often refer to specific heat capacity as *thermal inertia*?
57. If the specific heat capacity of water were less, would a nice hot bath be a longer or a shorter experience? Why?
58. Which would warm up faster in a hot oven, a slice of watermelon or a cheese sandwich of the same mass? Defend your answer.
59. A certain quantity of heat is applied to 1 kg and 2 kg samples of silver. Which sample undergoes the greater change in temperature? Defend your answer.
60. Ethyl alcohol has about one-half the specific heat capacity of water. If equal masses of each at the same temperature are supplied with equal quantities of heat, which will undergo the greater change in temperature? Why?
61. When a 1-kg metal pan containing 1 kg of cold water is removed from the refrigerator and set on a table, which absorbs more heat from the room: the pan or the water? Why?
62. In a laboratory experiment, you are tasked with cooling down the temperature of a pot of hot water. You have two available objects that can be used as a coolant: a cube of aluminum and a cube of copper of the same mass and at room temperature. Which of the two is more effective at decreasing the temperature of hot water? Defend your answer.
63. Two thin metallic strips riveted together (some thermostats are made this way) form a bimetallic strip that bends when heated. Why does the bimetallic strip bend instead of expanding linearly?
64. Iceland, so named to discourage conquest by expanding empires, is not at all ice covered like Greenland and parts of Siberia, even though it is not far from the Arctic Circle. The average winter temperature of Iceland is considerably higher than it is in regions at the same latitude in eastern Greenland and central Siberia. Why is this so?
65. Why does the presence of large bodies of water tend to moderate the climate of nearby land—to make it warmer in cold weather and cooler in hot weather?
66. If the winds at the latitude of San Francisco and Washington, D.C., were from the east rather than from the west, why might San Francisco be able to grow only cherry trees and Washington, D.C., both cherry trees and palm trees?
67. Why do you feel more uncomfortable during a hot and humid day as compared to a hot, dry day of the same temperature?

68. How does buoyancy play a role in the rising of warm air?
69. Cite an exception to the claim that all substances expand when heated.
70. Would a bimetallic strip function if the two different metals have the same rates of expansion? Is it important that they expand at different rates? Explain.
71. An old method for breaking boulders was to put them in a hot fire and then douse them with cold water. Why would this fracture the boulders?
72. Structural groaning noises are sometimes heard in the attic of old buildings on cold nights. Give an explanation in terms of thermal expansion.
73. Why is it important that glass mirrors used in astronomical observatories be composed of glass with a low "coefficient of expansion"?
74. In terms of thermal expansion, why is it important that a key and its lock be made of the same or similar materials?
75. Any architect will tell you that chimneys are never used as a weight-bearing part of a wall. Why?
76. Why do long steam pipes often have one or more relatively large U-shaped sections of pipe?
77. Why are light bulbs typically made of very thin glass?
78. One of the reasons the first light bulbs were expensive was due to the platinum electrical lead wires into the bulb, which were necessary because they expanded at about the same rate as glass when heated. Why is it important that the metal leads and the glass have the same coefficient of expansion?
79. Which of the following would do more damage to your hands if you were exposed to it: 100°C steam or 100°C hot air?
80. Suppose that water is used in a thermometer instead of mercury. If the temperature is at 4°C and then changes, why can't the thermometer indicate whether the temperature is rising or falling?
81. A piece of solid iron sinks in a container of molten iron. A piece of solid aluminum sinks in a container of molten aluminum. Why does a piece of solid water (ice) not sink in a container of "molten" (liquid) water? Explain, using molecular terms.
82. What happens to the volume of water as it is cooled from 3°C to 1°C?
83. State whether water at the following temperatures will expand or contract when warmed a little: 0°C, 4°C, 6°C.
84. Water pipes usually burst in the winter. What could be the reason behind this?
85. If water had a lower specific heat capacity, would ponds be more likely to freeze or less likely to freeze?
86. If cooling occurred at the bottom of a pond instead of at the surface, would the pond freeze from the bottom up? Explain.



THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

87. A canister contains a mixture of hydrogen and oxygen gases at the same temperature. Which molecules move faster, and, why?
88. One canister is filled with argon gas and second canister filled with krypton gas. If both gases have the same temperature, in which container are the atoms moving faster? Why?
89. Water expands when it turns to ice. Discuss how this relates to cracks and potholes that appear in cold places during the winter.
90. When constructing railways, engineers intentionally leave a small gap between the metal tracks. Why is this so?
91. An old remedy for a pair of nested drinking glasses that stick together is to run water at different temperatures into the inner glass and over the surface of the outer glass. In which glass should the cold water be placed?
92. Gas is sold by volume. Would you or the gas company gain by having gas warmed before it passed through your gas meter?
93. After filling your gas tank to the top and parking your car in direct hot sunlight, why does the gasoline overflow?
94. If you suddenly place just the bulb of a mercury thermometer into hot water, the reading on the thermometer initially goes down before beginning to rise. Explain what is happening.
95. If you drop a hot rock into a pail of water, the temperatures of the rock and the water will change until both are equal. The rock will cool and the water will warm. Does this hold true if the hot rock is dropped into the Atlantic Ocean? Discuss.
96. Heat added to some substances goes primarily into the translational kinetic energy of its molecules, which directly elevates temperature. For other substances, large proportions of the added heat energy also goes into vibrations and rotations of the molecules. Discuss whether you'd expect materials in which a lot of energy goes into non-translational molecular motions to have a high or a low specific heat capacity.

97. To the weight watcher, the peanut being eaten contains 10 Calories. His physics friend says that 41,900 joules will be released by the peanut when consumed. Is the friend is correct? Explain.

98. A metal ball is just able to pass through a metal ring. When Anette increases the temperature of the ball, however, it will not pass through the ring. What would happen if she instead increased the temperature of the ring, rather than the ball? Discuss whether or not the size of the hole increases, stays the same, or decreases.

99. Consider a pair of brass balls of the same diameter, one hollow and the other solid. Both are heated with equal increases in temperature. Discuss and compare the diameters of the heated balls.

100. After a machinist very quickly slips a hot, snugly fitting iron ring over a very cold brass cylinder, the two cannot be separated intact. Discuss why this is so.

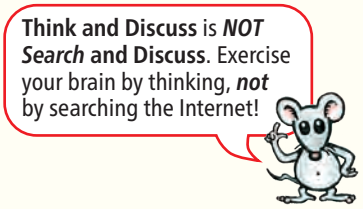
101. Suppose that you cut a small gap in a metal ring. If you were to heat the ring, discuss whether the gap would become wider or narrower.

102. After you measure the dimensions of a plot of land with a steel tape on a hot day, you return and re-measure the same plot on a cold day. On which day do you determine the larger area for the land?

103. How would the shape of the volume versus temperature graph in Figure 15.21 differ if density rather than volume were plotted against temperature? Make a rough sketch.

104. Discuss how the combined volume of the billions and billions of hexagonal open spaces in the structures of ice crystals in a piece of ice compares with the portion of ice that floats above the waterline.

105. Does it make sense to say that heat is like love—that we cannot *be* either, for we can only give and receive it. Discuss your thoughts on this statement with a friend.



CHAPTER FIFTEEN Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. When physicists discuss kinetic energy per molecule, the concept being discussed is
   (a) temperature.
   (b) heat.
   (c) thermal energy.
   (d) entropy.
2. Molecules in a constant-temperature mixture of gases have the same average
   (a) speed.
   (b) velocity.
   (c) kinetic energy.
   (d) all of the above
3. When Nellie touches a piece of ice with her finger, energy flows
   (a) from her finger to the ice.
   (b) from the ice to her finger.
   (c) both of these
   (d) none of the above
4. Heat is thermal energy that flows due to
   (a) molecular speed.
   (b) calorie imbalance.
   (c) temperature differences.
   (d) none of the above
5. White-hot sparks from a fireworks sparkler are harmless when striking your skin because
   (a) they have a low temperature.
   (b) the energy per molecule is very low.
   (c) the energy per molecule is high, but the total energy transferred is small.
   (d) all of the above
6. A given material that is quick to heat up has a
   (a) high specific heat capacity.
   (b) low specific heat capacity.
   (c) high or low specific heat capacity.
   (d) none of the above
7. San Francisco has milder winters than Washington D.C. because of water's high
   (a) conductivity.
   (b) specific heat capacity.
   (c) temperature in the Pacific Ocean.
   (d) none of the above
8. A bimetallic strip used in thermostats relies on the fact that different metals have different
   (a) specific heat capacities.
   (b) thermal energies at different temperatures.
   (c) rates of thermal expansion.
   (d) all of these
9. Water at 4°C will expand when it is slightly
   (a) cooled.
   (b) warmed.
   (c) both of these
   (d) none of these
10. Before ice forms on a lake, all the water in the lake must be cooled to
    (a) 0°C.
    (b) 4°C.
    (c) a value slightly below 0°C.
    (d) none of these

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (a): By definition, temperature is a measure of the average translational kinetic energy per molecule in a substance. Heat is the flow of thermal energy. Entropy is a measure of disorder in a system and is not relevant to the question. **2. (c):** By definition, temperature is a measure of the average translational kinetic energy per molecule, not the speed, velocity of molecules. **3. (a):** The direction of heat flow is from hot to cold. Her finger is warmer than the ice so internal energy flows from her finger to the cooler ice. **4. (c):** Heat is energy in transit and flows due to differences in temperature. If there are no temperature differences, there will be no flow of internal energy. **5. (c):** Be glad that sparks that hit your skin are tiny. As such they carry very little internal energy. Their temperature, on the other hand, is a ratio of energy per tiny spark. We know that a number divided by a tiny number produces a big number. That's how a small amount of energy per a very tiny number of molecules can have a high temperature. **6. (b):** Think of specific heat capacity as thermal inertia—an innate resistance to changes in temperature. A substance that heats up quickly is one with low specific heat capacity—like metal, compared with slow-to-heat water. **7. (b):** Due to water's high specific heat, water surrounding a location insulates that location from temperature extremes. Hawaii, for example, has no temperature extremes. San Francisco has the Pacific Ocean on one side and the San Francisco Bay on the other side. As such it behaves thermally as an island. **8. (c):** Bimetallic strips operate by differences in linear expansion for equal changes in temperature. Specific heat capacities and thermal energies are not factors in the bending of bimetallic strips. **9. (c):** On a graph of volume versus temperature, water at 4°C is at the bottom of the nearly U-shaped curve. That means a slight increase or a slight decrease in temperature, a change in either direction, means a greater volume. A correct reading of the volume-temperature graph answers the question. **10. (b):** Water at 4°C is the densest it gets so it sinks to the bottom of the lake. Only after the lake is 4°C will water then freeze.

CHAPTER SIXTEEN

16 Heat Transfer

16.1 Conduction

16.2 Convection

16.3 Radiation

- Emission of Radiant Energy
- Absorption of Radiant Energy
- Reflection of Radiant Energy
- Cooling at Night by Radiation

16.4 Newton's Law of Cooling

16.5 The Greenhouse Effect

16.6 Climate Change

16.7 Solar Power

16.8 Controlling Heat Transfer

1 This pair of photos is of rocket scientist Helen Yan when she was my student in the 1980s, showing how a hole in the box looks perfectly black and falsely indicates a black interior. **2** The snow-covered mailboxes raise a question: What physics explains why the light-colored ones are snow covered, while the black ones are free of snow? **3** More recent color photos of Helen, who shows the same box—yes, with a white interior.

When Helen Yan was the top-scoring student in my physics class in 1984 and then became my teaching assistant, I half-seriously suggested she continue in physics and become a rocket scientist. She may have taken me seriously, for after earning both a bachelor's and master's degree in physics (UC Berkeley and SF State respectively), today she *is* a rocket scientist. Back then she posed for the top pair of photos on the facing page, which first appeared in the fifth edition of *Conceptual Physics,* when all physics books were printed in only black ink. Color didn't occur in this book until the seventh edition. Helen then posed again for this same pair of photos in full color, which have appeared in editions since then.

In the box photos, she's illustrating a property of radiation; interestingly, today Helen specializes in the infrared part of the radiation spectrum. Her career at Lockheed Martin has ranged from monitoring satellites to analyzing launch trajectories and orbit changes of satellites. Her focus now is on the development of imaging sensors riding on satellites that view infrared activity on Earth's surface—fascinating work. Inspired by her teachers and paying it forward, Helen also teaches (part-time) the lab section of the same course she took from me years ago at City College of San Francisco.

Helen is a personal merit badge in my teaching career, and she's a role model for others. So if you find that you enjoy physics but are unsure of a career objective, consider following Helen's path and, yes, become a rocket scientist!

Heat transfer occurs all around us at every moment—continuously—and all because things around us have different temperatures. The temperatures of sidewalks are different from lawns, people have different temperatures than countertops, your hands have a different temperature than your tongue. Even energy received from the Sun that enables all life is due to the Sun being much hotter than Earth. The Universe would be a boring and lifeless place if heat transfers weren't occurring all the time. Heat transfer occurs by conduction, convection, and radiation—what this chapter is about.

16.1 Conduction

Most of us enjoy roasting marshmallows over a campfire. If you hold the marshmallow with a metal fork while waiting for the outer surface to turn a crispy brown, the fork may become too hot to hold. Heat enters the end of the fork that is kept in the flames and is transmitted along the entire length to your hand. The transmission of heat in this manner is called **conduction.** The fire causes the atoms at the heated end of the fork to vibrate more rapidly. These atoms vibrate against neighboring atoms, which, in turn, do the same. More important, free electrons that can drift throughout the metal are made to jostle and transfer energy by colliding with atoms and other free electrons within the material.

How well a metal fork or any solid object conducts heat depends on the bonding within its atomic or molecular structure. Solids composed of atoms that have one or more "loose" outer electrons conduct heat (and electricity) well. Metals have the "loosest" outer electrons, which are free to carry energy by collisions throughout the metal. That is why metals are excellent conductors of heat and electricity. Silver is the best conductor, followed by copper and gold, and, among the common metals, aluminum, with iron well behind. Most liquids and gases are poor conductors. Poor conductors that impede the transfer of heat are called *insulators.* Wool, wood, straw, paper, cork, and Styrofoam are good insulators of heat. Unlike the electrons in metals, the outer electrons in the atoms of these insulators are firmly attached.

Because wood is a good insulator (poor conductor) of heat, it is used in the handles of cookware. Even when it is hot, you can grasp the wooden handle of a pot with your bare hand and quickly remove the pot from a hot stove without getting burned. Grasping a metal handle of the same temperature would surely

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

fyi

- The spontaneous transfer of heat is always from warmer objects to cooler objects and is brought about in three ways: by *conduction*, by *convection*, and by *radiation*.

FIGURE 16.1
When you touch a nail stuck in ice, does cold flow from the nail to your hand, or does energy flow from your hand to the nail?

The feeling of warmth or cold for different materials involves rates of heat transfer, not necessarily temperatures.

FIGURE 16.2
The tile floor feels colder than the wood floor, even though both floor materials are at the same temperature. This is because tile is a better conductor of heat than wood, and so heat is more readily conducted out of the foot touching the tile.

FIGURE 16.3
Snow patterns on the roof of a house show areas of conduction and insulation. Bare patches show where heat from inside has leaked through the roof and melted the snow.

burn your hand. Wood is a good insulator even when it is very hot, which is why firewalkers can walk barefoot on red-hot coals from firewood without burning their feet. (*Caution*: Don't try this on your own; even experienced firewalkers sometimes receive bad burns when conditions aren't just right—bits of coals sticking to their feet, for example.) The principal factor in firewalking is the low conductivity of wood—even red-hot wood. Although its temperature is high, relatively little heat is conducted to the feet, just as little heat is conducted by air when you put your hand briefly in a hot pizza oven. If you touch metal in the hot oven—OUCH! Similarly, a firewalker who steps on a hot piece of metal or another good conductor will be burned. Evaporation of moisture on wet feet can play a role in firewalking too, as we'll see in the next chapter.

Air is a very poor conductor, which, as we said, is why your hand isn't harmed if you put it briefly in a hot oven. The good insulating properties of materials such as wool, fur, and feathers are largely due to the air spaces they contain. Other porous substances such as fiberglass are likewise good insulators because of their many small air spaces. Be glad that air is a poor conductor; if it were not, you'd feel quite chilly on a 20°C (68°F) day!

Snow is a poor conductor (a good insulator)—about the same as dry wood. Hence, a blanket of snow can literally keep the ground warm in winter. Snowflakes are formed of crystals, which collect into feathery masses, imprisoning air and thereby interfering with the escape of heat from Earth's surface. Traditional Arctic winter dwellings, including igloos, are shielded from the cold by their snow covering. Animals in the forest find shelter from the cold in snowbanks and in holes in the snow. The snow doesn't provide warmth; it simply slows down the loss of the heat that the animals generate.

Heat is transmitted from a higher to a lower temperature. We often hear people say that they wish to keep the cold out of their homes. A better way to state this is to say that they want to prevent the heat from escaping. There is no "cold" that flows into a warm home (unless a cold wind blows into it). Cold is simply the absence of heat. A home becomes colder because heat flows out. Homes are insulated with rock wool to prevent heat loss rather than to prevent cold from entering. It is important to note that no insulator can totally prevent heat loss. An insulator merely reduces the rate at which heat penetrates. Even the best-insulated warm homes in winter will gradually cool. Insulation slows heat transfer.

CHECK POINT

1. **Why can you place your hand briefly inside a hot oven without harm, but you are burned if you touch the metal sides of the oven?**
2. **Does a good insulator prevent or merely slow the transfer of thermal energy?**
3. **Wood is a better insulator than glass. Then why is fiberglass commonly used to insulate buildings?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. When your hand is in the air of the hot oven, you're not harmed mainly because air is a poor conductor—heat doesn't travel well between the hot air and your hand. Touching the hot metal sides of the oven is another story because metal is an excellent conductor and considerable heat flows into your hand.
2. An insulator *slows* heat transfer.
3. Air is a good insulator. Fiberglass is a good insulator, many times better than glass, because of the air that is trapped among its fibers.

16.2 Convection

Liquids and gases transmit heat mainly by **convection,** which is heat transfer due to the actual motion of the fluid itself. Unlike conduction (in which heat is transferred by successive collisions of electrons and atoms), convection involves the motion of "blobs" of matter—the overall movement of molecules of a fluid.

Convection can occur in all fluids, whether liquids or gases. Whether we heat water in a pan or heat air in a room, the process is the same (Figure 16.4). As the fluid is heated from below, the molecules at the bottom begin to move faster, spreading apart more, becoming less dense, and being buoyed upward (Archimedes' principle). Denser, cooler fluid moves in to take the place of the warmer fluid at the bottom. In this way, convection currents keep the fluid stirred up as it heats—warmer fluid moving away from the heat source and cooler fluid moving toward the heat source.

Convection currents occur in the atmosphere and affect air temperature. When a parcel of air near the ground is warmed, it expands, becomes less dense, and is buoyed upward. Hence, warmed air rises. The rising air is then actually cooled as it expands further, doing work on the lower-pressure air that it encounters at higher altitude. So the energy acquired initially by the parcel of air, perhaps from solar radiation, is more than offset by the energy it loses in doing work as it expands on its way up. The result: Air temperature is lower at higher altitude (except for special cases called inversions). (Do the following experiment right now.)

With your mouth open, blow on your hand. Your breath is warm. Now repeat, but this time pucker your lips, reducing the opening, so that your breath expands as it leaves your mouth. Note that your breath is appreciably cooler! Expanding air cools. This is the opposite of what occurs when air is compressed. If you've ever compressed air with a tire pump, you probably noticed that both air and pump become quite hot.

We can understand the cooling of expanding air by thinking of molecules of air as tiny ping-pong balls bouncing against one another. A ball picks up speed when it is hit by another ball that approaches with a greater speed. But when a ball collides with one that is receding, its rebound speed is reduced (Figure 16.5). Likewise for a tennis ball moving toward a racquet: It picks up speed when it hits an approaching racquet, but it loses speed when it hits a receding racquet. The same idea applies to a region of air that is expanding: Molecules collide, on average, with more molecules that are receding than with molecules that are approaching (Figure 16.7). Thus, in expanding air, the average speed of the molecules decreases and the air cools.[1]

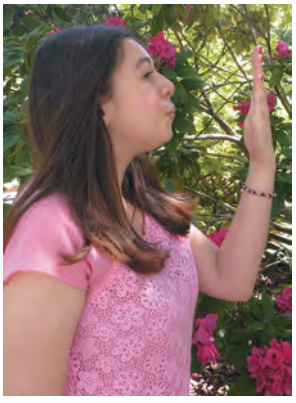
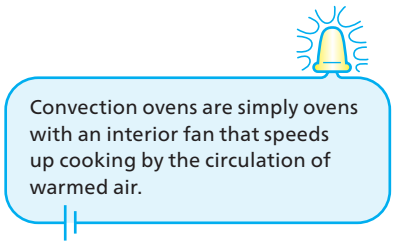


FIGURE 16.6
Blow warm air onto your hand from your wide-open mouth. Now reduce the opening between your lips so that the air expands as you blow. Do you notice a difference in the air temperature?

[1]Where does the energy go in this case? We will see in Chapter 18 that it goes into work done on the surrounding air as the expanding air pushes outward.



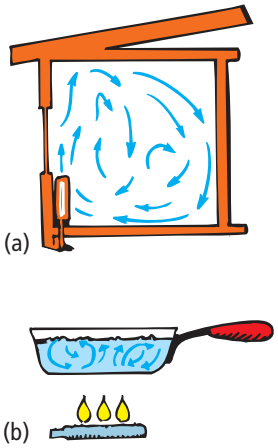


FIGURE 16.4
(a) Convection currents in air.
(b) Convection currents in liquid.

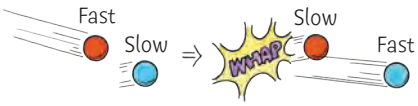


FIGURE 16.5
When a fast molecule collides with a receding slower molecule, its rebound speed after collision is less than it was before collision.

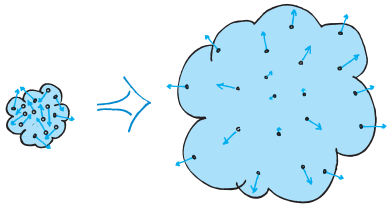


FIGURE 16.7
Molecules in a region of expanding air collide more often with receding molecules than with approaching ones. Their rebound speeds therefore tend to decrease and, as a result, the expanding air cools.

CHECK POINT

1. **How is the speed of an air molecule affected when hit by an approaching faster-moving molecule?**
2. **How is its speed affected when it collides with a receding molecule?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Like colliding billiard balls, the molecule being hit rebounds with increased speed.
2. A molecule's speed decreases when colliding with a receding molecule. Whenever one molecule gains speed in a collision, the other molecule loses speed, and vice versa. Recall the conservation of momentum: A pair of colliding molecules has the same total momentum before and after collision.

FIGURE 16.8
The hot steam expands from the pressure cooker and is cool to Millie's touch.

A dramatic example of cooling by expansion occurs with steam expanding through the nozzle of a pressure cooker (Figure 16.8). The cooling effect of both expansion and rapid mixing with cooler air allows you to hold your hand comfortably in the jet of condensed vapor. (*Caution*: If you try this, be sure to place your hand high above the nozzle at first and then lower it to a comfortable distance. If you put your hand at the nozzle where no cloud appears, watch out! Steam—which can cause a serious burn—is invisible. The cloud you see higher above the nozzle, which many people call steam, is actually condensed water vapor that results from the steam expanding and cooling. The cloud is cool to the touch.

Convection currents stirring the atmosphere produce winds. Some parts of Earth's surface absorb heat from the Sun more readily than others, and, as a result, the air near the surface is heated unevenly and convection currents form. This is evident at the seashore. In the daytime, the shore warms more easily than the water. Air over the shore is pushed up (we say it rises) by cooler air that comes in from above the water to take its place. The result is a sea breeze. At night, the process reverses: The shore cools off more quickly than the water, and then the warmer air is over the sea (Figure 16.9). If you build a fire on the beach, you'll notice that the smoke sweeps landward during the day and seaward at night.

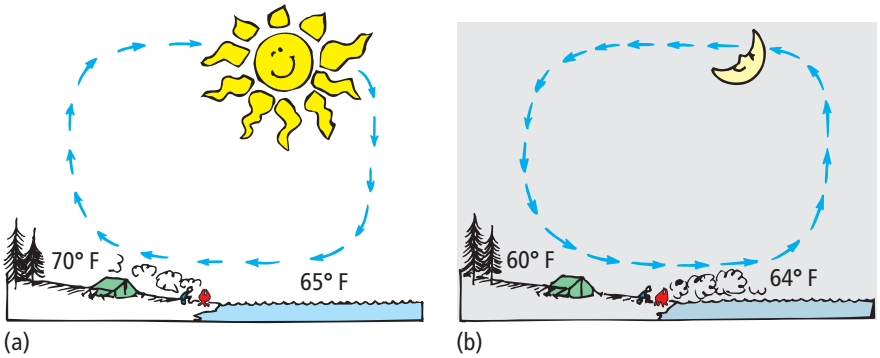


FIGURE 16.9
Convection currents produced by unequal heating of land and water. (a) During the day, warm air above the land rises, and cooler air over the water moves to replace it. (b) At night, the direction of airflow is reversed because then the water is warmer than the land.

Convection occurs wherever fluids are subjected to temperature differences. It produces clouds in the sky and contributes to ocean currents in deep ocean waters. In Earth's interior, the convection of semimolten material is the likely cause of sliding tectonic plates, which produce events such as earthquakes and volcanic eruptions. Convection also plays a large role in the Sun, producing a relatively steady overall brightness. Solar convection also accounts for solar flares. Convection is a central player in much that occurs around us.

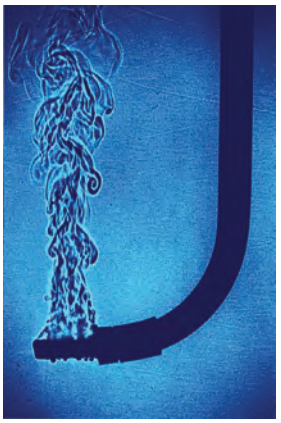


FIGURE 16.10
A heater at the tip of a J-tube submerged in water produces convection currents, which are revealed as shadows (caused by deflections of light in water of different temperatures).

CHECK POINT

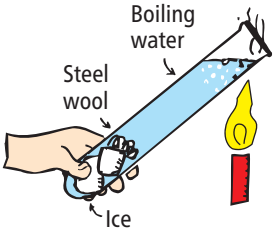
You can hold your fingers beside the candle flame without harm, but not above the flame. Why?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Hot air travels upward by air convection. Since air is a poor conductor, very little heat travels sideways to your fingers.

PRACTICING PHYSICS

Hold the bottom end of a test tube full of cold water in your hand. Heat the top part in a flame until the water boils. The fact that you can still hold the bottom of the test tube shows that glass and water are poor conductors of heat and that convection does not move the hot water downward. This is even more dramatic when you wedge chunks of ice at the bottom with some steel wool; then the water above can be brought to a boil without melting the ice. Try it and see.



16.3 Radiation

Light energy from the Sun passes through space and then through Earth's atmosphere and warms Earth's surface. This energy does not pass through the atmosphere by conduction because air is a poor conductor. Nor does it pass through by convection because convection begins only after Earth is warmed. Since conduction and convection depend on molecular motion, we therefore know that neither process is possible in the empty space between our atmosphere and the Sun. We can see that energy must be transmitted by some other means—by **radiation.**[2] The energy so radiated is called *radiant energy*.

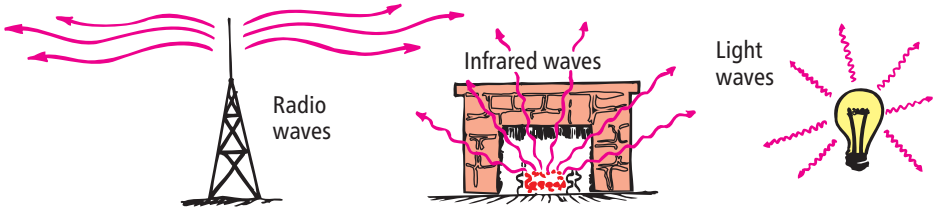


FIGURE 16.11
Types of radiant energy (electromagnetic waves).

[2]The radiation we are discussing is electromagnetic radiation, including visible light. Don't confuse this with radioactivity, a process of the atomic nucleus that we'll discuss in Part 7.

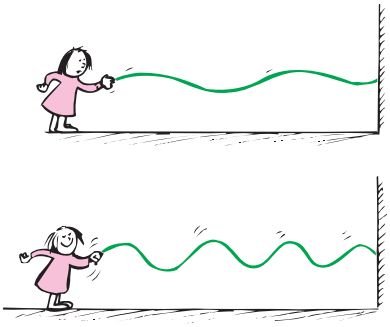
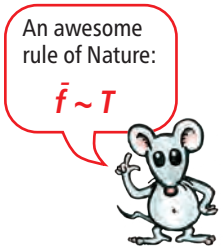


FIGURE 16.12
A low-frequency shake produces a long wavelength. A higher-frequency shake produces shorter waves.

Radiant energy is in the form of *electromagnetic waves*. It includes radio waves, microwaves, infrared radiation, visible light, ultraviolet radiation, X-rays, and gamma rays. These forms of radiant energy are listed in order of wavelength, from longest to shortest. Infrared (below-the-red) radiation has longer wavelengths than visible light. The longest visible wavelengths are for red light, and the shortest are for violet light. Ultraviolet (beyond-the-violet) radiation has shorter wavelengths. (Wavelength is treated in more detail in Chapter 19, and electromagnetic waves are covered in more detail in Chapters 25 and 26.)

The wavelength of radiation is related to the *frequency* of radiation. Frequency is the rate of vibration of a wave. The girl in Figure 16.12 shakes a rope at a low frequency (top) and at a higher frequency (bottom). Note that the low-frequency shake produces a long, lazy wave and the higher-frequency shake produces shorter waves. Likewise with electromagnetic waves. We will see in Chapter 26 that vibrating electrons emit electromagnetic waves. Low-frequency vibrations produce long-wavelength waves, and high-frequency vibrations produce short ones.

Emission of Radiant Energy

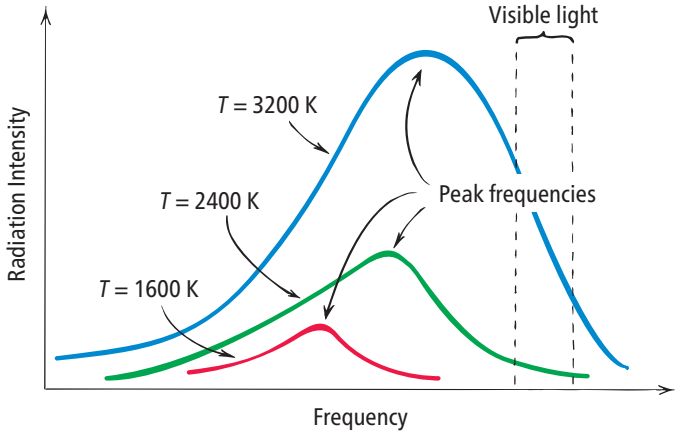


All substances at any temperature above absolute zero emit radiant energy. The peak frequency $\bar{f}$ of the radiant energy is directly proportional to the absolute (Kelvin) temperature T of the emitter (Figure 16.13):

$$\bar{f} \sim T$$

If an object is hot enough, some of the radiant energy it emits is in the range of visible light. At a temperature of about 500°C an object begins to emit the longest wavelength radiation we can see, red light. As its temperature is raised, it becomes "red hot," then appears yellowish, and, at around 5000°C, where it emits light strongly in all visible wavelengths, it is "white hot." A blue star is hotter than a white star, which, in turn, is hotter than a red star. If a particular blue star emitted light of twice the peak frequency of light from a certain red star, the blue star would have twice the surface temperature of the red star.[3]

FIGURE 16.13
Radiation curves for different temperatures. The peak frequency of radiant energy is directly proportional to the absolute temperature of the emitter.



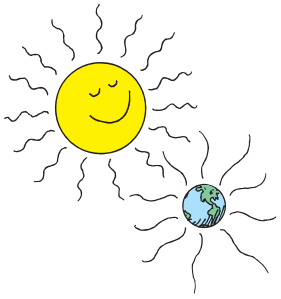


FIGURE 16.14
Both the Sun and Earth emit the same kind of radiant energy. The Sun's glow is visible to the eye; Earth's glow consists of longer wavelengths and isn't visible to the eye.

Because the surface of the Sun has a high temperature (by earthly standards), it emits radiant energy at a high frequency—much of it in the visible portion of the *electromagnetic spectrum*. The surface of Earth, by comparison, is relatively cool, and so the radiant energy it emits consists of frequencies lower than those of visible light. The radiation emitted by Earth is in the form of *infrared waves*—below our threshold of sight. Radiant energy emitted by Earth is called **terrestrial radiation.**

[3]The *amount* of radiant energy Q emitted by an object is proportional to the fourth power of the Kelvin temperature, $Q \sim T^4$.

The Sun's radiant energy stems from nuclear reactions in its deep interior. Likewise, nuclear reactions in Earth's interior warm Earth (visit the depths of any mine and you'll find it's warm down there—year-round). Much of this internal energy conducts to the surface to become terrestrial radiation.

All objects—you, your instructor, and everything in your surroundings—continuously emit radiant energy over a range of frequencies. Objects with everyday temperatures emit mostly low-frequency waves that are invisible to the human eye, which are called *infrared*. When the higher-frequency infrared waves are absorbed by your skin, as when you stand beside a hot stove, you feel the sensation of heat. So it is common to refer to infrared radiation as *heat radiation*. Common infrared sources that produce the sensation of heat are the Sun, a lamp filament, and burning embers in a fireplace.

Heat radiation underlies infrared thermometers. You simply point the thermometer at something whose temperature you want, press a button, and a digital temperature reading appears. The radiation emitted by the object provides the reading. Typical classroom infrared thermometers operate in the range of about −30°C to 200°C.

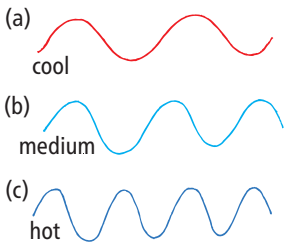


FIGURE 16.15
(a) A low-temperature (cool) source emits primarily low-frequency, long-wavelength waves. (b) A medium-temperature source emits primarily medium-frequency, medium-wavelength waves. (c) A high-temperature (hot) source emits primarily high-frequency, short-wavelength waves.

CHECK POINT

Do any of the following *not* give off radiant energy? (a) The Sun, (b) lava from a volcano, (c) red-hot coals, (d) this text that you're reading

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Let's hope you didn't answer (d), the text. Why? Because the text, like the other substances listed, has a temperature—though not as high. According to the rule $\bar{f} \sim T$ it therefore emits radiation whose peak frequency $\bar{f}$ is quite low compared with the radiation frequencies emitted by the other substances. Everything that has a temperature above absolute zero radiates energy in the form of electromagnetic waves. That's right—*everything*!

FIGURE 16.16
An infrared thermometer measures the infrared radiant energy emitted by a surface and converts it to temperature.

Absorption of Radiant Energy

If everything is emitting energy, why doesn't everything finally run out of it? The answer is that everything is also absorbing energy. Good emitters of radiant energy are also good absorbers; poor emitters are poor absorbers. For example, a radio antenna constructed to be a good emitter of radio waves is also, by its very design, a good receiver (absorber) of them. A poorly designed transmitting antenna is also a poor receiver.

The surface of any material, hot or cold, both absorbs and emits radiant energy. If the surface absorbs more energy than it emits, it is a net absorber and its temperature rises. If it emits more than it absorbs, it is a net emitter and its temperature drops. Whether a surface plays the role of net emitter or net absorber depends on whether its temperature is above or below that of its surroundings. If the surface is hotter than its surroundings, it will be a net emitter and will cool. If its surface is colder than its surroundings, it will be a net absorber and become warmer. Every surface, hot or cold, both absorbs and emits radiant energy.

You can verify this with a pair of metal containers of the same size and shape, one with a white or mirrorlike surface and the other with a blackened surface (Figure 16.18). Fill the containers with hot water and place a thermometer in each. You will find that the black container cools faster. The blackened surface is a better emitter. Coffee or tea stays hot longer in a shiny pot than in a blackened one. The same experiment can be done in reverse. This time, fill each

FIGURE 16.17
The pizza that Dennis McNelis enjoys is a net emitter. The same pizza would be a net absorber if it were cooler than its surroundings. Whether something is a net emitter or net absorber depends on relative temperatures.

FIGURE 16.18
When the containers are filled with hot (or cold) water, the blackened one cools (or warms) faster.

container with ice water and place the containers in front of a fireplace, outside on a sunny day, or wherever there is a good source of radiant energy. You'll find that the black container warms up faster. As we said, an object that emits well also absorbs well.

CHECK POINT

1. **If a good absorber of radiant energy were a poor emitter, how would its temperature compare with the temperature of its surroundings?**
2. **A farmer turns on the propane burner in his barn on a cold morning and heats the air to 20°C (68°F). Why does he still feel cold?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. If a good absorber were not also a good emitter, there would be a net absorption of radiant energy and the temperature of the absorber would remain higher than the temperature of the surroundings. Things around us approach a common temperature only because good absorbers are, by their very nature, also good emitters.
2. The walls of the barn are still cold. The farmer radiates more energy to the walls than the walls radiate back, and he is chilled. (Inside your home or your classroom, you are comfortable only if the walls are warm, not just the air.)

Reflection of Radiant Energy

Absorption and reflection are opposite processes. A good absorber of radiant energy reflects very little radiant energy, including visible light. Hence, a surface that reflects very little or no radiant energy looks dark. So a good absorber appears dark and a perfect absorber reflects no radiant energy and appears completely black. The pupil of the eye, for example, allows light to enter with almost no reflection, which is why it appears black. (An exception occurs in flash photography when pupils appear red. The very bright light is reflected off the eye's inner red surface and back through the pupil.)

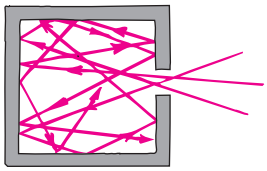


FIGURE 16.19
Radiation that enters the cavity has little chance of exiting because most of it is absorbed. For this reason, the opening to any cavity looks black to us.

Look at the open ends of pipes in a stack; the holes appear black. Look at open doorways or windows of distant houses in the daytime, and they, too, look black. Openings appear black because the light that enters is reflected back and forth on the inside walls many times and is partly absorbed at each reflection. As a result, very little of the light remains to come back out of the opening and travel to your eyes (Figure 16.19). In Figure 16.20, Roger King shows the black cavity of a box with a white interior (shown earlier by Helen Yan in the chapter-opening photos). When the top of the box is closed, the hole looks black.

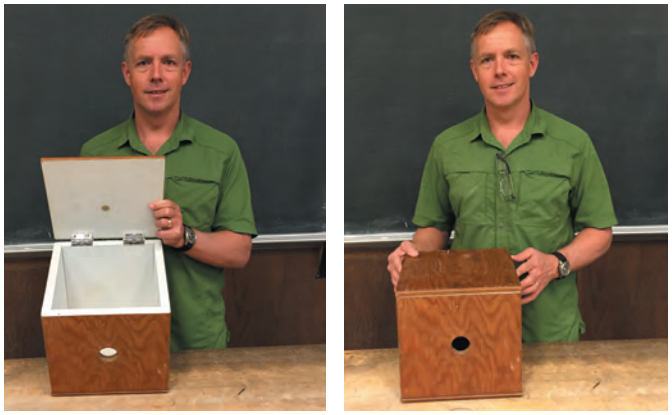


FIGURE 16.20
The interior of the box and the hole is white. When the lid is closed, the hole is black, as explained in Figure 16.19.

Good reflectors, on the other hand, are poor absorbers. Clean snow is a good reflector and therefore does not melt rapidly in sunlight. If the snow is dirty, it absorbs radiant energy from the Sun and melts faster. Dropping black soot from an aircraft onto snow-covered mountains is a technique sometimes used in flood control. Controlled melting at favorable times, rather than a sudden runoff of melted snow, is thereby accomplished.

CHECK POINT

A friend says that because tar paper is black, it therefore absorbs light. Another friend says that tar paper absorbs light and is therefore black. Which statement do you prefer?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Both statements are correct, although a physicist likely prefers to think that surfaces that absorb light, for a variety of reasons, appear black. Cause first, effect after.

Cooling at Night by Radiation

Bodies that radiate more energy than they receive become cooler. This happens at night when there is no solar radiation. An object left out in the open at night radiates energy into space and, because space itself is extremely cold, it receives very little energy in return. Thus, it gives out more energy than it receives and becomes cooler. But, if the object is a good conductor of heat—such as metal, stone, or concrete—heat conducts from the ground, which somewhat stabilizes its temperature. On the other hand, materials such as wood, straw, and grass are poor conductors and little heat is conducted into them from the ground. These insulating materials are net radiators and get *colder than the air*. It is common for frost to form on these kinds of materials even when the temperature of the air does not go down to freezing. Have you ever seen a frost-covered lawn or field on a chilly but above-freezing morning before the Sun is up? The next time you see this, notice that the frost forms only on the grass, straw, or other poor conductors, while none forms on the cement, stone, or other good conductors.

FIGURE 16.21
Most of the heat provided by a heating radiator is delivered by convection, so color makes little difference (a better name for this type of heater would be a *convector*). For optimum efficiency, however, a silver-painted radiator will radiate less, become and remain hotter, and do a better job of heating the air. So paint your radiator silver!

Serious gardeners will cover their plants with a tarp when they expect a frost. The plants radiate just as before, but now they are receiving radiant energy from the tarp rather than from the dark night sky. Because the tarp radiates as an object at the temperature of the surroundings rather than at the temperature of the cold, dark sky, frost doesn't form on the plants' leaves. This is the same reason that plants on a covered porch won't have frost on them, whereas plants exposed to the open sky will.

Earth itself exchanges radiation with its surroundings. The Sun is a dominant part of Earth's surroundings during the day. The sunlit half of Earth absorbs more radiant energy than it emits. At night, if the air is relatively transparent with no cloud cover, Earth radiates more energy to deep space than it receives in return. As the Bell Laboratories researchers Arno Penzias and Robert Wilson learned in 1965, outer space has a temperature—about 2.7 K (2.7 degrees above absolute zero). Space itself emits weak radiation characteristic of that low temperature.[4]

FIGURE 16.22
Patches of frost crystals betray the hidden entrances to mouse burrows. Each cluster of crystals is frozen mouse breath!

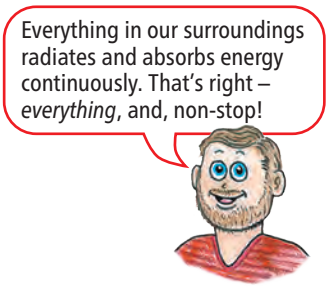
fyi

- In any given hour, more energy from the Sun reaches Earth than the entire energy used from all sources by the whole human population in any given year.

CHECK POINT

1. **Which is likely to be colder: a night when you can see the stars or a night when you cannot?**
2. **In winter, why does the road surface on a bridge tend to be more icy than the road surfaces at either end of the bridge?**

[4]Penzias and Wilson shared a Nobel Prize for this discovery of "cosmic background radiation," deemed to be a relic of the Big Bang. Its temperature has now been measured to the incredible accuracy of 2.725 K, and it is revealing much about the early history of the universe and its present composition.



CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. It is colder on the starry night, when Earth's surface radiates directly to frigid deep space. On a cloudy night, net radiation is less because the clouds radiate energy back to Earth's surface.
2. Energy radiated by roads on land is partly replenished by heat conducted from the warmer ground below the pavement. But there's no thermal contact between the road surfaces of bridges and the ground, so they receive very little, if any, replenishing energy conducted from the ground. This is why road surfaces on bridges get colder than roads on land, which increases the chance of ice formation on bridges. Understanding heat transfer can make you a safer driver!

FIGURE 16.23
The long stem of a wine glass helps to prevent heat from the hand from warming the wine.

16.4 Newton's Law of Cooling

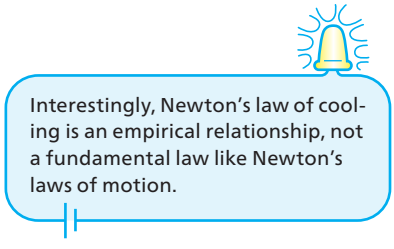
Left to themselves, objects hotter than their surroundings eventually cool to match the surrounding temperature. The rate of cooling depends on how much hotter the object is than its surroundings. A hot apple pie will cool more each minute if it is put in a cold freezer than if it is left on the kitchen table. That's because, in the freezer, the temperature difference between the pie and its surroundings is greater. Similarly, the rate at which a warm house leaks internal energy to the cold outdoors depends on the difference between the inside and outside temperatures.

The rate of cooling of an object—whether by conduction, by convection, or by radiation—is approximately proportional to the temperature difference ΔT between the object and its surroundings:

$$\text{Rate of cooling} \sim \Delta T$$

This is known as **Newton's law of cooling.** (Guess who is credited with discovering this?) The law applies also to warming. If an object is cooler than its surroundings, its rate of warming up is also proportional to ΔT. Frozen food will warm up faster in a warm room than in a cold room.[5]

The rate of cooling we experience on a cold day can be increased by the added convective effect of the wind. We speak of this in terms of *windchill*. For example, a windchill of $-20°C$ means we are losing heat at the same rate as if the temperature were $-20°C$ without wind.



CHECK POINT

Since a hot cup of tea loses heat more rapidly than a lukewarm cup of tea, is it correct to say that a hot cup of tea will cool to room temperature before a lukewarm cup of tea will?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

No! Although the rate of cooling is greater for the hotter cup, it has farther to cool to reach thermal equilibrium. The extra time is equal to the time it takes to cool to the initial temperature of the lukewarm cup of tea. Cooling *rate* and cooling *time* are not the same thing.

[5]A warm object that contains a source of energy may remain warmer than its surroundings indefinitely. The internal energy it emits doesn't necessarily cool it, and Newton's law of cooling doesn't apply. Thus an automobile engine that is running remains warmer than the automobile's body and the surrounding air. But after the engine is turned off, it cools in accordance with Newton's law of cooling and gradually approaches the same temperature as its surroundings. Likewise, the Sun will remain hotter than its surroundings as long as its nuclear furnace is functioning—another 5 billion years or so.

16.5 The Greenhouse Effect

An automobile parked in the street in the bright Sun on a hot day with closed windows can get very hot inside—appreciably hotter than the outside air. This is an example of the **greenhouse effect,** so named for the same temperature-raising effect in florists' glass greenhouses. Understanding the greenhouse effect requires knowing about two concepts.

The first concept has already been stated—that all things radiate, and the frequency and wavelength of radiation depend on the temperature of the object emitting the radiation. High-temperature objects radiate short wavelengths; low-temperature objects radiate long wavelengths. The second concept we need to know is that the transparency of things such as air and glass depends on the wavelength of radiation. Air is transparent to both infrared (long) wavelengths and visible (short) wavelengths, unless the air contains excess water vapor and carbon dioxide, in which case it is opaque to infrared. Glass is transparent to visible-light wavelengths but is opaque to infrared wavelengths. (The physics of transparency and opacity is discussed in Chapter 26.)

Now to why that car gets so hot in bright sunlight: Compared with the car, the Sun's temperature is very high. This means the wavelengths radiated by the Sun are very short. These short wavelengths easily pass through both Earth's atmosphere and the glass windows of the car. So energy from the Sun gets into the car's interior, where, except for reflection, it is absorbed. The interior of the car warms up. The car's interior radiates its own wavelengths, but, since it is not as hot as the Sun, the wavelengths are longer. The reradiated long wavelengths encounter glass that isn't transparent to them. So the reradiated energy remains in the car, which makes the car's interior even warmer (which is why leaving your pet in a car on a hot sunny day is a no-no).

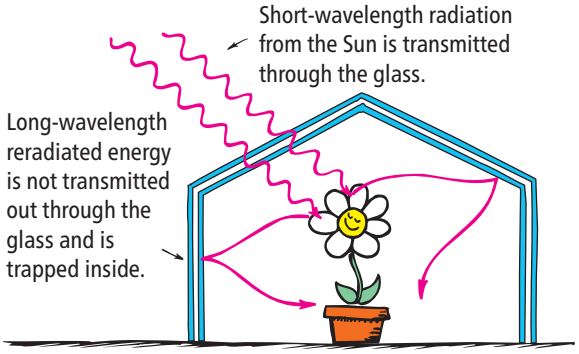

Short-wavelength radiation from the Sun is transmitted through the glass.
Long-wavelength reradiated energy is not transmitted out through the glass and is trapped inside.

FIGURE 16.24
Glass is transparent to short-wavelength radiation but opaque to long-wavelength radiation. Reradiated energy from the plant (or anything else in the greenhouse) has a long wavelength because the plant has a relatively low temperature.

The same effect occurs in Earth's atmosphere, which is transparent to solar radiation. The surface of Earth absorbs this energy and reradiates part of this as longer-wavelength terrestrial radiation. Atmospheric gases (mainly water vapor and carbon dioxide) absorb and re-emit much of this long-wavelength terrestrial radiation back to Earth. Terrestrial radiation that cannot escape Earth's atmosphere keeps Earth from getting too cold. This greenhouse effect is very nice because Earth would be a frigid −18°C otherwise. Over the last 500,000 years the average temperature of Earth has fluctuated between ice-age subzeros and 15°C, with nearly 16°C the present high point—and climbing.

Although H_2O is the major greenhouse gas in the atmosphere, the second most abundant greenhouse gas, CO_2, is notorious because its contribution from humans has been steadily increasing. Unhappily, further warming by CO_2 can trigger more H_2O as well. Our present environmental concern is the combination of growing amounts of CO_2 and other greenhouse gases (methane, nitrous oxide, ozone, and so on) that further increase the temperature and produce a new thermal balance that is unfavorable to the biosphere.

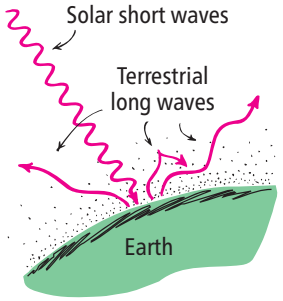


FIGURE 16.25
The hot Sun emits short wavelengths. The cool Earth emits long wavelengths. Water vapor, carbon dioxide, and other greenhouse gases in the atmosphere retain heat that would otherwise be radiated from Earth to space.

A significant role for the glass in a florist's greenhouse is preventing convection of cooler outside air with warmer inside air. So the greenhouse effect actually plays a bigger role in global warming than it does in the warming of florists' greenhouses.

CHECK POINT

1. **What is meant by the statement, "you can never change only one thing?"**
2. **If poisons are placed in a landfill, we alter the composition of the land. If a few milliliters of chlorine are put in a swimming pool, we alter the water in the pool. How can billions of tons of greenhouse gases be discharged into the atmosphere without altering its composition?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. As every mathematical equation shows, if you change a variable on one side of an equation, a variable on the other side has to change. With respect to the greenhouse effect, the question becomes, "How can billions of tons of greenhouse gases be added to the sky and NOT alter the atmosphere?"
2. It can't.

16.6 Climate Change

An important credo, as the above Check Point states, is "You can never change only one thing." Change one thing, and you change another. A slightly higher Earth temperature means slightly warmer oceans, which means rising sea levels and changes in weather and storm patterns. The consensus among scientists is that Earth's climate has gotten too warm too fast, and continues to do so. This phenomenon is called *global warming* or its result—*climate change*.

Weather is the state of the atmosphere at a particular time and place—its temperature, humidity, pressure, precipitation, wind, and clouds. Climate is the weather pattern over broader regions and longer times. One hot summer or a single hurricane is not evidence of global warming or climate change. Global warming and climate change are more than weather fluctuations, which come and go. Scientific consensus is that climate change is here.

How this will play out is not known. At one extreme, corrections can be made and life will be fine for Earth's inhabitants. At the other extreme, we are reminded of the planet Venus, which in earlier times likely had a climate somewhat similar to Earth's, until a runaway greenhouse effect led to its atmosphere today: 96% CO_2 with an average surface temperature of 470°C. Venus is the hottest planet in the solar system. We certainly don't want to follow its course. It may take vigilance, not just luck, for Earth to remain pleasant and habitable for centuries to come. It will take a global effort to reduce greenhouse gas emissions.

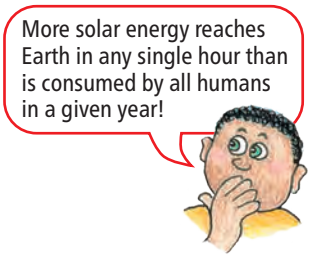
One thing we don't know is the long-term effect of disease-causing microbes and parasites when their natural habitats shift in basic ways. We also don't know how agriculture will cope with soils drying out as water for irrigation gets scarcer. What we do know is that climate models indicate that ecosystems and human cultures worldwide will be severely disrupted due to glacial melting, sea-level rises, and more extreme weather events. We also know that energy consumption and changes in our atmosphere are related to population size. It is past time for humankind to address the question of continued growth. (Please take the time to read Appendix E, "Exponential Growth and Doubling Time"—very important material.)

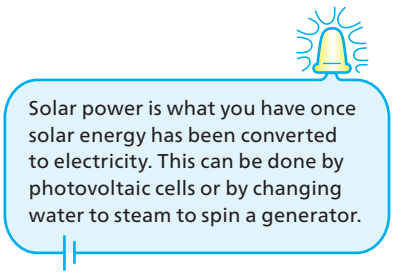
CHECK POINT

1. **What eventually happens to the solar energy that falls on Earth?**
2. **What does it mean to say that the greenhouse effect is like a one-way valve?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Sooner or later, it will be radiated back into space. Energy is always in transit—you can rent it, but you can't own it.
2. Transparent material—atmosphere for Earth and glass for the greenhouse—allows only incoming short wavelengths and blocks outgoing long wavelengths. As a result, radiant energy is trapped within the "greenhouse."




Solar power is what you have once solar energy has been converted to electricity. This can be done by photovoltaic cells or by changing water to steam to spin a generator.

16.7 Solar Power

If you step from the shade into the sunshine, you're noticeably warmed. The warmth you feel isn't so much because the Sun is hot, because its surface temperature of 6000°C is no hotter than the flames of some welding torches. We are warmed principally because the Sun is so *big*.[6] As a result, it emits enormous amounts of energy, less than one part in a billion of which reaches Earth. Nonetheless, the amount of radiant energy received each second over each square meter at right angles to the Sun's rays at the top of the atmosphere is 1400 joules (1.4 kJ). This input of energy is called the **solar constant.** It is equivalent, in power units, to 1.4 kilowatts per square meter ($1.4\ \text{kW/m}^2$). The solar constant is the rate at which solar energy is received from the Sun. The amount of solar energy that reaches the ground is attenuated by the atmosphere and reduced by nonperpendicular elevation angles of the Sun. Also, of course, it ceases at night. The solar energy received in the United States, averaged over day and night, summer and winter, is about 13% of the solar constant ($0.18\ \text{kW/m}^2$).

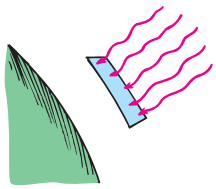
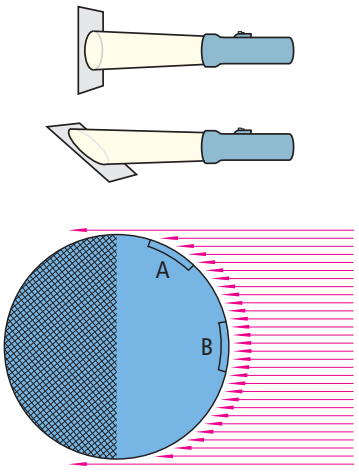


FIGURE 16.26
Over each square meter of area perpendicular to the Sun's rays at the top of the atmosphere, the Sun pours 1400 J of radiant energy each second. Hence the solar constant is $1.4\ \text{kJ/s/m}^2$, or $1.4\ \text{kW/m}^2$.

SPREADING SOLAR ENERGY

Does the distance from the Sun, or the angle of the Sun's rays on Earth, account for frigid polar regions and tropical equatorial regions? You can see the answer for yourself if you hold a flashlight above a surface and note its brightness. When the light strikes perpendicularly, light energy is concentrated, but when the surface is tipped, keeping at the same distance, incident light is more spread out. Can you see that the same energy over a larger area is akin to the low temperatures of the Arctic and Antarctic regions of Earth?

The sketch is of Earth with parallel rays of light coming from the Sun. Count the number of rays that strike region A and equal-area region B. Where is the energy per unit area less? How does this relate to climate?



[6]To visualize how big the Sun is, realize that its diameter is more than three times the distance between Earth and the Moon. So, if Earth and the Moon were inside the Sun, with Earth at the solar center, the Moon would be deep inside. The Sun is *really* big!

FIGURE 16.27
Rooftops capturing solar energy.

FIGURE 16.28
A simple capture of solar energy.

This amount of energy, illuminating the roof of a typical American house, is equivalent to twice the power needed to comfortably heat and cool the house year-round. More and more homes are capturing solar energy for space heating and water heating. Also gaining in popularity are photovoltaic shingles that blend almost seamlessly with roofing materials. When solar energy is converted to electricity by photovoltaic cells or other means, it's known as **solar power.**

More and more rooftops are fitted with photovoltaic cells that convert sunlight directly to electricity. Photovoltaic cells can be designed for power needs ranging from milliwatts to megawatts, powering a calculator or a generator in a power plant. They also can be located in remote areas that are not readily accessible to utility grid lines. Solar-energy collecting and concentration systems are in more and more localities competitive in cost with electric power generated by conventional power sources.

CHECK POINT

What is the ultimate source of all the world's energy (excluding nuclear energy)?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The Sun! It will bathe Earth with energy for another 5 billion years.

FIGURE 16.29
Thermo glasses.

16.8 Controlling Heat Transfer

Most heat loss in a home is through windows. Heat transfer is nicely lowered with double pane windows. Between the panes is a low-conducting gas that not only slows heat transfer but sound as well.

Double pane windows may have inspired double wall beverage glasses that you can comfortably hold in your hands whether the beverage is icy cold or steaming hot (Figure 16.29). The beverage appears to be floating within the double walls that have been partially evacuated of air. Thermo glasses keep cold drinks cold and hot drinks hot for a longer time than traditional drinking glasses.

The three main methods of heat transfer are nicely illustrated with the familiar double-walled glass vacuum bottle (Figure 16.30). The glass surfaces that face each other are silvered. Any liquid, hot or cold, in a vacuum bottle will remain close to its original temperature for many hours.

1. Heat transfer by *conduction* through the vacuum is impossible. Some heat escapes by conduction through the glass and stopper, but this is a slow process because glass, plastic, and cork are poor conductors.
2. The vacuum has no fluid to convect, so there is no heat loss through the walls by *convection*.
3. Heat loss by *radiation* is reduced by the silvered surfaces of the walls, which reflect heat wavelengths back into the bottle.

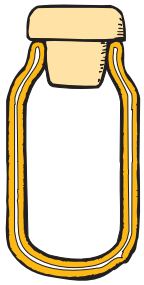


FIGURE 16.30
A Thermos bottle.

Chapter 16 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Conduction The transfer of heat energy by molecular and electron collisions within a substance (especially a solid).

Convection The transfer of heat energy in a gas or liquid by means of currents in the heated fluid. The fluid moves, carrying energy with it.

Radiation The transfer of energy by means of electromagnetic waves.

Terrestrial radiation The radiation emitted by Earth to outer space.

Newton's law of cooling The rate of loss of heat from a warm object is proportional to the temperature difference between the object and its surroundings. (Similarly for the gain of heat by a cool object.)

Greenhouse effect Warming of the lower atmosphere by short-wavelength radiation from the Sun that penetrates the atmosphere, is absorbed by Earth, and is reradiated at longer wavelengths that cannot easily escape Earth's atmosphere.

Solar constant 1400 J/m^2 received from the Sun each second at the top of Earth's atmosphere on an area perpendicular to the Sun's rays; expressed in terms of power, 1.4 kW/m^2.

Solar power Energy per unit time received from the Sun.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

16.1 Conduction

1. Why are metals excellent conductors of heat and electricity?
2. Why can a barefoot firewalker step quickly without harm on red-hot coals?
3. Why are good insulators, like wood, used in the handles of cookware?
4. How does snow protect animals from the extreme cold in forests?

16.2 Convection

5. Why does warm air rise? Why does air cool down as it rises?
6. What happens to the speed of a molecule when it hits an oncoming faster molecule? When it hits a receding one?
7. Why does our breath feel warm when we blow with an open mouth and cold when we blow through a smaller opening formed by our mouths?
8. How are the speeds of molecules of air affected as they separate from one another when escaping from the nozzle of a party balloon?
9. Why is Millie's hand not burned when she holds it above the escape valve of the pressure cooker (Figure 16.8)?

16.3 Radiation

10. How does radiant energy travel through empty space?
11. Relatively speaking, do high-frequency waves have long wavelengths or short wavelengths?
12. How does the peak frequency of radiant energy relate to the absolute temperature of the radiating source?
13. Cite a primary difference between waves of solar radiation and waves of terrestrial radiation.
14. What would have happened if the good emitters of radiant energy were not good absorbers?
15. What determines whether an object is a net absorber or a net emitter of radiant energy at a given time?
16. Which will normally warm faster—a black pot of cold water or a silvered pot of cold water? Which will cool faster?
17. Can an object be both a good absorber and a good reflector at the same time? Why, or why not?

18. Why do holes in pipes in a stack appear black?
19. What happens to the temperature of something that radiates energy without absorbing the same amount in return?
20. Why do some gardeners cover plants with a tarp at night in cold weather?

16.4 Newton's Law of Cooling

21. Which will undergo the greater rate of cooling—a red-hot poker in a warm oven or a red-hot poker in a cold room (or do both cool at the same rate)?
22. What is meant by *windchill*? What does a windchill of −20°C indicate?

16.5 The Greenhouse Effect

23. Why does an automobile with closed windows parked in the bright sun get very hot inside?
24. How does glass act like a one-way valve for a conventional greenhouse? Does the atmosphere similarly act as a one-way valve?

16.6 Climate Change

25. Distinguish between weather and climate.
26. What is the main reason for the hot surface of planet Venus?

16.7 Solar Power

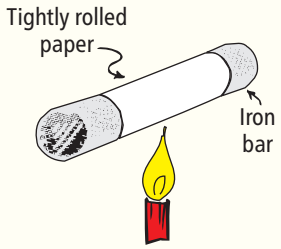
27. What source of energy powers a photoelectric cell?
28. What is meant by the solar constant?

16.8 Controlling Heat Transfer

29. Cite two ways in which double-sided windows inhibit heat transfer.
30. Cite three ways in which a vacuum bottle inhibits heat transfer.

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Wrap a piece of paper around a thick metal bar and place it in a flame. Notice that the paper will not catch fire. Can you explain this in terms of the conductivity of the metal bar? (Paper generally will not ignite until its temperature reaches about 230°C.)



32. Turn a common incandescent lamp on and off quickly while holding your hand a few inches from the bulb. You feel its heat, but, when you touch the bulb, it isn't hot. Explain this in terms of radiant energy and the bulb's transparency.
33. Text a letter to Grandma and share your knowledge about why air temperature is cooler on clear nights and warmer on cloudy nights. With reasoned examples, convince her that all things are continually emitting energy—and absorbing energy.

PLUG AND CHUG (EQUATION FAMILIARIZATION)

Quantity of heat: $Q = cm\Delta T$

34. Calculate the quantity of heat required to increase the temperature of 100 g of water from 0°C to 100°C. The specific heat capacity for water is 1 cal/g•°C.
35. Calculate the quantity of heat required to increase the temperature of a 300-g lead block by 40°C.

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

36. How much heat energy is needed to boil a liter of water initially at 0°C? The density of water is 1 g/cm^3, and its specific heat is 4190 J/kg•°C.
37. On a 5°C winter day, you place a pot of hot water initially at 95°C on your front porch. Five minutes later, you check the water's temperature and find it to be at 50°C. With this information, predict the approximate temperature of the water after another five minutes.
38. In your locality, the solar power per unit area reaching Earth's surface is 200 W/m^2, averaged over a 24-hour day. Also, on an average day, your power requirement is 2 kW. If you have an available 50 m^2 area in your household to install solar panels, what must be the efficiency of the solar panels so they can cover half of your daily power requirement?

39. A 450-g piece of solid copper metal at an initial temperature of 90°C is placed with a kilogram of water at 0°C in an insulated container. If no heat is exchanged with the surroundings, (a) determine the final temperature at thermal equilibrium, (b) describe the heat transfer between the copper and water. The specific heat of water is 4190 J/kg•°C and 390 J/kg•°C for copper.

THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

40. If you touch the metal sides inside of a hot oven with your bare hand, you're in trouble. But hold your hand briefly in the oven air and you're okay. What does this tell you about the relative conductivities of metal and air?
41. In desert regions that are hot in the daytime and cold at nighttime, the walls of houses are often made of mud. Why is it important that the mud walls be thick?
42. Why does a tiled floor feel colder than a wooden floor at the same temperature?
43. Thermal bottles usually have a layer of hollow space in them. How does this help in minimizing the heat loss/absorption?
44. If an object is surrounded by an insulator, does its temperature rise?
45. Why does soaking your body in 20°C-water feel colder than exposing your body to 20°C-air?
46. Why does touching a metal block feel colder than touching a wood block although both have the same temperature?
47. If you hold one end of a piece of metal against a piece of ice, the end in your hand soon becomes cold. Does cold flow from the ice to your hand? Explain.
48. Fiberglass in the walls of a home is an excellent insulator. Does the best fiberglass block heat transfer, or does it merely slow the flow?
49. Many tongues have been injured by licking a piece of metal on a very cold day. Why would no harm result if a clean piece of wood were licked on the same day?
50. Visit a snow-covered cemetery and note that the snow does not slope upward against the gravestones. Instead, it forms depressions, as shown. What is your explanation?

51. Why are mittens warmer than gloves on a cold day?
52. Wood conducts heat very poorly—it has a very low conductivity. Does wood still have a low conductivity if it is hot? Could you briefly and safely grasp the wooden handle of a pan from a hot oven with your bare hand? Why would it be a poor idea to do the same with an iron handle? Explain.
53. Does very-hot wood have a low conductivity—as in the stage of smoldering, red-hot coals? When a bare-footed firewalker quickly steps across a bed of red-hot wooden coals, does much heat conduct to the feet? Could this be safely done on red-hot iron coals? Explain. (*Caution:* Coals can stick to your feet, so—OUCH!—don't try it!)
54. Can heat spontaneously flow from an object with less internal energy to one with greater internal energy? Defend your answer.
55. Why is it incorrect to say that when a hot object warms a cold object, temperature flows between them?
56. Why is it incorrect to say that when a hot object warms a cold one, the increase in temperature of the cold one is equal to the decrease in temperature of the hot one? When is this statement correct?
57. When two cups of hot chocolate, one at 60°C and the other at 80°C, are poured into a bowl, why will the temperature of the mixture be 70°C?
58. A grass lawn continuously radiates energy while in contact with the relatively warm Earth. How does poor conductivity affect grass temperature relative to air temperature?
59. Why does smoke from a fire on the beach sweep landward during the day?
60. In a still room, smoke from a candle will sometimes rise only so far, not reaching the ceiling. Explain why.
61. While drinking iced tea, a friend remarks that cooling would be less if ice cubes were instead on the bottom of the drink. Do you agree or disagree? Explain.
62. A friend says that a single molecule released in an evacuated region will fall as fast as, and no differently from, a baseball released in the same region. Do you agree, or disagree? Why?
63. Air density is normally less above any point in air than below. In what sense does this provide an upward "migration window" in air? How does this affect the convection of faster-moving molecules in air?
64. What does the high specific heat of water have to do with convection currents in the air at the seashore?
65. If we warm a volume of air, it expands. Does it then follow that if we expand a volume of air, it warms? Explain.
66. Ceiling fans can make you feel cooler in a warm room. Do ceiling fans reduce room temperature?
67. To save energy, some ceiling fans are reversible so that they drive air down or pull it up. In which direction should the fan drive the air during winter? In which direction for summer?
68. A snow-making machine used for ski areas blows a mixture of compressed air and water through a nozzle. How can crystals of snow form when the mixture that is ejected from the nozzle is well above the freezing temperature of water?
69. Why does a good *emitter* of heat radiation appear black at room temperature?

70. Because energy is radiated by all objects, why can't we see them in the dark?
71. A number of bodies at different temperatures placed in a closed room share radiant energy and ultimately reach a common temperature. Would this thermal equilibrium be possible if good absorbers were poor emitters and poor absorbers were good emitters? Explain.
72. From the rules that a good absorber of radiation is a good radiator and a good reflector is a poor absorber, state a rule relating the reflecting and radiating properties of a surface.
73. The heat of volcanoes and natural hot springs comes from trace amounts of radioactive minerals in common rock in Earth's interior. Why isn't the same kind of rock at Earth's surface warm to the touch?
74. Even though metal is a good conductor, frost can be seen on parked cars in the early morning even when the air temperature is above freezing. Provide an explanation.
75. When there is morning frost on the grass in an open park, why is frost unlikely to be found on the ground directly beneath park benches?
76. Why will a chocolate bar melt faster on a hot sunny day when placed on the dashboard of a car than on the ground just outside of a car?
77. Why is whitewash sometimes applied to the glass of florists' greenhouses in the summer?
78. On a very cold sunny day, you wear a black coat and a transparent raincoat. Which coat should be worn on the outside for maximum warmth?
79. If the composition of the upper atmosphere were changed so that it permitted a greater amount of terrestrial radiation to escape, what effect would this have on Earth's climate?
80. Why is the insulation in an attic commonly thicker than the insulation in the walls of a house?
81. Make up a multiple-choice question that would test a classmate's understanding of the distinction between conduction and convection. Write another question in which the term *radiation* is the correct answer.

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

82. At noon on a mountaintop you're closer to the Sun than in a valley below. Why then is it not warmer on the mountaintop?
83. Discuss the purpose of a layer of copper or aluminum on the bottom of stainless steel cookware.
84. Why does an ice cube melt faster on a metal surface as compared to a wooden surface?
85. If you were caught in freezing weather with only your own body heat as a source, discuss whether you'd be warmer in a classic Arctic igloo or in a wooden shack.
86. Because gloves do not generate heat, how do they keep your hands warm on a cold day?
87. A friend says that the molecules in a mixture of gas in thermal equilibrium have the same average kinetic energy. Do you agree or disagree? Explain.
88. Your friend states that the average speed of all hydrogen and nitrogen molecules in a container of gas is the same. Do you agree or disagree, and why?
89. Why would you not expect all the molecules of air in your room to have the same average speed? Relate your discussion to mass and kinetic energy.
90. Why does helium released into the atmosphere eventually disappear into space?
91. Soaring birds and glider pilots can remain aloft for hours without expending power. Discuss why this is so.
92. Computers use a fan to force convection through the processing unit. Why is this important for a computer's performance?
93. Is it important to convert temperatures from the Celsius scale to the Kelvin scale when you calculate quantities of heat and specific heat capacity? Why or why not?
94. Suppose at a restaurant you are served coffee before you are ready to drink it. In order that it be hottest when you are ready for it, should you add cream to the coffee right away or wait until you are ready to drink it? Why?
95. If you wish to save fuel and you're going to leave your warm house for a half hour or so on a very cold day, should you turn your thermostat down a few degrees, turn it off altogether, or let it remain at your desired room temperature? Explain.
96. If you wish to save fuel and you're going to leave your cool house for a half hour or so on a very hot day, should you turn your air-conditioning thermostat up a bit, turn it off altogether, or let it remain at your desired room temperature? Explain.
97. As more energy from fossil fuels and other fuels is released on Earth, the overall temperature of Earth tends to rise. Discuss how temperature equilibrium explains why Earth's temperature cannot rise indefinitely.
98. In terms of input and output of energy, discuss the function of a photovoltaic cell.
99. Discuss why a one-square foot hole in a ceiling admitting sunlight when the Sun if overhead is like having a 100-W bulb in the room. Assume the atmosphere reduces solar energy at Earth's surface as 1.0 kW/m^2.
100. Come up with and discuss your own examples that illustrate the adage, "You can never change only one thing".
101. Discuss whether billions of tons of any kind of molecules be put in Earth's atmosphere without changing it.
102. In what way did the Industrial Era contribute to climate change? Discuss better alternatives to fossil fuels that don't create heat and smoke.
103. Discuss the correlation between a growing human population and climate change.

CHAPTER SIXTEEN Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. In practice, a good insulator
   (a) stops heat flow.
   (b) slows heat flow.
   (c) speeds negative heat flow.
   (d) All of the above
2. A water-filled paper cup held in a flame will not catch fire because
   (a) the inside of the paper is wet.
   (b) water is an excellent conductor of heat.
   (c) paper is a poor conductor of heat.
   (d) the paper cup cannot become appreciably hotter than the water it contains.
3. Thermal convection is linked mostly to
   (a) radiant energy.
   (b) fluids.
   (c) insulators.
   (d) All of these
4. A region of expanding air tends to
   (a) cool.
   (b) warm.
   (c) Both of the these
   (d) Neither of these
5. Which of these electromagnetic waves has the lowest frequency?
   (a) Infrared
   (b) Visible
   (c) Ultraviolet
   (d) Gamma rays
6. Compared with terrestrial radiation, the radiation from the Sun has
   (a) a longer wavelength.
   (b) a lower frequency.
   (c) both a longer wavelength and a lower frequency.
   (d) neither a longer wavelength nor a lower frequency
7. The pupils of your eyes
   (a) are black and therefore are net absorbers of light.
   (b) are net absorbers of light and therefore appear black.
   (c) block light from within from emerging.
   (d) All of the above
8. Glass in a florist's greenhouse acts as a one-way valve in that it
   (a) lets light energy flow only in one direction.
   (b) cuts off unwanted radiation.
   (c) allows high-frequency waves in and blocks low-frequency waves from exiting.
   (d) is transparent only to lower-frequency waves.
9. Every equation in physics reminds us of a lesson: We can never change only one thing. When we change the composition of the atmosphere we likely also change
   (a) its transparency.
   (b) its reflectivity.
   (c) Earth's climate.
   (d) All of the above
10. To save energy while you leave your warm house for several hours on a cold day, turn the thermostat
    (a) down.
    (b) up.
    (c) to room temperature.
    (d) off.

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (b): If a substance were a perfect insulator it would stop the heat flow. But in practice, it doesn't. A good insulator slows the flow of energy. **2. (d):** Most of the heat of the flame is transferred to the water, slowing the amount that gets to the paper. Water absorbs much heat for a corresponding increase in temperature. **3. (b):** Convection is the flow of heated or cooled material from one location to another. Fluids, by definition, flow. **4. (a):** Molecules in a region of expanding air collide more often with receding molecules than with approaching ones. Hence they slow upon collision with other molecules. Slower molecules means cooler air. **5. (a):** Low frequency vibrations produce long-wavelength waves. The longest waves listed are infrared. **6. (d):** In accord with the relation $f \sim 7$, the Sun with its enormously higher temperature has the higher frequency of radiation, which also corresponds to a long wavelength. None of the choices state this. **7. (b):** Pupils don't "block" light, so (c) is incorrect. This is a cause-and-effect question. Black doesn't cause absorption, rather absorption results in black. Choice (b) says it well. **8. (c):** A valve controls flow, and in this case the flow is of energy as stated in choice (c) where the energy of incoming light waves transfers to heat waves, which are low-frequency waves. The other choices are incorrect. **9. (d):** Equations tell us you can't do only ONE thing. Change something on one side of the equation changes something on the other side. Transparency, reflectivity, and climate all change with a changing atmosphere. So choice (d) is the correct answer. **10. (d):** Energy is required to maintain a warm home because unavoidable and continuous leaking of heat. Think of keeping a glass of water full by placing it beneath a stream of running water. Less water would be used if it drained empty, then filled, than in keeping it filled all the while. Likewise with heat. You replace lost heat only once after you turn off the heat.

CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

17 Change of Phase

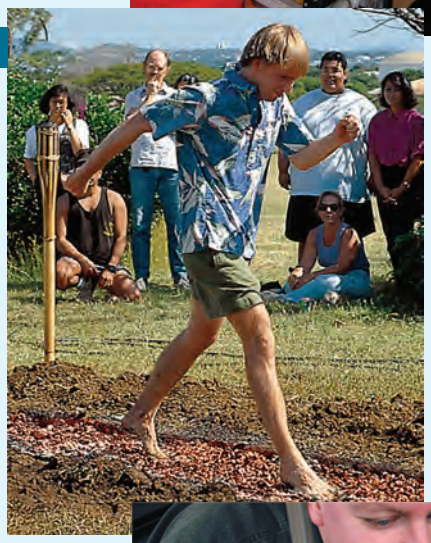
17.1 **Evaporation**

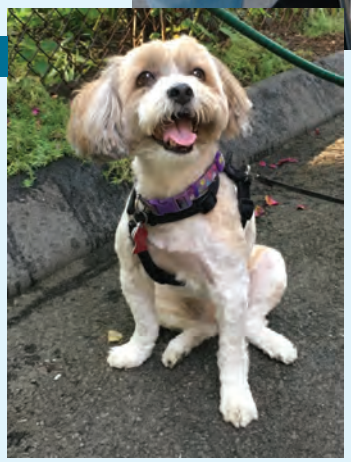
17.2 **Condensation**
- Condensation in the Atmosphere
- Fog and Clouds

17.3 **Boiling**
- Geysers
- Boiling Is a Cooling Process
- Boiling and Freezing at the Same Time

17.4 **Melting and Freezing**
- Regelation

17.5 **Energy and Changes of Phase**





1 Ron Hipschman at the Exploratorium removes a piece of ice from the Water Freezer exhibit. When room-temperature water was placed in the chamber and a vacuum was drawn, rapid evaporation cooled the water to ice, as we shall investigate in Figure 17.14. **2** John Suchocki walks barefoot without harm on hot coals (stepping quickly!). **3** Dean Baird demonstrates regelation, which is featured in Figure 17.17. **4** Lacking sweat glands, a dog cools itself by panting, where evaporation occurs in both the mouth and the bronchial tract.

Ron Hipschman has been interested in science since early childhood. From the time he started playing with a chemistry set, to being an avid fan of Mr. Wizard (Don Herbert) on television in the 1960s, he considered himself a science geek. As a teen he was involved with the Junior Academy at the California Academy of Sciences in San Francisco and got his first job at the Academy's Morrison Planetarium.

An early computer enthusiast, Ron attended the famous Homebrew Computer Club that met at the Stanford Linear Accelerator Center in the early 70s. The computers we use today originated with the visions and dreams of the people at Homebrew, including Steve Wozniak and Steve Jobs! Ron soldered together his first computer with the encouragement of his fellow Homebrewers in the mid-70s.

As a senior in high school in 1971, he landed his dream job at the newly opened Exploratorium, even before earning a BA in physics and an MA in physical science from San Francisco State University. He worked many years alongside two extraordinary physicists, Exploratorium founder Frank Oppenheimer (page 427) and Paul Doherty (page 105). Ron is today the longest-serving scientist at the Exploratorium. In his almost 50 years at the museum, Ron has worn many hats: exhibit developer, author of two of the three "cookbooks" (manuals for building Exploratorium exhibits), and a frequent writer for the Exploratorium magazine.

In 1993, Ron established the Exploratorium's presence on the World Wide Web, making it among the first 600 websites in the world. In 1996, he spearheaded the museum's experiments with webcasting. In Aruba in 1998, the Exploratorium was the first organization to live webcast a total solar eclipse to the world. Ron contributed technical expertise and hosted the show. Since then he's hosted many webcasts, both locally and from locations as far away as the South Pole, the location of his portrait. (Interestingly, the South Pole marker seen next to Ron needs to be moved about 10 meters every year due to ice movement).

In addition to working at the museum, Ron taught physics at San Francisco State for 16 years, and he created laser shows for 20 years at the Morrison Planetarium. Among his current roles at the Exploratorium, he takes control of a raft of environmental sensors used in the museum's environmental programs, using those data to produce visualizations for a large video wall. His latest passion is producing and presenting two popular series of talks—"Full Spectrum Science" and "Everything Matters: Tales from the Periodic Table." No doubt about it: Ron Hipschman is a very busy man—and very much appreciated at the world's premier hands-on science museum.

Matter around us exists in four common *phases* (or *states*). Ice, for example, is the *solid* phase of water. Add energy, and you add motion to the rigid molecular structure, which breaks down to form H_2O in the *liquid* phase, water. Add more energy and the liquid changes to the gaseous phase, which is invisible water vapor. Add still more energy and the molecules break apart into ions and electrons, resulting in the plasma phase, not as common or recognizable in our everyday lives as the solid, liquid, and gaseous phases. The phase of matter depends on its temperature and the pressure that is exerted on it. Changes of phase almost always require a transfer of energy.

When water turns into a gas, we call it water vapor.

17.1 Evaporation

Water in an open pan will eventually evaporate, or dry up. The liquid that disappears becomes water vapor in the air. **Evaporation** is the change of phase from liquid to gas that occurs at the surface of a liquid.

The temperature of any substance is related to the average kinetic energy of its particles. Molecules in liquid water have a wide variety of speeds, moving about in all directions and bumping against one another. At any moment, some move at very high speeds while others barely move at all. In the next moment, the slowest molecule may become the fastest due to molecular collisions. Some gain kinetic energy while others lose kinetic energy. Molecules at the surface that gain kinetic energy by being bumped from below may have enough energy to break

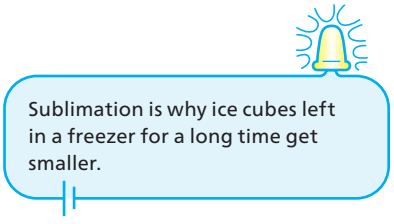
Pearson eText **ADDITIONAL RESOURCES**
Videos
Screencasts

Nearly 90% of Earth's atmospheric moisture comes from evaporation of its oceans, lakes, and rivers. The rest comes from plant transpiration.

FIGURE 17.1
When wet, the cloth covering on the sides of Estefania's canteen promotes cooling.

FIGURE 17.2
With sweat glands only between her toes, Daisy cools by panting.

FIGURE 17.3
Pigs, having no sweat glands, wallow in the mud to cool themselves.



free from the liquid. They can leave the surface and escape into the air space above the liquid. In this way, they become molecules of vapor.

The increased kinetic energy of molecules bumped hard enough to break free from the liquid comes from molecules that remain in the liquid. This is "billiard-ball physics": When balls bump into one another and some gain kinetic energy, others lose the same amount of kinetic energy. Molecules about to be propelled out of the liquid are the gainers, while the losers of energy remain in the liquid. Thus the average kinetic energy of the molecules that remain in the liquid is lowered—evaporation is a cooling process. Interestingly, the fast molecules that break free from the surface are slowed as they fly away due to their attraction to the surface. So the water is cooled by evaporation and the air above is correspondingly warmed.

The canteen shown in Figure 17.1 keeps cool because of evaporation when the cloth that covers the sides is kept wet. As the faster-moving water molecules break free from the cloth, the temperature of the cloth decreases. Then heat is transferred from the metal canteen to the cool wet cloth by conduction; in turn, heat from the water inside is transferred to the now cooler metal. So energy is transferred from the water in the canteen to the air outside. In this way, the water is cooled appreciably below the air temperature outside.

The cooling effect of evaporation is strikingly evident when some alcohol is applied to your body. The alcohol evaporates very rapidly, cooling the surface of your body quickly. The more rapid the evaporation, the faster the cooling.

When our bodies overheat, our sweat glands produce perspiration. This is part of nature's thermostat, as the evaporation of perspiration cools us and helps us to maintain a stable body temperature. Many animals have very few sweat glands or none at all and must cool themselves by other means (Figures 17.2 and 17.3).

An intriguing toy that nicely employs the processes of evaporation and condensation is the dipping bird, sometime called "dunking bird," or "drinking bird," which mimics the motions of a bird drinking from a water source.

The rate of evaporation is greater at higher temperatures because there is a greater proportion of molecules with sufficient kinetic energy to escape the liquid. Water evaporates at lower temperatures, too, but at a lower rate. A puddle of water, for example, may slowly evaporate to dryness on a cool day.

Even frozen water "evaporates." This form of evaporation, in which molecules are bumped directly from a solid (ice or snow) to a gaseous phase, bypassing the liquid phase, is called **sublimation.** Because water molecules are so tightly held

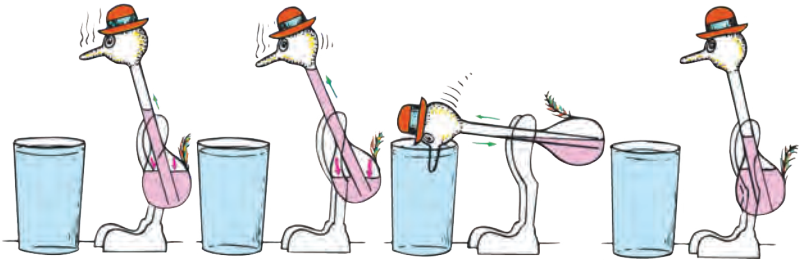


FIGURE 17.4
The toy drinking bird operates by the evaporation of a solvent (methylene chloride) inside its body and by the evaporation of water from the outer surface of its head. The lower body contains the liquid solvent, which evaporates rapidly at room temperature. (a) Evaporation of water from the outside of its head lowers its temperature inside as well. This causes condensation of some of the solvent vapor inside the head, which reduces vapor pressure there. (b) The relatively greater vapor pressure in the lower body forces liquid upward. When the liquid is high enough, (c) the bird pivots forward until the bottom of the tube no longer is submerged in the liquid, allowing liquid in the tube to drain to the lower body. Each pivot wets the felt surface of the beak and head, and (d) the cycle is repeated.

in the solid phase, frozen water does not evaporate (sublime) as readily as liquid water. Sublimation, however, does account for the loss of significant portions of snow and ice, and it is especially high on sunny days in dry climates.

CHECK POINT

Would evaporation be a cooling process if molecules of every speed had an equal chance to escape from the liquid surface?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

No. If molecules of all speeds escaped equally easily from the surface, the molecules left behind would have the same range of speeds as before any escaped, and there would be no change in the liquid's temperature. When only the faster molecules can break free, those that remain are slower and the liquid becomes cooler.

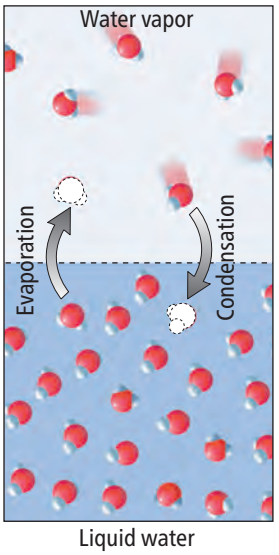


FIGURE 17.5
The exchange of molecules at the interface between liquid and gaseous water.

17.2 Condensation

The opposite of evaporation is **condensation**—the changing of a gas to a liquid. When gas molecules near the surface of a liquid are attracted to the liquid, they strike the surface with increased kinetic energy and become part of the liquid. In collisions with low-energy molecules in the liquid, excess kinetic energy is shared with the liquid, increasing the liquid temperature. So whereas evaporation is a cooling process, condensation is a warming process.

A dramatic example of the warming that results from condensation is the energy released by steam when it condenses—a painful experience if it condenses on you. That's why a steam burn is much more damaging than a burn from boiling water at the same temperature; the steam releases considerable energy when it condenses to a liquid and wets the skin. This energy release by condensation is utilized in steam-heating systems.

Steam is water vapor at a high temperature, usually 100°C or hotter. Cooler water vapor also releases energy when it condenses. In taking a shower, for example, you're warmed by the condensation of vapor in the shower stall—even vapor from a cold shower—if you remain in the moist shower area. You quickly sense the difference when you step outside. Away from the moisture, net evaporation takes place quickly and you feel chilled. But, if you remain in the shower stall, even with the water turned off, the warming effect of condensation counteracts the cooling effect of evaporation. If as much moisture condenses as evaporates, you feel no change in body temperature. If condensation exceeds evaporation, you are warmed. If evaporation exceeds condensation, you are cooled. So now you know why you can dry yourself with a towel much more comfortably if you remain in the shower stall. To dry yourself thoroughly, you can finish the job in a less moist area.

Spend a July afternoon in dry Tucson or Phoenix, where evaporation is appreciably greater than condensation. The result of this pronounced evaporation is a much cooler feeling than you would experience in a same-temperature July afternoon in New York City or New Orleans. In these humid locations, condensation noticeably counteracts evaporation, and you feel the warming effect as vapor in the air condenses on your skin. You are literally being bombarded by the impact of H_2O molecules in the air slamming into you. Put more mildly, you are warmed by the condensation of vapor in the air on your skin.

FIGURE 17.6
Internal energy is released by steam when it condenses inside the "radiator."

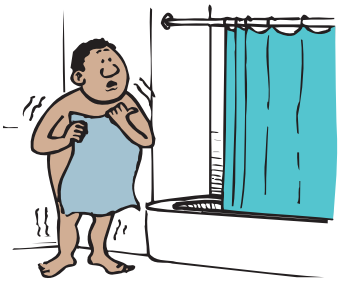


FIGURE 17.7
If you're chilled outside the shower stall, step back inside and be warmed by the condensation of the excess water vapor.

CHECK POINT

1. **Are evaporation and condensation opposite processes?**
2. **If the water level in a dish of water remains unchanged from one day to the next, can you conclude that no evaporation or condensation has occurred?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Yes, and the energy changes are the same in either direction.
2. Not at all, because a lot of activity is taking place at the molecular level. Both evaporation and condensation occur continuously. The constant water level simply indicates equal rates of both, not that nothing's happening. When just as many molecules evaporate as condense, no *net* evaporation or condensation occurs. The two processes cancel each other.

Condensation in the Atmosphere

There is always some water vapor in the air. A measure of the amount of this water vapor is called *humidity* (mass of water per volume of air). Weather reports often use the term *relative humidity*—the ratio of the amount of water vapor currently in the air at a given temperature to the greatest amount of water vapor the air can contain at that temperature.[1]

Air that contains as much vapor as it can is saturated. Saturation occurs when the air temperature drops and water-vapor molecules in the air begin condensing. Water molecules tend to stick together. Because of their normally high average speeds in air, however, most water molecules do not stick together when they collide. Instead, these fast-moving molecules bounce back when they collide and therefore remain in the gaseous phase. Some water molecules move more slowly than average, though, and these slow ones are more likely to stick to one another upon collision (Figure 17.8). (This can be understood by thinking of a fly making a grazing contact with sticky flypaper. At a high speed, the fly has enough momentum and energy to rebound from the sticky surface into the air without sticking, but at a low speed, it is more likely to get stuck.) So slow-moving water molecules are the ones most likely to condense and to form droplets of water in saturated air. Because lower air temperatures are characterized by slower-moving molecules, saturation and condensation are more likely to occur in cool air than in warm air. Warm air can contain more water vapor than cold air.

fyi

- Does humidity make us feel warmer or colder—or both? If you're already cold, more humidity makes you feel colder. If you're already hot, more humidity makes you feel hotter. At pleasant temperatures, a little humidity makes us more comfortable.

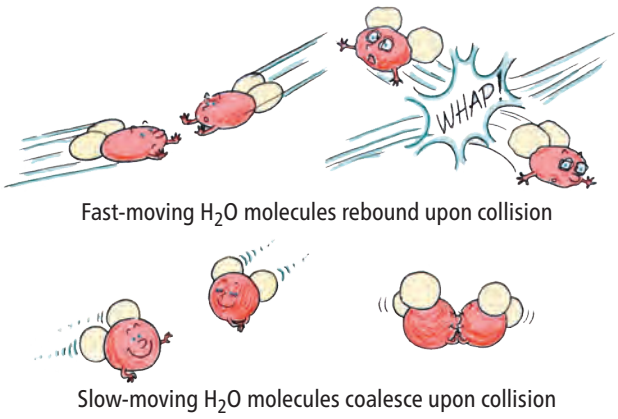


FIGURE 17.8
Condensation of water vapor.

CHECK POINT

Why does dew form on the surface of a cold soft-drink can?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Water vapor in the warm air is chilled when it makes contact with the cold can. What is the fate of chilled water molecules? They are slower when they collide, and they stick. This is condensation, which is why the surface of a cold can is wet.

Clouds are normally denser than air. So why don't clouds fall from the sky? The answer is that clouds *do* fall! A stable cloud falls as fast as the upwelling of air beneath it, so it remains stationary. If the cloud falls anyway, we call it fog.

[1]Relative humidity is a good indicator of comfort. For most people, conditions are ideal when the temperature is about 20°C and the relative humidity is between 50% and 60%. When the relative humidity is higher, moist air feels "muggy" as condensation counteracts the evaporation of perspiration.

Fog and Clouds

Warm air rises. As it rises, it expands. As it expands, it chills. As the air chills, water-vapor molecules too small to be visible are slowed. Lower-speed molecular collisions result in water molecules sticking together. Water molecules combine with tiny particles of dust, salt, and smoke in the air to form cloud droplets that grow and develop into clouds. If these particles are not present, we can stimulate cloud formation by "seeding" the air with appropriate particles or ions.

Warm breezes blow over the ocean and become moist. When the moist air moves from warmer to cooler waters or from warm water to cool land, it chills. As it chills, water-vapor molecules begin sticking rather than bouncing off one another. Condensation takes place near ground level, and we have fog. The difference between fog and a cloud is basically altitude. Fog is a cloud that forms near the ground. Flying through a cloud is much like driving through fog. Check the Web to learn about different kinds of fog.

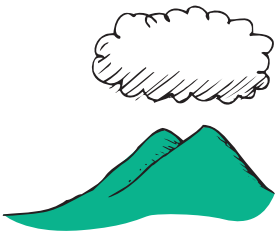


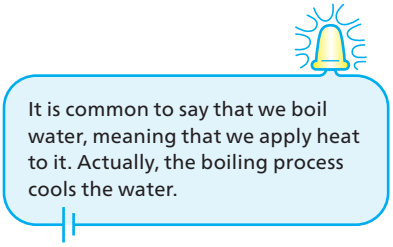
FIGURE 17.9
Why is it common for clouds to form where there are updrafts of warm moist air?

CHECK POINT

1. **Why is a packet of warmed air less dense than a same-mass packet of cooler air?**
2. **In the absence of wind, why does warmed air rise vertically?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Warmed air is less dense because faster-moving molecules occupy more space than the slower-moving molecules of cooler air.
2. Buoyancy acts counter to gravity, upward. Just as a piece of wood submerged in water rises vertically, so does warm air.



17.3 Boiling

Under the right conditions, evaporation can take place beneath the surface of a liquid, forming bubbles of vapor that are buoyed to the surface, where they escape. This change of phase *throughout* a liquid rather than only at the surface is called **boiling.** Bubbles in the liquid can form only when the pressure of the vapor within the bubbles is great enough to resist the pressure of the surrounding liquid. If the vapor pressure is not great enough, the surrounding pressure will collapse any bubbles that tend to form. At temperatures below the boiling point, the vapor pressure in bubbles is not great enough, so bubbles do not form until the boiling point is reached. At this temperature—100°C for water at atmospheric pressure—molecules are energetic enough to exert a vapor pressure as great as the pressure of the surrounding water (which is due mainly to atmospheric pressure).

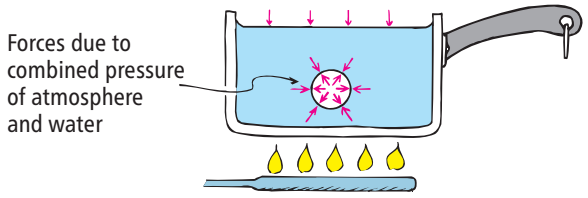


FIGURE 17.10
The motion of water-vapor molecules in the bubble of steam (much enlarged) creates a gas pressure (called the *vapor pressure*) that counteracts the atmospheric and water pressure against the bubble.

If the pressure is increased, the molecules in the vapor must move faster to exert enough pressure to keep the bubble from collapsing. Extra pressure can be provided either by going deeper below the surface of the liquid (as in geysers) or by increasing the air pressure above the liquid's surface—which is how a pressure cooker works. A pressure cooker has a tight-fitting lid that does not allow vapor to escape until it reaches a certain pressure greater than normal air pressure. As the evaporating vapor builds up inside the sealed pressure cooker, the pressure on the surface of the liquid increases, which at first prevents boiling.

FIGURE 17.11
The tight lid of a pressure cooker holds pressurized water vapor against the water's surface, which inhibits boiling. Water therefore boils at a temperature higher than 100°C.

Atop mountains of altitude 4500 meters (15,000 ft) a mountaineer can sip a cup of boiling tea without any danger of burning the mouth!

Bubbles that would normally form are crushed. Continued heating increases the temperature beyond 100°C. Boiling does not occur until the vapor pressure within the bubbles overcomes the increased pressure on the water. The boiling point is raised. Conversely, lowered pressure (as at high altitudes) decreases the boiling point of the liquid. So we see that boiling depends not only on temperature but on pressure as well.

At high altitudes, water boils at a lower temperature. For example, in Denver, Colorado, the Mile-High City, water boils at 95°C instead of at the 100°C boiling temperature characteristic at sea level. If you try to cook food in boiling water of a lower temperature, you must wait a longer time for proper cooking. A 3-minute boiled egg in Denver is yucky. If the temperature of the boiling water is too low, food will not cook at all. It is important to note that it is the high temperature of the water that cooks the food, not the boiling process itself.

CHECK POINT

1. **Does evaporation occur beneath the surface of water as it boils?**
2. **Which cooks food in boiling water, high temperature or high pressure?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Yes, as evidenced by the bubbles that form. And of course, at the surface also.
2. High temperature cooks food, not the high pressure that produces high-temperature water.

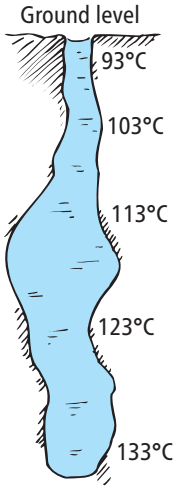


FIGURE 17.12
A geyser of the Old Faithful type.

Geysers

A geyser is a periodically erupting natural pressure cooker. It consists of a long, narrow, vertical crevice into which underground streams seep (Figure 17.12). The column of water is heated by volcanic heat below to temperatures exceeding 100°C. This can happen because the relatively deep vertical column of water exerts pressure on the deeper water, thereby increasing the boiling point. The narrowness of the shaft shuts off convection currents, which allows the deeper portions to become considerably hotter than the water surface. Water at the surface is lower than 100°C, but the water temperature below, where it is being heated, is higher than 100°C, high enough to permit boiling before the water at the top reaches the boiling point. Boiling therefore begins near the bottom, where the rising bubbles push out the column of water above, and the eruption starts. As the water gushes out, the pressure on the remaining water is reduced. It then boils rapidly and erupts with great force. When the eruption subsides, the crevices fill with new water and the cycle repeats.

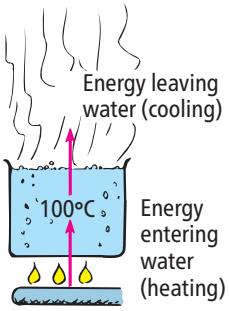


FIGURE 17.13
Heating warms the water, and boiling cools it.

Boiling Is a Cooling Process

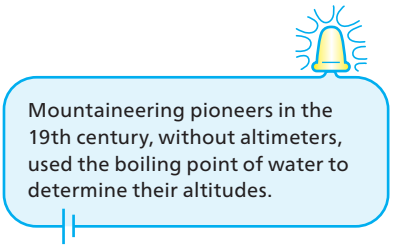
Evaporation is a cooling process. So is boiling. At first thought, this may seem surprising—perhaps because we usually associate boiling with heating. But heating water is one thing; boiling is another. When 100°C water at atmospheric pressure is boiling, its temperature remains constant. That means it cools as fast as it warms. By what mechanism? By boiling. If cooling didn't take place, continued input of energy to a pot of boiling water would result in a continued increase in temperature. As we said, the reason a pressure cooker reaches higher temperatures is because it prevents normal boiling, which, in effect, prevents cooling.

CHECK POINT

Since boiling is a cooling process, would it be a good idea to cool your hot and sticky hands by dipping them into boiling water?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

No, no, no! When we say that boiling is a cooling process, we mean that the water (not your hands!) is being cooled relative to the higher temperature it would attain otherwise. Because of cooling, it remains at 100°C instead of getting hotter. A dip in 100°C water would be a big ouch!



Mountaineering pioneers in the 19th century, without altimeters, used the boiling point of water to determine their altitudes.

Boiling and Freezing at the Same Time

We usually boil water by applying heat. But we can also boil water by reducing pressure. We can dramatically show the cooling effect of evaporation and boiling when room-temperature water is placed in a vacuum jar (Figure 17.14). If the pressure in the jar is slowly reduced by a vacuum pump, the water will start to boil. The boiling process removes heat from the water left in the dish, which cools to a lower temperature. As the pressure is further reduced, more and more of the molecules have enough speed to boil away. Continued boiling results in a lowering of the temperature until the freezing point of approximately 0°C is reached. Continued cooling by boiling causes ice to form over the surface of the bubbling water. Boiling and freezing are taking place at the same time! This process is displayed at the exhibit Water Freezer at the San Francisco Exploratorium (Figure 17.15). After a dish of room-temperature water is placed into an air-tight enclosure, a vacuum is drawn. With reducing pressure in the enclosure, the water comes to a boil, rapidly cooling to produce ice, to the delight of museum onlookers.

If you spray some drops of coffee into a vacuum chamber, they, too, will boil until they freeze. Even after they are frozen, the water molecules will continue to evaporate into the vacuum until little crystals of coffee solids are left. This is how freeze-dried coffee is made. The low temperature of this process tends to keep the chemical structure of coffee solids from changing. When hot water is added, much of the original flavor of the coffee is restored. Boiling really is a cooling process!

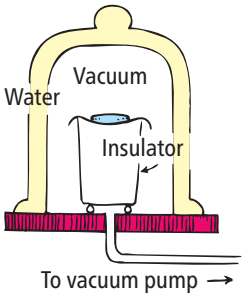


FIGURE 17.14
Apparatus to demonstrate that water will freeze and boil at the same time in a vacuum. A gram or two of water is placed in a dish that is insulated from the base by a polystyrene cup.

FIGURE 17.15
Ron Hipschman shows cold ice, frozen bubbles and all—the result of boiling and freezing of a dish of room-temperature water when air pressure in the enclosure is reduced.

CHECK POINT

1. **Which contributes more to boiling, lowered temperature or pressure?**
2. **When will water boil at a temperature lower than 100°C? Higher than 100°C?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Lowered pressure.
2. Water boils at less than 100°C when air pressure on its surface is reduced, and it boils at higher than 100°C when pressure is increased.

17.4 Melting and Freezing

Suppose you are holding hands with someone and both of you start jumping around randomly. The more violently you jump, the more difficult it becomes to hold hands. If you were to jump violently enough, holding hands would be impossible. Something like this happens to the molecules of a solid when it is heated. As heat is absorbed, the molecules vibrate more and more violently in a

less ordered manner. If enough heat is absorbed, the attractive forces between the molecules will no longer be able to hold them together. The solid melts.

Freezing is the reverse of this process. Substances freeze at exactly the same temperature as they melt. As energy is withdrawn from a liquid, molecular motion diminishes until finally the molecules, on the average, are moving slowly enough so that the attractive forces between them are able to cause cohesion. The molecules then vibrate about fixed positions and form a solid.

A pure substance has a definite melting or freezing point at any given pressure. The addition of any impurities will lower this temperature. Hence we can use the freezing or melting point as an indicator of the purity of a substance. For example, at atmospheric pressure, water freezes at 0°C—unless such substances as sugar or salt are dissolved in it. Then the freezing point is lower. In the case of salt in water, chlorine ions grab electrons from the hydrogen atoms in H_2O and impede crystal formation. The result of this interference by "foreign" ions is that slower motion is required for the formation of the six-sided ice-crystal structures. As ice crystals form, the interference is intensified because the proportion of "foreign" molecules or ions among nonfused water molecules increases. Connections become more and more difficult. Only when the water molecules move slowly enough for attractive forces to play an unusually large part in the process can freezing be completed. The ice first formed is almost always pure H_2O.

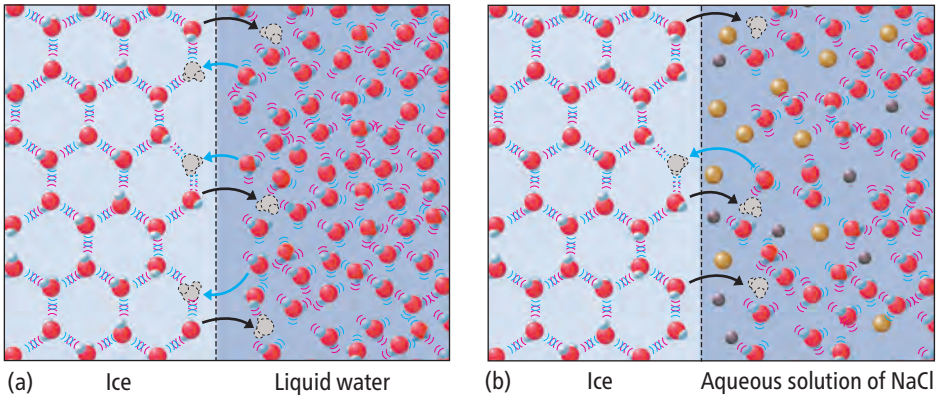


FIGURE 17.16
(a) In a mixture of ice and liquid water at 0°C, the number of molecules entering the solid phase is equal to the number entering the liquid phase. (b) Adding salt decreases the number of molecules entering the solid phase because of fewer liquid molecules at the interface.

CHECK POINT

Are melting and freezing opposite processes?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes, and the temperatures at which each occur are the same!

Regelation

Because H_2O molecules form open structures in the solid phase, the application of pressure can cause ice to melt. The crystals are simply crushed to the liquid phase. (The temperature of the melting point is only slightly lowered, by 0.007°C for each additional atmosphere of added pressure.) When the pressure is removed, molecules crystallize and refreezing occurs. This phenomenon of melting under pressure and freezing again when the pressure is reduced is called **regelation.** It is one of the properties of water that distinguishes it from other materials.

Regelation is nicely illustrated in Figure 17.17 (and in the third chapter-opening photo). A fine copper wire with weights suspended from its ends is hung over a block of ice.[2] The wire will slowly cut through the ice, but its track will be left full of ice. So the wire and the weights will fall to the floor, leaving the ice a solid block.

Making snowballs is a good example of regelation. When we compress the snow with our hands, we cause a slight melting of the ice crystals; when the pressure is removed, refreezing occurs and binds the snow together. Making snowballs is difficult in very cold weather because the pressure we can apply is not great enough to melt the snow.

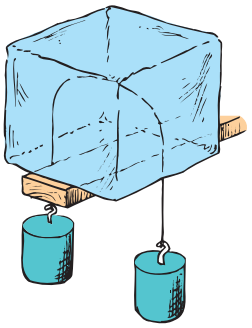


FIGURE 17.17
Regelation. The wire gradually passes through the ice block without cutting it in half.

CHECK POINT

Does regelation in ice involve a change of phase?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes. Pressure on ice crystals can crush them into a liquid. When pressure is removed, the liquid reforms to crystals in the solid phase.

17.5 Energy and Changes of Phase

If we continually add heat to a solid or a liquid, the solid or liquid will eventually change phase. A solid will liquefy, and a liquid will vaporize. Energy input is required for both liquefaction of a solid and vaporization of a liquid. Conversely, energy must be extracted from a substance to change its phase in the direction from gas to liquid to solid (Figure 17.18).

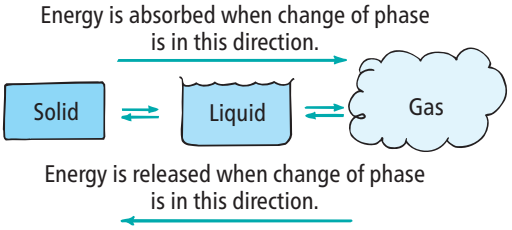

Energy is absorbed when change of phase is in this direction.
Solid
Liquid
Gas
Energy is released when change of phase is in this direction.

FIGURE 17.18
Energy changes with change of phase.

The cooling cycle of a refrigerator nicely employs the concepts shown in Figure 17.18. A refrigerator is a **heat pump** that "pumps" heat from a cold environment to a warm one. This is accomplished by a liquid that has a low boiling point, the refrigerant, which is pumped into the cooling unit, where it turns into a gas. When the phase changes from liquid to gas, heat is drawn from the interior where the food is. The gas, with its added energy, is directed outside to condensation coils. At the coils, heat is released into the outside air as the gas condenses to the liquid phase again. The next time you're near a refrigerator, place your hand near the condenser coils in the rear, or at the bottom, and you'll feel the air that has been warmed by the energy extracted from inside.

A refrigerator is a heat pump. It transfers heat out of a cold environment and into a warm environment. An air conditioner is also a heat pump, with the "cold" environment being indoors and the "warm" environment being outdoors. In both cases, external energy operates the device.

Heat pumps of various designs are increasingly being utilized to heat (and cool) homes. They typically use less energy than fossil fuel to heat a home. Heat pumps function like a standard refrigerator. Whereas a refrigerator unavoidably warms a room by removing heat from the food inside and depositing it at its condensation coils, heat pumps warm a room *deliberately*. Instead of extracting heat from food, they can extract heat from water that is pumped in from nearby underground pipes.[3] The water underground is relatively warm. Subsoil

[2]Changes of phase are occurring as the ice melts and the water refreezes. Energy is needed for these changes. When the water immediately above the wire refreezes, it gives up energy. How much? Sufficient to melt an equal amount of ice immediately under the wire. This energy must be conducted through the thickness of the wire. Hence, this demonstration requires that the wire be an excellent conductor of heat. String, for example, won't do.

[3]Depending on the amount of heat needed, about 200 to 500 meters of piping is normally placed outside the home in trenches about 1.0 to 1.8 meters beneath the ground surface. The configuration of the piping may be horizontal loops or deeper-reaching vertical U-shapes.

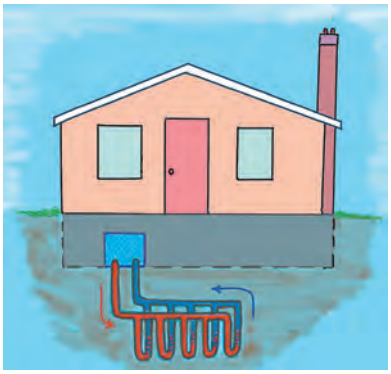


FIGURE 17.19
A geothermal heat pump in summer cools a home by transferring heat from the home into the ground. At the flip of a switch in winter (red and blue arrows reverse direction) heat is pulled from the ground into the home.

temperatures depend on latitude. In the Midwest and the Central Plains, subsoil temperature below a meter deep is about 13°C (55°F) year-round—warmer than the air in wintertime. Underground pipes outside the home carry 13°C water to a heat pump inside the home. The vaporized refrigerant is then pumped to condensation coils, where it condenses and gives off heat to warm the home. The cooled water is returned to the ground outside, where it warms to ground temperature and repeats the cycle.

In summer, the process can be reversed, turning the heat pump into a cooler. An air conditioner is itself a heat pump. Employing the same principles, it simply pumps heat energy from the cooler inside of a home to the warmer outside on a summer day. In a crowded city, the effect of thousands of air conditioners operating at once can be to elevate the outdoor temperature somewhat.

So we see that a solid must absorb energy to melt, and a liquid must absorb energy to vaporize. Conversely, a gas must release energy to liquefy, and a liquid must release energy to solidify.

CHECK POINT

1. **Is energy necessarily absorbed or released when a substance undergoes phase changes?**
2. **When H_2O in the vapor phase condenses, is the surrounding air warmed or cooled?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Yes, always. The directions of phase changes and their corresponding absorptions and releases are shown in Figure 17.18.
2. The change of phase is from vapor to liquid, which releases energy (see Figure 17.18), so the surrounding air is warmed. Figures 17.5 and 17.8 illustrate this. The H_2O molecules that condense from the air are the slower ones. Their removal raises the average kinetic energy of the remaining molecules—hence the warming. This goes hand in hand with water cooling when faster-moving molecules evaporate—where the ones that remain in the liquid phase have a lowered average kinetic energy.

Heat of fusion is either the energy needed to separate molecules from the solid phase or the energy released when bonds form in a liquid that change it to the solid phase.

Let's look, in particular, at the changes of phase that occur in water. To make the numbers simple, consider a 1-g piece of ice at a temperature of −50°C in a closed container that is placed on a stove to heat. Follow this process along with the graph of Figure 17.20. A thermometer in the container reveals a slow increase in temperature up to 0°C. Then an amazing thing happens. The temperature remains at 0°C even though heat input continues. Rather than getting warmer, the ice begins to melt. In order for the whole gram of ice to melt, 80 calories (335 joules) of energy is absorbed by the ice, not even raising its temperature a fraction of a degree. Only when all the ice melts does each additional calorie (4.19 joules) absorbed by the water increase its temperature by 1°C until the boiling temperature, 100°C, is reached. Again, as energy is added, the temperature remains constant while more and more of the gram of water is boiled away and becomes steam. The water must absorb 540 calories (2260 joules) of heat energy to vaporize the whole gram. Finally, when all the water has become steam at 100°C, the temperature begins to rise once more. It continues to rise as long as energy is added. Again, this process is graphed in Figure 17.20.

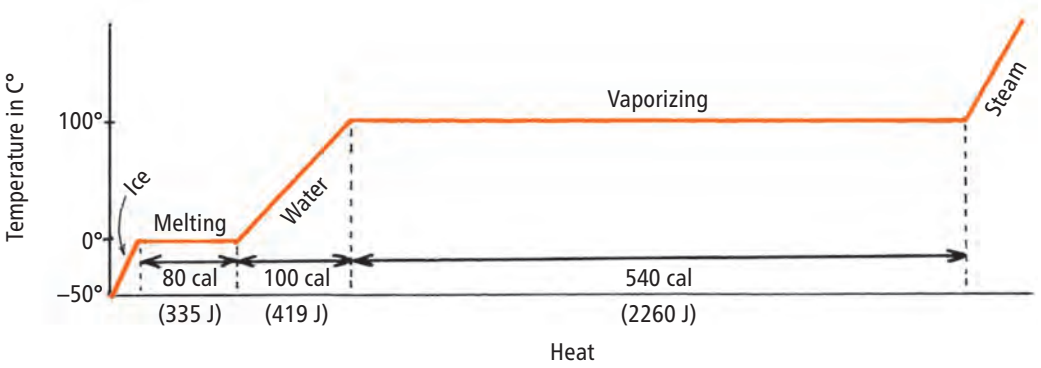


FIGURE 17.20
A graph showing the energy involved in the heating and the changes of phase of 1 g of H_2O.

The 540 calories (2260 joules) required to vaporize a gram of water is a large amount of energy—much more than is required to transform a gram of ice at absolute zero (−273°C) into boiling water at 100°C. Although the molecules in steam and boiling water at 100°C have the same average kinetic energy, steam has more potential energy because the molecules are relatively free of one another and are not bound together as in the liquid phase. Steam contains a vast amount of energy that can be released during condensation.

So we see that the energies required to melt ice (80 calories, or 335 joules, per gram) and to boil water (540 calories, or 2260 joules, per gram) are the same as the amounts released when the phase changes are in the opposite direction. The processes are reversible. The amount of energy required to change a unit mass of any substance from solid to liquid (and vice versa) is called the **latent heat of fusion** for the substance. (The word *latent* reminds us that this is internal energy hidden from the thermometer.) For water, we have seen that this is 80 calories per gram (335 joules per gram). The amount of energy required to change any substance from liquid to gas (and vice versa) is called the **latent heat of vaporization** for the substance. For water, this is a whopping 540 calories per gram (2260 joules per gram).[4] It so happens that these relatively high values are due to the strong forces between water molecules—hydrogen bonds.

The large value of 540 calories per gram for the latent heat of vaporization of water explains why, under some conditions, hot water will freeze faster than warm water.[5] This phenomenon is evident when a thin layer of water is distributed over a large area—like when you wash a car with hot water on a cold winter day or flood a skating rink with hot water, which melts and smooths out the rough spots, and refreezes quickly. The rate of cooling by rapid evaporation is very high because each evaporating gram of water draws at least 540 calories from the water left behind. This is an enormous amount of energy compared with the 1 calorie per Celsius degree that is drawn from each gram of water that cools by thermal conduction. Evaporation is truly a cooling process.

Heat of vaporization is either the energy required to separate molecules from the liquid phase or the energy released when gas condenses to the liquid phase. Water's heat of vaporization is huge. The energy needed to vaporize a quantity of boiling water is nearly seven times the energy needed to melt the same amount of ice.

FIGURE 17.21
On a cold day, hot water may freeze faster than warm water due to the energy that leaves the hot water during rapid evaporation.

[4]In SI units, the heat of vaporization of water is expressed as 2.260 megajoules per kilogram (MJ/kg) and the heat of fusion of water is 0.335 MJ/kg.

[5]Boiling-hot water will not freeze before cold water does, but it will freeze before moderately hot water does. For example, boiling-hot water will freeze before water warmer than about 60°C, but not before water cooler than 60°C. Try it and see.

CHECK POINT

1. **How much energy is transferred when 1 g of steam at 100°C condenses to water at 100°C?**
2. **How much energy is transferred when 1 g of boiling water at 100°C cools to ice water at 0°C?**
3. **How much energy is transferred when 1 g of ice water at 0°C freezes to ice at 0°C?**
4. **How much energy is transferred when 1 g of steam at 100°C turns into ice at 0°C?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. One gram of steam at 100°C transfers 540 calories of energy when it condenses to become water at the same temperature.
2. One gram of boiling water transfers 100 calories when it cools 100°C to become ice water at 0°C.
3. One gram of ice water at 0°C transfers 80 calories to become ice at 0°C.
4. One gram of steam at 100°C transfers to the surroundings a grand total of the above values, 720 calories, to become ice at 0°C.

FIGURE 17.22
Paul Ryan tests the hotness of molten lead by dragging his wetted finger through it.

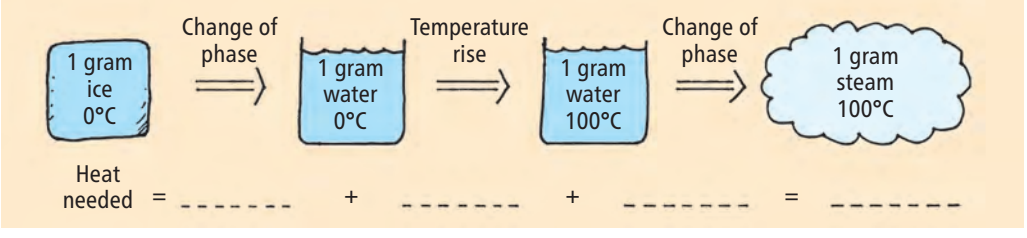
FIGURE 17.23
Professor Dave Willey quickly walks barefoot across red-hot wooden coals without harm.

You dare not touch your dry finger to a hot pan on a hot stove, but you can certainly do so without harm if you first wet your finger and touch the pan very briefly, even a few times in succession as long as your finger remains wet. This is because energy that ordinarily would go into burning your finger goes instead into changing the phase of the moisture on your finger. Additionally, the vapor between your finger and the hot pan provides an insulating layer that slows heat transfer. Similarly, you are able to judge the hotness of a hot clothes iron if you touch it very briefly with a wet finger.

Former supervisor Paul Ryan of the Department of Public Works in Malden, Massachusetts, years ago used molten lead to seal pipes in certain plumbing operations. He startled onlookers by dragging his finger through molten lead to judge its hotness (Figure 17.22). He made sure that the lead was very hot and that his finger was thoroughly wet before doing this. (Do not try this on your own; if the lead is not hot enough, it will stick to your finger and you could be seriously burned!) Similarly, firewalkers walking barefoot on red-hot coals often prefer wet feet (others, such as Dave Willey in Figure 17.23, prefer dry feet, claiming that hot coals more readily stick to wet feet—OUCH!). The low conductivity of wooden coals, however (as discussed in Chapter 16), is the principal reason the feet of barefoot firewalkers are not burned.

PRACTICING PHYSICS

Fill in the number of calories or joules at each step in changing the phase of 1 g of 0°C ice to 100°C steam.


1 gram ice 0°C
Change of phase
1 gram water 0°C
Temperature rise
1 gram water 100°C
Change of phase
1 gram steam 100°C
Heat needed = _____ + _____ + _____ = _____

Chapter 17 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Evaporation The change of phase from liquid to gaseous at the surface of a liquid.

Sublimation The change of phase from solid to gas, bypassing the liquid phase.

Condensation The change of phase from gas to liquid.

Boiling The rapid evaporation that takes place throughout a liquid as well as at its surface.

Regelation The process of melting under pressure and then subsequently refreezing when the pressure is removed.

Heat pump A device that transfers heat out of a cool environment and into a warm environment.

Latent heat of fusion The amount of energy required to change a unit mass of a substance from solid to liquid (and released in the reversed process).

Latent heat of vaporization The amount of energy required to change a unit mass of a substance from liquid to gas (and released in the reverse process).

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

17.1 Evaporation

1. Do the molecules in a liquid all have about the same speed, or do they have a wide variety of speeds?
2. What is the change of phase in evaporation?
3. Why does an evaporating liquid cool down?
4. What is sublimation?

17.2 Condensation

5. Why is condensation a warming process?
6. Why is a steam burn more damaging than a burn from boiling water of the same temperature?
7. Why do you feel uncomfortably warm on a hot and humid day?
8. Why does water vapor in the air condense when the air is chilled?
9. Why does warm, moist air form clouds when it rises?
10. Why don't clouds fall from the sky?

17.3 Boiling

11. Why are bubbles not formed below boiling point?
12. Why is the boiling point of water raised in a pressure cooker?
13. Which cooks food faster in a pressure cooker, the process of boiling, or the higher temperature of water?
14. Why will water at the bottom of a geyser not boil at 100°C?
15. What happens to the water pressure at the bottom of a geyser when some of the water above gushes out?
16. Why does energy added to boiling water not increase the temperature of the water?
17. How does the boiling point change when pressure is reduced?
18. What evidence can you cite for the claim that water can boil at a temperature of 0°C?

17.4 Melting and Freezing

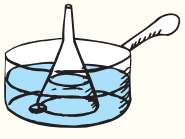
19. Do substances melt and freeze at different temperatures?
20. Why does decreasing the temperature of a liquid make it freeze?
21. How is the freezing point an indicator of the purity of a substance?
22. What happens to the hexagonal open structure of ice when sufficient pressure is applied to it?
23. What is the phenomenon of regelation? Why are snowballs difficult to make in very cold weather?

17.5 Energy and Changes of Phase

24. Why does a refrigerator use a liquid that has a low boiling point?
25. How many calories are needed to change the temperature of 1 g of water by 1°C? To melt 1 g of ice at 0°C? To vaporize 1 g of boiling water at 100°C?
26. Cite two reasons why firewalkers don't burn their wetted feet when walking barefoot on red-hot coals.

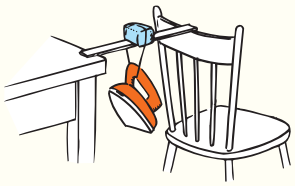
THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

27. Place a Pyrex funnel mouth-down in a saucepan full of water so that the narrow tube of the funnel protrudes above the water. Rest a part of the funnel on a nail or a coin so that water can get under it. Place the pan on a stove and watch the water as it begins to boil. Where do the bubbles form first? Why? As the bubbles rise, they expand rapidly and push water ahead of them. The funnel confines the water, which is forced up the tube and driven out at the top. Now do you know how a geyser and a coffee percolator work?



28. Watch the spout of a teakettle of boiling water. Notice that you cannot see the steam that issues from the spout. The cloud that you see farther away from the spout is not steam but condensed water droplets. Now, hold the flame of a candle in the cloud of condensed steam. Can you explain your observations?
29. You can make rain in your kitchen. Put a cup of water in a Pyrex saucepan or a glass coffeemaker and heat it slowly over a low flame. When the water is warm, place a saucer filled with ice cubes on top of the container. As the water below is heated, droplets form at the bottom of the cold saucer and combine until they are large enough to fall, producing a steady "rainfall" as the water below is gently heated. How does this resemble, and how does it differ from, the way in which natural rain is formed?

30. Measure the temperature of boiling water and the temperature of a boiling solution of salt and water. How do they compare?
31. Do as Dean Baird demonstrates in the third chapter-opener photo, Figure 17.17, or as the sketch shows, and suspend a heavy weight by copper wire over an ice cube. In a matter of minutes, the wire will be pulled through the ice. The ice will melt beneath the wire and refreeze above it, leaving a visible path if the ice is clear.



32. Check the rate of melting of four ice cubes. Wrap one with aluminum foil, wrap one with a paper towel, place one in a plastic bag, and leave one open to the air as your control. Hypothesize which piece of ice will melt first. Check on progress every few minutes and see if your hypothesis was correct.
33. Send an email to Grandma and tell her why bringing water to a boil when she's making tea is actually a process that *cools* the water. Explain how she could convince her teatime friends of this intriguing concept.

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

The quantity of heat with temperature change is $Q = cm\Delta T$. For a change of phase of water it is $Q = mL$, where L_f is the heat of fusion, 80 cal/g, and L_v is the heat of vaporization, 540 cal/g.

34. Calculate the quantity of heat required to convert 5 grams of ice at 0°C to steam at 100°C.
35. The specific heat capacity of ice is about 0.5 cal/g•°C. Determine the number of calories needed to convert 150 g of ice at −0.5° to boiling water at 100°C. What is this value in joules?
36. Find the mass of 0°C ice that 10 g of 100°C steam will completely melt.
37. Consider 50 g of hot water at 80°C poured into a cavity in a very large block of ice at 0°C. What will be the final temperature of the water in the cavity? Show that 50 g of ice must melt in order to cool the hot water down to this temperature.
38. A 50-g chunk of 80°C iron is dropped into a cavity in a very large block of ice at 0°C. Show that 5.5 g of ice will melt. (The specific heat capacity of iron is 0.11 cal/g•°C.)
39. 200 g of water, initially at 25°C, is contained in a thin plastic container of negligible mass. How much heat must be removed to (a) cool the water to 0°C? (b) freeze it after being cooled down?
40. A 10-kg iron ball is dropped onto a pavement from a height of 100 m. If half of the heat generated goes into warming the ball, find the temperature increase of the ball. (In SI units, the specific heat capacity of iron is 450 J/kg•°C.) Why is the answer the same for a ball of any mass?
41. The heat of vaporization of ethyl alcohol is about 200 cal/g. Calculate the amount of this fluid that needs to vaporize in a refrigerator to form 1 kg of ice from 0°C water.

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

42. A blacksmith dips a 0.8-kg chunk of iron, initially at 600°C, by dipping it in a bucket with negligible mass that contains 1 kg of water at 20°C. Determine if the water will boil or not.
43. From least to greatest, rank the energy needed for these phase changes for certain amounts of water:
    (a) 10 grams from ice water to boiling water.
    (b) 15 grams from ice to ice water.
    (c) 2 grams from boiling water to steam.

THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

44. When you step out of a swimming pool on a hot, dry day, you feel quite chilly. Why?
45. Why is a cooling effect produced when alcohol is applied to our body?
46. Is it always correct to say that when heat is added to an object, its temperature increases? Why or why not?
47. What happens to the temperature of a pan of water when evaporation exceeds condensation?
48. Why do coffee drops sprayed into a vacuum chamber boil?
49. The human body can maintain its customary temperature of 37°C on a day when the temperature is above 40°C. How is this done?
50. A perfumer claims to have formulated a new long-lasting perfume that doesn't evaporate. Comment on this claim.
51. Interestingly, a common electric fan does not cool the air in a room. So why is it used in an overly warm room?
52. Why will wrapping a bottle in a wet cloth at a picnic often produce cooler contents than placing the bottle in a bucket of cold water?
53. Double-pane windows have nitrogen gas or very dry air between the panes. Why is ordinary air a poor idea?
54. How do we stimulate cloud formation?
55. How does Figure 17.8 help explain the moisture that forms on the inside surface of car windows when you're parking with your date on a cool night?
56. You know that the windows in your warm house get wet on a cold day. But can moisture form on the windows if the interior of your house is cold on a hot day? How is this different?
57. On freezing days, frost often forms on windows. Why is there usually more frost on the bottom portions of the windows?
58. Why do clouds often form above mountain peaks? (*Hint:* Consider the updrafts.)
59. Why will clouds tend to form above either a flat or a mountainous island in the middle of the ocean? (*Hint:* Compare the specific heat capacity of the land with that of the water and the subsequent convection currents in the air.)
60. Does vaporization, or condensation, occur in the condensation coils of a refrigerator?
61. A great amount of water vapor changes phase to become water in the clouds that form a thunderstorm. Does this release thermal energy or absorb it?
62. Why does the temperature of boiling water remain the same as long as the heating and boiling continue?
63. Why do vapor bubbles in a pot of boiling water increase in size as they rise in the water?
64. Why does the boiling temperature of water decrease when the water is under reduced pressure, such as when it is at a higher altitude?
65. Place a jar of water on a small stand within a saucepan of water so that the bottom of the jar is held above the bottom of the pan. When the pan is placed on a stove, the water in the pan will boil, but not the water in the jar. Why?
66. Water will boil spontaneously in a vacuum—on the surface of the Moon, for example. Could you cook an egg in this boiling water? Explain.
67. Our designer friend proposes a prototype for cookware that will allow boiling to occur at a temperature less than 100°C so that food can be cooked with less energy consumption. Comment on this idea.
68. When heat is added to an ice-water mixture, will the ice-water mixture warm up? Justify your answer.
69. If water that boils due to reduced pressure is not hot, then is ice formed by the reduced pressure not cold? Explain.
70. Your instructor hands you a closed flask partly filled with room-temperature water. When you hold it, the heat transfer between your bare hands and the flask causes the water to boil. Quite impressive! How is this accomplished?
71. When you boil potatoes, will your cooking time be reduced with vigorously boiling water instead of gently boiling water? (Directions for cooking spaghetti call for vigorously boiling water—not to lessen cooking time but to prevent something else. If you don't know what it is, ask a cook.)
72. Why does placing a lid over a pot of water on a stove shorten the time for the water to come to a boil, whereas, after the water is boiling, the use of a lid only slightly shortens the cooking time?
73. In the power plant of a nuclear submarine, the temperature of the water in the reactor is above 100°C. How is this possible?
74. Explain why the eruptions of many geysers repeat with notable regularity.
75. Why does the water in a car radiator sometimes boil explosively when the radiator cap is removed?
76. Can ice be colder than 0°C?
77. What is the temperature of an ice–water mixture?
78. Why is very cold ice "sticky" when touched with your hands?
79. How does the freezing point of a liquid compare with its melting point?
80. How might water be desalinized by freezing?
81. What is the explanation for the wet underside of a glacier that enables it to slip down elevated regions?
82. Would regelation occur if ice crystals did not have an open structure? Explain.
83. Why is half-frozen fruit punch always sweeter than completely melted fruit punch?
84. Is it condensation or vaporization that occurs on the warm outside coils of an operating air conditioner?
85. Why can a pressure cooker cook food faster than normal boiling?
86. Some old-timers found that when they wrapped newspaper around the ice in their iceboxes, melting was inhibited. Discuss the advisability of this practice.
87. When ice in a pond melts, what effect does this have on the temperature of the nearby air?
88. Make up a multiple-choice question about evaporation and condensation energy changes.

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

89. Some folks keep stainless steel reusable "ice cubes" in their freezer to cool their drinks without diluting them. Why are steel cubes less effective at cooling a drink than same-size ice cubes?
90. Suppose your refrigerator/freezer temperature stays at exactly 0°C. If you place a glass of water into this appliance, would it freeze? If you placed an ice cube into this appliance, would it melt? Explain.
91. You say that ice cools your drink. Your friend says that the drink warms your ice. Which statement is better, and why?
92. People who live where snowfall is common will tell you that air temperatures are higher when it's snowing than when it's clear. Some misinterpret this by stating that snowfall can't occur on very cold days. Explain this misinterpretation.
93. Why is your refrigerator the appliance that is the largest contributor to your household electric bill?
94. You can determine wind direction by wetting your finger and holding it up in the air. Discuss why.
95. There is more than a single reason why pouring a cup of hot coffee into a saucer results in faster cooling. Discuss two such reasons.
96. Porous canvas bags filled with water are used by travelers in hot weather. Discuss why when the bags are slung on the outside of a fast-moving car, the water inside is cooled considerably.
97. Pretend that all the molecules in a liquid have the same speed, not random speeds. Would evaporation of this liquid cause the remaining liquid to be cooled? Discuss.
98. Why will a tub of water placed in a farmer's canning cellar help prevent canned food from freezing in cold winters?
99. Why will spraying fruit trees with water before a frost help to protect the fruit from freezing?
100. Farmers typically cover their crops at night in the early spring when the weather threatens to dip below freezing. Discuss why this is a common practice.
101. Why doesn't temperature change when vast amounts of energy are exchanged in a phase change?
102. Why is it easier to melt an ice cube than to boil an equal amount of water to steam? Briefly discuss your answer.
103. How can devices that heat homes in winter also be used to cool homes in summer?
104. Why does a hot dog pant?
105. When can you add heat to something without raising its temperature?
106. When can you add heat to ice without melting it?
107. When can you withdraw heat from something without lowering its temperature?
108. Hydrothermal vents are openings in the ocean floor that discharge very hot water. Water that emerges at nearly 280°C from one such vent off the Oregon coast, some 2400 m beneath the surface, is not boiling. Provide an explanation.
109. Discuss what the predominant gas is in a bubble of boiling water.
110. Air-conditioning units contain no water whatsoever, yet it is common to see water dripping from them when they're operating on a hot day. Discuss.

CHAPTER SEVENTEEN Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. A fire walker walking barefoot across red-hot wooden coals depends on wood's
   (a) good conduction.
   (b) poor conduction.
   (c) low specific heat capacity.
   (d) wetness.
2. The reason that evaporation is a cooling process is
   (a) radiation of heat during the process.
   (b) due to conduction and convection.
   (c) the more energetic molecules escape the liquid.
   (d) All of the above
3. When slow-moving water molecules collide they tend to
   (a) rebound without sticking.
   (b) stick.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
4. Evaporation is a cooling process and condensation is
   (a) a warming process.
   (b) a cooling process also.
   (c) the same in most instances.
   (d) None of the above
5. Water can be brought to a boil by
   (a) applying heat.
   (b) reducing air pressure on its surface.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
6. In one word, how can water in the power plant of a nuclear submarine far exceed 100°C?
   (a) Conductivity
   (b) Vaporization
   (c) Condensation
   (d) Pressure
7. The temperature of melting ice is
   (a) 0°C.
   (b) 32°F.
   (c) 273 K.
   (d) All of these
8. When a gas is changed to a liquid, the gas
   (a) releases energy.
   (b) absorbs energy.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
9. A refrigerator
   (a) produces cold.
   (b) causes heat energy to disappear.
   (c) transfers heat energy from inside to outside.
   (d) transfers heat into cold.
10. The calories needed to change 10 grams of ice at 0°C to steam at 100°C is
    (a) 6200.
    (b) 6400.
    (c) 7200.
    (d) 8000.

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (b): Conductivity, not heat capacity, is the crux of this activity. If the red-hot coals were of iron, heat from the coals would quickly conduct to the feet—ouch! The message is that wood is a poor conductor, whatever its temperature. This is why many pans have wood handles instead of iron handles! **2. (c):** Losing the more energetic molecules in a liquid leaves the less energetic ones behind, which cools the liquid. Other responses are incorrect. **3. (b):** Think of a fly approaching flypaper. A slow collision surely traps the fly. A fast collision gives a better chance of rebounding into the air. Likewise with slower-moving molecules that stick. **4. (a):** The lesson to learn is that evaporation and condensation are opposite processes, with opposite results. Evaporation cools and condensation warms. **5. (c):** We know water can be brought to a boil by adding heat to the water. But also, as Ron Hipschman illustrates with his freezing water exhibit (Figure 17.15), reducing air pressure on water allows more evaporation to the point of boiling, which means more cooling, to the point where water freezes to ice. **6. (d):** The boiling point of water depends on the amount of pressure applied to its surface, as is evident in a pressure cooker. This is even more pronounced in the water of a nuclear-submarine power plant. The other choices do not explain superheating of water. **7. (d):** All listed temperatures are the same for melting ice, but in different units. **8. (a):** This is the topic of Figure 17.18, showing the directions of energy flow for three phases of matter. Gas releases energy when changing to a liquid. **9. (c):** Energy exchange is the name of the game here. Only choice (c) states this. The other answers are simply wrong. **10. (c):** This is calorie counting: 10 grams of ice to 0°C requires 10 times 80 calories = 800 calories. 10 grams of water from 0° to 100° requires (10)(100 calories) = 1000 calories. And to 100° steam is 10 (540) = 5400 calories. Add 800 + 1000 + 5400 = 7200 calories.

CHAPTER EIGHTEEN

18 Thermodynamics

18.1 **Absolute Zero**
Internal Energy

18.2 **First Law of Thermodynamics**

18.3 **Adiabatic Processes**

18.4 **Meteorology and the First Law**

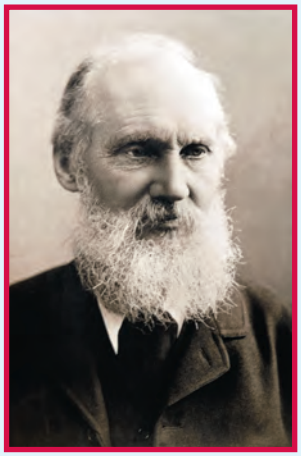
18.5 **Second Law of Thermodynamics**
Heat Engines

18.6 **Energy Tends to Disperse**

18.7 **Entropy**

1 After boiling a bit of water in the gallon-size can and then sealing the can when water vapor has driven out most of the air, Dan Johnson and his class watch the can slowly crumple. He prompts his students to discuss how condensation and atmospheric pressure account for the crunch. **2** On a larger scale, P. O. Zetterberg uses a vacuum pump to reduce the air pressure inside a 50-times-larger oil drum. **3** Barbara and Tomas Brage assist as atmospheric pressure on the outside does its thing—to the applause of the class! **4** Invited guest instructor Howie Brand teaches some thermodynamics to students in China.

Lord Kelvin, for whom the Kelvin temperature scale is named, published more than 600 scientific papers and filed a total of 70 patents. He began as William Thomson, born in 1824 in Belfast, Ireland. Educated at first by his father, young Thomson began studying at the children's division of Glasgow University at age 10 after his father moved to that Scottish city. He published his first scholarly paper when he was 16. After completing studies at Glasgow, he moved on to Cambridge University and graduated with honors in 1845, at age 21. The next year he was a full professor of natural philosophy at Glasgow University. No question about it—William Thomson was a smart guy.



Among the subjects Thomson studied was heat, and in 1847 he defined the absolute temperature scale, which was subsequently named after him. He was also a strong advocate of the metric system of measurement. And in 1856, he was the first to introduce the term *kinetic energy*. He introduced Bell's telephone into Britain and helped to plan the first transatlantic cable, devising a sensitive electric meter that led to rapid transmission of Morse code signals between Europe and North America. For this success, he was knighted. The British government further expressed its appreciation in 1892 by making Thomson a baron. He thenceforth was Lord Kelvin, taking his title from the Kelvin River that ran through his estate in Glasgow.

Kelvin held that measurements were the hallmark of good science. He adamantly stated that unless one could quantify a thing, one's knowledge of it was of a "meager and unsatisfactory kind." He was critical of geologists during his time who claimed Earth was billions of years old. Kelvin made measurements of the cooling rates of rocks in Earth's interior and calculated Earth's age to be less than 100 million years. He based this on two assumptions: Earth was in a molten state and had been cooling ever since, and there exists no internal source of heat other than that left over from Earth's formation. Both were false. Today, scientists think our planet began as gas and dust, that radioactive decay is a major source of internal energy, and Earth is 4.5 billion years old. Calculations can never be better than the assumptions that guide them.

Kelvin stubbornly held on to his conviction despite the scientific community's excitement over new-found radioactivity and its role in heating. Kelvin also contested Darwin's conclusions on evolution as impossible in the 100-million-year time period. He also said that heavier-than-air aircraft would be an impossibility. In 1900 he stated, "There is nothing new to be discovered in physics now. All that remains is more and more precise measurement." Despite these serious misjudgments in his later years, his achievements in science and engineering were enormous. When he died in 1907, he was buried next to Isaac Newton in Westminster Abbey.

Kelvin was the first to coin the word **thermodynamics** (which stems from Greek words meaning "movement of heat"). The science of thermodynamics was developed in the early 19th century, before the atomic and molecular theory of matter was understood. Because the early workers in thermodynamics had only vague notions of atoms and knew nothing about electrons and other microscopic particles, the models they used invoked macroscopic notions—such as mechanical work, pressure, and temperature—and their roles in energy transformations.

The two foundation stones of thermodynamics are the conservation of energy and the fact that heat flows spontaneously from hot to cold and not the other way around. Thermodynamics provides the basic theory of heat engines, from steam turbines to nuclear reactors, and the basic theory of refrigerators and heat pumps. The laws of thermodynamics dashed the dreams of inventors and industrialists who believed in the possibility of a perpetual motion machine: a device that, upon receiving an initial input of energy, would continue to operate indefinitely without further input. We begin our study of thermodynamics with a look at one of its early concepts—a lower limit to temperature.

18.1 Absolute Zero

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

Absolute zero isn't the coldest you can *reach*. It's the coldest you can hope to approach. (Researchers have been within a billionth of a degree of it.)

In principle, there is no upper limit to temperature. As thermal motion increases, a solid object first melts and then vaporizes; as the temperature is further increased, molecules break up into atoms, and atoms lose some or all of their electrons, thereby forming a cloud of electrically charged particles—a plasma. This situation exists in stars, where the temperature is many millions of degrees Celsius.

In contrast, there is a definite limit at the other end of the temperature scale. Gases expand when heated and contract when cooled. Nineteenth-century experiments found that all gases, regardless of their initial pressures or volumes, change by 1/273 of their volume at 0°C for each degree Celsius change in temperature, provided the pressure is held constant. So, if a gas at 0°C, were cooled down by 273°C, it would contract, according to this rule, by 273/273 of its volume and be reduced to zero volume. Clearly, we cannot have a substance with zero volume.

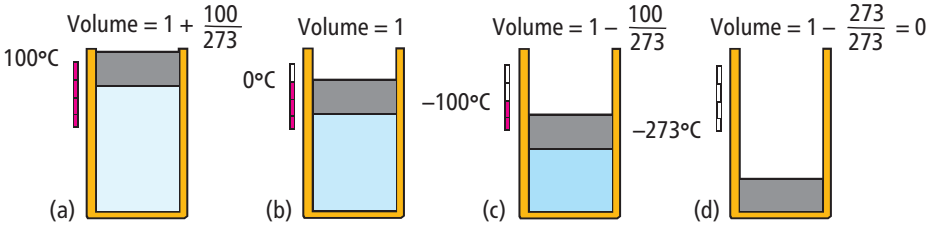


FIGURE 18.1
The gray piston in the vessel goes down as the volume of gas (blue) shrinks. The volume of gas at 0°C changes by 1/273 of its volume with each 1°C change in temperature when the pressure is held constant. (a) At 100°C, the volume is 100/273 greater than it is at (b), when its temperature is 0°C. (c) When the temperature is reduced to −100°C, the volume is reduced by 100/273. (d) At −273°C, the volume of the gas would be reduced by 273/273 and so would ideally be zero.

Scientists also found that the pressure of any gas in any container of fixed volume changes by 1/273 of its pressure at 0°C for each degree Celsius change in temperature. So a gas in a container of fixed volume cooled to 273°C below zero would have no pressure whatsoever. In practice, every gas liquefies before it gets this cold. Nevertheless, these decreases by 1/273 increments suggested the idea of a lowest temperature: −273°C. So there is a limit to coldness.

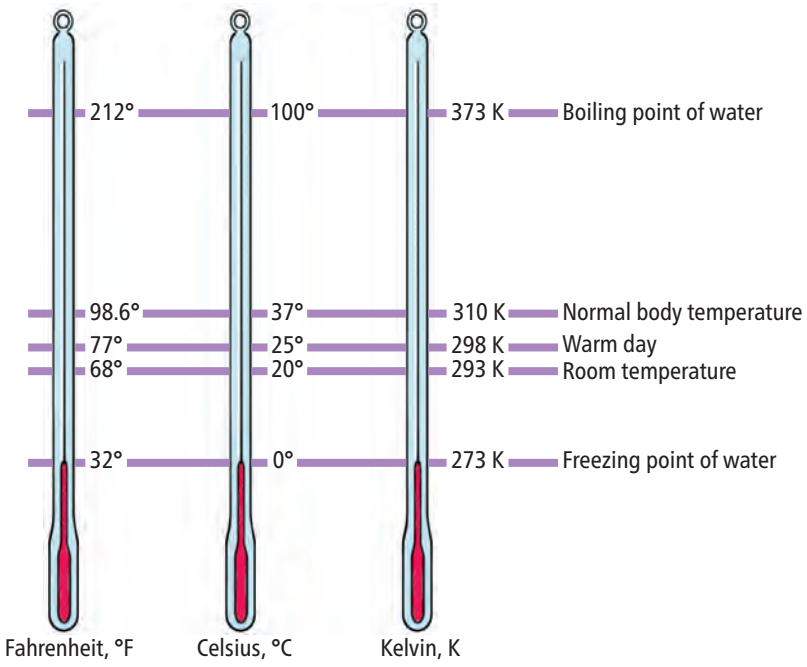


FIGURE 18.2
Familiar temperatures on different scales.

When atoms and molecules lose all available kinetic energy, they reach the **absolute zero** of temperature. At absolute zero, as we briefly discussed in Chapter 15, no more energy can be extracted from a substance and no further lowering of its temperature is possible. This limiting temperature is actually 273.15° below zero on the Celsius scale (and 459.7° below zero on the Fahrenheit scale).

The absolute temperature scale is called the Kelvin scale, after Lord Kelvin, who first suggested this thermodynamic temperature scale. Absolute zero is 0 K (short for "0 kelvin" rather than "0 degrees kelvin"). There are no negative numbers on the Kelvin scale. Degrees on the Kelvin scale are calibrated with the same-size divisions as on the Celsius scale. Thus, the melting point of ice is 273.15 K, and the boiling point of water is 373.15 K.

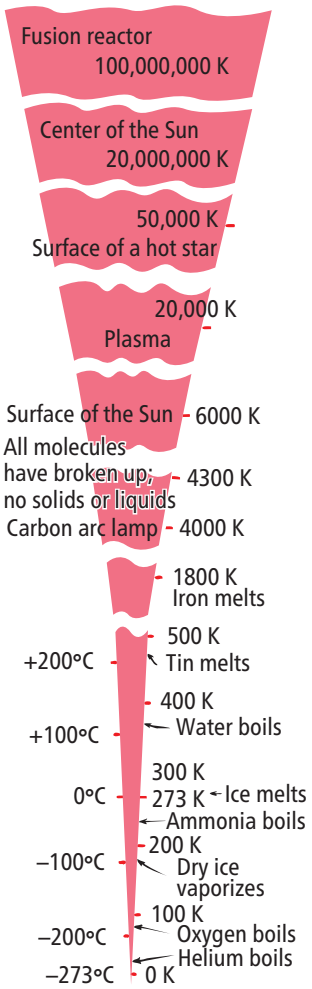


FIGURE 18.3
Some absolute temperatures.

CHECK POINT

A flask of helium gas has a temperature of 0°C. If a second, identical flask containing an equal mass of helium is twice as hot (has twice the internal energy), what is its temperature in kelvins? In degrees Celsius?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

A container of helium twice as hot has twice the absolute temperature, or 2 times 273 K, which is 546 K. This is 273°C. (Simply subtract 273 from the Kelvin temperature to convert to Celsius degrees. Can you see why?)

Internal Energy

As we briefly discussed in Chapter 15, there is a vast amount of energy locked in all materials. In this text, for example, the paper is composed of molecules that are in constant motion. They have kinetic energy. Due to interactions with neighboring molecules, they also have potential energy. The pages can be easily burned, so we know they store chemical energy, which is really electric potential energy at the molecular level. We know there are vast amounts of energy associated with atomic nuclei. Then there is the "energy of being," described by the celebrated equation $E = mc^2$ (mass energy). Energy at the particle level within a substance is found in these and other forms, which, when taken together, are called **internal energy.**[1] Although the internal energy in even the simplest substance can be quite complex, in our study of heat changes and heat flow we will be concerned with only the *changes* in the internal energy of a substance. Changes in temperature indicate these changes in internal energy.

CHECK POINT

What is the distinction between thermal energy and internal energy?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

There is none. Thermal energy is another term for internal energy.

[1]If a book were poised at the edge of a table and ready to fall, it would possess gravitational potential energy; if it were tossed into the air, it would possess kinetic energy. But these are not examples of internal energy because they involve more than just the particles of which the book is composed. They include gravitational interactions with Earth and motion with respect to Earth. We distinguish between the internal energy in a book and forms of external energy that may also act on the book.

18.2 First Law of Thermodynamics

Looking for a diet plan? Consume fewer calories than you burn. This is the only diet plan firmly based on the first law of thermodynamics.

Some 200 years ago, heat was thought to be an invisible fluid called *caloric*, which flowed like water from hot objects to cold objects. Caloric appeared to be conserved; that is, it seemed to flow from one place to another without being created or destroyed. This idea was the forerunner of the law of conservation of energy. By the middle of the 19th century, many years after Count Rumford showed that heat was not a substance locked up in matter, it was accepted that the flow of heat was nothing more than the flow of energy itself. The caloric theory of heat was gradually abandoned.[2] Today, we view heat as energy being transferred from one place to another, usually by molecular collisions. Heat is energy in transit.

When the law of energy conservation is broadened to include heat, we call it the **first law of thermodynamics.** Part of that law can be stated in the following form:

When heat flows to or from a system, the system gains or loses an amount of energy equal to the amount of heat transferred.

By *system*, we mean a well-defined group of atoms, molecules, particles, or objects. The system may be the steam in a steam engine or it may be Earth's entire atmosphere. It might even be the body of a living creature. The important point is that we must be able to define what is contained *within* the system and what is *outside* it. If we add heat to the steam in a steam engine, to Earth's atmosphere, or to the body of a living creature, we are adding energy to the system. The system can "use" this heat to increase its own internal energy or to do work on its surroundings. So adding heat to a system does one or both of two things: (1) It increases the internal energy of the system, if it remains in the system, or (2) it does work on things external to the system, if it leaves the system. More specifically, the first law states:

Heat added to a system = increase in internal energy + external work done by the system.

The first law is an overall principle that is not concerned with the inner workings of the system itself. Whatever the details of molecular behavior in the system, the added heat either increases the internal energy of a system or enables the system to do external work (or both). Our ability to describe and predict the behavior of systems without the need to analyze complicated atomic and molecular processes is one of the beauties of thermodynamics. Thermodynamics bridges the microscopic and macroscopic worlds.

Consider a given amount of energy supplied to a steam engine, whether in a power plant or a nuclear-powered ship. The amount of energy supplied will be evident in the increased internal energy of the steam and in the mechanical work done. The sum of the increase in internal energy and the work done will equal the energy input. In no way can energy output exceed energy input. The first law of thermodynamics is simply the thermal version of the law of conservation of energy.

Adding heat to a system so that the system can do mechanical work is only one application of the first law of thermodynamics. If, instead of adding heat, we do mechanical work on the system, the first law tells us what we can expect: an increase in internal energy. Rub your palms together and they become warmer. Or rub two dry sticks together and they'll certainly become hotter. Or pump the handle of a bicycle pump and the pump becomes hot. Why? Because we are primarily doing mechanical work on the system and raising its internal energy.

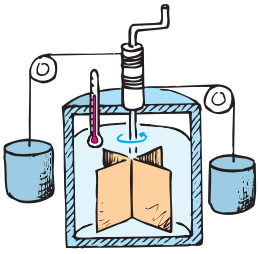


FIGURE 18.4
A paddle-wheel apparatus used to compare heat with mechanical energy. As the weights fall, they give up potential energy (mechanical), which is converted to heat that warms the water. This equivalence of mechanical and heat energy was first demonstrated by James Joule, for whom the unit of energy is named.

[2]Popular ideas, when proved wrong, are seldom immediately discarded. People tend to identify with the ideas that characterize their time; hence, it is often the young who are more likely to discover and accept new ideas and to push the human adventure forward.

If the process happens so quickly that very little heat is conducted out of the system, then most of the work input goes into increasing the internal energy, and the temperature rises.

CHECK POINT

1. **If 100 J of heat is added to a system that does no external work, by how much is the internal energy of that system raised?**
2. **If 100 J of heat is added to a system that does 40 J of external work, by how much is the internal energy of that system raised?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. 100 J.
2. 60 J. We see from the first law that 100 J = 60 J + 40 J.

18.3 Adiabatic Processes

Compressing or expanding a fluid while no heat enters or leaves the system is said to be an **adiabatic process** (from the Greek for "impassable"). Adiabatic conditions can be achieved by thermally insulating a system from its surroundings (with Styrofoam, for example) or by performing the process so rapidly that heat has no time to enter or leave. In an adiabatic process, therefore, since no heat enters or leaves the system, the "heat added" part of the first law of thermodynamics must be zero. Then, under adiabatic conditions, changes in internal energy are equal to the work done on or by the system.

For example, if we do work *on* a system by compressing it, its internal energy increases: We raise its temperature. We notice this by the warmth of a bicycle pump when air is compressed. Conversely, if work is done *by* the system, its internal energy decreases: It cools. We note this by the coolness of a tire valve if air escapes and expands from it. Rapidly expanding gas cools.

You can demonstrate the cooling of air as it expands by repeating the personal experiment of blowing air on your hand, discussed in Chapter 16. Blow air on your hand—first with your mouth wide open and then again with puckered lips so the air expands (see Figure 16.6 in Chapter 16). Your breath is noticeably cooler when the air expands!

FIGURE 18.5
When you do work on the pump by pressing down on the piston, you compress the air inside. What happens to the temperature of the enclosed air? What happens to the air's temperature if it expands and pushes the piston outward?

CHECK POINT

What amount of heat normally leaves a system when undergoing adiabatic compression or expansion?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

None. What characterizes an adiabatic process is the absence of heat transfer.

18.4 Meteorology and the First Law

Thermodynamics is useful to meteorologists when analyzing weather. Meteorologists express the first law of thermodynamics in this form:

Air temperature rises as heat is added or as pressure is increased.

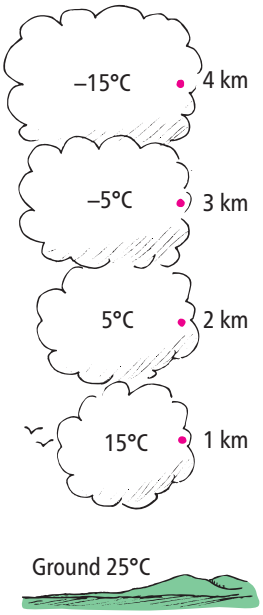


FIGURE 18.6
The temperature of a parcel of dry air that expands adiabatically decreases by about 10°C for each kilometer of elevation.

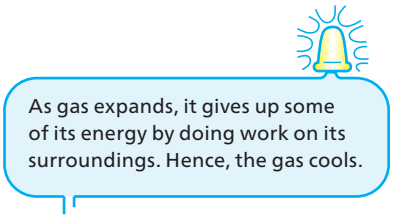
The temperature of the air may be changed by adding or removing heat, by changing the pressure of the air (which involves work), or by both. Heat is added by solar radiation, by long-wave Earth radiation, by moisture condensation, or by contact with the warm ground. An increase in air temperature results. The atmosphere may lose heat by radiation to space, by evaporation of rain falling through dry air, or by contact with cold surfaces. The result is a drop in air temperature.

There are some atmospheric processes in which the amount of heat added or subtracted is very small—small enough so that the process is nearly adiabatic. Then we have the adiabatic form of the first law:

Air temperature rises (or falls) as pressure increases (or decreases).

Adiabatic processes in the atmosphere are characteristic of parts of the air, called *parcels*, that have dimensions on the order of tens of meters to kilometers. These parcels are large enough that outside air doesn't appreciably mix with the air inside them during the minutes to hours that they exist. They behave as if they are enclosed in giant, tissue-light garment bags. As a parcel flows up the side of a mountain, its pressure lessens, allowing it to expand and cool. The reduced pressure results in reduced temperature.[3]

Measurements show that the temperature of a parcel of dry air will decrease by 10°C for a decrease in pressure that corresponds to an increase in altitude of 1 kilometer. So dry air cools 10°C for each kilometer it rises (Figure 18.6). Air flowing over tall mountains or rising in thunderstorms or cyclones may change elevation by several kilometers. Thus, if a parcel of dry air at ground level with a comfortable temperature of 25°C were lifted to 6 km, the temperature would be a frigid −35°C. On the other hand, if air at a typical temperature of −20°C at an altitude of 6 km descends to the ground, its temperature would be a whopping 40°C. A dramatic example of this adiabatic warming is the *chinook*—a wind that blows down from the Rocky Mountains across the Great Plains. Cold air moving down the slopes of the mountains is compressed into a smaller volume and is appreciably warmed (Figure 18.7). The effect of expansion or compression on gases is quite impressive.[4]



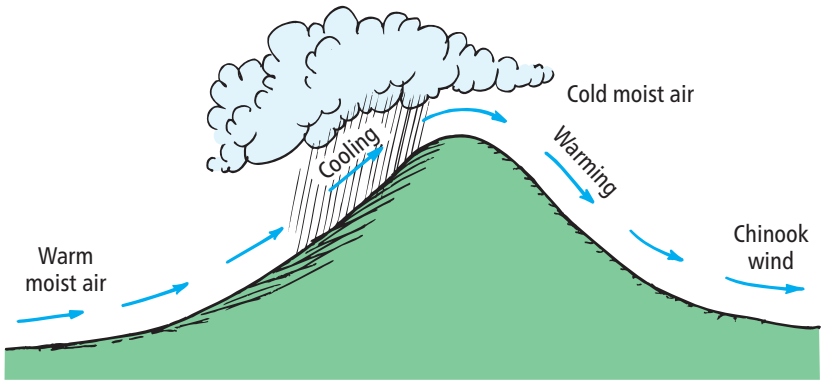


FIGURE 18.7
Chinooks, which are warm, dry winds, occur when high-altitude air descends and is adiabatically warmed.

[3]Recall that, in Chapter 16, we treated the cooling of expanding air at the microscopic level by considering the behavior of colliding molecules. In thermodynamics, we consider only the macroscopic measurements of temperature and pressure to come up with the same results. It's nice to analyze things from more than one point of view.

[4]Interestingly, when you're flying at high altitudes where the outside air temperature is typically −35°C, you're quite comfortable in your warm cabin—but not because of heaters. The process of compressing outside air to a cabin pressure that approximates atmospheric pressure at sea level would normally heat the air to a roasting 55°C (131°F). So air conditioners must be used to extract heat from the pressurized air.

A rising parcel cools as it expands. But the surrounding air is cooler at increased elevations also. The parcel will continue to rise as long as it is warmer (and therefore less dense) than the surrounding air. If it gets cooler (denser) than its surroundings, it will sink. Under some conditions, large parcels of cold air sink and remain at a low level, with the result that the air above is warmer. When the upper regions of the atmosphere are warmer than the lower regions, we have a **temperature inversion**. If any rising warm air is denser than this upper layer of warm air, it will rise no farther. It is common to see evidence of this over a cold lake where visible gases and particles, such as smoke, spread out in a flat layer above the lake rather than rise and dissipate higher in the atmosphere (Figure 18.9). Temperature inversions trap smog and other thermal pollutants. The smog of Los Angeles is trapped by such an inversion, caused by low-level cold air from the ocean over which is a layer of hot air that has moved over the mountains from the hotter Mojave Desert. The mountains aid in holding the air trapped (Figure 18.10). The mountains on the edge of Denver play a similar role in trapping smog beneath a temperature inversion.[5]

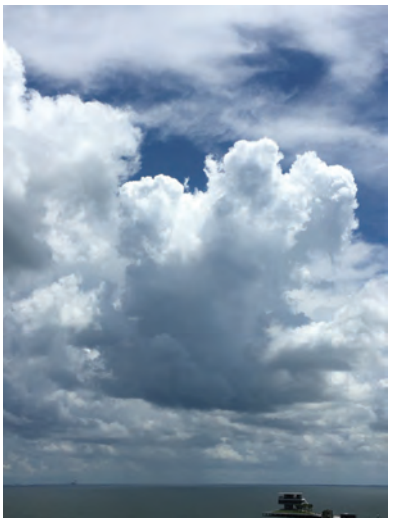


FIGURE 18.8
A thunderhead is the result of the rapid adiabatic cooling of a rising mass of moist air. It derives energy from the condensation of water vapor.

CHECK POINT

1. **Why does a parcel of warmed air rise?**
2. **If a parcel of dry air initially at 0°C expands adiabatically while flowing upward alongside a mountain a vertical distance of 1 km, what will its temperature be? What will its temperature be when it has risen 5 km?**
3. **What happens to the air temperature in a valley when cold air blowing across the mountaintops descends into the valley?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. As discussed in Chapter 17, a parcel of warmed air is less dense than surrounding cooler air that accumulates beneath the parcel. Like a balloon, it is buoyed upward.
2. See Figure 18.6. At 1-km elevation, its temperature will be −10°C; at 5-km elevation, −50°C.
3. The air is adiabatically compressed and the temperature in the valley is increased. In this way, the residents of some valley towns in the Rocky Mountains, such as Salida, Colorado, experience "banana-belt" weather in midwinter.

fyi

- Mountaintop clouds created by forced adiabatic cooling—in effect a forced convection—is called *orographic lift* by meteorologists. These "lenticular clouds" have often been mistaken for UFOs.

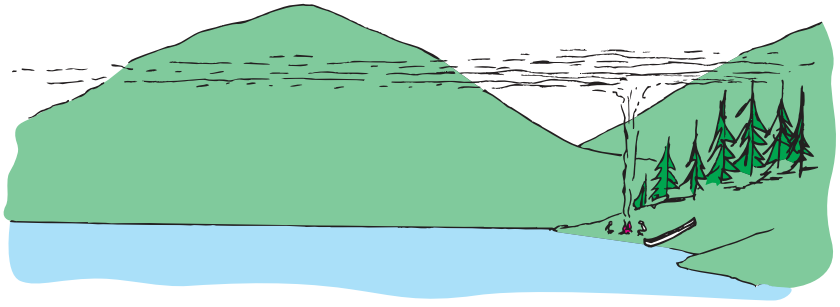
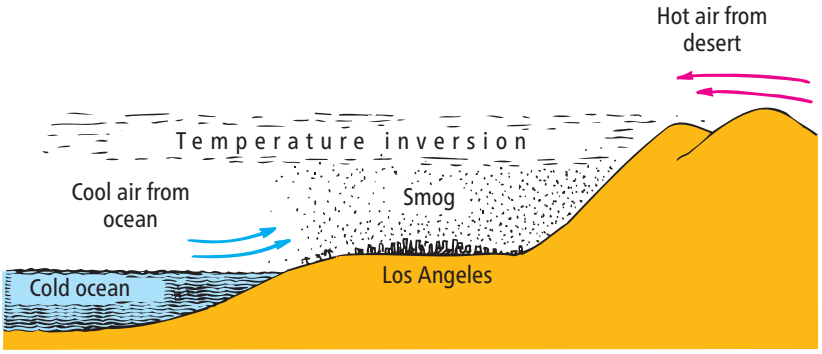


FIGURE 18.9
The layer of campfire smoke over the lake indicates a temperature inversion. The air above the smoke is warmer than the smoke; the air below is cooler.

[5]Strictly speaking, meteorologists call any temperature profile that thwarts upward convection a temperature inversion—including instances in which the upper regions of air are cooler but not cool enough to allow continued upward convection.

FIGURE 18.10
Smog in Los Angeles is trapped by the mountains and a temperature inversion caused by warm air from the Mojave Desert overlying cool air from the Pacific Ocean.

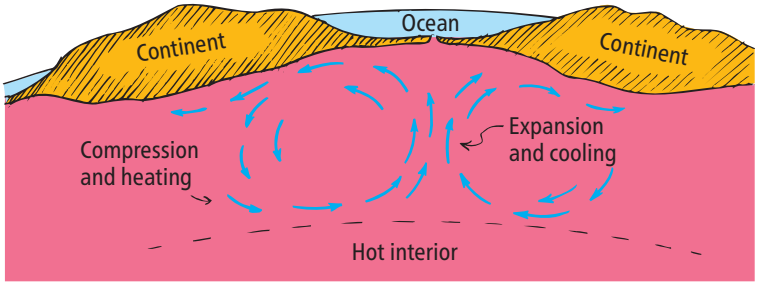


fyi

- In a nutshell: Our Sun heats Earth's surface, which then heats air above. Air masses tend to flow from regions of high pressure to low pressure. Polar masses move south and tropical masses move north. Big temperature differences produce warm or cold fronts. Mix all these factors together and you have weather on a local scale, and climate on a worldly scale.

Adiabatic parcels are not restricted to the atmosphere, and changes in them do not necessarily happen quickly. Some deep ocean currents take thousands of years to circulate. The water masses are so huge and the conductivities are so low that no appreciable quantities of heat are transferred to or from these parcels over these long periods of time. They are warmed or cooled adiabatically by changes in pressure. Changes in adiabatic ocean convection, as evidenced by events such as the recurring El Niño, have a great effect on Earth's climate. Ocean convection is influenced by the temperature of the ocean floor, which, in turn, is influenced by convection currents in the molten material that lies beneath Earth's crust (Figure 18.11). Knowledge of the behavior of molten material in Earth's mantle is difficult to acquire. Once a parcel of hot liquid material deep within the mantle begins to rise, will it continue to rise to Earth's crust? Or will its rate of adiabatic cooling find it cooler and denser than its surroundings, at which point it will sink? Is convection self-perpetuating? Geophysicists are currently pondering these questions.

FIGURE 18.11
Do convection currents in Earth's mantle drive the continents as they drift across the global surface? Do rising parcels of molten material cool faster or slower than the surrounding material? Do sinking parcels heat to temperatures above or below those of the surroundings? The answers to these questions are not known at this writing.



CHECK POINT

Are adiabatic processes confined to gases, or do they occur in liquids also?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Adiabatic processes occur in all fluids, liquids as well as gases.

18.5 Second Law of Thermodynamics

Suppose you place a hot brick next to a cold brick in a thermally insulated region. You know that the hot brick will cool as it gives heat to the cold brick, which will warm. The two bricks will arrive at a common temperature: thermal equilibrium. No energy will be lost, in accordance with the first law of thermodynamics. But pretend the hot brick extracts heat from the cold brick and becomes

hotter. Would this violate the first law of thermodynamics? Not if the cold brick becomes correspondingly colder so that the combined energy of both bricks remains the same. If this were to happen, it would not violate the first law of thermodynamics.

But it would violate the **second law of thermodynamics.** The second law identifies the direction of energy transfer in natural processes. The second law of thermodynamics can be stated in many ways, but, put most simply:

Heat of itself never flows from a cold object to a hot object.

In winter, heat flows from inside a warm, heated house to the cold air outside. In summer, heat flows from the hot air outside into the cooler interior. The direction of spontaneous heat flow is from hot to cold. Heat can be made to flow the other way, from cooler to warmer, but only by doing work on the system or by adding energy from another source—as occurs with heat pumps and air conditioners, both of which cause heat to flow from cooler to warmer places.

The huge amount of internal energy in the ocean cannot be used to light a single flashlight bulb without external effort. Energy will not of itself flow from the lower-temperature ocean to the higher-temperature bulb filament. Without external effort, the direction of heat flow is *from* hot *to* cold.

CHECK POINT

Can the internal energy of a huge iceberg be harnessed to do work?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

According to the second law, it can do work on cooler things but not on warmer things. Energy spontaneously flows from hot to cold, not the other way around.

Heat Engines

Machines were the focal point of the Industrial Revolution during the late 18th and early 19th centuries. With hopes dashed for perpetual motion machines, scientists and industrialists focused on the efficiency of actual machines and the engines that drove them.

A **heat engine** is any device that operates via differences in temperature and uses heat as input and provides work as output. The dipping bird of Figure 17.4 in the previous chapter is a heat engine, powered by the forces of expansion of heated vapor. In every heat engine, only some of the heat can be transformed into work. In considering heat engines, we talk about *reservoirs*. Heat flows out of a high-temperature reservoir and into a low-temperature one. Every heat engine (1) gains heat from a reservoir of higher temperature, increasing the engine's internal energy; (2) converts some of this energy into mechanical work; and (3) expels the remaining energy as heat to some lower-temperature reservoir, usually called a *sink* (Figure 18.12). In a gasoline engine, for example, (1) products of burning fuel in the combustion chamber provide the high-temperature reservoir, (2) hot gases do mechanical work on the piston, and (3) heat is expelled to the environment via the cooling system and exhaust (Figure 18.13).

The second law tells us that no heat engine can convert all the heat supplied into mechanical energy. Only *some* of the heat can be transformed into work,

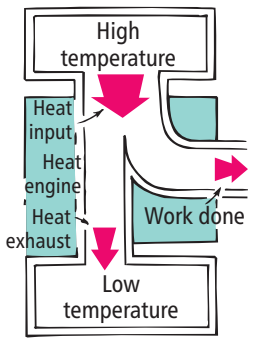


FIGURE 18.12
When heat in a heat engine flows from the high-temperature reservoir to the low-temperature sink, part of the heat can be turned into work. (If work is put into a heat engine, the flow of heat may be from the low-temperature sink to the high-temperature reservoir, as in a refrigerator or air conditioner.)

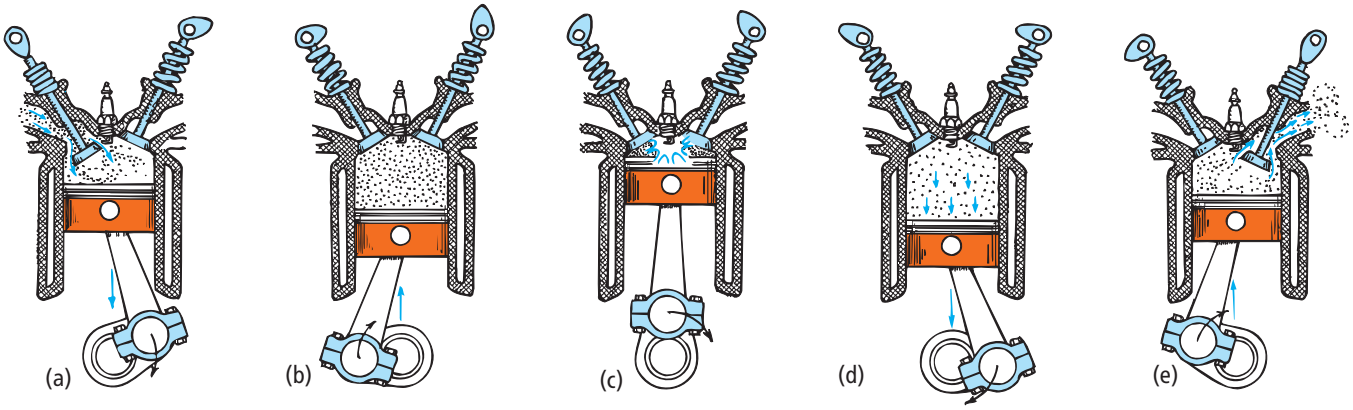


FIGURE 18.13
A four-cycle internal-combustion gasoline engine. (a) A fuel–air mixture fills the cylinder as the piston moves down. (b) The piston moves up and compresses the mixture—adiabatically, because no appreciable heat is transferred in or out. (c) The spark plug fires, igniting the mixture, which raises it to a high temperature. (d) Adiabatic expansion pushes the piston down, the power stroke. (e) The burned gases are pushed out the exhaust valve. Then the intake valve opens and the cycle repeats. These stages can be put differently: (a) suck, (b) squeeze, (c) bang, (d) push, and (e) blow.

An important source of water for a camel is not its hump but its oversized nose, which allows it to withdraw water from its own exhaled breath. Its inner nostrils are structured to recapture effectively most of the moisture contained in the warm, water-saturated air moving out of its lungs.

The body temperature of camels can rise several degrees above normal without causing heatstroke. Their excess heat is dissipated when the air temperature drops at night.

with the remainder expelled in the process. Applied to heat engines, the second law may be stated:

> **When work is done by a heat engine operating between two temperatures, T_{hot} and T_{cold}, only some of the input heat at T_{hot} can be converted to work, and the rest is expelled at T_{cold}.**

Every heat engine discards some heat, which may be desirable or undesirable. Hot air expelled in a laundry or a baking oven on a cold winter day may be quite desirable, while the same hot air on a hot summer day is something else. When expelled heat is undesirable, we call it *thermal pollution*.

Before scientists understood the second law, many people thought that a very low-friction heat engine could convert nearly all the input heat energy to useful work. But not so. In 1824, the French engineer Nicolas Léonard Sadi Carnot[6] analyzed the functioning of a heat engine and made a fundamental discovery. He showed that the greatest fraction of energy input that can be converted to useful work, even under ideal conditions, depends on the temperature difference between the hot reservoir and the cold sink. Carnot's equation is

$$\text{Ideal efficiency} = \frac{T_{hot} - T_{cold}}{T_{hot}}$$

where T_{hot} is the temperature of the hot reservoir and T_{cold} is the temperature of the cold sink.[7] Ideal efficiency depends on the temperature difference between input and exhaust. Whenever ratios of temperatures are involved, the absolute

[6]Carnot was the son of Lazare Nicolas Marguerite Carnot (pronounced *car-no*), who created the 14 armies after the revolution that defended France against all of Europe. After his defeat at Waterloo, Napoleon said to Lazare, "Monsieur Carnot, I came to know you too late." A few years after producing his famous equation, Nicolas Léonard Sadi Carnot died tragically at the age of 36 during a cholera epidemic that swept through Paris.

[7]Efficiency = work output/heat input. From energy conservation, heat input = work output + heat that flows out at low temperature (see Figure 18.12). So work output = heat input − heat output, and efficiency = (heat input − heat output)/(heat input). In the ideal case, it can be shown that the ratio (heat out)/(heat in) = T_{cold}/T_{hot}. Then we can say ideal efficiency = $(T_{hot} - T_{cold})/T_{hot}$.

temperature scale must be used, so T_{hot} and T_{cold} are expressed in kelvins. For example, when the hot reservoir in a steam turbine is 400 K (127°C) and the sink is 300 K (27°C), the ideal efficiency is

$$\frac{400 - 300}{400} = \frac{1}{4}$$

This means that, even under ideal conditions, only 25% of the heat provided by the steam can be converted into work, while the remaining 75% is expelled as waste. This is why steam is superheated to high temperatures in steam engines and power plants. The higher the steam temperature driving a motor or turbogenerator, the higher the possible efficiency of power production. For instance, if the operating temperature in the cited example was 600 K, rather than 400 K, the efficiency would be $(600 - 300)/600 = 1/2$, which is twice the efficiency at 400 K.

We can see the role of the temperature difference between heat reservoir and sink in the operation of the steam-turbine engine in Figure 18.14. The hot reservoir is steam from the boiler, and the cold sink is the exhaust region in the condenser. The hot steam exerts pressure and does work on the blades when it pushes on their front sides. This is nice. But what if the same steam pressure

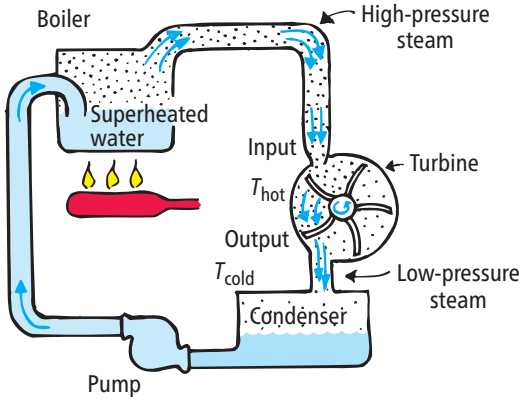


FIGURE 18.14
The steam cycle. The turbine turns because the pressure exerted by high-temperature steam on the front side of the turbine blades is greater than that exerted by low-temperature steam on the back side of the blades. Without a pressure difference, the turbine would not rotate and deliver energy to an external load (such as an electric generator). The presence of steam pressure on the back side of the blades, even without friction, prevents the turbine from being a perfectly efficient engine.

THERMODYNAMICS DRAMATIZED!

Put a small amount of water in an aluminum soda-pop can and heat it on a stove until steam issues from the opening. When this occurs, air has been driven out and replaced by steam. Then, with a pair of tongs, quickly invert the can into a pan of water. Crunch! The can is crushed by atmospheric pressure! Why? When the molecules of steam encounter water from the pan, condensation occurs, leaving a very low pressure in the can, whereupon the surrounding atmospheric pressure crunches the can. Here we see, dramatically, how pressure is reduced by condensation. Can you now better understand the role of condensation in the turbine of Figure 18.14?

FIGURE 18.15
The Transamerica Pyramid and some other buildings are heated by electric lighting, which is why the lights are on most of the time.

were also exerted on the *back side* of the blades? This would be counterproductive and not so nice. It is vital that pressure on the back side of the blades be reduced. How is it done? The same way that pressure inside the can of steam is reduced in process described in the Thermodynamics Dramatized! box. If you condense the steam, the pressure on the blades' back sides is greatly reduced. We know that, with confined steam, temperature and pressure go hand in hand: Increase temperature and you increase pressure; decrease temperature and you decrease pressure. So the pressure difference necessary for the operation of a heat engine is directly related to the temperature difference between source and sink. The greater the temperature difference, the greater the efficiency.[8]

Carnot's equation states the upper limit of efficiency for all heat engines, whether in an automobile, a nuclear-powered ship, or a jet aircraft. In practice, friction is always present in all engines, and efficiency is always less than ideal.[9] So, whereas friction is solely responsible for the inefficiencies of many devices, the overriding concept in the case of heat engines is the second law of thermodynamics: Only some of the heat input can be converted to work—even without friction.

CHECK POINT

1. **What would be the ideal efficiency of an engine if its hot reservoir and exhaust were the same temperature—say, 400 K?**
2. **What would be the ideal efficiency of a machine that has a hot reservoir at 400 K and a cold reservoir somehow maintained at absolute zero?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Zero efficiency: $\frac{(400 - 400)}{400} = 0$. So no work output is possible for any heat engine unless a temperature difference exists between the reservoir and the sink.
2. One: $\frac{(400 - 0)}{400} = 1$. Only in this idealized case is an ideal efficiency of 100% possible.

FIGURE 18.16
Molecules of perfume readily go from the bottle (a more ordered state) to the air (a less ordered state), not vice versa.

18.6 Energy Tends to Disperse

The first law of thermodynamics states that energy can be neither created nor destroyed. It speaks of the *quantity* of energy. The second law qualifies this by adding that the form energy takes in transformations "deteriorates" to less useful forms. It speaks of the *quality* of energy, as energy disperses and ultimately degenerates into waste. Another way to say this is that organized energy (concentrated, and therefore usable, high-quality energy) degrades into disorganized energy (nonusable, low-quality energy). For example, once water flows over a waterfall, it loses its potential for useful work. Similarly for gasoline, where organized energy degrades as it burns in a car engine. Useful energy degrades to nonuseful forms and is unavailable for doing the same work again, such as

[8]Physicist Victor Weisskopf tells the story of an engineer who is explaining the operation of a steam engine to a peasant. The engineer explains in detail the engine's steam cycle, whereupon the peasant asks, "Yes, I understand all that, but where's the horse?" It's difficult to abandon our way of looking at the world when a newer method comes along to replace established ways.

[9]The ideal efficiency of an automobile internal-combustion engine is more than 50%, but, in practice, the actual efficiency is about 25%. Engines with higher operating temperatures (compared to sink temperatures) would be more efficient, but the melting point of engine materials limits the upper temperatures at which they can operate. Automobile all-electric motors, gaining in popularity, bypass altogether the temperature dependences of heat engines and are very efficient.

driving another car engine. Heat, dispersed into the environment as thermal energy, is the graveyard of useful energy.

The quality of energy is lowered with each transformation, as energy of an organized form tends to degrade into disorganized forms. With this broader perspective, the second law can be stated another way:

In natural processes, high-quality energy tends to transform into lower-quality energy—order tends toward disorder.

Consider a system consisting of a stack of pennies on a table, all heads up. Somebody walks by and accidentally bumps the table and the pennies topple to the floor, certainly not landing all heads up. Order becomes disorder. Molecules of gas all moving in harmony make up an orderly state—and also an unlikely state. On the other hand, molecules of gas moving in haphazard directions with a broad range of speeds make up a disorderly, chaotic (and more likely) state. If you remove the lid of a perfume bottle or open the oven door on a tray of baked chocolate cookies, molecules escape into the room and make up a more disorderly state. Relative order becomes disorder. You would not expect the reverse to happen by itself; that is, you would not expect the perfume or cookie molecules to spontaneously order themselves back into the bottle or tray and thereby return to the more ordered state.

Processes in which disorder returns to order without any external help don't occur in nature. Interestingly, time is given a direction via this thermodynamic rule. Time's arrow always points from order to disorder.[10]

Disordered energy can be changed to ordered energy only with organizational effort or work input. For example, water in a refrigerator freezes and becomes more ordered because work is put into the refrigeration cycle; gas can be ordered into a small region if a compressor supplied with outside energy does work. Processes in which the net effect is an increase of order always require an external input of energy. But, for such processes, there is always an increase of disorder somewhere else to more than offset the increase of order. So we see that the order of water molecules turning to ice in a freezer is offset by greater disorder of air molecules outside as heat energy is expelled into the kitchen air.

FIGURE 18.17
If you push a crate full of auto parts across a rough floor, all your work goes into heating the floor and the crate. Work against friction produces heat, which cannot do any work on the crate. Ordered energy is transformed into disordered energy.

Biological systems are enormously complex and, while living, never reach thermal equilibrium.

CHECK POINT

In your bedroom are probably some 10^{27} air molecules. If they were all to congregate on the opposite side of the room, you could suffocate. But this is unlikely. Is such a spontaneous congregation of molecules less likely, more likely, or of the same probability if there are fewer molecules in the room?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Fewer molecules mean a greater probability of their spontaneously congregating on the opposite side of your room. Exaggeration makes this credible: If there is only one molecule in the room, there's a 50% chance of it being in the other half of the room. If you have two molecules, the chance of both being on one side at the same time is 25%. If there are three molecules, the chance of your being breathless is one-eighth (12.5%). The greater the number of molecules, the greater the chances of there being nearly equal numbers of molecules on both sides of the room.

Sharks rely on a gel under their skin that detects extremely small changes in ocean temperature—less than a thousandth of a degree Celsius. This capability likely assists them in detecting subtle temperature boundaries where their prey are found.

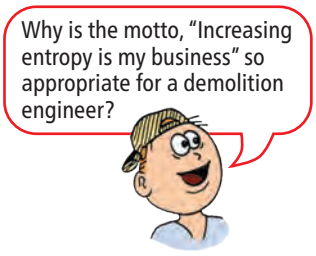
[10]Reversible systems look sensible when a movie film of them is run backward. Remember those old movies where a train comes to a stop inches away from a heroine tied to the tracks? How was this done without mishap? Simple. The train began at rest, inches away from the heroine, and went *backward*, gaining speed. When the film was reversed, the train was seen to move *toward* the heroine. Watch closely for the telltale smoke that *enters* the smokestack!

18.7 Entropy

Energy tends to disperse: Hot air in a hot oven disperses when the oven door is opened. Energy tends to degrade: Energy locked in the chemical bonds of wood degrades when the wood is burned. **Entropy** is the term we use to describe the natural dispersing or degrading of energy. Entropy can be measured by the *amount of disorder* in a system.[11] More entropy means more dispersal or more degradation of energy. Since energy tends to disperse and degrade with time, the total amount of entropy in any system tends to increase with time. Whenever a physical system is allowed to distribute its energy freely, it always does so in a manner such that entropy increases while the energy of the system remaining available for doing work decreases.

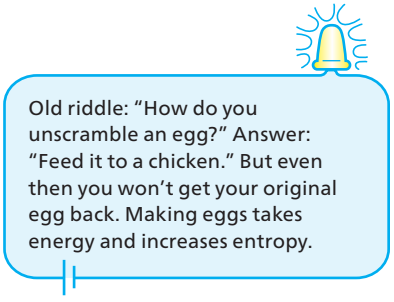
FIGURE 18.18
Entropy.

The net entropy in the universe is continuously increasing (continuously running "downhill"). We say *net* because there are some regions in which energy is actually being organized and concentrated. This occurs in living organisms, which survive by concentrating and organizing energy from food sources. All living organisms, from bacteria to trees to human beings, extract energy from their surroundings and use it to increase their own organization (growth and repair). In living organisms, entropy decreases. But the order in life forms is maintained by increasing entropy elsewhere, resulting in a net increase in entropy. Energy must be transformed into the living system to support life. When it isn't, the organism soon dies and tends toward disorder.[12]



The first law of thermodynamics is a universal law of nature to which no exceptions have been observed. The second law, however, is a probabilistic statement. Given enough time, even the most improbable states may occur; entropy may sometimes decrease. For example, the haphazard motions of air molecules could momentarily become harmonious in a corner of the room, just as a tall stack of pennies spilled on the floor could all come up heads. These situations are possible, but they are not probable. The second law tells us the most probable course of events, not the only possible one.

The laws of thermodynamics are often stated this way: You can't win (because you can't get any more energy out of a system than you put into it), you can't break even (because you can't get as much useful energy out as you put in), and you can't get out of the game (entropy in the universe is always increasing).


Old riddle: "How do you unscramble an egg?" Answer: "Feed it to a chicken." But even then you won't get your original egg back. Making eggs takes energy and increases entropy.

A **third law of thermodynamics** states that no system can have its absolute temperature reduced to zero. Time and again, investigators have tried to reach this elusive temperature, getting close—but only close. There is also a **zeroth law of thermodynamics,** which states that two systems, each in thermal equilibrium with a third system, are in equilibrium with each other. The importance of this law was recognized only after the first, second, and third laws had been named—hence the charming name "zeroth" seemed appropriate.

[11]Entropy can be expressed mathematically. The increase in entropy ΔS of a thermodynamic system is equal to the amount of heat added to the system ΔQ divided by the temperature T at which the heat is added: $\Delta S = \Delta Q/T$.

[12]Interestingly enough, the American writer Ralph Waldo Emerson, who lived during the time the second law of thermodynamics was the new science topic of the day, philosophically speculated that not everything becomes more disordered with time and cited the example of human thought. Ideas about the nature of things grow increasingly refined and better organized as they pass through the minds of succeeding generations. Human thought is evolving toward more order.

CHECK POINT

As energy disperses, where does it ultimately end up?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Ultimately the energy disperses into internal energy.

Chapter 18 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Thermodynamics The study of heat and its transformation into different forms of energy.

Absolute zero Theoretically, the lowest possible temperature that a substance can have; the temperature at which particles of a substance have their minimum kinetic energy.

Internal energy The total energy (kinetic plus potential) of the submicroscopic particles that make up a substance. *Changes* in internal energy are of principal concern in thermodynamics.

First law of thermodynamics A restatement of the law of energy conservation, applied to systems in which energy is transferred by heat and/or work. The heat added to a system equals its increase in internal energy plus the external work it does on its environment.

Adiabatic process A process, often fast expansion or compression, in which no heat enters or leaves a system.

Temperature inversion A condition in which upward convection of air ceases, often because an upper region of the atmosphere is warmer than the region below it.

Second law of thermodynamics Thermal energy never spontaneously flows from a cold object to a hot object. Also, no machine can be completely efficient in converting heat to work; some of the heat supplied to the machine at high temperature is dissipated as waste heat at lower temperature. And, finally, all systems tend to become more and more disordered as time goes by.

Heat engine A device that uses heat as input and provides work as output.

Entropy A measure of the disorder of a system. Whenever energy freely transforms from one form into another, the direction of transformation is toward a state of greater disorder and therefore toward one of greater entropy.

Third law of thermodynamics No system can have its temperature reduced to absolute zero.

Zeroth law of thermodynamics If two thermodynamic systems are each in thermal equilibrium with a third, then they are in thermal equilibrium with each other.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

1. What is the origin and meaning of the word *thermodynamics*?

18.1 Absolute Zero

2. By what fraction does the volume of gas at 0°C contract for each 1°C in its temperature when the pressure is held constant?
3. By what fraction does the pressure of gas at 0°C contract for each 1°C in its temperature when the volume is held constant?
4. Why is it not possible to cool a gas at 0°C by more than 273°C if the pressure of the gas is held constant?
5. What happens to the kinetic energy of atoms and molecules at a temperature of absolute zero?
6. Is the principal concern in the study of thermodynamics the *amount* of internal energy in a system or the *changes* in internal energy in a substance?

18.2 First Law of Thermodynamics

7. What form of energy needs to be included in the law of conservation of energy to lead to the first law of thermodynamics?
8. How does a system use added heat?
9. What is the relationship between heat added to a system, change in its internal energy, and external work done by the system?
10. What happens to the internal energy of a system when mechanical work is done on it? What happens to its temperature?

18.3 Adiabatic Processes

11. How are adiabatic conditions achieved in a system?
12. If work is done *on* a system, does the internal energy of the system increase or decrease?
13. If work is done *by* a system, does the internal energy of the system increase or decrease?

18.4 Meteorology and the First Law

14. What happens to air temperature as pressure increases?
15. What is the adiabatic form of the first law of thermodynamics?
16. What generally happens to the temperature of rising air? Of sinking air?
17. When does temperature inversion take place?
18. Can adiabatic processes apply to other phases of matter besides gases?

18.5 Second Law of Thermodynamics

19. Can a heat engine convert all the heat energy supplied to it into mechanical energy?
20. What role does the 'reservoir' have in a heat engine?
21. What exactly is thermal pollution?
22. How does the second law of thermodynamics relate to heat engines?
23. Why is the condensation part of the cycle in a steam turbine so essential?

18.6 Energy Tends to Disperse

24. Distinguish between high-quality energy and low-quality energy in terms of organized and disorganized energy. Give an example of each.
25. What happens to the quality of energy with each transformation? What does the word 'quality' imply?
26. With respect to orderly and disorderly states, what do natural systems tend to do? Can a disorderly state ever transform to an orderly state? Explain.

18.7 Entropy

27. How does the entropy in a system change with the passage of time?
28. Distinguish between the first and second laws of thermodynamics in terms of whether or not exceptions occur.
29. Which law forbids the attainment of absolute zero temperature?
30. What is the zeroth law of thermodynamics?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Observe the change in volume of a sealed rubber balloon when placed for a short time into a hot oven, and when it is placed in a refrigerator. Elementary stuff. In either case, undo the tie and note the temperature of the air ejected.
32. Perform the activity in the Thermodynamics Dramatized box. And show that the pan of water does not have to be cold for the can to collapse. Try warm (but not boiling) water and you'll see collapse of the can. Impress your friends with this one!
33. With a hammer, pound a nail into a piece of wood. Withdraw the nail quickly and feel its warmth! Think and Solve 43 takes this further!
34. Continuously stir a glass of water at room temperature for more than a minute. Note how its temperature changes.

PLUG AND CHUG (EQUATION FAMILIARIZATION)

$$\text{Ideal efficiency} = \frac{T_{\text{hot}} - T_{\text{cold}}}{T_{\text{hot}}}$$

35. A heat engine operates between the temperatures of 400K and 500 K. Show that the engine's ideal efficiency is 20%.
36. The ideal efficiency of an engine is 80%. Calculate the temperature of the surrounding air if its fuel is heated to 3000 K.

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

37. The temperatures of the cold reservoir and the hot reservoir for a heat engine are 520°C and 280°C. Calculate its ideal efficiency.
38. An ocean thermal energy conversion (OTEC) power plant operates on a temperature difference of 4°C deep water and 25°C surface water. Show that the Carnot efficiency of this plant is 7%.
39. On a chilly 10°C day, your friend who loves cold weather says she wishes it were twice as cold. Taking this literally, show the temperature she desires would be −131.5°C.
40. Imagine a giant dry-cleaner's bag full of air at a temperature of −35°C floating like a balloon with a string hanging 10 km above the ground. Estimate what its temperature would be if you were able to yank it suddenly back to Earth's surface.
41. Wally Whacko claims to have invented a heat engine that will revolutionize the industry. It runs between a hot source at 300°C and a cold sink at 25°C. He claims that his engine is 92% efficient.
    (a) What error did he make in his choice of temperature scales?
    (b) What is the actual maximum efficiency of his engine?
42. A power station with an efficiency of 0.4 generates 10^8 W of electric power and dissipates 1.5×10^8 J of heat energy each second to the cooling water that flows through it, which increases its temperature by 3°C. Knowing that the specific heat capacity of water in SI units is 4184 J/kg•°C, show that 12,000 kg of warmed water flows through the plant each second.

43. A hammer exerts an average force of 600 N on a 6.0-g steel nail 8.0 cm long when it is being driven into a piece of wood. The nail becomes warmer. Show that the work done on the nail is 48 J, and that the increase in the nail's temperature is 19.0°C. (Assume that the specific heat capacity of steel is 420 J/kg•°C.)

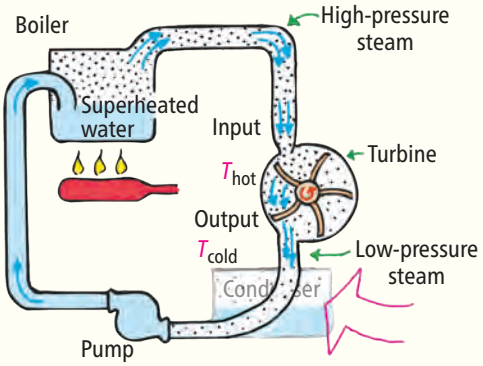
44. Construct a table of all the possible combinations of numbers that can come up when you throw a pair of standard dice. Now, show that the probability of drawing a pair of odd numbers is greater than the probability of drawing the same number.

THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

45. A friend said the temperature inside an oven is 500 and the temperature inside a particular star is 50,000. You're unsure whether your friend meant Celsius degrees or kelvins. How much difference does it make in each case?
46. The temperature of the Sun's interior is about 15 million degrees. Is it important whether this is degrees Celsius or kelvins? Explain.
47. When heat flows from a warm object in contact with a cool object, do both objects undergo the same amount of temperature change? Explain.
48. Suppose that you have a sturdy jar of helium gas with a temperature of 0°C. At what Celsius temperature will it be twice as hot (have twice the internal energy)?
49. Why does a bicycle pump get warm when air is compressed?
50. How does the temperature increase that occurs when a can of liquid is shaken vigorously relate to Joule's paddle-wheel experiment of Figure 18.4?
51. What happens to the gas pressure within a sealed gallon can when it is heated? When it is cooled? Why?
52. Suppose you do 100 J of work in compressing a gas. If 80 J of heat escapes in the process, what is the change in internal energy of the gas?
53. Why does the bottom of a tire pump feel hot when you pump air in the tire, but when air is released, the valve stem feels cool?
54. If hot air rises, why is it so cold on mountaintops?
55. Is it physically possible for a bucket of water to transfer energy to the air as heat and freeze? Why or why not?
56. What is the ultimate source of energy in a hydroelectric power plant? Defend your answer.
57. Why is it advantageous to use steam that is as hot as possible in a steam-driven turbine?
58. What happens to the efficiency of a heat engine when the temperature of the reservoir into which thermal energy is transferred is lowered?
59. Would you warm a kitchen by opening the door of a hot oven? Explain.
60. Could you cool a kitchen by leaving the refrigerator door open and closing the kitchen door and windows? Defend your answer.
61. Would you cool a room if you plugged in an air conditioner unit and placed it on a table in the middle of the room? Defend your answer.
62. An electric fan does not lower the temperature of air in a hot room, but actually increases air temperature. How, then, are you cooled by a fan on a hot day?
63. Strictly speaking, why will a refrigerator containing a fixed amount of food consume more energy in a warm room than in a cold room?
64. A refrigerator moves heat from cold to warm. Why does this not violate the second law of thermodynamics?
65. If you squeeze an air-filled balloon and no heat escapes, what happens to the internal energy of the gas in the balloon?
66. In buildings that are being electrically heated, is it at all wasteful to turn all the lights on? Is turning all the lights on wasteful if the building is being cooled by air-conditioning?
67. Why can the drinking bird in Figure 17.4 in the previous chapter be considered a heat engine?
68. When molecules in the high-pressure combustion chamber of a rocket engine are expelled through a nozzle, will their temperature end up being more, less, or the same as their initial temperature in the chamber before being exhausted?
69. According to the second law of thermodynamics, is the universe moving to a more ordered state or to a more disordered state?
70. How does temperature inversion in the atmosphere become visible when air is invisible?
71. The ocean possesses enormous numbers of molecules, all with kinetic energy. Can this energy be extracted and used as a power source? Defend your answer.
72. Why do we say a substance in a liquid phase is more disordered than the same substance in a solid phase?
73. Water evaporates from a salt solution and leaves behind salt crystals that have a higher degree of molecular order than the more randomly moving molecules in the saltwater. Has the entropy principle been violated? Why or why not?
74. Water put into the freezer compartment of your refrigerator goes to a state of less molecular disorder when it freezes. Is this an exception to the entropy principle? Explain.
75. As a chicken develops from an egg, it becomes more ordered with time. Does this violate the principle of entropy? Explain.
76. What do you think will happen to the temperature of a thermally insulated kitchen where an ordinary refrigerator is turned on and its door is left open: increase, decrease, or remain the same? Briefly explain your answer.

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

77. While experimenting in the laboratory, you measure the temperature of a beaker of water to be 50°C. What is your response to your classmate who suggests it is half as hot as boiling water at 100°C?
78. What is the ultimate source of energy in coal, oil, and wood? Why do we call energy from wood potentially renewable but energy from coal and oil nonrenewable?
79. How does the ideal efficiency of an automobile relate to the temperature of the engine and the temperature of the environment in which it operates? Be specific.
80. What do you understand by an ideal efficiency of zero?
81. Heat always flows spontaneously from an object with a higher temperature to an object with a lower temperature. Is this the same thing as saying that heat always flows from an object with a greater internal energy to one with a lower internal energy? Discuss why or why not.
82. Hovering over the surface of our skin is a layer of air some 3 millimeters in thickness that acts as a thermal blanket. On a hot day, what effect does a breeze have on bare skin? What effect does it have on a cold day?
83. The combined molecular kinetic energies of molecules in a cool lake are greater than the combined molecular kinetic energies of molecules in a cup of hot tea. Pretend you partially immerse the teacup in the lake and that the tea *absorbs* 10 calories from the water and becomes hotter, while the water that gives up 10 calories becomes cooler. Would this energy transfer violate the first law of thermodynamics? The second law of thermodynamics? Discuss your answers.
84. Why is thermal pollution a relative term?
85. The box "Thermodynamics Dramatized" shows the crushing of an inverted steam-filled can placed in a pan of water. Would the water need to be cold? Would crushing occur if the water were hot but not boiling? Would it crush in boiling water? Experiment and see!
86. Defend the statement that 100% of the electrical energy that went into lighting incandescent lamps was converted to internal energy. Are the first and the second laws of thermodynamics violated?
87. Discuss this statement: The second law of thermodynamics is one of the most fundamental laws of nature, yet it is not an exact law at all. Why not?
88. It is generally assumed that perpetual motion machines are impossible to construct. Is it inconsistent to say that molecules are in perpetual motion?
89. A classmate says that all this stuff about no perpetual motion is bunk; that atoms, planets, stars, and everything are in perpetual motion. What distinction is being missed here?
90. (a) If you spent 10 minutes repeatedly shaking and throwing down a pair of coins, would you expect to see two heads come up at least once? (b) If you spent an hour shaking a handful of 10 coins and throwing them down, would you expect to see all 10 come up heads at least once? (c) If you stirred a box of 10,000 coins and tossed them repeatedly on the floor all day long, would you expect to see all 10,000 appear as heads at least once? Discuss.
91. What is the purpose of the condenser in Figure 18.14? Isn't it wasteful to cool the steam down, change it to water, then heat it up again and return it to the boiler? Why not bypass the condenser altogether and simply send the spent steam directly back to the boiler as shown?



CHAPTER EIGHTEEN Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. Water freezes at atmospheric pressure and a temperature of
   (a) 0° Celsius.
   (b) 32° Fahrenheit.
   (c) about 273 kelvin.
   (d) All of the above
2. When Philadelphia's temperature is 40°F and Miami's temperature is 80°F,
   (a) Miami is twice as hot as Philadelphia.
   (b) Miami is warmer than Philadelphia.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
3. If a 5°C piece of iron is heated until it has twice as much internal energy, its temperature will be
   (a) 10°C.
   (b) 273°C.
   (c) 278°C.
   (d) 283°C.
4. When you compress air with a tire pump, the air temperature in the tire
   (a) increases.
   (b) decreases.
   (c) remains unaffected.
   (d) None of the above
5. In the formation of a cloud, moist air rises and
   (a) expands.
   (b) cools.
   (c) condenses.
   (d) All of the above
6. A given amount of heat energy can be completely converted to mechanical energy in
   (a) a steam engine.
   (b) an atomic reactor.
   (c) a simple machine.
   (d) None of the above
7. As a parcel of air at high altitude sinks to a lower elevation with no heat input or output, its temperature
   (a) increases.
   (b) decreases.
   (c) will remain unchanged.
   (d) cannot be estimated.
8. The main purpose of the condenser in the steam cycle of a steam turbine is to
   (a) cool the steam.
   (b) condense the steam.
   (c) lower back pressure on the turbine blades.
   (d) change mechanical energy to electricity.
9. As a system becomes more disordered, entropy
   (a) increases.
   (b) decreases.
   (c) remains the same.
   (d) may increase and decrease simultaneously.
10. Processes can proceed from disorder to order
    (a) when input energy is supplied.
    (b) on an everyday occurrence.
    (c) never.
    (d) None of the above

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (d): All the listed temperatures are the same in different units. So all of the above is correct. **2. (b):** Miami is warmer, but not twice as warm. Twice as warm is found by converting temperatures into kelvin units. Philadelphia is $(40 + 273) = 313$ kelvin. Miami is $(80 + 273) = 353$ kelvin, which is NOT twice 313 kelvin. **3. (d):** 5°C is 278 kelvin. Twice that is 556 kelvin. In Celsius degrees, $556 - 273 = 283$°C. Remember, ratios of temperatures must be expressed in kelvins. **4. (a):** Work done during compression increases the kinetic energy of air molecules, increasing air temperature. Also, molecules that are compressed collide more often with approaching molecules and increase in speed. Faster molecules make for warmer air. **5. (d):** Rising moist air expands, cools, and then condenses—all three of the above. **6. (d):** The first law of thermodynamics states that no heat energy can be completely converted to mechanical energy under any circumstances. Some always leaves any system. So none of the above is correct. **7. (a):** When air moves downward, atmospheric pressure increases. According to the first law of thermodynamics applied to meteorology, the temperature of downward moving air increases as pressure increases. **8. (c):** Turbine blades can rotate easier when steam pressure on their back sides is reduced. This is accomplished when pressure of the steam is reduced by condensation. The steam does cool, but the main purpose is lowering back pressure on the turbine blades. The condenser does not change mechanical energy to electricity. **9. (a):** More disorder does not mean lower entropy, or unchanged entropy. By definition, entropy increases as a system becomes more disordered. **10. (a):** Only when energy is fed to a system can the direction of natural processes reverse their normal order. This may happen daily, but only when input of energy to a system moves from disorder to order. Choice (a) is the best answer.

This page is intentionally left blank

PART FOUR

Sound

The hairs of my bow rub against the cello strings, setting them vibrating at a frequency that depends on their mass, tension, and the part that I can control with my fingers, their length. The vibrating strings nicely force vibrations of like frequencies in the wooden body, and the vibes don't stop there. The vibrating wood produces vibrations in the surrounding air that carry the sound of music to the eardrums of my listeners. Yum to the physics of music!

CHAPTER NINETEEN

19 Vibrations and Waves

19.1 **Good Vibrations**
Vibration of a Pendulum

19.2 **Wave Description**

19.3 **Wave Motion**
Transverse Waves
Longitudinal Waves

19.4 **Wave Speed**

19.5 **Wave Interference**
Standing Waves

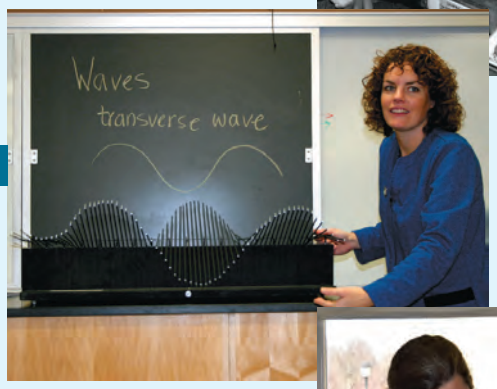
19.6 **Doppler Effect**

19.7 **Bow Waves**

19.8 **Shock Waves**

1

2



3

4

5

1 Frank Oppenheimer at the San Francisco Exploratorium shows a straight-line trace when a swinging pendulum bob leaks sand on a stationary conveyor belt. **2** When the conveyor belt moves in uniform motion, a sine curve is traced. **3** Diane Reindeau shows her class how waves are generated by vibrations in a classroom wave demonstrator. **4** Anne Tabor-Morris uses a spring and a pendulum to compare and contrast the oscillator timing mechanisms of a pair of small clocks. **5** Singer, composer, and creator of Conceptual Academy, chemistry professor John Suchocki produces good vibrations.

The Exploratorium in San Francisco is not only a world-class museum of science and technology; it is also perhaps the best place on planet Earth to teach a physics class. I was honored to do so in the years 1982–2000. The Exploratorium is special because of its founder, Frank Oppenheimer, the younger brother of more famous J. Robert Oppenheimer, the director of the Los Alamos lab during World War II. Frank's passion for doing physics was surpassed only by his passion for teaching it. I was enormously privileged to share my classroom with him when vibrations, waves, and musical sounds were the topic. I remember after one of his brilliant presentations he quietly asked me how he did. Almost tearfully, I responded, "You were great." For it was true. In addition to his great explanations of physics, he himself exuded a personal greatness—with his insistence on excellence, lack of pretentiousness, and respect for invention and play and for his students. Frank was the most-loved teacher in my experience.

Frank Oppenheimer suffered in the political witch hunts of the 1950s when he admitted to being a member of the American Communist Party back in the depths of the Great Depression, along with many other idealistic citizens who were sensitive to the nation's high unemployment rate at the time. Frank told me that after he refused to give the names of other members to the House Un-American Activities Committee, he was hounded by the FBI. Despite his impressive accomplishments in physics, and despite international awards in physics, Frank was barred from practicing physics. He was, however, allowed to be a cattle rancher and to teach all the sciences at Pagosa Springs High School in Colorado. After being taught by Frank, the students in this small town began winning state-level science fairs. Many went on to college, where they were regarded as outstanding science students. Nonetheless, Frank's neighbors were warned by government agents to keep a wary eye on his potential "un-American activities."

Frank devoted the rest of his life to exposing the general public to the wonders of science, which culminated in the Exploratorium in San Francisco. I dedicated the 5th edition of my *Conceptual Physics* to him. Before Frank died in 1985, he contributed this paragraph, which I used as the book's opening paragraph:

> By trying to understand the natural world around us, we gain confidence in our ability to determine whom to trust and what to believe about other matters as well. Without this confidence, our decisions about social, political, and economic matters are inevitably based entirely on the most appealing lie that someone else dishes out to us. Our appreciation of the noticings and discoveries of both scientists and artists therefore serves, not only to delight us, but also to help us make more satisfactory and valid decisions and to find better solutions for our individual and societal problems.

Frank's message rings as true today. His motive for founding the Exploratorium was to lift people by encouraging them to do for themselves and to think for themselves—a way of teaching that has become widespread. In 2013 the Exploratorium relocated from the Palace of Fine Arts in San Francisco to nearby Pier 15. I'm happy to report that the new and larger Exploratorium has all the charm and good energy that Frank gave to the original Exploratorium. His legacy of decency is ongoing.

Most information about our surroundings arrives in some form of waves. It is through wave motion that sounds are transported to our ears, light to our eyes, and electromagnetic signals to our radios and wireless phones. Through *wave motion,* energy can be transferred from a source to a receiver without the transfer of matter between the two points. And what is the source of all waves? Vibrations.

fyi

- For more on Oppenheimer, read *Something Incredibly Wonderful Happens: Frank Oppenheimer and the World He Made Up* by K. C. Cole (Boston: Houghton Mifflin Harcourt, 2009).

19.1 Good Vibrations

In a general sense, anything that moves back and forth, to and fro, side to side, in and out, or up and down is vibrating. A *vibration* is a periodic wiggle in time. A periodic wiggle in both space and time is a *wave*. A wave extends from one place to another. Light and sound are both vibrations that propagate through space as

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

Mechanical waves require a medium. A Slinky needs its coils; ocean waves need water; sound from a bugle needs air; "doing the wave" in a stadium needs exuberant fans.

waves—but two very different kinds of waves. Sound is a mechanical wave, the propagation of vibrations through a material medium—a solid, liquid, or gas. If there is no material medium to vibrate, then no sound is possible. Sound cannot travel in a vacuum. But light can because, as we shall learn in later chapters, light is a vibration of electric and magnetic fields—an electromagnetic wave of pure energy. Fascination with light will deepen in Part 5 chapters where we'll learn it has particle properties, traveling as a wave and hitting like a particle. For now let's just treat light as an energetic wave. Although light can pass through many materials, it needs none. This is evident when it propagates through the vacuum between the Sun and Earth. The source of all waves—mechanical or electromagnetic—is something that is vibrating. We shall begin our study of vibrations and waves by considering the motion of a simple pendulum.

Vibration of a Pendulum

If we suspend a stone at the end of a piece of string, we have a simple pendulum. Likewise for a sand-filled container suspended at the end of a vertical pole that swings to and fro. In the chapter-opening photos, Frank Oppenheimer shows how sand leaking from such a pendulum traces a straight line on a stationary conveyor belt and then, when the belt moves at constant speed, produces a special curve known as a *sine curve*. A **sine curve** is a pictorial representation of a wave produced by simple harmonic motion.[1]

Pendulums swing to and fro with such regularity that, for a long time, they were used to control the motion of most clocks. They can still be found in grandfather clocks and cuckoo clocks. Galileo discovered that the time a pendulum takes to swing to and fro through small distances depends on only the *length of the pendulum*.[2] Much to the surprise of most people, the time of a to-and-fro swing, called the *period*, does not depend on either the mass of the pendulum or the size of the arc through which it swings.

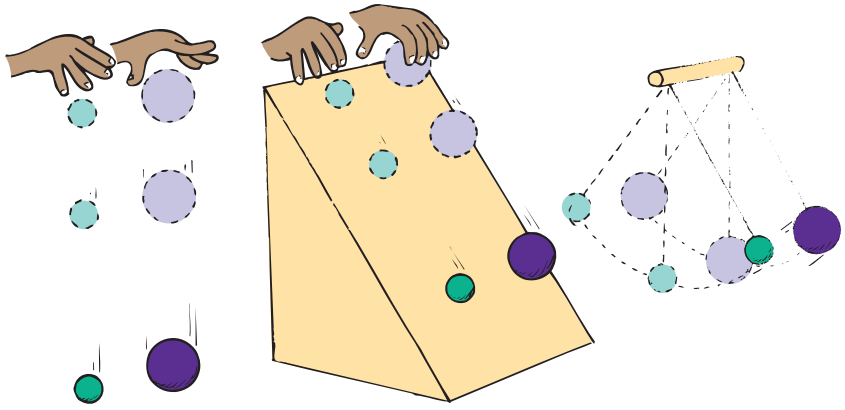


FIGURE 19.1
If you drop two balls of different mass, they accelerate at *g*. Let them slide without friction down the incline, and they slide together at the same fraction of *g*. Tie them to strings of the same length so that they are pendulums, and they swing to and fro in unison. In all cases, the motions are independent of mass.

In 1848, Jean Foucault devised a very long pendulum that, when swinging, appears to be changing directions during the day. Actually, Earth revolves underneath the pendulum.

A long pendulum has a longer period than a short pendulum; that is, it swings to and fro less frequently than a short pendulum. A grandfather clock's pendulum with a length of about 1 meter, for example, swings with a leisurely period of 2 seconds, while the much shorter pendulum of a cuckoo clock swings with a

[1]The condition for simple harmonic motion is that the restoring force is proportional to the displacement from equilibrium. This condition is met, at least approximately, for most vibrations. The component of weight that restores a displaced pendulum to its equilibrium position is directly proportional to the pendulum's displacement (for small angles)—likewise for a bob attached to a spring. Recall, from Chapter 12, that Hooke's law for a spring is $F = k\Delta x$, where the force to stretch (or compress) a spring is directly proportional to the distance stretched (or compressed).

[2]The equation for the period of a simple pendulum for small arcs is $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}}$, where T is the period, L is the length of the pendulum, and g is the acceleration due to gravity.

period that is less than a second. In addition to length, the period of a pendulum depends on the acceleration due to gravity. Oil and mineral prospectors, as well as geologists, use very sensitive pendulums to detect slight differences in measured accelerations, which are affected by the densities of underlying formations.

CHECK POINT

Which has a longer period, a short or a long pendulum?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

A long pendulum has a long period (just as the gait of a long-legged giraffe is longer than the gait of a short-legged dachshund).

19.2 Wave Description

A sine curve can also be traced by a bob attached to a spring undergoing vertical simple harmonic motion (Figure 19.2). As mentioned, a sine curve is a pictorial representation of a wave. As for a water wave, the high points of a sine wave are called *crests* and the low points are called *troughs*. The straight dashed line in the figure represents the midpoint of the vibration, the equilibrium position. The term **amplitude** refers to the distance from the midpoint to the crest (or trough) of the wave. So the amplitude equals the maximum displacement from equilibrium.

The **wavelength** of a wave is the distance from the top of one crest to the top of the next crest. Or, equivalently, the wavelength is the distance between any successive identical parts of the wave. The wavelengths of waves at the beach are measured in meters, the wavelengths of ripples in a pond and the wavelengths in microwave ovens are typically measured in centimeters, and the wavelengths of light are measured in billionths of a meter (nanometers).

How frequently a vibration occurs is described by its **frequency.** The frequency of a vibrating pendulum, or of an object on a spring, is the number of to-and-fro vibrations it makes in a given time (usually 1 second). A complete to-and-fro oscillation is one vibration. If a vibration occurs in 1 second, the frequency is one vibration per second. If two vibrations occur in 1 second, the frequency is two vibrations per second.

The unit of frequency is called the **hertz** (Hz), after Heinrich Hertz, who demonstrated radio waves in 1886. One vibration per second is 1 hertz; two vibrations per second is 2 hertz; and so on. Higher frequencies are measured in kilohertz (kHz, thousands of hertz) and still higher frequencies in megahertz (MHz, millions of hertz) or gigahertz (GHz, billions of hertz). AM radio waves are measured in kilohertz, and FM radio waves are measured in megahertz; radar and microwave ovens operate at gigahertz frequencies. A station at 960 kHz on

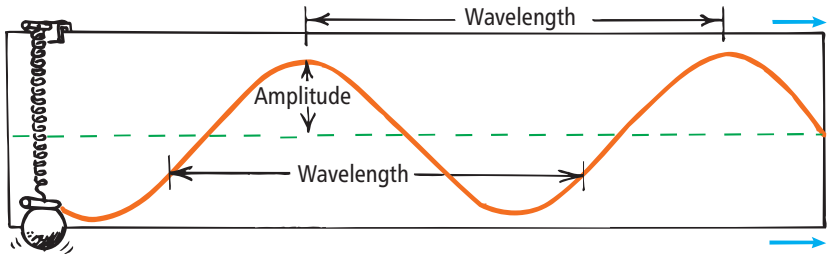


FIGURE 19.2
When the bob vibrates up and down, a marking pen traces a sine curve on paper that is moved horizontally at constant speed. (As a graph of time, Wavelength is actually the Period.)

The frequency of a "classical" wave—such as a sound wave, water wave, or radio wave—matches the frequency of its vibrating source. (In the quantum world of atoms and photons, the rules are different.)

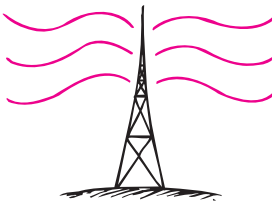


FIGURE 19.3
Electrons in the transmitting antenna vibrate 960,000 times each second and produce 960-kHz radio waves.

the AM radio dial, for example, broadcasts radio waves that have a frequency of 960,000 vibrations per second. A station at 101.7 MHz on the FM dial broadcasts radio waves with a frequency of 101,700,000 hertz. These radio-wave frequencies are the frequencies at which electrons are forced to vibrate in the antenna of a radio station's transmitting tower. So we see that the source of all waves is something that vibrates. The frequency of the vibrating source and the frequency of the wave it produces are the same.

The **period** of a vibration or wave is the time for one complete vibration. If an object's frequency is known, then its period can be calculated, and vice versa. Suppose, for example, that a pendulum makes two vibrations in 1 second. Its frequency is 2 Hz. The time needed to complete one vibration—that is, the period of vibration—is 1/2 second. Or, if the vibration frequency is 3 Hz, then the period is 1/3 second. Frequency (vibrations per second) and period (seconds per vibration) are reciprocals:

$$\text{Frequency} = \frac{1}{\text{period}}$$

or, vice versa,

$$\text{Period} = \frac{1}{\text{frequency}}$$

CHECK POINT

1. **An electric toothbrush completes 90 cycles every second. What are (a) its frequency and (b) its period?**
2. **Gusts of wind make the Willis Tower in Chicago sway back and forth, completing a cycle in 10 s. What are (a) its frequency and (b) its period?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. (a) 90 cycles per second is 90 Hz; (b) 1/90 s.
2. (a) 1/10 Hz; (b) 10 s.

19.3 Wave Motion

Numerous fans at a concert or stadium "do the wave" by rising from their seats, swinging their arms high, and then sitting back down in their seats—all in an appropriate sequence.

Wave motion can be most easily understood by first considering the simple case of a horizontally stretched rope. If one end of such a rope is shaken up and down, a rhythmic disturbance travels along the rope, such as shown in Figures 19.2 and 19.5. Each particle of the rope moves up and down, while, at the same time, the disturbance moves along the length of the rope. The medium, rope or whatever, returns to its initial condition after the disturbance has passed. What is propagated is the disturbance and the energy it carries, not the medium itself.

Let us consider another example of a wave to illustrate that what is transported from one location to another is a disturbance in a medium, not the medium itself. If you view a field of tall grass from an elevated position on a gusty day, you will see waves travel across the grass. The individual stems of grass do not leave their places; instead, they swing to and fro. While wave motion continues, the tall grass swings back and forth, vibrating between definite limits but going nowhere. When the wave motion stops, the grass returns to its initial position.

Perhaps a more familiar example of wave motion is a water wave. If a stone is dropped into a quiet pond, waves travel outward in expanding circles, the centers of which are at the source of the disturbance. In this case, we might

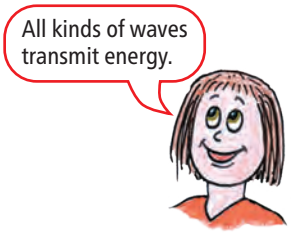
think that water is being transported with the waves, since water is splashed onto previously dry ground when the waves meet the shore. We should realize, however, that, barring obstacles, the water will flow back into the pond and things will be much as they were in the beginning. The surface of the water will have been disturbed, but the water itself will have gone nowhere. A leaf on the surface will bob up and down, and drift to and fro, as the waves pass, but the leaf will end up where it started. Again, the medium returns to its initial condition after the disturbance has passed—even in the extreme case of a tsunami.

FIGURE 19.4
Water waves.

CHECK POINT

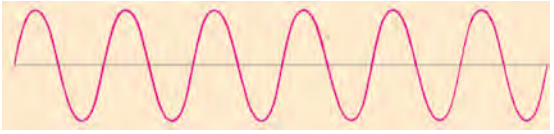
In one word, what is transmitted from one location to another by all types of waves?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER
Energy.



PRACTICING PHYSICS

Here we have a sine curve that represents a transverse wave. With a ruler, measure the wavelength and amplitude of the wave.



Wavelength _____

Amplitude _____

Transverse Waves

Fasten one end of a rope to a wall and hold the free end in your hand. If you suddenly shake the free end up and then down, an energy-carrying pulse will travel along the rope and back (Figure 19.5). In this case, the motion of the rope (up and down arrows) is at right angles to the direction of the wave speed. This right-angled, or sideways, motion is called *transverse motion*. Now shake the rope with a regular, continuing up-and-down motion, and the series of pulses will produce a wave. Because the motion of the medium (the rope, in this case) is transverse to the direction the wave travels, this type of wave is called a **transverse wave.**

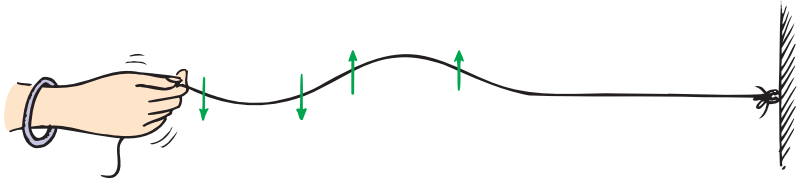
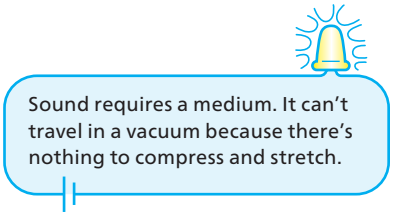


FIGURE 19.5
A transverse wave.

Waves in the stretched strings of musical instruments are transverse. We will see later that electromagnetic waves, which make up radio waves and light, are also transverse.

FIGURE 19.6
Tom Greenslade uses a Slinky to illustrate both transverse and longitudinal waves.



CHECK POINT

What is transmitted in the pulses of a vibrating rope in Figure 19.5?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Energy.

Longitudinal Waves

Not all waves are transverse. Sometimes the parts that make up a medium move to and fro in the same direction in which the wave travels. Motion is *along* the direction of the wave rather than at right angles to it. This produces a **longitudinal wave.**

Both a transverse wave and a longitudinal wave can be demonstrated with a spring or a Slinky stretched out, as shown in Figure 19.7. A transverse wave is produced by shaking the end of a Slinky from side to side in a direction perpendicular to the Slinky. A longitudinal wave is created by rapidly pulling and pushing the end of the Slinky toward and away from you in a direction parallel to the Slinky. In this case, we see that the medium vibrates parallel to the direction of energy transfer. Part of the Slinky is compressed, and a wave of *compression* travels along the spring. In between successive compressions is a stretched region, called a *rarefaction*. Both compressions and rarefactions travel in the same direction along the Slinky. Sound waves are longitudinal waves.

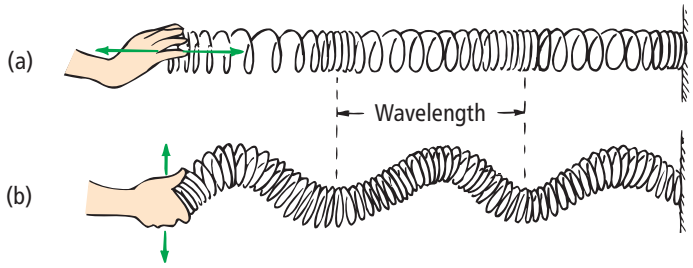


FIGURE 19.7
Both waves transfer energy from left to right. (a) When the end of a Slinky is pushed and pulled rapidly along its length, a longitudinal wave is produced. (b) When it's shaken up and down, a transverse wave is produced.

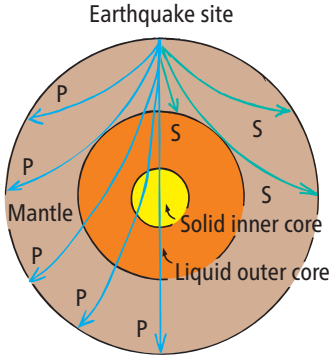


FIGURE 19.8
P and S waves generated by an earthquake.

Waves that have been generated by earthquakes and that travel in the ground are of two main types: longitudinal P waves and transverse S waves. (Geology students often remember P waves as faster "push–pull" waves, and S waves as slower "side-to-side" waves.) S waves cannot travel through liquid matter, but P waves can travel through both molten and solid parts of Earth's interior. Study of these waves reveals much about Earth's interior.

The wavelength of a longitudinal wave is the distance between successive compressions or, equivalently, the distance between successive rarefactions. The most common example of longitudinal waves is sound in air. Elements of air vibrate to and fro about some equilibrium position as the waves move by. We will treat sound waves in detail in Chapter 20.

CHECK POINT

Do the compressions and rarefactions of a longitudinal wave travel in the same or opposite directions?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Both move in the same direction at the same time.

19.4 Wave Speed

Wave motion depends on the medium through which it travels. The speed of periodic wave motion is related to the frequency and wavelength of the waves. We can understand this by considering a top view of the simple case of water waves (Figure 19.9). Imagine that we fix our eyes on a stationary point on the surface of water and observe the waves passing by this point. We can measure how much time passes between the arrival of one crest and the arrival of the next one (the period) and also observe the distance between crests (the wavelength). We know that speed is defined as distance divided by time. In this case, the distance is one wavelength and the time is one period, so the speed of the wave = distance/time = wavelength/period. Since period is the inverse of frequency (1/frequency) we can say that **wave speed** passing a particular point is equal to its wave frequency times its wavelength.

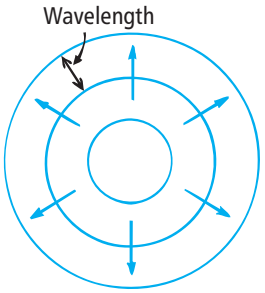


FIGURE 19.9
A top view of water waves. Each blue circle represents a crest of the expanding ripple pattern. We call these crest lines *wavefronts*.

$$\text{Wave speed} = \text{frequency} \times \text{wavelength}$$
$$v = f\lambda$$

For example, suppose a point on a tightened rope vibrates up and down two times each second (its frequency of vibration) and the distance between its wave crests is 4 meters. Can you see that its speed will be equal to 2 vibrations per second times 4 meters = 8 meters per second? This relationship holds true for all kinds of waves, whether they are water waves, sound waves, or light waves.

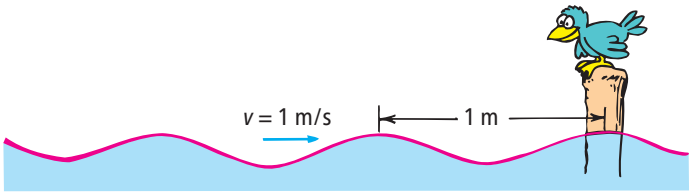
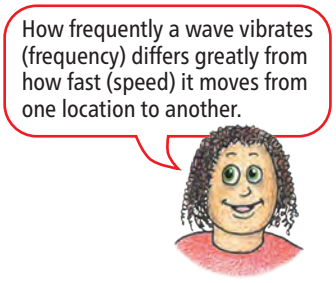


FIGURE 19.10
If the wavelength is 1 m, and one wavelength per second passes the pole, then the speed of the wave is 1 m/s.



CHECK POINT

1. **If a train of freight cars, each 10 m long, rolls by you at the rate of three cars each second, what is the speed of the train?**
2. **If a water wave oscillates up and down three times each second and the distance between wave crests is 2 m, what is its frequency? What is its wavelength? What is its wave speed?**

The speed v of a wave can be expressed by the equation $v = f\lambda$, where f is the wave frequency and λ (the Greek letter lambda) is the wavelength of the wave.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. 30 m/s. We can see this in two ways: (a) According to the definition of speed from Chapter 2, $v = d/t = (3 \times 10\ \text{m})/1\ \text{s} = 30\ \text{m/s}$, since 30 m of train passes you in 1 s. (b) If we compare our train to wave motion, where wavelength corresponds to 10 m and frequency is 3 Hz, then speed = frequency × wavelength = 3 Hz × 10 m = 3/s × 10 m = 30 m/s. (Note that 3 Hz is 3 cycles in 1 s, or simply 3/s, because cycles, just a count, needn't be written in the unit for frequency.)
2. The frequency of the wave is 3 Hz, its wavelength is 2 m, and its wave speed = frequency × wavelength = 3/s × 2 m = 6 m/s.

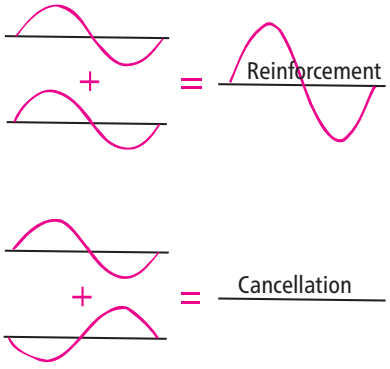


FIGURE 19.11
Constructive and destructive interference in a transverse wave.

19.5 Wave Interference

Whereas a material object such as a rock will not share its space with another rock, more than one vibration or wave can exist at the same time in the same space. If we drop two rocks in water, the waves produced by each can meet and produce **wave interference.** The overlapping of waves can form an **interference pattern.** Within the pattern, wave effects may be increased, decreased, or neutralized.

When more than one wave occupies the same space at the same time, the displacements add at every point. This is the *superposition principle*. So, when the crest of one wave overlaps the crest of another, their individual effects add together to produce a wave of increased amplitude. This is called *constructive interference* (Figure 19.11). When the crest of one wave overlaps the trough of another, their individual effects are reduced. The high part of one wave simply fills in the low part of another. This is called *destructive interference*.

Wave interference is easiest to see in water. In Figure 19.12 we see the interference pattern made when two vibrating objects touch the surface of water. We can see the regions where a crest of one wave overlaps the trough of another to produce regions of zero amplitude. At points along these regions, the waves arrive out of step. We say they are *out of phase* with each other.

Interference is characteristic of all wave motion, whether the waves are water waves, sound waves, or light waves. We will treat the interference of sound in Chapter 20 and the interference of light in Chapter 29.

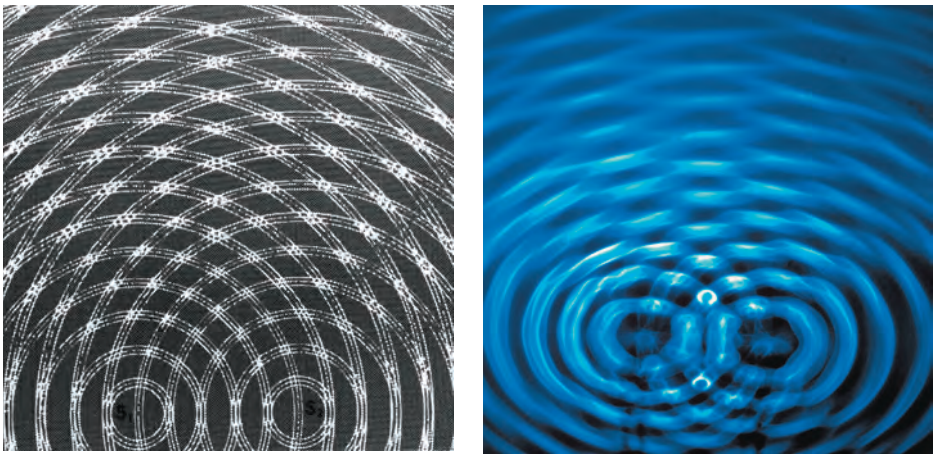


FIGURE 19.12
Two sets of overlapping water waves produce an interference pattern. The left image is an idealized drawing of the expanding waves from the two sources. The right image is a photograph of an actual interference pattern.

Standing Waves

If we tie a rope to a wall and shake the free end up and down, we produce a train of waves in the rope. The wall is too rigid to shake, so the waves are reflected back along the rope. By shaking the rope just right, we can cause the incident and reflected waves to form a **standing wave,** where parts of the rope, called the *nodes*, appear to be standing still (Figure 19.13). Nodes are the regions of minimal or zero displacement, with minimal or zero energy. *Antinodes* (not labeled in Figure 19.13), in contrast, are the regions of maximum displacement and maximum energy. You can hold your fingers just over and under the nodes and the rope doesn't touch them. Other parts of the rope, especially the antinodes, would make contact with your fingers. Antinodes occur halfway between nodes.

Standing waves are the result of interference (and, as we will see in Chapter 20, *resonance*). When two sets of waves of equal amplitude and wavelength pass through each other in opposite directions, the waves are steadily in and out of phase with

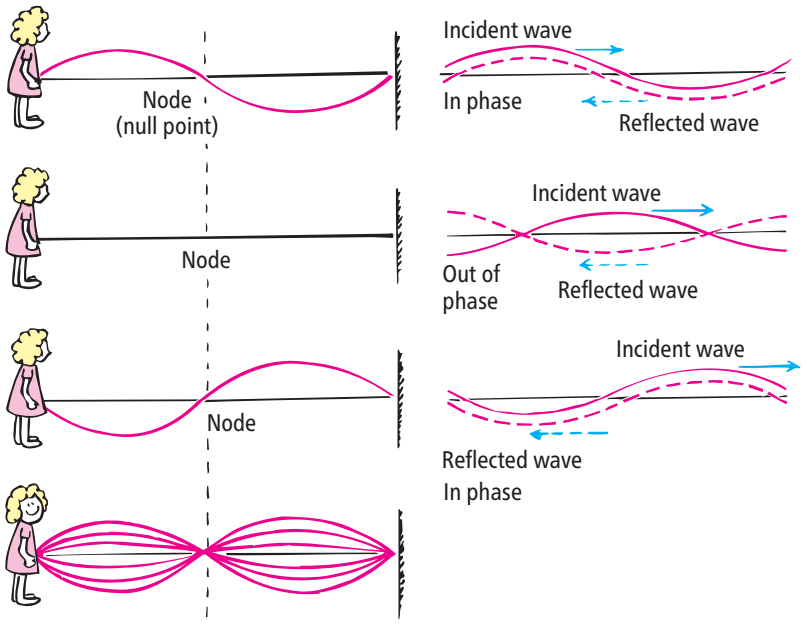


FIGURE 19.13
The incident and reflected waves interfere to produce a standing wave.

each other. This occurs for a wave that reflects upon itself. Stable regions of constructive and destructive interference are produced.

It is easy to make standing waves yourself. Tie a rope—or, better, a rubber tube—to a firm support. Shake the tube from up and down with your hand. If you shake the tube with the right frequency, you will set up a standing wave, as shown in Figure 19.14a. Shake the tube with twice the frequency, and a standing wave of half the previous wavelength, having two loops, will result (Figure 19.14b). (The distance between successive nodes is a half wavelength; two loops constitute a full wavelength.) If you triple the frequency, a standing wave with one-third the original wavelength, having three loops, will result (Figure 19.14c); and so forth.

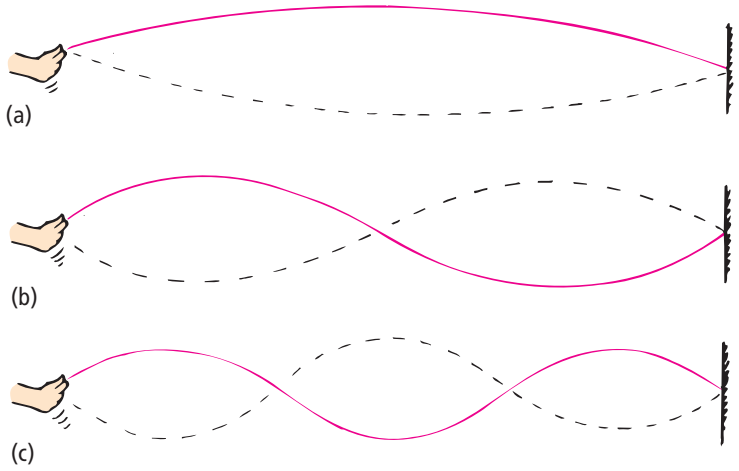


FIGURE 19.14
(a) Shake the rope until you set up a standing wave of one segment (½ wavelength).
(b) Shake with twice the frequency and produce a wave with two segments (1 wavelength).
(c) Shake with three times the frequency and produce three segments (1½ wavelengths).

Standing waves are set up in the strings of musical instruments when they are plucked, bowed, or struck. They are set up in the air in an organ pipe, a trumpet, or a clarinet and the air of a soda-pop bottle when air is blown over the top. Standing waves can be set up in a tub of water or in a cup of coffee by sloshing the tub or cup back and forth with the right frequency. Standing waves can be produced with either transverse or longitudinal vibrations.

An organ pipe or flute makes sound with standing waves in a column of air.

FIGURE 19.15
Satchmo produces standing waves of sound in his trumpet.

CHECK POINT

1. **Is it possible for one wave to cancel another wave so that no amplitude remains at certain points?**
2. **Suppose you set up a standing wave of three segments, as shown in Figure 19.14c. If you shake with twice as much frequency, how many wave segments will occur in your new standing wave? How many wavelengths?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Yes. This is called destructive interference. In a standing wave in a rope, for example, parts of the rope have no amplitude—the nodes.
2. If you impart twice the frequency to the rope, you'll produce a standing wave with twice as many segments, so you'll have six segments. Since a full wavelength has two segments, you'll have three complete wavelengths in your standing wave.

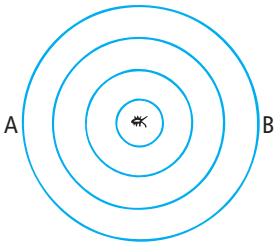


FIGURE 19.16
Top view of water waves formed by a stationary bug jiggling in still water. The blue circles represent wavefronts in the expanding pattern.

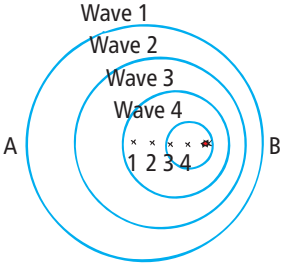


FIGURE 19.17
Water waves formed by a bug swimming in still water toward point B.

19.6 Doppler Effect

A pattern of water waves produced by a bug jiggling its legs and bobbing up and down in the middle of a quiet puddle is shown in Figure 19.16. The bug is not going anywhere but is merely treading water in a fixed position. The waves it makes are concentric circles because the wave speed is the same in all directions. If the bug bobs in the water at a constant frequency, the distance between wave crests (the wavelength) is the same in all directions. Waves encounter point A as frequently as they encounter point B. This means that the frequency of wave motion is the same at points A and B, or anywhere in the vicinity of the bug. This wave frequency is the same as the bobbing frequency of the bug.

Suppose the jiggling bug moves across the water at a speed lower than the wave speed. In effect, the bug chases part of the waves it has produced. The wave pattern is distorted and is no longer made of concentric circles (Figure 19.17). The center of the outer wave was made when the bug was at the center of that circle. The center of the next smaller wave was made when the bug was at the center of that circle, and so forth. The centers of the circular waves move in the direction of the swimming bug. Although the bug maintains the same bobbing frequency as before, an observer at B would see the waves coming more often. The observer would measure a higher frequency. This is because each successive wave has a shorter distance to travel and therefore arrives at B more frequently than if the bug weren't moving toward B. An observer at A, on the other hand, would measure a *lower* frequency because of the longer time between wave-crest arrivals. This is because, in order to reach A, each crest has to travel farther than the one ahead of it due to the bug's motion. This change in frequency due to the motion of the source (or receiver) is called the **Doppler effect** (after the Austrian scientist Christian Doppler, 1803–1853).

Water waves spread over the flat surface of the water. Sound and light waves, on the other hand, travel in three-dimensional space in all directions, like an expanding balloon. Just as circular waves are closer together in front of the swimming bug, spherical sound or light waves ahead of a moving source are closer together and reach a receiver more frequently.

CHECK POINT

How does the motion of a wave source affect the speed of waves it emits?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

It doesn't. Wave speed is determined by the medium of wave travel. Frequency and wavelength may undergo changes, but not wave speed.

The Doppler effect is evident when you hear the changing pitch of a fire engine siren as it passes you. When the vehicle approaches, the pitch is higher than normal (like a higher note on a musical scale). This is because the crests of the sound waves encounter your ear more frequently. And when the vehicle passes and moves away, you hear a drop in pitch because the crests of the waves hit your ear less frequently.

FIGURE 19.18
The pitch (frequency) of sound is higher when a source is moving toward you, and lower when the source is moving away.

The Doppler effect also occurs for light. When a light source approaches, there is an increase in its measured frequency; when it recedes, there is a decrease in its frequency. An increase in frequency is called a *blue shift* because the increase is toward the high-frequency (or blue) end of the color spectrum. A decrease in frequency is called a *red shift*, referring to a shift toward the lower-frequency (or red) end of the color spectrum. Distant galaxies, for example, show a red shift in the light they emit. A measurement of this shift permits a calculation of their speeds of recession. A rapidly spinning star shows red-shifted light from the side turning away from us and blue-shifted light from the side turning toward us. This enables astronomers to calculate the star's spin rate.

CHECK POINT

While you're at rest, a sound source moves toward you. Do you measure the speed of its sound wave to be greater or less than if the source were stationary?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Neither! As with the previous Check Point, both the *frequency* and the wavelength undergo a change when the source is moving, but the *wave speed* does not. Be clear about the distinction between frequency and speed.

Be clear about the distinction between *frequency* and *speed*. How frequently a wave vibrates is altogether different from how fast it moves from one location to another.

19.7 Bow Waves

When the speed of a source is as great as the speed of the waves it produces, something interesting occurs: The waves pile up in front of the source. Consider the bug in our earlier example when it swims as fast as the wave speed. Can you see that the bug will keep up with the waves it produces? Instead of the waves moving ahead of the bug, they superimpose and hump up on one another directly in front of the bug (Figure 19.19). The bug moves right along with the leading edge of the waves it is producing.

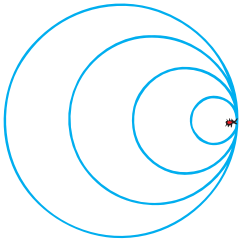


FIGURE 19.19
Wave pattern created by a bug swimming at wave speed.

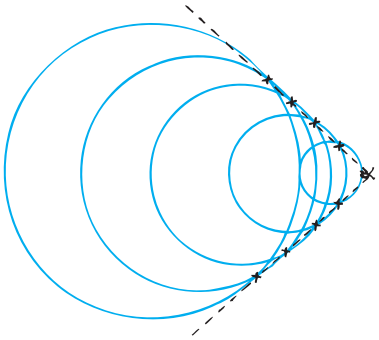


FIGURE 19.20
A bow wave, the pattern produced by a bug swimming faster than the wave speed. The points at which adjacent waves overlap (×) produce the V shape.

A similar thing happens when an aircraft travels at the speed of sound. In the early days of jet aircraft, it was believed that this pile-up of sound waves in front of the airplane imposed a "sound barrier" and that in order to go faster than the speed of sound, the plane would have to "break the sound barrier." What actually happens is that the overlapping wave crests disrupt the flow of air over the wings, making it more difficult to control the aircraft. But the barrier is not real. Just as a boat can easily travel faster than the waves it produces, an aircraft with sufficient power easily travels faster than the speed of sound. Then we say that it is *supersonic*. A supersonic airplane flies into smooth, undisturbed air because no sound wave can propagate out in front of it. Similarly, a bug swimming faster than the speed of water waves finds itself always entering water that has a smooth, unrippled surface.

When the bug swims faster than the wave speed, ideally it produces a wave pattern, as shown in Figure 19.20. It outruns the waves it produces. The waves overlap at the edges and produce a V shape, called a **bow wave,** that appears to be dragging behind the bug. The familiar bow wave generated by a speedboat knifing through the water is not a typical oscillatory wave. It is a disturbance produced by the overlapping of many circular waves.

Some wave patterns made by sources moving at various speeds are shown in Figure 19.21. Note that after the speed of the source exceeds the wave speed, the increased speed of the source produces a narrower V shape.[3]

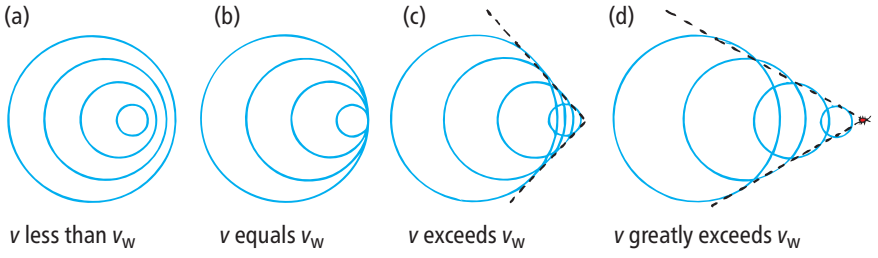


FIGURE 19.21
Patterns produced by a bug swimming at successively greater speeds. Overlapping at the edges occurs only when the bug swims faster than the wave speed.

CHECK POINT

1. **How fast must a bug swim to keep up with the waves it produces? How fast to produce a bow wave?**
2. **In which of the wave patterns of Figure 19.21 does interference contribute to the wave?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The bug must swim as fast as the waves travel to keep up with them. Any faster and a bow wave is produced.
2. Only in (c) and (d) do successive overlapping of waves constructively overlap to produce bow waves.

[3]Bow waves generated by boats in water are really more complex than is indicated here. Our idealized treatment serves as an analogy for the production of the less complex shock waves in air.

19.8 Shock Waves

A speedboat knifing through the water generates a two-dimensional bow wave. A supersonic aircraft similarly generates a three-dimensional **shock wave.** Just as a bow wave is produced by overlapping circles that form a V, a shock wave is produced by overlapping spheres that form a cone. And, just as the bow wave of a speedboat spreads until it reaches the shore of a lake, the conical wave generated by a supersonic craft spreads until it reaches the ground.

The bow wave of a speedboat that passes by can splash and douse you if you are at the water's edge. In a sense, you can say that you are hit by a "water boom." In the same way, when the conical shell of compressed air that sweeps behind a supersonic aircraft reaches listeners on the ground below, the sharp crack they hear is described as a **sonic boom.**

We don't hear a sonic boom from slower-than-sound, or subsonic, aircraft because the sound waves that reach our ears are perceived as one continuous tone. Only when the aircraft moves faster than sound do the waves overlap to reach the listener in a single burst. The sudden increase in pressure is much the same in effect as the sudden expansion of air produced by an explosion. Both processes direct a burst of high-pressure air to the listener. The ear is hard pressed to distinguish between the high pressure from an explosion and the high pressure from many overlapping waves.

A water skier is familiar with the fact that next to the high crest of the V-shaped bow wave is a V-shaped depression. The same is true of a shock wave, which usually consists of two cones: a high-pressure cone generated at the bow of the supersonic aircraft and a low-pressure cone that follows at the tail of the aircraft.[4] The edges of these cones are visible in the photograph of the supersonic bullet in Figure 19.23. Between these two cones, the air pressure rises sharply to above atmospheric pressure, then falls below atmospheric pressure before sharply returning to normal beyond the inner tail cone (Figure 19.24). This overpressure suddenly followed by underpressure intensifies the sonic boom.

A common misconception is that sonic booms are produced when an aircraft flies through the "sound barrier"—that is, just as the aircraft surpasses the speed of sound. This is the same as saying that a boat produces a bow wave when it first overtakes its own waves. This is not so. The fact is that a shock wave and its resulting sonic boom are swept continuously behind and below an aircraft traveling faster than sound, just as a bow wave is swept continuously behind a speedboat.

FIGURE 19.22
This aircraft is producing a cloud of water vapor that has just condensed out of the rapidly expanding air in the rarefied region behind the wall of compressed air.

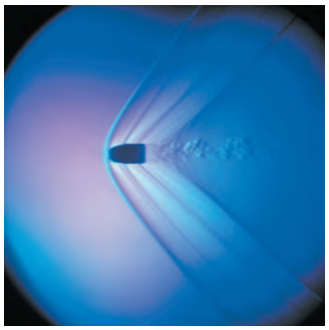


FIGURE 19.23
The faster-than-the-speed-of-sound bullet compresses air in its path and produces visible shock-wave detail.

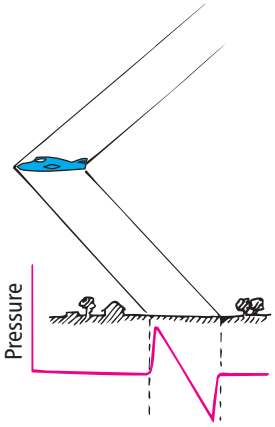


FIGURE 19.24
The shock wave is actually made up of two cones: a high-pressure cone with the apex at the bow of the aircraft and a low-pressure cone with the apex at the tail. A graph of the air pressure at ground level between the cones takes the shape of the letter N.

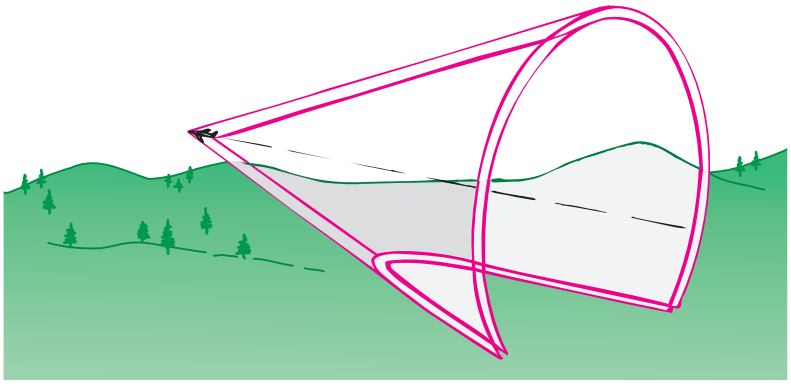


FIGURE 19.25
A shock wave.

[4]Shock waves are often more complex and involve multiple cones.

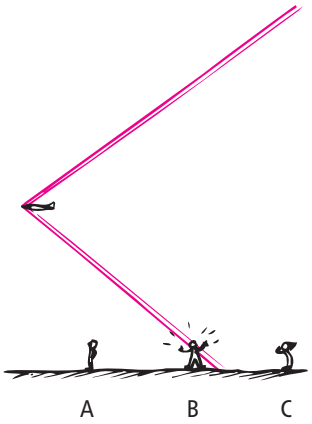


FIGURE 19.26
The shock wave has not yet reached listener A, but it is now reaching listener B and has already reached listener C.

In Figure 19.26, listener B is in the process of hearing a sonic boom, listener C has already heard it, and listener A will hear it shortly. The aircraft that generated this shock wave may have broken through the sound barrier many minutes ago!

CHECK POINT

Is a sonic boom a one-time experience for listeners below a supersonic aircraft, or is the boom continuous?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Both. Experiencing a sonic boom is a one-time event for a stationary listener, but the cone of the shock wave moves continuously across the ground at a speed equal to that of the aircraft—in a way similar to the bow wave that drags continuously behind a speeding boat.

It is not necessary that the moving source be "noisy" to produce a shock wave. Once an object is moving faster than the speed of sound, it will *make* sound. A supersonic bullet passing overhead produces a crack, which is a small sonic boom. If the bullet were larger and disturbed more air in its path, the crack would be more boom-like. When a lion tamer cracks a circus whip, the cracking sound is actually a sonic boom produced by the tip of the whip when it travels faster than the speed of sound. Both the bullet and the whip are not in themselves sound sources, but, when traveling at supersonic speeds, they produce their own sound as they generate shock waves.

Chapter 19 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Sine curve The waveform traced by simple harmonic motion, which can be made visible on a moving conveyor belt by a pendulum swinging at right angles above the moving belt.

Amplitude For a wave or vibration, the maximum displacement on either side of the equilibrium (midpoint) position.

Wavelength The distance between successive crests, troughs, or other identical parts of a wave.

Frequency For a vibrating body or medium, the number of vibrations per unit time. For a wave, the number of crests that pass a particular point per unit time.

Hertz The SI unit of frequency. One hertz (symbol Hz) equals one vibration per second.

Period The time in which a vibration is completed. The period of a wave equals the period of the source and is equal to 1/frequency.

Transverse wave A wave in which the medium vibrates perpendicularly (at right angles) to the direction in which the wave travels. Light waves and waves on stringed instruments are transverse.

Longitudinal wave A wave in which the medium vibrates parallel to (along) the direction in which the wave travels. Sound waves are longitudinal.

Wave speed The speed with which waves pass a particular point:

$$\text{Wave speed} = \text{frequency} \times \text{wavelength}$$

Wave interference The phenomenon that occurs when two waves meet while traveling along the same medium.

Interference pattern A pattern formed by the overlapping of two or more waves that arrive in a region at the same time.

Standing wave A stationary interference pattern formed in a medium when two sets of identical waves pass through the medium in opposite directions.

Doppler effect The shift in received frequency due to the motion of a vibrating source toward or away from a receiver.

Bow wave The V-shaped disturbance created by an object moving across a liquid surface at a speed greater than the wave speed.

Shock wave The cone-shaped disturbance created by an object moving at supersonic speed through a fluid.

Sonic boom The loud sound that results from the incidence of a shock wave.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

19.1 Good Vibrations

1. What do we call a *wiggle in time*? What do we call a *wiggle in space* and time?
2. What is the source of all waves?
3. What is meant by the *period* of a pendulum?
4. What is simple harmonic motion? Mention suitable examples.

19.2 Wave Description

5. How does a sine curve relate to a wave description?
6. List some important differences between sound and light waves.
7. How many vibrations per second are represented in a radio wave of 101.7 MHz?
8. How do *frequency* and *period* relate to each other?

19.3 Wave Motion

9. In one word, what is it that moves from source to receiver in wave motion?
10. Does the medium in which a wave travels move with the wave?
11. In what direction are the vibrations relative to the direction of wave travel in a transverse wave?
12. In what direction are the vibrations relative to the direction of wave travel in a longitudinal wave?
13. The wavelength of a transverse wave is the distance between successive crests (or troughs). What is the wavelength of a longitudinal wave?

19.4 Wave Speed

14. What is the relationship between the velocity and the acceleration of a particle undergoing simple harmonic motion?
15. Speed in general = (distance traveled)/(time of travel). Write this relationship in terms of traveling a distance of 1 wavelength in a time of 1 period.
16. Do the same, but express period as 1/frequency and show speed = wavelength × frequency.

19.5 Wave Interference

17. What is meant by the *superposition principle?*
18. What is meant by phase velocity and group velocity?
19. What kinds of waves can show interference?
20. What is a *node*? What is an *antinode?*
21. Are standing waves a property of transverse waves, of longitudinal waves, or of both?

19.6 Doppler Effect

22. In the Doppler effect, does frequency change? Does wave speed change?
23. Can the Doppler effect be observed with longitudinal waves, with transverse waves, or with both?
24. What is meant by a blue shift and a red shift for light?

19.7 Bow Waves

25. How fast must a bug swim to keep up with the waves it produces? How fast must it move to produce a bow wave?
26. How fast does a supersonic aircraft fly compared with the speed of sound?
27. How does the V shape of a bow wave change with the changing speed of the source?

19.8 Shock Waves

28. A bow wave on the surface of water is two-dimensional. How about a shock wave in air?
29. True or false: A sonic boom occurs only when an aircraft is breaking through the sound barrier. Defend your answer.
30. True or false: In order for an object to produce a sonic boom, it must be "noisy." Give two examples to support your answer.

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Tie a rubber tube, a spring, or a rope to a fixed support and produce standing waves. See how many nodes you can produce.
32. Wet your finger and rub it slowly around the rim of a thin-rimmed, stemmed wine glass while you hold the base of the glass firmly to a tabletop with your other hand. The friction of your finger will excite standing waves in the glass, much like the wave made on the strings of a violin by the friction from a violin bow. Try it with a metal bowl.

33. Communicate with a friend the way it was done in pre-walkie-talkie times. Attach a piece of string a few meters long to small holes in the bottoms of two empty metal cans. A large knot at the end of each string keeps the string inside the bottom of the can. Have your friend put the can up to his ear and stretch the string tightly. Talk into your can. What happens? People did not always communicate by smartphone.
34. Make contact with Grandma and tell her how waves can cancel one another, as well as what some of the applications of this physical phenomenon are these days.

PLUG AND CHUG (EQUATION FAMILIARIZATION)

$$\text{Frequency} = \frac{1}{\text{period}}; f = \frac{1}{T}$$

35. Find the frequency, in hertz, of an object that makes 30 oscillations in 5 seconds.

$$\text{Period} = \frac{1}{\text{frequency}}; T = \frac{1}{f}$$

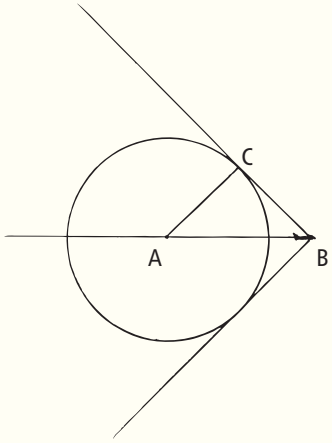
36. What is the period, in seconds, of an object that vibrates 32 times in 4 seconds?

$$\text{Wave speed} = \frac{\text{wavelength}}{\text{period}} \text{ or frequency} \times \text{wavelength}; v = f\lambda$$

37. Calculate how fast a wave with a 2.4-m wavelength and a 0.060-s period is moving.
38. Find the speed of a wave on a string with a frequency of 100 Hz, a wavelength of 0.030 m.

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

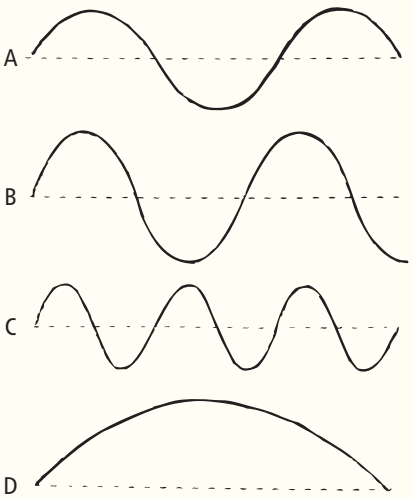
39. A pendulum is constructed from a light string of length $l = 100$ cm and a heavy mass $m = 100$ kg. What is the period of the pendulum for small displacements?
40. A radar transmitter sends a signal at the speed of light (3×10^8 m/s) to an airplane 100 km away. After how much time will the signal be received back from the airplane?
41. An ambulance siren emits a tone of 650 Hz. Take the speed of sound in air to be 340 m/s, and calculate the wavelength of this sound.
42. A certain source sends waves of wavelength λ and frequency f traveling in a medium. How does the wavelength change if the frequency is doubled?
43. As shown in the drawing, the half-angle of the shock wave cone generated by a supersonic airplane is 45°. What is the speed of the plane relative to the speed of sound?



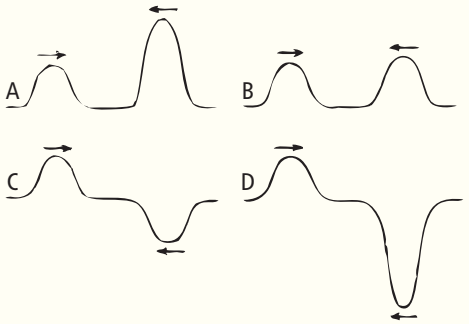
44. The period of a pendulum on the surface of the Earth is 1. When it is brought to a higher altitude, the period doubles. Determine the acceleration of gravity at that altitude (take the acceleration due to gravity on the surface of the Earth to be 10 m/s^2).

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

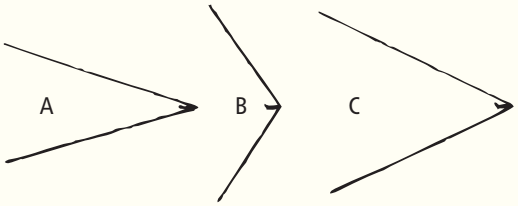
45. Rank the periods of a clock from smallest to largest:
    (a) The hour hand
    (b) The minute hand
    (c) The second hand
46. All the waves shown have the same speed in the same medium. Use a ruler and rank these waves from most to least for
    (a) amplitude,
    (b) wavelength,
    (c) frequency, and
    (d) period.



47. Shown are four different pairs of transverse wave pulses that move toward each other. At some point in time, the pulses meet and interact (interfere) with each other. Rank the four cases, from most to least, on the basis of the height of the peak that results when the centers of the pulses coincide.

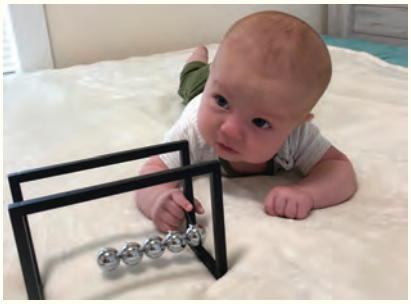


48. The siren of a fire truck is heard in five situations presented below. Rank the pitch heard, from least to greatest, when the fire truck is traveling:
    (a) toward the listener at 20 km/h.
    (b) toward the listener at 40 km/h.
    (c) away from the listener at 50 km/h.
    (d) away from the listener at 30 km/h.
    (e) the fire truck is stationary.
49. The shock waves A, B, C are produced by supersonic aircraft. Rank their speeds from greatest to least.



THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

50. Little Myles Dooley delights in watching the balls swing to and fro. He asks how the swinging motion would differ if done on the Moon. What do you tell him?



51. If a pendulum is shortened, does its frequency increase or decrease? What about its period? How do frequency and period relate?
52. A grandfather pendulum clock keeps perfect time. Then it is relocated to a summer home high in the mountains. Does it run faster, slower, or the same? Explain.
53. You pick up an empty briefcase and let it swing to and fro at its natural frequency. If the case were filled with books, would the natural frequency be lower, greater, or the same as before?
54. Is the time required to swing to and fro (the period) on a playground swing longer or shorter when you stand rather than sit? Explain.
55. When the frequency of a wave decreases, what happens to the period? The wavelength? Use equations in your explanation.
56. If the speed of a wave doubles while the frequency remains the same, what happens to the wavelength?
57. If the speed of a wave doubles while the wavelength remains the same, what happens to the frequency?
58. If you shake the end of a Slinky to produce a wave, how does the frequency of the wave compare with the frequency of your shaking hand? Does your answer depend on whether you're producing a transverse wave or a longitudinal wave? Defend your answer.
59. What kind of motion should you impart to the nozzle of a garden hose so that the resulting stream of water approximates a sine curve?
60. What kind of motion should you impart to a stretched Slinky to provide a transverse wave? To provide a longitudinal wave?
61. What kind of wave is each of the following? (a) The sound of one whale calling another whale under water. (b) A pulse sent down a stretched rope by snapping one end of it. (c) The vibrations in a guitar string.
62. Red light has a longer wavelength than violet light. Which has the greater frequency? Which has greater energy for the same intensity?
63. What happens to the period of a wave if we double the frequency of its vibrating source?
64. What happens to the wavelength of a longitudinal wave when its frequency is increased?
65. If you dip your finger repeatedly into a puddle of water, it creates waves. What happens to the wavelength if you dip your finger more frequently?
66. How does the frequency of vibration of a small object floating in water compare with the number of waves passing it each second?
67. What is the source of mechanical waves? Of electromagnetic waves? What do both have in common?
68. How many nodes, not including the endpoints, are there in a standing wave that is two wavelengths long? Three wavelengths long?
69. A rock is dropped in water, and waves spread over the horizontal surface of the water. What becomes of the energy in these waves when they die out?

70. The wave patterns seen in Figures 19.4 and 19.9 are composed of circles. What does this tell you about the speed of waves moving in different directions?
71. A bat chirps as it flies toward a wall. Is the frequency of the echoed chirps it receives higher, lower, or the same as the emitted ones? Explain.
72. Why is there a Doppler effect when the source of sound is stationary and the listener is in motion? In which direction should the listener move to hear a higher frequency? A lower frequency?
73. When you blow your horn while driving toward a stationary listener, the listener hears an increase in frequency of the horn. Would the listener hear an increase in horn frequency if he or she were also in a car traveling at the same speed in the same direction as you are? Explain.
74. Is there an appreciable Doppler effect when the motion of the source is at right angles to a listener? Explain.
75. How does the Doppler effect aid police in detecting speeding motorists?
76. Would it be correct to say that the Doppler effect is the apparent change in the speed of a wave due to motion of the source? (Why is this question a test of reading comprehension as well as a test of physics knowledge?)
77. How does the phenomenon of interference play a role in the production of bow waves or shock waves?
78. What can you say about the speed of a boat that makes a bow wave?
79. Does a sonic boom occur at the moment when an aircraft exceeds the speed of sound? Explain.
80. Why is it that a subsonic aircraft, no matter how loud it may be, cannot produce a sonic boom?
81. Imagine a superfast fish that is able to swim faster than the speed of sound in water. Would such a fish produce a "sonic boom"? Explain.
82. Make up a multiple-choice question that would check a classmate's understanding of the distinction between a transverse wave and a longitudinal wave.
83. Make up a multiple-choice question that would check a classmate's understanding of any of the terms that describe a wave.

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

84. Why is lightning seen before thunder is heard?
85. The needle of a sewing machine moves up and down in simple harmonic motion. Its driving force comes from a rotating wheel that is powered by an electric motor. How do you suppose the period of the up-and-down needle compares with the period of the rotating wheel?
86. You use a vice to firmly clamp one end of a hacksaw blade. You twang the free end and it vibrates. If you do the same, but first place a wad of clay on the free end, how, if at all, will the frequency of vibration differ? Would it make a difference if the wad of clay were stuck to the middle? Explain. (Why could this question have been asked back in Chapter 8?)
87. A heavy person and a light person swing to and fro on swings of the same length. Compare their periods.
88. Does it make sense that the mass of a bob in a simple pendulum doesn't affect the frequency of the pendulum? In your discussion cite whether or not mass affects the acceleration of free fall.
89. If a gas tap is turned on for a few seconds, someone a couple of meters away will hear the gas escaping long before she smells it. What does this indicate about the speed of sound and the speed at which molecules diffuse through the sound-carrying medium?
90. Discuss how some learners confuse the two terms *wave speed* and *wave frequency*, when they assume that the terms refer to the same thing.
91. A banjo player plucks the middle of a string pinned down at both ends. Where are the nodes of the standing wave in the string? What is the wavelength of the vibrating string?
92. A railroad locomotive is at rest with its whistle shrieking, then starts moving toward you. (a) Does the frequency of sound that you hear increase, decrease, or stay the same? (b) How about the wavelength reaching your ear? (c) How about the speed of sound in the air between you and the locomotive?
93. Astronomers find that light emitted by a particular element at one edge of a distant star has a slightly higher frequency than light from that element at the opposite edge. What do these measurements tell us about the star's motion?
94. If the sound of an airplane does not appear to originate in the sky where it is seen, what does this say about the differences in the speeds of sound and light?
95. Does the conical angle of a shock wave open wider, narrow down, or remain constant as a supersonic aircraft increases its speed? Show a sketch to make your point.

CHAPTER NINETEEN Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. The source of all waves is
   (a) something that vibrates.
   (b) energy.
   (c) a force of some kind.
   (d) All of the above
2. The pendulum with the greatest frequency is one with the
   (a) springiest arm.
   (b) shortest length.
   (c) longest length.
   (d) None of these
3. When an elevator is accelerating upward, the frequency of a pendulum inside
   (a) increases.
   (b) decreases.
   (c) doesn't change.
   (d) None of these
4. The frequency of a certain wave is 10 hertz and its period is
   (a) 0.1 second.
   (b) 10 seconds.
   (c) 100 seconds.
   (d) None of the above
5. If you double the frequency of a vibrating object, its period
   (a) doubles.
   (b) halves.
   (c) is quartered.
   (d) doesn't necessarily change.
6. Some of a wave's energy dissipates as heat. In time, this will reduce the wave's
   (a) speed.
   (b) wavelength.
   (c) amplitude.
   (d) frequency.
7. A skipper on a boat sees wave crests passing the anchor chain every 5 seconds and estimates the distance between crests is 15 m. What is the speed of the water waves?
   (a) 3 m/s
   (b) 5 m/s
   (c) 15 m/s
   (d) Need more information
8. To say that one wave is out of phase with another is to say that the waves are
   (a) of different amplitudes.
   (b) of different frequencies.
   (c) of different wavelengths.
   (d) out of step.
9. A blue shift for light indicates that the light source is moving
   (a) away from you.
   (b) toward you.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
10. A jet traveling at 1500 km/h passes overhead. The sonic boom produced is heard by
    (a) a listener on the ground.
    (b) the jet pilot.
    (c) Both of these
    (d) Neither of these

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (a): The source of all waves is something that vibrates. For sound it may be a vibrating tuning fork; for electromagnetic waves, a vibrating electron. Energy and force are not sources of waves. **2. (b):** The pendulum with the greatest frequency is the one that swings to and fro quicker—more frequently. That's a short one. Long pendulums, on the other hand, swing for a longer time between to and fro motion. Frequency depends on a pendulum's length and the acceleration due to gravity. **3. (a):** Pendulum motion depends on gravity. More gravity, more frequent swinging. In an elevator that accelerates upward, acceleration is greater than g and a pendulum swings at a greater rate. Its frequency increases. **4. (a):** Frequency and period are reciprocals of each other. The reciprocal of 10 is 1/10, so (a) is the correct answer. **5. (b):** Frequency and period are reciprocals of each other. If you double the frequency, the period is halved. **6. (c):** The intensity of a wave is described by its amplitude. Think of a wave emanating from a point source and spreading in a circle. The height of the wave, its amplitude, gets smaller with distance. But its speed, frequency, and wavelength remain the same. **7. (a):** Speed = distance traveled per amount of time. A distance of 15 m divided by 5 seconds is 3 m/s. **8. (d):** Waves vibrating in step with each other are said to be in phase. Being "out of step" is being out of phase. **9. (b):** This refers to the Doppler effect. When a source moves toward you, you encounter increased frequency of the waves, whether sound or light—a shift toward high-frequency blue. Moving away causes a decrease in frequency—toward lower-frequency red. The blue shift indicates the source is moving toward you. **10. (a):** Like a speedboat knifing across the surface of a lake, its bow wave is encountered by creatures on the lake surface, but not by inhabitants of the boat. Likewise for a jet plane. Passengers who flew in the Concorde airliner a half century ago felt nothing of the sonic boom that was evident on the ground below.

CHAPTER TWENTY

20 Sound

20.1 **Nature of Sound**
Media That Transmit Sound

20.2 **Sound in Air**
Speed of Sound in Air
Energy in Sound Waves

20.3 **Reflection of Sound**

20.4 **Refraction of Sound**

20.5 **Forced Vibrations**
Natural Frequency

20.6 **Resonance**

20.7 **Interference**

20.8 **Beats**

1 Ken Ford was one of the first to wear noise-canceling earphones when towing gliders in quiet comfort. **2** With skillful hands and fingers, physics professors Chris Chiaverina and Tom Rossing produce sounds on a *hang*, a novel hand-played steel instrument. **3** Richard Hernandez produces a variety of sounds when he sets aluminum pipes of different lengths into vibration. **4** Emily Ackerman comes to an intriguing realization—sound is the *only* thing we can hear!

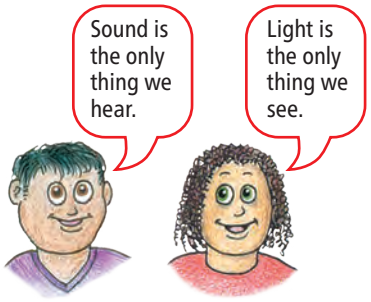
One of the world's great combinations of physicist, author, and physics educator is Kenneth W. Ford, who was a University of California professor, a college president, and executive director and CEO of the American Institute of Physics before he became a classroom teacher in grades 9 through 12 at Germantown Academy in Pennsylvania. An expert and author on quantum physics, Ken is passionate about teaching, flying small airplanes, gliders, and, his wife Joanne. He is also a close friend and refines much of my writing before it is published. *Conceptual Physics* has benefited from Ken's deep and extensive knowledge of physics, for which I am grateful.

When I first wrote *Conceptual Physics*, Ken's textbook *Basic Physics* was an inspiration to me, as were the three volumes of *The Feynman Lectures on Physics* and the Eric Rogers textbook *Physics for the Inquiring Mind*. Ken was one of the first reviewers of *Conceptual Physics*. He praised and adopted it for his own classes, and alerted me to errors and suggested improvements. A saying among teachers is that if you want to learn a subject, teach it. I add: If you want to add more to your knowledge of physics, write about it. I continually learn, much due to Ken's input.

As seen in the first photo on the facing page, Ken was a user of noise-canceling earphones while flying noisy aircraft years ago. His readable book *In Love with Flying* emphasizes his greater passion for motorless flight—soaring. In Ken's portrait, notice Planck's constant on the license plate of his hybrid and a Diamond Soaring Badge on his lapel. Ken's latest clearly written books, *The Quantum World: Quantum Physics for Everyone* and *101 Quantum Questions: What You Need to Know About the World You Can't See*, are essentials for anyone who wants to learn quantum physics, and his reissued *Basic Physics* is a resource for present-day teachers. In his most recent book, *Building the H Bomb*, Ken recounts his personal history with his late mentor, John Wheeler, as part of the team that developed the first hydrogen bomb.

My dedication in the 8th edition of *Conceptual Physics* was: To Kenneth W. Ford—eminent physicist, great human being. That dedication still rings true.

If a tree fell in the middle of a deep forest hundreds of kilometers away from any living being, would there be a sound? Different people will answer this question in different ways. "No," some will say, "sound is subjective and requires a listener. If there is no listener, there is no sound." "Yes," others will say, "a sound is not something in a listener's head. A sound is an objective thing." Discussions like this one often produce no agreement because the participants fail to realize that they are arguing not about the nature of sound, but about the definition of the word. Either side is correct, depending on the definition used, but investigation can proceed only when a definition has been agreed upon. Scientists, such as the three shown in the photos at the beginning of the chapter, take the objective position and define sound as a form of energy that exists whether or not it is heard. They go on from there to investigate its nature.



20.1 Nature of Sound

Most sounds are waves produced by the vibrations of matter. In a piano, a violin, and a guitar, the sound is produced by the vibrating strings; in a saxophone, by a vibrating reed; in a flute, by a fluttering column of air at the mouthpiece. Your voice results from the vibration of your vocal cords. Sounds in the air are caused by a wide variety of vibrations.

In each of these cases, the original vibration stimulates the vibration of something larger or more massive, such as the sounding board of a stringed instrument, the air column within a reed or wind instrument, or the air in the throat and mouth of a singer. This vibrating material then sends a disturbance through the surrounding medium, usually air, in the form of longitudinal waves. Under

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

ordinary conditions, the frequencies of the vibrating source and the sound waves are the same. We describe our subjective impression about the frequency of sound with the word **pitch.** Frequency corresponds to pitch: A high-pitched sound from a piccolo has a high frequency of vibration, and a low-pitched sound from a foghorn has a low frequency of vibration.

The ear of a young person can normally hear pitches corresponding to the range of frequencies between about 20 to 20,000 hertz. As we grow older, our human hearing range shrinks, especially at the high-frequency end. Sound waves with frequencies below 20 hertz are **infrasonic,** and those with frequencies above 20,000 hertz are called **ultrasonic.** We cannot hear infrasonic and ultrasonic sound waves. Infrasonic: frequency too low for human hearing. Ultrasonic: frequency too high for human hearing.

fyi

- Elephants communicate with one another via infrasonic waves. Their large ears help them to detect these long-wavelength sound waves.

CHECK POINT

What is the wave frequency of sound produced by a 220-hertz tuning fork?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

220 Hz.

Media That Transmit Sound

Most sounds that we hear are transmitted through the air. However, any elastic substance—whether solid, liquid, gas, or plasma—can transmit sound. Elasticity is the property of a material that has changed shape in response to an applied force and then resumes its initial shape once the distorting force is removed. Steel is an elastic substance. In contrast, putty is inelastic.[1] In elastic liquids and solids, the atoms are relatively close together, respond quickly to one another's motions, and transmit energy with little loss. Sound travels about 4 times faster in water than in air and about 15 times faster in steel than in air.

Relative to solids and liquids, air is a poor conductor of sound. You can hear the sound of a distant train more clearly if you place your ear against the rail. Similarly, you can hear a ticking clock set on a table beyond hearing distance if you place your ear to the table. Or click some rocks together under water while your ear is submerged. You'll hear the clicking sound very clearly. If you've ever been swimming in the presence of motorized boats, you probably noticed that you can hear the boats' motors much more clearly under water than above water. Liquids and crystalline solids are generally excellent conductors of sound—much better than air. The speed of sound is generally greater in solids than in liquids, and greater in liquids than in gases. Sound won't travel in a vacuum because there is nothing to compress and expand.

Atoms and molecules in a medium tremble as they transmit sound. Sound cannot travel in a vacuum because there's nothing to do the trembling.

20.2 Sound in Air

When we clap our hands, the sound produced is nonperiodic. It consists of a wave *pulse* that travels outward in all directions. To better understand how a pulse moves in air, consider a long room, as shown in Figure 20.1a. At one end is an open window with a curtain over it. At the other end is a door. When we open the door, we can imagine the door pushing the molecules next to it away from their initial positions and into their neighbors. The neighboring molecules,

[1]Elasticity is not "stretchiness," like a rubber band. Some very stiff materials are elastic—like steel.

in turn, push into their neighbors, and so on, like a compression traveling along a spring, until the curtain flaps out the window. A pulse of compressed air has moved from the door to the curtain. This pulse of compressed air is called a **compression.**

When we close the door, as in Figure 20.1b, the door pushes some air molecules out of the room. This produces an area of low pressure behind the door. Neighboring molecules then move into it, leaving a zone of lower pressure behind them. We say this zone of lower-pressure air is *rarefied*. Other molecules farther away from the door, in turn, move into these rarefied regions, and a disturbance again travels across the room. This is evidenced by the curtain, which flaps inward. This time the disturbance is a **rarefaction.**

As with all wave motion, it is not the medium itself that travels across the room but the energy-carrying pulse. In both compression and rarefaction, the pulse travels from the door to the curtain. We know this because, in both cases, the curtain moves after the door is opened or closed. If you continually swing the door open and closed in periodic fashion, you can set up a wave of periodic compressions and rarefactions that will cause the curtain to swing in and out of the window. On a much smaller but more rapid scale, this is what happens when a tuning fork is struck. The periodic vibrations of the tuning fork and the waves produced are considerably higher in frequency and lower in amplitude than those caused by the swinging door. You don't notice the effect of sound waves on the curtain, but you are well aware of them when they meet your sensitive eardrums.

Consider sound waves in the tube shown in Figure 20.2. For simplicity, only the waves that travel in the tube are depicted. When the prong of the tuning fork next to the tube moves toward the tube, a compression enters the tube. When the prong swings away in the opposite direction, a rarefaction follows the compression. It's like a ping-pong paddle moving to and fro in a room packed with ping-pong balls. As the source vibrates, a periodic series of compressions and rarefactions is produced. The frequency of the vibrating source and the frequency of the wave it produces are the same.

Pause to reflect on the physics of sound while you are listening to your radio sometime. The radio loudspeaker is a paper cone that vibrates in rhythm with an electrical signal. Air molecules next to the vibrating cone of the speaker are themselves set into vibration. This air, in turn, vibrates against neighboring particles, which, in turn, do the same, and so on. As a result, rhythmic patterns of compressed and rarefied air

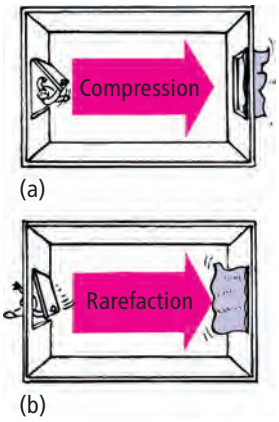


FIGURE 20.1
(a) When the door is opened, a compression travels across the room. (b) When the door is closed, a rarefaction travels across the room.

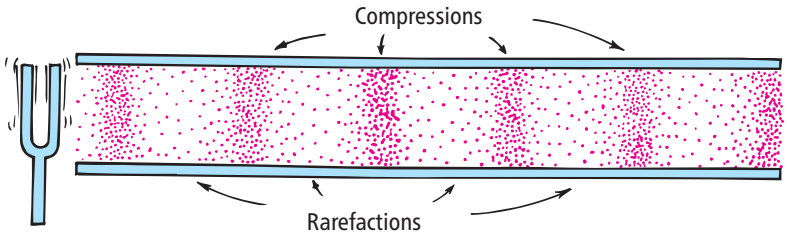


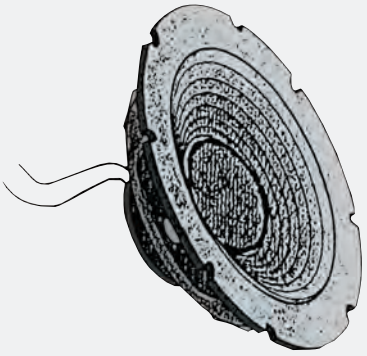
FIGURE 20.2
Compressions and rarefactions travel (both at the same speed in the same direction) from the tuning fork through the air in the tube.

FIGURE 20.3
A ping-pong paddle vibrating in the midst of ping-pong balls produces vibration of the balls.

FIGURE 20.4
Waves of compressed and rarefied air, produced by the vibrating cone of the loudspeaker, make up the pleasing sound of music.

LOUDSPEAKER

The loudspeaker of your radio or other sound-producing systems changes electrical signals into sound waves. The electrical signals pass through a coil wound around the neck of a paper cone. This coil, which acts as an electromagnet, is located near a permanent magnet. When current flows one way, magnetic force pushes the electromagnet toward the permanent magnet, pulling the cone inward. When current flows in the opposite direction, the cone is pushed outward. Vibrations in the electrical signal cause the cone to vibrate. Vibrations of the cone then produce sound waves in the air. The physics of large loudspeakers applies to small ones, even those that fit in your ear.



emanate from the loudspeaker, showering the whole room with undulating motions. The same process occurs with wireless earbuds or other device in which the speaker is small enough to fit in your ear. The resulting vibrating air sets your eardrum into vibration, which, in turn, sends cascades of rhythmic electrical impulses along the cochlea nerve canal and into your brain. And you listen to the sound of music.

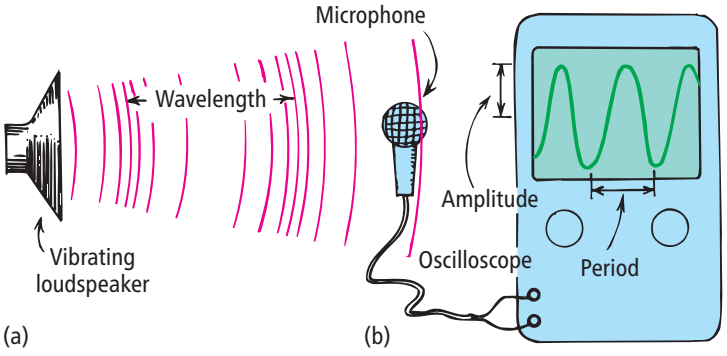


FIGURE 20.5
(a) Vibrations of the radio loudspeaker send compressions of air (red lines) and produce similar vibrations in the microphone, which are displayed on an oscilloscope. (b) The shape of the waveform on the oscilloscope screen reveals information about the sound.

Your two ears are so sensitive to the differences in sound reaching them that you can sense the direction a sound is coming with almost pinpoint accuracy. With only one ear, you would have no idea (and, in an emergency, might not know which way to jump).

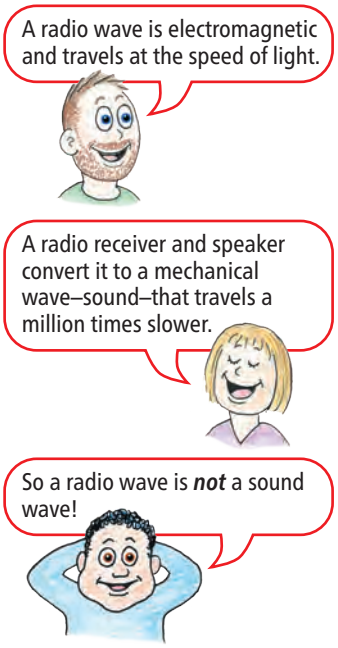
Speed of Sound in Air

If we watch a person at a distance chopping wood, or see a faraway baseball player hitting a ball, we can easily see that the blow takes place an appreciable time before its sound reaches our ears. Likewise, thunder is heard after we see a flash of lightning. Light travels faster than sound. These common experiences show that sound requires a recognizable time to travel from one place to another. The speed of sound depends on wind conditions, temperature, and humidity. It does not depend on the loudness or the frequency of the sound; all sounds in the same medium travel at the same speed. The speed of sound in dry air at 0°C is about 330 meters per second, nearly 1200 kilometers per hour (a little more than one-millionth the speed of light). Water vapor in the air increases this speed slightly. Sound travels faster through warm air than cold air. This is to be expected because the faster-moving molecules in warm air bump into one

PRACTICING PHYSICS

Suspend the wire grille from a refrigerator or oven from a string, and hold the ends of the string to your ears. Let a friend gently stroke the grille with pieces of broom straw and with other objects. The effect is best appreciated when you are in a relaxed condition with your eyes closed. Be sure to try this!

another more often and therefore can transmit a pulse in less time.[2] For each degree rise in temperature above 0°C, the speed of sound in air increases by 0.6 meter per second. So, in air at a normal room temperature of about 20°C, sound travels at about 340 meters per second.


A radio wave is electromagnetic and travels at the speed of light.
A radio receiver and speaker convert it to a mechanical wave–sound–that travels a million times slower.
So a radio wave is *not* a sound wave!

CHECK POINT

1. **Do compressions and rarefactions in a sound wave travel in the same direction or in opposite directions from one another?**
2. **What is the approximate distance of a thunderstorm when you note a 3-s delay between the flash of lightning and the sound of thunder?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. They travel in the same direction (as is shown in Figure 20.1).
2. Assuming that the speed of sound in air is about 340 m/s, in 3 s it will travel 340 m/s × 3 s = 1020 m. There is no appreciable delay for the flash, so the storm is slightly more than 1 km away.

Energy in Sound Waves

Wave motion of all kinds possesses energy of varying degrees. Electromagnetic waves from the Sun, for instance, bring us the enormous quantities of energy that sustain life on Earth. By comparison, sound has an extremely small amount of energy. That's because producing sound requires only a small amount of energy. For example, 10 million people talking at the same time would produce sound energy equal only to the energy needed to operate a common flashlight. Hearing is possible only because of our remarkably sensitive ears. Only the most sensitive microphone can detect sound that is softer than what we can hear.

Sound energy dissipates to thermal energy while sound travels in air. For waves of higher frequency, the sound energy is transformed into internal energy more rapidly than for waves of lower frequencies. As a result, sounds of low frequencies travel farther through air than sounds of higher frequencies. That's why the foghorns of ships have a low frequency.

[2]The speed of sound in a gas is about 3/4 the average speed of the gas molecules.

MEASURING WAVES

Problem Solving

Sample Problem 1

An oceanic depth-sounding vessel surveys the ocean floor with ultrasonic sound that travels 1530 m/s in seawater. How deep is the water if the time delay of the echo from the ocean floor is 2 s?

Solution:

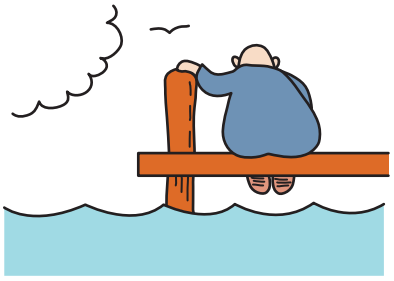
The round trip is 2 s, meaning 1 s down and 1 s up. Then,

$$d = vt = 1530\ \text{m/s} \times 1\ \text{s} = 1530\ \text{m}$$

(Radar works similarly; microwaves rather than sound waves are transmitted.)

Sample Problem 2

While sitting on the dock of the bay, Otis notices incoming waves with distance d between crests. The incoming crests lap against the pier pilings at a rate of one every 2 s.



(a) Find the frequency of the waves.
(b) Show that the speed of the waves is given by fd.
(c) Suppose the distance d between wave crests is 1.8 m. Show that the speed of the waves is slightly less than 1.0 m/s.

Solution:

(a) The frequency of the waves is given: one per 2 s, or $f = 0.5$ Hz
(b) $v = f\lambda = fd$.
(c) $v = f\lambda = fd = 0.5\ \text{Hz}\ (1.8\ \text{m}) = (0.5/\text{s})(1.8\ \text{m}) = 0.9\ \text{m/s}$.

20.3 Reflection of Sound

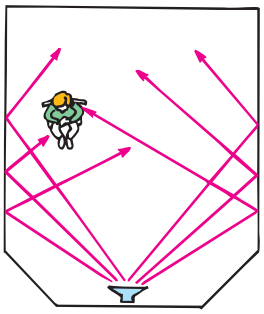


FIGURE 20.6
The angle of incident sound is equal to the angle of reflected sound.

We call the reflection of sound an *echo*. The fraction of energy carried by the reflected sound wave can be large if the surface is rigid and smooth, and small if the surface is soft and irregular. Sound energy that is not carried by the reflected sound wave is carried by the "transmitted" (absorbed) wave.

Sound reflects from a smooth surface the same way that light does—the angle of incidence is equal to the angle of reflection (Figure 20.6). Sometimes, when sound reflects from the walls, ceiling, and floor of a room, the reflecting surfaces are too reflective and the sound becomes garbled. When sound undergoes multiple reflections and persists after the source has ceased emitting, we hear **reverberations.**

On the other hand, if the reflective surfaces are too absorbent, the sound level will be low and the room will sound dull and lifeless. Reflection of sound in a room makes it sound lively and full, as you have probably discovered while singing in the shower. In the design of an auditorium or concert hall, a balance must be achieved between reverberation and absorption. The study of sound properties is called *acoustics*.

It is often advantageous to place highly reflective surfaces behind the stage to direct sound out to an audience. Reflecting surfaces are suspended above the stage in some concert halls. Most often they are large, shiny, plastic surfaces that also reflect light (Figure 20.7). A listener can look up at these reflectors and see the reflected images of the members of the orchestra. The plastic reflectors are somewhat curved, which increases the field of view. Both sound and light obey the same law of reflection, so if a reflector is oriented so that you can see a particular musical instrument, rest assured that you will hear it also. Sound from the instrument will follow the line of sight to the reflector and then to you.

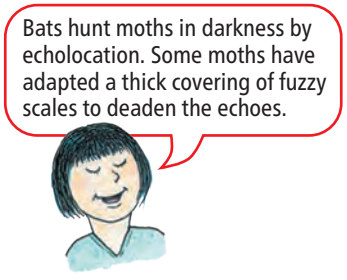

Bats hunt moths in darkness by echolocation. Some moths have adapted a thick covering of fuzzy scales to deaden the echoes.

FIGURE 20.7
Reflective and adjustable mirrors in Davies Symphony Hall in San Francisco show that what you see is what you hear.

CHECK POINT

Why is "What you see is what you hear" appropriate for the concert hall photo in Figure 20.7?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The statement acknowledges the same rules of reflection for both sound and light. When a reflector panel is tilted so a listener can see a particular part of the orchestra, sound follows the same path. A listener can see the source of what is heard.

20.4 Refraction of Sound

When sound waves continue through a medium and bend, they undergo **refraction.** Sound waves bend when parts of the wavefronts travel at different speeds. This may happen in uneven winds or when sound is traveling through air of uneven temperatures. On a warm day, the air near the ground may be appreciably warmer than the rest of the air, so the speed of sound near the ground increases (Figure 20.8). Sound waves therefore tend to bend away from the ground, resulting

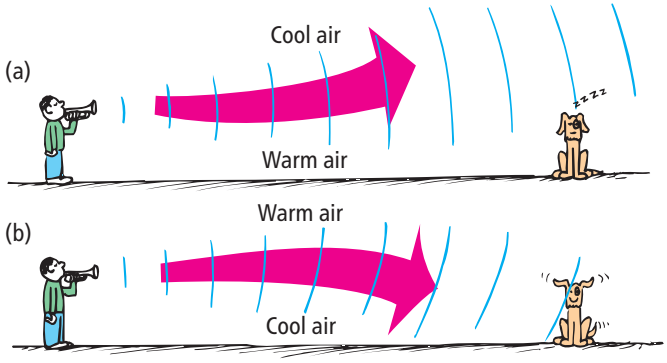


FIGURE 20.8
Sound waves are bent in air of uneven temperatures. Notice that the directions of the sound waves (red) are at right angles to the wavefronts (blue).

in sound that does not seem to travel well. Refraction of sound is caused by differences in the speed of sound.

We hear thunder when the lightning is reasonably close, but we often fail to hear the thunder for distant lightning because of refraction. The sound travels slower at higher altitudes and bends away from the ground, so you may not hear it. The opposite often occurs on a cold day or at night when the layer of air near the ground is colder than the air above. Then the speed of sound near the ground is reduced. The higher speed of the wavefronts above causes a bending of the sound toward the ground, resulting in sound that can be heard over considerably longer distances. Sound refraction explains why you can clearly hear conversations over a campfire far across a lake at night. Sound does not always travel in straight-line paths.

CHECK POINT

Can it truly be said that refraction involves a change in wave speed?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes—always!

The refraction of sound occurs under water, where the speed of sound varies with temperature. This poses a problem for surface vessels that bounce high-frequency waves off the bottom of the ocean to chart the sea bottom's features. Refraction is a blessing for submarines trying to escape detection. Because of thermal gradients and layers of water at different temperatures, the refraction of sound leaves gaps or "blind spots" in the water. This is where submarines hide. If it weren't for refraction, submarines would be easier to detect.

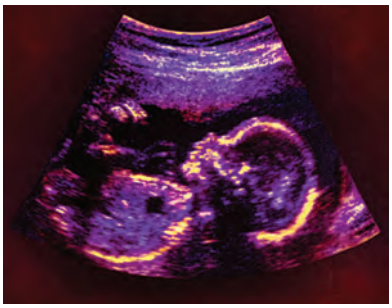


FIGURE 20.9
A human fetus is clearly displayed on a viewing screen by ultrasound.

Sound composed of frequencies higher than the range of human hearing is *ultrasound*. Physicians use the multiple reflections and refractions of ultrasonic waves in a technique that harmlessly views the inside of the body without the use of X-rays. When ultrasound enters the body, it is reflected more strongly from the outside of an organ than from its interior, and an image of the outline of the organ is obtained. When ultrasound is incident upon a moving object, the reflected sound has a slightly different frequency. Using this Doppler effect, a physician can "see" the beating heart of a fetus as early as 11 weeks after conception (Figure 20.9).

Ultrasound is used in medicine to produce images of internal body organs and fetuses in the womb and in industry to detect flaws in metal. Although the ultrasound echo technique is newly familiar to humans, it is old stuff to creatures

FIGURE 20.10
A dolphin emits ultra-high-frequency sound to locate and identify objects in its environment. Distance is sensed by the time delay between sending sound and receiving its echo, and direction is sensed by differences in time for the echo to reach its two ears. A dolphin's main diet is fish, and since hearing in fish is limited to fairly low frequencies, the fish are not alerted to the fact that they are being hunted.

such as bats and dolphins. Bats, for example, emit ultrasonic squeaks and locate objects by their echoes. Dolphins do this and more. Whereas sound is a passive sense for us, it is an active sense for the dolphin, which sends out sounds and then perceives its surroundings on the basis of their echoes. Sensing ultrasonic waves enables a dolphin to "see" through the bodies of other animals and people. Skin, muscle, and fat are almost transparent to dolphins, so they "see" only a thin outline of the body—but the bones, teeth, and gas-filled cavities are clearly apparent. Physical evidence of cancers, tumors, heart attacks, and even emotional state can all be "seen" by the dolphin[3]—as humans have *only* recently been able to accomplish with ultrasound.

CHECK POINT

How is the wavelength of sound affected when it passes from air into water?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Wavelengths shorten as slower wavefronts cram closer together. Frequency, however, remains unchanged in refraction.

20.5 Forced Vibrations

If we strike an unmounted tuning fork, the sound from it may be rather faint. If we hold the same tuning fork against a table after striking it, the sound is louder. This is because the table is forced to vibrate, and, with its larger surface area, the table sets more air in motion. The table can be made to vibrate by a fork of any frequency—a case of **forced vibration.** The mechanism in a music box is mounted on a sounding board. Without the sounding board, the sound produced by the music-box mechanism is barely audible. Sounding boards are important in all stringed musical instruments.

Natural Frequency

When someone drops a wrench on a concrete floor, we are not likely to mistake its sound for that of a baseball bat hitting the floor. This is because the two objects vibrate differently when they are struck. Tap a wrench, and the vibrations it makes are different from the vibrations of a baseball bat, or of anything else. Any object composed of an elastic material, when disturbed, will vibrate at its own special set of frequencies, which together form its unique sound. We speak of an object's **natural frequency,** which depends on such factors as the elasticity and shape of the object. Bells and tuning forks, of course, vibrate at their own characteristic frequencies. And, interestingly enough, most things from planets to atoms and almost everything else in between have a springiness to them and vibrate at one or more natural frequencies.

FIGURE 20.11
The natural frequency of the smaller bell is higher than that of the larger bell, and it rings at a higher pitch.

[3]The primary sense of the dolphin is acoustic because vision is not a very useful sense in the often murky and dark depths of the ocean. What's more interesting, the dolphin can reproduce the sonic signals that paint the mental image of its surroundings; thus the dolphin probably communicates its experience to other dolphins by communicating the full acoustic image of what is "seen," placing it directly in the minds of other dolphins. A dolphin needs no word or symbol for "fish," for example, but communicates an image of the real thing—perhaps with emphasis highlighted by selective filtering, as we similarly communicate a musical concert to others via various means of sound reproduction. Small wonder that the language of the dolphin is unlike our own!

CHECK POINT

1. **Why is a metal kitchen spoon elastic and a napkin not?**
2. **Why are the sounds different for different objects dropped on a floor?**
3. **Why does a struck tuning fork sound louder when its handle is held against a table?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The metal of the spoon tends to retain its shape when an applied force causes it to vibrate. In contrast, when a force is applied to a napkin, the napkin has no tendency to retain its shape or vibrate. Only an elastic substance returns to its original shape after an applied force is removed.
2. Objects composed of elastic materials have characteristic frequencies of vibration. When dropped, internal vibrations produce a sound characteristic of the material.
3. The surface of the table is forced into vibration. Its greater vibrating surface produces a louder sound.

20.6 Resonance

FIGURE 20.12
Manuel finds that he produces a large amplitude when he pumps in rhythm with the swing's natural frequency.

When the frequency of forced vibrations on an object matches the object's natural frequency, a dramatic increase in amplitude occurs. This phenomenon is called **resonance.** Literally, *resonance* means "resounding," or "sounding again." Putty doesn't resonate because it isn't elastic, and a dropped handkerchief is too limp. In order for something to resonate, it needs a force to pull it back to its starting position and enough energy to keep it vibrating.

A common experience illustrating resonance occurs on a playground swing, which in effect is a pendulum. When pumping a swing, we pump in rhythm with the natural frequency of the swing. More important than the force with which we pump is the timing. Even small pumps or small pushes from someone else, if delivered in rhythm with the natural frequency of the swinging motion, produce large amplitudes. A common classroom demonstration of resonance is to adjust a pair of tuning forks to the same frequency and space them some distance apart. When one of the forks is struck, it sets the other fork into vibration (Figure 20.13). This is a small-scale version of pushing a friend on a swing—it's the timing that's important. When a series of sound waves impinge on the fork, each compression gives the prong of the fork a tiny push. Since the frequency of these pushes corresponds to the natural frequency of the fork, the pushes successively increase the amplitude of vibration. This is because the pushes occur at the appropriate time and occur repeatedly in the same direction as the instantaneous motion of the fork. The motion of the second fork is often called a *sympathetic vibration.*

FIGURE 20.13
When Ryan Patterson strikes one of the matched-frequency tuning forks, the other is set into resonance.

If the forks are not adjusted for matched frequencies, then the timing of pushes is off, and resonance will not occur. When you tune a radio, you are similarly adjusting the natural frequency of the electronics to match one of the many surrounding signals. The set then resonates to one station at a time instead of playing all stations at once.

Resonance occurs whenever successive impulses are applied to a vibrating object in rhythm with its natural frequency. Cavalry troops marching across a footbridge near Manchester, England, in 1831 inadvertently caused the bridge to collapse when they marched in rhythm with the bridge's natural frequency. Since then, it is customary to order troops to "break step" when crossing bridges in order to prevent resonance.

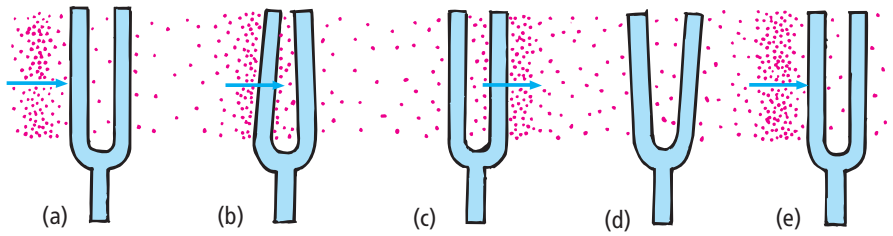


FIGURE 20.14
Stages of resonance (blue arrows indicate sound waves traveling to the right). (a) The first compression meets the tuning fork and gives it a tiny and momentary push. (b) The fork bends and then (c) returns to its initial position just at the time a rarefaction arrives and (d) overshoots in the opposite direction. Just when the fork returns to its initial position (e), the next compression arrives to repeat the cycle. Now the fork bends farther because it is moving.

Entertain your friends in a social gathering with a thin-rimmed crystal wine glass, which nicely resonates to some characteristic frequency. Dip and wet your finger in water and rub it gently around the rim of the glass. Sliding and sticking of your finger excites standing waves in the crystal glass (as featured in Think and Do 32 of the previous chapter). Resonance occurs as the vibration of the glass rim in turn causes air to vibrate at the same frequency. The tone that is heard has a frequency that matches the resonant frequency of the glass.

If enough energy is imparted to the glass at its resonant frequency, the glass can be made to shatter. However, this takes more energy than can be provided by rubbing the rim with a finger. Some singers, however, can sing a single pure note loud enough and equal to the resonant frequency of a wine glass to cause it to shatter—which is unlikely in your gathering of friends. We have all heard of crystal-breaking demonstrations that use high amplitude sound that is broadcast close to the location of the crystal wine glass. Seeing the glass shatter is a remarkable sight.

Structural engineers are well aware of resonance in structures such as bridges, buildings, trains, and even aircraft. Proper construction takes resonance into account. Optical resonance underlies the operation of lasers. In the medical field, atomic nuclei in the body are made to resonate. This is nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) that has been renamed MRI (magnetic resonance imaging) due in large part to public fear of anything "nuclear." Resonance is evident in ocean tides. On a subatomic scale, we detect resonance in quantum wave functions. In social settings, we even speak of the resonance of certain people who are "on our wavelength." Resonance underlies a vast multitude of phenomena that add to the beauty of the world.

FIGURE 20.15
A wine glass sings when rubbed along its edge with your finger.

CHECK POINT

Why can a kitchen spoon be set into resonance and a napkin not?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The kitchen spoon is elastic, the napkin is not.

20.7 Interference

Sound waves, like any waves, can be made to exhibit **interference.** Recall that wave interference was discussed in Chapter 19. A comparison of interference for transverse waves and longitudinal waves is shown in Figure 20.16. In either case, when the crests of one wave overlap the crests of another wave, increased amplitude results. Or, when the crest of one wave overlaps the trough of another wave, decreased amplitude results. In the case of sound, the crest of a wave corresponds to a compression and the trough of a wave corresponds to a rarefaction. Interference occurs for all waves, both transverse and longitudinal.

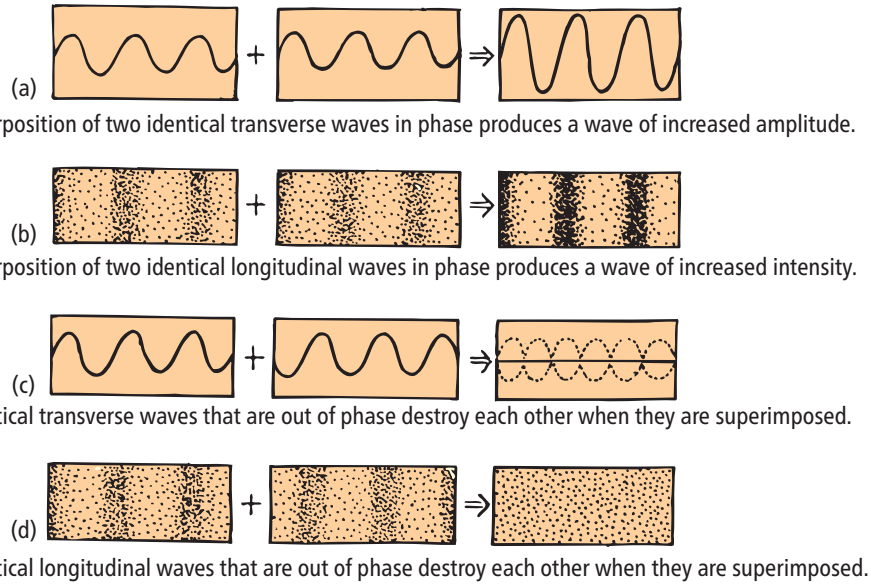

(a)
The superposition of two identical transverse waves in phase produces a wave of increased amplitude.
(b)
The superposition of two identical longitudinal waves in phase produces a wave of increased intensity.
(c)
Two identical transverse waves that are out of phase destroy each other when they are superimposed.
(d)
Two identical longitudinal waves that are out of phase destroy each other when they are superimposed.

FIGURE 20.16
Constructive (a, b) and destructive (c, d) wave interference in transverse and longitudinal waves.

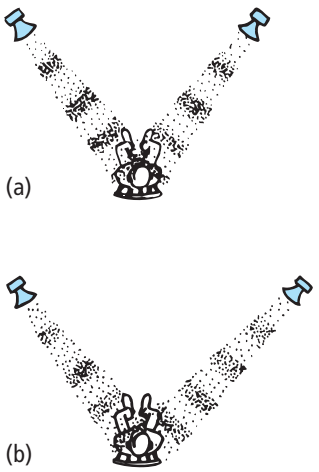


FIGURE 20.17
Interference of sound waves. (a) Waves arrive in phase and interfere constructively when the path lengths from the speakers are the same. (b) Waves arrive out of phase and interfere destructively when the path lengths differ by half a wavelength (or 3/2, 5/2, and so on).

An interesting case of sound interference is illustrated in Figure 20.17. If you are an equal distance from two sound speakers that emit identical tones of fixed frequency, the sound is louder because the effects of the two speakers add. The compressions and rarefactions of the tones arrive in step, or in *phase*. However, if you or a speaker moves to the side so that the paths from the speakers to you differ by half a wavelength, then the rarefactions from one speaker are filled in by the compressions from the other speaker. This is destructive interference. It is just as if the crest of one water wave exactly filled in the trough of another water wave, canceling both. If the region is devoid of any reflecting surfaces, little or no sound will be heard!

If the speakers emit a whole range of sounds with different frequencies, only some waves destructively interfere for a given difference in path lengths. So interference of this type is usually not a problem, because there is usually enough reflection of sound to fill in the canceled spots. Nevertheless, "dead spots" are sometimes evident in poorly designed theaters or music halls, where sound waves reflect off walls and interfere with nonreflected waves to produce zones of low amplitude. When you move your head a few centimeters in either direction, you may hear a noticeable difference.

Sound interference is dramatically illustrated when monaural sound is played by stereo speakers that are out of phase. Speakers are out of phase when the input wires to one speaker are interchanged (positive and negative wire inputs reversed). For a monaural signal, this means that when one speaker is sending a compression of sound, the other is sending a rarefaction. The sound produced is not as full and not as loud as from speakers properly connected in phase because the longer waves are being canceled by interference. This is illustrated in Figure 20.18. Shorter waves are canceled as the speakers are brought closer together, and when the pair of speakers is brought face to face against each other, very little sound is heard! Only the sound waves that have the highest frequencies survive cancellation. You must try this to appreciate it.

Destructive sound interference is a useful property in *antinoise technology*. Such noisy devices as jackhammers are being equipped with microphones that send the sound of the device to electronic microchips that create mirror-image wave patterns of the sound signals. For the jackhammer, this mirror-image sound signal is fed to earphones worn by the operator. Sound compressions (or rarefactions) from the hammer are canceled by mirror-image rarefactions (or compressions) in the earphones. The combination of signals cancels the jackhammer noise.

Noise-canceling earphones are common for pilots (as worn by Ken, pictured at the beginning of this chapter). Many cabins of airplanes are significantly quieter with antinoise technology. When they're not, you should wear your noise-canceling earphones.

FIGURE 20.18
If the positive and negative wire inputs to one of the stereo speakers are switched, the speakers are out of phase. When the speakers are far apart, monaural sound is not as loud as from properly phased speakers. When they are brought face to face, very little sound is heard. Interference is nearly complete as the compressions of one speaker fill in the rarefactions of the other!

CHECK POINT

In the demonstration of Figure 20.18, why is it important that monaural sound be used?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The signals of monaural sound fed to the pair of speakers are identical. Only out-of-phase identical sounds can be canceled by interference. Note in Figure 20.19 how mirror images of monaural sound cancel when combined. Not so with non-identical stereo images.

20.8 Beats

When two tones of slightly different frequency are sounded together, a fluctuation in the loudness of the combined sounds is heard; the sound is loud, then faint, then loud, then faint, and so on. This periodic variation in the loudness of sound is called **beats** and is due to interference. Strike two slightly mismatched tuning forks and, because one fork vibrates at a different frequency than the other, the vibrations of the forks will be momentarily in step, then out of step, then in again, and so on. When the combined waves reach our ears in step—say, when a compression from one fork overlaps a compression from the other—the sound is a maximum. A moment later, when the forks are out of step, a compression from one fork is met with a rarefaction from the other, resulting in a minimum. The sound that reaches our ears throbs between maximum and minimum loudness and produces a tremolo (shaking) effect.

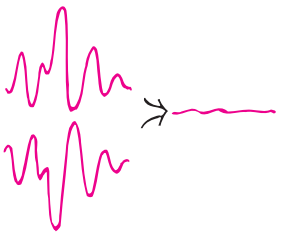


FIGURE 20.19
When a mirror image of a sound signal combines with the sound itself, the sound is canceled.

We can understand beats by considering a tall rabbit and short rabbit hopping side by side. The short rabbit covers less ground in each hop, so it has to hop more rapidly—that is, with a higher frequency—to keep up with the tall rabbit. If the rabbits are "in sync" at a particular moment, landing together, then a little later they will be "out of sync," landing at slightly different times. How long until they are back in sync? Imagine that the tall rabbit makes 70 hops in 1 minute, and the shorter rabbit makes 72 hops in the same time. After 6 seconds (0.1 min) they will have made 7.0 and 7.2 hops, respectively, and will not be in sync. Not until 30 seconds (0.5 min) have gone by, when they have made, respectively, 35 and 36 hops (an integral number for both), will they again land together. Then, after 1 min (70 and 72 hops), they will again be back in sync. And so on. Twice per minute the rabbits will be in sync. In general, if two creatures with different hopping rates travel together, the number of times they are in sync each minute (or other unit of time) will be equal to the difference in the frequencies of their

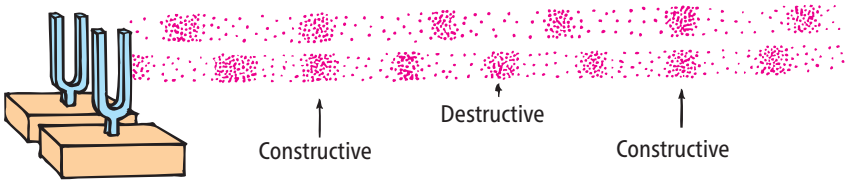


FIGURE 20.20
The interference of two sound sources of slightly different frequencies produces beats.

FIGURE 20.21
The unequal spacings of the combs produce a moiré pattern that is similar to beats.

hops. This idea applies also to the pair of tuning forks. If one fork undergoes 264 vibrations each second and the other fork vibrates 262 times per second, then they will vibrate in sync and reinforce each other twice each second. A beat frequency of 2 hertz will be heard. (The overall tone will correspond to the average frequency, 263 hertz.)

If we overlap two combs with different teeth spacing, we'll see a moiré pattern that is related to beats (Figure 20.21). The number of beats per length will equal the difference in the number of teeth per length for the two combs.

Beats can occur with any kind of wave and provide a practical way to compare frequencies. To tune a piano, for example, a piano tuner listens for beats produced between a standard frequency and the frequency of a particular string on the piano. When the frequencies are identical, the beats disappear. Beats can help you tune a variety of musical instruments. Simply listen for beats between the tone of your instrument and a standard tone produced by a piano or some other instrument.

Beats are utilized by dolphins in surveying the motions of things around them. When a dolphin sends out sound signals, beats may be produced when the echoes the dolphin receives interfere with the sounds it sends. When there is no relative motion between the dolphin and the object returning the sound, the sending and receiving frequencies are the same and no beats occur. But when there is relative motion, the echo has a different frequency due to the Doppler effect, and beats

RADIO BROADCASTS

A radio receiver turns electromagnetic waves, which we cannot hear, into sound waves that we can hear. Every radio station has an assigned frequency at which it broadcasts. The electromagnetic wave transmitted at this frequency is the *carrier wave*. The relatively low-frequency sound signal to be communicated is superimposed on the much higher-frequency carrier wave in two principal ways: by slight variations in amplitude that match the audio frequency or by slight variations in frequency. This impression of the sound wave on the higher-frequency radio wave is *modulation*. When the *amplitude* of the carrier wave is modulated, we call it AM, or *amplitude modulation*. AM stations broadcast in the range of 535–1605 kilohertz. When the *frequency* of the carrier wave is modulated, we call it FM, or *frequency modulation*. FM stations broadcast in the higher-frequency range of 88–108 megahertz. Amplitude modulation is similar to rapidly changing the brightness of a constant-color lightbulb. Frequency modulation is similar to rapidly changing the color of a constant-intensity lightbulb.

Turning the knob of a radio receiver to select a particular station is like adjusting movable masses on the prongs of a tuning fork to make it resonate to the sound produced by another fork. In choosing a radio station, you adjust the frequency of an electric circuit inside the radio receiver to match and resonate with the frequency of the desired station. You sort out one carrier wave from many. Then the impressed sound signal is separated from the carrier wave, amplified, and fed to the loudspeaker. Whether pre-digital or post-digital, it's nice to hear only one station at a time!

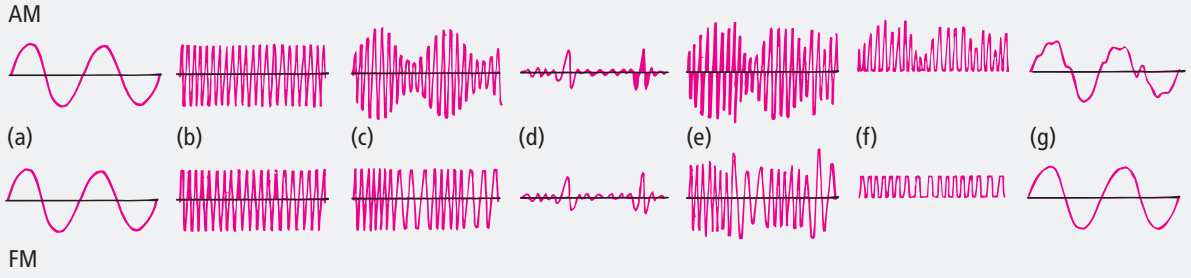


FIGURE 20.22
AM and FM radio signals. (a) Sound waves that enter a microphone. (b) Radio-frequency carrier wave produced by a transmitter without a sound signal. (c) Carrier wave modulated by signal. (d) Static interference. (e) Carrier wave and signal affected by static. (f) Radio receiver cuts out negative half of carrier wave. (g) Signal remaining is rough for AM because of static but is smooth for FM because the tips of the waveform are clipped without loss to the signal.

are produced when the echo and the emitted sound combine. The same principle is applied by the radar guns used by police officers. The beats between the signal that is sent and the one that is reflected are used to determine the speed of a car.

An intriguing and life-saving application of beats is used in the detection of dangerous gases in mines. The air in some mines contains poisonous methane. There's a slight difference in the speeds of sound in pure air and in air that contains methane. When a pair of small identical pipes are blown together, one by pure air from a reservoir and the other by the air in the mine, beats are heard if the air contains methane. If you work in a mine, do so in one where beats are not heard when this procedure is done!

Why does Hollywood persist in playing engine noises whenever a spacecraft in outer space passes by? Wouldn't seeing them float by silently be far more dramatic?

CHECK POINT

1. **What is the beat frequency when a 262-Hz tuning fork and a 266-Hz tuning fork are sounded together? A 262-Hz fork and a 272-Hz fork?**
2. **Is it correct to say that, in every case, without exception, any radio wave travels faster than any sound wave?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. For the 262-Hz and 266-Hz forks, the ear will hear 264 Hz, which will beat at 4 Hz (266 Hz – 262 Hz). For the 262-Hz and 272-Hz forks, 267 Hz will be heard, and some people will hear it throb 10 times each second (272 Hz – 262 Hz). Beat frequencies higher than 10 Hz are normally too rapid to be heard.
2. Yes, because any radio wave is an electromagnetic wave and travels at the speed of light. A sound wave, on the other hand, is a mechanical wave that travels in air at about 340 m/s, about one-millionth the speed of a radio wave. So any radio wave travels appreciably faster than any sound wave.

Chapter 20 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Pitch The highness or lowness of a tone; related to wave frequency.

Infrasonic Describes a sound that has a frequency too low to be heard by the normal human ear.

Ultrasonic Describes a sound that has a frequency too high to be heard by the normal human ear.

Compression A condensed region of the medium through which a longitudinal wave travels.

Rarefaction A rarefied (of reduced pressure) region of the medium through which a longitudinal wave travels.

Reverberation The persistence of sound, as in an echo, due to multiple reflections.

Refraction The bending of sound or any wave caused by a difference in wave speeds.

Forced vibration The setting up of vibrations in an object by a vibrating force.

Natural frequency The frequency at which an elastic object tends to vibrate when it is disturbed and the disturbing force is removed.

Resonance The response of a body when a forcing frequency matches its natural frequency.

Interference A result of superposing different waves, often of the same wavelength. Constructive interference results from crest-to-crest reinforcement; destructive interference results from crest-to-trough cancellation.

Beats A series of alternate reinforcements and cancellations produced by the interference of two waves of slightly different frequencies, heard as a throbbing effect in sound waves.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

20.1 Nature of Sound

1. What is the pitch of a sound wave?
2. What is the average range of a young person's hearing?
3. What are ultrasonic and infrasonic frequencies?
4. In which medium—gaseous, liquid, or solid—is the speed of sound the fastest?
5. What characteristics are required in a medium for the propagation of sound?

20.2 Sound in Air

6. What happens to a medium in which sound waves propagate?
7. Do compressions and rarefactions travel in the same direction, or in opposite directions, in a wave?

20.3 Reflection of Sound

8. What factors does the speed of sound depend upon? What are some factors that it does *not* depend upon?
9. Does sound travel faster in warm air than in cold air?
10. Which is normally greater, the energy in ordinary sound or the energy in ordinary light?
11. What ultimately becomes of the energy of sound in the air?

20.4 Refraction of Sound

12. What are some applications of the property of sound to echo?
13. What is the necessary condition for an echo to be heard distinctly?
14. What name is given to the study of sound properties?

20.5 Forced Vibrations

15. What is the relationship between wave speed and refraction?
16. Why does sound tend to bend as it grazes warm ground?
17. How does the speed of sound in water affect refraction under water?
18. What is ultrasound?

20.6 Resonance

19. Why will a struck tuning fork sound louder when it is held against a table?
20. How does elasticity relate to an object's natural frequency?
21. Why will a dropped metal spoon vibrate when hitting a floor, whereas a dropped napkin won't?

20.7 Interference

22. How do forced *vibrations* relate to *resonance?*
23. Why when tuning a radio do you hear only one station at a time rather than hearing many stations at once?
24. Distinguish between monaural and stereo sound.
25. What are the conditions for one wave canceling xanother?
26. What kind of waves can exhibit interference?
27. What is the result of a mirror image of a sound signal combining with the sound itself?

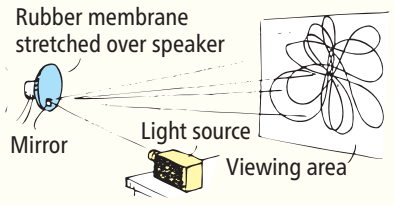
20.8 Beats

28. What physical phenomenon underlies the production of beats?
29. What beat frequency will occur when a 370-Hz and a 374-Hz sound source are sounded together?
30. How does a radio wave differ from a sound wave?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Investigate moiré patterns with a pair of combs, as illustrated in Figure 20.21. Place one atop the other and notice how the pattern changes when slowly shifting the top comb from side to side. Rotate the combs a bit so they are not parallel. Try with one a fine tooth comb. Moiré patterns are not really there; they are an optical illusion created in the image in your eye. An intriguing activity.
32. In the bathtub, submerge your head and listen to the sound you make when clicking your fingernails together or tapping the tub beneath the water surface. Compare the sound by doing the same when both the source and your ears are above the water. At the risk of getting the floor wet, slide back and forth in the tub at different frequencies and see how the amplitude of the sloshing waves quickly builds up when you slide in rhythm with the waves. (The latter of these projects is most effective when you are alone in the tub.)

33. Stretch a piece of balloon rubber not too tightly over a radio loudspeaker. Glue a small, very lightweight piece of mirror, aluminum foil, or polished metal near one edge of the covered loud speaker. Project a narrow beam of light on the mirror while your favorite music is playing and observe the beautiful patterns that are reflected on a screen or wall.



34. One of the best activities in your course will be doing the interference demonstration described in Figure 20.18. A must Think and Do with onlookers. It is awesome!

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

35. For years, marine scientists were mystified by sound waves detected by underwater microphones in the Pacific Ocean. These so-called T-waves were among the purest sounds in nature. Eventually they traced the source to underwater volcanoes, whose rising columns of bubbles resonated like organ pipes. What is the wavelength of a typical T-wave whose frequency is 7 Hz? (The speed of sound in seawater is 1530 m/s.)
36. What is the wavelength of a 340-Hz tone in room-temperature air? What is the wavelength of a 34,000-Hz ultrasonic wave in the same air?
37. When watching distant fireworks you note a 2 second delay between seeing and hearing a burst. Show that the fireworks are about 0.7 km away from you.
38. A ship is using SONAR to survey the ocean floor. It emits a sound and receives its echo 1.8 s later. Using the information, estimate the depth of the ocean floor. (The speed of sound in seawater is 1530 m/s.)
39. You watch distant Sally Homemaker driving nails into a front porch at a regular rate of 1 stroke per second. You hear the sound of the blows exactly synchronized with the blows you see. And then you hear one more blow after you see the hammering stop. Explain how you calculate that Sally is 340 m away from you.
40. Take the speed of sound in air to be 340 m/s. Find the wavelength of a 523-Hz note heard from a violin.
41. Two stationary tuning forks of frequencies 534 Hz and 540 Hz are struck simultaneously. Find the number of beats per second of the resulting sound observed.
42. When listening to tuning forks of frequency 350 Hz and 352 Hz, what is the period of the beats one can hear?

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

43. Rank the speed of sound through the following from greatest to least:
    (a) Freshwater
    (b) Sea water
    (c) Aluminum
    (d) Air
44. Rank the beat frequency and period from lowest to highest for the following pairs of tuning forks:
    (a) 300 and 301 Hz
    (b) 276 and 280 Hz
    (c) 234 and 240 Hz
    (d) 463 and 474 Hz
    (e) 420 and 422 Hz

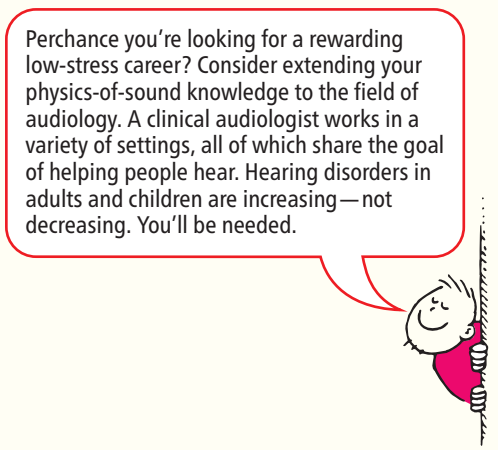
THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

45. Why is the Moon described as a "silent planet"?
46. Why do you not hear the sound of distant fireworks until after you see them?
47. If the Moon blew up, why would we not hear it?
48. If you toss a stone in still water, concentric circles are formed. What form will waves have if a stone is tossed into smoothly flowing water?
49. Why do flying bees buzz?
50. What does it mean to say that a radio station is "at 101.1 on your FM dial"?
51. Suppose a sound wave and an electromagnetic wave have the same frequency. Which has the longer wavelength?
52. Suppose that somehow a sound wave and an electromagnetic wave have the same wavelength. Which has the higher frequency?
53. A cat can hear sound frequencies up to 64,000 Hz. The average dog hears frequencies up to about 45,000 Hz. Which hears sound of shorter wavelengths, cats or dogs?
54. Sound from source A has twice the frequency of sound from source B. Compare the wavelengths of sound from the two sources.
55. In the stands of a racetrack, you notice smoke from the starter's gun before you hear it fire. Explain.
56. In Olympic competition, a microphone detects the sound of the starter's gun and sends it electrically to speakers at every runner's starting block. Why?
57. When a sound wave moves past a point in air, are there changes in the density of air at this point? Explain.
58. If a bell is ringing inside a bell jar, we can no longer hear it when the air is evacuated, but we can still see it. What differences in the properties of sound and light does this indicate?
59. Why is it so quiet after a snowfall?
60. If the speed of sound were dependent on its frequency, would you enjoy a concert sitting in the second balcony? Explain.
61. If the frequency of sound is doubled, what change will occur in its speed? In its wavelength?
62. Why does sound travel slower in cold air?
63. Would the refraction of sound be possible if the speed of sound was constant in all material media and all situations? Defend your answer.
64. Why can the tremor of the ground from a distant explosion be felt before the sound of the explosion can be heard?

65. What kinds of wind conditions would make sound more easily heard at long distances? Less easily heard at long distances?
66. If the distance between a listener and a bugle is tripled, by what factor does the sound intensity decrease? Assume that no reflections affect the sound.
67. Why is an echo weaker than the original sound?
68. What two physics mistakes occur in a science fiction movie that shows a distant explosion in outer space, where you see and hear the explosion at the same time?
69. Why will marchers at the end of a long parade following a band likely be out of step with marchers near the front?
70. Why is it a sensible procedure for soldiers to break step when marching over a bridge?
71. Why is the sound of a harp soft in comparison with the sound of a piano?
72. Your classmate says that the speed of sound and the frequency of sound depend on the medium in which it travels. What part of this statement do you disagree with?
73. Apartment dwellers will testify that bass notes are more distinctly heard from music played in nearby apartments. Why do you suppose lower-frequency sounds travel through walls, floors, and ceilings more easily?
74. The sitar, an Indian musical instrument, has a set of strings that vibrate and produce music, even though they are never plucked by the player. These "sympathetic strings" are identical to the plucked strings and are mounted below them. What is your explanation?
75. Why does a dance floor rise and fall only when certain kinds of dance steps are being performed?
76. Under what condition can a certain note sung by a singer cause a crystal glass to shatter?
77. Are beats the result of interference or of the Doppler effect, or of both?
78. Can it correctly be said that beats of sound are much the same thing as the rhythmic "beat" of music? Defend your answer.
79. A pair of sound waves of the same frequency can interfere, but, in order to produce beats, the two sound waves must be of different frequencies. Why?
80. Suppose a piano tuner hears 3 beats per second when listening to the combined sound from a tuning fork and the piano wire being tuned. After slightly tightening the string, 5 beats per second are heard. Should the string be loosened or tightened?
81. A piano tuner using a 264-Hz tuning fork hears 4 beats per second. What are two possible frequencies of vibration of the piano wire?
82. A human cannot hear sound at a frequency of 100 kHz or sound at 102 kHz. But if you walk into a room in which two sources are emitting sound waves, one at 100 kHz and the other at 102 kHz, you'll hear sound. Explain.

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

83. Discuss why sound travels faster in moist air. (In your discussion note that at the same temperature, water vapor molecules have the same average kinetic energy as the heavier nitrogen and oxygen molecules in the air.) How, then, do the average speeds of H_2O molecules compare with the speeds of N_2 and O_2 molecules?
84. A rule of thumb for estimating the distance in kilometers between an observer and a lightning stroke is to divide the number of seconds in the interval between the flash and the sound by 3. Is this rule correct? Discuss the reason for its correctness or incorrectness.
85. Ultrasonic waves have many applications in technology and medicine. One advantage is that high intensities can be used without danger to the ear. Cite another advantage of their short wavelength. (*Hint:* Why do microscopists use blue light rather than white light to see detail?)
86. An object resonates when the frequency of a vibrating force either matches its natural frequency or is a submultiple of its natural frequency. Why will it not resonate to multiples of its natural frequency? (*Hint:* Think of pushing a child in a swing.)
87. A special device can transmit out-of-phase sound from a noisy jackhammer to its operator using earphones. Over the noise of the jackhammer, the operator can easily hear your voice while you are unable to hear his. Explain.
88. A pair of loudspeakers on two sides of a stage are emitting identical pure tones (tones of a fixed frequency and fixed wavelength in air). When you stand in the center aisle, equally distant from the two speakers, you hear the sound loud and clear. Why does the intensity of the sound diminish considerably when you step to one side? (Suggestion: Use a diagram to make your point.)
89. When two out-of-phase speakers are brought together as shown in Figure 20.18, which waves are most canceled: long waves or short waves? Defend and discuss your answer.
90. If a single disturbance at an unknown distance emits both transverse and longitudinal waves that travel with distinctly different speeds in the medium, such as in the ground during an earthquake, how can the distance to the disturbance be determined?


Perchance you're looking for a rewarding low-stress career? Consider extending your physics-of-sound knowledge to the field of audiology. A clinical audiologist works in a variety of settings, all of which share the goal of helping people hear. Hearing disorders in adults and children are increasing—not decreasing. You'll be needed.

CHAPTER TWENTY Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. Sound travels fastest in
   (a) air.
   (b) water.
   (c) steel.
   (d) a vacuum.
2. In air and in water the same sound travels with different
   (a) frequencies.
   (b) speeds.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
3. In choosing between sound waves and radio waves, which has the greater speed?
   (a) Sound wave
   (b) Radio wave
   (c) Both the same
   (d) Need more information
4. Which does NOT belong to the same family?
   (a) Infrasonic waves
   (b) Ultrasonic waves
   (c) Radio waves
   (d) Shock waves
5. A 340-hertz sound wave travels at 340 m/s in air with a wavelength of
   (a) 1 m.
   (b) 10 m.
   (c) 100 m.
   (d) None of these
6. The explanation for refraction must involve a change in
   (a) frequency.
   (b) wavelength.
   (c) speed.
   (d) All of the above
7. Interference is a property of
   (a) water waves.
   (b) sound waves.
   (c) light waves.
   (d) All of the above
8. The natural frequency of an object depends on its
   (a) size.
   (b) shape.
   (c) elasticity.
   (d) All of the above
9. Reports are that the singer Caruso was able to shatter a crystal chandelier with his voice, which illustrates
   (a) an echo.
   (b) sound refraction.
   (c) sound interference.
   (d) resonance.
10. A piano tuner knows that a key on the piano is tuned to the frequency of a test tuning fork when the fork and key struck at same time produce beats of
    (a) 0 Hz.
    (b) 1 Hz.
    (c) 2 Hz.
    (d) None of these

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (c): Sound speed is related to the elasticity of a substance. Steel is such a substance. Sound travels slower in water, still slower in air, and not at all in a vacuum. **2. (b):** Sound travels slower in water and still slower in air. Different speeds. But not different frequencies, that don't normally change as sound travels. **3. (b):** Radio waves are electromagnetic waves. An electromagnetic wave travels at the speed of light. Hands down, nothing travels faster. **4. (c):** Only one of the choices, radio waves, is electromagnetic. The others are sound waves. **5. (a):** From $v = f\lambda$, $\lambda = v/f = (340 \text{ m/s})/(340 \text{ Hz}) = 1$ m. **6. (c):** The key to refraction is a change in speed when traveling from one material to another. Although frequency doesn't change during refraction, wavelength can, but is not a "must" for explaining refraction. **7. (d):** Interference is a property of *all* waves. Know this! **8. (d):** Natural frequency depends on all of the above. Know this also! **9. (d):** Resonance of Caruso's voice with the natural frequency of the crystal accounts for the shattering. Not an echo, nor refraction nor interference. **10. (a):** A tuner that listens for and hears beats knows that frequencies don't match. Adjustment is made until no beats are heard. Then the key is tuned to the desired frequency.

CHAPTER TWENTY ONE

21 Musical Sounds

21.1 Noise and Music
21.2 Pitch
21.3 Sound Intensity and Loudness
21.4 Quality
21.5 Musical Instruments
21.6 Fourier Analysis
21.7 From Analog to Digital

1 Gracie Hewitt produces soothing tones with her clarinet. 2 Michelle Anna Wong and Miriam Dijamco do the same with their violins. 3 Richard Hernandez delights in producing standing waves and spurts of water when he rubs the Chinese spouting bowl's handles. 4 Physics chanteuse Lynda Williams, physics instructor at Santa Rosa Junior College, delights audiences with her songs about physics.

As a graduate student at the University of Cambridge in England, Jocelyn Bell Burnell helped build a radio telescope to study quasars, the extremely luminous centers of massive, faraway galaxies. One day, she noticed an unusual pattern in her data—a squiggly line that indicated a pattern of regular, repeated radio pulses. Unsure what could explain these pulses, she and her adviser called their source "Little Green Men-1," a joking reference to extraterrestrial life. But Bell Burnell soon found other similar pulses, which suggested a more natural explanation. In 1967, she and her research group determined that the pulses were created by spinning neutron stars, very small and very dense stars that are the remnants of supernovae. Although a neutron star is only about 20 km across, the mass of 1 teaspoon of such a star would be equivalent to about 1 billion tons!

The structures that Jocelyn Bell Burnell discovered came to be known as pulsars, short for "pulsating radio stars." Since their discovery, pulsars have proven to be a valuable tool in physics and astrophysics due to the precise timing of their pulses. Astronomers have been able to use slight deviations from a pulsar's normal timing to accomplish detection of gravitational waves, test Einstein's theory of general relativity, weigh the solar system, and map the universe. In 1974, a Nobel Prize in Physics was awarded for the discovery of pulsars—but not to Jocelyn.

Jocelyn Bell Burnell was born in Belfast, Northern Ireland, in 1943. Her interest in astronomy began in childhood, when her father worked as an architect on the Armagh Observatory in Armagh, Northern Ireland. Bell Burnell spent a lot of time at the observatory as a child, and she also read a lot of books about astronomy. The scientists at the observatory encouraged her interest.

After attending a boarding school in England, she earned a degree in physics from the University of Glasgow. Her path was not always easy. When she arrived at Cambridge for graduate school, she felt like an imposter who did not belong there. In fact, she said that she thought they had made a mistake in admitting her and that, once the mistake was discovered, she would be removed. Some time later she would realize that one of the reasons she felt like an imposter was because she was a minority—one of only a few women.

In 1968, even as Bell Burnell was making her discoveries regarding pulsars, she felt societal pressure to leave astronomy when she married Martin Burnell. Again, after the birth of their son Gavin, there was pressure to end her career. However, she persisted and became a leader in the field of astrophysics.

The 1974 Nobel Prize in Physics for the discovery of pulsars was awarded to her advisor at the time, Antony Hewish, and to the astronomer Sir Martin Ryle. Although some prominent scientists protested this, Bell Burnell responded by saying that she was only a student at the time of the discovery, and she got on with her work. In addition to research and teaching, she's been president of several professional institutions, including the Institute of Physics from 2008 to 2010.

Bell Burnell has received numerous awards for her professional contributions. In 2018, she was awarded the Special Breakthrough Prize in Fundamental Physics for her discovery of pulsars and, additionally, for a "lifetime of inspiring scientific leadership." She used her 3-million-dollar award to establish the Bell Burnell Graduate Scholarship Fund, which supports the work of women and other underrepresented groups in physics. Today, inspirational Jocelyn Bell Burnell is a Visiting Professor of Astrophysics at the University of Oxford and a Fellow of Mansfield College.

21.1 Noise and Music

Most of the sounds we hear are noises. The impact of a falling object, the slamming of a door, the roaring of a motorcycle, and most of the sounds from traffic in city streets are noises. Noise corresponds to an irregular vibration of the eardrum produced by some irregular vibration in our surroundings, a jumble of wavelengths and amplitudes. *White noise* is a mixture of a variety of frequencies of sound, just as white light is a mixture of all the frequencies of light. We describe the sound of the surf, rustling leaves, or bubbling water in a brook as white noise.

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

Music is the art of sound and has a different character. Musical sounds have periodic tones—or musical *notes*. Although noise doesn't have these characteristics, the line that separates music and noise can be thin and subjective. To some contemporary composers, it is nonexistent. Some people consider contemporary music and music from other cultures to be noise. Differentiating these types of music from noise becomes a problem of aesthetics. However, differentiating traditional music—that is, Western classical music and most types of popular music—from noise presents no problem. A person with total hearing loss could distinguish between these by using an oscilloscope. When an electrical signal from a microphone is fed into an oscilloscope, patterns of air-pressure variations with time are nicely displayed that make it easy to distinguish between noise and traditional music (Figure 21.1).

Musicians usually speak of musical tones in terms of three principal characteristics: pitch, loudness, and quality.

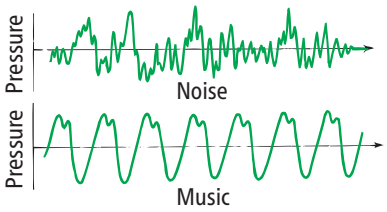


FIGURE 21.1
Graphical representations of noise and music.

CHECK POINT

A thud makes noise. Can a series of thuds be musical?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes, especially when they are periodic—think of a drum solo.

21.2 Pitch

Music is organized on many different levels. Most noticeable are musical notes. You may remember these in your earlier school years as "do, re, mi, fa, sol, la, ti, do." Each note has its own **pitch.** We can describe pitch by frequency. Rapid vibrations of the sound source (high frequency) produce sound of a high pitch, whereas slow vibrations (low frequency) produce a low pitch. We often speak of the pitch of a sound in terms of its position on the musical scale. Musicians give different pitches different letter names: A, B, C, D, E, F, G. When A, called concert A, is struck on a piano, a hammer strikes two or three strings, each of which vibrates 440 times in 1 second. The pitch of concert A corresponds to 440 hertz.[1] Notes A through G are all notes within one octave. Multiply the frequency of any note by 2, and you have the same note at a higher pitch in the next octave. A piano keyboard covers a little more than seven octaves (Figure 21.2).

Different musical notes are obtained by changing the frequency of the vibrating sound source. This is usually done by altering the size, the tightness, or the mass

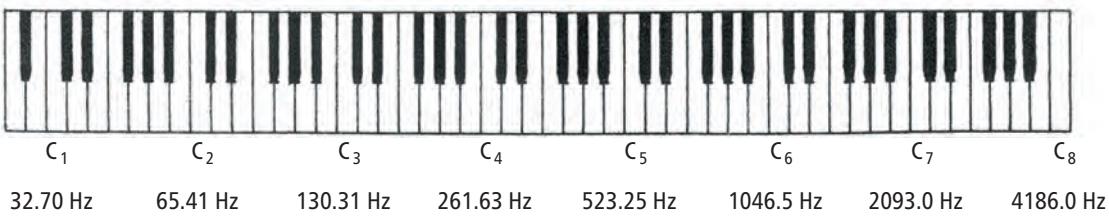


FIGURE 21.2
Piano keyboard. Low C (C_1) is 32.70 Hz, and successive overtones of C keep doubling in frequency. The 261.63-Hz C is called middle C.

[1]Interestingly, concert A is generally defined as 440 Hz. Some define it as low as 436 Hz or as high as 448 Hz in frequency.

of the vibrating object. A guitarist or violinist, for example, adjusts the tightness, or tension, of the strings when tuning them. Then different notes can be played by altering the length of each string by "stopping" it with the fingers. In wind instruments, the length of the vibrating air column can be altered (trombone and trumpet) or holes in the side of the tube can be opened and closed in various combinations (saxophone, clarinet, and flute) to change the pitch of the note produced.

High-pitched sounds used in music are most often less than 4000 Hz, but some young people can hear sounds with frequencies up to 20,000 Hz. Some people and most dogs can hear tones of higher pitch than this. In general, the upper limit of hearing in people gets lower as they grow older. A high-pitched sound is often inaudible to an older person and yet may be clearly heard by a younger one. The sense of hearing, especially of higher frequencies, decreases as we grow older.

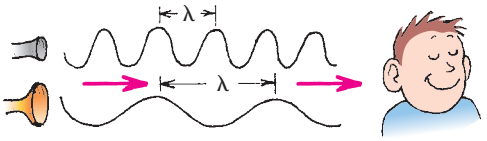


FIGURE 21.3
Both sound waves travel at the same speed. The one with the shorter wavelength λ reaches the listener's ear more frequently. It therefore has a higher frequency and is heard as a higher pitch.

CHECK POINT

1. **The sound emitted by bats is extremely intense. Why can't humans hear it?**
2. **Which travels faster in air: high-pitched sound or low-pitched sound?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The frequency of sound emitted by bats is higher than humans can hear. Otherwise, the sound of bats would drive people batty!
2. Both travel the same speed. The speed of sound depends on the medium in which it travels, not its frequency, wavelength, or amplitude.

21.3 Sound Intensity and Loudness

The **intensity** of sound depends on the amplitude of pressure variations within the sound wave. (And, as with all waves, intensity is directly proportional to the square of the wave amplitude.) Intensity is measured in units of watts per square meter. The human ear responds to intensities covering the enormous range from $10^{-12}\,\mathrm{W/m^2}$ (the threshold of hearing) to more than $1\,\mathrm{W/m^2}$ (the threshold of pain).

The barely audible $10^{-12}\,\mathrm{W/m^2}$ is used as a reference sound level called 0 *bel* (B)—a unit named after Alexander Graham Bell, the inventor of the telephone. A sound 10 times more intense has sound level of 1 bel ($10^{-11}\,\mathrm{W/m^2}$). These factors of ten continue so that the threshold of pain ($1\,\mathrm{W/m^2}$) has a sound level of 12 bels.

It is more common to use decibels for sound levels than bels. Because a decibel (dB) is 1/10 of a bel, sound level of the threshold of hearing is still 0 dB while the threshold of pain becomes 120 dB. Table 21.1 lists typical sound intensities and sound levels for nearby sources. Like the Richter scale for earthquakes, the decibel scale is logarithmic. Since the math of logarithms is beyond the scope of this text, just remember that sound levels increase by powers of ten.

What should be known is that physiological hearing damage begins at exposure to 85 decibels, the degree of damage depending on the intensity and the length and frequency of exposure. Hearing loss often occurs when loud sounds have damaged delicate structures in the inner ear—structures that don't normally degenerate.

fyi

- Adding to the worldwide contributions of former Beatle Paul McCartney, which includes his strong advocacy for animal rights, are the efforts of his daughter, lifelong vegetarian Stella Nina McCartney. She holds the reins of a global fashion empire that uses no animal products and employs new carcinogen-free materials that produce no pollutants during their manufacture and biodegrades after use. Congratulations to Stella for this noble quest.

Earplugs typically reduce noise by about 30 dB.

fyi

- The blue whale emits the loudest sounds, higher than 180 db in water, but they are pitched too low for humans to detect without sensitive equipment.

TABLE 21.1 COMMON SOURCES AND SOUND INTENSITIES

Source of Sound	Intensity (W/m^2)	Sound Level (dB)
Jet airplane 30 m away	10^{2}	140
Air-raid siren, nearby	1	120
Disco music, amplified	10^{-1}	110
Riveter	10^{-3}	90
Busy street traffic	10^{-5}	70
Conversation in home	10^{-6}	60
Quiet radio in home	10^{-8}	40
Whisper	10^{-10}	20
Rustle of leaves	10^{-11}	10
Threshold of hearing	10^{-12}	0

CHECK POINT

If a jackhammer makes a noise of 100 dB, which is 10,000,000,000 times larger than the quietest sound the ear can hear, would the sound of two jackhammers operating at the same time produce a sound of 200 dB?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

No! The decibel rating of sound intensity is logarithmic, not linear. Two jackhammers will sound somewhat louder at 103 dB, but *not* 200 dB. What's important to learn is that sound intensities do not combine linearly. We leave continued study to those in the field of audiology (which, by the way, makes for a good and busy career).

FIGURE 21.4
James displays a sound signal on an oscilloscope.

Sound intensity is a purely objective and physical attribute of a sound wave, and it can be measured by various acoustical instruments (and the oscilloscope in Figure 21.4). **Loudness,** on the other hand, is a physiological sensation. The ear senses some frequencies much better than others. A 3500-Hz sound at 80 decibels, for example, sounds about twice as loud to most people as a 125-Hz sound at 80 decibels; humans are more sensitive to the 3500-Hz range of frequencies. The loudest sounds we can tolerate have intensities a trillion times greater than the faintest sounds. The difference in perceived loudness, however, is much less than this.

Parrots, like humans, use their tongues to craft and shape sound. Tiny changes in the position of a parrot's tongue produce big differences in the sound first produced in the parrot's syrinx, a voice-box organ nestled between the trachea and the lungs.

21.4 Quality

We have no trouble distinguishing between the tone from a piano and a tone of the same pitch from a clarinet. Each of these tones has a characteristic sound that differs in **quality,** the "color" of a tone—*timbre.* Timbre describes all the aspects of a musical sound other than pitch, loudness, and length of tone. Timbre is described subjectively as heavy, light, murky, thin, smooth, or transparently clear. Sound from a viola, for example, has a noticeably "deeper" sound, while the violin has a noticeably "brighter" sound.

Most musical sounds are a superposition of many tones that differ in frequency. The various tones are called **partial tones,** or simply *partials*. The lowest frequency, called the **fundamental frequency,** determines the pitch of the note. A partial tone whose frequency is a whole-number multiple of the fundamental frequency is called a **harmonic.** Different harmonics have different pitches. A tone that has twice the frequency of the fundamental is the second harmonic; a tone with three times the fundamental frequency is the third harmonic; and so on (Figure 21.5).[2] It is the variety of partial tones that gives a musical note its characteristic quality. So we see that musical instruments have characteristic timbres, each with its own "color."

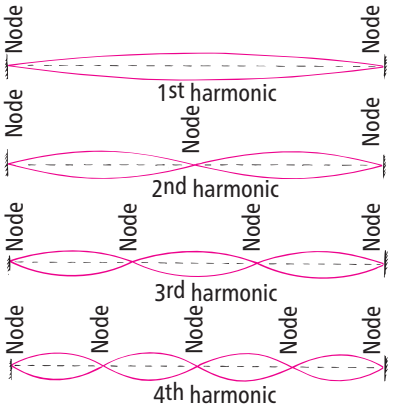


FIGURE 21.5
Modes of vibration of a guitar string.

Thus, if we strike middle C on the piano, we produce a fundamental tone with a pitch of about 262 Hz and also a blending of partial tones of two, three, four, five, and so on, times the frequency of middle C. The number and relative loudness of the partial tones determine the quality of the sound associated with the piano. Sound from practically every musical instrument consists of a fundamental and partials. Pure tones, those that have only one frequency, can be produced electronically. Some electronic synthesizers produce pure tones, and mixtures of these tones, to give a vast variety of musical sounds.

The quality of a tone is determined by the presence and relative intensities of the various partials. The sounds produced by a certain tone from the piano and a tone from the clarinet of the same pitch have different qualities that the ear can recognize because their partials are different. Tones of the same pitch with different qualities have either different partials or a difference in the relative intensities of the partials.

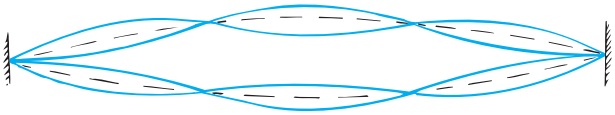


FIGURE 21.7
A composite vibration of the fundamental mode and the third harmonic.

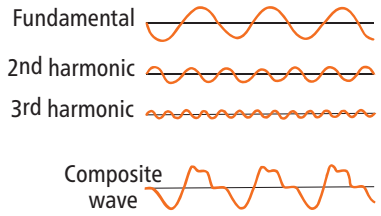


FIGURE 21.6
The fundamental and its harmonics combine to produce a composite wave.

CHECK POINT

The pitch and loudness of two people's voices may be the same, but we easily distinguish between them. Why?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The voice of each person has a characteristic mixture of partial tones. We say that each person's voice has its own timbre—its own special "color."

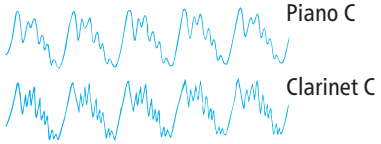


FIGURE 21.8
Sounds from the piano and clarinet differ in quality.

21.5 Musical Instruments

Conventional musical instruments can be grouped into three classes: those in which the sound is produced by vibrating strings, those in which the sound is produced by vibrating air columns, and those in which the sound is produced by *percussion*—as with the vibrating of a two-dimensional surface.

[2]In the terminology often used in music, the second harmonic is called the *first overtone*, the third harmonic is called the *second overtone*, and so on. Not all partial tones in a complex tone are integer multiples of the fundamental. Unlike the harmonics of woodwinds and brasses, stringed instruments, such as pianos, produce "stretched" partial tones that are nearly, but not quite, harmonics. This is an important factor in tuning pianos, and it occurs because the stiffness of the strings adds a little bit of restoring force to the tension.

FIGURE 21.9
Each time Bay Johnson strikes a piano key, a string in the piano is tapped. The piano strings for low notes are heavier, have more inertia, and vibrate at a lower frequency—a lower pitch than lighter strings of the same string tension. Loudness involves how hard the keys are struck, which affects the amplitudes of the vibrating strings. The touch sensitivity of the piano distinguishes it from earlier keyboard instruments such as the harpsichord.

In a stringed instrument, the vibration of the strings is transferred to a sounding board and then to the air, but with low efficiency. To compensate for this, orchestras have relatively large string sections. A smaller number of the high-efficiency wind instruments sufficiently balances a much larger number of violins.

In a wind instrument, the sound is a vibration of an air column in the instrument. There are various ways to set air columns into vibration. In brass instruments, such as trumpets, French horns, and trombones, air is blown into the instrument's mouthpiece at or near one end of the tube and exits at the other end. Vibrations of the player's lips interact with standing waves that are set up by acoustic energy reflected within the instrument by the flared bell at the end of the instrument. Sound from wind instruments depends mostly on the size and shape of the tube that the air moves through. The lengths of the vibrating air columns are manipulated by pushing valves that add or subtract extra segments[3] or by extending the length of the tube, as in a slide trombone. In woodwinds, such as clarinets, oboes, and saxophones, a stream of air produced by the musician sets a reed vibrating, whereas in fifes, flutes, and piccolos, the musician blows air against the edge of a hole to produce a fluttering stream that sets the air column into vibration.

In percussion instruments such as drums and cymbals, a two-dimensional membrane or elastic surface is struck to produce sound. The fundamental tone produced depends on the geometry, the elasticity, and, in some cases, the tension of the surface. Changes in pitch result from changing the tension in the vibrating surface; depressing the edge of a drum membrane with the hand is one way of accomplishing this. A variety of modes of vibration can be set up by striking the surface in different places. In the kettledrum, for example, the shape of the kettle changes the frequency of the drum. As in all musical sounds, the quality depends on the number and relative loudness of the partial tones.

Electronic musical instruments differ markedly from conventional musical instruments. Instead of strings that must be bowed, plucked, or struck, or reeds over which air must be blown, or diaphragms that must be tapped to produce sounds, some electronic instruments use electrons to generate the signals that produce musical sounds. Others start with sound from an acoustical instrument and then modify it. Electronic music demands of the composer and player an expertise beyond the knowledge of musicology. It brings a powerful new tool to the hands of the musician.

CHECK POINT

Sound from a guitar comes from vibrating strings. What vibrates to produce sound from a bugle? From a clarinet?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

In brass wind instruments such as bugles, trumpets, and trombones, the player's lips vibrate against each other and against the rim of the mouthpiece. In woodwinds such as clarinets, saxophones, and oboes, sound is produced by vibrating reeds.

[3]A bugle has neither valves nor variable length. A bugler must be adept in creating various overtones to get different notes.

21.6 Fourier Analysis

Did you ever look closely at the grooves in an old phonograph record, the kind that provided music for Grandma and Grandpa? Variations in the width of the grooves, seen in Figure 21.11, cause the phonograph needle (stylus) to vibrate as it rides in the moving groove. These mechanical vibrations, in turn, are transformed into electrical vibrations to produce sound. Isn't it remarkable that all the distinct vibrations made by the various instruments in an orchestra are captured and then converted to a single sound signal?

The sound of an oboe displayed on the screen of an oscilloscope looks like Figure 21.12a. This wave corresponds to the vibrations in the oboe. It also corresponds to the amplified signal that activates the speaker of the sound system and to the amplitude of air vibrating against the eardrum. Figure 21.12b shows the wave appearance of a clarinet. When the oboe and clarinet are sounded together, the principle of superposition is evident as their individual waves combine to produce the waveform shown in Figure 21.12c.

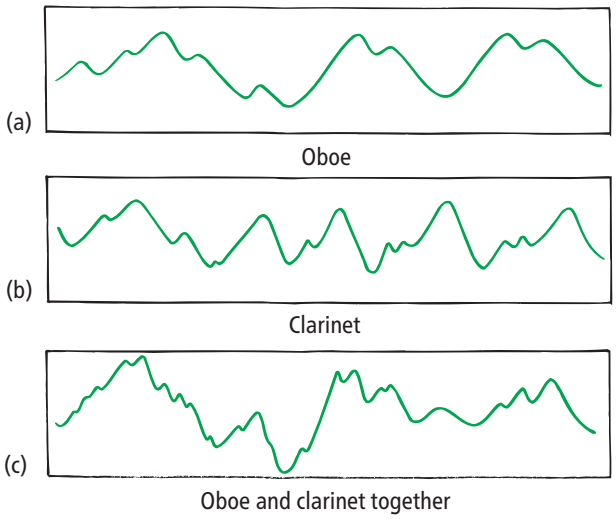


FIGURE 21.12
Waveforms of (a) an oboe, (b) a clarinet, and (c) the oboe and clarinet sounded together.

The shape of the wave in Figure 21.12c is the net result of shapes a and b superposing (interfering). If we know a and b, it is simple to create c. But it is a far different problem to discern in c the shapes of a and b that make it up. Looking only at shape c, we cannot unscramble the oboe from the clarinet. But if we listen to a recording of the music, our ears will at once distinguish what instruments are being played, what notes they are playing, and what their relative loudness is. Our ears break the overall signal into its component parts automatically.

In 1822 the French mathematician Jean Baptiste Joseph Fourier discovered a mathematical regularity to the component parts of periodic wave motion. He found that even the most complex periodic wave motion can be disassembled into simple sine waves that add together. Recall that a sine wave is the simplest of waves, having a single frequency (Figure 21.13). Fourier found that all periodic waves may be broken down into constituent sine waves of different amplitudes and frequencies. The mathematical operation for performing this is called

FIGURE 21.10
Phonograph records haven't vanished yet, with disc jockeys who produce dynamic mixes of sound.

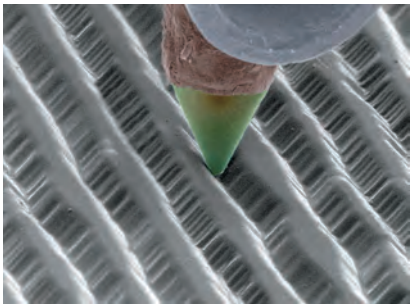


FIGURE 21.11
A microscopic view of the grooves in a phonograph record.

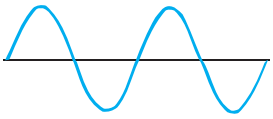


FIGURE 21.13
A sine wave.

Jean Baptiste Joseph Fourier (1768–1830)

Fourier analysis. We will not explain the mathematics here but simply point out that, by such analysis, one can find the pure sine waves that add to compose the tone of, say, a violin. When these pure tones are sounded together, as by striking a number of tuning forks or by selecting the proper keys on an electric organ, they combine to give the tone of the violin. The lowest-frequency sine wave is the fundamental and determines the pitch of the note. The higher-frequency sine waves are the partials that give the characteristic quality. Thus, the waveform of any musical sound is no more than a sum of simple sine waves.

Since the waveform of music is a multitude of various sine waves, to duplicate sound accurately by any of the means by which sound is recorded, we should process as large a range of frequencies as possible. The notes of a piano keyboard range from 27 Hz to 4200 Hz, but, to duplicate the music of a piano composition accurately, the sound system must have a range of frequencies up to 20,000 Hz. The greater the range of the frequencies of an electrical sound system, the closer the musical output approximates the original sound—hence the wide range of frequencies in the best of sound systems.

Our ear performs a sort of Fourier analysis automatically. It sorts out the complex jumble of air pulsations that reach it and transforms them into pure tones composed of sine waves. We recombine various groupings of these pure tones when we listen. What combinations of tones we have learned to focus our attention on determines what we hear when we listen to a concert. We can direct our attention to the sounds of the various instruments and discern the faintest tones from the loudest; we can delight in the intricate interplay of instruments and still detect the extraneous noises of others around us. This is a most incredible feat.

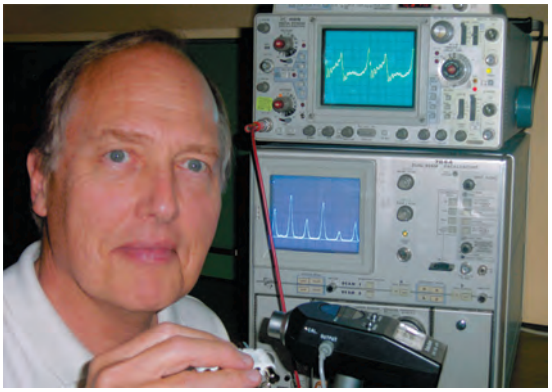


FIGURE 21.14
Norm Whitlatch shows the first five harmonics, lower oscilloscope, from a Fourier analysis of sound from a guitar pitch pipe that's displayed on the upper green oscilloscope trace.

FIGURE 21.15
Does each listener hear the same music?

Who better appreciates music: one who is knowledgeable about it or the casual listener?

CHECK POINT

1. **What does Fourier analysis say about the sound emitted when the strings of a guitar are strummed?**
2. **In a spirit of humor, were humans able to focus attention on specific notes in music before the time of Fourier?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The sound can be expressed as a sum of sine waves whose frequencies are those of the individual strings.
2. Of course! This is like asking if birds were able to fly before the time of Daniel Bernoulli. Birds could fly and humans could certainly discern musical notes throughout history. *Explanations* of these, however, are credited to both Bernoulli and Fourier.

21.7 From Analog to Digital

When you hear someone say how exciting it must have been to live in an age where we went from gas lights to electricity or from horse and buggy to automobiles, you can tell them we are living in a very exciting time also; maybe even more so. We are living in the age, when we are changing from analog storage and

transmission of information to digital. Magnetic tapes and records are analog, and except for collectors, are already obsolete.

The phonograph players of old utilized a stylus that vibrated in the squiggly groove of a disc more than twice the diameter of CDs and DVDs. The output of a phonograph record was a signal of the kind shown in Figure 21.12. This type of continuous waveform is called an *analog* signal. The analog signal can be changed to a *digital* signal by measuring the numerical value of its amplitude many times per second (Figure 21.16). This numerical value is expressed in the number system that is convenient for computers, called *binary*. In the binary system, any number can be expressed as a succession of 1s and 0s; for example, the number 1 is 1, 2 is 10, 3 is 11, 4 is 100, 5 is 101, 17 is 10001, and so forth. So the shape of the analog waveform is represented by a series of "on" and "off" pulses that corresponds to a series of 1s and 0s in binary code.

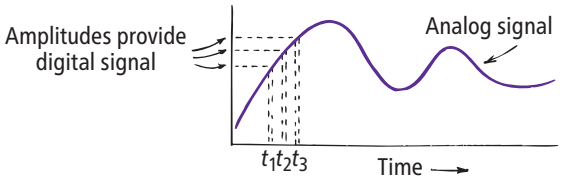


FIGURE 21.16
The amplitude of the analog waveform is measured at successive split seconds to provide digital information that is recorded in binary form on the reflective surface of the CD.

Everything you see or hear on a digital device—numbers, words, pictures, and sounds—has been encoded in the binary system. All this information in today's digital spreads by the gigabyte and terabyte over the Internet and the airwaves.

Chapter 21 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Pitch The "highness" or "lowness" of a tone, as on a musical scale, which is principally governed by frequency. A high-frequency vibrating source produces a sound of high pitch; a low-frequency vibrating source produces a sound of low pitch.

Intensity The power per square meter carried by a sound wave, often measured in decibels.

Loudness The physiological sensation directly related to sound intensity or volume.

Quality The characteristic tone of a musical instrument or voice, which is governed by the number and relative intensities of partial tones.

Partial tone A single-frequency component sound wave of a complex tone. When the frequency of a partial tone is an integer multiple of the lowest frequency, it is referred to as a *harmonic*.

Fundamental frequency The lowest frequency of vibration, or first harmonic, in a musical tone.

Harmonic A partial tone whose frequency is an integer multiple of the fundamental frequency. The second harmonic has twice the frequency of the fundamental, the third harmonic three times the frequency, and so on in sequence.

Fourier analysis A mathematical method that disassembles any periodic waveform into a combination of simple sine waves.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

21.1 Noise and Music

1. What feature of sound distinguishes between noise and music?
2. What are the three principal characteristics of musical tones?

21.2 Pitch

3. What determines the pitch of sound?
4. Why can humans not hear the sounds made by bats?
5. How does the highest pitch one can hear vary with age?

21.3 Sound Intensity and Loudness

6. How does the intensity of sound relate to amplitude?
7. How does loudness relate to the unit decibel?
8. How many decibels corresponds to the lowest intensity sound we can hear?
9. Is the sound of 30 dB 30 times greater than the threshold of hearing, or 10^3 (a thousand) times greater?
10. Which is subjective: sound intensity or loudness?

21.4 Quality

11. How does the fundamental frequency of a note compare with its pitch?
12. The fundamental frequency of a note is 200 Hz. What is the frequency of the second harmonic? The third harmonic?
13. What determines the musical quality of a note?
14. Why do the same notes plucked on a banjo and on a guitar have distinctly different sounds?

21.5 Musical Instruments

15. What happens when a flutist closes a few air-channels of a flute while playing it?
16. Why do orchestras generally have a greater number of stringed instruments than wind instruments?

21.6 Fourier Analysis

17. What did Fourier discover about complex periodic wave patterns?
18. A high-fidelity sound system may have a frequency range that extends up to or beyond 20,000 hertz. What is the purpose of this extended range?

21.7 From Analog to Digital

19. How was the sound signal captured on phonograph records of the twentieth century?
20. Does the binary system lend itself to analog or to digital?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

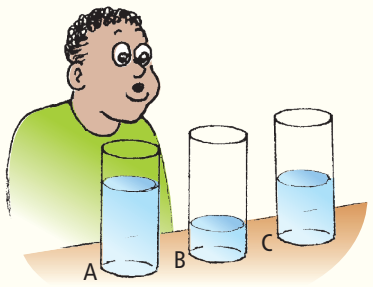
21. Count the octaves of your voice. Make the deepest tone comfortable. Then make the second octave of that note. Then the third. Can you make a fourth?
22. Find a clock that ticks. Then test to see which ear has the better hearing by covering one ear and finding how far away your open ear can hear the ticking of a clock; repeat for the other ear. Notice also how the sensitivity of your hearing improves when you cup your ears with your hands.
23. Make the lowest-pitched sound you are capable of; then keep doubling the pitch to see how many octaves your voice can span. If you are a singer, what is your range?
24. While pouring water into a drinking glass, repeatedly tap the glass with a spoon. As the tapped glass is being filled, note the difference in the pitch of the sound. Does it increase or decrease?
25. Download a decibel meter app on your smart phone. As you go about your day and hear a variety of sounds use the app to record the decibel level of each sound. Make a list of the levels and compare it to the levels found in Table 21.1. Next have one person clap and record the decibel level, then have two people clap. Does the decibel reading double? Write a short paragraph on what you learned using this app.

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

26. Bat echolocation ranges in frequency from 14,000 Hz to 100,000 Hz, mostly beyond the audible range of the human ear. Calculate the wavelength range of sound in air at this frequency range.
27. A piano playing a musical C note oscillates at around 262 Hz. What is the period of this specific note?
28. A particular mobile phone operates in a frequency band of 698-806 MHz. Calculate the range of wavelengths within this band.
29. You are listening to music through a speaker. How does the intensity change if the sound level is increased by 20 dB?
30. Sound wave A has an intensity that is 1000 times that of sound wave B. How does sound wave A compare to sound wave B in terms of sound level?
31. Sound wave A has an intensity that is less than that of sound wave B by a factor of 1/10. What is the intensity of sound wave A if the sound level of sound wave B is 30 dB?
32. Two musical notes are an octave apart. If the frequency of one musical note is 260 Hz, what could be the possible frequency of the other note?
33. On a keyboard, you strike middle C, whose frequency is 256 Hz.
    (a) What is the period of one vibration of this tone?
    (b) As the sound leaves the instrument at a speed of 340 m/s, what is its wavelength in air?

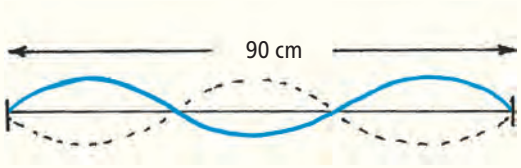
THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

34. Consider four musical notes produced by a keyboard: A3 (220 Hz), B5 (989 Hz), C5 (523 Hz), and D4 (294 Hz). Rank them from lowest to highest for:
    (a) frequency,
    (b) pitch,
    (c) period, and
    (d) wavelength.
35. You blow across the mouths of identical bottles A, B, and C, each containing a different amount of water as shown. From highest to lowest, rank the pitch of sound for each.

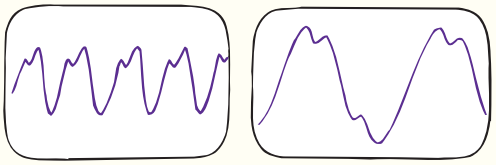


THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

36. As the frequency of sound lowers, what happens to the pitch?
37. Your friend says that frequency is a quantitative measure of pitch. Do you agree or disagree?
38. If sound becomes louder, which wave characteristic is likely increasing—frequency, wavelength, amplitude, or speed?
39. Explain how you can lower the pitch of a note on a guitar by altering the string's (a) length, (b) tension, or (c) thickness or mass.
40. Does the pitch of a note depend on sound frequency, loudness, quality, or on all of these?
41. When a guitar string is struck, a standing wave is produced that causes the sounding board to oscillate with a large sustained amplitude, pushing back and forth against the surrounding air to generate sound. How does the frequency of the resulting sound compare with the frequency of the standing wave in the string?
42. The strings on a harp are of different lengths and produce different notes. How are different notes produced on a guitar, where all strings have the same length?
43. If a vibrating string is made shorter (as by holding a finger on it), how does this affect the frequency of vibration and pitch?
44. A nylon guitar string vibrates in a standing-wave pattern, as shown below. What is the wavelength of the wave?



45. Why do tuning forks with long tines vibrate at a lower frequency than short-tined forks? (*Hint:* This question could have been asked back in Chapter 8.)
46. Why is the thickness greater for the bass strings of a guitar than for the treble strings?
47. Will the thicker or thinner of two guitar strings of the same tension and length vibrate at the higher frequency?
48. Why does a vibrating guitar string not sound as loud when it is mounted on a work bench as it does when mounted on the guitar?
49. Would a plucked guitar string vibrate for a longer time or a shorter time if the instrument had no sounding board? Why?
50. Why do the same notes on a trumpet and on a saxophone sound different when both are played with the same pitch and loudness?
51. The amplitude of a transverse wave in a stretched string is the maximum displacement of the string from its equilibrium position. What does the amplitude of a longitudinal sound wave in air correspond to?
52. Which of the two musical notes displayed one at a time on an oscilloscope screen has the higher pitch?



53. In the oscilloscopes shown above, which screen displays the louder sound (assuming detection by equivalent microphones)?
54. A loudspeaker produces a musical sound by means of the oscillation of a diaphragm. Does the loudness of sound produced depend on the frequency of oscillation, the amplitude of oscillation, the kinetic energy of oscillation, or all of these?
55. Which is a more objective measurement: sound intensity or loudness? Defend your answer.
56. One person has a threshold of hearing of 5 dB, and another person has threshold of 10 dB. Which person has the more acute hearing?
57. How is an electronic organ able to imitate the sounds of various musical instruments?
58. After inhaling helium gas, a person talks with a high-pitched voice. One of the reasons for this is the higher speed of sound in helium than in air. Why does sound travel faster in helium?
59. Why does your voice sound fuller in the shower?

60. The frequency range for a pre-cellular telephone is between 500 Hz and 4000 Hz. Why did this telephone not do a very good job of transmitting music?
61. How many octaves does normal human hearing span? How many octaves are on a common piano keyboard? (If you're not sure, look and see.)
62. The note middle C on a piano has a fundamental frequency of 262 Hz. What is the frequency of the second harmonic of this note?
63. If the fundamental frequency of a guitar string is 220 Hz, what is the frequency of the second harmonic? Of the third harmonic?
64. If the fundamental frequency of a violin string is 440 Hz, what is the frequency of the second harmonic? Of the third harmonic?
65. How many nodes, not including the end points, are in a standing wave three wavelengths long? How many nodes are in a standing wave four wavelengths long?
66. How can you tune the note A_3 on a piano to its proper frequency of 220 Hz with the aid of a tuning fork whose frequency is 440 Hz?
67. The range of human hearing extends from approximately 20 Hz to 20,000 Hz. What is the wavelengths of a 20 Hz wave and how does it compare with distances along a football field? Find the same for the 20,000 Hz wave. Assume the speed of sound in air is 340 m/s.
68. Make up a multiple-choice question that distinguishes between any of the terms listed in the Summary of Terms.

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

69. Because most of us perceive sound to be about twice as loud with a difference of 10 dB, how much louder is a 60-dB air conditioner than a 50-dB refrigerator?
70. The loudness of a radio is 40 dB. How loud would ten of these radios be?
71. Why should guitars be played offstage before they are brought onstage for a concert? (*Hint*: Think thermally.)
72. A guitar and a flute are in tune with each other. Explain how a change in temperature could alter this situation.
73. Your classmate says that a harmonic series of frequencies includes the fundamental frequency and integral multiples of the fundamental frequency. Do you agree or disagree?
74. If you very lightly touch a guitar string at its midpoint, you can hear a tone that is one octave above the fundamental for that string. (An octave is a factor of two in frequency.) Explain.
75. If a guitar string vibrates in two segments, where can a tiny piece of folded paper be supported without flying off? How many pieces of folded paper could, similarly, be supported if the waveform were of three segments?
76. A trumpet has keys and valves that permit the trumpeter to change the length of the vibrating air column and the position of the nodes. A bugle has no such keys and valves, yet it can sound various notes. How do you think the bugler achieves different notes?
77. At an outdoor concert, the pitch of musical tones is *not* affected on a windy day. Explain.
78. The human ear is sometimes called a Fourier analyzer. What does this mean, and why is it an appropriate description?
79. If you want to raise the pitch of a certain guitar string, why should you tighten the string and not loosen it? Briefly discuss your answer.
80. Tom Senior makes music by setting small columns of air into vibration by blowing across the ends of drinking straws of various lengths. Which straws, the short ones or the long ones, produce a lower pitch? Discuss why you'd expect much the same physics for the larger tubes behind Tom.

81. Discuss why it is likely that you will have an appreciably greater hearing loss in your later years than your grandparents experienced. That is, without hearing aids.

CHAPTER TWENTY ONE Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. Musical tones are characterized by
   (a) pitch.
   (b) loudness.
   (c) quality.
   (d) All of the above
2. Each note on a piano keyboard has its own
   (a) pitch.
   (b) loudness.
   (c) wavelength.
   (d) amplitude.
3. Double the frequency of a musical note and you halve its
   (a) wavelength.
   (b) speed.
   (c) amplitude.
   (d) All of the above
4. Which of these relate most to the loudness of sound?
   (a) wavelength.
   (b) frequency.
   (c) amplitude.
   (d) All of the above
5. A decibel is a measure of a sound's
   (a) frequency.
   (b) wavelength.
   (c) speed.
   (d) loudness.
6. Which of these relates most to the pitch of a musical note?
   (a) The fundamental frequency.
   (b) Its harmonics.
   (c) Its overtones.
   (d) All of the above.
7. The strings in musical instruments that have greater mass tend to produce notes of
   (a) higher frequency.
   (b) lower frequency.
   (c) the same frequency.
   (d) None of the above
8. If you played music under water the wavelength of middle C would be
   (a) lengthened.
   (b) shortened.
   (c) unaffected.
   (d) None of the above
9. The fundamental frequency of a violin string is 440 hertz. The frequency of its second harmonic is
   (a) 220 hertz.
   (b) 440 hertz.
   (c) 880 hertz.
   (d) None of the above
10. Fourier analysis is something accomplished
    (a) with all musical instruments.
    (b) automatically by humans.
    (c) Both of these
    (d) Neither of these

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (d): By definition, musical tones are characterized by their pitch—by their frequency of vibration. **2. (a):** By definition, a musical note is denoted by its frequency of vibration, each with its own pitch. **3. (a):** Each note of sound has the same speed. If its frequency is doubled, then to retain the same speed its wavelength is halved. By the equation for speed, $v = f\lambda = 2f(\lambda) = f(2\lambda)$; either way the speed remains the same. **4. (c):** By definition, loudness depends on amplitude—not wavelength nor frequency. **5. (d):** By definition, a decibel is a measure of a sound's loudness—not speed, wavelength, nor frequency. **6. (a):** Most musical sounds are a superposition of many partial tones. The lowest frequency of these tones, the fundamental frequency, determines the pitch of the note. Harmonics and overtones contribute to the quality of a tone, but not to its pitch. **7. (b):** Greater mass means greater inertia, which is seen as greater reluctance to vibrate. Hence more massive strings vibrate at lower frequencies. **8. (a):** Sound travels faster in water than in air. Although the frequency of a note under water does not change, its wavelengths are lengthened. This is evident with the equation for wavelength, $\lambda = v/f$. For a faster v of the same frequency f, λ must be longer. **9. (c):** The second harmonic of a note has twice the frequency of the fundamental. Twice 440 Hz is 880 Hz. **10. (c):** Fourier analysis is accomplished not only with all musical instruments, but also occurs in our brain. How fortunate, for we are able to discern different notes automatically in hearing. So both of these (c), is the answer.

This page is intentionally left blank

PART FIVE

Electricity and Magnetism

I've learned that a gravitational field surrounds all things with mass. Now I learn that an electric field surrounds all things with electric charge. I'm amazed to feel with my hands the aura of the electric field about this charged dome. Electric fields in wires push electrons to produce electric current, which is surrounded by magnetic fields. Electric and magnetic fields link to become electromagnetic waves, a tiny bit of which is visible light. All this makes up the foundation of today's technological world—worthy of extra study.

CHAPTER TWENTY TWO

22 Electrostatics

22.1 **Electric Forces**

22.2 **Electric Charges**

22.3 **Conservation of Charge**

22.4 **Coulomb's Law**

22.5 **Conductors and Insulators**
- Semiconductors
- Transistors
- Superconductors

22.6 **Charging**
- Charging by Friction and Contact
- Charging by Induction

22.7 **Charge Polarization**

22.8 **Electric Field**
- Electric Shielding

22.9 **Electric Potential**
- Electric Energy Storage
- Van de Graaff Generator

1 Jim Stith, former president of the American Association of Physics Teachers, demonstrates a Wimshurst generator that produces miniature lighting strikes. **2** Elan Lavie electrifies his class with this shocking demonstration. **3** Zeynep Tuğba Kahyaoğlu does the same with students at Bilkent Erzurum Laboratory School, Turkey. **4** The gravitational potential difference between Kirby Perchbacher's water tanks is akin to the electric potential difference in electric circuits.

It's reasonable to say that if Benjamin Franklin had not been born, the American Revolution would have turned out differently. This is because Franklin, in addition to his contributions to the Declaration of Independence, influenced the French to position a fleet of warships near the American coast to prevent the British from reinforcing General Cornwallis, whom George Washington defeated in a defining battle of the war. Franklin's clout in Europe stemmed from the high level of respect he earned as America's leading diplomat and scientist. Wherever he went in France, admiring crowds formed.

Franklin was a man for all seasons. His accomplishments as printer, publisher, balladeer, inventor, philosopher, politician, soldier, firefighter, ambassador, cartoonist, and antislavery agitator were all parts of his commitment to public service. A very important part of his legacy has to do with his scientific accomplishments.

Although he is popularly remembered for his invention of the lightning rod, he also invented the glass harmonica, the Franklin stove, bifocal eyeglasses, and the flexible urinary catheter. He never patented his inventions, stating in his autobiography: "as we enjoy great advantages from the inventions of others, we should be glad of an opportunity to serve others by any invention of ours; and this we should do freely and generously." He is especially remembered for his investigations of electricity.

At a time when electricity was thought of as two types of fluid, called vitreous and resinous, Franklin proposed that electric current was electrical fluid under different pressures. He was the first to label these pressures as positive and negative, and he was the first to discover the principle of conservation of charge. Franklin's invention of the lightning rod began with a publication in 1750. He proposed an experiment to prove that lightning is electricity by flying a kite in a storm, at a stage before it became a lightning storm. Legend has it that with a kite Franklin successfully extracted sparks from a cloud. What he did not do was fly his kite in the midst of a lightning storm, which others unfortunately did and were electrocuted. Instead, the collection of electric charge on Franklin's kite string proved to him that lightning was electrical.

His lightning rod came about by his experiments showing that metals with a sharp point could collect or discharge electricity silently, preventing charge buildup on buildings when charged clouds were overhead. On the roof of his home he installed rods of iron, with sharp tips, with a wire running from the foot of the rods to the ground below. His hypothesis was that the rods would draw "electrical fire" silently from the clouds before it struck as lightning. Satisfied that lightning was prevented, Franklin encouraged the installation of lightning rods on the Academy of Philadelphia (later the University of Pennsylvania) and the Pennsylvania State House (later Independence Hall) in 1752.

In recognition of his achievements with electricity, Franklin received the British Royal Society's Copley Medal in 1753, and in 1756 he became one of the few Americans to be elected a Fellow of the Royal Society. With this reputation he was in a position to affect the outcome of the forthcoming War of Independence in America.

Electricity is the general term given to all things electric, just as gravity is the general term given to all gravitational phenomena. Electricity is in the lightning from the sky, it's in the spark when we strike a match, and it's what holds atoms together to form molecules. The control of electricity is evident in technological devices of many kinds, from lamps to smartphones. In this chapter, we will investigate electricity at rest, static electricity, or simply **electrostatics.**

Electrostatics involves electric charges, the forces between them, the aura that surrounds them, and their behavior in materials. In Chapter 23, we'll investigate the motion of electric charges, or *electric currents*. We'll also study the voltages that produce currents and how they can be controlled. In Chapter 24, we'll study the relationship of electric currents to magnetism, and, in Chapter 25, we'll learn how magnetism and electricity can be controlled to operate electrical devices and how electricity and magnetism connect to become light.

fyi

An understanding of electricity requires a step-by-step approach because one concept is the foundation on which the next concept is based. So please pay extra attention in studying this material. It can be difficult, confusing, and frustrating if you're hasty, but with careful effort, it can be comprehensible and rewarding. Onward!

22.1 Electric Forces

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

What if there were a universal force that, like gravity, varies inversely as the square of the distance but is many millions of times stronger? If there were such a force and if it were attractive like gravity, the universe would be pulled together into a tight ball, with all matter pulled as close together as it could get. But suppose this force were a repelling force, with every bit of matter repelling every other bit. What then? Then the universe would blow itself apart in short order. Suppose, however, that the universe consisted of two kinds of particles—positives and negatives, say. Suppose that positives repelled positives but attracted negatives and that negatives repelled negatives but attracted positives. In other words, like kinds repel and unlike kinds attract. Suppose that there were equal numbers of each kind of particle so that this strong force were perfectly balanced! What would the universe be like? The answer is simple: It would be like the one we are living in. For there are such particles and there is such a force. We call it the *electrical force*.

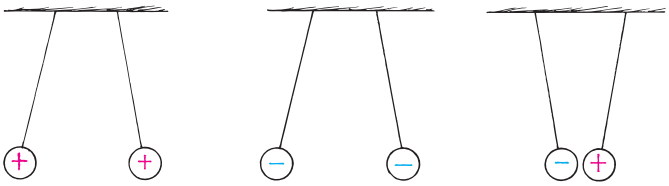


FIGURE 22.1
Like charges repel. Unlike charges attract.

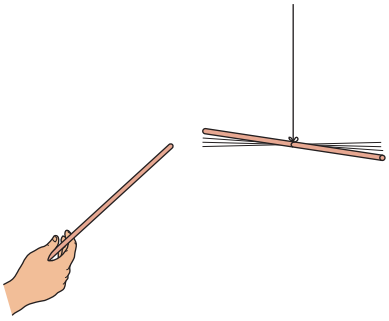


FIGURE 22.2
A plastic straw rubbed with wool is suspended by a thread. When another straw that has also been rubbed with wool is brought nearby, the two straws repel each other.

Inside every piece of matter are atoms. And what is inside every atom? Positive and negative charges held together by the enormous attraction of electrical force. By forming compact and evenly mixed clusters of positives and negatives, the huge electrical forces have balanced themselves out almost perfectly. When two or more atoms join to form a molecule, the molecule also contains balanced positives and negatives. And when trillions of molecules combine to form a speck of matter, the electrical forces balance again. Between two pieces of ordinary matter, there is scarcely any electrical attraction or repulsion at all because each piece contains equal numbers of positives and negatives. Between Earth and the Moon, for example, there is no electrical force. The much weaker gravitational force, which only attracts, remains the predominant force between these bodies.

CHECK POINT

How does the concept of force for electrical phenomena compare with the mechanical forces described in Newton's laws of motion?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

There's no difference! The concept of force is general, whether pushes or pulls are created by muscular effort, gravity, or electricity—all are measured in the same units: newtons.

22.2 Electric Charges

Which charges are called positive and which are called negative is the result of a choice made by Benjamin Franklin. It could have been the other way around.

The terms *positive* and *negative* refer to electric *charge*, the fundamental quantity that underlies all electrical phenomena. The positively charged particles in ordinary matter are protons, and the negatively charged particles are electrons. The proton is stuck in the nucleus of an atom and is not as mobile as the tinier electron that can dash around and do all sorts of useful things. Accompanying protons in the nucleus are neutral particles called neutrons. When two atoms get close together, the balance of attractive and repelling forces is imperfect because electrons whiz around within the volume of each atom. The atoms may then attract one another

and form a molecule. In fact, all the chemical bonding forces that hold atoms together to form molecules are electrical in nature. Anyone who is planning to study chemistry should first know something about electrical attraction and repulsion and, before studying electrical phenomena, should know something about atoms. Recall from Chapter 11 some important facts about atoms:

1. Every atom is composed of a positively charged *nucleus* surrounded by negatively charged electrons.
2. The electrons of all atoms are identical. Each has the same quantity of negative charge and the same mass.
3. Protons and neutrons make up the nucleus. (The common form of the hydrogen atom, which has no neutron, is the only exception.) Protons are about 1800 times more massive than electrons, but they carry an amount of positive charge equal to the negative charge of electrons. Neutrons have slightly more mass than protons and have no net charge.
4. Atoms usually have as many electrons as protons, so the atom has zero *net* charge.

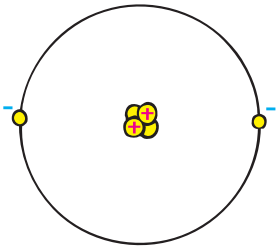


FIGURE 22.3
Model of a helium atom. The atomic nucleus is composed of two protons and two neutrons. The positively charged protons attract two negative electrons.

Why don't protons pull the oppositely charged electrons into the nucleus? You might think that electrons behave the same way as planets that orbit the Sun. But not so; this planetary explanation is invalid for electrons. When the nucleus was discovered in 1911, scientists knew that electrons couldn't orbit placidly around the nucleus in the way Earth orbits the Sun. In only about a hundred-millionth of a second, according to classical physics, the electron would spiral into the nucleus, emitting electromagnetic radiation as it did so. So a new theory was needed, the theory called quantum mechanics. In describing electron motion, we still use old terminology, *orbit* and *orbital*, although the preferred word is *shell*, which suggests that the electrons are spread out over a spherical region. Today, the explanation for the atom's stability has to do with the wave nature of electrons. An electron behaves like a wave and requires a certain amount of space related to its wavelength. When we treat quantum mechanics in Chapter 32, we'll see that atomic size is determined by the minimum amount of "elbow room" that an electron requires.

Why don't the protons in the nucleus mutually repel and fly apart? What holds the nucleus together? The answer is that, in addition to electrical forces in the nucleus, even stronger nonelectrical nuclear forces hold the protons together and overcome the electrical repulsion. In Chapter 33 we will learn about nuclear forces and how neutrons put a needed distance between the protons.

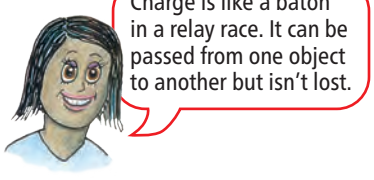
CHECK POINT

1. **Beneath the complexities of electrical phenomena, there lies a fundamental rule from which nearly all other effects stem. What is this fundamental rule?**
2. **How does the charge of an electron differ from the charge of a proton?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Like charges repel; opposite charges attract.
2. The charge of an electron is equal in magnitude, but opposite in sign, to the charge of a proton.

22.3 Conservation of Charge



A basic rule of physics is that, whenever something is charged, no electrons are created or destroyed. Electrons are simply transferred from one material to another. Charge is *conserved*. In every event, whether large scale or at the atomic

FIGURE 22.4
Electrons are transferred from the fur to the rod. The rod is then negatively charged. Is the fur charged? How much compared to the rod? Positively or negatively?

and nuclear level, the principle of **conservation of charge** has always been found to apply. No case of the creation or destruction of net electric charge has ever been found. The conservation of charge ranks with the conservation of energy and momentum as a significant fundamental principle in physics.

In a neutral atom, there are as many electrons as protons, so there is no net charge. The positive balances the negative exactly. If an electron is removed from an atom, then the atom is no longer neutral. The atom then has one more positive charge (proton) than negative charge (electron) and is said to be positively charged.[1] A charged atom is called an *ion*. A *positive ion* has a net positive charge. A *negative ion*, an atom with one or more extra electrons, is negatively charged.

So we see that an object that has unequal numbers of electrons and protons is electrically charged. If it has more electrons than protons, it is negatively charged. If it has fewer electrons than protons, it is positively charged.

Interestingly, any electrically charged object has an excess or deficiency of some whole number of electrons—meaning the charge of the object is a whole-number multiple of the charge of an electron. Electrons cannot be divided into fractions of electrons. Charge is "grainy," or made of elementary units called *quanta*. We say that charge is *quantized*, with the smallest quantum of charge being that of the electron (or proton). In all matter, no smaller units of charge have ever been observed.[2] All charged objects to date have a charge that is a whole-number multiple of the charge of a single electron or proton.

fyi

- Static electricity is a problem at gasoline pumps. Even the tiniest spark can ignite gasoline vapors and cause fires—frequently lethal. A good safety rule is to touch metal and discharge static charge from your body before you fuel.

CHECK POINT

If you scuff electrons onto your feet while you walk across a rug, are you negatively or positively charged?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

You have more electrons after you scuff your feet, so you are negatively charged (and the rug is positively charged).

ELECTRONICS TECHNOLOGY AND SPARKS

Electric charge can be dangerous. Two hundred years ago, young boys called "powder monkeys" ran barefooted below the decks of warships to bring sacks of black gunpowder to the cannons above. It was ship law that this task be done barefoot. Why? Because it was important that no static charge build up on the powder on the boys' bodies as they ran to and fro. Bare feet scuffed the decks much less than shoes and assured no charge accumulation that might produce an igniting spark and an explosion.

Static charge is a danger in many industries today—not because of explosions but because delicate electronic circuits may be destroyed by static charges. Some circuit components are sensitive enough to be "fried" by sparks of static electricity. Electronics technicians frequently wear clothing of special fabrics with ground wires between their sleeves and their socks. Some wear special wristbands that are connected to a grounded surface so that static charges will not build up—when moving a chair, for example. The smaller the electronic circuit, the more hazardous are sparks that may short-circuit the circuit elements.

[1]Each proton has a charge $+e$, equal to $+1.6 \times 10^{-19}$ coulomb. Each electron has a charge $-e$, equal to -1.6×10^{-19} coulomb. Why such different particles have the same magnitude of charge is an unanswered question in physics. The equality of the magnitudes has been tested to high accuracy.

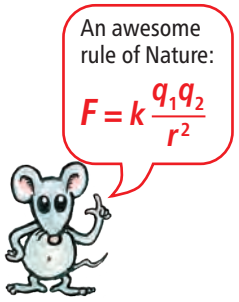
[2]Within the nucleons of the atomic nucleus, however, elementary particles called quarks carry charges 1/3 and 2/3 the magnitude of the electron's charge. Each proton and each neutron are made up of three quarks. Since quarks always exist in such combinations and have never been found separated, the whole-number-multiple rule of electron charge holds for nuclear processes as well.

22.4 Coulomb's Law

The electrical force, like the gravitational force, decreases inversely as the square of the distance between charged bodies. This relationship, discovered by Charles Coulomb in the 18th century, is called **Coulomb's law.** It states that, for two charged objects that are much smaller than the distance between them, the force between the two objects varies directly as the product of their charges and inversely as the square of the separation distance. (Review the inverse-square law back in Figure 9.5.) The force acts along a straight line from one charged object to the other. Coulomb's law can be expressed as

$$F = k\frac{q_1 q_2}{r^2}$$

where r is the radial distance between the charged particles, q_1 is the quantity of charge of one particle, q_2 is the quantity of charge of the other particle, and k is the proportionality constant.



The SI unit of electric charge is the **coulomb**, abbreviated C. It turns out that 1 C is the charge associated with 6.25 billion billion electrons. This might seem like a huge number of electrons, but it represents only the amount of charge that flows in a common 100-watt lightbulb in a little over a second.

The proportionality constant k in Coulomb's law is similar to G in Newton's law of gravitation. Instead of being a very small number like $G(6.67 \times 10^{-11})$, the electrical proportionality constant k is a very large number. It is approximately

$$9{,}000{,}000{,}000\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$$

or, in scientific notation, $k = 9.0 \times 10^9\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$. The unit $\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$ is not central to our interest here; it simply converts the right-hand side of the equation for Coulomb's law to the unit of force, the newton (N). What is important is the large magnitude of k. If, for example, a pair of like charged particles of 1 C each were 1 m apart, the force of repulsion between them would be 9 billion N.[3] That would be more than 10 times the weight of a battleship! Obviously, such amounts of net charge do not exist in our everyday environment.

Coulomb's law is like Newton's law of gravity. But, unlike gravity, electrical forces can be attractive or repulsive.

So Newton's law of gravitation for masses is similar to Coulomb's law for electrically charged bodies.[4] The most important difference between gravitational and electrical forces is that electrical forces may be either attractive or repulsive, whereas gravitational forces are only attractive. Coulomb's law underlies the bonding forces between molecules that are essential in the field of chemistry.

CHECK POINT

1. The proton that is the nucleus of the hydrogen atom attracts the electron that orbits it. Relative to this force, does the electron attract the proton with less force, with more force, or with the same amount of force?

[3]Contrast this to the gravitational force of attraction between two 1-kg masses 1 m apart: 6.67×10^{-11} N. This is an extremely small force. For the force to be 1 N, the masses at 1 m apart would have to be nearly 123,000 kg each! Gravitational forces between ordinary objects are exceedingly small, while electrical forces between ordinary objects can be exceedingly huge. We don't sense them because the positives and negatives normally balance out. Even for highly charged objects, the ratio of electrons to protons is normally less than one part in a trillion trillion.

[4]According to quantum theory, a force that varies inversely as the square of the distance involves the exchange of particles with no mass. The exchange of massless photons is responsible for the electrical force, and the exchange of massless gravitons accounts for the gravitational force. Some scientists pursue an even deeper relationship between gravity and electricity. Albert Einstein spent the latter part of his life searching with little success for a "unified field theory." More recently, the electrical force has been unified with one of the two nuclear forces, the *weak force*, which plays a role in radioactive decay.

2. **If a proton at a particular distance from a charged particle is repelled with a given force, by how much will the force decrease when the proton is three times farther away from the particle? When it is five times farther away?**
3. **What is the sign of the charge of the particle in this case?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The same amount of force, in accord with Newton's third law—basic mechanics! Recall that a force is an interaction between two things—in this case, between the proton and the electron. They pull on each other equally.
2. It decreases to 1/9 its original value; to 1/25 its original value.
3. Positive.

22.5 Conductors and Insulators

FIGURE 22.5
It is easier to establish an electric current through hundreds of kilometers of metal wire than through a few centimeters of an insulating material.

It is easy to establish an electric current in a metal because one or more of the electrons in the outer shell of its atoms are not anchored to the nuclei of particular atoms but are free to wander in the material. Such a material is called a good **conductor.** Any metal is a good conductor of electric current for the same reason it is a good heat conductor—the electrons in the outer atomic shell of its atoms are "loose." The expensive metals such as silver, gold, and platinum are among the very best conductors, don't corrode, and are commonly used in small quantities for high-value products. Copper and aluminum are commonly used in wiring electrical systems because of their good performance and lower cost.

The electrons in other materials—rubber and glass, for example—are tightly bound and belong to particular atoms. They are not free to wander about among other atoms in the material. Consequently, it isn't easy to make them flow. These materials are poor conductors of electric current for the same reason they are generally poor heat conductors. Such a material is called a good **insulator.** Glass is an extremely good insulator and is used to keep electrical wires away from the metal towers that carry them. Many plastics are also good insulators, which is why wiring in your home is covered with a layer of plastic.

All substances can be arranged in order of their ability to conduct electric charge. Those at the top of such a list would be conductors and those at the bottom would be insulators. The ends of the list are very far apart. The conductivity of a metal, for example, can be more than a million trillion times greater than the conductivity of an insulator such as glass.

fyi

- The memristor (short for *memory resistor*) utilizes a thin film of titanium oxide sandwiched between two platinum layers. It packs into chips 100 times more densely than transistors and remembers information without electric power.

CHECK POINT

What do electrical and heat conductors have in common? What do electrical and heat insulators have in common?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

Both conductors transfer energy from one place to another. Both kinds of insulators limit the transfer of energy. Both electrical and heat energy are measured in joules.

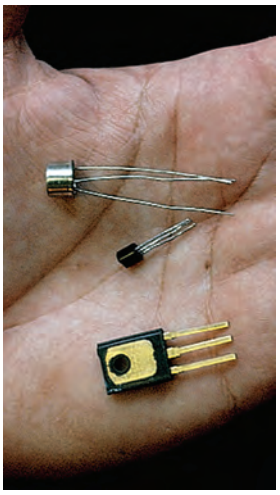
Semiconductors

Some materials, such as germanium (Ge) and silicon (Si), are neither good conductors nor good insulators. These materials fall in the middle of the range of electrical resistivity, being fair insulators in their pure crystalline form and becoming excellent conductors when even 1 atom in 10 million is replaced with an impurity that adds or removes an electron from the crystal structure in a process called *doping*. A material that can be made to behave sometimes as an insulator and sometimes as a conductor is called a **semiconductor.**

A semiconductor can conduct when light of the proper color shines on it. A pure selenium plate is normally a good insulator, and any electric charge built up on its surface will remain for extended periods in the dark. If the plate is exposed to light, however, the charge leaks away almost immediately. If a charged selenium plate is exposed to a pattern of light, such as the pattern of light and dark that makes up this page, the charge will leak away only from the areas exposed to light. If a black plastic powder were brushed across its surface, the powder would stick only to the charged areas where the plate had not been exposed to light. Now if a piece of paper with an electric charge on the back were put over the plate, the black plastic powder would be drawn to the paper to form the same pattern as, say, the one on this page. This is an overview of photocopiers.

Transistors

Thin layers of semiconducting materials sandwiched together make up *transistors*, which have replaced the bulky and balky vacuum tube. All transistors use one electrical signal to control or regulate another signal. The simplest transistor acts as an on-off *switch* to start or stop current fed to other circuit elements. Another type is an *amplifier*, in which the output signal is greater than the input signal. A series of such transistors, each amplifying the output signal of another, can produce great amplification. A smartphone typically contains billions of transistors in its integrated circuits, the keys to its many features. Transistors commonly have three terminals for connection to an external circuit (Figure 22.6). A small signal applied between a pair of its terminals can control a larger signal at another pair of terminals. This feature, applied millions and billions of times, underlies all the miracles of our electronic age. The transistor is surely one of the greatest inventions of the 20th century.



(a)

(b)

FIGURE 22.6
(a) Three transistors. (b) Many transistors in an integrated circuit.

fyi

- There are more transistors in the world than there are leaves on all the world's trees.

Superconductors

An ordinary conductor has only a small resistance to the flow of electric charge. An insulator has much greater resistance (we'll treat the topic of electrical resistance in Chapter 23). Remarkably, in certain materials at sufficiently low temperatures, electrical resistance disappears. The materials acquire zero resistance (infinite conductivity) to the flow of charge. Such a material is called a **superconductor.** Once electric current is established in a superconductor, the electrons flow indefinitely. With no electrical resistance, current passes through a superconductor without losing energy; no heat loss occurs when charges flow. Superconductivity in metals near absolute zero was discovered in 1911. In 1987, superconductivity at a "high" temperature (above 100 K) was discovered in a nonmetallic compound. Superconductivity has since progressed, with applications that include low-loss power-line transmission and high-speed, magnetically levitated vehicles intended to replace traditional rail trains.

CHECK POINT

Are semiconductors similar to superconductors?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

No, quite different. The defining property of a semiconductor is that it can be made to behave as a conductor or an insulator. The defining property of a superconductor is that it has *zero* resistance to the flow of charge. Semiconductors and superconductors have almost nothing in common.

22.6 Charging

We charge things by transferring electrons from one place to another. We can do this by physical *contact*, as occurs when substances are rubbed together or simply touched. Or we can redistribute the charge on an object simply by putting a charged object near it—this is called *induction*.

Charging by Friction and Contact

We are all familiar with the electrical effects produced by friction. We can stroke a cat's fur and hear the crackle of sparks that are produced, or comb our clean, dry hair in front of a mirror in a dark room and see as well as hear the sparks. We can scuff our shoes across a rug and feel a tingle as charge flows when we touch a doorknob. Charge is transferred in clothes in a clothes dryer. In all these cases, electrons are transferred by friction when one material rubs against another.

Electrons can transfer from one material to another through simple touching. For example, when a negatively charged rod is placed in contact with a neutral object, some electrons will move to the neutral object. This method of charging is simply called **charging by contact.** If the object is a good conductor, electrons will spread to all parts of its surface because the transferred electrons repel one another. If it is a poor conductor, it may be necessary to touch the rod at several places on the object in order to get a more or less uniform distribution of charge.

Charging by Induction

If you bring a charged object *near* a conducting surface, electrons are made to move in the surface material, even without physical contact. Consider the two insulated metal spheres, A and B, in Figure 22.7. In part (a), the spheres touch each other, so in effect they form a single uncharged conductor. In part (b), when a negatively charged rod is brought near A, electrons in the metal, being free to move, are repelled as far as possible until their mutual repulsion is strong enough to balance the influence of the rod. The charge is redistributed. In parts (c) and

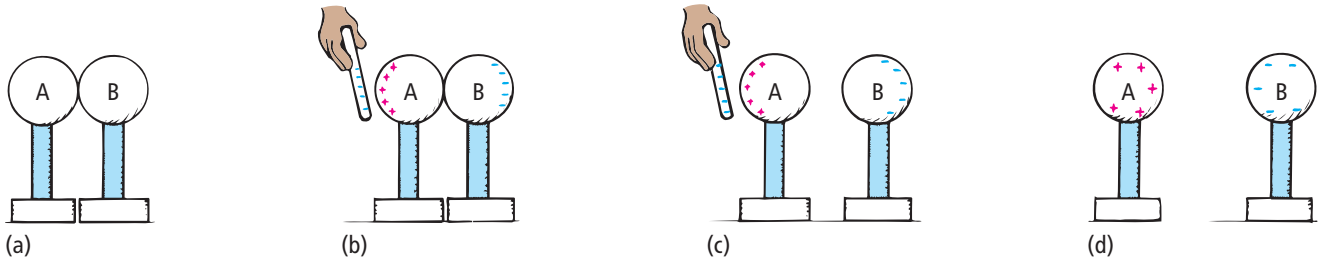


FIGURE 22.7
Charging by induction.

(d), if the spheres are separated while the rod is still present, each will be equally and oppositely charged. This is **charging by induction.** The charged rod has never touched the spheres, and the rod retains the same charge it had initially.

We can similarly charge a single sphere by induction if we touch it when different parts of it are differently charged. Consider the metal sphere that hangs from a nonconducting string as shown in Figure 22.8. When we touch the metal surface with a finger, we are providing a path for charge to flow to or from a very large reservoir for electric charge—the ground. We say that we are *grounding* the sphere, a process that may leave it with a net charge. We will return to this idea of grounding in Chapter 23 when we discuss electric currents.

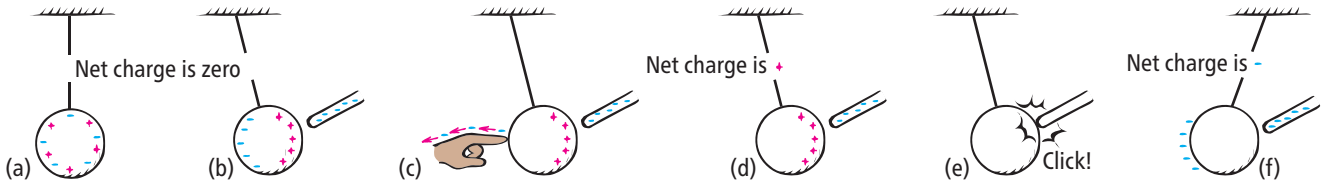


FIGURE 22.8
Stages of charge induction by grounding. (a) The net charge on the metal sphere is zero. (b) Charge redistribution is induced on the sphere by the presence of the charged rod. The net charge on the sphere is still zero. (c) Touching the negative side of the sphere removes electrons by contact. (d) This leaves the sphere positively charged. (e) The sphere is more strongly attracted to the negative rod, and, when it touches, charging by contact occurs. (f) The negative sphere is repelled by the still somewhat negatively charged rod.

Charging by induction occurs during thunderstorms. The negatively charged bottoms of clouds induce a positive charge on the surface of the ground below. As mentioned at the beginning of this chapter, Benjamin Franklin was the first to demonstrate this when his famous kite-flying experiment proved that lightning is an electrical phenomenon.[5] Lightning is an electrical discharge between a cloud and the oppositely charged ground or between oppositely charged parts of clouds.

Franklin also found that charge flows readily to or from sharp metal points, and he fashioned the first lightning rod. The primary purpose of the lightning rod is to prevent a fire caused by lightning. If, for any reason, sufficient charge does not leak from the air to the rod and lightning strikes anyway, it may be attracted to the rod and take a direct path to the ground, thereby sparing the building.

FIGURE 22.9
The negative charge at the bottom of the cloud induces a positive charge at the surface of the ground below.

[5]Benjamin Franklin invented many things that improved the quality of life. He was certainly a very busy man! Only a task as important as helping to form the United States' system of government prevented him from devoting even more of his time to his favorite activity—the scientific investigation of nature.

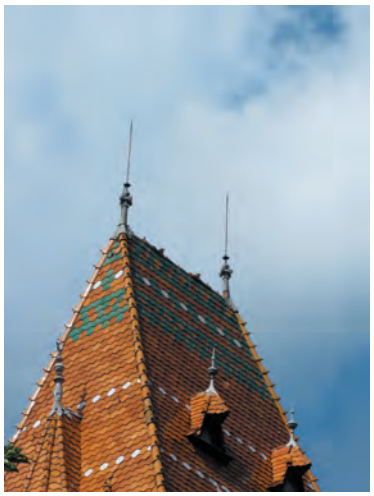


FIGURE 22.10
Lightning rods are connected by heavy-duty wires so that very large flows of electric charge can be conducted to the ground if lightning strikes. Most often, charge leaks off the rod's pointed tips to prevent the occurrence of lightning.

CHECK POINT

1. **Would the charges induced on spheres A and B of Figure 22.7 necessarily be exactly equal and opposite?**
2. **Why does the negative rod in Figure 22.7 have the same charge both before and after the spheres are charged, but not when charging takes place, as in Figure 22.8?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Yes, because each positive charge on sphere A results from an electron taken from A and moved to B. This is like removing bricks from the surface of a brick road and placing them all on the sidewalk. The number of bricks on the sidewalk exactly matches the number of holes in the road. Likewise, the number of extra electrons on B will exactly match the number of "holes" (positive charges) left in A. The positive charge is the result of an absent electron.
2. In the charging process of Figure 22.7, no contact was made between the negative rod and either of the spheres. In Figure 22.8, however, the rod touched the positively charged sphere. A transfer of charge by contact reduced the negative charge on the rod.

fyi

- Lightning occurs mainly in warm climates. As warm water vapor rises in air, it brushes against ice crystals high in the air above, producing a charge similar to what occurs when you scuff your feet on a carpet. The ice crystals gain a slight positive charge, and the updraft carries them to the top of the cloud. So the top of a cloud is usually positively charged, with the bottom negatively charged. Lightning is the bolt that arcs between these regions and between the cloud and the ground below.

22.7 Charge Polarization

Charging by induction is not restricted to conductors. When a charged rod is brought near an insulator, there are no free electrons that can migrate throughout the insulating material. Instead, there is a rearrangement of charges within the atoms and molecules themselves (Figure 22.11). Although atoms don't move from their relatively fixed positions, their "centers of charge" are moved. One side of the atom or molecule is induced into becoming more negative (or positive) than the opposite side. The atom or molecule is said to be **electrically polarized.** If the charged rod is negative, say, then the positive part of the atom or molecule is tugged in a direction toward the rod, and the negative side of the atom or molecule is pushed in a direction away from the rod. The positive and negative parts of the atoms and molecules become aligned. They are electrically polarized.

Electrical polarization accounts for the "stickiness" of water molecules. Opposite charges between water molecules attract, which is why water in the atmosphere condenses at a much higher temperature than gases of nonpolarized molecules such as nitrogen and carbon dioxide—even though both are heavier and slower moving than H_2O.

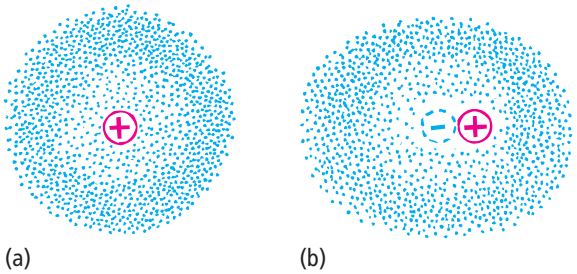


FIGURE 22.11
An electron buzzing around the atomic nucleus produces an electron cloud. (a) The center of the negative cloud normally coincides with the center of the positive nucleus in an atom. (b) When an external negative charge is brought nearby to the right, as on a charged balloon, the electron cloud is distorted so that the centers of negative and positive charge no longer coincide. The atom is now electrically polarized.

MICROWAVE OVEN

Imagine an enclosure with ping-pong balls among a few batons, all at rest. Now imagine the batons suddenly flipping to and fro like semirotating propellers, striking neighboring ping-pong balls. The balls are energized, moving in all directions. A microwave oven operates similarly. The batons are water molecules (or other polar molecules) made to flip to and fro in rhythm with the oscillating microwaves in the enclosure. The ping pong balls are nonpolar molecules that make up the bulk of the food being cooked.

Each H_2O molecule is an electric dipole that aligns with an electric field, like a compass needle aligns with a magnetic field. When the electric field is made to oscillate, the H_2O molecules oscillate also. The H_2O molecules move quite energetically when the oscillation frequency matches their natural frequency—at resonance. Food is cooked by a sort of "kinetic friction" as flip-flopping H_2O molecules (or other polar molecules) impart thermal motion to surrounding molecules. The metal enclosure reflects microwaves to and fro throughout the oven for rapid cooking.

Dry paper, foam plates, or other materials recommended for use in microwave ovens contain no water or any other polar molecules, so microwaves pass through them with no effect. Likewise for ice, in which the H_2O molecules are locked in position and can't rotate to and fro. Metallic materials reflect microwaves, which is why metal pans do not work well in a microwave oven.

A note of caution is due when boiling water in a microwave oven. Water can sometimes heat faster than bubbles can form, and the water then heats beyond its boiling point—it becomes superheated. If the water is bumped or jarred just enough to cause the bubbles to form rapidly, they'll violently expel the hot water from its container. More than one person has had boiling water blast into his or her face.

We can understand why electrically neutral bits of paper are attracted to a charged object—a comb passed through your hair, for example. When the charged comb is brought nearby, molecules in the paper are polarized (Figure 22.13). The sign of charge closest to the comb is opposite to the comb's charge. Charges of the same sign are slightly more distant. Closeness wins (inverse-square law), and the bits of paper experience a net attraction. Sometimes they will cling to the comb and then suddenly fly off. This repulsion occurs because the paper bits acquire the same sign of charge as the charged comb when they come in contact. Rub an inflated balloon on your hair, and it becomes charged. Place the balloon against the wall, and it sticks because the charge on the balloon induces an opposite surface charge on the wall. Again, closeness wins because the charge on the balloon is slightly closer to the opposite induced charge than to the charge of the same sign (Figure 22.14).

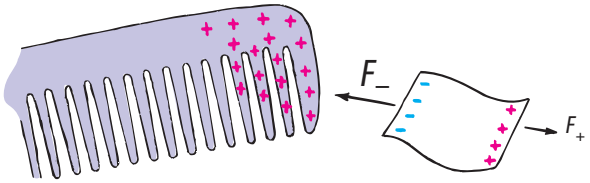


FIGURE 22.13
A charged comb attracts an uncharged piece of paper because the force of attraction for the closer charge is greater than the force of repulsion for the farther charge.

Many molecules—H_2O, for example—are electrically polarized in their normal states. The distribution of electric charge is not perfectly even. There is a little more negative charge on one side of the molecule than on the other (Figure 22.15). Such molecules are said to be *electric dipoles*.

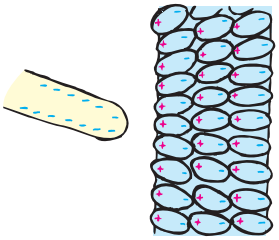


FIGURE 22.12
All the atoms or molecules near the surface become electrically polarized. Surface charges of equal magnitude and opposite sign are induced on opposite surfaces of the material.

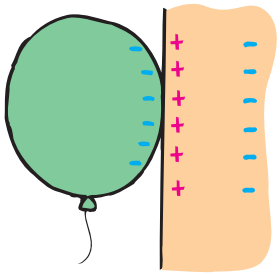


FIGURE 22.14
The negatively charged balloon polarizes atoms in the wooden wall and creates a positively charged surface, so the balloon sticks to the wall.

CHECK POINT

1. **A negatively charged rod is brought close to some small pieces of neutral paper. The positive sides of the molecules in the paper are attracted to the rod and the negative sides of the molecules are repelled. Why don't these attractive and repulsive forces cancel out?**
2. **In a humorous vein, if you rub a balloon on your hair and put your head to the wall, will it stick to the wall like the balloon would?**

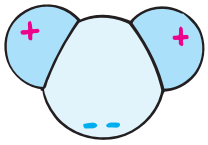


FIGURE 22.15
An H_2O molecule is an electric dipole.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The positive sides are simply closer to the rod. They therefore experience a greater electrical force than the farther-away negative sides. Hence we say that closeness wins. Can you see that a positive rod would still produce attraction?
2. It would, if you were an airhead—that is, if the mass of your head were about that of the balloon, so that the force produced would be evident.

A candy bar in Percy Spencer's pocket mysteriously melted while he was experimenting with electrical oscillations in a new vacuum tube in 1946. Intrigued, he placed some popcorn kernels near the tube and saw them pop. The birth of the microwave oven soon followed.

22.8 Electric Field

Electrical forces, like gravitational forces, act between things that are not in contact with each other. For both electricity and gravity, a *force field* exists that influences charged and massive bodies, respectively. Recall, from Chapter 9, that the properties of the space surrounding any massive body are altered such that another massive body introduced to this region will experience a force. The force is gravitational, and the altered space surrounding a massive body is its *gravitational field*. We can think of any other massive body as interacting with the field and not directly with the massive body that produces it. For example, when an apple falls from a tree, we say it is interacting with Earth, but we can also think of the apple as interacting with the gravitational field of Earth. The field plays an intermediate role in the force between bodies. It is common to think of distant rockets and the like as interacting with gravitational fields rather than with the masses of Earth and other bodies responsible for the fields. Just as the space around a planet (and around every other massive body) is filled with a gravitational field, the space around every electrically charged body is filled with an **electric field**—an energetic aura that extends through space.

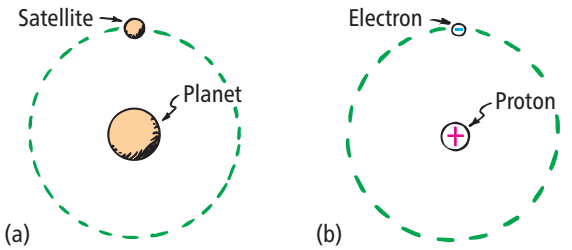


FIGURE 22.16
(a) A gravitational force holds the satellite in orbit about the planet, and (b) an electrical force holds the electron in orbit about the proton. In both cases, there is no contact between the bodies. We say that the orbiting bodies interact with the *force fields* of the planet and the proton. Both are everywhere in contact with these fields. Thus, the force that one electrically charged body exerts on another can be described as the interaction between one body and the field set up by the other.

An electric field has both magnitude (strength) and direction. The magnitude of the field at any point is simply the force per unit of charge. If a body with charge q experiences a force F at some point in space, then the electric field E at that point is

$$E = \frac{F}{q}$$

Sharks and related species of fish are equipped with specialized receptors in their snouts that sense extremely weak electric fields generated by other creatures in seawater.

The electric field is depicted with vector arrows in Figure 22.17a. The direction of the field is shown by the vectors and is defined to be the direction in which a small positive test charge at rest would be pushed.[6] The direction of the force and that of the field at any point are the same. In the figure, we see that all the vectors therefore point to the center of the negatively charged ball. If the ball were positively charged, the vectors would point away from its center because a positive test charge in the vicinity would be repelled.

[6]The test charge is small so that it does not appreciably influence the sources of the field being measured. Recall, from our study of heat, the similar need for a thermometer of small mass when measuring the temperature of bodies of larger mass.

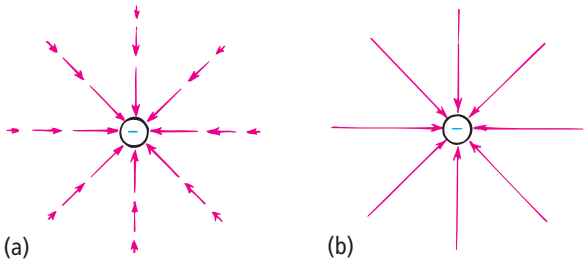


FIGURE 22.17
Electric-field representations about a negative charge: (a) a vector representation and (b) a lines-of-force representation.

CHECK POINT

We have learned that the gravitational fields of the Sun and Earth extend to infinity. Can we say the same about the electric fields that surround electrons and protons?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes, gravitational and electric fields are both auras of energy, one depending on mass and the other on charge, both with strengths that diminish via the inverse-square law.

A more useful way to describe an electric field is with lines of force, as shown in Figure 22.17b. The lines of force shown in the figure represent a small number of the infinitely many possible lines that indicate the direction of the field. The figure is a two-dimensional representation of three dimensions. Where the lines are farther apart, the field is weaker. For an isolated charge, the lines extend to infinity; for two or more opposite charges, we represent the lines as emanating from a positive charge and terminating on a negative charge. Some electric-field configurations are shown in Figure 22.18, and photographs of field patterns are shown in Figure 22.19. The photographs show bits of thread that are suspended in an oil bath surrounding charged conductors. The ends of the thread bits are charged by induction and tend to line up end-to-end with the field lines. In Chapter 24 we'll see how bits of iron similarly align with magnetic fields.

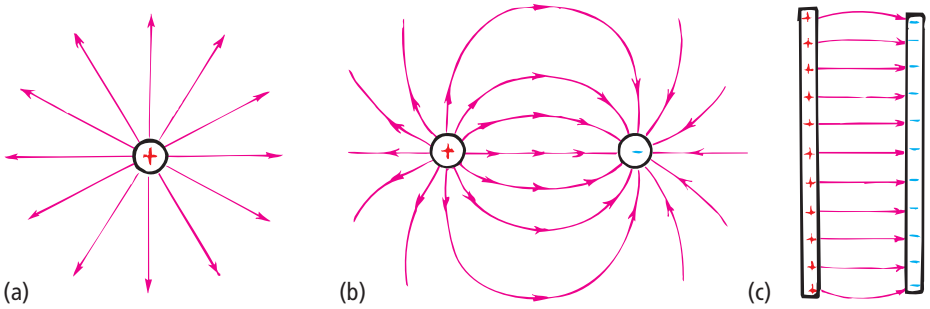
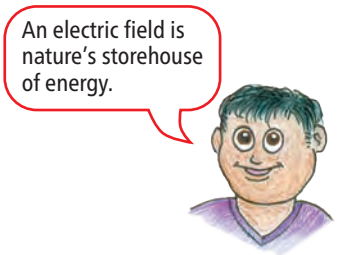


FIGURE 22.18
Some electric-field configurations. (a) Lines of force emanating from a single positively charged particle. (b) Lines of force for a pair of equal but oppositely charged particles. Note that the lines emanate from the positive particle and terminate on the negative particle. (c) Uniform lines of force between two oppositely charged parallel plates.

The electric-field concept helps us understand not only the forces between isolated stationary charged bodies but also what happens when charges move. When charges move, their motion is communicated to neighboring charged bodies in the form of a field disturbance. Such a disturbance emanates from an accelerating charged body at the speed of light. We will learn that the electric field is a storehouse of energy and that energy can be transported over long distances in an electric field. Energy that is traveling in an electric field may be directed through, and guided by, metal wires, or it may be teamed up with a magnetic field to move through empty space. We will return to this idea in Chapter 23 and later when we learn about electromagnetic radiation.



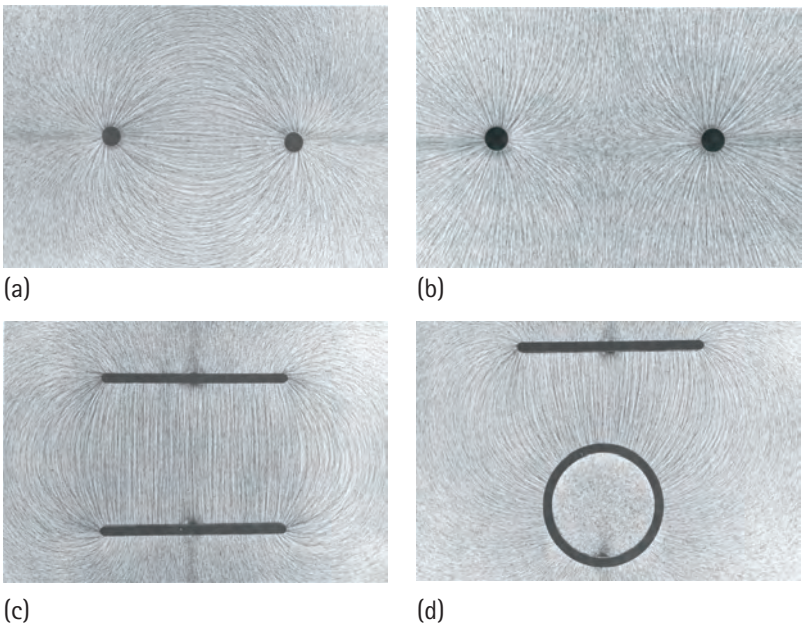


FIGURE 22.19
Bits of thread suspended in an oil bath align end-to-end with electric fields. (a) Equal and opposite charges. (b) Equal like charges. (c) Oppositely charged plates. (d) Oppositely charged cylinder and plate.

CHECK POINT

Are the lines of force shown in the three configurations in Figure 22.18 also electric field lines?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes, these imaginary lines, whether we call them lines of force or electric field lines, indicate the direction of the electric field.

Electric Shielding

An important difference between electric fields and gravitational fields is that electric fields can be shielded by various materials, while gravitational fields cannot. The amount of shielding depends on the material used for shielding. For example, air makes the electric field between two charged objects slightly weaker than it would be in a vacuum, while oil placed between the objects can diminish the field to nearly a hundredth of its original strength. Metal can completely shield an electric field. Quite interestingly, when no current is flowing, the electric field inside metal is zero, regardless of the field strength outside.

Consider, for example, electrons on a spherical metal ball. Because of mutual repulsion, the electrons will spread out uniformly over the outer surface of the ball. It is not difficult to see that the electrical force exerted on a sample test charge placed at the exact center of the ball is zero, because opposing forces balance in every direction. Interestingly enough, complete cancellation occurs *anywhere* inside a conducting sphere. Understanding why this is true requires more thought and involves the inverse-square law and a bit of geometry. Consider the test charge at point P in Figure 22.20. The test charge is twice as far from the left side of the charged sphere as it is from the right side. If the electrical force between the test charge and the charges depended only on distance, then the test charge would be attracted only 1/4 as much to the left side as to the right side. (Remember the inverse-square law: Twice as far away means only

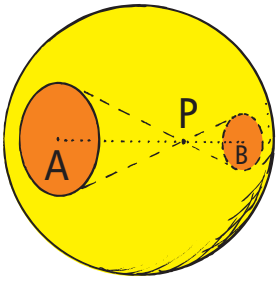


FIGURE 22.20
The test charge at P is attracted just as much to the greater amount of charge at farther region A as it is to the smaller amount of charge at closer region B. The net force on the test charge is zero—there, and anywhere inside the conductor. The electric field everywhere inside is also zero.

1/4 the effect, three times as far away means only 1/9 the effect, and so on.) But the force depends also on the amount of charge. In the figure, the cones extending from point P to areas A and B have the same apex angle, but one has twice the altitude of the other. This means that area A at the base of the longer cone is 4 times area B at the base of the shorter cone, which is true for any apex angle. Since 1/4 of 4 is equal to 1, a test charge at P is attracted equally to each side. Cancellation occurs. A similar argument applies if the cones emanating from point P are oriented in any direction. Complete cancellation occurs at all points within the sphere. (Recall this argument back in Chapter 9, Figure 9.25, for the cancellation of gravity inside a hollow planet. The metal ball behaves the same way, whether hollow or not, because all of its charge gathers on its outer surface.)

If the conductor is not spherical, then the charge distribution will not be uniform. The charge distributions over conductors of various shapes are shown in Figure 22.22. Most of the charge on a conducting cube, for example, is mutually repelled toward the corners. The remarkable thing is this: The exact charge distribution over the surface of a conductor is such that the electric field everywhere inside the conductor is zero. Look at it this way: If there were an electric field inside a conductor, then free electrons inside the conductor would be set in motion. How far would they move? Until equilibrium is established—which is to say, when the positions of all the electrons produce a zero field inside the conductor.

FIGURE 22.21
Electrons from the lightning bolt mutually repel to the outer metal surface. Although the electric field the electrons set up may be great *outside* the car, the net electric field *inside* the car is zero.

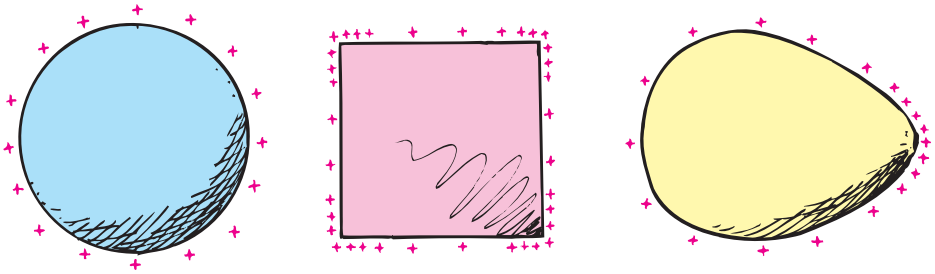


FIGURE 22.22
Electric charge distributes itself on the surface of all conductors in such a way that the electric field inside the conductors is zero, which means a greater charge density on pointed surfaces.

We cannot shield ourselves from gravity because gravity only attracts. There are no repelling parts of gravity to offset attracting parts. Shielding electric fields, however, is quite simple. Surround yourself, or whatever you wish to shield, with a conducting surface. Put this surface in an electric field of any field strength. The free charges in the conducting surface will arrange themselves on the surface of the conductor in such a way that all field contributions inside cancel one another. That's why certain electronic components are encased in metal boxes and why certain cables have a metal covering—to shield them from outside electrical activity.

CHECK POINT

How strong is the electric field inside a highly charged hollow metal sphere? Inside a highly charged solid metal sphere? Inside a chicken coop surrounded by wire netting in a lightning strike?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS
Zero, in all cases.

22.9 Electric Potential

When we studied energy in Chapter 7, we learned that an object has gravitational potential energy because of its location in a gravitational field. Similarly, a charged object has potential energy (PE) by virtue of its location in an electric field. Just as work is required to lift a massive object against the gravitational field of Earth, work is required to push a charged particle against the electric field of a charged body. This work changes the electric potential energy of the charged particle.[7] Consider the particle with the small positive charge located at some distance from a positively charged sphere in Figure 22.23b. If you push the particle closer to the sphere, you will expend energy to overcome electrical repulsion; that is, you will do work in pushing the charged particle against the electric field of the sphere. This work done in moving the particle to its new location increases its energy. We call the energy the particle possesses by virtue of its location **electric potential energy.** If the particle is released, it accelerates in a direction away from the sphere, and its electric potential energy changes to kinetic energy.

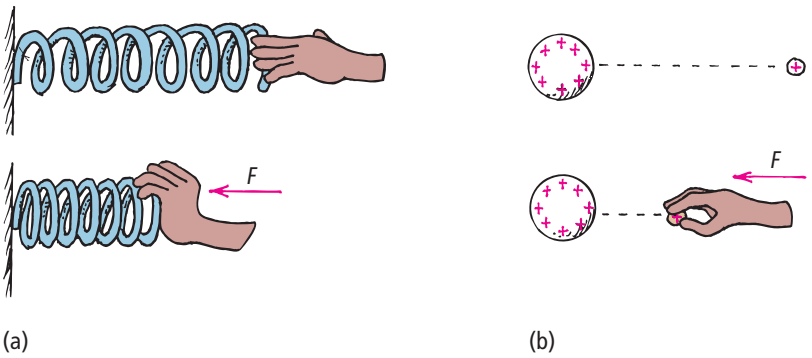


FIGURE 22.23
(a) The spring has more mechanical PE when compressed. (b) The charged particle similarly has more electric PE when pushed closer to the charged sphere. In both cases, the increased PE is the result of work input.

If we instead push a particle with twice the charge, we do twice as much work pushing it, so the doubly charged particle in the same location has twice as much electric potential energy as before. A particle with three times the charge has three times as much potential energy, and so on. Rather than dealing with the potential energy of a charged particle, it is convenient, when working with charged particles in an electric field, to consider the electric potential energy *per unit of charge*. The unit of electric charge is the coulomb, so we consider the electric potential energy *per coulomb* of charge. Then at any location the electric potential energy per coulomb will be the same—for however much

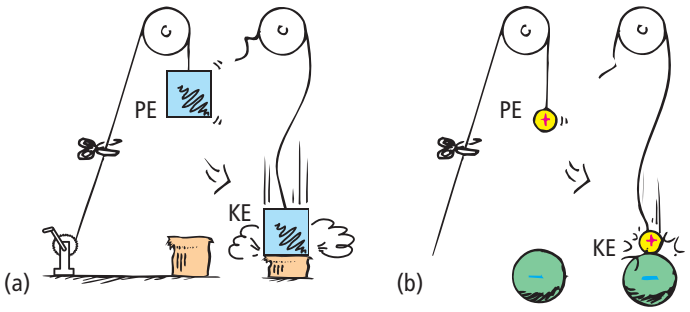


FIGURE 22.24
(a) The PE (gravitational potential energy) of a mass held in a gravitational field, when released, transforms into KE (kinetic energy). (b) The PE of a charged particle held in an electric field, when released, becomes KE. Can you see that the KE acquired by each equals the decrease in PE?

[7]This work is positive if it increases the electric potential energy of the charged particle and negative if it decreases it.

charge. For example, an object with 10 coulombs of charge at a specific location has 10 times as much electric potential energy as an object with 1 coulomb of charge. But 10 times as much electric potential energy for 10 times as much charge gives the same value as the electric potential energy per 1 coulomb of charge. The electric potential energy per unit of charge has a special name, **electric potential:**

$$\text{Electric potential} = \frac{\text{electric potential energy}}{\text{charge}}$$

The unit of measurement for electric potential is the volt, so electric potential is often called *voltage*. A potential of 1 volt (V) equals 1 joule (J) of energy per 1 coulomb (C) of charge:

$$1 \text{ volt} = 1 \frac{\text{joule}}{\text{coulomb}}$$

Thus, a 1.5-volt battery gives 1.5 joules of energy to every 1 coulomb of charge passing through the battery. Both the names *electric potential* and *voltage* are equivalent. In this text, the names will be used interchangeably.

Electric potential (voltage) plays the same role for charge that pressure does for fluids. When a pressure difference exists between two ends of a pipe filled with fluid, the fluid flows from the high-pressure end toward the lower-pressure end. When we study electric current in Chapter 23 we will see that charges respond to differences in potential in a similar way.

If you rub a balloon on your hair, the balloon becomes electrically charged—perhaps to many thousands of volts! The voltage is high because the net charge is tiny. Although a coulomb of charge is commonplace with electric currents, a full coulomb is a huge amount of static charge. Tiny charge accounts for the 100,000-volt balloon in Figure 22.26. About a tenth of a joule of work is done in charging the balloon. The balloon then acquires 0.1 joule of electric potential energy. If the amount of charge involved is 1 millionth coulomb, what does this say about its voltage? Divide 0.1 joules by 0.000001 coulomb and we see its voltage is 100,000 volts. What's the energy in the spark that occurs when the balloon is touched to a conducting surface? That's right, only 0.1 joule.

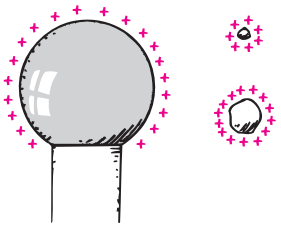


FIGURE 22.25
Of the two charged bodies near the charged dome, the one with the greater charge has the higher electric PE in the field of the dome. But the *electric potential* of each is the same—likewise for any amount of charge in the same location. Can you see why?

So *electric potential* and *voltage* mean the same thing—electric potential energy per unit of charge—in units of volts.

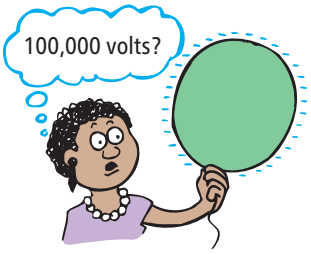


FIGURE 22.26
When 0.1 joule of work is done to rub one-millionth of coulomb of charge onto the balloon, the balloon's electric potential (voltage) is 100,000 volts. That's right, $\frac{(10^{-1}\text{ J})}{(10^{-6}\text{ C})} = 100{,}000$ volts.

High voltage at low energy is similar to the harmless high-temperature sparks of a fireworks sparkler. Recall that temperature is average kinetic energy per molecule, which means total energy is large only for a large number of molecules. Similarly, high voltage means a large quantity of energy only for a large amount of charge.

CHECK POINT

1. **Distinguish between electric potential energy and electric potential. Which is a vector quantity and which is a scalar quantity?**
2. **Investigate the two charged bodies near the charged dome in Figure 22.25. If each body possessed twice as much charge, how would the electric potential (voltage) of each be affected?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Electric potential energy (PE) is the energy measured in joules that a charged object possesses by virtue of its location in an electric field. Electric potential is that PE per unit of charge (PE/q) measured in volts (1 volt = 1 joule/coulomb). Both are scalar quantities.
2. None at all. Twice the charge on each body means twice the *potential energy* (because twice as much work was needed to place the charge at that location). Voltage for both would be the same; $\frac{\text{PE}}{q} = \frac{2\text{PE}}{2q}$. The location from the charged sphere determines voltage.

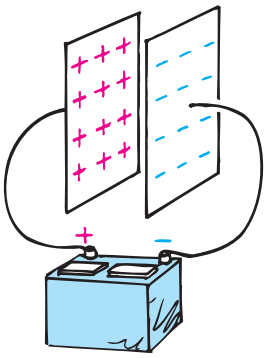


FIGURE 22.27
A capacitor consisting of two closely spaced, parallel metal plates. When connected to a battery, the plates acquire equal and opposite charges. The voltage between the plates then matches the electric potential difference between the battery terminals.

FIGURE 22.28
Mona El Tawil-Nassar adjusts demonstration capacitor plates.

FIGURE 22.29
Practical capacitors.

Electric Energy Storage

Electric energy can be stored in a common device called a **capacitor.**[8] The simplest capacitor is a pair of conducting plates separated by a small distance but not touching each other. When the plates are connected to a charging device, such as the battery shown in Figure 22.27, electrons are transferred from one plate to the other. This occurs as the positive battery terminal pulls electrons from the plate connected to it. These electrons, in effect, are pumped through the battery and through the negative terminal and deposited on the opposite plate. The capacitor plates then have equal and opposite charges—the positive plate connected to the positive battery terminal, and the negative plate connected to the negative terminal. The charging process is normally quick and complete when the potential difference between the plates equals the potential difference between the battery terminals—the battery voltage. The greater the battery voltage, and the larger and closer the plates, the greater the charge that can be stored on each plate. Energy is thus stored in the electric field between the plates. In practice, the plates may be thin metallic foil separated by a thin sheet of paper, or other insulating layer, which is called a *dielectric.* This "paper sandwich" is then rolled up to save space and inserted into a cylinder. Such a practical capacitor is shown with others in Figure 22.29.

Capacitors are found in nearly all electronic circuits. A capacitor stores energy in photoflash units. The rapid release of this energy is evident in the short duration of the flash. Likewise in a defibrillator, where short bursts of energy are applied to a heart attack victim. Similarly, but on a grander scale, enormous amounts of energy are stored in banks of capacitors that power giant lasers in national laboratories.

The energy stored in a capacitor comes from the work required to charge it. Discharging a charged capacitor can be a shocking experience if you happen to be the conducting path. The energy transfer that occurs can be fatal where high voltages are present, such as the power supply in a TV set—even after the set has been turned off. This is the main reason for the warnings on such devices. The energy is stored in the electric field between its plates. Between parallel plates, the electric field is uniform, as indicated back in Figure 22.18c. So the energy stored in a capacitor is the energy of its electric field. In Chapter 23, we'll consider the role of capacitors in electric circuits. Then in Chapters 25 and 26, we will see how energy from the Sun is radiated in the form of electric and magnetic fields. The fact that energy is contained in electric fields is truly far-reaching.

CHECK POINT

What is the net charge of a charged capacitor?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Zero, because the charges on its two plates are equal in number and opposite in sign. Even when the capacitor is discharged—say, by providing a path for charge flow between the oppositely charged plates—the net charge of the capacitor remains zero because each plate then has zero charge.

[8]A capacitor's storage potential, or *capacitance*, is measured in units called *farads*. A 1-farad capacitor can store one coulomb of charge at 1 volt. In practice capacitors are rated in *microfarads*.

Van de Graaff Generator

A common laboratory device for producing high voltages and creating static electricity is the *Van de Graaff generator*, invented by American physicist Robert J. Van de Graaff in 1931 to supply the high voltage needed for early particle accelerators. These accelerators were known as atom smashers because they accelerated subatomic particles to very high speeds and then "smashed" them into the target atoms. The resulting collisions could knock protons and neutrons out of atomic nuclei and create high-energy radiation such as X-rays and gamma rays. The ability to create these high-energy collisions is essential for particle and nuclear physics.

FIGURE 22.30
Lillian, with her hand on a charged Van de Graaff generator, is charged to a high voltage as evidenced by the electrostatic repulsion of strands of her hair.

Van de Graaff generators are also the lightning machines that mad scientists used in old science-fiction movies. A classroom model of a Van de Graaff generator provides the static charge that makes Lillian's hair stand out as strands of hair repel one another in Figure 22.30.

Figure 22.31 shows the interior of a simple model of the generator. A hollow metal sphere is supported by a cylindrical insulating stand. A motor-driven rubber belt inside the support stand passes by a comblike set of metal tips that are maintained at a large negative potential relative to ground. Discharge by the tips deposits a continuous supply of electrons on the belt, which are carried up into the hollow conducting sphere. Since the electric field inside the sphere is zero, the charge is not prevented from leaking onto the metal points (tiny lightning rods) inside the sphere. The electrons repel one another to the outer surface of the sphere, just as static charge always lies on the outside surface of any conductor. This leaves the inside uncharged and able to receive more electrons as they are brought up by the belt. The process is continuous, and the charge builds up until the negative potential on the sphere is much greater than at the voltage source at the bottom—on the order of millions of volts.

A sphere with a radius of 1 m can be raised to a potential of 3 million V before electrical discharge occurs through the air. The voltage can be further increased by increasing the radius of the sphere or by placing the entire system in a container filled with high-pressure gas. Van de Graaff generators can produce voltages as high as 20 million V. Touching one can be a hair-raising experience.

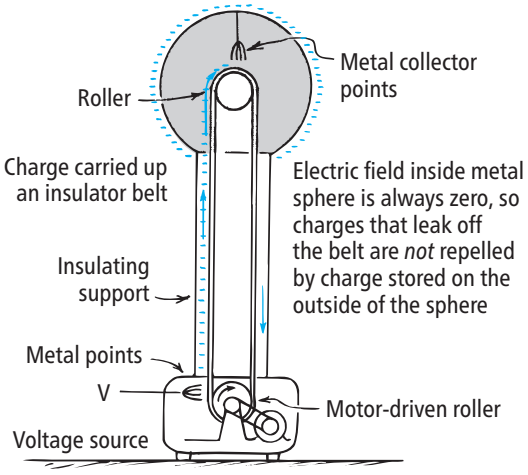
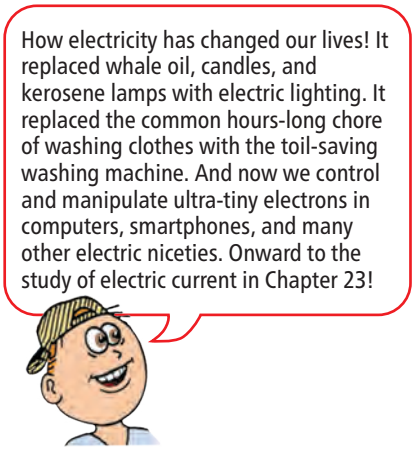

Metal collector points
Roller
Charge carried up an insulator belt
Electric field inside metal sphere is always zero, so charges that leak off the belt are *not* repelled by charge stored on the outside of the sphere
Insulating support
Metal points
V
Motor-driven roller
Voltage source

FIGURE 22.31
A simple model of a Van de Graaff generator.


How electricity has changed our lives! It replaced whale oil, candles, and kerosene lamps with electric lighting. It replaced the common hours-long chore of washing clothes with the toil-saving washing machine. And now we control and manipulate ultra-tiny electrons in computers, smartphones, and many other electric niceties. Onward to the study of electric current in Chapter 23!

CHECK POINT

Lillian risks no harm when touching the 10,000-volt dome of the generator shown in Figure 22.30. Yet she could be seriously injured if she makes an electrical connection with a common 120-volt wall outlet. Why the difference?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

There are three things to know. First, know what is meant by *energy per charge*—the ratio of the amount of energy to the amount of charge, which we call *voltage*. Second, the different levels of harm relate to the different amounts of energy transferred. Third, 1 coulomb of *static* charge is a lot of charge, quite uncommon. For example, if 1 coulomb of charge were on the dome, 10,000 joules of energy would quickly transfer to Lillian during discharge. That's lethal. Actually, the charge on a 10,000-volt dome is a tiny fraction of 1 coulomb. Discharging the dome means a very quick flow of a tiny amount of energy, below her threshold of feeling. In contrast, a common 120-volt circuit involves an enormously greater amount of charge than exists on the dome—a full coulomb every second for a 1-ampere current. Being part of a 120-volt circuit means a sustained and damaging flow of energy—a big ouch!

Do yourself a favor and become familiar with the Summary of Terms before you tackle this chapter's questions and before you advance to Chapter 23!

Chapter 22 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Electricity A general term for electrical phenomena, much like *gravity* has to do with gravitational phenomena, or *sociology* with social phenomena.

Electrostatics The study of electric charge at rest (not *in motion*, as in electric currents).

Conservation of charge Electric charge is neither created nor destroyed. The total charge before an interaction equals the total charge after.

Coulomb's law The relationship among electrical force, charge, and distance:

$$F = k\frac{q_1 q_2}{r^2}$$

If the charges are alike in sign, the force is repulsive; if the charges are unlike, the force is attractive.

Coulomb The SI unit of electric charge. One coulomb (symbol C) is equal to the total charge of 6.25×10^{18} electrons.

Conductor Any material that has free charged particles that easily flow through it when an electrical force acts on them.

Insulator A material that does not contain free charged particles and through which charge does not easily flow.

Semiconductor A material with properties that fall between those of a conductor and an insulator and whose resistance can be affected by adding impurities.

Superconductor A material that is a perfect conductor with zero resistance to the flow of electric charge.

Charging by contact The transfer of electric charges between objects by rubbing or simple touching.

Charging by induction The redistribution of electric charges in and on objects caused by the electrical influence of a charged object close by but not in contact.

Electrically polarized The term applied to an atom or molecule in which the charges are aligned so that one side has a slight excess of positive charge and the other side a slight excess of negative charge.

Electric field Electrical force per unit of charge. The field can be considered to be an "aura" surrounding charged objects and is a storehouse of electric energy. About a charged point, the field decreases with distance according to the inverse-square law, like a gravitational field. Between oppositely charged parallel plates, the electric field is uniform:

$$\text{Electric field} = \frac{F}{q}$$

Electric potential energy The energy a charged object possesses by virtue of its location in an electric field.

Electric potential The electric potential energy per unit of charge, measured in volts; often called *voltage*:

$$\text{Voltage} = \frac{\text{electric potential energy}}{\text{charge}}$$

Capacitor An electrical device that stores electric charge and energy.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

22.1 Electric Forces

1. Cite a major difference between electrical and gravitational forces.
2. Why does gravitation between Earth and the Moon predominate?

22.2 Electric Charges

3. Which part of an atom is positively charged, and which part is negatively charged?
4. If a glass rod is rubbed with a piece of silk, what kind of charge is acquired by each?
5. What is most commonly the net charge of an atom?

22.3 Conservation of Charge

6. What is a positive ion? A negative ion?
7. What is meant by conservation of charge?
8. What is meant by saying charge is *quantized?*
9. Name one particle that has exactly one quantum unit of charge.

22.4 Coulomb's Law

10. How does one *coulomb* of charge compare with the charge of a *single* electron?
11. How is Coulomb's law similar to Newton's law of gravitation? How is it different?

22.5 Conductors and Insulators

12. Why are metals good conductors both of heat and of electricity?
13. Why are materials such as glass and rubber good insulators?
14. How does a *semiconductor* differ from a *conductor* or an *insulator?*
15. What is a transistor composed of, and what are some of its functions?
16. How does the flow of current differ in a superconductor compared with the flow in ordinary conductors?

22.6 Charging

17. What happens to electrons in any charging process?
18. What kind of charging occurs when you slide your body across a plastic surface?
19. What kind of charging occurs during thunderstorms?
20. What is the primary purpose of a lightning rod?

22.7 Charge Polarization

21. In terms of net charge, how does an electrically *polarized* object differ from an electrically *charged* object?
22. What is an electric dipole?
23. Give an example of a common electric dipole.

22.8 Electric Field

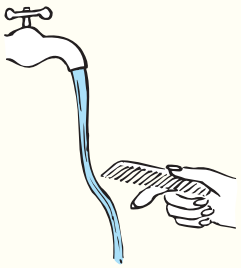
24. Cite two examples of common force fields.
25. How is the direction of an electric field defined?
26. Why is there no electric field at the center of a charged spherical conductor?
27. When charges mutually repel and distribute themselves on the surface of conductors, what becomes of the electric field inside the conductor?

22.9 Electric Potential

28. How much energy is given to each coulomb of charge that flows through a 6-V battery?
29. A balloon may easily be charged to several thousand volts. Does that mean it has several thousand joules of energy? Explain.
30. Where is the energy stored in a capacitor?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Demonstrate charging by friction and discharging from points with a friend who stands at the far end of a carpeted room. Scuff your way across the rug until your noses are close together. This can be a delightfully tingling experience, depending on how dry the air is and how pointed your noses are.
32. Pull some plastic wrap from its box. In doing so you'll note it becomes electrically charged as it is attracted to objects such as food containers. Does the wrap stick better to plastic containers or to metal containers? Discuss this behavior in terms of electrical polarization.
33. Write a letter to Grandpa and tell him why he'd be safe in a lightning storm if he's inside an automobile.
34. Briskly rub a comb through your hair or on a woolen garment and bring it near a small but smooth stream of running water. Is the stream of water deflected? What is your explanation?



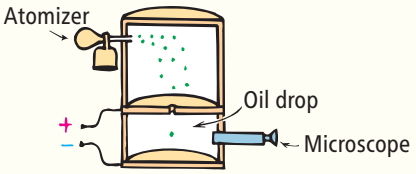
PLUG AND CHUG (EQUATION FAMILIARIZATION)

$$\textit{Coulomb's Law: } F = k\frac{q_1 q_2}{r^2}$$

35. Calculate the magnitude of force between the point charges $q_1 = -3.0 \times 10^{-6}$ C and $q_2 = 5.0 \times 10^{-6}$ C placed 100 cm apart in the air. The proportionality constant for Coulomb's law is $k = 9.0 \times 10^9\ \text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$.
36. Find the ratio of the electric field due to a charge of magnitude q C at a distance r and $2r$.

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

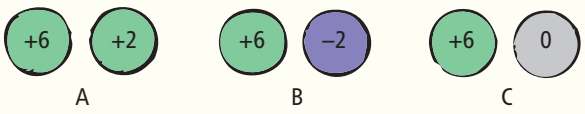
37. The force between two point charges q_1 C and q_2 C is F N when they are separated by a distance of r m. For what distance (in m) will this force be $4F$ N?
38. A metallic sphere of radius a, carrying charge Q, is brought in contact with an uncharged sphere B. What will be the remaining charge on sphere B?
39. (a) Find the ratio of gravitational and electrostatic interaction forces between two protons. ($q_{\text{proton}} = 1.602 \times 10^{-19}$ C, $m_{\text{proton}} = 1.672 \times 10^{-27}$ kg, $k = 9.0 \times 10^9\ \text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$, $G = 6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{m}^3/(\text{kg} \cdot \text{s}^2)$). (b) If the charge of a proton is q_p C and mass is m_p kg, then for what value of q_p/m_p will the magnitude of these forces be equal?
40. Can we neglect the force due to gravity on electrons in any electronic device? Explain your answer for a given electric field of magnitude 50,000 V/m.
41. Two small spheres of equal mass m are hung from the same point by silk threads of length ℓ. Suppose both spheres are equally charged and separated by a small distance $x \ll \ell$. Find the magnitude of charge on each sphere.
42. Two equal and opposite point charges are located 30 cm apart in a vacuum. The magnitude of electric field E at the midpoint O of the line joining the two charges is 2.4×10^6 N/C.
    (a) Indicate the direction of the electric field.
    (b) Calculate the magnitude and direction of force experienced by a negative test charge $q = -1.6 \times 10^{-6}$ C placed at O.
43. The potential difference between the plates of a given cell is 24 V, and a charge of 10 C is passed through this cell at a given time. Calculate the work done by the cell.
44. 0.3 J of energy is stored atop the metal sphere of a Van de Graff generator. If a spark carrying charge of magnitude q C discharges the sphere, the sphere's potential relative to the ground is 150,000 V. Find the value of q.
45. (a) If 20 J of work must be done against an existing electric field to take a charge of 0.05 C from X to Y, calculate the potential difference $V_Y - V_X$. (b) For the same value of potential difference in (a), how much work must be done for a charge of 0.1 C?
46. In 1909, Robert Millikan was the first to find the charge of an electron in his now-famous oil-drop experiment. In that experiment tiny oil drops were sprayed into a uniform electric field between a horizontal pair of oppositely charged plates. The drops were observed with a magnifying eyepiece, and the electric field was adjusted so that the upward force on some negatively charged oil drops was just sufficient to balance the downward force of gravity. That is, when suspended, upward force qE just equaled mg. Millikan accurately measured the charges on many oil drops and found the values to be whole-number multiples of 1.6×10^{-19} C, which turns out to be the charge of the electron. For this he won the Nobel Prize.



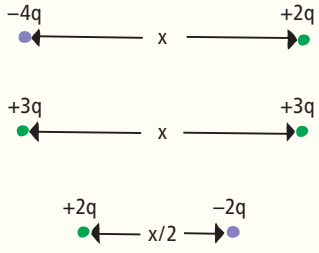
    (a) If a drop of mass 1.1×10^{-14} kg remains stationary in an electric field of 1.68×10^5 N/C, what is the charge of this drop?
    (b) How many extra electrons are on this particular oil drop (given the presently known charge of the electron)?

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

47. The three pairs of metal same-size spheres have different charges on their surfaces, as indicated. Each pair is brought together, allowed to touch, and then separated. Rank from greatest to least the total amount of charge on the pairs of spheres after separation.



48. Shown are three separate pairs of point charges. Assume the pairs interact only with each other. Rank the magnitudes of the force between the pairs from largest to smallest.



THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

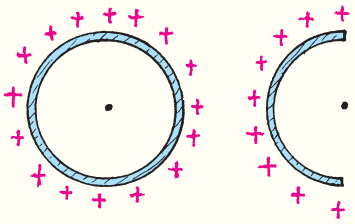
49. At the atomic level, what is meant by saying something is electrically charged?
50. Why is charge usually transferred by electrons rather than by protons?
51. Why are objects with vast numbers of electrons normally not electrically charged?
52. Why do clothes often cling together after tumbling in a clothes dryer?
53. Why will dust be attracted to plastic items wiped with a dry cloth?
54. When combing your hair, you scuff electrons from your hair onto the comb. Is your hair then positively or negatively charged? How about the comb?
55. At some automobile toll booths, a thin metal wire protrudes from the road, making contact with cars before they reach the toll collector. What is the purpose of this wire?
56. Why are the tires for trucks carrying gasoline and other flammable fluids manufactured to be electrically conducting?
57. An electroscope is a simple device consisting of a metal ball that is attached by a conductor to two thin leaves of metal foil protected from air disturbances in a jar, as shown. When the ball is touched by a charged body, the leaves that normally hang straight down spread apart. Why? (Electroscopes are useful not only as charge detectors but also for measuring the quantity of charge: the more charge transferred to the ball, the more the leaves diverge.)

58. The leaves of a charged electroscope collapse in time. At higher altitudes, they collapse more rapidly. Why is this true? (*Hint:* The existence of cosmic rays was first indicated by this observation.)
59. Is it necessary for a charged body actually to touch the ball of the electroscope for the leaves to diverge? Defend your answer.
60. A crystal of salt consists of negative and positive ions. How does the net charge of the negative ions compare with that of the positive ions? Explain.
61. How can you charge an object negatively with only the help of a positively charged object?
62. When one material is rubbed against another, electrons jump readily from one to the other but protons do not. Why? (Think in atomic terms.)
63. The 50,000 billion billion (5×10^{22}) freely moving electrons in a penny repel one another. Why don't they fly out of the penny?
64. What does the inverse-square law tell you about the relationship between electric force and distance?
65. How does the magnitude of electrical force between a pair of charged particles change when the particles are moved half as far apart? One-third as far apart?
66. How does the magnitude of electric force compare between a pair of charged particles when they are separated ten times as far apart? If instead, when they are one-tenth as far apart? (What law guides your answers?)
67. When you double the distance between a pair of charged particles, what happens to the force between them? Does it depend on the sign of the charges? What law defends your answer?
68. When you double the charge on only one of a pair of particles, what effect does this have on the force between them? Does the effect depend on the sign of the charge?
69. When you double the charge on both particles in a pair, what effect does this have on the force between them? Does it depend on the sign of the charge?
70. The proportionality constant k in Coulomb's law is huge in ordinary units, whereas the proportionality constant G in Newton's law of gravitation is tiny. What does this indicate about the relative strengths of these two forces?
71. In what way do electrical field lines indicate the strength of an electric field?
72. How is the direction of an electric field indicated with electrical field lines?
73. Suppose that the strength of the electric field about an isolated point charge has a certain value at a distance of 1 m. How will the electric field strength compare at a distance of 2 m from the point charge? What law guides your answer?
74. In the phenomenon of superconductivity, what happens to electrical resistance at low temperatures?
75. Measurements show that there is an electric field surrounding Earth. Its magnitude is about 100 N/C at Earth's surface, and it points inward toward Earth's center. From this information, can you state whether Earth is negatively or positively charged?
76. Why are lightning rods normally at a higher elevation than the buildings they protect?
77. Why are metal-spiked shoes a bad idea for golfers on a stormy day?
78. If a large enough electric field is applied, even an insulator will conduct an electric current, as is evident in lightning discharges through the air. Explain how this happens, taking into account the opposite charges in an atom and how ionization occurs.
79. If you rub an inflated balloon against your hair and place it against a door, by what mechanism does it stick? Explain.
80. When a car is moved into a painting chamber, a mist of paint is sprayed around its body. When the body is given a sudden electric charge and mist is attracted to it—presto—the car is quickly and uniformly painted. What does the phenomenon of polarization have to do with this?
81. By what means can a charged atom (an ion) attract a neutral atom?

82. A free electron and a free proton are placed in the same electric field. (a) How will the forces acting on them compare? (b) How will their accelerations compare? (c) How will their directions of travel compare?
83. Why is the magnitude of the electric field zero midway between identical point charges?
84. A proton at rest a certain distance from a negatively charged plate is released and collides with the plate. An electron at rest the same distance away from a similarly charged but positive plate is similarly released. In which case will the moving particle have the greater speed when the collision occurs? Why?
85. A gravitational field vector points toward Earth; an electric field vector points toward an electron. Why do electric field vectors point away from protons?
86. By what specific means do the bits of fine threads align in the electric fields shown in Figure 22.19?
87. Suppose that a metal file cabinet is charged. How will the charge concentration at the corners of the cabinet compare with the charge concentration on the flat parts of the cabinet?
88. If you were to expend 10 J of work to push a 1-C charge against an electric field, what would be its change of voltage?
89. When released, what will be the kinetic energy of the 1-C charge of the previous problem if it flies past its starting position?
90. What is the voltage at the location of a 0.0001-C charge that has an electric potential energy of 0.5 J (both measured relative to the same reference point)?
91. Why is it safe to remain inside a car during a lightning storm?
92. How do the charges on opposing plates of a capacitor compare? What is the net charge on a fully charged capacitor?
93. In order to store more energy in a parallel-plate capacitor whose plates differ by a fixed voltage, what change would you make in the plates?
94. Why is it dangerous to touch the terminals of a high-voltage capacitor even after the charging circuit is turned off?
95. An electron volt, eV, is a unit of energy. Which is larger, a GeV or a MeV?
96. What is the magnitude of the electric field inside the dome of a charged Van de Graaff generator?
97. Would you feel any electrical effects if you were inside the charged sphere of a Van de Graaff generator? Why or why not?
98. A friend says that the reason one's hair stands out while touching a charged Van de Graaff generator is simply that the hair strands become charged and are light enough so that the repulsion between strands is visible. Do you agree or disagree?

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

99. When you remove your wool suit from the dry cleaner's garment bag, the bag becomes positively charged. Discuss how this occurs.
100. Strictly speaking, when an object acquires a positive charge by the transfer of electrons, what happens to its mass? Discuss what happens to its mass when it acquires a negative charge. (Think small!)
101. Strictly speaking, will a penny be slightly more massive if it has a negative charge or a positive charge? Discuss.
102. It is relatively easy to strip the outer electrons from a heavy atom like that of uranium (which then becomes a uranium ion), but it is very difficult to remove the inner electrons. Discuss why this is so.
103. If electrons were positive and protons were negative, discuss whether or not Coulomb's law would be written the same or differently.
104. If you are caught outdoors in a thunderstorm, why should you not stand under a tree? Can you think of a reason why you should not stand with your legs far apart? Or why lying down can be dangerous? (*Hint:* Consider electric potential difference.)
105. Two pieces of plastic, a full ring and a half ring, have the same radius and charge density. Which electric field at the center has the greater magnitude? Discuss and defend your answer.



106. You are not harmed by contact with a charged metal ball, even though its voltage may be very high. Is the reason similar to why you are not harmed by the greater-than-1000°C sparks from a holiday sparkler? Discuss and defend your answer in terms of the energies that are involved.
107. Suppose you find yourself inside a huge highly charged Van de Graaff generator dome. If you touch an inside edge, discuss whether your hair will stand out.

CHAPTER TWENTY TWO Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. Electrons in a metal paper clip don't fly off the surface because
   (a) mutual repulsion is incomplete.
   (b) they are attracted to an equal number of protons.
   (c) they are strongly bonded to the metal surface.
   (d) All of the above
2. When stripping electrons from an atom, the atom becomes a
   (a) positive ion.
   (b) negative ion.
   (c) different element.
   (d) an isotope.
3. When we say that electric charge is conserved, we mean that no example has ever been found where
   (a) the net charge on an object has changed.
   (b) the net amount of charge on an object has increased.
   (c) net charge has been created or destroyed.
   (d) None of the above
4. A pair of charged particles repel each other with a force F. If the charge of one particle is doubled and the distance between them is doubled, the force will be
   (a) F.
   (b) 2 F.
   (c) $F/2$.
   (d) $F/4$.
5. A positively charged balloon touching a wooden wall
   (a) pulls negative charge on the wall surface toward it.
   (b) pushes positive charge in the wall away from it.
   (c) polarizes molecules in the wall.
   (d) All of the above
6. Each coulomb of charge that flows across a 12-volt potential difference has
   (a) 12 newtons of force.
   (b) 12 amperes of current.
   (c) 12 watts.
   (d) 12 joules of energy.
7. A party balloon of high voltage likely has low
   (a) energy.
   (b) charge.
   (c) electrical resistance.
   (d) All of the above
8. Fundamental to conductors are
   (a) free electrons.
   (b) bound electrons.
   (c) Both of these in various proportions
   (d) None of the above
9. The electric field around an isolated electron has a certain strength 1 cm from the electron. The electric field strength 2 cm from the electron is
   (a) half as much.
   (b) the same.
   (c) twice as much.
   (d) None of the above
10. Two charged particles held close to each other are released. As they move, their speeds increase. Therefore, their charges have
    (a) the same sign.
    (b) opposite signs.
    (c) Either of these
    (d) Need more information

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1 (b): The electrons are electrically attracted to an equal number of protons in an atom, which prevents them from flying off surfaces. This mutual attraction, rather than mutual repulsion keeps them on the paper clip. **2 (a):** An atom has neutral charge because there are an equal number of positive protons and negative electrons. In contrast, an ion has an unequal number of protons and electrons. When electrons are stripped from an atom more protons than electrons means the atom has a positive charge and becomes a positive ion. **3 (c):** The Law of Conservation of Charge tells us the total or net charge remains constant throughout any process. When something changes its charge, it doesn't create new charge or destroy old charge, it simply transfers it. **4 (c):** Coulomb's Law tells us that the force between two charges is directly proportional to the size of the charge and inversely proportional to the square of the distances. Reading the symbols, if the size of the charge becomes 2Q, the force increases to 2F, and if the distance increases to 2R, then the force decreases to ¼F. Twice divided by four gives half the initial force, F/2. **5 (d):** This is straightforward charge polarization. The positively-charged balloon pulls negative charge towards the wall and pushes positives away. The result is net attraction between the wall and the balloon. **6 (d):** Voltage is defined in terms of the amount of energy (joules) per charge. A 12-volt potential difference imparts 12 joules of energy to each coulomb of charge. **7 (a):** It is important to view voltage as a ratio of energy per charge. Rub a balloon on your hair and it may be at 1000 volts. But the amount of charge it acquires is likely about a millionth of a coulomb. From $V = E/q$, we see $E = Vq$, which is $(1000\text{ V})(0.000{,}001\text{ C}) = 0.001\text{ J}$—a very low amount of energy. **8 (a):** Many conductors are metallic materials due to their atomic bonding. Fundamental to conductors is the freeness of electrons that can move among atoms within the conducting material. **9 (d):** The electric field about an isolated electron takes the shape of straight lines the strength of which diminishes with distance in accord with the inverse-square law. So twice the distance from the electron means one-fourth the electric field strength. Not listed, so the choice is (d). **10 (c):** Whoa! Whatever the signs of charge, when released they will accelerate due to the force each experience. If the charges are of like sign, they will accelerate away from each other with increasing speeds. If the charges are of opposite signs, they will accelerate toward each other with increasing speeds. Speeds would increase in either case, so the correct choice is (c).

CHAPTER TWENTY THREE

23 Electric Current

23.1 **Flow of Charge and Electric Current**

23.2 **Voltage Sources**

23.3 **Electrical Resistance**

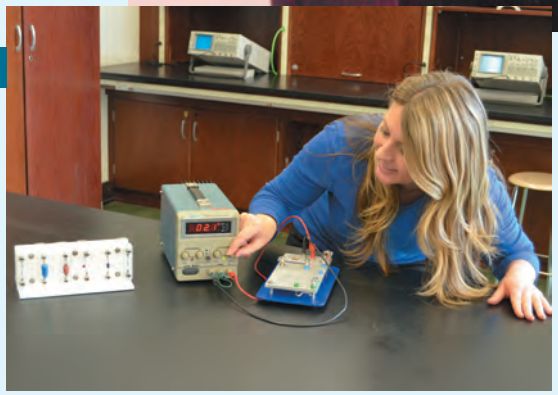
23.4 **Ohm's Law**
- Ohm's Law and Electric Shock

23.5 **Direct Current and Alternating Current**
- Converting AC to DC

23.6 **Speed and Source of Electrons in a Circuit**

23.7 **Electric Power**

23.8 **Electric Circuits**
- Series Circuits
- Parallel Circuits
- Parallel Circuits and Overloading
- Safety Fuses



1 The author's favorite electric circuit demo—a parallel circuit of lamps fastened to extended terminals of a common car battery. **2** Phil Hurrell checks to see that his electrical input supplies 220 V to his welder and 110 V to other devices. **3** Daday van den Berg distinguishes between series and parallel circuits when guest teaching in the Philippines. **4** The power supply that Jill Evans shows her lab students supplies 2.1 volts across a pair of resistors in series.

Electric current is the flow of charge, pressured into motion by voltage and hampered by resistance. The mathematical relationship among the three quantities current, voltage, and resistance is credited to the German scientist Georg Simon Ohm, who was born in 1789. Neither of his parents had formal education. Ohm's self-educated father gave his sons an excellent home education, and his brother Martin went on to become a well-known mathematician.

In 1805, at age 15, Ohm entered the University of Erlangen. But, instead of concentrating on his studies, he spent much time dancing, ice skating, and playing billiards. Ohm's father, angry that Georg was wasting his educational opportunity, sent him to Switzerland, where, in September 1806, at a mere 16 years of age, he became a mathematics teacher. He left his teaching post two and a half years later and became a tutor, continuing with his passion for studying mathematics. His studies paid off. Returning to the University of Erlangen, Ohm earned his doctorate in 1811, joining the staff of that university as a mathematics lecturer. But the lectureship paid so little that he soon gave it up and spent the next 6 years teaching in undistinguished schools in Bavaria. During this time he wrote an elementary book on geometry. The book impressed King Wilhelm III of Prussia, who offered Ohm a teaching position in Cologne. Luckily, the physics lab at the school was well equipped, so Ohm devoted himself to experiments on physics. His practical experience with his father's locksmith activities proved helpful.

Ohm wrote extensively. Ohm's law was not fully appreciated at that time, however. His work was eventually recognized in 1841 by the Royal Society with its award of the prestigious Copley Medal. Ohm became a professor of experimental physics at the University of Munich, where he remained until he died at age 65.

The SI unit of electrical resistance, the ohm (symbol Ω), is named after him.

23.1 Flow of Charge and Electric Current

From our study of heat and temperature, we know that when the ends of a conducting material are at different temperatures, heat energy flows from the higher temperature to the lower temperature. The flow ceases when both ends reach the same temperature. Similarly, when the ends of an electric conductor are at different electric potentials—when there is a **potential difference**—charge flows from one end to the other.[1] The flow of charge persists for as long as there is a potential difference. Without a potential difference, no charge flows. Connect one end of a wire to the charged sphere of a Van de Graaff generator, for example, and the other end to the ground, and a surge of charge will flow through the wire. The flow will be brief, however, because the sphere will quickly reach a common potential with the ground.

To attain a sustained flow of charge in a conductor, some arrangement must be provided to maintain a difference in potential while charge flows from one end to the other. The situation is analogous to the flow of water from a higher reservoir to a lower one (Figure 23.1a). Water will flow in a pipe that connects the reservoirs only as long as there is a difference in the water levels. The flow of water in the pipe, like the flow of charge in the wire that connects the Van de Graaff generator to the ground, will cease when the pressures at the two ends are equal (we imply this when we say that water seeks its own level). A continuous flow is possible if the difference in water levels—hence the difference in water pressures—is maintained with the use of a suitable pump (Figure 23.1b).

[1]When we say that charge flows, we mean that charged *particles* flow. Charge is a property of particular particles, most significantly electrons, protons, and ions. When the flow is of negative charge, electrons or negative ions constitute the flow. When the flow of charge is positive, protons or positive ions are flowing.

Pearson eText **ADDITIONAL RESOURCES**
Videos
Screencasts

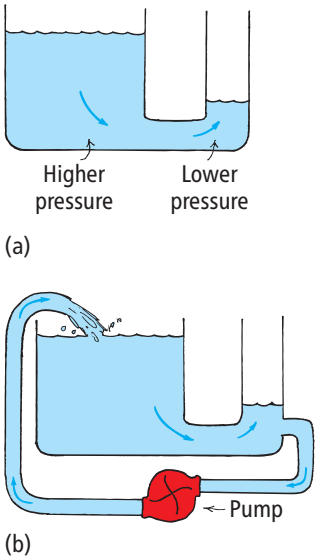


FIGURE 23.1
(a) Water flows from the reservoir of higher pressure to the reservoir of lower pressure. The flow ceases when the difference in pressure ceases. (b) Water continues to flow because a difference in pressure is maintained by the pump.

We often think of current flowing through a circuit, but don't say this around somebody who is picky about grammar because the expression "current flows" is redundant. More properly, charge flows—which *is* current.

Just as water current is the flow of H_2O molecules, **electric current** is simply the flow of electric charge. In circuits of metal wires, electrons make up the flow of charge. This is because one or more electrons from each metal atom are free to move throughout the atomic lattice. These charge carriers are called *conduction electrons*. Protons, on the other hand, do not move because they are bound inside the nuclei of atoms that are more or less locked in fixed positions. In conducting fluids, however—such as in a car battery—positive ions as well as electrons make up the flow of electric charge.

The *rate* of electrical flow is measured in *amperes*. One ampere is a rate of flow equal to 1 coulomb of charge per second. (Recall that 1 coulomb, the standard unit of charge, is the electric charge of 6.25×10^{18} electrons.) In a wire that carries 5 amperes, for example, 5 coulombs of charge pass any cross-section in the wire each second. So that's a lot of electrons! In a wire that carries 10 amperes, twice as many electrons pass any cross-section each second.

fyi

- Andre Marie Ampere is often referred to as "the Newton of electricity." In the 1820s, he showed that parallel wires carrying current in the same direction attract each other, and he postulated that circulating charge is responsible for magnetism. In his honor, the unit for current is amperes, often shortened to *amps*.

CHECK POINT

Okay, so a potential difference across the ends of a wire produces current. Instead of saying *potential difference*, can we as well say *voltage*?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes. Recall from Chapter 22 that *electrical potential* and *voltage* are interchangeable terms. We now consider the difference in electric potential between two points in a conducting path, also measured in units of volts.

23.2 Voltage Sources

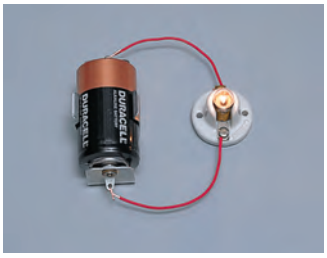


FIGURE 23.2
Each coulomb of charge made to flow in a circuit that connects the ends of this 1.5-V flashlight cell is energized with 1.5 J.

Charges flow only when they are pushed or pulled. A sustained current requires a suitable pumping device to provide a difference in electric potential—a voltage. If we charge one metal sphere positively and another negatively, we can develop a large voltage between the spheres. This voltage source is not a good electrical pump because, when the spheres are connected by a conductor, the potentials equalize in a single brief surge of moving charges—like discharging a Van de Graaff generator. It is not practical. Generators or chemical batteries, on the other hand, are suitable pumps in electric circuits and can maintain a steady flow.

Batteries and electric generators steadily do work to pull negative charges away from positive ones. In chemical batteries, this work is usually, but not always, done by the chemical disintegration of zinc or lead in acid, and the energy stored in the chemical bonds is converted to electric potential energy.[2] Generators, such as alternators in automobiles, separate charge by electromagnetic induction, a process we will describe in Chapter 25. The work done by whatever means in separating the opposite charges is available at the terminals of the battery or generator. These different values of energy per charge create a difference in potential (voltage). This voltage provides the "electrical pressure" to move electrons through a circuit.

fyi

- A single flashlight cell supplies 1.5 V. Inside a 9-V battery are six little cells of 1.5 V each.

[2]The life of a battery depends on the length of time it shares its chemical energy with circuit devices. Like water pipes that become clogged with overuse and time, batteries build up resistance that further shortens their useful lives. An explanation of how batteries operate can be found in almost any chemistry textbook.

The unit of electric potential difference (voltage) is the *volt*.[3] A common automobile battery provides an electrical pressure of 12 V to a circuit connected across its terminals. Then 12 J of energy are supplied to each coulomb of charge that is made to flow in the circuit joined to these terminals.

There is often some confusion about the charge flowing *through* a circuit and the voltage placed, or impressed, *across* a circuit. We can distinguish between these ideas by considering a long pipe filled with water. Water will flow *through* the pipe if there is a difference in pressure *across* (or between) its ends. Water flows from the high-pressure end to the low-pressure end. Only the water flows, not the pressure. Similarly, electric charge flows because of the differences in electrical pressure (voltage). You say that charges flow *through* a circuit because of an applied voltage *across* the circuit. You don't say that voltage flows through a circuit. Voltage is electrical pressure that doesn't flow anywhere; it is the charges that flow. Voltage produces current (if there is a complete circuit).

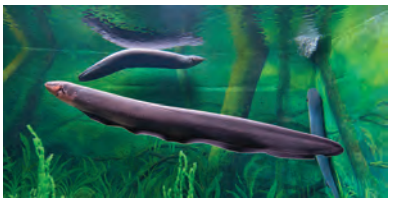


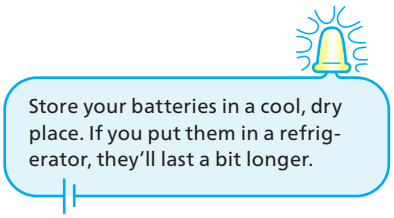
FIGURE 23.3
An unusual source of voltage. The electric potential between the head and tail of the electric eel can be up to 860 V, the strongest bioelectricity generator known.

CHECK POINT

Is the voltage between two points in an electric circuit related to the flow of electrons between the points?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes, and we will soon see that it relates to the amount of energy given to the electrons.

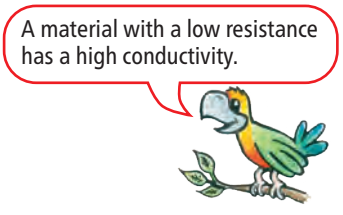


fyi

- While Alessandro Volta was experimenting with metals and acids in 1791, he touched a silver spoon and a piece of tin to his tongue (saliva is slightly acidic) and connected them with a piece of copper wire. The sour taste indicated electricity. He went on to assemble a pile of cells to form a battery. In Volta's honor, electric potential is measured in units of "volts." (Touch the two terminals of a 9-volt battery to your tongue to experience this for yourself.)

23.3 Electrical Resistance

We know that a battery or generator of some kind is the prime mover and source of voltage in an electric circuit. How much current exists depends not only on the voltage but also on the **electrical resistance** the conductor offers to the flow of charge. This is similar to the rate of water flow in a pipe, which depends not only on the pressure difference between the ends of the pipe but also on the resistance offered by the pipe itself. A short pipe offers less resistance to water flow than a long pipe; the wider the pipe, the less the resistance. Likewise for the resistance of wires that carry current. The resistance of a wire depends both on the thickness and length of the wire and on its particular conductivity. Thick wires have less resistance than thin wires. Longer wires have more resistance than short wires. Copper wire has less resistance than steel wire of the same size. Electrical resistance also depends on temperature. The greater the jostling about of atoms within the conductor, the greater resistance the conductor offers to the flow of charge. For most conductors, increased temperature means increased resistance.[4] The resistance of some materials reaches zero at very low temperatures. These are the superconductors discussed briefly in Chapter 22.



[3]The terminology in this area of physics can be confusing, so a clarification of terms may be useful: *Electric potential* and *potential* mean the same thing—electric potential energy per unit charge. Its units are volts. The term *voltage* is usually used to indicate the *difference* in electric potential between two points in a conducting path. Units of voltage are also volts.

[4]Carbon is an interesting exception. As temperature increases, more carbon atoms shake loose an electron. This increases the electric current. So the resistance of carbon lowers with increasing temperature. This and (primarily) its high melting point are why carbon is used in arc lamps.

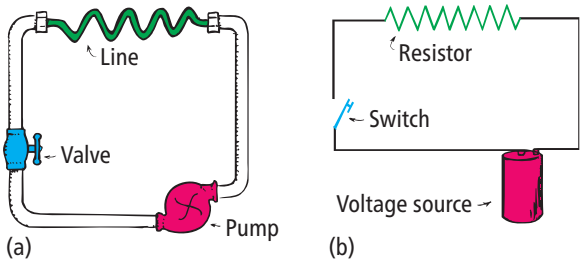


FIGURE 23.4
(a) In a hydraulic circuit, a narrow pipe (green) offers resistance to water flow.
(b) In an electric circuit, a lamp or other device (shown by the zigzag symbol for resistance) offers resistance to electron flow.

FIGURE 23.5
More water flows through a thick hose than through a thin hose connected to a city's water system (same water pressure). Likewise for electric current in thick and thin wires connected across the same potential difference.

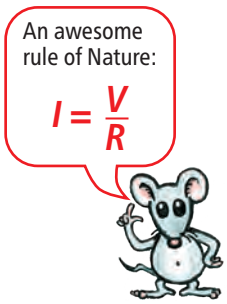
Electrical resistance is measured in units called *ohms*. The Greek letter omega, Ω, is commonly used as the symbol for the ohm. As mentioned at the beginning of this chapter, this unit is named after Georg Simon Ohm, who, in 1826, discovered a simple and very important relationship among voltage, current, and resistance.

CHECK POINT

When electrons flow in a thin lamp filament, they experience "friction." What is the practical outcome of this?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER
Heat and light!

23.4 Ohm's Law



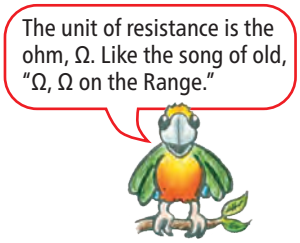
The relationship among voltage, current, and resistance is summarized by **Ohm's law.** Ohm discovered that the current in a circuit is directly proportional to the voltage established across the circuit and is inversely proportional to the resistance of the circuit. In short,

$$\text{Current} = \frac{\text{voltage}}{\text{resistance}}$$

Or, in units,

$$\text{Amperes} = \frac{\text{volts}}{\text{ohms}}$$

So, for a given circuit of constant resistance, current and voltage are proportional to each other.[5] This means that we'll get twice the current for twice the voltage. The greater the voltage, the greater the current. But, if the resistance of a circuit is doubled, the current will be half what it would be otherwise. The greater the resistance, the smaller the current. Ohm's law makes good sense.



Ohm's law tells us that a potential difference of 1 V established across a circuit that has a resistance of 1 Ω will produce a current of 1 A. If a voltage of 12 V is impressed across the same circuit, the current will be 12 A. The resistance of a typical lamp cord is much less than 1 Ω, while a typical incandescent bulb has a resistance greater than 100 Ω. An iron or an electric toaster has a resistance of 15–20 Ω. Remember that for a given potential difference, less resistance means

[5]Many texts use V for voltage, I for current, and R for resistance, and express Ohm's law as $V = IR$. It then follows that $I = \frac{V}{R}$ and $R = \frac{V}{I}$; if any two variables are known, the third can be found. Units are abbreviated V for volts, A for amperes, and Ω for ohms.

more current. In the interior of such electrical devices as computers and television receivers, current is regulated by circuit elements called *resistors*, whose resistance may be a few ohms or millions of ohms.

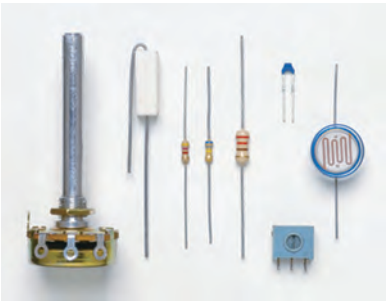


FIGURE 23.6
Resistors. The symbol of resistance in an electric circuit is .

CHECK POINT

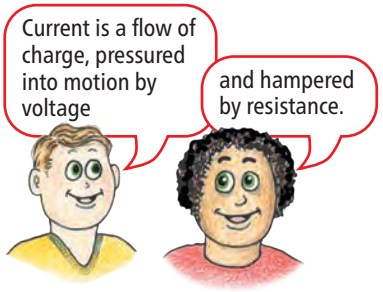
1. **How much current is drawn by a 60-Ω resistor when a voltage of 12 V is impressed across it?**
2. **What is the resistance of an electric frying pan that draws 12 A when connected to a 120-V circuit?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. 0.2 A. From Ohm's law: Current $= \frac{\text{voltage}}{\text{resistance}} = \frac{12\ \text{V}}{60\ \Omega} = 0.2\ \text{A}.$

2. 10 Ω. Rearrange Ohm's law: Resistance $= \frac{\text{voltage}}{\text{current}} = \frac{120\ \text{V}}{12\ \text{A}} = 10\ \Omega.$

Ohm's Law and Electric Shock



The damaging effects of electric shock are the result of current passing through the body. What causes electric shock in the body: current or voltage? From Ohm's law, we can see that this current depends both on the voltage that is applied and on the electrical resistance of the human body. The resistance of one's body, which depends on its condition, ranges from about 100 Ω if it is soaked with salt water to about 500,000 Ω if the skin is very dry. If we touch the two electrodes of a battery with dry fingers, completing the circuit from one hand to the other, we can expect to offer a resistance of about 100,000 Ω. We usually cannot feel the current produced by 12 V, and 24 V just barely tingles. If our skin is moist, 24 V can be quite uncomfortable. Table 23.1 lists the effects of different amounts of current on the human body.

TABLE 23.1 EFFECTS OF ELECTRIC CURRENTS ON THE BODY

Current (A)	Effect
0.001	Can be felt
0.005	Is painful
0.010	Causes involuntary muscle contractions (spasms)
0.015	Causes loss of muscle control
0.070	If through the heart, causes serious disruption; probably fatal if current lasts longer than 1 s

Many people are killed each year by current from common 120-V electric circuits. If you touch a faulty 120-V light fixture with your hand while you are standing on the ground, there is a 120-V "electrical pressure" between your hand and the ground, so the current is probably not enough to do serious harm. But if you are standing barefoot in a wet bathtub connected through its plumbing to the ground, the resistance between you and the ground is very small. Your overall resistance is so low that the 120-V potential difference may produce a harmful current in your body. Handling electrical devices while taking a bath is a definite no-no. Drops of water that collect around the on–off switches of such devices as

a hair dryer can conduct current to the user. Although distilled water is a good insulator, the ions in ordinary tap water greatly reduce the electrical resistance. These ions are the result of dissolved materials, especially salts. There is usually a layer of salt left from perspiration on your skin, which, when your skin is wet, lowers your skin resistance to a few hundred ohms or less, depending on the distance over which the voltage acts.

For you to receive a shock, there must be a *difference* in electric potential between one part of your body and another part. Most of the current will pass along the path of least electrical resistance connecting these two points. Suppose you fell from a bridge and managed to grab onto a high-voltage power line, halting your fall. So long as you touch nothing else that has a different potential, you will receive no shock at all. Even if the wire is a few thousand volts higher than ground potential and you hang by it with two hands, no appreciable charge will flow from one hand to the other. This is because there is no appreciable difference in electric potential between your hands. If, however, you reach over with one hand and grab onto a wire that has a different electric potential . . . *zap*! We have all seen birds perched on high-voltage wires. Every part of their bodies is at the same high potential as the wire, so they feel no ill effects.

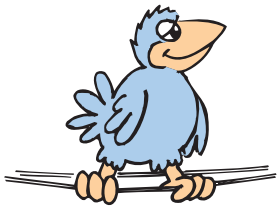


FIGURE 23.7
The bird can stand harmlessly on one wire of high potential, but it had better not reach over and grab a neighboring wire!

CHECK POINT

1. **What causes electric shock: current or voltage?**
2. **If the two feet of a bird on the high-potential wire of a power line are widely spaced, won't it get a shock?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Although electric shock occurs when current is produced in the body, impressed voltage causes the current. So in this sense, voltage causes shock.
2. No, because there is no appreciable *difference* in electric potential between its feet.

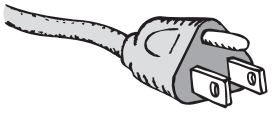


FIGURE 23.8
The round prong connects the body of the appliance directly to ground (Earth). Any charge that builds up on an appliance is therefore conducted to the ground, thereby preventing accidental shock.

Most electrical plugs and sockets are wired with three, instead of two, connectors. The principal two flat prongs on an electrical plug are for the current-carrying double wire, one part of which is "live" (energized) and the other neutral, while the round prong connects to a wire in the electrical system that is grounded—connected directly to the ground (Figure 23.8). The electrical appliance at the other end of the plug is, therefore, connected to all three wires. If the live wire of the appliance accidentally comes in contact with the metal surface of the appliance and you touch the appliance, you could receive a dangerous shock. This won't occur when the appliance casing is grounded via the ground wire, which assures that the appliance casing is always at zero ground potential.

Electric shock can overheat tissues in the body and disrupt normal nerve functions. It can upset the rhythmic electrical patterns that maintain proper heartbeat, and it can upset the nerve center that controls breathing. To rescue a shock victim, the first thing to do is locate and turn off the power source. Then do CPR until help arrives. For heart-attack victims, a properly administered electric shock can sometimes be beneficial in getting the heartbeat started again.

CHECK POINT

1. **If your body resistance is 100,000 Ω, how much current will you experience if you touch the terminals of a 12-V battery?**
2. **If your skin is very moist, so that your resistance is only 1000 Ω, and you again touch the battery terminals, how much current will you experience?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. $\text{Current} = \dfrac{\text{voltage}}{\text{resistance}} = \dfrac{12\ \text{V}}{100{,}000\ \Omega} = 0.00012\ \text{A}.$

2. $\text{Current} = \dfrac{\text{voltage}}{\text{resistance}} = \dfrac{12\ \text{V}}{1000\ \Omega} = 0.012\ \text{A}.$ Ouch!

23.5 Direct Current and Alternating Current

Electric current may be dc or ac. By *dc*, we mean **direct current,** which refers to the flowing of charges in *one direction*. A battery produces direct current in a circuit because each terminal of a battery always has the same sign: The positive terminal is always positive, and the negative terminal is always negative. Electrons move from the repelling negative terminal toward the attracting positive terminal, always moving through the circuit in the same direction. Even if the current occurs in unsteady pulses, so long as electrons move in one direction only, it is dc.

Alternating current (ac) acts as the name suggests. Electrons in the circuit are moved first in one direction and then in the opposite direction, alternating to and fro about relatively fixed positions. This is accomplished by alternating the polarity of voltage at the generator or other voltage source. Nearly all commercial ac circuits in North America involve voltages and currents that alternate back and forth at a frequency of 60 cycles per second. This is 60-hertz current. In some places, 25-hertz, 30-hertz, or 50-hertz current is used. Throughout the world, most residential and commercial circuits are ac because electric energy in the form of ac can easily be stepped up to high voltage for long-distance transmission with small heat losses, then stepped down to convenient voltages where the energy is consumed. Why this is so will be discussed in Chapter 25.

The voltage of ac in North America is normally 120 V. In the early days of electricity, higher voltages burned out the filaments of electric lightbulbs. Tradition has it that 110 V was first adopted as the standard because it made bulbs of the day glow as brightly as a gas lamp. So the hundreds of power plants built in the United States prior to 1900 produced electricity at 110 V (or 115 V or 120 V). By the time electricity became popular in Europe, engineers had figured out how to manufacture lightbulbs that would not burn out so fast at higher voltages. Power transmission is more efficient at higher voltages, so Europe adopted 220 volts as the standard. The United States continued with 110 V (today officially 120 V) because so much 110-V equipment was already installed. (Certain appliances, such as electric stoves and clothes dryers, presently use higher voltage.)

The primary use of electric current, whether dc or ac, is to transfer energy quietly, flexibly, and conveniently from one place to another.

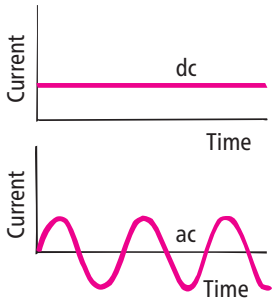


FIGURE 23.9
Time graphs of dc and ac.

In ac circuits, 120 V is the "root-mean-square" average of the voltage. The actual voltage in a 120-V ac circuit varies between −170 volts and 170 volts, delivering the same power to an iron or a toaster as a 120-V dc circuit.

CHECK POINT

If current in a wire moves in pulses, though always in the same direction, is this a mixture of dc and ac?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

No, when the flow of charge is only in one direction, the current is dc. (ac alternates in direction.)

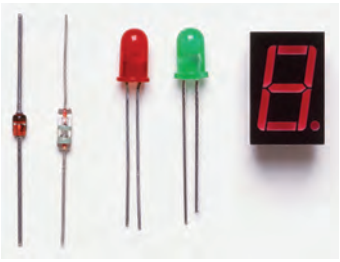


FIGURE 23.10
Diodes. As the symbol suggests, current flows in the direction of the arrow but not in the reverse direction.

Converting AC to DC

Household current is ac. The current in a battery-operated device, such as a laptop computer or smartphone, is dc. You can operate these devices on ac instead of batteries with an ac–dc converter. In addition to a transformer to lower the voltage (see Chapter 25), the converter uses a *diode*, a tiny electronic device that acts as a one-way valve to allow electron flow in one direction only (Figure 23.10). Since alternating current changes its direction each half-cycle, current passes through a diode only half of each period. The output is a rough dc, and it is off half the time. To maintain continuous current while smoothing the bumps, a capacitor is used (Figure 23.11).

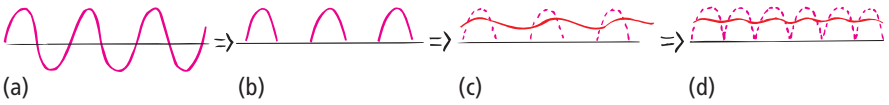


FIGURE 23.11
(a) When input to a diode is ac, (b) output is pulsating dc. (c) Slow charging and discharging of a capacitor provide continuous and smoother current. (d) In practice, a pair of diodes is used, so there are no gaps in the current output. The pair of diodes reverses the polarity of alternate half-cycles instead of eliminating them.

FIGURE 23.12
Water input to the reservoir may be in repeated spurts or pulses, but the output is a fairly smooth stream. Likewise with a capacitor.

Recall from Chapter 22 that a capacitor acts as a storage reservoir for charge. Just as it takes time to raise the water level in a reservoir when water is added, it takes time to add or remove electrons from the plates of a capacitor. A capacitor, therefore, produces a retarding effect on changes in the flow of charge. It opposes changes in voltage and smoothes the pulsed output.

23.6 Speed and Source of Electrons in a Circuit

When we flip the light switch on a wall and the circuit is completed, either ac or dc, the lamp appears to glow immediately. Current is established through the wires at nearly the speed of light. It is *not* the electrons that move at this speed.[6] Although electrons inside metal at room temperature have an average speed of a few million kilometers per hour, they make no current because they are moving in all possible directions. There is no net flow in any preferred direction. But,

[6]Much effort and expense are expended in building particle accelerators that accelerate electrons and protons to speeds near that of light. If electrons in a common circuit traveled that fast, one would only have to bend a wire at a sharp angle and electrons traveling through the wire would possess so much momentum that they would fail to make the turn and would fly off, providing a beam comparable to that produced by the accelerators!

when a battery or generator is connected, an electric field is established inside the conductor. The electrons continue their random motions while simultaneously being nudged by this field. It is the electric field that can travel through a circuit at nearly the speed of light. The conducting wire acts as a guide or "pipe" for electric field lines (Figure 23.13). In the space outside the wire, the electric field has a pattern determined by the location of the electric charges, including some charges that accumulate on the surface of the wire. Inside the wire, the electric field is directed along the wire.

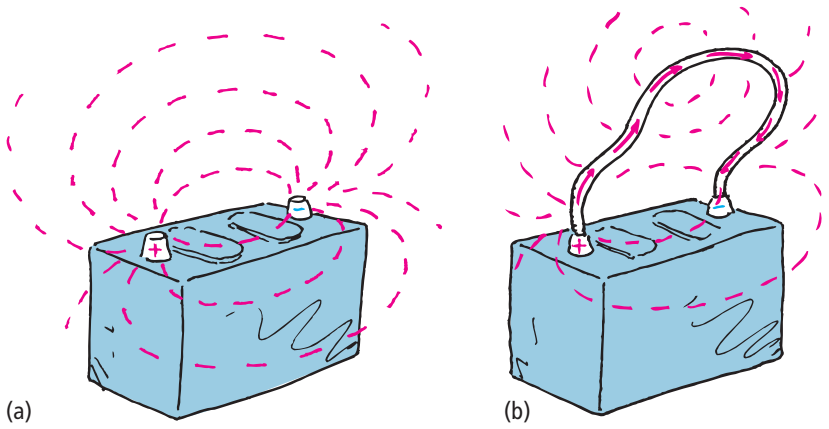


FIGURE 23.13
(a) Electric field lines run through space from the positive to the negative terminal of a battery. (b) When a thick metal wire connects the two terminals, an electric field runs through the wire, driving a current, while an electric field is also generated in the space around the wire by charge that accumulates on the wire's surface. (You won't be shocked if you touch this connecting wire, but you might be burned because the wire would likely be very hot!)

If the voltage source is dc, like the battery shown in Figure 23.13, the electric field lines are maintained in one direction in the conductor. Conduction electrons are accelerated by the field in a direction parallel to the field lines. Before they gain appreciable speed, they "bump into" the anchored metallic ions in their paths and transfer some of their kinetic energy to them. This is why current-carrying wires become hot. These collisions interrupt the motion of the electrons, so the speed at which they migrate along a wire is extremely low. This net flow of electrons is the *drift velocity*. In a typical dc circuit—the electrical system of an automobile, for example—electrons have a drift velocity that averages about a hundredth of a centimeter per second. At this rate, it would take about 3 hours for an electron to travel through 1 meter of wire! Large currents are possible because of large numbers of flowing electrons. So, although an electrical signal travels at nearly the speed of light in a wire, the electrons that move in response to this signal actually travel slower than a snail's pace.

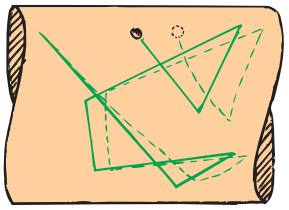


FIGURE 23.14
The solid lines suggest the random path of an electron jostling about in an atomic lattice at an average speed of about 1/200 the speed of light. The dashed lines suggest an exaggerated and idealized view of how this path is altered when an electric field is applied. The electron drifts toward the right with a *drift velocity* that is very slow.

CHECK POINT

Your classmate asserts that how fast electrons move in a wire and how far they migrate are two different but related things. How does Figure 23.14 support this assertion?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The sample electron shown in Figure 23.14 has migrated a short distance to the right in the same time it traveled the much greater green-path distances. Drift velocity and the random speeds of thermal motion are different but related concepts.

fyi

- Whereas thermal motion is measured in kilometers per second, drift velocity is measured in micrometers per second—very slow!

In an ac circuit, the conduction electrons don't progress along the wire at all. They oscillate rhythmically to and fro about relatively fixed positions, much like the coils in a vibrating Slinky remain in place as they send the pattern of

vibrations along its length. When you talk to your friend on a landline telephone, it is the *pattern* of oscillating motion that is transmitted across town at nearly the speed of light. The electrons already in the wires vibrate to the rhythm of the traveling pattern.

A common misconception regarding electric currents is that the current is propagated through the conducting wires by electrons bumping into one another—that an electrical pulse is transmitted in a manner similar to the way the pulse of a tipped domino is transferred along a row of closely spaced standing dominoes. This simply isn't true. The domino idea is a good model for the transmission of sound, but not for the transmission of electric energy. Electrons that are free to move in a conductor are accelerated by the electric field impressed upon them, not because they bump into one another. True, they do bump into one another and other atoms, but this slows them down and offers resistance to their motion. Electrons throughout the entire closed path of a circuit all react simultaneously to the electric field.

After failing more than 6000 times before perfecting the first electric lightbulb, Edison stated that his trials were not failures because he successfully discovered 6000 ways that don't work.

Another common misconception about electricity is the source of electrons. In a hardware store, you can buy a water hose that is empty of water. But you can't buy a piece of wire, an "electron pipe," that is empty of electrons. The source of electrons in a circuit is the conducting circuit material itself. Some people think that the electrical outlets in the walls of their homes are a source of electrons. They incorrectly assume that electrons flow from the power utility through the power lines and into the wall outlets of their homes. This assumption is false. The outlets in homes are ac. Electrons make no net migration through a wire in an ac circuit.

When you plug a lamp into an outlet, *energy* flows from the outlet into the lamp, not electrons. Energy is carried by the pulsating electric field and causes vibratory motion of the electrons that already exist in the lamp filament. If a voltage of 120 V is impressed on a lamp, then an average of 120 J of energy is dissipated by each coulomb of charge that is made to vibrate. Most of this electric energy appears as heat, while some transforms to light. Power utilities do not sell electrons. They sell *energy*. You supply the electrons.

So, when you are jolted by an electric shock, the electrons that make up the current in your body originate in your body. Electrons do not emerge from the wire and pass through your body and into the ground; energy does. This illustrates a much misunderstood principle: The electrons that flow in a conductor already exist in the conductor. The energy of the shock simply causes free electrons already existing in your body to vibrate in unison. Small vibrations tingle; large vibrations can be fatal.

fyi

- Thomas Edison did much more than invent a functioning incandescent bulb in 1879. He solved the problems of building the dynamos, cable systems, and connections to light New York City. He made the phone work properly, and he gave us recorded music and movies. He also invented a method of inventing: His New Jersey lab was the forerunner of the modern industrial research lab.

CHECK POINT

Consider members of a marching band standing at rest. You can set them into motion in two ways: (1) Give the last person in line a shove that cascades to the first person in line. (2) Issue the command "Forward, march." Which of these two is analogous to the way electrons move in a circuit when the switch is closed, and which is analogous to the way sound travels?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

Issuing the command "Forward, march" is analogous to the way electrons move when they sense the electric field that energizes the circuit when the switch is closed. One marcher lurching against the other is analogous to the way sound travels.

23.7 Electric Power

Unless it is in a superconductor, a charge moving in a circuit expends energy. This may result in heating the circuit or in turning a motor. The rate at which electric energy is converted into another form, such as mechanical energy, heat, or light, is called **electric power.** Electric power is equal to the product of current and voltage:[7]

$$\text{Power} = \text{current} \times \text{voltage} = IV$$

If the current is expressed in amperes and the voltage in volts, then the power is expressed in watts (W). So, in units,

$$\text{Watts} = \text{amperes} \times \text{volts}$$

The classic incandescent lightbulb shown in Figure 23.15 is rated at 100 W. This means that when operating on household 120 V it draws a current of 0.8 A (100 W = 0.8 A × 120 V).[8] Little wonder that light-emitting diodes (LEDs) have replaced incandescent bulbs in many applications.

The relationship between energy and power is a practical matter. From the definition power = energy per unit time, it follows that energy = power × time. So an energy unit can be a power unit multiplied by a time unit, such as kilowatt-hours (kWh). One kilowatt-hour is the amount of energy transferred in 1 hour at the rate of 1 kW. Therefore in a locality in which electric energy costs 15 cents per kWh, a 1000-W iron can operate for 1 hour at a cost of 15 cents. A refrigerator, typically rated at around 500 W, costs less for an hour but much more over the course of a month.

FIGURE 23.15
The power and voltage designation on the classic incandescent lightbulb reads "100 W 120 V." How many amperes will flow through the bulb?

CHECK POINT

At 15¢/kWh, what would it cost to operate a 1200-W hair dryer for 1 h?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

18¢: 1200 W = 1.2 kW, so 1.2 kW × 1 h × 15¢/kWh = 18¢.

About 95% of the energy put into an incandescent light bulb becomes heat radiation, with only about 5% as light. The now-standard LED bulbs emit a far greater fraction of the energy as light—about 35% (which varies by size and design). That's seven times more light per dollar on the monthly electricity bill. On top of that, LEDs last much longer. We can see why LEDs have replaced grandpa's incandescent bulbs (Figure 23.16).

FIGURE 23.16
The Hurrell family displays different types of LEDs.

[7]Recall, from Chapter 7, that power = work/time; 1 watt = 1 J/s. Note that the units for mechanical power and electric power check (work and energy are both measured in joules):

$$\text{Power} = \frac{\text{charge}}{\text{time}} \times \frac{\text{energy}}{\text{charge}} = \frac{\text{energy}}{\text{time}}$$

[8]Since Power = energy/time, simple rearrangement gives Energy = power × time; thus energy can be expressed in the unit kilowatt-hours (kWh). Power can also be expressed as follows: Power = I^2R (by using Ohm's law, substitution of IR for V).

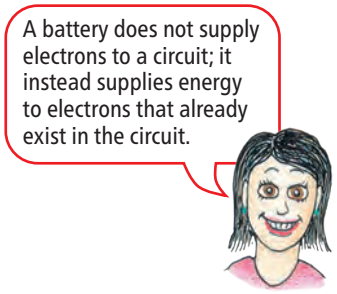
CHECK POINT

1. **When current increases in any kind of lamp, what happens to its brightness?**
2. **Why are incandescent bulbs preferred over LEDs in a chicken coop to keep chicks warm on cold nights?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Brightness increases when current (and therefore power) increases.
2. Most of the power dissipated by an incandescent bulb is in the form of heat.

23.8 Electric Circuits


A battery does not supply electrons to a circuit; it instead supplies energy to electrons that already exist in the circuit.

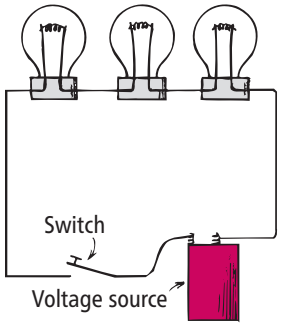
Any path along which electrons can flow is a *circuit*. For a continuous flow of electrons, there must be a complete circuit with no gaps. A gap is usually provided by an electric switch that can be opened or closed to either cut off or allow energy flow. Most circuits have more than one device that receives electric energy. These devices are commonly connected in a circuit in one of two ways, *series* or *parallel*. When connected in series, they form a single pathway for electron flow between the terminals of the battery, generator, or wall socket (which is simply an extension of these terminals). When connected in parallel, they form branches, each of which is a separate path for the flow of electrons. Both series and parallel connections have their own distinctive characteristics. We shall briefly discuss circuits that use these two types of connections.

CHECK POINT

Does electric charge flow *across* a circuit or *through* a circuit? Does voltage flow *across* a circuit or is it *impressed across* a circuit?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

Electric charge flows *through* a circuit; voltage is impressed *across* a circuit. Voltage is the electric pressure *impressed across* a circuit or across a circuit element that produces current. Voltage doesn't flow—charge does (flowing charge *is* current).



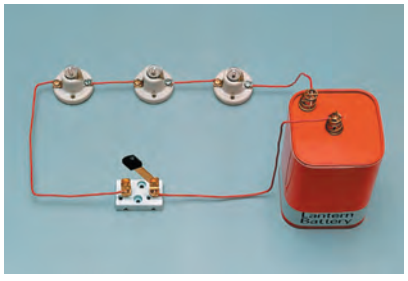


FIGURE 23.17
A simple series circuit. The 6-V battery provides 2 V across each lamp.

Series Circuits

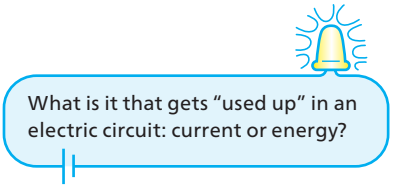
A simple **series circuit** is shown in Figure 23.17. All devices, lamps in this case, are connected end to end, forming a single path for electrons. The same current exists almost immediately in all three lamps, and also in the battery, when the switch is closed. The greater the current in a lamp, the brighter it glows. Electrons do not "pile up" in any lamp but flow *through* each lamp—simultaneously. Some electrons move away from the negative terminal of the battery, some move toward the positive terminal, and some move through the filament of each lamp. Eventually, the electrons may move all the way around the circuit (the same amount of current passes through the battery). This is the only path of the electrons through the circuit. A break anywhere in the path results in an open circuit, and the flow of electrons ceases. Burning out one of the lamp filaments or simply opening the switch could cause such a break, and all lamps go unlit.

CHECK POINT

1. **What happens to the current in other lamps if one lamp in a series circuit burns out?**
2. **What happens to the brightness of light from each lamp in a series circuit when more lamps are added to the circuit?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The circuit is broken, current ceases, and all lamps will go out.
2. Adding more lamps in series produces a greater circuit resistance. This decreases the current in the circuit. All voltages have to add up to the same total voltage, so the voltage drop across each lamp also decreases. Since power is the product of voltage and current, both these changes act to dim the lamps.



The circuit shown in Figure 23.17 illustrates the important characteristics of series connections:

1. Electric current has only a single pathway through the circuit. This means that the current passing through the resistance of each electrical device along the pathway is the same.
2. This current is resisted by the resistance of the first device, the resistance of the second, and that of the third also, so the total resistance to the current in the circuit is the sum of the individual resistances along the circuit path.
3. The current in the circuit is numerically equal to the voltage supplied by the source divided by the total resistance of the circuit. This is in accord with Ohm's law.
4. The supply voltage is equal to the sum of the individual "voltage drops" across each device. This is consistent with the total energy supplied to the circuit being equal to the sum of the energies supplied to each device.
5. The voltage drop across each device is proportional to its resistance—Ohm's law applies separately to each device. This follows from the fact that more energy is dissipated when a current passes through a large resistance than when the same current passes through a small resistance.

fyi

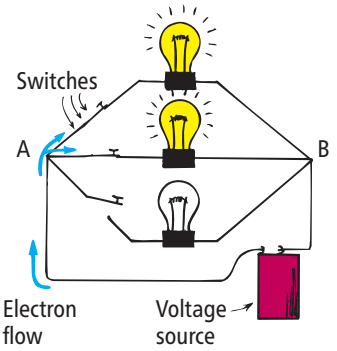
- The words *open* and *closed* as applied to a door are different when applied to electric circuits. For a door, *open* means free passage and *closed* means blockage. With electrical switches, the terms have opposite meanings: *Open* means no flow and *closed* means free passage of electrons.

It is easy to see the main disadvantage of a series circuit: If one device fails, current in the whole circuit ceases. In days of yore, Christmas tree lights were connected in series. When one bulb burned out, it was fun and games (or frustration) trying to locate which bulb to replace.

Most circuits are wired so that it is possible to operate several electrical devices, each independently of the others. In your home, for example, a lamp can be turned on or off without affecting the operation of other lamps or electrical devices. This is because these devices are connected not in series but in parallel with one another.

Parallel Circuits

A simple **parallel circuit** is shown in Figure 23.18. Three lamps are connected to the same two points, A and B. Electrical devices directly connected to the same two points of an electric circuit are said to be *connected in parallel*. The pathway for current from one terminal of the battery to the other is completed if only *one* lamp is lit. In this illustration, the circuit branches into three separate pathways from A to B. A break in any one path does not interrupt the flow of charge in the other paths. Each device operates independently of the other devices.



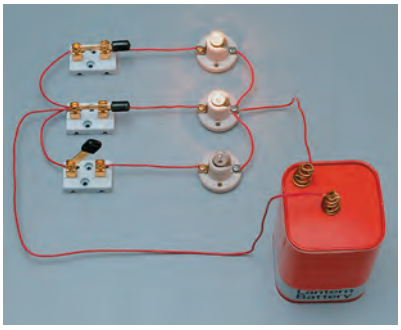


FIGURE 23.18
A simple parallel circuit. A 6-V battery provides 6 V across each lamp.

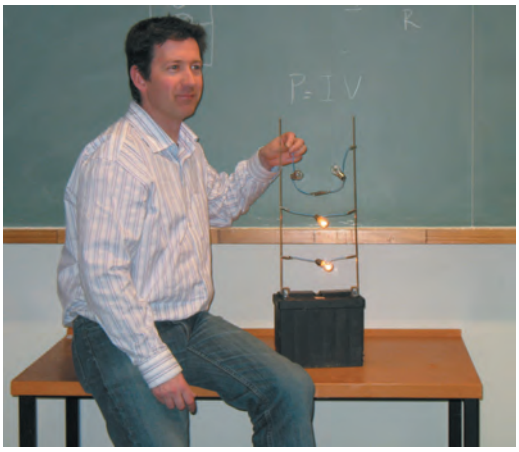


FIGURE 23.19
New Zealand physics teacher David Housden fastens identical lamps to the extended terminals of a car battery, showing equal brightness for the bottom branches. What will be the relative brightness of the two lamps in the top branch?

The circuit shown in Figure 23.18 illustrates the major characteristics of parallel connections:

1. Each device connects the same two points A and B of the circuit. The voltage is therefore the same across each device.
2. The current divides among the parallel branches. Ohm's law applies separately to each branch.
3. The total current in the circuit equals the sum of the currents in its parallel branches. This sum equals the current in the battery or other voltage source.
4. As the number of parallel branches is increased, the overall resistance of the circuit is *decreased*. The overall resistance is lowered with each added path between any two points of the circuit. This means the overall resistance of the circuit is less than the resistance of any one of the branches.

CHECK POINT

1. **A circuit consists of three lamps connected in series. If the current in one lamp is 1 A, what is the current in each of the other lamps? In the battery?**
2. **Another circuit consists of three lamps connected in parallel. If 6 V is across one lamp, what is the voltage across each of the other lamps?**
3. **What is the current in the battery of the parallel circuit if each of the three lamps carries 1 A?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. 1 A for all. Current does not "pile up" anywhere in the circuit, even in the battery, where current is 1 A.
2. 6 V. The voltages across all branches of a parallel circuit are the same.
3. 3 A. Current in the battery is the total current in the circuit, the sum of currents in each branch.

FUEL CELLS

A battery is an energy-storage device. Once its stored chemical energy is converted to electric energy, its energy is depleted. Then it must be discarded (if it is a disposable battery) or recharged with an opposite flow of electricity.

A *fuel cell*, on the other hand, converts the chemical energy of a fuel to electric energy continuously and indefinitely, as long as fuel is supplied to it. In one version, hydrogen gas reacts chemically with oxygen from the air to produce electrons and ions—and water. The ions flow internally within the cell in one direction; the electrons flow externally through an attached circuit in the other direction. Because this reaction directly converts chemical energy to electricity, it is more efficient than if the fuel were burned to produce heat, which, in turn, produces steam to turn turbines to generate electricity. The only "waste product" of such a fuel cell is pure water, suitable for drinking!

The International Space Station uses hydrogen fuel cells to meet its electrical needs. (Its hydrogen and oxygen are both brought on board in pressurized containers.) The cells also produce ample drinking water for the astronauts during long missions. Back on Earth, fuel cells power cars, buses, trains, and a variety of vehicles.

Hydrogen is the most plentiful element in the universe, and it is plentiful in our immediate surroundings, locked away in water and hydrocarbon molecules. Energy is required to separate hydrogen from molecules in which it is tightly bonded. The energy needed to make hydrogen can be supplied by conventional energy sources.

Hydrogen is, in effect, an energy-storage medium. Like electricity, it is created in one place and used in another. Hydrogen is a highly volatile gas that is difficult to store, transport, and use safely. Nevertheless, watch for wider use of fuel cells.

COMBINING RESISTORS IN A CIRCUIT

Sometimes it is useful to know the equivalent resistance of a circuit comprising several resistors. The equivalent resistance is the value of the single resistor that would impose the same load on the battery or power source. For resistors connected in series, the rule is simple: The equivalent resistance R_{eq} is the sum of the values for the individual resistors. For number of resistors n in series, then,

$$R_{eq} = R_1 + R_2 + R_3 + \cdots R_n$$

Resistances in series add because the same current has to pass through all of them in turn. For example, the equivalent resistance of the two 8-Ω resistors in series is $8\Omega + 8\Omega = 16\Omega$

The amount of current in the circuit would be the same if the pair of 8-Ω resistors were replaced with a single 16-Ω resistor. The battery wouldn't know the difference!

Resistors connected in parallel are a different story. Their equivalent resistance is *less* than their sum, because current has more than one pathway, just as more lanes on a highway impose less resistance on the flow of traffic. The equivalent resistance R_{eq} for n resistors in a parallel circuit is therefore

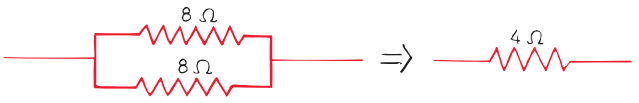
$$\frac{1}{R_{eq}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} \cdots \frac{1}{R_n}$$

For the special case of a pair of resistors in parallel, the equivalent resistance is equal to their product divided by their sum.

$$R_{eq} = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2}$$

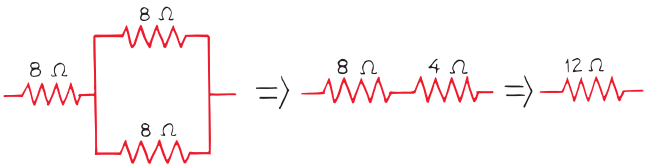
This "product-over-sum" rule applies only to pairs of resistors. The equivalent resistance of two 8-Ω resistors in parallel is

$$\frac{8\ \Omega \times 8\ \Omega}{8\ \Omega + 8\ \Omega} = \frac{64\ \Omega^2}{16\ \Omega} = 4\ \Omega$$

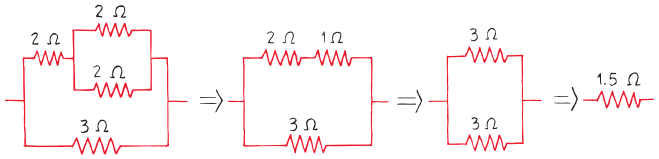


Can you see that if one of the 8-Ω resistors were instead a 2-Ω resistor, the equivalent resistance would be 1.6 Ω? Another feature of resistors in parallel is that the equivalent resistance is always less than the resistance of the smallest resistor.

Circuits may contain both series and parallel resistors. Consider the single 8-Ω resistor with a pair of 8-Ω resistors in parallel. The equivalent resistance is 12 Ω. Can you see from Ohm's law that if a 12-volt battery were connected to these resistors, the current through the circuit and the battery would be 1 ampere? (In practice it would be somewhat less, depending on the battery's internal resistance, small enough to ignore.)



Note the successive steps in the equivalent resistance of the circuit with three 2-Ω resistors and one 3-Ω resistor. In two steps, we see that the equivalent resistance of the top branch is 3 Ω, which is in parallel with the 3-Ω resistor of the lower branch. The overall equivalent resistance is 1.5 Ω.



Parallel Circuits and Overloading

Electricity inside a home is usually fed by three wires called *lines*. Two of the lines, the "hot wires," are maintained at potentials that vary with time and deliver alternating current (ac). The third wire, the "ground wire," is maintained at zero potential, and at some point is connected to ground (usually to a metal pipe that makes contact with the ground). The two hot wires, very low in resistance, feed into parallel branches connecting ceiling lights and wall outlets in each room. Lights and wall outlets are connected in parallel, so all are impressed with the same voltage, usually about 110–120 V. As more devices are plugged in and turned on, more pathways for current result in lowering of total circuit

FIGURE 23.20
Will Maynez shows identical *batteries* connected in series. Battery voltages add and the bulbs glow brightly. When he connects the batteries in parallel, bulb brightness diminishes because circuit voltage is that of a single battery—but battery lifetime is extended.

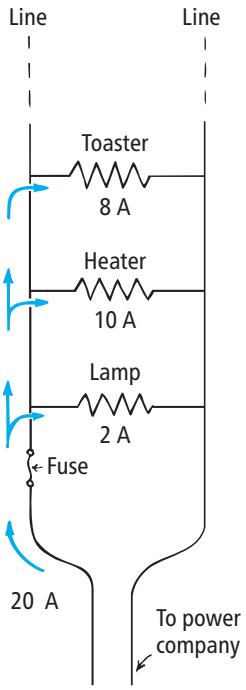


FIGURE 23.21
Circuit diagram for appliances connected to a household circuit.

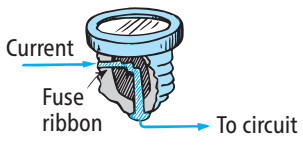


FIGURE 23.22
A safety fuse.

resistance. Therefore, a greater amount of current is drawn by the circuit. The sum of the currents in the branches equals the line current, which may be greater than is safe. The circuit is then said to be *overloaded*.

We can see how overloading occurs by considering the circuit in Figure 23.21. The supply line is connected in parallel to an electric toaster that draws 8 A, to an electric heater that draws 10 A, and to an electric lamp that draws 2 A. When only the toaster is operating and drawing 8 A, the total line current is 8 A. When the heater is also operating, the total line current increases to 18 A (8 A to the toaster and 10 A to the heater). If you turn on the lamp, the line current increases to 20 A. Connecting any more devices increases the current still more. Connecting too many devices into the same circuit overheats the wires feeding the circuit, which can cause a fire.

CHECK POINT

1. **What happens to the current in other lamps if one of the lamps in a parallel circuit burns out?**
2. **What happens to the brightness of the light from each lamp in a parallel circuit when more lamps are added in parallel?**
3. **What happens to the current in the battery when more lamps are added in parallel?**
4. **Consider the circuit of Figure 23.21. If we add a second identical lamp in parallel to the circuit, what happens to the current in the toaster? In the fuse?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. If one lamp burns out, the other lamps are unaffected. This is because current in each branch, according to Ohm's law, is equal to voltage/resistance, and since neither voltage nor resistance is affected in the other branches, the current in those branches is unaffected.
2. The brightness of each lamp is unchanged as other lamps are added (or removed).
3. The current in the battery increases by an amount that feeds the added branch(es). In the overall circuit, added paths means decreased resistance. (There is resistance in a battery also, which we assume is negligible here.)
4. The current in the toaster remains unchanged at 8 A. The current in the fuse is 20 A *plus* the current in the added lamp—a total of 22 A.

Safety Fuses

When the wiring in a circuit carries more current than is safe, it is said to be "overloaded." Overloaded wiring can become hot enough to start a fire. To prevent overloading in circuits, fuses may be connected in series along the supply line. In this way, the entire line current must pass through the fuse. The fuse shown in Figure 23.22 is constructed with a fuse ribbon that will heat and melt at a given current. If the fuse is rated at 20 A, it will pass 20 A but no more. A current greater than 20 A will melt the fuse, which "blows out" and breaks the circuit. Before a blown fuse is replaced, the cause of overloading should be determined and remedied. Often, insulation that separates the wires in a circuit

erodes and allows the wires to touch. This greatly reduces the resistance in the circuit, effectively shortening the circuit path, and is called a *short circuit*.

In modern buildings, fuses have been largely replaced by circuit breakers, which use magnets or bimetallic strips to open a switch when the current is too great. A fuse or circuit breaker that blows produces an "open circuit." An open circuit means there is no longer a complete conducting path, so no current can flow. It is as if the resistance of the circuit is infinity. Utility companies use circuit breakers to protect their lines all the way back to the generators.

FIGURE 23.23
Electrician Dave Hewitt with a safety fuse and a circuit breaker. Because circuit breakers have moving parts that can fail if not maintained, he favors the more reliable old fuses.

Chapter 23 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Potential difference The difference in electric potential between two points, measured in volts (synonymous with *voltage difference* or simply *voltage*).

Electric current The flow of electric charge that transports energy from one place to another, measured in amperes, where 1 A is the flow of 6.25×10^{18} electrons per second, or 1 coulomb per second.

Electrical resistance The property of a material that resists electric current, measured in ohms (Ω).

Ohm's law The statement that the current in a circuit varies in direct proportion to the potential difference or voltage across the circuit and inversely with the circuit's resistance:

$$\text{Current} = \frac{\text{voltage}}{\text{resistance}}$$

A potential difference of 1 V across a resistance of 1 Ω produces a current of 1 A.

Direct current (dc) Electrically charged particles flowing in one direction only.

Alternating current (ac) Electrically charged particles that repeatedly reverse direction, vibrating about relatively fixed positions. In the United States, the vibrational rate is commonly 60 Hz.

Electric power The rate of energy transfer, or the rate of doing work; the amount of energy per unit time, which can be computed as the product of current and voltage:

$$\text{Power} = \text{current} \times \text{voltage}$$

Electric power is measured in watts (or kilowatts), where $1\,\text{W} = 1\,\text{A} \times 1\,\text{V} = 1\,\text{J/s}$.

Series circuit An electric circuit in which electrical devices are connected along a single loop of wire such that the same current is in each device.

Parallel circuit An electric circuit in which electrical devices are connected in such a way that the same voltage acts across each one, and any single one completes the circuit independently of all the others.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

23.1 Flow of Charge and Electric Current

1. What condition is necessary for the flow of heat? What analogous condition is necessary for the flow of charge?
2. What condition is necessary for the sustained flow of water in a pipe? What analogous condition is necessary for the sustained flow of charge in a wire?
3. Why are *electrons,* rather than *protons,* the principal charge carriers in metal wires?
4. What exactly is an *ampere?*

23.2 Voltage Sources

5. Name two kinds of practical "electric pumps."
6. How much energy is supplied to each coulomb of charge that flows through a 12-V battery?

23.3 Electrical Resistance

7. Will water flow more easily through a wide pipe or a narrow pipe? Will current flow more easily through a thick wire or a thin wire?
8. Does heating a metal wire increase or decrease its electrical resistance?
9. Name a material commonly used for making connection wires.

23.4 Ohm's Law

10. If the voltage impressed across a circuit is held constant while the resistance doubles, what change occurs in the current?
11. If the resistance of a circuit remains constant while the voltage across the circuit decreases to half its former value, what change occurs in the current?
12. How does wetness affect the resistance of your body?
13. What is the function of the round third prong in a modern household electric plug?

23.5 Direct Current and Alternating Current

14. Does a battery produce dc or ac? Does the generator at a power station produce dc or ac?
15. What is meant by saying that a certain current is 60 Hz?
16. What property of a diode enables it to convert ac to pulsed dc?
17. A diode converts ac to pulsed dc. What electrical device smoothes the pulsed dc to a smoother dc?

23.6 Speed and Source of Electrons in a Circuit

18. What is the error in saying that electrons in a common battery-driven circuit travel at about the speed of light?
19. What is meant by *drift velocity?*
20. A tipped domino sends a pulse along a row of standing dominoes. Is this a good analogy for the way electric current, sound, or both travel?
21. What is the error in saying the source of electrons in a circuit is the battery or generator?
22. When you make your monthly household electric payment, which of the following are you billed for: voltage, current, power, energy?
23. From where do the electrons originate that produce an electric shock when you touch a charged conductor?

23.7 Electric Power

24. An electric bulb is labeled "100 W, 250 V." What information does this convey?
25. Which of these is a unit of power and which is a unit of energy—a watt, a kilowatt, a kilowatt-hour?

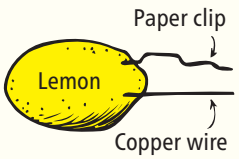
23.8 Electric Circuits

26. In a circuit of two lamps in series, if the current through one lamp is 1 A, what is the current through the other lamp?
27. If a voltage of 6 V is impressed across the circuit in the preceding question and the voltage across the first lamp is 2 V, what is the voltage across the second lamp?
28. In a circuit of two lamps in parallel, if there is a voltage of 6 V across one lamp, what is the voltage across the other lamp?
29. How does the sum of the currents through the branches of a simple parallel circuit compare with the current in the voltage source?
30. What is the function of fuses or circuit breakers in a circuit?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. An electric cell is made by placing two plates made of different materials that have different affinities for electrons in a conducting solution. The voltage of a cell depends on the materials used and the solutions they are placed in, not on the size of the plates. (A cell is often called a battery, but strictly speaking, a battery is a series of cells—for instance, six cells in a 12-V car battery.) You can make a simple 1.5-V cell by placing a strip of copper and a strip of zinc in a tumbler of saltwater.

    An easy cell to construct is the citrus cell. Stick a straightened paper clip and a piece of copper wire into a lemon. Hold the ends of the wire close together, but not touching, and place the ends on your tongue. The slight tingle you feel and the metallic taste you experience result from a slight electric current from the citrus cell through the wires when your moist tongue closes the circuit.



32. Send a message to Grandma and convince her that whatever electric shocks she may have received over the years have been due to the movement of electrons already in her body—not electrons from somewhere else.

PLUG AND CHUG (EQUATION FAMILIARIZATION)

$$\textit{Ohm's Law: } I = \frac{V}{R}$$

33. A toaster has a heating element of 15 Ω and is connected to a 120-V outlet. Show that the current drawn by the toaster is 8 A.
34. Calculate the resistance of a copper wire of 1-cm length, 1-mm radius, and 1.72×10^{-8} Ωm resistivity.
35. An electric bulb draws a current of 1.5 A at 6.0 V. Find the resistance of the filament of the bulb when glowing.

$$\textit{Power} = I \times V$$

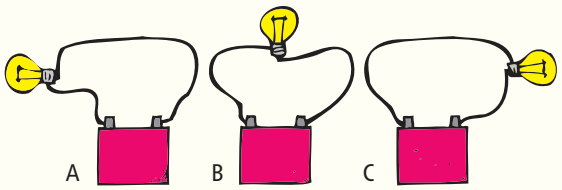
36. A 40-W bulb is used for 12.5 hours every day for 30 days. Calculate the consumption of electrical energy.
37. Calculate the power of a hair dryer that operates on 120 V and draws a current of 10 A.

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

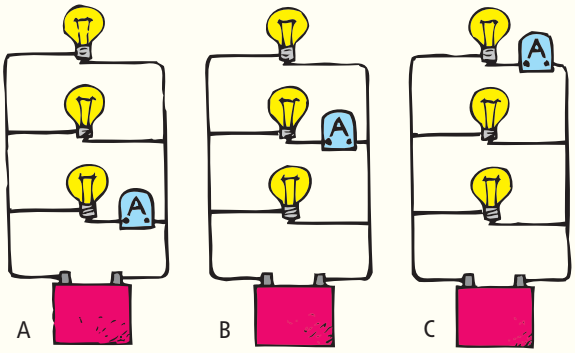
38. What happens to the resistance of a metal wire if its radius is halved?
39. An electric bulb is connected to 120 V through which a current of 0.625 A flows. Calculate the power of that electric bulb.
40. Rearrange the equation, current = voltage/resistance, to express voltage in terms of current and resistance. Then, solve the following: a certain device has a resistance of 10Ω where 11 A of current passes through the circuit. What is the voltage to which the device has been connected?
41. Using the formula, power = current × voltage, find the current drawn by a 1500-W microwave oven connected to 120 V. Then, following the expression used in the previous question calculate the resistance of the microwave oven.
42. The rating '*ampere-hours*' is commonly used to label automobile batteries, indicating the total amperes of current that it can supply for an hour. A typical 12-V battery has a rating of 60 ampere-hours (60 A for 1 h, 30 A for 2 h, and so on). Suppose that you forgot to turn the headlamps off in your parked car. If each of the two headlamps draws 2.5 A, how long will the car battery survive?
43. An electric heater is connected to a 120-V source that extracts 10 A of current. Calculate the amount of heat it will produce in 5 minutes.
44. Calculate the amount of charge that flows in one minute through the electric heater from the previous problem.
45. Suppose a 1200-W toaster draws 10 A current when connected to 120 V. During peak hours, the power company lowers the voltage to 110 V. By how much does the current decrease? By how much does the power decrease? (Note: The 1200-W label is designated for 120 V. When the voltage is lowered, the current also gets lowered, so the power output of the toaster's heating coils drops, which lowers the resistance. However, for this problem assume the change in resistance is negligible.)
46. What is the equivalent resistance of a pair of 8-Ω and 4-Ω resistors when connected in (a) series; (b) in parallel? When each combination is impressed with 12 volts, how much current is in each?

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

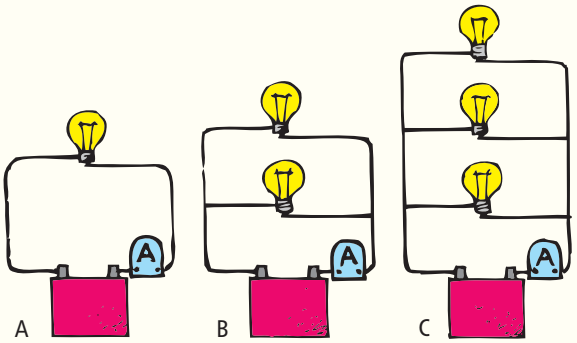
47. Rank the circuits illustrated according to the brightness of the identical bulbs, from brightest to dimmest.



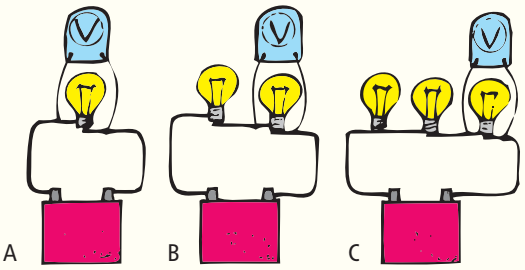
48. The bulbs shown are identical. An ammeter is placed in different locations, as shown. Rank the current readings in the ammeter from greatest to least.



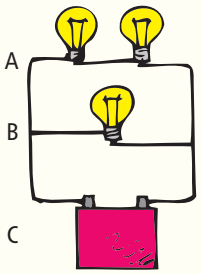
49. All bulbs are identical in the circuits shown. An ammeter is connected next to the battery, as shown. Rank the current readings in the ammeter, from greatest to least.



50. All bulbs are identical in the following circuits. A voltmeter is connected across a single bulb to measure the voltage drop across it. Rank the voltage readings from greatest to least.

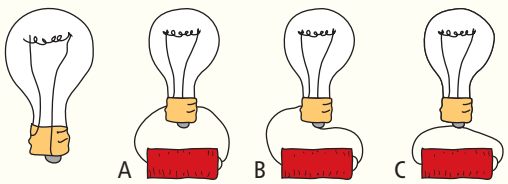


51. Consider the three parts of the circuit: A, the top branch with two bulbs; B, the middle branch with one bulb; C, the battery.
    (a) Rank the current through each from greatest to least.
    (b) Rank the voltage across each from greatest to least.

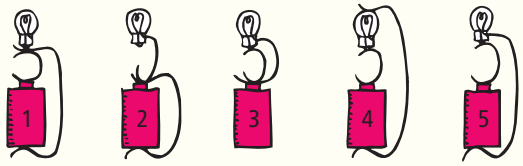


THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

52. (a) Consider a water pipe that branches into two smaller pipes. If 10 gallons per minute flows in the main pipe and 4 gallons per minute in one of the branches, how much water per minute flows in the other branch? (b) Consider a circuit with a main wire that branches into two other wires. If the current is 10 A in the main wire and 4 A in one of the branches, how much current is in the other branch?
53. One example of a water system is a garden hose that waters a garden. Another is the cooling system of an automobile. Which of these exhibits behavior more analogous to an electric circuit? Explain.
54. What happens to the brightness of light emitted by a light bulb when (a) the current flowing through it increases? and (b) the current flowing through it decreases?
55. The circuit within an incandescent lamp is shown. Which of the battery arrangements will light the lamp?



56. Your friend A says that a battery supplies electrons to the electric circuit, and another friend B says that the battery creates an electric field in the circuit. Whose view is correct?
57. How much energy is supplied to each coulomb of charge passing through a 5-V battery?
58. Can you consider current-carrying wires as vectors since they possess both direction and magnitude? Justify your answer.
59. The power labeled on an electric toaster is 12,000-W and on an electric kettle is 10,000-W. Which one will draw more current when both are connected to a 120 V source?
60. Between current and voltage, which controls the other?
61. In which of the circuits shown does a current exist to light the bulb?

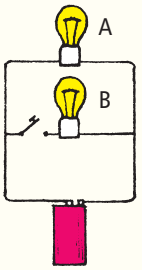


62. There are two 5V and 10V batteries connected to two different circuits. Which battery will cause more current flow in the circuit? Do electrons get lost to light a bulb where the loss of electrons appears as light energy?
63. What makes an ordinary battery dead after use?
64. Suppose you leave your car lights on while at a movie. When you return, your battery is too "weak" to start your car. A friend gives you a jump-start with his battery and battery cables. What physics is occurring here?
65. 100 bulbs are connected in series, and one bulb gets fused. What will be the consequence, and how one can resolve the issue?

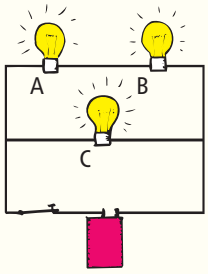
66. An electron moving in a wire collides repeatedly with atoms and travels an average distance between collisions called the *mean free path*. If the mean free path is less in some metals, what can you say about the resistance of these metals? For a given conductor, what can be done to lengthen the mean free path?
67. What causes electric shock: current or voltage? Explain.
68. If a current of one- or two-tenths of an ampere were to flow into one of your hands and out the other, you would probably be electrocuted. But if the same current were to flow into your hand and out the elbow above the same hand, you would survive even though the current might be large enough to burn your flesh. Explain.
69. Would you expect to find dc or ac in the filament of a light-bulb in your home? In the headlamp of an automobile?
70. Are automobile headlamps wired in parallel or in series? What is your evidence?
71. Give a real-life example to discuss series and parallel connections.
72. What unit signifies (a) volt per ampere, (b) volt per ohm, and (c) ampere-volt?
73. Between current and voltage, which is the same for a 10-Ω and a 20-Ω resistor in series in a series circuit?
74. Between current and voltage, which is the same for a 10-Ω and a 20-Ω resistor in parallel in a parallel circuit?
75. Comment on the warning sign shown in the sketch.

76. The damaging effects of electric shock result from the amount of current that flows in the body. Why, then, do we see signs that read "Danger—High Voltage" rather than "Danger—High Current"?
77. Is the following label on a household product cause for concern? "Caution: This product contains tiny, electrically charged particles moving at speeds in excess of 100,000,000 kilometers per hour."

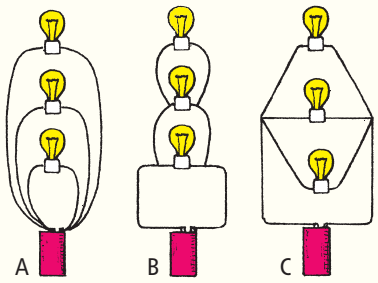
78. Which will do less damage: plugging a 110-V hairdryer into a 220-V circuit or a 220-V hairdryer into a 110-V circuit? Defend your answer.
79. Why can birds perch safely on high voltage power cables?
80. Is it possible to estimate the number of electrons delivered to your home by the power company if you read your electric meter or look at the bill amount?
81. If electrons flow very slowly through a circuit, why does it not take a noticeably long time for a lamp to glow when you turn on a distant switch?
82. Why is the speed of an electric signal so much greater than the speed of sound?
83. Consider a pair of flashlight bulbs connected to a battery. Will they glow brighter if they are connected in series or in parallel? Will the battery run down faster if they are connected in series or in parallel?
84. What happens to the brightness of Bulb A when the switch is closed and Bulb B lights up?



85. In the circuit shown, how do the brightnesses of the identical lightbulbs compare? Which bulb draws the most current? What will happen if Bulb A is disconnected? If Bulb C is disconnected?

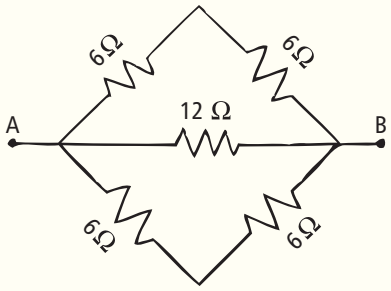


86. Let's say you have ten 50-W bulbs. To get maximum light, how will you connect those bulbs, in series or parallel to the source?
87. In houses, are appliances mostly connected in series or in parallel? Discuss your answer.
88. In a flashlight that uses multiple batteries, are the batteries arranged in parallel or in series?
89. When two identical resistors are connected in parallel, which of the following is the same for both resistors: (a) voltage across each, (b) power dissipated in each, (c) current through each? Do any of your answers change if the resistors are different from each other?
90. Suggest how you can connect an ammeter that measures current and a voltmeter that measures voltage in a circuit.
91. Are these three circuits equivalent to one another? Why or why not?

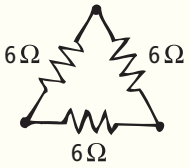


THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

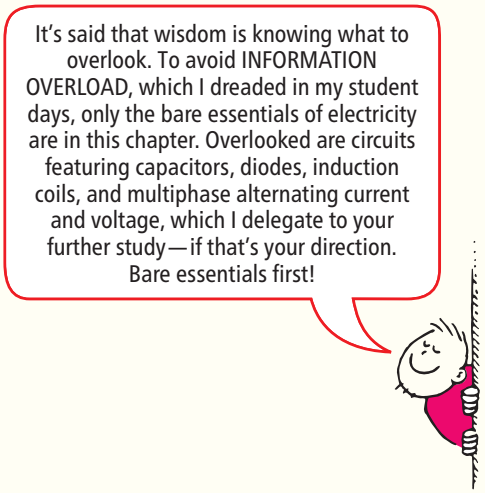
92. A car's headlights dissipate 40 W on low beam and 50 W on high beam. In which setting, high or low beam, is there less resistance in the lamp filament?
93. Explain how an electric fuse prevents electric circuits from getting damaged by excessive flow of current.
94. Suppose you have pair of resistors. How can you connect them so that the total resistance will: (a) decrease and (b) increase from the individual resistance?
95. You have three resistors with resistances 10-Ω, 12-Ω, and 50-Ω, which are connected in series in an electric circuit. If your friend says the net resistance will be the average of the three, i.e., 24 Ω, would you agree with them?
96. You have three resistors with resistances 20-Ω, 20-Ω, and 40-Ω, which are connected in parallel in an electric circuit. If your friend suggests the equivalent resistance of the three connected in parallel is 8-Ω, would you agree with them?
97. Your friend possesses 10-Ω resistors. They require a 50-Ω resistor in a circuit. How are they going to manage this situation?
98. Your friend needs a 10-Ω resistor, but only has 40-Ω ones. How can he combine them to produce an equivalent resistance of 10 Ω?
99. (a) What single resistor would be equivalent to the resistors in this arrangement? (b) If 24 volts were applied across points A and B, how much current would there be in the circuit? (c) How much current in the 12-ohm resistor?



100. Three 6-ohm resistors are arranged in a triangle as shown. A voltage source of 12-volts is impressed across one of the resistors.



(a) How much current is in that resistor?
(b) How much current is in each of the other two resistors?
(c) How much current is in the voltage source?
(d) What is the equivalent resistance of the circuit (what single resistor connected to the voltage source could replace the three resistors)?


It's said that wisdom is knowing what to overlook. To avoid INFORMATION OVERLOAD, which I dreaded in my student days, only the bare essentials of electricity are in this chapter. Overlooked are circuits featuring capacitors, diodes, induction coils, and multiphase alternating current and voltage, which I delegate to your further study—if that's your direction. Bare essentials first!

CHAPTER TWENTY THREE Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. Which of these statements is correct?
   (a) Charge flows in a circuit.
   (b) Voltage flows in a circuit.
   (c) A battery is a source of electrons in a circuit.
   (d) None of these.
2. If the current in a lamp is 3 A, the current in the connecting wire is
   (a) less than 3 A.
   (b) 3 A.
   (c) more than 3 A.
   (d) zero.
3. The battery of your smartphone operates on
   (a) dc.
   (b) ac.
   (c) Both
   (d) Neither
4. When you flip a light switch what exactly travels from the switch to the lamps?
   (a) The flow of electrons
   (b) An electric field
   (c) Voltage
   (d) All of the above
5. When you double the voltage in a simple electric circuit, you double
   (a) the current.
   (b) the resistance.
   (c) both the current and the resistance.
   (d) neither the current nor the resistance.
6. In a simple circuit consisting of a single lamp and a single battery, when the current in the lamp is 2 A, the current in the battery is
   (a) 1 A.
   (b) 2 A.
   (c) dependent on the internal battery resistance.
   (d) More information is needed.
7. Consider a pair of identical lamps connected to a battery. They will glow brighter when connected in
   (a) series.
   (b) parallel.
   (c) either in some cases.
   (d) More information is needed.
8. The amount of energy given to each coulomb of charge flowing from a 6-V battery is
   (a) less than 6 joules.
   (b) 6 joules.
   (c) more than 6 joules.
   (d) More information is needed.
9. In a circuit with two lamps in parallel, if the current in one lamp is 2 A, the current in the battery is
   (a) 1 A.
   (b) 2 A.
   (c) greater than 2 A.
   (d) None of these
10. If both the current and the voltage in a circuit are doubled, the power
    (a) remains unchanged if the resistance is constant.
    (b) is halved.
    (c) is doubled.
    (d) is quadrupled.

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (a): Of the choices, only charge flows. Charge flows through a battery and the wiring connected to it. Voltage is established across end points in a circuit and creates the electric potential difference that produces the flow of charge. **2. (b):** The same! Current doesn't bunch up. It flows from a wire into a lamp and flows out the other side. Current is more evident in the lamp resistance than in the connecting wires. Current in equals current out. **3. (a):** A smartphone is powered by a battery that supplies a steady flow of direct current, dc. **4. (b):** The signal carried in the electric field travels from the switch to the lamps. Not the electrons themselves, which travel at a snail's pace—the drift velocity. It is the signal that travels at nearly the speed of light, which is carried in an electric field. Voltage is impressed like pressure. Unlike current, voltage doesn't travel. **5. (a):** This tests knowledge of Ohm's law. A simple reading of $I = V/R$ says the same change that occurs for voltage also occurs for current. If V is doubled, I is doubled. Doubling V does not double R. Current is directly proportional to the voltage, while the resistance is inversely proportional. **6. (b):** The current is the same in both. So 2A in the battery means 2A in the connected circuit, choice (b). Although the amount of current may depend on the internal battery resistance, the 2 A of current in the battery is nevertheless the same as in the circuit. **7. (b):** Each identical bulb that is connected in parallel to the battery is impressed with the full battery voltage, which produces full brightness. But when connected in series, the battery voltage is divided amongst each bulb, and each glows dimmer. Adding bulbs in parallel doesn't change the brightness of each bulb. When bulbs are added in series, bulbs become dimmer. **8. (b):** Voltage is defined in terms of the amount of energy per charge. Six volts is six joules per coulomb, not more than or less than. **9. (c):** The current in the battery of a parallel circuit is equal to the sum of the currents in the branches. We know the current in one lamp is 2 A, which means the current in the battery must be at least 2 A. Whatever current is in the second lamp *adds* to the 2 A already in the battery, which means the correct choice is (c). **10. (d):** This tests knowledge of $P = IV$, pure and simple. Reading the equation, twice I and twice V means four times the power, choice (d).

CHAPTER TWENTY FOUR

24 Magnetism

24.1 Magnetism

24.2 Magnetic Poles

24.3 Magnetic Fields

24.4 Magnetic Domains

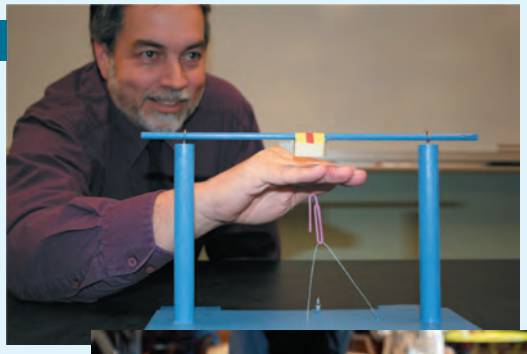
24.5 Electric Currents and Magnetic Fields

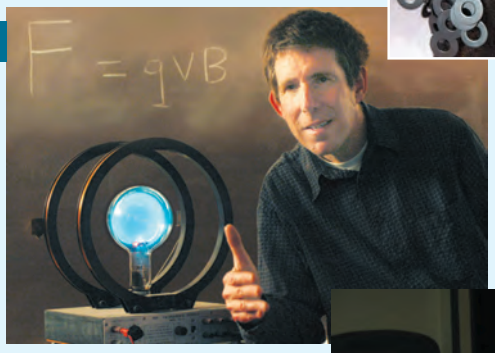
24.6 Electromagnets
- Superconducting Electromagnets

24.7 Magnetic Forces
- On Moving Charged Particles
- On Current-Carrying Wires
- Electric Meters
- Electric Motors

24.8 Earth's Magnetic Field
- Cosmic Rays

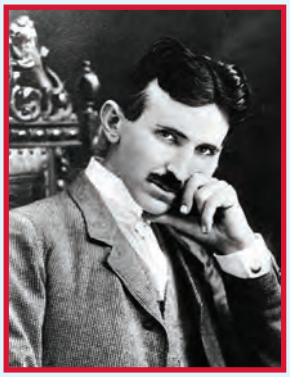
24.9 Biomagnetism





1 Fred Myers shows that the magnetic field of a ceramic magnet penetrates flesh and the plastic coating on the upwardly attracted pink paper clip. **2** Kids enjoy inducing magnetism in iron washers when fiddling with a strong magnet at the Exploratorium. Note in the inset how iron washers become magnetized and induce others to be magnetized. **3** Ken Ganezer shows the bluish-green glow of electrons circling the magnetic field lines inside a Thomson tube. **4** William Davis, like most youngsters, is fascinated with magnets.

During the time when whale oil was being used to light lamps and electric lighting was making its debut, a pressing question was what form of energy would power electric lighting. The person who best answered that question was Nikola Tesla, an ethnic Serb who emigrated to America from the Austrian Empire in 1884.



Tesla, an electrical engineer, was a prolific inventor and a genius who spoke seven languages. When he came to America he had little besides a letter of recommendation from his former employer to Thomas Edison. The letter was brief: "I know two great men, one is you and the other is this young man." Edison hired Tesla to work for his Edison Machine Works. Tesla was soon solving the company's most difficult problems. He worked day and night redesigning Edison's inefficient motors and generators, thinking that he was promised a handsome bonus if he was successful. When the bonus didn't materialize, Tesla quit. He then found himself digging ditches for a short period of time—ironically, for Edison's company.

The major dispute between Tesla and Edison was about whether electric power should be carried by direct current or alternating current. Edison championed direct current, which didn't carry well over long distances. Tesla's alternating current did. Edison was furious with Tesla and aggressively campaigned against Tesla's alternating current. The two remained bitter antagonists throughout their lifetimes. But Tesla prevailed and formed his own company, which led to many patents that helped power modern cities and industry. Tesla was repeatedly honored and hailed as the patron saint of modern electricity.

In 1888 Tesla teamed up with George Westinghouse, and together they harnessed the energy of Niagara Falls to light up the nearby city of Buffalo. For sending electricity over longer distances, Westinghouse perfected a device called a transformer (see Chapter 25). Power from Niagara Falls soon reached New York City and beyond. The efforts of Tesla and Westinghouse truly lit up the world.

24.1 Magnetism

Youngsters are fascinated with magnets, largely because they act at a distance. They act at a distance even when your hand is between them, as Fred Myers shows in the first chapter-opening photo. Likewise, a neurosurgeon can guide a pellet through brain tissue to inoperable tumors, pull a catheter into position, or implant electrodes while doing little harm to brain tissue. The use of magnets grows daily.

The term *magnetism* comes from the name Magnesia, a coastal district of ancient Thessaly in Greece, where unusual stones were found by the Greeks more than 2000 years ago. These stones, called *lodestones*, had the intriguing property of attracting pieces of iron. Magnets were first fashioned into compasses and used for navigation by the Chinese in the 12th century.

In the 16th century, William Gilbert, Queen Elizabeth's physician, made artificial magnets by rubbing pieces of iron against lodestone, and he suggested that a compass always points north and south because Earth has magnetic properties. Later, in 1750, John Michell, an English physicist and astronomer, found that magnetic forces decrease with distance from magnetic sources, and his results were confirmed by Charles Coulomb. The subjects of magnetism and electricity developed almost independently of each other until 1820, when a Danish physicist named Hans Christian Oersted discovered, in a classroom demonstration, that an electric current affects a magnetic compass.[1] He also saw confirming evidence that magnetism was related to electricity. Shortly thereafter, the French physicist Andre Marie Ampere proposed that electric currents are the source of all magnetic phenomena.

[1]We can only speculate about how often such relationships become evident when they "aren't supposed to" and are dismissed as "something wrong with the apparatus." Oersted, however, had the insight—characteristic of a good scientist—to see that nature was revealing another of its secrets.

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

There's much bunk about magnetism—hence the need for a *knowledge filter* to tell the difference between what's true and what's not. The best knowledge filter ever invented is science.

Certitude has no place in science. Scientists understand that all knowledge is tentative and subject to revision. How many of the crimes and cruelties in history have been perpetrated by people who were certain they knew the truth?

In Chapter 22, we discussed the forces that electrically charged particles exert on one another: The electric force between any two charged particles depends on the magnitude of the charge on each and their distance of separation, as specified in Coulomb's law. But Coulomb's law is not the whole story when the charged particles are moving with respect to each other. The force between electrically charged particles depends also, in a complicated way, on their motion. We find that, in addition to *electric force*, there is a force due to the motion of the charged particles that we call **magnetic force.** The source of magnetic force is the motion of charged particles, usually electrons. Both electrical and magnetic forces are actually different aspects of the same phenomenon of electromagnetism.

CHECK POINT

Do both electrical forces and magnetic forces depend on motion?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Only the magnetic force requires motion. Read on.

24.2 Magnetic Poles

The forces that magnets exert on one another are similar to electrical forces because both can attract and repel without touching, depending on which ends of the magnets are held near one another. Also like electrical forces, the strength of their interaction depends on the separation distance between the two magnets. Whereas electric charge is responsible for electrical forces, regions called *magnetic poles* give rise to magnetic forces.

If you suspend a bar magnet at its center by a piece of string, you'll have a compass. One end, called the *north-seeking pole*, points northward, and the opposite end, called the *south-seeking pole*, points southward. More simply, these are called the *north* and *south poles*. All magnets have both a north and a south pole (some have more than one of each). Common refrigerator magnets have narrow strips of alternating north and south poles. These magnets are strong enough to hold sheets of paper against a refrigerator door, but they have a very short range because the north and south poles are close together and cancel at short distances. In a simple bar magnet, a single north pole and a single south pole are located at opposite ends. A common horseshoe magnet is simply a bar magnet that has been bent into a U shape. Its poles are also at its two ends (Figure 24.1).

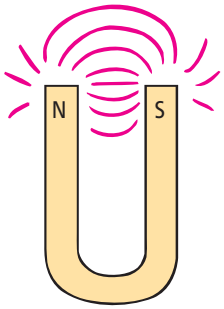


FIGURE 24.1
A horseshoe magnet.

When the north pole of one magnet is brought near the north pole of another magnet, they repel.[2] The same is true of a south pole near a south pole. If opposite poles are brought together, however, they attract. We find that

Like poles repel each other; opposite poles attract.

This rule is similar to the rule for the forces between electric charges, where like charges repel each other and unlike charges attract. But there is a very important difference between magnetic poles and electric charges. Whereas electric charges can be isolated, magnetic poles cannot. Negatively charged electrons and positively charged protons are entities by themselves. A cluster of electrons need not be accompanied by a cluster of protons, and vice versa. But a north magnetic pole never exists without the presence of a south pole, and vice versa.

If you're into refrigerator magnets, bring one along when shopping for a new frig. Refrigerators are made of two types of stainless steel. Ferritic (root word ferrous!) stainless steel has a higher iron content and will be more accepting of refrigerator magnets. The stronger and more expensive austenitic stainless steel uses alloys, which sadly, are unfriendly to refrigerator magnets.

[2]The force of interaction between magnetic poles is given by $F \sim \frac{p_1 p_2}{d^2}$, where p_1 and p_2 represent the magnetic pole strengths and d represents the separation distance between the poles. Note the similarity of this relationship to Coulomb's law.

If you break a bar magnet in half, each half still behaves as a complete magnet. Break the pieces in half again, and you have four complete magnets. You can continue breaking the pieces in half and never isolate a single pole.[3] Even when your piece is one atom thick, there are two poles, which suggests that atoms themselves are magnets.

CHECK POINT

Does every magnet necessarily have a north and a south pole?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes, just as every coin has two sides, a "head" and a "tail." Some "trick" magnets have more than one pair of poles, but, nevertheless, poles always occur in pairs.

24.3 Magnetic Fields

If you sprinkle some iron filings on a sheet of paper placed on a magnet, you'll see that the filings trace out an orderly pattern of lines that surround the magnet. The space around the magnet contains a **magnetic field.** The shape of the field is revealed by the filings, which align with the magnetic field lines that spread out from one pole and return to the other.

The direction of the field outside a magnet is from the north pole to the south pole. Where the lines are closer together, the field is stronger. The concentrations of iron filings at the poles of the magnet in Figure 24.2 show that the magnetic field strength is greater there. If we place another magnet or a small compass anywhere in the field, its poles line up with the magnetic field.

Magnetism is very much related to electricity. Just as an electric charge is surrounded by an electric field, the same charge is also surrounded by a magnetic field if it is moving. This magnetic field is due to the "distortions" in the electric field caused by motion and was explained by Albert Einstein in 1905 in his special theory of relativity. We won't go into the details except to acknowledge that a magnetic field is a relativistic by-product of the electric field. Charged particles in motion have associated with them both an electric field and a magnetic field. A magnetic field is produced by the motion of electric charge.[4]

If the motion of electric charges produces magnetism, where is this motion in a common bar magnet? The answer is: in the electrons of the atoms that make up the magnet. These electrons are in constant motion. Two kinds of electron motion contribute to magnetism: electron revolution and electron spin. Electrons behave as if they revolve about the atomic nucleus and spin about their own axes like tops. In most common magnets, electron spin is the chief contributor to magnetism.

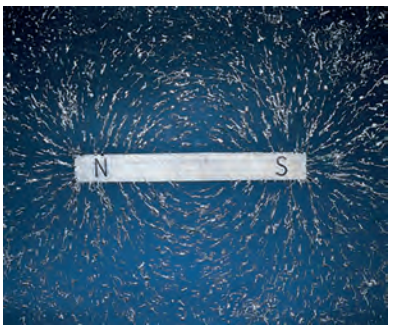


FIGURE 24.2
Top view of iron filings sprinkled around a magnet tracing a pattern of magnetic field lines. Interestingly, the magnetic field lines continue inside the magnet (not revealed by the filings) and form closed loops.

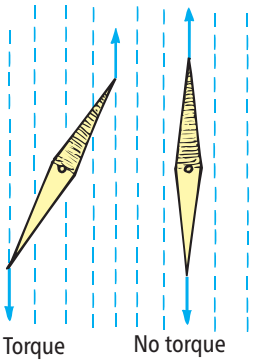
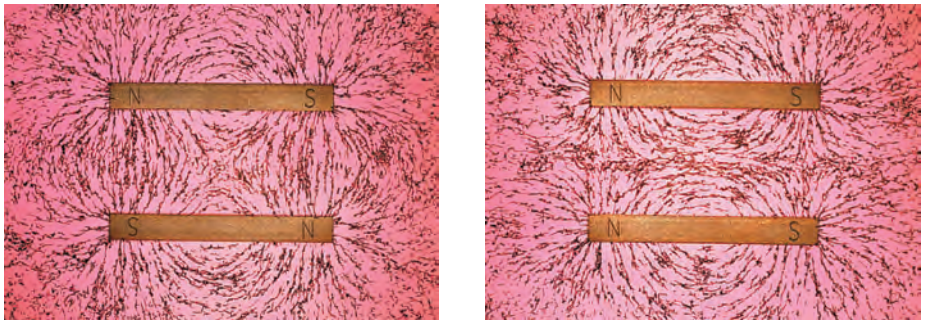


FIGURE 24.3
When the compass needle is not aligned with the magnetic field (left), the oppositely directed forces on the needle produce a pair of torques (called a *couple*) that twist the needle into alignment (right).

[3]Theoretical physicists have speculated for more than 75 years about the possible existence of discrete magnetic "charges," called magnetic monopoles. These tiny particles would carry either a single north or a single south magnetic pole and would be the counterparts to the positive and negative charges in electricity. Various attempts have been made to find monopoles, but none has proved successful. All known magnets always have at least one north pole and one south pole.

[4]Interestingly, since motion is relative, the magnetic field is relative. For example, when a charge moves by you, there is a definite magnetic field associated with the moving charge. But if you move along with the charge so that there is no motion relative to you, you'll find no magnetic field associated with the charge. Magnetism is relativistic. In fact, it was Albert Einstein who first explained this when he published his first paper on special relativity, "On the Electrodynamics of Moving Bodies." (More on relativity in Chapters 35 and 36.)

Every spinning electron is a tiny magnet. A pair of electrons spinning in the same direction make up a stronger magnet. A pair of electrons spinning in opposite directions, however, work against each other. The magnetic fields cancel. This is why most substances are not magnets. In most atoms, the various fields cancel one another because the electrons spin in opposite directions. But in such materials as iron, nickel, and cobalt the fields do not cancel one another entirely. Each iron atom has four electrons whose spin magnetism is not canceled. Thus, each iron atom is a tiny magnet. The same is true, to a lesser extent, for the atoms of nickel and cobalt. Most common magnets are made from alloys containing iron, nickel, and cobalt in various proportions.[5]



(a) (b)

FIGURE 24.4
The magnetic field patterns for a pair of magnets. (a) Opposite poles are nearest each other, and (b) like poles are nearest each other.

CHECK POINT

The source of a gravitational field is mass. The source of an electrical field is electric charge. What is the source of a magnetic field?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The source of a magnetic field is moving electric charges, predominantly electrons that revolve, or spin, or travel through conductors. The motion of electric charge produces magnetism.

FIGURE 24.5
A microscopic view of magnetic domains in a crystal of iron. The blue arrows pointing in different directions tell us that these domains are not aligned.

24.4 Magnetic Domains

The magnetic field of an individual iron atom is so strong that interactions among adjacent atoms cause large clusters of them to line up with one another. These clusters of aligned atoms are called **magnetic domains.** Each domain is made up of billions of aligned atoms. The domains are microscopic (Figure 24.5), and there are many of them in a crystal of iron. Like the alignment of iron atoms within domains, domains themselves can align with one another.

[5]Electron spin contributes virtually all of the magnetic properties in magnets made from alloys containing iron, nickel, cobalt, and aluminum. In the rare earth metals such as gadolinium, the orbital motion is more significant.

Not every piece of iron, however, is a magnet. This is because the domains in ordinary iron are not aligned. Consider a common iron nail: The domains in the nail are randomly oriented. Many of them are induced into alignment, however, when a magnet is brought nearby. (It is interesting to listen with an amplified stethoscope to the clickity-clack of domains undergoing alignment in a piece of iron when a strong magnet approaches.) The domains align themselves much as electric charges in a piece of paper align themselves in the presence of an electrically charged rod. When you move the nail away from the magnet, ordinary thermal motion causes most or all of the domains in the nail to return to a random arrangement. If the field of the permanent magnet is very strong, however, the nail may retain some permanent magnetism of its own after the two are separated.

Permanent magnets are made by simply placing pieces of iron or certain iron alloys in strong magnetic fields. Alloys of iron differ; soft iron is easier to magnetize than steel. It helps to tap the iron to nudge any stubborn domains into alignment. Another way of making a permanent magnet is to stroke a piece of iron with a magnet. The stroking motion aligns the domains in the iron. If a permanent magnet is dropped or heated, some of the domains are jostled out of alignment and the magnet becomes weaker.

FIGURE 24.6
Wai Tsan Lee shows iron nails that have become induced magnets.

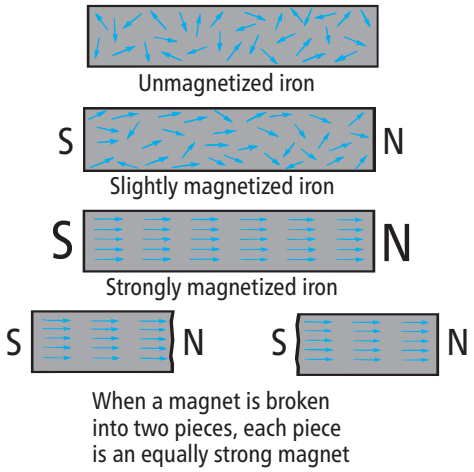


FIGURE 24.7
Pieces of iron in successive stages of magnetization. The arrows represent domains; the head is a north pole and the tail is a south pole. Poles of neighboring domains neutralize each other's effects, except at the two ends of a piece of iron.

Cows often swallow metal objects that can puncture their stomachs. That's why farmers feed *cow magnets* (long, narrow alnico magnets) to cows, which attract metal pieces and lower the chance of stomach puncture.

CHECK POINT

1. **Why cannot a wooden pencil become magnetized?**
2. **How can a magnet attract a piece of iron that is not magnetized?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Wood has no magnetic domains. All permanent magnets contain magnetic domains.
2. Domains in the unmagnetized piece of iron are induced into alignment by the magnetic field of the nearby magnet. See the similarity of this to Figure 22.14 in Chapter 22. Like the pieces of paper that jump to the comb, pieces of iron will jump to a strong magnet when it is brought nearby. But, unlike the pieces of paper, they are not then repelled. Can you think of the reason why?

fyi

- A magstripe on a credit card contains millions of tiny magnetic domains held together by a resin binder. Data are encoded in binary code, with zeros and ones distinguished by the frequency of domain reversals. It's quite amazing how quickly your name pops up when your card is swiped. Watch for replacement of the magstripe by EMV (Europay, Mastercard, Visa) chip technology where swiping isn't needed.

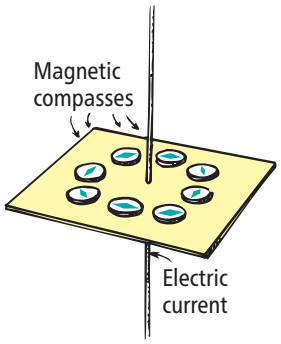


FIGURE 24.8
The compasses show the circular shape of the magnetic field surrounding the current-carrying wire.

24.5 Electric Currents and Magnetic Fields

Since a moving charge produces a magnetic field, it follows that a current of charges also produces a magnetic field. We can demonstrate the magnetic field that surrounds a current-carrying conductor by arranging an assortment of compasses around a wire (Figure 24.8) and passing a current through it. The compass needles line up with the magnetic field produced by the current, and they show the field to be a pattern of concentric circles about the wire. When the current reverses direction, the compass needles turn around, showing that the direction of the magnetic field changes also. This is the effect that Oersted first demonstrated in his classroom.

If the wire is bent into a loop, the magnetic field lines become bunched up inside the loop (Figure 24.9). If the wire is bent into another loop, overlapping the first, the concentration of magnetic field lines inside the loops is doubled. It follows that the magnetic field intensity in this region is increased as the number of loops is increased. The magnetic field intensity is appreciable for a current-carrying coil of many loops.

FIGURE 24.9
Magnetic field lines about a current-carrying wire bunch up when the wire is bent into a loop.

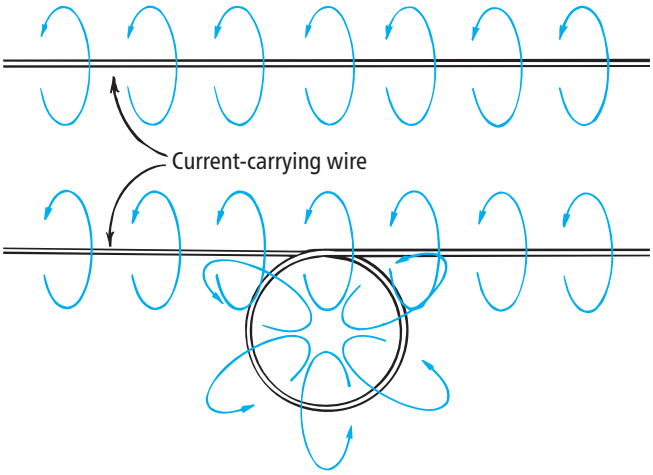


Figure 24.10c shows the concentration of magnetic field intensity for multiple current-carrying loops. These loops make up a coil, which is known as a solenoid. The total field inside the solenoid is the sum of the fields due to each current loop.

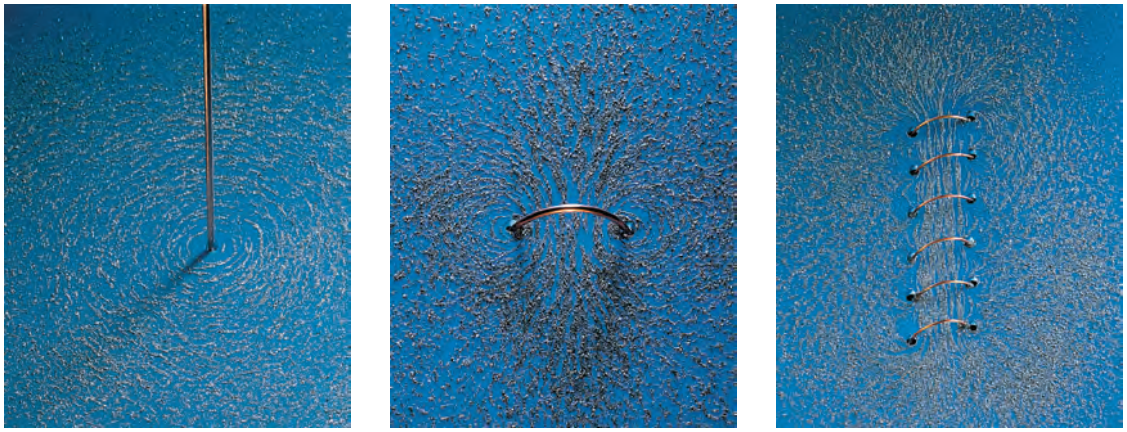


FIGURE 24.10
Iron filings sprinkled on paper reveal the magnetic field configurations about (a) a current-carrying wire, (b) a current-carrying loop, and (c) a current-carrying coil of loops.

PRACTICING PHYSICS

Most iron objects around you are magnetized to some degree. A filing cabinet, a refrigerator, and even cans of food on your pantry shelf have north and south poles induced by Earth's magnetic field. If you bring a magnetic compass near the tops of iron or steel objects in your home, you will find that the north pole of the compass needle points to the tops of these objects, and the south pole of the compass needle points to their bottoms. This shows that the objects are magnets, having a south pole on top and a north pole on the bottom. Turn cans of food that have been in a vertical position upside down and see how many days it takes for the poles to reverse themselves!

CHECK POINT

An electric field about a point charge in free space is depicted by straight lines emanating from the charge (Chapter 23). By contrast, what is the shape of magnetic field lines about a current-carrying wire?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Magnetic field lines about a current-carrying wire form concentric circles (as shown in Figure 24.10a).

24.6 Electromagnets

A current-carrying coil of wire is an **electromagnet.** The strength of an electromagnet is increased by simply increasing the current through the coil and the number of turns in the coil. Industrial magnets gain additional strength by having a piece of iron within the coil. Electromagnets powerful enough to lift automobiles are a common sight in junkyards. For extremely strong electromagnets, such as those used to control charged-particle beams in high-energy accelerators, iron is not used because, beyond a certain point, all of its domains are aligned. The magnet is said to be saturated.

Electromagnets need not have iron cores. Electromagnets without iron cores are used in magnetically levitated, or "maglev," transportation. Figure 24.11 shows a maglev train, which has no diesel or other conventional engine. Maglev trains operate in several countries, and various designs are still being engineered. In one design levitation is accomplished by magnetic coils that run along the track, called a guideway. The coils repel large magnets on the train's undercarriage. Once the train is levitated a few centimeters, power is supplied to the coils within the guideway walls to propel the train. This is accomplished by continually alternating the electric current fed to the coils, which continually alternates their magnetic polarity. In this way a magnetic field pulls the vehicle forward, while a magnetic field farther back pushes forward. The alternating pushes and pulls produce a forward thrust. Since maglev trains float on a cushion of air, the friction that accompanies conventional trains is eliminated. Maglev speeds, about half the speed of commercial aircraft, are limited only by air friction and passenger comfort. Maglevs are a growing technology.

FIGURE 24.11
A magnetically levitated vehicle—a *magplane*. Whereas conventional trains vibrate as they ride on rails at high speeds, magplanes can travel vibration-free at high speeds because they levitate above the guideway.

CHECK POINT

What does a common bar magnet have in common with an electromagnet?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Both have the same source—the motion of electric charge.

FIGURE 24.12
A permanent magnet levitates above a superconductor because its magnetic field cannot penetrate the superconducting material.

Superconducting Electromagnets

The most powerful electromagnets without iron cores use superconducting coils through which large electric currents flow with ease. Recall from Chapter 22 that there is no electrical resistance in a superconductor to limit the flow of electric charge and, therefore, no heating, even if the current is enormous. Electromagnets that utilize superconducting coils produce extremely strong magnetic fields—and very economically due to no heat loss (although energy is used to keep the superconductors cold). At the Large Hadron Collider in Geneva, Switzerland, superconducting magnets guide high-energy particles around an accelerator 27 kilometers in circumference. Smaller superconducting magnets are used in magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) devices in hospitals and imaging centers.

Whether superconducting or not, electromagnets are part of everyday life. They're in sound systems, in electric motors, in our automobiles, and even in shredded garbage recycling systems to remove metal bits. Cheers for electromagnets.

24.7 Magnetic Forces

On Moving Charged Particles

A charged particle at rest will not interact with a static magnetic field. But if the charged particle is moving in a magnetic field, the magnetic character of a charge in motion becomes evident. It experiences a deflecting force.[6] The magnetic force is greatest when the particle moves in a direction perpendicular to the magnetic field lines. At other angles, the force is less, and it becomes zero when the particles move parallel to the field lines. In any case, the direction of the force is always perpendicular to the magnetic field lines and to the velocity of the charged particle (Figure 24.13). So a moving electron or beam of electrons is deflected when it crosses through a magnetic field, but when it travels parallel to the field, no deflection occurs.

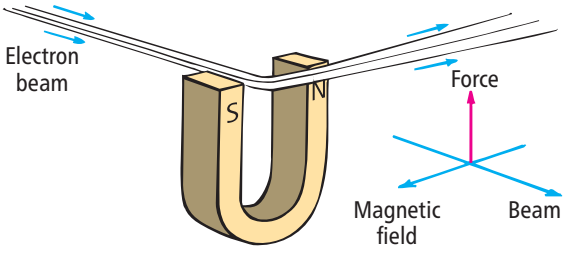


FIGURE 24.13
A beam of electrons is deflected by a magnetic field.

This deflecting force is very different from the forces that occur in other interactions, such as the gravitational forces between masses, the electrical forces between charges, and the magnetic forces between magnetic poles. The force that deflects an electron or beam of them acts perpendicularly to both the magnetic field and the electron beam.

We are fortunate that charged particles are deflected by magnetic fields. Charged particles in cosmic rays are deflected by Earth's magnetic field. Although Earth's atmosphere absorbs most of these, cosmic-ray intensity at Earth's surface would be much greater without Earth's protective magnetic field.

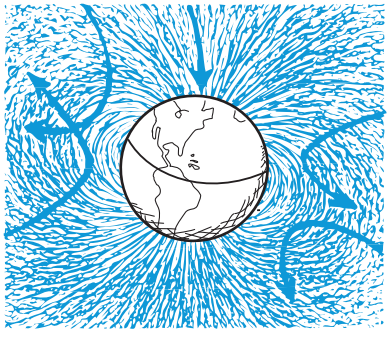


FIGURE 24.14
The magnetic field of Earth deflects many charged particles that make up cosmic radiation.

CHECK POINT

An electron beam is directed into a magnetic field. At what orientation to the magnetic field is the force on the beam greatest? Least?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

Greatest magnetic force occurs when the electron beam and the magnetic field are perpendicular to each other, as depicted in Figure 24.13. When the beam and the field are parallel, no force is exerted on the beam.

[6]When particles with electric charge q and velocity v move perpendicularly through a magnetic field of strength B, the force F on each particle is simply the product of the three variables: $F = qvB$. For nonperpendicular angles, v in this relationship must be the component of velocity perpendicular to B.

On Current-Carrying Wires

Simple logic tells you that if a charged particle moving through a magnetic field experiences a deflecting force, then a current of charged particles moving through a magnetic field also experiences a deflecting force. If the particles are trapped inside a wire when they respond to the deflecting force, the wire will also be pushed (Figure 24.15).

If we reverse the direction of the current, the deflecting force acts in the opposite direction. The deflecting force is strongest when the current is perpendicular to the magnetic field lines. The direction of force is not along the magnetic field lines or along the direction of current. The force is perpendicular to both field lines and current. It is a sideways force.

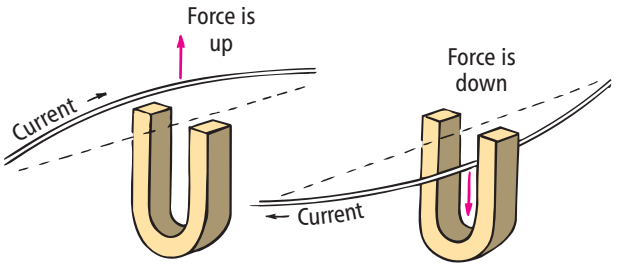
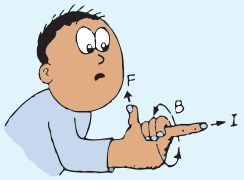


FIGURE 24.15
A current-carrying wire experiences a force in a magnetic field. (Can you see that this is a follow-up of what happens to an electron beam in Figure 24.13?)

We see that, just as a current-carrying wire will deflect a magnet such as a compass needle (again, as discovered by Oersted), a magnet will deflect a current-carrying wire. Discovering these complementary links between electricity and magnetism created much excitement, and people began harnessing the electromagnetic force for useful purposes almost immediately—with great sensitivity in electric meters and with great force in electric motors.

In the Problem Solving supplement, you'll learn the "simple" right-hand rule!



CHECK POINT

1. **At what orientation in a magnetic field is the force greatest on a current-carrying wire? The least?**
2. **What law of physics tells you that if a current-carrying wire produces a force on a magnet, then a magnet must produce a force on a current-carrying wire?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Like the electron beam in a magnetic field, greatest magnetic force occurs when the magnetic field and wire are perpendicular to each other. The least force—zero—occurs when the two are parallel.
2. Newton's third law, which applies to *all* forces in nature.

Electric Meters

The simplest meter to detect electric current is a magnet that is free to turn—a compass. The next simplest meter is a compass in a coil of wires (Figure 24.16). When an electric current passes through the coil, each loop produces its own effect on the needle, so a very small current can be detected. A sensitive current-indicating instrument is called a *galvanometer*, named after Luigi Galvani, who in the 18th century discovered that dissimilar metals caused twitching in a frog's leg that he was dissecting.

Galvani's chance discovery of the twitching frog led him to invent the chemical cell and the battery. The next time you pick up a galvanized pail, think of Luigi Galvani in his anatomy laboratory.

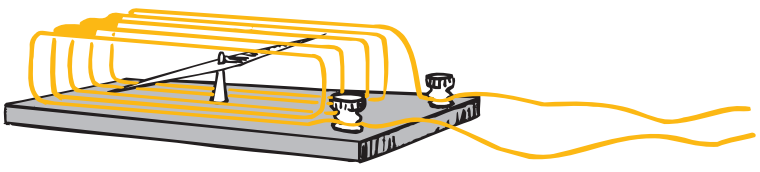


FIGURE 24.16
A very simple galvanometer.

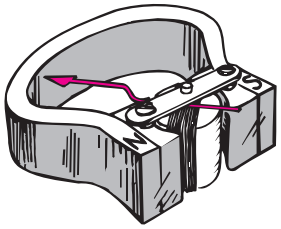


FIGURE 24.17
A common galvanometer design.

A common galvanometer design is shown in Figure 24.17. It employs many loops of wire and is therefore very sensitive. Look carefully at the windings of wire loops that coil around the cylinder shown in the figure. The coil is mounted for movement, and the magnet is held stationary. The coil turns against a spring, so the greater the current in its windings, the greater its deflection. A galvanometer may be calibrated to measure current (amperes), in which case it is called an *ammeter*. Or it may be calibrated to measure electric potential (volts), in which case it is called a *voltmeter*.

FIGURE 24.18
Both the ammeter and the voltmeter are basically galvanometers. (The electrical resistance of the instrument is made to be very low for the ammeter and very high for the voltmeter.)

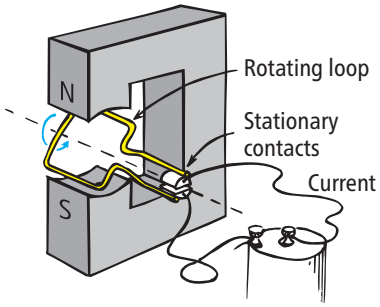


FIGURE 24.19
A simplified electric motor.

Electric Motors

If we modify the design of the galvanometer slightly, so that deflection makes a complete rather than a partial rotation, we have an *electric motor*. The principal difference is that in a motor, the current is made to change direction every time the coil makes a half-rotation. After being forced to turn one half-rotation, the coil continues in motion just in time for the current to reverse, whereupon, instead of the coil reversing direction, it is forced to continue another half-rotation in the same direction. This happens in cyclic fashion to produce continuous rotation, which has been harnessed to run clocks, operate gadgets, and lift heavy loads.

In Figure 24.19, we can see the principle of the electric motor in bare outline. A permanent magnet produces a magnetic field in a region in which a rectangular loop of wire is mounted to turn about the dashed axis shown. The current in the loop flips direction with each half-turn, and continuous rotation results.

Any current in the loop moves in one direction in the upper side of the loop and in the opposite direction in the lower side (because charges that flow into one end of the loop must flow out the other end). If the upper side of the loop is forced to the left by the magnetic field, the lower side is forced to the right, as if it were a galvanometer. But, unlike the situation in a galvanometer, the current in a motor is reversed during each half-revolution by means of stationary contacts on the shaft. The parts of the wire that rotate and brush against these contacts are called *brushes*. In this way, the current in the loop alternates so that the forces on the upper and lower regions do not change directions as the loop rotates. The rotation is continuous as long as current is supplied.

We have described here only a very simple dc motor. Larger motors, dc or ac, are usually manufactured by replacing the permanent magnet with an electromagnet that is energized by the power source. Of course, more than a single loop is used. Many loops of wire are wound about an iron cylinder, called an *armature*, which then rotates when the wire carries current.

The advent of electric motors brought to an end much human and animal toil in many parts of the world. Electric motors have greatly changed the way people live.

A motor and a generator are actually the same device, with input and output reversed. The electrical device in a hybrid car is such a motor/generator combination.

CHECK POINT

What is the major similarity between a galvanometer and a simple electric motor? What is the major difference?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

In both, coils are positioned in a magnetic field. A force produces rotation when current passes through the coils. The major difference is that the maximum rotation of the coil in a galvanometer is one half-turn, whereas, in a motor, the coil (wrapped on an armature) rotates through many complete turns—accomplished by alternating the current with each half-turn of the armature.

24.8 Earth's Magnetic Field

A suspended magnet or compass points northward because Earth itself is a huge magnet. The compass aligns with the magnetic field of Earth. The magnetic poles of Earth, however, do not coincide with the geographic poles—in fact, the magnetic and geographic poles are widely separated (Figure 24.20). The magnetic pole in the Northern Hemisphere, for example, is now located nearly 1800 kilometers from the geographic pole, somewhere in the Hudson Bay region of northern Canada. The other pole is located south of Australia. This means that compasses do not generally point to the true north. The discrepancy between the orientation of a compass and true north is known as the *magnetic declination*.

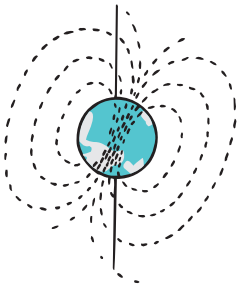


FIGURE 24.20
Earth is a magnet.

We do not know exactly why Earth itself is a magnet. The configuration of Earth's magnetic field is like that of a strong bar magnet placed near the center of Earth. But Earth is not a magnetized chunk of iron like a bar magnet. It is simply too hot for individual atoms to hold to a proper orientation. So the explanation likely involves electric currents deep in the interior. About 2000 kilometers below Earth's outer rocky mantle (which itself is almost 3000 kilometers thick) lies the molten part that surrounds the solid center. Most Earth scientists think that moving charges looping around within the molten part of Earth create the magnetic field. Some Earth scientists speculate that the electric currents are the result of convection currents—heat rising from the central core (Figure 24.21)—and that such convection currents combined with the rotational effects of Earth produce Earth's magnetic field. Because of Earth's great size, the speed of moving charges need only be about a millimeter per second to account for the field. A firmer explanation awaits more study.

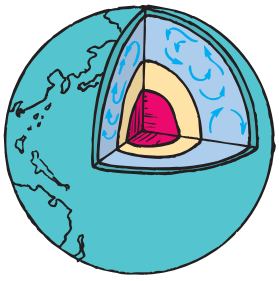
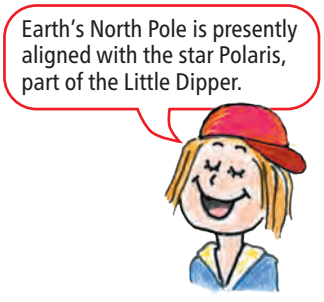


FIGURE 24.21
Convection currents in the molten parts of Earth's interior may drive electric currents to produce Earth's magnetic field.

Whatever the cause, the magnetic field of Earth is not stable; it has wandered throughout geologic time. Evidence of this comes from the analysis of magnetic properties of rock strata. Iron atoms in a molten state are disoriented because of thermal motion, but a slight predominance of the iron atoms align with the magnetic field of Earth. When cooling and solidification occur, this predominance records the direction of Earth's magnetic field in the resulting igneous rock. The process is similar for sedimentary rocks, where magnetic domains in grains of iron that settle in sediments tend to align themselves with Earth's magnetic field and become locked into the rock that forms. The slight magnetism that results can be measured with sensitive instruments. As samples of rock are tested from different strata formed throughout geologic time, the magnetic field of Earth for different periods can be charted. This evidence shows that there have been times when the magnetic field of Earth has diminished to zero, followed by reversal of the poles. More than 20 reversals have taken place in the past 5 million



Like tape from a tape recorder, the history of the ocean's bottom is preserved in a magnetic record.

years. The most recent occurred 780,000 years ago and took 22,000 years to make the flip. Prior reversals happened 870,000 and 950,000 years ago. Studies of deep-sea sediments indicate that the field was virtually switched off for 10,000 to 20,000 years just over 1 million years ago. We cannot predict when the next reversal will occur because the reversal sequence is not regular. But there is a clue in recent measurements that show a decrease of more than 5% of Earth's magnetic field strength in the last 100 years. If this change is maintained, we may well have another reversal within 2000 years.

CHECK POINT

Earth Science is typified by the notion of continual change. Can the same be said of Earth's magnetic field?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes, like so many things in the world, Earth's magnetic field varies with time.

fyi

- When radiation from solar flares is sufficiently intense, watch for extensive damage of infrastructure from spacecraft and satellite instruments in near-Earth orbit to entire power grids on Earth itself.

The reversal of magnetic poles is not unique to Earth. The Sun's magnetic field reverses regularly, with a period of 22 years. This 22-year magnetic cycle has been linked, through evidence in tree rings, to periods of drought on Earth. Interestingly, the long-known, 11-year sunspot cycle is just half the time during which the Sun gradually reverses its magnetic polarity.

Varying ion winds in Earth's atmosphere cause more rapid but much smaller fluctuations in Earth's magnetic field. Ions in this region are produced by the energetic interactions of solar ultraviolet rays and X-rays with atmospheric atoms. The motion of these ions produces a small but important part of Earth's magnetic field. Like the lower layers of air, the ionosphere is churned by winds. The variations in these winds are responsible for nearly all of the fast fluctuations in Earth's magnetic field. Fortunately for us, solar winds that reach Earth collide with Earth's magnetic field rather than with the atmosphere.

Cosmic Rays

The universe is a shooting gallery of charged particles. They are called **cosmic rays** and consist of protons, alpha particles, and other atomic nuclei stripped of electrons, as well as high-energy electrons. The protons may be remnants of particles that are hazardous exploding stars. In any event, they travel through space at fantastic speeds and make up the cosmic radiation that is hazardous to astronauts. This radiation is intensified when the Sun is active and contributes additional energetic particles that can damage electronic instrumentation in space and cause computer memory bits to "flip" or small microcircuits to fail. Fortunately for us on Earth's surface, most cosmic rays don't reach us due to the thickness of the atmosphere and importantly by deflection by the magnetic field of Earth. Some products of cosmic rays are trapped in the outer reaches of Earth's magnetic field and make up the Van Allen radiation belts (Figure 24.22).

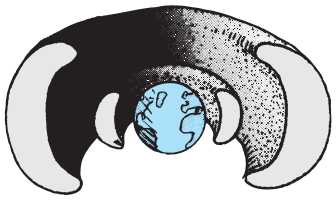


FIGURE 24.22
A cross-section of the Van Allen radiation belts, shown here undistorted by the solar wind.

CHECK POINT

A passenger brings a radiation detector aboard an airplane. What is your prediction regarding readings of radiation as the plane gains altitude?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Readings increase with altitude. Pilots encounter much more radiation than do people on the ground who are shielded by the atmosphere.

The Van Allen radiation belts consist of two doughnut-shaped rings about Earth, named after James A. Belts, who suggested their existence from data gathered by the U.S. satellite *Explorer I* in 1958.[7] The inner ring is centered about 3200 kilometers above Earth's surface, and the outer ring, which is a larger and wider doughnut, is centered about 16,000 kilometers overhead. Astronauts orbit at safe distances well below these belts of radiation. Most of the charged particles—protons and electrons—trapped in the outer belt probably come from the Sun. Storms on the Sun hurl charged particles out in great fountains, many of which pass near Earth and are trapped by its magnetic field. The trapped particles follow corkscrew paths around the magnetic field lines of Earth and bounce between Earth's magnetic poles high above the atmosphere. Disturbances in Earth's field often allow the ions to dip into the atmosphere, causing it to glow like a fluorescent lamp. This is the beautiful *aurora borealis* (or northern lights); in the Southern Hemisphere, it is the *aurora australis*.

The particles trapped in the inner belt probably originated from Earth's atmosphere. This belt gained additional free electrons from high-altitude hydrogen-bomb explosions in 1962.

In spite of Earth's protective magnetic field, many "secondary" cosmic rays reach Earth's surface.[8] These are particles created when "primary" cosmic rays—those coming from outer space—strike atomic nuclei high in the atmosphere. Cosmic-ray bombardment is greatest at the magnetic poles because charged particles that hit Earth there do not travel *across* the magnetic field lines but, rather, *along* the field lines and are not deflected. Cosmic-ray bombardment decreases away from the poles, and it is smallest in equatorial regions. At middle latitudes, about five particles strike each square centimeter each minute at sea level; this number increases rapidly with altitude. So cosmic rays are penetrating your body as you are reading this—and even when you aren't reading this!

FIGURE 24.23
The aurora borealis lighting of the sky caused by charged particles in the Van Allen belts striking atmospheric molecules.

fyi

- Much of what is known about solar flares and the origins of auroras is due to the research of astrophysicist Joan Feynman. Early in her career she and her older brother Richard agreed to divide the unclaimed scientific world between them. She took the auroras and he took all the rest, which was fine with her. Richard Feynman's profile is on page 259.

24.9 Biomagnetism

Certain bacteria biologically produce single-domain grains of magnetite (a compound equivalent to iron ore) that they string together to form internal compasses. They then use these compasses to detect the dip of Earth's magnetic field. Equipped with a sense of direction, the organisms are able to locate food supplies. Amazingly, bacteria that live south of the equator build the same single-domain magnets but align them in the opposite direction to coincide with the oppositely directed magnetic field in the Southern Hemisphere!

Bacteria are not the only living organisms with built-in magnetic compasses. Pigeons have multiple-domain magnetite magnets within their skulls that are connected by a large number of nerves to the pigeon brain. Pigeons have a magnetic sense: Not only can they discern longitudinal directions along Earth's magnetic field, but they can also detect latitude by the dip of Earth's field. Magnetic material is also in the abdomens of bees, whose behavior is affected by small magnetic fields. Some wasps, Monarch butterflies, sea turtles, and fish join the ranks of creatures that have a magnetic sense. Magnetite crystals that resemble the crystals found in magnetic bacteria have been found in human brains, too. No one knows whether these are linked to our sensations. Like the creatures mentioned above, we may share a common magnetic sense.

FIGURE 24.24
These buoyant aquatic bacteria cannot sense up and down by gravity. Instead, they orient themselves with Earth's magnetic field with their built-in "compass needles."

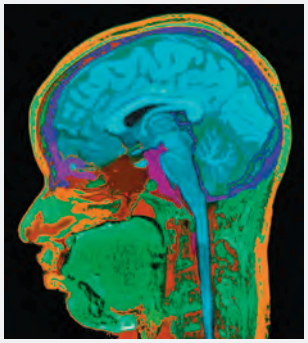
[7]Actually, humor aside, the name is James A. Van Allen (with his permission).

[8]Some biological scientists speculate that Earth's magnetic changes played a significant role in the evolution of life forms. One hypothesis is that during the early phases of primitive life, Earth's magnetic field was strong enough to shield the delicate life forms from high-energy charged particles. But, during periods of zero strength, cosmic radiation and the spilling of the Van Allen belts increased the rate of mutation of more robust life forms—not unlike the mutations produced by X-rays in the famous heredity studies of fruit flies. Coincidences between the dates of increased life changes and the dates of the magnetic pole reversals in the last few million years lend support to this hypothesis.

MRI: MAGNETIC RESONANCE IMAGING

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is a noninvasive procedure that uses powerful magnets and radio waves to provide high-resolution images of the tissues inside a body. Superconducting coils produce a strong magnetic field up to 60,000 times stronger than the intensity of Earth's magnetic field, which is used to align the protons of hydrogen atoms in the body of the patient.

Like electrons, protons have a "spin" property, so they will align with a magnetic field. Unlike a compass needle that aligns with Earth's magnetic field, the proton's axis wobbles about the applied magnetic field. Wobbling protons are slammed with a burst of radio waves tuned to push the proton's spin axis sideways, perpendicular to the applied magnetic field. When the radio waves pass and the protons quickly return to their wobbling pattern, they emit faint electromagnetic signals whose frequencies depend slightly on the chemical environment in which the proton resides. The



signals, which are detected by sensors, are then analyzed by a computer to reveal varying densities of hydrogen atoms in the body and their interactions with surrounding tissue. The images clearly distinguish fluid and bone.

MRI uses no ionizing radiation to produce an image. Interestingly, MRI was formerly called NMRI (nuclear magnetic resonance imaging) because hydrogen nuclei resonate with the applied fields. Because of public phobia of anything "nuclear," however, the devices are now called MRI scanners. Tell phobic friends that every atom in their bodies contains a nucleus!

Chapter 24 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Magnetic force (1) Between magnets, it is the attraction of unlike magnetic poles for each other and the repulsion between like magnetic poles. (2) Between a magnetic field and a moving charged particle, it is a deflecting force due to the motion of the particle.

Magnetic field The region of magnetic influence around a magnetic pole or a moving charged particle.

Magnetic domains Clustered regions of aligned magnetic atoms. When these regions themselves are aligned with one another, the substance containing them is a magnet.

Electromagnet A magnet whose field is produced by an electric current. It is usually in the form of a wire coil that encloses a piece of iron.

Cosmic rays High-speed electrically-charged particles that travel throughout the universe.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

24.1 Magnetism

1. Who discovered the relationship between electricity and magnetism, and in what setting?
2. The force between electrically charged particles depends on the magnitude of each charge, the distance of separation. And what else?
3. What is the source of magnetic force?

24.2 Magnetic Poles

4. In what way is the rule for the interaction between magnetic poles similar to the rule for the interaction between electrically charged particles?
5. How do *magnetic poles* differ from *electric charges?*

24.3 Magnetic Fields

6. How does magnetic field strength relate to the closeness of magnetic field lines about a bar magnet?
7. What produces a magnetic field?
8. What two kinds of rotational motion do electrons in an atom appear to have?

24.4 Magnetic Domains

9. Define a magnetic domain.
10. What is the difference between an unmagnetized iron nail and a magnetized iron nail at the micro level?
11. Why is iron magnetic and wood not?
12. If you drop an iron magnet on a concrete sidewalk, it will become a weaker magnet. Why?

24.5 Electric Currents and Magnetic Fields

13. In Chapter 22, we learned that the direction of the electric field about a point charge is radial to the charge. What is the direction of the magnetic field surrounding a current-carrying wire?
14. Why does a magnetic needle show a deflection when brought close to a current-carrying conductor?
15. How does the magnitude and direction of current in a straight wire affect its magnetic field?

24.6 Electromagnets

16. What effect does a piece of iron in a current-carrying loop have on magnetic field strength?
17. Why are the magnetic fields of superconducting magnets often stronger than those of conventional magnets?

24.7 Magnetic Forces

18. True or false: A charged particle must move in a stationary magnetic field in order to experience a force due to the field.
19. In what direction relative to a magnetic field does a moving charged particle experience maximum deflecting force? Minimum deflecting force?
20. What effect does Earth's magnetic field have on the intensity of cosmic rays striking Earth's surface?
21. What relative direction between a magnetic field and a current-carrying wire results in the greatest force?
22. What is exactly detected by a galvanometer, and by what means?
23. What is the name of a galvanometer that has been calibrated to read current? When it has been calibrated to read voltage?
24. How often is current reversed in the loops of an electric motor?
25. Is it correct to say that an electric motor extends the physics that underlies a galvanometer?

24.8 Earth's Magnetic Field

26. Why are there probably no permanently aligned magnetic domains in Earth's core?
27. What are *magnetic pole reversals?*
28. What is the cause of the aurora borealis (northern lights)?

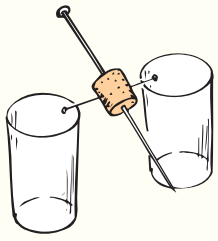
24.9 Biomagnetism

29. Name at least six creatures that are known to harbor tiny magnets within their bodies.
30. When do cosmic rays penetrate your body?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Make a nail magnet by aligning a nail with Earth's magnetic field (found easily on your smartphone) and striking it a few times with a hammer. What happens to its domains when you do this? To see if you've succeeded, see if it can pick up paper clips or smaller nails. To demagnetize the nail, what direction should you place it when again striking it?
32. Make a suspension compass: Use the magnetized nail of the previous activity. Suspend the magnetized nail at its center of gravity by a string. Now you have a compass!
33. Make an electromagnet: Use a 9-volt battery, some insulated copper wire, and a large nail or iron rod. Expose the copper at both ends of your insulated wire. Wrap the wire around the nail or rod. Finally, attach each end of the wire to a terminal on the battery. How many paper clips can you pick up with your electromagnet?
34. Make a floating compass: First make a a magnetized needle or thin nail as in question 31. Then poke it into a piece of cork and float it in glass bowl full of water. The needle will align itself with the horizontal component of Earth's magnetic field. Since the north pole of this compass is attracted northward, will the needle float toward the north side of the bowl? Defend your answer.

35. Find your local magnetic declination and dip of Earth's magnetic field lines in your locality by using the magnetized needle of the previous activity. Run the needle through a cork along its long axis. Then press a pair of unmagnetized common pins into the sides of the cork. Rest the pins on the rims of a pair of drinking glasses so that the needle points toward the magnetic pole. It should dip in line with Earth's magnetic field.



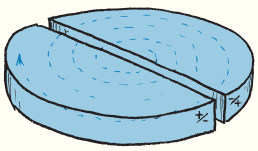
THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

36. Many food items are fortified with vitamins and minerals, which they do not naturally contain to increase the nutrition level. If we take an example of dry cereals fortified with iron, where iron particles are added as small particles, and spinach, which contains iron naturally, comment on whether you can separate the iron from either in a similar method.
37. Can you consider an electron a tiny magnet?
38. If a piece of wood contains electrons, then why is it not magnetic or attracted by a magnet?
39. Which location of a bar magnet would attract the least if you brought a piece of iron close? If your friend claims that they can separate the north pole and the south pole of the bar magnet by breaking it into two pieces in the middle, will you believe them?
40. Why would you not prefer a flexible material to make a horseshoe magnet? Justify your answer.
41. Why is it inadvisable to make a horseshoe magnet from a flexible material?

42. What kind of force field surrounds an electron when it travels with finite velocity?
43. Why are refrigerator magnets made flat and thin with magnetic poles on alternating sides?
44. A friend tells you that the metal aluminum is beneath a layer of white-painted plastic of your refrigerator door. How could you check without scraping if this is true?
45. Describe how you can destroy the magnetic properties of a permanent bar magnet.
46. Why will either pole of a magnet attract a paper clip?
47. While a paper clip is in a magnetic field it can attract other paper clips. Why does the paper clip continue to attract once the magnetic field is removed?
48. We know that in the Northern Hemisphere a compass points northward because Earth is a giant magnet. Will the northward-pointing needle point northward when the compass is brought to the Southern Hemisphere?
49. In what position can a current-carrying loop of wire be located in a magnetic field so that it will experience (a) negligible and (b) maximum force to rotate.
50. Magnet A has twice the magnetic field strength of magnet B (at equal distance) and, at a certain distance, it pulls on magnet B with a force of 50 N. How much force does magnet B pull on magnet A?
51. A magnet exerts a force on a current-carrying wire in Figure 24.15. Does a current-carrying wire exert a force on a magnet? Why or why not?
52. Which would you prefer for making the core of a transformer, iron or aluminum? Justify your answer.
53. A straight current-carrying wire is horizontal and oriented south to north. When a compass needle is placed below or above it, in what direction does the compass needle point? (This was a classroom demo that changed the world in 1820 by Hans Christian Oersted.)
54. As we know, superconducting magnets use less electric power as compared to the conventional copper-wire magnet, due to zero resistivity. Why then is the use of superconducting magnets limited? Justify your answer.
55. When iron-hulled naval ships are built, the orientation of the ship and location of the shipyard are recorded on a brass plaque permanently attached to the ship. Why?
56. A beam of electrons passes through a magnetic field without being deflected. What can you conclude about the orientation of the beam relative to the magnetic field? (Neglect any other fields.)
57. Can an electron at rest in a magnetic field be set into motion by the magnetic field? What if it were at rest in an electric field?
58. Suppose a proton moves in a circular path perpendicular to a constant magnetic field. What will happen to the radius of the circular path if the magnitude of the magnetic field strength (a) increases and (b) decreases?
59. Two charged particles are projected into a magnetic field that is perpendicular to their velocities. (a) Comment on the nature of the polarity of the charges if both are deflected in the opposite direction and (b) If the strength of the magnetic field is doubled, how will it affect the deflection or bending of the charged particles?
60. A magnetic field can deflect a beam of electrons, but cannot change their speed. Why?
61. Inside a laboratory room there is said to be either an electric field or a magnetic field, but not both. What experiments might be performed to establish the kind of field is in the room?
62. Why are northern Canada residents bombarded by more intense cosmic radiation than Mexico residents?
63. In a mass spectrometer (Figure 34.14), ions are directed into a magnetic field, where they curve and strike a detector. If a variety of singly ionized atoms travel at the same speed through the magnetic field, would you expect them all to be deflected by the same amount, or would different ions be bent different amounts? Defend your answer.
64. When preparing to undergo an MRI scan, why are patients advised to remove eyeglasses, watches, jewelry, and other metal accessories?

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

65. Your study partner claims that an electron always experiences a force in an electric field, but not always in a magnetic field. Do you agree? Why or why not?
66. Your friend claims that they can locate points near a bar magnet where a magnetic compass can move freely without showing north or south directions. They further claim to be able to find similar non magnetic zones if two bar magnets are arranged in a parallel way (immaterial of north poles in one direction or a crossed position). Are these claims valid?
67. Your friend claims that the Earth's magnetic field is (a) maximum at the poles, (b) minimum at the equator, (c) decreases as we go above the Earth's surface, and (d) increases as we go deeper inside the Earth from the surface. Comment on each point.
68. A cyclotron is a device for accelerating charged particles to high speed as they follow an expanding spiral-like path. The charged particles are subjected to both an electric field and a magnetic field. One of these fields increases the speed of the charged particles, and the other field causes them to follow a curved path. Which field performs which function?



69. If a charged particle with velocity "*v*" encounters a perpendicular magnetic field, then comment on the work done by the magnetic force on the charged particle.
70. When current passes through a helically coiled spring, it gets more compressed. If the current passing through the spring is increased, then comment on the nature of its compression and the strength of the magnetic field.
71. If you had two bars of iron—one magnetized and one unmagnetized—and no other materials at hand, how could you determine which bar was the magnet?

CHAPTER TWENTY FOUR Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. An iron bar magnet is given a slight electric charge. Surrounding the charged bar is
   (a) a magnetic field.
   (b) an electric field.
   (c) a gravitational field.
   (d) all of the above
2. The direction of magnetic field lines about a current-carrying wire
   (a) extend radially from the wire.
   (b) circle the wire in closed loops.
   (c) both of these
   (d) none of the above
3. When a current-carrying wire is bent into a loop, the magnetic field inside the loop
   (a) weakens.
   (b) strengthens.
   (c) cancels.
   (d) none of the above
4. The magnetic field strength inside a current-carrying coil is greater when the coil encloses
   (a) a vacuum.
   (b) a wooden rod.
   (c) a glass rod.
   (d) an iron rod.
5. Into which stable force field can a proton be placed at rest without being accelerated?
   (a) Magnetic field.
   (b) Electric field.
   (c) both of these
   (d) none of the above
6. Earth's magnetic field affects cosmic rays by
   (a) deflecting them.
   (b) slowing their speeds.
   (c) absorbing them.
   (d) none of the above
7. No magnetic force acts on a current carrying wire when it
   (a) carries a very small current.
   (b) is perpendicular to the magnetic field.
   (c) either or both of these
   (d) none of the above
8. When a galvanometer is calibrated to read potential difference it becomes
   (a) an ammeter.
   (b) a voltmeter.
   (c) an ohm meter.
   (d) none of the above
9. Because magnetic force on a moving electron is always perpendicular to its direction of motion, magnetic force cannot change an electron's
   (a) speed.
   (b) direction.
   (c) speed and direction.
   (d) none of the above
10. If a magnet produces a force on a current-carrying wire, the wire
    (a) is likely warmed.
    (b) may produce a force on the magnet.
    (c) produces a force on the magnet.
    (d) none of these

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (d): All! The bar magnet has a magnetic field around it. It has mass with a gravitational field around it. It is electrically charged, so surrounding it is an electric field. We see three kinds of force fields, hence answer (d). **2. (b):** By definition choice (b) is correct; a current carrying wire creates closed loops of magnetic fields around it. Electric fields about point charges, in contrast, follow straight-line paths. **3. (b):** In all fields (electric, gravitational, and magnetic) the strength is proportional to the density of the field lines. When a length of current carrying wire is bent into a loop, the lines are concentrated, which strengthens the magnetic field inside the loop. **4. (d):** A magnetic field already exists within a current-carrying coil. When an iron rod is inserted into the coil, domains in the rod are set into alignment by the field already present in the loop. The two add, resulting in greater field strength—in a way that wood and glass, lacking magnetic domains, cannot do. **5. (a):** Being at *rest* is the key to this question. A proton (or electron) at rest experiences a force in an electric field, but not in a magnetic field. A proton (or electron) in motion DOES experience a force in a magnetic field, and a resulting acceleration—in both fields. **6. (a):** Cosmic rays, or energetic charged particles that zip from outer space are deflected from us by Earth's magnetic field, just as beams of electrons are deflected from their paths in a lab setting. The field doesn't slow or absorb them. Interestingly, some of these deflected particles get trapped in the Van Allen Belt. **7. (d):** Magnetic force on a current-carrying wire depends on the orientation of the wire. When a current-carrying wire is perpendicular to the magnetic field, magnetic force is maximum. When parallel and aligned with the magnetic field, force is zero. Since this isn't an answer choice, none of the above is the correct response. **8. (b):** An ammeter measures electric current. A voltmeter measures voltage, another term for potential difference. An ohm meter measures ohms, the amount of electrical resistance. So calibration for potential difference means calibration for voltage. Hence the clear answer (b). **9. (a):** A perpendicular force means no component of the force in the direction of motion to speed up or slow down an electron. The force can change direction, but not speed. This means that no work is done on the electron by a magnetic force. **10. (c):** Newton's third law is a foundation for all branches of physics, pure and simple. Recall that for every applied force there is always an equal and opposite reaction force. Magnet pushes on wire: Wire pushes on magnet. For sure, not *may*.

CHAPTER TWENTY FIVE

25 Electromagnetic Induction

25.1 Electromagnetic Induction

25.2 Faraday's Law

25.3 Generators and Alternating Current

25.4 Power Production

Turbogenerator Power

MHD Power

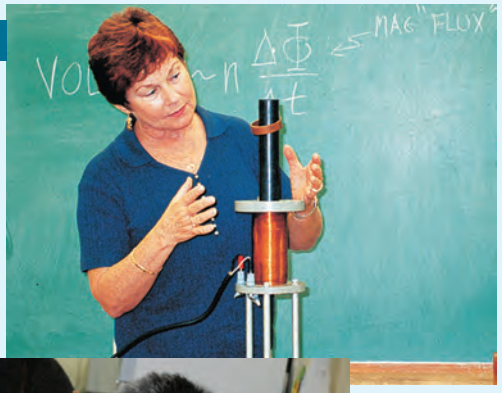
25.5 Transformers

25.6 Self-Induction

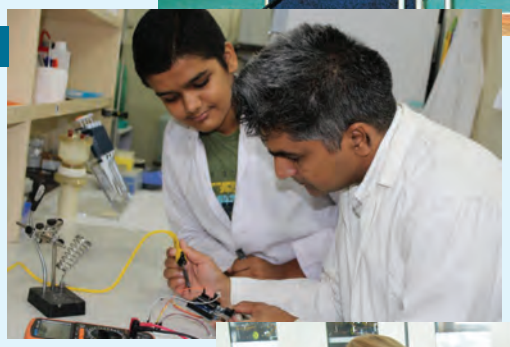
25.7 Magnetic Braking

25.8 Power Transmission

25.9 Field Induction



1



2

3

4

1 Jean Curtis prompts a check-your-neighbor discussion to explain why the copper ring levitates about the iron core of the electromagnet. **2** Marshal Dhayal and son Einstein tinker with the interplay of electricity and magnetism. **3** Z. Tuğba Kahyaoğlu shows her students how a magnet affects the spin of an armature when she reverses the magnet's polarity. **4** Dan Sudran, founder of the Mission Science Workshop, and development-coordinator Bart Evans repurpose donated equipment for the hundreds of curious students they serve in San Francisco.

In earlier times, most great scientific contributors were men of financial means. People with little or no money were too busy making a living to spend the time required for serious scientific inquiry. Michael Faraday was an exception.

Michael Faraday was one of four children of James Faraday, a village blacksmith in southeast London. Michael had only a basic school education and was largely self-educated. At the age of 13 he became an apprentice to a local bookbinder and, during his seven-year apprenticeship, he read many books in the bindery. He became very interested in science, especially electricity. In 1812, at the end of his apprenticeship and then 20 years old, Faraday attended lectures by the world-renowned English chemist Sir Humphry Davy of the Royal Institution and Royal Society. Faraday took detailed notes, put them in book form, and sent Davy a more-than-300-page book of the lectures. Davy was most impressed and congratulated Faraday, although at first he advised him to stay in the bookbinding business. But the next year, when Davy's assistant was fired for fighting, Davy invited Faraday to take his place.

In the class-based English society of the time, Faraday was not considered a gentleman. When Davy went on an 18-month tour to the continent with his new wife, Faraday went along but traveled outside the coach and ate with the servants because Davy's wife refused to treat him as an equal. Faraday nevertheless had an opportunity to meet Europe's scientific elite and gain a host of stimulating ideas.

Faraday went on to be one of the most important experimental scientists of the time. He made significant discoveries in chemistry, electrolysis, and especially electricity and magnetism. In 1831, he made his most remarkable discovery. When he moved a magnet into loops of wire, electric current was induced in them. This is *electromagnetic induction*, coincidentally discovered at about the same time in America by Joseph Henry (the insulation for Henry's wire loops was donated by his wife, who sacrificed part of the silk from her wedding gown to cover the wires). At this time the only way of producing substantial electric current was with batteries. Electromagnetic induction ushered in the age of electricity.

Faraday's mathematical abilities were limited to simple algebra and did not extend as far as trigonometry. As a result, he conveyed his ideas pictorially and with simple language. He visualized electric and magnetic effects being conveyed by "lines of force." We now call them lines of electric and magnetic fields, and they remain useful tools in science and engineering.

Faraday refused to participate in the production of chemical weapons for the Crimean War, citing ethical reasons. He was deeply religious and met his wife, Sarah Barnard, while attending church. They had no children. He was elected to membership in prestigious societies and enjoyed high scientific status in his later years. He rejected knighthood and twice refused to be president of the Royal Society. He put great effort into service projects for private companies and the British government—increasing the safety of coal mines, inventing new ways of operating lighthouses, and controlling pollution. Faraday was an original "green."

The unit of electrical capacitance, the farad, is named after Faraday. He died at the age of 75 in 1867. Before his death he turned down future burial in Westminster Abbey. A memorial plaque for him is there, near Isaac Newton's tomb. Faraday was, instead, buried in a plot at the church he attended.

25.1 Electromagnetic Induction

Faraday and Henry both discovered that electric current can be produced in a wire simply by moving a magnet in or out of loops (Figure 25.1). No battery or other voltage source is needed—only the motion of a magnet in a wire loop. This phenomenon of inducing voltage by changing the magnetic field in loops of wire is called **electromagnetic induction** (EMI). Voltage is caused, or *induced*, by the relative motion between a wire and a magnetic field—that is, whether the magnetic field of a magnet moves near a stationary conducting wire or the wire moves in a stationary magnetic field (Figure 25.2).

The greater the number of loops of wire that move in a magnetic field, the greater the induced voltage (Figure 25.3). Pushing a magnet into a coil with twice as many loops will induce twice as much voltage; pushing it into a coil with 10 times as many loops will induce 10 times as much voltage; and so on. It may seem that we get something (energy) for nothing simply by increasing the number of loops in a coil of wire. But, assuming that the coil is connected

Pearson eText **ADDITIONAL RESOURCES**
Videos
Screencasts

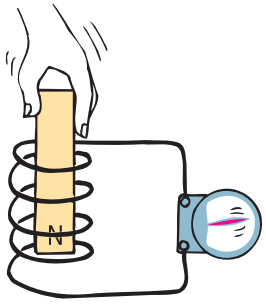


FIGURE 25.1
When the magnet is plunged into the coil, voltage is induced in the coil and charges in the coil are set in motion.

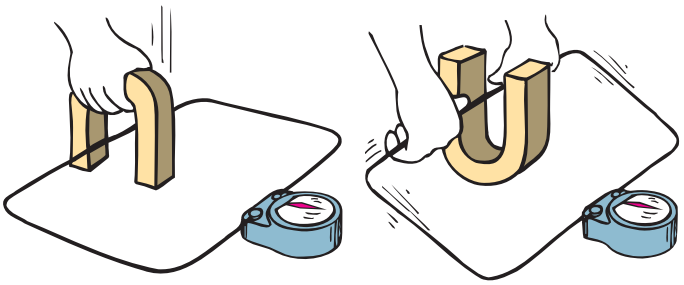


FIGURE 25.2
Voltage is induced in the wire loop when either the magnetic field moves past the wire or the wire moves through the magnetic field.

to a resistor or other energy-dissipating device, we don't. We find that it is more difficult to push the magnet into a coil made up of a greater number of loops.

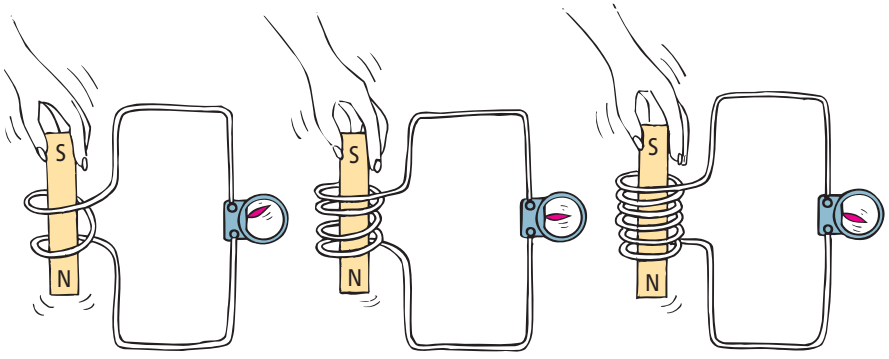


FIGURE 25.3
When a magnet is plunged into a coil that has twice as many loops as another coil, twice as much voltage is induced. If the magnet is plunged into a coil with three times as many loops, then three times as much voltage is induced.

FIGURE 25.4
It is more difficult to push the magnet into a coil that has more loops because the magnetic field of each current loop resists the motion of the magnet.

This is because the induced voltage makes a current, which makes an electromagnet, which repels the magnet in our hand. More loops mean more voltage, which means we do more work to induce it (Figure 25.4). The amount of voltage induced depends on how fast the magnetic field lines are entering or leaving the coil. Very slow motion produces hardly any voltage at all. Quick motion induces a greater voltage.

Electromagnetic induction is all around us. On the road, it triggers traffic lights when a car drives over—and changes the magnetic field in—coils of wire beneath the road surface. Hybrid cars utilize it to convert braking energy into electric energy in their batteries. We sense electromagnetic induction in the security systems of airports as we walk through upright coils and, if we are carrying any significant quantities of iron, change the magnetic field of the coils and trigger an alarm. We use it with an ATM card that still uses a magnetic strip swiped through a reader. As we shall see at the end of this chapter and at the beginning of the next chapter, it even underlies the electromagnetic waves we call light.

Changing a magnetic field in a closed loop induces voltage. If the loop is in an electric conductor, then current is induced.

CHECK POINT

Is electromagnetic induction (EMI) an energy source?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

No. EMI is not a source of energy but a method of transforming mechanical energy into electric energy. Work must be done to produce energy by EMI.

25.2 Faraday's Law

Electromagnetic induction is summarized by **Faraday's law,** which states:[1]

The induced voltage in a coil is proportional to the product of its number of loops, the cross-sectional area of each loop, and the rate at which the magnetic field changes within those loops.

The amount of *current* produced by electromagnetic induction depends not only on the induced voltage but also on the resistance of the coil and the circuit to which it is connected.[2] For example, we can plunge a magnet in and out of a closed loop of rubber and in and out of a closed loop of copper. The voltage induced in each is the same, provided that the loops are the same size and the magnet moves with the same speed. But the current in each is quite different. Electrons in the rubber sense the same electric field as those in the copper, but their bonding to the fixed atoms prevents the movement of charge that so freely occurs in copper.

We have mentioned two ways in which voltage can be induced in a loop of wire: by moving the loop near a magnet and by moving a magnet near the loop. There is a third way, by changing a current in a nearby loop. All three cases possess the same essential ingredient that characterizes Faraday's Law—a changing magnetic field in the loop.

FIGURE 25.5
Electric guitar pickups are tiny magnets surrounded by coils located beneath the guitar strings. When the strings vibrate, voltage is induced in the coils and boosted by an amplifier, and sound is produced by a speaker.

CHECK POINT

1. **A simple security system consists of a miniature electric circuit at the top of a door and a nearby small magnet fastened to the doorframe. How is an electric current generated when the door opens or closes?**
2. **If you push a magnet into a coil connected to a resistor, as shown in Figure 25.4, you'll feel a resistance to your push. Why is this resistance greater in a coil that has more loops?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The magnetic field of the magnet extends to a coil in the system. The field in the coil changes when the door moves, inducing voltage and current. No batteries needed. A simple application of Faraday's law.
2. Simply put, more work is required to provide more energy to be dissipated by more current in the resistor. You can also look at it this way: When you push a magnet into a coil, you cause the coil to become a magnet (an electromagnet). The more loops there are in the coil, the stronger the electromagnet that you produce and the stronger it pushes back against the magnet you are moving. (If the coil's electromagnet attracted your magnet instead of repelling it, energy would be created from nothing and the law of energy conservation would be violated. But that doesn't happen.)

fyi

- Shake flashlights need no batteries. Shake the flashlight for 30 seconds or so, and generate up to 5 minutes of bright illumination. Electromagnetic induction occurs as a built-in magnet slides to and fro between coils that charge a capacitor. When the brightness diminishes, shake again. You provide the energy to charge the capacitor.

When you slow a hybrid car by braking, the electric motor becomes a generator and charges a battery.

[1] In equation form,

$$\text{Voltage induced} \sim \text{number of loops} \times \text{area of each loop} \times \frac{\Delta \text{magnetic field}}{\Delta \text{time}}$$

[2] Current also depends on the "inductance" of the coil. Inductance measures the tendency of a coil to resist a change in current because the magnetism produced by one part of the coil acts to oppose the change of current in other parts of the coil. In ac circuits, it is akin to resistance, depending on the frequency of the ac source and the number of loops in the coil. We'll not cover this topic here.

25.3 Generators and Alternating Current

When you plunge a bar magnet repeatedly into and out of a coil of wire, the direction of the induced voltage alternates. As the magnetic field strength inside the coil is increased (as the magnet enters the coil), the induced voltage in the coil is directed one way. When the magnetic field strength diminishes (as the magnet leaves the coil), the voltage is induced in the opposite direction. The frequency of the alternating voltage that is induced equals the frequency of your plunging motion.

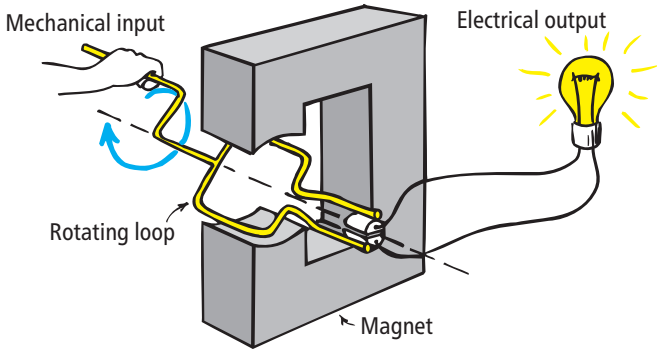


FIGURE 25.6
A simple generator. Voltage is induced in the loop when it is rotated in the magnetic field.

It is more practical to induce voltage by moving a coil than by moving a magnet. This can be done by rotating the coil in a stationary magnetic field (Figure 25.6). This arrangement is called a **generator.** The construction of a generator is, in principle, identical to that of a motor. They look the same, but the roles of input and output are reversed. In a generator, mechanical energy is the input and electric energy is the output; in a motor, electric energy is the input and mechanical energy is the output. Both devices simply transform energy from one form into another.

Some thought will show that the physics that underlies both a motor and a generator is the same (Figure 25.7). When a wire in a magnetic field experiences a force due to current in the wire, we have the *motor effect*. Electric energy becomes mechanical energy. Or, when a wire is pushed into a magnetic field, electric charges within the wire experience a deflecting force in the direction along the wire. This is the *generator effect*. Current is generated! Mechanical energy becomes electric energy. These effects are summarized in parts (a) and (b) of the figure (where, by convention, current and force arrows apply to positive charge). Study them. Can you see that the two effects are related?

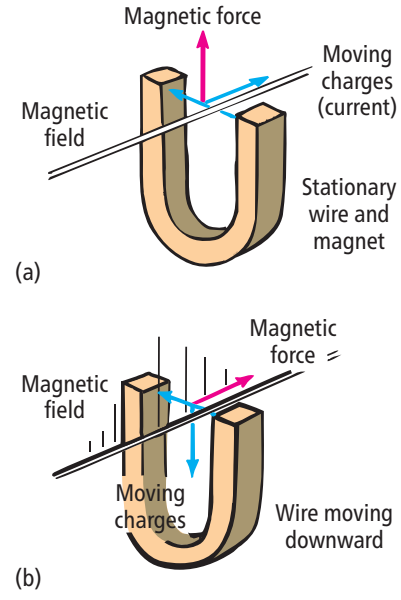


FIGURE 25.7
(a) Motor effect: When charge moves along the wire, there is a perpendicular upward force on the charge. Since there is no conducting path upward, the force on the charge tugs the wire upward. (b) Generator effect: When a wire with no initial current is moved downward, the charge in the wire experiences a deflecting force perpendicular to its motion to produce a current.

We can see the electromagnetic induction cycle in Figure 25.8. Note that when the loop of wire is rotated in the magnetic field, there is a change in the number of magnetic field lines within the loop. When the plane of the loop is perpendicular to the field lines, the maximum number of lines is enclosed. As the loop rotates, it in effect chops the lines, so that fewer lines are enclosed. When the plane of the loop is parallel to the field lines, none are enclosed. Continued rotation chops the field lines in a cyclical fashion, with the greatest rate of change of field lines occurring when the number of enclosed field lines goes through zero. Hence, the induced voltage is greatest as the loop rotates through its parallel-to-the-lines orientation. Because the voltage induced by the generator alternates, the current produced is ac, alternating current.[3] The alternating current in American homes is produced by generators standardized so that the current goes through 60 cycles of change each second—60 hertz.

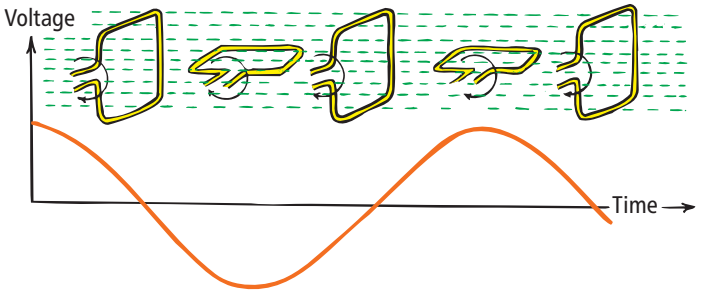


FIGURE 25.8
As the loop rotates, the induced voltage (and current) changes in magnitude and direction. One complete rotation of the loop produces one complete cycle in voltage (and in current).

[3]With appropriate brushes and by other means, the ac in the loop(s) can be converted to dc to make a dc generator.

CHECK POINT

1. **When the wire loop of Figure 25.8 is made to rotate in the magnetic field, voltage in the loop is induced. Why? Is it because the wire is moved perpendicular to magnetic field lines? Or, is it because the magnetic field intensity enclosed by the loop changes as the loop rotates?**
2. **When is energy input needed for energy output by electromagnetic induction?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Both. The two explanations are nicely equivalent.
2. Always. Loops of wire in any magnetic field need an energy source to provide rotation.

25.4 Power Production

To make a great discovery, being at the right place at the right time is not enough—curiosity and hard work are also important.

Fifty years after Michael Faraday and Joseph Henry discovered electromagnetic induction, Nikola Tesla and George Westinghouse put those findings to practical use and showed the world that electricity could be generated reliably and in sufficient quantities to light entire cities.

Turbogenerator Power

Tesla built generators much like those in operation today, but quite a bit more complicated than the simple model we have discussed. Each of Tesla's generators had an *armature*—an iron core wrapped with bundles of copper wire—that were made to spin within strong magnetic fields by means of a turbine, which, in turn, was spun by the energy of steam or falling water. The rotating loops of wire in the armature cut through the magnetic field of the surrounding electromagnets, thereby inducing alternating voltage and current.

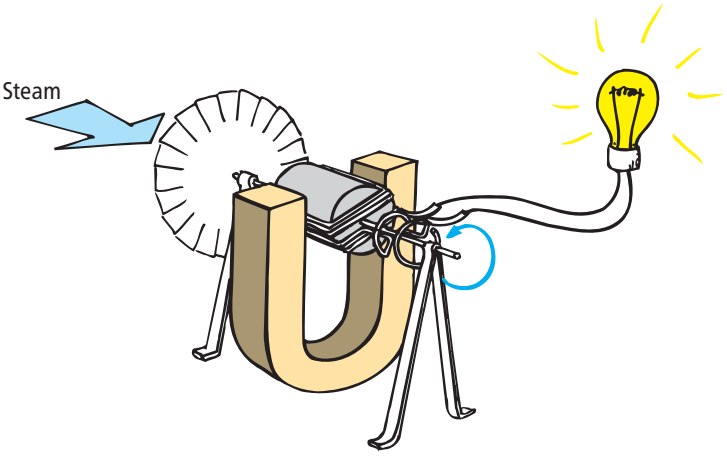


FIGURE 25.9
Steam drives the turbine, which is connected to the armature of the generator. Falling water also drives turbines.

We can look at this process from an atomic point of view. When the wires in the spinning armature cut through the magnetic field, oppositely directed electromagnetic forces act on the negative and positive charges. Electrons respond to this force by momentarily swarming relatively freely in one direction throughout the crystalline copper lattice; the copper atoms, which are actually positive ions, are forced in the opposite direction. Because the ions are anchored in the lattice, however, they hardly move at all. Only the electrons move, sloshing back and forth in alternating fashion with each rotation of the armature. The energy of this electronic sloshing is tapped at the electrode terminals of the generator.

MHD Power

An interesting device similar to the turbogenerator is the MHD (magnetohydrodynamic) generator, which eliminates the turbine and spinning armature altogether. Instead of making charges move in a magnetic field via a rotating armature, a plasma of electrons and positive ions expands through a nozzle and moves at supersonic speed through a magnetic field. Like the armature in a

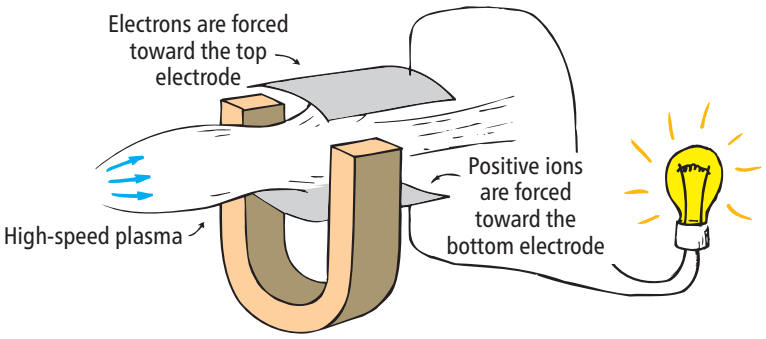


FIGURE 25.10
A simplified MHD generator. Oppositely directed forces act on the positive and negative particles in the high-speed plasma moving through the magnetic field. The result is a voltage difference between the two electrodes. Current then flows from one electrode to the other through an external circuit. There are no moving parts; only the plasma moves. In practice, superconducting electromagnets are used.

turbogenerator, the motion of charges through a magnetic field gives rise to a voltage and flow of current in keeping with Faraday's law of induction. Whereas in a conventional generator "brushes" carry the current to the external load circuit, in the MHD generator the same function is performed by conducting plates, or *electrodes* (Figure 25.10). Unlike the turbogenerator, the MHD generator can operate at any temperature to which the plasma can be heated, either by combustion or by nuclear processes. The high temperature results in a high thermodynamic efficiency, which means more power for the same amount of fuel and less waste heat. Efficiency is further boosted when the "waste" heat is used to convert water into steam to run a conventional steam-turbine generator.

This substitution of a flowing plasma for rotating copper coils in a generator has become operational only since development of the technology to produce sufficiently high-temperature plasmas. Current plants use a high-temperature plasma formed by combustion of fossil fuels in air or oxygen.[4]

It's important to know that generators don't produce energy—they simply convert energy from some other form to electric energy. As we discussed in Chapter 7, energy from a source, whether fossil or nuclear fuel or wind or water, is converted to mechanical energy to drive the turbine. The attached generator converts most of this mechanical energy to electric energy.

CHECK POINT

Is electricity a primary source of energy? Is electric power a source of energy?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

Definitely not! It's important to realize that neither of these is a source of energy. Electricity of any kind is a *carrier* of energy that requires a primary source such as solar, wind, water, or fossil fuel.

25.5 Transformers

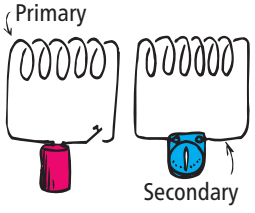


FIGURE 25.11
Whenever the primary switch is opened or closed, voltage is induced in the secondary circuit.

Electric energy can certainly be carried along wires, and now we'll see how it can be carried across empty space. Energy can be transferred from one device to another with the simple arrangement shown in Figure 25.11. Note that one coil is connected to a battery and the other is connected to a galvanometer. It is customary to refer to the coil connected to the power source as the *primary* (input) and to the other as the *secondary* (output). As soon as the switch is closed in the primary and current passes through its coil, a current occurs in the secondary also—even though there is no material connection between the two coils. Only a brief surge of current occurs in the secondary, however. Then, when the primary switch is opened, a surge of current again registers in the secondary, but in the opposite direction.

[4]Lower temperatures are sufficient when the electrically conducting fluid is liquid metal, usually lithium. A liquid-metal MHD power system is referred to as a LMMHD power system.

This is the explanation: A magnetic field builds up around the primary when the current begins to flow through the coil. This means that the magnetic field is growing (that is, *changing*) about the primary. But, since the coils are near each other, this changing field extends into the secondary coil, thereby inducing a voltage in the secondary. This induced voltage is only temporary because when the current and the magnetic field of the primary reach a steady state—that is, when the magnetic field is no longer changing—no further voltage is induced in the secondary. But, when the switch is turned off, the current in the primary drops to zero. The magnetic field about the coil collapses, thereby inducing a voltage in the secondary coil, which senses the change. *Change* is the key word. We see that voltage is induced whenever a magnetic field is *changing* through the coil, regardless of the reason.

If you place an iron core inside the primary and secondary coils of the arrangement of Figure 25.11, the magnetic field within the primary is intensified by the alignment of magnetic domains. The field extends into the secondary. Then you have a **transformer** (Figure 25.12)—a device for transforming electric power from one coil to another by means of electromagnetic induction. Instead of opening and closing a switch to produce the change of magnetic field, alternating current can be used to power the primary. Then the change of the magnetic field is ongoing. The change is continuous. Furthermore, the frequency of periodic changes in the magnetic field is equal to the frequency of the alternating current. A more efficient arrangement is shown in Figure 25.13.

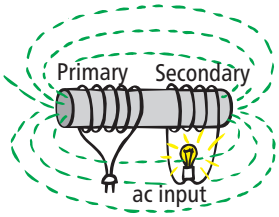
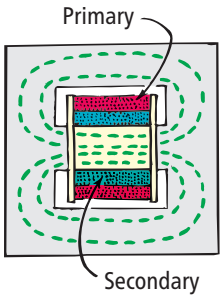


FIGURE 25.12
A simple transformer.



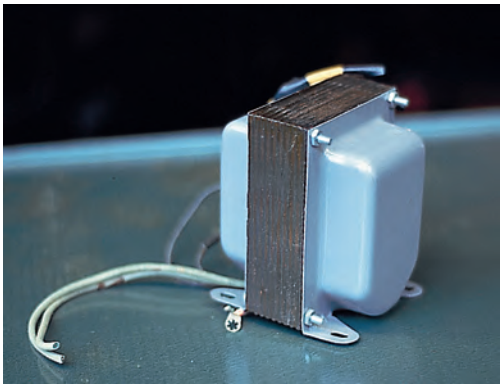
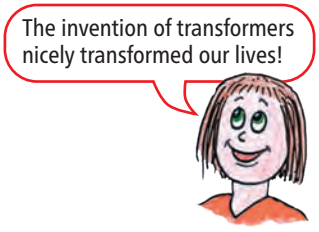


FIGURE 25.13
A practical and more efficient transformer. Both primary and secondary coils are wrapped on the inner part of the iron core (yellow), which guides alternating magnetic lines (green) produced by ac in the primary (red). The alternating field induces ac voltage in the secondary (blue). Thus power at one voltage from the primary is transferred to the secondary at a different voltage.

CHECK POINT

1. **What exactly is *transferred* by a transformer? What is *transformed* by a transformer?**
2. **When the switch of the primary in Figure 25.11 is opened or closed, the galvanometer in the secondary registers a current. But when the switch remains closed, no current is registered on the galvanometer of the secondary. Why?**



CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Energy is transferred from one set of coils to another. Voltage is transformed from one value to another from one set of coils to another.
2. When the switch remains in the closed position, there is a steady current in the primary and a steady magnetic field about the coil. This field extends to the secondary, but unless there is a *change* in the field, electromagnetic induction does not occur.

If the primary and secondary have equal numbers of wire loops (usually called *turns*), then the input and output alternating voltages will be equal. But if the secondary coil has more turns than the primary, the alternating voltage produced in the secondary coil will be greater than that supplied to the primary. In this case, the voltage is said to be *stepped up*. If the secondary has twice as many turns as the primary, the voltage in the secondary will be double that of the primary.

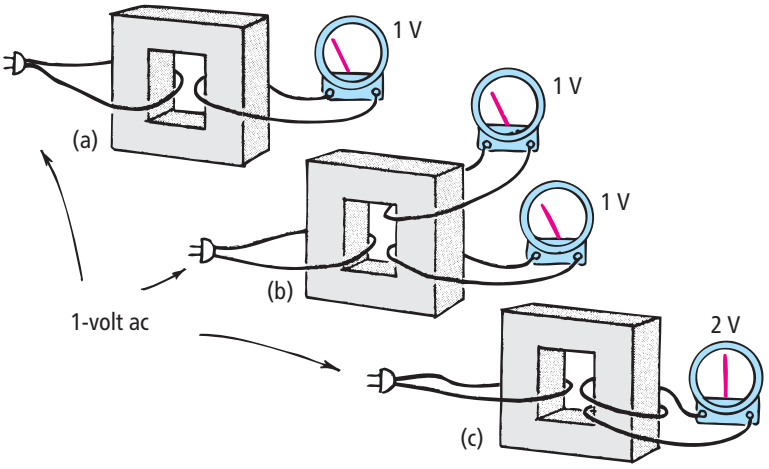


FIGURE 25.14
(a) The voltage of 1 V induced in the secondary equals the voltage of the primary. (b) A voltage of 1 V is also induced in the added secondary because it intercepts the same magnetic field change from the primary. (c) The voltages of 1 V each induced in the two one-turn secondaries are equivalent to a voltage of 2 V induced in a single two-turn secondary.

We can see this with the arrangements in Figure 25.14. First consider the simple case of a single primary loop connected to a 1-volt alternating source, and a single secondary loop connected to the ac voltmeter (a). The secondary intercepts the changing magnetic field of the primary, and a voltage of 1 V is induced in the secondary. If another loop is wrapped around the core so that the transformer has two secondaries (b), it intercepts the same magnetic field change. We see that 1 V is induced in each also. There is no need to keep both secondaries separate. We could join them (c) and still have a total induced voltage of 1 V + 1 V, or 2 V. This is equivalent to saying that a voltage of 2 V will be induced in a single secondary that has twice the number of loops as the primary. If the secondary is wound with three times as many loops, then three times as much voltage will be induced. Stepped-up voltage may light a neon sign or send power over a long distance.

If the secondary has fewer turns than the primary, the alternating voltage produced in the secondary will be *lower* than that supplied to the plug in the primary. The voltage is said to be *stepped down*. This stepped-down voltage may safely operate a toy electric train. If the secondary has half as many turns as the primary, then only half as much voltage is induced in the secondary. So electric energy can be fed into the primary at a given alternating voltage and taken from the secondary at a higher or lower alternating voltage, depending on the relative number of turns in the primary and secondary coil windings. The relationship between primary and secondary voltages with respect to the relative number of turns is given by

$$\frac{\text{Primary voltage}}{\text{Number of primary turns}} = \frac{\text{secondary voltage}}{\text{number of secondary turns}}$$

FIGURE 25.15
A common neighborhood transformer that typically steps 2400 volts down to 240 volts for homes and small businesses. The 240 volts can be divided into 120 volts, which is safer to use.

It might seem that we get something for nothing with a transformer that steps up the voltage. Not so, for energy conservation always regulates what can happen. When voltage is stepped up, the current in the secondary is lower *than in the primary*. The transformer actually transfers *energy* from one coil to the other. Make no mistake about this point: A transformer can in no way step up energy—a conservation of energy no-no. A transformer steps voltage up or down without a change in energy. The rate at which energy is transferred is called *power*. The power used in the secondary is supplied by the primary. The primary gives no more than the secondary uses, in accord with the law of conservation of energy. If we ignore the slight power losses due to heating of the coils and the core, then

$$\text{Power into primary} = \text{power out of secondary}$$

Electric power is equal to the product of voltage and current, so we can say

$$(\text{Voltage} \times \text{current})_{\text{primary}} = (\text{voltage} \times \text{current})_{\text{secondary}}$$

We see that if more voltage is induced in the secondary than is in the primary, it will have less current than is supplied to primary. The ease with which voltages can be stepped up or down with a transformer is the principal reason that most electric power is ac rather than dc.

CHECK POINT

1. **If 100 V of ac powers a 100-turn transformer primary, what will be the voltage output if the secondary has 200 turns?**
2. **Assuming the answer to the preceding question is 200 V and the secondary is connected to a flood lamp with a resistance of 50 Ω, what will be the ac current in the secondary circuit?**
3. **What is the power in the secondary coil?**
4. **What is the power in the primary coil?**
5. **What is the ac current drawn by the primary coil?**
6. **The voltage has been stepped up, and the current has been stepped down. Ohm's law says that increased voltage will produce increased current. Is there a contradiction here, or doesn't Ohm's law apply to circuits that have transformers?**

Notice the transformers on utility poles in your neighborhood. They are the go-between from power stations to individual consumers, often humming as they do their thing.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. From $\frac{100\ \text{V}}{100\ \text{primary turns}} = \frac{x\ \text{V}}{200\ \text{secondary turns}}$, you should see that $x = 200$ V.
2. From Ohm's law, $200\ \text{V}/50\ \Omega = 4$ A.
3. Power = voltage × current = 200 V × 4 A = 800 W.
4. By the law of conservation of energy, the power in the primary coil is the same, 800 W.
5. 8 A, twice as much. Can you see that's because 100 V × ? A = 800 W?
6. Ohm's law is alive and well! The current in the secondary equals the induced voltage divided by the load (resistance), but is smaller only when compared with the larger current drawn by the primary. $I_{\text{primary}} V = I_{\text{secondary}} V$. Interestingly, there is no conventional resistance in the primary, only reluctance to the transfer of energy to the secondary (see Figure 25.4).

FIGURE 25.16
An ac adapter converts household ac into low-voltage dc for use in electronic devices. It contains a step-down transformer to lower the voltage and diodes to change ac to dc current.

25.6 Self-Induction

Current-carrying loops in a coil interact not only with loops of other coils but also with loops of the same coil. Each loop in a coil interacts with the magnetic field around the current in other loops of the same coil. This is *self-induction*. A self-induced voltage is produced. This voltage is always in a direction opposing the changing voltage that produces it and is commonly called the "back electromotive force," or simply "back emf." We won't treat self-induction and back emfs here, except to acknowledge a common and dangerous effect.

Suppose that a coil with a large number of turns is used as an electromagnet and is powered with a dc source, perhaps a small battery. Current in the coil is then accompanied by a strong magnetic field. When we disconnect the battery by opening a switch, we had better be prepared for a surprise. When the switch is opened, the current in the circuit falls rapidly to zero and the magnetic field in the coil undergoes a sudden decrease (Figure 25.17). What happens when a magnetic field suddenly changes in a coil, even if it is the same coil that produced it? The answer is that a voltage is induced. The rapidly collapsing magnetic field with its store of energy may induce an enormous voltage, large enough to develop a strong spark across the switch—or to you, if you are opening the switch! For this reason, electromagnets

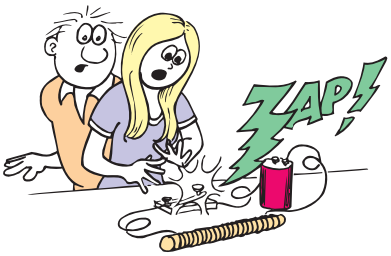


FIGURE 25.17
When the switch is opened, the magnetic field of the coil collapses. This sudden change in the field can induce a huge voltage.

are connected to a circuit that absorbs excess charge and prevents the current from dropping too suddenly. This reduces the self-induced voltage. This is also, by the way, why you should disconnect appliances by turning off the switch, not by pulling out the plug. The circuitry in the switch may prevent a sudden change in current.

25.7 Magnetic Braking

An impressive classroom application of self-induction is shown by physics instructor Fred Cauthen, who is about to release a sheet of copper into the space between the poles of a magnet (Figure 25.18). Intriguingly, the sheet slows dramatically while passing through the "empty" space. But the space isn't really empty. It contains a magnetic field. And the interior of the copper sheet isn't empty either. It contains "free" electrons (conduction electrons). What do we know about electrons moving in a magnetic field? They are deflected. As a section of the copper plate enters the magnetic field, its free electron are deflected into swirling "eddy" currents—like water swirling in a turbulent brook. The eddy currents themselves are little electromagnets that are repelled by the outside magnet, slowing the sheet. As the copper sheet leaves the magnetic field, eddy currents swirling in the opposite direction are generated. These little electromagnets are attracted back to the magnet, also slowing the sheet.

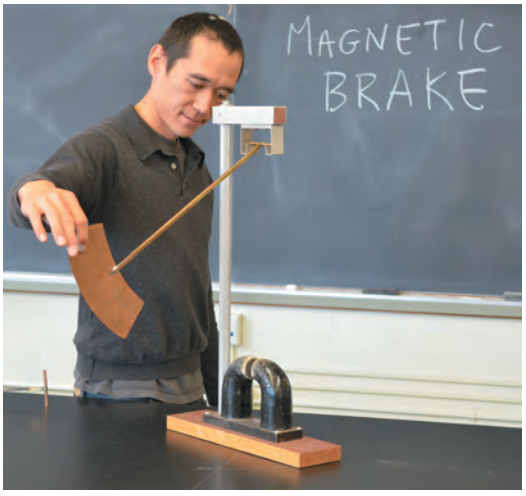


FIGURE 25.18
When the copper sheet encounters the magnetic field between the poles of the magnet it comes to a halt, illustrating magnetic braking. We say motion is damped.

Why is the sheet slowed instead of being speeded up? Note the similarity to the generation of a voltage by a sudden change of magnetic field that occurs with self induction discussed in Section 25.6. Both effects involve the conservation of energy and illustrate "Lenz's law," which says that an induced effect opposes the inducing cause. Otherwise a cascade of increasing energy would be possible—a conservation of energy no no.

Magnetic braking (also called eddy current braking) is commonly used to slow high-speed electric trains, trucks, cars, and the blades of wind turbines. Unlike braking by friction, there is no "wear and tear" caused by parts rubbing together, and the thermal energy that is generated can often be dissipated in a larger mass. Even more sophisticated than magnetic braking is "regenerative braking," in which the kinetic energy of a slowing vehicle is transformed into electric energy to charge a battery.

25.8 Power Transmission

Almost all electric energy sold is in the form of ac, traditionally because of the ease with which it can be transformed from one voltage to another.[5] Large currents in wires produce heat and energy losses, so power is transmitted great distances at high voltages and correspondingly low currents (power = voltage × current). Power is generated at 25,000 V or less and is stepped up near the power station to as much as 750,000 V for long-distance transmission, then stepped down in stages at substations and distribution points to voltages used in industrial applications (often 440 V or more) and for the home (240 and 120 V).

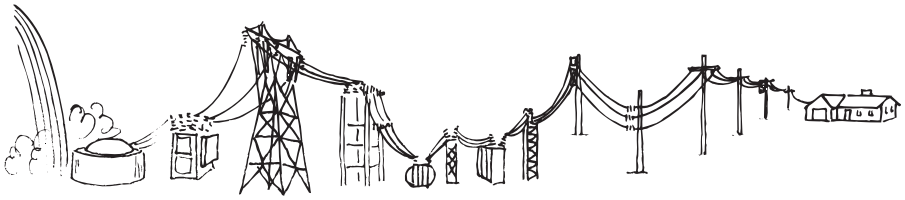


FIGURE 25.19
Power transmission.

[5]Using electronic devices called inverters, power companies can transform dc voltage, as might be supplied by solar collectors, to ac.

Energy, then, is transferred from one system of conducting wires to another by electromagnetic induction. It is but a short step further to conclude that the same principles account for eliminating wires and sending energy (usually a small amount of energy) from a radio-transmitter antenna to a radio receiver, possibly many kilometers away. This principle was first demonstrated by Heinrich Hertz (for whom the unit of frequency is named) in 1887 and first exploited commercially by Pittsburgh's KDKA radio station in 1920. Extend these principles just a step further and you have the TV stations, the wireless phones, and the wireless chargers that are now common.[6] The effects of electromagnetic induction are very far reaching.

Of interest is the distinction between the overhead wire lines that transmit energy and the common 120-volt wiring in homes. Why, for example, can a bird can perch harmlessly on a 120,000-V transmission line but be shocked if short-circuiting a 120-V wire in the home (Figure 25.20)? In the process of short-circuiting home lines, up to a difference of 120 V can be applied across the bird's feet. With the bird perched on the power line, the voltage difference between its feet is negligible. That's because the high voltage is *not* from one end of the transmitting line to the other, but between the line and one of the two parallel neighboring lines. If the bird were to reach over to a neighboring line, doing so would be its last act.

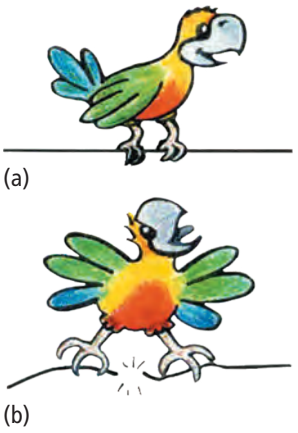


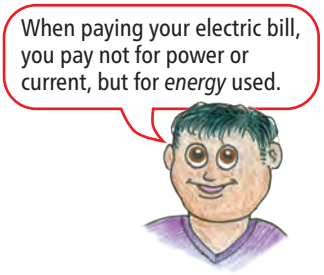
FIGURE 25.20
(a) There's no voltage difference between the bird's feet while safely perched on a 120,000-V power line. (b) The bird isn't safe when it short-circuits loose wiring in a 120-V home circuit.

CHECK POINT

To light a household lamp you connect it to a wall outlet by its cord, which is composed of two parallel wires insulated from each other. What does a lamp cord have in common with overhead power lines? How does insulation for each differ?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

Although voltages differ, both are wired in parallel for ac and deliver energy from one location to another. Whereas safety requires insulation between the millimeters-apart wires in a lamp cord, no insulation is needed for the meters-apart overhead power lines—except where towers hold up the wires and large plastic insulators separate the wires from the metal.



25.9 Field Induction

Electromagnetic induction explains the induction of voltages and currents. Actually, the more basic *fields* are at the root of both voltages and currents. The modern view of electromagnetic induction is that electric and magnetic fields are induced. These, in turn, produce the voltages we have considered. So induction occurs whether or not a conducting wire or any material medium is present. In this more general sense, Faraday's law can be expressed as follows:

An electric field is induced in any region of space in which a magnetic field is changing with time.

There is a second effect, an extension of Faraday's law. It is the same except that the roles of electric and magnetic fields are interchanged. It is one of nature's many symmetries. This effect was advanced by the British physicist James Clerk Maxwell in about 1860 and is known as **Maxwell's counterpart to Faraday's law:**

A magnetic field is induced in any region of space in which an electric field is changing with time.

Electromagnetic waves scarcely ever interact with each other. The space around you is filled with radio waves, TV signals, cell-phone messages, and light, each "doing its own thing" and ignoring all the others. How fortunate for us.

[6]So prevalent is wireless technology in the 21st century that a joke has a child asking "Daddy, what's a wire?"

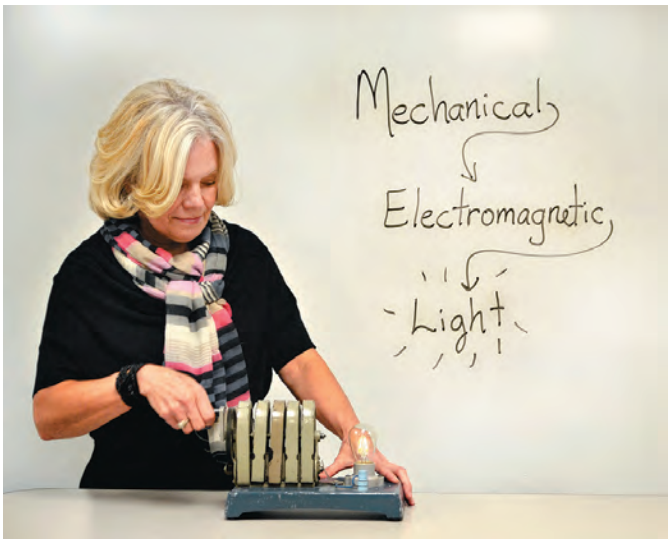
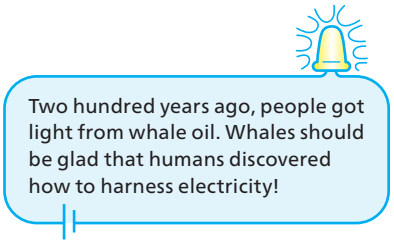


FIGURE 25.21
In doing work by rotating the crank of the generator, physics teacher Karen Jo Matsler converts mechanical energy to electromagnetic energy, which in turn, is converted to light.

In each case, the strength of the induced field is proportional to the rate of change of the inducing field. Induced electric and magnetic fields are at right angles to each other.

Maxwell saw the link between electromagnetic waves and light.[7] If electric charges are set into vibration in the range of frequencies that match those of light, waves are produced that *are* light! Maxwell discovered that light is simply electromagnetic waves in the range of frequencies to which the eye is sensitive.

Because of electromagnetic induction, the energy of elevated rivers has been harnessed, turned into electricity, and transported to distant cities. The advent of motors, generators, and transformers occurred at about the time the American Civil War was being fought. From a long view of human history, there can be little doubt that events such as the American Civil War will pale into provincial insignificance in comparison with the more significant event of the 19th century: the discovery and implementation of the electromagnetic laws.


Two hundred years ago, people got light from whale oil. Whales should be glad that humans discovered how to harness electricity!

[7]On the eve of his discovery, story has it that Maxwell had a date with a young woman he was later to marry. While walking in a garden, his date remarked about the beauty and wonder of the stars. Maxwell asked how she would feel to know that she was walking with the only person in the world who knew what starlight really was. And it was true. At that time, James Clerk Maxwell was the only person in the world who knew that light of any kind is energy carried in waves of electric and magnetic fields that continuously regenerate each other.

Chapter 25 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Electromagnetic induction The phenomenon of inducing voltage when a magnetic field changes with time. If the magnetic field within a closed loop changes in any way, a voltage is induced in the loop:

$$\text{Voltage induced} \sim \text{area of loop} \times \frac{\Delta\text{magnetic field}}{\Delta\text{time}}$$

This is a statement of Faraday's law. (If multiple loops are connected together in a coil, the voltage induced is multiplied by the number of loops.) The induction of voltage is actually the result of a more fundamental phenomenon—generally, the induction of an electric *field*.

Faraday's law The induced voltage in a coil is proportional to the product of its numbers of loops, the cross-sectional area of each loop, and the rate at which the magnetic field changes within those loops.

Generator An electromagnetic induction device that produces electric current by rotating a coil within a stationary magnetic field. A generator converts mechanical energy to electric energy.

Transformer A device for transferring electric power from one coil of wire to another, by means of electromagnetic induction, for the purpose of transforming one value of voltage into another.

Maxwell's counterpart to Faraday's law A magnetic field is created in any region of space in which an electric field is changing with time. The magnitude of the induced magnetic field is proportional to the rate at which the electric field changes. The direction of the induced magnetic field is at right angles to the changing electric field.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

25.1 Electromagnetic Induction

1. What kind of energy conversion takes place in electromagnetic induction?
2. What is a transformer, and where do we use it?

25.2 Faraday's Law

3. What are the three ways in which voltage can be induced in one or more loops of wire?
4. How does the frequency of induced voltage relate to how frequently a magnet is plunged in and out of a coil of wire?

25.3 Generators and Alternating Current

5. What are the basic differences and similarities between a generator and an electric motor?
6. What type of current, ac or dc, is produced by a common generator? Why?
7. Compare the standard frequency of ac used in homes in the USA and Europe. Can you comment on the discrepancy if there is any?

25.4 Power Production

8. Who discovered electromagnetic induction, and who put it to practical use?
9. What are the two most common ways that energy is supplied directly to the turbines?
10. Is it correct to say that a generator produces energy? Defend your answer.
11. What are the principal differences between an MHD generator and a conventional generator?

25.5 Transformers

12. What name is given to the rate at which energy is transferred?
13. Is it correct to say that a transformer boosts electric energy? Defend your answer.
14. Which of these does a transformer change: voltage, current, energy, or power?
15. How does the power input to an ideal transformer compare with the power output?
16. Specifically, what quantity is stepped up by a step-up transformer?
17. In a step-up transformer, how does the input current compare with the output current?
18. Why does a transformer require ac?
19. Why is the bird in Figure 25.20 not harmed by the voltage difference across its feet?

25.6 Self-Induction

20. When the magnetic field changes in a coil of wire, voltage in each loop of the coil is induced. Will voltage be induced in a loop if the source of the magnetic field is the coil itself?
21. What is the danger of yanking the plug from its wall socket in order to turn off a device?

25.7 Magnetic Braking

22. Why will magnetic braking not occur for a sheet of plastic that swings into a magnetic field?
23. What are eddy currents?
24. What is Lenz's law?

25.8 Power Transmission

25. What is the purpose of transmitting power at high voltages over long distances?
26. Why can a bird perch on a high-voltage power line without harm?
27. Does the transmission of electric energy require electrical conductors between the source and receiver? Cite an example to defend your answer.

25.9 Field Induction

28. What is induced by the rapid alternation of a *magnetic field*? Of an *electric field*?
29. Are wires needed in Maxwell's view of Faraday's law?
30. What do we call electromagnetic waves in the range of frequencies that match what our eyes can see?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Text a relative or friend and tell them you have discovered what may be the answer to what has been a mystery for centuries—the nature of light. Briefly state how light is related to electricity and magnetism.
32. If you haven't already tried the activity described on page 539 of the previous chapter, do it now. With a compass you can see that cans of food on your pantry shelf have north and south poles. When you pass the compass from their bottoms to their tops, you can easily identify their poles. Mark the poles, either N or S. Then turn the cans upside down and note the number of days for the poles to reverse themselves. Explain to your friends why the poles reverse.

33. After brushing you teeth with your electric toothbrush, explain to another the process by which it, like your smartphone, becomes charged when not in use.
34. Drop a small bar magnet through a vertical plastic pipe. Note the speed of its normal fall. Then do the same with a copper pipe. A neodymium magnet works best because of its high strength. Whoa! Why the difference?

PLUG AND CHUG (EQUATION FAMILIARIZATION)

$$\text{Transformer relationship; } \frac{\text{Primary voltage}}{\text{Number of primary turns}} = \frac{\text{Secondary voltage}}{\text{Number of secondary turns}}$$

35. The primary of a transformer connected to 140 V has 20 turns. The secondary has 200 turns. Calculate the output voltage, and comment on the nature of the transformer.

36. The primary of a transformer connected to 150 V has 300 turns. If the secondary has 10 turns, then calculate the output voltage and comment on the nature of the transformer.

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

37. A gaming console requires 6.0 V to operate correctly. A transformer allows the device to be powered from a 120-V outlet. If the primary has 500 turns, show that the secondary should have 25 turns.

38. An electric toy car requires 5.0 V to operate. When it is connected to a 120-V household circuit, a transformer must be utilized. If the transformer's primary coil has 240 turns, then calculate the required number of turns for the secondary.

39. Your laptop requires 20 V to operate, and the available voltage is 120 V. Find the ratio between the number of turns in primary to the secondary.

40. If the output current for the transformer in the previous problem is 1.8 A, show that the input current is 0.36 A.

41. A transformer has an input voltage of 35 V and an output voltage of 5 V. If the input is changed to 70 V, calculate the output voltage.

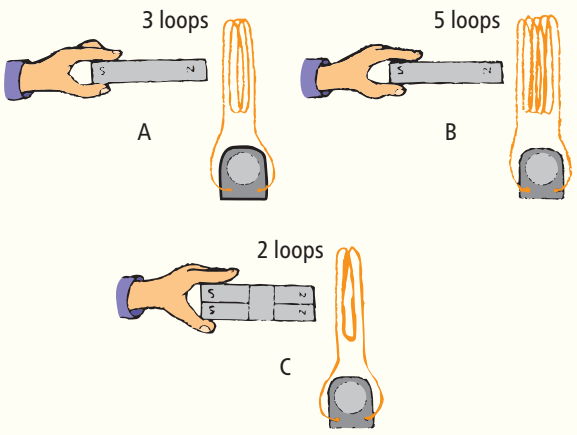
42. An ideal transformer has 60 turns in its primary and 360 turns in its secondary. 15-V ac is connected to the primary. Calculate
    (a) the voltage at the secondary.
    (b) the current if a 10 Ω device is connected to the secondary.
    (c) the power utilized for the above 10 Ω device.

43. Neon signs require about 12,000 V for their operation. Consider a neon-sign transformer that operates off 120-V lines. How many more turns should be on the secondary compared with the primary?

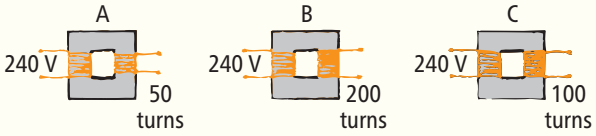
44. A power of 100 kW (10^5 W) is delivered to the other side a part of a city by a pair of power lines, between which the voltage is 12,000 V.
    (a) Use the formula $P = IV$ to show that the current in the lines is 8.3 A.
    (b) If each of the two lines has a resistance of 10 Ω, show that there is a is an 83-V change of voltage *along* each line. (Think carefully. This voltage change is along each line, *not between* the lines.)
    (c) Show that the power expended as heat in both lines together is 1.38 kW (distinct from power delivered to customers).
    (d) How do your calculations support the importance of stepping voltages up with transformers for long-distance transmission?

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

45. Bar magnets are moved into the wire coils in identical quick fashion. Voltage induced in each coil causes a current, as indicated on the galvanometer. Neglect the electrical resistance in the loops in the coil, and rank from greatest to least the readings on the galvanometer.



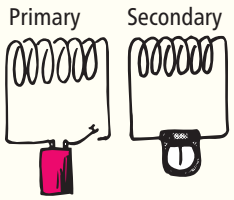
46. The transformers are each powered with 100 W, and all have 100 turns on the primary. The number of turns on each secondary varies as indicated.



    (a) Rank the voltage output of the secondaries from greatest to least.
    (b) Rank the current in the secondaries from greatest to least.
    (c) Rank the power output in the secondaries from greatest to least.

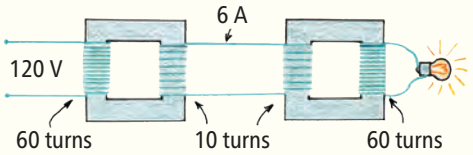
THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

47. The common pickup of an electric guitar consists of a coil of wire around a small permanent magnet, as described in Figure 25.5. Why will this type of pickup fail with nylon strings?
48. What is the purpose of the windings on the armature of an electric motor?
49. Why is a generator armature harder to rotate when it is connected to a circuit and supplying electric current?
50. Will a cyclist coast farther if the lamp connected to the generator on his bicycle is switched off? Explain.
51. Will a car get better gas mileage if the radio is off? If the air conditioner is off? Explain.
52. When a self-driving car drives over a wide, closed loop of wire embedded in a road surface, is the magnetic field of Earth within the loop altered? Is a pulse of current produced? Cite a practical application for this at a traffic intersection.
53. In a security area, people walk through a large coil of wire and through a weak ac magnetic field. What occurs when a small piece of metal passes through the coil?
54. A piece of plastic tape coated with iron oxide is magnetized more in some parts than in others. When the tape is moved past a small coil of wire, what happens in the coil? What practical application of this was enjoyed by your grandparents?
55. Your friend says that if you manually crank the shaft of a dc motor, the motor becomes a dc generator. Why do you agree or disagree?
56. What is the direction of the magnetic field for both the motor effect and the generator effect as shown in Figure 25.7?
57. What different directions of magnetic force occur for the motor and generator effects shown in Figure 25.7?
58. What different results occur for the different directions of the magnetic forces as shown in Figure 25.7?
59. When you turn the shaft of an electric motor by hand, what occurs in the interior coils of wire?
60. Does the voltage output increase when a generator is made to spin faster? Defend your answer.
61. If you place a metal ring in a region in which a magnetic field is rapidly alternating, the ring may become hot to your touch. Why?
62. Jean-Eugène Robert-Houdini was a famous 19th century French magician and illusionist. In one of his famous tricks, he used to ask a large, strong audience member to lift a chest lying on the floor of the stage. The person would struggle to lift it from the ground. However, later, the magician would lift it from the floor with ease. Could you predict the scientific explanation behind the trick?
63. In the first chapter-opening photo, Jean Curtis asks her class why the copper ring levitates about the iron core of the electromagnet. What is the explanation, and does it involve ac or dc?
64. What is the role of electromagnetic induction in the wireless charger of smartphones?
65. A length of wire is bent into a closed loop and a magnet is plunged into it, inducing a voltage and, consequently, a current in the wire. A second length of wire, twice as long, is bent into two loops of wire, and a magnet is similarly plunged into it. Twice the voltage is induced, but the current is the same as that produced in the single loop. Why?
66. Two separate similar coils of wire are mounted close to each other, as shown. The first coil is connected to a battery and has a direct current flowing through it. The second coil is connected to a galvanometer.

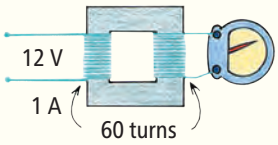


(a) How does the galvanometer respond when the switch in the first circuit is closed?
(b) After being closed, how does the meter respond when the current is steady?
(c) How does the meter respond when the switch is opened?

67. Your friend says that what actually transfers from one coil to the other in the circuits above is energy. Do you agree?
68. Your friend also says that more voltage would be induced in the circuits above if iron cores were placed inside the coils. Do you agree?
69. How does the current in the secondary of a transformer compare with the current in the primary when the secondary voltage is twice the primary voltage?
70. In what sense can a transformer be considered an electrical lever? What does it multiply? What does it *not* multiply?
71. What is the principal difference between a step-up transformer and a step-down transformer?
72. Why can a hum usually be heard when a transformer is operating?
73. Why doesn't a transformer work with direct current? Why is ac required?
74. Why is it important and efficient that the core of a transformer pass through both coils?
75. Are the primary and secondary coils in a transformer physically linked, or is there space between the two? Explain.
76. In the 120-volt ac circuit shown, how many volts are impressed across the lightbulb and how many amps flow through it?



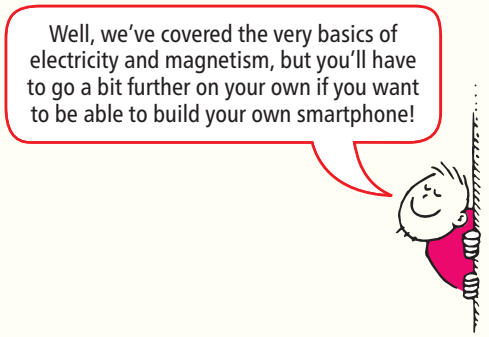
77. Can an efficient transformer step up energy? Defend your answer.
78. In the dc circuit shown where primarly and secondary coils have the same number of turns, how many volts are impressed across the meter and how many amps flow through it?



79. How would you answer the previous question if the input were 12 V ac?
80. We know that the source of a sound wave is a vibrating object, a guitar string for example. What vibrating object produces an electromagnetic wave?
81. With no magnets in the vicinity, why will current flow in a large coil of wire waved around in the air?
82. How does an incident radio wave affect the electrons in a receiving antenna?
83. How does the frequency of an electromagnetic wave compare with the frequency of the electrons it sets into oscillation in a receiving antenna?
84. A friend says that changing electric and magnetic fields generate one another and give rise to visible light when the frequency of change matches the frequencies of light. Do you agree? Explain.
85. Would electromagnetic waves exist if changing magnetic fields could produce electric fields, but changing electric fields could not, in turn, produce magnetic fields? Explain.

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

86. Discuss with your classmate why the word *change* occurs so frequently in this chapter.
87. Electrical power transmission lines earlier used glass and now use ceramic holders to hold the cables. Why are glass and ceramic materials used for this?
88. A basic earthquake detector consists of a suspended massive magnet that is surrounded by stationary coils of wire fastened inside a small box firmly anchored to Earth. Explain how this device works, applying two important principles of physics—one studied in Chapter 2 and the other in this chapter.
89. When drilling a hole through a piece of wood and a piece of metal, which of these could make the bit of the drill hotter and why?
90. Why are currents kept low in high-voltage power lines?
91. In a 100,000-V power line, is 100,000 volts delivered to a destination, or is there 100,000 volts potential difference between the pair of lines delivering that power?
92. A particular pendulum consists of a copper sheet at the end of a stick that can swing through the poles of a permanent magnet. When the pendulum is released, it slows as it meets the magnetic field. Will slowing similarly occur with an aluminum sheet? Plastic? Defend your answers.
93. When a small bar magnet is dropped into a vertical copper tube, it slows. Your friend says the physics involved is magnetic braking that is evident when a copper swings between the poles of a permanent magnet, as in Figure 25.18. Do you agree with your friend?
94. If a magnet, when brought toward a sheet of copper, creates eddy currents in a clockwise direction, predict the direction of eddy currents when the magnet is taken away from the sheet.
95. Why will a bar magnet fall slower and reach terminal velocity in a vertical copper or aluminum tube but not in a cardboard tube?
96. A friend says that the resistance to changes in motion that are illustrated in both Figures 25.4 and Figure 25.7 is linked to energy conservation. Do you agree? Explain.
97. If a bar magnet is tossed into a long coil of high-resistance wire, it will slow down. Why?
98. A metal bar oscillates freely in the absence of a magnetic field. But when it oscillates between the magnetic poles of a magnet, its oscillations are quickly damped. Why? (Such magnetic damping is used in a number of practical devices.)
99. Do you think an aircraft, while flying in the Earth's magnetic field, experiences a Lorentz force. If yes, why is the charging of the wings of the plane not significant enough to affect passengers? What is the possible role of "discharge wicks" in this scenario?
100. Compare the functionalities of a generator and a transformer.


Well, we've covered the very basics of electricity and magnetism, but you'll have to go a bit further on your own if you want to be able to build your own smartphone!

CHAPTER TWENTY FIVE Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. The metal detectors that people walk through in security areas operate via
   (a) Ohm's law.
   (b) Faraday's law.
   (c) Coulomb's law.
   (d) Newton's laws.
2. Voltage can be induced in a wire by
   (a) moving the wire near a magnet.
   (b) moving a magnet near the wire.
   (c) changing the current in a nearby wire.
   (d) All of the above
3. Voltage is induced in a wire coil connected to a voltmeter when a magnet is moved to and fro in the coil. If the coil has twice as many loops, the voltage induced is
   (a) half.
   (b) the same.
   (c) twice.
   (d) four times as much.
4. Thrust a magnet into a coil of wire and you'll induce
   (a) voltage.
   (b) current.
   (c) Both
   (d) Neither
5. The essential physics concept in an electric generator is
   (a) Coulomb's law.
   (b) Ohm's law.
   (c) Faraday's law.
   (d) Newton's second law.
6. A transformer transforms voltage while
   (a) producing energy.
   (b) producing power.
   (c) transferring energy from one coil to another.
   (d) transferring current from one coil to another.
7. A step-up transformer steps up voltage by ten times. If voltage input is 120 volts, voltage output is
   (a) 60 V.
   (b) 120 V.
   (c) 1200 V.
   (d) 12000 V.
8. Compared with power input, the power output of an ideal transformer is
   (a) greater.
   (b) less.
   (c) the same.
   (d) Any of these
9. When a sheet of copper moves between the poles of a permanent magnet
   (a) eddy currents in the sheet are induced.
   (b) electric and magnetic fields are induced in the sheet.
   (c) no change in motion occurs.
   (d) kinetic energy of the sheet is increased.
10. The linkage of induced electric and magnetic fields produces
    (a) electromagnetic waves.
    (b) strengthening of both fields.
    (c) higher voltages produced by Faraday induction.
    (d) All of the above

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (b): Voltage is induced in the coils of metal detectors when metals pass through them, in accord with Faraday's law. The other laws listed may be evident in the metal detectors, but are not primary factors. This is a pure and simple Faraday application. **2. (d):** *Change* is the key word in electromagnetic induction. To induce voltage, a change of some kind must occur relative to a conducting wire and a magnet. All of the choices satisfy this requirement, hence the correct response (d). **3. (c):** Any movement of a magnet in a coil of wire will induce a voltage in that coil. In accord with Faraday's law, the amount of voltage is directly proportional to the number of loops. So if the number of loops is doubled, the voltage will also be doubled. **4. (c):** Choice (a) is certainly true. But a task in exams is to check that other choices may also be correct, especially in a question with a choice of "both." The induced voltage in the wire coil also produces current, so (c) is the correct answer. Read all choices before answering. Interestingly, if the coil were of non-conducting rubber, then induced voltage would not be accompanied by current, wherein choice (a) would be correct. **5. (c):** Electric motors and electric generators employ electromagnetic induction for their operation. Of the names listed, only Faraday is associated with such induction. If Joseph Henry were listed, he too would be a correct answer. The other choices are peripheral to Faraday's law and cannot be considered correct responses. **6. (c):** First we ask what is voltage? It's energy per charge. When a transformer transforms voltage it does so by transferring a fixed amount of energy from one coil to another. A transformer transfers energy and power. It does not produce energy and power. And it does not transfer current, but induces it. Hence correct choice (c). **7. (c):** Quite simply, 120 volts stepped up by 10 equals 1200 V ($120\text{ V} \times 10 = 1200\text{ V}$). Other choices do not apply this simple arithmetic. **8. (c):** The key word in this statement is "ideal," which in the case of a transformer means no energy losses. In practice, about 1% of energy turns to heat, a value is so low that we approximate the ideal $IV(\text{input}) = IV(\text{output})$ transformer relationship. **9. (a):** This is magnetic braking, caused by eddy currents that are induced in the moving copper sheet. The sheet is slowed by the interaction between the permanent magnet and the resulting induced magnetic fields of the eddy currents. Electric fields are not induced in the sheet. **10. (a):** The linking of E and M fields was recognized by Maxwell who predicted the existence of E&M waves. When the frequency of such waves fall in the frequency range of visible light, the corresponding wave IS light—a tiny part of the overall E&M spectrum.

This page is intentionally left blank

PART SIX

Light

I find it intriguing that Earth's atmosphere acts as a lens that bends the red light of sunrises and sunsets all around Earth onto the Moon's surface during a lunar eclipse—often giving it a reddish color. This is just one of many examples that show that things around us are connected to other things, all enhancing the beauty of nature. Learning physics is much more than learning a body of knowledge. Physics is a way of thinking.

CHAPTER TWENTY SIX

26 Properties of Light

26.1 Electromagnetic Waves

26.2 Electromagnetic Wave Velocity

26.3 The Electromagnetic Spectrum

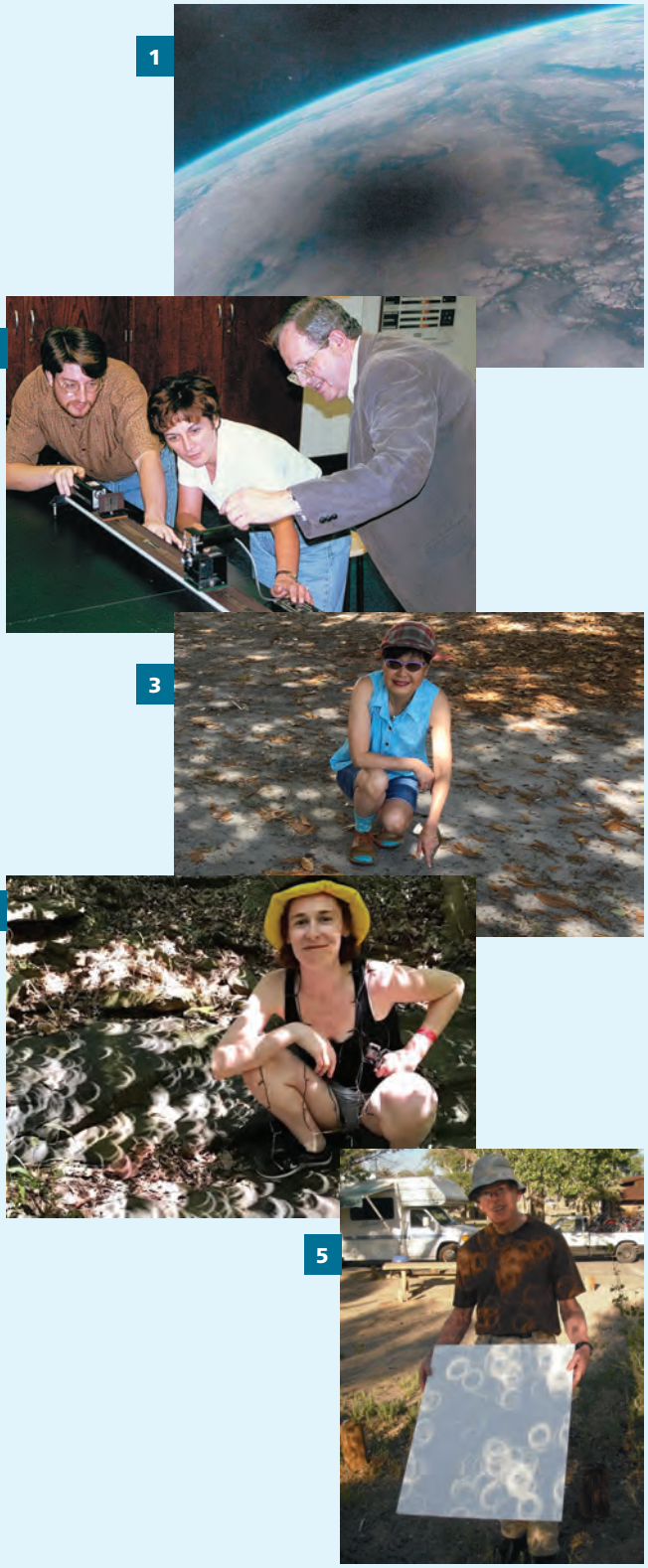
26.4 Transparent Materials

26.5 Speed of Light in a Transparent Medium

26.6 Opaque Materials
Shadows

26.7 Solar and Lunar Eclipses

26.8 Seeing Light—The Eye



1 Looking down from the space station MIR at a solar eclipse on Earth. **2** Bob and Leslie Abrams (my daughter) assist Dave Wall with an optics experiment. **3** Circular images of the Sun are cast from above through small openings between tree leaves. Overlapping of images produce the larger brighter areas. **4** Alex Lucas enjoys a partial solar eclipse, where thinner crescent-shaped images are cast with very little overlapping. **5** During an annular eclipse, the Moon aligns with but doesn't fully cover the Sun, resulting in solar circles, as demonstrated by Paul Doherty during the 2012 annular eclipse that passed over the western United States.

James Clerk Maxwell, born in 1831, was a Scottish mathematician and theoretical physicist. His parents did not meet and marry until they were well into their thirties, which was unusual at that time, and his mother was nearly 40 when James was born. James was the only surviving child, his older sister dying in infancy.

Maxwell had an unquenchable curiosity from an early age. His mother recognized his potential and took responsibility for his early education, which in the Victorian era was largely the job of the woman of the house. Unfortunately, she died of abdominal cancer when Maxwell was only 8. His education was then overseen by his father, who hired a 16-year-old tutor for young Maxwell. The tutor treated him harshly, chiding him for being slow and wayward. After his father dismissed the tutor, Maxwell was sent to the prestigious Edinburgh Academy.

Ten-year-old Maxwell, raised in isolation on his father's countryside estate, didn't fit in well at school. With no space in the first-year class, he was obliged to join the second-year class with classmates a year older. His mannerisms and Galloway accent struck the other boys as rustic, and arriving on his first day at school wearing homemade shoes and tunic earned him the unkind nickname of "Dafty." Maxwell, however, never seemed to have resented the epithet, bearing it without complaint for many years.

At an early age, Maxwell was fascinated by geometry. His academic work remained unremarkable until, at the age of 13, he won the school's mathematical medal and first prizes for English and poetry. At age 14, Maxwell wrote a paper describing a mechanical means of drawing mathematical curves with a piece of twine and the properties of curves with two or more foci. His genius showed in this work on "oval curves," which was presented to the Royal Society of Edinburgh, but not by Maxwell. Since he was deemed too young, he entrusted the paper to a professor of natural philosophy at Edinburgh University.

Maxwell left Edinburgh Academy at the age of 16 and began attending classes at the University of Edinburgh. He had the opportunity to attend Cambridge after his first term but decided instead to complete the full course of his undergraduate studies at the local university. Maxwell soon found his classes undemanding, and he immersed himself in private study during his free time at the university and particularly during visits back home. There he experimented with improvised chemical and electromagnetic apparatus. His chief preoccupation at the time was polarized light. He constructed shaped blocks of gelatin, subjecting them to various stresses, and with a pair of polarizing prisms viewed the resulting colored fringes in the gelatin. Maxwell had discovered photoelasticity, a means of determining the stress distribution within physical structures.

At age 18, Maxwell contributed two papers to the Royal Society of Edinburgh. Although the work was impressive, as with his schoolboy paper on oval curves, he was considered too young to stand at the rostrum and make the presentation himself. Maxwell's papers were instead delivered by his tutor.

In October 1850, already an accomplished mathematician, Maxwell left Scotland for Cambridge University and soon joined Trinity College, where in 1854 he graduated with a degree in mathematics. Maxwell decided to remain at Trinity after graduating and, aside from tutoring and examining duties, to pursue scientific interests such as color, hydrostatics, optics, and Saturn's rings at his own leisure.

In 1859, after moving to Marischal College in Aberdeen, Scotland, Maxwell married Katherine Mary Dewar, the daughter of the college's principal. In that same year, he won a prize for concluding that the rings of Saturn consist of small particles—a conclusion verified more than a century later in the space age. Maxwell had a near-fatal bout of smallpox soon thereafter and headed south to London with his wife. He took a position at King's College, which turned out to be the most productive period of his career. There he displayed the world's first colored photograph and developed ideas on the viscosity of gases. His most significant achievement, however, was the development of electromagnetic theory, synthesizing all previous unrelated observations, experiments, and equations of electricity, magnetism, and even optics into one consistent theory. Around 1862, he calculated that the speed of propagation of an electromagnetic field is approximately the speed of light. He wrote, "We can scarcely avoid the conclusion that light consists in the transverse undulations of the same medium which is the cause of electric and magnetic phenomena."

After Newton's work, which first unified mechanics, Maxwell's work in electromagnetism has been called the "second great unification in physics." Maxwell died of abdominal cancer at the age of 48.

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

26.1 Electromagnetic Waves

Recall from Chapter 25 that Maxwell discovered that light is the oscillation of electric and magnetic fields. You know that if you shake the end of a stick back and forth in still water, you will produce waves on the surface of the water. Maxwell taught us that if you similarly shake an electrically charged rod to and fro in empty space, you will produce waves in space. The vibrating electric and magnetic fields regenerate each other to make up an **electromagnetic wave,** which radiates outward from the vibrating charge. There is only one speed, it turns out, for which the electric and magnetic fields remain in perfect balance, reinforcing each other as they carry energy through space. Let's see why this is so.

FIGURE 26.1
Shake an electrically charged object to and fro, and you produce an electromagnetic wave.

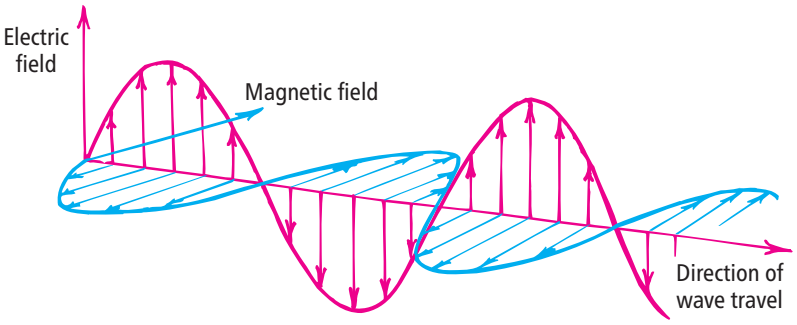


FIGURE 26.2
The electric and magnetic fields of an electromagnetic wave are perpendicular to each other and to the direction of motion of the wave.

Light is the only thing we see.
Sound is the only thing we hear.

CHECK POINT

1. **Exactly what is induced in free space by a changing magnetic field?**
2. **What is induced by a changing electric field?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. A changing magnetic field induces an electric field.
2. A changing electric field induces a magnetic field. When these fields link, we have an electromagnetic wave.

26.2 Electromagnetic Wave Velocity

fyi

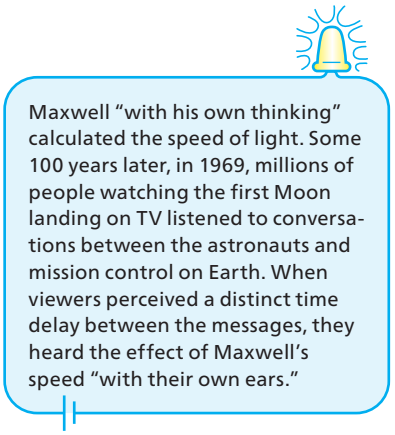
- Our study of light begins by investigating its electromagnetic properties. In Chapter 27, we'll discuss its appearance—color. In Chapter 28, we'll learn how light behaves—how it reflects and refracts. Then we'll learn about its wave nature in Chapter 29 and its quantum nature in Chapters 30 and 31.

The word *change* is the key to electromagnetic induction. An oscillating electric field continually *changes* in field strength as it propagates through space, while inducing an oscillating magnetic field, which also changes in field strength. Only a *changing* electric field generates a *changing* magnetic field, and vice versa. Synchronized oscillations of these fields, perpendicular to each other and perpendicular to the direction of propagation, can only occur at the speed of light. If light were to slow down, its changing electric field would generate a weaker magnetic field, which, in turn, would generate a weaker electric field, and so on, until the wave died out. Energy would be lost and none would be transported from one place to another. So light cannot travel slower than it does.

If light were to speed up, the changing electric field would generate a stronger magnetic field, which, in turn, would generate a stronger electric field, and so on,

a crescendo of ever-increasing field strength and ever-increasing energy—clearly a no-no with respect to energy conservation. At only one speed does mutual induction continue indefinitely, carrying energy forward without loss or gain. From his equations of electromagnetic induction, Maxwell calculated the value of this critical speed and found it to be 300,000 kilometers per second. In his calculation, he used only the constants in his equations that were determined by simple laboratory experiments with electric and magnetic fields. He didn't *use* the speed of light. He *found* the speed of light! We call this constant speed of light *c*.

Maxwell quickly realized that he had discovered the solution to one of the greatest mysteries of the universe—the nature of light. He discovered that light is simply electromagnetic radiation within a particular frequency range, 4.3×10^{14} to 7×10^{14} vibrations per second. Such waves activate the "electrical antennae" in the retina of the eye. The lower-frequency waves appear red, and the higher-frequency waves appear violet.[1] Maxwell realized, at the same time, that electromagnetic radiation of *any* frequency propagates at the same speed as light.

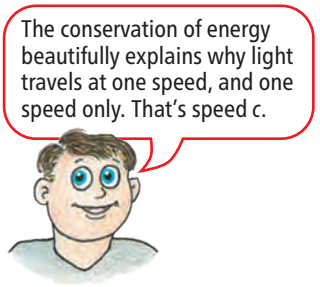

Maxwell "with his own thinking" calculated the speed of light. Some 100 years later, in 1969, millions of people watching the first Moon landing on TV listened to conversations between the astronauts and mission control on Earth. When viewers perceived a distinct time delay between the messages, they heard the effect of Maxwell's speed "with their own ears."

CHECK POINT

The unvarying speed of electromagnetic waves in space is a remarkable consequence of what central principle in physics?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The conservation of energy.



26.3 The Electromagnetic Spectrum

In a vacuum, all electromagnetic waves move at the same speed and differ from one another in their frequency. The classification of electromagnetic waves according to frequency is the **electromagnetic spectrum** (Figure 26.3). Electromagnetic waves have been detected with a frequency as low as 0.01 hertz (Hz). Electromagnetic waves with frequencies of several thousand hertz (kHz) are classified as very low frequency radio waves. One million hertz (MHz) lies in the middle of the AM radio band. The very high frequency (VHF) television band of waves starts at about 50 MHz, and FM radio waves are between 88 MHz and 108 MHz. Cell phones operate on either 800 MHz or 1900 MHz, some with attachments for infrared photography. Then come ultrahigh frequencies (UHF), followed by microwaves, beyond which are infrared waves, often called "heat

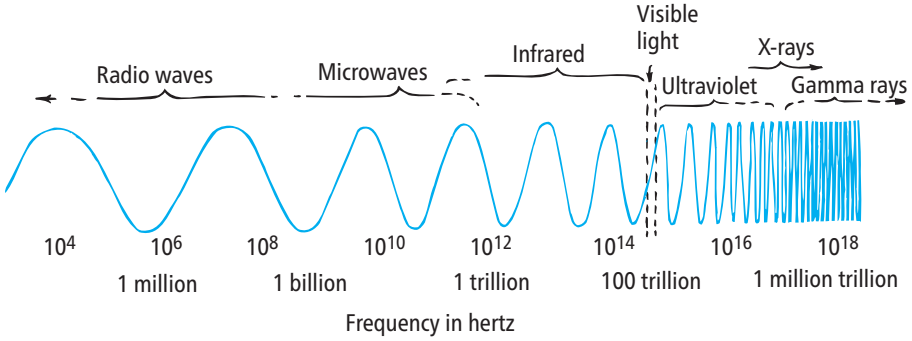
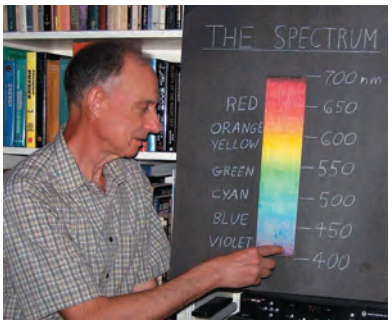


FIGURE 26.3
The electromagnetic spectrum is a continuous range of waves extending from radio waves to gamma rays. The descriptive names of the sections are merely a historical classification because all waves are the same in nature, differing principally in frequency and wavelength; all travel at the same speed.

[1]It is common to describe sound and radio waves by *frequency* and light by *wavelength*. In this book, however, we favor the single concept of frequency in describing light.



(a)

(b)

FIGURE 26.4
(a) Bruce Novak created this teaching aid to show his students how colors of the spectrum blend from one to the other. (b) He photographed this spectrum, which better shows the blending of colors.

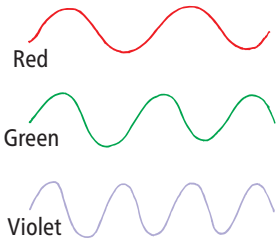


FIGURE 26.5
Relative wavelengths of red, green, and violet light. Violet light has nearly twice the frequency of red light and half the wavelength.

waves." Farther still is visible light, which makes up less than one-millionth of 1% of the measured electromagnetic spectrum.

The lowest frequency of light visible to our eyes appears red. The highest frequencies of visible light, which are nearly twice the frequency of red light, appear violet. Still higher frequencies are ultraviolet. These higher-frequency waves cause sunburns. Higher frequencies beyond ultraviolet are in the X-ray and gamma-ray regions. There are no sharp boundaries between the regions, which actually overlap each other. The spectrum is divided into these arbitrary regions for classification.

CHECK POINT

How does the breadth of the color spectrum shown in Figure 26.4b compare in size to the electromagnetic spectrum?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The color spectrum, the part of the electromagnetic spectrum called visible light, makes up a tiny part (less than one-millionth of 1%) of the vast electromagnetic spectrum.

The concepts and relationships we treated earlier in our study of wave motion (see Chapter 19) apply here. Recall that the frequency of a wave is the same as the frequency of the vibrating source that creates the wave. Likewise, the frequency of an electromagnetic wave as it vibrates through space is identical to the frequency of the oscillating electric charge that generates it.[2] Different frequencies correspond to different wavelengths—waves of low frequencies have long wavelengths, and waves of high frequencies have short wavelengths. For example, since the speed of the wave is 300,000 km/s, an electric charge oscillating once per second (1 Hz) will produce a wave with a wavelength of 300,000 km. This is because only one wavelength is generated in 1 second. If the frequency of oscillation were 10 Hz, then 10 wavelengths would be formed in 1 second, and the corresponding wavelength would be 30,000 km. A frequency of 10,000 Hz would produce a wavelength of 30 km. So, the higher the frequency of the vibrating charge, the shorter the wavelength of radiant energy.[3]

We tend to think of space as empty, but only because we cannot see the montages of electromagnetic waves that permeate every part of our surroundings. We see some of these waves, of course, as light. These waves constitute only a microportion of the electromagnetic spectrum. We are unconscious of radio and cell-phone waves, which engulf us every moment. Free electrons in every piece of metal on Earth's surface continuously dance to the rhythms of these waves. They jiggle in unison with the electrons being driven up and down along their transmitting antennae. A radio, television, or cell-phone receiver is simply a device that sorts and amplifies these tiny electron vibrations. There is radiation everywhere. Our first impression of the universe is one of matter and void, but actually the universe is a dense sea of radiation occupied only occasionally by specks of matter.

fyi

- Efficient transmission of radio waves is related to the size of the antenna. That's why AM radio antennas have been tall and FM antennas shorter.

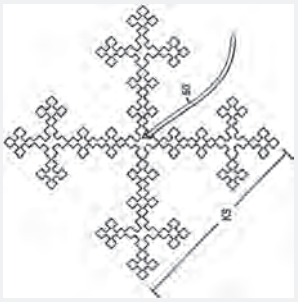
[2]This is a rule of classical physics, valid when charges are oscillating over dimensions that are large compared with the size of a single atom (for instance, in a radio antenna). Quantum physics permits exceptions. Radiation emitted by a single atom or molecule can differ in frequency from the frequency of the oscillating charge within the atom or molecule.

[3]The relationship is $c = f\lambda$, where c is the wave speed (constant), f is the frequency, and λ is the wavelength.

FRACTAL ANTENNAS

For quality reception of electromagnetic waves, a conventional antenna has to be about one quarter wavelength long. That's why, in early mobile devices, antennas had to be pulled out before the device was used. Nathan Cohen, a professor at Boston University, was troubled by a rule in Boston at the time that prohibited the use of large external antennas on buildings. So he fashioned a small antenna by folding aluminum foil into a compact fractal shape (a Van Koch figure—check *fractals* on the Web.). It worked. He then engineered and patented many practical fractal antennas, as did Carles Puente, an inventor in Spain. Both formed fractal-antenna companies.

Fractals are fascinating shapes that can be split into parts, each of which is (or approximates) a reduced copy of the whole. In any fractal, similar shapes appear at all levels of magnification. Common fractals in nature include snowflakes, clouds, lightning bolts, shorelines, and even cauliflower and broccoli, in which each of their branches looks like the parent stalk. The surface of the lining of your lungs has a fractal pattern that allows for more oxygen to be absorbed.



The fractal antenna, like other fractals, has a shape that repeats itself. Because of its folded self-similar design, a fractal antenna can be compressed and fit into the body of the device—it can also simultaneously operate at different frequencies. Hence the same antenna can be used for mobile-phone conversations and for GPS navigation.

How nice that these devices fit in your pocket. Cheers for compact fractal antennas!

CHECK POINT

Are we correct to say that a radio wave is a low-frequency light wave? And that a radio wave is also a sound wave?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

Yes and no. Both a radio wave and a light wave are electromagnetic waves emitted by vibrating electrons; radio waves have lower frequencies than light waves, so a radio wave may be considered to be a low-frequency light wave (and a light wave, similarly, may be considered to be a high-frequency radio wave). But a sound wave is a mechanical vibration of matter and is fundamentally different from an electromagnetic wave. So a radio wave is definitely not a sound wave.

26.4 Transparent Materials

When light is transmitted through matter, some of the electrons in the matter are forced into vibration and help to carry energy from one place to another. This is similar to the way energy is transmitted by sound (Figure 26.6).

FIGURE 26.6

Just as a sound wave can force a sound receiver into vibration, a light wave can force electrons in materials into vibration.

Atoms are like optical tuning forks that resonate at certain frequencies.

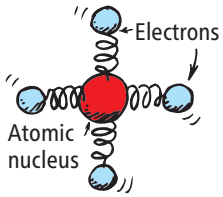


FIGURE 26.7
The spring model of light. The electrons of atoms in glass have certain natural frequencies of vibration and behave as if they were connected to the atomic nucleus by springs.

Different materials have different molecular structures and therefore absorb or reflect light from various spectral ranges differently.

The way a receiving material responds when light is incident on it depends on the frequency of the light and on the natural frequency of the electrons in the material. Visible light vibrates at a very high frequency, more than 100 trillion times per second (more than 10^{14} Hz). If a charged object is to respond to these ultrafast vibrations, it must have very, very little inertia. Because the mass of electrons is so tiny, they can vibrate at this rate.

Materials such as glass and water allow light to pass through in straight lines. We say they are **transparent** to light. To understand how light travels through a transparent material, visualize the electrons in the atoms of transparent materials as if they were connected to the nucleus by springs (Figure 26.7).[4] When a light wave is incident upon them, the electrons are set into vibration.

Materials that are springy (elastic) respond more to vibrations at some frequencies than at others (see Chapter 20). Bells ring at a particular frequency, tuning forks vibrate at a particular frequency, and so do the electrons of atoms and molecules. The natural vibration frequencies of an electron depend on how strongly it is attached to its atom or molecule. Different atoms and molecules have different "spring strengths." Electrons in the atoms of glass have a natural vibration frequency in the ultraviolet range. Therefore, when ultraviolet waves shine on glass, resonance occurs and the vibration of electrons builds up to large amplitudes, just as pushing someone at the resonant frequency on a swing builds to a large amplitude. The energy received by any glass atom is either reemitted or passed on to neighboring atoms by collisions. Resonating atoms in the glass can hold onto the energy of the ultraviolet light for quite a long time (about 100 millionths of a second). During this time, the atom makes more than 1 million vibrations, and it collides with neighboring atoms and gives up its energy as heat. Thus, glass is not transparent to ultraviolet light.

At lower wave frequencies, such as those of visible light, electrons in the glass atoms are forced into vibration, but at lower amplitudes. The atoms hold the energy for a shorter time, with less chance of collision with neighboring atoms, and with less energy transformed into heat. The energy of vibrating electrons is passed from atom to atom as light. The frequency of the reemitted light that is passed from atom to atom is identical to the frequency of the light that produced the vibration. In this way, glass is transparent to all the frequencies of visible light.

CHECK POINT

1. **The energy of sound can be transmitted from one tuning fork to another when the frequencies of the forks match and produce resonance. Can we say the same for the transmission of light energy through glass by way of resonance?**
2. **Sound that encounters a material has three fates: (1) transmission, (2) reflection, (3) absorption. Do these three fates apply to light?**

[4]Electrons, of course, are not really connected by springs. Their "vibration" is actually orbital as they move around the nucleus, but the "spring model" helps us to understand the interaction of light with matter. Physicists devise such conceptual models to understand nature, particularly at the submicroscopic level. The worth of a model lies not in whether it is "true," but in whether it is useful. A good model not only is consistent with and explains observations but also predicts what may happen. If predictions of the model are contrary to what happens, then the model is usually either refined or abandoned. The simplified model that we present here—of an atom whose electrons vibrate as if on springs, with a time interval between absorbing energy and reemitting energy—is quite useful for understanding how light passes through transparent materials.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. No, not for light. Atoms in glass resonate in the ultraviolet, so unlike the tuning forks of Figure 26.6 that transfer energy at resonant frequencies, atoms in glass transfer energy best at frequencies less than those of resonance—at the visible frequencies.
2. Yes. Light incident upon a material may be (1) transmitted, (2) reflected, or (3) absorbed. Section 26.5 will explain the transmission and reflection of light in transparent materials. Section 26.6 will treat the absorption of light in opaque materials.

26.5 Speed of Light in a Transparent Medium

The speed of light in free space is a constant, c, but is less than c in a transparent material. How this is so is shown in Figure 26.8. In this model, light is viewed as a stream of incredibly tiny packets of energy called *photons*, each of which throbs at a characteristic frequency of vibration. In the visible range, a low-frequency photon would be red light and a high-frequency one would be violet light. Glass is transparent to photons of all the visible frequencies. A photon incident upon a pane of glass sets up vibrations in an atom, which in turn does the same to a neighboring atom, producing a chain of absorptions and reemissions (gulps and burps) that pass light energy through the glass and out the other side. Interestingly, each gulp is the absorption (actually the annihilation) of a photon, which then no longer exists. However, such absorptions in glass are immediately followed by burps of identical photons into existence. This means that the photon that emerges from glass is a different photon than the one that begins the sequence.

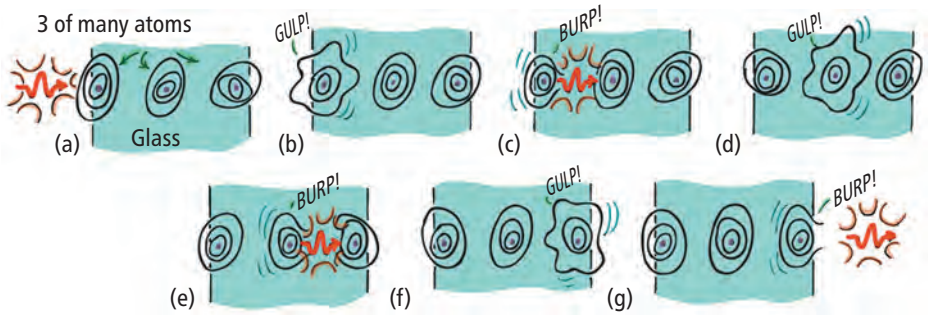


FIGURE 26.8
(a) A packet of light, a photon, encounters an atom near the edge of the glass and (b) stimulates it into vibration of the same energy—the gulp. (c) The atom then emits an identical photon—the burp. The processes (d, e, f) repeat through the glass. Near the far edge, the emerging photon (g) is indistinguishable from the one that started the process.

An analogy of light traveling through glass is shown in Figure 26.9. When a ball is pulled aside and then drops against an array of balls, the energy of the impacting ball cascades through the array and transfers to the ball that pops out the other side. Interestingly, the interactions from ball to ball in the array are not instantaneous, as evidenced by measurably small lags of time during the process. Even more interesting, and easily seen, the ball that emerges on the other side is a different ball than the initial dropped one.

FIGURE 26.9
Lab manual author Dean Baird shows that the raised ball that drops into the array of balls is not the ball that pops out. Likewise with photon travel through glass.

The sequence of gulps and burps normally carries energy in a straight-line path through glass. When the path is scattered, we have translucence. Intriguingly, about 4% of gulps at the glass surface burp backward to produce reflection. Gulps without burps produce opaqueness.

So light travels at only one speed in free space: a constant 300,000 km/s (186,000 mi/s) that we call c—whether in the vacuum of interstellar space or

[5]The presently accepted value is 299,792 km/s, rounded to 300,000 km/s. (This corresponds to 186,000 mi/s.)

between atoms in a pane of glass. The gulp–burp process in glass is not instantaneous, and the brief duration of gulping and burping results in an *average speed* of light that is less than *c*. The speed of light in the atmosphere is slightly less than it is in a vacuum, but it's usually rounded off as *c*. In water, light travels at 75% of its speed in a vacuum, or 0.75*c*. In glass, light travels at about 0.67*c*, depending on the type of glass. In a diamond, light travels at less than half its speed in a vacuum, only 0.41*c*. When light emerges from these materials into the air, it travels at its original speed.

Infrared waves, which have lower frequencies than those of visible light, produce vibrations of not only electrons but clusters of atoms. These high-amplitude vibrations heat the glass—which is why infrared waves are often called *heat waves*. Glass is transparent to visible light but not to ultraviolet and infrared light (Figure 26.10).

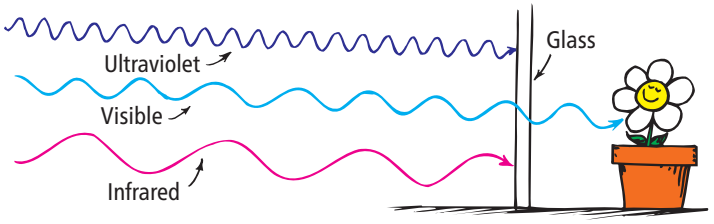
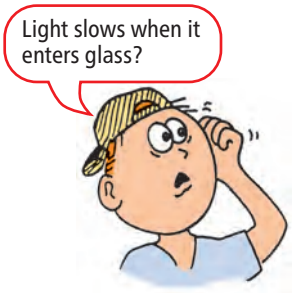


FIGURE 26.10
Glass blocks both infrared and ultraviolet light, but it is transparent to visible light.



CHECK POINT

1. **Why is glass transparent to visible light but opaque to ultraviolet and infrared?**
2. **Pretend that, while walking across a conference room, you make several momentary stops along the way to greet people who are "on your wavelength." How is this analogous to light traveling through glass?**
3. **In what way isn't it analogous?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Because the natural vibration frequency for electrons in glass is the same as the frequency of ultraviolet light, resonance occurs when ultraviolet waves shine on glass. The absorbed energy is passed on to other atoms as heat, not reemitted as light, making the glass opaque at ultraviolet frequencies. In the range of visible light, the forced vibrations of electrons in the glass are at smaller amplitudes—vibrations are more subtle, reemission of light (rather than the generation of heat) occurs, and the glass is transparent. Lower-frequency infrared light causes whole molecules, rather than electrons, to resonate; again, heat is generated and the glass is opaque to infrared light.
2. Your average speed across the room is slowed because of the time delays associated with your momentary stops. Likewise, the speed of light in glass is slowed because of the time delays caused by interactions with atoms along its path.
3. As you walk across the room, you are the one who both begins the walk and completes the walk. This is not analogous to the similar case of light because (according to our gulp–burp model) the light that is absorbed by an electron that has been made to vibrate is not the same light that is reemitted—even though the two are indistinguishable.

If you apply the gulp–burp model to the simple act of looking out your window, the photons that enter your windowpane are not the same photons you see. Going further, get this: When you're looking at a distant star, the photons that reach the retina of your eye are emitted by atoms in the vitreous humor of your eye—triggered by a long absorption–reemission sequence of photons from the star to you (giving credence to the idea that what you see is all in your head!).

26.6 Opaque Materials

Most things around us are **opaque**—they absorb light without reemitting it. Books, desks, chairs, and people are opaque. Vibrations given by light to their atoms and molecules are turned into random kinetic energy—into internal energy. These materials become slightly warmer.

Metals are opaque. Because the outer electrons of atoms in metals are not bound to any particular atom, they are free to wander with very little restraint throughout the material (which is why metal conducts electricity and heat so well). When light shines on metal and is briefly absorbed it sets these free electrons into vibration. Rather than a cascade of gulps and burbs throughout a material, initial gulps instead return burps back into the medium through which they came. This is reflection. That's why metals are shiny.

FIGURE 26.11
Metals are shiny because their free electrons easily vibrate to the oscillations of any light that falls on them, reflecting most of it.

Earth's atmosphere is transparent to some ultraviolet light, to all visible light, and to some infrared light, but it is opaque to high-frequency ultraviolet light. The small amount of ultraviolet that does get through is responsible for sunburns. If it all got through, we would be fried to a crisp. Clouds are semitransparent to ultraviolet, which is why you can get a sunburn on a cloudy day. Dark skin absorbs ultraviolet before it can penetrate too far, whereas it travels deeper in fair skin. With mild and gradual exposure, fair skin develops a tan and increases its protection against ultraviolet light. Ultraviolet light is also damaging to the eyes—and to tarred roofs. Now you know why tarred roofs are covered with gravel.

fyi

- Long-wave ultraviolet, called UV-A, is close to visible light and isn't the harmful form of UV. Shorter-wavelength ultraviolet, called UV-C, would be harmful if it reached us, but it is almost completely stopped by the atmosphere's ozone layer. It is the intermediate ultraviolet, UV-B, that can cause eye damage, sunburn, and skin cancer.

Shadows

A thin beam of light is often called a *ray*. When we stand in the sunlight, some of the light is stopped while other rays continue in a straight-line path. We cast a **shadow**—a region where light rays do not reach. A point light source will produce a single shadow that has a sharp outline. A larger light source, however, sends out multiple rays from its wider diameter, resulting in numerous overlapping shadows that create a more diffuse outline (Figure 26.12). There is usually a dark part on the inside and a lighter part around the edges of a shadow. A total shadow is called an **umbra,** and a partial shadow is called a **penumbra.** A penumbra appears where some of the light is blocked but other light fills in (Figure 26.13). A penumbra also occurs where light from a broad source is only partially blocked.

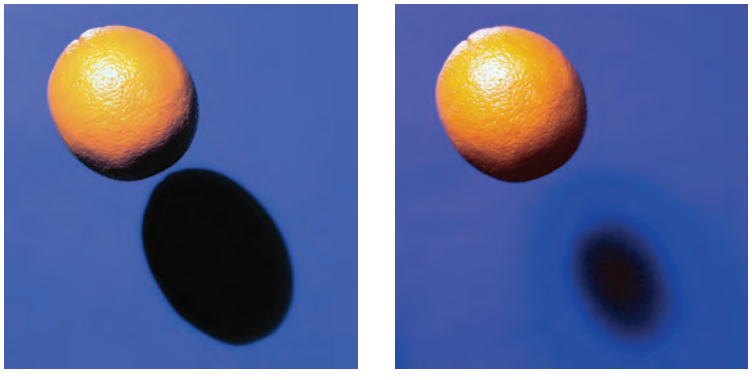


FIGURE 26.12
A small light source produces a sharper shadow than a larger source.

FIGURE 26.13
An object held close to a wall casts a sharp shadow because light coming from slightly different directions does not spread out much behind the object. As the object is moved farther away from the wall, the penumbra grows and the umbra becomes smaller. When the object is even farther away, the shadow is less distinct. When the object is very far away (not shown), no shadow is evident because the penumbra expands into a big blur.

26.7 Solar and Lunar Eclipses

Although the Sun is 400 times as large in diameter as the Moon, it is also 400 times as far away. So, from Earth, both the Sun and Moon measure the same tiny angle (0.5°) and appear to be the same size in the sky. This coincidence allows us to see solar eclipses.

All bodies in sunlight cast shadows—including the Moon and Earth. A full Moon occurs when the fully-lit side of the Moon faces Earth, and a new Moon occurs when the shadow side of the Moon faces Earth. A new Moon is not normally seen in the sky because no sunlight reflects from it in Earth's direction. It is dark. At special times when the new Moon passes directly in front of the Sun, its shadow falls on Earth's surface. We experience a **solar eclipse** (Figure 26.14).

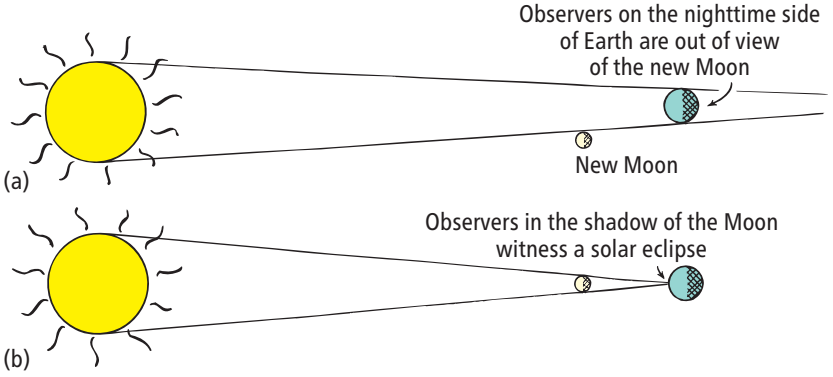


FIGURE 26.14
(a) A new Moon (normally not visible to viewers on Earth) occurs when the Moon is between the Sun and Earth. (b) When the Sun, Moon, and Earth are in perfect alignment, the Moon's shadow falls on part of the Earth to produce a solar eclipse.

The Moon's shadow tapers to provide a dark umbra and a lighter surrounding penumbra (Figure 26.15). If you stand in the umbra, you'll be able to see the Moon completely covering the disk of the Sun, and the Sun's glorious corona will become visible. That's *totality*, perhaps the most awesome and beautiful sight

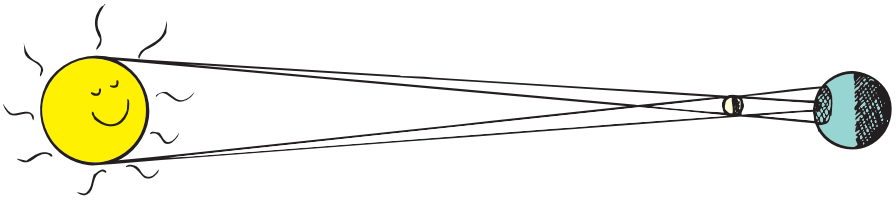


FIGURE 26.15
Details of a solar eclipse. A total eclipse is seen by observers in the umbra, and a partial eclipse is seen by observers in the penumbra. Most Earth observers see no eclipse at all.

that nature treats us to. The *path of totality*—the region covered by the umbra as the shadow races across Earth—is many thousands of kilometers long but only about 160 kilometers wide, which is why so few people can see a total solar eclipse. If you stand in the penumbra, you'll experience a partial eclipse and you'll see a crescent of the Sun. (Recall the photos of partial-eclipse crescents in Chapter 1, photo 4 that opens this chapter on page 570, and Figure 26.18.) The penumbra is much wider than the umbra, so more people will observe a partial solar eclipse.

A **lunar eclipse** occurs when the Moon passes into Earth's shadow at the time all three bodies are aligned (Figure 26.16). Earth's shadow also has both an umbra and a penumbra. When the Moon passes into the penumbra, the eclipse is barely noticed. But Earth's shadow on the Moon is quite visible when the Moon moves into the umbra. If it passes only part way into the umbra, you'll see a partial lunar eclipse. If it moves completely into the umbra, the lunar eclipse is total. A fully eclipsed Moon is not completely dark, however, because Earth's atmosphere acts as a lens that refracts sunlight onto the Moon's surface. The reddish color of a fully eclipsed Moon is explained in detail in Section 27.6 of the next chapter.

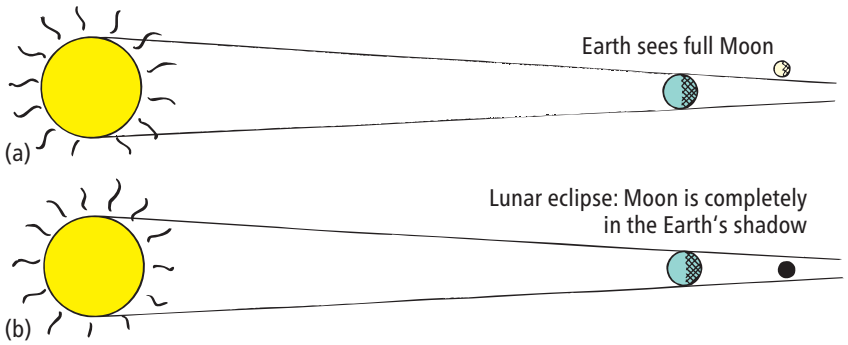


FIGURE 26.16
(a) A full Moon is seen when Earth is between the Sun and Moon. (b) When the alignment is perfect, the Moon is in Earth's shadow, and a lunar eclipse is produced.

fyi

- Note the stages of a lunar eclipse that are nicely shown by my granddaughter Gracie Hewitt in the Part 6 opener on page 569.

CHECK POINT

1. **Does a solar eclipse occur at the time of a full Moon or a new Moon?**
2. **Does a lunar eclipse occur at the time of a full Moon or a new Moon?**
3. **Why is a lunar eclipse in view of half the world while a solar eclipse is in view of a very small part of the world?**
4. **Which type of eclipse—a solar eclipse, a lunar eclipse, or both—is dangerous to view with unprotected eyes?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. A solar eclipse occurs at the time of a new Moon, when the Moon is directly in front of the Sun. Then the shadow of the Moon falls on part of Earth.
2. A lunar eclipse occurs at the time of a full Moon, when the Moon and Sun are on opposite sides of Earth. Then the shadow of Earth falls on the full Moon.
3. Earth's shadow that reaches the Moon is about 2.5 times wider than the Moon (recall Figure 1.5 from Chapter 1). Because the entire Moon is within Earth's shadow, everybody on the side of Earth that faces the full Moon can witness a lunar eclipse. In contrast, the Moon's shadow tapers to only a very small part of Earth, which means that relatively few observers on the side of the Earth that faces the new Moon can witness a solar eclipse.

fyi

- People are cautioned not to look at the Sun during a solar eclipse event because the brightness and the ultraviolet light of direct sunlight are damaging to the eyes. This good advice is often misunderstood by those who then think that sunlight is more damaging at this special time. But staring at the Sun when it is high in the sky is harmful whether or not an eclipse occurs. In fact, staring at the bare Sun is more harmful than when part of the Moon blocks it! The reason for special caution at the time of an eclipse is simply that more people are interested in looking at the Sun during this time.

4. Only a solar eclipse is dangerous because one views the Sun directly. During a lunar eclipse, one views a very dark Moon. It is not completely dark because Earth's atmosphere acts as a lens and bends some light into the shadow region. Interestingly, this is the light of red sunsets and sunrises all around the world, which is why the Moon appears a faint, deep red during a lunar eclipse.

Why don't eclipses occur during every new Moon and every full Moon? The explanation involves the different orbital planes of Earth and the Moon. Earth revolves around the Sun in a flat planar orbit. The Moon similarly revolves about Earth in a flat planar orbit. But the planes are slightly tipped relative to each other—a 5.2° tilt, as shown in Figure 26.17. If the planes weren't tipped, eclipses would occur monthly. But due to the tip, eclipses occur only when the Moon intersects the Earth–Sun plane and the three bodies align. This occurs about four times per year. There are at least two solar eclipses per year, and usually zero to three lunar eclipses. Rarely, there are a total of seven solar and lunar eclipses in a year.

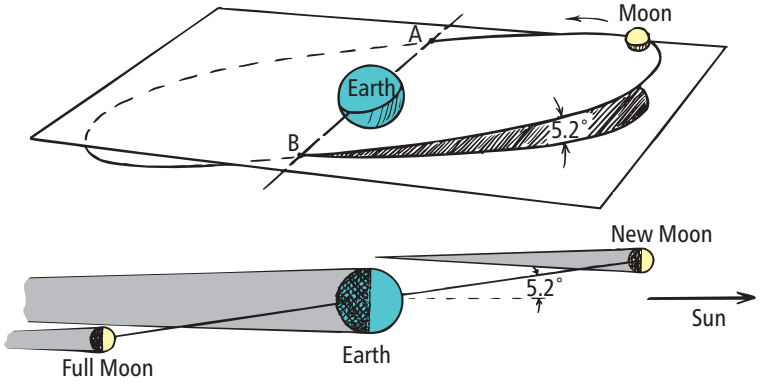


FIGURE 26.17
The Moon orbits Earth in a plane tipped 5.2° to the plane of Earth's orbit around the Sun. A solar or lunar eclipse occurs only when the Sun, Moon, and Earth precisely align with points A and B. At other times the bodies are not aligned, as shown in the lower drawing.

Most viewers of eclipses look upward. It is fascinating to also look downward at this special time—particularly beneath trees when sunlight passing through small openings between their leaves cast images of the Sun on the ground, or on walls, as illustrated in Figure 26.18. In the left-hand photo are "pinhole images" of the Sun cast on a wall, on the ground, and on lab manual author Dean Baird. Where solar images don't overlap, their circular shapes are evident. Larger blobs of light are produced by considerable overlapping of images. This overlap is much less evident for thinner crescents in the right-hand photo. Circular spots become crescents when the Sun is partially eclipsed. Of considerable interest is that the shape of the "pinhole" doesn't affect the shape of the image.

FIGURE 26.18
Images of the Sun before and during a partial solar eclipse.

CHECK POINT

1. **One hour elapsed between when the pair of photos of Figure 26.18 were taken. How would the locations of solar images differ if the photos were taken only a couple of minutes apart?**
2. **Why do the crescents outnumber the circles?**

At the time of a lunar eclipse, future Moon-based observers will see a thin ring of red sky around the outer edge of planet Earth.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Earth rotated considerably during the time between photo shots. If the pair of photos were taken closer in time, better matching of solar images would occur.
2. Solar images overlap in many cases. Because crescents are much thinner than circles, they don't overlap as much as wider circles that overlap to produce blobs of light.

26.8 Seeing Light—The Eye

Light is the only thing we see with the most remarkable optical instrument known—the eye (Figure 26.19). As light enters the eye, it moves through the transparent cover called the *cornea*, which does about 70% of the necessary bending of the light before it passes through an opening in the *iris* (colored part of the eye). The opening is called the *pupil*. The light then reaches the *crystalline lens*, which fine-tunes the focusing of light that passes through a gelatinous fluid called the *vitreous humor*. Light then passes to the retina.

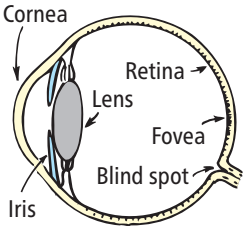


FIGURE 26.19
The human eye.

The *retina* covers the back two-thirds of the eye and is responsible for the wide field of vision that we experience. For clear vision, light must focus directly on the retina. When light focuses in front of or behind the retina, vision is blurry. Until very recently, the retina was more sensitive to light than any artificial detector ever made. The retina is not uniform. In the middle is the *macula*, and a small depression in the center is the *fovea*, the region of most distinct vision. Behind the retina is the *optic nerve*, which transmits signals from the photoreceptor cells to the brain.

Much greater detail can be seen at the fovea than at the side parts of the eye. There is also a spot in the retina where the nerves carrying all the information exit along the optic nerve; this is the *blind spot*. You can demonstrate that you have a blind spot in each eye if you hold this book at arm's length, close your left eye, and look at Figure 26.20 with your right eye only. You can see both the round dot and the X at this distance. If you now move the book slowly toward your face, with your right eye fixed upon the dot, you'll reach a position about 20–25 cm from your eye where the X disappears. Now repeat this exercise with only the left eye open, looking this time at the X, and the dot will disappear. When you look with both eyes open, you are not aware of the blind spot, mainly because one eye "fills in" the part to which the other eye is blind. Amazingly, the brain fills in the "expected" view even with one eye open. Repeat the exercise of Figure 26.20 with small objects on various backgrounds. Note that, instead of seeing nothing, your brain gratuitously fills in the appropriate background. So you not only see what's there—you also see what's *not* there!

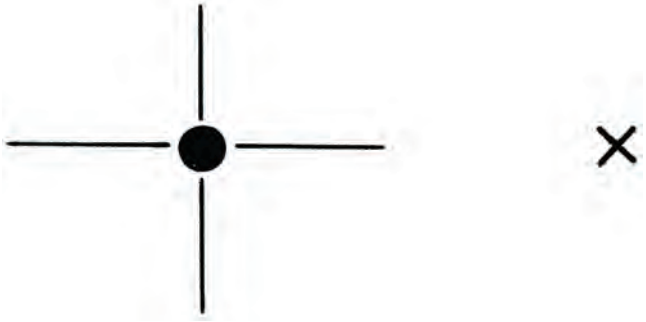


FIGURE 26.20
The blind-spot experiment. Close your left eye and look with your right eye at the round dot. Adjust your distance and find the blind spot that erases the X. Switch eyes and look at the X and the dot disappears. Does your brain fill in crossed lines where the dot was?

FIGURE 26.21
Magnified view of the rods and cones in the human eye.

fyi

- Animals that have 360° vision without turning their heads include rabbits and hares because of their big protruding eyes on the sides of their heads. But they have depth perception only where the view from each eye overlaps a bit in front of their heads and behind them.

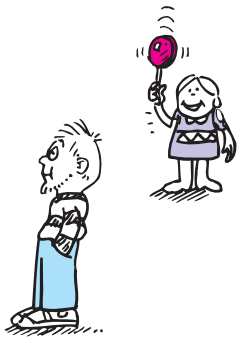


FIGURE 26.22
On the periphery of your vision, you can see an object only if it is moving; you cannot see its color at all.

The retina is composed of tiny antennae that resonate to the incoming light. There are two basic kinds of antennae, the rods and the cones (Figure 26.21). As the names imply, some of the antennae are rod-shaped and some cone-shaped. The rods predominate toward the periphery of the retina, while the cones are denser toward the fovea. Rods handle vision in low light, and cones handle color vision and detail. There are three types of cones: those that are stimulated by low-frequency light (red), those that are stimulated by light of intermediate frequencies (green), and those that are stimulated by light of higher frequencies (blue). The cones in the fovea are packed very tightly and are more dense than anywhere else in the retina. We see color most acutely by focusing an image on the fovea, where there are no rods. Primates and a species of ground squirrel are the only mammals known to have all three types of cones and experience full color vision. The retinas of other mammals consist primarily of rods, which are sensitive to only lightness or darkness, like a black-and-white photograph or movie.

Some mammals, including dogs, have two types of cones. So your dog has color vision, but it can't distinguish among colors at the red end of the spectrum. Birds, on the other hand, have four types of cones. It's thought that at least most birds can see ultraviolet light along with the colors familiar to us.

In the human eye, the number of cones decreases as we move away from the fovea. It's interesting that the color of an object disappears if it is viewed on the periphery of the visual field. This can be tested by having a friend enter your periphery of vision with some brightly colored objects. You will find that you can see the objects before you can see what color they are.

Another interesting observation is that the periphery of the retina is very sensitive to motion. Although our vision is poor from the corner of our eye, we are sensitive to anything moving there. We are "wired" to look for something jiggling to the side of our visual field, a feature that must have been important in our evolutionary development. So have your friend shake those brightly colored objects when brought into the periphery of your vision. If you can just barely see the objects when they shake, but not at all when they're stationary, then you won't be able to tell what color they are (Figure 26.22). Try it and see!

Another distinguishing feature of the rods and cones is the intensity of light to which they respond. The cones require more energy than the rods before they will "fire" an impulse through the nervous system. If the intensity of light is very low, the things we see have no color. We see low intensities with our rods. Dark-adapted vision is almost entirely due to the rods, while vision in bright light is due to the cones. Stars, for example, look white to us. Yet most stars are actually brightly colored. A time exposure of the stars with a camera reveals reds and red-oranges for the "cooler" stars and blues and blue-violets for the "hotter" stars. The starlight is too weak, however, to fire the color-perceiving cones in the retina. So we see the stars with our rods and perceive them as white or, at best, only faintly colored. Females have a slightly lower threshold of firing for the cones, however, and can see a bit more color than males. So if she says she sees colored stars and he says she doesn't, she is probably right!

We find that the rods "see" better than the cones toward the blue end of the color spectrum, and the reverse is true at the red end. As far as the rods are concerned, a deep red object might as well be black. Thus, with two colored objects—say, one blue and one red—the blue one will appear much brighter than the red in dim light, although the red one might be much brighter than the blue one in bright light. The effect is quite intriguing. Try this: In a dark room,

find a magazine or something that has colors, and, before you know for sure what the colors are, judge the lighter and darker areas. Then bring the magazine into the light. You should see a remarkable shift between the brightest and dimmest colors.[6]

The rods and cones in the retina are not connected directly to the optic nerve but, quite amazingly, are connected to many other cells, some of which are joined to carry information to the optic nerve. Hence, a certain amount of information is processed in the retina. In this way, the light signal is "thought about" before it goes to the optic nerve and thence to the main body of the brain. So some brain functioning occurs in the eye itself. The eye does some of our "thinking". This thinking is betrayed by the iris, the colored part of the eye that expands and contracts and regulates the size of the pupil to accommodate changes in light intensities. Intriguingly, this expansion or contraction of the iris is related to our emotions. If we see, smell, taste, or hear something that is pleasing to us, our pupils automatically increase in size. Or for something repugnant to us, our pupils automatically contract. Many card players have betrayed the value of a hand by the size of their pupils! (The study of the size of the pupil as a function of attitudes is called *pupilometrics*.)

The brightest light that the human eye can perceive without damage is some 500 million times brighter than the dimmest light that can be perceived. Look at a nearby lightbulb. Then turn to look into a dimly lit closet. The difference in light intensity may be more than a million to one. Because of an effect called *lateral inhibition*, we don't perceive the actual differences in brightness. The brightest places in our visual field are prevented from outshining the rest because whenever a receptor cell on our retina sends a strong brightness signal to our brain, it also signals neighboring cells to dim their responses. In this way, we smooth out our visual field, which allows us to discern detail in very bright areas and in dark areas as well. Lateral inhibition exaggerates the difference in brightness at the edges of places in our visual field. Edges, by definition, separate one thing from another. So we accentuate differences. The gray rectangle on the left in Figure 26.24 appears darker than the gray rectangle on the right when the edge that separates them is in our view. But cover the edge with your pencil or your finger, and they look equally bright. That's because both rectangles *are* equally bright; each rectangle is shaded lighter to darker, moving from left to right. Our eye concentrates on the boundary where the dark edge of the left rectangle joins the light edge of the right rectangle, and our eye–brain system assumes that the rest of the rectangle is the same. We pay attention to the boundary and ignore the rest.

Questions to ponder: Is the way the eye selects edges and makes assumptions about what we see similar to the way that we sometimes make judgments about other cultures and other people? Don't we, in the same way, tend to exaggerate surface differences while ignoring the similarities and subtle differences within?

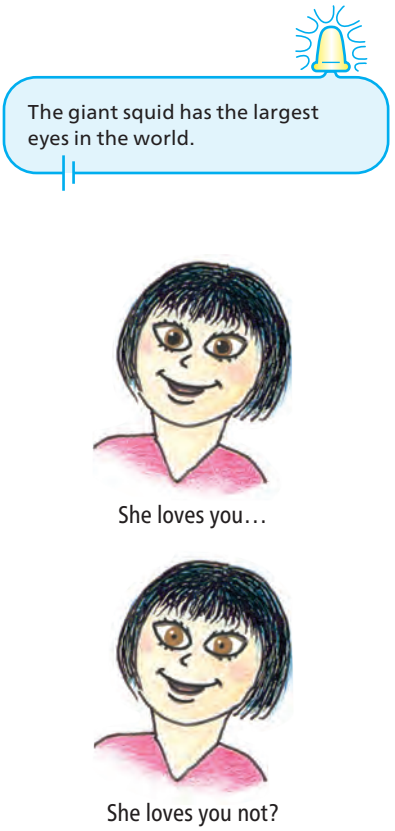


FIGURE 26.23
The size of your pupils depends on your mood.

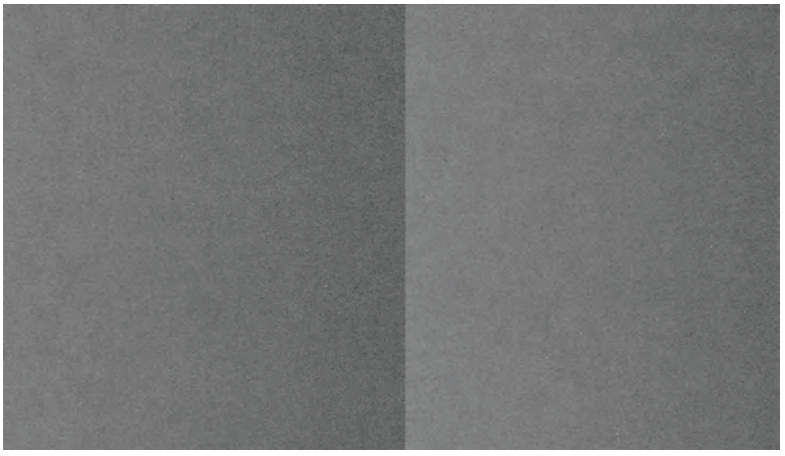


FIGURE 26.24
Both rectangles are equally bright. Cover the boundary between them with your pencil and see.

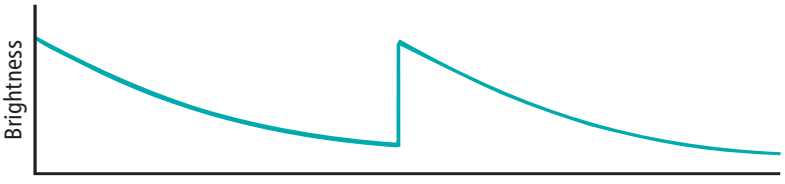
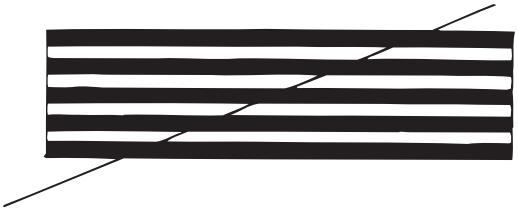


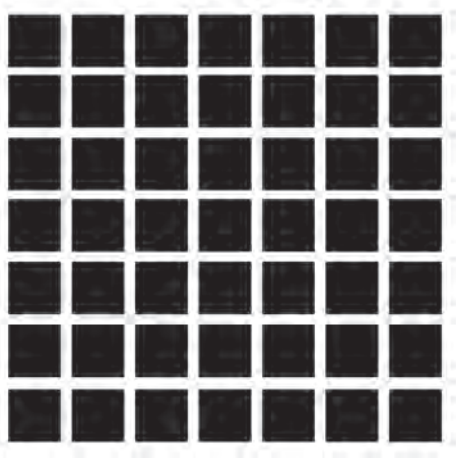
FIGURE 26.25
Graph of brightness levels for the rectangle in Figure 26.24.

[6]This phenomenon is called the *Purkinje effect* after the Czech physiologist who discovered it.

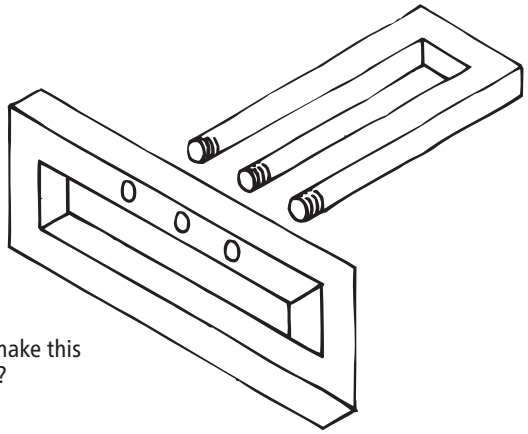


Is the slanted line really broken?

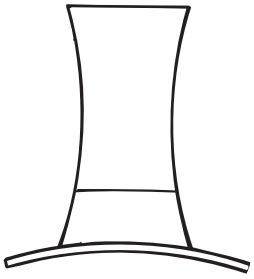
Are the dashes on the right really shorter?



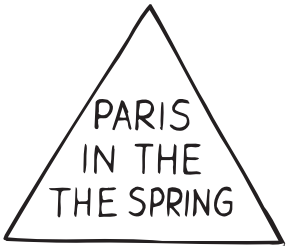
Do you see elusive spots between the black square corners?



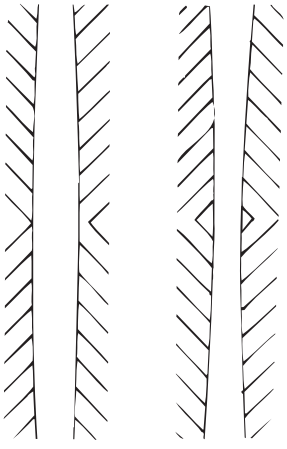
Could you make this in the shop?



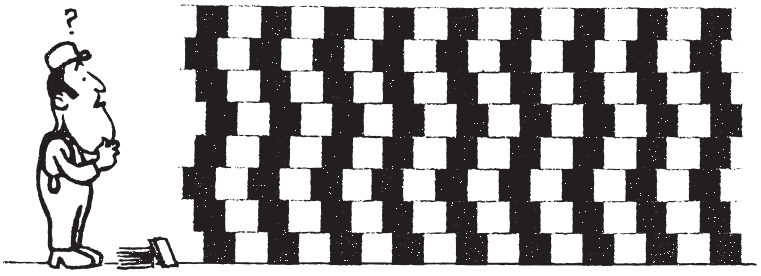
Is the hat taller than the brim is wide?



What does this sign read?



Are the vertical lines parallel?



Are the rows of tiles really crooked?

FIGURE 26.26
Optical illusions.

Chapter 26 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Electromagnetic wave An energy-carrying wave emitted by a vibrating charge (often electrons) that is composed of oscillating electric and magnetic fields that regenerate one another.

Electromagnetic spectrum The range of electromagnetic waves extending in frequency from radio waves to gamma rays.

Transparent The property of materials to pass light in straight lines without being scattered.

Opaque The property of materials not to allow passage of light (opposite of transparent).

Shadow A shaded region that appears where light rays are blocked by an object.

Umbra The darker part of a shadow where all the light is blocked.

Penumbra A partial shadow that appears where some but not all of the light is blocked.

Solar eclipse An event in which the Moon blocks light from the Sun and the Moon's shadow falls on part of Earth.

Lunar eclipse An event in which the Moon passes into the shadow of Earth.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

26.1 Electromagnetic Waves

1. What is induced by a *changing magnetic field*?
2. What is induced by a *changing electric field*?
3. What is the source of an electromagnetic wave?

26.2 Electromagnetic Wave Velocity

4. How does the constant speed c of an electromagnetic wave in free space relate to the conservation of energy?
5. How is the fact that an electromagnetic wave in space never speeds up consistent with the conservation of energy?

26.3 The Electromagnetic Spectrum

6. What is the principal difference between a *radio wave* and *visible light*? Between *visible light* and an *X-ray*?
7. Approximately how much of the electromagnetic spectrum is occupied by visible light?
8. Which type of electromagnetic waves emitted by the Sun are responsible for heating Earth's atmosphere due to the greenhouse effect?
9. How is the wavelength of light related to its frequency?
10. What is the wavelength of a light wave that has a frequency of 1 Hz?
11. What types of electromagnetic waves are used by mobile phones for communication?

26.4 Transparent Materials

12. The sound from one tuning fork can force another to vibrate. What is the analogous effect for light?
13. Do electromagnetic waves carry energy and momentum like other waves?
14. What is the fate of the energy of ultraviolet light that is incident upon glass?
15. What is the fate of the energy of visible light that is incident upon glass?

26.5 Speed of Light in a Transparent Medium

16. What is a photon?
17. How does the average speed of light as it travels through glass compare with its speed in a vacuum?
18. How does the speed of light that emerges from a pane of glass compare with the speed of light incident on the glass?
19. When an atom in glass gulps a photon of a certain frequency, what it the frequency of the following burp?
20. According to the gulp–burp model, is the photon that enters glass the same photon to emerge from glass?
21. Why are infrared waves often called *heat waves?*

26.6 Opaque Materials

22. Why do opaque materials become warmer when light shines on them?
23. Why are metals shiny?
24. Why do wet objects normally look darker than the same objects when dry?

26.7 Solar and Lunar Eclipses

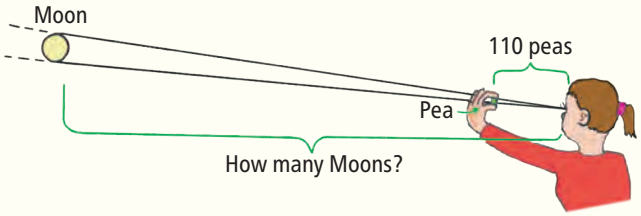
25. Distinguish between an *umbra* and a *penumbra*.
26. Do Earth and the Moon always cast shadows? What do we call the occurrence where one passes within the shadow of the other?
27. Distinguish between a solar eclipse and a lunar eclipse.

26.8 Seeing Light—the Eye

28. How do the *rods* in the eye differ from the *cones*?
29. When are objects on the periphery of your vision most noticeable?
30. What affects the size of the pupil of the eye other than the amount of light incident upon it?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Compare the size of the Moon on the horizon with its size higher in the sky. One way to do this is to hold at arm's length various objects that will just barely block out the Moon. Experiment until you find something just right, perhaps a thick pencil or a pen. You'll find that the object will be less than a centimeter, depending on the length of your arms. Is the Moon really bigger when it is near the horizon?
32. If you haven't done the "pea-Moon" activity of Chapter 1, do it now. At the time of a full or nearly full Moon hold a pea at arm's length so it eclipses the Moon, as shown in the sketch. Careful measurement will show that about 110 peas occupy the space between the held pea and your eye. How does this compare to the number of Moons that would similarly fit between your eye and the actual position of the Moon?

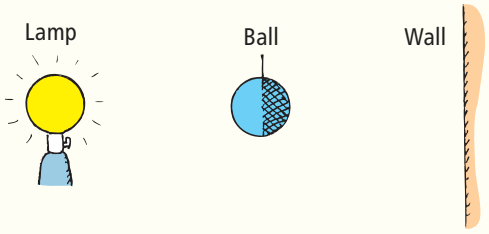


33. Which eye do you use more? To test which you favor, hold a finger up at arm's length. With both eyes open, look past it at a distant object. Now close your right eye. If your finger appears to jump to the right, then you use your right eye more. Check with friends who are both left-handed and right-handed. Is there a correlation between dominant eye and dominant hand?

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

In Chapter 3 we learned that average speed $= \frac{\text{distance traveled}}{\text{time of travel}}$. *That is,* $v_{ave} = \frac{d}{t}$; *or distance traveled = average speed × time of travel;* $d = v_{ave}t$. *For the speed of light,* $v_{ave} = c$. *Then* $c = \frac{d}{t}$ *or* $d = ct$, *which may be useful below.*

34. Since one can see lightning instantly but it takes about 5 seconds for the sound of thunder to travel 1.6 km, you can calculate the distance to the lightning by measuring the time between these two events. Using a stopwatch, if you measure the gap between seeing lightning and hearing thunder to be 12 seconds, then calculate the distance at which the lightning occurred.
35. The Sun is 2.28×10^{11} m away from Mars. How long does it take for light from the Sun to reach Mars? Compare this time with the amount of time required for sunlight to reach the Earth (if the Sun to Earth distance is 1.50×10^{11} m).
36. If you send a beam of light from a revolving mirror to a stationary mirror located 30 kms away, then calculate the time interval between the light leaving and returning to the revolving mirror.
37. In 1969, Neil Armstrong became the first person to walk on the Moon, a distance of 3.85×10^{10} m from Earth. (a) Calculate the time it took for his voice to reach Earth via radio waves. (b) In the future a person will walk on Mars, a distance of 5.6×10^{10} m from Earth when closest to Earth. Calculate the time for the astronaut's voice to reach Earth.
38. The latest Mars close approach was on the 6th of October, 2020. Mars was at 38.6 million miles (62.07 million kilometers) from the Earth. On that day, suppose you had sent a light pulse to Mars. After how much time would the light bounce back to you?
39. Microwaves inside a microwave oven have an average frequency of 3.0×10^6 Hz. Show that the wavelength of such waves is about the width of your pinkie finger.
40. A ball with the same diameter as a light bulb is held halfway between the bulb and a wall, as shown in the sketch. Construct light rays (similar to those in Figure 26.15) and show that the diameter of the umbra on the wall is the same as the diameter of the ball and that the diameter of the penumbra is 3 times the diameter of the ball.



THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

41. Rank the wavelength of each in a vacuum from shortest to longest.
    (a) Visible light (b) X-rays (c) Radio waves
42. Rank the frequencies of each from lowest to highest.
    (a) Visible light (b) X-rays (c) Radio waves
43. Rank the speed of each in a vacuum from lowest to highest.
    (a) Visible light (b) X-rays (c) Radio waves

THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

44. If your friend says confidently that the light reflected from an object to the eyes creates its image, would they be right or wrong?
45. Light waves are considered to be oscillating electromagnetic waves, which are a combination of perpendicularly oscillating electric and magnetic waves. Can we split these electric and magnetic waves?
46. When you look at a distant galaxy through a telescope, are you looking backward in time?
47. When we look at the Sun, we are seeing it as it was 8 minutes ago. So we can only see the Sun "in the past." When you look at the back of your own hand, do you see it "now" or in "the past"? Explain.
48. What type of radiation would a subatomic, charged particle like an electron produce if it changes velocity?
49. How do night vision cameras work in forests to track the movements of animals?
50. What exactly, waves in a light wave?
51. Explain the principal difference between a gamma ray and an infrared ray? Defend your answer.
52. If a beam of X-rays enters a block of glass, how will it bend with respect to the normal?
53. Which, if either, travels faster through a vacuum: an infrared ray or a gamma ray?
54. The wavelength of microwaves is larger than that of ultraviolet rays. This implies that microwaves travel slower compared to ultraviolet rays in a vacuum. Is this argument correct?
55. Is it possible to locate a black hole directly through any normal telescope?
56. A friend says sound waves are converted into electromagnetic waves and then encoded and transmitted using radio waves. Are they right or wrong?
57. A friend says TV and radio signals can travel infinitely through space. Are they correct in saying so?
58. Suppose a light wave and a sound wave have the same frequency. Which has the longer wavelength? How do you know this?
59. Which requires a physical medium in which to travel: light, sound, or both? Defend your answer.
60. How does sound reach at the same time to distant locations through radio waves?
61. What type of wave does a Wi-Fi-based network use?
62. A helium–neon laser emits light having a wavelength 633 nanometers (nm). Light from an argon laser has a wavelength of 515 nm. Which laser emits the higher-frequency light? Defend your answer.
63. Why would you expect the speed of light to be higher in air as compared to a glass medium?
64. Is glass transparent or opaque to light of frequencies that match its own natural frequencies? Defend your answer.
65. How would you select the waves if you had to probe smaller atomic material and larger celestial objects?
66. Can a material be transparent for certain frequencies of electromagnetic radiations and opaque for other frequencies?
67. You can get a sunburn on a cloudy day, but you can't get a sunburn even on a sunny day if you are behind glass. Explain.
68. Sunlight falls both on a pair of reading glasses and dark sunglasses. Which pair of glasses would you expect to become warmer? Defend your answer.
69. Does a light source larger than the object or smaller than the object can create a sharper shadow?
70. A friend says that the image projected on our eyes is upside down, and our brain helps to see it in the right orientation. Is he right or wrong?
71. Why does the moon appear different in color when compared to the Sun even though it reflects the light it receives from the Sun?
72. Why do we not see color at the periphery of our vision?
73. Why do a cat's eyes glow in the dark if you flash a light on its face?
74. From your experimentation with Figure 26.20, is your blind spot located noseward from your fovea or to the outside of it? Defend your answer.
75. How does the size of the pupil change with age?
76. The planet Jupiter is more than 5 times as far from the Sun as planet Earth. Using the inverse-square law, how does the brightness of the Sun appear at this greater distance?
77. When you look at the stars at night, a few appear brighter than the others. What does the brightness of a star indicate? Do you see the light that escaped the star a long time ago?
78. If A has 20/20 vision and B has 20/15 vision, then who has better visual acuity?

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

79. Knowing that interplanetary space consists of a vacuum, discuss your evidence that electromagnetic waves can travel through a vacuum.
80. Can you see IR light? Between X-rays and radio waves, which can penetrate a concrete wall?
81. If someone says they can hear radio waves through a radio, is what they are saying correct? Explain.
82. Why are most telescopes housed in observatories constructed on hilltops or in space?
83. Is light a wave or a particle?
84. Pretend that a person can walk only at a certain pace—no faster, no slower. If, however, she stops momentarily along the way to greet others in the room, the extra time spent in her brief interactions gives an *average* speed across the room that is less than her walking speed. How is this similar to light passing through glass? In what way does it differ?
85. Why does a solar eclipse not happen with every new moon?
86. Why is it said that it is harmful to see a solar eclipse with naked eyes?
87. Lunar eclipses are always eclipses of a full Moon. That is, the Moon is always seen full just before and after Earth's shadow passes over it. Why? Why can we never have a lunar eclipse when the Moon is in its crescent or half-moon phase?
88. During the time of a partial solar eclipse, when the Sun in the sky is crescent shaped, what will be the shape of solar images on the ground beneath sunlit trees? Discuss with a friend how you know this.
89. In Figure 26.18 Dean Baird is covered first with circular images of the Sun, then with crescent-shaped images. What is the cause of the crescent-shaped images?
90. How does the Earth appear to an astronaut on the bright side of the moon on a full moon night?
91. Paul Doherty displays images of an *annular eclipse* in photo 5 that begin this chapter. Note the images are full circular outlines. At this special time, is the average distance of the Moon from Earth closer, farther, or at its usual distance? Discuss and defend your answer.
92. When the planet Venus passes between Earth and the Sun, what kind of eclipse, if any, occurs?
93. What astronomical event would be seen by observers on the Moon while Earth experiences a lunar eclipse? At the time Earth experiences a solar eclipse?
94. A point source generates light, which travels three-dimensionally. Let us consider two spheres with radii R_1 and R_2 ($R_1 < R_2$) around the light source keeping it at its geometrical center. Compare the net light photons on the surfaces of these two spheres.
95. Light from a camera flash weakens with distance in accord with the inverse-square law. Comment on the wisdom of an airline passenger who takes a flash photo of a city at nighttime from a high-flying plane.
96. How does ultrasound help dolphins under water?

CHAPTER TWENTY SIX Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. In free space, electromagnetic waves travel at
   (a) a variety of speeds.
   (b) one speed only.
   (c) a speed depending on frequency.
   (d) an infinite speed.
2. Which of the following is fundamentally different from the others?
   (a) Sound waves
   (b) X-rays
   (c) Light waves
   (d) Radio waves
3. A main difference between a radio wave and a light wave is
   (a) wavelength.
   (b) frequency.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
4. Glass is transparent to
   (a) infrared light.
   (b) visible light.
   (c) ultraviolet light.
   (d) All of the above
5. What is the fate of ultraviolet waves incident on glass windowpane?
   (a) They set atoms into resonance.
   (b) Their energy degenerates into internal energy, warming the glass.
   (c) They are absorbed.
   (d) All of the above
6. Consider light energy that is momentarily absorbed in glass and then re-emitted. Compared to the absorbed light, the frequency of the re-emitted light is
   (a) considerably less.
   (b) slightly less.
   (c) the same.
   (d) slightly more.
7. Incident light on an opaque materials is
   (a) normally converted to internal energy in the material.
   (b) mainly reflected.
   (c) mainly refracted.
   (d) transmitted at a lower frequency.
8. The Moon would be at its fullest just before the time of a
   (a) solar eclipse.
   (b) lunar eclipse.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
9. The main reason that solar and lunar eclipses don't occur monthly is due to
   (a) the large distance to the Sun.
   (b) the tilt of Earth's polar axis.
   (c) the tipped plane of the Moon's orbit.
   (d) only one side of the Moon facing Earth.
10. Red-hot and blue-hot stars appear white to the eye because
    (a) the eye has difficulty seeing color at night.
    (b) they are too dim to fire the cones.
    (c) they are too dim to fire the rods.
    (d) eye receptivity peaks in the yellow-green part of the spectrum.

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (b): A central fact in physics is that light has an unvarying speed *c* in free space. In glass or any transparent material it travels slower, in which case answers (a) and (c) would be correct. The key here is, "free space," a vacuum. **2. (a):** Choices (b, c, d) are all electromagnetic waves, fundamentally the same. Only (a), sound waves, is a mechanical vibration of material carrying the sound, very outside the electromagnetic family. This question is to emphasize that sound and radio waves are different entities. **3. (c):** Radio and light waves are both electromagnetic waves, and what separates them is their frequencies and wavelengths. Hence correct choice (c). Again, this question is to emphasize that radio waves are *not* sound waves. **4. (b):** Infrared light resonates with molecules in the glass, increasing their amplitude of vibration, which mechanically transforms to heat. Similarly with ultraviolet light that resonates with atoms in the glass. For both, resonance means increased amplitude of vibration, which mechanically transforms to heat. Only light of visible frequencies gets through glass without causing excesses in atom and molecule vibrations. **5. (d):** Ultraviolet waves cannot pass through glass because their high frequency matches the natural frequency of glass and set atoms into resonance with excessive vibration that degenerates its energy into internal energy, warming the glass. The net effect is absorption of ultraviolet waves. So all of the above is the answer. **6. (c):** If the frequency of light after a gulp-burp interaction were slightly less or slightly more, then the color of light emerging from glass would not be the color of incident light. A common observation is that the color of light incident on glass doesn't change when emerging. **7. (a):** Light incident on an opaque material is absorbed, which is to say, its energy converts to internal energy in the material, warming it a bit. Some reflects, but not mainly, and none is refracted. **8. (b):** We see a full Moon when the Sun is behind us. When the Sun is *exactly* behind us, the shadow of Earth falls on the Moon. That's a lunar eclipse. The Moon is fullest when this event occurs. **9. (c):** The tipped plane of the Moon's orbit about Earth causes the Moon to usually pass above or below Earth in its monthly orbit. Only when the Moon's orbital plane aligns with the solar plane (as shown along points A and B in Figure 26.17), does the precise alignment occur for either a solar or lunar eclipse. The distance to the Sun and the tilt of Earth's polar axis are irrelevant. **10. (b):** We see by way of the rods and cones in our eyes. The rods can't see color but are more sensitive to levels of brightness than the cones. The cones see color but are poor in detecting dim light. Hence, the red and blue light of stars is simply too dim to be seen by the color-perceiving cones, and are seen by the rods as white. Interestingly, females are better at seeing dim colors than men, another story.

CHAPTER TWENTY SEVEN

27 Color

27.1 **Color in Our World**

27.2 **Selective Reflection**

27.3 **Selective Transmission**

27.4 **Mixing Colored Lights**
- Primary Colors
- Complementary Colors

27.5 **Mixing Colored Pigments**
- The Color Black

27.6 **Sky Colors**
- Why the Sky Is Blue
- Why Sunsets Are Red
- Why an Eclipsed Moon Is Red
- Why Clouds Are White

27.7 **Water Colors**
- Why Water Is Greenish Blue
- Why Deep Water Is Black

1 Carlos Vasquez displays a variety of colors when he is illuminated by only red, green, and blue lamps. 2 The color blue in the sky is due to the scattering of blue and violet frequencies of sunlight in air; the cyan color in tropical ocean water is due to the absorption of the infrared and red portions of sunlight in water. 3 A photo of science author Suzanne Lyons with her children Tristan and Simone. 4 A negative of the same photo shows its complementary colors. 5 Colorist and physics instructor Jeff Wetherhold at Muhlenberg College, Allentown, PA, excels at two passions—teaching physics and painting.

When American astronomer Vera Rubin began to study spiral galaxies, she did not know that her work would change our understanding of one of the most basic questions in science: What is the universe made of?

Rubin was born in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, in 1928 and later moved to Washington, D.C., with her family. Her interest in astronomy began early. As a child, she was an avid stargazer, observing the night sky from her bedroom window. Before long, she had built her own telescope and was attending local gatherings of amateur astronomers. Rubin studied astronomy at Vassar College, graduating as the only astronomy major in her class. She thought about going to Princeton University for graduate school but was told that its astrophysics department did not accept female astronomy students. Along her career Rubin encountered other barriers as a woman—for example, enduring trouble gaining permission to use some prominent observatories. She eventually got her PhD from Georgetown University. Rubin spent most of her career at the Carnegie Institution of Washington (now the Carnegie Institution for Science).

Rubin became interested in the structure of spiral galaxies. In one study, Rubin and her collaborator, Kent Ford, asked, How does the speed of stars at the edge of a galaxy compare with the speed of stars near its center? Surprisingly, their observations indicated that stars at the edge of the galaxy moved around the galactic center at nearly the same speed as those near the center. This was contradictory to the accepted notion at the time that most of the mass in a galaxy is near its center—where the majority of the stars are, and that, based on the laws of gravity, stars at the edge of a galaxy should move more slowly than stars near its center. (This is what we see in our solar system, where the outer planets move more slowly than the inner planets.) Rubin and Ford studied numerous spiral galaxies and saw the same thing every time—stars at the edges moved at nearly the same speed as those close to the center. What could explain this?

Rubin concluded that an invisible "dark matter" must be concentrated near the edges of spiral galaxies, forming dark matter "halos" around galaxies. Her observations allowed her to calculate how much dark matter there is in galaxies, and she came to the surprising conclusion that galaxies contain about ten times more dark matter than ordinary matter. As Rubin said, "What you see in a spiral galaxy is not what you get."

What exactly is dark matter? Rubin could have called it "black matter," for the absence of light has rendered it a mystery, at least for now. What does its blackness conceal? This is one of the most exciting unanswered questions in astronomy. So far, scientists have ruled out some obvious candidates—they know that dark matter is not in the form of stars, planets, black holes, or giant clouds of ordinary matter. One idea is that dark matter is made up of one or more so-far unknown fundamental particles. Efforts to understand this elusive matter are ongoing, particularly at the Large Synoptic Survey Telescope in Chili, which in her honor, has been renamed the Vera C. Rubin Observatory.

In recognition of her contributions to astronomy, Rubin was presented with the National Medal of Science by President Clinton in 1993. Vera Rubin died in 2016. Because she wanted new women scientists to encounter fewer obstacles than she had, she became a mentor to many female astronomy students over the course of her career.

27.1 Color in Our World

Roses are red and violets are blue; colors intrigue artists and physics types too. To the physicist, the colors of objects are not in the substances of the objects themselves or even in the light they emit or reflect. Color is a physiological experience and is in the eye of the beholder. So, when we say that light from a rose is red, in a stricter sense we mean that it *appears* red. Many organisms, including people with defective color vision, do not see the rose as red at all.

The colors we see depend on the frequency of the light we see. Lights of different frequencies are perceived as different colors; the lowest-frequency light we can detect appears to most people as the color red and the highest frequency as violet. Between them range the infinite number of hues that make up the color spectrum of the rainbow. By convention, these hues are grouped into the seven colors of red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo, and violet. Lights of these colors together appear white. The white light from the Sun is a composite of all the visible frequencies.

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

CHECK POINT

Colors of light can be expressed by light's wave frequencies. Couldn't colors as well be described by the wavelengths of light?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes, color is often described by wavelength. But wavelength varies in different media whereas frequency doesn't. In water, for example, light's frequency remains unchanged while wavelength becomes shorter than it is in air. Also, color-sensitive cones in the retina of the eye react directly to frequency, not wavelength. Frequency, rather than wavelength, is more in tune with nature.

27.2 Selective Reflection

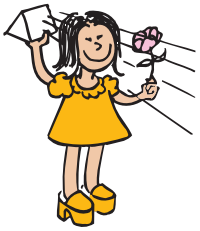


FIGURE 27.1
The colors of things depend on the colors of the light that illuminates them.

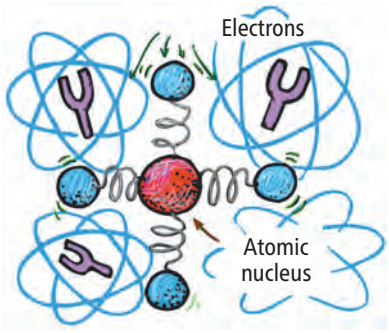


FIGURE 27.2
The outer electrons in an atom vibrate and resonate just as weights on springs would do. As a result, atoms and molecules behave somewhat like optical tuning forks.

Except for such light sources as lamps, lasers, phone and computer screens and gas discharge tubes (which we will treat in Chapter 30), most of the objects around us reflect rather than emit light. They reflect only part of the light that is incident upon them, the part that gives them their color. A rose, for example, doesn't emit light; it reflects light (Figure 27.1). If we pass sunlight through a prism and then place a deep-red rose in various parts of the spectrum, the petals appear brown or black in all parts of the spectrum except in the red. In the red part of the spectrum, the petals appear red, but the green stem and leaves appear black. This shows that the red petals have the ability to reflect red light but not light of other colors. Likewise, the green leaves have the ability to reflect green light but not light of other colors. When the rose is held in white light, the petals appear red and the leaves appear green because the petals reflect the red part of the white light and the leaves reflect the green part. To understand why objects reflect specific colors of light, we must turn our attention to the atom.

Light is reflected from objects in a manner similar to the way in which sound is "reflected" from a tuning fork when a nearby tuning fork sets it into vibration. One tuning fork can make another vibrate even when the frequencies are not matched, although at significantly reduced amplitudes. The same is true of atoms and molecules. The outer electrons that buzz about the atomic nucleus can be forced into vibration by the oscillating electric fields of electromagnetic waves.[1] Once vibrating, these electrons send out their own electromagnetic waves, just as vibrating acoustical tuning forks send out sound waves.

Different materials have different natural frequencies for absorbing and emitting electromagnetic radiation. In one material, electrons oscillate readily at certain frequencies; in another material, they oscillate readily at other frequencies. At the resonant frequencies at which the amplitudes of oscillation are large, light is absorbed, but at frequencies below and above the resonant frequencies, light is reemitted. If the material is transparent, the reemitted light passes through it. If the material is opaque, the reemitted light returns to the medium from which it came. This is reflection.

Usually, a material absorbs light of some frequencies and reflects the rest. That's why the petals of a red rose are red and the stem is green. The atoms of the petals absorb all visible light except red, which they reflect; the atoms of the stem absorb all light except green, which they reflect. An object that reflects light of all the visible frequencies, such as the white part of this page, is the same color as the light

[1]The words *oscillation* and *vibration* both refer to periodic motion—motion that regularly repeats.

(a) (b) (c)

FIGURE 27.3
(a) Red ball seen under white light. The red color is due to the ball reflecting only the red part of the illuminating light. The rest of the light is absorbed by the surface. (b) Red ball seen under red light. (c) Red ball seen under green light. The ball appears black because the surface absorbs green light—there is no source of red light for it to reflect.

that shines upon it. If a material absorbs all the light that shines upon it, it reflects none and is seen as black—the absence of light and not a part of the color spectrum.

Interestingly, the petals of most yellow flowers, such as daffodils, reflect red and green as well as yellow. Yellow daffodils reflect a broad band of frequencies. The reflected colors of most objects are not pure single-frequency colors but are composed of a spread of frequencies.

An object can reflect only those frequencies that are present in the illuminating light. The appearance of a colored object, therefore, depends on the kind of light that illuminates it. An incandescent lamp, for instance, emits more light in the lower frequencies than in the higher frequencies, enhancing any reds viewed in this light. In a fabric that has only a trace of red, the red is more apparent under an incandescent lamp than under a fluorescent lamp. Fluorescent lamps are richer in the higher frequencies, and so blues are enhanced under them. Usually we define an object's "true" color as its color in daylight. When you're shopping for clothing or accessories, the color you see in artificial light may be quite different from the true color (Figure 27.5).

FIGURE 27.4
Most of the bunny's fur reflects light of all frequencies and appears white in sunlight. Its dark fur absorbs all of the radiant energy in incident sunlight and therefore appears black.

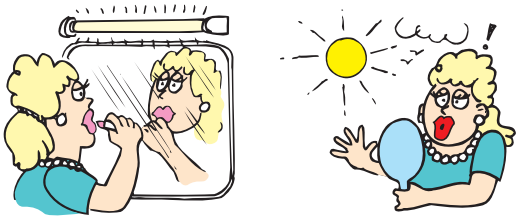


FIGURE 27.5
Color depends on the light source.

CHECK POINT

Do we see most of our surrounding by way of reflection?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes. Exceptions are direct sources of light such as flames, lamps, or even the daytime sky.

fyi

- Console a friend who is afraid of the dark with some good physics: No entity known as dark exists—dark is nothingness—the absence of light. Nobody need be afraid of nothing.

27.3 Selective Transmission

The color of a transparent object depends on the color of the light it transmits. A piece of colored glass contains dyes or *pigments*—fine particles that selectively absorb light of certain frequencies and selectively transmit others. A red piece of glass appears red because it absorbs all the colors that make up white light, except

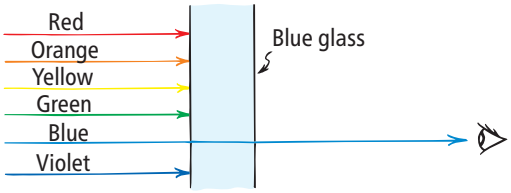


FIGURE 27.6
Only energy that has the frequency of blue light is transmitted; energy of the other frequencies is either absorbed, warming the glass, or reflected.

red, which it *transmits*. Similarly, a blue piece of glass appears blue because it absorbs light of the other colors that illuminate it and transmits primarily blue light. From an atomic point of view, electrons in the pigment atoms within the glass selectively absorb illuminating light of certain frequencies. Light of other frequencies is reemitted from molecule to molecule in the glass. The energy of the absorbed light increases the kinetic energy of the molecules, and the glass is warmed. Ordinary window glass is colorless because it transmits light of all visible frequencies equally well.

CHECK POINT

1. **When red light shines on a red rose, why do the leaves become warmer than the petals?**
2. **When green light shines on a rose, why do the petals look black?**
3. **If you hold any small source of white light between you and a piece of red glass, you'll see two reflections from the glass: one from the front surface and one from the back surface. What color is each reflection?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The leaves absorb the energy of red light, rather than reflect it, and so they become warmer.
2. The petals absorb rather than reflect the green light. Because green is the only color illuminating the rose and because green contains no red to be reflected, the rose reflects no color and appears black.
3. The reflection from the front surface is white because the light doesn't go far enough into the red glass to allow the absorption of nonred light. Only red light reaches the back surface because the pigments in the glass absorb all the other colors. So the back surface reflects red.

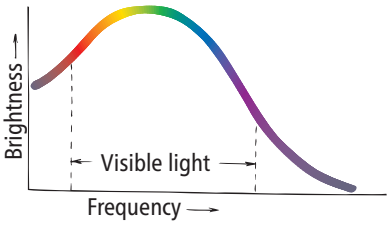


FIGURE 27.7
The radiation curve of sunlight is a graph of brightness versus frequency. Sunlight is brightest in the yellow-green region, near the middle of the visible range.

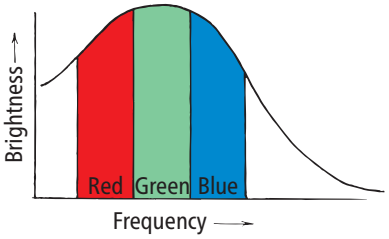


FIGURE 27.8
The radiation curve of sunlight divided into three regions—red, green, and blue (RGB). These are the additive primary colors.

27.4 Mixing Colored Lights

Nearly four centuries ago Isaac Newton passed sunbeams of light through a glass prism and was enthralled to see a spectrum of rainbow colors on an opposite wall. He discovered that white light is a composite of all the colors of the rainbow. With a second prism he recombined the colors back into white (more about this in Chapter 29). Newton went on to show the intensity of light from the Sun varies with frequency, being most intense in the yellow-green part of the spectrum. It is interesting to note that our eyes have evolved to have maximum sensitivity in this range. That's why more fire engines these days are painted yellow-green, particularly at airports, where visibility is vital.

The graphical distribution of brightness versus frequency is called the *radiation curve* of sunlight (Figure 27.7). Most whites produced from reflected sunlight share this frequency distribution.

All the colors combined make white. Interestingly, the perception of white also results from the combination of only red, green, and blue light. We can understand this by dividing the solar radiation curve into three regions, as in Figure 27.8. Three types of cone-shaped receptors in our eyes perceive color. Light in the lowest third of the spectral distribution stimulates the cones sensitive to low frequencies and appears red; light in the middle third stimulates the cones sensitive to middle frequencies and appears green; light in the highest third stimulates the cones sensitive to the higher frequencies and appears blue. When all three types of cones are stimulated equally, we see white.

Primary Colors

Project red, blue, and green lights of equal brightness on a screen and you'll see that where they all overlap, white is produced. Where two of the three colors overlap, another color is produced (Figure 27.9). In the language of physicists, colored lights that overlap are said to *add* to each other. So we say that red, green, and blue light *add to produce white light*, and that any two of these colors of light add to produce another color. Various amounts of red, green, and blue, the colors to which each of our three types of cones are sensitive, produce any color in the spectrum. For this reason, red, green, and blue are called the **additive primary colors.** This color system, known by the initials RGB, is used in computer monitors, mobile phone screens, and television sets. Spots of red, green, and blue create the image. Cyan, yellow, and magenta appear where pairs of spots overlap. A close examination of the image on a TV screen will reveal the assemblage of tiny spots, each less than a millimeter across. When the screen is lit, the mixtures of RGB colors seen at a distance provide a complete range of colors, including white.

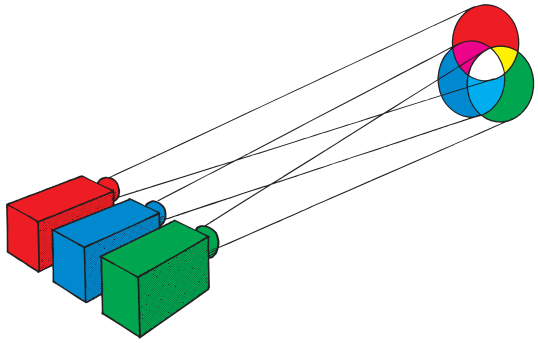


FIGURE 27.9
Color addition by the mixing of colored lights. When three projectors shine red, blue, and green light on a white screen, the overlapping parts produce different colors. White is produced where all three equal-intensity colors overlap.

CHECK POINT

When a full-color image is projected onto a screen, how is the color black projected?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Black is not projected. Black areas on the screen are regions where no light is incident. Black *really is* the absence of light.

Adding different combinations of pure rainbow colors with different intensities and contrasted with brighter or dimmer surroundings can produce colors like shocking pink, brown, and any other colors of nature.

Complementary Colors

Here's what happens when two of the three additive primary colors of equal brightness are combined:

Red + blue = magenta

Red + green = yellow

Blue + green = cyan

We say that magenta is the opposite of green, yellow is the opposite of blue, and cyan is the opposite of red. Now, when we add each of these colors to its opposite, we get white:

Magenta + green = white (= red + blue + green)

Yellow + blue = white (= red + green + blue)

Cyan + red = white (= blue + green + red)

FIGURE 27.10
Light from the red, green, and blue spotlights overlap to produce white. Note the complementary colors of the shadows cast by the golf ball. Outside the colors is black, where no light is incident.

When two colors are added together and produce white, they are called **complementary colors.** Every hue has some complementary color that, when added to it, results in white.

Carefully investigate the complementary colors in the shadows produced by the golf ball illuminated with red, green, and blue spotlights (Figure 27.10). The white patch is where red, green, and blue lights overlap. The shadow cast by the ball at the left inside the white patch is not dark because it's illuminated by the red and green lights, which make yellow (red and green lights of equal intensities stimulate the cones in our eye in the same way that yellow light does). The middle shadow cast by the ball inside the white patch blocks the green light. It isn't dark because it's illuminated by the red and blue lights, which add to make magenta (red + blue). The shadow of the ball at the right appears cyan (green + blue) because it is illuminated by green and blue light. Yellow, magenta, and cyan are the complementary colors of blue, green, and red, respectively. We call them *subtractive primary colors* because they result when light of particular frequencies is subtracted from white light.

CHECK POINT

1. **From Figure 27.9, find the complements of cyan, of yellow, and of red.**
2. **Red + blue = _____**
3. **White − red = _____**
4. **White − blue = _____**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Red, blue, cyan
2. Magenta
3. Cyan
4. Yellow

27.5 Mixing Colored Pigments

Every artist knows that if you mix red, green, and blue paint, the result will not be white but a muddy dark brown. Red and green paint certainly do not combine to form yellow, as is the rule for mixing colored lights. Mixing pigments in paints and dyes is entirely different from mixing lights. Pigments are tiny particles that absorb specific colors. For example, pigments that produce the color red absorb the complementary color cyan. So something painted red absorbs mostly cyan, which is why it reflects red. In effect, cyan has been *subtracted* from white light. Something painted blue absorbs yellow, and so reflects all the colors except yellow. Take yellow away from white, and you've got blue. Cyan, yellow, and magenta are the **subtractive primary colors.** The variety of colors in the colored photographs in any book are the result of cyan, yellow, and magenta dots. Light illuminates the book, and light of some frequencies is subtracted from the light reflected. The rules of color subtraction differ from the rules of light addition.

FIGURE 27.11
The color green on a printed page consists of cyan and yellow dots.

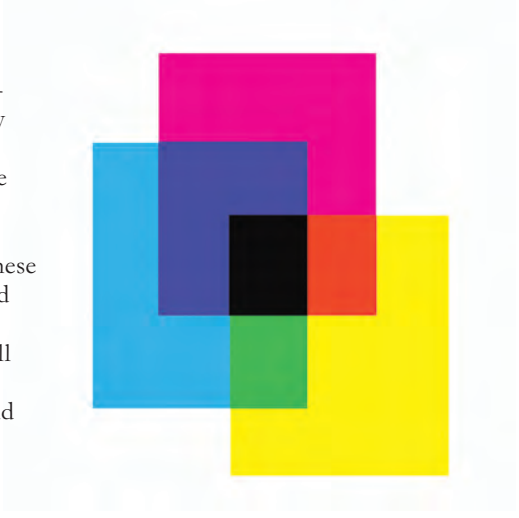
Color printing is an interesting application of color mixing. Three photographs (color separations) are taken of the illustration to be printed: one through a magenta filter, one through a yellow filter, and one through a cyan filter. Each of the three negatives has a different pattern of exposed areas that corresponds to the filter used and the color distribution in the original illustration. Light is

shone through these negatives onto metal plates specially treated to hold printer's ink only in areas that have been exposed to light. The ink deposits are regulated on different parts of the plate by tiny dots. Ink-jet printers deposit various combinations of cyan, yellow, magenta, and black inks. This is CMYK printing (K indicates black). Interestingly, the three colors can produce black, but that takes more ink and has a color cast—hence the black ink, which does a better job. Examine the color in any of the figures in a book with a magnifying glass and see how the overlapping dots of these colors show a wide range of colors. Or look at a billboard up close.

We see that all the rules of color addition and subtraction can be deduced from Figures 27.9, 27.10, and 27.12.

FIGURE 27.12
Only four colors of ink are used to print color illustrations and photographs—(a) magenta, (b) yellow, (c) cyan, and black. When magenta, yellow, and cyan are combined, they produce (d). Addition of black (e) produces the finished result (f).

FIGURE 27.13
Dyes or pigments, as in the three transparencies shown, absorb and effectively subtract light of some frequencies and transmit only part of the spectrum. The subtractive primary colors are cyan, yellow, and magenta. When white light passes through overlapping sheets of these colors, light of all frequencies is blocked (subtracted) and we have black. Where only cyan and yellow overlap, light of all frequencies except green is subtracted. Various proportions of cyan, yellow, and magenta dyes will produce nearly any color in the spectrum.



fyi

Plants use light from the red and the blue ends of the spectrum but reflect the green light they cannot use. That's why plants are green and why people growing plants are now using red and blue LEDs that promote photosynthesis.

FIGURE 27.14
The rich colors of Sneezlee represent many frequencies of light. The photo, however, is a mixture of only cyan, yellow, magenta, and black (CYMK).

FIGURE 27.15
Super-black feathers contrast with brightly colored feathers in the male bird of paradise in West Papua, Indonesia..

fyi

- MIT engineers in 2019 created the blackest material on record, which is a vertical arrangement of microscopic filaments of carbon on a surface of chlorine-etched aluminum foil. The foil captures at least 99.995 percent of any incoming light.

When we look at the colors on a soap bubble or soap film, we see cyan, yellow, and magenta predominantly. What does this tell us? It tells us that some primary colors have been subtracted from the original white light! (How this happens will be discussed in Chapter 29.)

CHECK POINT

For the projection of light, the primary colors are RGB. For light we see by reflection from opaque surfaces, the primary colors are CMY. Is this correct?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes! And for reflected light, toss in black with the dyes to get primo images.

The Color Black

Some physicists like to stress that black is not a color, but is the absence of light. But try telling that to a paint specialist when you want to purchase a can of black paint! The rules for mixing light and for mixing pigments are very different. If the paint specialist doesn't have white paint, we don't request that the colors red through violet be mixed! In the painter's world, black and white are legitimate colors.

Birds such as crows and blackbirds look black because they sport feathers that absorb incident light and appear quite black. The super black feathers of male birds of paradise native to the island of New Guinea absorb nearly 100 percent of light that strikes them. They are the blackest of all known birds. That's because each branch of their feathers appears as a succession of tiny flat feathers in a fractal-like arrangement. Under a powerful scanning electron microscope their feathers appear as jagged complex surfaces that act as microscopic light traps. Rays of light that strike these surface microstructures repeatedly reflect and repeatedly absorb. They can't find a way back out; they can't reflect.

Super black surfaces are important in optical devices where stray light can interfere with images. Some super black surfaces are created with carbon nanotubes, which themselves are naturally black. Like the jagged absorbing surfaces of some birds, the nanotubes are grown as jagged forests that bounce any incident light from tube to tube and enhance absorption. Applications of super black surfaces abound.

27.6 Sky Colors

Not all colors are the result of the addition or subtraction of light. Some colors, like the blue of the sky, are the result of *scattering*. To understand scattering, consider a beam of sound of a particular frequency directed at a tuning fork. The tuning fork is set into vibration and redirects the beam in multiple directions. The tuning fork *scatters* the sound. If the frequency of the incident sound wave is close to the natural vibration frequency of the tuning fork, the scattering is strong. If the beam's frequency is far from the fork's natural frequency, the scattering is weak.

A similar process occurs with the scattering of light from atoms and molecules in the atmosphere.[2] These particles scatter light most strongly in the ultraviolet region, so we can say that they have natural frequencies that are higher than the frequencies of visible light. This means that blue light will be closer in frequency than red light to the natural frequencies of the atoms and molecules and will be scattered more strongly than red light. You can think of a molecule in the

[2]This type of scattering, called *Rayleigh scattering*, occurs whenever the scattering particles are much smaller than the wavelength of incident light and have resonances at frequencies higher than those of the scattered light. Scattering is more complex than our simplified treatment here.

air as a tiny bell that "rings" at a high frequency like the one in Figure 27.2 but can be activated to vibrate weakly at a lower frequency. The nitrogen and oxygen molecules that make up most of the atmosphere are like tiny bells that "ring" with high frequencies when energized by sunlight. Like sound from the bells or from tuning forks, the reemitted light is scattered in all directions.

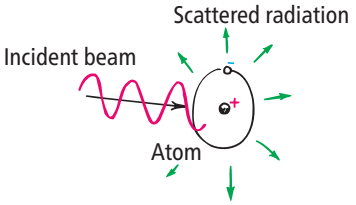


FIGURE 27.16
A beam of light falls on an atom and increases the vibrational motion of the electrons in the atom. The vibrating electrons reemit the light in various directions. Light is scattered.

CHECK POINT

How does reflected light differ from scattered light?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Reflected light, for one thing, obeys the law of reflection. Scattered light doesn't. Also, but not always, light commonly reflects from solid or liquid surfaces. Scattered light occurs normally in fluids, mainly air.

Why the Sky Is Blue

Of the visible frequencies of sunlight, violet is scattered the most in the atmosphere, followed in order by blue, green, yellow, orange, and red. Red is scattered only a tenth as much as violet. Although violet light is scattered more than blue, our eyes are not very sensitive to violet light. Therefore, the blue scattered light is what predominates in our vision, and we see a blue sky.

FIGURE 27.17
In clean air, the scattering of high-frequency light provides a blue sky. When the air is full of particles larger than molecules, lower-frequency light is also scattered, which adds to the blue to give a whitish sky.

The blue of the sky varies in different locations under different conditions. A principal factor is the water-vapor content of the atmosphere. On clear, dry days, the sky is a much deeper blue than on clear days with high humidity. In locations where the upper air is exceptionally dry, such as Italy and Greece, beautiful blue skies have inspired painters for centuries. Where the atmosphere contains a lot of particles of dust and other particles larger than oxygen and nitrogen molecules, light of the lower frequencies is also scattered strongly. This makes the sky less blue, and it takes on a whitish appearance. After a heavy rainstorm, when the particles have been washed away, the sky becomes a deeper blue.

The grayish haze in the skies over large cities is the result of particles emitted by car and truck engines and by factories. Even when idling, a typical gasoline-burning automobile engine emits more than 100 billion particles per second. Most particles are invisible, but they act as tiny centers to which other particles adhere. These are the primary scatterers of lower-frequency light. The largest of these particles absorb rather than scatter light, and a brownish haze is produced. Yuk!

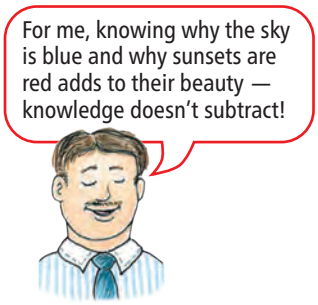
FIGURE 27.18
There are no blue pigments in the feathers of a blue jay. Instead, there are tiny alveolar cells in the barbs of its feathers that scatter light—mainly high-frequency light. So a blue jay is blue for the same reason the sky is blue—scattering.

CHECK POINT

Distant dark mountains are bluish. What is the source of this blueness? (*Hint*: What is between us and the mountains we see?)

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

If we look at distant dark mountains, very little light from them reaches us, and the blueness of the atmosphere between us and them predominates. The blueness we attribute to the mountains is actually the blueness of the low-altitude "sky" between us and the mountains!



Why Sunsets Are Red

Light that isn't scattered is light that is transmitted. Because red, orange, and yellow light are the least scattered by the atmosphere, light of these lower frequencies is better transmitted through the air. Red, which is scattered the least—and, therefore, is transmitted the most—passes through more atmosphere than any other color. So the thicker the atmosphere through which a beam of sunlight travels, the more the higher-frequency components of the light are scattered out of the beam. This means that the light that makes it through best is red. As Figure 27.19 shows, sunlight travels through many more kilometers of atmosphere at sunset, making sunsets and sunrises red.

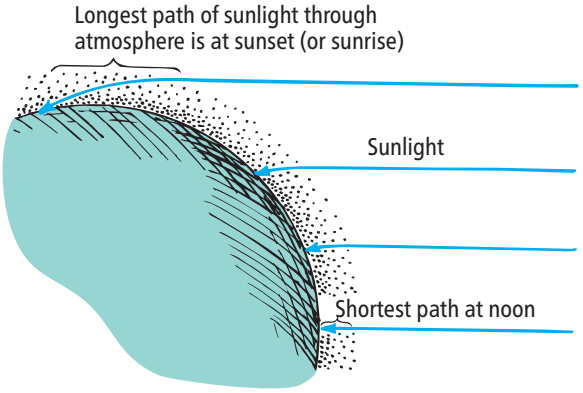


FIGURE 27.19
A sunbeam must travel through more of the atmosphere at sunset than at noon. As a result, more blue is scattered from the beam at sunset than at noon. By the time a beam of initially white light reaches the ground, only light of the lower frequencies survives to produce a reddish sunset.

fyi

- Atmospheric soot heats Earth's atmosphere by absorbing light while cooling local regions by blocking sunlight from reaching the ground. Soot particles in the air may trigger severe rains in one region and cause droughts and dust storms in another.

At noon, sunlight travels through the least amount of atmosphere to reach Earth's surface. Only a small amount of high-frequency light is scattered from the sunlight, enough to make the Sun look yellowish. As the day progresses and the Sun descends lower in the sky, the path through the atmosphere is longer, and more violet and blue are scattered from the sunlight. The removal of violet and blue leaves the transmitted light redder. The Sun becomes progressively redder, going from yellow to orange and finally to a red-orange at sunset. Sunsets and sunrises are unusually colorful following volcanic eruptions because particles larger than atmospheric molecules are then more abundant in the air.

The colors of the sunset are consistent with our rules for color mixing. When blue is subtracted from white light, the complementary color that is left is yellow. When higher-frequency violet is subtracted, the resulting complementary color is orange. When medium-frequency green is subtracted, magenta is left. The combinations of the resulting colors vary with atmospheric conditions, which change from day to day, giving us a variety of sunrises and sunsets to enjoy.

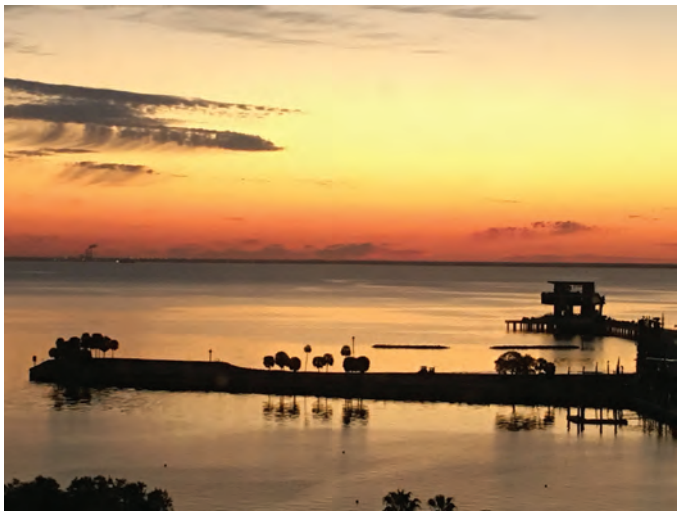
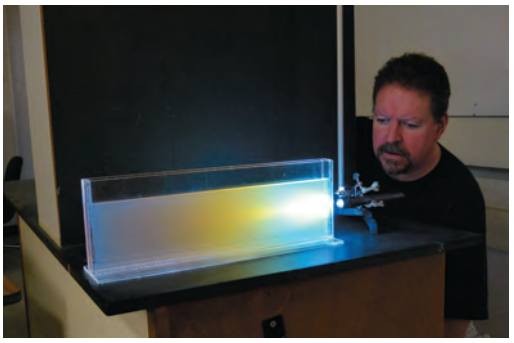


FIGURE 27.20
Sky colors at sunrise.

PRACTICING PHYSICS

You can simulate a sunset by filling a fish tank with water in which you've dropped a tiny bit of milk. A few drops will do. Then do as Dean Baird does and shine a flashlight beam through the water, and you'll see that it looks bluish from the side. Milk particles are behaving like molecules in the atmosphere, scattering the higher frequencies of light in the beam. Light emerging from the far end of the tank will have a reddish tinge. If you place your eye at the left end of the tank and look into the beam, you'll see an orange sunset color. That's the light that wasn't scattered.



Why do we see the scattered blue when the background is dark but not when the background is bright? Because the scattered blue is faint. A faint color will show itself against a dark background but not against a bright background. For example, when we look from Earth's surface at the atmosphere against the darkness of space, the atmosphere is sky blue. But astronauts above who look down through the same atmosphere to the bright surface of Earth do not see the same blueness, except at the edges.

CHECK POINT

1. **If molecules in the sky scattered low-frequency light more than high-frequency light, what color would the sky be? What color would sunsets be?**
2. **Distant snow-covered mountains reflect a lot of light and are bright. Very distant ones look yellowish. Why? (*Hint*: What happens to the reflected white light as it travels from the mountains to us?)**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. If low-frequency light were scattered, the noontime sky would appear reddish-orange. At sunset, more reds would be scattered by the longer path of the sunlight, and the sunlight would be predominantly blue and violet. So sunsets would appear blue!
2. Bright snow-covered mountains appear yellow because the blue in the white light they reflect is scattered on its way to us. By the time the light reaches us, it is weak in the high frequencies and strong in the low frequencies—hence, it is yellowish. Snow-covered mountains much farther away have an orange tinge for the same reason a sunset appears orange.

fyi

- Inorganic ingredients such as zinc oxide and titanium oxide in common sunscreens reflect and scatter UV radiation. Inorganic ingredients like octyl methoxycinnamate (OMC) or oxybenzone absorb UV. Sunscreens don't readily pass UV radiation.

Why an Eclipsed Moon Is Red

At any given time, half of planet Earth is in sunshine and the other half is in shade. Like all objects in sunlight that cast a shadow, Earth is no exception. But Earth's shadow is not completely dark. That's because sunlight that grazes Earth's surface that has survived atmospheric scattering to provide red-orange sunsets and sunrises is refracted into the dark region of Earth's shadow and onto Moon's surface. So when you see a reddish Moon during a lunar eclipse, you're viewing the refracted light of all Earth's sunrises and sunsets (Figure 27.21).

"For the first time in my life, I saw the horizon as a curved line. It was accentuated by a thin seam of dark blue light—our atmosphere. Obviously this was not the ocean of air I had been told it was so many times in my life. I was terrified by its fragile appearance."
—German astronaut Ulf Merbold

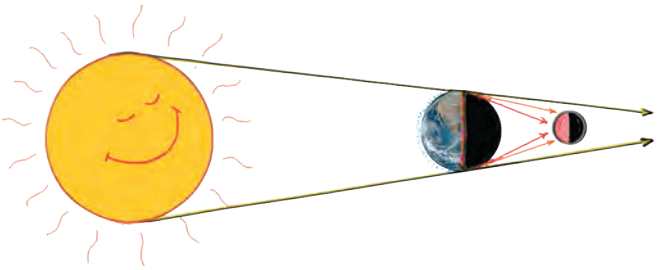


FIGURE 27.21
The colors of sunsets and sunrises worldwide refract onto the Moon during a lunar eclipse.

Most interestingly, at the boundary line of light and shade on Earth is a full-circle band of reddish-orange sky—the light of Earth's sunrises and sunsets. When the skies in much of the full-circle band are clear, orange accompanies the red to refract a "copper-red" color. If the skies in this region are cloud covered, the redness is less profound. Refraction, as we'll treat in the next chapter, can be awesome!

CHECK POINT

1. **Is it correct to imagine that Earth's atmosphere acts as a lens, and that sunlight that grazes Earth's surface to produce sundown and sunrise colors is refracted through this lens?**
2. **What would future Moon-based observers see when they view Earth during a lunar eclipse?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Yes, and it's most obvious during a lunar eclipse!
2. Moon observers would see a thin red ring around the edge of planet Earth. For them, the event would be their solar eclipse!

Why Clouds Are White

Water droplets are considerably larger than individual molecules and they behave differently. Rather than the scattering that occurs with tiny particles, water droplets evenly scatter light of all frequencies. Clouds are therefore white when illuminated by a white Sun, or yellow-orange by a rising or setting Sun. In effect, a cloud both scatters and diffusely reflects light of all colors about equally.

Each droplet absorbs a small fraction of the illuminating light, so with enough droplets, a lot of absorption occurs. Then the cloud can become dark. A cloud can also be darkened if it is in the shadow of another cloud. A further increase in the size of the droplets causes them to fall as raindrops, and we have rain.

FIGURE 27.22
Tiny air molecules scatter the blue part of sunlight and in midday we have a blue sky. Much larger raindrops diffusely reflect all colors of sunlight equally and we have a white cloud. Thicker layers of drops absorb light and we have dark parts of the clouds.

The next time you find yourself admiring a crisp blue sky, or delighting in the shapes of bright clouds, or watching a beautiful sunset, think about the beautiful physics that underlies them—you'll appreciate these everyday wonders of nature even more!

CHECK POINT

Why are blue skies due to scattering while white clouds are due to diffuse reflection?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Atmospheric scattering is mostly from the tiniest particles in air—molecules of nitrogen and oxygen, which scatter more blue light than light of other colors. Light in clouds encounters much larger objects—water droplets, which reflect light of all colors.

We will see in Chapter 28 that reflection bounces light in a particular direction, whereas diffuse reflection scatters light in all directions.

fyi

- A special brown paint reflects infrared but absorbs visible light. Since more than half the power of sunlight is in the infrared, roofs covered with this paint are called "cool roofs," for they reduce energy spent on air conditioning. The same "cool" color on cars, sidewalks, and road pavements also adds to the greening of the planet.

27.7 Water Colors

We often see a beautiful deep blue when we look at the surface of a lake or the ocean. But that isn't the color of water; it's the reflected color of the sky. The color of water itself, as you can see by looking at a piece of white material under water, is a pale greenish blue.

Why Water Is Greenish Blue

Although water is transparent to light of nearly all the visible frequencies, it strongly absorbs infrared waves. This is because water molecules resonate to the frequencies of infrared. The energy of the infrared waves is transformed into internal energy in the water, which is why sunlight warms water. Water molecules resonate somewhat in the visible red, which causes red light to be a little more strongly absorbed in water than blue light. Red light is reduced to one-quarter of its initial brightness by 15 meters of water. There is very little red light in the sunlight that penetrates below 30 meters of water. When red is removed from white light, what color remains? This question can be asked in another way: What is the complementary color of red? The complementary color of red is cyan—bluish green. In seawater, everything at these depths has a cyan color.

FIGURE 27.23
Water is cyan because it absorbs red light. The froth in the waves is white because, like clouds, it is composed of a variety of tiny water droplets that both scatter and reflect light of all the visible frequencies.

Whereas the bluish-green color of water is produced by the selective absorption of light, the intriguingly vivid blue of lakes in the Canadian Rocky Mountains is due to scattering.[3] The lakes are fed by runoff from melting glaciers that contains fine particles of silt, called rock flour, which remain suspended in the water. Light scatters from these tiny particles and gives the water its eerily vivid color (Figure 27.24).

FIGURE 27.24
The extraordinary blue of lakes in the Canadian Rocky Mountains is produced by scattering from extremely fine particles of glacial silt suspended in the water.

fyi

- The fall colors of some trees are due to a breakdown of chlorophyll in their leaves and the redistribution of nutrients to tree roots for winter storage. As green is withdrawn from leaves, yellow begins to show, which can change to red, orange, or purple by the acidity of other chemical substances in the leaf. So each fall, the trees prepare for winter "sleep" in a cloak of flaming glory.

CHECK POINT

Of these sources of blue light (a) TV screen, (b) the sky, and (c) lakes of the Canadian Rockies, which are due to scattering?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER
(b) and (c).

Many crabs and other sea creatures that appear black in deep water are found to be red when they are raised to the surface. At these depths, black and red look the same. Apparently the selection mechanism of evolution could not distinguish between black and red at such depths in the ocean.

Why Deep Water Is Black

Look at a glass of water and it is clear and transparent. Any effects of light absorption aren't noticeable. Deeper water is another story. In clear ocean water, transparency decreases tenfold for every additional 75 m of depth. At a depth of 150 m of water, water is only about 1% as bright as near the surface. Beyond some 200 m sunlight is no longer apparent. The ocean is dark. Ocean surroundings are black, whether daytime or nighttime exists above. Amazingly, at all depths where Earth's oceans are devoid of light, there is life. Life is everywhere.

Interestingly enough, the color we see is not in the world around us; the color is in our heads. The world is filled with a montage of vibrations—electromagnetic waves that stimulate the sensation of color when the vibrations interact with the cone-shaped receiving antennae in the retinas of our eyes. How nice that eye–brain interactions produce the beautiful colors we see.

[3]Scattering by small, widely spaced particles in the irises of blue eyes, rather than any pigments, accounts for their color. Absorption by pigments accounts for brown eyes.

Chapter 27 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Additive primary colors The three colors—red, blue, and green—that, when added in certain proportions, produce any other color in the visible-light part of the electromagnetic spectrum and can be mixed equally to produce white light.

Complementary colors Any two colors of equal brightness that, when added, produce the sensation of white light.

Subtractive primary colors The three colors of absorbing pigments—magenta, yellow, and cyan—that, when mixed in certain proportions, can reflect any other color in the visible-light part of the electromagnetic spectrum.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

27.1 Color in Our World

1. Which has the higher frequency, red light or blue light?

27.2 Selective Reflection

2. What occurs when the outer electrons that buzz about the atomic nucleus encounter electromagnetic waves?
3. What happens to light when it falls upon a material that has a natural frequency equal to the frequency of the light? Above or below the frequency of the light?

27.3 Selective Transmission

4. In what way does light interact with a *pigment*?
5. Which warms more quickly in sunlight: a colorless or a colored piece of glass? Why?

27.4 Mixing Colored Lights

6. What is the color of the peak frequency of solar radiation?
7. To what color of light are our eyes most sensitive?
8. What is a *radiation curve?*
9. Why are red, green, and blue called the *additive primary colors?*
10. What color of light is produced by the combination of equal intensities of red light and cyan light?
11. Why are red and cyan called *complementary colors?*
12. Do the feathers of blackbirds reflect black, or absorb light in general?

27.5 Mixing Colored Pigments

13. When something is painted red, what color is most absorbed?
14. What are the *subtractive primary colors?*
15. If you look with a magnifying glass at pictures printed in full color in books or magazines, you'll notice three colors of ink plus black. What are these colors?

27.6 Sky Colors

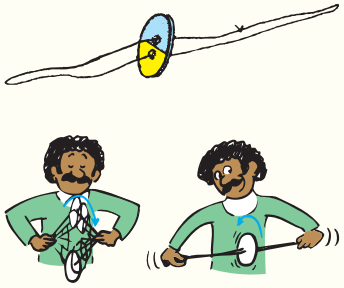
16. What is the name of the process that produces sky colors?
17. Which interact more with high-pitched sounds: small bells or large bells? Small particles or large particles?
18. Why does the sky normally appear blue?
19. Why does the sky sometimes appear whitish?
20. Why does the Sun look reddish at sunrise and sunset but not at noon?
21. Why does the color of sunsets vary from day to day?
22. How does the redness of the Moon's surface during a lunar eclipse relate to Earth's sunrises and sunsets?
23. Is it correct to say that the redness of an eclipsed Moon is the refraction of Earth's sunrises and sunsets all over the world?
24. What is the evidence for a variety of droplet sizes in a cloud?
25. What is the effect on a cloud's color when it contains an abundance of large droplets?

27.7 Water Colors

26. What part of the electromagnetic spectrum is most absorbed by water?
27. What part of the *visible* electromagnetic spectrum is most absorbed by water?
28. What color results when red is subtracted from white light?
29. Why does water appear cyan?
30. Is the blackness of deep water due to mixtures of light or absences of light?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Stare at a piece of colored paper for 45 seconds or so. Then look at a plain white surface. The cones in your retina receptive to the color of the paper become fatigued (depleted of a light-sensing chemical that replenishes slowly), so you see an afterimage of the complementary color when you look at a white area. This is because the fatigued cones send a weaker signal to the brain. All the colors produce white, but all the colors minus one produce the complement to the missing color. Try it and see!
32. Cut a disk a few centimeters or so in diameter from a piece of cardboard; punch two holes a bit off-center, big enough to loop a piece of string as shown in the sketch. Twirl the disk as shown, so the string winds up like a rubber band on a model airplane. Then, if you tighten the string by pulling outward, the disk will spin. If half the disk is colored yellow and the other half blue, when it is spun the colors will be mixed and appear nearly white. (How close to white depends on the hues of the colors). Try this for other complementary colors.



33. Fashion a cardboard tube covered at each end with metal foil. Punch a hole in each end with a pencil, one about 3 or so millimeters in diameter and the other twice as big. Place your eye to the small hole and look through the tube at the colors of things against the black background of the tube. You'll see colors that look very different from how they appear against ordinary backgrounds.
34. In the dark, shine colored lights on familiar fruits and see how different they look. Blue light on a banana; red light on a green apple; yellow light on grapes. This can be an unforgettable activity.
35. Write a text message to Grandma and tell her what details you've learned that explain why the sky is blue, sunsets are red, and clouds are white. Discuss whether or not this information adds to or decreases your perception of the beauty of nature.

THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

36. Why do color scientists not list black and white as colors of light?
37. Why are the interiors of optical instruments intentionally black?
38. Why is it recommended to wear white or light-colored clothes as opposed to black when going out in the summer?
39. Why are pink cricket balls used in day-night test cricket matches?
40. Why do clothes appear to be of a slightly different color at the mall than when you wear them outside?
41. If you need to reflect blue light, red light, or any colored light, then what color will you prefer for the reflector?
42. A spotlight is coated so that it won't transmit yellow light from its white-hot filament. What color is the emerging beam of light? Defend your answer.
43. How could you use the spotlights in a theater to change the performers' clothes suddenly from yellow to black?
44. A color printing cartridge typically uses cyan, magenta, yellow, and black ink. What is your view on how it can print various colored photographs?
45. On a TV screen, red, green, and blue LEDs are illuminated at a variety of relative intensities to produce a full spectrum of colors. What colors are activated to produce yellow? Magenta? White?
46. What colors of ink do laser printers use to produce a full range of colors? Do the colors form by color addition or by color subtraction?
47. Streetlights that use high-pressure sodium vapor produce light that is mainly yellow with some red. Why are dark blue police cars not advisable in a community that uses these streetlights?
48. In which of these cases will a ripe banana appear black—when illuminated with red, yellow, green, or blue light? Defend your answer.
49. If your friend said, "A pink colored glass appears so because it absorbs all colors of the light radiation except cyan," would you agree with their statement?
50. How do bodies of water, such as the sea, ocean, or ponds get heated by sun rays even though the color of the water is transparent?
51. Why does water in the ocean or sea appear blue?
52. By reference to Figure 27.9, complete the following equations:

    Yellow light + blue light = _____ light

    Green light + _____ light = white light

    Magenta + yellow = _____ light
53. Check Figure 27.9 to see if the following three statements are accurate. Then fill in the last statement. (All colors are combined by the addition of light.)

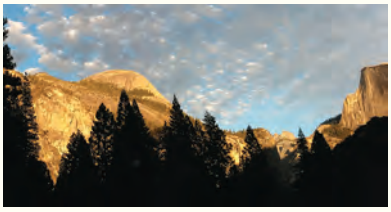
    Red + green + blue = white

    Red + green = yellow = white − blue

    Red + blue = magenta = white − green

    Green + blue = cyan = white − _____

54. Give a real-life example that suggests that the rays coming from the Sun actually consist of several colors.
55. When white light is shone on red ink dried on a glass plate, the transmitted color is red. But the color that is reflected is not red. What color do you see?
56. Why should one be careful when selecting sunglasses? How it can be dangerous?
57. Why do objects change color with depth under water?
58. Does light travel faster through the lower atmosphere or through the upper atmosphere? Defend your answer.
59. Your friend says that the reason the distant dark mountains appear blue is because you're looking at the sky between you and the mountains. Do you agree?
60. Distant dark mountains appear blue. Interestingly, this photo taken by Fe Davis shows that distant bright mountains appear yellowish. What is your explanation?

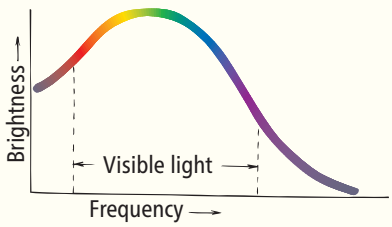


61. Your friend says that at noon, the path taken by the Sun's rays to reach the Earth's surface is minimum and hence least scattering occurs as compared to at sunrise or sunset. In this situation, only a fraction of the high-frequency light from the Sun gets scattered, giving it a yellowish color instead of a red color, as seen during the sunrise or sunset. Do you agree with your friend?
62. If the sky on a certain planet in the solar system were normally orange, what color would sunsets be? Defend your answer.
63. Volcanic emissions spew fine ashes in the air that scatter red light. What color does a full Moon appear to be through these ashes? Defend your answer.
64. Tiny particles, like tiny bells, scatter high-frequency waves more than low-frequency waves. Intermediate-size particles and bells mostly scatter waves of intermediate frequencies. Large particles, like large bells, mostly scatter low-frequency waves How does this relate to the whiteness of clouds?
65. Why is the foam of root beer white, while the beverage is dark brown?

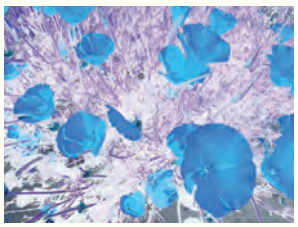
66. What is the fundamental process due to which we can see: absorption or reflection?
67. How would the color of the sky change if the atmosphere was twice as thick?
68. The atmosphere of Jupiter is more than 1000 km thick. From the surface of Jupiter, would you expect to see a white Sun? Defend your answer.
69. Justify whether black is a color or not. If someone has black hair, then how does it react to visible light?
70. If you live in the equatorial region, then what color should you paint the rooftop of your house: black or white? Justify.

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

71. In a boutique store with only fluorescent lighting, a customer insists on taking dresses into the daylight at the doorway to check their color. Discuss if she is being reasonable.
72. Why is red light used at the back of a train on the last coach?
73. Which colored light is commonly used on top of big buildings and towers and why?
74. What is the true color of the Sun: yellow, orange, or red?
75. The radiation curve of the Sun indicates that the brightest sunlight is yellow-green. Why then do we see the Sun as white instead of yellow-green?
76. Two flashlight beams are shone on a white screen, one through a pane of blue glass and the other through a pane of yellow glass. What color appears on the screen where the two beams overlap? Suppose, instead, that the two panes of glass are placed in the beam of a single flashlight. Discuss what colors then appear.



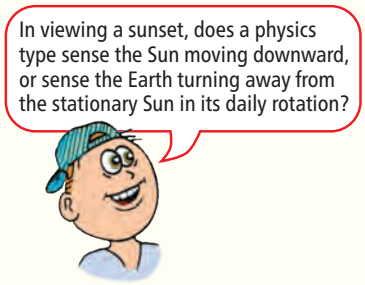
77. Your friend says that in the old days, people used to mix nanoparticles of metals like gold or silver during the glass-making process, and those tiny impurities inside the glass matrix absorbed a particular frequency of radiation, giving rise to a particular color in that glass. Are they right in saying so?
78. How do the two photos of California poppies relate to each other?



79. Why does the color black apply to pigments, but not to light?
80. Some makeup mirrors have multiple LED's that provide "Daylight", "Office", or "Evening" light settings.

Discuss why might someone want a mirror with these different settings?

81. How can cats see in the dark when humans cannot? Do you think cats can also identify distinct colors in the darkness?
82. Why can't we see stars in the daytime, whereas from the Moon's surface, stars are clearly evident at any time?
83. What would the color of the sky be for an astronaut residing in a space station?
84. What color would an astronaut see when looking down at the Earth from a spaceship?
85. Suppose somehow that the molecules in the atmosphere instead were very good at scattering red light but not so good at scattering blue light. What color would the sky appear? What color would sunsets be? Explain.
86. Can stars be seen from Mercury's surface in the "daytime" when the Sun shines?
87. Discuss the color of the setting and rising Sun as seen from the surface of Mercury.
88. If cyan, magenta, and yellow inks in a color cartridge can produce black, why is a separate black ink pocket used in the cartridge?
89. In one approach to sculpture, you add bits of material until getting the shape you want. In another approach, you start with a chunk of stone and chip off material until you get the shape that you want. Which of these approaches is analogous to how a color is produced on a computer screen? Which approach is analogous to how color is produced in a printed textbook diagram? Explain.
90. If an astronaut in space looked at the Sun through a 20-kilometer-long tube filled with Earthly atmospheric air, what color would the Sun probably appear? Explain.


In viewing a sunset, does a physics type sense the Sun moving downward, or sense the Earth turning away from the stationary Sun in its daily rotation?

CHAPTER TWENTY SEVEN Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. The color of a flower is the same as the light that is
   (a) transmitted.
   (b) absorbed.
   (c) reflected.
   (d) All of the above
2. A blueberry will look black when illuminated with
   (a) red light.
   (b) yellow light.
   (c) magenta light.
   (d) cyan light.
3. The LEDs that make up the color on a monitor or TV screens are
   (a) red, blue, yellow.
   (b) red, blue, green.
   (c) yellow, blue, green.
   (d) magenta, cyan, yellow.
4. Magenta light is a mixture of
   (a) red and blue light.
   (b) red and cyan light.
   (c) red and yellow light.
   (d) yellow and green light.
5. How many colors of ink are used to print full-color pictures?
   (a) One plus black
   (b) Two plus black
   (c) Three plus black
   (d) Four plus black
6. The sky is blue because air molecules in the sky act as tiny
   (a) mirrors which reflect only blue light.
   (b) optical tuning forks that scatter blue light.
   (c) sources of white light.
   (d) prisms.
7. The redness of the Moon's surface during a lunar eclipse is due to
   (a) refraction of sunsets and sunrises all around Earth.
   (b) infrared light continually emitted by the Moon.
   (c) scattering of lower frequencies of light by the Moon.
   (d) dim light that is incident upon the Moon by Jupiter and other planets.
8. The whiteness of clouds, unlike the blueness of the sky, primarily involves
   (a) medium sized particles.
   (b) scattering and diffuse reflection of sunlight.
   (c) seeds upon which condensation of cloud material forms.
   (d) water prisms.
9. Distant bright snowy mountains appear yellowish because
   (a) they are far away.
   (b) blue has been scattered away from light reflected from the mountains.
   (c) the color yellow looks just right.
   (d) of nature's wonderful preferences.
10. The part of the visible spectrum most absorbed by water is
    (a) infrared.
    (b) red.
    (c) cyan.
    (d) All about equally

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (c): Flowers and objects in general both absorb and reflect light—at select frequencies. We don't see the colors of the absorbed light, but instead see the light that is not absorbed, but reflected. A daffodil looks yellow to us because it reflects yellow when illuminated by white light. **2. (b):** Blueberries reflect blue light. Light that is absorbed by the berries is the complementary color of blue, which is yellow. A blueberry will appear black when illuminated with yellow light. **3. (b):** Monitors and TV screens show a wide assortment of colors, including white, all a combination of red, green, and blue (RGB). Those are the primary colors for light addition. **4. (a):** $R + B = M$, a straightforward example of color mixing. **5. (c):** Printing involves CMYK, where K is black, which is three colors plus black. **6. (b):** The blue sky is due to tiny particles scattering the white light of the Sun. Scattering, not reflection, produces a blue sky. **7. (a):** Earth's atmosphere acts as a lens that refracts light that grazes Earth's surface. The color that most survives scattering through long distances through air is reddish in color, that of sunsets and sunrises. It is this light that is refracted onto the Moon's surface at the time of a lunar eclipse. **8. (b):** Particles in clouds are bigger than the tinier particles that scatter blue light. The larger particles scatter light of all frequencies evenly. In effect, a cloud both scatters and diffusely reflects light of all colors about equally. Hence the whiteness of clouds. **9. (b):** White light reflects from snowy mountains, easily seen close up. But that white traveling much longer distances scatters blue along the way. Hence the mountains appear yellowish when actually it is the "sky" between an observed and mountains that is yellowish. For longer distances, the color seen is orange-red. **10. (b):** Deep bodies of clear water appear cyan. That's because red, the complementary color of cyan, is being absorbed. Infrared is more absorbed, but is not part of the visible spectrum. Answering (a) is not a bad wrong answer. Note the word *visible* in the question.

CHAPTER TWENTY EIGHT

28 Reflection and Refraction

28.1 **Reflection**
Principle of Least Time

28.2 **Law of Reflection**
Plane Mirrors
Diffuse Reflection

28.3 **Refraction**
Index of Refraction
Mirage

28.4 **Cause of Refraction**

28.5 **Dispersion**

28.6 **The Rainbow**
Alterations in Sky Brightness

28.7 **Total Internal Reflection**

28.8 **Lenses**
Image Formation by a Lens

28.9 **Lens Defects**

1

2

3

4

1 Peter Hopkinson boosts class interest using this zany demonstration of standing astride a large mirror as he lifts his right leg while his unseen left leg provides support behind the mirror. **2** Reflection is nicely illustrated by photographer and lab manual author Dean Baird. **3** Physics teacher Fred Myers stands between parallel mirrors and takes a photo of his daughter McKenzie. **4** How many mirrors produce these multiple reflections of Texas physics teacher Karen Jo Matsler?

Many physics teachers find joy and inspiration in attending the winter and summer meetings of the American Association of Physics Teachers (AAPT). A particularly memorable one for me was in the summer of 1977 in Puerto Rico. A feature of that meeting was a bus-ride visit to the radio telescope at Arecibo, then the largest telescope in the world. The bus had difficulty making a steep part of a hill near the great telescope, so I and other occupants got out of the bus and pushed it from behind over the top. I was surprised that among the bus pushers next to me was Melba Phillips, a recent president of AAPT and the coauthor with Wolfgang Panofsky of the famous text *Classical Electricity and Magnetism* that I studied in graduate school—a most unforgettable aha moment.

Melba Newell Phillips was one of the first doctoral students of J. Robert Oppenheimer at the University of California, Berkeley (Oppenheimer later led the effort to build the first nuclear bomb.) Phillips completed her PhD in physics in 1933, at a time when few women pursued careers in science. In 1935 she and Oppenheimer published their description of the "Oppenheimer-Phillips effect," an early contribution to nuclear physics that explained how deuterons (the nuclei of "heavy hydrogen" atoms) could react with the nuclei of heavier atoms even when simple calculations said the reaction was not possible. Their explanation is now regarded as one of the classics of early nuclear physics.

Phillips was also known for refusing to cooperate with a U.S. Senate judiciary subcommittee's investigation on internal security during the McCarthy era, an action that led to her dismissal from Brooklyn College, where she was a professor of physics from 1938 until 1952. (A public and personal apology for the dismissal was given by the college in 1987.)

While unemployed she coauthored two classic textbooks. In her electricity and magnetism book, the one I studied as a student, she presented a sophisticated treatment of reflection and refraction, the topics of this chapter. Her advanced treatment does more than is presented in this book and served as my foundation in the extension of electricity and magnetism to physical optics.

In 1962 she joined the University of Chicago faculty. There she focused on teaching physics and physical science to nonscience majors, a tradition that continues at UChicago today—albeit with this textbook! She retired as professor emerita in 1972.

During her retirement years, she was a visiting professor at the State University of New York at Stony Brook (1972–75) and taught at the University of Science and Technology of China, Chinese Academy of Science (1980), in Beijing. She received numerous honors and became a fellow of the American Physical Society and the American Association for the Advancement of Science.

Melba Phillips for years was a familiar face at AAPT meetings. The AAPT established the Melba Newell Phillips Medal in her honor in 1981 to recognize outstanding service to the organization. Importantly, she also served as a role model to women who might otherwise shun a career in physics. Phillips died in 2004 at the age of 97. Her inspiration continues.

28.1 Reflection

Most of the things we see around us do not emit light of their own. They are visible because they reemit light that reaches their surface from a primary source, such as the Sun or a lamp, or from a secondary source, such as the illuminated sky. When light falls on the surface of a material, it is either briefly absorbed and then reemitted without change in frequency, transmitted, totally absorbed into the material and converted to heat.[1] We say that light is *reflected* when it is returned without a change in frequency into the medium from which it came—this process is **reflection**.

When sunlight or lamplight illuminates print on a paper page, electrons in the atoms of the paper and ink vibrate more energetically in response to the oscillating electric fields of the illuminating light. The energized electrons reemit the light by which you see the page. When the page is illuminated by white light, the paper appears white, which reveals that the electrons reemit all the visible

[1]Another less common fate is absorption followed by reemission at lower frequencies—fluorescence (see Chapter 30).

Pearson eText **ADDITIONAL RESOURCES**
Videos
Screencasts

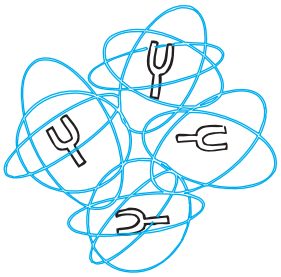


FIGURE 28.1
Light interacts with atoms as sound interacts with tuning forks.

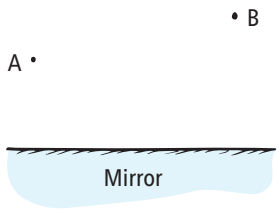


FIGURE 28.2

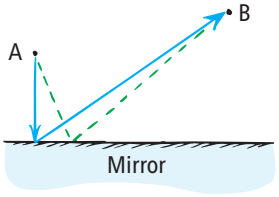


FIGURE 28.3

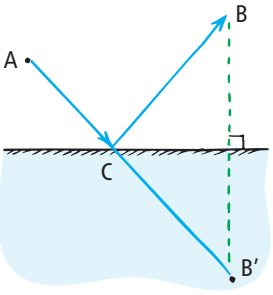


FIGURE 28.4

FIGURE 28.5

frequencies. Very little absorption occurs. The ink is a different story. Except for a bit of reflection, it absorbs all the visible frequencies and therefore appears black.

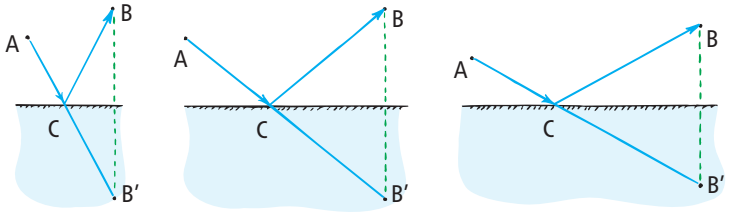
Principle of Least Time[2]

The idea that light takes the quickest path in going from one place to another was formulated in 1629 by Pierre Fermat, a French lawyer and mathematician, who proposed a unique way of looking at paths of light. His idea is now called **Fermat's principle of least time.**

We can understand reflection with Fermat's principle. Consider the following situation: In Figure 28.2, we see two points, A and B, and an ordinary plane mirror beneath. How can we get from A to B most quickly—that is, in the shortest time? The answer is simple enough: Go straight from A to B! But, if we add the condition that the light must strike the mirror in going from A to B in the shortest time, the answer is not so easy. One way would be to go as quickly as possible to the mirror and then to B, as shown by the solid lines in Figure 28.3. This gives us a short path to the mirror but a very long path from the mirror to B. If we instead consider a point on the mirror a little to the right, we slightly increase the first distance, but we considerably decrease the second distance, so the total path length shown by the dashed lines—and therefore the travel time—is less. How can we find the exact point on the mirror for which the time is least? We can find it very nicely by a geometric trick.

We construct, on the opposite side of the mirror, an image point, B′, which is the same distance "through" and below the mirror as point B is above the mirror (Figure 28.4). The shortest distance between A and this image point B′ is simple enough to determine: It's a straight line. Now this straight line intersects the mirror at a point C, the precise point of reflection for the shortest path and hence the path of least time for the passage of light from A to B. Inspection will show that the distance from C to B equals the distance from C to B′. We see that the length of the path from A to B′ through C is equal to the length of the path from A to B bouncing off point C along the way.

Inspection of Figures 28.4 and 28.5 and a little geometric reasoning will show that the angle of incident light from A to C is equal to the angle of reflection from C to B.



CHECK POINT

Can Fermat's principle of least time apply also to least geometrical distance traveled?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes, for ordinary reflection as indicated in Figures 28.3–28.5 where shortest time and shortest distance coincide. When we study refraction in Section 28.3, we'll see that Fermat's principle applies generally only to least time.

[2]This material and many of the examples of least time are adapted from R. P. Feynman, R. B. Leighton, and M. Sands, *The Feynman Lectures on Physics*, Vol. I, Chap. 26 (Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1963).

28.2 Law of Reflection

As Fermat showed, the angle of incident light will be the same as the angle of reflected light. This is the **law of reflection,** and it holds for all angles (Figure 28.5):

The angle of incidence equals the angle of reflection.

The law of reflection is illustrated with arrows representing light rays in Figure 28.6. Instead of measuring the angles of incident and reflected rays from the reflecting surface, it is customary to measure them from a line perpendicular to the plane of the reflecting surface. This imaginary line is called the *normal*. The incident ray, the normal, and the reflected ray all lie in the same plane. Such reflection from a smooth surface is called *specular* reflection. Mirrors produce excellent specular reflections.

White coatings on roofs reflect up to 85% of incident light, which on hot summer days greatly reduces air conditioning costs and carbon emissions. So for regions with hot summers, paint your rooftops white. Best for all seasons are double-layered paints that reflect infrared while maintaining color.

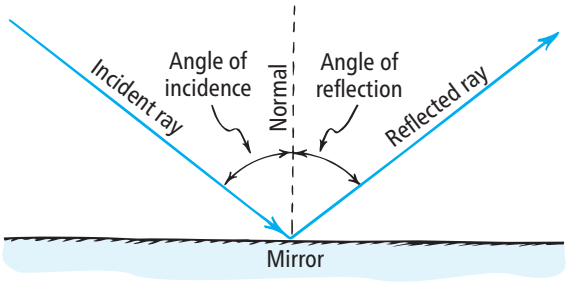


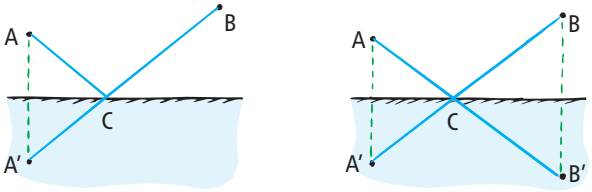
FIGURE 28.6
The law of reflection.

CHECK POINT

The construction of image point B′ in Figures 28.4 and 28.5 shows how light encounters point C in reflecting from A to B. By similar construction, show that light originating from B and reflecting to A also encounters the same point C.

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Construct an image point A′ as far below the mirror as A is above; then draw a straight line from B to A′ to find C, as shown at the left. Both constructions superimposed, at right, show that C is common to both. We see that light will follow the same path if it goes in the opposite direction. Whenever you see somebody else's eyes in a mirror, be assured that the person can also see your eyes.



Plane Mirrors

Suppose a candle flame is placed in front of a plane mirror. Rays of light radiate from the flame in all directions. Figure 28.7 shows only four of the infinite number of rays leaving one of the infinite number of points on the candle. These rays diverge from the candle flame and encounter the mirror, where they are reflected at angles equal to their angles of incidence. The rays diverge from the mirror and

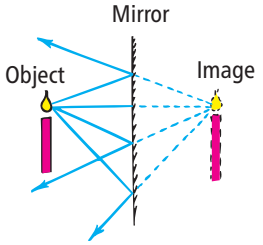


FIGURE 28.7
A virtual image is formed behind the mirror and is located at the position where the extended reflected rays (dashed lines) converge.

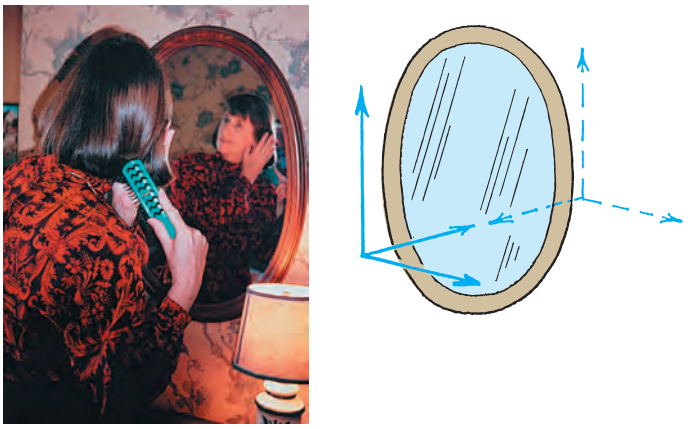


FIGURE 28.8
Marjorie's image is as far behind the mirror as she is in front. Note that she and her image have the same color of clothing—evidence that light doesn't change frequency upon reflection. Interestingly, her left–right axis is no more reversed than her up–down axis. The axis that *is* reversed, as shown to the right, is front–back. That's why it seems like her left hand faces the right hand of her image.

appear to emanate from a particular point behind the mirror (where the dashed lines intersect). An observer sees an image of the flame at this point. The light rays do not actually originate from this point, so the image is called a *virtual image*. The image is as far behind the mirror as the object is in front of the mirror, and image and object have the same size. When you view yourself in a mirror, for example, the size of your image is the same as the size your twin would appear if located the same distance behind the mirror as you are in front—as long as the mirror is flat (we call a flat mirror a *plane mirror*).

When the mirror is curved, the sizes and distances of object and image are no longer equal. We will not discuss curved mirrors in this text, except to say that a curved mirror behaves as a succession of flat mirrors, each at a slightly different angular orientation from the one next to it. At each point, the angle of incidence is equal to the angle of reflection (Figure 28.9). Note that, in a curved mirror, unlike in a plane mirror, the normals (shown by the dashed black lines to the left of the mirror) at different points on the surface are not parallel to one another.

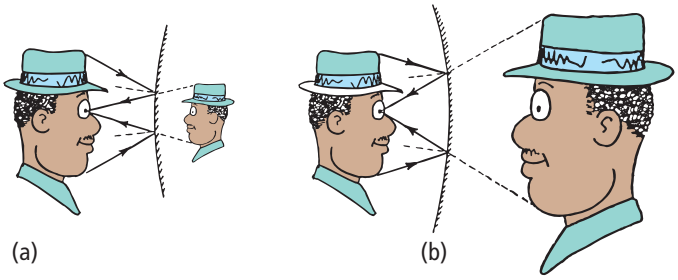


FIGURE 28.9
(a) The virtual image formed by a *convex* mirror (a mirror that curves outward) is smaller and closer to the mirror than the object.
(b) When the object is close to a *concave* mirror (a mirror that curves inward like a "cave"), the virtual image is larger and farther away than the object. In either case, the law of reflection applies to each ray.

Whether the mirror is plane or curved, the eye–brain system cannot ordinarily differentiate between an object and its reflected image. So the illusion that an object exists behind a mirror (or in some cases in front of a concave mirror) is merely due to the fact that the light from the object enters the eye in exactly the same manner, physically, as it would have entered if the object really were at the image location.

Only part of the light that strikes a surface is reflected. On a surface of clear glass, for example, and for normal incidence (light perpendicular to the surface), only about 4% is reflected from each surface. On a clean and polished aluminum or silver surface, however, about 90% of incident light is reflected.

CHECK POINT

1. **What evidence can you cite to support the claim that the frequency of light does not change upon reflection?**
2. **If you wish to take a picture of your image while standing 5 m in front of a plane mirror, for what distance should you set your camera to provide the sharpest focus?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The color of an image is identical to the color of the object that forms the image. When you look at yourself in a mirror, for example, the color of your eyes doesn't change.
2. Set your camera for 10 m; the situation is equivalent to standing 5 m in front of an open window and viewing your twin standing 5 m beyond the window.

Diffuse Reflection

Light that strikes the surface of an object has three possible fates: It may be reflected, transmitted if the object is transparent, or absorbed if the object is opaque. Actually, light often experiences a combination of these fates. We know that some light reflects from panes of glass and from polished granite surfaces. We've seen that for smooth and mirrorlike surfaces, reflection is specular. But for surfaces that are rough, light reflects in many directions. This is called *diffuse reflection* (Figure 28.10). Because rays of light in diffuse reflection scatter in all directions, an object can be seen from many different angles. Roughness of a surface is relative to the wavelength of incident light. If the surface is so smooth that the distances between successive elevations on the surface are less than about one-eighth the wavelength of the light, there is very little diffuse reflection, and the surface is said to be *polished*. A surface, therefore, may be polished for radiation of a long wavelength but not polished for light of a short wavelength. The wire-mesh "dish" shown in Figure 28.11 is very rough for light waves and so is hardly mirrorlike, but for long-wavelength radio waves, it is "polished" and therefore an excellent reflector. Reflection off the walls of your room is a good example of diffuse reflection. The light reflects back into the room but produces no mirror images. Unlike specular reflection, diffuse reflection does not produce a mirror image.

Light reflecting from this page is diffuse. The page may be smooth to a radio wave, but it is rough to a light wave. Rays of light that strike this page encounter millions of tiny flat surfaces facing in all directions. The incident light therefore is reflected in all directions, which enables us to see the page or other objects from any direction. You can see the road ahead of your car at night, for instance, because of diffuse reflection by the road surface. When the road is wet, diffuse reflection is less, and it is more difficult to see. The color of clouds is due to diffuse reflection, as discussed in the previous chapter. Most of our environment is seen by diffuse reflection.

Have you noticed that things look darker when they are wet than when they are dry? Light incident on a dry surface reflects directly to your eye, while light incident on a wet surface undergoes multiple reflections before it reaches your eye. What happens with each reflection? Absorption! So more absorption of light occurs on a wet surface, and the surface appears darker.

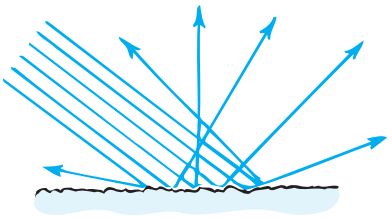


FIGURE 28.10
Diffuse reflection. Although each ray obeys the law of reflection, the many different surface angles that light rays encounter in striking a rough surface cause reflection in many directions.

FIGURE 28.11
The open-mesh parabolic dish is a diffuse reflector for short-wavelength light but a polished reflector for long-wavelength radio waves.

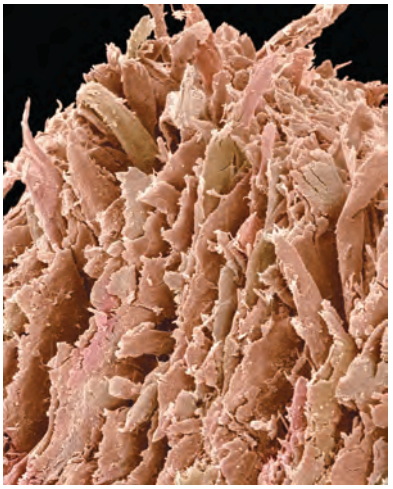


FIGURE 28.12
A magnified view of the surface of ordinary paper.

CHECK POINT

1. **Specular reflection is nicely shown in Photo 2 on page 612. Under what conditions would the reflection of the mountains be diffuse?**
2. **Which appears darker at the beach, dry sand or wet sand? Why?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. No wind is present in very still water and reflection is specular. But with a bit of wind, the water surface would be rough and the reflection would be diffuse.
2. Wet sand is appreciably darker because incident light reflectively rebounds many times within the water between the grains of sand and is absorbed a bit with each reflection before it reaches your eyes.

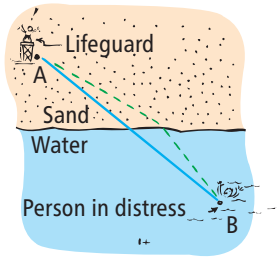


FIGURE 28.13
Refraction.

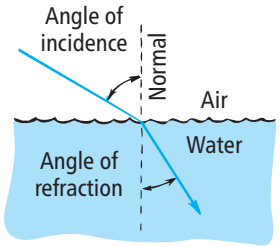


FIGURE 28.14
Refraction.

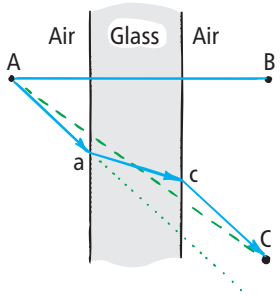


FIGURE 28.15
Refraction through glass. Although dashed line AC is the shortest path, light takes a slightly longer path through the air from A to a, then a shorter path through the glass to c, and then to C. The emerging light is displaced but parallel to the incident light.

28.3 Refraction

Recall from Chapter 26 that the average speed of light is lower through glass and other transparent materials than through empty space. Light travels at different speeds in different materials. It travels at 300,000 km/s in a vacuum, at a slightly lower speed in air, and at about three-fourths that speed in water. In a diamond, light travels at about 40% of its speed in a vacuum. When light abruptly changes direction in passing obliquely from one medium to another, we call the process **refraction.** It is a common observation that a ray of light changes direction and takes a longer path when it encounters glass or water at an oblique angle. But the longer path taken is nonetheless the path that requires the least time. A straight-line path would take a longer time. Fermat's principle nicely applies to the following situation.

Imagine that you are a lifeguard at a beach and you spot a person in distress in the water. We show the relative positions of you, the shoreline, and the person in distress in Figure 28.13. You are at point A, and the person is at point B. You can run faster than you can swim. Should you travel in a straight line to get to B? A little thought will show that a straight-line path would not be the best choice because, if you instead spent a little bit more time running farther on land, you would save a lot more time in swimming a shorter distance in the water. The path of least time is shown by the dashed line, which clearly is not the path of the shortest distance. The amount of bending at the shoreline depends, of course, on how much faster you can run than swim. The situation is similar for a ray of light incident upon a body of water, as shown in Figure 28.14. The angle of incidence is larger than the angle of refraction by an amount that depends on the relative speeds of light in air and in water.

Carefully investigate the pane of thick window glass in Figure 28.15. When light goes from point A through the glass to point B, it will follow a straight-line path. In this case, light encounters the glass perpendicularly, and we see that the shortest distance through both air and glass corresponds to the shortest time. But what about light that goes from point A to point C? Will it travel in the straight-line path shown by the dashed line? The answer is *no*, because if it did so it would be spending more time inside the glass, where light travels more slowly than in air. The light will instead take a less-inclined path through the glass. The time saved by taking the resulting shorter path through the glass more than compensates for the added time required to travel the slightly longer path through the air. The overall path is the path of least time—the quickest path. The result is

a parallel displacement of the light beam because the angles in and out are the same. You'll notice this displacement, shown by the dotted line in Figure 28.15, when you look through a thick pane of glass at an angle. The more your angle of viewing differs from perpendicular, the more pronounced the displacement.

Another example of interest is the prism, in which opposite faces of the glass are not parallel (Figure 28.16). Light that goes from point A to point B will not follow the straight-line path shown by the dashed line because too much time would be spent in the glass. Instead, the light will follow the path shown by the solid line—a path that is a bit longer through the air—and pass through a thinner section of the glass to make its trip to point B. By this reasoning, one might think that the light should take a path closer to the upper vertex of the prism and seek the minimum thickness of glass. But if it did, the extra distance through the air would result in an overall longer time of travel. The quickest path followed is the path of least time.

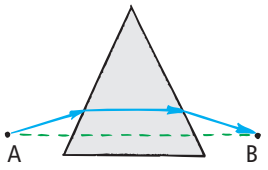


FIGURE 28.16
A prism.

It is interesting to note that a "properly curved prism" will provide an infinite number of paths of equal time from a point A on one side to a point B on the opposite side (Figure 28.17). The curve decreases the thickness of the glass correctly to compensate for the extra distances light travels to points higher on the surface. For appropriate positions of A and B and for the appropriate curve on the surfaces of this modified prism, all light paths are of exactly equal time. In this case, all the light from A that is incident on the glass surface is focused on point B. We see that this shape is simply the upper half of a converging lens (Figure 28.18, and treated in more detail later in this chapter).

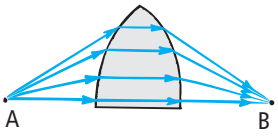


FIGURE 28.17
A "curved prism."

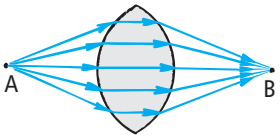


FIGURE 28.18
A converging lens.

Whenever we watch a sunset, we see the Sun for several minutes after it has sunk below the horizon. Earth's atmosphere is thin at the top and dense at the bottom. Since light travels faster in thin air than it does in dense air, light from the Sun can reach us more quickly if, instead of traveling in a straight line, it takes a higher and longer path through less dense air to penetrate the atmosphere at a steeper tilt (Figure 28.19). Since the density of the atmosphere changes gradually, the light path bends gradually to produce a curved path. Interestingly, this path of least time provides us with a slightly longer period of daylight than if the light traveled without bending. Furthermore, when the Sun (or Moon) is near the horizon, the rays from the lower edge are bent more than the rays from the upper edge. This produces a shortening of the vertical diameter, causing the Sun to appear pumpkin shaped (Figure 28.20a). This also occurs for the Moon as seen from the International Space Station as it appears to dip into Earth's atmosphere (Figure 28.20b).

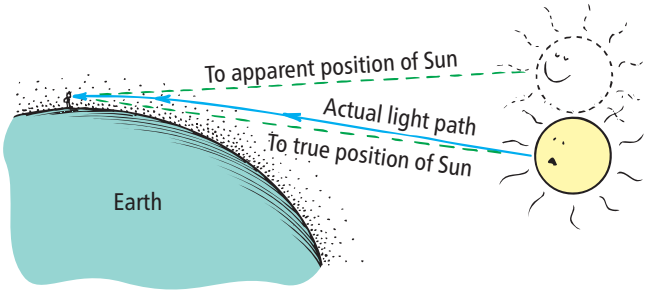
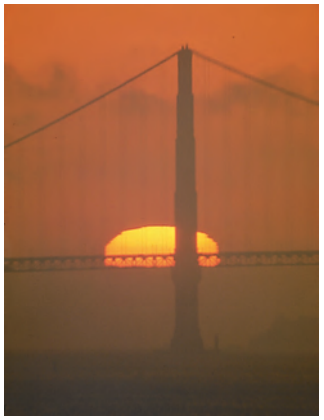


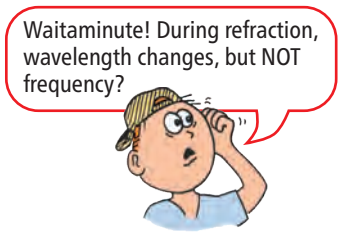
FIGURE 28.19
Because of atmospheric refraction, when the Sun is near the horizon, it appears to be higher in the sky.



(a)

(b)

FIGURE 28.20
(a) The Sun's shape is distorted by differential refraction. (b) Likewise for the Moon as seen from the ISS.

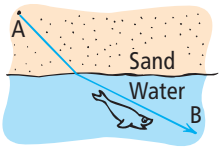


CHECK POINT

1. **Is it correct to say that whenever refraction occurs a change in the speed of light also occurs?**
2. **Suppose the lifeguard in our earlier example were a seal instead of a human being. How would its path of least time from A to B differ?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Yes. Refraction is due to changes in the speed of light.
2. The seal can swim faster than it can run, and its path would bend as shown. Likewise with light emerging from the bottom of a piece of glass into air.



Index of Refraction

Light slows when it enters a transparent medium. How much the speed of light differs from its speed in a vacuum is given by the *index of refraction*, n, of the material:

$$n = \frac{\text{speed of light in vacuum}}{\text{speed of light in material}} = \frac{c}{v}$$

For example, the speed of light in a diamond is 124,000 km/s, so the index of refraction for diamond is

$$n = \frac{300{,}000 \text{ km/s}}{124{,}000 \text{ km/s}} = 2.42$$

For a vacuum, n is 1.00, for no slowing of light would occur. The index of refraction for water is 1.33, which tells us that light travels 1.33 times as fast in a vacuum as it does in water. Or put another way, the inverse of 1.33, 1/1.33, tells us that light travels 0.75 times slower in water than in a vacuum (or in air). The actual speed of light in a material can be found from $c/n = v$. The speed of light in water is about 225,500 km/s.

For optical crown glass, common in eyeglasses, n is 1.52, which means that light slows to $0.66c$. So light in crown glass travels at two-thirds its speed in a vacuum.

The greater the value of n, the slower the light and the greater its bending in a transparent material such as a lens. The n of high-index plastic lenses reaches 1.74, so light slows and bends more, which means that lenses can be made thinner—good news for nearsighted people who want thinner lenses in their eyewear. And what is the speed of light when it exits a lens? That's right—back up to c, light's usual speed in air.

The qualitative law of refraction, called *Snell's law*, is credited to Willebrord Snell, a 17th-century Dutch astronomer and mathematician:

$$n_1 \sin \theta_1 = n_2 \sin \theta_2$$

where n_1 and n_2 are the indices of refraction of the media on either side of the surface and θ_1 and θ_2 are the respective angles of incidence and refraction. If three of these values are known, the fourth can be calculated from this relationship. Perhaps in the lab part of your course you'll make use of Snell's law.

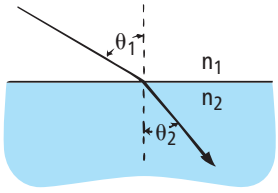


FIGURE 28.21
Refraction relates to indices of refraction in accord with Snell's law.

CHECK POINT

How does the speed of light inside eyeglasses relate to the index of refraction of the eyeglass material?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The higher the refractive index, the slower the light within, and the greater the angle of refraction.

Mirage

We are all familiar with the mirage we sometimes see while driving on a hot road. The distant road appears to be wet, but when we get there, the road is dry. Why is this so? The air is very hot just above the road surface and cooler above. Light travels faster through the thinner hot air than through the denser cool air above. So light, instead of coming to us from the sky in straight lines, also has least-time paths by which it curves down into the hotter region near the road for a while before it reaches our eyes (Figure 28.22). Where we are seeing "wetness," we are really seeing the sky. A mirage is not, as many people mistakenly believe, a "trick of the mind." A mirage is formed by real light and can be photographed, as shown in Figure 28.23.

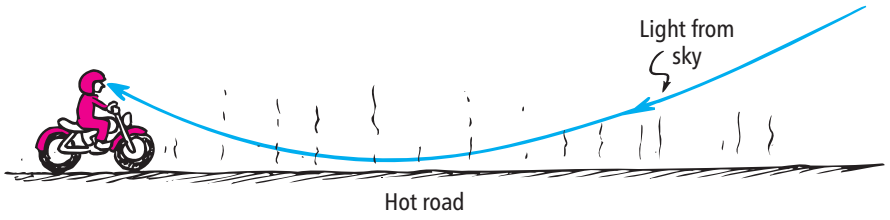


FIGURE 28.22
Light from the sky picks up speed in the air near the ground because that air is hotter and less dense than the air above. When the light grazes the surface and bends upward, the observer sees a mirage.

When we look at an object over a hot stove or over hot pavement, we see a wavy, shimmering effect. This is due to the various least-time paths of light as it passes through varying temperatures and therefore varying densities of air. The twinkling of stars results from similar phenomena in the sky, where light passes through unstable layers in the atmosphere.

In the foregoing examples, how does light seemingly "know" what conditions exist and what compensations a least-time path requires? When approaching window glass, a prism, or a lens at an angle, how does light know to travel a bit farther in air to save time in taking a shorter path through the glass? How does light from the Sun know to travel above the atmosphere an extra distance before taking a shortcut through the denser air to save time? How does sky light above know that it can reach us in minimum time if it dips toward a hot road before tilting upward to our eyes? The principle of least time appears to be noncausal, that light has a mind of its own and can "sense" all the possible paths, calculate the time for each and choose the one that requires the least time. Is this the case? As intriguing as all this may seem, there is a simpler explanation that doesn't assign foresight to light: Refraction is simply a consequence of light having different average speeds in different media.

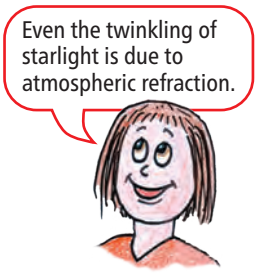
FIGURE 28.23
A mirage. The apparent wetness of the road is not reflection of the sky by water but, rather, refraction of sky light through the hotter and less-dense air near the road surface.

CHECK POINT

If the speed of light were the same in air of various temperatures and densities, would there still be slightly longer periods of daylight, twinkling stars at night, mirages, and slightly squashed Suns at sunset?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

No, because then no refraction would occur.



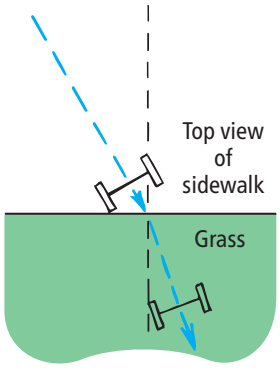


FIGURE 28.24
The direction of the rolling wheels changes when one wheel slows down before the other one does.

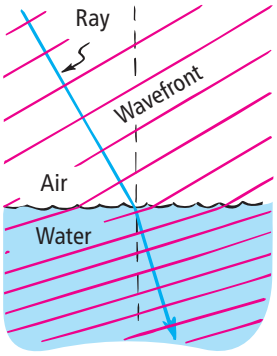


FIGURE 28.25
The direction of the light waves changes when one part of each wave slows down before the other part.

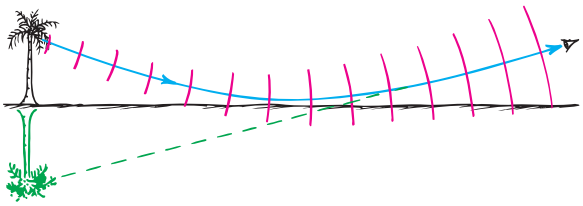
28.4 Cause of Refraction

Refraction occurs when the average speed of light *changes* in going from one transparent medium to another. We can understand this by considering the action of a pair of toy cart wheels connected to an axle as the wheels roll gently downhill from a smooth sidewalk onto a grass lawn. If the wheels meet the grass at an angle, as Figure 28.24 shows, they are deflected from their straight-line course. Note that the left wheel slows first when it interacts with the grass on the lawn. The higher-speed right wheel on the sidewalk then pivots about the slower-moving left wheel. The direction of the rolling wheels is bent toward the normal (the black dashed line perpendicular to the grass-sidewalk border in the figure).

Now let's consider light as a wave and see what that model tells us about light encountering an interface with a new medium (Figure 28.25). Note the direction of light, indicated by the blue arrow (the light ray), and also note the *wavefronts* (red) drawn at right angles to the ray. (Recall that a wavefront is the crest, trough, or any continuous portion of a wave.) In the figure the wave meets the water surface at an angle. This means that the left portion of the wave slows down in the water while the remainder in the air travels at speed c. The light ray remains perpendicular to the wavefront and therefore bends at the surface. It bends like the wheels bend when they roll from the sidewalk into the grass. In both cases, the bending is a consequence of a change in speed.

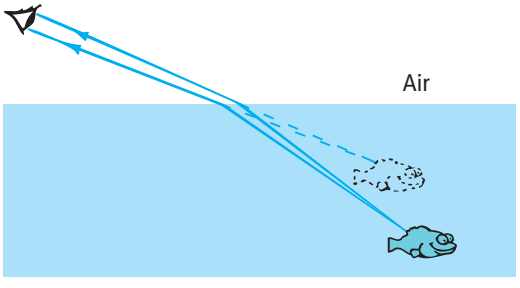
The changeable speed of light provides a wave explanation for mirages. Sample wavefronts coming from the top of a tree on a hot day are shown in Figure 28.26. If the temperature of the air were uniform, the average speed of light would be the same in all parts of the air; light traveling toward the ground would meet the ground. But the air is warmer and less dense near the ground, and the wavefronts gain speed as they travel downward, causing them to bend upward. So, when the observer looks downward, the top of the tree is seen—this is a mirage.

FIGURE 28.26
A wave explanation of a mirage. Wavefronts of light travel faster in the hot air near the ground and bend upward.



Refraction accounts for many illusions. A common one is the apparent bending of a stick that is partially in water (not shown). The submerged part seems closer to the surface than it really is. Likewise when you view a fish in the water, the fish appears nearer to the surface and closer than it really is (Figure 28.27). If we look straight down into water, an object submerged 4 m beneath the surface will appear to be only 3 m deep. Because of refraction, submerged objects appear to be closer, so they seem bigger.

FIGURE 28.27
Because of refraction, a submerged object seems to be nearer to the surface than it actually is.



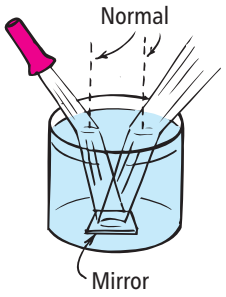


FIGURE 28.28
When light slows down in going from one medium to another, such as going from air to water, it refracts toward the normal. When it speeds up in traveling from one medium to another, such as going from water to air, it refracts away from the normal.

We see that we can interpret the bending of light at the surface of the water in at least two ways. We can say that the light that leaves the fish and reaches the observer's eye does so in the least time by taking a shorter path upward toward the surface of the water and a correspondingly longer path through the air. In this view, least time dictates the path taken. Or we can say that the waves of light directed upward at an angle toward the surface are bent off-kilter as they speed up when emerging into the air reaching the observer's eye. In this view, the change in speed from water to air dictates the path taken, and this path turns out to be a least-time path. Whichever view we choose, the results are the same.

CHECK POINT

If the speed of light were the same in all media, would refraction still occur when light passes from one medium to another?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER
No.

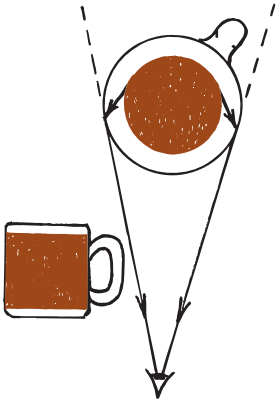


FIGURE 28.29
Because of refraction, the full root-beer mug appears to hold more root beer than it actually does.

ISAAC NEWTON AND HIS STUDY OF LIGHT

Isaac Newton first became famous not due to his laws of motion or even his law of universal gravitation. Newton's fame began with his study of light. In about 1665, while studying the images of heavenly bodies formed by a lens, he noted coloration at the edges of the images. To investigate this, he darkened his room and allowed a beam of sunlight to pass through a small circular hole in the shutter that produced a circular patch of white light on the opposite wall. He then placed a triangular glass prism in the beam of light and observed that the white light split into the colors of the rainbow.

Newton showed that inside a beam of sunlight are all the colors of the rainbow. White light is a composition of the rainbow colors. Furthermore, he showed that a rainbow is the outcome of the similar dispersion of sunlight by water drops in the sky.

Most important, with a second prism Newton found that these colors could be recombined to make white light again, which was confirmation that white light indeed is the combination of all the rainbow colors. In his middle years, he was elected to the Royal Society, where he exhibited the world's first reflector telescope. It can still be seen,

preserved at the library of the Royal Society in London with the inscription: "The first reflecting telescope, invented by Sir Isaac Newton, and made with his own hands."

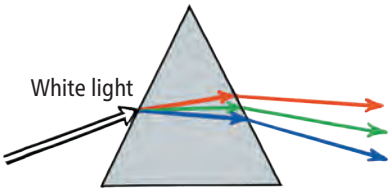


FIGURE 28.30
A prism disperses white light into its component colors.

28.5 Dispersion

The separation of mixed-frequency light into colors arranged according to frequency is called **dispersion,** as nicely illustrated by Newton's experiment with a glass prism held in sunlight centuries ago. All the component colors of white sunlight separate in the glass prism, though only red, green, and blue are shown in Figure 28.30. The red part of the white beam slows and bends as it enters the glass, green bends a bit more, and blue is slowed and bent even more. When emerging, light undergoes a second refraction and the separation is further increased. Light is dispersed by a prism.

Newton further found that when he held a pair of identical prisms in sunlight, inverting the second one in such a way that the two opposite faces of the prism pair were parallel, the dispersed colors recombined to make white light again (Figure 28.31). This was confirmation that white light indeed is the combination of all the rainbow colors.

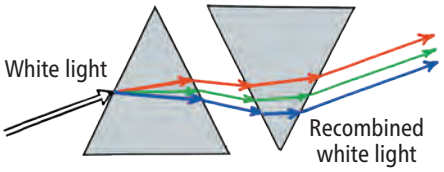


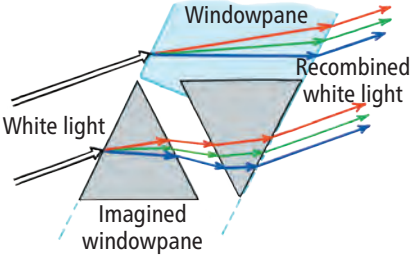
FIGURE 28.31
A second inverted prism undoes the dispersion of the first prism. The emerging red, green, and blue rays of light are parallel to the incident light (black arrow) and combine to white light when seen by the eye.

CHECK POINT

A glass prism disperses white light into its component colors. Why doesn't the glass in a windowpane do the same?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Unlike the sides of a prism, the two surfaces of a windowpane are parallel. Although dispersion *does* occur inside the glass, it is undone when light exits the opposite parallel surface, as shown in the sketch of windowpane and its imagined extension that encompasses the pair of prisms. The entrance and exit surfaces of both the windowpane and prism pair are parallel to each other.



Notice in the ray diagrams above and in Figure 28.31 that the exiting red, green, and blue rays of light are displaced from their initial path. The colored rays are parallel to the incident ray of white light, do not overlap, and combine to white upon entering the eye. This displacement effect is quite noticeable, especially when looking through the extra-thick glass of a public aquarium. A fish seen through an angle will appear not only displaced, but wider. Importantly, the color of the fish isn't changed. Likewise for the rays that refract through the pair of prisms or the windowpanes in your home. Wider-apart displaced parallel rays recombine to white when you see them.

Interestingly, some net dispersion does occur for the beveled edges of a windowpane where its opposite surfaces are not parallel. The same is true for mirrors with beveled edges. Then rainbow colors are nicely dispersed in a sunlit or otherwise lighted room. We welcome a display of rainbow colors even when no rainbow is present.

28.6 The Rainbow

There is no physical rainbow in the sky. The colorful bow that has fascinated us for eons does not have an independent existence; rather, it's a spectrum of colors that converge in the mind of the beholder (or photosensitive surface of a camera). To view a rainbow, the Sun must be shining in one part of the sky and water drops in a cloud or falling rain must be present in the opposite part of the sky. Seen from an airplane near midday, the bow forms a complete circle (with the shadow of a low-flying airplane seen in the center).

Each drop acts as a spherical prism that refracts sunlight, internally reflects it, and refracts it a second time to disperse the components of sunlight into the solar spectrum. Figure 28.32 shows a two-dimensional view of dispersion in a water drop. Follow the ray of sunlight as it enters the drop. Some light is reflected (not shown), and the remaining light refracts into the water where it is dispersed into its spectrum colors, red being deviated the least and violet the most. Upon reaching the opposite side of the drop, each color is partly refracted out into the air (not shown) and partly reflected back into the water. Arriving at the lower surface of the drop, each color is again partly reflected (not shown) and partly refracted back into the air. Refraction at this second surface, like that in a prism, increases the dispersion already produced at the first surface. The emerging red light makes an angle of 42.4° between sunbeams and the viewer. Violet emerges at 40.5°.

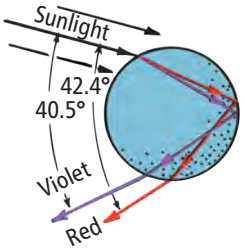


FIGURE 28.32
Dispersion of sunlight by a single raindrop.

Although each water drop disperses a full spectrum of colors, an observer of a rainbow is in a position to see the concentrated light of only a single color from drops only in one direction (Figure 28.33). If red light from particular drops reaches the eye of an observer, violet light from the same drops reaches elsewhere. To see violet light, one must look to different drops lower in the sky. This explains why the top of a primary rainbow is red, and the bottom is violet. In-between angles show orange, yellow, green, and blue. Many millions of drops produce the whole spectrum of visible light.

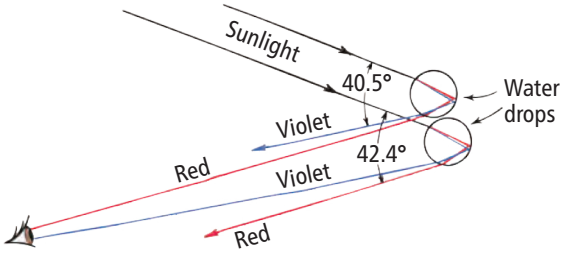


FIGURE 28.33
The eye sees red light from the upper drop and violet from the lower drop. Millions of drops produce the whole spectrum of visible light.

The bow shape of a rainbow is a consequence of spectral colors emerging at specific angles. Each rainbow color relates to a characteristic angle of dispersion. The color red, as discussed, always disperses at 42.4° to beams of sunlight. Consider the drafting triangle in Figure 28.34. When the triangle is rotated along the dashed line, it sweeps out a semicircular arc. An eye at the vertex sees same-angle locations along the dashed line. Likewise for the raindrops that disperse particular colors to a rainbow observer. Constant angles produce rainbow-shaped arcs.

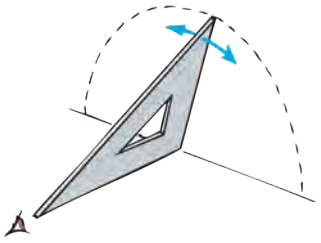


FIGURE 28.34
Only raindrops along the dashed line disperse red light to the observer at about 42°; hence the light forms a bow.

When viewing a rainbow, it's important to note that it is not the flat two-dimensional arc it appears to be. It looks flat for the same reason the full Moon seems to be a disc—because of a lack of distance cues. We see four sample bows in Figure 28.35, while a rainbow is actually composed of a vast number of bows that span the region of water drops. The more bows of drops, which is to say the wider the region of drops, the more intense the rainbow.

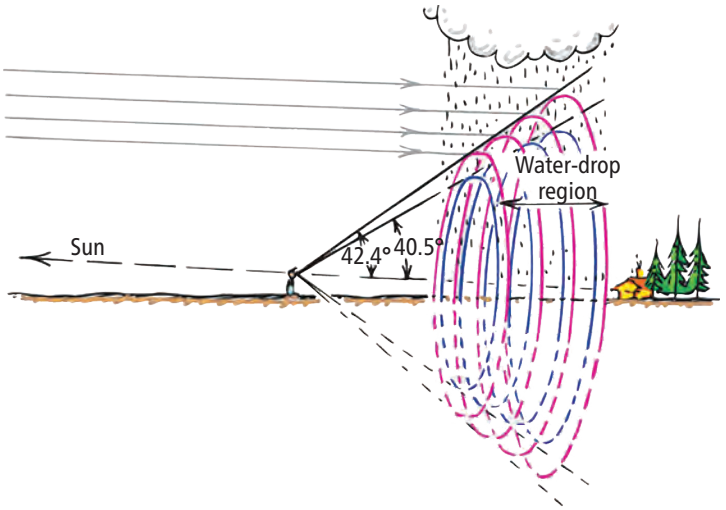


FIGURE 28.35
A rainbow is a succession of bows in the region of water drops.

Often a larger, secondary bow can be seen arching at a greater angle, from 50.4° to 53.7°, around the primary bow. This wider secondary bow is formed by similar circumstances that involve two internal reflections within the raindrops (Figure 28.36). Because of this extra reflection, its colors are in the reverse order. Also, light is lost due to an extra refraction that makes the secondary bow much dimmer than the primary bow.

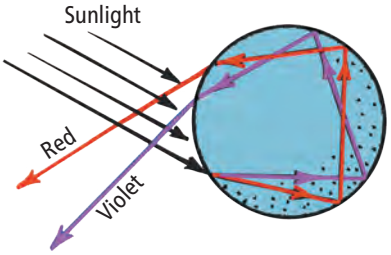


FIGURE 28.36
Two internal reflections in a drop produce a secondary bow.

Alterations in Sky Brightness

Notice the differences in sky brightness inside and outside the rainbows in the Figure 28.37 photo. The sky is noticeably brighter within the primary bow. Although drops in this region don't form your rainbow, they reflect and disperse sunlight to produce what appears to be a semitransparent whitish area. And raindrops outside the secondary bow similarly produce a much less bright semi-whitish region that is often difficult to discern.

FIGURE 28.37
A primary rainbow and its secondary rainbow. Note the three levels of sky brightness: Whitish inside the primary bow, darker between the bows, and not as dark beyond the secondary bow.

No visible light that has been once or twice reflected in the water drops is seen between the primary and secondary rainbows. The once-reflected light is seen in the whitish region within the primary bow. The twice-reflected light is seen only above the secondary bow. The only light reaching your eyes between the two bows comes from weaker processes that involve dispersion with more than two internal reflections or from atmospheric reflection unrelated to rainbows. This darker region between the bows is called *Alexander's dark band*, after Alexander of Aphrodisias, who first described it in

AD 200. Careful inspection of any clear rainbow photo will show three levels of sky brightness: somewhat bright beyond the secondary bow, darker between the primary and secondary bows, and brightest within the primary bow. Dispersed colors inside the bright regions may contribute to someone else's rainbow.

An interesting feature of rainbows is that your line of vision to the clouds of drops that create your rainbow is different from the line of vision of other observers. We each have our own cone of vision, with our own eye at its vertex. If a friend next to you says "Look at the beautiful rainbow," you can reply, "Okay, move aside so I can see it too." Everybody sees his or her own personal rainbow.

CHECK POINT

1. **If you point to a wall with your arm extended to make about a 42° angle to the normal to the wall and then rotate your arm in a full circle while keeping the same angle, what shape does your arm describe? What shape on the wall does your finger sweep out?**
2. **If light traveled at the same speed in raindrops as it does in air, would we still have rainbows?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Your arm describes a cone, and your finger sweeps out a circle—likewise with rainbows.
2. No.

28.7 Total Internal Reflection

The next time you bathe in a bathtub, fill the tub extra deep and bring a waterproof flashlight into the tub with you. Switch off the bathroom light. Shine the submerged light straight up and then slowly tip it away from the surface. Note how the intensity of the emerging beam diminishes and how more light is reflected from the surface of the water to the bottom of the tub. At a certain angle, called the *critical angle*, you'll notice that the beam no longer emerges into the air above the surface. The intensity of the emerging beam reduces to zero where it tends to graze the surface. The **critical angle** is the minimum angle of incidence inside a medium at which a light ray is totally reflected. When the flashlight is tipped beyond the critical angle (48° from the normal for water), you'll notice that all the light is reflected back into the tub. This is **total internal reflection.** The light striking the air–water surface obeys the law of reflection: The angle of incidence is equal to the angle of reflection. The only light emerging from the surface of the water is the light that is diffusely reflected from the bottom of the bathtub. This procedure is shown in Figure 28.38.

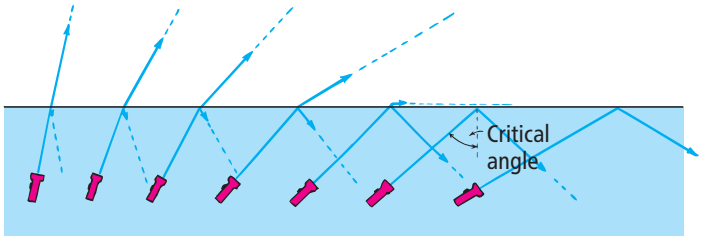


FIGURE 28.38
Light emitted in the water is partly refracted and partly reflected at the surface. The blue dashed lines show the direction of light and the lengths of the arrows indicate the proportions refracted and reflected. Beyond the critical angle, the beam is totally internally reflected.

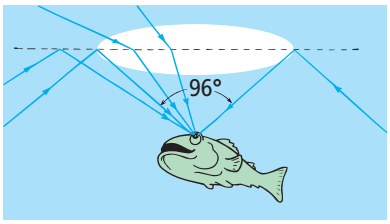


FIGURE 28.39
An observer underwater sees a circle of light at the still surface. Beyond a cone of 96° (twice the critical angle), an observer sees a reflection of the water interior or bottom.

Total internal reflection occurs in materials in which the speed of light is less than the speed of light outside. The speed of light is less in water than in air, so all light rays in water that reach the surface at more than an incident angle of 48° are reflected back into the water. So your pet goldfish in its aquarium looks up to see a reflected view of the sides and bottom of the aquarium. Directly above, it sees a compressed view of the outside world (Figure 28.39). The outside 180° view from horizon to opposite horizon is seen through an angle of 96°—twice the critical angle. A lens that similarly compresses a wide view, called a *fisheye lens*, is used for special-effect photography.

Total internal reflection occurs in glass surrounded by air because the speed of light in glass is lower than in air. The critical angle for glass is about 43° depending on the type of glass. So light in the glass that is incident at angles larger than 43° to the surface is totally internally reflected. No light escapes beyond this angle; instead, all of it is reflected back into the glass, even if the outside surface is marred by dirt or dust—hence the usefulness of glass prisms (Figure 28.40). A little light is lost by reflection before it enters the prism, but once the light is inside, reflection from the 45° slanted face is total—100%. In contrast, silvered or aluminized mirrors reflect only about 90% of incident light. This is the reason for the use of prisms instead of mirrors in many optical instruments.

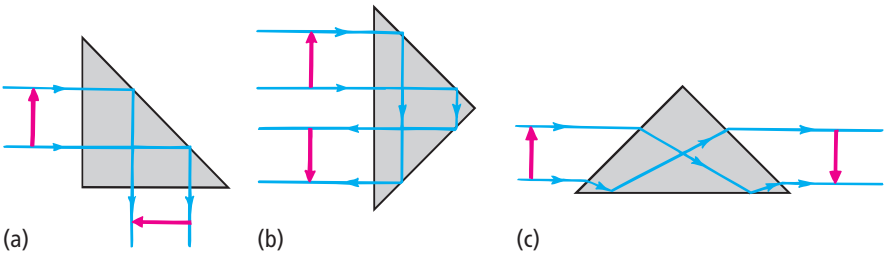


FIGURE 28.40
Total internal reflection in a prism. The prism changes the direction of the light beam (a) by 90°, (b) by 180°, and (c) not at all. Note that, in each case, the orientation of the image is different from the orientation of the object.

CHECK POINT

Does the speed of light change when totally reflected in a material?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

No. Reflection, inside or outside a reflecting surface, does not change speed. A change of speed occurs with refraction, but not with reflection.

Would you like to get rich? Be the first to invent a surface that reflects 100% of the external light incident upon it.

A pair of prisms, each reflecting light through 180°, is shown in Figure 28.41. Binoculars use pairs of prisms to lengthen the light path between lenses and thus eliminate the need for long barrels. So a compact set of binoculars is as effective as a longer telescope. Another advantage of prisms is that whereas the image in a straight telescope is upside down, reflection by the prisms in binoculars reinverts the image, so things are seen right-side up.

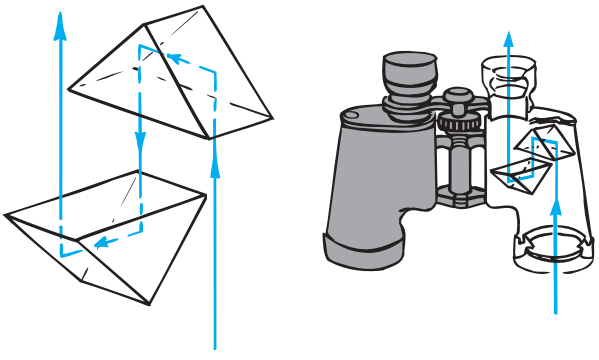


FIGURE 28.41
Total internal reflection in a pair of prisms, common in binoculars.

The critical angle for a diamond is about 24.5°, less than for any other common substance. The critical angle varies slightly for different colors because the speed of light varies slightly for different colors. Once light enters a diamond gemstone, most is incident on the sloped backsides at angles greater than 24.5° and is totally internally reflected (Figure 28.42). Because of the great slowdown in speed as light enters a diamond, refraction is pronounced, and because of the frequency-dependence of the speed, there is great dispersion. Further dispersion occurs as the light exits through the many facets at its face. Hence we see unexpected flashes of a wide array of colors. Interestingly, when these flashes are narrow enough to be seen by only one eye at a time, the diamond "sparkles."

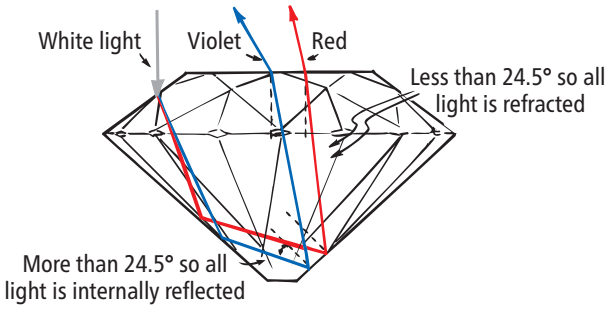


FIGURE 28.42
Paths of light in a diamond. Rays that strike the inner surface at angles larger than the critical angle are internally reflected and exit via refraction at the top surface.

Total internal reflection also underlies the operation of optical fibers, or light pipes (Figure 28.43). An optical fiber "pipes" light from one place to another by a series of total internal reflections, much as a bullet ricochets along a steel pipe. Light rays bounce along the inner walls, following the twists and turns of the fiber. Bundles of optical fibers are used to see what is occurring in inaccessible places, such as the interior of a motor or a patient's stomach. The fibers can be made small enough to snake through blood vessels or through narrow canals in the body, such as the urethra. Light shines down some of the fibers to illuminate the scene and is reflected back along others.

Fiber-optic cables are also important in communications because they offer a practical alternative to copper wires and cables with no energy losses. Thin glass fibers now replace thick, bulky, expensive copper cables to carry thousands of simultaneous messages among the major switching centers and across the ocean floor. Control signals are fed in aircraft from the pilot to the control surfaces by means of fiber optics. Signals are carried in the modulations of laser light. Unlike electricity, light is indifferent to temperature and fluctuations in surrounding magnetic fields, and so the signal is clearer. Also, it is much less likely to be tapped by eavesdroppers.

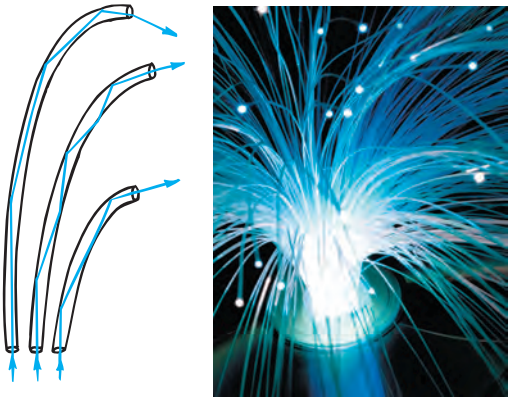


FIGURE 28.43
The light is "piped" from below by a succession of total internal reflections until it emerges at the top ends.

28.8 Lenses

A very practical case of refraction occurs in lenses. We can understand a lens by analyzing equal-time paths as we did earlier, or we can assume that a lens consists of several matched prisms and blocks of glass arranged in the order shown in Figure 28.44. The prisms and blocks refract incoming parallel light rays so that they converge to (or diverge from) a point. The arrangement shown in Figure 28.44a converges the light, and we call such a lens a **converging lens.** Note that it is thicker in the middle and thinner at the edges.

Learning about lenses is a hands-on activity. Not fiddling with lenses while learning about them is like taking swimming lessons away from water.

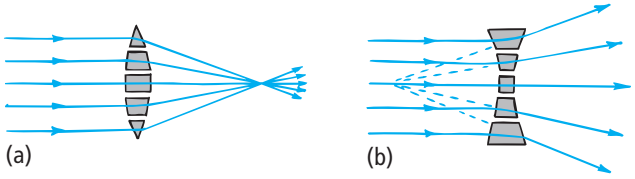


FIGURE 28.44
A lens may be envisioned as a set of blocks and prisms: (a) a converging lens and (b) a diverging lens.

The arrangement in Figure 28.44b is different. The middle is thinner than the edges, and it diverges the light; such a lens is called a **diverging lens.** Note that the prisms diverge the incident rays in a way that makes them appear to come from a single point in front of the lens. In both lenses, the greatest deviation of rays occurs at the outermost prisms because they have the largest angle between the two refracting surfaces. No deviation occurs exactly in the middle because in that region the glass faces are parallel to each other. Real lenses are not made of prisms, of course, as is indicated in Figure 28.44; they are made of a solid piece of glass or plastic with surfaces that are ground usually to a spherical curve. In Figure 28.45, we see how smooth lenses refract waves.

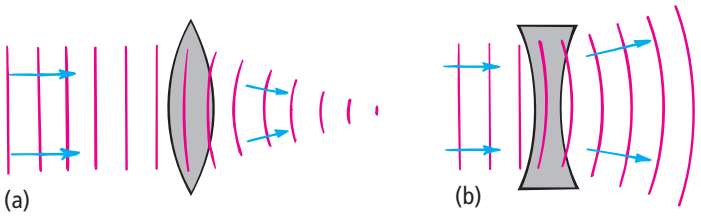


FIGURE 28.45
Wavefronts travel more slowly in glass than in air. (a) The waves slow more through the center of the lens, and convergence results. (b) The waves slow more at the edges, and divergence results.

Some key features in lens description are shown for a converging lens in Figure 28.46. The *principal axis* of a lens is the line that joins the centers of curvatures of its surfaces. The *focal point* is the point where a beam of light parallel to the principal axis converges. Incident parallel beams that are not parallel to the principal axis focus at points above or below the focal point. All such possible points make up a *focal plane*. A lens has two focal points and two focal planes. When the lens of a camera is set for distant objects, the photosensitive surface is very nearly in the focal plane behind the lens in the camera. The *focal length* of the lens is the distance between the center of the lens and either focal point.

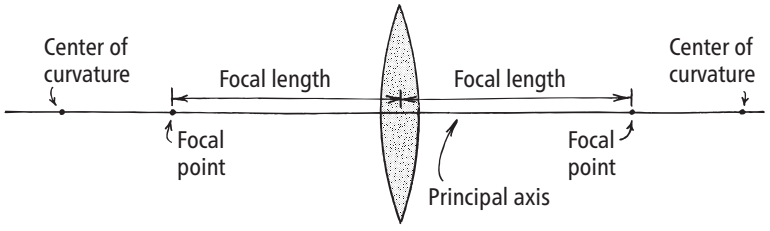


FIGURE 28.46
Key features of a converging lens.

FIGURE 28.47
The moving patterns of bright and dark areas at the bottom of the pool result from the uneven surface of the water, which behaves like a blanket of undulating lenses. Just as we see the pool bottom shimmering, a fish looking upward at the Sun would see it shimmering too. Because of similar irregularities in the atmosphere, we see the stars twinkle.

Image Formation by a Lens

Whenever you read copy from a printed page, light reflects from your face onto the page. Light that reflects from your forehead, for example, strikes every part of the page. Likewise for light that reflects from your chin. Every part of the page is illuminated with reflected light from your forehead, your nose, your chin, and every other part of your face. You don't see an image of your face on the page because there is too much overlapping of light. But put a barrier with a pinhole in it between your face and the page, and the light that reaches the page from your forehead does not overlap the light from your chin. Likewise for the rest of your face. Without this overlapping, an image of your face is formed on the page. It will be very dim because very little light reflected from your face gets through the pinhole. To see the image, you'd have to shield the page from other light sources. The same is true of the vase and flowers in Figure 28.48b. For simplification, only sample rays from the top and bottom of the vase of flowers are shown.

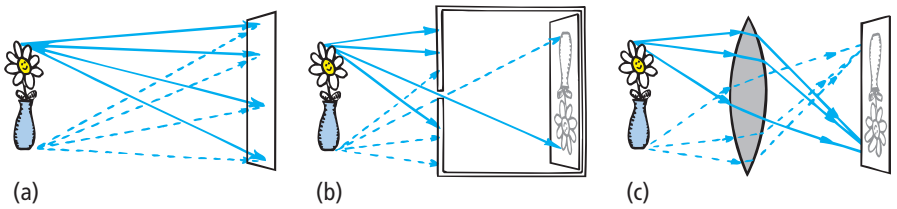
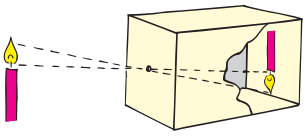


FIGURE 28.48
Image formation. (a) No image appears on the wall because rays from all parts of the object overlap all parts of the wall. (b) A single small opening in a barrier prevents overlapping rays from reaching the wall; a dim upside-down image is formed. (c) A lens converges the rays upon the wall without overlapping; more light makes a brighter image.

The first cameras had no lenses and admitted light through a small pinhole. You can see why the image is upside down by the sample rays in Figures 28.48b. Long exposure times were required because of the small amount of light admitted by the pinhole. A somewhat larger hole would admit more light, but overlapping rays would produce a blurry image. Too large a hole would allow too much overlapping and no image would be discernible. That's where a converging lens comes

PINHOLE CAMERA

Make a pinhole camera. Cut out one end of a small cardboard box, and cover the end with semitransparent tracing or tissue paper. Make a clean-cut pinhole at the other end. (If the cardboard is thick, you can make the pinhole through a piece of aluminum foil placed over a larger opening in the cardboard.) Aim the camera at a bright object in a darkened room, and you will see an upside-down image on the tracing paper. The tinier the pinhole, the dimmer and sharper the image. If you are in a dark room, replace the tracing paper with unexposed photographic film, cover the back so that it is light-tight, and cover the pinhole with a removable flap. You're ready to take a picture. Exposure times differ depending principally on the kind of film and the amount of light. Try different exposure times, starting with about 3 seconds. Also try boxes of various lengths.



Rather than viewing a candle, as the sketch suggests, point your box skyward toward the Sun. The solar image on the tracing paper is clear and bright. Pinhole images of the Sun are also evident on a sidewalk beneath a tree on a sunny day, occurring when the openings between leaves in the tree are small compared with the height of the tree. In the photo, the round spots in front of Siu Bik Lee are hardly noticed by people walking by—even artists! People don't see them unless they're pointed out (an ongoing teaching moment with this author!). The spots are images of the Sun.

Can you see why the image in Figure 28.48b is upside down? And, when film photographs are processed and printed, they're all upside down?

in (Figure 28.48c). The lens converges light onto the screen without the unwanted overlapping of rays.[3] Whereas the first pinhole cameras were useful for only still objects because of the long exposure time required, moving objects can be photographed with the lens camera because of the short exposure time—which is why photographs taken with lens cameras first came to be called *snapshots*.

The simplest use of a converging lens is a magnifying glass. To understand how it works, think about how you examine objects near and far. With unaided vision, a faraway object is seen through a relatively narrow angle of view and a close object is seen through a wider angle of view (Figure 28.49). To see the details of a small object, you want to get as close to it as possible for the widest-angle view. But your eye can't focus when it is too close. That's where the magnifying glass comes in. When you are close to the object, the magnifying glass gives you a clear enlarged image.

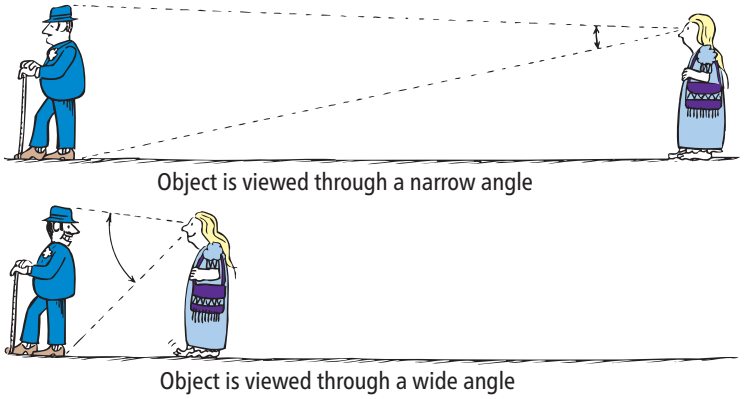


FIGURE 28.49
Viewing.

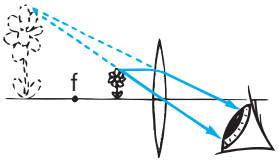


FIGURE 28.50
When an object is near a converging lens (inside its focal point f), the lens acts as a magnifying glass to produce a virtual image. The image appears larger and farther from the lens than the object.

When we use a magnifying glass, we hold it close to the object being examined. This is because a converging lens provides an enlarged, right-side-up image only when the object is inside the focal point (Figure 28.50). If a screen is placed at the image distance, no image appears on it because no light is directed to the image position. The rays that reach our eye, however, behave *as if* they came from the image position; we call the result a **virtual image.**

When the object is far away enough to be outside the focal point of a converging lens, a **real image** is formed instead of a virtual image. Figure 28.51 shows a case in which a converging lens forms a real image on a screen. A real image is upside down. A similar arrangement is used for projecting slides and motion pictures on a screen and for projecting a real image on the photosensitive area of a camera. Real images with a single lens are always upside down.

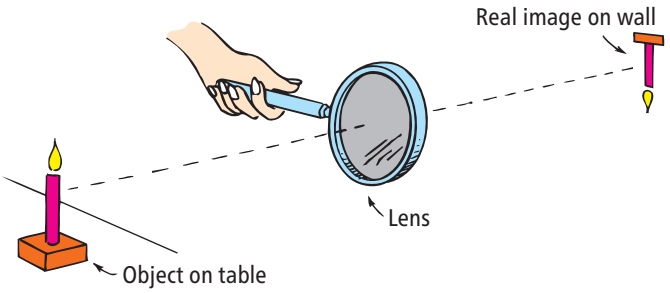
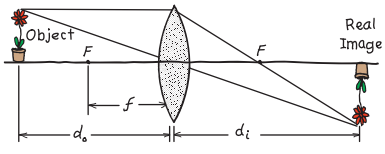


FIGURE 28.51
When an object is far from a converging lens (beyond its focal point), a real upside-down image is formed.



[3] A quantitative way of relating object distances to image distances is given by the thin-lens equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_o} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{f} \quad \text{or} \quad d_i = \frac{d_o f}{d_o - f}$$

where d_o is the distance of the object from the lens, d_i is the distance from the lens to the image, and f is the focal length of the lens.

A diverging lens used alone produces a reduced virtual image. It makes no difference how far or how near the object is. When a diverging lens is used alone, the image is always virtual, right-side up, and smaller than the object. A diverging lens is often used as a "finder" on a pre-smartphone camera. When you look at the object to be photographed through such a lens, you see a virtual image that has approximately the same proportions as the photograph.

FIGURE 28.52
A diverging lens forms a virtual, right-side-up image of Jamie and his cat.

28.9 Lens Defects

No lens provides a perfect image. A distortion in an image is called an **aberration.** By combining lenses in certain ways, aberrations can be minimized. For this reason, most optical instruments use compound lenses, each consisting of several simple lenses instead of single lenses.

Spherical aberration results from light that passes through the edges of a lens and focuses at a slightly different place from where light passing near the center of the lens focuses (Figure 28.53). This can be remedied by covering the edges of a lens, as with a diaphragm in a camera. Spherical aberration is corrected in good optical instruments by a combination of lenses.

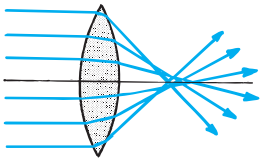


FIGURE 28.53
Spherical aberration.

Chromatic aberration is the result of light of different colors having different speeds and hence different amount of refractions in the lens (Figure 28.55). In a simple lens (as in a prism), different colors of light do not come to focus in the same place. *Achromatic lenses*, which combine simple lenses of different kinds of glass, correct this defect. (Interestingly, Isaac Newton replaced the objective lens in a telescope with a parabolic mirror to employ reflection rather than refraction to avoid chromatic aberration.)

FIGURE 28.54
How is vision affected when both eye views are deflected to the side by prisms? After a few minutes the eye, brain, and muscles all adapt to the change!

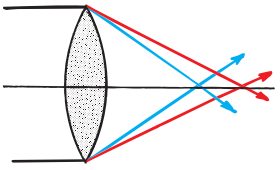


FIGURE 28.55
Chromatic aberration.

The pupil of the eye changes in size to regulate the amount of light that enters. Vision is sharpest when the pupil is smallest because light then passes through only the central part of the eye's lens, where spherical and chromatic aberrations are minimal. Also, the eye then acts more like a pinhole camera, so minimum focusing is required for a sharp image. You see better in bright light because in such light your pupils are smaller.

Astigmatism of the eye is a defect that results when the cornea is curved more in one direction than the other, somewhat like the side of a barrel. Because of this defect, the eye does not form sharp images. The remedy is eyeglasses with cylindrical lenses that have more curvature in one direction than in another.

Today, an option for those with poor sight is wearing eyeglasses. Who first invented eyeglasses is unknown. Pieces of glass were used in ancient Rome to enhance readability of small text. Wearable eyeglasses appeared in Italy during the thirteenth century. The telescope was first created in the early 1600s in the Netherlands. If before then anybody viewed objects through a pair of lenses separated along their axes, such as lenses fixed at the ends of a tube, there is no record of it.

fyi

- Inexpensive eyeglasses with water-filled lenses can correct both nearsighted and farsighted vision. A small hand pump regulates the amount of water between the membranes. Water can produce a convex lens for farsighted vision, or less water can produce a concave lens for nearsighted vision. Once each lens is optimized, the user locks the water setting in place. The pump and tube assembly is removed and left intact for later adjustments. Check the Internet for *Self-Adjusting Eyeglasses for the World's Poor.*

An alternative to eyeglasses is contact lenses. A further alternative is LASIK (an acronym for laser-assisted in-situ keratomileusis), in which pulses of laser light reshape the cornea and produce normal vision. Another procedure, PRK (photorefractive keratectomy), corrects all three common defects in vision. More recent in laser eye surgery is SMILE (small incision lenticule extraction), similar to LASIK, but performed through a tiny 3mm keyhole incision. IntraLase, implantable contact lenses, and newer procedures continue to be developed. It's safe to say that wearing eyeglasses and contact lenses may soon be a thing of the past. We really do live in a rapidly changing world. And that can be nice.

If you wear glasses and have ever misplaced them, or if you find it difficult to read small print, try squinting or, even better, try holding a pinhole (in a piece of paper or whatever) in front of your eye, close to the page. You'll see the print clearly and, because you're close to it, it is magnified. Try it and see!

CHECK POINT

1. **If light traveled at the same speed in both glass and air, would glass lenses alter the direction of light rays?**
2. **Why is there chromatic aberration in light that passes through a lens but none in light that reflects from a mirror?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. No.
2. Different frequencies travel at different speeds in a transparent medium and therefore refract at different angles, which can produce chromatic aberration. The angles at which light reflects, however, have nothing to do with light's frequency. One color reflects the same as any other color. In telescopes, therefore, mirrors are preferable to lenses because there is no chromatic aberration.

Chapter 28 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Reflection The return of light rays from a surface.

Fermat's principle of least time Light takes the path that requires the least time when it goes from one place to another.

Law of reflection The angle of reflection equals the angle of incidence.

Refraction The bending of an oblique ray of light when it passes from one transparent medium to another.

Dispersion Separation of light into colors arranged according to their frequency—for example, by interaction with a prism or a diffraction grating.

Critical angle The minimum angle of incidence inside a medium at which a light ray is totally reflected.

Total internal reflection The total reflection of light traveling within a denser medium when it strikes the boundary with a less dense medium at an angle larger than the critical angle.

Converging lens A lens that is thicker in the middle than at the edges and that refracts parallel rays to a focus.

Diverging lens A lens that is thinner in the middle than at the edges, causing parallel rays to diverge as if from a point.

Virtual image An image formed by light rays that do not converge at the location of the image.

Real image An image formed by light rays that converge at the location of the image. A real image, unlike a virtual image, can be displayed on a screen.

Aberration Distortion in an image produced by a lens, which to some degree is present in all optical systems.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

28.1 Reflection

1. In what way does incident light that falls on an object affect the motion of electrons in the atoms of the object?
2. What do the electrons affected by illumination do when they are energized to vibrate?
3. Does Fermat's principle of least time assume that light travels in straight-line paths?

28.2 Law of Reflection

4. Cite the law of reflection.
5. Relative to the distance of an object in front of a plane mirror, how far behind the mirror is the image?
6. What fraction of the light shining straight at a piece of clear glass is reflected from the first surface?
7. Can a surface be considered polished for some waves and not for others? Cite an example.

28.3 Refraction

8. How does the angle at which a ray of light strikes a pane of window glass compare with the angle at which it passes out the other side?
9. When is the angle at which a ray of light strikes glass not the same as the angle it exits?
10. The index of refraction of water is 1.33. What does this say about the relative speeds of light in water and in a vacuum?
11. What is the speed of light after exiting a glass lens into air?
12. Is a mirage due to reflection, or due to refraction?
13. In which medium does light travel faster, in thin air or in dense air?

28.4 Cause of Refraction

14. When the wheel of a cart rolls from a smooth sidewalk onto a plot of grass, the interaction of the wheel with blades of grass slows the wheel. What slows light when it passes from air into glass or water?
15. Does Fermat's principle of least time apply to refraction?

28.5 Dispersion

16. Does the dispersion of a prism involve refraction?
17. One prism disperses light into rainbow colors. What should be the orientation of a close-by second prism to undo this dispersion?

28.6 The Rainbow

18. Does a single raindrop illuminated by sunlight disperse light of a single color or does it disperse a spectrum of colors?
19. Does a viewer see a single color or a spectrum of colors that originates from a single faraway drop?
20. Why is a secondary rainbow dimmer than a primary bow?
21. What are the three levels of brightness associated with a rainbow?

28.7 Total Internal Reflection

22. What is meant by *critical angle?*
23. At what angle inside glass is light totally internally reflected? At what angle inside a diamond is light totally internally reflected?
24. Light normally travels in straight lines, but it "bends" in an optical fiber. Explain.

28.8 Lenses

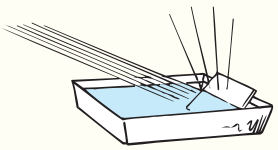
25. Distinguish between a *converging lens* and a *diverging lens.*
26. What is the *focal length* of a lens?
27. Distinguish between a *virtual image* and a *real image.*
28. What kind of lens can be used to produce a real image? A virtual image?

28.9 Lens Defects

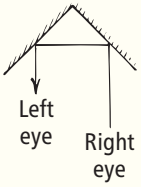
29. Why is vision sharpest when the pupils of the eye are very small?
30. What is astigmatism, and how can it be corrected?

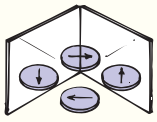
THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Plane mirrors and convex mirrors produce virtual images of objects. Can they produce real images under any circumstances? Explain.
32. You can produce a spectrum by placing a tray of water in bright sunlight. Lean a pocket mirror against the inside edge of the tray and adjust it until a spectrum appears on the wall or ceiling. Aha! You've produced a spectrum without a prism.

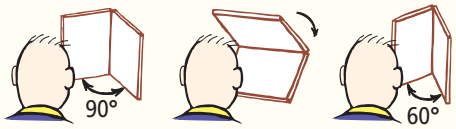


33. Set up two pocket mirrors at right angles and place a coin between them. You'll see four coins. Change the angle of the mirrors and see how many images of the coin you can see. With the mirrors at right angles, look at your face. Then wink. Do you see anything unusual? Hold a printed page up to the double mirrors and contrast its appearance with the reflection from a single mirror.





34. Look at yourself in a pair of mirrors at right angles to each other. You see yourself as others see you. Rotate the mirrors, still at right angles to each other. Does your image rotate also? Now place the mirrors 60° apart so you again see your face. Again rotate the mirrors and see if your image rotates also. Amazing?



35. Determine the magnifying power of a lens by focusing on the lines of a ruled piece of paper. Count the spaces between the lines that fit into one magnified space and you have the magnifying power of the lens. You can do the same with binoculars and a distant brick wall. Hold the binoculars so that only one eye looks at the bricks through the eyepiece while the other eye looks directly at the bricks. The number of bricks seen with the unaided eye that will fit into one magnified brick gives the magnification of the instrument.

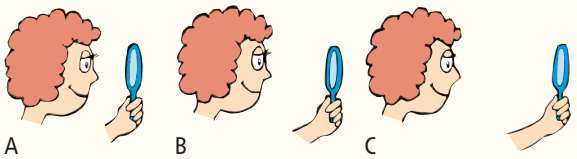
36. Poke a hole in a piece of paper, hold it in sunlight so that the solar image is the same size as a coin on the ground, and then determine how many coins would fit between the ground and the pinhole. You'll find it to be the same number of solar diameters that would fit within the distance from Earth to the Sun. (Do you remember this from Chapter 1?)

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

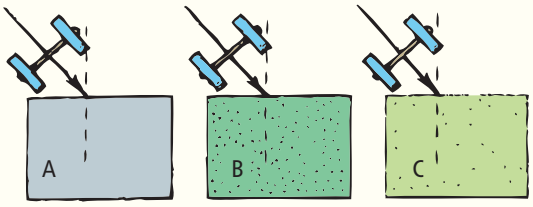
37. Suppose you walk toward a mirror at 2 m/s. How fast do you and your image approach each other? (The answer is *not* 2 m/s.)
38. If the speed of light in a material is 175,000 km/s, then calculate its refractive index. (Consider the speed of light in a vacuum to be 300,000 km/s.)
39. A bee flying at eye level is 25 cm away from the front of a plane mirror. You are behind the bee, 80 cm from the plane mirror. What is the distance between your eye and the image of the honeybee in the mirror?
40. When light strikes a glass surface perpendicularly, about 4% is reflected at each surface. Calculate the amount of light transmitted through four glass sheets.
41. Two media are separated by an interface, where the refractive index of medium 1 is $n_1 = 1.45$ and the refractive index of medium 2 is $n_2 = 1.01$. In this scenario, if light enters from medium 1 to medium 2, making a 30° angle of incidence, then calculate the angle of refraction.
42. When a mirror with a fixed beam incident upon it is rotated by 20°, calculate the angle at which the reflected beam rotates.

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

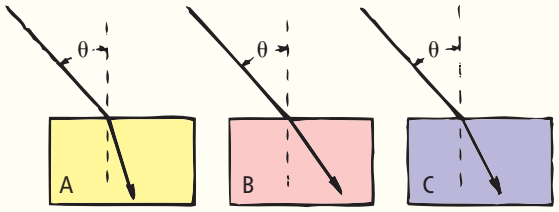
43. She looks at her face in the handheld mirror. Rank the amount of her face she sees in the three locations, from greatest to least (or is it the same in all positions?): A, B, C.



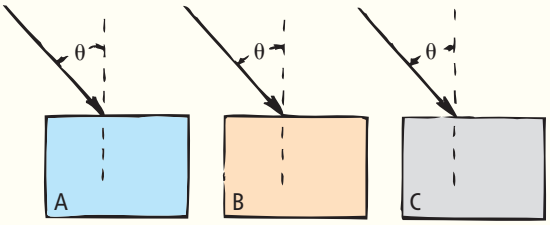
44. Wheels from a toy cart are rolled from a concrete sidewalk onto the following surfaces: A, a paved driveway; B, a grass lawn; C, close-cropped grass on a golf-course putting green. Due to slowing, each set of wheels bends at the boundary and is deflected from its initial straight-line course. Rank the surfaces according to the amount each set of wheels bends at the boundary, from greatest amount of bending to least.



45. Identical rays of light enter three transparent blocks composed of different materials. Light slows down upon entering the blocks. Rank the blocks according to the speed light travels in each, from highest speed to lowest speed.

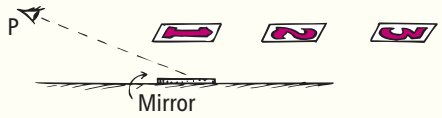


46. Identical rays of light in air are refracted upon entering three transparent materials: A, water, where the speed of light is 0.75*c;* B, ethyl alcohol (speed 0.70*c*); C, crown glass (speed 0.66*c*). Rank the materials according to how much the light ray bends toward the normal, from most bending to least bending.



THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

47. This chapter opened with a photo of physics instructor Peter Hopkinson seeming to hover above the table. He isn't. Explain how he creates this illusion.
48. In the other opening photo of physics teacher Fred Myers taking a photo of his daughter McKenzie, how many mirrors were involved? Explain.
49. In the multiple images of physics teacher Karen Jo Matsler in the opening photo, how many mirrors are involved in the multiple images.
50. If light refracts in traveling from medium 1 to medium 2, and the angle of incidence is 43°, and the angle of refraction is 55°, which medium is denser?
51. If a ray of light is reflected from a plane mirror with an angle of incidence of 45°, then what will be the angle of reflection?
52. Her eye at point P looks into the mirror. Which of the numbered cards can she see reflected in the mirror?



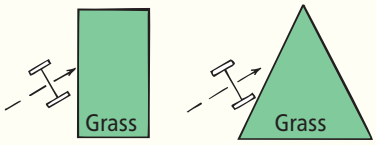
53. Why is the lettering on the front of some vehicles "backward"?

54. What type of mirror would you use for a rear view mirror, convex or concave? Justify your answer.
55. If you capture a picture of a paper with text on it in "selfie" and "normal" camera modes using your smartphone, which picture will you find difficult to read and why?
56. Car mirrors are uncoated on the front surface and silvered on the back surface. When the mirror is properly adjusted, light from behind reflects from the silvered surface into the driver's eyes. Good. But this is not so good at nighttime with the glare of headlights behind. This problem is solved by the wedge shape of the mirror (see sketch). When the mirror is tilted slightly upward to the "nighttime" position, glare is directed upward toward the ceiling, away from the driver's eyes. Yet the driver can still see cars behind in the mirror. Explain.

57. A person in a dark room looking through a window in daylight can clearly see a person outside, whereas the person outside cannot see the person inside. Explain.
58. A person in a well-lighted room looking through a window at nighttime cannot clearly see a person standing outside in the dark. But the person in the dark can clearly see the person inside. Explain.
59. A pulse of orange light and a pulse of green light enter a glass block at the same time, normal to its surface. Which pulse exists first after passing through the block?
60. If Jack is 154 cm tall, what is the minimum height of a plane mirror in which he can see his full reflection from head to toe?
61. If Jack stands 100 cm and 200 cm away respectively from the mirror in Question 60, how does the minimum height required of a plane mirror in which he can see his full reflection from head to toe change?
62. Jimmy held his small pocket mirror 30 cm away from his face in a straight line and found that 50% of his face is seen in it. What percentage of his face will be seen if the mirror is moved 60 cm away?

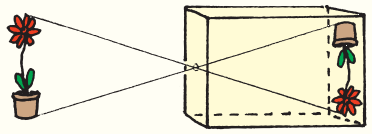
63. On a steamy mirror, you just wipe away a portion of the mirror to see your full face. If the vertical length of the image of your face on the mirror is 9 cm, what is your actual facial length?
64. The diagram shows a person and her twin at equal distances on opposite sides of a thin wall. Suppose a window is to be cut in the wall so each twin can see a complete view of the other. Show the size and location of the smallest window that can be cut in the wall to do the job. (*Hint:* Draw rays from the top of each twin's head to the other twin's eyes. Do the same from the feet of each to the eyes of the other.)

65. You can tell whether a person is nearsighted or farsighted by looking at the size of their eyes through their glasses. When a person's eyes seem magnified, is the person nearsighted or farsighted?
66. If a near sighted person wants thicker eyeglasses, is a higher or a lower index of refraction for the lenses recommended?
67. Your friend says that the wavelength of light waves is less in water than in air and cites Figure 28.25 as evidence. Do you agree or disagree, and why?
68. A pair of toy cart wheels is rolled obliquely from a smooth surface onto two plots of grass, a rectangular plot and a triangular plot, as shown. The ground is on a slight incline so that, after slowing down in the grass, the wheels will speed up again when emerging on the smooth surface. Finish each sketch by showing some positions of the wheels inside the plots and on the other sides, thereby indicating the direction of travel.



69. During a lunar eclipse, the Moon is not completely dark but is usually reddish in color, discussed in the previous chapter. Explain this in terms of the refraction of all the sunsets and sunrises around the world.
70. What accounts for the large shadows cast by the ends of the thin legs of the water strider?

71. When you stand with your back to the Sun, you see a rainbow as a circular arc. Could you move off to one side and then see the rainbow as the segment of an ellipse rather than the segment of a circle (as Figure 28.35 suggests)? Defend your answer.
72. When swimming under water, objects look blurred. Why does wearing a face mask correct the blurred image?
73. If a fish wore goggles above the water surface, why would vision be better for the fish if the goggles were filled with water? Explain.
74. Will dispersion by a prism be enhanced or lowered if placed in water? Defend your answer.
75. Will a diamond placed under water gain or lose brilliance? Defend your answer.
76. What is the effect in the dispersion of a prism when it is immersed in a liquid that has the same index of refraction as the prism material?
77. Cover the top half of a camera lens with opaque tape. What effect does this have on the pictures taken?
78. Will a magnifying glass magnify more or magnify less when it is used under water rather than in air?
79. A feature of pinhole cameras is that incoming light does not overlap. However, the smaller the pinhole, the less bright the image. What is the consequence of a larger pinhole that produces a brighter image?
80. If the distance between the pinhole and the image were somewhat less that shown in the sketch, would the image still be upside down? Would the image be smaller than shown? Would the image still be sharp?



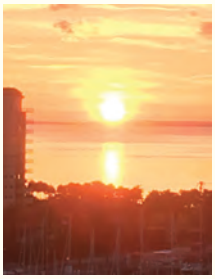
81. If you point a pinhole camera at the Sun, a clear and bright solar image will be seen on the viewing screen. Explain how this relate to the circular spots of light that surround Lillian beneath the sunlit tree shown in the photo?

82. In terms of focal length, how far behind the camera lens is photosensitive surface located when very distant objects are being photographed?
83. What is the nature of the images formed by the lens of the eyes? Which organ of the human body reads and recognizes it?
84. What is the nature of images formed by astronomical telescopes? How is this linked to sketches of the map of the moon?
85. If one of your friends said that they know of a material that has a refractive index of 0.8, would you believe them? Justify your answer.
86. Why do shooters close one eye when aiming at a target?
87. Stephanie Hewitt dips a glass rod into vegetable oil. Note that the submerged part of the rod is invisible. What does this say about the relative speeds of light in the glass and in the oil? Or asked another way, how do the indices of refraction, n, compare for the glass and oil?

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

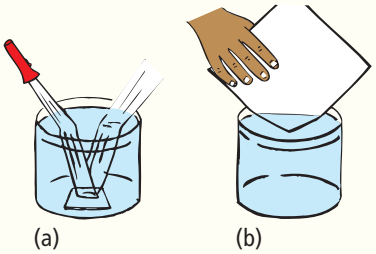
88. Inspect the photo of the duck standing on a rock. Why do its legs show in the reflected view, but not its feet?

89. The law of reflection does not apply to curved mirrors. But in a limited sense, the law of reflection does apply. Discuss how this is so.
90. What gives a diamond its extraordinary brilliance?
91. Can you expect a mirage without atmosphere (or air) on a hot road if you are traveling by bike or car?
92. Why does reflected light from the Sun (or Moon) appear as a column in the body of water as shown?



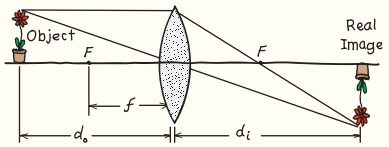
93. Why are windowpanes ground or frosted?
94. What is inaccurate about the cartoon of the man looking at himself in the mirror? (Have a friend face a mirror as shown, and you'll see.)

95. A beam of light bends as shown in (a), while the edges of the immersed square bend as shown in (b). Do these pictures contradict each other? Explain.



96. When a flashlight submerged in water shines into the air above, discuss what happens to the speed of light when passing from water into the air.
97. If, while standing on a bank, you wish to spear a fish beneath the water surface in front of you, should you aim above, below, or directly at the observed fish to make a direct hit? If, instead, you zap the fish with a laser, should you aim above, below, or directly at the observed fish? Discuss and defend your answers.
98. If the fish in the previous exercise were small and blue and your laser light were red, what corrections should you make? Explain.
99. If a fish in a pond looks upward at an angle of 50°, what is it going to see? Explain.
100. If you were to send a beam of laser light to a space station located just above your head aligned to the normal from the surface of the earth, would you aim the laser directly up or at an angle so that it can reach its destination? Comment on your answer if the space station makes a 45° angle with the normal to the surface.

101. You decide to make your own rainbow in your back yard by spraying water from a garden hose into the air. Where will the rainbow be located with respect to where you're standing and where the Sun is shining?
102. Two observers standing apart from one another do not see the "same" rainbow. Explain.
103. Is it possible to have two rainbows simultaneously in the sky? What do you think about their color patterns?
104. How is a rainbow similar to the halo sometimes seen around the Moon on a frosty night? If you're stumped, check the web and see how rainbows and halos differ.
105. Do you think that the Earth's atmosphere behaves like a lens? Justify your answer.
106. Would the average intensity of sunlight measured by a light meter at the bottom of the pool in Figure 28.47 be different if the water were still? Discuss.
107. When your eye is submerged in water, light rays bend only slightly when passing from the water into your cornea. Why is the bending not as pronounced as when light passes from air into your cornea? (How do the indexes of refraction differ for your cornea, air, and water?)
108. When your eye is submerged in water, does the speed of light increase, decrease, or remain constant as it passes from the water into your cornea? Defend your answer.
109. Two rays of light are shown in the sketch that accompanies footnote 3, repeated here. Discuss whether these two rays produce the image of the flower and pot, or merely locate the position of the image in relation to the lens.



CHAPTER TWENTY EIGHT Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following.

1. Fermat's principle of least time applies to
   (a) reflection.
   (b) refraction.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
2. When light reflects from a shiny surface, there is a change in its
   (a) frequency.
   (b) wavelength.
   (c) speed.
   (d) None of the above
3. The inversion of your image in a plane mirror is actually an inversion of
   (a) left-right.
   (b) up-down.
   (c) front-back.
   (d) All of the above
4. The shortest plane mirror in which you can see your entire image is
   (a) half your height.
   (b) about 3/4 your height.
   (c) equal to your height.
   (d) dependent on your distance from the mirror.
5. Refraction occurs when light passing from one medium to another
   (a) changes frequency.
   (b) changes velocity.
   (c) loses energy.
   (d) Sometimes all of these to some degree
6. The index of refraction for crown glass, common in eyeglasses, is 1.52. The index of refraction of a particular plastic lens is 1.76. Light bends more in the
   (a) crown glass.
   (b) plastic lens.
   (c) Same speed in each
   (d) Need more information
7. Rainbows exist because light in drops of water is
   (a) reflected.
   (b) refracted.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
8. The secondary rainbow is dimmer than the primary rainbow mainly because
   (a) its colors are inverted.
   (b) it is larger, and its energy is spread over more area.
   (c) it is farther from the viewer.
   (d) of an extra reflection in the drops.
9. Magnification by a lens would be greater if light
   (a) propagated instantaneously.
   (b) traveled faster in glass than it does.
   (c) traveled slower in glass than it does.
   (d) None of the above
10. Small openings between leaves in a tree act as pinholes. The round spots of sunlight cast on the ground below the small openings are images of
    (a) the Sun.
    (b) the openings themselves.
    (c) Both of these
    (d) Neither of these

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (c): Fermat's principle of least time applies to both reflection and refraction. **2. (d):** As is commonly seen, a mirror reflects the same color of objects being reflected. That means no change in frequency or wavelength of light. And since the light is presumably in the air, and remains in the air upon reflection, there is no change in speed. So (d), is the correct choice. **3. (c):** This is nicely shown in the photo of my sister combing her hair in front of a mirror. Reflection is not left-right, and certainly not up-down, but front to back. **4. (a):** A few geometrical straight lines confirms this. Even more convincing is actually making measurements of your face when in front of a small bathroom mirror above a sink. On the mirror place a mark where you see the top of your face, then the bottom of your face. You'll see the distance between the marks is half the distance between the top and bottom of your head. In this case, seeing should be believing! **5. (b):** Light in its many interactions never changes frequency. What does change is its velocity in a transparent medium. Light may share some of its energy with its surroundings, but never loses energy. Ever! **6. (b):** The higher a material's index of refraction, the slower the light and the more it bends when refracting. Light bends and slows more in higher-index plastic than in glass. **7. (c):** Very important in a raindrop is the internal reflection of light within and of course the refraction as light enters and leaves the drop. So both occur. **8. (d):** The secondary bow is the result of a double reflection (and extra refraction loss) within the drops. The greater the number of reflections, the dimmer is the light. **9. (c):** More slowing of light means greater index of refraction, which in turn means more magnification. **10. (a):** In answering this question, the author sincerely hopes you have witnessed this phenomenon, either beneath sunlit trees or below your crossed fingers in sunlight. The spots produced are images of the Sun—most convincingly demonstrated when the spots turn to crescents at the time of a partial solar eclipse!

CHAPTER TWENTY NINE

29 Light Waves

29.1 **Huygens' Principle**

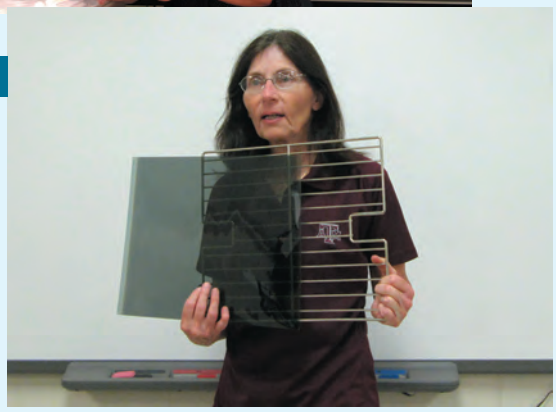
29.2 **Diffraction**
X-Ray Diffraction

29.3 **Superposition and Interference**
Young's Double Slit Experiment

29.4 **Single-Color Thin-Film Interference**
Interference Colors

29.5 **Polarization**
Three-Dimensional Viewing

29.6 **Holography**



1 Robert Greenler shows interference colors with a *big* soap bubble. **2** A highly valued photo for Marshall Ellenstein and Helen Yan. They were in the Cal Tech parking lot discussing the Feynman diagrams on Feynman's van when Richard Feynman came by—and agreed to this pose. **3** Bree Barnett Dreyfuss shows wave behavior with a ripple tank. **4** Janie Head leads her class into a study of polarization by comparing how a rope shaken through the metal grating relates to light passing through a Polaroid.

After *Conceptual Physics* was first published in 1971, I met Marshall Ellenstein at a physics conference in Chicago. He was one of the first teachers to adopt the book that he had intended to write. Marshall asked if I would come to his home in Chicago for dinner with him and his wife. He also asked if I'd visit his classes in the high school where he taught. I agreed to both requests and we have been close friends ever since.

Marshall, now retired, was among Chicago's finest physics teachers. In addition to his passion for teaching physics, he's an accomplished magician and a prize winner in both jitterbug dancing and bridge playing. In his teaching he believes that physics is too exciting and relevant to everyday life not to be part of the educational mainstream. Because he possessed all the qualities that make for a great teacher, his physics classes were overflowing with students eager to learn. A term project at the time I visited was having each student produce a scrapbook of ten photographs that showed physics in daily life. The punch line, given well into the school term after all the photos were submitted, was that *any* photograph shows physics—that physics is *everywhere*. Even a blank all-white photo shows the reflection of whatever color of light is incident upon it. For Marshall's students, physics wasn't something tucked away in books or on lab shelves.

Marshall never wrote his physics textbook. Instead, he pumped ideas to me continuously over the years, hence the many "Thanks to Marshall Ellenstein" at the bottoms of Practicing Physics pages and Next-Time Questions. Marshall edited video footage of my classroom lectures, earlier years at City College of San Francisco, and later years at the University of Hawaii, and has digitized these videos, now "video on demand" available to viewers electronically on a smartphone, iPad, or computer. Importantly, Marshall created the Hewitt-Drew-It website to house my 149 screencast tutorials and other goodies. All are freely available, and without pesky advertising, via www.HewittDrewit.com.

Many of Marshall's ideas are in textbook paragraphs and figures. In this chapter, for example, Marshall suggested the section on three-dimensional viewing and provided an update to the computer-generated stereogram in Figure 29.42. Most of his ideas are in the Practicing Physics book, the major ancillary that accompanies this text.

Like many teachers, Marshall began his course with vibrations, sound, and light, before introducing mechanics. His long experience strongly suggests that waves and light are better hooks for gaining initial student interest. We begin this chapter as Marshall did in his courses, with the wave nature of light.

This chapter presents a wave model of light—an exploration of light's properties akin to those of water waves. We'll learn how light diffracts, undergoes interference, and how the alignment of its waves produces polarization. We'll conclude with an intriguing application of light waves—holography. In Chapter 31 we'll view light as a stream of particles—photons. Your study of light is an investigation of a beautiful and most intriguing part of nature.

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

29.1 Huygens' Principle

Throw a rock into a quiet pool, and waves appear along the surface of the water. Strike a tuning fork, and waves of sound spread in all directions. Light a match, and waves of light similarly expand in all directions. In 1678 a Dutch physicist, Christian Huygens, studied wave behavior and proposed that the wavefronts of light waves spreading out from a point source may be regarded as the overlapped crests of tiny secondary waves (Figure 29.2)—that wavefronts are made up of tinier wavefronts, called *wavelets*. This idea is called **Huygens' principle:**

> **Every point of a wavefront may be considered the source of secondary wavelets that spread out in all directions with a speed equal to the speed of propagation of the waves.**

FIGURE 29.1
Water waves form concentric circles.

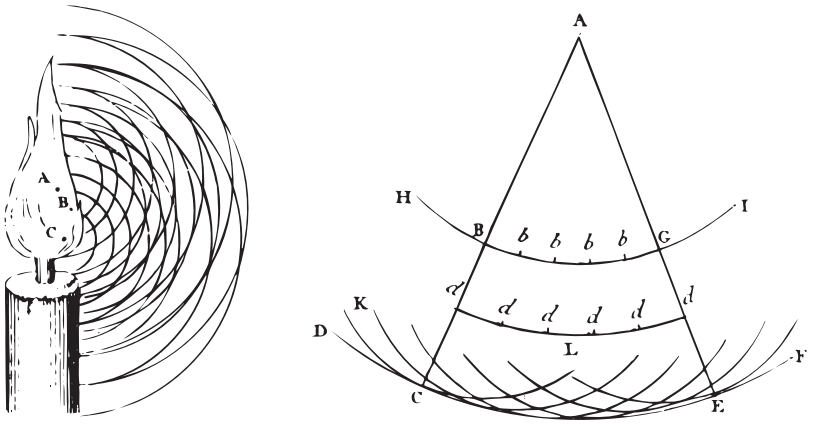


FIGURE 29.2
These drawings are from Huygens' book *Treatise on Light*. Light from A expands in wavefronts, every point of which behaves as if it were a new source of waves. Secondary wavelets starting at *b*, *b*, *b*, *b* form a new wavefront (*dddd*); secondary wavelets starting at *d*, *d*, *d*, *d* form still another new wavefront (DCEF).

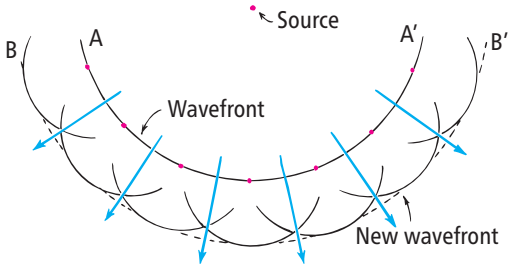


FIGURE 29.3
Huygens' principle applied to a spherical wavefront.

Consider the spherical wavefront in Figure 29.3. We can see that if all points along the wavefront AA′ are sources of new wavelets, then a short time later the new overlapping wavelets will form a new surface, BB′, which may be regarded as the envelope of all the wavelets. In the figure we show only a few of the infinite number of wavelets from a few secondary point sources along AA′ that combine to produce the smooth envelope BB′. As the wave spreads, a segment appears less curved. Very far from the original source, the waves nearly form a plane—as do waves from the Sun, for example. A Huygens wavelet construction for plane wavefronts is shown in Figure 29.4. We see the laws of reflection and refraction illustrated via Huygens' principle in Figure 29.5.

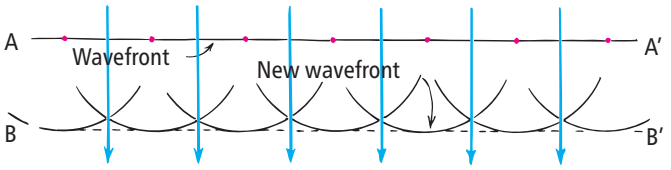


FIGURE 29.4
Huygens' principle applied to a plane wavefront.

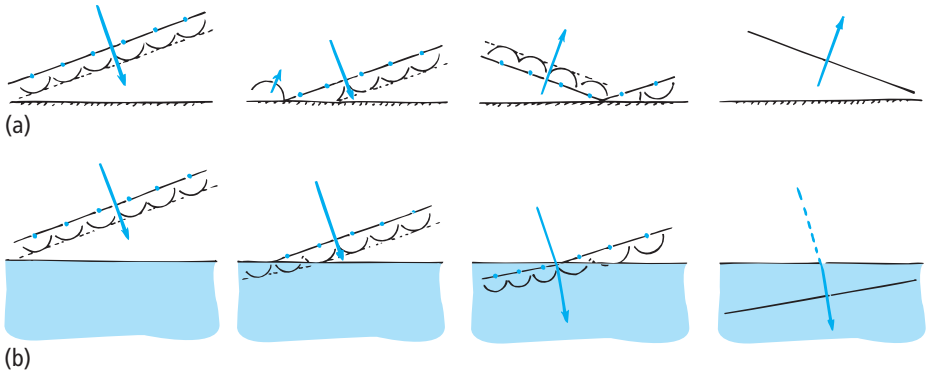


FIGURE 29.5
Huygens' principle applied to (a) reflection and (b) refraction. Notice that rays and wavefronts are perpendicular to each other.

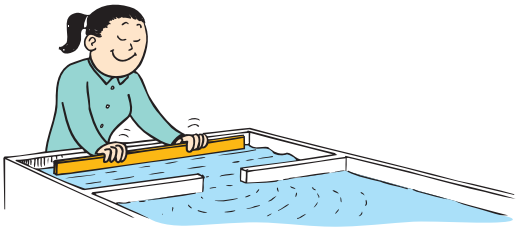


FIGURE 29.6
The oscillating meterstick makes plane waves in the tank of water. Water oscillating in the opening acts as a source of waves. Water diffracts through the opening.

Plane waves can be generated in water by successively dipping a horizontally held straightedge, such as a meterstick, into the surface (Figure 29.6). The photographs in Figure 29.7 are top views of a ripple tank in which plane waves are incident upon openings of various sizes (the straightedge is not shown). In (a), where the opening is wide, we see the plane waves continue through the opening without

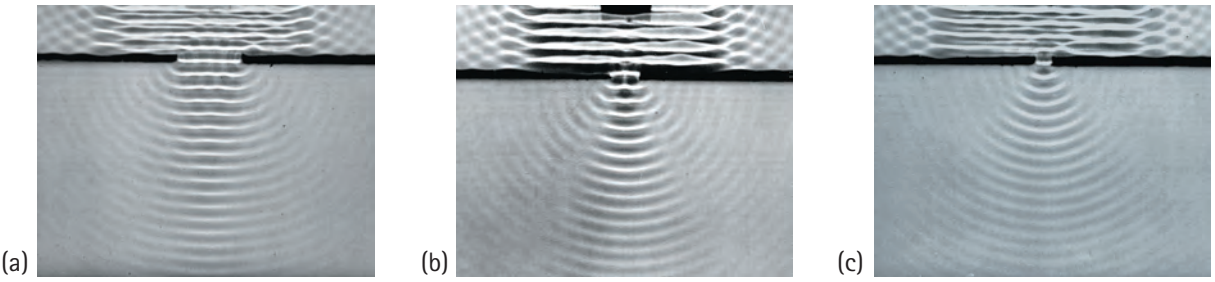


FIGURE 29.7
Plane waves passing through openings of various sizes. The smaller the opening, the greater the bending of the waves at the edges—in other words, the greater the diffraction.

change—except at the edges of the openings, where the waves are bent into the shadow region, as predicted by Huygens' principle. As the width of the opening is narrowed, as in (b), less and less of the incident wave is transmitted, and the spreading of waves into the shadow region becomes more pronounced. When the opening is small compared with the wavelength of the incident wave, as in (c), the truth of Huygens' idea that every part of a wavefront can be regarded as a source of new wavelets becomes quite apparent. As the waves are incident upon the narrow opening, the water sloshing up and down in the opening is easily seen to act as a "point" source of the new waves that fan out on the other side of the barrier. We say that the waves are *diffracted* as they spread into the shadow region. Diffraction is a property of all waves.

CHECK POINT

1. **How does the speed of Huygens' secondary wavelets compare with the propagation of the initial waves?**
2. **How does the spreading of waves through openings relate to the size of the openings?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Wave speeds are the same. For light, the speed is *c*.
2. Spreading is greater for narrower openings, as shown in Figure 29.7c.

29.2 Diffraction

In Chapter 28, we learned that light can abruptly change direction from its ordinary straight-line path by reflection and by refraction, and now we learn another way in which light bends. Any bending of light by means other than reflection and refraction is called *diffraction*. **Diffraction** is the bending of waves around obstacles or around the edges of an opening. The diffraction of light as it passes the edge of an object or through an aperture creates a fuzzy edge. The diffraction of plane water waves shown in Figure 29.7 occurs for all kinds of waves, including light waves.

Diffraction occurs when a wave passes by the edge of an object, or by the two close edges of a single slit.

When light passes through an opening that is large compared with the wavelength of light, it casts a shadow such as the one shown in Figure 29.8a. We see a rather sharp boundary between the light and dark areas of the shadow. But if we pass light through a thin razor slit in a piece of opaque cardboard, we see that the light diffracts (Figure 29.8b). The sharp boundary between the light and dark

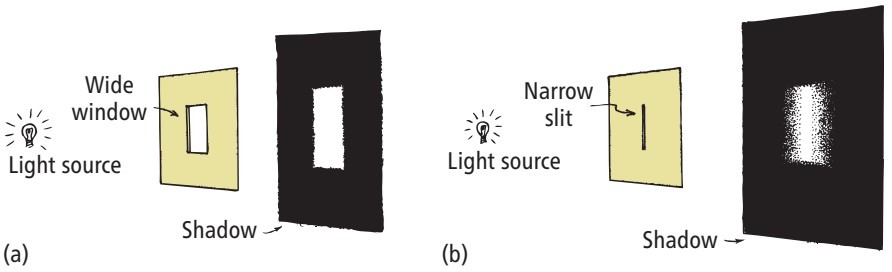


FIGURE 29.8
(a) Light casts a sharp shadow with some fuzziness at its edges when the opening is large compared with the wavelength of the light.
(b) When the opening is very narrow, diffraction is more apparent and the shadow is fuzzier.

areas disappears, and the light spreads out like a fan to produce a bright area that fades into darkness without sharp edges. The light is diffracted.

Figure 29.9 show a graph of the intensity distribution for diffracted light passing through a single thin slit and onto a screen. Due to diffraction, there are gradual increases and decreases in intensity rather than abrupt changes from light to dark. After it passes through the slit, a photodetector sweeping in either direction from the center of the screen measures a gradual change from maximum to zero intensity. (Actually, there are slight fringes of intensity on either side of the main pattern; we will see shortly that these are evidence of interference that is more pronounced with a double slit or multiple slits.)

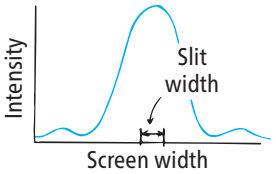


FIGURE 29.9
Graphic interpretation of diffracted light through a single thin slit.

FIGURE 29.10
Diffraction fringes are evident in the shadows of monochromatic (single-frequency) laser light. These fringes would be filled in by multitudes of other fringes if the source were white light.

Diffraction is not confined to narrow slits or to openings in general but can be seen for all shadows. On close examination, even the sharpest shadow is blurred slightly at the edge. When the light is of a single color (monochromatic), diffraction can produce *diffraction fringes* at the edge of the shadow, as in Figure 29.10. In white light, the fringes merge together to create a fuzzy blur at the edge of a shadow.

The amount of diffraction depends on the wavelength of the wave compared with the size of the obstruction that casts the shadow. Longer waves diffract more. They're better at filling in shadows, which is why the sounds of foghorns are low-frequency long waves—to fill in any "blind spots." Likewise for radio waves of the standard AM broadcast band, which are very long compared with the size of most objects in their path. The wavelengths of AM radio waves range from 180 to 550 meters, and the waves readily bend around buildings and other objects that might otherwise obstruct them. This is one of the reasons FM reception is often poor in localities where AM comes in loud and clear. In the case of radio reception, we don't wish to "see" objects in the path of radio waves, so diffraction is not a bad thing.

Diffraction is not so nice for viewing very small objects with a microscope. If the size of an object is about the same as the wavelength of light, diffraction blurs the image. If the object is smaller than the wavelength of light, no structure can be seen. The entire image is lost due to diffraction. No amount of

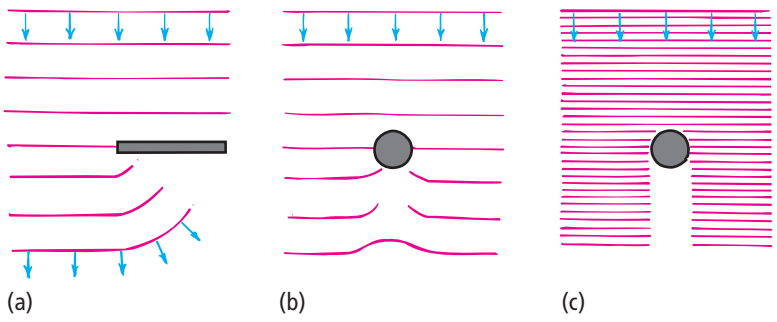


FIGURE 29.11
(a) Waves tend to spread into the shadow region.
(b) When the wavelength is about the size of the object, the shadow is soon filled in.
(c) When the wavelength is short relative to the object's size, a sharper shadow is cast.

magnification or perfection of microscope design can overcome this fundamental diffraction limit.

To minimize this problem, microscopists can illuminate tiny objects with electron beams rather than with light. Relative to light waves, electron beams have extremely short wavelengths. *Electron microscopes* take advantage of the fact that all matter has wave properties: A beam of electrons has a wavelength shorter than those of visible light. In an electron microscope, electric and magnetic fields, rather than optical lenses, are used to focus and magnify images.

The fact that smaller details can be seen better with shorter wavelengths is neatly employed by the dolphin in scanning its environment with ultrasound. The echoes of long-wavelength sound give the dolphin an overall image of objects in its surroundings. To examine more detail, the dolphin emits sound of shorter wavelengths. As discussed in Chapter 20, the dolphin has always done naturally what physicians are now able to do with ultrasonic imaging devices.

CHECK POINT

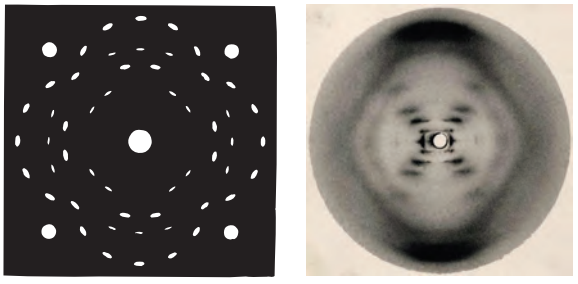
1. **Is diffraction characteristic of all kinds of waves?**
2. **Why does a microscopist use blue light rather than white light to illuminate objects being viewed?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Yes.
2. There is less diffraction with shorter-wavelength blue light, so the microscopist sees more detail (just as a dolphin beautifully investigates fine detail in its environment by the echoes of ultra-short wavelengths of sound).

X-Ray Diffraction

Just as a beam of light can undergo diffraction, so it is with X-rays. Diffraction is a property of all types of waves. In Chapter 12 we learned that X-rays directed onto a crystalline material produced a diffraction pattern characteristic of the material. An X-ray diffraction image of salt, for example, produces a pattern characteristic only of salt (Figure 29.12a). Because the array of atoms in a crystalline lattice is three-dimensional, the resulting diffraction pattern is a complicated arrangement of spots on a photosensitive surface (in former times, photographic film). From the diffraction pattern, the nature of the crystal can be determined. X-ray diffraction has been applied with great success toward understanding the structure of biological molecules. A famous pattern (Figure 29.12b) imaged by Rosalind Franklin resulted in the 1953 discovery of the double helix structure of DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) by James Watson and Francis Crick.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 29.12
(a) The X-ray diffraction image of common table salt (NaCl). The white spot in the middle is due to the main unscattered beam of X-rays. The other spots indicate the latticework structure of sodium and chloride atoms in the crystal. (b) The image that led to the discovery of the structure of DNA by Watson and Crick.

CHECK POINT

What commonly happens to many of the X-rays that penetrate the latticework of crystals in a material?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

They scatter as they undergo diffraction.

29.3 Superposition and Interference

When two waves interact, the amplitude of the resulting wave is the sum of the amplitudes of the two individual waves. This is called the principle of **superposition.** This phenomenon is generally described as **interference** (as discussed in Chapters 19 and 20). Constructive and destructive interference are reviewed in Figure 29.13. We see that the superposition of a pair of identical waves in phase with each other produces a wave of the same frequency but twice the amplitude. If the waves are exactly one-half wavelength out of phase, their superposition results in complete cancellation. If they are out of phase by other amounts, partial cancellation occurs.

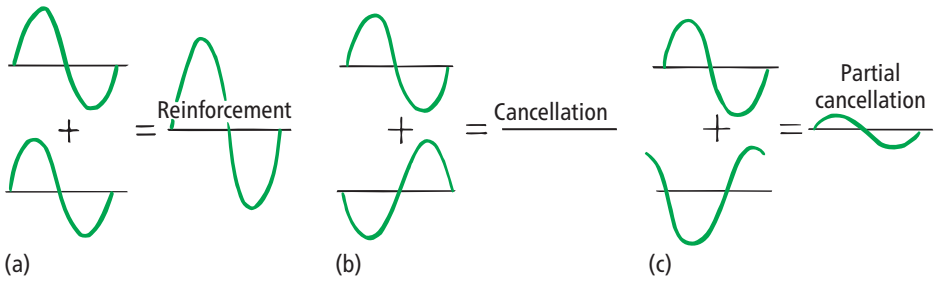


FIGURE 29.13
Wave interference is (a) constructive, (b) destructive, and (c) partial.

The interference of water waves is a common sight, as shown in Figure 29.14. In some places, crests overlap crests; in other places, crests overlap troughs of other waves.

FIGURE 29.14
Interference of water waves.

FIGURE 29.15
Interference patterns of overlapping waves from differently spaced vibrating sources.

Under more carefully controlled conditions, interesting patterns are produced by a pair of wave sources placed side by side (Figure 29.15). The surface of water in shallow tanks (ripple tanks similar to Bree's in the third chapter-opening photo) is tapped at a certain frequency in two places while the patterns produced are photographed from above. Note that areas of constructive and destructive interference extend as far as the right-side edges of the ripple tanks, where the number of these regions and their size depend on the distance between the wave sources and on the wavelength (or frequency) of the waves. Interference is not restricted to easily seen water waves but is a property of all waves.

Young's Double Slit Experiment

In 1801, the wave nature of light was convincingly demonstrated when British physicist and physician Thomas Young performed his now-famous interference

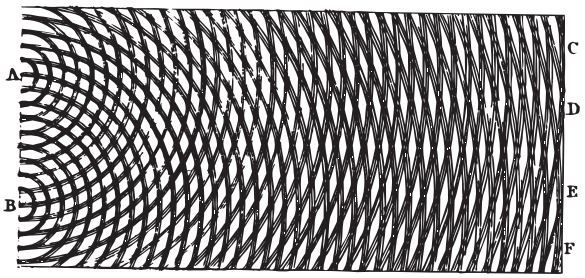


FIGURE 29.16
Thomas Young's original drawing of a two-source interference pattern. The dark circles represent wave crests; the white spaces between the crests represent troughs. Constructive interference occurs where crests overlap crests or troughs overlap troughs. The letters C, D, E, and F mark regions of destructive interference.

experiment.[1] Young found that light directed through two closely spaced pinholes recombines to produce fringes of brightness and darkness on a screen. The bright fringes form when a crest from the light wave through one hole and a crest from the light wave through the other hole arrive at the screen at the same time. The dark fringes form when a crest from one wave and a trough from the other arrive at the same time. Figure 29.16 shows Young's drawing of the pattern of superimposed waves from the two sources. When his experiment is performed with two closely spaced slits instead of pinholes, the fringe patterns are straight lines (Figure 29.18).

FIGURE 29.17
Bright fringes occur when waves from both slits arrive in phase; dark areas result from the overlapping of waves that are out of phase.

We see in Figure 29.19 how the series of bright and dark lines results from the different path lengths from the slits to the screen.[2] For the central bright fringe, the paths from the two slits are the same length and so the waves arrive in phase

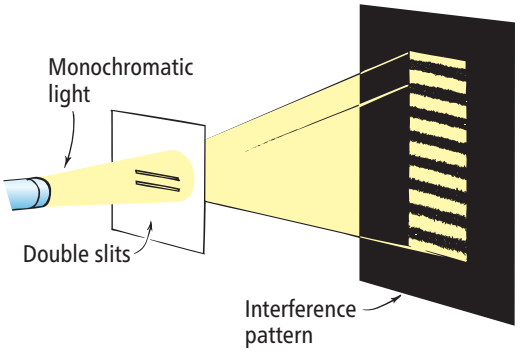


FIGURE 29.18
When monochromatic light passes through two closely spaced slits, a striped interference pattern is produced.

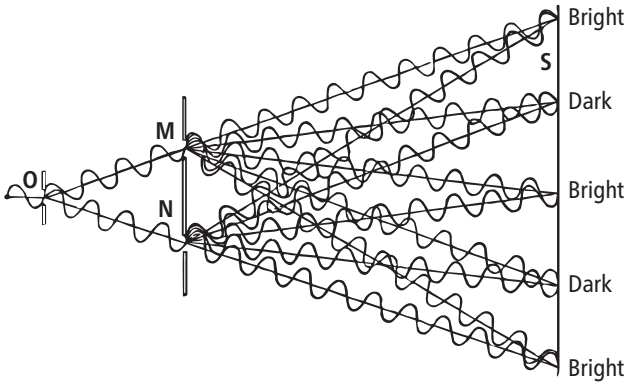


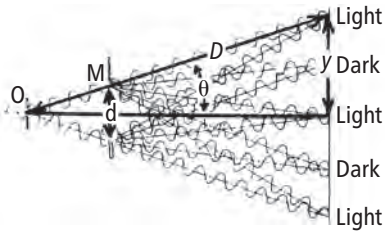
FIGURE 29.19
Light from O passes through slits M and N and produces an interference pattern on the screen S.

[1]Thomas Young read fluently at the age of 2; by 4, he had read the Bible twice; by 14, he knew eight languages. In his adult life, he was a physician and a scientist, contributing to an understanding of fluids, work and energy, and the elastic properties of materials. He was one of the first people to make progress in deciphering Egyptian hieroglyphics. No doubt about it—Thomas Young was a bright guy!

[2]In lab, you may determine the wavelength of light using measurements based on Figure 29.19. The equation for the first off-center interference maximum from two or more slits is

$$\lambda = d \sin \theta$$

where λ is the wavelength of light being diffracted, d is the distance between adjacent slits, and θ is the angle between lines to the central fringe of light and the first off-center constructive interference fringe. From the diagram (right), $\sin \theta$ is the ratio of distance y to distance D, where y is the distance on the screen between the central fringe of light and the first constructive-interference fringe on either side, and D is the distance from the fringe to the slits (which, in practice, is much greater than shown here).



and reinforce each other. The dark fringes on either side of the central fringe result from one path being longer (or shorter) by one-half wavelength, so that the waves arrive half a wavelength out of phase. The other sets of dark fringes occur where the paths differ by odd multiples of one-half wavelength: 3/2, 5/2, and so on.

CHECK POINT

Investigate Figure 29.19: The three bright fringes on the screen are due to constructive interference of light waves from slits M and N. The two dark fringes are due to destructive interference. After passing through slits M and N, how do the path lengths compare for the

1. **central bright fringe?**
2. **other two bright fringes?**
3. **two dark fringes?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The paths are the same in length, which means waves of light from M and N arrive in phase.
2. Careful measurement shows a difference of one full wavelength in paths, which means waves arrive in phase.
3. This time the paths differ by one-half wavelength, which means waves arrive out of phase.

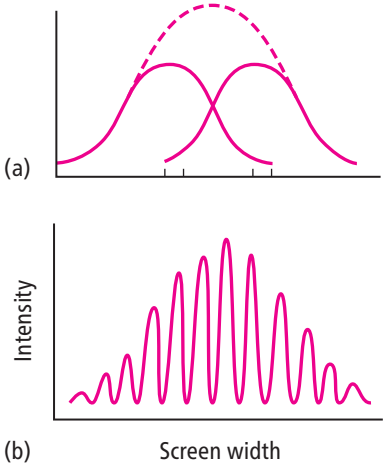


FIGURE 29.20
The light that diffracts through each of the double slits does not form a superposition of intensities as suggested in (a). The intensity pattern, because of interference, is as shown in (b).

In performing this double-slit experiment, suppose we cover one of the slits so that light passes through only a single slit. Then the light will fan out and illuminate the screen to form a simple diffraction pattern, as discussed earlier (Figures 29.8b and 29.9). If we cover the other slit and allow light to pass through only the slit just uncovered, we get the same illumination on the screen, but displaced somewhat because of the difference in slit location. If we didn't know better, we might expect that with both slits open, the pattern would simply be the sum of the single-slit diffraction patterns, as suggested in Figure 29.20a. But this doesn't happen. Instead, the pattern formed is one of alternating light and dark bands, as shown in Figure 29.20b. We have an interference pattern. Interference of light waves does not, by the way, create or destroy light energy; it merely redistributes it.

CHECK POINT

1. **If the double slits were illuminated with monochromatic (single-frequency) red light, would the fringes be more widely or more closely spaced than if they were illuminated with monochromatic blue light?**
2. **Why is it important that monochromatic light be used?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. More widely spaced due to red's longer wavelength. Can you see in Figure 29.19 that a slightly longer—and therefore a slightly more displaced—path from entrance slit to screen would result for the longer waves of red light?
2. If light of various wavelengths were diffracted by the slits at the same time, dark fringes for one wavelength would be filled in with bright fringes for another, producing no distinct fringe pattern. If you haven't seen this, be sure to ask your instructor to demonstrate it.

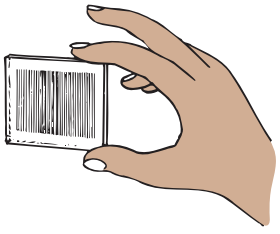


FIGURE 29.21
A diffraction grating may be used in place of a prism in a spectrometer.

Interference patterns are not limited to single and double slits. A multitude of closely spaced slits makes up a *diffraction grating* (Figure 29.21). These devices, like prisms, disperse white light into colors. Whereas a prism separates the colors of light by refraction, a diffraction grating separates colors by interference. These are used in devices called *spectrometers*, which we will discuss in Chapter 30. Diffraction gratings are ruled with tiny grooves and spread white light into bands of color. They are common in some kinds of costume jewelry and in festival eyewear (Figure 29.22). Tiny grooves in the feathers of some birds disperse beautiful colors. The phenomenon of interference and the colors it produces nicely add to the many spectacles of nature.

FIGURE 29.22
Lamps of a chandelier as seen through diffraction-grating party glasses.

29.4 Single-Color Thin-Film Interference

Vivid colors are also produced by the double reflection of light from the top and bottom surfaces of thin films. Colors range from fringes of monochromatic light to the brilliant array of colors seen in the thin films of soap bubbles.

A simple demonstration of light interference can be set up with a monochromatic light source and a couple pieces of glass. A sodium-vapor lamp is a good source of monochromatic light. The two pieces of glass are placed one atop the other, as shown in Figure 29.23. A very thin piece of paper is placed between the plates at one edge to provide a very thin wedge-shaped film of air between the plates. If the eye is in a position to see the reflected image of the lamp, the image will not be continuous but will be made up of dark and bright bands.

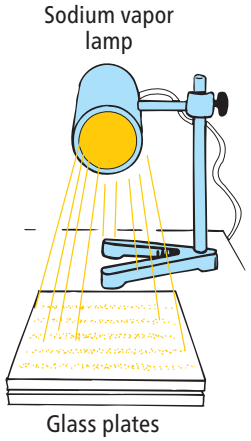


FIGURE 29.23
Interference fringes produced when monochromatic light is reflected from two plates of glass that have an air wedge between them.

The cause of these bands is the interference between the waves reflected from the glass on the top and bottom surfaces of the air wedge, as shown in the exaggerated view in Figure 29.24. The light reflecting from point P comes to the eye by two different paths. In one of these paths, the light is reflected from the top of the air wedge; in the other path, it is reflected from the lower side. If the eye is focused on point P at the bottom of the air wedge, both rays reach the same place on the retina of the eye. But these rays have traveled different distances and may meet in phase or out of phase, depending on the thickness of the air wedge—that is, on how much farther one ray has traveled than the other. When we examine the entire surface of the glass, we see alternate dark and bright regions—the dark portions, where the air thickness is just right to produce destructive interference, and the bright portions, where the air wedge is just the proper amount thinner or thicker to result in the reinforcement of light. So the dark and bright bands are caused by the interference of light waves reflected from the two sides of the thin film.[3]

CHECK POINT

Why are two reflecting surfaces needed for thin-film interference?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

A pair of waveforms is necessary for interference, one reflecting from one surface and the other from a second surface.

[3]Phase shifts at some reflecting surfaces also contribute to interference. For simplicity and brevity, our concern with this topic will be limited to this footnote. In short, when light in a medium is reflected at the surface of a second medium in which the speed of light is lower (when there is a greater index of refraction), there is a 180° phase shift (that is, half a wavelength). However, no phase shift occurs when the second medium is one that transmits light at a higher speed (and has a lower index of refraction). In our air-wedge example, no phase shift occurs for reflection at the upper glass–air surface, and a shift does occur at the lower air–glass surface. So, at the apex of the air wedge where the thickness approaches zero, the phase shift produces cancellation, and the wedge is dark. Likewise with a soap film so thin that its thickness is appreciably smaller than the wavelength of light. This is why parts of a film that are extremely thin appear black. Waves of all frequencies are canceled.

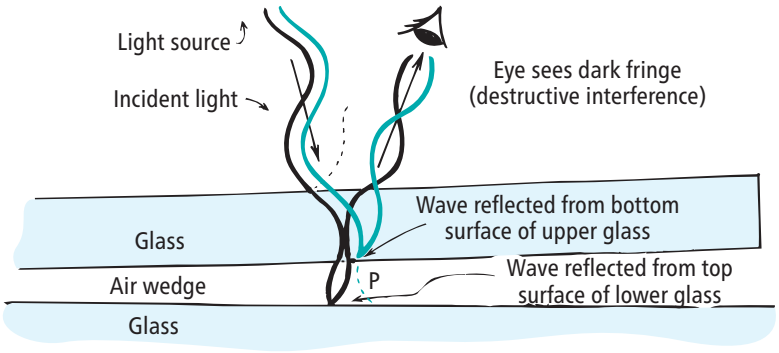


FIGURE 29.24
Reflection from the upper and lower surfaces of a "thin film of air." (One wave is drawn in black to show how it is out of phase with the blue wave upon reflection.)

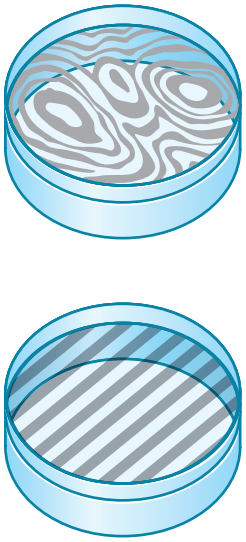


FIGURE 29.25
Optical flats used for testing the flatness of surfaces. The straight fringes indicate optical flatness.

If the surfaces of the glass plates are perfectly flat, the bands are uniform. But if the surfaces are not perfectly flat, the bands are distorted. The interference of light provides an extremely sensitive method for testing the flatness of surfaces. Surfaces that produce uniform fringes are said to be optically flat—this means that surface irregularities are small relative to the wavelength of visible light (Figure 29.25).

When a lens that is flat on top and has slight convex curvature on the bottom is placed on an optically flat plate of glass and illuminated from above with monochromatic light, a series of light and dark rings is produced. This pattern is known as *Newton's rings*, after Isaac Newton, who is credited to be the first to study them (Figure 29.26). These light and dark rings are the same kinds of fringes observed with plane surfaces. This is a useful testing technique in polishing precision lenses.

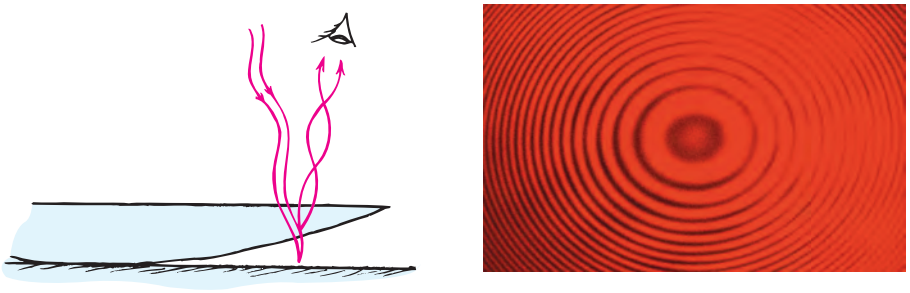


FIGURE 29.26
Newton's rings.

CHECK POINT

How would the spacings between Newton's rings differ when illuminated by red light and by blue light?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The rings would be more widely spaced for the longer-wavelength red light than for the shorter wavelengths of blue light. Do you see the geometric reason for this?

Soap-bubble colors result from the interference of reflected light from the inside and outside surfaces of the soap film. When a color is canceled, what you see is its complementary color.

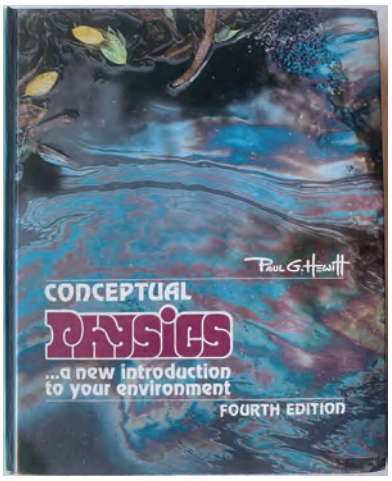
Interference Colors

We have all noticed the beautiful spectrum of colors reflected from a soap bubble or from gasoline on a wet street. These colors are produced by the *interference* of light waves. This phenomenon is often called *iridescence* and is observed in thin transparent films.

A soap bubble appears iridescent in white light when the thickness of the soap film is about the same as the wavelength of light. Light waves reflected

from the outer and inner surfaces of the film travel different distances. When illuminated by white light, the film may be just the right thickness at one place to cause the destructive interference of, say, red light. When red light is subtracted from white light, the result appears as the complementary color of red, cyan. At another place, where the film is thinner, a different color may be canceled by interference, and the light seen will be its complementary color.

Interference colors are especially evident with thin films of gasoline on a wet street, featured on the cover of the fourth edition of *Conceptual Physics* (shown here and facing the inside front cover), and explained in Figure 29.27. Note where light reflects from both the upper gasoline surface and the lower gasoline–water surface. If the thickness of the gasoline is such that it cancels blue, as the figure suggests, then the gasoline surface appears yellow to the eye. This is because the blue is subtracted from the white, leaving the complementary color, yellow. The different colors, then, correspond to different thicknesses of the thin film, providing a vivid "contour map" of microscopic differences in surface "elevations." Over a wider field of view, different colors can be seen, even if the thickness of the gasoline film is uniform. This is due to the *apparent* thickness of the film: Light reaching the eye from different parts of the surface is reflected at different angles and traverses different thicknesses. If the light is incident at a grazing angle, for example, the ray transmitted to the gasoline's lower surface travels a longer distance. Longer waves are canceled in this case, and different colors appear.



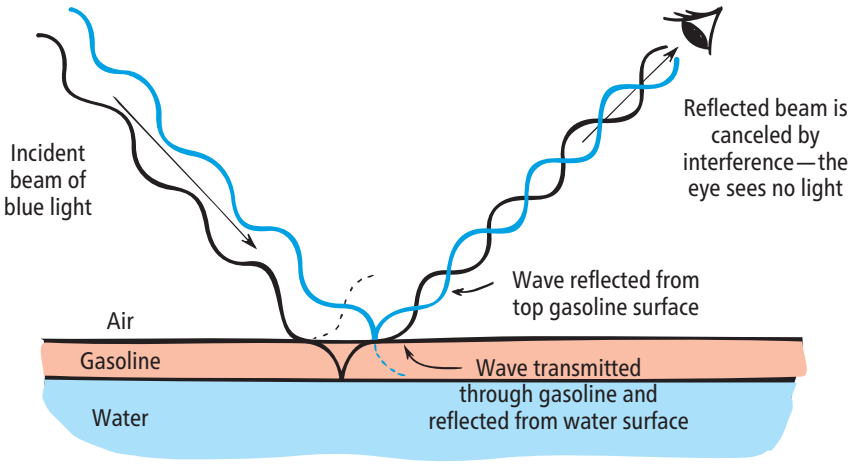

Incident beam of blue light
Reflected beam is canceled by interference—the eye sees no light
Wave reflected from top gasoline surface
Air
Gasoline
Wave transmitted through gasoline and reflected from water surface
Water

FIGURE 29.27
The thin film of gasoline is just the right thickness to cancel the reflections of blue light from the top and bottom surfaces. When the incident beam is white light, the eyes see yellow. If the film were thinner, perhaps shorter-wavelength violet would be canceled. (Again, one wave is drawn in black to show how it is out of phase with the blue wave upon reflection.)

Dishes washed in soapy water and poorly rinsed have a thin film of soap on them. Hold such a dish up to a light source so that interference colors can be seen. Then turn the dish to a new position, keeping your eye on the same part of the dish, and the color will change. Light reflecting from the bottom surface of the transparent soap film is canceling light reflecting from the top surface of the soap film. Light waves of different wavelengths are canceled for different angles. Interference colors are best seen in soap bubbles (Figure 29.28). You'll notice that these colors are predominantly cyan, magenta, and yellow due to the subtraction of primary red, green, and blue, or other colors of a single wavelength.

Interference provides a way to measure the wavelength of light and other electromagnetic radiation. It also makes it possible to measure extremely small distances with great accuracy. Instruments called *interferometers*, which use the principle of interference, are the most accurate instruments known for measuring small distances.

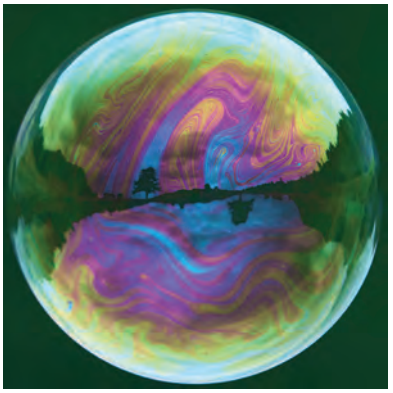


FIGURE 29.28
Notice that the interference colors in the bubble are *subtractive* primary colors cyan, magenta, and yellow—not *additive* primary colors red, green, and blue.

PRACTICING PHYSICS

Do this physics experiment at your kitchen sink. Dip a dark-colored coffee cup (dark colors make the best background for viewing interference colors) in dishwashing liquid and then hold it sideways and look at the reflected light from the soap film that covers its mouth. Swirling colors appear as the soap flows down to form a wedge that grows thicker at the bottom. Swirls of color appear that correspond to various thicknesses of the thin soapy film. The top becomes thinner, so thin that it appears black. Whatever its wavelength, light reflecting from the inner surface reverses phase, rejoins light reflecting from the outer surface, and cancels. The film soon becomes so thin it pops.

CHECK POINT

1. **Why is it important for the gasoline film depicted in Figure 29.27 to be thin for interference?**
2. **What two phenomena best confirm that light is wavelike?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. A thin film ensures the waves reflected from the pair of surfaces are close enough to superpose. Widely separated reflected waves may not combine to produce interference.
2. Interference and diffraction.

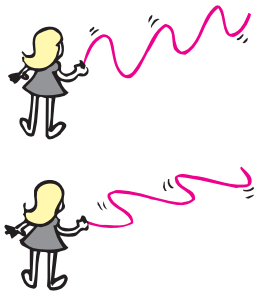


FIGURE 29.29
A vertically plane-polarized wave and a horizontally plane-polarized wave.

29.5 Polarization

If we shake the end of a taut rope up and down, we produce a wave. The vibratory motion traveling along the rope is in the same plane as your vibrating hand. Shake the rope vertically up and down and the vibrations are in a vertical plane. Shake horizontally to and fro and the vibrations of the wave are in a horizontal plane (Figure 29.29). We say that such a wave is *plane-polarized*, meaning the waves traveling along the rope are confined to a single plane. We say the waves vibrating in a single plane are *transverse*. **Polarization,** which occurs only for transverse waves, restricts the vibrations of a wave to one direction.

Polarization of light and all electromagnetic waves demonstrates that they are transverse. For example, a single vibrating electron in a broadcasting antenna emits an electromagnetic wave that is plane-polarized. The plane of polarization matches the vibrational direction of the electron and is the plane of the electric field's vibration. A vertically accelerating electron, then, emits electromagnetic waves that are vertically polarized, while a horizontally accelerating electron emits waves that are horizontally polarized (Figure 29.30).

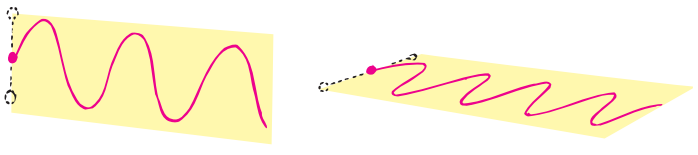


FIGURE 29.30
(a) A vertically plane-polarized wave from a charge vibrating vertically. (b) A horizontally plane-polarized wave from a charge vibrating horizontally.

Common light sources—such as an LED lamp, a fluorescent lamp, or a candle flame—emit light that is unpolarized. Such light is a mixture of all possible polarizations. The planes of vibration are as numerous as the atoms or accelerating

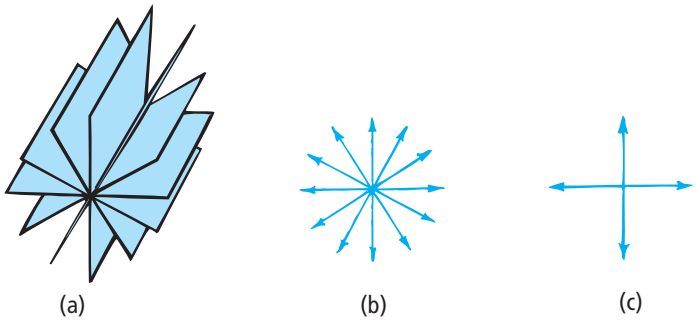


FIGURE 29.31
Representations of plane-polarized waves. The three representations show the electric part of the electromagnetic wave.

electrons that produce them. A few planes are represented in Figure 29.31a. We can represent all these planes by radial lines (Figure 29.31b) or, more simply, by vectors in two mutually perpendicular directions (Figure 29.31c), as if we had resolved all the vectors of Figure 29.31b into horizontal and vertical components. This simpler schematic represents unpolarized light. Polarized light would be represented by a single electric vector. This is *linear polarization*, where vibrations are along a single plane.[4]

All noncubic transparent crystals affect the polarization of light. Certain crystals[5] such as calcite divide unpolarized light into two internal beams polarized at right angles to each other, a property we call *birefringence* (Figure 29.32). Some birefringent crystals strongly absorb one beam while transmitting the other. Tourmaline is a birefringent crystal that produces colored beams. Herapathite, however, does the job without discoloration. Polarizing filters (Polaroid filters) are made by embedding uniformly aligned microscopic crystals of herapathite between cellulose sheets. Polaroid filters may also consist of certain aligned molecules between cellulose sheets rather than tiny crystals.[6]

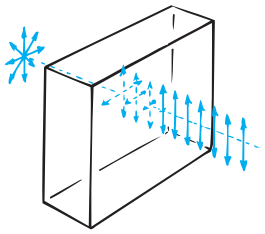


FIGURE 29.32
One component of the incident unpolarized light is absorbed, resulting in emerging polarized light.

If you look at nonpolarized light through a polarizing filter, you can rotate the filter in any direction and the light will appear unchanged. But if you are looking at polarized light and you rotate the filter, you can progressively cut off more and more of the light until it is entirely blocked out. An ideal single polarizing filter will transmit 50% of incident nonpolarized light. That 50% is, of course, polarized. When two polarizers are arranged so that their polarization axes are aligned, light will be transmitted through both (Figure 29.33a). If their

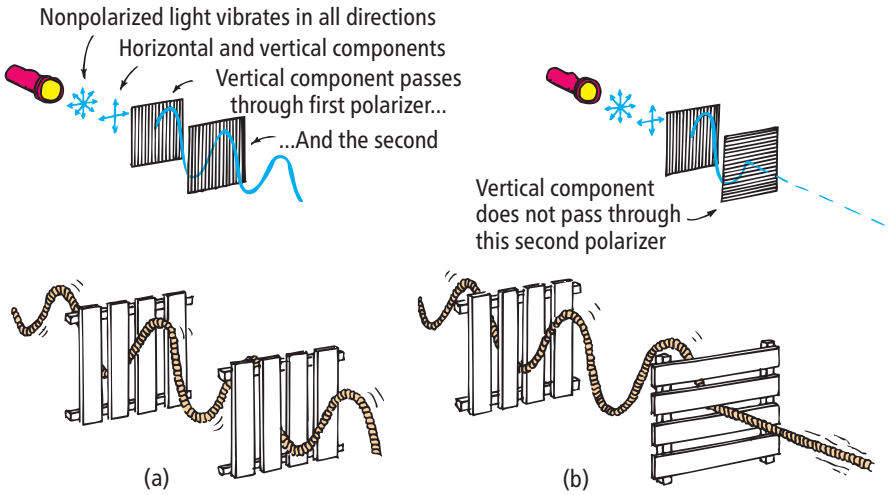

Nonpolarized light vibrates in all directions
Horizontal and vertical components
Vertical component passes through first polarizer...
...And the second
Vertical component does not pass through this second polarizer
(a)
(b)

FIGURE 29.33
A rope analogy illustrates the effect of crossed Polaroids.

[4]Light may also be circularly or elliptically polarized, a combination of transverse polarizations. When perpendicular components of the electric vector have different speeds in a medium, the tips of the vectors spiral in circular or elliptical paths that rotate the plane of the electric vector. But we will not study these cases.

[5]Called *dichroic*.

[6]The molecules are polymeric iodine in a sheet of polyvinyl alcohol or polyvinylene.

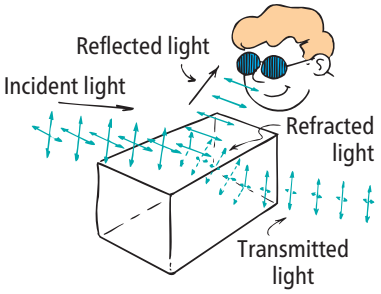


FIGURE 29.34
Most glare from nonmetallic surfaces is polarized. Note which components of incident light reflect and which transmit.

axes are at right angles to each other (in this case we say the filters are *crossed*), no light penetrates the pair.[7] (Actually, some light of the shorter wavelengths does get through, but not to any significant degree.) When polarizers are used in pairs like this, the first one is called the *polarizer,* and the second one is called the *analyzer.*

Much of the light reflected from nonmetallic surfaces is polarized (Figure 29.34). The glare from glass or water comes from this effect. Except for perpendicular incidence, the reflected ray contains more vibrations parallel to the reflecting surface, whereas the transmitted beam contains more vibrations at right angles to the vibrations of the reflected light. The glare from reflecting surfaces can be appreciably diminished with the use of Polaroid sunglasses. The polarization axes of the lenses are vertical because most glare reflects from horizontal surfaces.

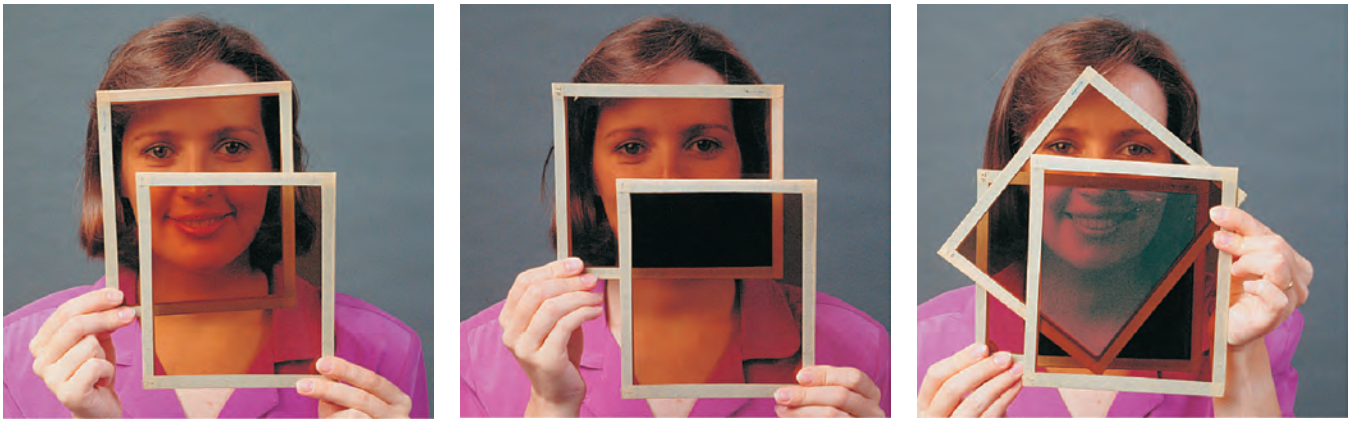


FIGURE 29.35
Light is transmitted when the axes of the Polaroids are aligned (a), but absorbed when Ludmila rotates one so that the axes are at right angles to each other (b). When she inserts a third Polaroid at an angle between the crossed Polaroids, light is again transmitted (c). Why? (For the answer—after you have given this some thought—see Appendix D, "Vector Applications.")

CHECK POINT

Which pair of eyeglasses is best suited for automobile drivers? (The polarization axes are shown by the straight lines.)

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Glasses (a) are best suited because the vertical axis blocks horizontally polarized light, which constitutes most of the glare from horizontal surfaces. Glasses (c) are suited for viewing 3-D movies.

FIGURE 29.36
Polaroid sunglasses block out horizontally vibrating light. When the lenses overlap at right angles, no light gets through.

Three-Dimensional Viewing

Vision in three dimensions depends primarily on the fact that both eyes give their impressions simultaneously (or nearly so), with each eye viewing the scene from a slightly different angle. This is *parallax*, which is evident when you view an upright finger at arm's length and see how it appears to shift position from

[7]A disclaimer regarding the analogy of slats in a fence: The long-chain molecules in a common Polaroid filter preferentially *absorb* light whose polarization aligns with the molecules—which is different from the easy-to-visualize slats in the fences shown in Figure 29.33. What's important to learn is that the polarization of the transmitted light is perpendicular to the polarization of the absorbed light.

left to right in front of the background as you alternately close each eye. With both eyes open you tend to look somewhat "around" your finger. If you view the pair of drawings in Figure 29.37 in such a way that the left eye looks at the left view while the right eye looks at the right view, you will see a stereo view with depth. The drawings illustrate a stereo view of the crystal structure of ice.

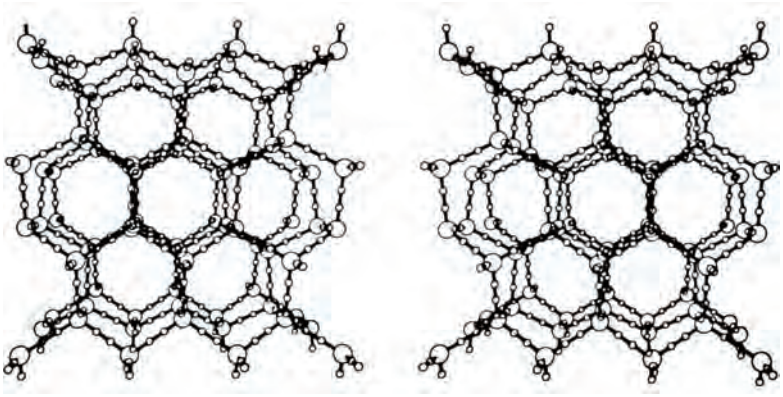


FIGURE 29.37
The crystal structure of ice in stereo. You'll see depth when your brain combines the views of your left eye looking at the left figure and your right eye looking at the right figure. To accomplish this, focus your eyes for distant viewing before looking at this page. Without changing your focus, look at the page, and each figure will appear double. Then adjust your focus so that the two inside images overlap to form a central composite image. Practice makes perfect. (If you instead *cross* your eyes to overlap the figures, near and far are reversed!)

Snowflakes that appear in a single plane in the pair of drawings of Figure 29.38 are seen to be in different planes when viewed stereoscopically.

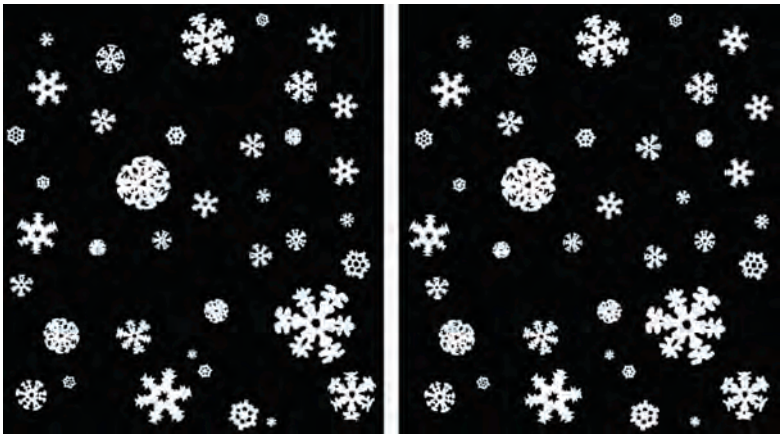


FIGURE 29.38
A stereo view of snowflakes. View these images in the same way as Figure 29.37.

The handheld stereoscopic viewer familiar to your grandparents (Figure 29.39) simulates the effect of depth. In this device, there are two photographic transparencies (or slides) taken a short distance apart, equal to the average distance between a person's eyes. When both views are seen at the same time, the arrangement is such that the left eye sees the scene as photographed from the left, and the right eye sees it as photographed from the right. As a result, the objects in the scene sink into relief in correct perspective, giving apparent depth to the picture. The device is constructed so that each eye sees only the proper view. There is no chance for one eye to see both views. If you remove the slides from the hand viewer and project each view on a screen by slide projector (so that the views are superimposed), a blurry picture results.

FIGURE 29.39
A stereoscopic viewer.

This is because each eye sees both views simultaneously. This is where Polaroid filters come in. If you place the Polaroids in front of the projectors so that they are at right angles to each other, and you view the polarized image with polarized glasses of the same orientation, each eye will see the proper view as with the stereoscopic viewer (Figure 29.40). You then will see an image in three dimensions.[8]

Polarization occurs only for transverse waves. In fact, it is an important way of determining whether a wave is transverse or longitudinal.

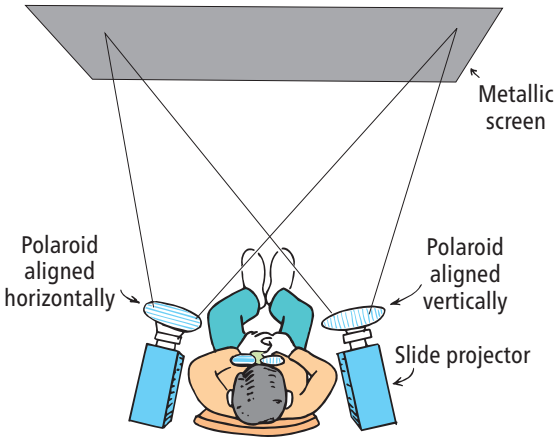
[8]Improved images are viewed with circular rather than linear polarizers.

FIGURE 29.40
With your eyes focused for distant viewing, the second and fourth lines appear to be farther away; if you cross your eyes, the second and fourth lines appear closer.

The test of all knowledge
is experiment.
Experiment is the *sole judge*
of scientific "truth."
Richard P. Feynman

The test of all knowledge
is experiment.
Experiment is the *sole judge*
of scientific "truth."
Richard P. Feynman

FIGURE 29.41
A 3-D show using Polaroids. The left eye sees only polarized light from the left projector, the right eye sees only polarized light from the right projector, and both views merge in the brain to produce depth.

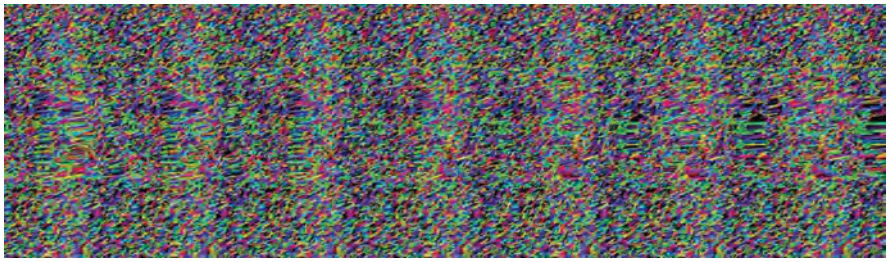


fyi

- Watch for autostereoscopy, 3-D without Polaroid glasses. The system relies on lenticular lenses that project a slightly different image to each eye, creating the illusion of depth.

Depth is also seen in computer-generated stereograms, as in Figure 29.42. Here the slightly different patterns are not obvious in a casual view. Use the procedure for viewing the earlier stereo figures. Once you've mastered the viewing technique, check out the many stereo images on your smartphone or the Web.

FIGURE 29.42
A computer-generated stereogram.



fyi

- Holographic optical elements that appear to float in front of an aircraft windshield help pilots in navigation. The same is featured on some models of automobiles. Physicians use 3-D holographic scans to make measurements without invasive surgery. The list of applications grows. Watch for a holographic TV in your future!

29.6 Holography

Perhaps the most exciting illustration of interference is the **hologram**, a two-dimensional photographic plate produced with laser light that allows you to see a faithful reproduction of a scene in three dimensions. The hologram was invented and named by Dennis Gabor in 1947, 10 years before lasers were invented. In Greek, *holo* means "whole" and *gram* means "message" or "information." Thus a hologram contains the whole message or entire picture. With proper illumination, the image is so realistic that you can actually look around the corners of objects in the image and see the sides.

In ordinary photography, a lens is used to form an image. Light reflected from each point on the object is directed by the lens only to a corresponding point on the film or photoreceptor. In the case of holography, however, no image-forming

lens is used. Instead, each point of the object being "photographed" reflects light to the *entire* photographic plate, so every part of the plate is exposed with light reflected from every part of the object. It is important that the light used to make a hologram be of a single frequency and all parts exactly in phase: It must be *coherent*. If, for example, white light were used, the diffraction fringes for one frequency would be washed out by those of other frequencies. Only a laser can easily produce such light. (We will treat lasers in detail in Chapter 30.) Holograms are made with laser light but can be seen with regular light, as attested to by the hologram on your credit card or on some kinds of paper money. Great holograms can be accessed on the Internet.

Light is truly fascinating—especially when it is diffracted into interference fringes in a hologram. Look for detailed information about holograms on the Web.

FIGURE 29.43
A hologram creates a three-dimensional image in empty space.

Chapter 29 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Huygens' principle Every point on a wavefront may be considered the source of secondary wavelets that spread out in all directions with a speed equal to the speed of propagation of the waves.

Diffraction The bending of waves such as light that pass near the edge of an object or through a narrow slit, causing the waves to spread.

Superposition The overlapping and combining of waves.

Interference The result of superposing different waves, usually of the same wavelength. Constructive interference results from crest-to-crest reinforcement; destructive interference results from crest-to-trough cancellation. The interference of selected wavelengths of light produces colors known as *interference colors*.

Polarization The alignment of the transverse electric vibrations of electromagnetic radiation. Such waves of aligned vibrations are said to be *polarized*.

Hologram A two-dimensional microscopic interference pattern that shows three-dimensional optical images.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

29.1 Huygens' Principle

1. According to Huygens, how does every point on a wavefront behave?
2. Will plane waves incident upon a small opening in a barrier fan out on the other side, or continue as plane waves?

29.2 Diffraction

3. Is diffraction more pronounced through a small opening or through a large opening?
4. For an opening of a given size, is diffraction more pronounced for a longer wavelength or for a shorter wavelength?
5. Which bends more easily around buildings, AM or FM radio waves? Why?
6. Diffraction works well with crystals. Does it also work well with biological molecules? Give an example.

29.3 Superposition and Interference

7. What happens to a pair of identical superpositioned waves when they are exactly one-half wavelength out of phase?
8. Two stones cannot occupy the same space and time. Is that true of waves? Explain.
9. What type of wave motion did Thomas Young demonstrate in his famous light interference experiment?
10. Why did Thomas Young use very thin entrance slits for light in his experiment?
11. Can interference be produced with a single thin slit? Many thin slits? Explain.

29.4 Single-Color Thin-Film Interference

12. Why do light and dark bands appear when monochromatic light reflects from a glass pane atop another glass pane with a gap in between?
13. What is meant by saying a surface is *optically flat?*
14. What is the cause of Newton's rings?
15. What produces iridescence?
16. What causes the spectrum of colors seen in gasoline splotches on a wet street? Why are these not seen on a dry street?
17. What accounts for the different colors in either a soap bubble or a layer of gasoline on water? Why do the colors change as the soap or gasoline swirls? Why does the color change if you view the same bubble or gasoline layer at a different angle?
18. Why are interference colors primarily cyan, magenta, and yellow?

29.5 Polarization

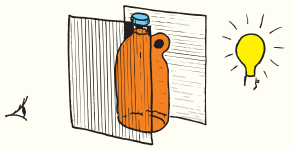
19. What is polarization of light?
20. How does the direction of polarization of light compare with the direction of vibration of the electron that produces it?
21. Why will light pass through a pair of Polaroids when the axes are aligned but not when the axes are at right angles to each other?
22. How much ordinary light will an ideal Polaroid transmit?
23. When *ordinary* light is incident at an oblique angle upon water, what can you say about the *reflected* light?
24. Is parallax evident when you close one eye?
25. How does parallax underlie the depth perceived in stereo views?
26. Would depth be perceived if the images being projected in Figure 29.41 were identical?
27. What role do polarization filters play in 3-D projection?

29.6 Holography

28. Which was invented first, laser light or the hologram?
29. How does a hologram differ from a conventional photo?
30. Laser light is employed in producing holograms. Is laser light needed to view them?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

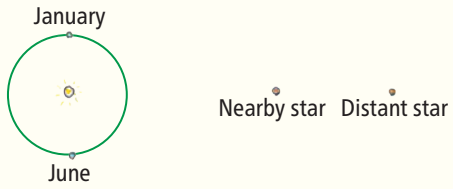
31. With a razor blade or the tip of a sharp knife, cut a slit in a card and look at a light source through it. You can vary the size of the opening by bending the card slightly. See the interference fringes? Try it with two closely spaced slits.
32. Next time you're in the bathtub, froth up the soapsuds and notice the colors of highlights from the illuminating light overhead on each tiny bubble. Notice that different bubbles reflect different colors, due to the different thicknesses of soap film. If a friend is bathing with you, compare the different colors that each of you see reflected from the same bubbles. You'll see that they're different—for what you see depends on your point of view!
33. When wearing Polaroid sunglasses, look at the glare from a nonmetallic surface, such as a road or body of water. Tip your head from side to side and see how the glare intensity changes as you vary the magnitude of the electric vector component aligned with the polarization axis of the glasses. Look at the display on your smartphone as you rotate it and see the effects of polarization. Also notice the polarization of different parts of the sky when you hold the sunglasses in your hand and rotate them.
34. This one depends on the availability of a pair of Polaroids. Place a source of white light on a table in front of you. Then place a sheet of Polaroid in front of the source, a bottle of corn syrup in front of the sheet, and a second sheet of Polaroid in front of the bottle. Look through the Polaroid sheets that sandwich the syrup and view the change of spectacular colors as you rotate one of the sheets.



35. Hold a finger a few inches in front of your face and look at a far away object. Notice that as you close then open one eye at a time, your finger seems to move to the right and left relative to the object in the distance. Now move your finger farther from your face and notice that your finger moves less right and left as you alternate eyes. You are witnessing the effects of parallax.

36. Continuing from the parallax experienced with outstretched fingers, imagine that you are looking at a nearby star six months apart from different locations

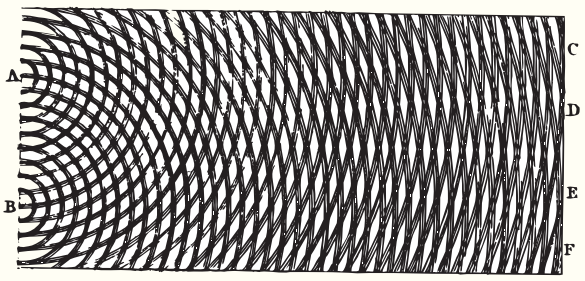
on Earth as it orbits the Sun, as shown by the diagram which is *not* to scale!



The position of the nearby star appears to shift relative to the distant star when seen from Earth. In January, does it shift to the left, or to the right? In what direction does it shift when seen in June? [This shift in parallax is used to determine stellar distances from Earth. The unit of distance called a *parsec* (= parallax second) is the distance from the Sun to an astronomical object that has a parallax angle of one second or arc (1/3600 of a degree).]

THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

37. Light from a small LED produces spherical waves. But light from the Sun can be approximated by plane waves. Explain why this is so.
38. What is diffraction? Do we observe the diffraction effects of light in everyday observation? Why?
39. Why do radio waves diffract around buildings, while light waves, apparently don't? What is your explanation?
40. What happens when the monochromatic source is replaced by a white light source in Young's double-slit experiment?
41. Light from monochromatic sources produces interference patterns as observed in the double-slit experiment. Should yellow light or orange light be used to produce narrower-spaced fringes? Should red light or blue light be used to produce broader fringes?
42. By what minimum distance should a pair of monochromatic light rays from a common source differ in distance traveled from a pair of thin slits to produce a fringe of destructive interference? Why?
43. By what minimum distance should a pair of monochromatic light rays from a common source differ in distance traveled from a pair of thin slits to produce a fringe of constructive interference? Why?
44. What happens to the distance between interference fringes if the separation between the two slits is decreased?
45. Young's first attempt at his now famous double-slit experiment was with pinholes rather than slits. Why are slits more effective than pinholes?

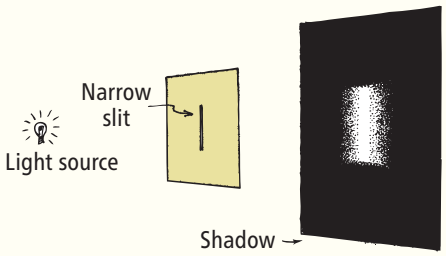


46. When the reflected path from the bottom surface of a thin film is one full wavelength different in length from the reflected path from the top surface (and no phase change occurs), will the result be destructive interference or constructive interference? Why?
47. When the reflected path from one surface of a thin film is one-half wavelength different in length from the reflected path from the other surface (with no phase change), will the result be destructive interference or constructive interference? Why?
48. Suppose you place a diffraction grating in front of a camera lens and take a picture of white LED streetlights. What will you expect to see in your photograph?
49. Which of these colorful displays is formed by thin-film interference: flower petals, rainbow, soap bubbles?
50. Which of these colorful displays is formed by selective absorption and reflection: flower petals, rainbow, soap bubbles?
51. The spectacular colors of peacocks and hummingbirds are the result not of pigments but of ridges in the surface layers of their feathers. By what physical principle do these ridges produce colors? Defend your answer.
52. Your friend claims that interference will still take place if, instead of two, three or multiple slits are arranged for the diffraction experiment. Do you agree with your friend?
53. Explain why coronae, colored rings that are often seen in the sky around the Sun or moon, form.
54. CDs and DVDs show different colors when viewed from different angles. Why?
55. Is it possible to create interference patterns using two highly monochromatic laser point sources, one emitting red and the other emitting blue radiation, placed very close to each other, thus keeping the separation "*d*" very small?
56. Will you be able to create an interference pattern on a screen using two flashlights placed very close together in a dark room? Justify your answer.
57. If you notice the interference patterns of a thin film of oil or gasoline on water, you'll note that the colors form complete rings. How are these rings similar to the lines of equal elevation on a contour map?
58. Because of wave interference, a film of oil on water in sunlight is seen to be yellow to observers directly above in an airplane. What color of light transmits through the oil (that would be seen by a scuba diver directly below)? Defend your answer.
59. For a telescope orbiting in space, which light—red, green, blue, or ultraviolet—is better for seeing fine detail of distant astronomical objects? Why?
60. Can sound waves demonstrate both interference and polarization like light waves can? Explain.
61. As Figure 29.31c illustrates, electromagnetic waves can be represented with a pair of vectors at right angles to each other. Explain how the lengths of these two vectors for non-polarized light differ from polarized light.

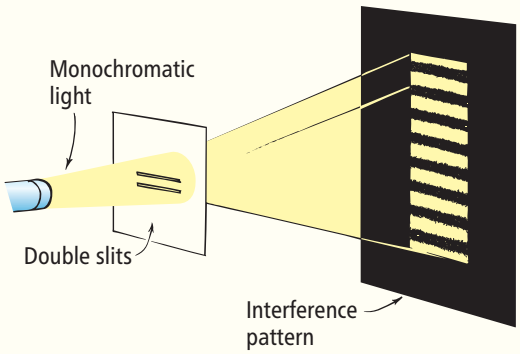
62. Why will an ideal Polaroid filter transmit 50% of incident sunlight?
63. Will an ideal Polaroid filter transmit 100% of incident polarized light when the filter and the plane of polarization match?
64. You are enjoying a 3D movie at a theater, wearing Polaroid spectacles. What is the angle between the axis of the Polaroid filters used in the left and right sections of the spectacles: 0°, 90°, 45°, or 180°?
65. How can you use a plain polarized light, which vibrates along the vertical axis to find the axis of a Polaroid glass if it is not marked?
66. What is the common polarization direction used in polarized sunglasses: vertical or horizontal? Justify.
67. If you are resting near the beach on a sunny day, should the axis of the Polaroid filter that you use to avoid the glare coming from the sea be horizontal or vertical?
68. Most of the glare from nonmetallic surfaces is polarized, the axis of polarization being parallel to that of the reflecting surface. Would you expect the polarization axis of Polaroid sunglasses to be horizontal or vertical? Why?
69. Your friend claims that liquid-crystal display (LCD) TVs use polarized filters that allow vibrations of light in a particular orientation from the illuminated liquid crystals to reach the audience. Do you think this enhances or degrades the contrast of the picture quality?
70. Suppose that sunglasses are not labeled in a convenience store. Explain how you can tell which are polarized?
71. Why do currency notes or credit cards often contain a security hologram?
72. Which of the following is not necessary for holography: interference, image forming lens, or light?

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

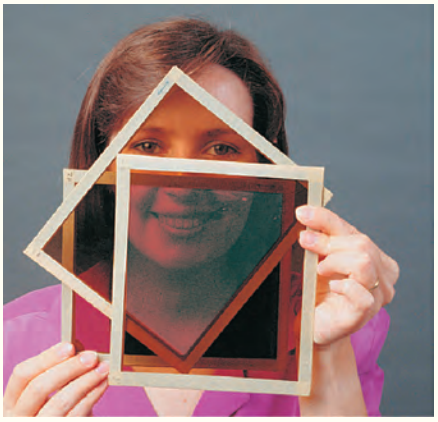
73. When white light diffracts upon passing through a thin slit, as shown below (also Figure 29.8b), different color components diffract by different amounts so that a rainbow of colors appears at the edge of the pattern. Two questions to discuss: Which color is diffracted through the greatest angle? Which color through the smallest angle?

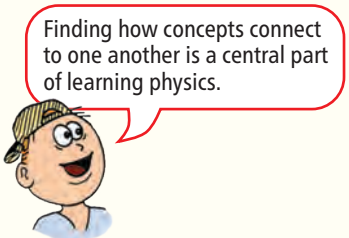


74. Discuss which will give wider-spaced fringes in a double-slit experiment, red light or violet light? (Let this sketch of Figure 29.18 guide your thinking.)



75. Explain the difference between the diffraction observed using one slit and two slits. What happens to the intensity when the number of slits increases in the diffraction experiment?
76. If the path-length difference between two identical and coherent beams is two wavelengths when they arrive on a screen, will they produce a dark or a bright spot? Discuss how you know this.
77. Discuss which will produce more widely spaced fringes of light when passed through a diffraction grating—light from a red laser or light from a green laser?
78. Figure 29.27 shows reflections from two surfaces, the air–gasoline boundary and the gasoline–water boundary. Why doesn't light reflecting from the water–ground boundary (not shown) contribute to interference colors?
79. The digital displays of watches and cell phones are normally polarized. What related problem can occur when wearing Polaroid sunglasses? Discuss.
80. Light will not pass through a pair of Polaroid sheets when they are aligned perpendicularly. However, if a third Polaroid with its axis of 45° is sandwiched between the two, some light does get through. Use your knowledge of vector to discuss and explain why.
81. Show that one-quarter of sunlight will get through the three Polaroid combination shown here. (Thinking vector components will be helpful.)





CHAPTER TWENTY NINE Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. Huygens' principle applies mainly to
   (a) refraction of waves in a medium.
   (b) reflection of waves.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
2. Diffraction occurs for
   (a) light.
   (b) sound.
   (c) X-rays.
   (d) All of these
3. Diffraction is most closely related to
   (a) refraction.
   (b) reflection.
   (c) interference.
   (d) polarization.
4. The device that spreads light into its component colors in a spectroscope is a
   (a) prism.
   (b) diffraction grating.
   (c) Either of these
   (d) Neither of these
5. When light undergoes interference, it can sometimes
   (a) build up to more than the sum of amplitudes.
   (b) cancel completely.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
6. Thomas Young's two-source interference patterns demonstrate the
   (a) particle nature of light.
   (b) wave nature of light.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
7. When cyan light is seen in the interference colors of a soap bubble illuminated by sunlight, the color being canceled is
   (a) red.
   (b) green.
   (c) blue.
   (d) None of these
8. Polarization is a property of
   (a) transverse waves.
   (b) longitudinal waves.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
9. Light will NOT pass through a pair of Polaroids when their axes are
   (a) 45 degrees to each other.
   (b) parallel to each other.
   (c) perpendicular to each other.
   (d) All of the above
10. Holograms employ the principle of
    (a) diffraction.
    (b) interference.
    (c) Both of these
    (d) Neither of these

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (c): Huygen's principle applies to waves in general. Applications include both reflection and refraction, as clearly shown in the first seven figures in the chapter. **2. (d):** Diffraction is a property of all waves, so (d), all of these, is the best answer. Diffraction is not a feature of the other choices. **3. (c):** Wave interference is most common to diffraction, making (c) the best answer. **4. (c):** Both a prism and a diffraction grating disperse light, so (c) is the best answer. **5. (b):** Building up to greater amplitudes is inconsistent with the conservation of energy. Light can, in fact, cancel completely. When this occurs, energy of the waves is displaced to a location where interference doesn't occur. Hence, (b) is the only correct choice. **6. (b):** Historically, Young's interference experiments were the defining demonstrations that light, without doubt, has wave properties. In no way do his experiments confirm the particle nature of light. **7. (a):** Red would be canceled to produce cyan, in keeping with the rule that the color being canceled is the complementary color of the incident light. **8. (a):** To determine if a wave is transverse or not, see if it can be polarized. For only transverse waves can be polarized. **9. (c):** Light readily passes through a pair of Polaroids with parallel axes, and somewhat for axes at a non-perpendicular angle to one another, such as 45 degrees. Absorption occurs for axes that are perpendicular, crossed, at 90 degrees. **10. (c):** Light can diffract into interference fringes to produce a hologram, so both (c) is the correct choice.

CHAPTER THIRTY

30 Light Emission

30.1 Light Emission

30.2 Excitation

30.3 Emission Spectra

30.4 Incandescence

30.5 Absorption Spectra

30.6 Fluorescence

30.7 Phosphorescence

30.8 Lamps

- Incandescent Lamp
- Fluorescent Lamp
- Light-Emitting Diode

30.9 Lasers

1 Words of wisdom from Neil deGrasse Tyson; "If you want to assert a truth, first make sure it's not just an opinion that you desperately want to be true." **2** George Curtis separates light from an argon source into its component frequencies with a spectroscope. **3** Ron Hipschman in his element. **4** Qiuyan Wu inspires young students into seeing the world through science. **5** Qiuyan does the same with students in India.

In the fall of 2004, I was invited to give a Saturday evening keynote address at the American Association of Physics Teachers meeting in Brockton, Massachusetts. Arriving a day early, I attended a talk given by an astrophysicist who mesmerized the audience with reasons why Pluto should not be classified as a planet. The inspirational speaker was Neil deGrasse Tyson, relatively unknown at the time. At the end of his talk, I was among others who engaged this charismatic speaker in conversation. My comments, after introducing myself, were brief: "I'm giving the keynote talk tomorrow night and I'm sure glad my talk doesn't directly follow yours. You're a hard act to follow!" I followed up with email correspondence with Neil for several months, discussing his reasons for reclassifying Pluto as a dwarf planet.

Tyson seemed to many to be espousing science heresy, for everybody loved Pluto—the ninth planet, the smallest one on the edge of our solar system. But the discovery of hundreds of other bodies similar to Pluto at the same distance from the Sun prompted reclassification. Do we name all of them as planets, or do we place them in a category that includes Pluto? Neil didn't realize how unpopular his demotion of Pluto would be until he received hundreds of letters from students and kids worldwide condemning Pluto's demotion.

Today that controversy has lessened. Pluto is now a dwarf planet, along with its many neighbors. Students, kids, and the general public accept that there are eight planets in our solar system, with Pluto joining the ranks of many hundreds of dwarf planets that orbit the Sun.

Any disappointment someone may feel about Pluto's reclassification should be more than offset by Tyson's inspirational personal story. At the age of nine he visited the Hayden Planetarium in New York City, not far from where he grew up. Tyson became fascinated with science, and was particularly intrigued with astronomy. His obsession with astronomy grew and at the age of 15 he shared his excitement with others by giving public lectures on astronomy. When he later applied to Cornell University, Tyson's application was dripping with passion for studying and researching the universe. It was brought to the attention of Cornell astronomer Carl Sagan, who contacted young Tyson and encouraged his education. Although Tyson chose to attend Harvard, Sagan remained an effective mentor. After successive graduations (one needs to earn several degrees if one wants to be an astrophysicist) and after prestigious academic positions, Tyson became the director of the Hayden Planetarium—the very place that impressed him in childhood. Today, in his many television and radio appearances, he's a powerful spokesperson for astrophysics and science in general. In the spirit of Carl Sagan, he continues to inform millions about the wonders, beauty, and importance of science, focusing on *how* to think more than on *what* to think.

Tyson is well known for his saying, "The remarkable feature of physical laws is that they apply everywhere, whether or not you choose to believe in them." Another is "What is true for life itself is no less true for the universe: Knowing where you came from is no less important than knowing where you are going." When asked about everyday life he responded, "The problem, often not discovered until late in life, is that when you look for things like love, meaning, motivation, it implies they are sitting behind a tree or under a rock. The most successful people in life recognize that in life they create their own love, they manufacture their own meaning, they generate their own motivation. For me, I am driven by two main philosophies: Know more today about the world than I knew yesterday. And lessen the suffering of others. You'd be surprised how far that gets you." Learn more about this charismatic spokesperson for science. He may still be giving his free Internet lessons that highlight the importance of science!

As an astrophysicist, Tyson's study of the stars relies on light they emit. This chapter examines the emission of light, which is fascinating to astronomers, physicists, and, let's hope, to you as well.

30.1 Light Emission

If energy is pumped into a metal antenna in such a way that it causes free electrons to vibrate to and fro a few hundred thousand times per second, a radio wave is emitted. If the free electrons could be made to vibrate to and fro on the order of a million billion times per second, a visible light wave would be emitted. But visible light is not produced from metallic antennae, nor is it exclusively produced by atomic antennae via oscillations of electrons in atoms, as discussed in earlier chapters. In this chapter, we discuss the physics of light sources—of light *emission*.

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

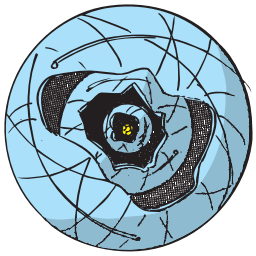


FIGURE 30.1
Simplified view of electrons orbiting in discrete shells about the nucleus of an atom.

The details of light emission from atoms involve the transitions of electrons from higher to lower energy states within the atom. This emission process can be understood in terms of the familiar planetary model of the atom. Just as each element is characterized by the number of electrons that occupy the shells surrounding its atomic nucleus, each element possesses its own characteristic pattern of electron shells, or energy states. These states are found at only certain energies; we say they are *discrete*. We call these discrete states *quantum states*, and we'll return to them in detail in the next two chapters. We are now at a place where the classical model of light emission changes to a quantum model of light emission. Rather than visualizing electrons accelerating to and fro along a metal antenna, which nicely explains radio waves, we progress to a quantum model of the *atom* where light is emitted by transitions between electron energy states.

Exciting an atom is like trying to kick a ball out of a ditch. Many short kicks won't do the job because the ball keeps falling back. A kick with just the right strength is enough to get the ball out of the ditch. Likewise with the excitation of atoms.

30.2 Excitation

An electron farther from the nucleus has a greater electric potential energy with respect to the nucleus than does an electron closer to the nucleus. We say that the more distant electron is in a higher energy state or, equivalently, at a higher energy level. In a sense, this is similar to the energy of a spring door or a pile driver. The wider the door is pulled open, the greater its spring potential energy; the higher the ram of a pile driver is raised, the greater its gravitational potential energy.

When an electron is in any way raised to a higher energy level, the atom is said to be *excited*. The electron's higher position is only momentary, however: Like the pushed-open spring door, it soon returns to its lowest energy state. The atom loses its temporarily acquired energy when the electron returns to a lower level and emits a pulse of radiant energy. The atom has undergone the processes of **excitation** and *de-excitation*.

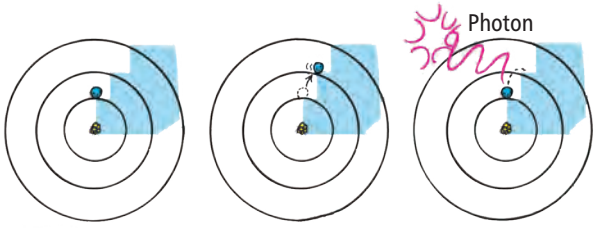
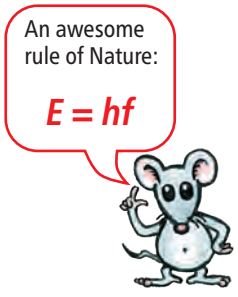


FIGURE 30.2
When an electron in an atom is boosted to a higher energy level, the atom is excited. When the electron returns to its original level, the atom de-excites and emits a photon of light.



Just as each electrically neutral element has its own number of electrons, each element also has its own characteristic set of energy levels. Electrons dropping from higher to lower energy levels in an excited atom emit with each jump a throbbing pulse of electromagnetic radiation—a *photon*, the frequency of which is related to the energy transition of the jump. As previously learned, we think of this photon as a localized corpuscle of pure energy—a "particle" of light—that is ejected from the atom. The frequency of the photon is directly proportional to its energy. In shorthand notation,

$$E \sim f$$

When the proportionality constant h is introduced, this becomes the exact equation

$$E = hf$$

where h is Planck's constant (more about this in the next chapter).

The transformations of energy via excitation and de-excitation nicely adhere to the conservation of energy.

A photon in a beam of red light, for example, carries an amount of energy that corresponds to its frequency. Another photon of twice the frequency has twice

as much energy and is found in the ultraviolet part of the spectrum. If many atoms in a material are excited, many photons with many different frequencies are emitted, each frequency corresponding to a difference in energy between the excited energy level and the lower level that the electron transitions to. The *emission spectrum* of an element is the set of frequencies that the excited material emits. When excited, each chemical element emits its own unique spectrum.

CHECK POINT

Figure 30.2 tells us that the frequency of light emitted by atoms relates to energy transitions as atoms de-excite. Does this contradict what we learned in previous chapters, that electrons set into vibration emit light of a frequency that matches the mechanical frequency of electron vibration?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Yes, a contradiction does exist. There are two models. This chapter progresses from a classical model to a quantum model for the emission of light. Light emission via vibrating electrons is a classical model—quite valid for the emission of radio waves from radio antennae and the radiation due to temperature. Delving deeper to the subatomic level, however, light emission is better explained by transitions of electrons between energy levels inside the atom.

The light emitted in the glass tubes of advertising signs is a familiar consequence of excitation. The different colors in the signs correspond to the excitation of different gases, although it is common to refer to any of these as "neon." Only the red light is that of neon. At the ends of the glass tube that contains the neon gas are electrodes. In a sense, electrons are boiled off these electrodes and jostled back and forth at high speeds by a high ac voltage. Millions of high-speed electrons vibrate back and forth inside the glass tube and smash into millions of target atoms, boosting orbital electrons into higher energy levels by an amount of energy equal to the decrease in kinetic energy of the bombarding electron. This energy is then radiated as the characteristic red light of neon when the electrons fall back to their stable orbits (to their ground states). The process occurs and recurs many times, as neon atoms continuously undergo a cycle of excitation and de-excitation. The overall result of this process is the transformation of electric energy into radiant energy.

When salts of different elements are placed in a flame, the colors of the various flames are due to excitation. Each excited element emits colors characteristic of its energy-level spacings. Common table salt placed in a flame, for example, produces the characteristic yellow of sodium.

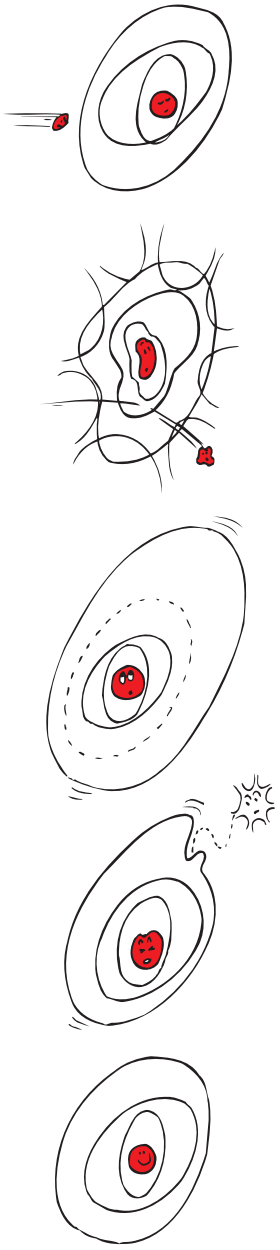


FIGURE 30.3
Excitation and de-excitation.

CHECK POINT

In terms of $E = hf$, what would be the energy of n photons of frequency f?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

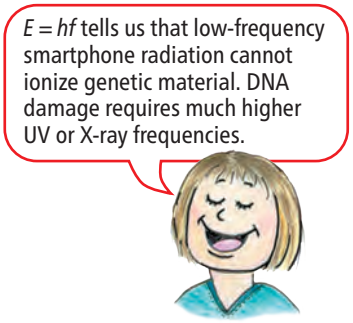
$E = nhf$.

Street lamps provide another example. Some city streets are still illuminated with light emitted by gases such as mercury vapor. The light from these lamps is rich in blues and violets and therefore is a different "white" than the light from previous incandescent lamps. Some other street lamps use the glow of sodium gas, which consumes less energy. Low-pressure sodium-vapor lamps have an orange-yellow tint. See if your instructor has a spare prism or diffraction grating

you can borrow. Look through the prism or grating at the light from street lamps and see the discreteness of the colors, which indicates the discreteness of the atomic levels. Note the different colors of mercury and sodium lamps.

Excitation is illustrated in the aurora borealis and aurora australis. High-speed charged particles that originate in the solar wind strike atoms and molecules in the upper atmosphere. This excites them to emit light exactly as occurs in a neon tube. The different colors in the aurora correspond to the excitation of different gases—oxygen atoms produce a greenish-white color, nitrogen molecules produce red-violet, and nitrogen ions produce blue-violet. Auroral emissions are not restricted to visible light; they also include infrared, ultraviolet, and X-ray radiation.

The excitation/de-excitation process can be accurately described only by quantum mechanics. An attempt to view the process in terms of classical physics runs into contradictions. Classically, an accelerating electric charge produces electromagnetic radiation. Does this explain light emission by excited atoms? An electron does accelerate in a transition from a higher to a lower energy level. Just as the innermost planets of the solar system have higher orbital speeds than those in the outermost orbits, the electrons in the innermost orbits of the atom have higher speeds. An electron gains speed in dropping to lower energy levels. Fine—the accelerating electron radiates a photon! But not so fine—the electron is continuously undergoing acceleration (centripetal acceleration) in any orbit, whether or not it changes energy levels. According to classical physics, it should continuously radiate energy. But it doesn't. All attempts to explain the emission of light by an excited atom in terms of a classical model have been unsuccessful. Classical ideas such as speed and acceleration simply do not apply to the electron in a quantum state in an atom. We shall simply say that light is emitted when an electron in an atom makes a "quantum jump" from a higher to a lower energy level and that the energy and frequency of the emitted photon are described by $E = hf$.


E = hf tells us that low-frequency smartphone radiation cannot ionize genetic material. DNA damage requires much higher UV or X-ray frequencies.

CHECK POINT

Suppose a friend suggests that, for a first-rate operation, the gaseous neon atoms in a neon tube should be periodically replaced with fresh atoms because the energy of the atoms tends to be used up with continued excitation, producing dimmer and dimmer light. What do you say to this?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The neon atoms don't release any energy that is not given to them by the electric current in the tube and therefore they don't get "used up." Any single atom may be excited and re-excited without limit. If the light becomes dimmer and dimmer, it is probably because there is a leak. Otherwise, there is no advantage whatsoever to changing the gas in the tube, because a "fresh" atom is indistinguishable from a "used" one. Both are ageless and older than the solar system.

30.3 Emission Spectra

Every element has its own characteristic pattern of electron energy levels and therefore emits light with its own characteristic pattern of frequencies, its **emission spectrum,** when excited. This pattern can be seen when light is passed through a prism—or, better, when it is first passed through a thin slit and then focused through a prism onto a viewing screen. Such an arrangement of slit, focusing lenses, and prism (or diffraction grating) is called a **spectroscope,** one of the most useful instruments of modern science (Figure 30.4).

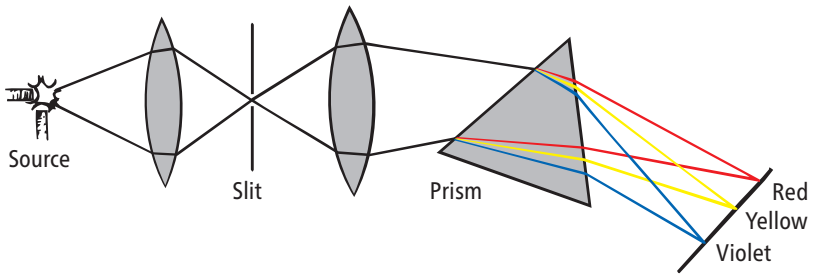


FIGURE 30.4
A simple spectroscope. A lens focuses light from a source through a thin slit. A second lens directs light from the slit onto a prism, where images of the slit are dispersed and cast onto the screen. The spectral pattern is characteristic of light from the source.

Each component color is focused at a definite position, according to its frequency, and forms an image of the slit on the screen, photographic film, or appropriate detector. The different-colored images of the slit are called *spectral lines*. Some typical spectral patterns are shown in Figure 30.6. It is customary to refer to colors in terms of their wavelengths rather than their frequencies. A given frequency corresponds to a definite wavelength.[1]

If the light given off by a sodium-vapor lamp is analyzed in a spectroscope, a single yellow line predominates—a single image of the slit. If we narrow the width of the slit, we find that this line is really composed of two very close lines (not evident here). These lines correspond to the two predominant frequencies of light emitted by excited sodium atoms. The rest of the spectrum looks dark. (Actually, there are many other lines, often too dim to be seen with the naked eye.) The same happens with all glowing vapors. The light from a mercury-vapor lamp shows a pair of bright yellow lines close together (but in slightly different positions from those of sodium), a very intense green line, and several blue and violet lines. We find that the light emitted by each element in the vapor phase produces its own characteristic pattern of lines. These lines correspond to the electron transitions between atomic energy levels and are as characteristic of each element as are the fingerprints of people. The spectroscope, therefore, is widely used in chemical analysis.

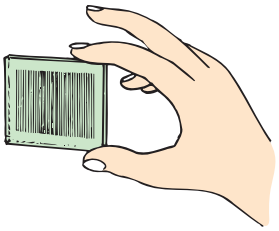


FIGURE 30.5
A diffraction grating may be used in place of a prism in a spectrometer.

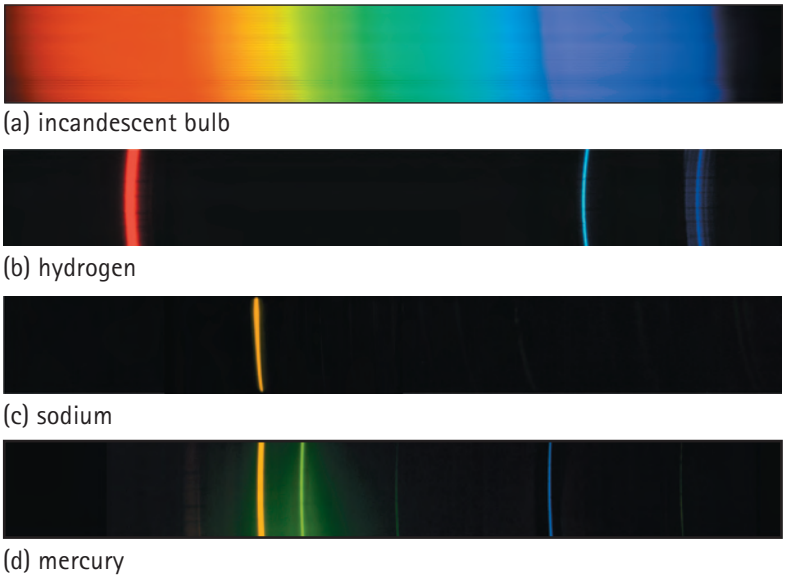


FIGURE 30.6
(a) An incandescent bulb has a continuous spectrum. Each of the three elements (b) hydrogen, (c) sodium, and (d) mercury has a different line spectrum.

[1]Recall from Chapter 19 that $v = f\lambda$ where v is the wave speed, f is the wave frequency, and λ (lambda) is the wavelength. For light, v is the constant c, so we see from $c = f\lambda$ the relationship between frequency and wavelength—namely, $f = \frac{c}{\lambda}$ and $\lambda = \frac{c}{f}$.

fyi

- Because every chemical element has its own *unique* set of energy levels, each element also has its own *distinctive pattern* of spectral absorption (and emission) lines—the *spectral "fingerprint"* that astronomers use to identify various chemical elements in astronomical objects.

The next time you see evidence of atomic excitation, perhaps the green flame produced when a piece of copper is placed in a fire, squint your eyes and see if you can imagine electrons jumping to and fro from one energy level to another in a pattern characteristic of the atom being excited—a pattern that displays a color unique to that atom. That is what's happening!

CHECK POINT

Spectral patterns are not shapeless smears of light but, instead, consist of fine and distinct straight lines. Why is this so?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The spectral lines are simply images of the slit, which is itself a thin, straight opening through which light is admitted before being spread by the prism (or diffraction grating). When the slit is adjusted to make its most narrow opening, closely spaced lines can be resolved (distinguished from one another). A wider slit admits more light, which permits easier detection of dimmer radiant energy. But width is at the expense of resolution when closely spaced lines blur together.

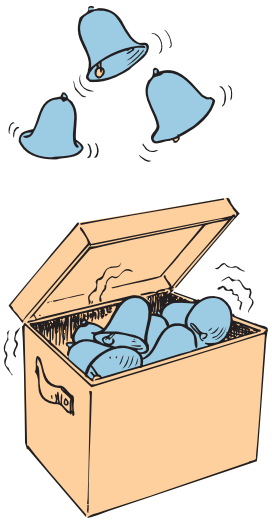


FIGURE 30.7
An isolated bell rings with a sound that has a clear and distinct frequency, whereas the sound emanating from a box of bells crowded together is discordant. Likewise with the difference between the light emitted from atoms in the gaseous phase and the light from atoms in the solid phase.

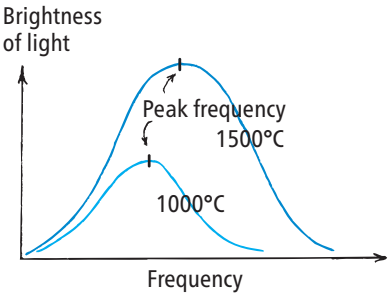


FIGURE 30.8
Radiation curves for an incandescent solid.

30.4 Incandescence

Light that is produced as a result of high temperature has the property of **incandescence** (from a Latin word meaning "to grow hot"). It can have a reddish tint, as from the heating element of a toaster, or a bluish tint, as from a particularly hot star. Or it can be white, as from the familiar incandescent lamp. What sets incandescent light apart from the light of a neon tube or mercury-vapor lamp is that it contains a countless number of frequencies, spread smoothly across the spectrum. Does this mean that an infinite number of individual energy levels characterize the individual tungsten atoms that make up the filament of the incandescent lamp? The answer is no; if the filament were vaporized and then excited, the tungsten gas would emit light with a finite number of frequencies and produce an overall bluish color. The light emitted by far-apart atoms in the gaseous phase is very different from the light emitted by the same atoms closely packed in the solid phase. An analogy is the sound from isolated ringing bells compared with sound from a box crammed with ringing bells (Figure 30.7). In a gas, individual atoms are far apart. Electrons undergo transitions between energy levels within the atom in the gaseous phase quite unaffected by the presence of other atoms. But atoms in a solid are closely packed. Energy levels become less distinct due to cramming by adjacent atoms. The emission of radiant energy is in the form of an almost continuous "band" of energy levels. Hence the infinite number of radiant-energy frequencies of an incandescent source.

As might be expected, light from an incandescent source depends on the temperature of the source. We call this *thermal radiation*, whether it is below, at, or above the frequencies of visible light. A plot of the wide range of thermal radiation for two sample temperatures is shown in Figure 30.8. (Recall that we treated the radiation curve for sunlight in Chapter 27 and discussed blackbody radiation in Chapter 16.) As the solid is heated further, more high-energy transitions occur radiation of higher-frequency is emitted. The curve comprises a continuous spectrum. In the brightest part of the spectrum, the predominant frequency

of emitted radiation, the *peak frequency*, is directly proportional to the absolute temperature of the emitter:

$$\overline{f} \sim T$$

We use the bar above the f to indicate the peak frequency because radiations of many frequencies are emitted from the incandescent source. If the temperature of an object (in kelvins) is doubled, the peak frequency of emitted radiation is doubled. The electromagnetic waves of violet light have nearly twice the frequency of red light waves. A violet-hot star, therefore, has nearly twice the surface temperature of a red-hot star.[2] The temperature of incandescent bodies, whether they are stars or blast-furnace interiors, can be determined by measuring the peak frequency (or color) of the radiant energy they emit.

CHECK POINT

From the radiation curves shown in Figure 30.8, which emits the higher average frequency of radiant energy: the 1000°C source or the 1500°C source? Which emits more radiant energy?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

The 1500°C radiating source emits the higher average frequency, as noted by the extension of the curve to the right. The 1500°C source is brighter and also emits more radiant energy, as noted by its greater vertical displacement.

30.5 Absorption Spectra

When we view white light from an incandescent source with a spectroscope, we see a continuous spectrum over the whole rainbow of colors. If a gas is placed between the source and the spectroscope, however, careful inspection will show that the spectrum is not quite continuous. This is an **absorption spectrum,** with dark lines distributed throughout it; these dark lines against a rainbow-colored background are like emission lines in reverse. They are *absorption lines.*

Atoms absorb light as well as emit light. An atom will most strongly absorb light that has the frequencies to which it is tuned—mainly the same frequencies it emits. When a beam of white light passes through a gas, the atoms of the gas absorb light of selected frequencies from the beam. This absorbed light is reradiated, but in *all* directions instead of only in the direction of the incident beam. When the light remaining in the beam spreads out into a spectrum, the frequencies that were absorbed appear as dark lines in the otherwise continuous spectrum. The positions of these dark lines correspond exactly to the positions of lines in an emission spectrum of the same gas (Figure 30.9).

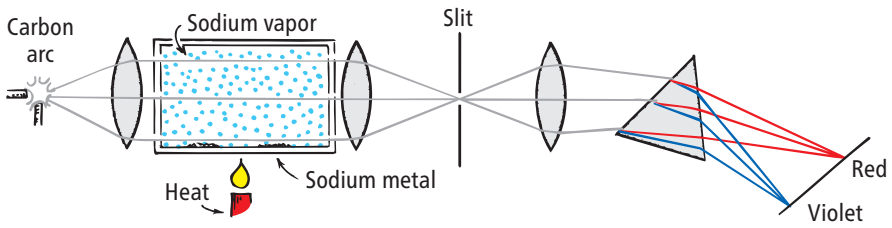


FIGURE 30.9
Experimental arrangement for demonstrating the absorption spectrum of a gas.

[2]If you study this topic further, then, as mentioned in footnote 3 of Chapter 16, you will find that the time rate at which an object radiates energy (the radiated power) is proportional to the fourth power of its Kelvin temperature. So a doubling of temperature corresponds to a doubling of the frequency of radiant energy but a 16-fold increase in the rate of emission of radiant energy.

Although the Sun is a source of incandescent light, the spectrum it produces, upon close examination, is not continuous. There are many absorption lines, called *Fraunhofer lines* in honor of Bavarian optician and physicist Joseph von Fraunhofer, who first observed and mapped them accurately. Similar lines are found in the spectra produced by the stars. These lines indicate that the Sun and stars are each surrounded by an atmosphere of cooler gases that absorb some of the light coming from the main body. Analysis of these lines reveals the chemical composition of the atmospheres of such sources. We find from these analyses that the stellar elements are the same elements that exist on Earth. An interesting sidelight is that, in 1868, spectroscopic analysis of sunlight showed some spectral lines different from any known on Earth. These lines identified a new element, which was named *helium*, after Helios, the Greek god of the Sun. Helium was discovered in the Sun before it was discovered on Earth. How about that!

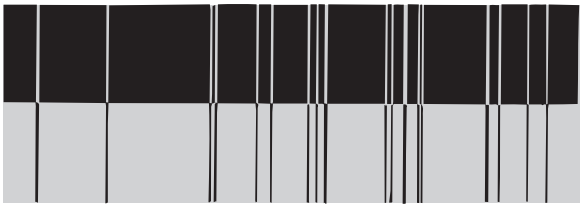
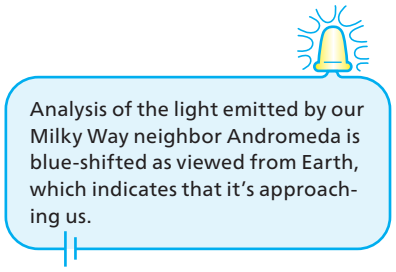


FIGURE 30.10
Emission and absorption spectra.

We can determine the speed of stars by studying the spectra they emit. Just as a moving sound source produces a Doppler shift in its pitch (see Chapter 19), a moving light source produces a Doppler shift in its light frequency. The frequency (not the speed!) of light emitted by an approaching source is higher, while the frequency of light from a receding source is lower, than the frequency of light from a stationary source. The corresponding spectral lines are displaced toward the red end of the spectrum for receding sources. Almost all the galaxies exhibit a red shift in their spectra that provides evidence that they are moving away from us—and that the universe is expanding.


Analysis of the light emitted by our Milky Way neighbor Andromeda is blue-shifted as viewed from Earth, which indicates that it's approaching us.

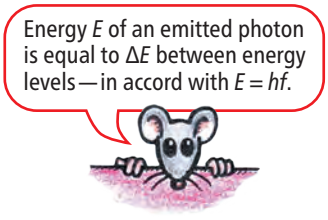
We shall see, in Chapter 31, how the spectra of elements enable us to determine atomic structure.

CHECK POINT

Distinguish among emission spectra, continuous spectra, and absorption spectra.

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Emission spectra are produced by thin gases in which the atoms do not appreciably interact with one another. Continuous spectra result when atoms are close enough to one another for their energy levels to interact, which is why solids, liquids, and dense gases emit light at all the visible frequencies when heated. Absorption spectra occur when light passes through a dilute gas and atoms in the gas absorb at characteristic frequencies. Because the re-emitted light is unlikely to be emitted in the same direction as the absorbed photons, dark lines (absence of light) appear in the spectrum.



30.6 Fluorescence

Thermal agitation and bombardment by particles, such as high-speed electrons, are not the only means of imparting excitation energy to an atom. An atom may be excited by absorbing a photon of light. From the relationship $E = hf$, we see that high-frequency light, such as ultraviolet, which lies beyond the visible

spectrum, delivers more energy per photon than lower-frequency light. Many substances undergo excitation when illuminated with ultraviolet light.

Many materials that are excited by ultraviolet light emit visible light upon de-excitation. The action of these materials is called **fluorescence.** In these materials, a photon of ultraviolet light excites the atom, boosting an electron to a higher energy state. In this upward quantum jump, the atom is likely to leapfrog over several intermediate energy states. So, when the atom de-excites, it may make smaller jumps, emitting several photons, each with less energy than the photon that got it all started.

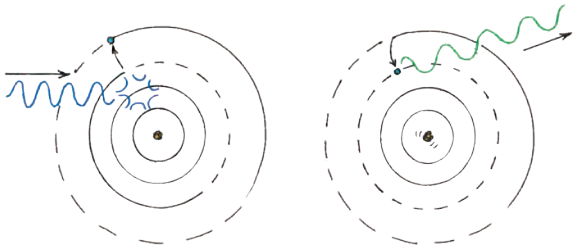


FIGURE 30.11
In fluorescence, the energy of the absorbed ultraviolet photon boosts the electron in an atom to a higher energy state. When the electron then returns to an intermediate state, the photon emitted is less energetic and therefore of a lower frequency than the ultraviolet photon.

This excitation and de-excitation process occurs quickly. It's like leaping up a small staircase in a single bound and then descending one or two steps at a time rather than leaping all the way down in a single bound. Photons of lower frequencies are emitted. Hence, ultraviolet light shining on the material causes it to glow an overall red, yellow, or whatever color is characteristic of the material. Fluorescent dyes are used in paints and fabrics to make them glow when they are bombarded with ultraviolet photons in sunlight. They can be spectacular when illuminated with an ultraviolet lamp.

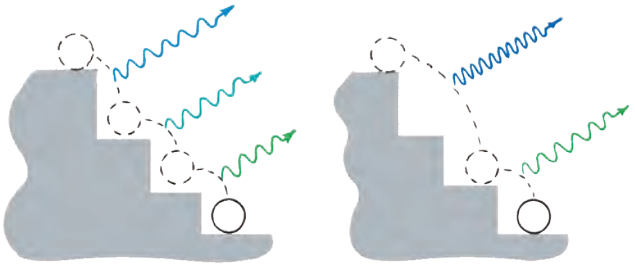


FIGURE 30.12
An excited atom may de-excite in several combinations of jumps.

Detergents that make the claim of cleaning your clothes "whiter than white" use the principle of fluorescence. Such detergents contain a fluorescent dye that converts the ultraviolet light in sunlight into blue visible light, so clothes washed in this way appear to reflect more blue light than they otherwise would. This makes the clothes appear whiter.[3]

The next time you visit a natural-science museum, go to the geology section and take in the exhibit of minerals illuminated with ultraviolet light (Figure 30.13). You'll notice that different minerals radiate various colors. This is to be expected because different minerals are composed of various elements, which, in turn, have a variety of sets of electron energy levels. Seeing the radiating minerals is a beautiful visual experience, which is even more fascinating when integrated with your knowledge of nature's submicroscopic happenings. High-energy ultraviolet photons strike the minerals, causing the excitation of atoms in the mineral structure. The frequencies of light that you see correspond

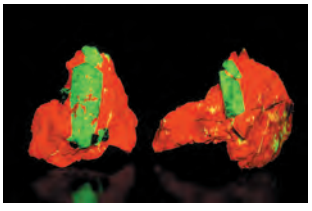


FIGURE 30.13
The rock contains the fluorescing minerals calcite and willemite, which, under ultraviolet light, are clearly seen as red and green, respectively.

[3]Interestingly enough, the same detergents marketed in Mexico and some other countries are adjusted for a rosier, warmer effect.

FIGURE 30.14
Crayons fluorescing in various colors under ultraviolet light.

to the tiny energy-level spacings as the energy cascades down. Every excited atom emits its characteristic frequencies, with no two different minerals emitting light of exactly the same color. Beauty is in both the eye and the mind of the beholder.

CHECK POINT

Why would it be impossible for a fluorescent material to emit an ultraviolet photon when illuminated by a photon of infrared light?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The photon energy output would be greater than the photon energy input, which would violate the law of conservation of energy.

fyi

- To make counterfeiting more difficult, many governments, including the U.S. government, use fluorescence. See this yourself by exposing recent U.S. currency to UV light. Near one end, a line will appear that cannot be seen with visible light. This fluorescent thread can be seen on the front and back of the bill. Change is ongoing.

30.7 Phosphorescence

When excited, certain crystals as well as some large organic molecules remain in a state of excitation for a prolonged period of time. Unlike what occurs in fluorescent materials, their electrons are boosted into higher energy levels and do not de-excite as quickly as in fluorescence. Instead, they in a sense become temporarily "stuck." As a result, there is a time delay between the processes of excitation and de-excitation. Materials that exhibit this peculiar property are said to have **phosphorescence.**

The element phosphorus is used in a variety of luminous materials, even toothbrushes, that are made to glow in the dark. The atoms or molecules in these materials are excited by incident visible light. Rather than de-exciting immediately, as fluorescent materials do, many of the atoms remain in a *metastable state*—a prolonged state of excitation—sometimes for as long as several hours, although most de-excite rather quickly. If the source of excitation is removed—for instance, if the lights are put out—an afterglow remains while millions of atoms spontaneously undergo gradual de-excitation. The afterglow of some phosphorescent light switches in the home may last more than an hour. Likewise for luminous clock dials of old that were excited by visible light. Some older clock dials glow indefinitely in the dark, not because of a long time delay between excitation and de-excitation, but because they contain radium or some other radioactive material that continuously supplies energy to keep the excitation process going. Such dials are no longer common because of the potential harm of the radioactive material to the user, especially if in a wristwatch or pocket watch.[4]

Many living creatures—from bacteria to fireflies and larger animals, such as jellyfish—chemically excite molecules in their bodies that emit light. We say that such living things are *bioluminescent*. Under some conditions, certain fish become luminescent when they swim but remain dark when stationary. Schools of these fish hang motionless and are not seen, but when they are alarmed, they streak the depths with sudden light, creating a sort of deep-sea fireworks. The mechanism of bioluminescence is not well understood and is currently being researched.

[4]A radioactive form of hydrogen called *tritium*, however, can serve to keep watch dials illuminated harmlessly. This is because its radiation doesn't have enough energy to penetrate the metal or plastic of the watch case.

CHECK POINT

Distinguish between fluorescence and phosphorescence in terms of time.

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Fluorescent materials emit light immediately after being excited. For phosphorescent materials there is a time delay. De-excitation is gradual.

30.8 Lamps

Incandescent Lamp

Lighting today is mainly by LEDs, but it wasn't always that way. We progressed from whale-oil lamps, gas lamps, and petroleum-fueled lamps before Thomas Edison changed the world with his incandescent bulb. A simplified version of the incandescent bulb, a glass enclosure with a filament of tungsten wire inside, through which electric current is passed, is shown in Figure 30.15. The current typically heats the filament to 2000 K to 3300 K, well below tungsten's melting point of 3695 K. The hot filament emits a continuous spectrum, mostly in the infrared, with visible light as the smaller and useful part. The glass enclosure prevents oxygen in air from reaching the hot filament, which otherwise would be destroyed by rapid oxidation. Eventually, the filament fails anyway because of its gradual evaporation, which leads finally to a break in the filament and to the bulb "burning out."

Typically, argon is the gas inside the enclosure. If a small amount of a halogen element such as iodine is added to the interior, the evaporation of the tungsten is slowed and the bulb lasts longer. The action of the halogen requires that the whole bulb be hotter (don't touch a glowing halogen lamp!), so the bulb is made smaller and usually encased in heat-resistant quartz. The halogen lamp may also be somewhat more efficient than the conventional incandescent lamp.

The efficiency of incandescent lightbulbs as visible light emitters is typically less than 10%. Hence, they are being replaced by lamps that convert a greater percentage of electric energy into visible light.

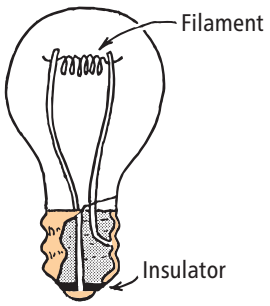


FIGURE 30.15
Simplified version of an incandescent bulb. A voltage source provides surges of energy to electrons in the high-resistance filament. A relatively small portion of this energy is converted to visible light.

fyi

- Although the incandescent bulb was not invented by Thomas Edison, he was the first to build one that outperformed other versions of the time and he went on to invent an entire integrated system of electric lighting.

Fluorescent Lamp

The common fluorescent lamp consists of a cylindrical glass tube with electrodes at each end (Figure 30.16). In the lamp, as in the tube of a neon sign, electrons are boiled from one of the electrodes and forced to vibrate to and fro at high speeds within the tube by the ac voltage. The tube is filled with very-low-pressure mercury vapor added to argon. Mercury atoms are excited by the impact of the high-speed electrons. Much of the emitted light is in the ultraviolet region.

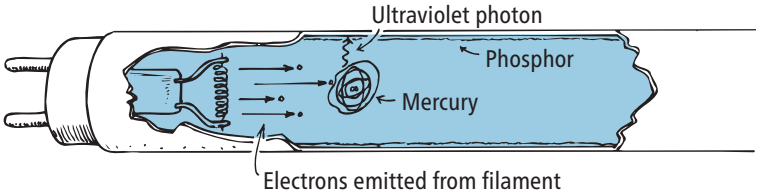


FIGURE 30.16
A fluorescent tube. Ultraviolet (UV) light is emitted by gas in the tube excited by an alternating electric current. The UV light, in turn, excites phosphors on the inner surface of the glass tube, which emit white light.

This is the primary excitation process. The secondary process occurs when the ultraviolet light strikes *phosphors*, a phosphorescent powdery material on the inner surface of the tube. The phosphors are excited by the absorption of the ultraviolet photons and fluoresce, emitting a multitude of lower-frequency photons that combine to produce white light. Different phosphors can be used to produce different colors or "textures" of light.

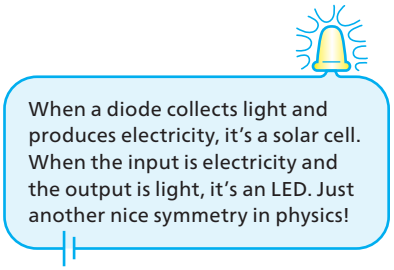
FIGURE 30.17
Angela shows her class two LEDs. The smaller one is used in flashlights and emits 15 times as much light per watt as an incandescent bulb. The larger one uses less than 8 W and gives as much light as an incandescent 60-W bulb.

Light-Emitting Diode

Recall from Chapter 23 our brief discussion of the electronic diode, a two-terminal device that permits the flow of electrical charge in only one direction and converts ac to dc in electrical circuits. Diodes serve a variety of functions, including regulation of voltage in circuits, signal amplification, measurement of illumination, and conversion of light to electricity as photocells. One kind of diode design is the reverse of a photocell, in that an impressed voltage stimulates the emission of light! This is a light-emitting diode (LED). The first LEDs developed in the 1960s produced the red light, and sometimes green light, common in instrument panels of the time. They let you know whether your music system was off or on. It took the creation of a blue diode in the early 1990s to produce white light. Recall that when blue is added to red and green, white light is the result. So it is with diodes. The combination of blue, red, and green diodes produces white.

Today the white-light LEDs for illumination have nearly replaced incandescent and fluorescent lighting. LEDs are compact and efficient, are long lasting (about 100 times longer than incandescent bulbs), and contain no harmful mercury as fluorescent lamps do. Lighting by LEDs is commonplace today.

In one common LED design, a layer of a semiconductor that contains free electrons is deposited onto the surface of another semiconductor that contains energy "holes" that can accept the free electrons. An electrical barrier at the boundary of these two materials blocks the flow of electrons (Figure 30.18a). But when an external voltage is applied, the barrier is overcome and energetic electrons cross over and "drop" into the energy "holes." In a way similar to de-excitation, dropped electrons lose electrical potential energy that is converted into quanta of light—photons (Figure 30.18b). Just as a bowling ball rolling off a table makes a loud "kerplunk" when it hits the floor, the analogous "kerplunk" of electrons in an LED is the emission of a photon. What's the energy carried by each photon? That's right, the same amount in each kerplunk—consistent with energy conservation.


When a diode collects light and produces electricity, it's a solar cell. When the input is electricity and the output is light, it's an LED. Just another nice symmetry in physics!

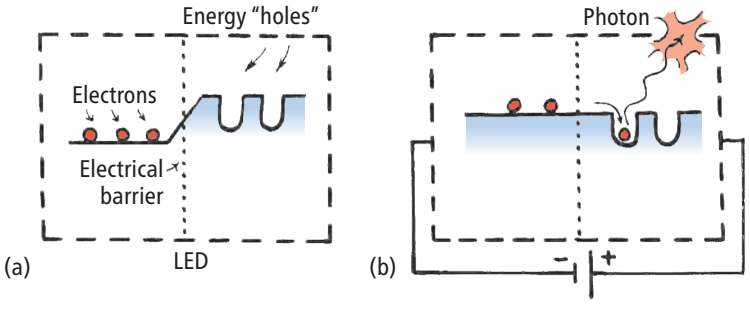


FIGURE 30.18
(a) An LED chip consists of two semiconductors, one with loose electrons and the other with "holes." (b) When a voltage is applied, electrons cross the barrier, occupy the "holes," and emit light. The 0.25-mm square chip is surrounded by a transparent epoxy dome (not shown) about 2–10 mm in diameter.

CHECK POINT

Why was the creation of the blue LED important for LED screens and lighting?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The white light seen in video screens and light bulbs requires not only commonplace red and green but also blue. Then the three colors add to produce white light.

fyi

- Japanese scientists Shuji Nakamura, Hiroshi Amano, and Isamu Akasaki were awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics in 2014 for the invention of the blue LED.

30.9 Lasers

The phenomena of excitation, fluorescence, and phosphorescence underlie the operation of a most intriguing instrument, the **laser** (light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation).[5] Although the first laser was conceived in 1958 and actually built in 1960, the concept of stimulated emission was predicted by Albert Einstein in 1917. To understand how a laser operates, we must first discuss *coherent light*.

Light emitted by a common lamp is incoherent; that is, photons of many frequencies and in many phases of vibration are emitted. The light is as incoherent as the footsteps on an auditorium floor when a mob of people are chaotically rushing about. Incoherent light is chaotic. A beam of incoherent light spreads out after a short distance, becoming wider and wider and less intense with increased distance.

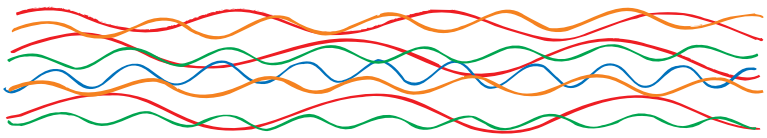


FIGURE 30.19
Incoherent white light contains waves of many frequencies (and of many wavelengths) that are out of phase with one another.

Even if the beam is filtered so that it consists of single-frequency waves (monochromatic light), it is still incoherent because the waves are out of phase with one another.

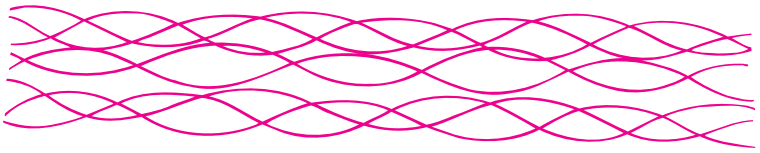


FIGURE 30.20
Light of a single frequency and wavelength still contains a mixture of phases.

A beam of photons that have the same frequency, phase, and direction—that is, a beam of photons that are identical copies of one another—is said to be *coherent*. A laser emits a beam of coherent light that spreads and weakens very little.[6]

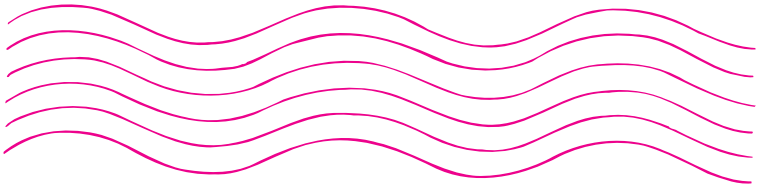


FIGURE 30.21
Coherent light. All the waves are identical, in phase, and in the same direction.

[5] A word constructed from the initials of a phrase is called an *acronym*.

[6] The narrowness of a laser beam is evident when you see a lecturer produce a tiny red spot on a screen using a laser "pointer." Light from an intense laser pointed at the Moon has been reflected and detected back on Earth, revealing the Earth–Moon distance to within a couple of centimeters or so.

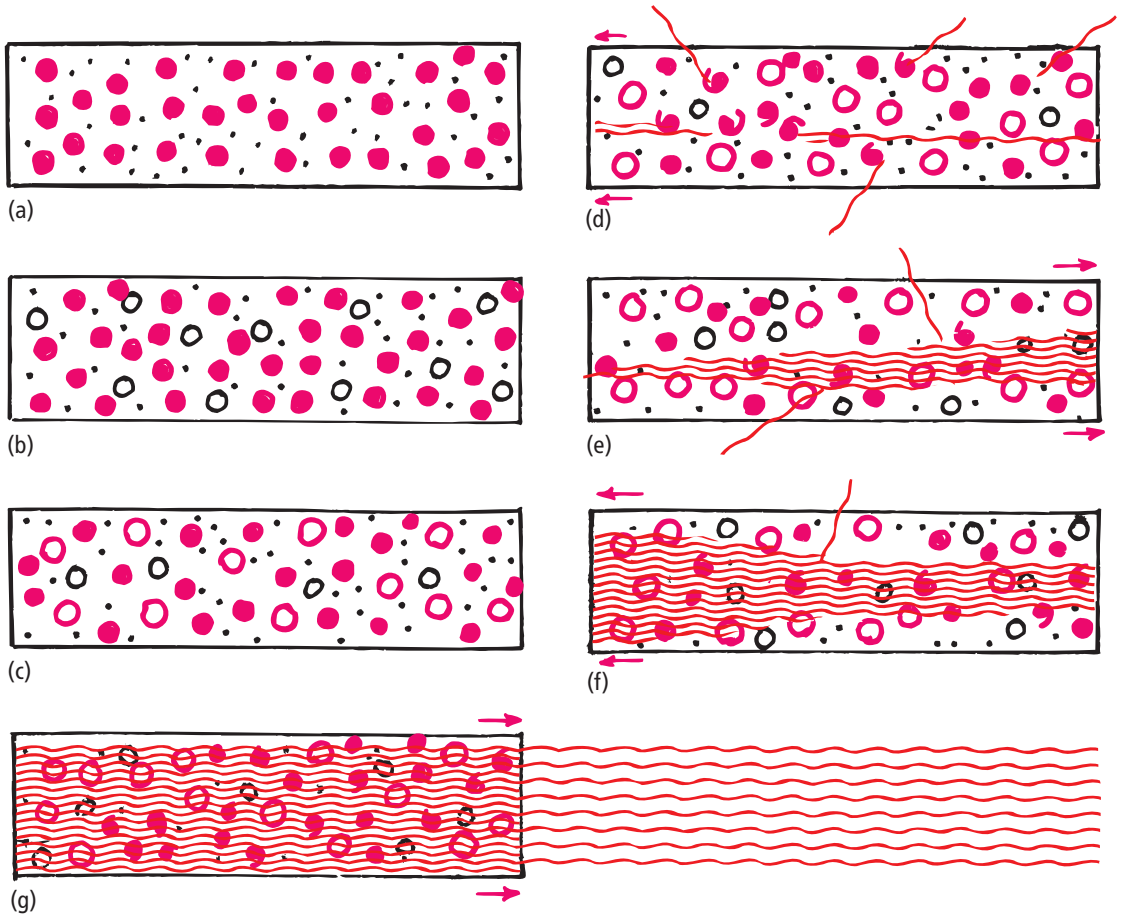


FIGURE 30.22
Laser action in a helium–neon laser.

(a) The laser consists of a narrow Pyrex tube that contains a low-pressure gas mixture consisting of 85% helium (small black dots) and 15% neon (large colored dots).

(b) When a high-voltage current zaps through the tube, it excites both helium and neon atoms to their usual higher states, and they immediately undergo de-excitation, except for one state in the helium that is characterized by a prolonged delay before de-excitation—a *metastable state*. Since this state is relatively stable, a sizable population of excited helium atoms (black open circles) is built up. These atoms wander about in the tube and act as an energy source for neon, which has an otherwise hard-to-come-by metastable state very close to the energy of the excited helium.

(c) When excited helium atoms collide with neon atoms in their lowest energy state (ground state), the helium gives up its energy to the neon, which is boosted to its metastable state (red open circles). The process continues, and the population of excited neon atoms soon outnumbers the neon atoms in a lower-energy excited state. This inverted population is, in effect, waiting to radiate its energy.

(d) Some neon atoms eventually de-excite and radiate red photons in the tube. When this radiant energy passes other excited neon atoms, the latter are stimulated into emitting photons exactly in phase with the radiant energy that stimulated the emission. Photons pass out of the tube in irregular directions, giving it a red glow.

(e) Photons moving parallel to the axis of the tube are reflected from specially coated parallel mirrors at the ends of the tube. The reflected photons stimulate the emission of photons from other neon atoms, thereby producing an avalanche of photons that have the same frequency, phase, and direction.

(f) The photons flash to and fro between the mirrors, becoming amplified with each pass.

(g) Some photons "leak" out of one of the mirrors, which is only partially reflecting. These make up the laser beam.

Every laser has a source of atoms called an active medium, which can be a gas, liquid, or solid (the first laser was a ruby crystal). The atoms in the medium are excited to metastable states by an external source of energy. When most of the atoms in the medium are excited, a single photon from an atom that undergoes de-excitation can start a chain reaction. This photon strikes another atom, stimulating it into emission, and so on, producing coherent light. Most of this light is initially moving in random directions. Light traveling along the laser axis, however, is reflected from mirrors coated to reflect light of the desired wavelength selectively. One mirror is totally reflecting, while the other is partially reflecting. The reflected waves reinforce each other after each round-trip reflection between the mirrors, thereby setting up a to-and-fro resonance condition in which the light builds up to an appreciable intensity. The light that escapes through the more transparent-mirrored end makes up the laser beam. In addition to gas and crystal lasers, other types have joined the laser family: glass, chemical, liquid, and semiconductor lasers. Present models produce beams ranging in frequency from infrared through ultraviolet. Some models can be tuned to various frequency ranges.

A laser is not a source of energy. It simply transforms one type of energy to another taking advantage of the process of stimulated emission to concentrate a certain fraction of its energy (commonly 1%) into radiant energy of a single frequency moving in a single direction. Like all devices, in accord with the conservation of energy, a laser can put out no more energy than is put into it.

CHECK POINT

Consider two lasers, one that emits a beam of red light and the other a beam of blue light. Assume the energy output of both is the same. (a) Which beam has the more energetic photons? (b) Which beam has the most photons?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

(a) Blue light is higher in frequency than red light, so in accord with $E = hf$, higher-frequency blue photons are more energetic than red photons.
(b) For the same energy output, a greater number of lower-energy red photons would be in the red beam. Notice that we distinguish between "energy *per*" and *total* energy.

Lasers have found wide use in surgery. Lasers are also used in cutting and welding procedures, mainly where small parts are involved. They cut cleanly. Laser beams weld wires into microcircuits and repair damaged wires inside of glass enclosures. Lasers were vital in reading CDs and DVDs, and they create holograms. One day, they may trigger controlled fusion power. A huge application is in communications. Whereas radio wavelengths span hundreds of meters and television wavelengths span many centimeters, wavelengths of laser light are measured in millionths of a centimeter. Correspondingly, laser-light frequencies are vastly higher than radio or television frequencies. As a result, laser light can transmit an enormous number of messages bunched into a very narrow band of frequencies. Communications can be carried in a laser beam directed through space, through the atmosphere, or through optical fibers (light pipes) that can be bent like cables.

A laser beam is not seen unless it scatters off something in the air. Like sunbeams or moonbeams, what you see are the particles in the scattering medium, not the beam itself. When the beam strikes a diffuse surface, part of it is scattered toward your eye as a dot.

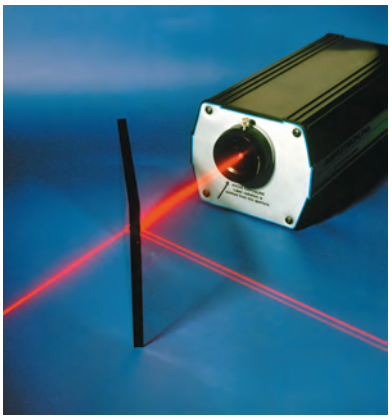


FIGURE 30.23
A helium–neon laser.

The laser is at work at supermarket checkout counters, where code-reading machines scan the Universal Product Code (UPC) symbol printed on packages and on the back cover of this book. Laser light is reflected from the bars and spaces and converted to an electric signal as the symbol is scanned. The signal rises to a high value when reflected from a bright space and falls to a low value when reflected from a dark bar. The information on the thickness and spacing of the bars is "digitized" (converted into the 1s and 0s of binary code) and processed by a computer.

Environmental scientists use lasers to measure and detect pollutants in exhaust gases. Different gases absorb light at characteristic wavelengths and leave their "fingerprints" on a reflected beam of laser light. The specific wavelength and amount of light absorbed are analyzed by a computer, which produces an immediate tabulation of the pollutants.

Lasers have ushered in a whole new technology, the promise of which we continually tap. The future for laser applications seems unlimited.

Chapter 30 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Excitation The process of boosting one or more electrons in an atom or molecule from a lower to a higher energy level. An atom in an excited state will usually decay (de-excite) rapidly to a lower state by the emission of a photon. The energy of the photon is proportional to its frequency: $E = hf$.

Emission spectrum The distribution of wavelengths in the light from a luminous source.

Spectroscope An optical instrument that separates light into its constituent wavelengths in the form of spectral lines.

Incandescence The state of glowing while at a high temperature, caused by electrons bouncing around over dimensions larger than the size of an atom, emitting radiant energy in the process. The peak frequency of radiant energy is proportional to the absolute temperature of the heated substance: $\overline{f} \sim T$.

Absorption spectrum A continuous spectrum, like that of white light, interrupted by dark lines or bands that result from the absorption of light of certain frequencies by a substance through which the radiant energy passes.

Fluorescence The property of certain substances to absorb radiation of one frequency and to re-emit radiation of lower frequency. Fluorescence occurs when an atom is boosted up to an excited state and loses its energy in two or more downward jumps to a lower energy state.

Phosphorescence A type of light emission that is the same as fluorescence except for a delay between excitation and de-excitation, which provides an afterglow. The delay is caused by atoms being excited to energy states that do not decay rapidly. The afterglow may last from fractions of a second to hours or even days, depending on the type of material, temperature, and other factors.

Laser (**l**ight **a**mplification by **s**timulated **e**mission of **r**adiation) An optical instrument that produces a beam of coherent monochromatic light.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

30.1 Light Emission

1. Electrons made to vibrate to and fro at a few hundred thousand hertz emit radio waves. If the electrons could be made to vibrate at a few million billion hertz, what class of waves would be emitted?
2. What does it mean to say that a set of energy states is *discrete*?
3. Which two models explain light emission?

30.2 Excitation

4. Which has more electric potential energy relative to the nucleus, close electrons or distant ones?
5. In a neon tube, what is immediately emitted after an atom is excited?
6. Cite the equation that relates the *energy* of a photon to its vibrational frequency.

7. Which has the higher *frequency,* red or blue light? Which has the greater *energy* per photon, red or blue light?
8. Can a neon atom in a glass tube be excited more than once? Explain.
9. What gas common in street lamps glows orange-yellow?
10. How does the process of excitation relate to the Aurora Borealis?

30.3 Emission Spectra

11. What is a *spectroscope,* and what does it accomplish?
12. Why are spectra composed of lines? Why not circles?
13. Why are there a greater number of spectral lines than energy levels in an atom?
14. What do the various colors displayed in the flame of a burning log indicate?

30.4 Incandescence

15. When a gas glows, discrete colors are emitted. When a solid glows, the colors are smudged. Why?
16. Cite the proportion that relates the temperature of an object to the peak frequency of light that it emits.
17. How much hotter is a violet-hot star than a red-hot star?

30.5 Absorption Spectra

18. How does an absorption spectrum differ in appearance from an emission spectrum?
19. What are Fraunhofer lines?
20. How can astrophysicists tell whether a star is receding from or approaching Earth?

30.6 Fluorescence

21. Can an electron be boosted to a high level and return in steps to its initial level?
22. Why is ultraviolet light, but not infrared light, effective in making certain materials fluoresce?

30.7 Phosphorescence

23. Distinguish between *fluorescence* and *phosphorescence.*
24. What is a *metastable state?*

30.8 Lamps

25. Why is argon, instead of air, used inside an incandescent bulb?
26. Distinguish between the primary and secondary excitation processes that occur in a fluorescent lamp.
27. How does the lifetime of a typical LED compare with that of an incandescent bulb?

30.9 Lasers

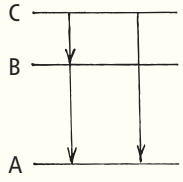
28. Distinguish between *monochromatic light* and sunlight.
29. Distinguish between *coherent light* and sunlight.
30. How does the avalanche of photons in a laser beam differ from the hordes of photons emitted by an incandescent lamp?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Chat with or write a letter to Grandma to explain how light is emitted from lamps, flames, and lasers. Tell her why fluorescent dyes and paints are so impressively vivid when illuminated with an ultraviolet lamp.
32. Borrow a diffraction grating (Figure 30.5) from your physics instructor. Light passing through it or reflecting from it is diffracted into its component colors by thousands of finely ruled lines. You'll see an altered environment. Some party glasses are diffraction gratings. See what you see!

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

33. In the diagram, the energy difference between states A and B is twice the energy difference between states B and C. In a transition (quantum jump) from C to B, an electron emits a photon of wavelength 600 nm.
    (a) What is the wavelength emitted when the photon jumps from B to A?
    (b) When it jumps from C to A?

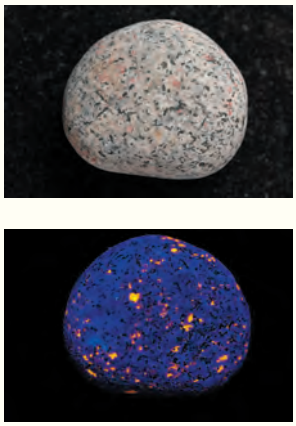


THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

34. Which is more energetic: a gamma-ray photon or an X-ray photon, and why?
35. What accounts for the variety of colored flames when you burn various materials in a campfire?
36. Blue light is emitted when electrons in a substance make a particular energy-level transition. If red light were instead emitted from the substance, would it correspond to a greater or lesser change of energy in the atom? Why?

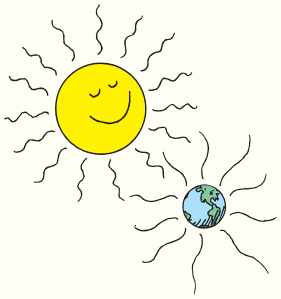
37. We previously learned that ultraviolet light causes sunburns, whereas visible light, even of greater intensity, does not. Why is this so?
38. Often, when entering a social club, your hand is stamped with an ink that, under normal lighting, doesn't show. When you reenter the club, your hand is exposed to ultraviolet light, in which the ink is clearly visible. What physics is happening here?
39. If you reduce the frequency of a photon in half, its energy will also reduce in half. If, instead, we reduce the wavelength of the photon in half, what will happen to its energy?
40. Is it possible to get lights of different colors from a single discharge lamp using any of the noble gases?
41. You see a display of "neon" lights including different tubes glowing in a variety of colors. Should you believe that all of these tubes are filled with neon gas? Why or why not?

42. Why do we see linear spectral lines in a spectroscope? Is it possible to change the shape of the spectral line?
43. Name a practical observation that would suggest that the light coming from the Sun is white.
44. What is the difference between the yellow light produced by a sodium lamp and by a diode laser?
45. Do you think that the true color of the Sun is yellow? Justify your answer.
46. What do the fingerprints of you and your friends have in common with the spectra of the elements?
47. What is the fundamental difference between the light produced by a neon lamp and a tungsten filament?
48. For which of the following reasons do you think tungsten is used as the filament for incandescent lamps: (a) high melting point, (b) low melting point, (c) highly reactive to oxygen, and (d) having a number of unpaired electrons.
49. Between H and He, which do you think will have the greater number of spectral lines and why?
50. Let's say an element A absorbs UV light, and another element B absorbs red light. Which energy difference is higher, comparing between the two energy states of A and B before and after absorbing the UV-light and red light, respectively?
51. What is meant by *bioluminescent*?
52. Photocatalysts are materials that get activated when exposed to UV radiation. Would you expect the reaction to implement upon infrared irradiation?
53. Why is it advisable to wear fluorescent jackets while walking on a street?
54. Why do the dials of old clocks glow for a prolonged period in the dark?
55. The upper photo shows a certain mineral illuminated with common white light. The lower photo shows glow of the same mineral when illuminated with ultraviolet. Why do the two kinds of illumination produce such different results?

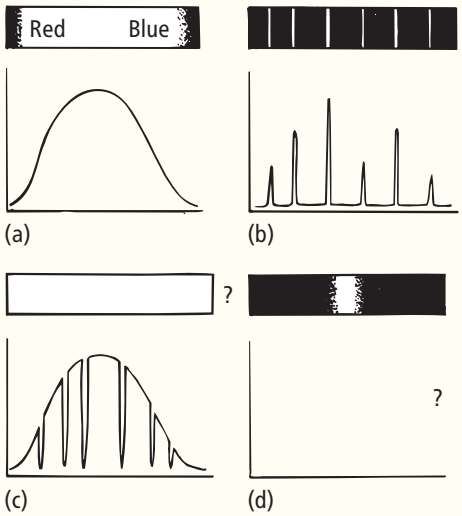


56. Would you use laser light or white light for guiding a missile? Justify.
57. The first laser consisted of a red ruby rod activated by a photoflash tube that emitted green light. Why would a laser composed of a green crystal rod and a photoflash tube that emits red light not work?
58. Why is laser light not preferred for illuminating rooms for everyday use?
59. How do the avalanches of photons in a laser beam differ from the hordes of photons emitted by an incandescent lamp?
60. In the equation, $\overline{f} \sim T$, in your own words, what do the symbols f and T represent, and how is this relationship important in your everyday world?

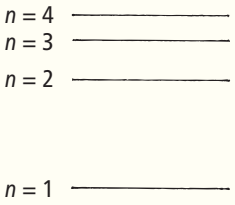
61. Comment on the light produced by tungsten filament and by tungsten gas in vaporized form.
62. We know that the Sun radiates energy. Does Earth similarly radiate energy? If so, what is different about their radiations?



63. Because every object has some temperature, every object radiates energy. Why, then, can't we see objects in the dark?
64. Going back to Chapter 16, because all bodies radiate energy, why don't all bodies become cooler?
65. Consider two hot metals, one appears yellow-hot and the other appears red-hot. Which one is hotter?
66. How can you compare the surface energies of two stars just by observing their color (observed without any scattering)?
67. Is it possible to measure the speed of the stars by examining the spectra they emit? Explain.
68. Sketch (a) above right shows a radiation curve of an incandescent solid and its spectral pattern as produced with a spectroscope. Sketch (b) shows the "radiation curve" of an excited gas and its emission spectral pattern. Sketch (c) shows the curve produced when a cool gas is between an incandescent source and the viewer; the corresponding spectral pattern is left as an exercise for you to construct. Sketch (d) shows the spectral pattern of an incandescent source as seen through a piece of green glass; you are to sketch in the corresponding radiation curve.



69. Consider just four of the energy levels in a certain atom, as shown in the diagram. How many spectral lines will result from all possible transitions among these levels? Which transition corresponds to the highest-frequency light emitted? To the lowest-frequency light emitted?

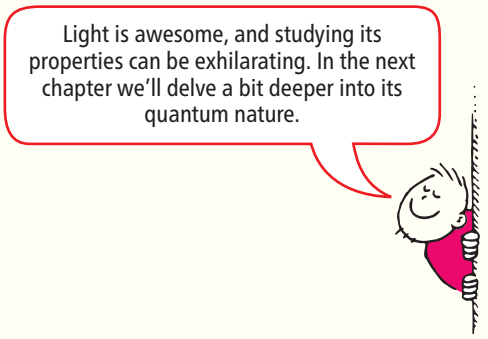


70. The energy separation for the electronic state in an atom between the ground state to the excited state is 5eV. Is it possible to excite the electron by employing 4.9 eV?
71. Suppose the four energy levels in question 69 were somehow evenly spaced. How many spectral lines would result?

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

72. Your friend reasons that if ultraviolet light can activate the process of *fluorescence,* infrared light ought to also. Your friend looks to you for approval or disapproval of this idea. What is your position?
73. A friend narrates a situation where an unknown material requires radiation of wavelength 625 nm to excite its electronic state. After excitation, it will emit radiation with a wavelength of 540 nm to reach the ground state. Would you believe his narration? Justify.
74. Some of your friends may be concerned that radiation from cellphones or cellphone towers could cause cancer. Most scientific research to date has not found evidence to back up any such concerns. From a photon-energy point of view, why would we expect that exposure to radio waves from cell phones should *not* cause cancer?

75. A dental X-ray, by its very nature, exposes you to low doses of X-rays, the photons of which are individually very energetic. (This dose is less than the natural amount of radiation you would receive from the environment in a day or two. Is this a reason to avoid dental X-rays? Explain your reasoning.
76. Modern dental fillings use a resin that does not harden until a blue light shining on it initiates a chemical reaction within the resin that causes it to harden. Until the blue light is shone on it, the filling material can be packed and shaped by the dentist. How does the initial flexibility of the resin and its photo-induced hardening relate to $E \sim f$?
77. What is the basic distinction between a solar cell and an LED (Light-Emitting Diode)?
78. Can you predict or identify the presence of elements in distant stars from Earth? Explain.
79. What difference does an astronomer see between the emission spectrum of an element in a receding star and a spectrum of the same element in the lab? (*Hint:* This relates to information in Chapter 19.)
80. A blue-hot star is about twice as hot as a red-hot star. But the temperatures of the gases in advertising signs are about the same, whether they emit red or blue light. Discuss your explanation.
81. Sodium lamps are used in most optical experiments in the laboratory. Is sodium monochromatic?
82. Because an absorbing gas re-emits the light it absorbs, why are there dark lines in an absorption spectrum? That is, why doesn't the re-emitted light simply fill in the dark places? This makes an intriguing discussion.
83. In the operation of a helium–neon laser, why is it important that the metastable state of helium be relatively long-lived? (What would be the effect of this state de-exciting too rapidly?) (Discuss and refer to Figure 30.22.)
84. In the operation of a helium–neon laser, discuss why is it important that the metastable state in the helium atom closely match the energy level of a more-difficult-to-come-by metastable state in neon.
85. A laser cannot produce more energy than is put into it. A laser can, however, produce pulses of light with more power output than the power input required to run the laser. Discuss why this is so.
86. If you have to heat a piece of copper sheet using irradiation from a laser beam, and you have two lasers, one red and another blue, then which one will serve the purpose faster?
87. We can heat a piece of metal to red-hot and then to white-hot. Discuss whether we can heat it until the metal glows blue-hot.
88. Suppose a material A corresponds to a peak in 2000 °C, and another material B corresponds to a peak in 1800 °C in the radiation curve for incandescent solids, then which one is radiating higher energy?
89. Why is a violet-hot star considered to have double the surface temperature of a red-hot star?
90. We perceive a "green-hot" star not as green but as white. Why? (*Hint:* In your discussion, consider the radiation curve back in Figures 27.7 and 27.8, and in Figure 30.8.)


Light is awesome, and studying its properties can be exhilarating. In the next chapter we'll delve a bit deeper into its quantum nature.

CHAPTER THIRTY Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. From a classical point of view, light from the flame of a lit match is produced by shaking
   (a) electrons.
   (b) protons.
   (c) neutrons.
   (d) All of the above
2. The energy of a photon mostly relates to its
   (a) speed.
   (b) frequency.
   (c) amplitude.
   (d) All of the above
3. Which of these colors of visible light carries the most energy per photon?
   (a) Red
   (b) Green
   (c) Blue
   (d) All the same
4. A red beam of light and a violet beam of light are adjusted so each carries the same energy. The beam with the greater number of photons is
   (a) the violet beam, which has the most energetic photons.
   (b) the red beam, which has the most energetic photons.
   (c) either beam, for each have equal numbers of photons.
   (d) the red beam.
5. If wavelengths of emitted light somehow stretch to become longer, the energy per photon of the light
   (a) increases.
   (b) remains constant.
   (c) decreases.
   (d) None of the above
6. The hottest star is the one that glows
   (a) red.
   (b) white.
   (c) blue.
   (d) Need more information
7. The iron absorption lines in the solar spectrum indicate that iron exists in the solar
   (a) atmosphere.
   (b) surface.
   (c) interior.
   (d) None of the above
8. In the process of fluorescence, the input is high-frequency light and the output is
   (a) higher-frequency light.
   (b) equally high-frequency light.
   (c) lower-frequency light.
   (d) None of the above
9. A paint pigment that absorbs blue light and gives off red light
   (a) is fluorescent.
   (b) is phosphorescent.
   (c) Can be both of these
   (d) Neither of these
10. Compared to the energy put into a laser, the energy of the laser beam is
    (a) usually much more.
    (b) much less.
    (c) the same.
    (d) None of the above

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (a): Shaking electrons are accelerating electrons. Know that accelerating electric charge is the source of all light. Low mass electrons in a flame shake considerably more than protons. Around a neutron there's no electric charge to shake. **2. (b):** In accord with $E = hf$, photon energy relates directly to its frequency of vibration. All photons have the same speed. Energy may relate to the amplitude of a sound wave, but not to a photon. **3. (d):** In accord with $E = hf$, the highest frequency of the choices is blue. Highest frequency means most energy per photon. **4. (d):** Red light is lower in frequency and therefore carries less energy per photon than violet light. To have the same energy in the beam means a greater number of lower-energy red photons. If, for example, as many violet photons were in the beam, the beam energy would be greater. We distinguish between "energy *per*" and *total* energy. **5. (c):** A long wavelength means a low frequency, which then means decreased energy per photon. $E = hf$ states the energy per photon in terms of frequency. In terms of wavelength recall from $c = f\lambda$, that $f = c/\lambda$. So we can say $E = hc/\lambda$, which tells us that a longer wavelength λ corresponds to less energy per photon. **6. (c):** In accord with $f \sim T$, the star with the highest average temperature T will be the one with the highest average frequency of emitted radiation. A blue-hot star has a higher peak frequency of radiation than a red or white star. This is a "reading the equation" type of question. **7. (a):** Absorption of light through an atmosphere, or any gas, shows the atoms that make up the gas. There is likely iron in the interior and surface of the Sun, but iron's presence is revealed in absorption lines in the Sun's atmosphere. Hence the best answer (a). **8. (c)** Think conservation of energy. When fluorescence occurs, high-frequency UV excites molecules that emit lower-frequency visible light. The other way around would be a conservation of energy no no. **9. (c):** Think conservation of energy. Output energy cannot exceed input energy. The red "output" for either fluorescence or phosphorescence is of lower energy than the absorbed blue light. So either can occur. **10. (b):** Think conservation of energy. In any practical device, energy output is less than energy input. So lower-energy light is emitted by a laser. And as Section 30.9 tells us, commonly about 1%.

CHAPTER THIRTY ONE

31 Light Quanta

31.1 Birth of the Quantum Theory

31.2 Quantization and Planck's Constant

31.3 Photoelectric Effect
Photovoltaic Cells

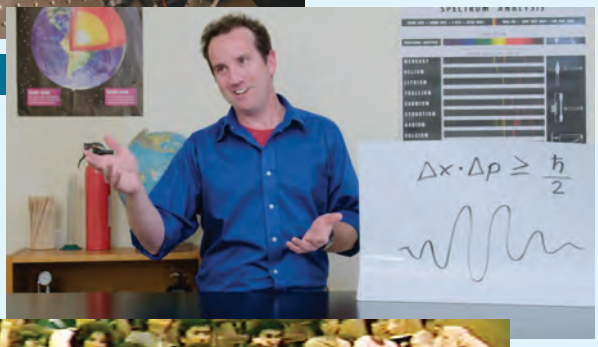
31.4 Wave–Particle Duality

31.5 Double-Slit Experiment

31.6 Particles as Waves: Electron Diffraction

31.7 Uncertainty Principle

31.8 Complementarity



1 Phil Wolf, coauthor of *Problem Solving in Conceptual Physics*, demonstrates the photoelectric effect by directing light of different frequencies onto a photocell and measuring the energies of ejected electrons. **2** Anne Cox, coauthor of *Physlet Quantum Physics*, aligns an optical tweezer with her students at Eckerd College in Florida. **3** Teacher trainer James Lincoln of PhysicsVideos.com explains that Heisenberg's uncertainty principle is significant only for submicroscopic quantum events. **4** The author's physics class in the previous century.

As a youth in Germany, Max Planck was a gifted musician. He sang, played musical instruments, and composed songs and operas. Instead of studying music, however, he chose to study physics, earning his doctorate in 1879 when he was 21. At the time, the two great theories of physics being actively pursued were thermodynamics, the study of heat, and electromagnetism, the study of radiation. Little did Planck guess that in trying to blend these two fields, he would usher in a whole new physics of the 20th century—*quantum mechanics*.

In 1900, perplexing questions about the radiation of thermal energy remained unanswered. The way in which the energy of thermal radiation is distributed over different frequencies had been carefully measured, but no one had been able to provide a theory to account for the results. In hopes of providing a theoretical answer, Planck, at the "advanced" age of 42, made a hypothesis that he called "an act of despair." He proposed that when a warm object emits radiant energy, it loses energy not continuously but in discrete amounts, or lumps, which he called *quanta*. Moreover, he postulated that the quantum of energy that is radiated is proportional to the frequency of the radiation. With this theory Planck could explain how the energy in thermal radiation is distributed over different frequencies. Five years later Einstein (then 26) took the next step, proposing not only that energy is added to light in quantum units but also that light itself exists as quantum lumps, or "corpuscles," later named photons.

In recognition for introducing the quantum, Planck was awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1918. Interestingly, Planck himself never accepted the photon idea. In 1912, in a classic putdown, Planck wrote that because of other achievements, Einstein deserved membership in the Prussian Academy of Sciences, despite having gone astray in proposing a corpuscle of light.

Planck had twin daughters, Emma and Grete, and two sons, Karl and Erwin. During the First World War his younger son, Erwin, was taken prisoner by the French in 1914, and his older son, Karl, was killed in action at Verdun. Soon after and two years apart, both daughters died while giving birth. Planck endured these losses stoically.

When Hitler came to power in 1933, Planck at first hoped that Nazism would be a temporary affliction, but eventually he made his distaste for the Nazis clear, and in 1938 he resigned the presidency of the Prussian Academy in protest. In 1944, at the height of World War II, Planck's house in Berlin was completely destroyed by Allied bombing raids. In the same year his son Erwin was implicated in the attempt made on Hitler's life in the famed July 20 plot. Although it is said that Erwin could have been spared had Planck joined the Nazi Party, Planck took a stand and refused to join. Erwin was hanged in early 1945, which devastated his elderly father. Planck died two years later in 1947, at age 89.

31.1 Birth of the Quantum Theory

The classical physics that we have so far studied deals with two categories of phenomena: particles and waves. In accord with Newton's laws, "particles" are tiny objects like bullets that have mass and travel through space in straight lines unless a force acts upon them. Likewise, "waves," like those of sound or in the ocean, are phenomena that *extend* in space. When a wave travels through an opening or around a barrier, the wave diffracts and different parts of the wave interfere. Therefore, particles and waves are easy to distinguish from each other. In fact, they have properties that are mutually exclusive. Nonetheless, the question of how to classify light was a mystery for centuries.

One of the early theories about the nature of light is that of Plato, who lived in the 5th and 4th centuries BC. Plato thought that light consisted of streamers emitted by the eye. Euclid, who lived roughly a century later, also held this view. On the other hand, the Pythagoreans believed that light emanated from luminous bodies in the form of very fine particles, while Empedocles, a predecessor of Plato, taught that light is composed of high-speed waves of some sort. For more than 2000 years, the question remained unanswered. Does light consist of waves or particles?

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

In 1704, Isaac Newton described light as a stream of particles. He held this view despite his knowledge of what we now call polarization and despite his experiment with light reflecting from glass plates, in which he noticed fringes of brightness and darkness (Newton's rings). He knew that his particles of light had to have certain wave properties too. Christian Huygens, a contemporary of Newton, advocated a wave theory of light.

With all this history as background, Thomas Young, in 1801, performed the "double-slit experiment," which seemed to prove, finally, that light is a wave phenomenon. This view was reinforced in 1862 by Maxwell's prediction that light carries energy in oscillating electric and magnetic fields. Twenty-five years later, Heinrich Hertz used sparking electric circuits to demonstrate the reality of electromagnetic waves (of radio frequency). As mentioned in the profile of Max Planck on the previous page, in 1900, Planck hypothesized that when matter emits or absorbs radiant energy, it does so in discrete bundles, each of which he called a **quantum.** (The plural of quantum is *quanta*.) He visualized the radiation field as analogous to a swimming pool whose water could be subdivided into arbitrarily small droplets (overlooking water's molecular structure) but which could gain or lose water only a bucketful at a time. According to Planck, the energy of each bundle (or "bucketful") is proportional to the frequency of the radiation ($E \sim f$, which we treated in Chapter 30). His hypothesis began a revolution of ideas that has completely changed the way we think about the physical world. Five years later, in 1905, Albert Einstein extended Planck's work by suggesting that light itself is made up of quantum units, which he called corpuscles (and later came to be called photons)[1]. The body of laws developed from 1900 to the late 1920s that describe all that goes on in the microworld is known as **quantum physics.**

CHECK POINT

Who considered light to be a stream of quantum bundles—Planck, or Einstein?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Planck imagined that the energy of *matter* changes by quantum amounts, and didn't yet see what Einstein saw five years later, that *light itself* occurs in streams of quantum bundles—later called photons.

31.2 Quantization and Planck's Constant

Quantization, the idea that the natural world is granular rather than continuously smooth, is certainly not a new idea to physics. Matter is quantized; the mass of a bar of gold, for example, is equal to some whole-number multiple of the mass of a single gold atom. Electricity is quantized, as electric charge is always some whole-number multiple of the charge of a single electron.

Quantum physics states that in the microworld of the atom, the amount of energy in any system is quantized—not all values of energy are possible. This is analogous to saying that a campfire can be only so hot. It might burn at 450°C or it might burn at 451°C, but it can't burn at 450.5°C. Believe it? Well, you shouldn't because as far as our macroscopic thermometers can measure, a campfire can

[1]Einstein's corpuscles were not readily accepted by his physics colleagues (Planck himself later suggested that this error of Einstein should be overlooked because so much of Einstein's other work had been excellent). Not until 1923 did convincing experimental evidence support the reality of light corpuscles (named photons in 1926). Now physicists think of the photon as "just another particle."

burn at any temperature as long as it's above the minimum temperature that is required for combustion. But the energy of the campfire, interestingly enough, is the composite of a great number and a large variety of elemental units of energy. A simpler example is the energy in a beam of laser light, which is a whole-number multiple of a single lowest value of energy—one quantum. The quanta of light, and of electromagnetic radiation in general, are the photons.

Recall from the previous chapter that the energy of a photon is given by $E = hf$, where h is **Planck's constant** (the single number that results when the energy of a photon is divided by its frequency).[2] We shall see that Planck's constant is a fundamental constant of nature that serves to set a lower limit on the smallness of things. It ranks with the velocity of light and Newton's gravitational constant as a basic constant of nature, and it appears again and again in quantum physics. The equation $E = hf$ gives the smallest amount of energy that can be converted to light with frequency f. The radiation of light is not emitted continuously but is emitted as a stream of photons, with each photon throbbing at a frequency f and carrying an energy hf.

The equation $E = hf$ tells us why microwave radiation can't do the damage to molecules in living cells that ultraviolet light and X-rays can. Electromagnetic radiation interacts with matter only in discrete bundles of photons. So the relatively low frequency of microwaves ensures low energy per photon. Ultraviolet photons, on the other hand, can deliver about a million times more energy to a molecule because the frequency of ultraviolet radiation is about a million times greater than the frequency of microwaves. X-rays, with even higher frequencies, can deliver even more.

Quantum physics tells us that the physical world is a coarse, grainy place. The "commonsense" world described by classical physics seems smooth and continuous because quantum graininess is on a very small scale compared with the sizes of things in the familiar world. Planck's constant is small in terms of familiar units. But you don't have to enter the quantum world to encounter graininess underlying apparent smoothness. For example, the blending areas of black, white, and gray in the photograph of Max Planck on page 687 and other photographs in this book do not look smooth at all when viewed through a magnifying glass. With magnification, you can see that a printed photograph consists of many tiny dots. In a similar way, we live in a world that is a blurred image of the grainy world of atoms.

Photons, electrons, and other particles all behave as if they were lumps in some respects and waves in others.

CHECK POINT

1. **What does the term *quantum* mean?**
2. **How much total energy is in a monochromatic beam composed of *n* photons of frequency *f*?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. A *quantum* is the smallest elemental unit of light, or a quantity. Radiant energy, for example, is composed of many quanta, each of which is called a *photon*. So the more photons in a beam of light, the more energy in that beam.
2. The total energy in a monochromatic beam of light containing n quanta is $E = nhf$.

[2]Planck's constant, h, has the numerical value 6.6×10^{-34} J · s.

CONSTANTS IN NATURE

Physical constants are quantities in nature that never change. One of the most notable is the constant h, which links the energy E of a photon to its oscillation frequency f. Dividing E by f produces the number 6.626×10^{-34} J•s, which in honor of Max Planck we call h, the same symbol he assigned to it. The relationship $E = hf$ holds everywhere in the universe, as far as we can tell.

Some people find the precise value of Planck's constant h mysterious—and amazing—for if it were the slightest bit lower, hydrogen in stars wouldn't convert to helium and energy. Without that energy, stars wouldn't shine. And no shining stars, no life. Is it profound to say that h is "just right" for life? Likely not, for when we look around and measure values of physical constants, of course we see and measure what is conducive to life. We're here!

Another significant constant in nature is G, the universal gravitational constant. This constant converts the proportion asserted by Isaac Newton, $F \sim m_1 m_2 / r^2$, into the exact equation $F = Gm_1 m_2 / r^2$. This equation makes it possible to determine the numerical value of G from measured quantities: Just divide the force F by $m_1 m_2 / r^2$. Expressed in SI units, G is 6.67×10^{-11} N•m^2/kg^2. There is no mystery here. In some other set of units, it would have a different but equal value.

We can also think of geometrical relationships as "laws of nature." For instance, the number π in the formula $C = \pi d$ is a constant in Euclidean geometry. It links a circle's circumference to its diameter. Isn't that just the way "it is" in this world in which we live?

Constants such as G, h, and π, allow us to express relationships found in nature in unambiguous terms—mathematically. These constants are a *part of nature*. They don't *determine* nature. Gravitational forces are not determined by G. Planck's constant h does not determine that energy is carried by photons. Circles don't exist because of π. We shouldn't see a mystery where there is none. Now, what *is* a mystery is *why* the universe exists. That's a more intriguing and much bigger question.

31.3 Photoelectric Effect

In the latter part of the 19th century, several investigators noticed that light was capable of ejecting electrons from various metal surfaces. This is the **photoelectric effect,** for many years used in electric-eye door openers, in the photographer's light meter, and, before digital, in the sound tracks of motion pictures. An extension of the photoelectric effect is today's photovoltaic electric cells in solar panels and their use as a major power source.

An arrangement for observing the photoelectric effect is shown in Figure 31.1. Light shining on the curved negatively charged photosensitive metal surface liberates electrons. The liberated electrons are attracted to the positive plate and produce a measurable current. If we instead charge this plate with just enough negative charge that it repels electrons, the current can be stopped. We can then calculate the energies of the ejected electrons from the easily measured potential difference between the plates.

The photoelectric effect was not particularly surprising to early investigators. The ejection of electrons could be accounted for by classical physics, which pictures the incident light waves building an electron's vibration up to greater and greater amplitudes until it finally breaks loose from the metal surface, just

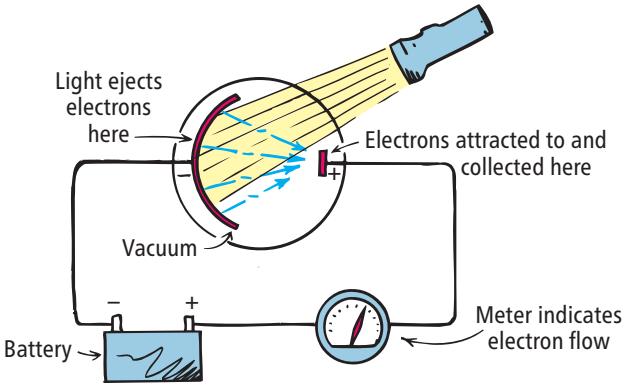


FIGURE 31.1
An apparatus used for observing the photoelectric effect. Reversing the polarity and stopping the electron flow provide a way to measure the energy of the electrons.

as water molecules break loose from the surface of heated water. It should take considerable time for a weak source of light to give electrons in a metal enough energy to make them boil off the surface. Instead, it was found that electrons are ejected as soon as the light is turned on—but not as many are ejected as with a strong light source. Careful examination of the photoelectric effect led to several observations that were quite contrary to the classical wave picture:

1. The time lag between turning on the light and the ejection of the first electrons was unaffected by the brightness or frequency of the light.
2. The effect was easy to observe with violet or ultraviolet light but not with red light.
3. The rate at which electrons were ejected was proportional to the brightness of the light.
4. The maximum energy of the ejected electrons was unaffected by the brightness of the light, but it did depend on the frequency of the light.

The absence of a time lag was especially difficult to understand in terms of waves. It took practically no time for a weak source of light of the right frequency to impart enough energy to eject electrons from the surface. An electron in dim light should, after some delay, accumulate sufficient vibrational energy for ejection, while an electron in bright light should be ejected almost immediately. But that was not observed. Even dim light caused immediate ejection of some electrons, and the brightness of light had no effect on the energies of the ejected electrons. A brighter light ejected more electrons (Figure 31.3), but not at greater energies. And a weak beam of ultraviolet light produced a smaller number of ejected electrons but at much higher energies. All of this was perplexing. As discussed in Section 31.1, Einstein offered an answer in 1905, the same year he explained Brownian motion and set forth his theory of special relativity. His clue was Max Planck's quantum theory of radiation. Planck had concluded that the energy of *matter* changes by quantum amounts. He hadn't yet seen what Einstein saw five years later—that *light* itself comes in quantum bundles. Einstein attributed quantum properties to light itself and viewed radiation as a hail of corpuscles that we now call photons. One photon is completely absorbed by each electron ejected from the metal. The absorption is an all-or-nothing process and is immediate, so there is no delay as "wave energies" build up.

A light wave has a broad front, and its energy is spread out along this front. For the light wave to eject a single electron from a metal surface, all its energy would somehow have to be concentrated on that one electron. But this is as improbable as an ocean wave hurling a boulder far inland with an energy equal to that of the whole wave. Therefore, instead of thinking of light encountering a surface as a continuous train of waves, the photoelectric effect suggests we conceive of light encountering a surface or any detector as a succession of particles—photons. The number of photons in a light beam affects the brightness of the *whole beam*, whereas the frequency of the light dictates the energy of each *individual photon*.

Electrons are held in a metal by attractive electrical forces. A minimum energy, called the *work function*, W_0, is required for an electron to leave the surface. A low-frequency photon with energy less than W_0 won't produce electron ejection. Only a photon with energy greater than W_0 results in the photoelectric effect. Thus the energy of the incoming photon will be equal to the outgoing kinetic energy of the electron plus the energy required to get it out of the metal, W_0.

Experimental verification of Einstein's explanation of the photoelectric effect was demonstrated 11 years later by the American physicist Robert Millikan. Interestingly, Millikan spent some 10 years trying to disprove Einstein's theory of the photon only to become convinced of it as a result of his own experiments, which won him a Nobel Prize. Every aspect of Einstein's interpretation was confirmed,

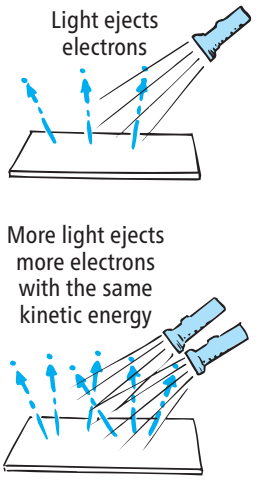


FIGURE 31.2
The photoelectric effect depends on intensity.

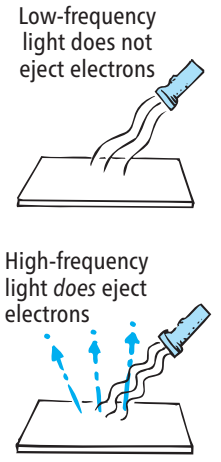


FIGURE 31.3
The photoelectric effect depends on frequency.

You may have encountered a vending machine that only accepts quarters. Inserting 5 nickels, one at a time, will not get you the same result as inserting a quarter, even though in both cases you are inserting 25¢. Can you see the similarity to a bright red light *not* causing the photoelectric effect even though a dim blue light will?

The frequency of light, not brightness, produces the photoelectric effect. Adding more red light is not adding to its frequency.

Robert A. Millikan (1868–1953)

including the direct proportionality of photon energy and frequency. It was for the photoelectric effect, (and not for his theory of relativity) that Einstein received his 1921 Nobel Prize. Astoundingly, it was not until 1923 and the discovery of other quantum evidence that physicists generally accepted the reality of the photon.

The photoelectric effect proves conclusively that light has particle properties. We cannot conceive of the photoelectric effect on the basis of waves. On the other hand, we have seen that the phenomenon of interference demonstrates convincingly that light has wave properties. We cannot conceive of interference in terms of particles. In classical physics this is contradictory. From the point of view of quantum physics, light has properties resembling both. It is "just like a wave" or "just like a particle," depending on the particular experiment. So we think of light as a wave–particle. Or perhaps a "wavicle"? Quantum physics calls for a new way of thinking.

CHECK POINT

1. **In simplest terms, what is the photoelectric effect?**
2. **Will brighter light eject more electrons from a photosensitive surface than dimmer light of the same frequency?**
3. **Will high-frequency light eject a greater number of electrons than low-frequency light?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Individual photons eject electrons from a material (often a metal) surface.
2. Yes. The number of ejected electrons depends on the number of incident photons.
3. Not necessarily. The energy (not the number) of ejected electrons depends on the frequency of the illuminating photons. A bright source of blue light, for example, may eject more electrons at a lower energy than a dim violet source.

Photovoltaic Cells

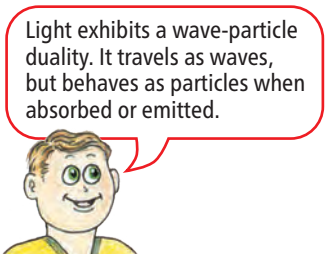
On some surfaces, light doesn't simply eject electrons. Instead, incident light stimulates an electric current *inside* the material. This is the basis of the photovoltaic electric cells that presently are a major power source. Although the surface being illuminated is a semiconductor, not a photosensitive metal, the principle is the same. The solar cells on the roof of the San Francisco Exploratorium use the photoelectric effect to generate nearly all of its electrical demands (Figure 31.4).

FIGURE 31.4
The SunPower solar cells on the roof of San Francisco's Exploratorium use the photoelectric effect to generate nearly all of its electricity. Energized electrons, rather than being ejected from the surface, stay within the material to create a current. The cells generate 1.4 megawatts of dc, which is converted into 1.3 megawatts of ac for use in the building.

When you use Sun-generated energy to charge a cell phone, or when you view a small set of solar cells atop a traffic light in rural areas, or a huge array of solar cells on a solar farm, think of Albert Einstein—and how he explained a puzzling relationship between light and ejected electrons in certain materials. The recent advent of photoelectric solar cells is another celebration of nature.

31.4 Wave–Particle Duality

The wave and particle nature of light is evident in the formation of optical images. We understand the photographic image produced by a camera in terms of light waves, which spread from each point of the object, refract as they pass through the lens system, and converge to focus on the light-sensitive recording detector—an electronic charge coupling device (CCD) or, still in use, photographic film. The path of light from the object through the lens system and to the focal plane can be calculated using methods developed from the wave theory of light.



But now consider carefully the way in which an image is formed on photographic film. The film consists of an emulsion that contains grains of silver halide crystal, each grain containing about 10^{10} silver atoms. Each photon that is absorbed gives up its energy, hf, to a single grain in the emulsion. This energy activates surrounding crystals in the entire grain and is used in development to complete the photochemical process. Many photons activating many grains produce the usual photographic exposure. When a photograph is taken with exceedingly feeble light, we find that the image is built up by individual photons that arrive independently and are seemingly random in their distribution. We see this strikingly illustrated in Figure 31.5, which shows how an exposure progresses photon by photon.

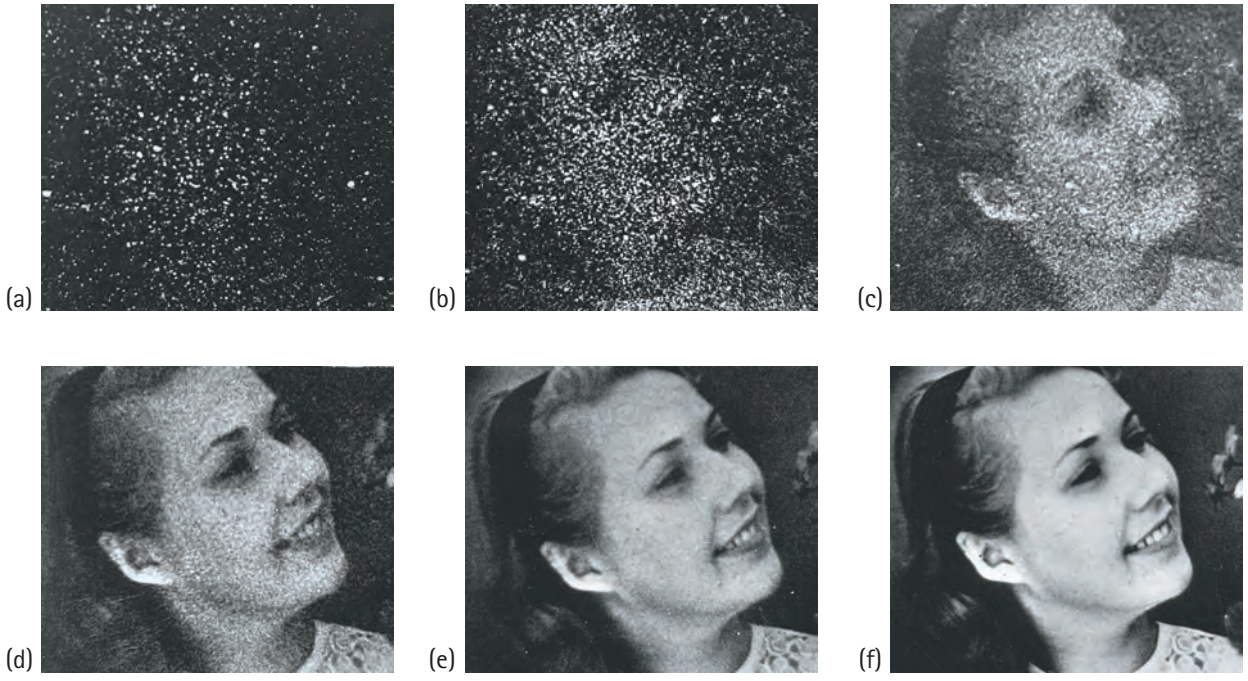


FIGURE 31.5
Stages of film exposure reveal the photon-by-photon production of a photograph. The approximate numbers of photons at each stage are (a) 3×10^3, (b) 1.2×10^4, (c) 9.3×10^4, (d) 7.6×10^5, (e) 3.6×10^6, and (f) 2.8×10^7.

CHECK POINT

1. **In simplest terms, what is the wave-particle duality?**
2. **Does the photon-by-photon buildup of the image depicted in Figure 31.5 apply to photosensitive detectors other than photographic film?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. A particle can exhibit wave properties under some circumstances, particle properties under others.
2. Yes. The point of the impressive photo goes beyond the properties of the photosensitive surface capturing the image. Photon-by-photon buildup of an image involves the nature of photons, not the photosensitive surface that records the image buildup.

31.5 Double-Slit Experiment

The wave-particle duality is evident in Thomas Young's double-slit experiment, which we discussed in terms of waves in Chapter 29. Recall that when we pass monochromatic light through a pair of closely spaced thin slits, we produce an interference pattern (Figure 31.6). Now let's consider the experiment in terms of photons. Suppose we dim our light source so that, in effect, only one photon at a time reaches the barrier with the thin slits. If photographic film behind the barrier is exposed to the light for a very short time, the film gets exposed as simulated in Figure 31.7a. Each spot represents the place where the film has been exposed by a photon. If the light is allowed to expose the film for a longer time, a pattern of fringes begins to emerge, as in Figures 31.7b and 31.7c. This is quite amazing! Spots on the film are seen to progress, photon by photon, to form the same interference pattern characterized by waves!

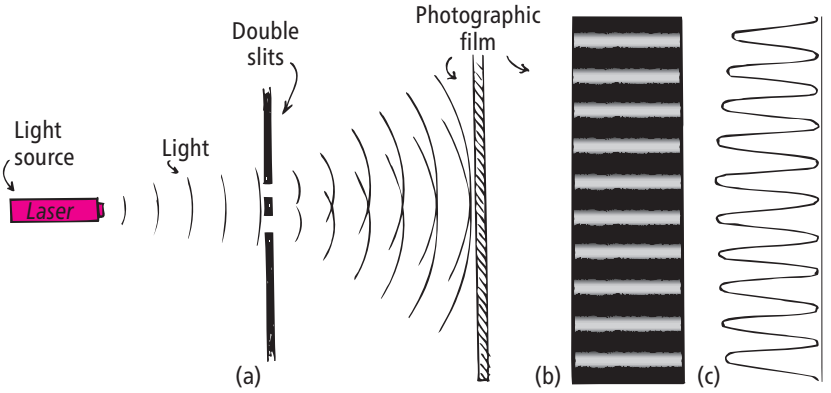


FIGURE 31.6
(a) Arrangement for double-slit experiment. (b) Photograph of interference pattern. (c) Graphic representation of pattern.

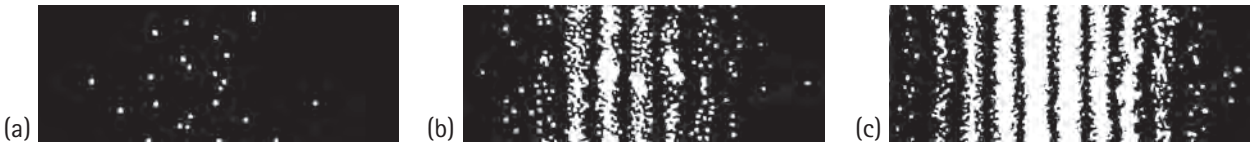


FIGURE 31.7
Stages of two-slit interference pattern. The pattern of individually exposed grains progresses from (a) 28 photons to (b) 1000 photons to (c) 10,000 photons. As more photons hit the screen, a pattern of interference fringes appears.

If we cover one slit so that photons striking the photographic film can pass through only a single slit, the tiny spots on the film accumulate to form a single-slit diffraction pattern (Figure 31.8). We find that photons hit the film at places they would not hit if both slits were open! If we think about this classically, we are perplexed and may ask how photons passing through the single slit "know" that the other slit is covered and therefore fan out to produce the wide single-slit diffraction pattern. Or, if both slits are open, how do photons traveling through one slit "know" that the other slit is open and avoid certain regions, proceeding only to areas that will ultimately fill to form the fringed double-slit interference pattern?[3] The modern answer is that the wave nature of light is not some average property that appears only when many photons act together. Each single photon has wave properties as well as particle properties. But the photon displays different aspects at different times. *A photon behaves as a particle when it is being emitted by an atom or absorbed by photographic film or other detectors, and it behaves as a wave when traveling from a source to the place where it is detected.* So the photon strikes the film as a particle but travels to its position as a wave that interferes constructively. The fact that light exhibits both wave and particle behaviors was one of the interesting surprises of the early 20th century. Furthermore, the interference evident in the double-slit experiment told investigators that a photon needn't travel through one slit or the other, but can travel through both slits at the same time. A photon is truly a quantum entity. Even more surprising was the discovery that the double-slit experiment applies to particles—not only photons, but objects with mass. Objects with mass also exhibit a dual wave-particle behavior.

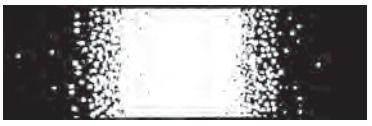


FIGURE 31.8
Single-slit diffraction pattern.

Light travels as a wave and hits like a particle.

CHECK POINT

When does a photon behave as a particle? When does it behave as a wave?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

A photon behaves as a particle when it is emitted or absorbed by an atom. It behaves as a wave as it travels from a source to the location of absorption.

31.6 Particles as Waves: Electron Diffraction

If a particle (photon) of light has both wave and particle properties, why can't a material particle (one with mass) also have both wave and particle properties? This question was posed by the French physicist Louis de Broglie while he was still a graduate student in 1924. His answer constituted his doctoral thesis in physics and later earned him the Nobel Prize in Physics. According to de Broglie, every particle of matter is somehow endowed with a wave to guide it as it travels. Under the proper conditions, then, every particle will produce an interference or diffraction pattern. Each body—whether an electron, a proton,

Louis de Broglie (1892–1987)

[3]From a pre-quantum point of view, this wave–particle duality is indeed mysterious. This leads some people to believe that quanta have some sort of consciousness, with each photon or electron having "a mind of its own." The mystery, however, is like beauty. It is in the mind of the beholder rather than in nature itself. We conjure models to understand nature and, when inconsistencies arise, we sharpen or change our models. The wave–particle duality of light doesn't fit a model built on classical ideas. An alternative model is that quanta have minds of their own. Another model is quantum physics. In this book, we subscribe to the latter.

an atom, a mouse, you, a planet, a star—has a wavelength that is related to its momentum by

$$\text{Wavelength} = \frac{h}{\text{momentum}}$$

where h is Planck's constant. A body of large mass and ordinary speed has such a small wavelength that interference and diffraction are negligible; rifle bullets fly straight and do not pepper their targets far and wide with detectable interference patches.[4] But, for smaller particles, such as electrons, diffraction can be appreciable.

Both a beam of electrons and a beam of photons can be diffracted in the same way. Beams of electrons directed through double slits also exhibit interference patterns similar to those in Figure 31.9. The double-slit experiment discussed in the preceding section can be performed with electrons as well as with photons. For electrons, the apparatus is more complex but the procedure is essentially the same. The intensity of the source can be reduced to direct electrons one at a time through a double-slit arrangement, producing the same remarkable results as with photons. Like photons, electrons strike the screen as particles, but the *pattern* of arrival is wavelike. The angular deflection of electrons to form the interference pattern agrees perfectly with calculations using de Broglie's equation for the wavelength of an electron.

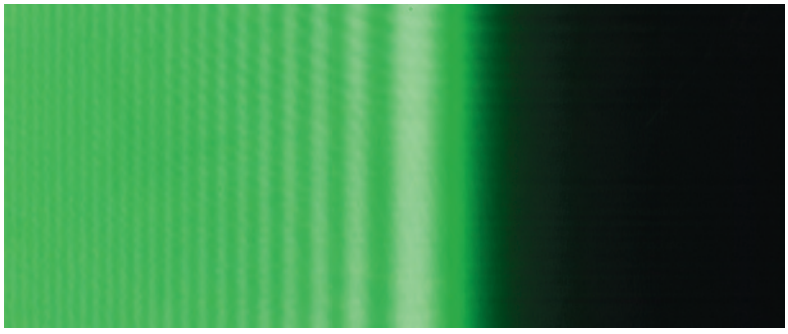


FIGURE 31.9
Fringes produced by the diffraction of light.

FIGURE 31.10
An electron microscope makes practical use of the wave nature of electrons. The wavelength of electron beams is typically thousands of times shorter than the wavelength of visible light, so the electron microscope is able to distinguish detail not visible with optical microscopes.

In Figure 31.11, we see another example of electron diffraction, using a standard electron microscope. The electron beam of very low current density is directed through an electrostatic biprism that diffracts the beam. A pattern of fringes produced by individual electrons builds up step by step and is displayed on a TV monitor. The image is gradually filled by electrons to produce the interference pattern customarily associated with waves. The wave–particle duality is not restricted to photons and electrons. Based on this wave-particle model, neutrons, protons, whole atoms, and, to an immeasurable degree, even high-speed rifle bullets exhibit a duality of particle and wave behavior.

[4] A bullet of mass 0.02 kg traveling at 330 m/s, for example, has a de Broglie wavelength of

$$\frac{h}{mv} = \frac{6.6 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J·s}}{(0.02\ \text{kg})(330\ \text{m/s})} = 10^{-34}\ \text{m}$$

an incredibly small size, a million million million millionth the size of a hydrogen atom. An electron traveling at 2% the speed of light, on the other hand, has a wavelength of 10^{-10} m, which is equal to the diameter of the hydrogen atom. Diffraction effects for electrons are measurable, whereas diffraction effects for bullets are not.

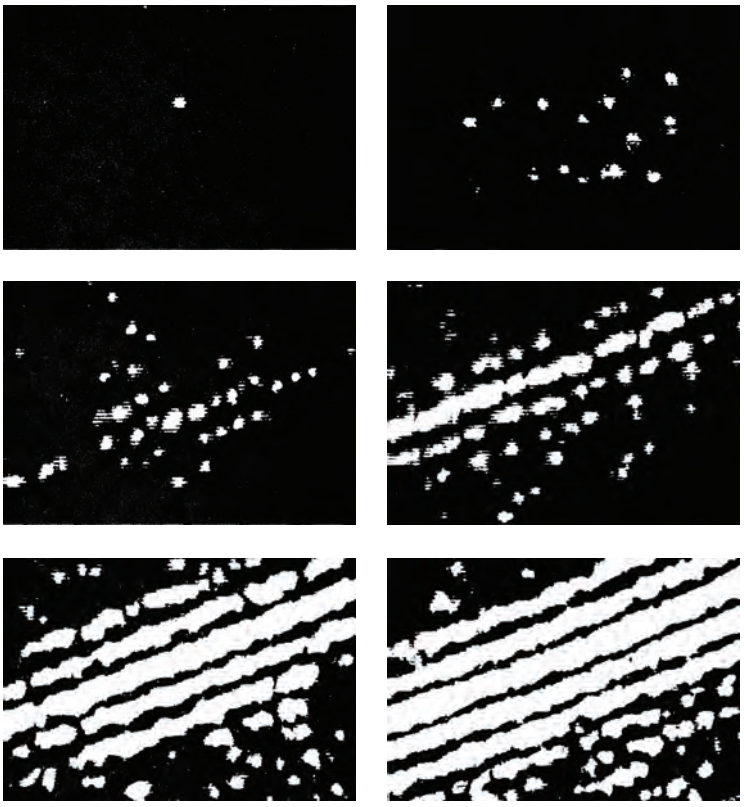
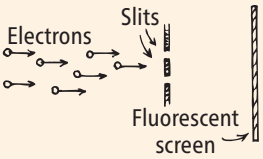


FIGURE 31.11
Electron interference patterns filmed from a TV monitor, showing the diffraction of a very low intensity electron-microscope beam through an electrostatic biprism.

CHECK POINT



1. **If electrons behaved only like particles, what pattern would you expect on the screen after the electrons passed through the double slits?**
2. **We don't notice the de Broglie wavelength for a pitched baseball. Is this because the wavelength is very large or because it is very small?**
3. **If an electron and a proton have the same de Broglie wavelength, which particle has the higher speed?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. If electrons behaved only like particles, they would form two bands, as indicated in (a). Because of their wave nature, they actually produce the pattern shown in (b).
2. We don't notice the wavelength of a pitched baseball because it is extremely small—on the order of 10^{20} times smaller than the atomic nucleus.
3. The same wavelength means that the two particles have the same momentum. This means that the less massive electron must travel faster than the heavier proton.

FIGURE 31.12
Detail of the head of a female mosquito as seen with a scanning electron microscope at a "low" magnification of 200×.

31.7 Uncertainty Principle

The wave–particle duality of quanta has inspired interesting discussions about the limits of our ability to accurately measure the properties of small objects. The discussions center on the idea that the act of measuring something affects the quantity being measured.

For example, we know that, if we place a cool thermometer in a cup of hot coffee, the temperature of the coffee is altered as it gives heat to the thermometer. The measuring device alters the quantity being measured. But we can correct for these errors in measurement if we know the initial temperature of the thermometer, the masses and specific heats involved, and so forth. Such corrections fall well within the domain of classical physics—these are *not* the uncertainties of quantum physics. Quantum uncertainties stem from the wave nature of matter. A wave, by its very nature, occupies some space and lasts for some time. It cannot be squeezed to a point in space or limited to a single instant of time because then it would not be a wave. This inherent "fuzziness" of a wave gives a fuzziness or uncertainty of measurement at the quantum level. Innumerable experiments have shown that any measurement that in any way probes a system necessarily disturbs the system by at least one quantum of action, h—Planck's constant. So any measurement that involves interaction between the measurer and what is being measured is subject to this minimum inaccuracy.

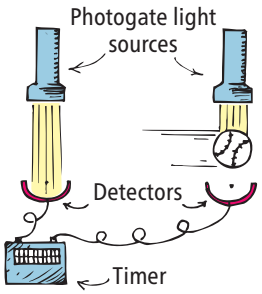


FIGURE 31.13
The ball's speed is measured by dividing the distance between the photogates by the time difference between crossing the two light paths. Photons hitting the ball alter its motion much less than the motion of an oil supertanker being altered by a few fleas bumping into it.

We distinguish between observing and probing. Consider a cup of coffee on the other side of a room. If you passively glance at it and see steam rising from it, this act of "measuring" involves no physical interaction between your eyes and the coffee. Your glance neither adds nor subtracts energy from the coffee. You can assert that it's hot with no *probing*. Placing a glass thermometer in it is a different story. You physically interact with the coffee and thereby subject it to alteration. The quantum contribution to this alteration, however, is completely dwarfed by classical uncertainties and is negligible. Quantum uncertainties are significant only in the atomic and subatomic realms.

Compare the acts of making measurements of a pitched baseball and of an electron. You can measure the speed of a pitched baseball by having it fly through a pair of photogates that are a known distance apart (Figure 31.13). The ball is timed as it interrupts beams of light in the gates. The accuracy of the ball's measured speed has to do with uncertainties in the measured distance between the gates and in the timing mechanisms. Interactions between the macroscopic ball and the photons it encounters are insignificant.

But not so in the case of measuring submicroscopic things like electrons. Even a single photon bouncing off an electron appreciably alters the motion of the electron—and in an unpredictable way. If you wish to observe an electron and determine its whereabouts with light, the wavelength of the light would have to be very short. You fall into a dilemma. Light of a short wavelength, which can "see" the tiny electron better, corresponds to a large quantum of energy, which, in turn, greatly alters the electron's state of motion. If, on the other hand, you use a long wavelength that corresponds to a smaller quantum of energy, the change you induce in the electron's state of motion will be smaller, but the determination of its position by means of the coarser wave will be less accurate. The act of observing something as tiny as an electron probes the electron and, in so doing, produces a considerable uncertainty in either its position or its motion. Although this uncertainty is completely negligible for measurements of the position and motion of everyday (macroscopic) objects, it is a predominant fact of life in the atomic domain.

The uncertainty of measurement in the atomic domain, which was first stated mathematically by the German physicist Werner Heisenberg, is called the **uncertainty principle.** It is a fundamental principle in quantum mechanics. Heisenberg

found that when the uncertainties in the measurements of the momentum and position of a particle are multiplied, the product must be equal to or greater than Planck's constant, h, divided by 2π, which is represented as $\hbar$ (called *h-bar*).[5] We can state the uncertainty principle in a simple formula:

$$\Delta p \, \Delta x \geq \hbar$$

The Δ here means "uncertainty of": Δp is the uncertainty of momentum (the symbol for momentum is conventionally p), and Δx is the uncertainty of position. The product of these two uncertainties must be equal to or greater than ($\geq$) the size of $\hbar$. For minimum uncertainties, the product will equal $\hbar$; the product of larger uncertainties will be greater than $\hbar$. But in no case can the product of the uncertainties be less than $\hbar$. The significance of the uncertainty principle is that, even in the best of conditions, the lower limit of uncertainty is $\hbar$. This means that if we wish to know the momentum of an electron with great accuracy (small Δp), the corresponding uncertainty in position will be large. Or, if we wish to know the position with great accuracy (small Δx), the corresponding uncertainty in momentum will be large. The sharper one of these quantities is, the less sharp is the other.[6]

As stated earlier, you? can never change only one thing! Every equation reminds us of this—you can't change a term on one side without affecting the other side.

The uncertainty principle operates similarly with energy and time. We cannot measure a particle's energy with complete precision in an infinitesimally short span of time. The uncertainty in our knowledge of energy, ΔE, and the duration taken to measure the energy, Δt, are related by the expression[7]

$$\Delta E \, \Delta t \geq \hbar$$

The greatest accuracy we can ever hope to attain is that case in which the product of the energy and time uncertainties equals $\hbar$. The more accurately we determine the energy of a photon, an electron, or a particle of whatever kind, the more uncertain we will be of the time during which it has that energy.

Werner Heisenberg (1901–1976)

The uncertainty principle is relevant only to quantum phenomena. The inaccuracies in measuring the position and momentum of a baseball due to quantum effects are completely negligible. But the inaccuracies in measuring the position and momentum of an electron are far from negligible. This is because the uncertainties in the measurements of these subatomic quantities are comparable to the magnitudes of the quantities themselves.[8]

There is a danger in applying the uncertainty principle to areas outside of quantum mechanics. Some people conclude from statements about the interaction between the observer and the observed that the universe does not exist "out there," independent of all acts of observation, and that reality is created by the observer. Others interpret the uncertainty principle as nature's shield

[5]Quantum physicist Ken Ford celebrates $\hbar$ on the number plate of his Honda Civic Hybrid (see page 447) and his several books on quantum physics.

[6]In a hypothetical purely classical world, $\hbar$ would be zero and the uncertainties of both position and momentum could be arbitrarily small. In the real world, Planck's constant is greater than zero, and we cannot, in principle, simultaneously know both quantities with certainty.

[7]We can see that this is consistent with the uncertainty in momentum and position. Recall that Δ momentum = force $\times$ time and that Δ energy = force $\times$ Δ distance. Then,

$$\begin{aligned}\hbar &= \Delta \text{ momentum} \times \Delta \text{ distance} \\ &= (\text{force} \times \Delta \text{ distance}) \times \Delta \text{ time} \\ &= \Delta \text{ energy} \times \Delta \text{ time}\end{aligned}$$

[8]The uncertainties in measurements of momentum, position, energy, or time that are related to the uncertainty principle for a pitched baseball are only 1 part in about 10 million billion billion billion (10^{-34}). Quantum effects are negligible for even the most sluggish bacterium, where the uncertainties are about 1 part in a billion (10^{-9}). Quantum effects become evident for atoms, where the uncertainties can be as large as 100%. For electrons moving in an atom, quantum uncertainties dominate, and we are in the full-scale quantum realm.

of forbidden secrets. Some critics of science use the uncertainty principle as evidence that science itself is uncertain. The reality of the universe (whether observed or not), nature's secrets, and the uncertainties of science have very little to do with Heisenberg's uncertainty principle. The profundity of the uncertainty principle has to do with the unavoidable interaction between nature at the atomic level and the means by which we probe it.

CHECK POINT

1. **Is Heisenberg's uncertainty principle applicable to the practical case of using a thermometer to measure the temperature of a glass of water?**
2. **A Geiger counter measures radioactive decay by registering the electrical pulses produced in a gas tube when high-energy particles pass through it. The particles emanate from a radioactive source—say, radium. Does the act of measuring the decay rate of radium alter the radium or its decay rate?**
3. **Can the quantum principle that we cannot observe something without changing it be reasonably extrapolated to support the claim that you can make a stranger turn around and look at you by staring intently at his back?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. No. Although we probably subject the temperature of water to a change by the act of probing it with a thermometer, especially one appreciably colder or hotter than the water, the uncertainties that relate to the precision of the thermometer are quite within the domain of classical physics. The role of uncertainties at the subatomic level is inapplicable here.
2. Not at all, because the interaction involved is between the Geiger counter and the particles, not between the Geiger counter and the radium. It is the behavior of the particles that is altered by measurement, not the radium from which they emanate. See how this relates to the next question.
3. No. Here we must be careful in defining what we mean by *observing*. If our observation involves probing (giving or extracting energy), we indeed change to some degree that which we observe. For example, if we shine a light source onto the person's back, our observation consists of probing, which, however slight, physically alters the configuration of atoms on his back. If he senses this, he may turn around. But simply staring intently at his back is observing in the passive sense. The light you receive (or block by blinking, for example) has already left his back. So whether you stare, squint, or close your eyes completely, you in no physical way alter the atomic configuration on his back. Shining a light or otherwise probing something is not the same thing as passively looking at something. A failure to make the simple distinction between *probing* and *passively observing* is at the root of much nonsense that is said to be supported by quantum physics. Better support for the above claim would be positive results from a simple and practical test, rather than the assertion that it rides on the hard-earned reputation of quantum theory.

31.8 Complementarity

The realm of quantum physics can seem confusing. Light waves that interfere and diffract deliver their energy in packages of quanta—particles. Electrons that move through space in straight lines and experience collisions as if they were particles distribute themselves spatially in interference patterns as if they were waves. In this confusion, there is an underlying order. The behavior of light and electrons is confusing in the same way! Light and electrons both exhibit wave and particle characteristics.

The Danish physicist Niels Bohr, one of the founders of quantum physics, formulated an explicit expression of the wholeness inherent in this dualism. He called his expression of this wholeness **complementarity.** As Bohr expressed it, quantum phenomena exhibit complementary (mutually exclusive) properties—appearing either as particles or as waves—depending on the type of experiment conducted. Experiments designed to examine individual exchanges of energy and momentum reveal particle-like properties, while experiments designed to examine the spatial distribution of energy reveal wavelike properties. The wavelike and particle-like properties of light complement one another—both are necessary for the understanding of "light." Which part is emphasized depends on what question one presents to nature.

Niels Bohr (1885–1962)

Complementarity is not a compromise, and it doesn't mean that the whole truth about light lies somewhere in between particles and waves. It's rather like viewing the faces of a crystal. What you see depends on what facet you look at, which is why light, energy, and matter appear to be behaving as quanta in some experiments and as waves in others.

The idea that opposites are components of a wholeness is not new. Ancient Eastern cultures incorporated it as an integral part of their worldview. This is demonstrated in the yin–yang diagram of T'ai Chi Tu (Figure 31.14). One side of the circle is called *yin* (black), and the other side is called *yang* (white). Where there is yin, there is yang. Only the union of yin and yang forms a whole. Where there is low, there is also high. Where there is night, there is also day. Where there is birth, there is also death. A whole person integrates yin (feminine traits, right brain, emotion, intuition, darkness, cold, wetness) with yang (masculine traits, left brain, reason, logic, light, heat, dryness). Each has aspects of the other. For Niels Bohr, the yin–yang diagram symbolized the principle of complementarity. In later life, Bohr wrote broadly on the implications of complementarity. In 1947, when he was knighted for his contributions to physics, he chose for his coat of arms the yin–yang symbol.

FIGURE 31.14
Opposites are seen to complement one another in the yin–yang symbol of Eastern cultures.

PREDICTABILITY AND CHAOS

We can make predictions about an orderly system when we know the initial conditions. For example, we can state precisely where a launched rocket will land, where a given planet will be at a particular time, or when an eclipse will occur. These are examples of events in the Newtonian macroworld. Similarly, in the quantum microworld, we can predict where an electron is *likely* to be in an atom and the *probability* that a radioactive particle will decay in a given time interval. Predictability in orderly systems, both Newtonian and quantum, depends on knowledge of the initial conditions.

Some systems, however, whether Newtonian or quantum, are not orderly—they are inherently unpredictable. These are called "chaotic systems." Turbulent water flow is an example. No matter how precisely we know the initial conditions of a piece of floating wood as it flows downstream, we cannot predict its location later downstream. A feature of chaotic systems is that slight differences in initial conditions result in wildly different outcomes later. Two identical pieces of wood just slightly apart at one time may be vastly far apart soon thereafter.

Weather is chaotic. Small changes in one day's weather can produce big (and largely unpredictable) changes a week later. Meteorologists try their best, but they are bucking the hard fact of chaos in nature. This barrier to accurate

prediction led the meteorologist Edward Lorenz to ask, "Does the flap of a butterfly's wings in Brazil set off a tornado in Texas?" Since then we talk about the *butterfly effect* when we are dealing with situations in which very small effects can amplify into very big effects.

Interestingly, chaos is not all hopeless unpredictability. Even in a chaotic system there can be patterns of regularity. There is *order in chaos*. Scientists have learned how to treat chaos mathematically and how to find the parts of it that are orderly. Artists seek patterns in nature in a different way. Both scientists and artists look for the connections in nature that were always there but are not yet put together in our thinking.

Chapter 31 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Quantum (*pl.* quanta) From the Latin word *quantus*, meaning "how much." A quantum is an elemental unit of a quantity, a discrete amount of something. One quantum of electromagnetic energy is called a photon.

Quantum physics The physics that describes the microworld, where many quantities are granular (in units called *quanta*), not continuous, and where particles of light (*photons*) and particles of matter (such as electrons) exhibit wave as well as particle properties.

Planck's constant The fundamental constant of nature, h, that sets a lower limit on the smallest amount of energy E that can be converted into light of frequency f. $E = hf$:

$$h = 6.6 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s}$$

Photoelectric effect The emission of electrons from a metal surface when light shines on it.

Uncertainty principle The principle, formulated by Werner Heisenberg, stating that Planck's constant, h, sets a limit on the accuracy of measurement. According to the uncertainty principle, it is not possible to measure exactly both the position and the momentum of a particle at the same time, nor the energy and the time during which the particle has that energy.

Complementarity The principle, enunciated by Niels Bohr, stating that the wave and particle aspects of both matter and radiation are necessary, complementary parts of the whole. Which part is emphasized depends on what experiment is conducted (i.e., on what question one puts to nature).

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

31.1 Birth of the Quantum Theory

1. Sun rays reach the Earth by traveling through space (with no medium present). Which theory of light, the wave theory or the particle theory, can explain sunlight traveling through space?
2. Did Einstein's photon explanation of the photoelectric effect support the wave theory or the particle theory of light?
3. What did Max Planck consider quantized, the energy of vibrating atoms or the energy of light itself?
4. Is Planck's constant a result of nature, or is nature a result of Planck's constant?

31.2 Quantization and Planck's Constant

5. Einstein called a quantum of light a corpuscle. What is a quantum of light now called?
6. In the formula $E = hf$, does f stand for wave frequency, as defined in Chapter 19?
7. In the formula $E = hf$, does E stand for energy, as measured in joules?
8. Is light radiated from an atom continuously, or as a stream of particles?
9. Which photons has the lower energy: microwaves or X-rays?

31.3 Photoelectric Effect

10. Consider that you have two identical, flat surfaces, one made of metal and the other made of wood. Now, if you illuminate both separately with violet light, which one do you think will eject photoelectrons and why?
11. Why won't a very bright beam of red light impart more energy to an ejected electron than a feeble beam of violet light?
12. What is meant by the "work function" in the photoelectric effect?
13. What is reversed about the photoelectric effect when related to solar cells?

31.4 Wave–Particle Duality

14. Explain why light is said to show wave-particle dual nature.
15. Does light behave primarily as a wave or as a particle when it interacts with the crystals of matter in photographic film?

31.5 Double-Slit Experiment

16. In what way is wave interference a feature of Young's double-slit experiment?
17. In a dark room, consider a blade fixed vertically. If you illuminate one of its faces with a beam of light, then its shadow on the wall does not appear sharp at the edges. Which property of light can be used to explain this?
18. Does light interact with a detector in a wavelike or a particle-like way?
19. Can you perform the double-slit experiment using two flashlights? Justify your answer.

31.6 Particles as Waves: Electron Diffraction

20. Did Louis de Broglie state that material particles have wave properties?
21. What relationship did de Broglie propose between a particle's wavelength and its momentum?
22. What evidence supports the wave nature of particles?
23. When electrons are diffracted through a double slit, do they hit the screen in a wavelike way or in a particle-like way? Is the pattern of hits wavelike or particle-like?

31.7 Uncertainty Principle

24. In which of the following are quantum uncertainties significant: measuring simultaneously the speed and location of a baseball; of a spitball; of an electron?
25. What is the uncertainty principle with respect to momentum and position?
26. If measurements show a precise position for an electron, can those measurements show precise momentum also?
27. If measurement shows a precise value for the energy radiated by an electron, can that measurement show a precise time for this event as well?
28. What is the distinction cited in this book between passively and actively observing an event?

31.8 Complementarity

29. What is the principle of complementarity?
30. Electrons show both wave-like and particle-like behavior. Is it possible to take away one nature from it? Justify.

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Use a strand of your own hair to recreate Young's double-split experiment. Cut a square in the center of an index card and tape the strand of hair tautly across it. Place the card upright and shine a laser pointer at it. On any kind of screen behind, note the pattern of bright and dark fringes.
32. Go to a location (or imagine doing so) where both a wheelchair ramp and a set of stairs are side by side. Walk up the stairs and count the number of steps. Next, walk up the wheelchair ramp and count your number of steps. In both cases, you're increasing your potential energy reletive to ground level. Send a short text to Grandma explaining why the stairs are "quantized" while the ramp is not.

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

33. A typical wavelength of infrared radiation emitted by the human body is 10 microns $(10 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})$. Calculate the energy per photon of such radiation.
34. A transmission electron microscope (TEM) is operated at 200 keV (V). Considering the velocity (v) of the electrons determined by the accelerating voltage as:

$eV = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ where $m = 9.1 \times 10^{-31}$ kg, $e = 1.6 \times 10^{-19}$ C,

determine the de Broglie wavelength of a TEM.

35. You decide to roll a billiard ball of mass 0.17 kg across the table so slowly that it will attain a small momentum and a large de Broglie wavelength. If you roll it at 0.0008 m/s, what will be its wavelength? Compare this wavelength to the high-speed electron mentioned in the previous problem.

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

36. From most to least, moving at the same speed, rank the momentum of
    (a) a hydrogen atom.
    (b) a uranium atom.
    (c) an electron.
37. From most to least, moving at the same speed, rank the wavelengh of a
    (a) hydrogen atom.
    (b) uranium atom.
    (c) an electron.

THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

38. What does it mean to say that something is quantized?
39. Distinguish between *classical physics* and *quantum physics*.
40. In the previous chapter, we learned that $E \sim f$. In this chapter, we learned that $E = hf$. Explain the difference between these two formulas. What is h?
41. The frequency of violet light is about twice that of red light. How does the energy of a violet photon compare with the energy of a red photon? Explain.
42. Which has more energy: a photon of visible light or a photon of ultraviolet light? Why?
43. We speak of photons of red light and photons of green light. Can we speak of photons of white light? Why or why not?
44. Which laser beam carries more energy per photon: a red beam or a green beam?
45. If a beam of red light and a beam of blue light have exactly the same energy, which beam contains the greater number of photons? Why?
46. In the photoelectric effect, is it the brightness or the frequency that determine the kinetic energy of the ejected electrons? Which determines the number of the ejected electrons? Defend your answer.
47. A very bright source of red light has much more energy than a dim source of blue light, but the red light has no effect in ejecting electrons from a certain photosensitive surface. Explain the cause.

48. Why are ultraviolet photons more effective at inducing the photoelectric effect than photons of visible light?
49. Why does light striking a metal surface eject only electrons, not protons?
50. Does the photoelectric effect mainly depend on the wave nature or the particle nature of light? Defend your answer.
51. Explain how the photoelectric effect is used to open automatic doors when someone approaches.
52. Do some research and explain briefly how the photoelectric effect can be used in the operation of at least two of the following: an electric eye, a photographer's light meter, the sound track at the edge of film of a pre-digital motion picture.
53. If you shine an ultraviolet light on the metal ball of a negatively charged electroscope (shown in Question 57 in Chapter 22), it will discharge. But if the electroscope is positively charged, it won't discharge. Can you venture an explanation?
54. What evidence can you cite for the wave nature of light? For the particle nature of light?
55. When does a photon behave like a wave? When does it behave like a particle?
56. What laboratory device utilizes the wave nature of electrons?
57. Cite a case where an atom can obtain enough energy to become ionized.
58. A hydrogen atom and a uranium atom move at the same speed. Which possesses more momentum? Which has the longer wavelength?
59. If a cannonball and a BB have the same speed, which has the longer wavelength?
60. An electron and a proton travel at the same speed. Which has more momentum? Which has the longer wavelength?
61. One electron travels twice as fast as another. Which has the longer wavelength?
62. When checking the pressure in tires, some air escapes. Why does Heisenberg's uncertainty principle not apply here?
63. If a butterfly causes a tornado, does it make sense to eradicate butterflies? Defend your answer.
64. We hear the expression "taking a quantum leap" to describe large changes. Is the expression appropriate? Defend your answer.

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

65. Discuss whether the de Broglie wavelength of a proton becomes longer or shorter as its velocity increases.
66. Discuss the principal advantage an electron microscope has over an optical microscope.
67. Does the uncertainty principle tell us that we can never know anything for certain?
68. Consider one of the many electrons on the tip of your nose. If somebody looks at it, will its motion be altered? How about if it is viewed with one eye closed? With two eyes open, but crossed? Does Heisenberg's uncertainty principle apply here?
69. Do we inadvertently alter the realities that we attempt to measure in a public opinion survey? Does Heisenberg's uncertainty principle apply here?
70. If the behavior of a system is measured exactly for some period of time and is understood, does it follow that the future behavior of that system can be exactly predicted? (Is there a distinction between properties that are *measurable* and properties that are *predictable*?)
71. The camera that took the photograph of the woman's face (Figure 31.5) used ordinary lenses that are well known to refract waves. Yet the step-by-step formation of the image is evidence of photons. How can this be? What is your explanation?
72. Light has been argued to be a wave and then a particle, and then back again. Does this indicate that light's true nature probably lies somewhere between these two models?
73. An X-ray photon can hit an electron without that electron picking up *all* the photon's energy. Make a hypothesis about how the frequency of the photon that "leaves the scene" of the collision compares with the frequency of the initial incoming photon. (This phenomenon is called the *Compton effect*.)
74. Sunburn produces cell damage in the skin. Why is ultraviolet radiation capable of producing this damage, while visible radiation, even if more intense, is not?
75. Discuss how the reading of the meter in Figure 31.1 will vary as the photosensitive curved surface is illuminated by light of various colors at a given intensity and by light of various intensities of a given color.
76. Does the photoelectric effect *prove* that light is made of particles? Do interference experiments *prove* that light is composed of waves? (Is there a distinction between what something *is* and how it *behaves*?)
77. We don't notice the wavelength of moving matter in our common experience. Is this because the wavelength is extraordinarily large or extraordinarily small?
78. Discuss the idea that the theory one accepts determines the meaning of one's observations and not vice versa.
79. A friend says, "If an electron is not a particle, then it must be a wave." What is your response? (Do you hear "either-or" statements like this often?)
80. In many situations, weather forecasts by meteorologists do not follow the pattern predicted despite so much advancement in science and scientific equipment. How can you explain this unpredictability in the estimates?

CHAPTER THIRTY ONE Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. The ratio of the energy of a photon to its frequency is
   (a) π.
   (b) Planck's constant.
   (c) photon speed.
   (d) photon wavelength.
2. In the equation $E = hf$, the symbol f stands for
   (a) photon frequency.
   (b) wavelength.
   (c) rate at which photons are emitted.
   (d) None of the above
3. The photoelectric effect supports the
   (a) wave nature of light.
   (b) particle nature of light.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) None of these
4. The greater the frequency of the illuminating light on a photosensitive surface, the greater the
   (a) number of ejected electrons.
   (b) velocity of ejected electrons.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
5. In photoelectric emission, the work function is the minimum
   (a) frequency of light to produce emission.
   (b) energy required to eject an electron from the surface.
   (c) wavelength of light to produce electron ejection.
   (d) None of the above
6. Light behaves primarily as a wave when it
   (a) travels from one place to another.
   (b) interacts with matter.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
7. Which can produce an interference pattern when directed through two suitably spaced slits?
   (a) Light
   (b) Sound
   (c) Electrons
   (d) All of the above
8. Which of the following has the longer wavelength?
   (a) A low-energy electron
   (b) A high-energy electron
   (c) Both the same
   (d) None of the above
9. The Heisenberg uncertainty principle states that
   (a) Planck's constant sets a limit on accuracy of measurements.
   (b) we can't simultaneously measure exactly both the position and momentum of a particle.
   (c) we can't simultaneously measure exactly a particle's energy and time having that energy.
   (d) All of the above
10. The idea of complementarity is evident in the
    (a) dual nature of light.
    (b) notion of opposites being components of a whole.
    (c) yin–yang symbol of Eastern cultures.
    (d) All of the above

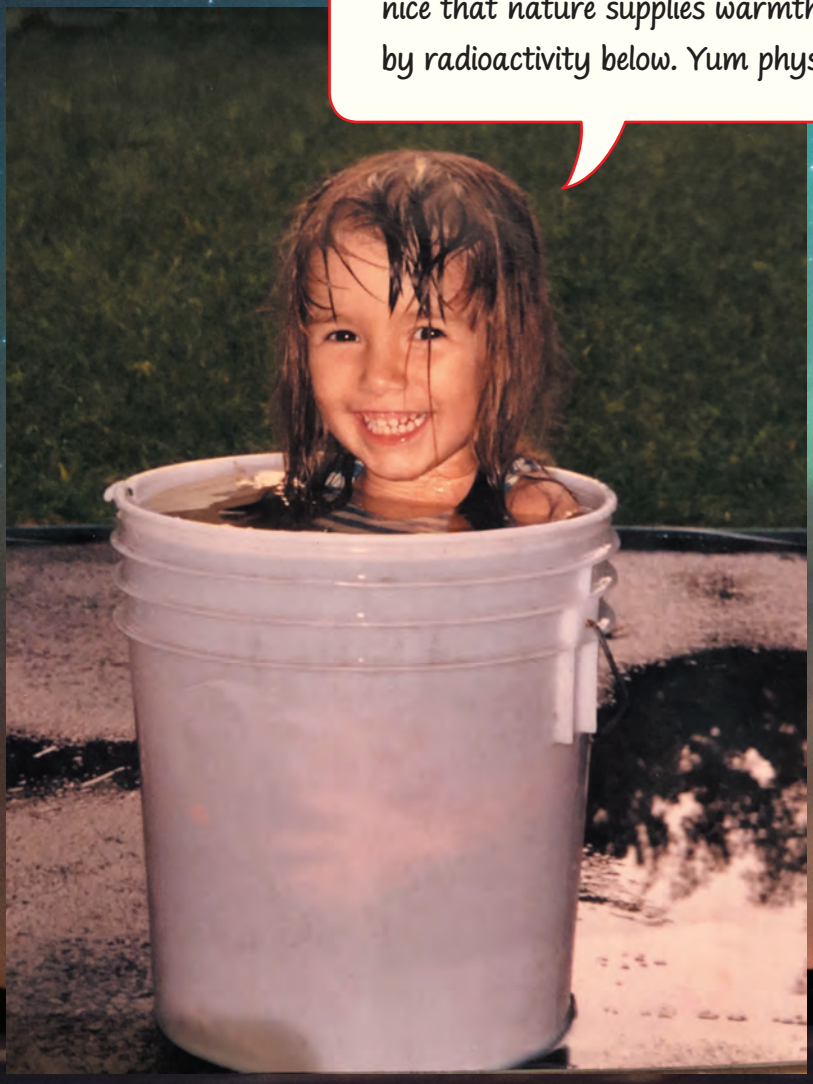
Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (b): This is straightforward chapter information, $E = hf$, where h is Planck's constant. All other answers have no bearing on the question. **2. (a):** This is straightforward as can be. The symbol f represents the frequency of a photon carrying energy E. All other answers have no bearing on the question. **3. (b):** The photoelectric effect was the first major finding to support the particle nature of light. This occurred when the wave model held sway with the physics community. **4. (b):** A higher frequency of incident light ejects electrons of greater kinetic energy, which translates to a higher velocity. Brighter light ejects more electrons, but not more energetic electrons. **5. (b):** By definition, the work function is the minimum energy required for an electron to leave a photosensitive surface. Frequency and wavelength of incident light are peripheral. **6. (a):** Wave duality tells us that light behaves as a wave when it travels from one location to another, and travels like a particle when it interacts with matter. **7. (d):** Interference is a property of all waves, which include light waves, sound waves, and the waves of traveling matter. An electric beam, like a beam of light or sound, can exhibit interference. **8. (a):** A beam of electrons behaves as a beam of light. Like any wave, long waves (low frequencies) have lower energies than shorter waves (higher frequency). So low-energy electrons have longer wavelengths. **9. (d):** All of the above are characteristics of the uncertainty principle. **10. (d):** Complementarity is a broad idea about uniting opposites, of which the uncertainty principle is a special case. So its an "all of the above" for complementarity.

This page is intentionally left blank

PART SEVEN

Atomic and Nuclear Physics


A nice snug fit in this water warmed by the Sun! I'm learning that water also is warmed by radioactivity in Earth's innards to heat thermal springs and geysers. How nice that nature supplies warmth from the Sun above and by radioactivity below. Yum physics, both ways!

CHAPTER THIRTY TWO

32 The Atom and the Quantum

32.1 Discovery of the Atomic Nucleus

32.2 Discovery of the Electron

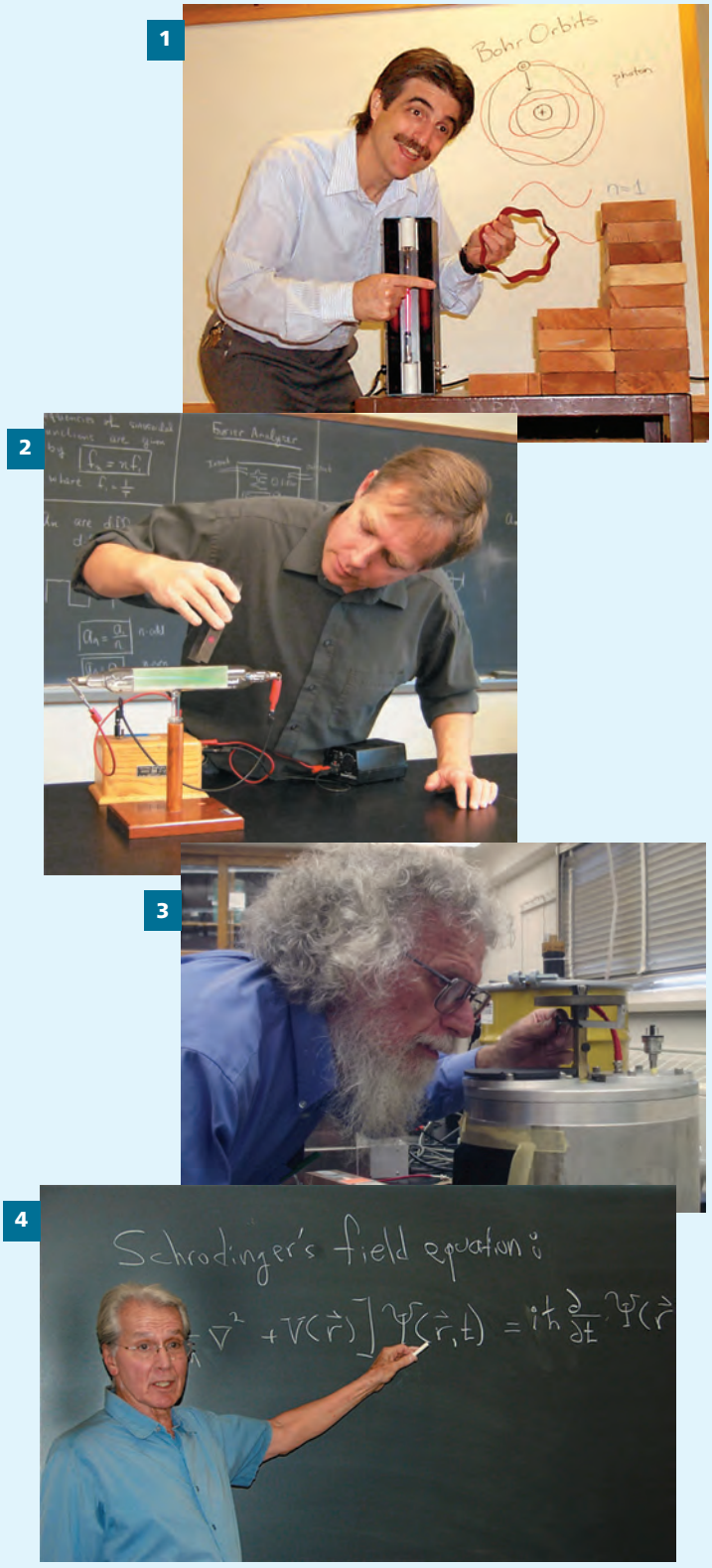
32.3 Atomic Spectra: Clues to Atomic Structure

32.4 Bohr Model of the Atom

32.5 Explanation of Quantized Energy Levels: Electron Waves

32.6 Quantum Mechanics

32.7 Correspondence Principle



These four physicists, who excel in their teaching, bring quantum physics down to Earth for their students. 1 David Kagan uses a strip of corrugated plastic in class to model an orbiting electron. The stacked wood blocks model electron energy levels. 2 Roger King uses a magnet to bend an electron beam in a Crookes tube. 3 Dean Zollman investigates nuclear properties with a modern version of Rutherford's scattering experiment. 4 Art Hobson enjoys teaching the wave nature of all matter in our environment.

Niels Bohr was born in Copenhagen, Denmark, in 1885. His father, a Lutheran, was a professor of physiology at the University of Copenhagen.

His mother came from a wealthy Jewish family prominent in Danish banking and parliamentary circles. His brother, Harald Bohr, was a mathematician and Olympic soccer player on the Danish national team. Niels was passionate about soccer as well, and the two brothers played in a number of national matches in Copenhagen.

Bohr earned his physics doctorate in Denmark in 1911. He then worked for a time in the laboratory of J. J. Thomson, the discoverer of the electron, at Trinity College, a college of the University of Cambridge in England before continuing his research under Ernest Rutherford at the University of Manchester, also in England. Rutherford had just discovered that a tiny, positively charged nucleus sits at the center of every atom, surrounded, presumably, by Thomson's electrons. Bohr pondered this new picture of the atom and added quantum principles to it. He published his model of atomic structure in 1913, in which electrons travel only in certain orbits around the atomic nucleus, and the atom emits light when electrons make "quantum jumps" from one orbit to another. His theory brilliantly accounted for the visible spectral lines of hydrogen (the Balmer series) and also predicted ultraviolet and infrared spectral lines that had not yet been observed.

Bohr won the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1922 for his work on the quantum theory of atoms, a year after Albert Einstein won the Nobel Prize for his work on the photoelectric effect. After quantum theory evolved and matured in the mid-1920s, Einstein had great reservations about its probabilistic nature, much preferring the determinism of classical physics. He and Bohr debated these two views of physics throughout their lives, always maintaining the greatest respect for each other.

Because Bohr's mother was Jewish, he was in danger in Nazi-occupied Denmark during World War II. In 1943, shortly before an impending arrest, he escaped to Sweden with his family. The Allies, recognizing Bohr's importance, flew him from Sweden to London tucked in the bomb bay of an unarmed Mosquito bomber. Because Bohr forgot to put on his oxygen mask, he passed out. Fortunately, the pilot, sensing that something was wrong when Bohr didn't respond to intercom messages, descended to a lower altitude and delivered a still-living passenger to London. Bohr reportedly said that he had slept like a baby during the flight. He then went to the United States to work on the U.S. Manhattan Project at the top-secret Los Alamos laboratory in New Mexico. For security reasons he was assigned the name of Nicholas Baker during the project.

After the war, Bohr returned to Copenhagen, advocating the peaceful use of nuclear energy and the sharing of nuclear information. When awarded the Order of the Elephant by the Danish government, he designed his own coat of arms, which featured a symbol of yin and yang with the Latin motto *contraria sunt complementa*: "opposites are complementary."

Bohr's son Aage went on to become a very successful physicist and, like his father, won a Nobel Prize in Physics, his in 1975. Niels Bohr died in Copenhagen in 1962. Much of this chapter involves his view of the underlying physics of nature.

32.1 Discovery of the Atomic Nucleus

Half a dozen years after Einstein announced the photoelectric effect, the New Zealand–born British physicist Ernest Rutherford oversaw his now famous gold-foil experiment.[1] This significant experiment showed that the atom is mostly empty space, with most of its mass concentrated in the central region—the **atomic nucleus.**

[1]Why "oversaw"? To indicate that more investigators than Rutherford were involved in this experiment. The widespread practice of elevating a single scientist to the position of sole investigator, which seldom is the case, too often denies the involvement of other investigators. Of particular note were Rutherford's assistants Geiger and Marsden, who sat for hours in complete darkness, making angular measurements of sparks through a microscope. Geiger went on to invent the popular radiation detector, the Geiger counter. There's substance to the saying, "There are two things more important to people than sex and money—*recognition and appreciation*."

Pearson eText **ADDITIONAL RESOURCES**
Videos
Screencasts

You'll note that much of this chapter is a synthesis of chapters already covered—hopefully a "tying-it-together" chapter.

Ernest Rutherford (1871–1937)

In Rutherford's experiment, a beam of positively charged particles (alpha particles) from a radioactive source was directed through a sheet of extremely thin gold foil. Because alpha particles are thousands of times more massive than electrons, it was expected that the stream of alpha particles would not be impeded as it passed through the sea of electrons. This was indeed observed—for the most part. Nearly all alpha particles passed through the gold foil with little or no deflection and produced a spot of light when they hit a fluorescent screen beyond the foil. But some particles were deflected from their straight-line paths as they emerged. A few alpha particles were widely deflected, and a small number were even scattered backward! These alpha particles must have hit something relatively massive—but what? Rutherford reasoned that the undeflected particles traveled through empty space in regions of the gold foil, while the small number of deflected particles were repelled from extremely dense, positively charged central cores. Each atom, he concluded, must contain one of these cores, which he named the *atomic nucleus*.

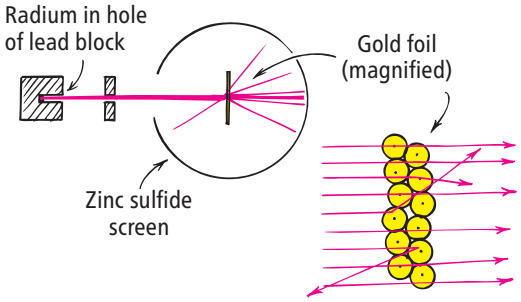


FIGURE 32.1
The occasional large-angle scattering of alpha particles from gold atoms led Rutherford to the discovery of the very massive small nuclei at their centers.

Rutherford later related that the discovery of alpha particles rebounding backward was the most incredible event of his life—as incredible as if a 15-inch cannon shell rebounded from a piece of tissue paper.

CHECK POINT

1. **What convinced Rutherford that the gold foil was mostly empty space?**
2. **What convinced him that particles in the gold foil were massive?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Finding that most alpha particles were undeflected indicated much empty space.
2. Finding that some alpha particles bounced backward indicated the presence of particles more massive than the alpha particles.

FIGURE 32.2
Franklin's kite-flying experiment.

32.2 Discovery of the Electron

Surrounding the atomic nucleus are electrons. The name *electron* comes from the Greek word for amber, a brownish-yellow fossil resin studied by the early Greeks. They found that when amber was rubbed by a piece of cloth, it attracted such things as bits of straw. This phenomenon, known as the *amber effect*, remained a mystery for almost 2000 years. In the late 1500s, William Gilbert, Queen Elizabeth's physician, found other materials that behaved like amber, and he called them "electrics." The concept of electric charge awaited experiments by the American scientist-statesman Benjamin Franklin nearly two centuries later. Recall from Chapter 22 that Franklin experimented with electricity and postulated the existence of an electric fluid that could flow from place to place. An object with an excess of this fluid he called *electrically positive*, and one with a deficiency of the fluid he called *electrically negative*. The fluid was thought to attract ordinary matter but to repel itself. Although we no longer talk about electric fluid, we still follow

Franklin's lead in how we define positive and negative electricity. Franklin's 1752 experiment with the kite in the lightning storm showed that lightning is an electrical discharge between clouds and the ground. This discovery told him that electricity is not restricted to solid or liquid objects and that it can travel through a gas.

Franklin's experiments later inspired other scientists to produce electric currents through various dilute gases in sealed glass tubes. Interestingly, the insides of these evacuated tubes were coated with a phosphorescent material so that impacts by subatomic particles created visible sparks of light. Among other scientists in the 1870s, was Sir William Crookes, an unorthodox English scientist who believed he could communicate with the dead. He is better remembered for his "Crookes tube," a sealed glass tube that contains gas under very low pressure and has electrodes inside the tube near each end (the forerunner to today's neon signs). The gas glowed when the electrodes were connected to a voltage source (such as a battery). Different gases glowed with different colors. Experiments conducted with tubes containing metal slits and plates showed that the gas was made to glow by some sort of a "ray" emerging from the negative terminal (the *cathode*). Slits could make the ray narrow and plates could prevent the ray from reaching the positive terminal (the *anode*). The apparatus was named the *cathode-ray tube*, or CRT (Figure 32.3). When electric charges were brought near the tube, the ray was deflected. It bent toward positive charges and away from negative charges. The ray was also deflected by the presence of a magnet. These findings indicated that the ray consisted of negatively charged particles.

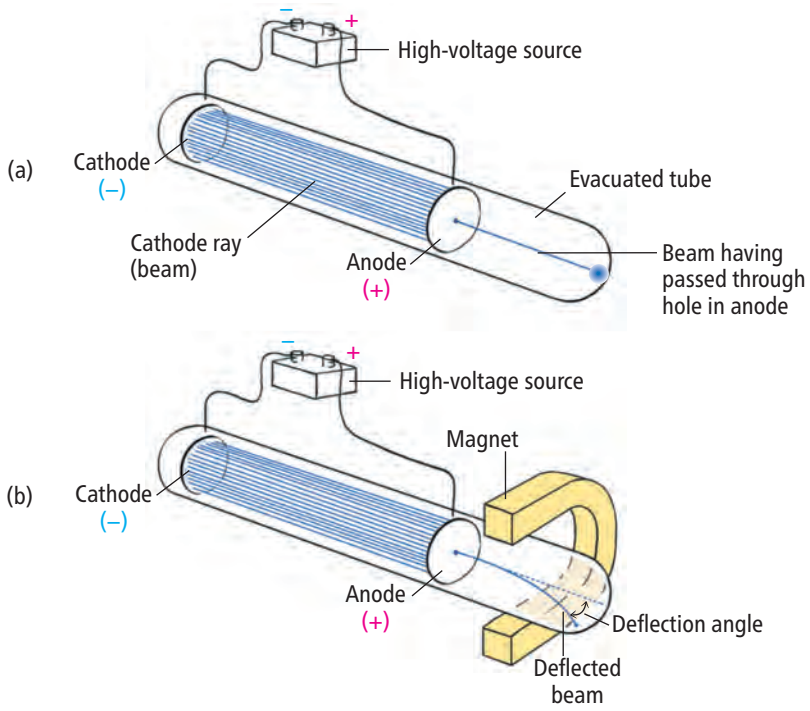


FIGURE 32.3
(a) A simple cathode-ray tube. The small hole in the anode permits the passage of a narrow beam that strikes the end of the tube, producing a glowing dot on the glass. (b) The cathode ray is deflected by a magnetic field.

In 1897, the English physicist Joseph John Thomson ("J. J.," as his friends called him) showed that the cathode rays were particles smaller and lighter than atoms. He created narrow beams of cathode rays and measured their deflection in electric and magnetic fields. Thomson reasoned that the amount of the beams' deflection depended on the mass of the particles and their electric charge. How? The greater each particle's mass, the greater the inertia and the less the deflection. The greater each particle's charge, the greater the force and the greater the deflection. The greater the speed, the less the deflection.

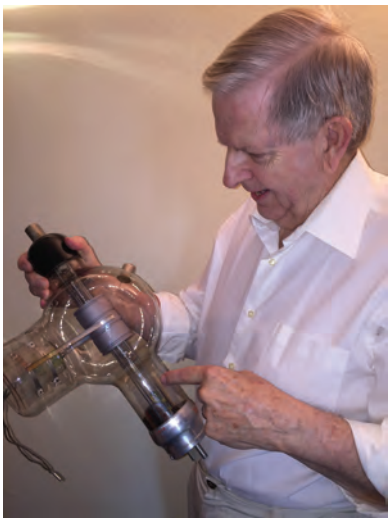
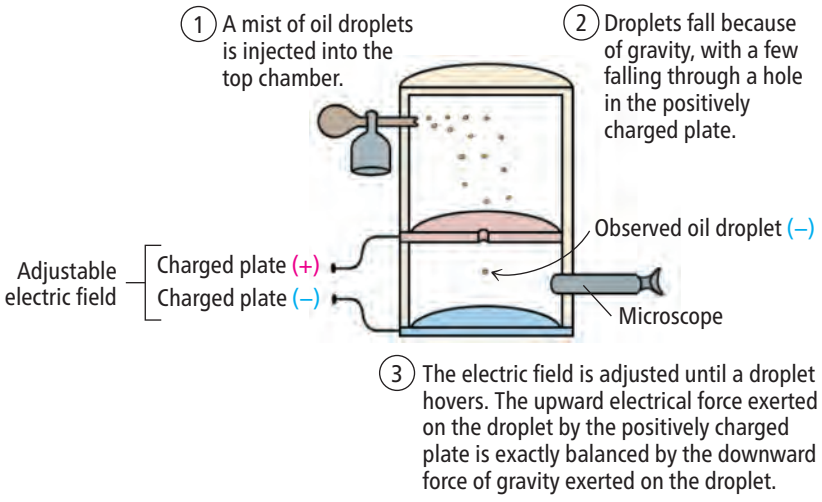


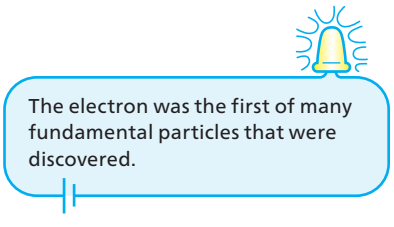
FIGURE 32.4
Brad Huff with a cathode-ray tube.

From careful measurements of the deflection of the beam, Thomson succeeded in calculating the mass-to-charge ratio of the cathode-ray particle, which was named the **electron.** All electrons are identical; they are copies of one another. For establishing the existence of the electron, J. J. Thomson was awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1906.

In 1909, a dozen years after Thomson's mass-to-charge measurements, American physicist Robert Millikan carried out an experiment that enabled him to calculate the numerical value of a single unit of electric charge. In his experiment, Millikan sprayed tiny oil droplets into a chamber between electrically charged plates—into an *electric field*. When the field was strong, some of the droplets moved upward, indicating that they carried a very slight negative charge. Millikan adjusted the field so that the droplets hovered motionless. He knew that the downward force of gravity on the droplets was exactly balanced by the upward electrical force. Investigation showed that the charge on each drop was always some multiple of a single very small value, which he proposed to be the fundamental unit of charge carried by each electron. Using this value and the mass-to-charge ratio discovered by Thomson, Millikan calculated the mass of an electron to be about 1/2000 the mass of the lightest known atom, hydrogen. This confirmed Thomson's supposition that the electron is a lightweight and it established the quantum unit of charge. For his work in physics, Millikan received the 1923 Nobel Prize.

FIGURE 32.5
Millikan's oil-drop experiment for determining the charge on the electron.


1 A mist of oil droplets is injected into the top chamber.
2 Droplets fall because of gravity, with a few falling through a hole in the positively charged plate.
Observed oil droplet (–)
Adjustable electric field
Charged plate (+)
Charged plate (–)
Microscope
3 The electric field is adjusted until a droplet hovers. The upward electrical force exerted on the droplet by the positively charged plate is exactly balanced by the downward force of gravity exerted on the droplet.



If atoms contain negatively charged electrons, it stood to reason that atoms must also contain some balancing positively charged matter. J. J. Thomson proposed what he called a "plum-pudding" model of the atom in which electrons are like plums in a sea of positively charged pudding. The experimentation of Rutherford and the gold-foil experiment, mentioned earlier, proved this model wrong.

CHECK POINT

How does the nature of electrons in a cathode-ray tube differ from the electrons of the Millikan oil-drop experiment? And from the electrons common in electric current?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

All are identical in a world where identical things are rare. An electron in a cathode-ray tube in London has no different properties than an electron in an oil-drop experiment in Salt Lake City, nor in lamp filaments everywhere.

UNIQUE OR IDENTICAL

It seems amazing that so much in nature is unique. The patterns on the skin of our fingertips are unique to us. Nobody else has the same fingerprints. No two faces are identical, not even those of "identical" twins, as face-recognition technology confirms. Likewise for the faces of penguins. Look close enough and you'll see that no two ladybugs have exactly the same spots on their backs. No two leaves in all the world's trees are exactly the same. Quite remarkably, each fingerprint, each face, each leaf—is unique.

But if we look at the world of the very small, we find something quite different. Each elementary particle, or fundamental particle, is *identical* to others of the same type. Fundamental particles are those that, as far as we know, are not composed of smaller parts. They include quarks, neutrinos, and the familiar electron. One electron is the same as any other electron: They are truly clones.

Support for no two electrons being the same is the *exclusion principle*, which states that no two electrons in an atom can occupy the same quantum state simultaneously—a backbone of all atomic theory and quantum physics. If electrons were not identical, two of them could occupy the same state of motion—a big quantum no-no. Other fundamental particles obey the exclusion principle as well. If they didn't, the world would be a *very* different place.

Under certain conditions, some composite particles—particles made up of smaller particles—can be identical as well. For example, hydrogen atoms in their ground state, or lowest energy state, are identical. Being identical involves simplicity of structure. We don't have to go very far up the complexity scale before being identical, although possible in principle, becomes less and less likely. If some entity is made of dozens (or millions, or billions) of individual parts, there may be so many ways of arranging the parts that no two arrangements will be identical. So the uniqueness of every leaf, every face, and the unique spots of a ladybug can be understood in terms of the complexity of their structure at the atomic scale.

32.3 Atomic Spectra: Clues to Atomic Structure

During the period of Rutherford's experiments, chemists were using the spectroscope (discussed in Chapter 30) for chemical analysis, while physicists were busily occupied trying to find order in the confusing arrays of spectral lines. It had long been known that the lightest element, hydrogen, has a far more orderly spectrum than the other elements. Nearly as simple is the spectrum of helium, both spectra shown in Figure 32.6. The spacings between successive spectral lines suggested some order. A Swiss schoolteacher, Johann Jakob Balmer, first expressed the wavelengths of these lines in a single mathematical formula in 1884. Balmer, however, was unable to provide a reason why his formula worked so successfully. His guess that his formula could be extended to predict other lines of hydrogen proved to be correct, leading to the prediction of lines that had not yet been measured.

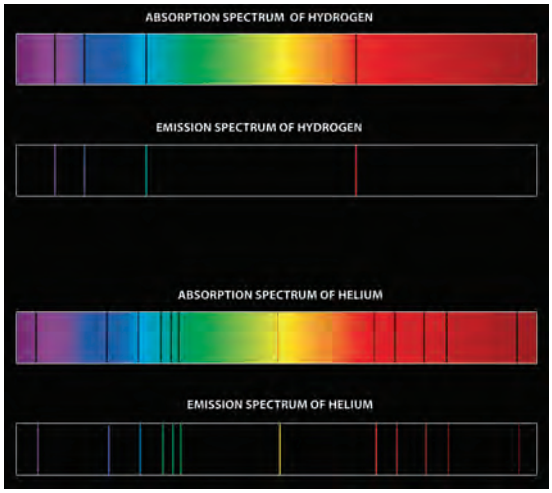

ABSORPTION SPECTRUM OF HYDROGEN
EMISSION SPECTRUM OF HYDROGEN
ABSORPTION SPECTRUM OF HELIUM
EMISSION SPECTRUM OF HELIUM

FIGURE 32.6
Absorption and emission spectra for hydrogen and helium. Each line, an image of the slit in the spectroscope, represents light of a specific frequency emitted by the gases when excited.

Another regularity in atomic spectra was found by the Swedish physicist and mathematician Johannes Rydberg. He noticed that the frequencies of lines in certain series in other elements followed a formula similar to Balmer's and that the sum of the frequencies of two lines in such series often equals the frequency of a third line. This relationship was later advanced as a general principle by the Swiss physicist Walter Ritz and is called the **Ritz combination principle.** It states that the spectral lines of any element include frequencies that are either the sum or the difference of the frequencies of two other lines. Like Balmer, Ritz was unable to offer an explanation for this regularity. However, these regularities were the clues that the Danish physicist Niels Bohr used to understand the structure of the atom itself.

CHECK POINT

How does the pattern of spectral lines of hydrogen as seen in absorption spectra of the Sun differ from the spectra of hydrogen in a physics laboratory on Earth?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The pattern of lines is fundamentally the same for the Sun and Earth, which lends support to the laws of physics being universal.

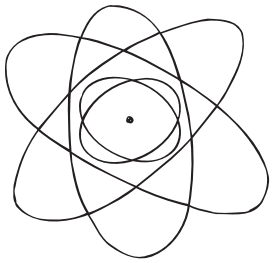


FIGURE 32.7
The Bohr model of the atom. Although this model is very oversimplified, it is still useful in understanding light emission.

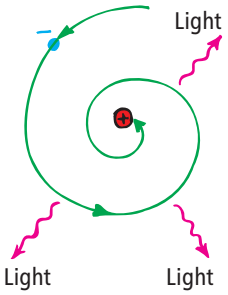


FIGURE 32.8
According to classical theory, an electron accelerating around its orbit should continuously emit radiation. This loss of energy should cause it to spiral rapidly into the nucleus. But this does not happen.

32.4 Bohr Model of the Atom

In 1913, Bohr applied the quantum theory of Planck and Einstein to the nuclear atom of Rutherford and formulated the well-known planetary model of the atom.[2] Bohr reasoned that electrons occupy "stationary" states (of fixed energy, not fixed position) at different distances from the nucleus and that the electrons can make "quantum jumps" from one energy state to another. He reasoned that light is emitted when such a quantum jump occurs (from a higher to a lower energy state). Furthermore, Bohr realized that the frequency of emitted radiation is determined by $E = hf$ (actually, $f = E/h$), where E is the difference in the atom's energy when the electron is in the different orbits. This was an important breakthrough because Bohr said that the emitted photon's frequency is not the classic frequency at which an electron is vibrating but, instead, is determined by the energy *differences* in the atom (as discussed in Chapter 30). From there, he could advance to the next step and determine the energies of the individual orbits.

Recall that any object traveling in a circular path is accelerating, not because of changing speed, but because of changing direction. Bohr's planetary model of the atom begged a major question. Accelerated electrons, according to Maxwell's theory, radiate energy in the form of electromagnetic waves. So an electron accelerating around a nucleus should radiate energy continuously. This radiating away of energy should cause the electron to spiral into the nucleus (Figure 32.8). Bohr boldly deviated from classical physics by stating that the electron doesn't radiate light while it accelerates around the nucleus in a single orbit, but that radiation of light occurs only when the electron makes a transition from a higher energy level to a lower energy level. As we now know, the atom emits a photon whose energy is equal to the *difference* in energy between the two energy levels,

[2]This model, like most models, has major defects because the electrons do not revolve in planes as planets do. The model was revised; "orbits" became "shells" and "clouds." We use the term *orbit* because it was, and still is, commonly used. Electrons are not just bodies, like planets, but rather behave like waves concentrated in certain parts of the atom.

$E = hf$. As we learned in Chapter 30, the frequency of the emitted photon, its color, depends on the size of the jump. So the quantization of light energy neatly corresponds to the quantization of electron energy.

Bohr's views, as outlandish as they seemed at the time, explained the regularities found in atomic spectra. Bohr's explanation of the Ritz combination principle is shown in Figure 32.9. If an electron is boosted to the third energy level, it can return to its initial level either by a single jump from the third to the first level or by a double jump, first to the second level and then to the first level. These two return paths will produce three spectral lines. In accord with the conservation of energy, note that the sum of the two energy jumps along paths A and B is equal to the single energy jump along path C. Since frequency is proportional to energy, the frequencies of light emitted along paths A and B, when added, equal the frequency of light emitted when the transition is along path C. Now we can see why the sum of two frequencies in the spectrum is equal to a third frequency in the spectrum.

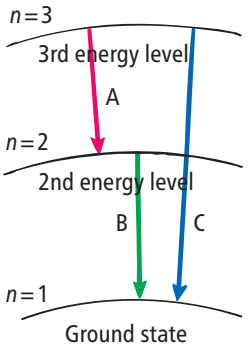


FIGURE 32.9
Three of many energy levels in an atom. An electron jumping from the third level to the second level (red A), and one jumping from the second level to the ground state (green B). The sum of the energies (and the frequencies) for these two jumps equals the energy (and the frequency) of the single jump from the third level to the ground state (blue C).

Bohr was able to account for X-rays in heavier elements, showing that they are emitted when electrons jump from outer to innermost orbits. He predicted X-ray frequencies that were later experimentally confirmed. Bohr was also able to confirm the "ionization energy" of a hydrogen atom—the energy needed to knock the electron out of the atom completely. This also was verified by experiment.

Using measured frequencies of X-rays as well as visible, infrared, and ultraviolet light, scientists could map the energy levels of all the atomic elements. Bohr's model had electrons orbiting in neat circles (or ellipses) arranged in groups or shells. This model of the atom accounted for the general chemical properties of the elements. It also led to the discovery of hafnium.

Bohr solved the mystery of atomic spectra while providing an extremely useful model of the atom. He was quick to stress that his model was to be interpreted as a crude beginning, and the picture of electrons whirling about the nucleus like planets about the Sun was not to be taken literally (to which popularizers of science paid no heed). His sharply defined orbits were conceptual representations of an atom whose later description involved waves—quantum mechanics. His ideas of quantum jumps and frequencies being proportional to energy differences remain part of today's modern theory.

CHECK POINT

1. **What is the maximum number of paths for de-excitation available to a hydrogen atom excited to level 3 in changing to the ground state?**
2. **Two predominant spectral lines in the hydrogen spectrum, an infrared one and a red one, have frequencies of 2.7×10^{14} Hz and 4.6×10^{14} Hz, respectively. Can you predict a higher-frequency line in the hydrogen spectrum?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Two (a single jump C, and a double jump A, B) as seen in Figure 32.9.
2. The sum of the frequencies is $2.7 \times 10^{14} + 4.6 \times 10^{14} = 7.3 \times 10^{14}$ Hz, which happens to be the frequency of a violet line in the hydrogen spectrum. Using Figure 32.9 as a model, can you see that if the infrared line is produced by a transition similar to path A and the red line corresponds to path B, then the violet line corresponds to path C?

fyi

- We all know that our Sun is made of hydrogen and helium, but the scientist to discover that in 1925 is not well known—Cecilia Payne—the first woman full professor at Harvard, who died in 1979. Through the painstaking task of identifying dozens of spectral signatures in thousands of spectra, she found that hydrogen in the Sun was a million times more abundant than presumed, and helium a thousand times more. She also established that stars can be classified by their temperatures, which today is common knowledge. Cecilia Payne did much to inspire generations of women to take up science. A tip of the hat to the awesome Cecilia Payne.

32.5 Explanation of Quantized Energy Levels: Electron Waves

Back in Chapter 11 we discussed the different sizes of atoms; this was shown in Figure 11.10. In Chapter 30 we discussed atomic excitation and how atoms emit photons when their electrons make energy-level transitions. The idea that electrons may occupy only certain energy levels was very perplexing to early investigators and to Bohr himself. It was perplexing because the electron was at first thought to be analogous to a particle, a tiny BB, whirling around the nucleus like a planet whirling around the Sun. Just as a satellite can orbit at any distance from the Sun, it would seem that an electron should be able to orbit around the nucleus at any radial distance—depending, of course, like the satellite, on its speed. Moving among all orbits would enable the electrons to emit all energies of light. But this doesn't happen (recall Figure 32.8). Why the electron occupies only discrete levels is understood by considering the electron to be not a particle—but a *wave*.

Louis de Broglie introduced the concept of matter waves in 1924. He hypothesized that a wave is associated with every particle and that the wavelength of a matter wave is inversely related to a particle's momentum. These *matter waves* behave just like other waves; they can be reflected, refracted, diffracted, and caused to interfere. Using the idea of interference, de Broglie showed that the discrete values of radii of Bohr's orbits are a natural consequence of standing electron waves. A Bohr orbit exists where an electron wave closes on itself constructively. The electron wave becomes a standing wave, like a wave on a musical string. In this view, the electron is thought of not as a particle located at some point in the atom but as if its mass and charge were spread out into a standing wave surrounding the atomic nucleus—with an integral number of wavelengths fitting evenly into the circumferences of the orbits (Figure 32.10a). The circumference of the innermost orbit, according to this picture, is equal to one wavelength. The second orbit has a circumference of two electron wavelengths, the third has three, and so forth (Figure 32.11). This is similar to a chain necklace made of paper clips. No matter what size necklace is made, its circumference is equal to some multiple of the length of a single paper clip.[3] Since the circumferences of electron orbits are discrete, it follows that the radii of these orbits, and hence the energy levels, are also discrete.

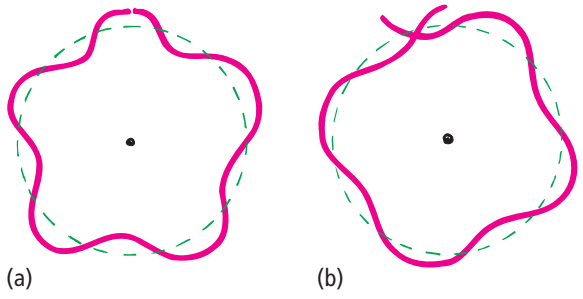


FIGURE 32.10
(a) An orbiting electron forms a standing wave only when the circumference of its orbit is equal to a whole-number multiple of the wavelength. (b) When the wave does not close in on itself in phase, it undergoes destructive interference. Hence, orbits exist only where waves close in on themselves in phase.

[3]For each orbit, the electron has a unique speed, which determines its wavelength. Electron speeds are lower, and wavelengths are longer, for orbits of increasing radii, so for our analogy to be accurate, we'd have to use not only more paper clips to make increasingly longer necklaces but increasingly larger paper clips as well.

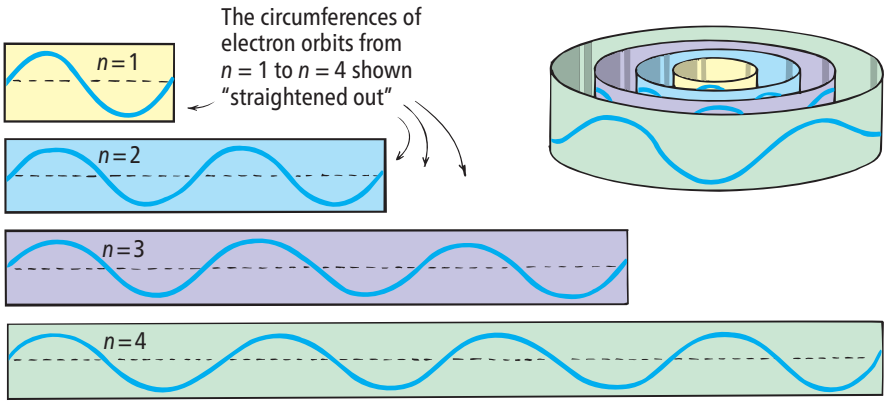
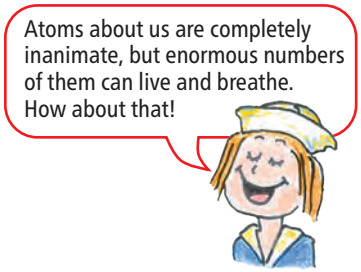


FIGURE 32.11
The electron orbits in an atom have discrete radii because the circumferences of the orbits are whole-number multiples of the electron wavelength. This results in a discrete energy state for each orbit. (The figure is greatly oversimplified because the standing waves make up spherical and ellipsoidal shells rather than flat, circular ones.)

This model explains why electrons don't spiral closer and closer to the nucleus, causing atoms to shrink to the size of the tiny nucleus. If each electron orbit is described by a standing wave, then the circumference of the smallest orbit can be no smaller than one wavelength—no fraction of a wavelength is possible in a circular (or elliptical) standing wave. As long as an electron carries the momentum necessary for wave behavior, atoms don't shrink in on themselves.

In the still more modern wave model of the atom, electron waves move not only around the nucleus but also in and out, toward and away from the nucleus. The electron wave is spread out in three dimensions, leading to the picture of an electron "cloud." As we shall see, this is a cloud of *probability*, not a cloud made up of pulverized electrons scattered over space. The electron, when detected, remains a point particle.



CHECK POINT

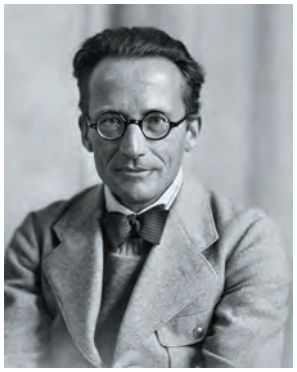
An exasperated classmate claims we should make up our minds as to whether matter is particle-like or wavelike! What is your response?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Formerly exasperated investigators over time have concluded that matter has both particle-like and wavelike properties. Accept it for now, move on, and perhaps exasperation will lessen after further study.

32.6 Quantum Mechanics

Many changes in physics occurred in the mid-1920s. Not only was the particle nature of light established experimentally but also particles of matter were found to have wave properties. Starting with de Broglie's matter waves, the Austrian physicist Erwin Schrödinger formulated an equation that describes how matter waves change under the influence of external forces. Schrödinger's equation plays the same role in **quantum mechanics** that Newton's equation (acceleration = force/mass) plays in classical physics.[4] The matter waves in Schrödinger's equation are mathematical entities that are not directly observable, so the equation provides us with a purely mathematical rather than a visual model of the atom—which places it beyond the scope of this book. So our discussion will be brief.[5]


Erwin Schrödinger (1887–1961)

[4]Schrödinger's wave equation, strictly for math types, is $\left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla^2 + U\right]\Psi = i\hbar\frac{\partial\Psi}{\partial t}$.

[5]Our short treatment of this complex subject is hardly conducive to any real understanding of quantum mechanics. At best, it serves as a brief overview and possible introduction to further study. For example, read Ken Ford's *The Quantum World: Quantum Physics for Everyone* (2004), *101 Quantum Questions* (2011), and *Building the H Bomb* (2015).

In **Schrödinger's wave equation,** the thing that "waves" is the nonmaterial *matter wave amplitude*—a mathematical entity called a *wave function*, represented by the symbol Ψ (the Greek letter psi). The wave function given by Schrödinger's equation represents the possibilities that can occur in a system. For example, the location of the electron in a hydrogen atom may be anywhere from the center of the nucleus to a radial distance far away. An electron's possible position and its probable position at a particular time are not the same. A physicist can calculate its probable position by multiplying the wave function by itself ($|\Psi|^2$). This produces a second mathematical entity called a *probability density function*, which at a given time indicates the probability per unit volume for each of the possibilities represented by Ψ.

Experimentally, there is a finite probability (chance) of finding an electron in a particular region at any instant. The value of this probability lies between the limits 0 and 1, where 0 indicates never and 1 indicates always. For example, if the probability of finding the electron within a certain radius is 0.4, this signifies a 40% chance that the electron will exist there. So the Schrödinger equation cannot tell a physicist where an electron can be found in an atom at any moment, but only the *likelihood* of finding it there—or, for a large number of measurements, what fraction of measurements will find the electron in each region. When an electron's position in its Bohr energy level (state) is repeatedly measured and each of its locations is plotted as a dot, the resulting pattern resembles a sort of electron cloud (Figure 32.12). An individual electron may, at various times, be detected anywhere in this probability cloud; it even has an extremely small but finite probability of momentarily passing through the nucleus and back. The electron is detected most of the time, however, close to an average distance from the nucleus that fits the orbital radius described by Niels Bohr.

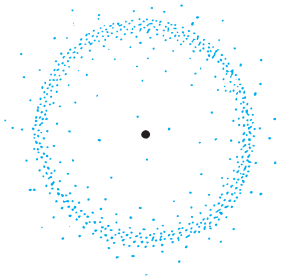


FIGURE 32.12
The probability distribution of an electron cloud for a particular excited state.

Most physicists, but not all, view quantum mechanics as a fundamental theory of nature. Interestingly enough, Albert Einstein, one of the founders of quantum physics, never accepted it as fundamental; he considered the probabilistic nature of quantum phenomena as the outcome of a deeper, as yet undiscovered, physics. He stated, "Quantum mechanics is certainly imposing. But an inner voice tells me it is not yet the real thing. The theory says a lot, but does not really bring us closer to the secret of 'the Old One.'"[6]

Then there is the quote by Richard Feynman that exasperates students in their study of quantum mechanics: "Nobody, and I repeat nobody, understands quantum mechanics." Although quantum mechanics beautifully describes "how," it does not fully explain "why."

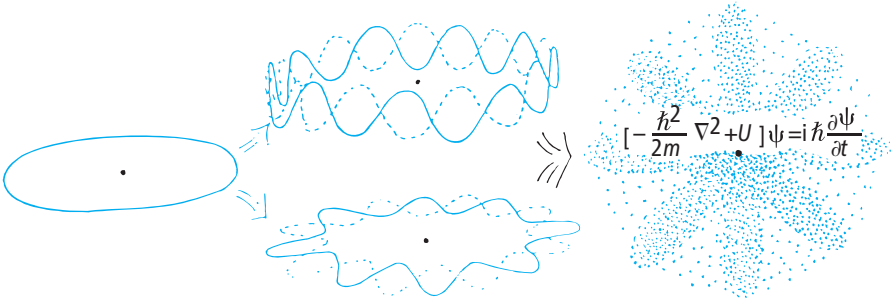


FIGURE 32.13
From the Bohr model of the atom, to the modified model with de Broglie waves, to a wave model with the electrons distributed in a "cloud" throughout the atomic volume.

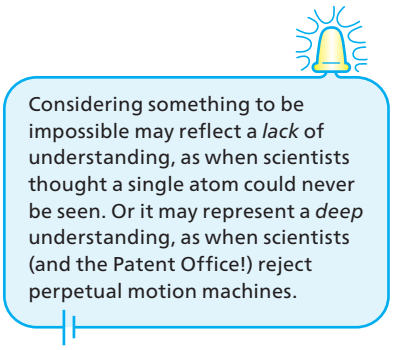
[6]Although Einstein practiced no religion, he often invoked God as the "Old One" in his statements about the mysteries of nature.

CHECK POINT

1. **Consider 100 photons diffracting through a thin slit to form a diffraction pattern. If we detect five photons in a certain region in the pattern, what is the probability (between 0 and 1) of detecting a photon in this region?**
2. **Suppose that you open a second identical slit and the diffraction pattern is one of bright and dark bands. Suppose the region where five photons hit before now contains none. A wave theory says that the waves that hit before are now canceled by waves from the other slit—that crests and troughs combine to zero. But our measurement is of photons that either make a hit or don't. How does quantum mechanics reconcile this?**

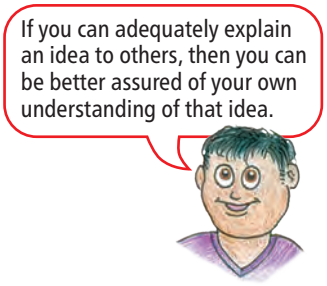
CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. We have approximately a 0.05 probability of detecting a photon at this location. The true probability could be somewhat greater or less than 0.05. Put the other way, if the true probability is 0.05, then the number detected could be somewhat greater or less than 5 photons.
2. Quantum mechanics says that photons propagate as waves and are absorbed as particles, with the probability of absorption governed by the maxima and minima of wave interference. Where the combined wave from the two slits has zero amplitude, the probability of a particle being absorbed is zero.


Considering something to be impossible may reflect a *lack* of understanding, as when scientists thought a single atom could never be seen. Or it may represent a *deep* understanding, as when scientists (and the Patent Office!) reject perpetual motion machines.

32.7 Correspondence Principle

The correspondence principle is a general rule not only for good science but for all good theory—even in areas as far removed from science as government, religion, and ethics. If a new theory is valid, it must account for the verified results of the old theory. This is the **correspondence principle,** first articulated by Bohr. New theory and old theory must correspond; that is, they must overlap and agree in the region where the results of the old theory have been fully verified.



Bohr introduced the correspondence principle in connection with his 1913 theory of the hydrogen atom. He reasoned that when an electron is in a highly excited state, orbiting far from the atomic nucleus, its behavior should resemble (correspond to) classical behavior. And indeed when an electron in such a highly excited state makes a series of quantum jumps, from one state to the next lower one and on downward, it emits photons of gradually increasing frequency that match its own frequency of motion. It seems to spiral inward, as classical physics predicts.

When the techniques of quantum mechanics are applied to still larger systems, the results are essentially identical to those of classical mechanics. The two domains blend when the de Broglie wavelength is small compared with the dimensions of the system or of the pieces of matter in the system. It is satisfying to know that quantum theory and classical theory, which make such completely different predictions at the level of a single atom, blend smoothly into a description of nature that extends from the smallest to the largest things in the universe.

HIGGS BOSON

In Chapter 4 we learned about mass, a property of matter that resists changes in motion. If you kick a soccer ball and a bowling ball, the different resistances to motion are easily felt. The bowling ball with its greater mass has greater resistance. Where does this resistance come from? This wasn't a question that physicists asked in the first half of the 20th century. Mass was just *there*, a property of nearly all particles and therefore of larger objects built from those particles. But in the 1960s theorists constructed what seemed like a satisfying theory of all fundamental particles but it had a serious flaw—it predicted that all particles, not just the photon, were massless. What to do? Rejecting the theory was one possibility, but physicists are captivated by mathematical beauty.

In 1964, the Scottish physicist Peter Higgs (soon joined by others with similar ideas) suggested a way out. A new field filling all of space could provide a kind of "viscosity" that would imbue particles with mass. This has come to be called the "Higgs field" and physicists were inclined to give credence to it. Verifying its existence, however, was a monumental problem. To find a subatomic field you hunt for the particle that is a manifestation of the field. All fields have associated particles: the photon of the electromagnetic field, the graviton of the gravitational field, and so on. To verify the Higgs field, physicists calculated that there should be a very massive particle with zero charge and zero spin—a boson. (There are two types of fundamental particles: bosons without spin and fermions, such as the electron with spin.)

The search for the "Higgs boson," as that particle came to be called, stretched over many decades. Finally, on July 4, 2012, scientists at the Large Hadron Collider at the CERN laboratory in Geneva, Switzerland, announced the discovery of a particle that had all the expected properties and a mass 133 times that of the proton (which, in turn, is nearly 2000 times the mass of an electron). Less than a year later, on March 14, 2013, experimental evidence confirmed the Higgs boson.

The scientific community has been ecstatic because the discovery of this elusive particle lends support to the "standard model" of fundamental particles and gives hope that physicists are on track to one day understand gravity more deeply and learn more about dark matter and dark energy (briefly discussed in Chapter 9).

Since the discovery of the Higgs boson, enormous new machines are planned to stretch across Europe, Japan, and China. Still unanswered questions about the Higgs boson spurs the search for new physics. The common quest is exploring unknown territory with unpredictable results. The Higgs, to many investigators, is the window to the future.

Chapter 32 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Atomic nucleus The positively charged center of an atom, containing protons and neutrons and almost the entire mass of the atom, but only a tiny fraction of its volume.

Electron The negative particle in the outer part of an atom.

Ritz combination principle The statement that the frequencies of some spectral lines of the elements are either the sums or the differences of the frequencies of two other lines.

Quantum mechanics The branch of physics in the atomic microworld based on the mechanics of waves developed especially by Werner Heisenberg (1925) and Erwin Schrödinger (1926).

Schrödinger's wave equation A fundamental equation of quantum mechanics that relates probability wave amplitudes to the forces acting on a system. It is as basic to quantum mechanics as Newton's laws of motion are to classical mechanics.

Correspondence principle The rule that a new theory must produce the same results as the old theory where the old theory is known to be valid.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

32.1 Discovery of the Atomic Nucleus

1. Why do most alpha particles fired through a piece of gold foil emerge almost undeflected, and why do others bounce backward?
2. What did Rutherford discover about the atomic nucleus?

32.2 Discovery of the Electron

3. What did Benjamin Franklin postulate about electricity?
4. What is a cathode ray?
5. How does a cathode ray respond when a magnet is brought nearby?
6. What did J. J. Thomson discover about the cathode ray?
7. What did Robert Millikan discover about the electron?

32.3 Atomic Spectra: Clues to Atomic Structure

8. What did Johann Jakob Balmer discover about the spectrum of hydrogen?
9. What did Johannes Rydberg and Walter Ritz discover about atomic spectra?

32.4 Bohr Model of the Atom

10. What relationship between electron orbits and light emission did Bohr postulate?
11. According to Niels Bohr, can a single electron in one excited state give off more than one photon when it jumps to a lower energy state?
12. What is the relationship between the energy differences energy levels in an atom and the light emitted by the atom?

32.5 Explanation of Quantized Energy Levels: Electron Waves

13. In what way does treating the electron as a wave rather than as a particle solve the riddle of why electron orbits are discrete?
14. According to the de Broglie model, how many wavelengths compose an electron wave in the first orbit? In the second orbit? In the *n*th orbit?
15. What explanation tells us why electrons don't spiral into the attracting nucleus?

32.6 Quantum Mechanics

16. What does the wave function Ψ represent?
17. How does the *probability density function* differ from the *wave function*?
18. How does the probability cloud of the electron in a hydrogen atom relate to the orbits described by Niels Bohr?
19. What prominent physicist did not view quantum mechanics as fundamental?

32.7 Correspondence Principle

20. What "corresponds" to what in the correspondence principle?

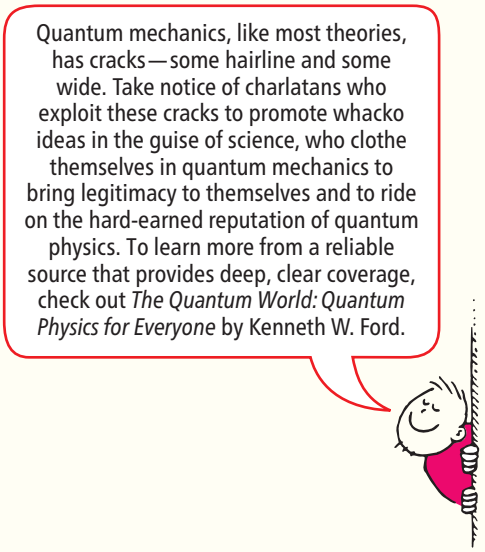
THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

21. A tossed golf ball will bounce off a bowling ball, but not off a piece of cake. How does this relate to Rutherford's experiment?
22. In what way did Rutherford's gold-foil scattering experiment suggest that the atomic nucleus is both small and very massive?
23. How does Rutherford's model of the atom account for the charge of the central atomic nucleus present in the gold foil from which the alpha particles backscatter?
24. What did Rutherford find about the kinetic energy of alpha particles in his gold-foil experiment?
25. Is it true that according to classical theory, an electron accelerating around its orbit must emit radiation? If so, what are its limitations?
26. What model of the atom explains electrons in the atom remaining in orbits without collapsing?
27. If the electron in a hydrogen atom obeyed classical mechanics instead of quantum mechanics, would it emit a continuous spectrum or a line spectrum? Defend your answer.
28. Do you think that distinct spectral lines as observed by spectroscopic techniques are an indication of quantized energy states?
29. When an electron makes a transition from its first quantum level to ground level, the energy difference is carried by the emitted photon. In comparison, how much energy is needed to return an electron at ground level to the first quantum level?
30. Figure 32.9 shows three transitions among three energy levels that would produce three spectral lines in a spectroscope. If the energy spacing between the levels were equal, would this affect the number of spectral lines?
31. How can elements with low atomic numbers have so many spectral lines?
32. In terms of wavelength, what is the measure of the orbit larger than the smallest one that an electron can have about the atomic nucleus?
33. Which best explains the photoelectric effect—the particle nature or the wave nature of the electron? Which best explains the discrete levels in the Bohr model of the atom? Defend your answers.
34. Suppose that in a diffraction experiment, out of 200 electrons one detects eight electrons in a certain region in the pattern. What is the probability (0 to 1) of detecting an electron in that region?
35. Why do helium and lithium exhibit very different chemical behavior, even though they differ by only one electron? Why is this question in this chapter rather than in Chapter 11?

36. If an electron jumps from the third energy level ($n = 3$ with energy E_3) to the second energy level ($n = 2$ with energy E_2), then what will the frequency of the emitted photon be?
37. Is it possible for electrons to emit energy in the form of radiation when staying or revolving in the same atomic orbit?
38. Between two electron orbits with circumferences of 2 and 3.5 de Broglie wavelengths, which one is stable? Justify.
39. Which model describes the most realistic picture of an atom: Bohr's model of the atom, the modified model with de Broglie waves, or the wave model with electrons distributed as clouds throughout the atomic volume as proposed by Schrodinger?
40. Give an example where particles are diffracted like waves.
41. Do you think ψ and $|\psi|^2$ in quantum mechanics represent the same quantity, where the second one is just the square of the first?
42. A friend says that the main drawback of quantum mechanics is that it cannot predict the exact location of a particle in space, and it only gives the probability of finding it at a particular location. Do you agree with this friend?
43. What actually "waves" in the Schrödinger wave equation?

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

44. Consider photons emitted from a red bulb and a blue bulb. Which one will have the greater (a) wavelength, (b) energy, (c) frequency, and (d) momentum?
45. If a gas upon excitation gives emission spectra containing violet and red lines, then which line suggests a higher energy and which one corresponds to higher wavelength?
46. When we say that electrons have particle properties and then continue to say that electrons have wave properties, aren't we contradicting ourselves? Explain.
47. It is hard to measure the single charge of an electron as described in Millikan's oil drop experiment. Also, finding the electron at a location is probabilistic, according to quantum mechanics. Then, how can we easily measure electricity, which is a flow charge per unit time, so accurately?
48. What was Einstein's very initial contribution to the development of quantum mechanics?
49. Imagine the orbits or energy levels that a hydrogen atom can have. With increasing orbit number n, the separation between the energy levels goes on decreasing. With a very large number of n, its previous energy level might be very close to it. So, the energy separation between two consecutive levels appears continuous for very highly excited states. Is this in accordance with Bohr's correspondence principle?
50. Do you apply quantum mechanics or Newtonian mechanics to deal with problems involving hydrogen atoms?
51. When an electron is in a highly excited state, orbiting far from the atomic nucleus, its behavior is classical in nature, whereas the electron in an excited state makes a series of quantum jumps, emitting photons of gradually increasing frequency and giving the perception of continuous energy emission. Which principle is being validated by this observation?
52. When principles of quantum mechanics are applied to larger objects, the results obtained are essentially like the expected findings from those of classical mechanics. Do you think that the reverse will always be true, where laws of classical mechanics will hold good on subatomic scales?
53. A friend says that after the discovery of quantum mechanics, Newtonian laws will fail to deal with massive objects, and there will be a need to introduce correction factors. Do you agree with this statement?
54. Describe how a large and a small physical constant can be related and be applicable for atomic or subatomic level physics.
55. Energy is continuous in classical mechanics, whereas it is discrete in quantum mechanics. Can you explain this by giving a real-life example of stairs and an inclined slope?


Quantum mechanics, like most theories, has cracks—some hairline and some wide. Take notice of charlatans who exploit these cracks to promote whacko ideas in the guise of science, who clothe themselves in quantum mechanics to bring legitimacy to themselves and to ride on the hard-earned reputation of quantum physics. To learn more from a reliable source that provides deep, clear coverage, check out *The Quantum World: Quantum Physics for Everyone* by Kenneth W. Ford.

CHAPTER THIRTY TWO Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. When Rutherford directed a stream of alpha particles at a gold foil, most particles
   (a) bounced back.
   (b) continued through.
   (c) stopped.
   (d) spiraled.
2. The beam in a cathode-ray tube is composed of
   (a) photons.
   (b) electrons.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
3. When an electron drops from a higher energy level to a lower one, energy is emitted. In comparison, how much energy is required to reverse the process, going from the lower level to the higher level?
   (a) Less energy
   (b) The same energy
   (c) More energy
   (d) Cannot be estimated
4. The rule stating that the sum of two emitted frequencies in an atomic spectrum equals a third frequency is consistent with
   (a) momentum conservation.
   (b) energy conservation.
   (c) Planck's constant.
   (d) None of the above
5. An excited atom decays to its ground state and emits a photon of green light. If instead the decay is to an intermediate state, then the light emitted could be
   (a) red.
   (b) violet.
   (c) blue.
   (d) Any of the above
6. According to the Bohr model, an electron in an excited state of hydrogen can emit
   (a) at most a single photon until the atom re-excites.
   (b) several photons in a series of transitions to a lower state.
   (c) a continuous stream of light.
   (d) None of the above
7. The discreteness of orbits of electrons in an atom can be understood as resulting from
   (a) wave interference.
   (b) momentum conservation.
   (c) electric charge quantization.
   (d) All the above
8. According to de Broglie, a stable electron orbit cannot exist if its circumference is
   (a) a single wavelength.
   (b) 2 wavelengths.
   (c) 2.5 wavelengths.
   (d) Any of the above
9. A hypothetical atom has three distinct energy states. Assuming all transitions are possible, the number of spectral lines this atom can produce is
   (a) 3.
   (b) 4.
   (c) 5.
   (d) more than 5.
10. A new theory conforms to the correspondence principle when it
    (a) corresponds to all theories in nature.
    (b) updates the essence of the old theory.
    (c) connects two or more theories.
    (d) accounts for verified results of the old theory.

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (b): The key word here is *most*. Most particles continued through the gold foil, with relatively few bouncing back and none spiraling.
2. (b): By definition, cathode rays are beams of electrons. Not photons. **3. (b):** The conservation of energy rules at the quantum level. The energy to boost an electron is the same energy it loses in returning to the same level. **4. (b):** Energy and frequency are directly proportional to each other: $E \sim f$. The sum of frequencies matches the corresponding sum of energies. The conservation of energy rules at the quantum level. Momentum is extraneous. **5. (a):** A decay to an intermediate state involves less energy than a decay to the ground state. Less energy means a lower-frequency photon, which of these choices is red. **6. (b):** Bohr reasoned that an electron can take intermediate steps in transitioning to a lower level. With each step along the way a photon is emitted. A continuous stream of light is spurious here. **7. (a):** As Figure 32.11 so aptly illustrates, the wave nature of light can account for the discrete orbits of electrons. Other choices are spurious. **8. (c):** As Figure 32.10 so aptly illustrates, a circular standing wave must reinforce itself after one "trip" around the circle, which means that the circumference must hold a whole numbers of waves. Choice (c) doesn't meet this requirement. **9. (a):** Here's where sketching and counting transitions answers the question. From the top level: One directly to ground. Two, a transition to the second level. Three, a transition from the second to ground. So three spectral lines will be produced from three distinct states. **10. (d):** By definition: The correspondence principle states that a new theory must produce the same results of the old theory where the old theory is known to be valid.

CHAPTER THIRTY THREE

33 The Atomic Nucleus and Radioactivity

33.1 X-rays and Radioactivity

33.2 Alpha, Beta, and Gamma Rays

33.3 Neutrinos

33.4 Environmental Radiation
- Units of Radiation
- Doses of Radiation
- Radioactive Tracers

33.5 The Atomic Nucleus and the Strong Force

33.6 Radioactive Half-Life

33.7 Radiation Detectors

33.8 Transmutation of Elements
- Natural Transmutation
- Artificial Transmutation

33.9 Radiometric Dating

1 Stanley Micklavzina uses a Geiger counter to measure the radioactivity from a Fiesta ware salt shaker. In the 1930s, Fiesta ware used uranium ore in the ceramic glaze to obtain the reddish color. **2** Radioactive decay in Earth's interior heats the water that feeds hot springs worldwide. These impressive ones, loaded with calcium carbonate, are in Pamukkale, Turkey. **3** University of Melbourne professor Roger Rassool uses a scintillation counter to show that the paths of gamma rays are unaffected by a magnetic field. **4** Leilah McCarthy discusses radioactive half-life with her students.

What physicist won two Nobel Prizes, one in physics and one in chemistry, and had a daughter who also earned a Nobel Prize in chemistry? The answer is Madame Curie. Born in 1867 as Marie Sklodowska in Warsaw, then part of the Russian Empire, she received her general education in local schools with some scientific training from her father, a secondary-school teacher. Encouraged by her elder sister Bronislawa, who was a physician and had relocated to Paris, Marie moved to Paris to continue her studies at the Sorbonne. There, she lived in a rudimentary attic, which she chose because it was affordable and close to the university. In 1894, after earning her first degree, she met the love of her life, physics professor Pierre Curie. In 1895, they were married and soon began working together.

In 1896, the French physicist Henri Becquerel discovered that uranium salts emitted rays that resembled X-rays in their ability to penetrate solid matter. Marie and Pierre began investigating uranium. They were the first to coin the word *radioactivity*. It became Marie's life's work. By this time (1898) a French citizen, Marie named the first new chemical element that she and Pierre discovered polonium—for her native country. They also discovered and named the element radium. In 1903, Pierre and Marie shared the Nobel Prize in Physics with Henri Becquerel for their work with radioactivity. Some sources say that the Curies shared money from the prize with poorer acquaintances, including students. The Sorbonne in Paris honored Pierre with a professorship and a laboratory in which Marie became chief of laboratory work.

In 1906, Pierre was struck by a horse-drawn vehicle while crossing a street in the rain. Pierre fell under its wheels and was killed by a skull fracture. Marie was devastated by her husband's death. The Sorbonne physics department entrusted Pierre's chair to Marie. She was the first female professor at the Sorbonne, where she continued her work and earned her Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1911. She was also appointed Director of the Curie Laboratory in the Radium Institute of the University of Paris, founded in 1914.

During World War I she donated her Nobel Prize gold medals to the war effort. In 1921, she was welcomed triumphantly on her first tour of the United States, where she raised funds for radium research. She toured America again in 1929, when President Hoover presented her with a check for $50,000, enough to buy 1 gram of radium for the Radium Institute in Paris.

Madame Curie visited Poland for the last time in 1934. A couple of months later she died—probably from the excessive exposure to radiation she endured during her lifetime of work. At that time, the damaging effects of ionizing radiation were not fully appreciated. She was buried at the cemetery in Sceaux, alongside her husband Pierre. Sixty years later, in 1995, in honor of their achievements, the remains of both were transferred to the Paris Panthéon. She became the first woman so honored.

33.1 X-rays and Radioactivity

Deeper probing into the atom began in 1895 when the German physicist Wilhelm Roentgen discovered **X-rays**—rays of an unknown nature. Roentgen discovered this "new kind of rays" produced by a beam of "cathode rays" (later found to be electrons) striking the glass surface of a gas-discharge tube. He found that X-rays could pass through solid materials, could ionize the air, showed no refraction in glass, and were undeflected by magnetic fields. Today we know that X-rays are high-frequency electromagnetic waves, usually emitted by the de-excitation of the innermost orbital electrons of atoms. Whereas the electron current in a fluorescent lamp excites the outer electrons of atoms and produces ultraviolet and visible photons, a more energetic beam of electrons striking a solid surface excites the innermost electrons and produces higher-frequency photons of X-radiation.

X-ray photons have high energy and can penetrate many layers of atoms before being absorbed or scattered. X-rays do this when they pass through your soft tissue to produce an image of the bones inside your body (Figure 33.1). In a modern X-ray tube, the target of the electron beam is a metal plate rather than the glass wall of the tube.

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

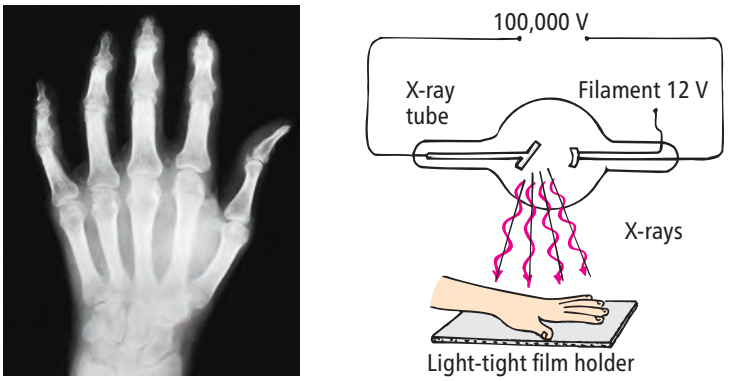
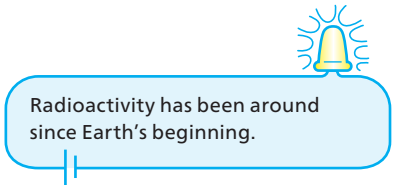


FIGURE 33.1
X-rays emitted by excited metallic atoms in the electrode penetrate flesh more readily than bone and produce an image on the film.

fyi

- So far we've treated *atomic physics*—the study of the clouds of electrons that make up the atom. Now we'll burrow beneath the electrons and go deeper into the atom—to the atomic nucleus—where available energies dwarf those available to electrons. This is *nuclear physics*, a topic of great public interest—and public fear—not unlike the fear of electricity more than a century ago. With safeguards and well-informed consumers, society has determined that the benefits of electricity outweigh its risks. Likewise today with nuclear technology's risks versus its benefits.



In early 1896, a few months after Roentgen announced his discovery of X-rays, the French physicist Antoine Henri Becquerel stumbled upon a new kind of penetrating radiation. Becquerel was studying fluorescence and phosphorescence created by both light and the newly discovered X-rays, and one evening he happened to leave a wrapped photographic plate in a drawer next to some crystals that contained uranium. The next day he discovered to his surprise that the photographic plate had been exposed, apparently by spontaneous radiation from the uranium. He went on to show that this new radiation differed from X-rays in that it could ionize air and could be deflected by electric and magnetic fields.

It was soon discovered that similar rays are emitted by other elements, such as thorium, actinium, and two new elements discovered by Marie and Pierre Curie—polonium and radium. The emission of these rays was evidence of much more drastic changes in the atom than atomic excitation. These rays, as it turned out, were the result not of changes in the electron energy states of the atom but of changes occurring within the central atomic core—the nucleus. This process is **radioactivity,** which, because it involves the decay of the atomic nucleus, is often called *radioactive decay*.

A common misconception is that radioactivity is something new in the environment, but it has been around far longer than the human race. It is as much a part of our environment as the Sun and the rain. It has always been in the soil we walk on and in the air we breathe, and it is what warms the interior of Earth and makes it molten. In fact, radioactive decay in Earth's interior is what heats the water that spurts from a geyser or wells up from a natural hot spring. Even the helium in a child's balloon is nothing more than the product of radioactive decay.

CHECK POINT

1. **Is it true that X-rays are actually light waves of high frequency?**
2. **Can we say that X-rays have more energy than light?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Yes, although it would be more accurate to say that X-rays are high-frequency electromagnetic radiation.
2. If we mean more energy per photon, then $E = hf$ tells us that any photon of X-radiation has more energy than any photon of light due to the higher frequencies of X-rays. The *amount* of energy involves exposure time. Your face in one hour of direct sunlight receives more energy than a tenth of a second of X-rays in your dentist's office.

33.2 Alpha, Beta, and Gamma Rays

More than 99.9% of the atoms in our everyday environment are stable. The nuclei in those atoms will be unlikely to change over the lifetime of the universe. But some kinds of atoms are unstable. All elements that have an atomic number greater than 82 (lead) are radioactive. These elements, and others, emit three distinct types of radiation, named by the first three letters of the Greek alphabet, α, β, γ—*alpha*, *beta*, and *gamma*.

Alpha rays have a positive electric charge, **beta rays** have a negative electric charge, and **gamma rays** have no charge at all (Figure 33.2). The three rays can be separated by placing a magnetic field across their paths (Figure 33.4). Further investigation has shown that an alpha ray is a stream of helium nuclei, and a beta ray is a stream of electrons. Hence, we often call these *alpha particles* and *beta particles*. In contrast, a gamma ray is electromagnetic radiation of frequencies even higher than those of X-rays. Whereas X-rays originate in the electron cloud outside the atomic nucleus, alpha, beta, and gamma rays originate in the nucleus. So just as light is emitted by energy-level transitions of electrons in the outer atom, gamma rays are emitted by similar energy transitions within the atomic nucleus. Gamma photons provide information about nuclear structure, much as visible and X-ray photons provide information about atomic electron structure.

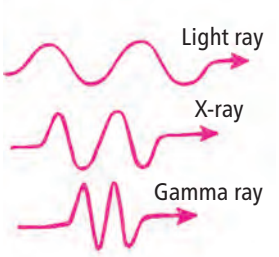


FIGURE 33.2
A gamma ray is part of the electromagnetic spectrum. It is simply electromagnetic radiation that is much higher in frequency and energy than light and X-rays.

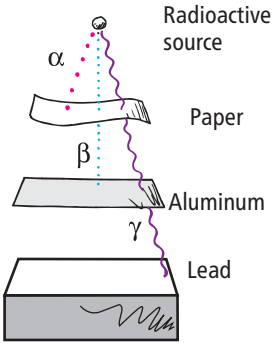


FIGURE 33.3
Alpha particles are the least penetrating and can be stopped by a few sheets of paper. Beta particles will readily pass through paper, but not through a sheet of aluminum. Gamma rays penetrate several centimeters into solid lead.

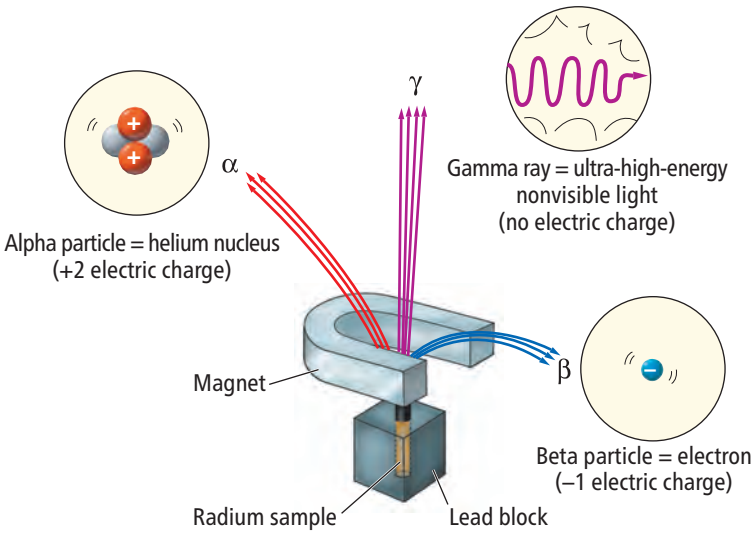


FIGURE 33.4
In a magnetic field, alpha rays bend one way, beta rays bend the other way, and gamma rays don't bend at all. The combined beam comes from a radioactive source placed at the bottom of a hole drilled in a lead block.

FIGURE 33.5
The shelf life of fresh strawberries and other perishables is markedly increased when the food is subjected to gamma rays from a radioactive source. The strawberries on the right were treated with gamma radiation, which kills the microorganisms that normally lead to spoilage. The food is only a receiver of radiation and is in no way transformed into an emitter of radiation, as can be confirmed with a radiation detector.

CHECK POINT

1. **Pretend you are given three radioactive rocks—one an alpha emitter, one a beta emitter, and one a gamma emitter. You can throw away one, but of the remaining two, you must hold one in your hand and the other you must place in your pocket. What can you do to minimize your exposure to radiation?**
2. **An atomic nucleus emits a beta particle. Does the mass of the beta particle and resulting nucleus add up to the mass of the initial nucleus?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Hold the alpha emitter in your hand because the skin on your hand will shield you. Put the beta emitter in your pocket because beta particles will likely be stopped by the combined thickness of your clothing and skin. Throw away the gamma emitter because it would penetrate your body from any of these locations. Ideally, of course, you should distance yourself as much as possible from all the rocks.
2. No. The total mass after emission is less. Think conservation of energy: Some part of the original mass transforms into kinetic energy of the products. A rule for particle decay is that the total mass of the product particles must be less than the mass of the decaying particle.

Once alpha and beta particles are slowed by collisions, they combine to become harmless helium atoms.

33.3 Neutrinos

Alpha, beta, and gamma radiation are now well understood. Early investigators in the 1920s, however, encountered puzzling results from their studies of beta emission. The energy carried away by a beta particle seemed to violate the conservation of energy. Swiss physicist Wolfgang Pauli suggested a solution to this puzzle by postulating the existence of a tiny neutral particle, later called a **neutrino.** Detecting this very elusive particle and finding whether or not it has mass consumed investigators for decades. The neutrino was detected in 1956, and detection of neutrinos from sources outside Earth began in the 1960s. It was determined that they have mass in 1998[1]. The neutrino's mass is probably around one-millionth the mass of the electron. The neutrino has no electric charge. As with other fundamental particles, neutrinos have antiparticles. Antineutrinos, interestingly, accompany beta emission.

The Telescope in the Ice by Mark Bowen—a great read about neutrino hunters at the South Pole.

Neutrinos interact only via the weak subatomic force and gravity. Their detection is extremely difficult because neutrinos interact very weakly with matter. Whereas a piece of solid lead a few centimeters thick will stop most gamma rays from a radium source, a piece of lead about 8 light-years thick would be needed to stop half the neutrinos produced in typical nuclear decays.

There are three "flavors," or types, of neutrinos: *electron neutrino*, *muon neutrino*, and *tau neutrino.* When neutrinos fly through space or through matter at close to the speed of light, they continually change flavors, oscillating among the three. They accompany beta emissions and are created in accelerators and in collisions of cosmic rays with atomic nuclei in the atmosphere. They're also created in the Sun, in other stars, and in supernovae. Those from the Sun are direct messengers from the Sun's center—indeed the *only* direct messengers from there. It takes light

[1]Neutrino pioneers who have won the Nobel Prize in physics: 1938: Enrico Fermi, who worked out the theory of neutrinos in 1935 but won for other work. 1945: Wolfgang Pauli, who proposed the neutrino in 1930 but won for other work. 1988: Leon Lederman, Melvin Schwartz, and Jack Steinberger, for detecting the muon neutrino. 1995: Martin Perl, for discovery of the tau neutrino; and Frederick Reines, for detecting the neutrino. 2002: Raymond Davis, Jr. and Masatoshi Koshiba, for detecting cosmic neutrinos. 2015: Takaaki Kajita and Arthur McDonald, for confirming that neutrinos have mass.

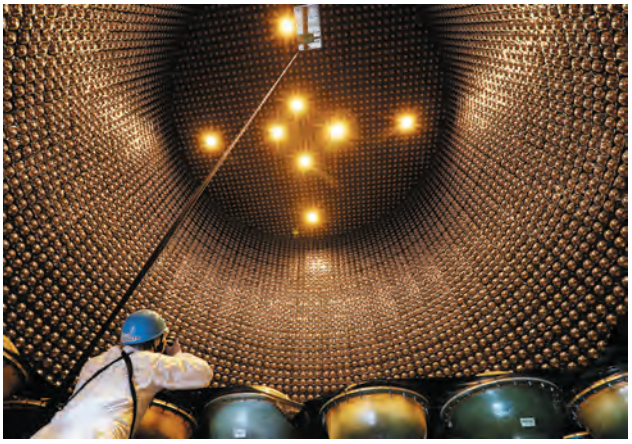


FIGURE 33.6
Inside the Super-Kamiokande underground neutrino observatory in Japan where researchers established that neutrinos have mass. Many thousands of light sensors in this normally water-filled cavern detect and distinguish among the rare collisions of neutrinos with matter.

thousands of years to diffuse from the Sun's center to its edge. What we "see" with light is only the Sun's surface. What we know of its interior is via neutrinos.

Neutrinos are abundant. Really abundant! Billions of neutrinos are flying through you every second of every day. The universe is filled with them. Only occasionally, one or two times a year or so, does a neutrino interact with the matter of your body. Neutrinos are so numerous that they might make up most of the mass of the universe. Some neutrino experts take the view that neutrinos may be the "glue" that holds the universe together. Although studying neutrinos is not easy, continued study is vital if we are to probe even more deeply into our universe.

CHECK POINT

How can gazillions of neutrinos zip through our body every second without our notice?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Neutrinos can zip through us because their weak interaction with matter is *really* weak. In contrast, an electron, because it is charged, interacts when it passes through an atom and doesn't get far in solid matter. A neutrino, experiencing neither the electric force nor the strong nuclear force (Section 33.5), can pass through atoms and through atomic nuclei with scarcely any chance of interacting.

33.4 Environmental Radiation

Common rocks and minerals in our environment contain significant quantities of radioactive isotopes because most of them contain trace amounts of uranium. As a matter of fact, people who live in brick, concrete, or stone buildings are exposed to greater amounts of radiation than people who live in wooden buildings.

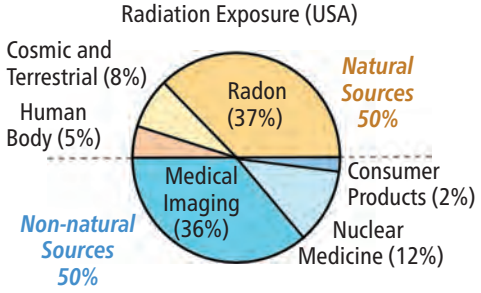


FIGURE 33.7
Origins of radiation exposure for an average individual in the United States.

FIGURE 33.8
One of several commercially available radon test kits for the home. The canister is unsealed in the area to be sampled. Radon that seeps into the canister is adsorbed by activated carbon. After several days the canister is resealed and sent to a laboratory for determination of the radon level.

The leading source of naturally occurring radiation is the isotope 222 from the gaseous element radon, atomic number 86 in the periodic table. Radon forms naturally when radioactive uranium decays to thorium, radium, and then radon in granite and other rocks, soil, and groundwater. Radon tends to accumulate in basements after it seeps up through cracks in the floor. Levels of radon vary from region to region, depending on local geology. You can check the radon level in your home with a radon detector kit (Figure 33.8). If levels are abnormally high, corrective measures, such as sealing the basement floor and walls and maintaining adequate ventilation, are recommended.

About half of our annual exposure to radiation comes from nonnatural sources, primarily medical procedures. Smoke detectors, fallout from long-ago nuclear testing, and the coal and nuclear power industries are also contributors. The coal industry far outranks the nuclear power industry as a source of radiation. The fly ash emitted by a coal power plant puts more than 100 times the radiation that a nuclear power plant produces for the same amount of energy. Worldwide, some 370,000 tons of radioactive waste are produced each year. Most all of this waste, however, is contained and *not* released into the environment.

Units of Radiation

Radiation dosage is commonly measured in **rads** (*r*adiation *a*bsorbed *d*ose), a unit of absorbed energy. One rad is equal to 0.01 joule of radiant energy absorbed per kilogram of tissue.

Some forms of radiation are more harmful than others. For example, suppose you have two arrows, one with a pointed tip and one with a suction cup at its tip. Shoot both arrows at an apple at the same speed and kinetic energy. The one with the pointed tip will invariably do more damage to the apple than the one with the suction cup. Similarly, some forms of radiation cause greater harm than other forms even when we receive the same number of rads from both forms.

Particle	Radiation Dosage		Factor		Health Effect
alpha	1 rad	×	10	=	10 rems
beta	10 rad	×	1	=	10 rems

The unit of measure for radiation dosage based on potential damage is the **rem** (*r*oentgen *e*quivalent *m*an).[2] In calculating the dosage in rems, we multiply the number of rads by a factor that corresponds to different health effects of different types of radiation determined by clinical studies. For example, 1 rad of alpha particles has the same biological effect as 10 rads of beta particles.[3] We call both of these dosages 10 rems.

CHECK POINT

Which is more harmful: being exposed to 1 rad of alpha particles or 1 rad of beta particles?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Alpha radiation is more harmful. As the chart above indicates, 1 rad of alpha radiation does the same harm as 10 rads of beta radiation.

[2]This unit is named for Wilhelm Roentgen, the discoverer of X-rays.

[3]This is true even though beta particles have more penetrating power, as previously discussed.

Doses of Radiation

Lethal doses of radiation begin at 500 rems for a whole-body dose. A person has about a 50% chance of surviving a dose of this magnitude delivered to the whole body over a short period of time, such as a day or less. During radiation therapy, a patient may receive *localized* doses in excess of 200 rems each day for a period of weeks (Figure 33.9).

All the radiation we receive from natural sources and from diagnostic medical procedures is only a fraction of 1 rem per year. For convenience, the smaller unit *millirem* is used, where 1 millirem (mrem) is 1/1000th of a rem. The average exposure per person in the United States is about 360 mrem a year, as Table 33.1 indicates. More than half of this radiation comes from natural sources, such as cosmic rays and Earth itself. A typical chest X-ray exposes a person to 5 to 30 mrem (0.005 to 0.030 rem), less than one ten-thousandth of the lethal dose. Interestingly, the human body is a significant source of natural radiation, primarily from the potassium we ingest. Our bodies contain about 200 grams of potassium. Most potassium is not radioactive. This is potassium-39, with 19 protons and 20 neutrons in its nucleus. Potassium-40, however, with its extra neutron, *is* radioactive. Potassium-39 and potassium-40 isotopes are identical chemically, except for the effects of their different masses. Of the potassium in our bodies, about 20 milligrams is the radioactive isotope potassium-40, which is a gamma-ray emitter. Between every heartbeat about 60,000 potassium-40 isotopes in the average human body undergo spontaneous radioactive decay. Radiation is indeed everywhere.

FIGURE 33.9
Nuclear radiation is focused on harmful tissue, such as a cancerous tumor, to selectively kill or shrink the tissue in a technique known as *radiation therapy*. This application of nuclear radiation has saved millions of lives—a clear-cut example of the benefits of nuclear technology. The inset shows the international symbol indicating an area where radioactive material is being handled or produced.

TABLE 33.1 ANNUAL RADIATION EXPOSURE

Source	Typical Dose (mrem) Received Annually
Natural Origin	
Cosmic radiation	30
Ground	33
Air (radon-222)	198
Human tissues (K-40; Ra-226)	40
Human Origin	
Medical procedures	
Diagnostic X-rays	40
Whole body CT scan	1000
Consumer products	8
Commercial fossil-fuel power plants	<1
Commercial nuclear power plants	$\ll 1$

FIGURE 33.10
The film badges worn by Tammy and Larry contain audible alerts for both radiation surge and accumulated exposure. Information from the individualized badges is periodically downloaded to a database for analysis and storage.

When radiation encounters the intricately structured molecules in the watery, ion-rich brine that makes up our cells, the radiation can create chaos on the atomic scale. Some molecules are damaged, and this change alters other molecules, which can be harmful to life processes.

Cells are able to repair most kinds of molecular damage caused by radiation if the radiation is not too severe. A cell can survive an otherwise lethal dose of radiation if the dose is spread over a long period of time to allow intervals for healing. When radiation is sufficient to kill cells, the dead cells can be replaced by new ones (except for most nerve cells, which are irreplaceable). Sometimes a radiated cell will survive with a damaged DNA molecule. New cells arising from the damaged cell retain the altered genetic information, producing a *mutation*. Usually the effects of a mutation are insignificant, but occasionally the mutation results in cells that do not function as well as unaffected ones, sometimes leading

to a cancer. If the damaged DNA is in an individual's reproductive cells, the genetic code of the individual's offspring may retain the mutation. Such mutations are a major driving force in evolution.

Radioactive Tracers

In scientific laboratories, radioactive samples of all the elements have been made. This is accomplished by bombardment with neutrons or other particles. Radioactive materials are extremely useful in scientific research and industry. To check the action of a fertilizer, for example, researchers combine a small amount of radioactive material with the fertilizer and then apply the combination to a few plants. The amount of radioactive fertilizer taken up by the plants can be easily measured with radiation detectors. From such measurements, scientists can inform farmers of the proper amount of fertilizer to use. Radioactive isotopes used to trace such pathways are called *tracers*.

FIGURE 33.11
A full-body front and back bone scan a few hours after patient Fred Myers was injected with radioactive technetium-99, a gamma-ray emitter that has a half-life of about 6 hours. The sites of the gamma radiation are recorded by a scanner.

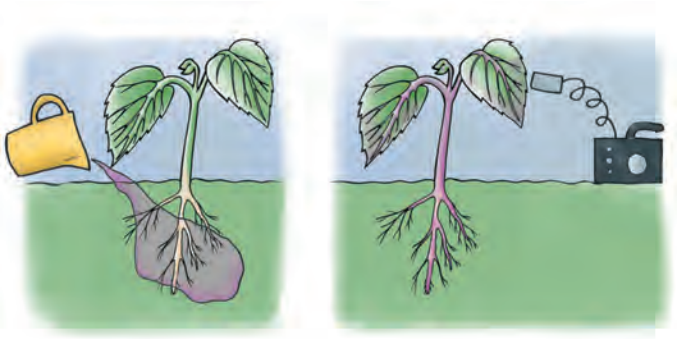


FIGURE 33.12
Tracking fertilizer uptake with a radioactive isotope.

In a technique known as medical imaging, tracers are used for the diagnosis of internal disorders. This technique works because the path the tracer takes is influenced only by its physical and chemical properties, not by its radioactivity. The tracer may be introduced alone or along with some other chemical that helps target the tracer to a particular type of tissue in the body.

fyi

- Among nature's fundamental particles are six kinds of *quark*, of which two are the fundamental building blocks of all nucleons (protons and neutrons). Quarks carry fractional electric charges. One kind, the *up* quark, carries +2/3 the proton charge, and another, the *down* quark, has −1/3 the proton charge. (The name *quark*, inspired by a quotation from *Finnegans Wake* by James Joyce, was chosen in 1963 by Murray Gell-Mann, who first proposed their existence.) Quarks in the proton are the combination *up up down*, and in the neutron *up down down*. The other four quarks bear the whimsical names *strange*, *charm*, *top*, and *bottom*. No quarks have been isolated and experimentally observed. Most theorists think quarks, by their nature, cannot be isolated.

33.5 The Atomic Nucleus and the Strong Force

The atomic nucleus occupies only a few quadrillionths of the volume of the atom, leaving most of the atom as empty space. The nucleus is composed of **nucleons**, which is the collective name for protons and neutrons. (Each nucleon is composed of three smaller particles called **quarks**—believed to be fundamental, not made of smaller parts.)

Just as there are energy levels for the orbital electrons of an atom, there are energy levels within the nucleus. Whereas orbiting electrons emit photons when they make transitions to lower energy levels, similar changes of energy states in radioactive nuclei result in the emission of gamma-ray photons. This is gamma radiation.

We know that electric charges of like sign repel one another. So how is it possible that positively charged protons in the nucleus stay clumped together? This question led to the discovery of an attraction called the **strong force,** which acts between all nucleons. This force is very strong, but only over extremely short distances (about 10^{-15} m, the approximate diameter of a proton or neutron). Repulsive electrical interactions, on

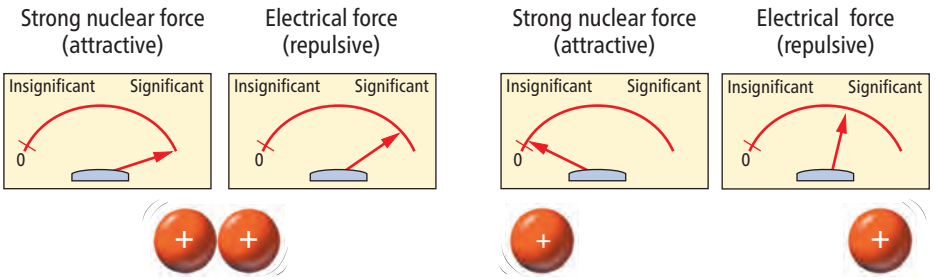


FIGURE 33.13
Imaginary meter readings of comparative forces: (a) Two nearby protons experience both an attractive strong force and a repulsive electrical force. At this tiny separation distance, the strong force overcomes the electrical force, and they stay together. (b) When the protons are far apart, the electrical force predominates and they repel. This proton–proton repulsion in large atomic nuclei reduces nuclear stability.

the other hand, are relatively long-ranged. Figure 33.13 suggests a comparison of the strengths of these two forces over distance. For protons that are close together, as in small nuclei, the attractive strong force easily overcomes the repulsive electrical force. But for protons that are far apart, like those on opposite edges of a large nucleus, the attractive strong force may be weaker than the repulsive electrical force.

A large nucleus is not as stable as a small one. In a helium nucleus, for example, each of the two protons feels the repulsive effect of the other. In a uranium nucleus, each of the 92 protons feels the repulsive effects of the other 91 protons! The nucleus is unstable. We see that there is a limit to the size of the atomic nucleus. It is for this reason that stable isotopes of larger atoms have increasingly more neutrons in their nuclei than protons, and all nuclei that have more than 82 protons are radioactive (number 83, bismuth, just barely so).

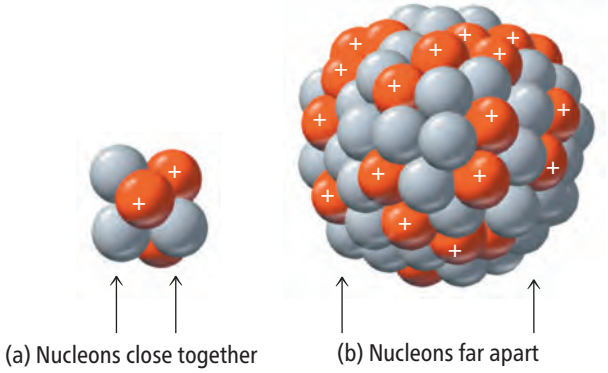


FIGURE 33.14
(a) All nucleons in a small atomic nucleus are close to one another; hence, they experience an attractive strong force. (b) Nucleons on opposite sides of a larger nucleus are not as close to one another, and so the attractive strong forces holding them together are much weaker. The result is that the large nucleus is less stable.

Without the nuclear strong force—strong interaction—there would be no atoms beyond hydrogen.

CHECK POINT

Two protons in the atomic nucleus repel each other, but they also attract each other. Why?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Two forces are acting—electrical and nuclear. While protons electrically repel each other, they also simultaneously attract each other by the strong force. When the attractive strong force is stronger than the repulsive electrical force, the protons remain together. When the protons are far apart, the electrical force can overcome the nuclear force, and they tend to fly apart.

Neutrons serve as a "nuclear cement" that holds the atomic nucleus together. Protons attract both protons and neutrons by the strong force. Protons also repel other protons by the electrical force. Neutrons, on the other hand, have no electric charge and so only attract other protons and neutrons by the strong force. The presence of neutrons therefore adds to the attraction among nucleons and helps hold the nucleus together (Figure 33.15).

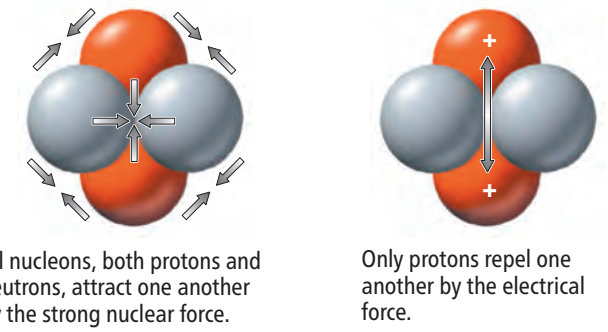

All nucleons, both protons and neutrons, attract one another by the strong nuclear force.
Only protons repel one another by the electrical force.

FIGURE 33.15
The presence of neutrons helps hold the nucleus together by increasing the effect of the strong force, represented by the single-headed arrows.

The more protons there are in a nucleus, the more neutrons are needed to help balance the repulsive electrical forces. For light elements, it is sufficient to have about as many neutrons as protons. The most common isotope of carbon, C-12, for instance, has equal numbers of each—six protons and six neutrons. For large nuclei, more neutrons than protons are needed. Because the strong force diminishes rapidly over distance, nucleons must be practically touching in order for the strong force to be effective. Nucleons on opposite sides of a large atomic nucleus are not as attracted to one another. The electrical force, however, does not diminish by much across the diameter of a large nucleus and so begins to win out over the strong force. To compensate for the weakening of the strong force across the diameter of the nucleus, large nuclei have more neutrons than protons. Lead, for example, has about one-and-a-half times as many neutrons as protons.

So we see that neutrons are stabilizing and large nuclei require an abundance of them—up to a point beyond which not even neutrons can hold a nucleus together. Interestingly, neutrons are not stable when they are by themselves. A lone neutron is radioactive and spontaneously transforms into a proton and an electron (Figure 33.16a). A neutron needs protons around to keep this from happening. The alpha particles emitted in alpha decay are literally nuclear "chunks," and only heavy nuclei emit them.[4] Beta and gamma particles, on the other hand, can be emitted by radioactive nuclei both heavy and light. The beta decay of a single neutron and the alpha decay of a heavy nucleus are shown in Figure 33.16b.

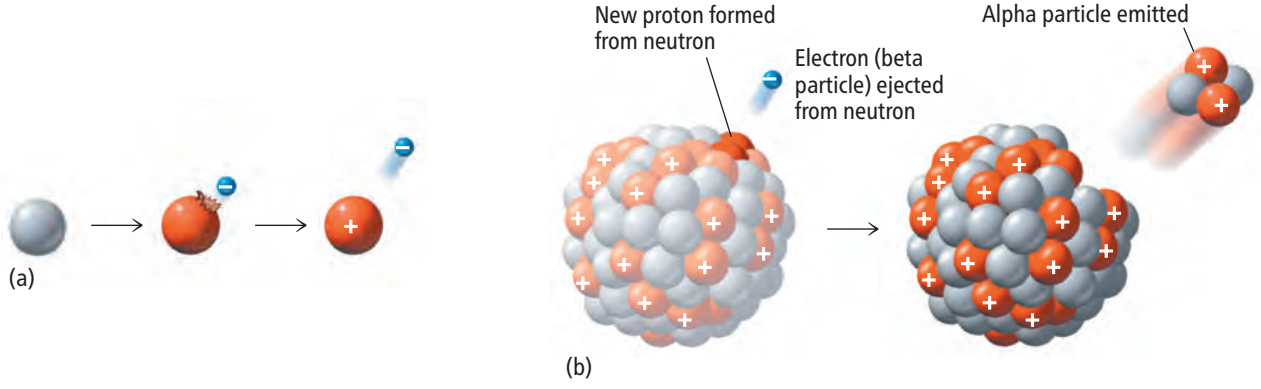


FIGURE 33.16
(a) A neutron near a proton is stable, but a neutron by itself is unstable and decays to a proton by emitting an electron. Not shown is an accompanying tiny antineutrino.
(b) Destabilized by an increase in the number of protons, the nucleus begins to shed fragments, such as alpha particles.

[4]An exception to the rule that alpha decay is limited to heavy nuclei is the highly radioactive nucleus of beryllium-8, with four protons and four neutrons, which splits into two alpha particles—a form of nuclear fission.

CHECK POINT

What role do neutrons serve in the atomic nucleus? What is the fate of a neutron when it is alone or distant from one or more protons?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

Neutrons serve as a nuclear cement in nuclei and add to nuclear stability. But when alone, a neutron is radioactive and spontaneously transforms into a proton and an electron.

33.6 Radioactive Half-Life

The radioactive decay rate of an element is measured in terms of a characteristic time, the **half-life.** This is the time it takes for half of an original quantity of a radioactive isotope to decay. Radium-226, for example, has a half-life of 1620 years. This means that half of any given specimen of radium-226 will decay into other elements by the end of 1620 years. In the following 1620 years, half of the remaining radium will decay, leaving only one-fourth the original amount of radium (after 20 half-lives, the initial quantity of radium-226 will be diminished by a factor of about 1 million).

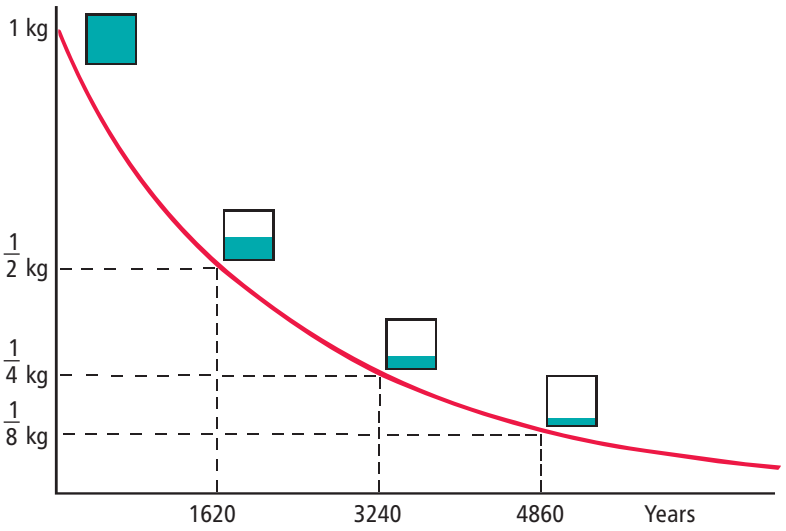


FIGURE 33.17
Every 1620 years, the amount of radium decreases by half.

Half-lives are remarkably constant and not affected by external conditions. Some radioactive isotopes have half-lives that are less than a millionth of a second, while others have half-lives of more than a billion years. Uranium-238 has a half-life of 4.5 billion years. All uranium eventually decays in a series of steps to lead. In 4.5 billion years, half the uranium presently in Earth today will be lead.

It is not necessary to wait through the duration of a half-life in order to measure it. The half-life of an element can be calculated at any given moment by measuring the rate of decay of a known quantity. This is easily done using a radiation detector. In general, the shorter the half-life of a substance, the faster it disintegrates, and the more radioactivity per amount is detected.

The radioactive half-life of a material is also the time for its decay rate to reduce to half.

fyi

- Any quantity that decreases by half over equal time intervals is said to decay exponentially. Any quantity that increases by twice over equal time intervals is said to grow exponentially. Be sure to read about exponential growth in Appendix E!

CHECK POINT

1. **If a sample of radioactive isotopes has a half-life of 1 day, how much of the original sample will be left at the end of the second day? The third day?**
2. **Radium-226 has a half-life of 1620 years. Planet Earth is some 4.5 billion years old. So why is there any radium left on the planet?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. One-quarter at the end of the second day, one-eighth at the end of the third day.
2. All the radium presently existing on Earth is a daughter product of uranium-238, which has a half-life equal to the age of Earth. As we will see in Section 33.8, over a long span of time, all uranium will eventually decay to lead, and in steps along the way, into radium.

33.7 Radiation Detectors

Ordinary thermal motions of atoms bumping one another in a gas or liquid are not energetic enough to dislodge electrons, and the atoms remain neutral. But when an energetic particle such as an alpha or a beta particle shoots through matter, electrons one after another are knocked from the atoms in the particle's path. The result is a trail of freed electrons and positively charged ions. This ionization process is responsible for the harmful effects of high-energy radiation in living cells. Ionization also makes it relatively easy to trace the paths of high-energy particles. We will briefly discuss five radiation detection devices.

(a) (b)

FIGURE 33.18
Radiation detectors. (a) A Geiger counter detects incoming radiation by a short pulse of current triggered when radiation ionizes a gas in the tube. (b) A scintillation counter indicates incoming radiation by flashes of light produced when charged particles or gamma rays pass through the counter.

1. A *Geiger counter* consists of a central wire in a hollow metal cylinder filled with low-pressure gas. An electrical voltage is applied across the cylinder and wire so that the wire is more positive than the cylinder. If radiation enters the tube and ionizes an atom in the gas, the freed electron is attracted to the positively charged central wire. As this electron is accelerated toward the wire, it collides with other atoms and knocks out more electrons, which, in turn, produce more electrons, and so on, resulting in a cascade of electrons moving toward the wire. This makes a short pulse of electric current, which activates a counting device connected to the tube. Amplified, this pulse of current produces the familiar clicking sound we associate with radiation detectors.

2. A *scintillation counter* uses the fact that certain substances are easily excited and emit light when charged particles or gamma rays pass through them. Tiny flashes of light, or scintillations, are converted into electrical signals by special photomultiplier tubes. A scintillation counter is much more sensitive to gamma rays than is a Geiger counter, and, in addition, it can measure the energy of charged particles or gamma rays absorbed in the detector. The radiation detector that Roger Rassool shows in Figure 33.18b is a scintillator. Interestingly, ordinary water, when highly purified, can serve as a scintillator.
3. A *cloud chamber* shows a visible path of ionizing radiation in the form of fog trails. It consists of a cylindrical chamber closed at the upper end by a glass window and at the lower end by a movable piston. Water vapor or alcohol vapor in the chamber can be saturated by adjusting the piston. The source of radiation can be outside the chamber or inside it, as shown in Figure 33.19. When a charged particle passes through the chamber, ions are produced along its path. If the saturated air in the chamber is then suddenly cooled by motion of the piston, tiny droplets of moisture condense about these ions and form vapor trails, showing the paths of the radiation. These are the atomic versions of the ice-crystal trails left in the sky by jet planes.

   Even simpler is the continuous cloud chamber. It contains a steady supersaturated vapor because it rests on a slab of dry ice, with a temperature gradient from near room temperature at the top to very low temperature at the bottom. Fog tracks that form are illuminated with a lamp and may be seen or photographed through the glass top. The chamber may be placed in a strong electric or magnetic field, which will bend the paths in a manner that provides information about the charge, mass, and momentum of the radiation particles.

   Cloud chambers, which were critically important tools in early cosmic ray research, are now used principally for classroom demonstrations. Perhaps your instructor will show you one, as Walter Steiger does in Figure 33.20.
4. The particle trails seen in a *bubble chamber* are minute bubbles of gas in liquid hydrogen (Figure 33.21). The liquid hydrogen is heated under pressure in a glass and stainless steel chamber to a point just short of boiling. If the pressure in the chamber is suddenly released at the moment an ion-producing particle enters, a thin trail of bubbles is left along the particle's path. All the liquid then erupts to a boil, but, in the few thousandths of a second before this happens, photographs are taken of the particle's short-lived trail. As with the cloud chamber, a magnetic field in the bubble chamber reveals information about the charge and relative mass of

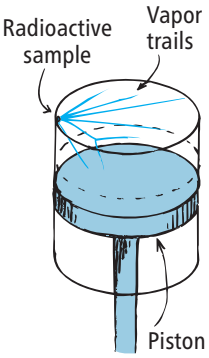


FIGURE 33.19
A cloud chamber. Charged particles moving through supersaturated vapor leave trails. When the chamber is in a strong electric or magnetic field, bending of the tracks provides information about the charge, mass, and momentum of the particles.

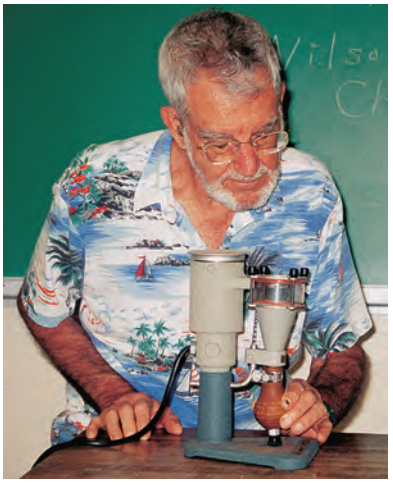


FIGURE 33.20
Walter Steiger examines vapor trails in a small cloud chamber.

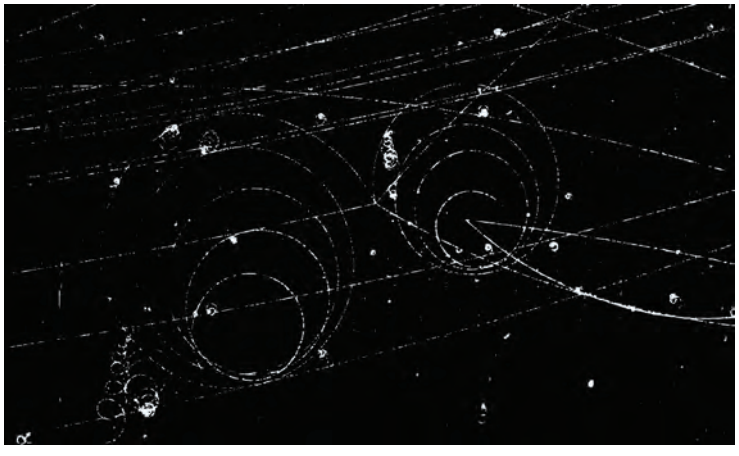


FIGURE 33.21
Tracks of elementary particles in a bubble chamber. (The trained eye notes that two particles were destroyed at the point from which the spirals emanate, with four others created in the collision.)

FIGURE 33.22
The Big European Bubble Chamber (BEBC) at CERN, near Geneva, typical of the large bubble chambers used in the 1970s to study particles produced by high-energy accelerators.

the particles being studied. Bubble chambers have been widely used by researchers in past decades, but presently there is greater interest in spark chambers.

5. A *spark chamber* is a counting device that consists of an array of closely spaced parallel plates. Every other plate is grounded, and the plates in between are maintained at a high voltage (about 10 kV). Ions are produced in the gas between the plates as charged particles pass through the chamber. Discharge along the ionic path produces a visible spark between pairs of plates. A trail of many sparks reveals the path of the particle. A different design, called a *streamer chamber*, consists of only two widely spaced plates, between which an electrical discharge, or "streamer," closely follows the path of the incident charged particle. The principal advantage of spark and streamer chambers over the bubble chamber is that more events can be monitored in a given time.

CHECK POINT

Which will give a higher counting rate on a radiation detector: radioactive material that has a short half-life or radioactive material that has a long half-life?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

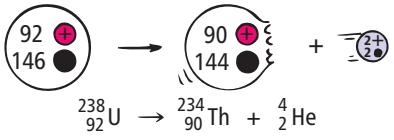
The material with the shorter half-life is more active and will show a higher counting rate on a radiation detector.

33.8 Transmutation of Elements

When a radioactive nucleus emits an alpha or a beta particle, there is a change in atomic number—a different element is formed. The changing of one chemical element into another is called **transmutation.** Transmutation occurs in natural events and is also initiated artificially in the laboratory.

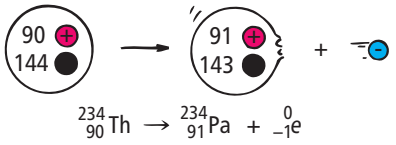
Natural Transmutation

Consider uranium-238, the nucleus of which contains 92 protons and 146 neutrons. When an alpha particle is ejected, the nucleus loses two protons and two neutrons. Because an element is defined by the number of protons in its nucleus, the 90 protons and 144 neutrons left behind are no longer identified as being uranium. What we have is the nucleus of a different element—*thorium*. This transmutation can be written as a nuclear equation:



We see that $^{238}_{92}U$ transmutes to the two elements written to the right of the arrow. When this transmutation occurs, energy is released, partly in the form of kinetic energy of the alpha particle ($^{4}_{2}He$), partly in the kinetic energy of the thorium nucleus, and partly in the form of gamma radiation. In this and all such equations, the mass numbers at the top balance ($238 = 234 + 4$) and the atomic numbers at the bottom also balance ($92 = 90 + 2$).

Thorium-234, the product of this reaction, is also radioactive. When it decays, the nucleus emits a beta particle—an electron—and a neutron becomes a proton in the process. Therefore, the atomic number of the resulting nucleus is *increased* by 1. So, after beta emission by thorium with 90 protons, the resulting element has 91 protons. It is no longer thorium, but the element protactinium. Although the atomic number has increased by 1 in this process, the mass number (protons + neutrons) remains the same. The nuclear equation is



We write an electron as $^{0}_{-1}e$. The superscript 0 indicates that the electron's mass is insignificant relative to that of the protons and neutrons. The subscript -1 is the electric charge of the electron. (Accompanying this reaction and all beta ejections are antineutrinos, not indicated in the art.)

So we see that when an element ejects an alpha particle from its nucleus, the mass number of the resulting atom is decreased by 4 and its atomic number is decreased by 2. The resulting atom is an element two spaces back in the periodic table of the elements. When an element ejects a beta particle from its nucleus, the mass of the atom is practically unaffected, meaning there is no change in the mass number, but its atomic number increases by 1. The resulting atom belongs to an element one place forward in the periodic table. Gamma emission results in no change in either the mass number or the atomic number. So we see that radioactive elements can decay backward or forward in the periodic table.[5]

The succession of radioactive decays of $^{238}_{92}\text{U}$ to $^{206}_{82}\text{Pb}$, an isotope of lead, is shown in Figure 33.23. Each blue arrow shows an alpha decay, and each red arrow shows a beta decay. Notice that some of the nuclei in the series can decay in both ways. This is one of several similar radioactive series that occur in nature.

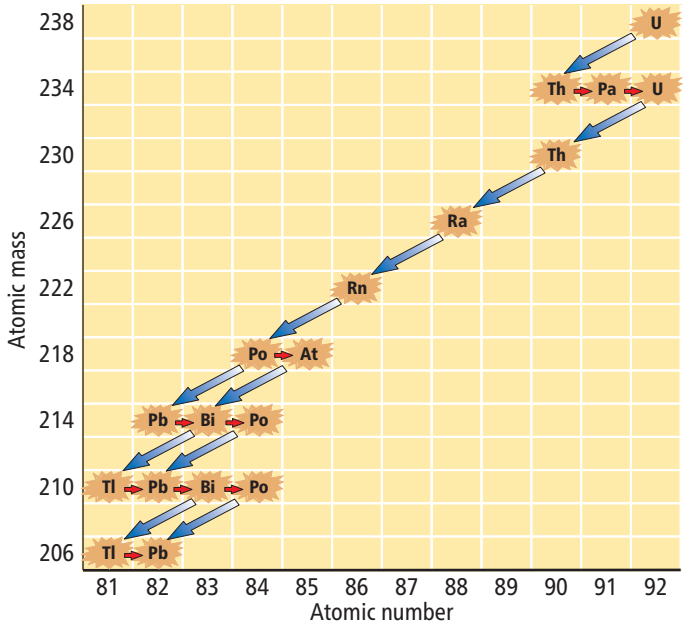


FIGURE 33.23
U-238 decays to Pb-206 through a series of alpha and beta decays.

One ton of ordinary granite contains about 9 grams of uranium and 20 grams of thorium. One ton of basalt contains 3.5 grams of uranium and 7.7 grams of thorium.

[5]Sometimes a nucleus emits a positron, which is the "antiparticle" of an electron. In this case, a proton becomes a neutron, and the atomic number is decreased.

CHECK POINT

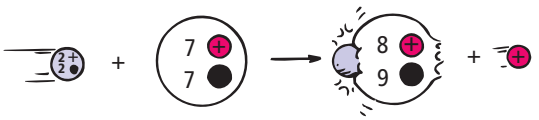
1. **Complete the following nuclear reactions:**
   a. $^{226}_{88}\text{Ra} \rightarrow {}^{?}_{?}? + {}^{0}_{-1}\text{e}$
   b. $^{209}_{84}\text{Po} \rightarrow {}^{205}_{82}\text{Pb} + {}^{?}_{?}?$
2. **What finally becomes of all the uranium that undergoes radioactive decay?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. a. $^{226}_{88}\text{Ra} \rightarrow {}^{226}_{89}\text{Ac} + {}^{0}_{-1}\text{e}$
   b. $^{209}_{84}\text{Po} \rightarrow {}^{205}_{82}\text{Pb} + {}^{4}_{2}\text{He}$
2. All uranium ultimately becomes lead. On the way to becoming lead, it will exist as a series of elements, as indicated in Figure 33.23.

Artificial Transmutation

Ernest Rutherford, in 1919, was the first of many investigators to succeed in deliberately transmuting a chemical element. He bombarded nitrogen gas with alpha particles from a piece of radioactive ore. The impact of an alpha particle on a nitrogen nucleus can transmute nitrogen into oxygen:



$$^{4}_{2}\text{He} + {}^{14}_{7}\text{N} \rightarrow {}^{17}_{8}\text{O} + {}^{1}_{1}\text{H}$$

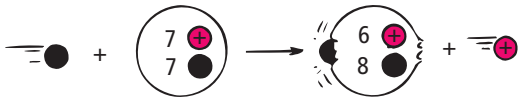
Rutherford used a cloud chamber to record this event. From a quarter of a million cloud-chamber tracks photographed on movie film, he showed seven examples of atomic transmutation. Analysis of tracks bent by a strong external magnetic field showed that sometimes when an alpha particle collided with a nitrogen atom, a proton bounced out and the heavy atom recoiled a short distance. The alpha particle disappeared. The alpha particle was absorbed in the process, transforming nitrogen into oxygen.

Since Rutherford's announcement in 1919, experimenters have carried out many other nuclear reactions, first with natural bombarding projectiles from radioactive ores and then with still more energetic projectiles—protons and other particles hurled by huge particle accelerators. Artificial transmutation is what produces the hitherto unknown synthetic elements with atomic numbers 93 to 118. All these artificially made elements have short half-lives. Any that may have existed naturally when Earth was formed have long since decayed.

33.9 Radiometric Dating

Earth's atmosphere is continuously bombarded by cosmic rays, and this bombardment causes many atoms in the upper atmosphere to transmute. These transmutations result in many protons and neutrons being "sprayed out" into the environment. Most of the protons are stopped as they collide with the atoms of the upper atmosphere, stripping electrons from these atoms to become hydrogen atoms. The neutrons, however, keep going for longer distances because they have no electric charge and therefore do not interact electrically with matter. Eventually, many of them collide with the nuclei in the denser lower atmosphere.

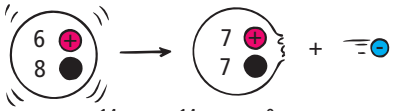
A nitrogen nucleus that captures a neutron, for instance, can emit a proton and become the nucleus of a carbon isotope:



$$^{1}_{0}n + {}^{14}_{7}\mathrm{N} \rightarrow {}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C} + {}^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H}$$

This carbon-14 isotope, which makes up about one-trillionth of the carbon in the atmosphere, has eight neutrons and is radioactive. (The most common isotope, carbon-12, has six neutrons and is not radioactive.) Because both carbon-12 and carbon-14 are forms of carbon, they have the same chemical properties. Both these isotopes can chemically react with oxygen to form carbon dioxide, which is taken in by plants. This means that all plants contain a tiny bit of radioactive carbon-14. All animals eat plants (or other animals that ate plants) and therefore have a little carbon-14 in them. In short, all living things on Earth contain some carbon-14.

Carbon-14 is a beta emitter and decays back to nitrogen by the following reaction:



$$^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C} \rightarrow {}^{14}_{7}\mathrm{N} + {}^{0}_{-1}e$$

Because plants continue to take in carbon dioxide as long as they live, any carbon-14 lost by decay is immediately replenished with fresh carbon-14 from the atmosphere. In this way, a radioactive equilibrium is reached where there is a constant ratio of about one carbon-14 atom to every trillion carbon-12 atoms. When a plant dies, replenishment of carbon-14 stops. Then the percentage of carbon-14 decreases at a constant rate given by its half-life.[6] The longer a plant or other organism is dead, therefore, the less carbon-14 it contains relative to the constant amount of carbon-12.

The half-life of carbon-14 is about 5730 years. This means that half of the carbon-14 atoms that are now present in a plant or animal that dies today will decay in the next 5730 years. Half of the remaining carbon-14 atoms will then decay in the following 5730 years, and so forth.

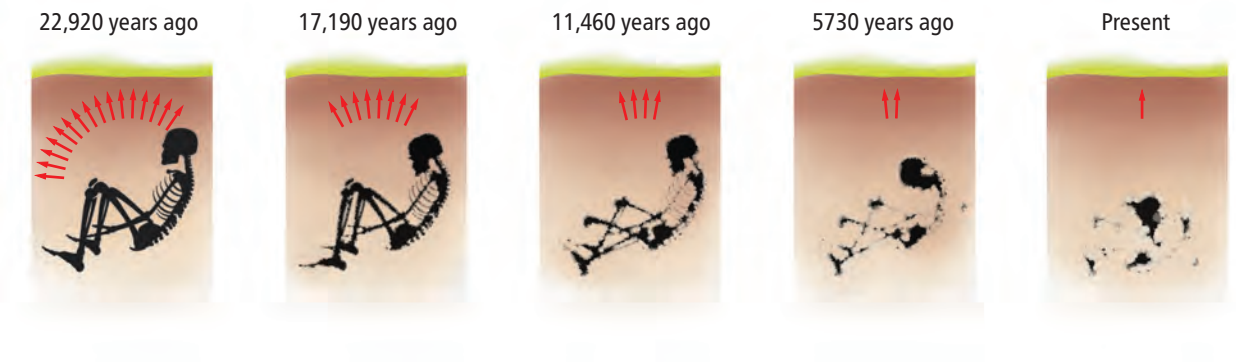


FIGURE 33.24
The amount of radioactive carbon-14 in the skeleton decreases by one-half every 5730 years, with the result that today the skeleton contains only a fraction of the carbon-14 it originally had. The red arrows symbolize relative amounts of carbon-14.

[6]A 1-g sample of contemporary carbon contains about 5×10^{22} atoms, 6.5×10^{10} of which are C-14 atoms, and has a beta disintegration rate of about 13.5 decays per minute.

FOOD IRRADIATION

Each week in the United States about 100 people, most of them children or elderly, die from illnesses they contract from food. People stricken ill each week from food-borne diseases number in the millions, according to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention in Atlanta, Georgia. But never astronauts. Why? Because diarrhea in orbit is a no-no, and food taken on space missions is irradiated with high-energy gamma rays from a radioactive cobalt source (Co-60). Astronauts, as well as patients in many hospitals and nursing homes, don't have to contend with salmonella, *E. coli*, microbes, or parasites in food irradiated by Co-60. So why isn't more irradiated food available in the marketplace? The answer is public phobia about the *r* word—*radiation*.

Food irradiation kills insects in grains, flour, fruits, and vegetables. Small doses prevent stored potatoes, onions, and garlic from sprouting and significantly increase the shelf life of soft fruits, such as strawberries. Larger doses kill microbes, insects, and parasites in spices, pork, and poultry. Irradiation can penetrate through sealed cans and packages. What irradiation does *not* do is leave the irradiated food radioactive. No radioactive material touches the food. Gamma rays pass through the food like light passing through glass, destroying most bacteria that can cause disease. No food becomes radioactive because gamma rays lack the energy needed to knock neutrons from atomic nuclei.

Irradiation does, however, leave behind traces of broken compounds—identical to those that result from pyrolysis in charbroiled foods that we already eat. Compared with canning and cold storage, irradiation has less effect on nutrition and taste. It's been around for most of the previous century, and has been tested for many decades, with no evidence of danger to consumers. All independent research, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), the World Health Organization (WHO), the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), and the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) have performed studies that confirm irradiation to be safe. Food irradiation is permitted by over 40 countries, with many thousands of tons of food annually processed worldwide. Food irradiation in the United States is slowly gaining acceptance. For many people, the words "radiation or irradiation" have scary consequences.

This controversy is an example of risk evaluation and management. Shouldn't the risks of injury or death from irradiated food be judged rationally and weighed against the benefits it would bring? Shouldn't the choice be based on the number of people who *might* die of irradiated food versus those who in fact *do* die because food is not irradiated?

Perhaps what is needed is a name change—expunging the *r* word, as was done with the *n* word when the resisted medical procedure once known as NMRI (nuclear magnetic resonance imaging) was given a more acceptable name, MRI (magnetic resonance imaging).

With this knowledge, scientists are able to calculate the age of carbon-containing artifacts, such as wooden tools or skeletons, by measuring their current level of radioactivity. This process, known as **carbon dating,** enables us to probe as much as 50,000 years into the past. Beyond this time span, there is too little carbon-14 remaining to permit accurate analysis.

Carbon-14 dating would be a relatively simple and accurate dating method if the amount of radioactive carbon in the atmosphere had been constant over the ages. But it hasn't been. Fluctuations in the Sun's magnetic field as well as changes in the strength of Earth's magnetic field affect cosmic-ray intensities in Earth's atmosphere, which in turn produce fluctuations in the production of C-14. In addition, changes in Earth's climate affect the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere. The oceans are great reservoirs of carbon dioxide. When the oceans are cold, they release less carbon dioxide into the atmosphere than when they are warm. This fact is particularly disturbing during this time of rapid climate change.

CHECK POINT

Suppose an archeologist extracts a gram of carbon from an ancient ax handle and finds it to be one-fourth as radioactive as a gram of carbon extracted from a freshly cut tree branch. About how old is the ax handle?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Assuming the ratio of C-14/C-12 was the same when the ax was made, the ax handle is two half-lives of C-14, or about 11,500 years, old.

The dating of older, but nonliving, things is accomplished with radioactive minerals, such as uranium. The naturally occurring isotopes U-238 and U-235 decay very slowly and ultimately become isotopes of lead—but not the common lead isotope Pb-208. For example, U-238 decays through several stages to finally become Pb-206, whereas U-235 finally becomes the isotope Pb-207. Lead isotopes 206 and 207 that now exist were at one time uranium. The older the uranium-bearing rock, the higher the percentage of these remnant isotopes. From the half-lives of uranium isotopes, and the percentage of lead isotopes in uranium-bearing rock, it is possible to calculate the date at which the rock was formed.

A method for dating ancient buried rock structures is *optically stimulated luminescence* (OSL), recently used to date shafts of rock buried around the perimeter of Stonehenge monuments. Low levels of environmental radiation in the soil excite electrons that become trapped in quartz crystals in the buried rock. Over time, more electrons are trapped. The longer the time of burial, the greater the intensity of luminescence emitted when the minerals are re-exposed to light. As more and more long buried structures and habitats are being discovered, OSL is a welcome tool in the archeologist tool kit.

Chapter 33 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

X-ray Electromagnetic radiation of higher frequencies than ultraviolet; emitted by electron transitions to the lowest energy states in atoms.

Radioactivity The spontaneous emission of energetic particles by an atomic nucleus.

Alpha ray A stream of alpha particles (helium nuclei) ejected by certain radioactive elements.

Beta ray A stream of electrons (or positrons) emitted during the radioactive decay of certain nuclei.

Gamma ray High-frequency electromagnetic radiation emitted by the nuclei of radioactive atoms.

Neutrino An elusive subatomic particle with no electrical charge and tiny mass that is one of the most abundant particles in the universe.

Rad The acronym (*r*adiation *a*bsorbed *d*ose) for a unit of absorbed energy. One rad is equal to 0.01 J of energy absorbed per kilogram of tissue.

Rem The acronym (*r*oentgen *e*quivalent *m*an) for a unit used to measure the effect of ionizing radiation on humans.

Nucleon A nuclear proton or neutron; the collective name for either or both.

Quarks The elementary constituent particles or building blocks of nuclear matter.

Strong force The force that attracts nucleons to each other within the atomic nucleus; a force that is very strong at close distances and greatly weakens as distance increases.

Half-life The time required for half the atoms in a sample of a radioactive isotope to decay.

Transmutation The conversion of an atomic nucleus of one element into an atomic nucleus of another element through a loss or gain in the number of protons.

Carbon dating The process of determining the time that has elapsed since death by measuring the radioactivity of carbon from a sample due to the carbon-14 it contains.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

33.1 X-Rays and Radioactivity

1. What did physicist Roentgen discover when he directed a cathode-ray beam at a glass surface?
2. What is the nature of X-rays?
3. What did the physicist Becquerel discover about uranium?
4. Name four radioactive elements. Is the emission caused by these elements due to the change in electronic energy states or changes occurring at the nucleus?

33.2 Alpha, Beta, and Gamma Rays

5. Why are gamma rays undeflected in a magnetic field?
6. Where do gamma rays originate? Where do X-rays originate?

33.3 Neutrinos

7. How does a neutrino's charge and mass compare with that of an electron?
8. What thickness of solid lead is needed to stop half the flow of neutrinos?

33.4 Environmental Radiation

9. Distinguish between a *rad* and a *rem*.
10. Do humans receive more radiation from artificial or natural sources of radiation?
11. Is the human body radioactive? Explain.
12. What is a radioactive tracer?

33.5 The Atomic Nucleus and the Strong Force

13. What accounts for the mutual repelling of protons in the atomic nucleus not flying apart?
14. What causes a larger nucleus to be generally less stable than a smaller nucleus?
15. How do chargeless neutrons help to hold a nucleus together?
16. Which contains the larger percentage of neutrons, large nuclei or small nuclei?

33.6 Radioactive Half-Life

17. How do decay rates compare for long-half-life and short-half-life materials?
18. What is the half-life of uranium-238?

33.7 Radiation Detectors

19. What makes up the trail of energetic particles shooting through matter?
20. Which radiation detector operates primarily by sensing the trails left by energetic particles that shoot through matter?
21. Which detector senses flashes of light produced by charged particles or gamma rays?

33.8 Transmutation of Elements

22. In natural transmutation of uranium-238, name the new product obtained upon emitting an alpha particle.
23. When thorium (atomic number 90) decays by emitting an alpha particle, what is the atomic number of the resulting nucleus, and the element so formed?
24. When thorium decays by emitting a beta particle, what is the atomic number of the resulting nucleus, and the element so formed?
25. What is the change in atomic mass number for each of the above two reactions?
26. What change in atomic number occurs when a nucleus emits an alpha particle? A beta particle? A gamma ray?
27. What is the long-range fate of all the uranium that exists in the world?
28. When, and by whom, did the first successful intentional transmutation of an element occur?

33.9 Radiometric Dating

29. What is the result of a nitrogen nucleus capturing an extra neutron?
30. Which is more prominent in the food we eat, carbon-12 or carbon-14?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Write a letter to one of your favorite relatives that will help dispel any notion they may have about radioactivity being something new in the world. Briefly discuss the role of radioactivity in dating ancient objects. Also discuss how radioactivity is a major source of natural heat in Earth's interior, and cite its role in hot springs and volcanoes.
32. Write a letter to your goofy friend that explains how the age of an ancient wooden bowl can be determined. Also, explain what factors limit the accuracy of this dating method.
33. On tour of a natural history museum, the guide says that the dinosaurs most likely became extinct when a large meteor or asteroid collided with Earth 65,000,008 years ago. You ask the guide how this value is so precise. The guide's response is 8 years ago in training, he was told that the asteroid hit Earth 65 million years ago. What is your response?

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

34. Consider the inverse square law to be followed for radiation emitted from a source. If a radiation detector at 1 m from the sample detects 720 counts per minute, what will be the counting rate 3 m away from the source? And the counting rate 4 m away from the source?
35. After four years, 10 g of a radioactive isotope leaves 2.5 g. What is the half-life of that radioactive isotope? Calculate the amount that will be left after six years.
36. A particular radioisotope sample is placed near a Geiger counter, which is observed to register 160 counts per minute. Eight hours later, the detector counts at a rate of 10 counts per minute. What is the half-life of the material?
37. The half-life of radioactive cesium-137, which is a conventional byproduct at nuclear power plants, is 30 years. Calculate the time taken for cesium-137 to decay to about one-eighth of its original amount.
38. At 6:00 AM a hospital uses its cyclotron to make 1 milligram of the isotope fluorine-18 as a diagnostic tool with its PET scanner. The half-life of F-18 is 1.8 hours. How much F-18 is left at 3:00 PM? How much is left at midnight? Should the hospital plan to make more F-18 the next morning?
39. An archeologist discovered a lion's fossil that emits about 3.12 % radiation from carbon-14 as compared to the bone of a recently dead lion. Calculate the age of the fossil considering the half-life of carbon-14 to be 5730 years.
40. Suppose a water reservoir contains harmful bacteria that can be life-threatening and can only be neutralized by radiation. You pour one gallon of water that contains some radioactive material with a sufficiently high half-life that gives 8000 counts per minute. The next morning, you remove a gallon of water from the reservoir and measure its radioactivity to be 10 counts per minute. Estimate the amount of water contained in the reservoir.

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

41. Energy sources are often stored for some time before being used. Rank the following for energy that has been stored for the longest time, from greatest to least.
    (a) Coal
    (b) Uranium
    (c) Automobile battery
42. Rank the following materials in ascending order according to their ability to absorb radioactive rays emitted from a source.
    (a) Paper
    (b) Lead
    (c) Aluminum
43. Rank these in terms of speed, from highest to lowest.
    (a) Alpha particles
    (b) Gamma rays
    (c) Neutrinos
44. Rank the numbers that exist in the world, from most to least.
    (a) People
    (b) Neutrinos
    (c) Water molecules
45. Rank the elements that form sequentially upon the disintegration of radioactive uranium.
    (a) Ra-radium
    (b) Th-thorium
    (c) Po-polonium
    (d) Rn-radon
46. Consider the following reactions: A. uranium-238 emits an alpha particle; B. plutonium-239 emits an alpha particle; C. thorium-239 emits a beta particle.
    (a) Rank the resulting nucleus by atomic number, from most to least.
    (b) Rank the resulting nucleus by the number of neutrons, from most to least.

THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

47. In the 19th century, the famous physicist Lord Kelvin estimated Earth's age to be much less than what we now accept. What information do we know now that Kelvin did not have (which might have allowed him to avoid making his erroneous estimate)?
48. X-rays are most similar to which of the following: alpha, beta, gamma rays, or neutrinos?
49. What is the basic difference between gamma radiation and alpha and beta radiation?
50. What causes a sample of radioactive material always a little warmer than its surroundings?
51. Some people say "anything is possible." Is it possible for a common hydrogen nucleus to emit an alpha particle? Defend your answer.
52. Why are beams of alpha and beta particles deflected in opposite directions in a magnetic field? Why are gamma rays not deflected?
53. The alpha particle has twice the electric charge of the beta particle but, for the same kinetic energy, deflects less than the beta in a magnetic field. Why?
54. How do the paths of alpha, beta, and gamma rays compare in an electric field?
55. Which type of radiation—alpha, beta, or gamma—produces the greatest change in *mass number* when emitted by an atomic nucleus? Which produces the greatest change in *atomic number*?
56. Which type of radiation—alpha, beta, or gamma—produces the least change in mass number? Least change in atomic number?
57. Which type of radiation—alpha, beta, or gamma—predominates within an enclosed elevator descending into a uranium mine?
58. In bombarding atomic nuclei with proton "bullets," why must the protons be accelerated to high energies if they are to make contact with the target nuclei?
59. Just after an alpha particle leaves the nucleus, would you expect the alpha particle to speed up? Defend your answer.
60. What do all isotopes of the same element have in common? How do they differ?
61. If an alpha particle and a beta particle have the same kinetic energy, how do their speeds compare?
62. If an alpha particle and a beta particle encounter the same material, what accounts for the greater penetration of the beta particle?
63. Two protons in an atomic nucleus repel each other, while also attracting each other. Explain.
64. Which interaction tends to hold the particles in an atomic nucleus together and which interaction tends to push them apart?
65. What evidence supports the contention that the strong nuclear interaction can dominate over the electrical interaction at short distances within the nucleus?
66. When a nucleus emits an alpha or beta particle, does the nucleus necessarily become a nucleus of another element?
67. What exactly is positively charged in a hydrogen atom?
68. Why do different isotopes of the same element have the same chemical properties?
69. What two quantities are always conserved in all nuclear equations?
70. Why do the charged particles flying through bubble chambers travel in spiral paths rather than in the circular or helical paths they might ideally follow?

71. If an atom has 100 electrons, 157 neutrons, and 100 protons, what is its approximate atomic mass? What is the name of this element?
72. When a $^{226}_{88}$Ra nucleus decays by emitting an alpha particle, what is the atomic number of the resulting nucleus and its atomic mass number?
73. When a nucleus of $^{218}_{84}$Po emits a beta particle, it transforms into the nucleus of a different element. What are the atomic number and the atomic mass number of this "daughter" element?
74. When a nucleus of $^{218}_{84}$Po emits an alpha particle, what are the atomic number and the atomic mass number of the resulting element?
75. Which has the greater number of protons, U-235 or U-238? Which has the greater number of neutrons?
76. State the number of neutrons and protons in each of the following nuclei: $^{2}_{1}$H, $^{12}_{6}$C, $^{56}_{26}$Fe, $^{197}_{79}$Au, $^{90}_{38}$Sr, and $^{238}_{92}$U.
77. How is it possible for an element to decay "forward in the periodic table"—that is, to decay to an element of higher atomic number?
78. When radioactive phosphorus (P) decays, it emits a positron. Will the resulting nucleus be another isotope of phosphorus? If not, what will it be?
79. How could a physicist test the following statement: "Strontium-90 is a pure beta source"?
80. A friend suggests that nuclei are composed of equal numbers of protons and electrons, and not neutrons. What evidence can you cite to show that your friend is mistaken?

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

81. Why would you expect that lead is to be found in all deposits of uranium ore?
82. If you make an account of 1000 people born in the year 2000 and find that half of them are still living in 2060, does this mean that one-quarter of them will be alive in 2120 and one-eighth of them alive in 2180? What is different about the death rates of people and the "death rates" of radioactive atoms?
83. Judging from Figure 33.23, how many alpha and beta particles are emitted in the series of radioactive decay events from a U-238 nucleus to a Pb-206 nucleus? Does it matter which path is followed?
84. Think of a way that an element that emits both an alpha and some beta particles can result in the same element. Then explain it to your study partner.
85. Radium-226 is a common isotope on Earth with a half-life of about 1600 years. Given that Earth is some 5 billion years old, how is it possible that more than trace amounts of radium can still be found on Earth?
86. Although coal contains only minute quantities of radioactive materials, there is more radiation emitted by a coal-fired power plant than a fission power plant simply because of the vast amount of coal that is burned in coal-fired plants. What does this indicate about methods of preventing the release of radioactivity that are typically implemented at the two kinds of power plants?
87. Elements with a mass greater than uranimum do not exist in any appreciable amounts in nature because they have short half-lives. Yet there are several elements with less mass than uranium in atomic number with equally short half-lives that do exist in appreciable amounts in nature. What is your explanation?
88. Your friend says that the helium used to inflate balloons is a product of radioactive decay. Another friend disagrees. With which friend do you agree?
89. Another friend, fretful about living near a fission power plant, wishes to escape from radiation by traveling to the high mountains and sleeping at night on granite outcroppings. Comment on this.
90. Still another friend has journeyed to the mountain foothills to escape the effects of radioactivity altogether. While bathing in the warmth of a natural hot spring, she wonders aloud how the spring gets its thermal energy. What do you tell your friend?
91. A friend produces a Geiger counter to check the local normal background radiation. It clicks randomly but repeatedly. Another friend, whose tendency is to fear most that which is least understood, makes an effort to avoid Geiger counters and looks to you for advice. What do you say?
92. When food is irradiated with gamma rays from a cobalt-60 source, does the food become radioactive? Defend your answer.
93. When the author attended high school some 70 years ago, his teacher showed the class a piece of uranium ore and measured its radioactivity with a Geiger counter. Would that reading for the same piece of ore be different today?
94. Is carbon dating appropriate for measuring the age of materials that are (a) a few years old? (b) A few thousand years old? (c) A few million years old?
95. The age of the Dead Sea Scrolls was found by carbon dating. Could this technique apply for carved stone tablets? Explain.
96. Make up two multiple-choice questions to check a classmate's understanding of radioactive dating.

CHAPTER THIRTY THREE Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. Which of these two is heated in its interior by nuclear processes?
   (a) Sun
   (b) Earth
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
2. Most of the environmental radiation we personally encounter originates from
   (a) the natural environment.
   (b) fallout from testing of nuclear weapons.
   (c) nuclear power plants.
   (d) consumer products.
3. The helium in a child's balloon contains
   (a) former alpha-particles.
   (b) former beta particles.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
4. When the nucleus of an atom emits a beta particle, the atom's atomic number
   (a) decreases by 1.
   (b) increases by 1
   (c) changes by 2.
   (d) remains unchanged.
5. A 1-gram sample of radioactive material has a half-life of one year. After four years, the original radioactive material left in the sample will be
   (a) 1/2 g.
   (b) 1/4 g.
   (c) 1/8 g.
   (d) None of the above
6. A Geiger counter placed 1 meter from a point source of radiation registers 100 counts per minute. If the Geiger counter is moved closer, half-way to the source, the counting rate will be
   (a) 50 counts/min.
   (b) 100 counts/min.
   (c) 200 counts/min.
   (d) 400 counts/min.
7. Which of these processes transforms an element into a completely different element?
   (a) Alpha decay
   (b) Beta decay
   (c) Both of these
   (d) None of the above
8. A hydrogen atom that emits an alpha particle is a routine occurrence in
   (a) the everyday environment.
   (b) laboratories.
   (c) stars.
   (d) None of these
9. Carbon-14 is created in the atmosphere principally by
   (a) cosmic-ray bombardment.
   (b) plants and animals.
   (c) nitrogen bombardment.
   (d) photosynthesis.
10. The fate of the world's uranium supply is to eventually become
    (a) thorium.
    (b) a mixture of alpha and beta particles.
    (c) iron.
    (d) lead.

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (c): Radioactivity is a principle source of Earth's internal energy, while thermonuclear fusion is the principle source of Sun's internal energy. Both are nuclear processes. **2. (a):** As the chart of Figure 33.7 indicates, radiation of nature exceeds all other sources listed. Radioactivity is part of nature. **3. (c):** Each helium atom in the child's balloon is made up of an alpha particle nucleus and a surrounding pair of electrons, former beta particles. **4. (b):** A beta particle is an electron, having a very small mass and an electric charge of -1. When it is ejected from an atomic nucleus, it carries away its charge, effectively changing a neutral neutron into a positively charged proton. So atomic number increases by 1. **5. (d):** At the end of one year, half of the radioactive material will be gone, and half will remain. At the end of two years, half of this will be gone—which leaves one-fourth as much as originally. At the end of three years, half of this $(1/2 \text{ of } 1/4 = 1/8)$ is left. At the end of four years, half of the 1/8th will be gone, leaving 1/16 as much, which isn't in the choice answers. Therefore (d), none of the above is correct. **6. (d):** This is answered by the inverse-square law: Counting rate $\sim 1/\text{distance}^2$. So counting rate is $\sim 1/(1/2)^2 \sim 1/(1/4) \sim 4$ times as much. That's $4 \times 100 = 400$ counts per minute. **7. (c):** Ejection of an alpha decay reduces atomic number by 2 units. A beta decay increases the atomic number by 1 unit. Both types of decay produce completely different elements, either two lower or one higher in the periodic table. **8. (d):** Most hydrogen atoms consist of a single nucleon (a proton) with an electron. An alpha particle consists of 4 nucleons. One nucleon, the hydrogen nucleus, cannot emit a particle composed of four nucleons. Arithmetic, pure and simple. Even tritium, a hydrogen isotope containing three nucleons, cannot emit a four-nucleon alpha particle. Such is impossible, so choice (d) is correct. **9. (a):** Create is the key word. Although plants and animals release carbon into the atmosphere, they don't *create* carbon or any of its isotopes. Carbon-14 is created by cosmic-ray bombardment of nitrogen atoms in the atmosphere. A proton in the nitrogen nucleus can be effectively changed to a neutron, which causes the nitrogen-14 atom to be transformed into a carbon-14 nucleus. **10. (d):** A fact of nature is that all uranium atoms ultimately decay to atoms of lead, as illustrated for the most abundant uranium isotope, U-238, in the decay scheme of Figure 33.23.

CHAPTER THIRTY FOUR

34 Nuclear Fission and Fusion

34.1 Nuclear Fission

34.2 Nuclear Fission Reactors

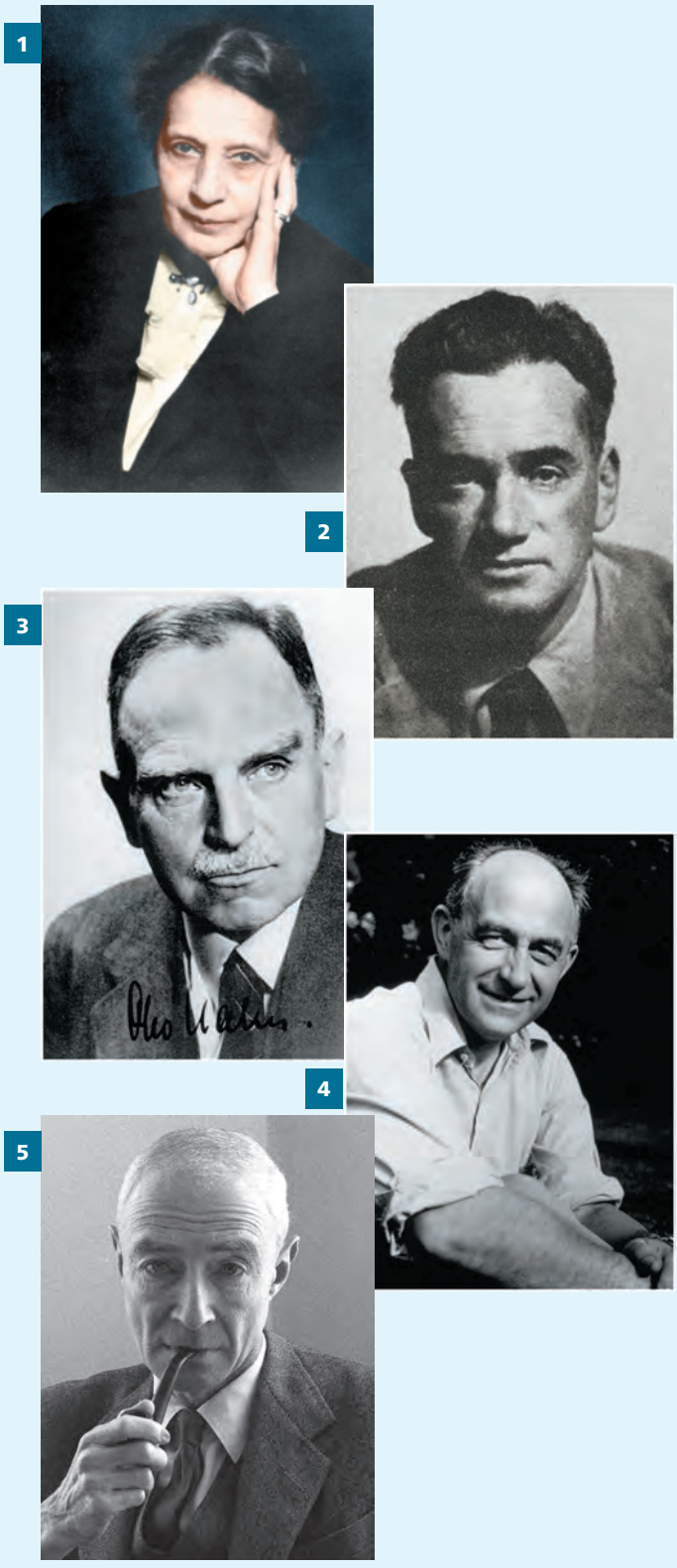
34.3 The Breeder Reactor
The Thorium Reactor

34.4 Fission Power

34.5 Mass–Energy Equivalence

34.6 Nuclear Fusion

34.7 Controlling Fusion



1 Lise Meitner, the discoverer of nuclear fission; **2** Otto Frisch, her physicist nephew who aided in her discovery; and **3** Otto Hahn, who took the credit for it. **4** Italian physicist Enrico Fermi received the 1938 Nobel Prize for work leading to nuclear fission. When he left Stockholm after receiving the prize to return to his native Italy, he said jokingly that he got lost and ended up in New York. In fact, he and his Jewish wife Laura carefully planned their escape from Fascist Italy. Four years later in Chicago, Fermi was the first to initiate controlled fission, and he became an American citizen in 1945. **5** J. Robert Oppenheimer headed the Los Alamos lab for the Manhattan Project during World War II. He was considered a national hero—and continued to be widely respected even after he was professionally and personally devastated by political witch hunts in the 1950s.

Lise Meitner was born in 1878 in Vienna. Girls at that time had no public schooling after their early teen years. Lise received her school completion certificate while still 13. Since her parents could not afford to send her to Switzerland to a private boarding school, she enrolled in a young ladies school to prepare for teaching French. But her heart was in mathematics and physics, not French. At 19, she joined a group of other ambitious young women who studied on their own—with some help from private tutors—to prepare for the university. After just 2 years of intensive work, she passed the test for admission to the University of Vienna (1 of only 4 of 14 women who tried that year), and in 1906, at age 27, she earned a doctorate with highest honors.

With the encouragement and financial support of her father, Meitner went to Berlin to further her career. Max Planck departed from his policy of not letting women attend his lectures and allowed her into his class. After one year, she became his assistant. She then joined the chemist Otto Hahn in what was to be a fruitful 30-year collaboration. They soon discovered several new isotopes, and in 1909 Meitner published two papers on beta radiation.

During World War I, both she and Hahn took some time off for war work—she to work as a nurse and X-ray technician—but they also found time to continue their research, and in 1918 they discovered element number 91, protactinium. In the 1920s she became the first woman in Berlin, perhaps the first in all of Germany, to be named a professor. Soon her work on radioactivity led to her scientific recognition worldwide.

When Adolf Hitler came to power in 1933, Meitner, though born Jewish, was able to continue her work, at least for a time, protected by her Austrian citizenship. Most other Jewish scientists, including her nephew Otto Frisch, were dismissed or forced to resign from their posts, and most of them, including Albert Einstein, emigrated from Germany.

In 1934 came word of the work of Enrico Fermi and his colleagues in Rome, in which they had bombarded many elements, including uranium, with neutrons, and seemingly created new elements. Meitner and Hahn joined the international hunt for "transuranics," elements heavier than uranium—a hunt that unexpectedly led to nuclear fission.

In July 1938, when Meitner was threatened with dismissal, with the help of Dutch physicists she escaped to Holland. After a close call with German immigration officials, she reached safety, but without her possessions. She had hastily left Germany with only 10 marks in her purse, plus a ring that Otto Hahn had given her, and one inherited from his mother, to be used to bribe the frontier guards if needed. Meitner then moved on to Stockholm, where she took a post and established a working relationship with Niels Bohr, who traveled regularly between Copenhagen and Stockholm. She continued to correspond with Hahn and other German scientists.

In the fall of 1938, Hahn and Meitner met clandestinely in Copenhagen to plan a new round of experiments with uranium. In December of that year, Hahn wrote to Meitner that he and his associate Fritz Strassmann had discovered the element barium in samples of pure uranium that had been bombarded with neutrons. They were good chemists and sure of their result but were at a loss to explain the appearance of barium. During the Christmas holidays, Meitner and her visiting nephew Otto Frisch, on a walk in snowy woods in Sweden, came up with an explanation: The uranium nucleus was breaking apart into lighter nuclei, including nuclei of barium. Frisch rushed back to Copenhagen and performed an experiment that confirmed their hypothesis of nuclear breakup. Borrowing a term from biology, they called it *fission*.[1] When Niels Bohr boarded a boat for America on January 7, he carried the news of fission with him. (The possibility of nuclear fission had actually been suggested 5 years earlier by the German scientist Ida Noddack, based on hints from Fermi's work, but no one at the time took her suggestion seriously.)

Meitner and Frisch realized that, based on the known masses of nuclei and Einstein's famous equation $E = mc^2$, the fission process should release a lot of energy. This energy release is what made it easy for Frisch, and later other scientists, to quickly verify the reality of fission in the laboratory.

In a letter to Hahn, Meitner explained the new idea. But it was politically impossible for the exiled Meitner to publish jointly with Hahn in 1939. So it was Hahn and Strassmann who published the now historic paper reporting the production of barium when uranium was bombarded with neutrons. And it was Hahn alone who, in 1944, was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry for the discovery of nuclear fission. Nowhere in his 1946 acceptance did he mention the role of Meitner and Frisch. He alone got the "limelight" of the prestigious award.

Scientists around the world realized, almost at once, that nuclear fission had the potential to power a weapon. Émigré scientists in America jumped into action and urged Albert Einstein to write a letter of warning to President Roosevelt. This led to the Manhattan Project and the creation of the atomic bomb begun under the direction of J. Robert Oppenheimer.

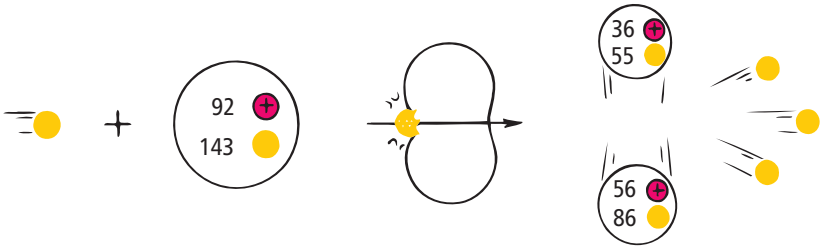
After the war was over, Meitner expressed outrage at the German scientists who helped Hitler (but who, fortunately, did not succeed in making an atomic bomb). She became a Swedish citizen in 1949 but moved to Britain in 1960 and died in Cambridge in 1968, shortly before her 90th birthday. Her nephew Otto composed the inscription on her headstone: "Lise Meitner: a physicist who never lost her humanity." A more recent memorial is found in the name of element number 109, meitnerium.

[1]Similarly, Ernest Rutherford used a biological term when he chose the word *nucleus* for the center of an atom.

34.1 Nuclear Fission

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

Nuclear fission involves a delicate balance within the nucleus between nuclear attraction and the electrical repulsion between protons. In all nuclei of elements found in nature, the nuclear forces dominate. In uranium, however, this domination is tenuous. If the uranium nucleus is stretched into an elongated shape (Figure 34.1), the electrical forces may push it into an even more elongated shape. If the elongation passes a critical point, nuclear forces yield to electrical ones, and the nucleus separates into two smaller nuclei. This is fission.[2] The absorption of a neutron by a uranium nucleus supplies enough energy to cause such an elongation. The resultant fission process may produce many different combinations of smaller nuclei. A typical example is



$$ {}_0^1n + {}_{92}^{235}\mathrm{U} \rightarrow {}_{36}^{91}\mathrm{Kr} + {}_{56}^{142}\mathrm{Ba} + 3({}_0^1n) $$

In this reaction, note that one neutron starts the fission of the uranium nucleus and that the fission produces three neutrons (yellow).[3] Because neutrons have no charge and are not repelled by atomic nuclei, they make good "nuclear bullets" and can cause the fissioning of additional uranium atoms, releasing still more neutrons, which can cause still more fissions and release an avalanche of still more neutrons. Such a sequence is called a **chain reaction**—a self-sustaining reaction in which the products of one reaction event stimulate further reaction events (Figure 34.2).

A typical fission reaction releases energy of about 200,000,000 electron volts (eV).[4] (By comparison, the explosion of a TNT molecule releases only 30 eV.) The combined mass of the fission fragments and neutrons produced in fission is less than the mass of the original uranium nucleus. The tiny amount of missing mass converted to this awesome amount of energy is in accord with Einstein's equation $E = mc^2$. Importantly, the energy of fission is mainly in the form of kinetic energy of the fission fragments that fly apart from one another and of the ejected neutrons. A smaller amount of energy is that of gamma radiation.

The scientific world was jolted by the news of nuclear fission—not only because of the enormous energy release but also because of the extra neutrons liberated in the process. A typical fission reaction releases two or three neutrons. These new neutrons can, in turn, cause the fissioning of two or three other atomic nuclei, releasing more energy and a total of four to nine more neutrons. If each of these neutrons splits just one nucleus, the next step in the reaction will produce between 8 and 27 neutrons, and so on. Thus, a whole chain reaction can proceed at an exponential rate.

Why don't chain reactions occur in naturally occurring uranium ore deposits? They would if all uranium atoms fissioned so easily. Fission occurs mainly

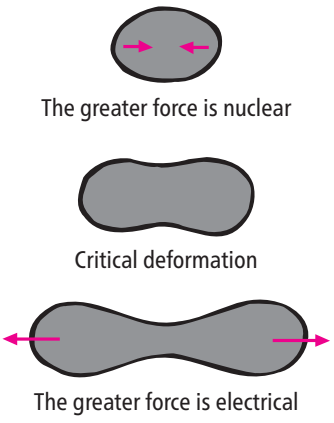


FIGURE 34.1
Nuclear deformation may continue all the way to fission when repulsive electrical forces overcome attractive nuclear forces.

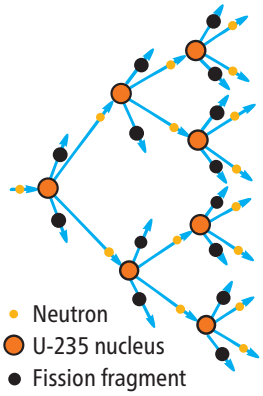


FIGURE 34.2
A chain reaction.

[2]Fission that results from neutron absorption is called *induced fission*. In rare instances, especially among the transuranics (elements heavier than uranium), nuclei can also undergo *spontaneous fission* without initial neutron absorption.

[3]In this reaction, three neutrons are ejected when fission occurs. In some other reactions, two neutrons may be ejected—or, occasionally, one or four. On average, uranium fission produces 2.5 neutrons per reaction.

[4]The *electron volt* (eV) is defined as the amount of kinetic energy an electron acquires in accelerating through a potential difference of 1 V.

for the rare isotope U-235, which makes up only 0.7% of the uranium in pure uranium ore. When the more abundant isotope U-238 absorbs neutrons created by fission of U-235, the U-238 typically does not undergo fission. So any chain reaction is snuffed out by the neutron-absorbing U-238, as well as by the rock in which the ore is imbedded. In today's world, naturally occurring uranium is too "impure" to undergo a chain reaction spontaneously.[5]

If a chain reaction occurred in a baseball-size chunk of pure U-235, an enormous explosion would result. If the chain reaction were started in a smaller chunk of pure U-235, however, no explosion would occur. This is because of geometry: The ratio of surface area to mass is higher in a small piece than in a large one (just as there is more skin on six small potatoes having a combined mass of 1 kg than there is on a single 1-kg potato). So there is more surface area on a bunch of small pieces of uranium than on a large piece. In a small piece of U-235, so many free neutrons escape through the surface that the chain reaction dies out. In a bigger piece, a smaller fraction of the free neutrons escape before triggering another fission, so the chain reaction builds up, releasing enormous energy (Figure 34.4). For masses greater than a certain amount, called the **critical mass,** a sustained chain reaction can occur, which can produce an explosion of enormous magnitude.

Consider a large quantity of U-235 divided into two pieces, each having a mass less than critical. The units are *subcritical*. Neutrons in either piece readily reach a surface and escape before a sizable chain reaction builds up. But if the pieces are suddenly driven together, the total surface area decreases. If the combined mass is greater than critical, called *supercritical*, the chain reaction builds up explosively. This is what can happen in a nuclear fission bomb (Figure 34.5). A bomb in which pieces of uranium are driven together is a so-called "gun-type" weapon, as opposed to the more common "implosion weapon."

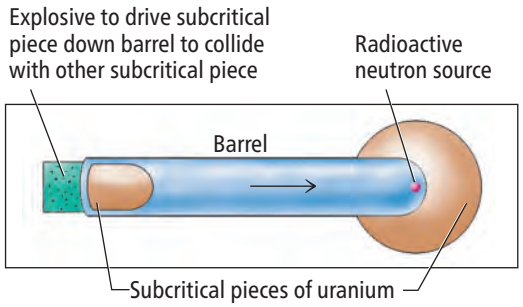

Explosive to drive subcritical piece down barrel to collide with other subcritical piece
Radioactive neutron source
Barrel
Subcritical pieces of uranium

FIGURE 34.5
A simplified diagram of an idealized uranium fission bomb of the "gun type."

Constructing a fission bomb is a formidable task. The difficulty is separating enough U-235 from the more abundant U-238. Scientists took more than 2 years to extract enough U-235 from uranium ore to make the bomb that was detonated at Hiroshima in 1945. A chunk of U-235 probably a little larger than a softball was used in this historic blast. To this day, uranium isotope separation remains a difficult process, although advanced centrifuges have made it less formidable than it was during World War II. Project scientists at the secret Manhattan Project at that time used two methods of isotope separation. One method employed diffusion, where molecules of a gaseous compound (uranium hexafluoride) containing the lighter U-235 have a slightly higher average speed than molecules containing U-238 at the same temperature. The faster isotope has a higher rate of diffusion through a thin membrane or small opening, resulting in a slightly enriched gas containing U-235 on the other side (Figure 34.6).

[5]Much earlier in Earth's history, the percentage of U-235 in natural uranium was higher than it is today. U-235 has a shorter half-life than U-238, so, over time, the percentage of U-235 declines. In 1972 the French physicist Francis Perrin revealed evidence that some 1.7 billion years ago, natural reactors existed in uranium deposits in what is now Gabon in West Africa.

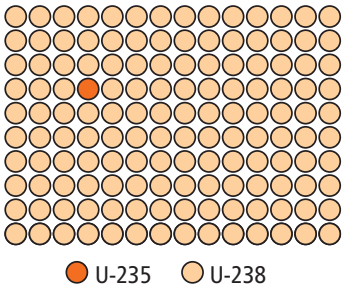


FIGURE 34.3
Only 1 part in 140 (0.7%) of naturally occurring uranium is U-235.

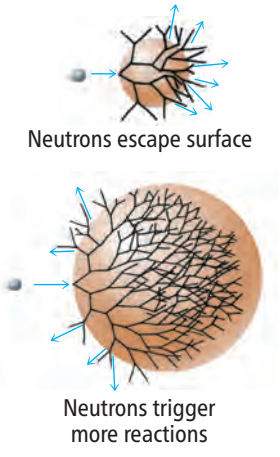


FIGURE 34.4
A chain reaction in a small piece of pure U-235 dies out because neutrons leak from the surface too readily. The small piece has a large surface area relative to its mass. In a larger piece, more uranium atoms and a smaller surface area are presented to the neutrons.

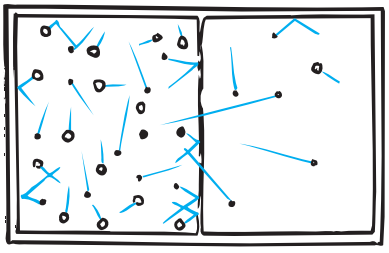
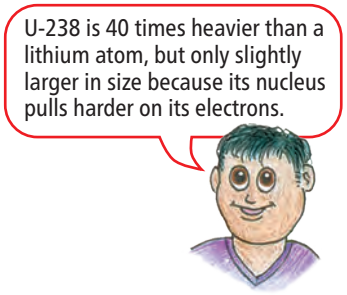


FIGURE 34.6
Lighter molecules move faster than heavier ones at the same temperature and diffuse more readily through a thin membrane.


U-238 is 40 times heavier than a lithium atom, but only slightly larger in size because its nucleus pulls harder on its electrons.

Diffusion through thousands of chambers ultimately produced a sufficiently enriched sample of U-235.

The other method, used only for partial enrichment, employed the magnetic separation of uranium ions shot into a magnetic field. The smaller-mass U-235 ions were deflected more by the magnetic field than the U-238 ions and were collected atom by atom through a slit positioned to capture them (look ahead to Figure 34.14). After a couple of years, the two methods yielded a few tens of kilograms of U-235.

Uranium-isotope separation today is more easily accomplished with a gas centrifuge. Uranium hexafluoride gas is whirled in a drum at tremendously high rim speeds (on the order of 1500 km/h). Gas molecules containing the heavier U-238 are thrown and gravitate to the outside like milk in a dairy separator, and gas containing the lighter U-235 is extracted from the center. Repeated whirlings enhanced the production of U-235. Engineering difficulties, overcome only in more recent years, prevented the use of this method during the Manhattan Project.

CHECK POINT

1. **A 10-kg ball of U-235 is supercritical, but the same ball broken up into small chunks isn't. Explain.**
2. **Why will molecules of uranium hexafluoride gas made with U-235 move slightly faster at the same temperature than molecules of uranium hexafluoride gas made with U-238?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The small chunks have a larger combined surface area than the original ball (just as the combined surface area of gravel is larger than the surface area of a boulder of the same mass). Neutrons escape via the surface before a sustained chain reaction can build up.
2. At the same temperature, the molecules of both compounds have the same kinetic energy ($\frac{1}{2}mv^2$). So the molecule made with the less massive U-235 must have a correspondingly higher speed.

34.2 Nuclear Fission Reactors

A chain reaction cannot ordinarily take place in *pure* natural uranium because it is mostly U-238. The neutrons released by fissioning U-235 atoms are fast neutrons, readily captured by U-238 atoms, which do not fission. A crucial experimental fact is that *slow* neutrons are far more likely to be captured by U-235 than by U-238.[6] If neutrons can be slowed down, there is a greater chance that a neutron released by fission will cause fission in another U-235 atom, even amid the more plentiful and otherwise neutron-absorbing U-238 atoms. This increase may be enough to allow a chain reaction to occur.

Within less than a year after the discovery of fission, scientists realized that a chain reaction with ordinary uranium metal might be possible if the uranium were broken into small lumps and separated by a material that would slow down the neutrons released by nuclear fission. Enrico Fermi, who emigrated to America from Italy in December 1938, supervised the construction of the first nuclear reactor—or *atomic pile*, as it was called—in a squash court underneath the grandstands of the University of Chicago's Stagg Field. He and his group used graphite, a common form of carbon, to slow the neutrons. They achieved the first self-sustaining controlled release of nuclear energy on December 2, 1942.

[6]This is similar to the selective absorption of various frequencies of light. Just as atoms of various elements absorb light differently, various isotopes of the same element, though chemically almost identical, can have quite different nuclear properties and absorb neutrons differently.

FIGURE 34.7
An artist's depiction of the setting in the squash court beneath the stands at the University of Chicago's Stagg Field, where Enrico Fermi and his colleagues constructed the first nuclear reactor.

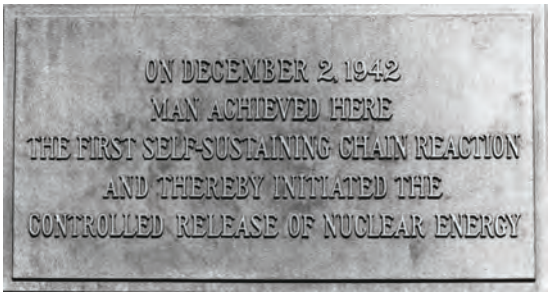

ON DECEMBER 2, 1942
MAN ACHIEVED HERE
THE FIRST SELF-SUSTAINING CHAIN REACTION
AND THEREBY INITIATED THE
CONTROLLED RELEASE OF NUCLEAR ENERGY

FIGURE 34.8
The bronze plaque at Chicago's Stagg Field commemorates Enrico Fermi's historic fission chain reaction.

Three fates are possible for a neutron in ordinary uranium metal. It may (1) cause fission of a U-235 atom, (2) escape from the metal into nonfissionable surroundings, or (3) be absorbed by U-238 without causing fission. Graphite was used to make the first fate more probable. Uranium was divided into discrete parcels and buried at regular intervals in nearly 400 tons of graphite. A simple analogy clarifies the function of the graphite: If a golf ball rebounds from a massive wall, it loses hardly any speed, but if it rebounds from a baseball, it loses considerable speed. The case of the neutron is similar. If a neutron rebounds from a heavy nucleus, it loses hardly any speed, but if it rebounds from a lighter carbon nucleus, it loses considerable speed. The graphite was said to "moderate" the neutrons.[7] The whole apparatus is called a *reactor*.

Today's fission reactors contain four components: nuclear fuel, control rods, a moderator, and a fluid (usually water) to extract heat from the reactor. The nuclear fuel is primarily U-238 plus about 3%–5% U-235. Because the U-235 is so highly diluted with U-238, an explosion like that of a nuclear bomb is not possible.[8] The reaction rate, which depends on the number of neutrons available to initiate fission of other U-235 nuclei, is usually controlled by rods inserted into the reactor. The control rods are made of a neutron-absorbing material, usually cadmium or boron. Water surrounding the nuclear fuel often serves as both a moderator and a coolant. The water is kept under high pressure to keep it at a high temperature without boiling. Heated by fission, this water then transfers heat to a second, lower-pressure water system, which operates a turbine and electric generator. Two separate water systems are used so that no radioactivity reaches the turbine.

Then there are smaller modular reactors (SMRs), slimmed-down versions of conventional fission reactors that take up only 1% the space of a conventional reactor. Instead of water, they use coolants such as liquid sodium or molten salts. Rather than crank out gigawatts of power, the smaller modular reactors generate power in megawatts. A big upside is that they can be manufactured at a plant and brought to a site for assembly. Nuclear power, in a variety of forms, is here to stay.

fyi

- Plenty of nuclear fuel for fission reactors will be available when the thousands of nuclear weapons developed during previous decades are dismantled. When bomb-grade Pu-239 is blended with the tons of depleted U-238 presently in storage, reactors can supply the world with clean electrical power for many years.

[7] *Heavy water*, which contains the heavy hydrogen isotope deuterium, is an even more effective moderator. This is because, in an elastic collision, a neutron transfers a greater portion of its energy to the deuterium nucleus than it would to the heavier carbon nucleus, and a deuteron never absorbs a neutron, as a carbon nucleus occasionally does.

[8] In a worst-case accident, however, heat sufficient to melt the reactor core is possible—and, if the reactor building is not strong enough, radioactivity will scatter into the environment. One such accident occurred at the Chernobyl reactor in 1986 in Ukraine, which was then a constituent republic of the Soviet Union. Another nuclear disaster was the result of the 2011 tsunami in Fukushima, Japan.

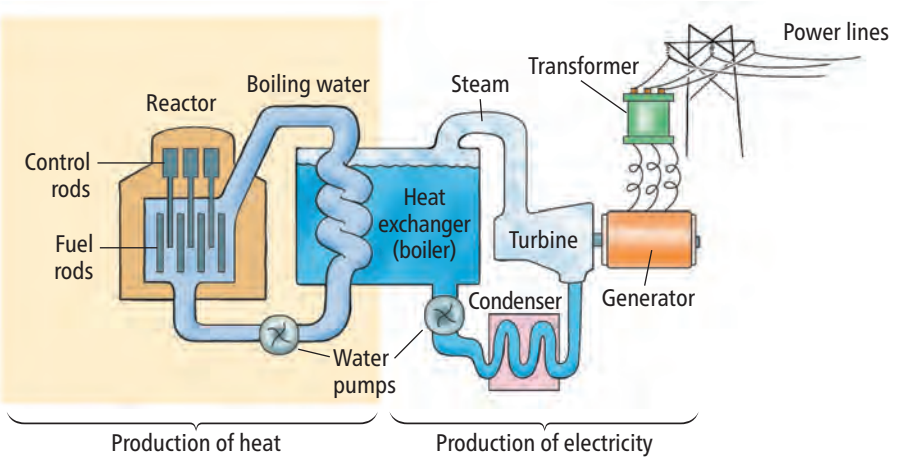


FIGURE 34.9
Diagram of a nuclear fission power plant.

CHECK POINT

What is the function of a moderator in a nuclear reactor? Of control rods?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

A moderator slows down neutrons that are normally too fast to be absorbed readily by fissionable isotopes, such as U-235. Control rods absorb and control the number of neutrons that participate in the chain reaction.

PLUTONIUM

Early in the 19th century, the farthest planet known in the solar system was Uranus. The first planet to be discovered beyond Uranus was named Neptune. In 1930, what seemed to be a planet beyond Neptune was discovered and named Pluto. At this time the heaviest element known was uranium, named after Uranus a few years after its discovery. Appropriately, the first transuranic element to be discovered was named *neptunium* and the second was named *plutonium*.

Neptunium is produced when a neutron is absorbed by a U-238 nucleus, becoming U-239, which in turn emits a beta particle to become neptunium 329. Neptunium-239 is a beta emitter and very soon becomes plutonium-239, whose half-life is about 24,000 years. It lasts a considerable time. The isotope plutonium-239, like U-235, will undergo fission when it captures a neutron. Whereas the separation of fissionable U-235 from uranium is a very difficult process (because U-235 and U-238 have the same chemistry), the separation of plutonium from uranium is relatively easy. This is because plutonium is an element distinct from uranium, with its own chemical properties.

The element plutonium is chemically poisonous in the same sense as are lead and arsenic. It attacks the nervous system and can cause paralysis. Death can follow if the dose is sufficiently large. Fortunately, plutonium does not remain in its elemental form for long because it rapidly combines with oxygen to form three compounds: PuO, PuO_2, and Pu_2O_3, which will not dissolve in water or in biological systems. These plutonium compounds do not affect the nervous system and have been found to be chemically harmless.

Plutonium in any form, however, is radioactively hazardous. It is more toxic than uranium, although less toxic than radium. Plutonium emits high-energy alpha particles, which kill cells rather than simply disrupting them, leading to mutations. Interestingly, damaged cells rather than dead cells contribute to cancer. This is why plutonium ranks relatively low as a cancer-producing substance. The greatest danger that plutonium presents to humans is its potential use in nuclear fission bombs. Its usefulness is in fission reactors—particularly breeder reactors.

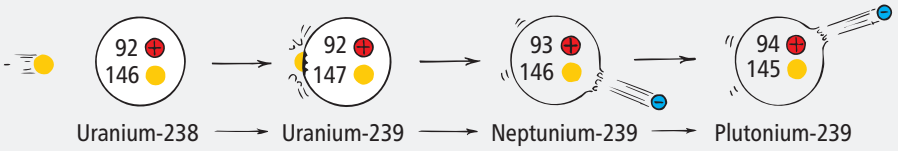


FIGURE 34.10
When a nucleus of U-238 absorbs a neutron, it becomes a nucleus of U-239. Within about half an hour, this nucleus emits a beta particle, resulting in a new element— *neptunium*. After the neptunium, in turn, emits a beta particle, it becomes plutonium. (In both events, an antineutrino, not shown, is also emitted.)

CHECK POINT

Why doesn't plutonium occur in appreciable amounts in natural ore deposits?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

On a geological time scale, plutonium has a relatively short half-life, so any that exists is produced by very recent transmutations of uranium isotopes.

fyi

- Weapons-grade plutonium is typically 93% Pu-239.

34.3 The Breeder Reactor

A remarkable feature of fission power is the *breeding* of plutonium from nonfissionable U-238. Fissioning liberates neutrons that convert the relatively abundant nonfissionable U-238 to U-239, which beta-decays to become Np-239, which, in turn, beta-decays to become fissionable plutonium—Pu-239 (Figure 34.10). So we see that in addition to the abundant energy produced, additional fission fuel is bred from relatively abundant U-238 in the process.

Some breeding occurs in all fission reactors, but a **breeder reactor** is specifically designed to breed more fissionable fuel than is put into it. Using a breeder reactor is analogous to filling your car's gas tank with water, adding some gasoline, then driving the car and having more gasoline at the end of the trip than at the beginning! The basic principle of the breeder reactor is very attractive: After a few years of operation, a breeder-reactor power plant can produce vast amounts of power while breeding twice as much fuel as it had in the beginning.

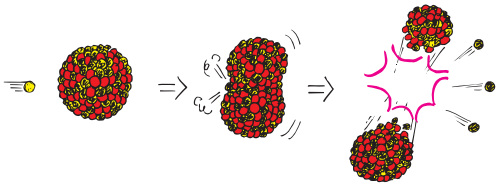
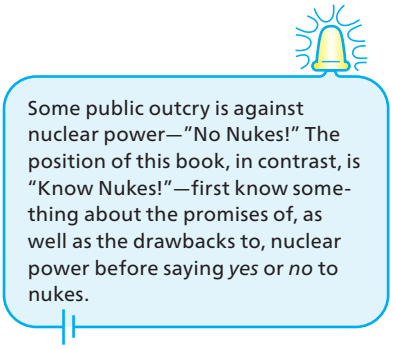


FIGURE 34.11
Pu-239 or U-233, like U-235, undergoes fission when it captures a neutron.

The downside of breeder reactors is the enormous complexity of successful and safe operation. The United States abandoned breeders in the 1980s, and only a few countries are still investing in them. Officials in these countries point out that supplies of naturally occurring uranium are limited. At present rates of consumption, all natural sources of uranium may be depleted within a century. Countries then deciding to use breeder reactors may well find themselves digging up radioactive wastes they once buried.[9]


Some public outcry is against nuclear power—"No Nukes!" The position of this book, in contrast, is "Know Nukes!"—first know something about the promises of, as well as the drawbacks to, nuclear power before saying *yes* or *no* to nukes.

CHECK POINT

Complete these reactions, which occur in a breeder reactor:

$^{239}_{92}U \rightarrow$ _____ + $^{0}_{-1}e$

$^{239}_{93}Np \rightarrow$ _____ + $^{0}_{-1}e$

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

$^{239}_{93}Np$; $^{239}_{94}Pu$. (Antineutrinos are also emitted in these beta-decay processes, and they escape unobserved.)

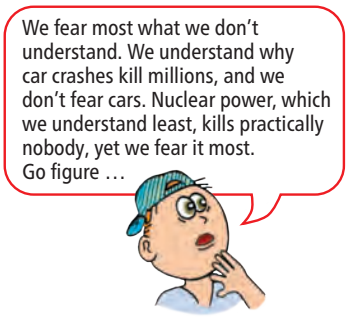
Converting uranium into plutonium is one form of nuclear breeding. Another is breeding thorium to uranium—not to very fissile U-235, but to another uranium isotope that also can undergo fission—U-233.

[9]Many nuclear scientists do not think that deep burial is a desirable solution to the problem of nuclear waste. Devices are presently being studied that could, in principle, convert long-lived radioactive atoms of spent reactor fuel into short-lived or nonradioactive atoms. Nuclear wastes may not plague future generations indefinitely, as has been commonly thought.

The Thorium Reactor

A different kind of breeder reactor uses thorium to breed the fissionable isotope U-233. This liquid fluoride thorium reactor, LFTR (often pronounced "lifter"), breeds U-233 from a molten mixture of thorium and fluoride salts. Although the isotope U-233 doesn't occur naturally on Earth, it's produced in breeder reactors where thorium-232 captures a neutron to form Th-233, which by way of two beta decays becomes U-233. Thorium is nearly four times more abundant in Earth's crust than uranium, and most thorium is the required Th-232 isotope. So, the world already has an abundant existing supply of this fuel.

Conventional nuclear power plants are prone to explosive accidents because they operate at extremely high pressures. The LFTR, by contrast, operates near atmospheric pressure, which translates to greater safety. And whereas the fuel in conventional nuclear power plants invariably leads to the creation of plutonium, production of this toxic element in the LFTR is low enough to be retained and controlled within the molten mixture. The LFTR also has inherent mechanisms that prevent a meltdown scenario.


We fear most what we don't understand. We understand why car crashes kill millions, and we don't fear cars. Nuclear power, which we understand least, kills practically nobody, yet we fear it most.
Go figure …

Significantly, conventional nuclear power plants have to be shut down once every 18 months for replacement of solid fuel pellets. The LFTR, however, can function continuously for years using liquid fuel in which by-products can be removed by distillation or electrolysis. Furthermore, most of the by-products isolated from the LFTR have short half-lives that decay within a matter of hours or days. Its longest-lived isotope cesium-137, requires only decades of safe storage (rather than the hundreds of millennia with plutonium reactors). As with all nuclear reactors, breeders or otherwise, nuclear energy is converted to electric energy by heating water that becomes steam to operate a conventional turbine.

Historically, the harnessing of nuclear fission began in quest of a weapon. The name of the game at that time was converting U-238 to fissionable U-235. We can only wonder if a search for U-233 by way of thorium would have occurred earlier if energy production had been the goal.

With a growing awareness of the dangers posed by greenhouse gases, more attention is being given to the potential benefits of modern nuclear technology. Japan, China, the UK, and India are all sponsoring research into the LFTR as well as private companies in the United States, Czech Republic, Canada, and Australia. Check online for the latest developments.

CHECK POINT

Thorium-232 is not fissionable. How then can this common isotope be used as a fuel for nuclear fission?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The Th-232 isotope transforms into Th-233 upon capturing a neutron. The Th-233 isotope then undergoes two beta decays to form the fissionable U-233 isotope.

34.4 Fission Power

Energy available from nuclear fission was introduced to the world in the form of nuclear bombs. This violent image still influences our thinking about nuclear power. Add to this the fearsome 1986 Chernobyl disaster in the Soviet Union and the horrendous 2011 nuclear accident in Fukashima, Japan we find many people viewing nuclear power as evil technology. Nevertheless, about 20% of

electric energy in the United States is generated by nuclear-fission reactors. These reactors, sometimes called *nukes*, are simply nuclear furnaces. Like fossil-fuel furnaces, they do nothing more elegant than boil water to produce steam for a turbine. The greatest practical difference is the amount of fuel involved. One kilogram of uranium fuel, a chunk smaller than a baseball, yields more energy than 30 freight car loads of coal.

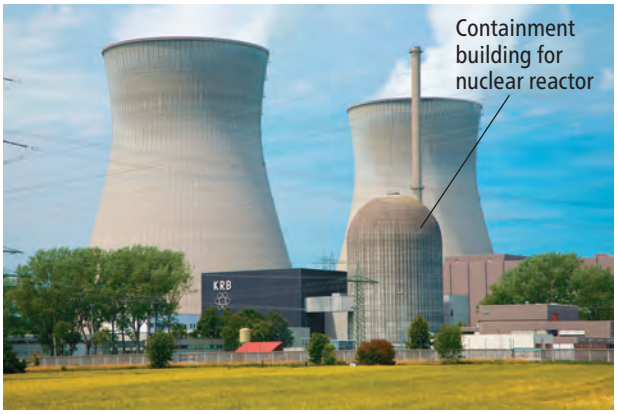


FIGURE 34.12
In front of the pair of cooling towers the nuclear reactor is housed within a dome-shaped containment building that is designed to prevent the release of radioactive isotopes in the event of an accident.

One disadvantage of fission power is the generation of radioactive waste products. Light atomic nuclei are most stable when composed of equal numbers of protons and neutrons, and it is mainly heavy nuclei that need more neutrons than protons for stability. For example, there are 143 neutrons but only 92 protons in U-235. When uranium fissions into two medium-weight elements, the extra neutrons in their nuclei make them unstable. These fragments are therefore radioactive, and most of them have very short half-lives. Some of them, however, have half-lives of thousands of years. Safely disposing of these waste products as well as materials made radioactive in the production of nuclear fuels requires special storage casks and procedures. Although fission power goes back a half century, the technology of radioactive waste disposal remains in the developmental stage.

The benefits of fission power are (1) providing plentiful electricity; (2) saving many billions of tons of coal, oil, and natural gas every year that are literally converted to heat and smoke and in the long run may be far more precious as sources of organic molecules; and (3) eliminating the megatons of sulfur oxides and other poisons as well as the greenhouse gas carbon dioxide that are released into the air each year by the burning of these fuels.

The drawbacks include (1) the problem of storing radioactive wastes, (2) the production of plutonium and the danger of nuclear weapons proliferation, (3) the low-level release of radioactive materials into the air and groundwater, and, most important, (4) the risk of an accidental release of large amounts of radioactivity.

Reasoned judgment requires not only that we examine the benefits and drawbacks of fission power but also that we compare its benefits and drawbacks with those of other power sources.

fyi

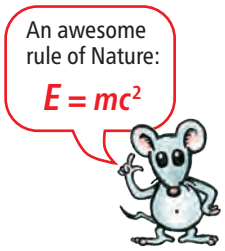
- Nuclear waste can be "burned" in special reactors that transmute it into more benign elements, thus eliminating the objection that nuclear wastes are dumped in the laps of future generations.

CHECK POINT

Why must the fission process release neutrons if it is to be useful?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The usefulness of fission is sustained energy output, which occurs with a steady supply of neutrons—a chain reaction of them.



34.5 Mass–Energy Equivalence

In 1905, Albert Einstein discovered that mass is actually "congealed" energy. Mass and energy are two sides of the same coin, as stated in his celebrated equation $E = mc^2$. In this equation, E stands for the energy that any mass has at rest, m stands for mass, and c is the speed of light. The quantity c^2 is the proportionality constant of energy and mass. This relationship between energy and mass is the key to understanding why and how energy is released in nuclear reactions.

The more energy that is stored in a particle, the greater is the mass of the particle. Is the mass of a nucleon inside a nucleus the same as the mass of the same nucleon outside a nucleus? This question can be answered by considering the work that would be required to separate nucleons from a nucleus. From physics we know that work, which is expended energy, is equal to *force* × *distance*. Think of the amount of force required to pull a nucleon out of the nucleus through a sufficient distance to overcome the attractive strong nuclear force, comically indicated in Figure 34.13. Enormous work would be required. This work is energy added to the nucleon that is pulled out.

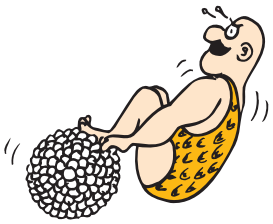


FIGURE 34.13
Work is required to pull a nucleon from an atomic nucleus. This work goes into mass energy.

The mass difference in a nucleon outside a nucleus and the average mass of the nucleons locked inside a nucleus are related to the "binding energy" of the nucleus. For uranium, the mass difference is about 0.8%, or 8 parts in 1000. The 0.8% reduction in the average nucleon mass within a uranium atom indicates the binding energy of the nucleus—how much work would be required to disassemble the nucleus.[10] That works out to be about 8 million eV per nucleon.

The experimental verification of this conclusion is one of the triumphs of modern physics. The average mass per nucleon within the nuclei of the isotopes of the various elements can be measured with an accuracy of 1 part per million or better. One means of doing this is with a *mass spectrometer* (Figure 34.14). These instruments range from very bulky to small hand-held devices.

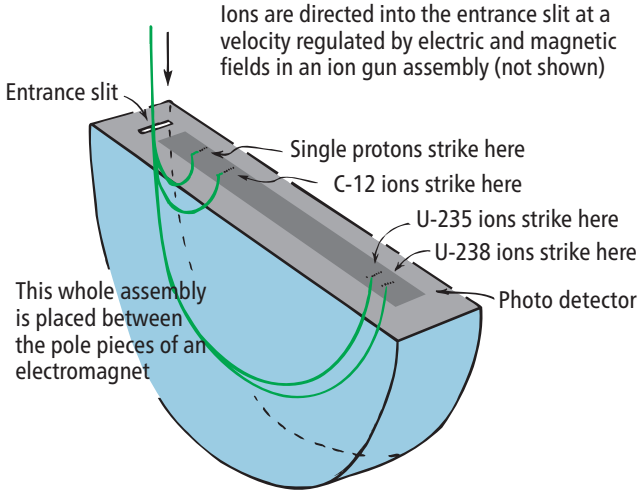

Ions are directed into the entrance slit at a velocity regulated by electric and magnetic fields in an ion gun assembly (not shown)
Entrance slit
Single protons strike here
C-12 ions strike here
U-235 ions strike here
U-238 ions strike here
Photo detector
This whole assembly is placed between the pole pieces of an electromagnet

FIGURE 34.14
The mass spectrometer. Ions of a fixed speed are directed into the semicircular "drum," where they are swept into semicircular paths by a strong magnetic field.

In a mass spectrometer, charged ions with identical speeds are directed into a magnetic field, where they deflect into circular arcs. The greater the inertia of the ion, the more it resists deflection and the larger the radius of its curved path. The magnetic force sweeps the heavier ions into larger arcs and the lighter ions into smaller

[10]Strictly speaking, it is added to the combined mass of the nucleon that is removed and the nucleus that is left behind. It isn't actually possible to measure the mass of an individual nucleon within a nucleus. We can only measure the total mass of the nucleus and divide by the number of nucleons therein to get the average mass per nucleon, which is what comes out to be about 0.8% less than the mass of a free nucleon.

TABLE 34.1 MASSES AND MASSES PER NUCLEON OF SOME ISOTOPES

Isotope	*Symbol*	*Mass (amu)*	*Mass/Nucleon (amu)*
Neutron	n	1.008665	1.008665
Hydrogen	$^{1}_{1}H$	1.007825	1.007825
Deuterium	$^{2}_{1}H$	2.01410	1.00705
Tritium	$^{3}_{1}H$	3.01605	1.00535
Helium-4	$^{4}_{2}He$	4.00260	1.00065
Carbon-12	$^{12}_{6}C$	12.00000	1.000000
Iron-56	$^{56}_{26}Fe$	55.93494	0.99884
Copper-63	$^{63}_{29}Cu$	62.92960	0.99888
Krypton-90	$^{90}_{36}Kr$	89.91952	0.99911
Barium-143	$^{143}_{56}Ba$	142.92063	0.99944
Uranium-235	$^{235}_{92}U$	235.04393	1.00019

arcs. The ions pass through exit slits, where they may be collected, or they strike a photo detector. An isotope is chosen as a standard, and its position on the film of the mass spectrometer is used as a reference point. The standard is the common isotope of carbon, C-12, the atomic mass of which is assigned the value of 12.00000 atomic mass units. Recall that the atomic mass unit (amu) is defined to be precisely one-twelfth the mass of the common carbon-12 atom. With this reference, the amu values of the other atoms are measured. You can see that in a C-12 atom, the average mass per nucleon is exactly 1.00000. This is less than the mass of either a hydrogen atom or a free neutron, which are, respectively, 1.007825 and 1.00867 amu.

A graph of nuclear mass as a function of atomic number is shown in Figure 34.15. The graph slopes upward with increasing atomic number, as expected, telling us that elements are more massive as atomic number increases. (The slope curves because there are proportionally more neutrons in the more massive atoms.)

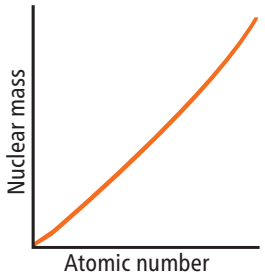


FIGURE 34.15
The plot shows how nuclear mass increases with increasing atomic number.

A more important graph is a plot of average mass *per nucleon* for the elements hydrogen through uranium (Figure 34.16). This is perhaps the most important graph in this book because it is the key to understanding the energy associated with nuclear processes—fission as well as fusion. To obtain the average mass per nucleon, you divide the total mass of an atom by the number of nucleons in the nucleus. (Similarly, if you divide the total mass of a roomful of people by the number of people in the room, you get the average mass per person.) The major fact we learn from Figure 34.16 is that the average mass per nucleon varies from one nucleus to another.

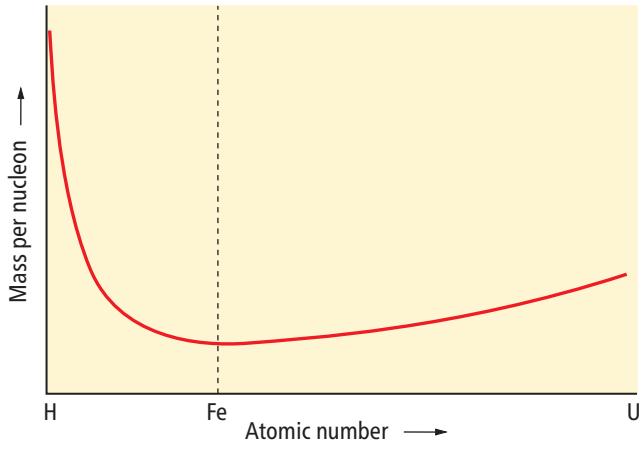


FIGURE 34.16
The graph shows the atom's average mass per nucleon in the nucleus varies from one end of the periodic table to the other. You can say that it's as if individual nucleons have the most mass in the lightest (hydrogen) nuclei, the least mass in iron nuclei, and intermediate mass in the heaviest (uranium) nuclei. (The vertical scale is exaggerated.)

The greatest mass per nucleon occurs for hydrogen, whose lone central proton has no binding energy to pull its mass down. As we progress to elements beyond hydrogen, Figure 34.16 tells us that the mass per nucleon decreases and is least for iron. The iron nucleus holds its nucleons more tightly than any other nucleus does. Beyond iron, the trend reverses itself as proton repulsion becomes more important and the binding energy per nucleon gradually decreases (meaning that the mass per nucleon gradually increases). This continues all the way through the list of elements.

From Figure 34.17, we can see why energy is released when a uranium nucleus is split into two nuclei of lower atomic number. When the uranium nucleus splits, the atomic numbers of the two fission fragments lie about halfway between the atomic numbers of uranium and hydrogen on the horizontal scale of the graph. It is most important to note that the mass per nucleon in the fission fragments is *less than* the mass per nucleon when the same set of nucleons is combined in the uranium nucleus. When this decrease in mass is multiplied by the speed of light squared, it equals 200,000,000 eV, the energy yielded by each uranium nucleus that undergoes fission. As mentioned earlier, most of this enormous energy is the kinetic energy of the fission fragments.

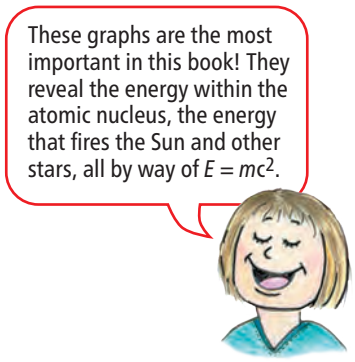
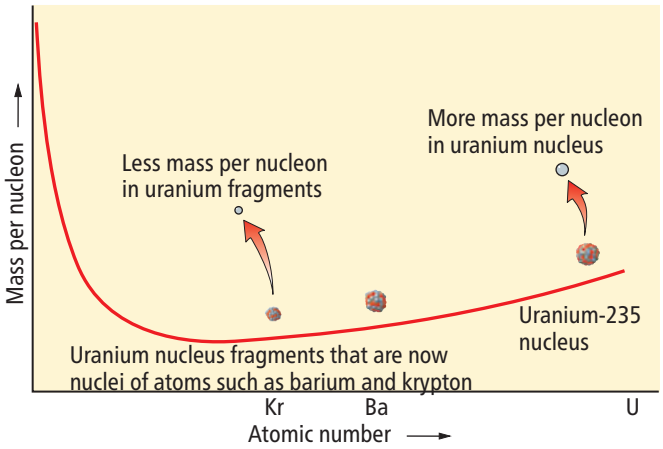

These graphs are the most important in this book! They reveal the energy within the atomic nucleus, the energy that fires the Sun and other stars, all by way of $E = mc^2$.

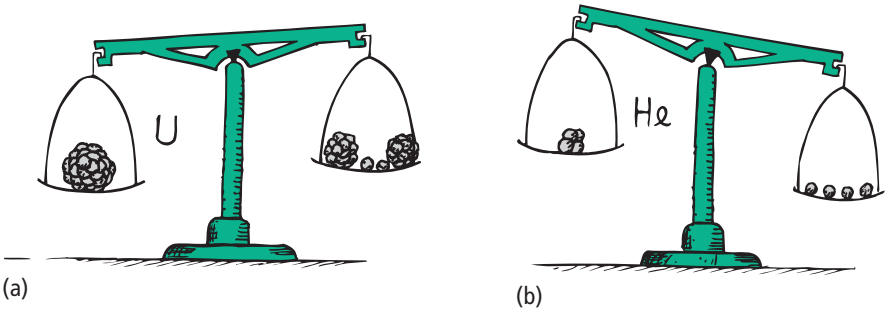
FIGURE 34.17
The average mass per nucleon in a uranium nucleus is greater than the average mass per nucleon in any one of its nuclear-fission fragments. This decrease in mass is transformed into energy. Hence, nuclear fission is an energy-releasing process.


Mass per nucleon
More mass per nucleon in uranium nucleus
Less mass per nucleon in uranium fragments
Uranium-235 nucleus
Uranium nucleus fragments that are now nuclei of atoms such as barium and krypton
Kr
Ba
U
Atomic number

Binding energy reduces the mass of a nucleus by exactly the mass equivalence (E/c^2) of that binding energy. The more binding energy, the less mass. The iron nucleus has the greatest binding energy per nucleon and the least mass per nucleon.

We can think of the mass-per-nucleon curve as an energy valley that starts at the highest point (hydrogen), slopes steeply down to the lowest point (iron), and then slopes more gradually up to uranium. Iron is at the bottom of the energy valley and is the most stable nucleus. This means that it is the most tightly bound nucleus; more energy per nucleon is required to pull it apart into its constituent nucleons than for any other nucleus.

FIGURE 34.18
The mass of a nucleus is *not* equal to the sum of the masses of its parts. (a) The fission fragments of a heavy nucleus like uranium are less massive than the uranium nucleus. (b) Two protons and two neutrons are more massive in their free states than when they are combined to form a helium nucleus.



All nuclear power production today is based on technologies that utilize nuclear fission. A more promising long-range source of energy is to be found on the left side of the energy valley.

TABLE 34.2 ENERGY GAIN FROM THE FISSION OF URANIUM

Reaction:	$^{235}U + n \rightarrow {}^{143}Ba + {}^{90}Kr + 3n + \Delta m$
Mass balance:	$235.04393 + 1.008665 = 142.92063 + 89.91952 + 3(1.008665) + \Delta m$
Loss of mass:	$\Delta m = 0.186$ amu
Gain of energy*:	$\Delta E = \Delta mc^2 = 0.186 \text{ amu} \times 931 \text{ MeV/amu} = 173 \text{ MeV}$

*931 MeV is the energy equivalent of 1 amu—hence the conversion factor 931 MeV/amu. In addition to the above, there is an additional delayed energy release of about 25 MeV from the radioactive fission fragments, for a total energy release per fission event of close to 200 MeV.

CHECK POINT

1. **Wait a minute! If isolated protons and neutrons have masses greater than 1.0000 amu, why don't 12 of them in a carbon nucleus have a combined mass greater than 12.0000 amu?**
2. **Correct the following incorrect statement: When a heavy element, such as uranium, undergoes fission, there are fewer nucleons after the reaction than before.**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. When you pull a nucleon from the nucleus, you do work on it and it gains energy. When that nucleon falls back into the nucleus, it *loses* energy. Losing energy means losing mass. It's as if each nucleon, on average, slims down to a mass of exactly 1.0000 amu when it joins with 11 other nucleons to form C-12. If you pull them back out, you'll get back the original mass. Indeed, $E = mc^2$.
2. When a heavy element, such as uranium, undergoes fission, there aren't fewer nucleons after the reaction. Instead, there's *less mass* in the same number of nucleons.

PHYSICS AT AIRPORT SECURITY

A version of the mass spectrometer shown in Figure 34.14 is employed in airport security. Ion mobility rather than electromagnetic separation is used to sniff out certain molecules, mainly the few nitrogen-rich ones characteristic of drugs and explosives. Security personnel swab your luggage or other belongings with a small disk of paper, which they place in a device that heats it to expel vapors from it. Molecules in the vapor are ionized by exposure to beta radiation from a radioactive source. Most molecules become positive ions, whereas nitrogen-rich molecules become negative, which drift against a flow of air to a positively charged detector. The time for a negative ion to reach the detector indicates the ion's mass—the heavier the ion, the slower it will be to reach the detector.

The same process occurs in body scans, in which a person stands momentarily in an enclosed region the size of former telephone booths where upward puffs of air

impinge on the body. The air is then "sniffed" by the same technique, searching for some 40 types of explosives and 60 types of drug residues. Presto, green light means none were detected, and red light means—uh-oh!

34.6 Nuclear Fusion

Inspection of the mass-per-nucleon versus atomic-number graph in Figure 34.19 shows that the steepest part of the energy hill is from hydrogen to iron. Energy is gained as light nuclei *fuse* (which means that they combine). This combining of nuclei is **nuclear fusion**—the opposite of nuclear fission. We can see from Figure 34.19 that as we move along the list of elements from hydrogen to iron (the left side of the energy valley), the average mass per nucleon decreases. Thus, if two small nuclei were to fuse, the mass of the fused nucleus would be less than the mass of the two single nuclei before fusion. Energy is released as light nuclei fuse.

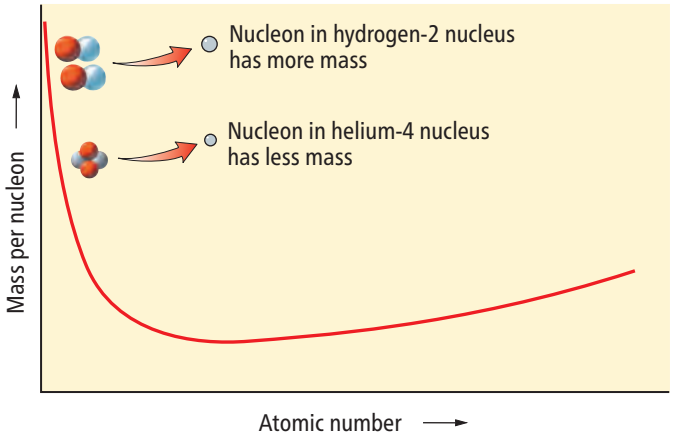
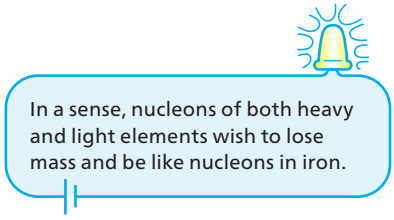


FIGURE 34.19
The average mass of a nucleon in hydrogen is greater than its average mass when fused with another to become helium. The decreased mass is mass that is converted to energy, which is why nuclear fusion of light elements is an energy-releasing process.



Consider hydrogen fusion. For a fusion reaction to occur, the nuclei must collide at a very high speed in order to overcome their mutual electrical repulsion. The required speeds correspond to the extremely high temperatures that are found in the Sun and other stars. Fusion brought about by high temperatures is called **thermonuclear fusion.** In the high temperatures of the Sun, approximately 657 million tons of hydrogen are fused to 653 million tons of helium each second. The "missing" 4 million tons of mass convert to energy. Such reactions are, quite literally, nuclear burning.

Interestingly, most of the energy of nuclear fusion is in the kinetic energy of fragments. When the fragments are stopped and captured, the energy of fusion turns into heat. In the Sun, this heat ends up as photons radiated from the surface. These photons travel through space, and a tiny percentage of them encounter Earth—the photons that deliver energy that enables almost all life on our planet.

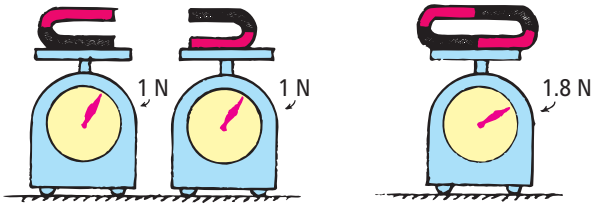


FIGURE 34.20
Fictitious example: The "hydrogen magnets" weigh more when they are apart than they do when they are together. The "mass per magnet" is less for the combined magnets.

Thermonuclear fusion is analogous to ordinary chemical combustion. In both chemical and nuclear burning, a high temperature starts the reaction; the release of energy by the reaction maintains a sufficient temperature to spread the fire. The net result of the chemical reaction is a combination of atoms into more tightly bound molecules. In nuclear reactions, the net result is nuclei that are more tightly bound. In both cases, mass decreases as energy is released. The difference between chemical and nuclear burning is essentially one of scale—energies of nuclear in MeV, and energies of chemical in eV (hence chemical's undetectably tiny losses in mass).

In fission reactions, the amount of matter that is converted to energy is about 0.1%; in fusion, it can be as much as 0.7%. These numbers apply whether the process takes place in bombs, in reactors, or in stars. Two typical fusion reactions are shown in Figure 34.21. Most reactions produce at least a pair of particles—for example, a pair of deuterium nuclei that fuse can produce a helium-3 nucleus and a neutron rather than a lone helium-4 nucleus. Either reaction is okay as far as adding the nucleons and charges is concerned, but the lone-nucleus case is not in accord with conservation of momentum and energy. If a lone helium nucleus flies away after the reaction, it adds momentum that wasn't there initially. Or, if it remains motionless, there's no mechanism for energy release. So, because a single product particle can't move and it can't sit still, it isn't formed. Fusion normally requires the creation of at least two particles to share the released energy.[11]

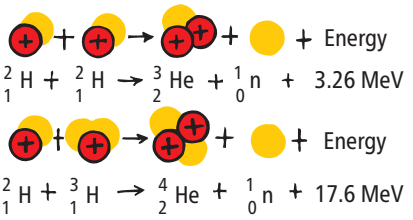


FIGURE 34.21
Two of many fusion reactions.

Table 34.3 shows the energy gain from the fusion of the hydrogen isotopes deuterium and tritium. This is the reaction proposed for plasma fusion power plants of the future. The high-energy neutrons, according to plan, will escape from the plasma in the reactor vessel and heat a surrounding blanket of material to provide useful energy. The helium nuclei that remain behind will help to keep the plasma hot. Another reaction, not described here, will provide the tritium, which is not found in nature on Earth (because of its short 12-year half-life).

Elements somewhat heavier than hydrogen release energy when fused. But they release much less energy per fusion reaction than hydrogen. The fusion of still heavier elements occurs in the advanced stages of a star's evolution. The energy released per gram during the various fusion stages from helium to iron amounts to only about one-fourth of the energy released in the fusion of hydrogen to helium.

TABLE 34.3 ENERGY GAIN FROM FUSION OF HYDROGEN ISOTOPES

Reaction:	$^{2}H + {}^{3}H \rightarrow {}^{4}_{2}He + n + \Delta m$
Mass balance:	$2.01410 + 3.01605 = 4.00260 + 1.008665 + \Delta m$
Mass defect:	$\Delta m = 0.01888$ amu
Energy gain:	$\Delta E = mc^2$; 0.01888 amu × 931 MeV/amu = 17.6 MeV
Energy gain/nucleon:	$\Delta E/5 = 17.6$ MeV$/5 = 3.5$ MeV/nucleon

[11]One of the reactions in the Sun's proton–proton fusion cycle does have a one-particle final state. It is proton + deuteron → He-3. This happens because the density in the center of the Sun is great enough that "spectator" particles share in the energy release. So, even in this case, the energy released goes to two or more particles. Fusion in the Sun involves more complicated (and slower!) reactions in which a small part of the energy also appears in the form of gamma rays and neutrinos. The neutrinos escape unhindered from the center of the Sun and bathe the solar system. Interestingly, the fusion of nuclei in the Sun is an occasional process because the mean spacing between nuclei is vast, even at the high pressures in its center. That's why it takes some 10 billion years for the Sun to consume its hydrogen fuel.

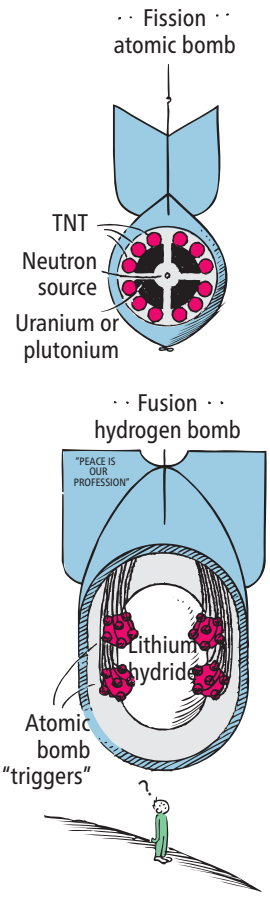


FIGURE 34.22
Fission and fusion bombs.

Prior to the development of the atomic bomb (fission bomb), the temperatures required to overcome mutual proton repulsion and initiate nuclear fusion on Earth were unattainable.[12] But an exploding atomic bomb generates temperatures considerably higher than those at the center of the Sun, opening the door to a thermonuclear bomb. The first thermonuclear explosion took place in 1952 and was followed by "H-bombs" in 1954. Whereas the critical mass of fissionable material limits the size of a fission bomb (atomic bomb), no such limit is imposed on a fusion bomb. Just as there is no limit to the size of an oil-storage depot, there is no theoretical limit to the size of a fusion bomb. Like the oil in a storage depot, any amount of fusion fuel can be stored with safety until it is ignited. Although a mere match can ignite an oil depot, nothing less energetic than a fission bomb can ignite a thermonuclear bomb. We can see that there is no such thing as a "baby" hydrogen bomb. It cannot be less energetic than its fuse, which is a fission bomb.

The hydrogen bomb is another example of a discovery applied to destructive rather than constructive purposes. The potential constructive side of the picture is the controlled release of vast amounts of clean energy.

fyi

- The energy released in fusing a pair of hydrogen nuclei is less than that in fissioning a uranium nucleus. But because there are more atoms in a gram of hydrogen than in a gram of uranium, gram for gram, the fusion of hydrogen releases several times as much energy as the fission of uranium.

CHECK POINT

1. **First it was stated that nuclear energy is released when atoms split apart. Now it is stated that nuclear energy is released when atoms combine. Is this a contradiction? How can energy be released by opposite processes?**
2. **To obtain energy from the element iron, should iron nuclei be fissioned or fused?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Energy is released in any nuclear reaction in which the mass of the nuclei after the reaction is less than the mass of the nuclei before. When heavy nuclei, such as those of uranium, split to become lighter nuclei, the total nuclear mass decreases. The splitting of heavy nuclei releases energy. When light nuclei, such as those of hydrogen, fuse to form heavier nuclei, the total nuclear mass also decreases. For energy release, "decrease mass" is the name of the game—any game, chemical or nuclear.
2. Neither, because iron is at the very bottom of the curve (energy valley). If you fuse two iron nuclei, the product lies somewhere to the upper right of iron on the curve, which means the product has a higher mass per nucleon. If you split an iron nucleus, the products lie to the upper left of iron on the curve, which again means a higher mass per nucleon. Because no mass decrease occurs in either reaction, no energy is ever released.

34.7 Controlling Fusion

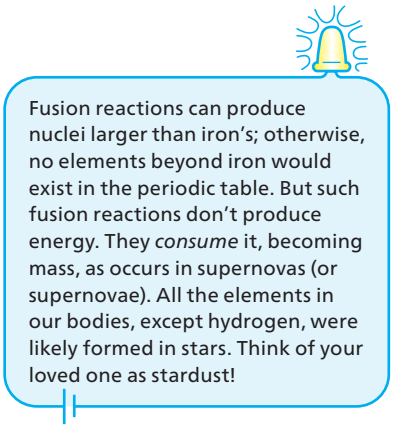
The fuel for nuclear fusion is hydrogen, the most plentiful element in the universe. The reaction that works best at "moderate" temperature is the fusion of the hydrogen isotopes deuterium (${}_1^2\mathrm{H}$) and tritium (${}_1^3\mathrm{H}$). Deuterium is found in ordinary water. Deuterium in the world's oceans has the potential to release vastly more energy than all the world's fossil fuels and much more than the

[12]Small-scale fusion reactions can, however, be created in particle accelerators.

world's supply of uranium. Tritium, with a half-life of 12 years, is almost completely absent in nature, but it can be produced in nuclear reactors by neutron activation of lithium-6. Tritium can also be produced in experimental fusion reactors when neutrons escaping the plasma interact with lithium contained in the blanket wall of the reactor.

Fusion remains a dream source of long-term energy needs. The outlook for fusion power in the foreseeable future, however, isn't promising. Various fusion schemes have been tried. The earliest approach, still being pursued, involves confining a hot plasma with a magnetic field. Other approaches have harnessed high-energy lasers. One scheme is to drop hydrogen pellets into a crossfire of lasers that would ignite pulses of fusion power. The engineering and technological challenges are overwhelming and are yet to be solved. All scenarios have been in search of an "energy breakeven," where energy output at least equals energy input. Except for brief spurts, it hasn't happened.

Will there be a breakthrough, where the sustained energy output in a device will be greater than the energy input to initiate and sustain fusion? Will we find a way to tame the power of the Sun and stars? We don't know. If and when that comes to be, humans may synthesize their own elements and produce energy in the process, just as the stars have always done. At that point, fusion will likely be the primary energy source for generations to come. Keep tuned to the Web, and for the present, be glad that thermonuclear fusion in our nearest star is responsible for sunshine and all that sunshine brings to Earth.


Fusion reactions can produce nuclei larger than iron's; otherwise, no elements beyond iron would exist in the periodic table. But such fusion reactions don't produce energy. They *consume* it, becoming mass, as occurs in supernovas (or supernovae). All the elements in our bodies, except hydrogen, were likely formed in stars. Think of your loved one as stardust!

Chapter 34 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Nuclear fission The splitting of the nucleus of a heavy atom, such as uranium-235, into two smaller nuclei, accompanied by the release of much energy.

Chain reaction A self-sustaining reaction in which the products of one reaction event stimulate further reaction events.

Critical mass The minimum mass of fissionable material in a reactor or nuclear bomb that will sustain a chain reaction.

Breeder reactor A fission reactor that is designed to breed more fissionable fuel than is put into it by converting nonfissionable isotopes to fissionable isotopes.

Nuclear fusion The combination of light atomic nuclei to form heavier nuclei, often with the release of much energy.

Thermonuclear fusion Nuclear fusion produced by high temperature.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

34.1 Nuclear Fission

1. Why doesn't a chain reaction occur in uranium mines?
2. Why will a chain reaction be more likely in a big piece of uranium than in a small piece of uranium?
3. What is meant by the idea of a critical mass?
4. Which will leak more neutrons, two separate pieces of uranium or the same pieces stuck together?
5. What two methods were used to separate U-235 from U-238 in the Manhattan Project during World War II?

34.2 Nuclear Fission Reactors

6. What are the three possible fates of neutrons in uranium metal?
7. What are the safeguards to prevent a reactor exploding like a fission bomb?
8. What isotope is produced when U-238 absorbs a neutron?
9. What isotope is produced when U-239 emits a beta particle?
10. What isotope is produced when Np-239 emits a beta particle?
11. Name two materials used in control rods in nuclear fission reactors. What qualities must these materials possess?
12. Do fission reactors have to be big in size?

34.3 The Breeder Reactor

13. What is produced by placing small amounts of fissionable isotopes with large amounts of U-238?
14. What element reacts in a conventional breeder reactor to breed nuclear fuel?
15. What is the role of thorium in nuclear fission?

34.4 Fission Power

16. How is a conventional nuclear reactor similar to a fossil-fuel plant?
17. What is an advantage and a disadvantage of fission power?

34.5 Mass–Energy Equivalence

18. In a nuclear reaction, what does the loss of mass transform into? Give the reason behind this argument.
19. Is work required to pull a nucleon out of an atomic nucleus? Does the nucleon, once outside, have more energy than inside the nucleus? In what form is this energy?
20. Which ions are most deflected in a mass spectrometer?
21. What is the basic difference between the graphs of Figure 34.15 and Figure 34.16?
22. In which element is the mass per nucleon greatest? Mass per nucleon least?
23. How does the mass per nucleon in uranium compare with the mass per nucleon of the fission fragments?
24. What becomes of the "lost" mass per nucleon in fission and fusion reactions?
25. If the graph in Figure 34.16 is seen as an energy valley, what can be said about the energy of nuclear transformations that progress toward iron?

34.6 Nuclear Fusion

26. When two hydrogen nuclei are fused, is the mass of the product nucleus more or less than the sum of the masses of the two hydrogen nuclei?
27. For helium to release energy, should it be fissioned or fused?

34.7 Controlling Fusion

28. Which isotopes of hydrogen fuse best at "moderate" temperature?
29. Which isotope of hydrogen—deuterium or tritium—is abundant and which is scarce?
30. What kind of nuclear power is responsible for sunshine?

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

31. Write a letter to Grandpa or Grandma discussing nuclear power. Cite both the ups and downs of nuclear fission power plants and explain how the comparison affects your personal view of nukes. Also explain how nuclear fission and nuclear fusion differ.

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

32. The difference between the calculated mass and the true mass of an atom's nucleus is often termed a mass defect, which accounts for the binding energy. Quantitatively, if mass defect follows the following relation:

$$\Delta m = [Z(m_p + m_e) + (A - Z)\, m_n] - m_{atom}$$

then compare the mass defects for U-235 (235.043930 amu) and U-238 (238.050785 amu) and calculate the binding energies for both. Also, find which has higher binding energy per number of nucleons.

33. The German-American physicist Hans Bethe first conceptualized the process of the carbon-nitrogen-oxygen (CNO) cycle, which is a thermonuclear reaction responsible for the energy radiated by the stars, in 1938. The reaction is a six-step process as follows:

Step 1: A carbon-12 nucleus captures a hydrogen-1 nucleus to form a nitrogen-13 and a gamma-ray (γ).

Step 2: The nitrogen-13 nucleus emits a positron-electron (positron, e+) and turns into carbon-13.

Step 3: This carbon-13 nucleus captures another proton to form nitrogen-14 along with the emission of another gamma-ray.

Step 4: The nitrogen-14 captures a proton to form oxygen-15.

Step 5: The oxygen-15 ejects a positron and becomes nitrogen-15.

Step 6: Finally, the nitrogen-15 nucleus captures a proton and disintegrates into a helium nucleus (alpha particle) and the element X with gamma-ray.

What is element X?

34. When a U-235 nucleus absorbs a neutron, the following fission reaction occurs. Fill in the empty boxes

$$^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U} + {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} \rightarrow {}^{\square}_{\square}\mathrm{Ba} + {}^{\square}_{\square}\mathrm{Kr} + 3{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}$$

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

35. Consider that all the following nuclei undergo fission into a pair of equal or nearly equal mass fragments. Using the periodic table and Figure 34.16 as your reference, rank from the greatest to least in terms of the reduction in mass for these nuclei after fission:
    (a) Uranium
    (b) Plutonium
    (c) Thorium
    (d) Iron
    (e) Cadmium

36. Rank the following elements in terms of the highest energy produced if they undergo a nuclear fusion reaction with an identical atom.
    (a) Carbon
    (b) Hydrogen
    (c) Lithium
    (d) Iron
    (e) Silicon

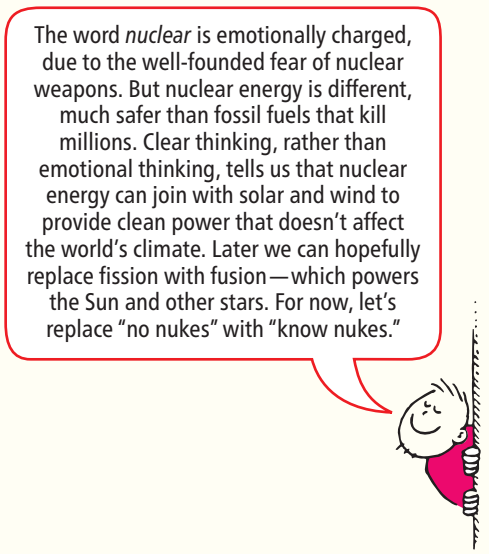
THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

37. What are the four fundamental forces in nature? Which force holds the nucleus together? Which force tends to push the nucleus apart?
38. Explain to a friend the distinction between mass and "critical mass."
39. Why doesn't uranium ore spontaneously undergo a chain reaction?
40. Some heavy nuclei, containing even more protons than the uranium nucleus, undergo "spontaneous fission," splitting apart without absorbing a neutron. In terms of electrical repulsion, why is spontaneous fission observed only in the heaviest nuclei?
41. Why does a neutron make a better "nuclear bullet" than a proton?
42. Why will the escape of neutrons be proportionally less in a large piece of fissionable material than in a smaller piece?
43. A 56-kg sphere of U-235 constitutes a critical mass. If the sphere were flattened into a pancake shape, would it still be critical? Explain.
44. Which shape is likely to need more material for a critical mass, a cube or a sphere? Explain.
45. Does the average distance that a neutron travels through fissionable material before escaping increase or decrease when two pieces of fissionable material are assembled into one piece? Does this assembly increase or decrease the probability of an explosion?
46. U-235 releases an average of 2.5 neutrons per fission, while Pu-239 releases an average of 2.7 neutrons per fission. Which of these elements do you expect to have the smaller critical mass?
47. Uranium and thorium occur abundantly in various ore deposits. However, plutonium can occur only in exceedingly tiny amounts in such deposits. What is your explanation?
48. After a uranium fuel rod reaches the end of its fuel cycle (in about 3 years), why does most of its energy come from the fissioning of plutonium?
49. The element thorium does not undergo fission. How then can we speak of thorium reactors?
50. If a nucleus of $^{232}_{90}\text{Th}$ absorbs a neutron and the resulting nucleus undergoes two successive beta decays, what is the resulting nucleus?
51. In a nuclear fission reaction, which has more mass, the initial uranium or its products?
52. In a nuclear fusion reaction, which has more mass, the initial hydrogen isotopes or the fusion products?
53. The water that passes through the reactor core of a water-moderated fission reactor does not pass into the turbine. Instead, heat is transferred to a separate water cycle that is entirely outside the reactor. Why is this done?
54. Why is carbon better than lead as a moderator in nuclear reactors?
55. Is the mass of an atomic nucleus greater or less than the sum of the masses of the individual nucleons composing it? Why don't the individual nucleon masses add up to the total nuclear mass?
56. The energy release of nuclear fission is tied to the fact that the heaviest nuclei have about 0.1% more mass per nucleon than nuclei near the middle of the periodic table of the elements. What would be the effect on energy release if the 0.1% figure were instead 1%?
57. Mixing copper and zinc atoms produces the alloy brass. What would be produced with the fusion of copper and zinc nuclei?
58. Oxygen and hydrogen atoms combine to form water. If the nuclei in a water molecule were fused, what element would be produced?
59. If a pair of carbon atoms were fused, and the product were to emit a beta particle, what element would be produced?
60. Unlike fission fuel, why is there not a limit to the amount of fusion fuel that can be safely stored in one locality?
61. If a fusion reaction produces no appreciable radioactive isotopes, why does a hydrogen bomb produce significant radioactive fallout?
62. The energy of fission is mainly in the kinetic energy of its products. What becomes of this energy in a commercial power reactor?

63. Which produces more energy, the fission of a single uranium nucleus or the fusing of a pair of deuterium nuclei? The fission of a gram of uranium or the fusing of a gram of deuterium? (Why do your answers differ?)
64. Fermi's original reactor was just "barely" critical because the natural uranium that he used contained less than 1% of the fissionable isotope U-235 (half-life 713 million years). If, in 1942, Earth had been 9 billion years old instead of 4.5 billion years old, would Fermi have been able to make a reactor go critical using natural uranium? Explain.
65. Sustained nuclear fusion has yet to be achieved and remains a hope for abundant future energy. Yet the energy that has always sustained us has been the energy of nuclear fusion. Explain.

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

66. What are the main similarities and differences in fission and fusion reactions?
67. In what way or how is chemical burning similar to nuclear fusion?
68. Your friend says, "Heavier elements create more energy in fission reactions and lighter elements create more energy during fusion reactions." Would you agree with their statement?
69. Write the reaction formula for the fusion of ${}_{1}^{1}\mathrm{H}$ and ${}_{1}^{2}\mathrm{H}$. What element results?
70. Write the reaction formula for the fusion of ${}_{4}^{2}\mathrm{He}$ and ${}_{4}^{8}\mathrm{Be}$. What element results?
71. Explain to a friend how the "energy-valley curve" of Figure 34.16 tells you whether energy will be absorbed or released for a particular fission or fusion event.
72. In order to meet energy needs, is it possible to make isolated nuclear fission plants, just like solar panels, to help electrify houses individually? How else can this goal be achieved, if not individually?
73. Once an investigator finds the mass difference involved in a nuclear reaction, how is the amount of energy released per reaction?
74. Suppose the "energy-valley curve" in Figure 34.16 for mass per nucleon versus atomic number had the shape of the curve in Figure 34.15 (continuing upward line). Then would nuclear fission reactions produce energy? Would nuclear fusion reactions produce energy? Defend your answers.
75. Describe and explain at least two major potential advantages of power production by fusion rather than by fission.
76. Let's consider a U-235 nucleus absorbs a neutron. What element can it form as a byproduct along with Ba-143? What if the mass of the U-235 nucleus after absorbing a neutron splits into two identical fragments?
77. If U-238 splits into two even pieces, and each piece emits an alpha particle, what elements are produced?
78. If uranium fissioned into three nearly equal fragments, what elements might they be?
79. If uranium were to split into three segments of equal size instead of two, would more energy or less energy be released? Defend your answer in terms of Figure 34.16.
80. Would you choose fusion of two hydrogen nuclei or two iron nuclei to get energy?
81. A deuteron, which is a proton–neutron combination, can split into a separate proton and separate neutron. Does such a process yield energy or cost energy? Explain.
82. Assume the fusion process starts on Earth from the lightest element, H. At what element do you think the fusion process will stop?
83. Most nuclear reactors are submerged in water. Why is this so?
84. The "hydrogen magnets" in Figure 34.20 weigh more when apart than when combined. What would be the basic difference if the fictitious example consisted of "nuclear magnets" half as heavy as uranium?
85. Which is more powerful: an atomic bomb that uses radioactive elements and is based on fission, or the hydrogen bomb that employs the fusion of hydrogen?
86. Discuss, and make a comparison of, pollution by conventional fossil-fuel power plants and nuclear-fission power plants. Consider thermal pollution, chemical pollution, and radioactive pollution.
87. Ordinary hydrogen is sometimes called a perfect fuel, both due to its almost unlimited supply on Earth and that harmless water is the product of its combustion. So why don't we abandon fission and fusion, not to mention fossil fuels, and just use hydrogen?


The word *nuclear* is emotionally charged, due to the well-founded fear of nuclear weapons. But nuclear energy is different, much safer than fossil fuels that kill millions. Clear thinking, rather than emotional thinking, tells us that nuclear energy can join with solar and wind to provide clean power that doesn't affect the world's climate. Later we can hopefully replace fission with fusion—which powers the Sun and other stars. For now, let's replace "no nukes" with "know nukes."

CHAPTER THIRTY FOUR Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. Uranium-235, uranium-238, and uranium-239 are different
   (a) elements.
   (b) ions of the same element.
   (c) isotopes of the same element.
   (d) None of the above
2. In gaseous form at the same temperature, the average speed of U-238 compared with the speed of U-235 is
   (a) less.
   (b) more.
   (c) the same.
   (d) None of the above
3. In a uranium-fueled nuclear reactor it is important that the speed of neutrons be slowed in order to be most effective in causing the fission of U-235. A neutron will more likely be slowed if it bounces from a
   (a) heavy nucleus.
   (b) nucleus of moderate mass.
   (c) lightweight nucleus.
   (d) None of the above
4. When the neptunium nucleus emits a beta particle the result is
   (a) a different isotope of neptunium.
   (b) uranium.
   (c) plutonium.
   (d) lead.
5. What does a nuclear breeder reactor "breed?"
   (a) More energy output than energy input
   (b) Fissionable isotopes from non-fissionable isotopes
   (c) More mass than it begins with
   (d) All of the above
6. Plutonium is extremely rare in natural ore deposits because it
   (a) is artificially created.
   (b) is chemically inert.
   (c) is a gas at room temperature.
   (d) has a tiny half-life compared with the age of Earth.
7. A mass spectrometer separates ions principally by
   (a) a magnetic field.
   (b) an electric field.
   (c) electromagnetic means.
   (d) a combination of Faraday's and Maxwell's laws.
8. The energy released in both fission and fusion is mainly in the form of
   (a) kinetic energy of fragments.
   (b) alpha radiation.
   (c) beta radiation.
   (d) gamma radiation.
9. If oxygen were used as nuclear fuel, it would be best
   (a) fused.
   (b) fissioned.
   (c) fused and then fissioned.
   (d) fissioned and then fused.
10. Sustained energy output by fusion is a daily occurrence in
    (a) military installations.
    (b) breeder reactors.
    (c) the Sun.
    (d) Earth's interior.

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (c): All are uranium, with the same atomic number of 92. But they have different masses, which means they are different isotopes of uranium. They may or may not be ionized, which doesn't affect their nuclei. **2. (a):** Same temperature means the two isotopes have the same average kinetic energy. The less massive of the two, U-235, will therefore have the greater speed. (This difference in speed allows isotope separation.) **3. (c):** This is straight mechanics. If a golf ball hits a bowling ball it bounces with about the same speed. If the golf ball hits a tennis ball it gives speed to it and bounces with much less speed. Likewise for a neutron bouncing from a lightweight nucleus. **4. (c):** When any nucleus emits a beta particle, a neutron becomes a proton and the atomic number of the nucleus increases by 1. Upon beta emission, neptunium, atomic number 93, moves one step upward in the periodic table to plutonium, atomic number 94. **5. (b):** A breeder reactor "breeds" non-fissionable U-238 into fissionable Pu-239 without violating the conservation of energy or the conservation of mass. **6. (d):** Because of plutonium's short half-life of 24,000 years, all plutonium today has been bred from longer living uranium, half-life 4.5 billion years. Elements less massive than uranium having short half-lives are found in natural ores only because they are the daughter products of long-living uranium. Any plutonium existing in Earth's early history is no longer present—anywhere. **7. (a):** Straightforward magnetic force separates ions of different masses in a mass spectrometer. The other choices are not employed to sweep ions into curved paths according to mass. **8. (a):** Contrary to public thinking that the energy of fission and fusion is radiation of some kind, the vast amount of released energy is in the high-speed fragments of the reactions. **9. (a):** This question is best answered by the mass/nucleon vs atomic mass curve of Figure 34.16. Iron is at the bottom of the curve. If the products of a reaction move toward iron, then the masses of reaction parts decrease and energy is released. Oxygen is toward the fusion side of the curve, and a pair fused will be even lower on the curve and release energy. If an oxygen nucleus is fissioned, it would break into more massive parts, requiring energy input. **10. (c):** Sunshine is the product of the Sun we most enjoy. Thermonuclear fusion of hydrogen into helium is sustained, interestingly, because the fusion process is so slow. It has been doing this for the past 5 billion years and is expected to continue for another 5 billion years. Earth's interior is heated not by fusion, but by radioactive decay and some fission. Breeder reactors involve fission, not fusion. Any sustained energy output at military installations involve neither.

This page is intentionally left blank

PART EIGHT

Relativity

Before the advent of special relativity, the stars were thought to be beyond human reach. But distance is relative—it depends on motion. In a frame of reference moving almost as fast as light, distance contracts and time stretches enough to allow future space travelers access to the stars and beyond. Are we like Evan's chickie on opening page 1, on the verge of a whole new beginning? Newton's physics got us to the Moon and Mars; Einstein's physics points us to the stars. We live in an exciting time!

CHAPTER THIRTY FIVE

35 Special Theory of Relativity

35.1 **Motion Is Relative**
Michelson–Morley Experiment

35.2 **Postulates of the Special Theory of Relativity**

35.3 **Simultaneity**

35.4 **Spacetime and Time Dilation**
The Twin Trip

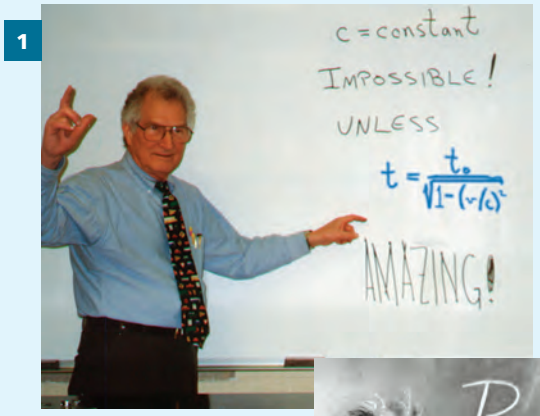
35.5 **Addition of Velocities**
Space Travel

35.6 **Length Contraction**

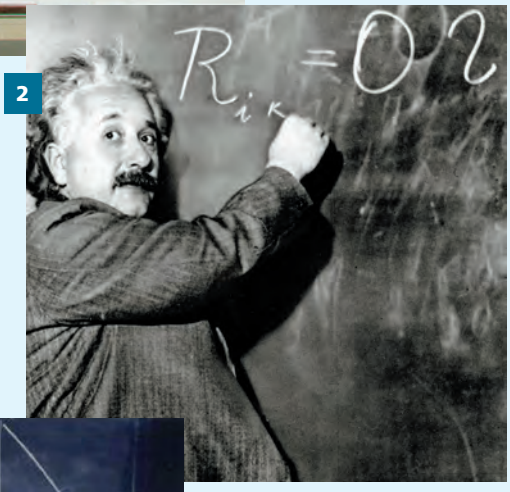
35.7 **Relativistic Momentum**

35.8 **Mass, Energy, and $E = mc^2$**

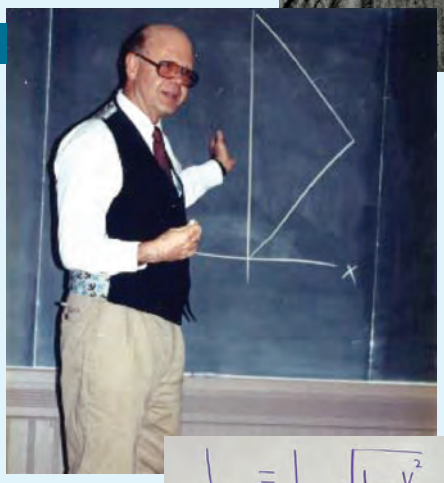
35.9 **The Correspondence Principle**



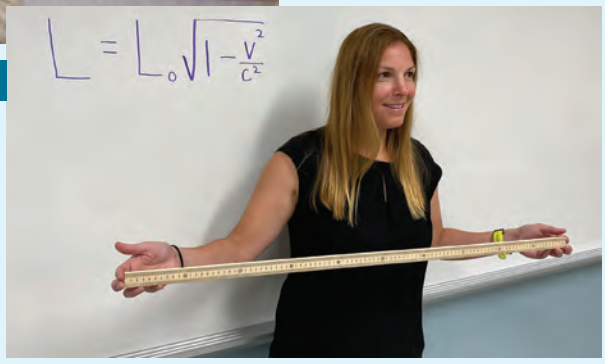
1



2



3



4

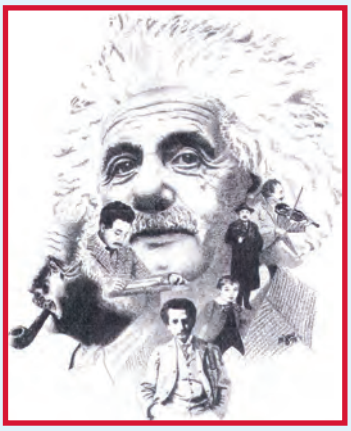
1 Eminent physicist Ken Ford in his retirement years tutors high-school students, always emphasizing and communicating the beauty he sees in physics. 2 One of the 20th-century's greatest scientists. 3 Edwin F. Taylor compares a straight-line path between and upper and lower points with a pair of diagonal paths between the same points to illustrate Einstein's key idea that time between two events depends on the path taken between them. 4 Brenda Skoczelas asks her class to predict the meterstick's length when it travels at particular relativistic speeds.

Albert Einstein was born in Ulm, Germany, on March 14, 1879. According to popular legend, he learned to speak much later than average. Yet his elementary school records show that he was remarkably gifted in mathematics, physics, and playing the violin. He rebelled, however, at the practice of education by regimentation and rote and was expelled just as he was preparing to drop out at the age of 15. Largely for business reasons, his family moved to Italy. Young Einstein renounced his German citizenship and went to live with family friends in Switzerland. There, two years younger than the usual age, he was allowed to take the entrance examination for the renowned Swiss Federal Institute of Technology in Zurich. But, because of difficulties with the French language, it took two tries, a year apart, to pass the examination.

As an eager young student of physics in the 1890s, Einstein was troubled by what he saw as a discrepancy between Newton's laws and Maxwell's treatment of electromagnetism. Someone at rest and someone in motion would be confronted with inconsistencies, which bothered Einstein.

This was resolved by a celebrated paper, "On the Electrodynamics of Moving Bodies," written by Einstein at age 26. He showed that Maxwell's laws can, after all, like Newton's laws, be interpreted as being independent of the state of motion of an observer. The momentous result of achieving this unified view of nature's laws was a total revolution in how we understand space and time. Einstein flouted common sense and stated that, in moving, we also change our rate of proceeding into the future—time itself is altered. Einstein went on to show that a consequence of the interrelationship between space and time is an interrelationship between mass and energy, given by the famous equation $E = mc^2$.

Then came ten years of intense work, leading in 1915 to the general theory of relativity in which Einstein presented a new theory of gravitation that included Newton's theory as a special case. We will treat his general theory of relativity in the next and concluding chapter of this textbook.



Einstein's concerns were not limited to physics. He lived in Berlin during World War I and denounced the German militarism of his time. He publicly expressed his deeply felt conviction that warfare should be abolished and an international organization founded to govern disputes between nations. In 1933, Hitler came to power. Einstein spoke out against Hitler's racial and political policies and resigned his position at the University of Berlin. No longer safe in Germany, Einstein emigrated to the United States and accepted a research position at the Institute for Advanced Study in Princeton, New Jersey.

In 1939, one year before Einstein became an American citizen, and after German scientists fissioned the uranium atom, he was urged by several prominent scientists to send the famous letter to President Roosevelt pointing out the scientific possibilities of a nuclear bomb. Einstein was a pacifist, but the thought of Hitler developing such a bomb prompted his action. The outcome was the development of the first nuclear bomb, which, ironically, was detonated on Japan after the fall of Germany.

Einstein believed that the universe is indifferent to the human condition and stated that if humanity were to continue, it must create a moral order. He intensely advocated for world peace through nuclear disarmament. Nuclear bombs, Einstein remarked, had changed everything but our way of thinking.

Einstein was more than a great scientist; he was a man of unpretentious disposition with a deep concern for the welfare of his fellow beings. The choice of Einstein as the person of the century by *Time* magazine at the end of the 1900s was most appropriate—and noncontroversial.

35.1 Motion Is Relative

Recall from Chapter 3 that whenever we talk about motion, we must always specify the vantage point from which motion is being observed and measured. For example, a person who walks along the aisle of a moving train may be walking at a speed of 1 kilometer per hour relative to his seat but at 60 kilometers per hour relative to the railroad station. We call the place from which motion is observed and measured a **frame of reference.** An object may have different velocities relative to different frames of reference.

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

To measure the speed of an object, we first choose a frame of reference and pretend that we are in that frame of reference standing still. Then we measure the speed with which the object moves relative to us—that is, relative to the frame of reference. In the foregoing example, if we measure from a position of rest inside the train, the speed of the walking person is 1 kilometer per hour. If we measure from a position of rest on the ground, the speed of the walking person is 60 kilometers per hour. But the ground is not really still because Earth spins like a top about its polar axis. Depending on how near the train is to the equator, the speed of the walking person may be as fast as 1600 kilometers per hour relative to a frame of reference at the center of Earth. And the center of Earth is moving relative to the Sun. If we place our frame of reference on the Sun, the speed of the person walking inside the train, which is on the orbiting Earth, is nearly 110,000 kilometers per hour. And the Sun is not at rest: It orbits the center of our galaxy, which moves with respect to other galaxies.

Michelson–Morley Experiment

Isn't there some reference frame that is still? Isn't space itself still, and can't measurements be made relative to still space? In 1887, the American physicists A. A. Michelson and E. W. Morley attempted to answer these questions by performing an experiment that was designed to measure the motion of Earth through space. Because light travels in waves, it was then assumed that something in space vibrates—a mysterious something called *ether*, thought to fill all space and to serve as a frame of reference attached to space itself. These physicists used a very sensitive apparatus called an *interferometer* to make their observations (Figure 35.1). In this instrument, a beam of light from a monochromatic source was separated into two beams with paths at right angles to each other; these beams were reflected and recombined to show whether there was any difference in the average speed over the two back-and-forth paths. The interferometer was set with one path parallel to the motion of Earth in its orbit. Then either Michelson or Morley carefully watched for any changes in average speed as the apparatus was rotated to put the other path parallel to the motion of Earth. The interferometer was sensitive enough to measure the difference in the round-trip times of light going with and against Earth's orbital velocity of 30 kilometers per second and going back and forth across Earth's path through space. But no changes were observed. None. Something was wrong with the sensible idea that the speed of light measured by a moving receiver should be its usual speed in a vacuum, c, plus or minus the contribution from the motion of the source or receiver. Many repetitions and variations of the Michelson–Morley experiment by many investigators showed the same null result. This was one of the puzzling facts of physics when the 20th century opened.

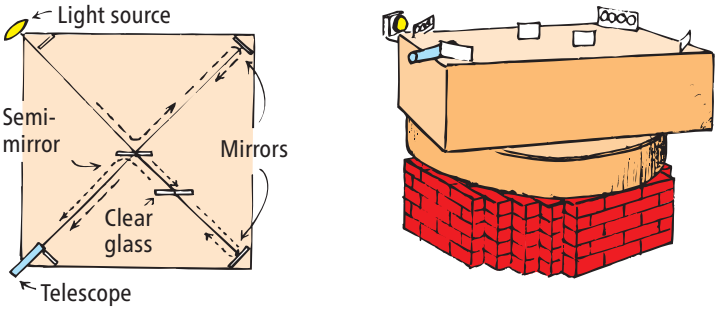


FIGURE 35.1
The Michelson–Morley interferometer, which splits a light beam into two parts and then recombines them to form an interference pattern after they have traveled along different paths. Rotation was accomplished in their experiment by floating a massive sandstone slab in mercury. This schematic diagram shows how the half-silvered mirror splits the beam into two rays. The clear glass assured that both rays traverse the same amount of glass. In the actual experiment, mirrors were placed at each corner to lengthen the paths.

One interpretation of the bewildering result was suggested by the Irish physicist G. F. FitzGerald, who proposed that the length of the experimental apparatus shrank in the direction in which it was moving by just the amount required

to counteract the presumed variation in the speed of light. The needed "shrinkage factor," $\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$, was formulated by the Dutch physicist Hendrik A. Lorentz. This arithmetic factor accounted for the discrepancy, but neither FitzGerald nor Lorentz had a suitable theory for why this was so. Interestingly, the same factor was derived by Einstein in his 1905 paper, where he showed it to be the shrinkage factor of space itself, not just of matter in space.

How much the Michelson–Morley experiment influenced Einstein, if at all, is unclear. In any event, Einstein advanced the idea that the speed of light in free space is the same in all reference frames, an idea that was contrary to the classical ideas of space and time. Speed is a ratio of distance through space to a corresponding interval of time. For the speed of light to be a constant, the classical idea that space and time are independent of each other had to be rejected. Einstein saw that space and time are linked, and, with simple postulates, he developed a profound relationship between the two.

CHECK POINT

1. **What was the most important finding of the Michelson–Morley experiment?**
2. **How did Einstein interpret the null result of the experiment?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The speed of light is independent of whatever path it takes.
2. The speed of light is a constant—everywhere.

35.2 Postulates of the Special Theory of Relativity

Einstein saw no need for the ether. Gone with the stationary ether was the notion of an absolute frame of reference. All motion is relative—not to any stationary hitching post in the universe, but to arbitrary frames of reference. A rocket ship cannot measure its speed with respect to empty space but only with respect to other objects. If, for example, rocket ship A drifts past rocket ship B in empty space, spaceman A and spacewoman B will each observe the relative motion, and, from this observation, each will be unable to determine who is moving and who is at rest, if either.

This is a familiar experience to a passenger on a train in a station who looks out his window and sees the train on the next track moving by his window. He is aware only of the relative motion between his train and the other train and cannot tell which train is moving. He may be at rest relative to the ground and the other train may be moving, or he may be moving relative to the ground and the other train may be at rest, or both trains may be moving relative to the ground. The important point here is that, if you were in a train with no windows, there would be no way to determine whether the train was moving with unchanging velocity or was at rest. This is the first of Einstein's **postulates of the special theory of relativity:**

> **All laws of nature are the same in all uniformly moving frames of reference.**

On a jet airplane going 700 kilometers per hour, for example, coffee pours as it does when the plane is at rest; if we swing a pendulum in the moving plane,

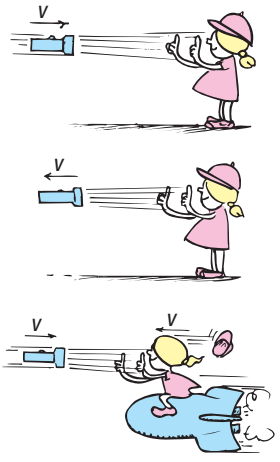


FIGURE 35.2
The speed of light is measured to be the same in all frames of reference.

it swings as it would if the plane were at rest on the runway. There is no physical experiment that we can perform, even with light, to determine our state of uniform motion. The laws of physics within the uniformly moving cabin are the same as those in a stationary laboratory.

Any number of experiments can be devised to detect accelerated motion, but none can be devised, according to Einstein, to detect a state of uniform motion. Therefore, absolute motion has no meaning. It would be very peculiar if the laws of mechanics varied for observers moving at different speeds. It would mean, for example, that a pool player on a smoothly moving ocean liner would have to adjust her style of play to the speed of the ship, or even to the season as Earth varies in its orbital speed about the Sun. It is our common experience that no such adjustment is necessary. And, according to Einstein, this same insensitivity to motion extends to electromagnetism. No experiment, mechanical or electrical or optical, has ever revealed absolute motion. That is what the first postulate of relativity means.

One of the questions that Einstein, as a youth, asked himself was: What would a light beam look like if you traveled along beside it? According to classical physics, the beam would be at rest to such an observer. The more Einstein thought about this, the more convinced he became that one could not move with a light beam. He finally came to the conclusion that, no matter how fast two observers might be moving relative to each other, each of them would measure the speed of a light beam passing them to be 300,000 kilometers per second. This was the second postulate in his special theory of relativity:

The speed of light in free space has the same measured value for all observers, regardless of the motion of the source or the motion of the observer; that is, the speed of light is a constant.

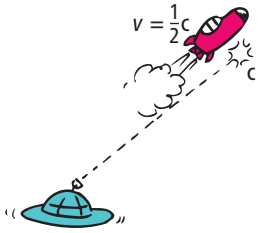


FIGURE 35.3
The speed of a light flash emitted by the space station is measured to be c by observers on both the space station and the rocket ship.

To illustrate this statement, consider a rocket ship departing from the space station shown in Figure 35.3. A flash of light traveling at 300,000 km/s, or c, is emitted from the station. Regardless of the velocity of the rocket, an observer in the rocket sees the flash of light pass her at the same speed, c. If a flash is sent to the station from the moving rocket, observers on the station will measure the speed of the flash to be c. The speed of light is measured to be the same regardless of the speed of the source or the receiver. *All* observers who measure the speed of light will find it has the same value, c. The more you think about this, the more you think it doesn't make sense. We will see that the explanation has to do with the relationship between space and time.

CHECK POINT

1. **What is meant by a "frame of reference?"**
2. **Can Einstein's two postulates be combined into one sentence?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. A frame of reference is any vantage point that relates to measurements of all kinds.
2. Yes. Light has one speed in all uniformly moving frames of reference.

35.3 Simultaneity

An interesting consequence of Einstein's second postulate occurs with the concept of **simultaneity.** We say that two events are simultaneous if they occur at the same time. Consider, for example, a light source in the exact center of the

compartment of a rocket ship (Figure 35.4). When the light source is switched on, light spreads out in all directions at speed c. Because the light source is equidistant from the front and back ends of the compartment, an observer inside the compartment finds that light reaches the front end at the same instant it reaches the back end. This occurs whether the ship is at rest or moving at constant velocity. The events of hitting the back end and hitting the front end occur *simultaneously* for this observer inside the rocket ship.

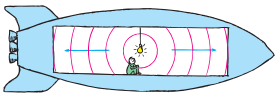


FIGURE 35.4
From the point of view of the observer who travels inside the compartment, light from the source travels equal distances to both ends of the compartment and therefore strikes both ends simultaneously.

But what about an outside observer who views the same two events in another frame of reference—say, from a planet that is not moving with the ship? For that observer, these same two events are *not* simultaneous. As light travels out from the source, this observer sees the ship move forward, so the back of the compartment moves toward the beam while the front moves away from it. The beam going to the back of the compartment, therefore, has a shorter distance to travel than the beam going forward (Figure 35.5). Since the speed of light is the same in both directions, this outside observer sees the event of light hitting the back end of the compartment *before* seeing the event of light hitting the front end of the compartment. (Of course, we are making the assumption that the observer can discern these slight differences.) A little thought will show that an observer in another rocket ship that passes in the opposite direction would report that the light reaches the front end of the compartment first.

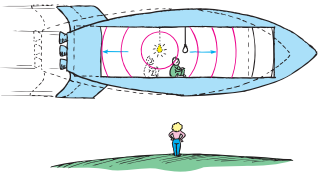


FIGURE 35.5
The events of light striking the front and back ends of the compartment are not simultaneous from the point of view of an observer in a different frame of reference. Because of the ship's motion, light that strikes the back end of the compartment doesn't have as far to go and strikes sooner than light that strikes the front end of the compartment.

Two events that are simultaneous in one frame of reference need not be simultaneous in a frame moving relative to the first frame.

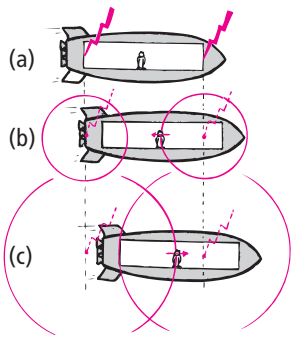
This nonsimultaneity of events in one frame that are simultaneous in another is a purely relativistic result—a consequence of light always having the same speed for all observers.

CHECK POINT

1. **How is the nonsimultaneity of hearing thunder *after* seeing lightning similar to relativistic nonsimultaneity?**
2. **Suppose that the observer standing on a planet in Figure 35.5 sees a pair of lightning bolts simultaneously strike the front and back ends of the compartment in the high-speed rocket ship. Will the lightning strikes be simultaneous to an observer in the middle of the compartment in the rocket ship? (We assume here that an observer can detect any slight differences in time for light to travel from the ends to the middle of the compartment.)**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. It isn't! The time interval between hearing thunder and seeing lightning has nothing to do with moving observers or relativity. In such a case, you simply make corrections for the time the signals (sound and light) take to reach you. The relativity of simultaneity is a genuine discrepancy between observations made by observers in relative motion, and not simply a disparity between different travel times for different signals.
2. No. An observer in the middle of the compartment will see the lightning that strikes the front end of the compartment before seeing the lightning that strikes the rear end. This is shown in positions (a), (b), and (c) in the figure. In (a), we see both lightning bolts striking the ends of the compartment simultaneously, according to the outside observer. In position (b), light from the front lightning bolt reaches the observer inside the rocket ship. Slightly later, in (c), light from the rear lightning bolt reaches this observer.



35.4 Spacetime and Time Dilation

When we look up at the stars, we realize that we are actually looking backward in time. The stars we see farthest away are the stars we are seeing longest ago. The more we think about this, the more apparent it becomes that space and time must be intimately tied together.

The space we live in is three-dimensional; that is, we can specify the position of any location in space with three dimensions. For example, these dimensions could be north–south, east–west, and up–down. If we are at the corner of a rectangular room and wish to specify the position of any point in the room, we can do this with three numbers. The first would be the number of meters the point is along a line joining the side wall and the floor (x-axis); the second would be the number of meters the point is along a line joining the adjacent back wall and the floor (z-axis); and the third would be the number of meters the point lies above the floor or along the vertical line joining the walls at the corner (y-axis). Physicists speak of these three lines as the *coordinate axes* of a reference frame (Figure 35.6). Three numbers—the distances along the x-axis, the z-axis, and the y-axis—specify the position of a point in space.

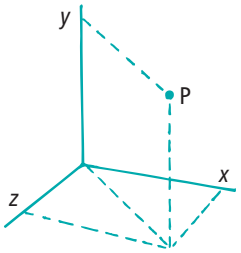


FIGURE 35.6
Point P can be specified with three numbers: the distances along the x-axis, the y-axis, and the z-axis.

We also use three dimensions to specify the size of objects. A box, for example, is described by its length, width, and height. But the three dimensions do not give a complete picture. There is a fourth dimension—time. The box was not always a box of given length, width, and height. It began as a box only at a certain point in time, on the day it was made. Nor will it always be a box. At any moment, it may be crushed, burned, or otherwise destroyed. So the three dimensions of space are a valid description of the box only during a certain specified period of time. We cannot speak meaningfully about space without implying time. Things exist in **spacetime.** Each object, each person, each planet, each star, each galaxy exists in what physicists call "the spacetime continuum."

FIGURE 35.7
All space and time measurements of light are unified by c.

Two side-by-side observers at rest relative to each other share the same reference frame. Both would agree on measurements of space and time intervals between given events, so we say they share the same realm of spacetime. If there is relative motion between them, however, the observers will not agree on these measurements of space and time. At ordinary speeds, differences in their measurements are imperceptible, but at speeds near the speed of light—so-called relativistic speeds—the differences are appreciable. Each observer is in a different realm of spacetime, and one observer's measurements of space and time differ from the measurements of another observer in some other realm of spacetime. The measurements differ not haphazardly but in such a way that each observer will always measure the same ratio of space and time for light: The greater the measured distance in space, the greater the measured interval of time. This constant ratio of space and time for light, c, is the unifying factor between different realms of spacetime and is the essence of Einstein's second postulate.

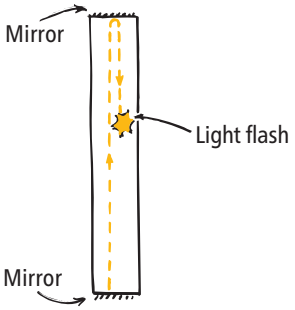


FIGURE 35.8
A light clock. A flash of light will bounce up and down between parallel mirrors and "tick off" equal intervals of time.

Let's examine the notion that time can be stretched. Imagine that we are somehow able to observe a flash of light bouncing to and fro between a pair of parallel mirrors, like a ball bouncing to and fro between a floor and ceiling. If the distance between the mirrors is fixed, then the arrangement constitutes a *light clock* because the back-and-forth trips of the flash take equal time intervals (Figure 35.8). Suppose this light clock is inside a transparent, high-speed spaceship. An observer who travels along with the ship and watches the light clock (Figure 35.9a) sees the flash reflecting straight up and down between the two mirrors, just as it would if the spaceship were at rest. This observer sees no unusual effects. Note that because the observer is inside the ship and moving along with it, there is no relative motion between the observer and the light clock; we say that the observer and the clock share the same reference frame in spacetime.

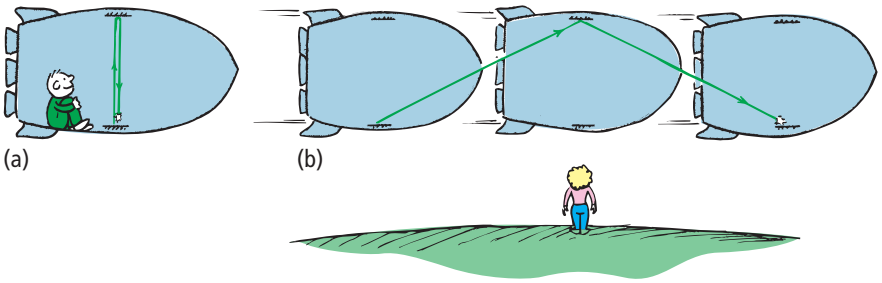


FIGURE 35.9
(a) An observer moving with the spaceship observes the light flash moving vertically between the mirrors of the light clock.
(b) An observer who sees the moving spaceship pass by observes the flash moving along a diagonal path.

Suppose now that we are standing on the ground as the spaceship whizzes by us at a high speed—say, half the speed of light. Things are quite different from our reference frame because we do not see the light path as being simple up-and-down motion. Because each flash moves horizontally while it moves vertically between the two mirrors, we see the flash follow a diagonal path. Notice in Figure 35.9b that from our earthbound frame of reference, the flash travels a *longer distance* as it makes one round-trip between the mirrors, considerably longer than the distance it travels in the reference frame of the observer riding along with the ship. Because the speed of light is the same in all reference frames (Einstein's second postulate), the flash must travel for a correspondingly longer time between the mirrors in our frame than in the reference frame of the onboard observer. This follows from the definition of speed—distance divided by time. *The longer diagonal distance must be divided by a correspondingly longer time interval to yield an unvarying value for the speed of light.* This stretching out of time is called **time dilation.**

We have considered a light clock in our example, but the same is true for any kind of clock. All clocks run more slowly when moving than when at rest. Time dilation has to do not with the mechanics of clocks, but with the nature of time itself.

The relationship of time dilation for different frames of reference in spacetime can be derived from Figure 35.10 with simple geometry and algebra.[1] The

[1]The light clock is shown in three successive positions in the figure below. The diagonal lines represent the path of the light flash as it starts from the lower mirror at position 1, moves to the upper mirror at position 2, and then travels back to the lower mirror at position 3. Distances on the diagram are labeled ct, vt, and ct_0, which follows from the fact that the distance traveled by a uniformly moving object is equal to its speed multiplied by the time.

The symbol t_0 represents the time it takes for the flash to move between the mirrors, as measured from a frame of reference fixed to the light clock. This is the time for straight up or down motion. The speed of light is c, and the path of light is seen to move a vertical distance ct_0. This distance between mirrors is at right angles to the motion of the light clock and is the same in both reference frames.

The symbol t represents the time it takes the flash to move from one mirror to the other, as measured from a frame of reference in which the light clock moves with speed v. Because the speed of the flash is c and the time it takes to go from position 1 to position 2 is t, the diagonal distance traveled is ct. During this time t, the clock (which travels horizontally at speed v) moves a horizontal distance vt from position 1 to position 2.

As the figure shows, these three distances make up a right triangle in which ct is the hypotenuse and ct_0 and vt are the legs. A well-known theorem of geometry, the Pythagorean theorem, states that the square of the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of the squares of the two legs. If we apply this formula to the figure, we obtain

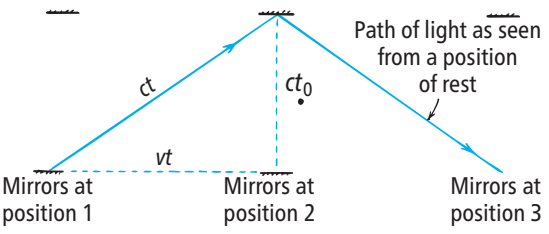
$$c^2t^2 = c^2t_0^2 + v^2t^2$$

$$c^2t^2 - v^2t^2 = c^2t_0^2$$

$$t^2\left[1 - \left(\frac{v^2}{c^2}\right)\right] = t_0^2$$

$$t^2 = \frac{t_0^2}{1 - \left(\frac{v^2}{c^2}\right)}$$

$$t = \frac{t_0}{\sqrt{1 - \left(\frac{v^2}{c^2}\right)}}$$



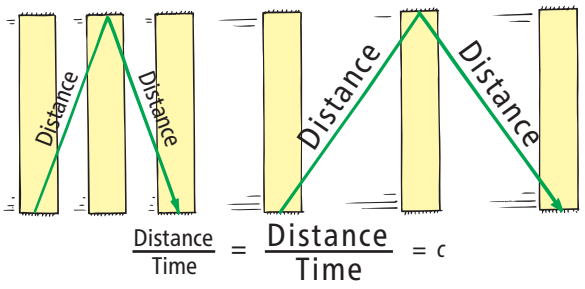


FIGURE 35.10
The longer distance covered by the light flash in following the longer diagonal path on the right must be divided by a correspondingly longer time interval to yield an unvarying value for the speed of light.

relationship between the time t_0 (call it the *proper time*) in the frame of reference moving with the clock and the time t measured by viewing the same clock in another frame of reference (call it the *relative time*) is

$$t = \frac{t_0}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$$

where v represents the speed of the clock relative to the outside observer (the same as the relative speed of the two observers) and c is the speed of light. The quantity

$$\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}$$

is the same factor used by Lorentz to explain length contraction. We call the inverse of this quantity the *Lorentz factor,* γ (Greek gamma); that is,

$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$$

Then we can express the time dilation equation more simply as

$$t = \gamma t_0$$

Let's look at the terms in γ. Some mental tinkering will show that γ is always greater than 1 for any speed v greater than 0. Note that, since speed v is always less than c, the ratio v/c is always less than 1; likewise for v^2/c^2. Can you see it follows that γ is greater than 1? Now consider the case where $v = 0$. This ratio v^2/c^2 is 0, and for everyday speeds, where v is negligibly small compared to c, it's practically 0. Then $1 - v^2/c^2$ has a value of 1, as has $\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$, which makes $\gamma = 1$. Then we find $t = t_0$—time intervals appear the same in both reference frames. For higher speeds, v/c is between 0 and 1, and $1 - v^2/c^2$ is less than 1; likewise for $\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$. This makes γ greater than 1, so t_0 multiplied by a factor greater than 1 produces a value greater than t_0—an elongation—a dilation of time.

To consider some numerical values, assume that v is 50% of the speed of light. Then we substitute $0.5c$ for v in the time-dilation equation and, after some arithmetic, find that $\gamma = 1.15$, so $t = 1.15t_0$. This means that if we examined a clock on a spaceship traveling at half the speed of light, we would see the second hand take 1.15 minutes to make a revolution, whereas an observer riding with the clock would find that it takes 1 minute. If the spaceship passes us at 87% of the speed of light, $\gamma = 2$ and $t = 2t_0$. We would measure time events on the spaceship taking twice the usual intervals because the hands of a clock on the ship would turn only half as fast as those on our own clock. Events on the ship would seem to take place in slow motion. At 99.5% of the speed of light, $\gamma = 10$ and

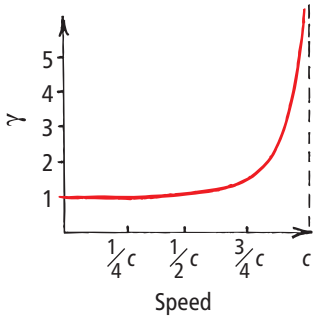


FIGURE 35.11
A plot of the Lorentz factor γ as a function of speed.

$t = 10t_0$; we would find that the second hand of the spaceship's clock had taken 10 minutes to sweep through a revolution requiring 1 minute on our clock.

Time dilation is *not* an illusion; it is real. To put these figures another way, at $0.995c$, the moving clock would appear to run at one-tenth of our rate; it would tick only 6 seconds while our clock ticks 60 seconds. At $0.87c$, the moving clock ticks at half the rate and shows 30 seconds to our 60 seconds; at $0.50c$, the moving clock ticks 1/1.15 as fast and ticks 52 seconds to our 60 seconds. Moving clocks run slow.

Nothing is unusual about a moving clock itself; it is simply ticking to the rhythm of a different time. The faster a clock moves, the slower it appears to run as viewed by an observer who is not moving with the clock. If it were possible to make a clock fly by us at the speed of light, the clock would not appear to be running at all. We would measure the interval between ticks to be infinite. The clock would be ageless! But one thing *does* move at the speed of light—light itself. So photons never age. There is no passage of time for a photon. Photons are truly ageless.

If a person whizzing past us were to check a clock in our reference frame, he would find our clock to be running as slowly as we would find his to be. Each would conclude that the other's clock runs slow. There is really no contradiction here because it is physically impossible for two observers in relative motion to refer to one and the same realm of spacetime. The measurements made in one realm of spacetime need not agree with the measurements made in another realm of spacetime. The measurement that all observers always agree on, however, is the speed of light.

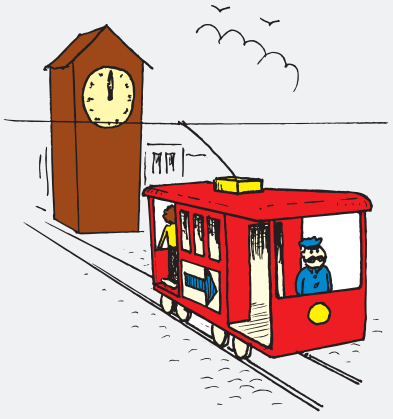
Time dilation has been confirmed in the laboratory innumerable times with particle accelerators. The lifetimes of fast-moving radioactive particles increase as the speed goes up, and the amount of increase is just what Einstein's equation

FIGURE 35.12
When we see the rocket at rest, we see it traveling at the maximum rate in time: 24 hours per day. When we see the rocket traveling at close to the maximum rate through space (the speed of light), we see its time practically standing still.

CLOCKWATCHING ON A TROLLEY CAR RIDE

Pretend you are Einstein at the turn of the 20th century, riding in a trolley car moving away from a huge clock in the village square. The clock reads 12 noon. To say it reads 12 noon is to say that light that carries the information "12 noon" is reflected by the clock and travels toward you along your line of sight. If you suddenly move your head to the side, the light carrying the information, instead of meeting your eye, continues past, presumably out into space. Out there, an observer who *later* receives the light says, "Oh, it's 12 noon on Earth now." But, from your point of view, it's now later than that. You and the distant observer see 12 noon at different times. You wonder more about this idea. If the trolley car traveled as fast as the light, then the trolley car would keep up with the light's information that says "12 noon." Traveling at the speed of light, then, tells you it's always 12 noon at the village square. In other words, time at the village square is frozen!

If the trolley car is not moving, you see the village square clock move into the future at the rate of 60 s/min; if you move at the speed of light, you see seconds on the clock taking infinite time. These are the two extremes. What's in between? How would the advance of the clock's hands be viewed as you move at speeds less than the speed of light?



A little thought will show that you will receive the message "1 o'clock" anywhere from 60 minutes to an infinity of time after you receive the message "12 noon," depending on what your speed is between the extremes of zero and the speed of light. From your high-speed (but less than c) frame of reference, you see all events taking place in the reference frame of the clock (which is Earth) as happening in slow motion. If you reverse direction and travel at high speed back toward the clock, you'll see all events taking place in the clock's reference frame as being speeded up. When you return and are once again sitting in the square, will the effects of going and coming compensate each other? Amazingly, no! Time will be stretched. The wristwatch you were wearing the whole time and the village clock will disagree. This is time dilation.

predicts. Time dilation has been confirmed also for not-so-fast motion. In 1971, to test Einstein's theory, four cesium-beam atomic clocks were twice flown on regularly scheduled commercial jet flights around the world, once eastward and once westward, to test relativity with macroscopic clocks. The clocks indicated different times after their round-trips. Relative to the atomic time scale of the U.S. Naval Observatory, the observed time differences, in billionths of a second, were in accord with Einstein's prediction. Now, with atomic clocks orbiting Earth as part of the Global Positioning System, adjustments for the effects of time dilation are essential in order to use signals from the clocks to pinpoint locations on Earth.

This all seems very strange to us only because it is not our common experience to deal with measurements made at relativistic speeds or atomic-clock–type measurements at ordinary speeds. The theory of relativity does not make common sense. But common sense, according to Einstein, is that layer of prejudices laid down in the mind prior to the age of 18. If we had spent our youth zapping through the universe in high-speed spaceships, we would probably be quite comfortable with the results of relativity.

fyi

- The Global Positioning System (GPS) takes account of the time dilation of orbiting atomic clocks. Otherwise, your GPS receiver would badly miss your location.

CHECK POINT

1. **If you were moving in a spaceship at a high speed relative to Earth, would you notice a difference in your pulse rate? In the pulse rate of the people back on Earth?**
2. **Will observers A and B agree on measurements of time if A moves at half the speed of light relative to B? If both A and B move together at half the speed of light relative to Earth?**
3. **Does time dilation mean that time really passes more slowly in moving systems or only that it seems to pass more slowly?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. There would be no relative speed between you and your pulse because the two share the same frame of reference. Therefore, you would notice no relativistic effects in your pulse. There would be, however, a relativistic effect between you and people back on Earth. You would find their pulse rate to be slower than normal (and they would find your pulse rate to be slower than normal). Relativity effects are always attributed to the other guy.
2. When A and B move relative to each other, each observes a slowing of time in the other's frame of reference. So they do not agree on measurements of time. When they are moving in unison, they share the same frame of reference and agree on measurements of time. They see each other's time as passing normally, and they each see events on Earth in the same slow motion.
3. The slowing of time in moving systems is not merely an illusion resulting from motion. Time really does pass more slowly in a moving system relative to one at relative rest, as we shall see in the next section. Read on!

The Twin Trip

A dramatic illustration of time dilation is provided by identical twins, one an astronaut who takes a high-speed round-trip journey in the galaxy while the other stays home on Earth. When the traveling twin returns, she is younger

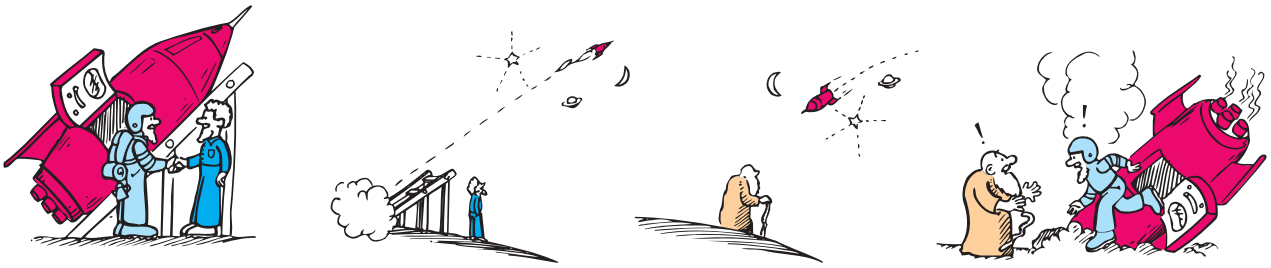


FIGURE 35.13
The traveling twin does not age as fast as the stay-at-home twin.

than the stay-at-home twin. How much younger depends on the relative speeds involved. If the traveling twin maintains a speed of 50% of the speed of light for 1 year (according to clocks aboard the spaceship), 1.15 years will have elapsed on Earth. If the traveling twin maintains a speed of 87% of the speed of light for a year, then 2 years will have elapsed on Earth. At 99.5% of the speed of light, 10 Earth years would pass in one spaceship year. At this speed, the traveling twin would age a single year while the stay-at-home twin would age 10 years.

One question often arises: Because motion is relative, why doesn't the effect work equally well the other way around? Why wouldn't the traveling twin return to find her stay-at-home twin younger than herself? We will show that, from the frames of reference of both the earthbound twin and the traveling twin, it is the earthbound twin who ages more. First, consider a spaceship hovering at rest relative to Earth. Suppose the spaceship sends brief, regularly spaced flashes of light to the planet (Figure 35.14). Some time will elapse before the flashes get to the planet, just as 8 minutes elapse before sunlight gets to Earth. The light flashes will encounter the receiver on the planet at speed c. Since there is no relative motion between the sender and receiver, successive flashes will be received as frequently as they are sent. For example, if a flash is sent from the ship every 6 minutes, then, after some initial delay, the receiver will receive a flash every 6 minutes. With no motion involved, there is nothing unusual about this.

fyi

- Astronaut Scott Kelly spent eleven months (March 27, 2015– March 2, 2016), aboard the ISS to test the impact of space travel on the human body. His fellow astronaut twin brother Mark stayed at home as a control for the study. During Scott's eleven months in orbit he shaved off 13 milliseconds of his Earth age, now being younger than Mark!

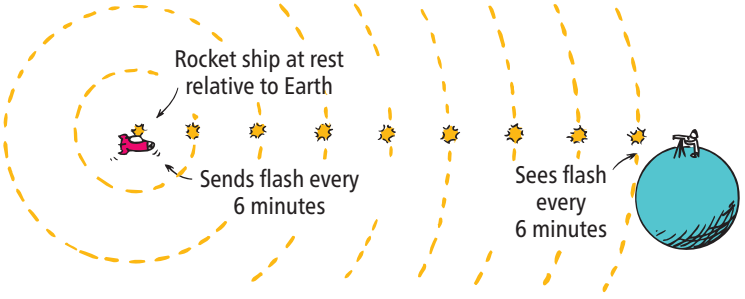
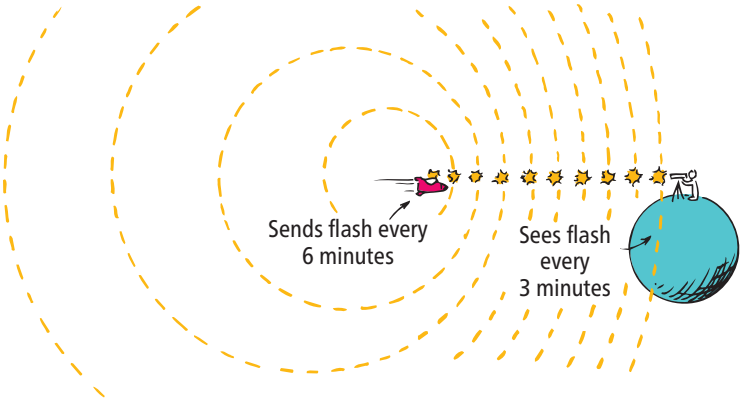


FIGURE 35.14
When no motion is involved, the light flashes are received as frequently as the spaceship sends them.

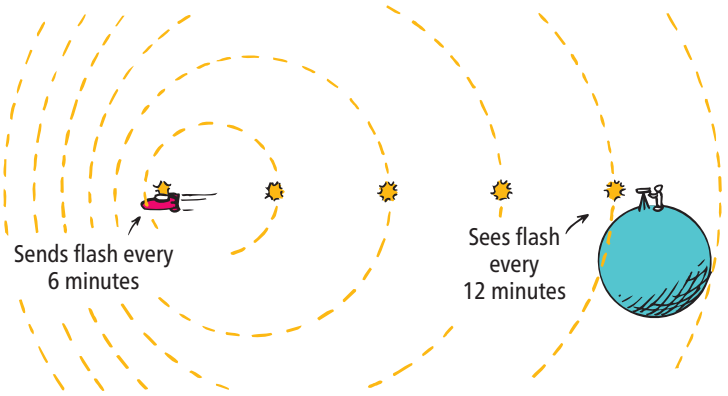
When motion is involved, the situation is quite different. It is important to note that the speed of the flashes will still be c, no matter how the spaceship or receiver may move. How frequently the flashes are seen, however, very much depends on the relative motion involved. When the ship travels toward the receiver, the receiver sees the flashes more frequently. This happens not only because time is altered due to motion but mainly because each succeeding flash has less distance to travel as the ship gets closer to the receiver. If the spaceship emits a flash every 6 minutes, the flashes will be seen at intervals of less than 6 minutes. Suppose the ship is traveling fast enough for the flashes to be seen twice as frequently. Then they are seen at intervals of 3 minutes (Figure 35.15).

FIGURE 35.15
When the sender moves toward the receiver, the flashes are seen more frequently.



If the ship recedes from the receiver at the same speed and still emits flashes at 6-minute intervals, these flashes will be seen half as frequently by the receiver—that is, at 12-minute intervals (Figure 35.16). This is mainly because each succeeding flash has a longer distance to travel as the ship gets farther away from the receiver.

FIGURE 35.16
When the sender moves away from the receiver, the flashes are spaced farther apart and are seen less frequently.



The effect of moving away is just the opposite of moving closer to the receiver. So if the flashes are received twice as frequently when the spaceship is approaching (6-minute flash intervals are seen every 3 minutes), they are received half as frequently when it is receding (6-minute flash intervals are seen every 12 minutes).[2]

This means that, if two events are separated by 6 minutes according to the spaceship clock, flashes will be seen to be separated by 12 minutes when the spaceship recedes and by only 3 minutes when the ship is approaching.

[2] This reciprocal relationship (halving and doubling of frequencies) is a consequence of the constancy of the speed of light and can be illustrated with an example: Suppose that a sender on Earth emits flashes 3 min apart to a distant observer on a planet that is at rest relative to Earth. The observer then sees a flash every 3 min. Now suppose a second observer travels in a spaceship between Earth and the planet at a speed great enough to allow him to see the flashes half as frequently—6 min apart. This halving of frequency occurs for a speed of recession of $0.6c$. We can see that the frequency will double for a speed of approach of $0.6c$ by supposing that the spaceship emits its own flash every time it sees an Earth flash—that is, every 6 min. How does the observer on the distant planet see these flashes? Since Earth flashes and the spaceship flashes travel together at the same speed, c, the observer will see not only Earth flashes every 3 min but the spaceship flashes every 3 min as well. So, although a person on the spaceship emits flashes every 6 min, the observer sees them every 3 min at twice the emitting frequency. For a speed of recession where the frequency appears halved, the frequency appears doubled for the same speed of approach. If the ship were traveling faster so that the frequency of recession were 1/3 or 1/4 as much, then the frequency of approach would be threefold or fourfold, respectively. This reciprocal relationship does not hold for waves that require a medium. In the case of sound waves, for example, a speed that results in a doubling of the emitting frequency for approach produces 2/3 (not 1/2) the emitting frequency for recession. So the relativistic Doppler effect differs from the one we experience with sound.

CHECK POINT

1. **If the spaceship emits an initial "starting gun" signal followed by a flash every 6 min for an hour, how many flashes will be emitted?**
2. **The ship sends equally spaced flashes every 6 min while approaching the receiver at constant speed. Will these flashes be equally spaced when they encounter the receiver?**
3. **If the receiver sees these flashes at 3-min intervals, how much time will elapse between the initial signal and the last flash (in the frame of reference of the receiver)?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. The spaceship will emit a total of 10 flashes in 1 h because $(60 \text{ min})/(6 \text{ min}) = 10$ (11 if the initial signal is counted).
2. Yes. As long as the ship moves at constant speed, the equally spaced flashes will be seen equally spaced but more frequently. (If the ship accelerated while sending flashes, then the flashes would not be seen at equally spaced intervals.)
3. Thirty minutes because the 10 flashes are coming every 3 min.

Let's apply this doubling and halving of flash intervals to the twins. Suppose the traveling twin recedes from the earthbound twin at the same high speed for 1 hour and then quickly turns around and returns in 1 hour. Follow this line of reasoning with the help of Figure 35.17. The traveling twin takes a round trip of

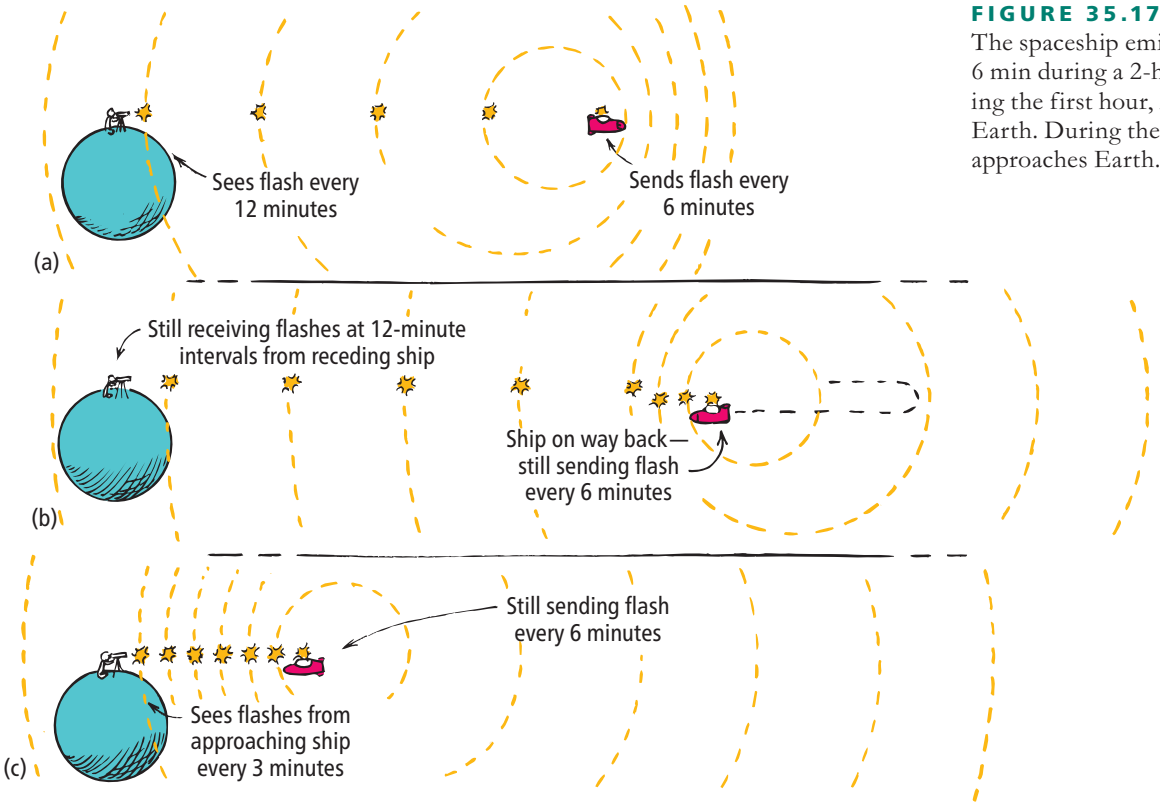


FIGURE 35.17
The spaceship emits flashes every 6 min during a 2-h trip. During the first hour, it recedes from Earth. During the second hour, it approaches Earth.

2 hours, according to all clocks aboard the spaceship. This trip will not be seen to take 2 hours from the Earth frame of reference, however. We can see this with the help of the flashes from the ship's light clock.

As the ship recedes from Earth, it emits a flash of light every 6 minutes. These flashes are received on Earth every 12 minutes. During the hour of going away from Earth, a total of 10 flashes are emitted (after the "starting gun" signal). If the ship departs from Earth at noon, clocks aboard the ship read 1:00 PM when the tenth flash is emitted. What time will it be on Earth when this tenth flash reaches Earth? The answer is 2:00 PM. Why? Because the time it takes Earth to receive 10 flashes at 12-minute intervals is $10 \times (12 \text{ min})$, or $120 \text{ min} (= 2 \text{ h})$.

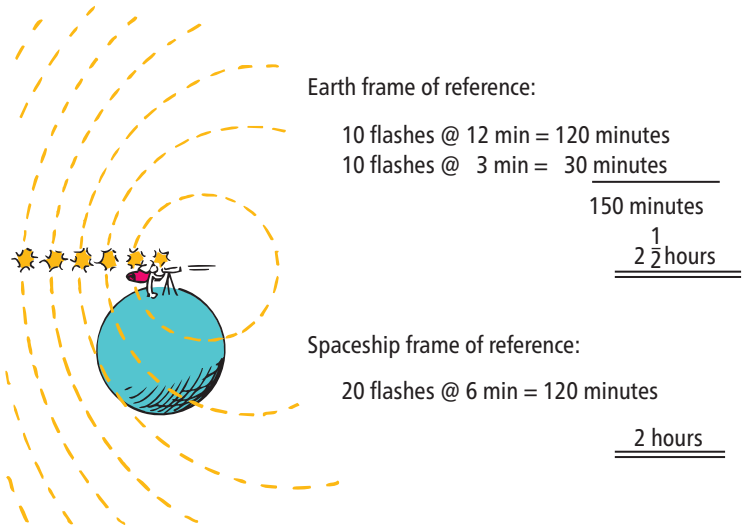

Earth frame of reference:
10 flashes @ 12 min = 120 minutes
10 flashes @ 3 min = 30 minutes
150 minutes
2 1/2 hours
Spaceship frame of reference:
20 flashes @ 6 min = 120 minutes
2 hours

FIGURE 35.18
The trip that takes 2 h in the frame of reference of the spaceship takes $2\frac{1}{2}$ h in Earth's frame of reference.

Suppose the spaceship is somehow able to turn around "on a dime" (in a negligibly short time) and return at the same high speed. During the hour of return, it emits 10 more flashes at 6-min intervals. These flashes are received every 3 minutes on Earth, so all 10 flashes come in 30 minutes. A clock on Earth will read 2:30 PM when the spaceship completes its 2-hour trip. We see that the earthbound twin has aged half an hour more than the twin aboard the spaceship!

The result is the same from either frame of reference. Consider the same trip again, only this time with flashes emitted from Earth at regularly spaced 6-minute intervals in Earth time. From the frame of reference of the receding spaceship, these flashes are received at 12-minute intervals (Figure 35.19a). This means that 5 flashes are seen by the spaceship during the hour of receding from Earth. During the spaceship's hour of approaching, the light flashes are seen at 3-minute intervals (Figure 35.19b), so 20 flashes will be seen.

So we see that the spaceship receives a total of 25 flashes during its 2-hour trip. According to clocks on Earth, however, the time it took to emit the 25 flashes at 6-minute intervals was $25 \times (6 \text{ min})$, or $150 \text{ min} (= 2\frac{1}{2} \text{ h})$. This is shown in Figure 35.20.

So both twins agree on the same results, with no dispute as to who ages more. While the stay-at-home twin remains in a single reference frame, the traveling twin has experienced two different frames of reference, separated by the acceleration of the spaceship in turning around. The spaceship has in effect experienced two different realms of time, while Earth has experienced a still different but single realm of time. The twins can meet again at the same place in space only at the expense of time.

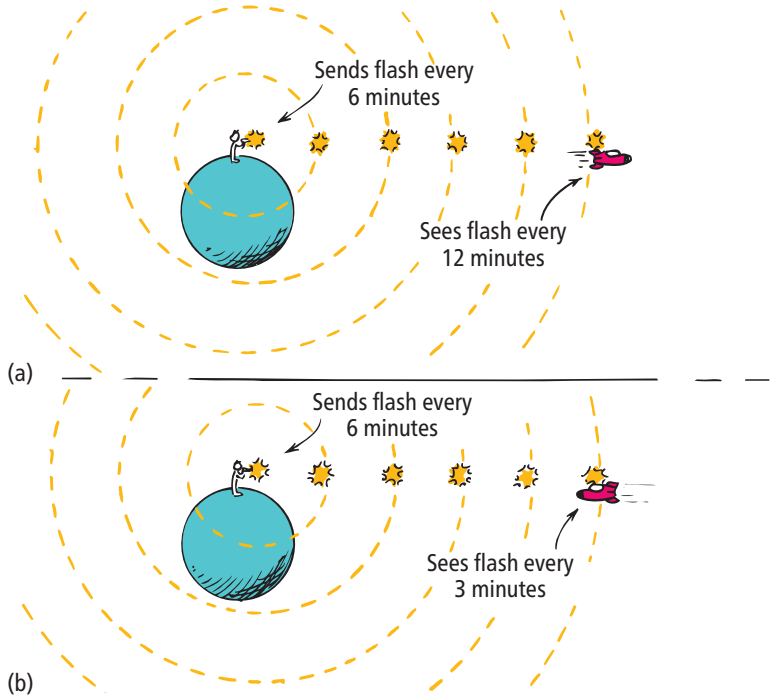


FIGURE 35.19
Flashes sent from Earth at 6-min intervals are seen at 12-min intervals by the ship when it recedes and at 3-min intervals when it approaches.

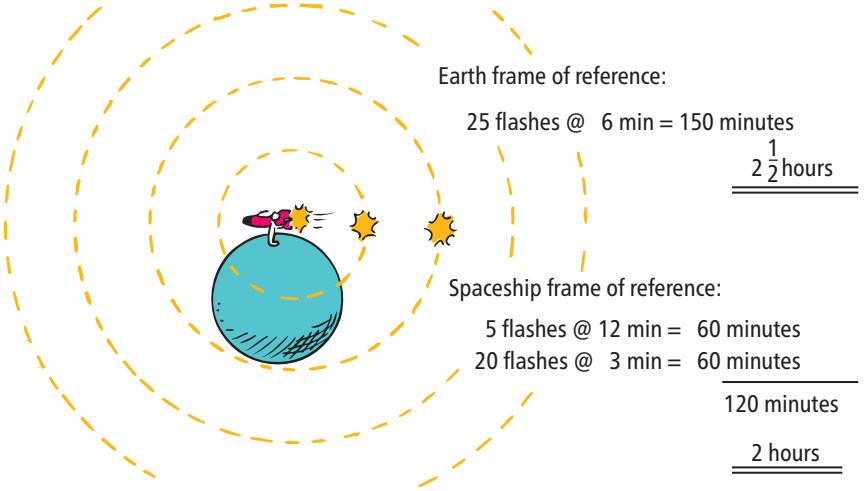

Earth frame of reference:
25 flashes @ 6 min = 150 minutes
2 1/2 hours
Spaceship frame of reference:
5 flashes @ 12 min = 60 minutes
20 flashes @ 3 min = 60 minutes
120 minutes
2 hours

FIGURE 35.20
A time interval of $2\frac{1}{2}$ h on Earth is seen to take 2 h in the spaceship's frame of reference.

CHECK POINT

Since motion is relative, can't we say as well that the spaceship is at rest and the Earth moves, in which case the twin on the spaceship ages more?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

No, not unless Earth then undergoes the turnaround and returns, as our spaceship did in the twin-trip example. The situation is not symmetrical because one twin remains in a single reference frame in spacetime during the trip while the other makes a distinct change of reference frame, as evidenced by the acceleration in turning around.

35.5 Addition of Velocities

Most people know that if you walk at 1 km/h along the aisle of a train that moves at 60 km/h, your speed relative to the ground is 61 km/h if you walk in the same direction as the moving train and 59 km/h if you walk in the opposite direction. What most people know is *almost* correct. Taking special relativity into account, one's speeds are *very nearly* 61 km/h and 59 km/h, respectively.

For everyday objects in uniform (nonaccelerating) motion, we ordinarily combine velocities by the simple rule

$$V = v_1 + v_2$$

But this rule does not apply to light, which always has the same velocity, c. Strictly speaking, the above rule is an approximation of the relativistic rule for adding velocities. We'll not treat the long derivation but simply state the rule:

$$V = \frac{v_1 + v_2}{1 + \dfrac{v_1 v_2}{c^2}}$$

The numerator of this formula makes common sense. But this simple sum of two velocities is altered by the second term in the denominator, which is significant only when both v_1 and v_2 are nearly c.

As an example, consider a spaceship moving away from you at a velocity of $0.5c$. It fires a rocket that thrusts in the same direction, also away from you, at a speed of $0.5c$ relative to itself. How fast does the rocket move relative to you? The nonrelativistic rule would say that the rocket moves at the speed of light in your reference frame. But, in fact,

$$V = \frac{0.5c + 0.5c}{1 + \dfrac{0.25c^2}{c^2}} = \frac{c}{1.25} = 0.8c$$

which illustrates another consequence of relativity: No material object can travel as fast as, or faster than, light.

Suppose that the spaceship instead fires a pulse of laser light in its direction of travel. How fast does the pulse move in your frame of reference?

$$V = \frac{0.5c + c}{1 + \dfrac{0.5c^2}{c^2}} = \frac{1.5c}{1.5} = c$$

No matter what the relative velocities between two frames, light moving at c in one frame will be seen to be moving at c in any other frame. If you try chasing light, you can never catch it.

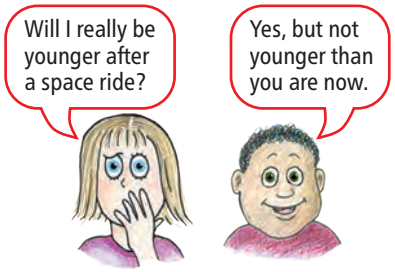
FIGURE 35.21
From the Earth frame of reference, light takes 25,000 years to travel from the center of our Milky Way galaxy to our solar system. From the frame of reference of a high-speed spaceship flying outward from the galactic center toward Earth, the trip takes less time. If a frame of reference could be attached to the light itself, the travel time could be reduced to zero.

Space Travel

One of the old arguments against the possibility of human interstellar travel was that our life span is too short. It was argued, for example, that the star nearest Earth (after the Sun), Alpha Centauri, is 4 light-years away, and a round-trip even at the speed of light would require 8 years.[3] And even a speed-of-light voyage to the center of our galaxy, 25,000 light-years distant, would require 25,000 years. But these arguments fail to take into account time dilation. Time for a person on Earth and time for a person in a high-speed spaceship are not the same.

A person's heart beats to the rhythm of the realm of spacetime in which it finds itself. And one realm of spacetime seems the same as any other to the

[3] A light-year is the distance light travels in 1 year, 9.46×10^{12} km.



heart, but not to an observer who stands outside the heart's frame of reference. For example, astronauts traveling at 99% of c could go to the star Procyon (10.4 light-years distant) and back in 21 Earth years. Because of time dilation, however, only 3 years would pass for the astronauts. This is what all their clocks would tell them—and, biologically, they would be only 3 years older. It would be the space officials greeting them on their return who would be 21 years older!

At higher speeds, the results are even more impressive. At a speed of 99.99% of c, travelers could travel a distance of slightly more than 70 light-years in a single year of their own time; at 99.999% of c, this distance would be pushed appreciably farther than 200 light-years. A 5-year trip for them would take them farther than light travels in 1000 Earth-time years!

Present technology does not permit such journeys. Getting enough propulsive energy and shielding against radiation are both prohibitive problems. Spaceships traveling at relativistic speeds would require billions of times the energy used to put a space shuttle into orbit. Even some kind of interstellar ramjet that scooped up interstellar hydrogen gas for burning in a fusion reactor would have to overcome the enormous retarding effect of scooping up the hydrogen at high speeds. And the space travelers would encounter interstellar particles just as if they had a large particle accelerator pointed at them. No way of shielding such intense particle bombardment for prolonged periods of time is presently known. For the present, interstellar space travel must be relegated to science fiction, not because any scientific theory prohibits it, but simply because of the impracticality of space travel. Traveling close to the speed of light in order to take advantage of time dilation is completely consistent with the laws of physics.

We can see into the past, but we cannot go into the past. For example, we experience the past when we look at the night skies. The starlight impinging on our eyes left those stars dozens, hundreds, even millions of years ago. What we see is the stars as they were long ago. We are thus eyewitnesses to ancient history—and can only speculate about what may have happened to the stars in the interim.

If we are looking at light that left a star, say, 100 years ago, then it follows that any sighted beings in that solar system are seeing us by light that left *here* 100 years ago and that, further, if they possessed super telescopes, they might very well be able to eyewitness earthly events of a century ago—the aftermath of the American Civil War, for instance. They would see our past, but they would still see events in a forward direction; they would see our clocks running clockwise.

We can speculate about the possibility that time might just as well move counterclockwise into the past as clockwise into the future. Why is it, we might ask, that in space we can move forward or back, left or right, up or down, but we can move in only one direction through time? Quite interestingly, the mathematics of elementary-particle interactions permits "time reversal," although there are some particle interactions that slightly favor one direction in time. Hypothetical particles that could move both faster than light and backward in time are called *tachyons*. In any case, for the complex organism called a human being, time has only one direction.[4]

This conclusion is blithely ignored in a limerick that is a favorite with scientists:

> There was a young lady named Bright
> Who traveled much faster than light.
> She departed one day
> In a relative way
> And returned on the previous night.

[4]It has been speculated that if we moved backward through time, we wouldn't know it because then we would remember our future and would think it was our past!

CENTURY HOPPING

Let's push our science fiction to a possible time in the future when the problems of energy supplies and radiation have been overcome and space travel is routine. People will have the option of taking a trip and returning to any future century of their choosing. For example, one might depart from Earth in a high-speed spaceship in the year 2100, travel for 5 years or so, and return in the year 2500. One could live among the earthlings of that period for a while and depart again to try out the year 3000.

People could keep jumping into the future with some expense of their own time—but they could not trip into the past. They could never return to the same era on Earth to which they had bade farewell. Time, as we know it, travels one way—forward. Here on Earth, we move constantly into the future at the steady rate of 24 hours per day. An astronaut leaving on a deep-space voyage must live with the fact that, upon return, much more time will have elapsed on Earth than the astronaut has subjectively and physically experienced during the voyage. The credo of all star travelers, whatever their physiological condition, will be permanent farewell.

Even with our heads fairly well into relativity, we may still unconsciously cling to the idea that there is an absolute time and compare all these relativistic effects to it—recognizing that time changes this way and that way for this speed and that speed, yet feeling that there still is some basic or absolute time. We may tend to think that the time we experience on Earth is fundamental and that other times are not. This is understandable: We're earthlings. But the idea is confining. From the point of view of observers elsewhere in the universe, we may be moving at relativistic speeds; they see us living in slow motion. They may see us living lifetimes a hundred times as long as theirs, just as with super telescopes we would see them living lifetimes a hundredfold longer than ours. There is no universally standard time—none.

We think of time and then we think of the universe. We think of the universe and we wonder about what went on before the universe began. We wonder about what will happen if the universe ceases to exist in time. But the concept of time applies to events and entities within the universe, not to the universe as a whole. Time is "in" the universe; the universe is not "in" time. Without the universe, there is no time—no before, no after. Likewise, space is "in" the universe; the universe is not "in" a region of space. There is no space "outside" the universe. Spacetime exists within the universe. Think about that![5]

35.6 Length Contraction

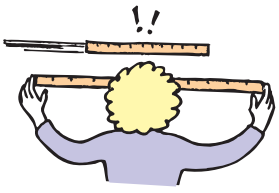


FIGURE 35.22
The Lorentz contraction. The meterstick is measured to be half as long when traveling at 87% of the speed of light relative to the observer.

As objects move through spacetime, space as well as time changes. In a nutshell, space is contracted, making the objects look shorter when they move by us at relativistic speeds. This **length contraction** was first proposed by the physicist George F. FitzGerald and mathematically expressed by another physicist, Hendrik A. Lorentz (mentioned earlier). Whereas these physicists hypothesized that matter contracts, Einstein saw that what contracts is space itself. Nevertheless, because Einstein's formula is the same as Lorentz's, we call the effect the *Lorentz contraction*:

$$L = L_0\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}$$

[5]Some physicists hypothesize that our universe is just one of many coexisting universes, together called "the multiverse" (or "the megaverse"). As yet, however, there is no evidence of the existence of such "parallel universes."

where v is the relative velocity between the observed object and the observer, c is the speed of light, L is the measured length of the moving object, and L_0 is the measured length of the object at rest.[6]

Suppose that an object is at rest so that $v = 0$. When we substitute $v = 0$ in the Lorentz equation, we find $L = L_0$, as we would expect. When we substitute various large values of v in the Lorentz equation, we begin to see the calculated L get smaller and smaller. At 87% of c, an object would be contracted to half its original length. At 99.5% of c, it would contract to one-tenth its original length. If the object were somehow able to move at c, its length would be zero. This is one of the reasons we say that the speed of light is the upper limit for the speed of any moving object. Another limerick popular with the science heads is this one:

Time dilation: Moving clocks run slower. Length contraction: Moving objects are shorter (in the direction of motion).

There was a young fencer named Fisk,
Whose thrust was exceedingly brisk.
So fast was his action
The Lorentz contraction
Reduced his rapier to a disk.

As Figure 35.23 indicates, contraction takes place only in the direction of motion. If an object is moving horizontally, no contraction takes place vertically.

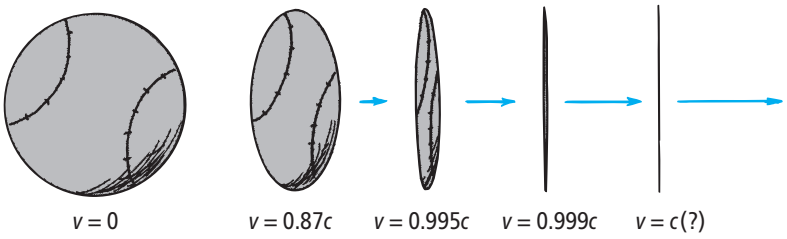


FIGURE 35.23
As speed increases, length in the direction of motion decreases. Lengths in the perpendicular direction do not change.

Length contraction should be of considerable interest to space voyagers. The center of our Milky Way galaxy is 25,000 light-years away. Does this mean that if we traveled in that direction at the speed of light, it would take 25,000 years to get there? From an Earth frame of reference, yes; but to the space voyagers, decidedly not! At the speed of light, the 25,000 light-year distance would be contracted to no distance at all. The imagined space voyagers would arrive there instantly!

For hypothetical travel near the speed of light, length contraction and time dilation are just two faces of the same phenomenon. If astronauts go so fast that they find the distance to the nearest star to be just 1 light-year instead of the 4 light-years measured from Earth, they make the trip in a little more than 1 year. But observers back on Earth say that the clocks aboard the spaceship have slowed so much that they tick off only 1 year in 4 years of Earth time. Both agree on what happens: The astronauts are only a little more than a year older when they reach the star. One set of observers say it's because of length contraction; the other set say it's because of time dilation. Both are right.

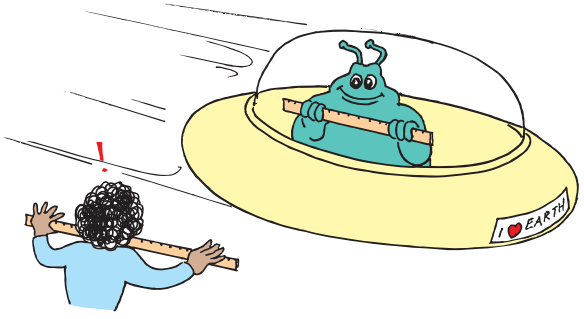


FIGURE 35.24
In the frame of reference of our meterstick, its length is 1 m. Observers in a moving frame see *our* metersticks contracted, while we see *their* metersticks contracted. The effects of relativity "are always attributed to the other guy."

[6]We can express this as $L = \frac{1}{\gamma} L_0$, where $\frac{1}{\gamma}$ is always 1 or less (because γ is always 1 or greater). Note that we do not explain how the length-contraction equation or other equations come about. We simply state equations as "guides to thinking" about the ideas of special relativity.

FIGURE 35.25
SpaceX engineer Mike Lucas contemplates a contraction of space between Earth and Saturn, as this whimsical view suggests.

If space voyagers are ever able to boost themselves to relativistic speeds, they will find distant parts of the universe drawn closer by space contraction, while observers back on Earth will see the astronauts covering a greater distance because they age more slowly.

CHECK POINT

A rectangular billboard in space has the dimensions 10 m × 20 m. How fast, and in what direction with respect to the billboard, would a space traveler have to pass for the billboard to appear square?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The space traveler would have to travel at 0.87*c* in a direction parallel to the longer side of the board.

35.7 Relativistic Momentum

Recall our study of momentum in Chapter 6. We learned that the change of momentum mv of an object is equal to the impulse Ft applied to it: $Ft = \Delta mv$, or $Ft = \Delta p$, where $p = mv$. If you apply more impulse to an object that is free to move, the object acquires more momentum. Double the impulse, and the momentum doubles. Apply 10 times the impulse, and the object gains 10 times as much momentum. Does this mean that momentum can increase without any limit? The answer is *yes*. Does this mean that speed can also increase without any limit? The answer is *no*! Nature's speed limit for material objects is c.

To Newton, infinite momentum would mean infinite mass or infinite speed. But not so in relativity. Einstein showed that a new definition of momentum is required. It is

$$p = \gamma mv$$

where γ is the Lorentz factor (recall that γ is always 1 or greater). This generalized definition of momentum is valid in all uniformly moving reference frames. *Relativistic momentum* is greater than mv by a factor of γ. For everyday speeds much lower than c, γ is nearly equal to 1, so p is nearly equal to mv. Newton's definition of momentum is valid at low speeds. At higher speeds, γ grows dramatically, and so does relativistic momentum. As speed approaches c, γ approaches infinity! No matter how close to c an object is pushed, it would still require infinite impulse to give it the last bit of speed needed to reach c—clearly impossible. Hence we see that no body with mass can be pushed to the speed of light, much less beyond it.

FIGURE 35.26
The Stanford Linear Accelerator is 3.2 km (2 mi) long. But to electrons moving through it at 0.999999999995*c*, the accelerator is only 3.2 cm long. The electrons start their journey in the foreground and they smash into targets, or are otherwise studied, in the experimental areas beyond the freeway (near the top of the photo).

Subatomic particles are routinely pushed to nearly the speed of light. The momenta of such particles may be thousands of times greater than the Newtonian expression mv predicts. Classically, the particles behave as if their masses increase with speed. Einstein initially favored this interpretation and later changed his mind to keep mass a constant, a property of matter that is the same in all frames of reference. So it is γ that changes with speed, not mass. The increased momentum of a high-speed particle is evident in the increased "stiffness" of its trajectory. The more momentum it has, the "stiffer" is its trajectory and the harder it is to deflect.

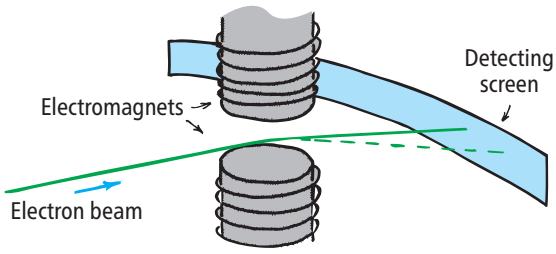


FIGURE 35.27
If the momentum of the electrons were equal to the Newtonian value mv, the beam would follow the dashed line. But because the relativistic momentum γmv is greater, the beam follows the "stiffer" trajectory shown by the solid line.

We see this when a beam of electrons is directed into a magnetic field. Charged particles moving in a magnetic field experience a force that deflects them from their normal paths. For small momentum, the path curves sharply. For large momentum, there is greater stiffness and the path bends less (Figure 35.27). Even though one particle may be moving only a little faster than another one—say, 99.9% of the speed of light instead of 99% of the speed of light—its momentum will be considerably greater and it will follow a straighter path in the magnetic field. This stiffness must be compensated for in circular accelerators like cyclotrons and synchrotrons, where momentum dictates the radius of curvature. In the linear accelerator shown in Figure 35.26, the particle beam travels in a straight-line path and momentum changes don't produce deviations from a straight-line path. Deviations occur when the beam of electrons is bent at the exit port by magnets, as indicated in Figure 35.27. Whatever the type of particle accelerator, physicists who work with subatomic particles every day verify the correctness of the relativistic definition of momentum and the speed limit imposed by nature.

To summarize, we see that, as the speed of an object approaches the speed of light, its momentum approaches infinity—which means there is no way that the speed of light can be reached. There is, however, at least one thing that reaches the speed of light—light itself! But the photons of light are massless, and the equations that apply to them are different. Light travels always at the same speed. So, interestingly, a material particle can never be brought to the speed of light, and light can never be brought to rest.

CHECK POINT

Instead of saying that a particle moving at relativistic speed has enormous momentum, why don't we simply say it has enormous mass?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The quantity m that appears in the equation for p in this section is called the "rest mass." It doesn't depend on the speed or energy of a particle. Physicists attach significance to things that are constant (think of conservation laws), so, instead of introducing the idea of a variable mass, they stick with the constant rest mass and amend the definition of a variable quantity, momentum.

35.8 Mass, Energy, and $E = mc^2$

Einstein linked not only space and time but also mass and energy. A piece of matter, even at rest and not interacting with anything else, has an "energy of being." This is called its *rest energy*. Einstein concluded that it takes energy to make mass and that energy is released if mass disappears. The amount of energy

FIGURE 35.28
Saying that a power plant delivers 90 million megajoules of energy to its consumers is equivalent to saying that it delivers 1 gram of energy to its consumers because mass and energy are equivalent.

E is related to the amount of mass m by the most celebrated equation of the 20th century:

$$E = mc^2$$

The c^2 is the conversion factor between energy units and mass units. Because of the large magnitude of c, a small mass corresponds to an enormous quantity of energy.[7]

Recall from Chapter 34 that tiny decreases of nuclear mass in both nuclear fission and nuclear fusion produce enormous releases of energy, all in accord with $E = mc^2$. To the general public, $E = mc^2$ is synonymous with nuclear energy. If we were to weigh a fully fueled nuclear power plant and then weigh it again a week later, we'd find that it weighs slightly less—about 1 gram less for every kilogram of fuel that underwent fission in that week. Part of the fuel's mass has been converted to energy. Now, interestingly enough, if we were to weigh a coal-burning power plant and all the coal and oxygen it consumes in a week and then weigh it again with all the carbon dioxide and other combustion products that came out during the week, we'd also find that it all weighs slightly less. Again, part of the coal's mass has been converted to energy. About 1 part in a billion has been converted. Get this: If both plants produce the same amount of energy, the mass change will be the same for both—whether energy is released by nuclear or chemical mass conversion makes no difference. The chief difference lies in the amount of energy released in each individual reaction and the amount of mass involved. Fissioning of a single uranium nucleus releases 10 million times as much energy as the combustion of carbon to produce a single carbon dioxide molecule. Hence, a few truckloads of uranium fuel will power a fission plant, while a coal-burning plant consumes many hundred-car trainloads of coal.

When we strike a match, phosphorus atoms in the match head rearrange themselves and combine with oxygen in the air to form new molecules. The resulting molecules have very slightly less mass than the separate phosphorus and oxygen molecules. From a mass standpoint, the whole is slightly less than the sum of its parts, by amounts that escape our notice. For all chemical reactions that give off energy, there is a corresponding minuscule decrease in mass of about 1 part in a billion.

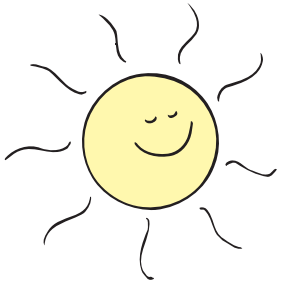


FIGURE 35.29
In 1 second, 4.5 million tons of mass are converted to radiant energy in the Sun. The Sun is so massive, however, that in 1 million years only 1 ten-millionth of the Sun's mass will have been converted to radiant energy.

For nuclear reactions, a decrease in mass by 1 part in a thousand can be directly measured by a variety of devices. This decrease of mass in the Sun by the process of thermonuclear fusion bathes the solar system with radiant energy and nourishes life. The present stage of thermonuclear fusion in the Sun has been going on for the past 5 billion years, and there is sufficient hydrogen fuel for fusion to last another 5 billion years. It is nice to have a just-right-sized Sun!

The equation $E = mc^2$ is not restricted to chemical and nuclear reactions. A change in energy of any object at rest is accompanied by a change in its mass. The filament of a lightbulb energized with electricity has more mass than when it is turned off. A hot cup of tea has more mass than the same cup of tea when cold. A wound-up spring clock has more mass than the same clock when unwound. But these examples involve incredibly small changes in mass—far too small to be measured. Even the much larger changes of mass in radioactive change were not measured until after Einstein predicted the mass–energy equivalence. Now, however, mass-to-energy and energy-to-mass conversions are measured routinely.

[7]When c is in meters per second and m is in kilograms, E will be in joules. If the equivalence of mass and energy had been understood long ago when physics concepts were first being formulated, there would probably be no separate units for mass and energy. Furthermore, with a redefinition of space and time units, c could equal 1 and $E = mc^2$ would be simply $E = m$.

Consider a coin with a mass of 1 g. You'd expect 2 of the same coins to have a mass of 2 g, 10 coins to have a mass of 10 g, and 1000 coins piled in a box to have a mass of 1 kg. Not so if the coins attract or repel each other. Suppose, for example, that each coin carries a negative electric charge so that each coin repels all other coins. Then forcing them together in the box takes work. This work adds to the mass of the collection. So a box that contains 1000 negatively charged coins has more than 1 kg of mass. If, on the other hand, the coins all attracted one another (as nucleons in the nucleus attract one another), it takes work to separate them; then a box of 1000 coins would have a mass less than 1 kg. So the mass of an object is not necessarily equal to the sum of the masses of its parts, as we know from measuring the masses of nuclei. The effect would be dramatically enormous if we could deal with bare charged particles. If we could force together a number of electrons whose masses add separately to 1 g into a 10-cm-diameter sphere, the collection would have a mass of 40 billion kg! The equivalence of mass and energy is indeed profound.

Before physicists came to understand that the electron is a fundamental particle with no measurable radius, some speculated that it had a certain size and that its mass is merely a measure of how much work was required to compress its charge to that size.[8]

In ordinary units of measurement, the speed of light c is a large quantity and its square is even larger—hence a small amount of mass stores a large amount of energy. The quantity c^2 is a "conversion factor." It converts the measurement of mass to the measurement of equivalent energy. Or it is the ratio of rest energy to mass: $E/m = c^2$. Its appearance in either form of this equation has nothing to do with light and nothing to do with motion. The magnitude of c^2 is 90 quadrillion (9×10^{16}) J/kg. One kilogram of matter has an "energy of being" equal to 90 quadrillion J. Even a speck of matter with a mass of only 1 mg has a rest energy of 90 billion J.

$E = mc^2$ says that energy and mass are related. Mass is congealed energy.

The equation $E = mc^2$ is more than a formula for the conversion of mass into other kinds of energy, or vice versa. It states even more: that energy and mass are the *same thing*. Mass is congealed energy. If you want to know how much energy is in a system, measure its mass. For an object at rest, its energy *is* its mass (called its *rest-mass energy*), and with motion its energy is even greater. Energy, like mass, exhibits inertia. Shake a massive object back and forth; it is energy itself that is hard to shake.

The first evidence for the conversion of radiant energy to mass was provided in 1932 by the American physicist Carl Anderson. He discovered the *positron* by the track it left in a cloud chamber. The positron is the *antiparticle* of the electron, equal in mass and spin to the electron but opposite in charge. When a high-frequency photon comes close to an atomic nucleus, it can create an electron and a positron together as a pair, thus creating mass. The created particles fly apart. The positron is not part of normal matter because it lives such a short time. As soon as it encounters an electron, the pair is annihilated, sending out two gamma rays in the process. Then mass is converted back to radiant energy.[9]

[8]San Francisco Sidewalk Astronomer John Dobson speculates that, just as a clock becomes more massive when we do work on it by winding it against the resistance of its spring, the mass of the entire universe is nothing more than the energy that has gone into winding it up against mutual gravitation. In this view, the mass of the universe is equivalent to the work done in spreading it out.

[9]Recall that the energy of a photon is $E = hf$ and that the mass energy of a particle is $E = mc^2$. High-frequency photons routinely convert their energy to mass when they produce pairs of particles in nature—and in accelerators, where the processes can be observed. Why pairs? Mainly because that's the only way the conservation of charge is not violated. So, when an electron is created, an antiparticle positron is created also. Equating the two equations, $hf = 2mc^2$, where m is the mass of a particle (or antiparticle), we see that the minimum frequency of a gamma ray for the production of a particle pair is $f = 2mc^2/h$.

CHECK POINT

Can we look at the equation $E = mc^2$ in another way and say that matter transforms into pure energy when it is traveling at the speed of light squared?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

No, no, no! Matter cannot be made to move at the speed of light, let alone the speed of light squared (which is not a speed!). The equation $E = mc^2$ simply means that energy and mass are "two sides of the same coin."

35.9 The Correspondence Principle

We introduced the correspondence principle in Chapter 32. Recall that it states that any new theory or any new description of nature must agree with the old where the old gives correct results. If the equations of special relativity are valid, then they must correspond to those of classical mechanics when speeds much lower than the speed of light are considered.

The relativity equations for time, length, and momentum are

$$t = \frac{t_0}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}} = \gamma t_0$$

$$L = L_0\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}} = L_0/\gamma$$

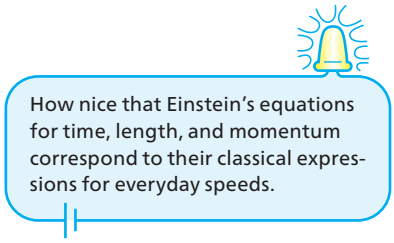
$$p = \frac{mv}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}} = \gamma mv$$

Note that each of these equations reduces to Newtonian values for speeds that are very small compared with c. Then the ratio v^2/c^2 is very small and, for everyday speeds, may be taken to be zero. The relativity equations become

$$t = \frac{t_0}{\sqrt{1 - 0}} = t_0$$

$$L = L_0\sqrt{1 - 0} = L_0$$

$$p = \frac{mv}{\sqrt{1 - 0}} = mv$$


How nice that Einstein's equations for time, length, and momentum correspond to their classical expressions for everyday speeds.

So, for everyday speeds, the momentum, length, and time of moving objects are essentially unchanged. The equations of special relativity hold for all speeds, although they differ appreciably from classical equations only for speeds near the speed of light.

Einstein's theory of relativity has raised many philosophical questions. What, exactly, is time? Can we say that it is nature's way of seeing to it that everything does not all happen at once? And why does time seem to move in only one direction? Has it always moved *forward*? Are there other parts of the universe in which time moves *backward*? Is it likely that our three-dimensional perception of a four-dimensional world is only a beginning? Could there be a fifth dimension? A sixth dimension? A seventh dimension? And, if so, what would the nature of these dimensions be? Perhaps these unanswered questions will be answered by the physicists of tomorrow. How exciting!

Chapter 35 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

Frame of reference A vantage point (usually a set of coordinate axes) with respect to which position and motion may be described.

Postulates of the special theory of relativity (1) All laws of nature are the same in all uniformly moving frames of reference. (2) The speed of light in free space has the same measured value for all observers regardless of the motion of the source or the motion of the observer; that is, the speed of light is a constant.

Simultaneity Occurrence at the same time. Two events that are simultaneous in one frame of reference need not be simultaneous in a frame that is moving relative to the first frame.

Spacetime The four-dimensional continuum in which all events take place and all things exist. Three dimensions are the coordinates of space, and the fourth is time.

Time dilation The stretching out of time.

Length contraction The contraction of space in an observer's direction of motion as a result of speed.

READING CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

35.1 Motion Is Relative

1. If you walks at 1 km/h down the aisle toward the front of a train that moves at 60 km/h, what is your speed relative to the ground?
2. What is meant by a "frame of reference?"
3. What was the "shrinkage factor" worked out by Lorentz to explain the results of Michelson and Morley?
4. What classical idea about space and time did Einstein reject?

35.2 Postulates of the Special Theory of Relativity

5. What does Einstein's first postulate reveal about absolute motion?
6. What remains constant in Einstein's second postulate?

35.3 Simultaneity

7. Inside the moving compartment of Figure 35.4, light travels a certain distance to the front end and a certain distance to the back end of the compartment. How do these distances compare as seen in the frame of reference of the moving rocket?
8. The nonsimultaneity of events in one frame that are simultaneous in another is a consequence of which property of light?

35.4 Spacetime and Time Dilation

9. How many coordinate axes are usually used to describe three-dimensional space? What does the fourth dimension measure?
10. Under what condition will you and a friend share the same realm of spacetime? When will you not share the same realm?
11. What is special about the ratio of the distance traveled by a flash of light to the time the light takes to travel this distance?
12. Time is required for light to travel along a path from one point to another. If this path is seen to be longer because of motion, what happens to the time it takes for light to travel this longer path?
13. What do we call the "stretching out" of time?
14. What is an algebraic expression for the Lorentz factor γ (pronounced gamma)? Why is γ never less than 1?
15. How do measurements of time differ for events in a frame of reference that moves at 50% of the speed of light relative to us? At 99.5% of the speed of light relative to us?
16. What evidence can be cited for time dilation?
17. When a flashing light approaches you, each flash that reaches you has a shorter distance to travel. What effect does this have on how frequently you receive the flashes?
18. When a flashing light source approaches you, does the speed of light or the frequency of light—or both—increase?
19. If a flashing light source moves toward you fast enough so that the time interval between flashes is seen in half the time, what will be the time interval between flashes if the source is moving away from you at the same speed?
20. How many frames of reference does the stay-at-home twin experience in the twin trip? How many frames of reference does the traveling twin experience?

35.5 Addition of Velocities

21. What is the maximum value of $\frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2}$ in an extreme situation? What is the smallest value?
22. Is the relativistic rule
$$V = \frac{v_1 + v_2}{1 + \frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2}}$$
consistent with the fact that light can have only one speed in all uniformly moving reference frames?
23. What two main obstacles prevent us from traveling throughout the galaxy at relativistic speeds?
24. What is the universal standard of time?

35.6 Length Contraction

25. What would be the length of a meterstick if it were traveling like a properly thrown spear at 99.5% of the speed of light?

26. What would be the length of a meterstick in the preceding question if it were traveling with its length perpendicular to its direction of motion? (Why is your answer different from your answer to the preceding question?)
27. If you were traveling in a high-speed rocket ship, would metersticks on board appear to you to be contracted? Defend your answer.

35.7 Relativistic Momentum

28. What would be the momentum of an object if it could move at the speed of light?
29. When a beam of charged particles moves through a magnetic field, what is the evidence that particles in the beam have momenta greater than the value mv?

35.8 Mass, Energy, and $E = mc^2$

30. Compare the amounts of mass converted to energy in nuclear reactions and in chemical reactions.
31. How does the energy from the fissioning of a single uranium nucleus compare with the energy from the combustion of a single carbon atom?
32. Does the equation $E = mc^2$ apply to chemical reactions?
33. How does $E = mc^2$ describe the identities of energy and mass?

35.9 The Correspondence Principle

34. How does the correspondence principle relate to special relativity?
35. Do the relativity equations for time, length, and momentum hold true for everyday speeds? Explain.

THINK AND DO (HANDS-ON APPLICATIONS)

36. Contact Grandma and explain how Einstein's theories of relativity concern the fast and the big—that relativity is not only "out there" but also affects this world. Tell her how these ideas stimulate your quest for more knowledge about the universe. Impress Grandma by properly using the words *there*, *they're*, and *their* in your explanation.

THINK AND SOLVE (MATHEMATICAL APPLICATION)

Recall from this chapter that the factor gamma (γ) *governs both time dilation and length contraction, where*

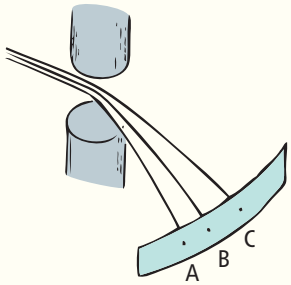
$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \left(\frac{v^2}{c^2}\right)}}$$

When you multiply the time in a moving frame by γ*, you get the longer (dilated) time in your fixed frame. When you divide the length in a moving frame by* γ*, you get the shorter (contracted) length in your fixed frame.*

37. Consider a meterstick moving at 80% of the speed of light with respect to a stationary person. What will the length of the meterstick be as observed by the stationary person?
38. Consider two rockets A and B both traveling at the speed of light c, approaching each other on a straight path. If you are sitting inside rocket A, will it be correct to say that you see rocket B traveling at a speed of $2c$ with respect to you? Justify your answer.
39. Assume a starship traveling at a speed of 75% of the speed of light with respect to the Earth fires a missile at a speed of 60% of the speed of light relative to itself. Calculate the speed of the missile relative to the Earth.
40. A passenger on an interplanetary express bus traveling at $v = 0.99c$ takes a 5-minute catnap, according to her watch. Show that her catnap from the vantage point of a fixed planet lasts 35 minutes.
41. If the speed of the bus reduces to $0.80c$ as mentioned in the preceding problem, compare the relativistic momentum with the classical Newtonian momentum. Do you think relativistic correction is needed for the speed of electrons used in a transmission electron microscope?
42. Assume the length of the bus in Question 40 is 30 m, measured with respect to its driver and passengers. Calculate the length of the bus measured from the vantage point of a fixed planet.
43. If the bus in problem 40 were to slow to a "mere" 10% of the speed of light, show that you would measure the passenger's catnap to last slightly more than 5 minutes.
44. Consider the mass of the bus in Question 40 to be 1500 kg. Calculate the relativistic momentum of the bus from the vantage point of the fixed planet.
45. Consider a future rocket taxi that travels at a speed of $0.6c$ through the galaxy. If a passenger has to pay 20 stellars for a 1-hour trip measured by a clock fixed inside the rocket, then estimate the extra amount to be paid for the time calculated with respect to a stationary planet in the galaxy.
46. The efficiency of a fission reactor to utilize reacting mass to energy is 0.1% of the fuel mass. If, by the introduction of advanced technology, the 0.1% efficiency is increased to 0.5%, then estimate the corresponding extra profit (in dollars) if 1 kg of thorium is totally fissioned, considering energy costs 5 cents per megajoule.

THINK AND RANK (ANALYSIS)

47. Electrons are fired at different speeds through a magnetic field and are bent from their straight-line paths to hit the detector at the points shown. Rank the speeds of the electrons, from highest to lowest.



48. To an Earth observer, metersticks on three spaceships are seen to have these lengths. Rank the speeds of the spaceships relative to Earth, from highest to lowest.

THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

49. If you were in a smooth-riding train with no windows, could you sense the difference between uniform motion and rest? Between accelerated motion and rest? Explain how you could make such a distinction with a bowl filled with water.
50. A person riding inside the boxcar of a freight train throws a ball toward the front of the train. Ignore air drag. (a) Relative to the train, is the ball moving faster or slower when the train is moving forward than when the train is standing still?
51. Suppose instead that the person riding on top of the freight car shines a searchlight beam in the direction in which the train is traveling. Compare the speed of the light beam relative to the ground when the train is at rest and when it is in motion. How does the behavior of the light beam differ from the behavior of the ball in question 50?
52. When you drive down the highway, you are moving through space. What else are you moving through?
53. In Chapter 26, we learned that light travels more slowly in glass than in air. Does this contradict Einstein's second postulate?
54. Astronomers view light coming from distant galaxies moving away from Earth at speeds greater than 10% of the speed of light. How fast does this light meet the telescopes of the astronomers?
55. The beam of light from a laser on a rotating turntable casts into space. At some distance, the beam moves across space faster than c. Why doesn't this contradict relativity?
56. Can the end of an electron beam sweep across the face of a cathode-ray tube at a speed greater than the speed of light? If so, why does this not violate special relativity?
57. Event A occurs before event B in a certain frame of reference. How could the same event B occur before the same event A?
58. If two lightning bolts hit exactly the same place at exactly the same time in one frame of reference, is it possible that observers in other frames will see the bolts hitting at different times or at different places?
59. Suppose that the lightbulb in the rocket ship in Figures 35.4 and 35.5 is closer to the front than to the rear of the compartment so that the observer in the ship sees the light reaching the front end before it reaches the back end. Is it still possible that the outside observer will see the light reaching the back end first?
60. Since there is an upper limit on the speed of a particle, does it follow that there is also an upper limit on its momentum and, therefore, on its kinetic energy? Explain.
61. Light travels a certain distance in, say, 20,000 years. How is it possible that an astronaut, traveling slower than light, could go as far in 20 years of her life as light travels in 20,000 years?
62. Is it possible in principle for a human being who has a life expectancy of 70 years to make a round-trip journey to a part of the universe thousands of light-years distant? Explain.
63. A twin who makes a long trip at relativistic speeds returns younger than her stay-at-home twin sister. Could she return before her twin sister was born? Defend your answer.
64. An astronaut is traveling in space at speeds close to the speed of light. Compare the time spent in space by the astronaut with the time lapsed on Earth.
65. If you were in a rocket ship traveling away from Earth at a speed close to the speed of light, what changes would you note in your pulse? In your volume? Explain.
66. If you were on Earth monitoring a person in a rocket ship traveling away from Earth at a speed close to the speed of light, what changes would you note in his pulse? In his volume? Explain.
67. Due to length contraction, you see people in a spaceship passing by you as being slightly narrower than they normally appear. How do these people view you?
68. Because of time dilation, you observe the hands of your friend's watch to be moving slowly. How does your friend view your watch: as running slowly, running rapidly, or neither?
69. Does the equation for time dilation show dilation occurring for all speeds, whether slow or fast? Explain.
70. If you lived in a world where people regularly traveled at speeds near the speed of light, why would it be risky to make a dental appointment for 10:00 AM next Thursday?
71. If an object is moving vertically, will any contraction take place in the horizontal direction?
72. If stationary observers measure the shape of a passing object to be exactly circular, what is the shape of the object when viewed face-on by observers on board the object, traveling with it?
73. The formula that relates the speed, frequency, and wavelength of electromagnetic waves, $v = f\lambda$, was known before relativity was developed. Relativity has not

changed this equation, but it has added a new feature to it. What is that feature?

74. Consider light reflecting from a very fast-moving mirror. How is the reflected light different from the incident light, and how is it the same?
75. As a meterstick moves past you, your measurements show its momentum to be twice its classical momentum and its length to be 1 m. In what direction is the stick pointing?
76. In the preceding exercise, if the stick is moving in a direction along its length (like a properly thrown spear), how long will you measure its length to be?
77. If a high-speed spaceship appears shrunken to half its normal length, how does its momentum compare with the classical formula $p = mv$?
78. How can the momentum of a particle increase by 5% with only a 1% increase in speed?
79. The Large Hadron Collider (LHC) is the world's largest particle accelerator. It started functioning on 10 September 2008 and remains the latest addition to CERN's accelerator complex. The LHC consists of a 27-kilometer ring of superconducting magnets with several accelerating structures to boost the energy of the particles along the way. When particles inside the LHC travel at speeds close to c, the circumference appears to shrink with respect to the particles. Why does this happen?
80. Electrons end their trip in the Stanford accelerator with an energy thousands of times greater than their initial rest energy. In theory, if you could travel with them, would you notice an increase in their energy? In their momentum? In your moving frame of reference, what would be the approximate speed of the target they are about to hit?
81. The electrons that illuminate the screen in the picture tube of yesterday's TV sets travel at nearly one-fourth the speed of light and possess nearly 3% more energy than hypothetical nonrelativistic electrons traveling at the same speed. Does this relativistic effect tend to increase or decrease the electric bill?
82. How might the idea of the correspondence principle be applied outside the field of physics?
83. What does the equation $E = mc^2$ mean?
84. According to $E = mc^2$, how does the amount of energy in a kilogram of feathers compare with the amount of energy in a kilogram of iron?
85. Does a fully charged flashlight battery weigh more than the same battery when dead? Defend your answer.
86. When we look out into the universe, we see into the past. John Dobson, founder of the San Francisco Sidewalk Astronomers, used to say that we cannot even see the backs of our own hands *now*—in fact, we can't see anything *now*. Do you agree? Explain.
87. Make up four multiple-choice questions, one each that would check a classmate's understanding of (a) time dilation, (b) length contraction, (c) relativistic momentum, and (d) $E = mc^2$.

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

88. The idea that force causes acceleration doesn't seem strange. This and other ideas of Newtonian mechanics are consistent with our everyday experience. But the ideas of relativity do seem odd and more difficult to grasp. Discuss.
89. Why did Michelson and Morley at first consider their experiment a failure? (Discuss examples you may have encountered where failure has to do not with lack of ability but with the impossibility of the task.)
90. Does special relativity allow *anything* to travel faster than light? Discuss.
91. When the source of a light beam is approaching you, the frequency of the light you receive from it is higher and the wavelength is shorter than the frequency and wavelength at the source itself. Does this contradict the postulate that the speed of light cannot change? Discuss.
92. Mike and Jane have synchronized watches. Jane sits in the grandstand while Mike races his 1935 Ford Sprint a few times around a racing track. Strictly speaking, will their watches be synchronized when they meet after the race?

93. The speed of light is a speed limit in the universe—at least for the four-dimensional universe we comprehend. No material particle can attain or surpass this limit even when a continuous, unremitting force is exerted on it. Discuss evidence that supports this.
94. Two safety pins, identical except that one is latched and one is unlatched, are placed in identical acid baths. After the pins are dissolved, what, if anything, is different about the two acid baths?
95. A chunk of radioactive material encased in a thick lead container gets warmer as its nuclei decay and release energy. Does the mass of the chunk-container system change? If so, does it increase or decrease?
96. Muons are elementary particles that are formed high in the atmosphere by the interactions of cosmic rays with atomic nuclei up there. Muons are radioactive and have average lifetimes of about two-millionths of a second. Even though they travel at almost the speed of light, very few should be detected at sea level after traveling through the atmosphere—at least according to classical physics. Laboratory measurements, however, show that muons in great number do reach Earth's surface. Discuss and explain.
97. One of the fads of the future might be "century hopping," where occupants of high-speed spaceships would depart from Earth for several years and return centuries later. Discuss the present-day obstacles to such a practice.
98. Is the statement by the philosopher Soren Kierkegaard that "Life can only be understood backwards; but it must be lived forwards" consistent with the theory of special relativity?
99. Your study partner says that matter can be neither created nor destroyed. What do you say to correct this statement?
100. Discuss with your friends how length contraction occurs for a racing car that travels at 200 miles per hour, but why the decrease can be ignored.

CHAPTER THIRTY FIVE Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. According to the special theory of relativity, all laws of nature are the same
   (a) in all reference frames.
   (b) for both linear and circular motion.
   (c) in all uniformly moving reference frames.
   (d) All of the above
2. A postulate of special relativity is that the speed of light
   (a) like all motion, is relative.
   (b) is the same for all observers.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
3. If you ride a merry-go-round while your twin waits on the ground, relativity says that when you rejoin
   (a) you will be a little younger than your twin.
   (b) you will be a little older than your twin.
   (c) you and your twin will still be the same age.
   (d) you may be younger or older, depending on the merry-go-round's speed.
4. Clocks on a spaceship moving at high speed relative to Earth run more slowly when viewed from
   (a) within the spaceship.
   (b) Earth.
   (c) Both of these
   (d) Neither of these
5. We are looking into the past when we look at
   (a) a distant star.
   (b) ourselves in a mirror.
   (c) Actually both of the above
   (d) None of the above
6. According to relativity theory, if after a space trip two twins are found to be biologically the same age but older than their parents, then the space trip was taken by
   (a) the twins.
   (b) one of the twins.
   (c) the parents.
   (d) Neither, it can't be done.
7. Two spaceships approaching each other move at nearly the speed of light, each sending a beam of light to the other. Each measures the speed of light from the other spaceship to be
   (a) slightly less than c.
   (b) c.
   (c) slightly greater than c.
   (d) much greater than c.
8. Passengers on a spaceship passing by you at $0.87c$ measure its length to be 100 m. You measure its length to be
   (a) 50 m.
   (b) 87 m.
   (c) 100 m.
   (d) more than 100 m.
9. According to the well-known equation $E = mc^2$,
   (a) mass and energy travel at the speed of light squared.
   (b) energy is actually mass traveling at the speed of light squared.
   (c) mass and energy travel at twice the speed of light.
   (d) mass and energy are related.
10. Relativity equations for time, length, and momentum hold true for
    (a) relativistic speeds.
    (b) everyday low speeds.
    (c) Both of these
    (d) Neither of these

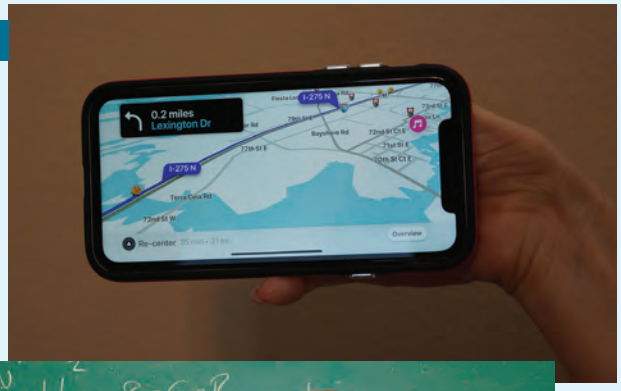
Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (c): Choice (c) completes the first postulate of special relativity. Whether or not all laws are the same for any or all reference frames, circular or linear, is not the domain of special relativity. **2. (b):** Speeds in general can vary from situation to situation and are relative to the chosen frame of reference. But not the speed of light. For all observers in whatever frame of reference, the speed of light will be measured to be constant—c! **3. (a):** Because you are traveling, your clock runs a bit slower than your twin's, and you age slower than your twin. The effect is far too small to be observed for people, but it has been observed for "twin particles." **4. (b):** The effects of relativity are always with "the other guy." In the time dilation equation, the v is zero relative to you and whatever frame of reference you inhabit. So choice (a) is not correct. **5. (c):** It is easy to accept that looking at distant stars is looking into the past due to the time it takes for light from the stars to reach us. But the same is true to a much lesser scale when we view our image in a mirror. Strictly speaking, you see yourself just a tad bit younger when looking at yourself in a mirror. Practically speaking, this difference is so tiny it is negligible. Yet the thought is intriguing! **6. (c):** This is not the example in the textbook, where one twin stays behind while the other twin takes a relativistic voyage. In this question, the twins are both biologically older, which means the parents took the space trip! **7. (b):** In accord with the first postulate of special relativity, each measures the same speed c in whatever situation—either approaching or receding from each other. **8. (a):** The speed $0.87c$ is cited throughout this chapter because the effects, whether of time dilation or length contraction, produce a value of one half. In accord with the length contraction equation, substituting $0.87c$ for v gives a contraction of one half. That is, $L = 100\sqrt{[1 - (0.87c)^2/c^2]} = 50$. **9. (d):** "The speed of light squared" has no physical meaning. And mass and energy cannot travel faster than light, let alone twice c. The equation $E = mc^2$ simply means that energy and mass are related, like "two sides of the same coin." **10. (c):** This answer is in keeping with the correspondence principle. When low speeds are inserted into the relativistic equations of relativity, they produce classical expressions for time, length, and momentum. The equations of Einstein hold not just for high speed, but for all speeds.

CHAPTER THIRTY SIX

36 General Theory of Relativity

36.1 Principle of Equivalence
36.2 Bending of Light by Gravity
36.3 Gravity and Time: Gravitational Red Shift
36.4 Gravity and Space: Motion of Mercury
36.5 Gravity, Space, and a New Geometry
36.6 Gravitational Waves
36.7 Newtonian and Einsteinian Gravitation



1

2

3

4

1 When your Global Positioning System (GPS) unit tells you where you are, thank Einstein. 2 Richard Crowe kicks off a lecture on general relativity with a celestial sphere. 3 When astrophysicists make measurements of far-off galactic events, they thank Einstein. 4 Stephanie Hewitt illustrates a prediction of Einstein's general relativity, the deflection of starlight by the Sun.

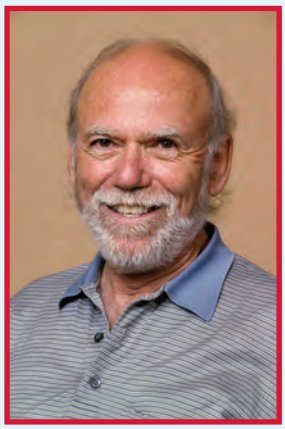
In 2017, the Nobel Prize in Physics was awarded to Rainer Weiss, Kip Thorne, and Barry Barish for ushering in a new field of science: gravitational-wave astronomy.

Physics has long been concerned with various kinds of waves, such as electromagnetic waves, sound waves, and water waves. In 1916, shortly after introducing general relativity—the theory that merged space and time into the single concept of spacetime—Albert Einstein suggested that spacetime itself could pulse and vibrate, creating "gravitational waves." Just as an electromagnetic wave is created by vibrating electrons, or a sound wave is created perhaps by a vibrating diaphragm in a speaker, a gravitational wave can be created by vibrating mass. If you were the god Zeus and could reach down and shake the Sun vigorously, it would be like dropping a pebble in a calm lake. Spacetime waves would spread out from the Sun like ripples in the water. Einstein's gravitational waves were verified in 2016.

Rainer Weiss was born in Berlin in 1932. As a child he moved with his Jewish father and Christian mother to escape the Nazis, first to Prague, Czechoslovakia, then to the United States. After completing his precollege education in New York City, he enrolled in MIT, where he earned both BS and PhD degrees. In 1964 he became a professor at MIT. In 1972, he wrote a paper laying out ideas for a particular kind of detector of such exquisite sensitivity that it might catch and measure a passing gravitational wave. Weiss visualized what eventually came to be constructed, a "laser interferometer gravitational wave observatory" (LIGO). In this device a laser beam is split into two beams, which travel down two perpendicular evacuated pipes each 4 km long, reflect back, and recombine. The recombined wave reacts to the tiniest motions of the mirrors that reflect the laser light back from the ends of the pipes; a mirror displacement less than 1/1000th the diameter of a single proton can be sensed (see Section 36.6).

Kip Thorne, born in Utah in 1940, was a Science Talent Search winner as a high-school senior, and then went on to earn a BS degree from Caltech and a PhD from Princeton. His advisor at Princeton was John Wheeler, who had coined the term "black hole" and was a leader in revitalizing Einstein's theory of general relativity and seeking new ways to test it. In 1972, the same year that Weiss's landmark paper appeared, Thorne coauthored a paper spelling out the possibilities for a new field of research: gravitational-wave astronomy. These authors considered possible cosmic events that might send strong gravitational waves pulsing across the universe, and they discussed what kinds of experimental setups might detect such waves. Later, in his decades as a Caltech professor, Thorne developed a detailed vision of how one might turn general relativity into an experimental science.

In 1984, a dozen years after the important 1972 papers by Thorne and Weiss, LIGO moved from calculations on paper to detailed plans for giant laser detectors to be located in Louisiana and Washington state. In 1994, after another decade and the growing conviction that gravitational-wave astronomy had real potential and deserved big government funding, LIGO got off the ground, and **Barry Barish** joined the project as the leader of the experimental effort. Barish, born in Nebraska in 1936, he earned his PhD in physics from the University of California, Berkeley, and became a leader in experimental particle physics. He brought to LIGO his skill in utilizing enormous pieces of experimental equipment to measure the tiniest of effects.



When a gravitational wave gently shook Earth for about two-tenths of a second on September 14, 2015, it had no discernable effect anywhere—except on those incredibly sensitive laser detectors in Louisiana and Washington. By analyzing the quivering of these detectors, the LIGO team was able to conclude that 1.4 billion years ago, two black holes, one about 36 times the mass of the Sun, one about 29 times the solar mass, locked into an embrace and circled around each other, first at 50 revolutions per second, growing to 250 revolutions per second a fraction of a second later, then merging to create a new black hole, this one with a mass about 62 times the mass of the Sun. In an event almost beyond imagining, 65 solar masses were fused in a fraction of a second into 62 solar masses. The 3 solar-mass difference was transformed from mass to energy and propagated throughout the universe as a gravitational wave, a tiny sliver of which reached the LIGO detectors after traveling for 1.4 billion years.

Weiss, Barish, Thorne and their many coworkers did indeed usher in the new scientific field of gravitational-wave astronomy. Gigantic black holes, it turns out, are (or were) merging all over the sky—or everywhere in the universe. LIGO is busy cataloging the results. New and even better detectors are being planned.

36.1 Principle of Equivalence

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES
Videos
Screencasts

In 1905 Einstein postulated that no observation made inside an enclosed chamber could determine whether the chamber is at rest or moving with constant velocity; that is, no mechanical, electrical, optical, or any other physical measurement that one could perform inside a closed compartment in a smoothly riding train traveling along a straight track (or in an airplane flying through still air with the window shades closed) could possibly give any information as to whether the train was moving or at rest (or whether the plane was airborne or at rest on the runway). But if the track were not smooth and straight (or if the air were turbulent), the situation would be entirely different: Uniform motion would give way to accelerated motion, which would be easily noticed. Einstein's conviction that the laws of nature should be expressed in the same form in every frame of reference, accelerated as well as nonaccelerated, was the primary motivation that led him to the general theory of relativity.

Long before there were real spaceships, Einstein could imagine himself in a vehicle far away from gravitational influences. In such a spaceship at rest or in uniform motion relative to the distant stars, he and everything inside the ship would float freely; there would be no "up" and no "down." But, when the rocket motors were turned on and the ship accelerated, things would be different: Phenomena like those caused by gravity would be observed. The wall adjacent to the rocket motors would push up against any occupants and become the floor, while the opposite wall would become the ceiling. Occupants in the ship would be able to stand on the floor and even jump up and down. If the acceleration of the spaceship were equal to g, the occupants could well be convinced that the ship was not accelerating but was at rest on the surface of Earth.

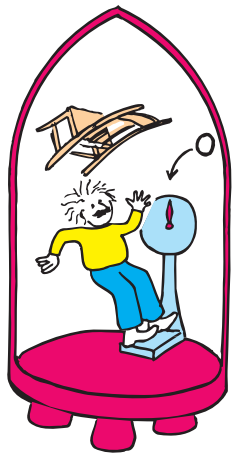


FIGURE 36.1
Everything is weightless on the inside of a nonaccelerating spaceship far away from gravitational influences.

To examine this new "gravity" in an accelerating spaceship, let's consider the results of dropping two balls inside the spaceship, one ball made of wood and the other of lead. When the balls are released, they continue to move upward side by side with the velocity the ship had at the moment of release. If the ship were moving at *constant velocity* (zero acceleration), the balls would remain suspended in the same place because they and the ship move the same distance in any given time interval. But because the ship is accelerating, the floor moves upward faster than the balls, with the result that the floor soon catches up with the balls (Figure 36.3). Both balls, regardless of their mass, meet the floor at the same time. Remembering Galileo's demonstration at the Leaning Tower of Pisa, occupants of the ship might be likely to attribute their observations to the force of gravity.

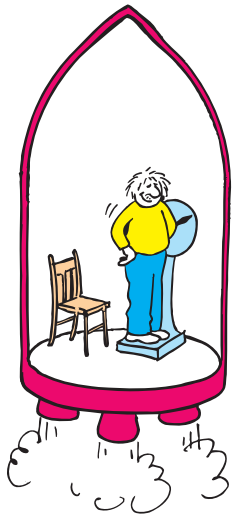


FIGURE 36.2
When the spaceship accelerates, an occupant inside feels "gravity."

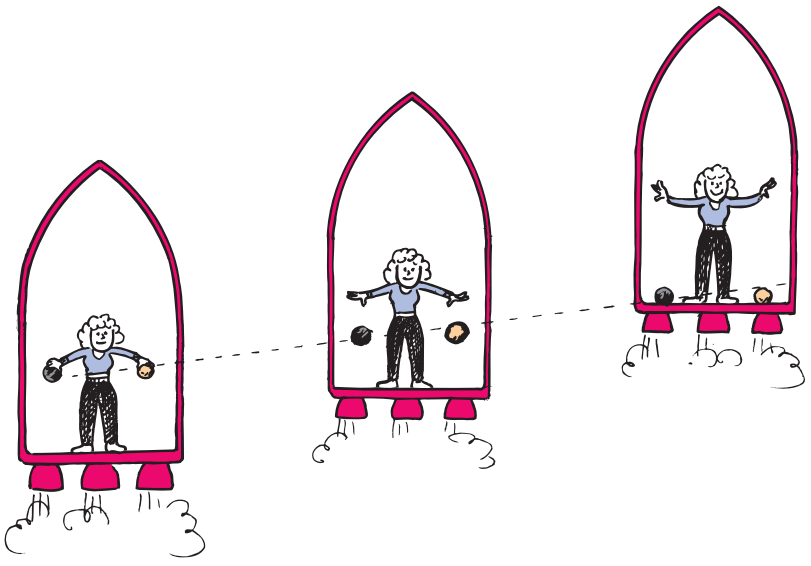


FIGURE 36.3
To an observer inside the accelerating ship, a lead ball and a wood ball appear to fall together when released.

The two interpretations of the falling balls are equally valid, and Einstein incorporated this equivalence, or impossibility of distinguishing between gravitation and acceleration, in the foundation of his general theory of relativity. The **principle of equivalence** states that observations made in an accelerated reference frame are indistinguishable from observations made in a Newtonian gravitational field. This equivalence would be interesting but not revolutionary if it could be applied only to mechanical phenomena, but Einstein went further and stated that the principle holds for all natural phenomena; it holds for optical and all electromagnetic phenomena as well.

fyi

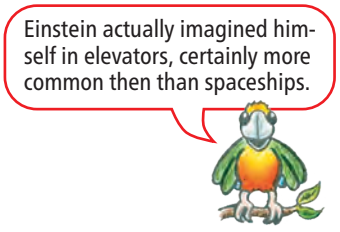
- Special relativity is "special" in the sense that it deals with uniformly moving reference frames—ones that aren't accelerated. General relativity is "general" and deals also with accelerating reference frames. The general theory of relativity presents a new theory of gravity.

CHECK POINT

If you drop a ball inside a spaceship at rest on a launching pad, you'll see it accelerate to the floor. Far away from Earth, how else could you see the ball do the same?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

You could also see the ball accelerate to the floor if your spaceship accelerated at *g*.



36.2 Bending of Light by Gravity

A ball thrown sideways in a stationary spaceship in a gravity-free region will follow a straight-line path relative both to an observer inside the ship and to a stationary observer outside the spaceship. But if the ship is accelerating, the floor overtakes the ball just as in our earlier example. An observer outside the ship still sees a straight-line path, but to an observer in the accelerating ship, the path is curved; it is a parabola (Figure 36.4b). The same holds true for a beam of light.

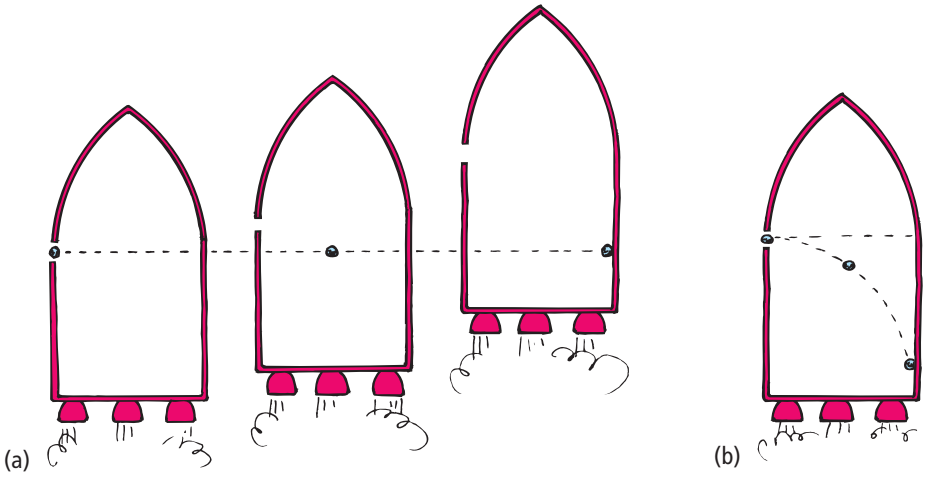


FIGURE 36.4
(a) An outside observer sees a horizontally thrown ball travel in a straight line. Because the ship is moving upward while the ball travels horizontally, the ball strikes the wall below a point opposite the window. (b) To an inside observer, the ball bends as if in a gravitational field.

Imagine that a light ray enters the spaceship horizontally through a side window, passes through a sheet of glass in the middle of the cabin, leaving a visible trace, and then reaches the opposite wall, all in a very short time. The outside observer sees that the light ray enters the window and moves horizontally along a straight line with constant velocity toward the opposite wall. But the spaceship is accelerating upward. During the time it takes for the light to reach the glass sheet, the spaceship moves up some distance, and, during the equal time for the

light to continue to the far wall, the spaceship moves up a greater distance. So, to observers in the spaceship the light has followed a downward curving path (Figure 36.5b). In this accelerating frame of reference, the light ray is deflected downward toward the floor, just as the thrown ball in Figure 36.4b is deflected. The curvature of the slow-moving ball is very pronounced, but if the ball were somehow thrown horizontally across the spaceship cabin at a velocity equal to that of light, its curvature would match the light ray's curvature.

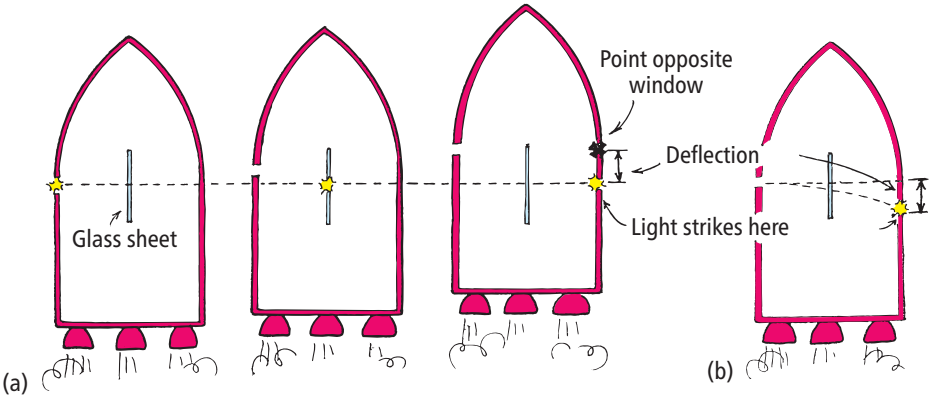


FIGURE 36.5
(a) An outside observer sees light travel horizontally in a straight line, and, like the ball in the preceding figure, it strikes the wall slightly below a point opposite the window. (b) To an inside observer, the light bends as if responding to a gravitational field.

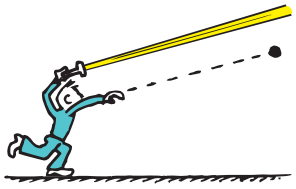


FIGURE 36.6
The trajectory of a flashlight beam is identical to the trajectory that a baseball would have if it could be "thrown" at the speed of light. Both paths curve equally in a uniform gravitational field.

An observer inside the ship feels "gravity" because of the ship's acceleration. The observer is not surprised by the deflection of the thrown ball, but might be quite surprised by the deflection of light. According to the principle of equivalence, if light is deflected by acceleration, it must be deflected by gravity. Yet how can gravity bend light? According to Newton's physics, gravitation is an interaction between masses; a moving ball curves because of the interaction between its mass and the mass of Earth. But what of light, which is pure energy and is massless? Einstein's answer was that light may be massless, but it's not "energyless." Gravity pulls on the energy of light because energy is equivalent to mass.

This was Einstein's first answer, before he fully developed the general theory of relativity. Later, he gave a deeper explanation—that light bends when it travels in a spacetime geometry that is bent. We shall see later in this chapter that the presence of mass results in the bending or warping of spacetime. The mass of Earth is too small to appreciably warp the surrounding spacetime, which is practically flat, so any such bending of light in our immediate environment is not ordinarily detected. Close to bodies of mass much greater than Earth's, however, the bending of light is great enough to detect.

Einstein predicted that starlight passing close to the Sun would be deflected by an angle of 1.75 seconds of arc—large enough to be measured. Although stars are not visible when the Sun is in the sky, the deflection of starlight can be observed during an eclipse of the Sun. (Measuring this deflection has become a standard practice at every total eclipse since the first measurements were made during the total eclipse of 1919.) A photograph of a darkened sky around the eclipsed Sun reveals the presence of the nearby bright stars. The positions of the stars are compared with those in other photographs of the same area taken at other times in the night with the same telescope. In every instance, the deflection of starlight has supported Einstein's prediction (Figure 36.7).

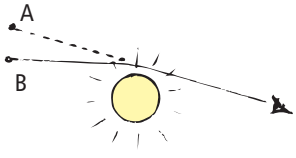


FIGURE 36.7
Starlight bends as it grazes the Sun. Point A shows the apparent position; point B shows the true position.

Light bends in Earth's gravitational field also—but not as much. We don't notice it because the effect is so tiny. For example, in a constant gravitational field of 1 *g*, a beam of horizontally directed light will "fall" a vertical distance of 4.9 m in 1 s (just as a baseball would), but it will travel a horizontal distance of 300,000 km in that time. Its curve would hardly be noticeable when you're this far from the beginning point. But if the light traveled 300,000 km in multiple

reflections between idealized parallel mirrors, the effect would be quite noticeable (Figure 36.8). (Doing this would make a dandy home project for extra credit—like earning credit for a PhD.)

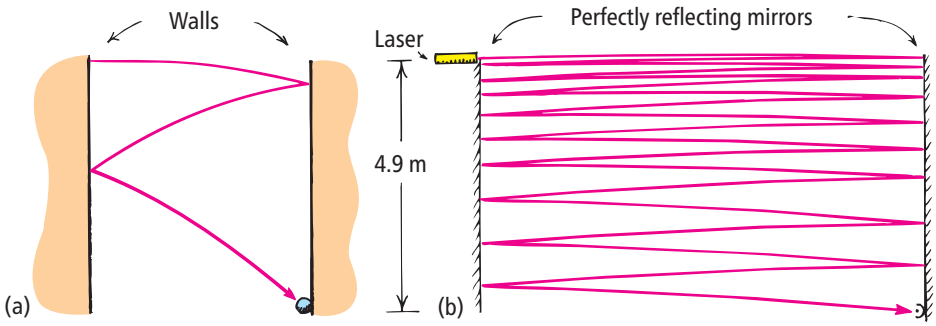


FIGURE 36.8
(a) If a ball is horizontally projected between a vertical pair of parallel walls, it will bounce back and forth and fall a vertical distance of 4.9 m in 1 s. (b) If a horizontal beam of light is directed between a vertical pair of perfectly parallel ideal mirrors, it will reflect back and forth and fall a vertical distance of 4.9 m in 1 s. The number of back-and-forth reflections is overly simplified in the diagram; if the mirrors were 300 km apart, for example, 1000 reflections would occur in 1 s.

CHECK POINT

1. **Whoa! We have learned that the pull of gravity is an interaction between masses. And we learned that light has no mass. Now we say that light can be bent by gravity. Isn't this a contradiction?**
2. **Why don't we notice the bending of light in our everyday environment?**

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. There is no contradiction when the mass–energy equivalence is understood. It's true that light has no mass, but it is not "energyless." The fact that gravity deflects light is evidence that gravity "pulls on" the energy of light. Energy indeed is equivalent to mass!
2. Only because light travels so fast; just as, over a short distance, we don't notice the curved path of a high-speed bullet, we do not notice the curving of a light beam.

36.3 Gravity and Time: Gravitational Red Shift

According to Einstein's general theory of relativity, gravitation causes time to slow down. If you move in the direction in which the gravitational force acts—from the top of a skyscraper to the ground floor, for instance, or from the surface of Earth to the bottom of a well—time will run slower at the point you reach than at the point you left behind. We can understand the slowing of clocks by gravity by applying the principle of equivalence and time dilation to an accelerating frame of reference.

Imagine our accelerating reference frame to be a large rotating disk. Suppose we measure time with three identical clocks: one placed on the disk at its center, a second placed on the rim of the disk, and the third at rest on the ground nearby (Figure 36.9). From the laws of special relativity, we know that the clock attached to the center, since it is not moving with respect to the ground, should run at the same rate as the clock on the ground—but not at the same rate as the clock attached to the rim of the disk. The clock at the rim is in motion with respect to the ground and should therefore be observed to be running more slowly than the ground clock—and therefore more slowly than the clock at the center of the disk. Although the clocks on the disk are attached to the same frame of reference, they do not run synchronously; the outer clock runs slower than the inner clock.

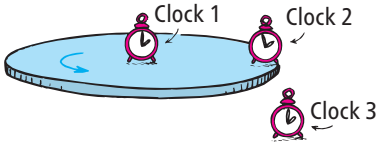


FIGURE 36.9
Clocks 1 and 2 are on an accelerating disk, and clock 3 is at rest in an inertial frame. Clocks 1 and 3 run at the same rate, while clock 2 runs slower. From the point of view of an observer at clock 3, clock 2 runs slow because it is moving. From the point of view of an observer at clock 1, clock 2 runs slow because it is at a lower potential (it would take work to move it from the edge to the center).

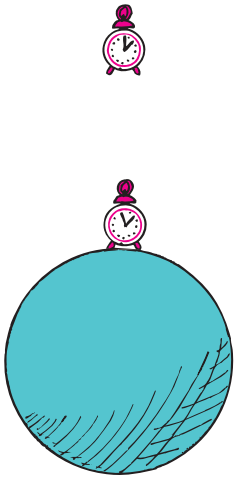


FIGURE 36.10
If you move from a distant point down to the surface of Earth, you move in the direction in which the gravitational force acts—toward a location where clocks run more slowly. A clock at the surface of Earth runs slower than a clock farther away.

Astrophysics goes beyond describing how the sky looks by explaining how it got to be as it is.

An observer on the rotating disk and an observer at rest on the ground both see the same difference in clock rates between themselves and the clock on the rim. Interpretations of the difference for the two observers are not the same, however. To the observer on the ground, the slower rate of the clock on the rim is due to its motion. But, to an observer on the rotating disk, the disk clocks are not in motion with respect to each other; instead, a centrifugal force acts on the clock at the rim, while no such force acts on the clock at the center. The observer on the disk is likely to conclude that the centrifugal force has something to do with the slowing of time. He notices that as he moves in the direction of the centrifugal force, outward from the center to the edge of the disk, time is slowed. By applying the principle of equivalence, which says that any effect of acceleration can be duplicated by gravity, we must conclude that as we move in the direction in which a gravitational force acts, time will also be slowed.

This slowing down will apply to all "clocks," whether physical, chemical, or biological. An executive working on the ground floor of a tall city skyscraper will age more slowly than her twin sister working on the top floor. The difference is very small, only a few millionths of a second per decade, because, by cosmic standards, the distance is small and the gravitation is weak. For larger differences in gravitation, such as between the surface of the Sun and the surface of Earth, the differences in time are greater (although still tiny). A clock at the surface of the Sun should run measurably slower than a clock at the surface of Earth. Years before he completed his general relativity theory, Einstein suggested a way to measure this slowing when he formulated the principle of equivalence in 1907.

All atoms emit light at specific frequencies characteristic of the vibrational rate of electrons within the atom. Every atom is therefore a "clock," and a slowing down of atomic vibration indicates the slowing down of such clocks. An atom on the Sun should emit light of a lower frequency (slower vibration) than light emitted by the same element on Earth. Since red light is at the low-frequency end of the visible spectrum, a lowering of frequency shifts the color toward the red. This effect is called the **gravitational redshift.** The gravitational redshift is observed in light from the Sun, but various disturbing influences prevent accurate measurements of this tiny effect. It wasn't until 1960 that an entirely new technique, using gamma rays from radioactive atoms, permitted incredibly precise and confirming measurements of the gravitational slowing of time between the top and bottom floors of a laboratory building at Harvard University.[1]

So measurements of time depend not only on relative motion, as we learned in Chapter 35, but also on gravity. In special relativity, time dilation depends on the *speed* of one frame of reference relative to another one. In general relativity, the gravitational redshift depends on the *location* of one point in a gravitational field relative to another one. As viewed from Earth, a clock will be measured to tick more slowly on the surface of a star than on Earth. If the star shrinks, its surface moves inward to ever-stronger gravity, which causes time on its surface to slow down more and more. We would measure longer intervals between the ticks of the star clock. But if we made our measurements of the star clock from the star itself, we would notice nothing unusual about the clock's ticking.

Suppose, for example, that an indestructible volunteer stands on the surface of a giant star that begins to collapse. We, as outside observers, will note a progressive slowing of time on the clock of our volunteer as the star surface recedes to regions of stronger gravity. The volunteer himself, however, does not notice any

[1]In the late 1950s, shortly after Einstein's death, the German physicist Rudolph Mössbauer discovered an important effect in nuclear physics that provides an extremely accurate method of using atomic nuclei as atomic clocks. The *Mössbauer effect*, for which its discoverer was awarded the 1961 Nobel Prize in physics, has many practical applications. In late 1959, Robert Pound and Glen Rebka at Harvard University conceived an application that was a test for general relativity and performed the confirming experiment.

differences in his own time. He is viewing events within his own frame of reference, and he notices nothing unusual. As the collapsing star proceeds toward becoming a black hole and time proceeds normally from the viewpoint of the volunteer, we on the outside perceive time for the volunteer as approaching a complete stop; we see him frozen in time with an infinite time interval between the ticks of his clock or the beats of his heart. From our view, his time stops completely. The gravitational redshift, instead of being a tiny effect, is dominating.

We can understand the gravitational redshift from another point of view—in terms of the gravitational force acting on photons. As a photon flies from the surface of a star, it is "retarded" by the star's gravity. It loses energy (but not speed). Since a photon's frequency is proportional to its energy, its frequency decreases as its energy decreases. When we observe the photon, we see that it has lower frequency than it would if it had been emitted by a less-massive source. Its time has been slowed, just like the ticking of a clock is slowed. In the case of a black hole, a photon is unable to escape at all. It loses all its energy and all its frequency in the attempt. Its frequency is gravitationally redshifted to zero, consistent with our observation that the rate at which time passes on a collapsing star approaches zero.

It is important to note the relativistic nature of time both in special relativity and in general relativity. In both theories, there is no way that you can extend the duration of your own existence. Others moving at different speeds or in different gravitational fields may attribute a great longevity to you, but your longevity is seen from *their* frame of reference, never from your own. Changes in time are always attributed to the other guy.

The Global Positioning System (GPS) must take account of the effect of gravity as well as speed on orbiting atomic clocks. Because of gravity, clocks run faster in orbit. Because of speed, they run slower. The effects vary during each elliptical orbit and they don't cancel. There's a lot of good physics in your GPS.

CHECK POINT

Will a person at the top of a skyscraper age faster or slower than a person at ground level?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Faster. Going from the top of the skyscraper to the ground is going in the direction of the gravitational force, so it is going to a place where time runs more slowly.

36.4 Gravity and Space: Motion of Mercury

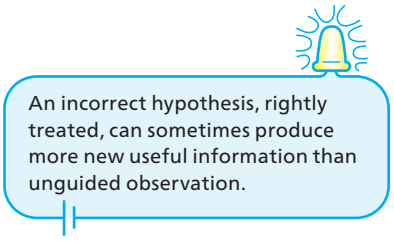
From the special theory of relativity, we know that measurements of space and time undergo transformations when motion is involved. Likewise with the general theory: Measurements of space differ in different gravitational fields—for example, close to and far away from the Sun.

Planets orbit the Sun and stars in elliptical orbits and move periodically into regions farther from the Sun and closer to the Sun. Einstein directed his attention to the varying gravitational fields experienced by the planets orbiting the Sun and found that the elliptical orbits of the planets should *precess* (Figure 36.11)—independently of the Newtonian influence of other planets. Near the Sun, where the effect of gravity on time is the greatest, the rate of precession should be the greatest; far from the Sun, where time is less affected, any deviations from Newtonian mechanics should be virtually unnoticeable.

Mercury, the planet nearest the Sun, is in the strongest part of the Sun's gravitational field. If the orbit of any planet exhibits a measurable precession, it should

FIGURE 36.11
A precessing elliptical orbit.

be Mercury, and the fact that the orbit of Mercury does precess—above and beyond effects attributable to the other planets—had been a mystery to astronomers since the early 1800s. Careful measurements showed that Mercury's orbit precesses about 574 seconds of arc per century. Perturbations by the other planets were found to account for all but 43 seconds of arc per century. Even after all known corrections due to possible perturbations by other planets had been applied, the calculations of physicists and astronomers failed to account for the extra 43 seconds of arc. Either Venus was extra massive or a never-discovered other planet (called Vulcan) was pulling on Mercury. And then came the explanation of Einstein, whose general relativity field equations applied to Mercury's orbit predict an extra 43 seconds of arc per century!


An incorrect hypothesis, rightly treated, can sometimes produce more new useful information than unguided observation.

The mystery of Mercury's orbit was solved, and a new theory of gravity was recognized. Newton's law of gravitation, which had stood as an unshakable pillar of science for more than two centuries, was found to be a special limiting case of Einstein's more general theory. If the gravitational fields are comparatively weak, Newton's law turns out to be a good approximation of the new law—enough so that Newton's law, which is easier to work with mathematically, is the law that today's space scientists use most of the time.

CHECK POINT

How was the solution to the mysterious precession of Mercury's orbit about the Sun historically important?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Einstein's solution gave credence to his General Theory of Relativity to the skeptical world of physicists worldwide.

36.5 Gravity, Space, and a New Geometry

We can begin to understand that measurements of space are altered in a gravitational field by again considering the accelerated frame of reference of our rotating disk. Suppose that we measure the circumference of the outer rim with a measuring stick. Recall the Lorentz contraction from special relativity: The measuring stick will appear contracted to any observer who is not moving along with the stick, while the dimensions of an identical measuring stick moving much more slowly near the center will be almost unaffected (Figure 36.12). All distance measurements along a *radius* of the rotating disk should be completely unaffected by motion because motion is perpendicular to the radius. Since only distance measurements parallel to and around the circumference are affected, the ratio of circumference to diameter when the disk is rotating is no longer the fixed constant π (3.14159 . . .) but is a variable that depends on angular speed and the diameter of the disk.

According to the principle of equivalence, the rotating disk is equivalent to a stationary disk that has a strong gravitational field near its edge and a progressively weaker gravitational field toward its center. Measurements of distance, then, will depend on the strength of the gravitational field (or, more exactly, for relativity buffs, on gravitational potential), even if no relative motion is involved. Gravity causes space to be non-Euclidean; the laws of Euclidean geometry taught in high school are no longer valid when applied to objects in the presence of strong gravitational fields.

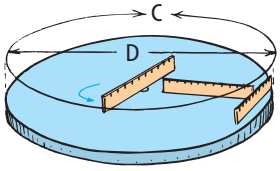


FIGURE 36.12
A measuring stick along the edge of the rotating disk appears contracted, while a measuring stick farther in and moving more slowly is not contracted as much. A measuring stick along a radius is not contracted at all. When the disk is not rotating, $C/D = \pi$, but when the disk is rotating, C/D is not equal to π and Euclidean geometry is no longer valid. Likewise in a gravitational field.

The familiar rules of Euclidean geometry pertain to various figures you can draw on a flat surface. The ratio of the circumference of a circle to its diameter is equal to π, all the angles in a triangle add up to 180°, and the shortest distance between two points is a straight line. The rules of Euclidean geometry are valid in flat space, but if you draw these figures on a curved surface, like a sphere or a saddle-shaped object, the Euclidean rules no longer hold (Figure 36.13). If you measure the sum of the angles in a triangle in space, you call the space flat if the sum is equal to 180°, spherelike or positively curved if the sum is greater than 180°, and saddlelike or negatively curved if the sum is less than 180°.

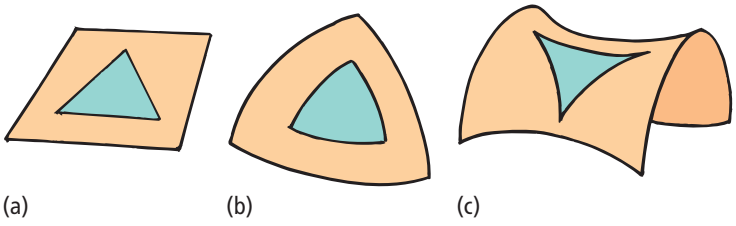


FIGURE 36.13
The sum of the angles in a triangle depends on which kind of surface the triangle is drawn on. (a) On a flat surface, the sum is 180°. (b) On a spherical surface, the sum is greater than 180°. (c) On a saddle-shaped surface, the sum is less than 180°.

Of course, the lines that form the triangles in Figure 36.13 are not all "straight" from a three-dimensional view, but they are the "straightest," or *shortest*, distances between two points if we are confined to the curved surface. These lines of shortest distance are called *geodesic* lines, or simply **geodesics.**

The path of a light beam follows a geodesic. Suppose three experimenters on Earth, Venus, and Mars measure the angles of a triangle formed by light beams traveling between these three planets when they are not all on the same side of the Sun (Figure 36.14). The light beams bend when passing the Sun, resulting in the sum of the three angles being greater than 180°. So the space around the Sun is positively curved. The planets that orbit the Sun travel along four-dimensional geodesics in this positively curved spacetime. Freely falling objects, satellites, and light rays all travel along geodesics in four-dimensional spacetime.

"Small" parts of the universe are certainly curved. What about the universe as a whole? Recent study of the low-temperature radiation in space that is a remnant of the Big Bang suggests that the universe on a large scale is flat. If it were open-ended like the saddle in Figure 36.13c, it would extend forever and beams of light that started out parallel would diverge. If it were closed like the spherical surface in Figure 36.13b, beams of light that started out parallel would eventually cross and circle back to their starting point. In such a universe, if you could look infinitely into space through an ideal telescope, you would see the back of your own head (after waiting patiently for enough billions of years)! In our actual flat universe, parallel beams of light remain parallel and will never return.

General relativity calls for a new geometry: Rather than space simply being a region of nothingness, space is a flexible medium that can bend and twist. How it bends and twists describes a gravitational field. General relativity is a geometry of curved, four-dimensional spacetime.[2] The mathematics of this geometry is too formidable to present here. The essence, however, is that the presence of mass produces the curvature, or *warping*, of spacetime. Conversely, a curvature of spacetime shows that mass must be present. Instead of visualizing gravitational forces between masses, we abandon altogether the notion of force and instead think of masses responding in their motion to the warping of the spacetime they inhabit. It is the bumps, depressions, and warpings of geometric spacetime that *are* the phenomena of gravity.

[2]Don't be discouraged if you cannot visualize four-dimensional spacetime. Einstein himself often told his friends, "Don't try. I can't do it either." Perhaps we are not too different from the great thinkers of Galileo's time who couldn't imagine a moving Earth!

The currently accepted model of cosmology (the science of the universe) assumes a flat universe dominated by dark matter and dark energy that formed by rapid inflation from its hot, dense origins.

fyi

- The geometry of the universe may indicate its ultimate fate. A spherelike universe has enough mass-energy to eventually stop expanding and fall back together—a "Big Crunch," the opposite of the "Big Bang." A saddlelike universe has too little mass-energy to ever slow its expansion to a stop. A flat universe has too little mass-energy to ever stop expanding.

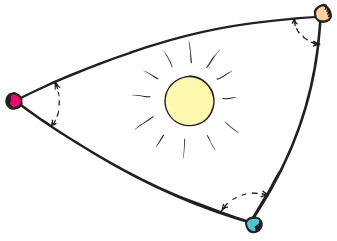
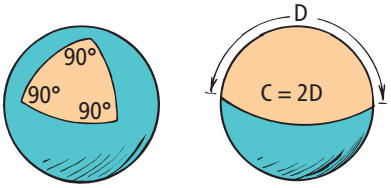


FIGURE 36.14
The light rays joining the three planets form a triangle. Since light passing near the Sun bends, the sum of the angles of the resulting triangle is greater than 180°.

FIGURE 36.15
The geometry of the curved surface of Earth differs from the Euclidean geometry of flat space. Note, in the globe on the left, that the sum of the angles in an equilateral triangle in which each side equals 1/4 Earth's circumference is clearly greater than 180°. The globe on the right shows that Earth's circumference is only twice its diameter instead of 3.14 times its diameter. Euclidean geometry is also invalid in curved space.



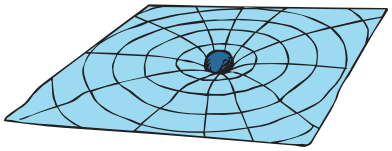


FIGURE 36.16
A two-dimensional analogy of four-dimensional warped spacetime. Spacetime near a star is curved in a way similar to the surface of a waterbed when a heavy ball rests on it.

We cannot visualize the four-dimensional bumps and depressions in spacetime because we are three-dimensional beings. We can get a glimpse of this warping by considering a simplified analogy in two dimensions: a heavy ball resting on the middle of a waterbed. The more massive the ball, the greater it dents or warps the two-dimensional surface. A marble rolled across the bed, but far from the ball, will roll in a relatively straight-line path, whereas a marble rolled near the ball will curve as it rolls across the indented surface. If the curve closes upon itself, its shape resembles an ellipse. The planets that orbit the Sun similarly travel along four-dimensional geodesics in the warped spacetime about the Sun.

CHECK POINT

Euclidean geometry tells us that light travels in straight-line paths in free space. How does this geometry differ from the path of light in free space that follows geodesics?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

Both are seen as the shortest distances between two points and are equivalent.

36.6 Gravitational Waves

fyi

- One of general relativity's predictions is a subtle twisting of spacetime around a massive spinning object. A test for this "frame-dragging" effect would be predictable tiny changes in the orientations of satellite orbits and orbiting gyroscopes. Researchers in 2004 found such confirming evidence.

Every object has mass and therefore warps the surrounding spacetime. When an object undergoes a change in motion—an acceleration—the surrounding warp moves in order to readjust to the new position. These readjustments produce ripples in the overall geometry of spacetime. This is similar to moving a ball that rests on the surface of a waterbed. A disturbance ripples across the waterbed surface in waves; if we move a more massive ball, then we get a greater disturbance and the production of even stronger waves. Similarly for spacetime in the universe. Similar ripples travel outward from a gravitational source at the speed of light and are **gravitational waves.**

Any accelerating object produces a gravitational wave. In general, the more massive the object and the greater its acceleration, the stronger the resulting gravitational wave. But even the strongest waves produced by ordinary astronomical events are extremely weak—the weakest known in nature. For example, the gravitational waves emitted by a vibrating electric charge are a trillion trillion trillion times weaker than the electromagnetic waves emitted by the same charge. Detecting gravitational waves is enormously difficult. As reported in the chapter opening profiles of LIGO investigators, confirmation of gravity waves occurred in early 2016 as tiny distortions of space were sensed by a pair of widely-separated detectors at the Laser Interferometer Gravitational-Wave Observatory based in both Washington State and Louisiana. The discovered waves originated from the merger of a pair of black holes

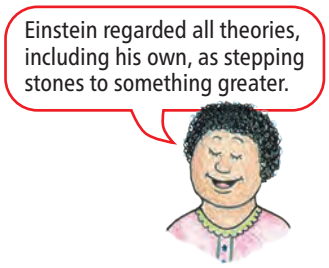
Space is stretching out, carrying the galaxies with it. Visible light in the early universe has stretched out now to be relatively long-wavelength microwave radiation.

some 1.3 billion years ago. Four months later a second wave was discovered from another pair of black holes on the brink of merging. Einstein postulated the existence of gravitational waves in 1916; their confirmation a century later is exhilarating to both the community of scientists and to those who value science.

As weak as they are, gravitational waves are everywhere. Shake your hand back and forth—you have just produced a gravitational wave. It is not very strong, but it exists.

FIGURE 36.17
LIGO laboratories. (Left) Hanford, WA; (Right) Livingston, LA.

36.7 Newtonian and Einsteinian Gravitation



When Einstein formulated his new theory of gravitation, he realized that if his theory is valid, his field equations must reduce to Newtonian equations for gravitation in the weak-field limit. He showed that Newton's law of gravitation is a special case of the broader theory of relativity. Newton's law of gravitation is still an accurate description of most of the interactions between bodies in the solar system and beyond. From Newton's law, one can calculate the orbits of comets and asteroids and even predict the existence of undiscovered planets. Even today, when computing the trajectories of space probes to the Moon and planets, only ordinary Newtonian theory is used. This is because the gravitational field of these bodies is very weak and, from the viewpoint of general relativity, the surrounding spacetime is essentially flat. But for regions of more intense gravitation, where spacetime is more appreciably curved, Newtonian theory cannot adequately account for various phenomena—such as the precession of Mercury's orbit close to the Sun and, in the case of stronger fields, the gravitational red shift and other apparent distortions in measurements of space and time. These distortions reach their limit in the case of a star that collapses to a black hole, where spacetime completely folds over on itself. Only Einsteinian gravitation reaches into this domain.

We saw in Chapter 32 that Newtonian physics is linked at one end with quantum theory, whose domain is the very lightweight and very small—tiny particles and atoms. And now we have seen that Newtonian physics is linked at the other end with relativity theory, whose domain is the very massive and very large. We do not see the world the way the ancient Egyptians, Greeks, or Chinese did. It is unlikely that people in the future will see the universe as we do now. Our view of the universe may be quite limited, and perhaps filled with misconceptions,

but it is most likely clearer than the views of those before us. Our view today stems from the findings of Copernicus, Galileo, Newton, and, more recently, Einstein—findings that were often opposed on the grounds that they diminished the importance of humans in the universe. In the past, being important meant having risen above nature—being apart from nature. We have expanded our vision since then by enormous effort, painstaking observation, and an unrelenting desire to comprehend our surroundings. Seen from today's understanding of the universe, we find our importance in being very much a part of nature, not apart from it. We are the part of nature that is becoming more and more conscious of itself.

Chapter 36 Review

For instructor-assigned homework, go to:
www.masteringphysics.com

SUMMARY OF TERMS (KNOWLEDGE)

General theory of relativity The second of Einstein's theories of relativity, which relates gravity to the properties of space and time.

Principle of equivalence Because observations made in an accelerated frame of reference are indistinguishable from observations made in a gravitational field, any effect produced by gravity can be duplicated by accelerating a frame of reference.

Gravitational red shift The lengthening of the waves of electromagnetic radiation escaping from a massive object.

Geodesic The shortest path between two points in various models of space.

Gravitational wave A gravitational disturbance, generated by an accelerating mass, that propagates through spacetime.

REVIEW CHECK QUESTIONS (COMPREHENSION)

36.1 Principle of Equivalence

1. What is the major difference between the theory of special relativity and the theory of general relativity?
2. In a spaceship accelerating at g, far from Earth's gravity, how does the motion of a dropped ball compare with the motion of a ball dropped at Earth's surface?
3. Exactly what is *equivalent* in the principle of equivalence?

36.2 Bending of Light by Gravity

4. How do the bending of the paths of baseballs and photons by a gravitational field compare?
5. Why was it important that the Sun be eclipsed to measure the deflection of starlight passing near the Sun?

36.3 Gravity and Time: Gravitational Red Shift

6. What effect does strong gravitation have on measurements of time?
7. Which runs slower: a clock at the top of the Empire State Building or a clock on its first floor?
8. How does the frequency of a particular spectral line of the Sun compare with the frequency of that line observed from a source on Earth?
9. If we view events occurring on a star that is collapsing to become a black hole, do we see time speeding up or slowing down?

36.4 Gravity and Space: Motion of Mercury

10. Why is Mercury the best planet for evidence of the relationship between gravitation and space?
11. For what strength of gravitational field is Newton's law of gravity valid?

36.5 Gravity, Space, and a New Geometry

12. Why will a measuring stick placed along the circumference of a rotating disk appear contracted, but not if it is oriented along a radius?
13. The ratio of circumference to diameter for measured circles on a disk equals π when the disk is at rest, but not when the disk is rotating. Explain.
14. What effect does mass have on spacetime?

36.6 Gravitational Waves

15. What occurs in the surrounding space when a massive object undergoes a change in its motion?
16. A star 10 light-years away explodes and produces gravitational waves. How long will it take these waves to reach Earth?
17. Why have gravitational waves been so difficult to detect?

36.7 Newtonian and Einsteinian Gravitation

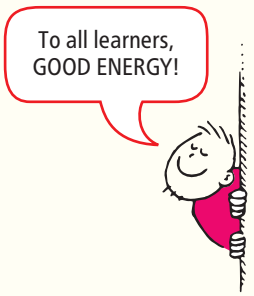
18. Does Einstein's theory of gravitation invalidate Newton's theory of gravitation? Explain.
19. Is Newtonian physics adequate for getting a rocket to the Moon?
20. How does Newtonian physics link with quantum theory and relativity theory?

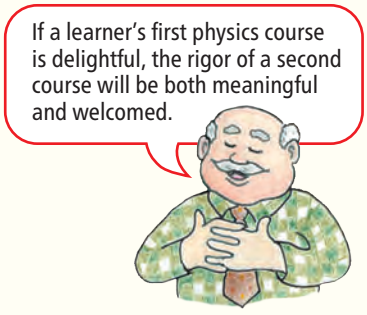
THINK AND EXPLAIN (SYNTHESIS)

21. How do the reference frames that apply to special relativity and to general relativity differ?
22. An astronaut awakes in her closed capsule on the Moon. Can she determine whether her weight is the result of gravitation or of accelerated motion? Explain.
23. How can we create artificial gravity? Explain with a real-life example.
24. A satellite is placed in a circular orbit with an altitude of 40,000 km. If it must appear stationary from the Earth, what should its orbital time period be?
25. What happens to the separation distance between two people if they both walk north at the same rate from two locations on Earth's equator?
26. Any object that absorbs all the colors of visible light appears black. If gravity tends to bend light, can you think of a justification for naming celestial bodies "black holes"?
27. What is the evidence for the claim that light can bend in a gravitational field?
28. It has been seen that light coming from distant stars bends due to the presence of other intermediate stars or the Sun. If photons do not possess mass, how are they impacted by the gravity of the Sun or the stars?
29. Your friend says that the location of a star as observed from a telescope may not always be accurate, as the light coming from it might be bent due to the presence of any intermediate celestial object. Do you agree or disagree, and why?
30. In 2019, when Mercury passed between the Sun and Earth, sunlight was not appreciably bent as it passed Mercury. Why?
31. A setting Sun is seen as distorted on Earth, but not by astronauts on the Moon. What causes this distortion? (Why could this question have been asked in Chapter 28?)
32. If you throw a ball upward in an accelerating train and a train traveling with uniform speed, in which case will you be able to catch the ball? What will happen in the other case?
33. Light undergoes a change in energy when it "falls" in a gravitational field. This change in energy is not evidenced by a change in speed, however. What is the evidence for this change in energy?
34. Imagine you build an underground building that has 100 floors. Is the time shown on a clock on the deepest floor the same as the time on a clock placed on the surface of the Earth or will there be any difference?
35. Edwin Hubble observed that the light from the galaxies is redshifted. What does this mean regarding the universe?
36. Does the gravitational field intensity increase or decrease on the surface of a shrinking star?
37. If the Earth were a perfect sphere, would you age faster at the equator or at the Earth's poles?
38. If one of two twins resides at the bottom of a mountain and the other stays at the top of it, after 10 years whom will you find younger?
39. Which will keep you younger: staying in a garden cottage or staying at the top of a 100 storied building?
40. Which would run faster: a clock at the center of a giant rotating wheel or at the edge? Or would there be no difference?
41. If your friend sends a light signal from the top of the Burj Khalifa to you, standing at the bottom of the building, comment on the redshift or blueshift of the light that reaches you.
42. Photons emitted by a hot star have zero mass. How are they able to interact with gravitational force?
43. If you are looking at an astronaut falling into a black hole from Earth, how will it appear—redshifted or blueshifted?
44. Can a black hole emit gravitational waves although it does not allow light to escape?
45. Is it possible in principle for a photon to be trapped by gravity? And is it possible that time will remain frozen in any location in the Universe?
46. Do you think that the gravitational attraction between the Sun and the Earth remains constant? How would it behave if the Earth revolved around the Sun in a circular orbit?
47. Your friend says that at the North Pole, a step in any direction is a step south. Do you agree?
48. In the astronomical triangle shown in Figure 36.14, with sides defined by light paths, the sum of the interior angles is greater than 180°. Is there any astronomical triangle whose interior angles sum to less than 180°?
49. Do you think a black hole can engulf the whole universe as it has infinite gravity?
50. Were the gravitational waves recently discovered long or short in wavelength?
51. How does the correspondence principle apply to Einstein's and Newton's theories of gravitation?
52. How do investigations that suggest the universe is flat affect its expansion?

THINK AND DISCUSS (EVALUATION)

53. Mike and Jane synchronize their super-accurate watches. Then Mike stays on the ground while Jane does some skydiving. What two reasons account for their watches being out of synch when they meet later?.
54. An astronaut is provided a "gravity" when the spaceship's engines are activated to accelerate the ship. This requires the use of fuel. Is there a way to accelerate and provide "gravity" without the sustained use of fuel? Discuss, perhaps using ideas from Chapter 8.
55. Time freezes inside a black hole. Do you think that inside a black hole, one can become immortal if not torn apart by the vigorous gravitational forces?
56. If you signal a light with high intensity to the Moon from a rocket that is accelerated upward, then what will be the nature of the signal (red-shifted or blue-shifted) received on the surface of the Moon? (Neglect the gravitational field of the Moon.)
57. Addison and Abigail are twins raised in a small town at the North Pole. If Abigail lived at the equator for several years and then returned home, who would you find older and why?
58. If you are watching an astronaut falling into a black hole from the event horizon, what would you notice about his activities with respect to time? Do you think he will feel the same from his frame of reference?





CHAPTER THIRTY SIX Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

Choose the BEST answer to each of the following:

1. Compared with special relativity, general relativity is more concerned with
   (a) acceleration.
   (b) gravitation.
   (c) spacetime geometry.
   (d) all of the above
2. Inside an accelerating spaceship in deep space, a sideways-tossed ball will
   (a) curve as it would in a gravitational field equal to the spaceship's acceleration.
   (b) curve as it would in a gravitational field equal to half of the spaceship's acceleration.
   (c) follow a straight-line path from one side of the interior to the other.
   (d) follow a semicircular path.
3. Assume that you are in a gravitational field and that you fire a cannonball from a cannon at a hypothetical speed of light. Shine a pulse of light from a flashlight parallel to the cannon and the pulse will
   (a) follow a straight-line path.
   (b) curve downward as much as the cannonball.
   (c) curve downward half as much as the cannonball.
   (d) curve slightly upward.
4. According to general relativity, a photon emitted by a star
   (a) loses energy.
   (b) reduces in frequency.
   (c) is red-shifted.
   (d) all of the above
5. If the Sun collapsed to a black hole, Earth would
   (a) be sucked into the black hole.
   (b) follow a straight-line path into space.
   (c) continue in its present orbit.
   (d) evaporate.
6. According to relativity theory, you can experience a longer youth when you
   (a) are near a black hole.
   (b) are in a very large gravitational field.
   (c) travel at nearly the speed of light.
   (d) none of the above
7. The shortest distance between two points in flat Euclidean space is a straight line. The shortest distance between two points on a curved surface is a
   (a) straight line.
   (b) geodesic.
   (c) segment of a great circle.
   (d) none of these
8. A measuring stick on a rapidly rotating disk will not appear to shrink if it is oriented along the
   (a) circumference.
   (b) radius.
   (c) either of these
   (d) neither of these
9. Accelerate an electron and you produce an electromagnetic wave. Accelerate a massive body and you produce
   (a) a gravitational wave.
   (b) a cosmic wave.
   (c) both of these
   (d) neither of these
10. The principle of equivalence tells us that
    (a) mass and energy are forms of each other.
    (b) space and time are forms of each other.
    (c) electricity and magnetism are forms of each other.
    (d) observations made in an accelerating reference frame are indistinguishable from those made in a gravitational field.

Answers and Explanations to Multiple-Choice Practice Exam

1. (d): General relativity is concerned with acceleration, gravitation, and spacetime geometry. **2. (a):** This involves the principle of equivalence and Figure 36.8 in the chapter. The sideways tossed ball will follow the same parabolic path that a similar ball would follow at the same "downward" acceleration. In the spaceships case, acceleration is due to changes in motion. On Earth, acceleration would be due to gravitation. **3. (b):** As in Figure 36.6, the trajectories of both will be the same. Light responds to a gravitational field as much as any material projectile does. **4. (d):** As a photon flies from the surface of a star it is "retarded" by the star's gravity. It loses energy, but not speed. This means a decrease in the photon's frequency, and hence a red shift. **5. (c):** Let the classic equation for gravitational force guide you here: $F = Gm_1m_2/r^2$. The masses of the Sun m_1 and Earth m_2 are the same before and after the Sun shrinks to become a black hole. And the distance r (from the center of Earth to the center of the Sun or black hole) remains the same. So although Earth's climate and other changes would occur, Earth would continue in its orbit. **6. (d):** A simple rule applies here: The effects of relativity never affect you, but always the "other guy!" **7. (b):** Great circles apply to spheres, and straight lines apply to Euclidean space. On curved surfaces the shortest distance between two points is a geodesic. **8. (b):** A radial line is perpendicular to motion in a rotating disc, and does not undergo changes in length as the disk rotates. Only changes along the direction of travel are responsive to relativistic effects. **9. (a):** Gravitational waves are produced by accelerations of massive bodies. The term cosmic wave is without meaning in this chapter. **10. (d):** Although statements (a–c) are correct, they are not what the principle of equivalence in general relativity states. Only (d) states the principle of equivalence.

Author Profile

Becoming a physics instructor and textbook author didn't seem a likely outcome of my earlier years. I grew up in Saugus (near Boston), Massachusetts. In my high school years an influential counselor convinced me that I wouldn't have to take academic courses due to my talent for art. My passions at the time were drawing comic strips, rink roller-skating, and especially boxing, which helped repel school bullies. At age 17, I won the silver medal of the New England Amateur Athletic Union in the 112-pound class. Shortly after that, I delivered newspapers, painted signs, and learned silk-screen printing in Boston, where I met life-long friend Ernie Brown, who influenced me to spend two winters with him in Miami, Florida. I dedicated the eleventh edition of *Conceptual Physics* to Ernie.

In 1953, during the Korean conflict, I was abruptly drafted into the Army. I was fortunate, however, that the war ended on my last day of basic training at Camp Carson in Colorado Springs. My Army discharge occurred during the craze of uranium prospecting, which nurtured the hope of financial security. I took that gamble and remained in Colorado to prospect for uranium, supporting myself as a sign painter in the town of Salida. I discovered uranium-tainted rock in the Sangre de Cristo Mountains that raised my hopes, but not my income. More importantly, I discovered and fell in love with Millie Luna. Winter snow prevented access to my uranium claims so I went back to Saugus, and then to escape the cold New England winters, I returned to Miami.

Life-changing events occurred in Miami. First, I married Millie. Second, I met sign painter and science buff Burl Grey and his intellectual mentor, Jacque Fresco. Both inspired me to pursue a life of science. I returned north and with the G.I. Bill enrolled at Newman Preparatory School in Boston to make up for high-school deficiencies. At the age of 27, I began college at Lowell Technological Institute (now the University of Massachusetts Lowell). After I received a BS in physics, Millie and I and our two children ventured west, where I would earn an MS in physics at Utah State University (USU). There I was inspired by the extraordinary teaching of Farrell Edwards and John J. Merrill. USU friends Huey and Sue Johnson influenced us to follow them to San Francisco, where Huey, a passionate environmentalist, began his career as western director of The Nature Conservancy and soon became California's Secretary of Resources during governor Jerry Brown's administration. Huey also founded The Trust for Public Land, an organization that saves tracts of land from unwanted commercial development, and he later founded the nonprofit Resource Renewal Institute. Best friend extraordinaire Huey passed away in 2020 from complications after a fall. It was with Huey's assistance in 1964 that I was hired as a long-term substitute at City College of San Francisco (CCSF).

My teaching assignment was the course least popular among my colleagues, Physics 10, which was geared toward nonscience majors—the very students I wanted to reach. My teaching goal was not to swell the ranks of physicists, but to share my love of physics with all students. I very soon discovered that the best of my algebraic derivations were unappreciated. Nor did students think much of my simple problems that used equations as recipes to come up with numerical answers. My teaching evolved to "physics without numbers," and Physics 10 soon became the most popular elective course on campus. I yearned to teach from a new and exciting textbook, *Physics for the Inquiring Mind,* by Eric Rogers, but my department chair found it unacceptable because it was too large and heavy for students to tote around.

That meant I would have to write my own book. Inspired by the Rogers book, The *Feynman Lectures on Physics*

based on Richard Feynman's lectures at Caltech, and *Basic Physics,* a new, clearly written textbook by Kenneth Ford, I frantically spent the summer of 1969, the year of the first Moon landing, creating *Conceptual Physics*. The spiral-bound result was graciously printed on campus by the college bookstore. Its coverage of topics was in step with my nemesis as a student—information overload. It covered only the fundamentals of physics. It had no numerical problems requiring even simple algebra. None. As such, it was a quite local CCSF book.

Enrollment for Physics 10 had grown to more than a thousand per semester. Curious textbook sales representatives thought that *Conceptual Physics* could be more than a local book. To make a long and interesting story short, Little, Brown and Company published it in 1971 at a time when college students nationwide were demanding relevance in their courses. With its subtitle, *A New Introduction to Your Environment, Conceptual Physics* was seen as very relevant. I was surprised that it gained acceptance beyond CCSF, especially at the University of California at Berkeley. To add to the accuracy of the physics, in succeeding editions Ken Ford volunteered his editorial pen to my writing. I dedicated the eighth and eleventh editions to him. *Conceptual Physics* became the dominant book for liberal arts physics courses in the United States, and also internationally.

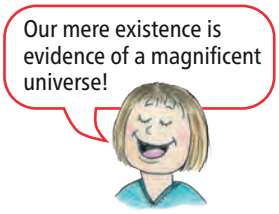
Teaching was not confined to CCSF. On Wednesday evenings, I taught at the San Francisco Exploratorium. I was often honored when founder Frank Oppenheimer sat in on my classes. When musical sounds was the topic, with his collection of woodwind instruments, Frank did the teaching, and I sat in. The same occurred when physicist and X-ray optics specialist Albert Baez took part in my classes. Times were wonderful teaching with Frank and Al.

As an author, I never went the common route of following an introductory textbook with an algebra/trig-based book and then a calculus-based textbook. Instead, I elected to keep improving *Conceptual Physics* for nonscience students, edition after edition, a continuous striving to increase the clarity of physics topics—to create a physics text that would instill a love of physics in my students—and years later with the hope it could be a resource for the liberal arts community as Feynman's *Lectures* are to scientists and engineers.

In my personal life, my wife Millie peacefully passed away in 2004, leaving me with three wonderful children and seven well-loved grandchildren. A year later I married Lillian Lee. Both of my marriages were to impressive women. Lillian works with me on every stage of book creation, and her eye for detail adds clarity to my writing. Hence, I dedicate this edition to her.

I never traveled outside of the United States until age 40. Since then, summers were devoted to world travel. My teaching took me further afield as well, mainly to the University of California at both Berkeley and Santa Cruz, and the two university campuses in Hawaii. In Hawaii, I was invited to teach in a video studio. Little did I realize that those lectures would remain popular today.

A move from Hilo, Hawaii, to St. Petersburg, Florida, brought me closer to my pal from my roller-skating days, Paul Ryan (pictured in all my books). Lil and I now split our time between St. Petersburg and San Francisco, continually polishing the lens through which students can learn that nature's major rules are revealed in the laws of physics, all nicely summarized in fundamental equations. Teaching these equations as the rules of nature has been an awesome experience.



More awesome is being born. The chances of being born a healthy human are so miniscule that being alive is the highest prize of the universe. But that prize comes with a certainty—being born means eventually dying. Before birth, our experience of the universe and all its happenings was blank. With no consciousness there was nothing. If that blank state is our fate after death, then there's nothing to fear. Now, if there's more, hooray! But there needn't be. Death as the price of birth is a fair cosmic bargain. Along with grieving the loss of loved ones, we should celebrate that they knew life.

APPENDIX A

On Measurement and Unit Conversions

Two major systems of measurement prevail in the world today: the *United States Customary System* (USCS, formerly called the British system of units), used in the United States of America and formerly in Burma, and the *Système International* (SI) (known also as the international system and as the metric system), used everywhere else. Each system has its own standards of length, mass, and time. The units of length, mass, and time are sometimes called the *fundamental units* because, once they are selected, other quantities can be expressed in terms of them.

United States Customary System

Based on the British Imperial System, the USCS is familiar to everyone in the United States. It uses the foot as the unit of length, the pound as the unit of weight or force, and the second as the unit of time. The USCS is presently being replaced by the international system—rapidly in science and technology and some sports (track and swimming), but so slowly in other areas and in some specialties that it seems the change may never come. For example, we will continue to buy seats on the 50-yard line. Some remember camera film in millimeters and compact discs in inches.

For measuring time, there is no difference between the two systems except that in pure SI the only unit is the second (s, not sec) with prefixes; in general, however, minute, hour (h, not hr), day, year, and so on are accepted in the USCS.

Système International

During the 1960 International Conference on Weights and Measures held in Paris, the SI units were defined and given status. Table A.1 lists SI units and their symbols. SI is based on the *metric system*, which was created by French scientists after the French Revolution and became official in 1799. The orderliness of this system makes it useful for scientific work, and it is used by scientists all over the world. The metric system branches into two systems of units. In one of these the unit of length is the meter, the unit of mass is the kilogram, and the unit of time is the second. This is called the *meter-kilogram-second* (mks) system and is preferred in physics. The other branch is the *centimeter-gram-second* (cgs) system, which, because of its smaller values, is favored in chemistry. The cgs and mks units are related to each other as follows: 100 centimeters equal 1 meter; 1000 grams equal 1 kilogram. Table A.2 lists several units of length related to each other.

TABLE A.1 SI UNITS

Quantity	Unit	Symbol
Length	meter	m
Mass	kilogram	kg
Time	second	s
Force	newton	N
Energy	joule	J
Current	ampere	A
Temperature	kelvin	K

TABLE A.2 CONVERSIONS BETWEEN DIFFERENT UNITS OF LENGTH

Unit of Length	Kilometer	Meter	Centimeter	Inch	Foot	Mile
1 kilometer	= 1	1000	100,000	39,370	3280.84	0.62140
1 meter	= 0.00100	1	100	39.370	3.28084	6.21×10^4
1 centimeter	= 1.0×10^5	0.0100	1	0.39370	0.032808	6.21×10^6
1 inch	= 2.54×10^5	0.02540	2.5400	1	0.08333	1.58×10^5
1 foot	= 3.05×10^4	0.30480	30.480	12	1	1.89×10^4
1 mile	= 1.60934	1609.34	160,934	63,360	5280	1

The major advantage of a metric system is that it uses the decimal system, in which all units may be converted to smaller or larger units by dividing or multiplying by 10. The prefixes given in Table A.3 are commonly used to show the relationships among units.

TABLE A.3 SOME PREFIXES

Prefix	Definition
nano-	One-billionth: a nanosecond is one-billionth of a second
micro-	One-millionth: a microsecond is one-millionth of a second
milli-	One-thousandth: a milligram is one-thousandth of a gram
centi-	One-hundredth: a centimeter is one-hundredth of a meter
kilo-	One thousand: a kilogram is 1000 grams
mega-	One million: a megahertz is 1 million hertz
giga-	One billion: a gigahertz is 1 billion hertz

Meter

The standard of length of the metric system originally was defined in terms of the distance from the North Pole to the equator. This distance was defined at the time to equal 10,000 kilometers. One ten-millionth of this, the meter, was carefully determined and marked by means of scratches on a bar of platinum–iridium alloy. This bar is kept at the International Bureau of Weights and Measures in France. The standard meter in France was later calibrated in terms of the wavelength of light—in 1960 to be 1,650,763.73 times the wavelength of orange light emitted by the atoms of the gas krypton-86. In 1983 it was defined to be the length of the path traveled by light in a vacuum during a time interval of 1/299,792,458 of a second.

Kilogram

The SI unit of mass is the kilogram (kg), defined in terms of fixed fundamental constants of nature, specifically the fixed numerical value of the Planck constant h to be $6.62607015 \times 10^{-34}$ when expressed in the unit J·s, which is equal to $kg \cdot m^2 \cdot s^{-1}$, where the meter and the second are defined by other fundamental constants. This definition makes the kilogram consistent with the familiar older definition as the mass of a block of platinum–iridium alloy preserved at the International Bureau of Weights and Measures in France (Figure A.1). The kilogram equals 1000 grams. A gram is the mass of 1 cubic centimeter (cc) of water at a temperature of 4°C. (The standard pound is equal to 0.4536 kilogram.)

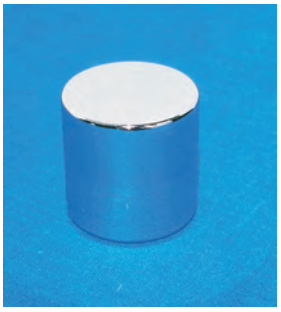


FIGURE A.1
The standard kilogram.

Second

The official unit of time in both the USCS and the SI is the second. Until 1956, it was defined in terms of the mean solar day, which was divided into 24 hours. Each hour was divided into 60 minutes and each minute into 60 seconds. Thus, there were 86,400 seconds per day, and the second was defined as 1/86,400 of the mean solar day. This proved unsatisfactory because the rate of rotation of Earth is gradually becoming slower. In 1956, the mean solar day of the year 1900 was chosen as the standard on which to base the second. In 1964, the second was officially defined as the time taken by a cesium-133 atom to make 9,192,631,770 vibrations.

Newton

One newton is the force required to accelerate 1 kilogram at 1 meter per second per second. This unit is named after Sir Isaac Newton.

Joule

One joule is equal to the amount of work done by a force of 1 newton acting over a distance of 1 meter. In 1948, the joule was adopted as the unit of energy by the International Conference on Weights and Measures. Therefore, the specific heat of water at 15°C is now given as 4185.5 joules per kilogram Celsius degree. This figure is always associated with the mechanical equivalent of heat—4.1855 joules per calorie.

Ampere

The ampere is defined as the intensity of the constant electric current that, when maintained in two parallel conductors of infinite length and negligible cross-section and placed 1 meter apart in a vacuum, would produce between them a force equal to 2×10^{-7} newton per meter length. In our treatment of electric current in this text, we have used the not-so-official but easier-to-comprehend definition of the ampere as being the rate of flow of 1 coulomb of charge per second, where 1 coulomb is the charge of 6.25×10^{18} electrons.

Kelvin

The fundamental unit of temperature is named after the scientist William Thomson, Lord Kelvin. The kelvin is defined to be 1/273.15 the thermodynamic temperature of the triple point of water (the fixed point at which ice, liquid water, and water vapor coexist in equilibrium). This definition was adopted in 1968 when it was decided to change the name *degree Kelvin* (°K) to *kelvin* (K). The temperature of melting ice at atmospheric pressure is 273.15 K. The temperature at which the vapor pressure of pure water is equal to standard atmospheric pressure is 373.15 K (the temperature of boiling water at standard atmospheric pressure).

Area

The unit of area is a square that has a standard unit of length as a side. In the USCS, it is a square with sides that are each 1 foot in length, called 1 square foot and written 1 $ft.^2$ In the international system, it is a square with sides that are 1 meter in length, which makes a unit of area of 1 $m.^2$ In the cgs system it is 1 $cm.^2$ The area of a given surface is specified by the number of square feet, square meters, or square centimeters that would fit into it. The area of a rectangle equals the base times the height. The area of a circle is equal to πr^2, where π is the ratio of the circumference of a circle to its diameter, about 3.14. Formulas for the surface areas of other objects can be found in geometry textbooks or on the Web.

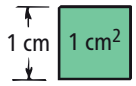


FIGURE A.2
Unit square.

Volume

The volume of an object refers to the space it occupies. The unit of volume is the space taken up by a cube that has a standard unit of length for its edge. In the USCS, one unit of volume is the space occupied by a cube 1 foot on an edge and is called 1 cubic foot, written 1 ft.^{3} In the metric system, it is the space occupied by a cube with sides of 1 meter (SI) or 1 centimeter (cgs). It is written 1 m^3 or 1 cm^3 (or cc). The volume of a given space is specified by the number of cubic feet, cubic meters, or cubic centimeters that will fill it.

In the USCS, volumes can be measured in quarts, gallons, and cubic inches as well as in cubic feet. There are 1728 $(12 \times 12 \times 12)$ cubic inches in 1 ft.^{3} A U.S. gallon is a volume of 231 in.^{3} Four quarts equal 1 gallon. In the SI, volumes are also measured in liters. A liter is equal to 1000 cm.^{3} One liter is about 1.06 quarts.

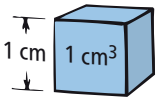


FIGURE A.3
Unit volume.

Unit Conversion

Often in science, and especially in a laboratory setting, it is necessary to convert from one unit to another. To do so, you need only multiply the given quantity by the appropriate *conversion factor*.

All conversion factors can be written as ratios in which the numerator and denominator represent the equivalent quantity expressed in different units. Because any quantity divided by itself is equal to 1, all conversion factors are physically equal to 1. For example, the following two conversion factors are both derived from the relationship 100 centimeters = 1 meter:

$$\frac{100 \text{ centimeters}}{1 \text{ meter}} = 1 \qquad \frac{1 \text{ meter}}{100 \text{ centimeters}} = 1$$

Because all conversion factors are physically equal to 1, multiplying a quantity by a conversion factor does not change the value of the quantity. What does change are the units and the amount of those units. Suppose you measured an item to be 60 centimeters in length. You can convert this measurement to meters by multiplying it by the conversion factor that allows you to cancel centimeters.

CHECK POINT

Convert 60 centimeters to meters.

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

$$(60 \cancel{\text{centimeters}}) \frac{(1 \text{ meter})}{(100 \cancel{\text{centimeters}})} = 0.6 \text{ meter}$$

↑ quantity in centimeters ↑ conversion factor ↑ quantity in meters

To derive a conversion factor, consult a table that presents unit equalities, such as Table A.2. Then multiply the given quantity by the conversion factor and, voilà, the units are converted. Always be careful to write down your units. They are your ultimate guide, telling you what numbers go where and whether you are setting up the equation properly.

APPENDIX B

More About Motion

When we describe the motion of something, we say how it moves relative to something else (Chapter 3). In other words, motion requires a reference frame (an observer, origin, and axes). We are free to choose this frame's location and to have it moving relative to another frame. When our frame of motion has zero acceleration, it is called an *inertial frame*. In an inertial frame, force causes an object to accelerate in accord with Newton's laws. When our frame of reference is accelerated, we observe fictitious forces and motions (Chapter 8). Observations from a carousel, for example, are different when it is rotating and when it is at rest. Our description of motion and force depends on our "point of view."

We distinguish between *speed* and *velocity* (Chapter 3). Speed is how fast something moves, or the time rate of change of position (excluding direction): a *scalar* quantity. Velocity includes the direction of motion: a *vector* quantity whose magnitude is speed. Objects moving at constant velocity move the same distance in the same time in the same direction.

Another distinction between speed and velocity has to do with the difference between distance and change in position, or *displacement*. Speed is *distance per duration*, while velocity is *displacement per duration*. Displacement differs from distance. For example, a commuter who travels 10 kilometers to work and back travels 20 kilometers but has "gone" nowhere. The distance traveled is 20 kilometers and the displacement is zero. Although the instantaneous speed and instantaneous velocity have the same value at the same instant, the average speed and average velocity can be very different. The average speed of this commuter's round trip is 20 kilometers divided by the total commute time—a value greater than zero. But the average velocity is zero. In science, displacement is often more important than distance. (To avoid information overload, we have not treated this distinction in the text.)

Acceleration is the rate at which velocity changes. This can be a change in speed only, a change in direction only, or both. Slowing down is often called *deceleration*.

In Newtonian space and time, space has three dimensions—length, width, and height—each with two directions. We can go, stop, and return in any of them. Time has one dimension, with two directions—past and future. We cannot stop or return, only go. In Einsteinian spacetime, these four dimensions merge (Chapter 35).

Computing Velocity and Distance Traveled on an Inclined Plane

Recall, from Chapter 2, Galileo's experiments with inclined planes. Consider a plane tilted such that the speed of a rolling ball increases at the rate of 2 meters per second each second—an acceleration of 2 m/s^2. At the instant it starts moving, the ball's velocity is zero; 1 second later, it is rolling at 2 m/s; at

the end of the next second, 4 m/s; at the end of the next second, 6 m/s; and so on. If the ball starts from rest, its velocity at any instant is simply

$$\text{Velocity} = \text{acceleration} \times \text{time}$$

or, in shorthand notation,

$$v = at$$

(It is customary to omit the multiplication sign, $\times$ when expressing relationships in mathematical form. When two symbols are written together, such as the *at* in this case, it is understood that they are multiplied.)

How fast the ball rolls is one thing; how *far* it rolls is another. To understand the relationship between acceleration and distance traveled, we must first investigate the relationship between *instantaneous velocity* and *average velocity*. If the ball shown in Figure B.1 starts from rest, it will roll a distance of 1 meter in the first second. Question: What will be its average speed? The answer is 1 m/s (because it covered 1 meter in the interval of 1 second). But we have seen that the *instantaneous velocity* at the end of the first second is 2 m/s. Since the acceleration is uniform, the average in any time interval is found the same way we usually find the average of any two numbers: add them and divide by 2. (Be careful not to do this when acceleration is not uniform!) So, if we add the initial speed (zero in this case) and the final speed of 2 m/s and then divide by 2, we get 1 m/s for the average velocity.

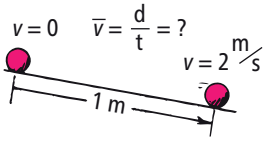


FIGURE B.1

The ball rolls 1 m down the incline in 1 s and reaches a speed of 2 m/s. Its average speed, however, is 1 m/s. Do you see why?

In each succeeding second, we see the ball roll a longer distance down the same slope in Figure B.2. Note that the distance covered in the second time interval is 3 meters. This is because the average speed of the ball in this interval

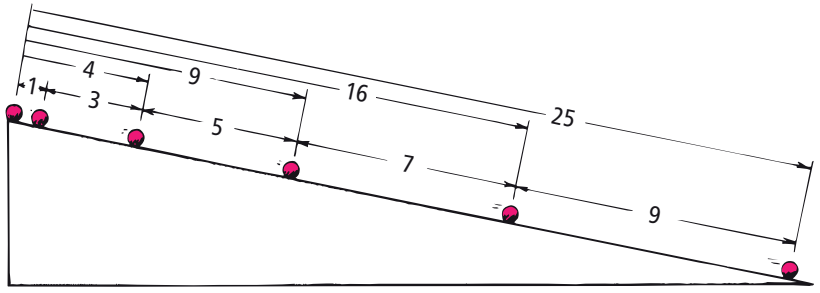


FIGURE B.2

If the ball covers 1 m during its first second, then, in each successive second, it will cover the odd-numbered sequence of 3, 5, 7, 9 m, and so on. Note that the total distance covered increases as the square of the total time.

CHECK POINT

During the span of the second time interval, the ball begins at 2 m/s and ends at 4 m/s. What is the *average speed* of the ball during this 1-s interval? What is its acceleration?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

$$\text{Average speed} = \frac{\text{beginning} + \text{final speed}}{2}$$

$$= \frac{2\ \text{m/s} + 4\ \text{m/s}}{2} = 3\ \text{m/s}$$

$$\text{Acceleration} = \frac{\text{change in velocity}}{\text{time interval}}$$

$$= \frac{4\ \text{m/s} - 2\ \text{m/s}}{1\ \text{s}} = \frac{2\ \text{m/s}}{1\ \text{s}} = 2\ \text{m/s}^2$$

is 3 m/s. In the next 1-second interval, the average speed is 5 m/s, so the distance covered is 5 meters. It is interesting to see that successive increments of distance increase as a *sequence of odd numbers*. Nature clearly follows mathematical rules!

Investigate Figure B.2 carefully and note the *total* distance covered as the ball accelerates down the plane. The distances go from zero to 1 meter in 1 second, zero to 4 meters in 2 seconds, zero to 9 meters in 3 seconds, zero to 16 meters in 4 seconds, and so on in succeeding seconds. The sequence for *total distances* covered is of the *squares of the time*. We'll investigate the relationship between distance traveled and the square of the time for constant acceleration more closely in the case of free fall.

Computing Distance When Acceleration Is Constant

How far will an object released from rest fall in a given time? To answer this question, let us consider the case in which the object falls freely for 3 seconds, starting at rest. If we ignore air resistance, the object will have a constant acceleration of about 10 meters per second each second (actually more like 9.8 m/s^2, but we want to make the numbers easier to follow).

$$\text{Velocity at the } \textit{beginning} = 0 \text{ m/s}$$

$$\text{Velocity at the } \textit{end} \text{ of 3 seconds} = (10 \times 3) \text{ m/s}$$

$$\textit{Average} \text{ velocity} = \tfrac{1}{2} \text{ the sum of these two speeds}$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2} \times (0 + 10 \times 3) \text{ m/s}$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2} \times 10 \times 3 = 15 \text{ m/s}$$

$$\text{Distance traveled} = \text{average velocity} \times \text{time}$$

$$= (\tfrac{1}{2} \times 10 \times 3) \times 3$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2} \times 10 \times 3^2 = 45 \text{ m}$$

We can see from the meanings of these numbers that

$$\text{Distance traveled} = \tfrac{1}{2} \times \text{acceleration} \times \text{square of time}$$

This equation is true for an object falling not only for 3 seconds but for any length of time, as long as the acceleration is constant. If we let d stand for the distance traveled, a for the acceleration, and t for the time, the rule may be written, in shorthand notation, as

$$d = \tfrac{1}{2} at^2$$

This relationship was first deduced by Galileo. He reasoned that, if an object falls for, say, twice the time, it will fall with *twice the average speed*. Since it falls for *twice* the time at *twice* the average speed, it will fall *four* times as far. Similarly, if an object falls for *three* times the time, it will have an average speed *three* times as great and will fall *nine* times as far. Galileo reasoned that the total distance fallen should be proportional to the *square* of the time.

In the case of objects in free fall, it is customary to use the letter g to represent the acceleration instead of the letter a (g because acceleration is due to *gravity*). Although the value of g varies slightly in different parts of the world, it is approximately equal to 9.8 m/s^2 (32 ft/s^2). If we use g for the acceleration of a freely falling object (negligible air resistance), the equations for falling objects starting from a rest position become

$$v = gt$$
$$d = \tfrac{1}{2}gt^2$$

Much of the difficulty in learning physics, like learning any discipline, has to do with learning the language—the many terms and definitions. Speed is somewhat different from velocity, and acceleration is vastly different from speed or velocity.

CHECK POINT

1. An auto starting from rest has a constant acceleration of 4 m/s^2. How far will it go in 5 s?
2. How far will an object released from rest fall in 1 s? In this case the acceleration is $g = 9.8\ m/s^2$.
3. If it takes 4 s for an object to freely fall to the water when released from the Golden Gate Bridge, how high is the bridge?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. Distance $= \frac{1}{2} \times 4 \times 5^2 = 50$ m
2. Distance $= \frac{1}{2} \times 9.8 \times 1^2 = 4.9$ m
3. Distance $= \frac{1}{2} \times 9.8 \times 4^2 = 78.4$ m

Notice that the units of measurement when multiplied give the proper units of meters for distance:

$$d = \tfrac{1}{2} \times 9.8\ m/\cancel{s}^2 \times 16\cancel{s}^2 = 78.4\ m$$

Mass and weight are related but are different from each other. Likewise for work, heat, and temperature. Please be patient with yourself as you find that learning the similarities and the differences among physics concepts is not an easy task.

So far our equations for speed and distance have been for starting-from-rest cases. What of objects that undergo uniform acceleration and don't start from rest? A little thought will show that

$$v = v_0 + at$$
$$d = v_0 t + \tfrac{1}{2}at^2$$

We've simply tacked on the initial conditions: velocity beginning with v_0 (the subscript 0 indicates an initial time of zero) and distance traveled increased by $v_0 t$. Common sense tells you that when acceleration is zero, these equations become

$$v = v_0$$
$$d = v_0 t$$

APPENDIX C

Graphing

Graphs: A Way to Express Quantitative Relationships

Graphs, like equations and tables, show how two or more quantities relate to each other. Since investigating relationships between quantities makes up much of the work of physics, equations, tables, and graphs are important physics tools.

Equations are the most concise way to describe quantitative relationships. For example, consider the equation $v = v_0 + gt$. It compactly describes how a freely falling object's velocity depends on its initial velocity, acceleration due to gravity, and time. Equations are nice shorthand expressions for relationships among quantities.

Tables give values of variables in list form. The dependence of v on t in $v = v_0 + gt$ can be shown by a table that lists various values v for corresponding times t. Table 3.2 on page 71 is an example. Tables are especially useful when the mathematical relationship between quantities is not known, or when numerical values must be given to a high degree of accuracy. Also, tables are handy for recording experimental data.

Graphs *visually* represent relationships between quantities. By looking at the shape of a graph, you can quickly tell a lot about how the variables are related. For this reason, graphs can help clarify the meaning of an equation or a table of numbers. And, when the equation is not already known, a graph can help reveal the relationship between variables. Experimental data are often graphed for this reason.

Graphs are helpful in another way. If a graph contains enough plotted points, it can be used to estimate values between the points (interpolation) or values following the points (extrapolation).

Cartesian Graphs

The most common and useful graph in science is the *Cartesian* graph. On a Cartesian graph, possible values of one variable are represented on the vertical axis (called the *y-axis*) and possible values of the other variable are plotted on the horizontal axis (the *x-axis*).

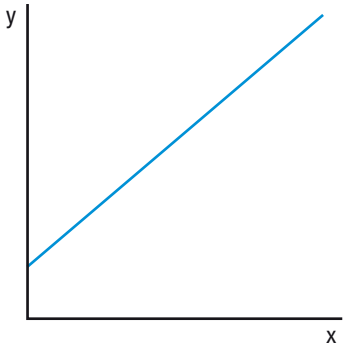


FIGURE C.1

Figure C.1 shows a graph of two variables, x and y, that are *directly proportional* to each other. A direct proportionality is a type of *linear* relationship. Linear relationships have straight-line graphs—the easiest kinds of graphs to interpret. On the graph shown in Figure C.1, the continuous straight-line rise from left to right tells you that, as x increases, y increases. More specifically, it shows that y increases at a constant rate with respect to x. As x increases, y increases. The graph of a direct proportionality often passes through the "origin"—the point at the lower left where $x = 0$ and $y = 0$. In Figure C.1, however, we see that the graph begins where y has a nonzero value when $x = 0$. The value y has a "head start."

Figure C.2 shows a graph of the equation $v = v_0 + gt$. Speed v is plotted along the y-axis, and time t along the x-axis. As you can see, there is a linear relationship between v and t. Note that the initial speed is 10 m/s. If the initial speed were 0, as in dropping an object from rest, then the graph would intercept the

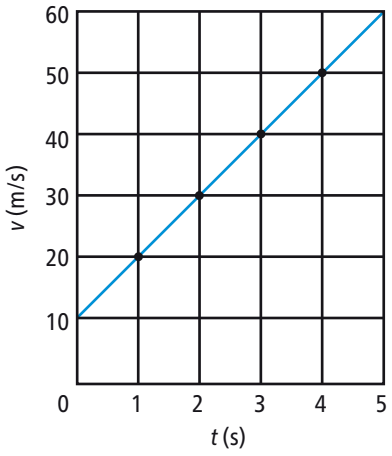


FIGURE C.2

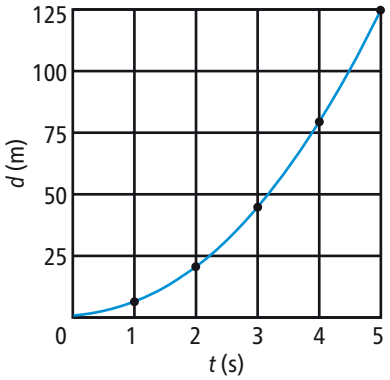


FIGURE C.3

origin, where both v and t are 0. But we see that the graph originates at $v = 10\ \text{m/s}$ when $t = 0$, showing a 10-m/s "head start."

Many physically significant relationships are more complicated than linear relationships, however. If you double the size of a room, the area of the floor increases four times; tripling the size of the room increases the floor area nine times; and so on. This is one example of a *nonlinear* relationship. Figure C.3 shows a graph of another nonlinear relationship: distance versus time in the equation of free fall from rest, $d = \frac{1}{2}gt^2$.

Figure C.4 shows a *radiation curve*. The *curve* (or graph) shows the rather complex nonlinear relationship between intensity I and radiation wavelength λ for a glowing object at 2000 K. The graph shows that radiation is most intense when λ equals about 1.4 μm. Which is brighter: radiation at 0.5 μm or radiation at 4.0 μm? The graph quickly tells you that radiation at 4.0 μm is appreciably more intense.

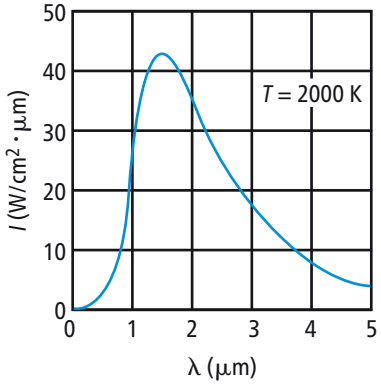


FIGURE C.4

Slope and Area Under the Curve

Quantitative information can be obtained from a graph's slope and the area under the curve. The slope of the graph in Figure C.2 represents the rate at which v increases relative to t. It can be calculated by dividing a segment Δv along the y-axis

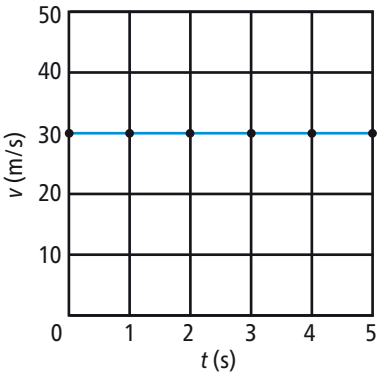


FIGURE C.5

by a corresponding segment Δt along the x-axis. For example, dividing Δv of 30 m/s by Δt of 3 s gives $\Delta v/\Delta t = 10\ \text{m/s} \cdot \text{s} = 10\ \text{m/s}^2$, the acceleration due to gravity. By contrast, consider the graph in Figure C.5, which is a horizontal straight line. Its slope of zero shows zero acceleration—that is, constant speed. The graph shows that the speed is 30 m/s throughout the entire 5-second interval. The rate of change, or slope, of the speed with respect to time is zero—there is no change in speed at all.

The area under the curve is an important feature of a graph because it often has a physical interpretation. For example, consider the area under the graph of v versus t shown in Figure C.6. The shaded region is a rectangle with sides 30 m/s and 5 s. Its area is $30\ \text{m/s} \times 5\ \text{s} = 150\ \text{m}$. In this example, the area is the distance covered by an object moving at a constant speed of 30 m/s for 5 s ($d = vt$).

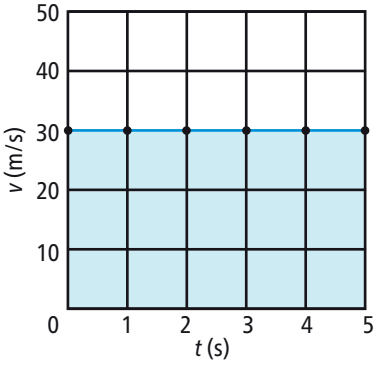


FIGURE C.6

The area need not be rectangular. The area beneath any curve of v versus t represents the change in position in a given time interval. Similarly, the area under a curve of acceleration versus time gives the change of velocity in a time interval. The area under a force-versus-time curve gives the change of momentum. (What does the area under a force-versus-distance curve give?) The nonrectangular area under various curves that represent functions, including rather complicated ones, can be found by way of an important branch of mathematics—*integral calculus*.

Graphing with *Conceptual Physics*

You may develop basic graphing skills in the laboratory part of this course. The labs "Sonic Ranger" and "Go! Go! Go!" introduce you to motion-graphing concepts. "Motivating the Moving Man" uses a computer simulation that generates motion graphs. "Force Mirror," like "Sonic Ranger," involves sensor-generated graphs with force sensors rather than motion sensors. "Totally Stressed Out" requires manual graphing of Hooke's law data. The lab "The Weight" places emphasis on the interpretation of the slope of a plot. In "Water Waves in an Electric Sink" and "High Quiet Low Loud," you'll see how graphs can be used to represent waves and sounds.

You may also learn in the lab part of your *Conceptual Physics* course that computers can graph data for you. You are not being lazy when you graph your data with a software program. Instead of investing time and energy scaling the axes and plotting points, you spend your time and energy investigating the meaning of the graph, a high level of thinking!

CHECK POINT

Figure C.7 is a graphical representation of a ball dropped into a mine.

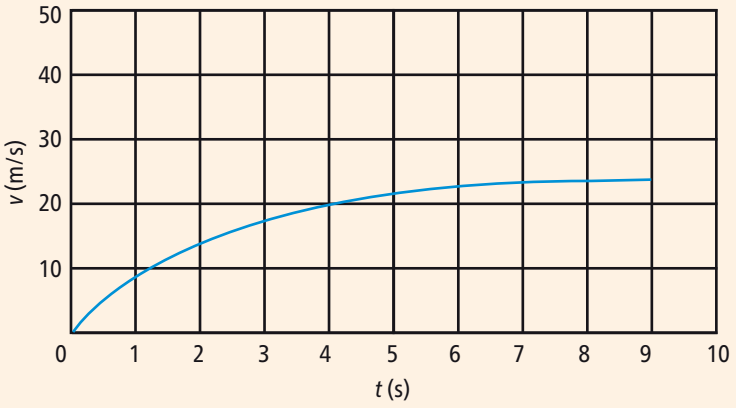


FIGURE C.7

1. How long did the ball take to hit the bottom?
2. What was the ball's speed when it struck bottom?
3. What does the decreasing slope of the graph tell you about the acceleration of the ball with increasing speed?
4. Did the ball reach terminal speed before hitting the bottom of the shaft? If so, about how many seconds did it take to reach its terminal speed?
5. What is the approximate depth of the mine shaft?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

1. 9 s
2. 24 m/s
3. Acceleration decreases as speed increases (due to air resistance).
4. Yes (since the slope curves to zero), about 7 s.
5. The depth is about 170 m. (The area under the curve is about 17 squares, each of which represents 10 m.)

APPENDIX D

Vector Applications

Vectors are featured in Chapters 2–5. Recall that a vector quantity is a directed quantity—one specified by both magnitude and direction. Vectors may be represented by arrows, with the length of the arrow being the magnitude and the arrowhead showing direction. Vectors that add together are *component vectors*. The sum of component vectors is the *resultant*.

Examples of Vectors and Their Components

1. Ernie Brown pushes a lawnmower and applies a force that pushes it forward and also against the ground. In Figure D.1, **F** represents the force applied by Ernie. We can separate this force into two components. The vector **D** represents the downward component, and **S** is the sideways component, the force that moves the lawnmower forward. If we know the magnitude and direction of the vector **F**, we can estimate the magnitude of the components from the vector diagram.

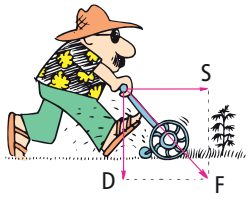


FIGURE D.1

2. Would it be easier to push or pull a wheelbarrow over a step? Figure D.2 shows the force at the wheel's center. When you push a wheelbarrow, part of the force is directed downward, which makes it harder to get over the step. When you pull, however, part of the pulling force is directed upward, which helps to lift the wheel over the step. Note that the vector diagram suggests that pushing the wheelbarrow may not get it over the step at all. Do you see that the height of the step, the radius of the wheel, and the angle of the applied force determine whether the wheelbarrow can be pushed over the step? We see how vectors help us analyze a situation so that we can see just what the problem is!

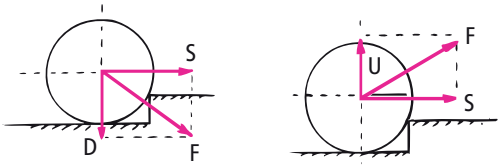


FIGURE D.2

3. If we consider the components of the weight of an object rolling down an incline, we can see why its speed depends on the angle. Note that the steeper the incline, the greater the component **S** becomes and the faster the object rolls. When the incline is vertical, **S** becomes equal to the weight, and the object attains maximum acceleration, 9.8 m/s^2. There are two more force vectors that are not shown: the normal force **N**, which is equal and oppositely directed to **D**, and the friction force **f**, acting at the barrel–plane contact.

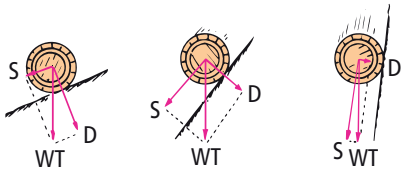


FIGURE D.3

4. When moving air strikes the underside of an airplane wing, the force of the air impact against the wing may be represented by a single vector perpendicular to the plane of the wing (Figure D.4). We represent the force vector as acting midway along the lower wing surface, where the dot is, and pointing above the wing to show the direction of the resulting wind impact force. This force can be broken up into two components, one sideways and the other up. The upward component, **U**, is called *lift*. The sideways component, **S**, is called *drag*. If the aircraft is to fly at constant velocity at constant altitude, then lift must equal the weight of the aircraft and the thrust of the plane's engines must equal drag. The magnitude of lift (and drag) can be altered by changing the speed of the airplane or by changing the angle (called *angle of attack*) between the wing and the horizontal.

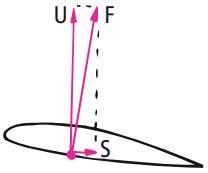


FIGURE D.4

5. Consider the satellite moving clockwise in Figure D.5. Everywhere in its orbital path, gravitational force **F** pulls it toward the center of the host planet. At position A, we see **F** separated into two components: **f**, which is tangent to the path of the projectile, and

f′, which is perpendicular to the path. The relative magnitudes of these components in comparison to the magnitude of **F** can be seen in the imaginary rectangle they compose; **f** and **f′** are the sides, and **F** is the diagonal. We see that component **f** is along the orbital path but against the direction of motion of the satellite. This force component reduces the speed of the satellite. The other component, **f′**, changes the direction of the satellite's motion and pulls it away from its tendency to go in a straight line. So the path of the satellite curves. The satellite loses speed until it reaches position B. At this farthest point from the planet (apogee), the gravitational force is somewhat weaker but perpendicular to the satellite's motion, and component **f** has reduced to zero. Component **f′**, on the other hand, has increased and is now fully merged to become **F**. The speed at this point is not high enough for circular orbit, and the satellite begins to fall toward the planet. It picks up speed because the component **f** reappears and is in the direction of motion, as shown in position C. The satellite picks up speed until it whips around to position D (perigee), where once again the direction of motion is perpendicular to the gravitational force, **f′** blends to full **F**, and **f** is nonexistent. The speed is in excess of that needed for circular orbit at this distance, and the satellite overshoots to repeat the cycle. Its loss in speed in going from D to B equals its gain in speed from B to D. Kepler discovered that planetary paths are elliptical, but never knew why. Do you?

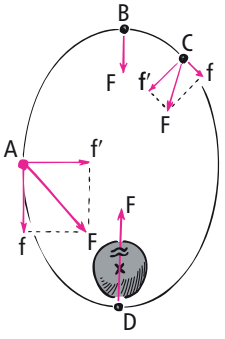


FIGURE D.5

6. Refer to the Polaroids held by Ludmila back in Chapter 29, in Figure 29.35.

In the first picture (a), we see that light is transmitted through the pair of Polaroids because their axes are aligned. The emerging light can be represented as a vector aligned with the polarization axes of the Polaroids. When the Polaroids are crossed (b), no light emerges because light passing through the first Polaroid is perpendicular to the polarization axes of the second Polaroid, with no components along its axis. In the third picture (c), we see that light is transmitted when a third Polaroid is sandwiched at an angle between the crossed Polaroids. The explanation for this is shown in Figure D.6.

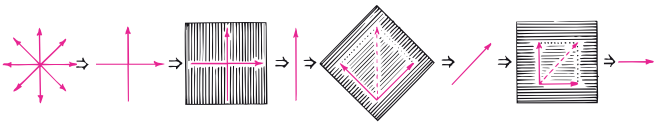


FIGURE D.6

Sailboats

Sailors have always known that a sailboat can sail downwind, in the direction of the wind. Sailors have not always known, however, that a sailboat can sail upwind, against the wind. One reason for this has to do with a feature that is common only to recent sailboats—a fin-like keel that extends deep beneath the bottom of the boat to ensure that the boat will knife through the water in only a forward (or backward) direction. Without a keel, a sailboat could be blown sideways.

Figure D.7 shows a sailboat sailing directly downwind. The force of the wind impact against the sail accelerates the boat. Even if the drag of the water and all other resistance forces are negligible, the maximum speed of the boat is the wind speed. This is because the wind will not make an impact against the sail if the boat is moving as fast as the wind. The wind would have no speed relative to the boat and the sail would simply sag. With no force, there is no acceleration. The force vector in Figure D.7 *decreases* as the boat travels faster. The force vector is maximum when the boat is at rest and the full impact of the wind fills the sail, and it is minimum when the boat travels as fast as the wind. If the boat is somehow propelled to a speed faster than the wind (by way of a motor, for example), then air resistance against the front side of the sail will produce an oppositely directed force vector. This will slow the boat down. Hence, the boat, when driven only by the wind, cannot exceed the wind speed.

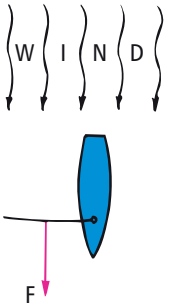


FIGURE D.7

If the sail is oriented at an angle to the wind, as shown in Figure D.8, the boat will move forward, but with less acceleration. There are two reasons for this:

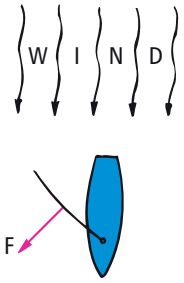


FIGURE D.8

1. The force on the sail is less because the sail does not intercept as much wind in this angular position.
2. The direction of the wind impact force on the sail is not in the direction of the boat's motion but is

perpendicular to the surface of the sail. Generally speaking, whenever any fluid (liquid or gas) interacts with a smooth surface, the force of interaction is perpendicular to the smooth surface.* The boat does not move in the same direction as the perpendicular force on the sail, but is constrained to move in a forward (or backward) direction by its keel.

We can better understand the motion of the boat by resolving the force of the wind impact, **F**, into perpendicular components. The important component is the one that is parallel to the keel, which we label **K**, and the other component is perpendicular to the keel, which we label **T**. It is the component **K**, as shown in Figure D.9, that is responsible for the forward motion of the boat. Component **T** is a useless force that tends to tip the boat over and move it sideways. This component force is offset by the deep keel. Again, the maximum speed of the boat can be no greater than the wind speed.

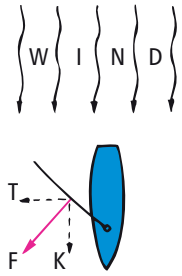


FIGURE D.9

Many sailboats sailing in directions other than exactly downwind (Figure D.10) with their sails properly oriented can exceed the wind speed. In the case of a sailboat cutting across the wind, the wind may continue to make an impact with the sail even after the boat exceeds the wind speed. A surfer, in a similar way, exceeds the velocity of the propelling wave by angling his surfboard across the wave. Greater angles to the propelling medium (wind for the boat, water wave for the surfboard) result in greater speeds. A sailcraft can sail faster cutting across the wind than it can sailing downwind.

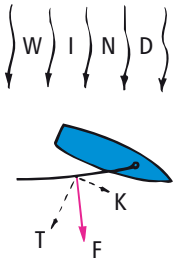


FIGURE D.10

As strange as it may seem, the maximum speed for most sailcraft is attained by cutting into (against) the wind—that is, by angling the sailcraft in a direction upwind! Although a sailboat cannot sail directly upwind, it can reach a destination upwind by angling back and forth in a zigzag fashion. This is called *tacking*. Suppose the boat and sail are as shown in Figure D.11. Component **K** will push the boat along in a forward direction, angling into the wind. In the position shown, the boat can sail faster than the speed of the wind. This is because as the boat travels faster, the impact of the wind is increased. This is similar to running in a rain that comes down at an angle. When you run into the direction of the downpour, the drops strike you harder and more frequently; when you run away from the direction of the downpour, the drops don't strike you as hard or as frequently. In the same way, a boat sailing upwind experiences greater wind impact force, while a boat sailing downwind experiences a decreased wind impact force. In any case, the boat reaches its terminal speed when the opposing forces cancel the force of the wind impact. The opposing forces consist mainly of water resistance against the hull of the boat. The hulls of racing boats are shaped to minimize this resistive force, which is the principal deterrent to high speeds. See the Hewitt-Drew-It Screencast, *Sailing into the Wind*.

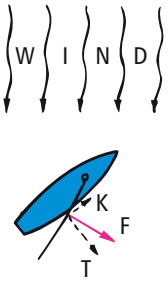
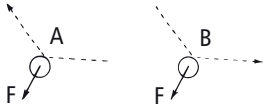


FIGURE D.11

Iceboats (sailcraft equipped with runners that serve as "keels" for traveling on ice) encounter no water resistance and can travel at several times the speed of the wind when they tack upwind. Although ice friction is nearly absent, an iceboat does not accelerate without limits. The terminal velocity of a sailcraft is determined not only by opposing friction forces but also by the change in relative wind direction. When the boat's orientation and speed are such that the wind seems to shift in direction, so that the wind moves parallel to the sail rather than into it, forward acceleration ceases—at least in the case of a flat sail. In practice, sails are curved and produce an airfoil that is as important to sailcraft as it is to aircraft, as discussed in Chapter 14.

*You can do a simple exercise to see that this is so. Try bouncing a coin off another on a smooth surface, as shown. Note that the struck coin moves at right angles (perpendicular) to the contact edge. Note also that it makes no difference whether the projected coin moves along path A or path B. See your instructor for a more rigorous explanation, which involves momentum conservation.



APPENDIX E

Exponential Growth and Doubling Time*

We often hear the adage, "Growth is good." An economy that grows is good. Growth in a city's student graduation rates is good. Certainly growth in income is good. In general, growth is seen as a good thing. But let's be careful of what we wish for—especially if growth is *exponential*.

When a quantity such as money in the bank, population, or the consumption rate of a resource steadily grows at a fixed percent per year, we say the growth is exponential. Investment accounts may grow at 2% per year; the population of a region may grow at a steady 3% per year, electric power generating capacity in the United States may grow at about 7% per year, as occurred during the first three-quarters of the twentieth century.

Much of the growth in the world around us is exponential. The curve in Figure E.1 depicts exponential growth for any of the above examples. Notice that each of the successive equal time intervals on the horizontal scale corresponds to a doubling of the quantity on the vertical scale. This doubling of a quantity becomes startling when you find the car you purchased and finished financing costs nearly twice as much as if you paid cash. When the growth of a quantity is exponential, the amount of the quantity doubles in a certain interval of time. We speak of *doubling time*.

There is an important relationship between the percent growth rate and its *doubling time*, the time it takes to double a quantity:†

$$\text{Doubling time} = \frac{69.3}{\text{percent growth per unit time}} \approx \frac{70}{\%}$$

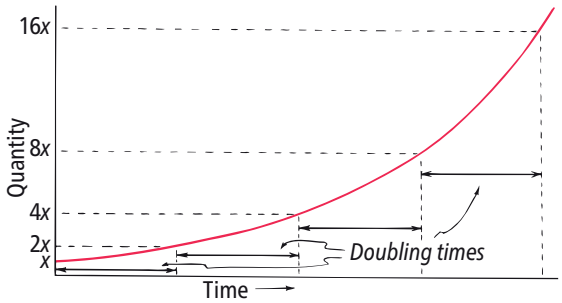


FIGURE E.1

An exponential curve.

So, to estimate the doubling time for a steadily growing quantity, we divide the number 70 by the percent growth rate. For example, if a certain quantity has a steady growth rate of 7% per year, that quantity will double every 10 years [70%/(7%/year) = 10 years]. pace for such growth should be planned. A 2 percent growth rate for world population means the population of the world doubles every 35 years [70%/(2%/year) = 35 years]. A city planning commission that accepts what seems like a modest 3.5 percent annual growth rate may not realize that this means that doubling will occur in 70/3.5, or 20 years; that's double the need for such things as water supply, sewage-treatment plants, and other municipal services every 20 years.

Steady growth in a finite environment gets interesting. Consider bacterial growth by cell division, in which one bacterium becomes two, the two divide to become four, the four divide to become eight, and so on. Suppose the division time for a certain strain of bacteria is 1 minute. This is then steady growth—the number of bacteria grows exponentially with a doubling time of 1 minute. Furthermore, suppose that one bacterium is put in a bottle at 11:00 AM and that growth continues steadily until the bottle becomes full of bacteria at 12 noon. Consider seriously the following Check Point question:

FIGURE E.2

*This appendix is adapted from material written by University of Colorado physics professor Albert A. Bartlett, who asserts, "The greatest shortcoming of the human race is our inability to understand the exponential function." See more on Al Bartlett on the Web.

†For exponential decay we speak about half-life, the time required for a quantity to reduce to half its value. This case is treated in Chapter 33.

CHECK POINT

When was the bottle half full?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

The bottle was half full a 11:59 AM. Then 1 minute later the bacteria double in number to completely fill the jar at noon!

It is startling to note that at 2 minutes before noon the bottle was only 1/4 full. Table E.1 summarizes the amount of space left in the bottle in the last few minutes before noon. If you were an average bacterium in the bottle, at which time would you first realize that you were running out of space? For example, would you sense there was a serious problem at 11:55 AM, when the bottle was only 3 percent filled (1/32) and had 97 percent of open space (just yearning for development)? The point here is that there isn't much time between the moment that the effects of growth become noticeable and the time when they become overwhelming.

TABLE E.1 THE LAST MINUTES IN THE BOTTLE

Time	Part Full (%)	Part Empty
11:54 AM	1/64 (1.6%)	63/64
11:55 AM	1/32 (3%)	31/32
11:56 AM	1/16 (6%)	15/16
11:57 AM	1/8 (12%)	7/8
11:58 AM	1/4 (25%)	3/4
11:59 AM	1/2 (50%)	1/2
12:00 noon	full (100%)	none

Suppose that at 11:58 AM some farsighted bacteria see that they are running out of space and launch a full-scale search for new bottles. Luckily, at 11:59 AM they discover three new empty bottles, three times as much space as they had ever known. This quadruples the total resource space ever known to the bacteria because they now have a total of four bottles, whereas before the discovery they had only one. Further suppose that, thanks to their technological proficiency, they are able to migrate to their new habitats without difficulty. Surely, it seems to most of the bacteria that their problem is solved—and just in time.

CHECK POINT

1. If the bacteria growth continues at the unchanged rate, what time will it be when the three new bottles are filled to capacity?

CHECK YOUR ANSWER

12:02 PM!

We see from Table E.2 that quadrupling the resource extends the life of the resource by only two doubling times. In our example the resource is space—but it could as well be coal, oil, uranium, or any nonrenewable resource.

TABLE E.2 EFFECTS OF THE DISCOVERY OF THREE NEW BOTTLES

Time	Effect
11:58 AM	Bottle 1 is 1/4 full
11:59 AM	Bottle 1 is 1/2 full
12:00 noon	Bottle 1 is full
12:01 PM	Bottles 1 and 2 are both full
12:02 PM	Bottles 1, 2, 3, and 4 are all full

Continued growth and continued doubling lead to enormous numbers. In two doubling times, a quantity will double twice ($2^2 = 4$; quadruple) in size; in three doubling times, its size will increase eightfold ($2^3 = 8$); in four doubling times, it will increase sixteenfold ($2^4 = 16$); and so on.

This growth is best illustrated by the story of the court mathematician in India who years ago invented the game of chess for his king. The king was so pleased with the game that he offered to reward the mathematician, whose request seemed modest enough. The mathematician requested a single grain of wheat on the first square of the chessboard, two grains on the second square, four on the third square, and so on, doubling the number of grains on each succeeding square until all squares had been used. At this rate there would be 2^{63} grains of wheat on the 64th square. The king soon saw that he could not fill this "modest" request, which amounted to more wheat than had been harvested in the entire history of Planet Earth!

FIGURE E.3

A single grain of wheat placed on the first square of the chessboard is doubled on the second square, this number is doubled on the third, and so on, presumably for all 64 squares. Note that each square contains one more grain than all the preceding squares combined. Does enough wheat exist in the world to fill all 64 squares in this manner?

It is interesting and important to note that the number of grains on any square is one grain more than the total of all grains on the preceding squares. This is

TABLE E.3 FILLING THE SQUARES ON THE CHESSBOARD

Square Number	Grains on Square	Total Grains Thus Far
1	1	1
2	2	3
3	4	7
4	8	15
5	16	31
6	32	63
7	64	127
.	.	.
.	.	.
.	.	.
64	2^{63}	$2^{64} - 1$

true anywhere on the board. Note from Table E.3 that when eight grains are placed on the fourth square, the eight is one more than the total of seven grains that were already on the board. Or the 32 grains placed on the sixth square is one more than the total of 31 grains that were already on the board. We see that in one doubling time we use more than all that had been used in all the preceding growth! To repeat for emphasis: In one doubling time *more growth occurs than in all preceding growth combined*!

CHECK POINT

According to a French riddle, a lily pond starts with a single leaf. Each day the number of leaves doubles, until the pond is completely full on the thirtieth day. On what day was the pond half covered? One quarter covered?

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

The pond was half covered on the twenty-ninth day, and was one-quarter covered on the twenty-eighth day!

The consequences of unchecked exponential growth are staggering. In this time of global pandemics and climate change it is important to ask: Is growth really good? In answering this question, bear in mind that human growth is an early phase of life that continues normally through adolescence. Physical growth stops when physical maturity is reached. What do we say of growth that continues in the period of physical maturity? We say that such growth is obesity—or worse, cancer.

QUESTIONS TO PONDER

1. If the sewage treatment plant of a city is just adequate for the city's current population, how many sewage treatment plants will be necessary 42 years later if the city grows steadily at 5 percent annually?
2. If the world population doubles in 40 years and world food production also doubles in 40 years, how many people then will be starving each year compared to now?
3. Suppose you get a prospective employer to agree to hire your services for wages of a single penny for the first day, 2 pennies for the second day, and double the amount each day thereafter providing the employer keeps to the agreement for a month. What will be your total wages for the month?
4. In the preceding question, how will your wages for only the 30th day compare to your total wages for the previous 29 days?

Odd-Numbered Answers

Chapter 1

Reading Check Questions

1. Science is the product of human curiosity about how the world works—an organized body of knowledge that describes order and causes within nature and an ongoing human activity dedicated to gathering and organizing knowledge about the world. **3.** Alexandria was farther north, at a higher latitude. **5.** Like the Sun, the Moon's diameter is 1/110 the distance between Earth and the Moon. **7.** At the time of a half moon he knew the angle between the Moon and Earth was at 90° to the Moon and the Sun. **9.** The equations are guides to thinking that show the connections between concepts in nature. **11.** The answer is as stated in the Summary of Terms. **13.** A scientific hypothesis becomes a law when it has been tested over and over again and has not been contradicted. **15.** See if you can state the antagonist's position to his/her satisfaction, and compare it to how well the antagonist can state your position. If you can, and your antagonist can't, the likelihood is that you are correct in your position. **17.** No, science and religion can work well together, and even complement each other. (Religious extremists, however, may assert that the two are incompatible). **19.** Science is gathering knowledge and organizing it; technology puts scientific knowledge to practical use and provides the instruments scientists need to conduct their investigations.

Think and Do

21. Sun diameter would be 1/110 its distance from Earth. The number of end-to-end coins involved would be 110, the same as the number of end-to-end Suns away from Earth. **23.** We see what we're taught to see!

Think and Explain

25. The penalty for fraud is professional excommunication. **27.** No, experimental validation is necessary for a hypothesis to be considered scientific. **29.** Earth's radius is 8×800 km $= 6400$ km. **31.** The vertex at the planet's center is $30° - 24° = 6°$, so $6/360 \times 40{,}000$ km $= 667$ km, the distance between flagpoles.

Think and Discuss

33. The scientific method uses a set of observations or measurements ("facts") to develop a possible explanation (a hypothesis). This explanation must be testable; it must be possible to have a test that could show the hypothesis is incorrect. A scientific attitude allows current explanations to be modified, or even abandoned completely, when a test shows disagreement. The repeated testing and refinement of hypotheses leads to continual improvements in our understanding. A nonscientific approach, such as art or religion, can also offer explanations or descriptions of the world around us, but does not require continued testing and the ability to be falsifiable. This missing step means that non-scientific knowledge is less likely to adapt to new facts. **35.** There are many arguments that could be made, but one important point is that the contents of science textbooks are constantly revised and updated, in contrast to religious texts whose content is mostly considered unchangeable (apart from adjustments for language and translation). This shows that the "authority" for science is the ability of a theory to adequately explain and predict the world around us.

Chapter 2

Reading Check Questions

1. Aristotle classified motion as either natural or violent. **3.** Copernicus stated that Earth circles the Sun, and not the other way around. **5.** Galileo discovered that a moving object will continue in motion without the need of a force. **7.** Newton's law is a restatement of Galileo's concept of inertia. **9.** No force is required for continued motion. **11.** Since force is a vector quantity, a negative sign represents its direction (and not magnitude). For example, an –10 N force on the x-axis means that the force has a magnitude of 10 N, and it points toward the –x direction. **13.** The resultant is 50 N. **15.** The net force on the object is zero. The effect of the 30-N force to the right will be canceled out by the 30-N force to the left, and same goes for the forces directed upward and downward. **17.** All the forces on something in mechanical equilibrium add vectorially to zero. **19.** The support force is 12 N. The net force on the book is zero. **21.** No. Since the direction changes from time to time in a curved part, the bowling ball is accelerating. This violates the condition for equilibrium of moving things as described by Newton's first law. **23.** The higher the friction, the higher is the constant force required to counter the friction and allow the block to maintain its constant velocity.

Think and Do

27. Consider contacting your grandparents with paper and pen! **29.** Again, the law of inertia applies here. The inertia of the block and books keeps them from suddenly crushing down on you.

Think and Solve

31. (a) Zero friction. (b) 100 N (c) 120 N **33.** Let x be the reading on the first scale and 3x on the second scale. Thus, $x + 3x = 640$ N, so $x = 160$. Hence, the readings on the scales are 160 N and $3(160\text{ N}) = 480$ N **35.** From the equilibrium rule, $\sum F = 0$, the upward forces are 800 N + tension in the right scale and the downward forces 500 N + 400 N + 400 N. Arithmetic shows the reading on the right scale is 500 N.

Think and Rank

37. C, A, B, D. **39.** (a) A = B = C (no force). (b) C, B, A.

Think and Explain

41. The tendency of a rolling ball is to continue rolling in the absence of a force. The fact that it slows down is likely due to the force of friction. **43.** Galileo discredited Aristotle's idea that the rate at which bodies fall is proportional to their weight. **45.** Galileo proposed the concept of inertia before Newton was born. **47.** Nothing keeps the probe moving. In the absence of a propelling or deflecting force it would continue moving in a straight line. **49.** The inertia of a whole roll resists the large acceleration of a sharp jerk and only a single piece tears. If a towel is pulled slowly, a small acceleration is demanded of the roll and it unwinds. This is similar to the hanging ball and string shown in Figure 2.5. **51.** Initially, both the bus and the passengers are moving. When the bus stops, only the bus stops and the passengers continue to move, so they are thrown forward. **53.** Maximum net force happens when the forces act in the same direction: 30 N + 30 N = 60 N. Minimum net force happens when they act in opposite directions, as they cancel each other: 30 N − 30 N = 0. **55.** No, if only a single nonzero force acts on an object, its motion will change and it will not be in mechanical equilibrium. **57.** No, because the force of gravity still acts. Net force is not zero! **59.** No, since the force of gravity still acts on you at that instance. **61.** Tension in each rope is half her weight. **63.** The scale will read half her weight. In this way, the net force (upward pull of left rope + upward pull of right rope−weight) = 0. **65.** There are three significant forces: weight, normal force, and frictional force that prevents it to slide down the plane. **67.** When standing on a floor, the floor pushes upward against your feet with a force equal to that of gravity, your weight. This upward force (normal force) and your weight are oppositely directed, and since they both act on the same body, you, they cancel to produce a net force on you of zero—hence, you are not accelerated. **69.** There are two forces acting on the bucket: its weight W, and the tension force exerted by the rope of magnitude W. **71.** If it is in dynamic equilibrium, friction force is equal to 500 N. **73.** Emily will not be successful, for her speed will be zero relative to the land.

Think and Discuss

75. In both cases the top string supports the weight of the ball. When the lower string is pulled gradually its tension adds to the top string, and it breaks. But if a pull of the lower string is quick enough, inertia of the ball "keeps it in place" while the snapped string breaks. **77.** Your friend should learn that inertia is not some kind of force that keeps things like Earth moving, but is the name given to the property of things to keep on doing what they are doing in the absence of a force. So your friend should say that *nothing* is necessary to keep Earth moving. Interestingly, the Sun keeps it from following the straight-line path it would take if no forces acted, but it doesn't keep it moving. Nothing does. That's the concept of inertia. **79.** When at rest, both the truck and the person have the same state of motion. But when the truck starts to move forward, the person tends to remain at rest, thus they fall back. **81.** No, this doesn't violate Newton's first law because an external force acts on the car. **83.** No, because there is an external force that makes the box accelerate, therefore, Newton's first law is not violated. **85.** The reaction force does not depend on friction. Since the book does not move when it is pressed against the wall, friction has no role. Also, the direction of friction is perpendicular to the reaction force. **87.** A body in motion tends to remain in motion, so you move with the moving Earth whether or not your feet are in contact with it. When you jump, your horizontal motion matches that of Earth and you travel with it. Hence the wall does not slam into you. **89.** If the train rounds a corner while the coin is in the air, it will land off to the side of you. The coin continues in its horizontal motion, in accord with the law of inertia.

Chapter 3

Reading Check Questions

1. The speed at any instant is the instantaneous speed whereas the ratio between the total distance travelled and the total time taken is the average speed. **3.** In 60 minutes the distance covered is 60 km; therefore the average speed is 60 km per hour. **5.** Relative to the chair your speed is zero. Relative to the Sun it's 30 km/s. **7.** No, a curved path means a change in direction, therefore an object moving with constant velocity cannot move in a curved path. **9.** The acceleration is 1 km/h/s. **11.** You are aware of *changes* in your speed, but not steady motion. Therefore you are aware of acceleration, but not constant velocity. **13.** Galileo discovered that the ball gained the same amount of speed each specific time interval, which told him the acceleration is constant. **15.** When the incline is vertical, the acceleration of the ball is g, that of free fall. **17.** None. Free fall means falling with no air resistance. **19.** The speed acquired in 2 s is 20 m/s. If the object was not at rest initially, but at x m/s, the final velocity will be $(x + 20)$m/s. **21.** The direction of acceleration is downward. **23.** The distance of fall in 1 s is 5 m. For a 5-s drop, falling distance is 125 m. **25.** Average speed = distance traveled/time $= \Delta d/\Delta t$ $= 0.1/10$ s $= 0.0$ m/s. **27.** Your path will be the diagonal of a rectangle composed of your speed (velocity) and the velocity of the flowing water. The diagonal of a rectangle is always greater than the length of either of its sides.

Think and Do

29. Tell your grandfather that speed is a measure of how fast a body is moving and velocity is speed with the direction of movement specified. Give an example of motion in a straight line and in a circle to differentiate the two. **31.** Another good activity making use of your digital devices. **33.** This is a follow-up to the previous activity, a good one!

Plug and Chug

35. Speed = Distance/Time = 3.0m/1.2 s = 2.5 m/s. **37.** Acceleration = Change of velocity/time interval = (120 km/h)/15 s = 8 km/h • s. **39.** Distance = Average speed × time= 0.9 m/s × 10 s = 9 m.

Think and Solve

41. (a) Using $g = 10$ m/s^2, we see that $v = gt = (10\text{ m/s}^2)(10\text{ s})$ $= 100$ m/s; $v_{ave} = (v_{beginning} + v_{final})/2 = (0 + 100\text{ m/s})/2 = 50$ m/s, downward. (b) We can get "how far" from either $d = v_{ave}t = (50\text{ m/s})$ $(10\text{ s}) = 500$ m, or equivalently, $d = \frac{1}{2}gt^2 = \frac{1}{2}(10\text{ m/s}^2)(10\text{ s})^2 =$ $(5\text{ m/s}^2)(10\text{ s})^2 = 500$ m. (How nice we get the same distance using either formula!) **43.** (a) The velocity of the ball at the top of its vertical trajectory is instantaneously zero. (b) One second before reaching its top, its velocity is 10 m/s. (c) The amount of change in velocity is 10 m/s during this 1-second interval (or any other 1-second interval). (d) One second after reaching its top, its velocity is −10 m/s—equal in magnitude but oppositely directed to its value 1 second before reaching the top. (e) The amount of change in velocity during this (or any) 1-second interval is 10 m/s. (f) In 2 seconds, the amount of change in velocity, from 10 m/s up to 10 m/s down, is 20 m/s (not zero!). (g) The acceleration of the ball is 10 m/s^2 before reaching the top, when reaching the top, and after reaching the top. In all cases acceleration is downward, toward the Earth. **45.** From $d = \frac{1}{2}gt^2 = 5t^2$; $t = \sqrt{(d/5\text{ m/s})} = \sqrt{(0.6\text{ m}/5\text{ m/s})} = 0.35$ s. Doubling for a hang time of 0.7 s. **47.** The resultant is zero, the mosquito appears to hover motionless in the air. **49.** The diagonal of any rectangle has a diagonal $= \sqrt{2}$ the length of either side. So the resultant speed is $\sqrt{2} \times 10$ km/h ~ 14 km/h. Think and Rank **51.** C, B = D, A. **53.** (a) C, B, A. (b) A = B = C (10 m/s^2).

Think and Explain

55. The speeds of both are exactly the same, but the velocities are not. Velocity includes direction, and since the directions of the airplanes are opposite, their velocities are opposite. The velocities would be equal only if both speed and direction were the same. **57.** Instantaneous speed. **59.** "Speed" tells you how fast one can go, whereas "acceleration" tells you how fast you can get fast. **61.** The acceleration is zero, for no change in velocity occurs. Whenever the change in velocity is zero, the acceleration is zero. If the velocity is "steady," "constant," or "uniform," the change in velocity is zero. Remember the definition of acceleration! **63.** Its speed readings would increase by 10 m/s each second. **65.** Free-fall acceleration is constant at 9.8 m/s^2. **67.** Since this is a case of free fall, the value of acceleration due to gravity will not change. Ignoring air resistance during the fall in both cases, the acceleration will remain the same, namely, g. **69.** In the absence of air resistance, the acceleration will be g no matter how the ball is released. The acceleration of a ball and its speed are entirely different. **71.** With no air resistance, both will strike the ground below at the same speed. Note that the ball thrown upward will pass its starting point on the way down with the same speed it had when starting up. So its trip on downward, below the starting point, is the same as for a ball thrown down with that speed. **73.** If it were not for the slowing effect of the air, raindrops would strike the ground with the speeds of high-speed pellets! **75.** On the Moon the acceleration due to gravity is considerably less, so hang time would be considerably more (six times more for the same takeoff speed!). **77.** The speed of falling rain and the speed of the automobile are the same.

Think and Discuss

79. Deceleration. **81.** "The racing car rounded the curve at a constant speed of 100 km/h." Constant velocity means not only constant speed but constant direction. A car rounding a curve changes its direction of motion. **83.** An object moving in a circular path at constant speed is a simple example of acceleration at constant speed because its velocity is changing direction. But something CANNOT accelerate while having constant velocity, which would contradict the notion that constant velocity means no change. **85.** The one in the middle. The ball gains speed more quickly at the beginning where the slope is steeper, so its average speed is greater even though it has less acceleration in the last part of its trip. **87.** With no air resistance an object's acceleration is the same 10 m/s^2 regardless of its initial velocity. If it is thrown downward, its velocity will be greater, but not its acceleration. **89.** The direction of acceleration of the car is toward the south. **91.** (a) The ball on B finishes first. (b) Average speed is greater along the lower part. (c) The instantaneous speed at the ends of the tracks is the same because the speed gained on the down-ramp for B is equal to the speed lost on the up-ramp side. **93.** Open-ended.

Chapter 4

Reading Check Questions

1. A push or a pull is the most common type of force. **3.** Your push and the force of friction have the same magnitude. **5.** This is because static friction is greater than sliding friction for the same object. Therefore, more force is required to get the object moving initially to overcome static friction; once the object is in motion, only sliding friction needs to be overcome. **7.** Yes, fluid friction varies with speed.

9. mass; weight. **11.** $2 \times 9.8 = 19.6$ newtons **13.** Breaking the top string is due mainly to the ball's weight. **15.** The body with a higher mass will accelerate less since acceleration is inversely proportional to mass. **19.** The acceleration decreases to one-half. **21.** The speed of the object reduces. **23.** The ratio of force to mass is g. **25.** The net force is 10 N. **27.** The force of air drag increases with an increase in the speed of a falling object. **29.** The heavier parachutist should be given a parachute with a proportionately higher frontal area.

Think and Do

31. Relate how Newton followed Galileo, and so on. **33.** When the paper is on top of the dropped book, no air resistance acts on the paper because the book shields it from the air. So the paper and book fall with the same acceleration! **35.** The spool will roll to the right! There is an angle at which it will not roll but slide. Any angle larger will roll the spool to the left. But pulled horizontally it rolls in the direction of the pull, whether the string is at the bottom or top of the spool spindle.

Plug and Chug

37. Weight $= (2000\text{ kg})(10\text{ N/kg}) = 20{,}000$ N.
39. $a = F_{net}/m = 120{,}000\text{ N}/300{,}000\text{ kg} = 0.4\text{ N/kg} = 0.4\text{ m/s}^2$.

Think and Solve

41. The net force is $10\text{ N} - 2\text{ N} = 8\text{ N}$ (or more precisely $9.8\text{ N} - 2\text{ N} = 7.8$ N). **43.** A 1-kg mass weighs 10 N, so 30 kg weighs 300 N. The bag can safely hold 30 kg of apples—if you don't pick it up too quickly. **45.** (a) $a = \Delta v/\Delta t = (6.0\text{ m/s})/1.2\text{ s} = 5.0\text{ m/s}^2$. (b) $F = ma = (85\text{ kg})(35\text{ m/s}^2) = 2975$ N
47. $F_{net} = ma = (12\text{ kg})(7.0\text{ m/s}^2) = 84\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}^2 = 84$ N. **49.** The acceleration of each is the same: $a = F/m = 2\text{ N}/2\text{ kg} = 1\text{ N/kg} = 1\text{ m/s}^2$. (From the definition $1\text{ N} = 1\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}^2$, then 1 N/kg is the same as 1 m/s^2.) **51.** (a) $a = \Delta v/\Delta t = (4.2\text{ m/s})/0.12\text{ s} = 35\text{ m/s}^2$ (b) $F = ma = (85\text{ kg})(35\text{ m/s}^2) = 2975$ N.

Think and Rank

53. (a) D, A = B = C. (b) A = C, B = D. **55.** (a) A = B = C. (b) C, A, B.

Think and Explain

57. The forces acting horizontally are the driving force provided by friction between the tires and the road, and resistive forces—mainly air resistance. The car is in dynamic equilibrium with a net force of zero. **59.** The force of friction on the bottle is zero when the bottle comes to rest. The force on the bottle from you is zero as soon as your hand is not in contact with it. **61.** Constant velocity means zero acceleration, so yes, no net force acts on the motorcycle. But when moving at constant acceleration there is a net force acting on it. **63.** Items like apples weigh less on the Moon, so (a) there are more apples in a 1-pound bag of apples on the Moon. (b) Mass is another matter, for the same quantity of apples are in 1-kg bag on the Earth as on the Moon. **65.** No; the astronaut would hurt their foot! The force required to accelerate an object depends upon the mass of the object. The bowling ball has a larger mass than the basketball, regardless of where it is located, and therefore would require a larger force to accelerate it. **67.** Mass is a measure of the amount of material in something, not gravitational pull that depends on its location. So although the weight of the astronaut may change with location, mass does not. **69.** Neither the mass nor the weight of a junked car changes when it is crushed. What does change is its volume, not to be confused with mass and weight. **71.** Assuming you are at the surface of the Earth, your weight is your mass multiplied by g ($= 10\text{ m/s}^2$). This means that your change in mass will be the change in weight divided by g; a weight decrease of 2.0 N corresponds to a mass decrease of $(2.0\text{ N})/(10\text{ m/s}^2) = 0.20$ kg. **73.** Since the crate remains at rest, the net force on it is zero, which means the force of friction by the floor on the crate will be equal and opposite to your applied force F. **75.** (a) At zero acceleration, net force = 0, therefore friction = acrobat's weight $= mg = (50\text{ kg})(10\text{ m/s}^2) = 500$ N. (b) same as (a) **77.** Acceleration (slowing the car) is opposite to velocity (direction car moves). **79.** Acceleration is the ratio force/mass (Newton's second law), which in free fall is just weight/mass $= mg/m = g$. Since weight is proportional to mass, the ratio weight/mass is the same whatever the weight of a body. **81.** (a) No, the glider also experiences forces from the air on its wings in addition to the force of gravity. (b) Yes, the only force acting on the Moon is gravity so its orbit is an example of free fall. **83.** The only force on a tossed coin, except for air resistance, is mg. So the same mg acts on the coin at all points in its trajectory. **85.** Newton's second law relates the net force to acceleration. The ball on the ground is not changing its velocity, so zero acceleration and therefore zero net force. The ball at the top of its trajectory, however, has nonzero acceleration because it is changing its velocity (from upward to downward), therefore it has a net force (gravity, downward) acting on it. **87.** The net force is zero. When the apple is released, the upward support force is no longer there and the net force is the gravitational force, 1 N. **89.** Both forces have the same magnitude. This is easier to understand if you visualize the parachutist at rest in a strong updraft—static equilibrium. Whether equilibrium is static or dynamic, the net force is zero. **91.** When a falling parachutist opens her chute she slows. That means she accelerates upward. **93.** Before reaching terminal velocity, an object is still speeding up in a downward direction. This means that the net force on it must point downward. After reaching terminal velocity, the object is no longer accelerating, so there is zero net force, which clearly does not have a direction. **95.** The marble experiences two main forces; gravity downward and a drag force upward. This means that eventually the marble will reach a terminal velocity. The drag force from water will be larger than that from air, so the marble will reach a smaller terminal velocity in water than air, and it will take less time (and distance) for it to attain terminal velocity. **97.** The smaller diameter ball would hit the ground first because the ball with the larger diameter would experience a larger drag force from the air, and therefore have a smaller net force downward for much of the fall. **99.** The answer is given in the equation $a = F/m$. As fuel is burned, the mass of the rocket becomes less. As m decreases as F remains the same, a increases! There is less mass to be accelerated as fuel is consumed. **101.** The time rising will be shorter than the time falling. Like a feather shot into the air by a slingshot, its time fluttering to the ground is visibly shorter than the time going upward.

Think and Discuss

103. If only the upward force were acting, the book indeed would rise. But another force, that due to gravity, results in the net force being zero. **105.** Neither a stick of dynamite nor anything else "contains" force. We will see later that a stick of dynamite contains *energy*, which is capable of producing forces when an interaction of some kind occurs. **107.** The only force that acts on a dropped rock on the Moon is the gravitational force between the rock and the Moon because there is no air and therefore no air drag on the rock. **109.** Friction between the crate and the truck-bed is the force that keeps the crate picking up the same amount of speed as the truck. With no friction, the accelerating truck would leave the crate behind. **111.** The *net* force on the wagon, your pull plus friction, is zero. So $\sum F = 0$. **113.** A simple sketch should show that the force vector mg is the same at all locations. Acceleration g is therefore the same at all locations also. **115.** As you land on the ground, you are initially moving downward but slowing down as you come to rest. This means your acceleration must point upward. **117.** No, as the object falls it has a velocity pointing downward, and the net force is in the same direction at all times. The net force downward gets smaller as the object speeds up, as the drag force increases and cancels some of the force of gravity, eventually balancing to zero net force at terminal velocity. At no point does the net force point upward. **119.** In each case the paper reaches terminal speed, which means air resistance equals the weight of the paper. So air resistance will be the same on each! The wadded paper falls faster until air resistance equals its weight. **121.** When you are falling toward the trampoline, acceleration is downward. When you first hit the trampoline, you will still be speeding up, but as it stretches you will start to slow down – this is when the acceleration changes to an upward direction. You will then momentarily come to a stop (acceleration is still upward) and the start to move upward. As the trampoline returns to its unstretched position, there will be a point where you are moving upward but beginning to slow down. Now the acceleration is in a downward direction. **123.** Air resistance depends on both frontal area and speed. Both balls have the same frontal area, but the faster-falling lead-filled ball encounters more air resistance.

Chapter 5

Reading Check Questions

1. The force exerted by the wall on the boy. **3.** He can't exert as much force on the tissue paper because the paper can't react with as much force. **5.** Reaction force is the stake against the hammer. **7.** The force of friction on the apple's feet provides the net force on the orange-apple system. **9.** If two opposite and equal forces act on the ball, the net force on it is zero and it will not accelerate. **11.** The different accelerations are due to different masses. **13.** When lift equals the force due to gravity on the helicopter, it hovers in midair. **15.** Yes, we can imagine one force acting on the object or its two components acting on the same object. **17.** The friction force has the same magnitude, with the sum of all forces being zero. **19.** Inertia; acceleration; action and reaction.

Think and Do

21. Your hand will be pushed upward, a reaction to the air it deflects downward. **23.** Of course this can be done without a smartphone. Answers will vary. **25.** Open-ended.

Plug and Chug

27. $R = \sqrt{(5^2 + 6^2)} \approx 7.81$.

Think and Solve

29. (a) $a = \Delta v/\Delta t = (25\ \text{m/s})/0.05\ \text{s} = 500\ \text{m/s}^2$.
(b) $F = ma = (0.003\ \text{kg})(500\ \text{m/s}^2) = 1.5\ \text{N}$, which is about $^1/_3$ pound.
(c) By Newton's third law, the same amount, 1.5 N. **31.** $m = F/a$, where $F = \sqrt{(3^2 + 4^2)} = 5\ \text{N}$. So $m = F/a = 5\ \text{N}/1\ \text{m/s}^2 = \mathbf{5\ kg}$.

Think and Rank

33. A, B, C. (b) B, C. **35.** (a) B, A, C. (b) C, B, A **37.** A.

Think and Explain

39. In accord with Newton's third law, Steve and Gretchen are touching each other. One may initiate the touch, but the physical interaction can't occur without contact between both Steve and Gretchen. Indeed, you cannot touch without being touched! **41.** (a) Two force pairs act; Earth's pull on apple (action), and apple's pull on Earth (reaction). Hand pushes apple upward (action), and apple pushes hand downward (reaction). (b) With no air resistance, one force pair acts; Earth's pull on apple, and apple's pull on Earth. **43.** (a) Action: player applies a force on the volleyball through his palm. Reaction: the volleyball applies a force to the player's palm in the opposite direction. (b) Action: the apple applies a downward force (weight) to the branch. Reaction: the branch applies an upward force on the apple. Action the Earth pulls the apple down with the gravitational force (weight) Reaction: the apple applies the same force on the Earth in the upward direction. (c) Action: boy applies a downward force (weight) to the mat of the trampoline. Reaction: the springs of the trampoline apply an upward force on the boy through the mat. **45.** When the ball exerts a force on the floor, the floor exerts an equal and opposite force on the ball—hence bouncing. The force of the floor on the ball provides the bounce. **47.** The friction on the crate is 200 N, which cancels your 200-N push on the crate to yield the zero net force that accounts for the constant velocity (zero acceleration). **49.** (a) Yes, for the man is in equilibrium. (b) No, because the two forces act on the *same* body. (c) Action: Earth pulls down on man (by gravity). Reaction: man pulls up on Earth. Here we see the action-reaction pair of forces acting on different objects—man and Earth. **51.** If action is mg pulls down on ball (by gravity) then (a), reaction is ball pulls upward on Earth with equal and opposite mg. (b) At the top of its path only mg acts on the ball, with acceleration $= mg/m = g$. (Not zero!) **53.** When the climber pulls the rope downward, the rope simultaneously pulls the climber upward—the direction desired by the climber. **55.** When you push the car, you exert a force on the car. When the car simultaneously pushes back on you, that force is on you—not the car. You don't cancel a force on the car with a force on you. For cancellation, the forces have to be equal and opposite and act on the same object. **57.** The force on each cart will be the same. But since the masses are different, the accelerations will differ. The twice-as-massive cart will undergo only half the acceleration of the less massive cart. **59.** Both will move toward each other. Scott's pull on the rope is transmitted to Kjell, causing him to accelerate toward Scott. By Newton's third law, the rope pulls back on Scott, causing him to accelerate toward Kjell. **61.** The tension in the rope is 250 N. With no acceleration, each must experience a 250-N force of friction via the ground. This is provided by pushing against the ground with 250 N. **63.** The forces on the father and the son will be of the same magnitude. Let's assume that the mass of the son is m and the mass of the father is $2m$. Then, the acceleration of the son, F/m, will be double that of the father, $F/2m$. Since the distance covered, $d = {}^1/_2\,at^2$, is proportional to acceleration, the son will slide twice the distance traveled by his father. Thus, the father will slide 4 m and the son will slide 8 m when they meet. **65.** The resultant speed is indeed 5 m/s. The resultant of any pair of 3-unit and 4-unit vectors at right angles to each other is 5 units. This is confirmed by the Pythagorean theorem; $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$ gives $3^2 + 4^2 = 5^2$. (Or, $v = \sqrt{[3^2 + 4^2]} = 5$.) **67.** Using the Pythagorean equation, we get the resultant velocity $v = \sqrt{[400^2 + 300^2]} = 500\ \text{km/h}$. **69.** (a) Your sketch should show two equal and opposite vectors, $\boldsymbol{T}$ up and $\boldsymbol{mg}$ down. (b) The resultant of this vector pair is zero, since motion and acceleration is zero. **71.** Your sketch should show only a single downward vector $\boldsymbol{mg}$. **73.** (a) Weight and normal force only. (b) Your sketch should how vector $\boldsymbol{mg}$ straight down, and vector $\boldsymbol{N}$ perpendicular to the incline. Their resultant points parallel to the incline, in the direction of sliding. **75.** Vector $\boldsymbol{f}$ will have the same magnitude as the vector sum of $\boldsymbol{mg}$ and $\boldsymbol{N}$. If $\boldsymbol{f}$ is less, then a net force acts on the shoe and it accelerates down the incline. **77.** When the rope is vertical, $\boldsymbol{S}$ is zero. If the rope were vertical, $\boldsymbol{S}$ would be at an angle such that its vertical component would be equal and opposite to $\boldsymbol{mg}$. **79.** A hammock stretched tightly has more tension in the supporting ropes than one that sags. The tightly stretched ropes are more likely to break. **81.** By the parallelogram rule, a simple sketch should show the tension is less than 50 N. **83.** By the parallelogram rule, the wide-angle shows the tension is greater than 50 N.

Think and Discuss

85. Yes, in accord with Newton's third law! Don't confuse the size of the force with the different consequences of that same sized force. **87.** To climb upward means pulling the rope downward, which moves the balloon downward as the person climbs. You can't pull down on something without that something pulling up. **89.** Going straight across can be represented with a vector pointing directly to the opposite side of the river. The flow of the river can be represented by a vector perpendicular to the swimming vector. The resultant of the two vectors is a diagonal line drawn from the two starting points. **91.** No, for in action-reaction fashion, the tail also wags the dog. How much depends on the relative masses of the dog's body and its tail. **93.** Action: your foot against the ball. Reaction: the ball against your foot, whether or not these forces are affected by low pressure in the ball. Whatever the pressure, both forces have the same magnitude in accord with Newton's third law. **95.** The scale will read 100 N, the same as if one end were tied to a wall instead of to the 100-N hanging weight. Although the net force on the system is zero, the tension in the rope within the system is 100 N, as would show on the scale reading. **97.** Yes, a ball slows down after hitting another ball because it applies a force on the other ball in the forward direction, and the other ball applies a force on the first ball in the opposite direction, causing deceleration. **99.** The forces do not cancel because they act on different things—one acts on the horse, and the other acts on the wagon. It's true that the wagon pulls back on the horse, and this pull prevents the horse from running as fast as it could without the attached wagon. To accelerate, the horse must push against the ground with more force than it exerts on the wagon and the wagon exerts on it. So tell the horse to push backward on the ground.

Chapter 6

Reading Check Questions

1. Yes they can, if the momentum = mv is the same for both. Since the bus is heavier, it must have a commensurately lower speed for the momentum to be equal. **3.** The product of force and time is called impulse. **5.** More speed is imparted because of increased impulse due to longer time for the force on the cannonball to act. **7.** Both. To increase momentum, increase impulse by using a large force over a long time. **9.** A short time of contact leads to a greater force of impact. **11.** Choice (c) represents the greatest change in momentum. **13.** The buckets cause the impacting

water to bounce, increasing the impulse given to the wheel. **15.** No, an external force is required to produce an impulse. **17.** The law of conservation of momentum states that in the absence of an external force, the momentum of a system remains unchanged. For a system having only internal forces, the net momentum of the system before and after the event is the same. **19.** This is because forces that act during collision are internal forces. **21.** After collision, the cars will move at half the initial speed of Car A. **23.** The fish undergoes an inelastic collision when swallowing another. **25.** The angle would be 45° to the east-bound car.

Think and Do

27. Open-ended. **29.** Open-ended.

Plug and Chug

31. $p = mv = (10\text{ kg})(2\text{ m/s}) = 20\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$.
33. $I = (5\text{ N})(2\text{ s}) = 10\text{ N}\cdot\text{s}$. **35.** $I = \Delta mv = (4\text{ kg})(3\text{ m/s}) = 12\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s} = 12\text{ N}\cdot\text{s}$. **37.** Initial momentum $3\text{ kg} \times 10\text{ m/s} = 30\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s}$. After collision: $(3 + 2)\text{ kg} \times v = 30\cdot\text{kg m/s}$. Therefore, $v = 30/5 = 6\text{ m/s}$.

Think and Solve

39. From $Ft = \Delta mv$, $F = \Delta mv/t = [(1000\text{ kg})(20\text{ m/s})]/10\text{ s} = 2000\text{ N}$.
41. From the conservation of momentum, $p_{dog} = p_{Jean+dog}$; $(15\text{ kg})(3.0\text{ m/s}) = (40.0\text{ kg} + 15\text{ kg})v$; $45\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s} = (55\text{ kg})v$, so $v = 0.8\text{ m/s}$.
43. $p_{before} = p_{after}$; $(5\text{ kg})(1\text{ m/s}) + (1\text{ kg})v = 0$; $5\text{ m/s} + v = 0$. $v = -5\text{ m/s}$. So if the little fish approaches the big fish at 5 m/s, the momentum after will be zero. **45.** Momentum conservation can be applied in both cases. (a) For head-on motion the total momentum is zero, so the wreckage after collision is motionless. (b) As shown in Figure 6.17, the total momentum is directed to the northeast—the resultant of two perpendicular vectors, magnitude 20,000 kg·m/s each. It has magnitude 28,200 kg·m/s. The speed of the wreckage is this momentum divided by the total mass, $v = (28{,}200\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m/s})/(2000\text{ kg}) = 14\text{ m/s}$.
47. $Ft/\Delta t = \Delta mv/\Delta t = m\Delta v/\Delta t = ma$ which reads $F = ma$.

Think and Rank

49. (a) A = D, A = C. (b) D, C, A = B. **51.** C, A, B.

Think and Explain

53. Because of the enormous mass of large cargo ships, they have enormous momentum even when they are in motion at moderate speeds. When the engines are turned off, the forward thrust turns zero, but the ship still has momentum. **55.** Passengers of the second car have a better chance of survival because the momentum of the second car is smaller than the first car, which will reduce the force of impact on the passengers. **57.** Stretching ropes extend the time during which momentum decreases, thereby decreasing the jolting force of the rope. **59.** Bent knees will allow more time for momentum to decrease, therefore reducing the force of landing. **61.** The deep knee bend and forward roll increases the time of coming to a stop, and thereby reduces the force of impact. **63.** An extended hands allow more time for reducing the momentum of the ball to zero, resulting in a smaller force of impact on your hand. **65.** Crumpling allows more time for reducing the momentum of the car, resulting in a smaller force of impact on the occupants. **67.** Its momentum is the same (its weight might change, but not its mass). **69.** If the nozzle breaks, then the compressed gas will come out of the can at an enormous speed. To conserve the momentum, the cylinder will fly backward almost like a missile, which can turn out to be very dangerous. **71.** Impulse is force × time. The forces are equal and opposite, by Newton's third law, and the times are the same, so the impulses are equal and opposite. **73.** Since the apple was thrown vertically upward, the horizontal momentum of the apple as well as that of the apple and airplane system do not change. The apple gains vertical momentum in the upward direction. To conserve the vertical momentum of the apple and airplane system, the airplane moves downward. However, because of the enormous mass of the airplane compared to that of the apple, the vertical motion of the airplane will be minuscule. **75.** The lighter gloves have less padding, and less ability to extend the time of impact, and therefore result in greater forces of impact for a given punch. **77.** The swarm will have a net momentum of zero if the swarm stays in the same location; then the momenta of the many insects cancel and there is no net momentum in any given direction. **79.** If no momentum is imparted to the ball, no oppositely directed momentum will be imparted to the thrower. Going through the motions of throwing has no net effect. Your position may change a little, but you end up at rest. **81.** Both recoiling carts have the same amount of momentum. So the cart with twice the mass will have half the speed of the less massive cart. That is, $2m(v/2) = mv$. **83.** A system is any object or collection of objects. Whatever momentum such a system has, in the absence of external forces, that momentum remains unchanged. **85.** For the system of ball + Earth, momentum is conserved for the impulses acting are internal impulses. The momentum of the falling apple is equal in magnitude to the momentum of Earth toward the apple. **87.** Yes, because you push upward on the ball you toss, which means the ball pushes downward on you, which is transmitted to the ground. So normal force increases as the ball is thrown (and goes back to equal mg after the ball is released). Likewise, in catching the ball. **89.** In accord with Newton's third law, the forces on each are equal in magnitude, which means the impulses are likewise equal in magnitude, so both undergo equal changes in momentum. **91.** Cars brought to a rapid halt experience a change in momentum, and a corresponding impulse. But greater momentum change occurs if the cars bounce, with correspondingly greater impulse and therefore greater damage. Less damage results if the cars stick upon impact than if they bounce apart. **93.** The combined momentum is $\sqrt{2}\times$ the magnitude of each blob before collision. **95.** Yes, you exert both an impulse on a ball that you throw and likewise when you catch it. Since you change its momentum by the same amount in both cases, you exert the same impulses in both cases. To catch the ball and then throw it back again at the same speed requires twice as much impulse. On a skateboard, you'd recoil and gain momentum when throwing the ball, you'd also gain the same momentum by catching the ball, and you'd gain twice the momentum if you did both—catch and then throw the ball at its initial speed in the opposite direction.

Think and Discuss

97. The ramp offers a truck in distress a gradual stop so that the impulse to stop momentum is more time than the force of impact. **99.** When a boxer hits his opponent, the opponent contributes to the impulse that changes the momentum of the punch. When punches miss, no impulse is supplied by the opponent—all effort that goes into reducing the momentum of the punches is supplied by the boxer himself. This tires the boxer. **101.** Externally. **103.** When two objects interact, the forces they exert on each other are equal and opposite and these forces act simultaneously, so the impulses are equal and opposite. Therefore their changes of momenta are equal and opposite, and the total change of momentum of both objects is zero. **105.** (a) The downward speed as well as the downward momentum of the skydiver increases with time after the jump and before the parachute is open. The momentum of the skydiver and earth combined system remains constant and zero because there is no external force on this system. Thus, when the skydiver gains momentum in the downward direction, the Earth gains equal momentum in the upward direction. (b) If we consider the air as a part of the Earth, then the change in momentum of the combined system remains zero. The air pressure on the parachute slows down the skydiver and reduces its downward momentum. As a result, the upward momentum gained by the Earth also decreases. **107.** If the air is brought to a halt by the sail, then the impulse against the sail will be equal and opposite to the impulse on the fan. There will be no net impulse and no change in momentum. The boat remains motionless. **109.** Bullets bouncing from the steel plate experience a greater impulse. The plate will be moved more by bouncing bullets than by bullets that stick. **111.** Agree with the first friend because after the collision the bowling ball will have a greater momentum than the golf ball. Note that before collision the momentum of the system of two balls is entirely in the moving golf ball. Call this + 1 unit. Then after collision the momentum of the rebounding golf ball is nearly −1 unit. The momentum (not the speed!) of the bowling ball will have to be nearly + 2 units. Why? Because only then is momentum conserved. Momentum before is + 1 unit: momentum after is $(+2 - 1) = +1$. **113.** Impulse is greater for reflection, which is in effect, bouncing. The vanes therefore recoil more from the silvered sides and rotate clockwise as viewed from above. (This rotation is superseded by a counter rotation when air is present, the case for most radiometers.

The black surface absorbs radiation and is heated, which warms the nearby air. The surface is pushed away from the warmed air resulting in a recoil that spins the vanes counterclockwise.) **115.** Their masses are the same; half speed for the coupled particles means equal masses for the colliding and the target particles. **117.** Momentum before the burst equals momentum after, since no external force acts. The bursting firecracker sends the balls scattering **119.** Both the cannonball and the recoiling cannon have the same momentum. For the recoiling cannon, most of its momentum is in mass, hence the large size of m. For the cannonball, most momentum is in velocity, hence the large size of v.

Chapter 7

Reading Check Questions

1. Force multiplied by distance is work. **3.** Work is defined in terms of the force applied to—and displacement of—the target object. **5.** It is the same, for the product of each is the same; $(50\text{ kg})(2\text{ m}) = (25\text{ kg})(4\text{ m})$. **7.** Power = work/time = Fd/t [$(12\text{ N})(2\text{ m})$]/3 s = 8 W. **9.** Twice the power for the heavier sack raised in the same time. **11.** It would have twice because distance raised is twice. **13.** True, KE is energy of motion. **15.** The evidence is a gain in energy. **17.** Net force = $(200\text{ N} - 100\text{ N}) = 100\text{ N}$ Work done by the net force = $100 \times 5 = 500\text{ J}$ The kinetic energy gained = 500 J. **19.** 20 kJ. **21.** The source of the energy of sunshine is fusion power in the Sun. **23.** Force would diminish by a factor of 10. **25.** Efficiency = useful energy output/total energy input. No machine can ever have an efficiency that is greater than 100%, and in practice some energy is always dissipated. **27.** Yes, recycling is an effective method of reducing wasted thermal energy. **29.** Electrolysis is a clean method of obtaining hydrogen.

Think and Do

31. Where the "pendulum bob" is slowest, its PE is maximum. Where it's fastest, its KE is maximum and PE is lowest. **33.** Energy is thermally transferred to both the ground and the ball when bouncing. So with reduced energy the ball doesn't reach the initial height after bouncing.

Plug and Chug

35. Work done = $10 \times 2 = 20\text{ J}$.
37. Power = work/time = $200/10 = 20\text{ W}$.
39. PE = $mgh = (4.0\text{ kg})(10\text{ N/kg})(2.0\text{ m}) = 80\text{ N}\cdot\text{m} = 80\text{ J}$.
41. KE = $\frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \frac{1}{2}(1.0\text{ kg})(3.0\text{ m/s})^2 = 4.5\text{ kg(m/s)}^2 = 4.5\text{ J}$.
43. $W = \Delta\text{KE} = \Delta\frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \frac{1}{2}(3.0\text{ kg})(4.0\text{ m/s})^2 = 24\text{ J}$.
45. Efficiency = (energy output)/(energy input) × 100 %
= 40 J/100 J = 0.40 or 40%.

Think and Solve

47. At three times the speed, it has 9 times (3^2) the KE and will skid 9 times as far—135 m. Since the frictional force is about the same in both cases, the distance has to be 9 times as great for 9 times as much work done by the pavement on the car. **49.** PE + KE = Total E; KE = 10,000 J − 1000 J = 9000 J. **51.** Your input work is 50 J, so $200\text{ N} \times h = 50\text{ J}$. $h = 50/200 = 0.25\text{ m}$. **53.** Power = Fd/t = [$(50\text{ N})(6.0\text{ m})$]/3.0 s = $300\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}/3.0\text{ s}$ = 100 J/1 s = 100 watts. **55.** The initial PE of the banana is transformed to KE as it falls. When the banana is about to hit the water, all of its initial PE becomes KE. From $\text{PE}_0 = \text{KE}_f \Rightarrow mgh = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 \Rightarrow v^2 = 2gh \Rightarrow v = \sqrt{2gh}$.

Think and Rank

57. (a) B, A, C. (b) C, B, A. (c) C, B, A. **59.** (a) D, B, C, E, A. (b) D, B, C, E, A. (c) A, E, C, B, D.

Think and Explain

61. The top hill designates the energy the roller coaster has in total, which spreads throughout successive shorter hills. If on higher successive hills, the coaster wouldn't have enough energy to reach their tops. **63.** The water is much denser than the air, so the mass of water that hits you in the wave will be much greater than the mass of air you feel in the breeze. This means that the KE of the water is much greater, so it will do more work on you, possibly knocking you over. **65.** More force is required to stretch the strong spring, so more work is done in stretching it the same distance as a weaker spring. **67.** (a) The PE of the drawn bow as calculated would be an overestimate (in fact, about twice its actual value) because the force applied in drawing the bow begins at zero and increases to its maximum value when fully drawn. Less work is required to draw the bow halfway than to draw it the second half of the way to its fully-drawn position. (b) So the work done is not *maximum force* × *distance drawn*, but *average force* × *distance drawn*. **69.** Your friend does twice as much work $(4 \times \frac{1}{2}/1 \times 1)$. **71.** This can be thought of in terms of frames of reference. The maximum kinetic energy you can give to the ball is in a reference frame relative to your body. However, if you are running in the direction that you are throwing the ball, then in the frame of reference of the ground, the ball will have a greater kinetic energy. **73.** The KE of a pendulum bob is maximum where it moves fastest, at the lowest point; PE is maximum at the uppermost points. When the pendulum bob swings by the point that marks half its maximum height its PE and KE have the same value. **75.** There is 200 J of potential energy that doesn't go into increasing her kinetic energy. This goes into thermal energy—heating her bottom and the slide. **77.** You agree with your second classmate. The coaster could just as well encounter a low summit before or after a higher one, so long as the higher one is just the correct amount lower than the initial summit to compensate for energy dissipation by friction. **79.** When a Superball hits the floor some of its energy is transformed to heat. This means it will have less kinetic energy after the bounce than just before and will not reach its original level. **81.** Sufficient work occurs because with each pump of the jack handle, the force she exerts acts over a much greater distance than the car is raised. A small force acting over a long distance can do significant work. **83.** KE is proportional to the square of the speed, so the kinetic energy has increased by a factor of four. **85.** Since the question did not specify that the balls are moving in the same direction, it is not possible to know if they have identical momentum. **87.** The momentum of two moving objects can combine to zero if they are equal in size but opposite in direction. Two *moving* objects cannot have a total KE of zero. **89.** Scissors and shears are levers. The applied force is normally exerted over a short distance for scissors so that the output force is exerted over a relatively long distance (except when you want a large cutting force like cutting a piece of tough rope, and you place the rope close to the "fulcrum" so you can multiply force). That's why the shears of metal-cutters are long. **91.** Even if it were possible to create a force-free moving object, it could not do any work (since that requires a force) and is therefore not a perpetual motion machine (it would exhibit perpetual motion, but not be a machine as such). **93.** The transformation of the gravitational PE of the water into the KE of the turbine, and then into electrical energy, is not 100% efficient: some of the energy will be transformed into other forms such as heat, sound, and vibration. This means that the electrical energy from the turbines would be insufficient to pump the water back up to the dam.

Think and Discuss

95. The springs in a suspension system act to transform kinetic energy into elastic potential energy, reducing the car's change in vertical motion from hitting the bump. The spring then converts the stored elastic potential energy back into kinetic energy, causing the car to bounce up and down. This bouncing is reduced by the shock absorbers, that act to dissipate the kinetic energy into heat. **97.** Except for the very center of the plane, the force of gravity acts at an angle to the plane, with a component of gravitational force along the plane—along the block's path. Hence the block goes somewhat against gravity when moving away from the central position, and moves somewhat with gravity when coming back. As the object slides farther out on the plane, it is effectively traveling "upward" against Earth's gravity, and slows down. It finally comes to rest and then slides back and the process repeats itself. The block slides back and forth along the plane. **99.** If KEs are the same but masses differ, then the ball with the smaller mass has the greater speed. That is, $\frac{1}{2}Mv^2 = \frac{1}{2}mV^2$. Likewise with molecules, where lighter ones move faster on the average than more massive ones. **101.** Your friend may not realize that mass itself is congealed energy, so tell your friend that much more energy in its congealed form is put into the reactor than is taken out from the reactor.

About 1% of the mass that undergoes fission is converted to energy of other forms. **103.** When we speak of work done, we must understand work done *on what, by what*. Work is done on the car by applied forces that originate in the engine. The work done by the road in reacting to the backward push of the tires is equal to the product of the applied force and the distance moved, not the *net* force that involves air resistance and other friction forces. When doing work, we think of applied force; when considering acceleration, we think of net force. Actually, the frictional forces of the internal mechanisms in the car, and to some extent the road itself are doing negative work on the car. The zero total work explains why the car's speed doesn't change. **105.** The ball strikes the ground with the *same* speed, whether thrown upward or downward. The ball starts with the same energy at the same place, so they will have the same energy when they reach the ground. This means they will strike with the same speed. This is assuming negligible air resistance. **107.** The other 15 horsepower is supplied by electric energy from the batteries (which are ultimately recharged using energy from gasoline). **109.** Momentum and kinetic energy are both related to the speed of an object, but there are other forms of energy, such as potential energy and thermal energy. An object placed in an oven will heat up, increasing its energy without changing its momentum. In another familiar example, a falling object will change its momentum, but (in the absence of air resistance) the total energy of the object will not change; it is transforming between kinetic and potential energies. **111.** The physics is similar to that of the ball on the horizontal lane—no force component in the direction of motion. (a) Tension in the string is everywhere perpendicular to the arc of the pendulum, with no component of tension force parallel to its motion. (b) In the case of gravity, a component of gravitational force on the pendulum exists parallel to the arc, which does work and changes the KE of the pendulum. (c) When the pendulum is at its lowest point, however, there is no component of gravitational force parallel to motion. At that instant of motion, gravity does no work (as it doesn't when the pendulum hangs at rest when the string is vertical). **113.** There is more to the "swinging balls" problem than momentum conservation, which is why the problem wasn't posed in the previous chapter. Momentum is conserved if two balls strike with momentum $2mv$ and one ball pops out with momentum $m(2v)$. That is, $2mv = m2v$. But consider KE. Two balls would strike with $2(\frac{1}{2}mv^2) = mv^2$. The single ball popping out with twice the speed would carry away twice as much energy as was put in: $\frac{1}{2}m(2v)^2 = \frac{1}{2}m(4v^2) = 2mv^2$. So popping out with twice its initial energy is clearly a conservation of energy no-no! **115.** The rate at which energy can be supplied is more central to consumers than the amount of energy that may be available, so "power crisis" more accurately describes a short-term situation where demand exceeds supply. (In the long term, the world may be facing an energy crisis when supplies of fuel are insufficient to meet demand.) **117.** As world population continues to increase, energy production must also increase to provide decent standards of living. Without peace, cooperation, and security, global-scale energy production likely decreases rather than increases.

Chapter 8

Reading Check Questions

1. The direction is along the tangent to the circumference at any instant. **3.** Yes, the wide part has a greater tangential speed than the narrow part. **5.** This pulling exerts the centripetal force. The string transmits the centripetal force. **7.** The force is inward, a centripetal force. **9.** It's called fictitious because there is no reaction counterpart to centrifugal force. **11.** Rotational inertia is the resistance to a change in rotational motion, which is similar to plain inertia, meaning that it is a resistance to a change in velocity. **13.** Rotational inertia increases with increased distance. **15.** The higher the rotational inertia, the lower is the acceleration. **17.** This happens when the lever arm is zero. **19.** The stick 'wobbles,' spins really, about its CM (or CG). **21.** Place your finger at the 50-cm mark, its CG. **23.** For stable equilibrium the CG must be above a support base, and not extend beyond it. **25.** As Figure 8.30 shows, your support base is greater with feet wide apart. **27.** An external net torque is needed to change angular momentum. **29.** Earth's reduction in angular momentum causes the Moon's distance from Earth to increase by about a quarter centimeter per year.

Think and Do

31. Open-ended. **33.** Yes, this happens because the CG hangs below the point of support. **35.** Facing the wall is more difficult! For both sexes the CG extends beyond the support base defined by the balls of the feet to the wall. **37.** Your fingers will meet in the center. When a finger is farther from the center than the other, it presses with less force on the stick and slides. The process alternates until both fingers are at the center. **39.** Impress your friends with this one!

Plug and Chug

41. Torque = level arm × force = $100 \times 0.3 = 30\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}$.
43. $F = mv^2/r = [1 \times (2)^2]/2 = 2\ \text{N}$ **45.** Angular momentum = $mvr = 1 \times 2 \times 2 = 4\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}$

Think and Solve

47. $\Delta C = 2\pi\Delta r$, where Δr for the lanes is 1.0 m. So for each lap, the beginning of the outer lane should be 1.0 m ahead. For a 5-lap race, to be even, the outer lane should be at a 5.0 m head start. **49.** It is easier to open because you create a bigger torque at the opposite side of the door from the hinge. When the knob is at the center, you need to exert more force to open the door. **51.** $T = mv^2/L = (4\ \text{kg})(10\ \text{m/s})^2/2\ \text{m} = 200\ \text{N}$
53. $L = rmv = rm(r\omega) = (0.5\ \text{m})(3.0\ \text{kg})(0.5\ \text{m})\ (14^{\text{rad}}) = 10.5\ \text{kg}\,\text{m}^2/\text{s}$

Think and Rank

55. C, A, B. **57.** B, C, A. **59.** C, A, B.

Think and Explain

61. When the string breaks, no inward force acts and via the law of inertia, the can moves in a straight line. **63.** Sue's tires have a greater rotational speed for they have to turn more times to cover the same distance. **65.** The same. The amount of taper relates to the amount of curve. On a curve where the outermost track is 0.5% longer than the inner track, the wide part of the wheel will also have to be at least 0.5% wider than the narrow part. Otherwise skidding occurs. **67.** Yes, rotational inertia is enhanced with long legs. The bird's foot is directly below the bird's CM. **69.** The bowling ball will have greater acceleration. Rotational inertia is less for the solid ball (see Table 8.1) so it is easier to accelerate. The object with the least rotational inertia per mass is the "least lazy" and has greater acceleration on an incline. **71.** If you roll them down an incline, the solid ball will roll faster. (The hollow ball has more rotational inertia compared with its weight.) **73.** The lever arm is the same whether a person stands, sits, or hangs from the end of the seesaw, and certainly the person's weight is the same. So the net torque is the same also. **75.** In the horizontal position the lever arm equals the length of the sprocket arm, but in the vertical position, the lever arm is zero because the line of action of forces passes right through the axis of rotation. (With cycling cleats, a cyclist pedals in a circle, pushing his/her feet over the top of the spoke and pulling around the bottom and pulling up on the recovery. This allows torque to be applied over a greater portion of the revolution.) **77.** Friction between the ball and the lane provides a torque, which spins the ball. **79.** With your legs straight out, your CG is farther away and you exert more torque sitting up. So sit-ups are more difficult with legs straight out, a longer lever arm. **81.** You bend forward when carrying a heavy load on your back to shift your CG and your load above the area bounded by your feet—otherwise you topple backward. **83.** Two buckets are easier because you may stand upright while carrying a bucket in each hand. With two buckets, the CG will be in the center of the support base provided by your feet, so no leaning. (The same can be accomplished by carrying a single bucket balanced on your head.) **85.** The Earth's atmosphere is a nearly spherical shell, which like a basketball, has its center of mass at its center, i.e., at the center of Earth. **87.** An object is stable when its PE must be raised in order to tip it over, or equivalently, when its PE must be increased before it can topple. By inspection, because of its narrow base the first cylinder undergoes the least change in PE compared to its weight in tipping. So it is the least stable. The third truncated pyramid requires the most work, so it is the most stable. **89.** In accord with the equation for centripetal force, twice the speed corresponds to four times

the force. **91.** Yes, let the equation for centripetal force guide your thinking, increased speed at the same radial distance means greater centripetal force. If this greater centripetal force isn't provided, the car will skid. **93.** There is no component of force parallel to the direction of motion, which work requires. **95.** In accord with Newton's first law, at every moment her tendency is to move in a straight-line path. But the floor intercepts this path and a pair of forces occur; the floor pressing against her feet and her feet pressing against the floor—Newton's third law. The push by the floor on her feet provides the centripetal force that keeps her moving in a circle with the habitat. She senses this as an artificial gravity. **97.** (a) Except for the vertical force of friction, no other vertical force except the weight of the motorcycle + rider exists. Since there is no change of motion in the vertical direction, the force of friction must be equal and opposite to the weight of motorcycle + rider. (b) The horizontal vector indeed represents the normal force. Since it is the only force acting in the radial direction, horizontally, it is also the centripetal force. So it's both. **99.** As you crawl outward, the rotational inertia of the system increases (like the masses held outward in Figure 8.52). In accord with the conservation of angular momentum, crawling toward the outer rim increases the rotational inertia of the spinning system and decreases the angular speed. **101.** Rotational inertia would increase. By angular momentum conservation, the rotation of Earth would slow (just as a skater spins slower with arms outstretched), tending to a longer day. **103.** In accord with the conservation of angular momentum, if mass moves farther from the axis of rotation, as occurs with ice caps melting, rotational speed decreases. So Earth would slow in its daily rotation. Earth's daily rotation slows down. **105.** Gravitational force acting on every particle by every other particle causes the cloud to condense. The decreased radius of the cloud is then accompanied by an increased angular speed because of angular momentum conservation. The increased speed results in many stars being thrown out into a dish-like shape.

Think and Discuss

107. Large diameter tires mean you travel farther with each revolution of the tire. So you'll be moving faster than your speedometer indicates. (A speedometer actually measures and displays the RPM of the wheels in units of mi/h or km/h. This conversion from RPM to mi/h or km/h assumes the wheels are a certain size.) Oversize wheels give too low a reading because they really travel farther per revolution than the speedometer indicates, and undersize wheels give too high a reading because the wheels go less far per revolution. **109.** Two conditions are necessary for mechanical equilibrium, $\Sigma F = 0$ and $\Sigma Torque = 0$. **111.** Friction by the road on the tires produces a torque about the car's CM. When the car accelerates forward, the friction force points forward and rotates the front of the car upward. When braking, the direction of friction is rearward, and the torque rotates the car in the opposite direction and the nose downward. **113.** Both spheres reach the bottom at the same time. **115.** The weight of the boy is counterbalanced by the weight of the board, which can be considered to be concentrated at its CG on the opposite side of the fulcrum. He is balanced when his weight multiplied by his distance from the fulcrum is equal to the weight of the entire board multiplied by the distance between the fulcrum and the midpoint (CG) of the board. **117.** On a banked road the normal force, at right angles to the road surface, has a horizontal component that provides the centripetal force. Even on a perfectly slippery surface, this component of the normal force can provide sufficient centripetal force to keep the car on the track. **119.** The track will remain in equilibrium as the balls roll outward and until the balls roll off the track. This is because the CG of the system remains over the fulcrum. So there is no CG change in the two-ball system. **121.** The equator has a greater tangential speed than latitudes north or south. When a projectile is launched from any latitude, the tangential speed of Earth is imparted to the projectile, and unless corrections are made, the projectile will miss a target where Earth travels at a different tangential speed. **123.** A centripetal force acted on Maggie during the sharp turn. Like a fluid in a medical centrifuge, blood was forced to one side of her head. Centripetal force, and therefore centripetal acceleration, produced the blood clot in her brain.

Chapter 9

Reading Check Questions

1. Before Newton, the prevailing notion was that there were two sets of natural laws: one for earthly events and another, altogether different, for motion in the heavens. **3.** This is because an object in circular motion falls away from the straight line it would follow if there were no forces acting on it. **5.** $F \sim (m_1 m_2)/r^2$; $F = (Gm_1 m_2)/r^2$. **7.** Actually the mass of Earth could then be calculated, but calling it "weighing of Earth" seemed more dramatic. **9.** The area covered is bigger by a factor of 4. **11.** Springs would be more compressed when accelerating upward; less compressed when accelerating downward. **13.** Your weight is measured as greater than mg when you are in an elevator that accelerates upward. **15.** The occupants are without a support force. **17.** One side is closer. **19.** Much of Earth's interior is molten, and like the ocean, tides occur due to unequal forces on opposite sides of Earth's interior. **21.** No, for no lever arm would exist between Earth's gravitational pull and the Moon's axis. **23.** Since the gravitational field of Earth is zero at its center, the acceleration is also zero. **25.** Anywhere inside a hollow planet the gravitational field of the planet is zero. **27.** Your weight would increase. **29.** A black hole is detected by its gravitational influence on nearby matter and neighbouring stars.

Think and Do

31. Open-ended.

Plug and Chug

33. $F = Gm_1 m_2/d^2 = (6.67 \times 10^{-11} \times 2 \times 6.0 \times 10^{24})/(6.4 \times 10^6)^2 = 19.54\ N$ **35.** $F = (Gm_1 m_2)/r^2 = 6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/kg^2} \times [(6.0 \times 10^{24}\ \mathrm{kg})(7.4 \times 10^{22}\ \mathrm{kg})]/(3.8 \times 10^8\ \mathrm{m})^2 = 2.1 \times 10^{20}\ \mathrm{N}$.

Think and Solve

37. From $F = GmM/d^2$, two times d squared is $4d^2$, which means the force (weight) is one fourth of surface weight. **39.** $W_M = 7.36 \times 10^{22}/5.98 \times 10^{24}((6.4 \times 10^6)/(1.74 \times 10^6))^2\ W_E \approx 1/6\ W_E$ **41.** $F = mg_0 = GM_{earth}m/R^2$, $\therefore\ M_{earth} = g_0 R^2/G = 9.8 \times 6400000^2/6.67 \times 10^{-11} = 6.02 \times 10^{24}$ kg **43.** $g = GM/r^2 = [(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/kg^2})\ (6 \times 10^{24}\ \mathrm{kg})]/[(6380\ \mathrm{km} + 200\ \mathrm{km}) \times 10^3]^2 = 9.24\ \mathrm{N/kg}$ or $9.24\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$; $9.24/9.8 = 0.94$ or 94%.

Think and Rank

45. B = C, A, D. **47.** (a) B, A = C, D. (b) D, A = C, B. **49.** b, a, c.

Think and Explain

51. Yes, gravity pulls harder on more massive people. **53.** It is important to stress that gravitation is universal and extends without limit. **55.** (a) At 3 m it will cover 3^2 or 9 square meters; at 5 m it will cover 5^2 or 25 square meters; at 10 m it will cover 10^2 or 100 square meters. **57.** According to the law of inertia, the Moon will move in a straight-line path instead of orbiting around the Sun and the Earth only when all gravitational forces on the Moon vanish to zero. **59.** The force of gravity is the same on each because the masses are the same. When dropped the crumpled paper falls faster only because it encounters less air resistance than the sheet. **61.** No, distances between floors in an office building are trivial compared with their distances from Earth's center. So no measureable forces due to distances between Ian and his colleague occur. **63.** A person in Singapore is farther from Earth's center than a person in Hong Kong. Therefore, strictly speaking, one weighs less in Singapore! **65.** $\Delta g \approx 2h/Rg_0 = 2 \times 10/6400 \times 9.8 = 0.030625\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$ **67.** No. Since the radius of the Earth at the equator is greater than at the poles, weight at the poles is greater than the weight at the equator. **69.** Let the equation for gravitation guide your thinking, ¼ the diameter is ¼ the radius, which corresponds to 16 × the astronaut's weight at the planet's surface. **71.** The high-flying jet plane is not in free fall so a passenger experiences no net force. The upward support force of the seat equals the downward pull of gravity, providing the sensation of weight. The orbiting space vehicle, on the other hand, is in a state of free fall. No support force is provided by the seat. With no support force, the force of gravity on the orbiting passenger is not sensed as weight. **73.** In a car that drives off a

cliff you "float" because the car no longer provides a support force. Both you and the car are free fall. But gravity is still acting on you, as evidenced by your acceleration toward the ground. So, by definition, you would be weightless. **75.** In both cases the scale readings are the same, 650 N. **77.** The jumper is weightless due to the absence of a support force. **79.** The rocket burns and exhausts fuel, which greatly decreases its mass. **81.** Your weight equals mg when you are in equilibrium on a horizontal surface and the only forces acting on you are mg downward and an equal-and-opposite normal force N upward. **83.** The force due to gravity, mg, does not vary with jouncing. Fluctuations in the scale reading are variations in the support force N, not in mg. **85.** The gravitational pull of the Sun on Earth is greater than the gravitational pull of the Moon. The tides, however, are caused by the *differences* in gravitational forces by the Moon on opposite sides of Earth that are greater than the corresponding difference in forces by the stronger pull of the more distant Sun. **87.** No, tides are caused by differences in gravitational pulls. If there are no differences in pulls, there are no tides. **89.** Lowest tides occur along with highest tides, spring tides. So the tide cycle consists of higher-than-average high tides followed by lower-than-average low tides (best for digging clams!). **91.** Because of its relatively small size, different parts of the Mediterranean Sea and other relatively small bodies of water are essentially equidistant from the Moon (or from the Sun). So one part is not pulled with any appreciably different force than any other part. This results in extremely tiny tides. Tides are caused by appreciable differences in pulls. **93.** For a uniform-density planet, g inside at half Earth's radius would be 5 m/s^2. This can be understood via Figure 9.24. Gravitational field intensity is linear from Earth's center to Earth's surface. Halfway to the center of the Earth, field intensity is half, $g/2$. **95.** Decrease. At a depth h, $F = GMm/R^3\,(R - h) \rightarrow g = F/m = GM/R^2\,(R - h/R) = g_0\,(1 - h/R)$ **97.** No. As the top end of the spring balance is no longer held fixed, both ends of the springs, as well as you, move with identical acceleration. The spring will be not stretched, and recorder will measure weight to be zero.

Think and Discuss

99. Net force will zero. Horizontal and vertical components will cancel all out at the center. **101.** The Earth and Moon pull equally on each other in a single interaction. In accord with Newton's 3rd law, the pull of Earth on the Moon is equal and opposite to the pull of the Moon on Earth. An elastic band pulls equally on the fingers that stretch it. **103.** Weight depends not only on mass but distance. On Jupiter, this is the distance between the body being weighed and Jupiter's center—the radius of Jupiter. If the radius of Jupiter were the same as that of Earth, then a body would weigh 300 times as much because Jupiter is 300 times more massive than Earth. But the radius of Jupiter is about 10 times that of Earth, weakening gravity by a factor of 100, resulting in 3 times its Earth weight. (The radius of Jupiter is actually about 11 times that of Earth). **105.** First of all, it would be incorrect to say that the gravitational force of the Sun on you is too small to be measured. It's small, but not immeasurably small. The key idea is *support*. There is no "Sun support" because Earth and all objects on Earth—you, your bathroom scale, and everything else—are continually falling around the Sun. **107.** The gravitational force varies with distance. At noon you are closer to the Sun. At midnight you are an extra Earth diameter farther away. Therefore the gravitational force between you and the Sun will be greater at noon. **109.** Tides would be greater if Earth's diameter were larger because the difference in pulls would be greater. But tides on Earth would be no different if the Moon's diameter were larger. The gravitational influence of the Moon is just as if all the Moon's mass were at its CG. **111.** Tides occur in Earth's crust and its atmosphere for the same reason tides occur in the oceans. Both the crust and atmosphere are large enough for appreciable differences in distances to the Moon and Sun. **113.** $t' \approx t\,(1 + \omega^2 R/2\,g) = (3\,s)(1 + (2\pi)^2 \times 6400 \times 10^3/2 \times (24 \times 3600)^2 \times 9.8) = (3\,s)(1 + 0.00173) = 3.005\,s$ **115.** Let the gravitational force equation guide your thinking. Your position and the CG of Earth don't change, and distance r and mass m don't change. So your weight wouldn't change. **117.** The misunderstanding is not distinguishing between a theory and a hypothesis or conjecture. A theory, such as the theory of universal gravitation, is a synthesis of a large body of information that encompasses well-tested and verified hypotheses about nature.

Chapter 10

Reading Check Questions

1. This is because the horizontal component of velocity is constant whereas the vertical component of velocity experiences an acceleration which is equal to the acceleration due to gravity. **3.** The horizontal range is maximum when launch angle is 45°. **5.** In 1 second it falls 5 m beneath the line. For 2 seconds the ball falls 20 m beneath the line. **7.** When the ball comes down and again reaches the initial point of launch. **9.** The trajectory of a projectile traveling horizontally at 8 km/s can match Earth's curvature. **11.** A satellite must remain above the atmosphere because air resistance would not only slow it down, but incinerate it at its high speed. A satellite must avoid this. **13.** The direction of gravitational force is perpendicular to the direction of motion of a satellite. **15.** The period for satellites at higher altitudes is more than 90 minutes. **17.** A satellite overshoots the circular path against the force of gravity and starts slowing down. It reaches its maximum distance from the planet. It then starts falling back and gains speed to reach its original speed as it reaches its initial position. **19.** The ratio T^2/r^3 is constant for all planets. **21.** PE is constant for a circular orbit. For an elliptical orbit, PE is greatest at the apogee and smallest at the perigee. **23.** Yes, escape speed can be at speeds less than 11.2 km/s if that speed is *sustained*. **25.** No, however distant, Earth's gravity, and that of everything else, extends indefinitely, even when it is negligibly tiny.

Think and Do

27. Physics is about connections in nature.

Think and Solve

29. (a) For projectile motion: $x = v_0^2 \sin 2\theta_0/g$, since speed and acceleration due to gravity is constant the maximum range will happen when $\sin 2\theta_0 = 1 \rightarrow 2\theta_0 = \pi/2 \rightarrow \theta_0 = \pi/4$. Which means to reach maximum distance angle must be 45°. (b) $R = v_0^2/g = 70^2/9.8 = 500$ m (c) Total duration, $T = 2v_0 \sin\theta_0/g = 2 \times 70 \times \sin 45°/9.8 = 10.1\,s$; Maximum height: $h = (v_0 \sin\theta_0)^2/2g) = (70 \times \sin 45°)^2/2 \times 9.8 = 125$ m
31. The horizontal component of velocity is equal to $200 \times \cos 60° = 100$ m/s. Since the vertical component becomes zero at the top of the trajectory, the ball hits the bird with this speed i.e. 100 m/s. **33.** Given, $T_1 = 2h, T_2 = 4h, R_2 = 10^7$ m, we need to find R_1. $(R_1/R_2)^3 = (T_1/T_2)^2 = (2h/4h)^2 = 1/8 \rightarrow R_1/R_2 = 1/2 \rightarrow R_1 = R_2/2 = 5 \times 10^6$ m **35.** (a) Horizontal speed is horizontal distance traveled in time t. The time t of the ball in flight is as if we drop it from rest a vertical distance y from the top of the net. At highest point in its path, its vertical component of velocity is zero. (b) So $v = d/\sqrt{(2y/g)} = 12.0\text{ m}/\sqrt{[2(1.00\text{ m})/10\text{ m/s}^2]} = 26.8$ m/s ≈ 27 m/s. (c) Note mass of the ball doesn't show in the equation, so mass is irrelevant.

Think and Rank

37. (a) A = B = C (b) A = B = C (c) A = B = C (d) B, A, C **39.** (a) A, B, C, D (b) A, B, C, D (c) A, B, C, D (d) A, B, C, D (e) D, C, B, A (f) A = B = C = D (g) A, B, C, D

Think and Explain

41. Yes, it will hit with a higher speed in the same time because the horizontal (not the vertical) component of motion is greater. **43.** The crate will not hit the Corvette, but will crash a distance beyond it determined by the height and speed of the plane. **45.** (a) The paths are parabolas. (b) The paths would be straight lines. **47.** Minimum speed occurs at the top, which is the same as the horizontal component of velocity anywhere along the path. **49.** The possible angles are $45° + \alpha$ and $45° - \alpha$. So, if $\alpha = 15°$, the possibilities should be 30° and 60°. **51.** No, twice ⅔ second is ⁴⁄₃ s = 1.33 seconds, which would be a world record. Hang time for a 1.2-m jump would be twice = 2(0.49 s) = 0.99 s, quite impressive. Note that height ~ time squared, not time. **53.** Kepler's laws apply not only to planets orbiting the Sun but about Earth or any body. **55.** Yes, the satellite is undergoing centripetal acceleration. The acceleration is toward the Earth's center. **57.** A satellite is in a state of free fall. When calculating speed and force, mass cancels. Objects of all masses move the same in free

fall and in orbital motion. Sputnik, was a body in sustained free fall, as are all satellites. **59.** Gravitation supplies the centripetal force on satellites. **61.** Upon slowing it spirals toward Earth and in so doing has a component of gravitational force in its direction of motion that causes it to gain speed. When it slows and spirals toward Earth there is a component of gravitational force that does work to increase the KE of the satellite. **63.** Yes, a satellite needn't be above the surface of the orbiting body. It could orbit at any distance from Earth's center of mass. Its orbital speed would be less because the effective mass of Earth would be the fraction of mass below the tunnel radius. So interestingly, a satellite in circular orbit has its greatest speed near Earth's surface, and decreases with both decreasing and increasing distances. **65.** In circular orbit there is no component of force along the direction of the satellite's motion so no work is done. In elliptical orbit, there is always a component of force along the direction of the satellite's motion (except at the apogee and perigee) so work is done on the satellite. **67.** (a) Suppose the distance between Earth and Moon is R. Then, distance between the satellite and Earth is $R/2$. Using Kepler's third law: $(R/2/R)^3 = (T_S/T_M)^2 \rightarrow 1/8 = T_S^2/(27.3 \text{ days})^2 \rightarrow T_S = 27.3/\sqrt{8} =$ 9.65 days. (b) If the distance is same as Earth-Moon, period of satellite will be same as Moon's period. **69.** Communication satellites only appear motionless because their orbital period coincides with the daily rotation of Earth. They are in geosynchronous orbit. **71.** Period is greater for satellites farther from Earth. **73.** An object could be dropped by firing it straight backward at the same speed of the ISS. Then its speed relative to Earth would be zero, and it would fall straight downward. **75.** The tangential velocity of Earth about the Sun is about 30 km/s. If a rocket carrying the radioactive wastes were fired at 30 km/s from Earth in the direction opposite to Earth's orbital motion about the Sun, the wastes would have no tangential velocity with respect to the Sun. They would simply fall into the Sun. **77.** Since Moon's surface gravity is much less than Earth's, less thrust and less fuel is required to launch it to escape speed from the Moon. **79.** None of these arguments are appropriate. Correct argument: The situation of earth-orbiting astronauts is the same as free fall where no external force is acting on the body, just like a free-falling elevator. **81.** The satellite experiences the greatest gravitational force at A, where it is closest to Earth, the perigee; and the greatest speed and the greatest velocity at A, and by the same token the greatest momentum and greatest kinetic energy at A, and the greatest gravitational potential energy at the farthest point C. It would have the same total energy (KE + PE) at all parts of its orbit, likewise the same angular momentum because it's conserved. It would have the greatest acceleration at A, where F/m is greatest. **83.** Acceleration is maximum where gravitational force is maximum, and that's when Earth is closest to the Sun, at the perigee. At the apogee, force and acceleration are minimum.

Think and Discuss

85. Consider "Newton's cannon" fired from a tall mountain on Jupiter. To match the wider curvature of much larger Jupiter, and to contend with Jupiter's greater gravitational pull, the cannonball would have to be fired significantly faster. (Orbital speed about Jupiter is about 5 times that for Earth.) **87.** $GMm/r^2 = mv^2/r \rightarrow v = \sqrt{GM/r} = \sqrt{g\,R^2/r}$; Time period $= 2\pi r/v$ **89.** For the same g, a vertical drop of 20 m takes 2 seconds. So a satellite on a planet with a 2-second drop for each 8 km segment has an orbital speed $8 \text{ km}/2 \text{ s} = 4 \text{ km/s}$. **91.** When descending, a satellite meets the atmosphere at almost orbital speed. When ascending, its speed through the air is considerably less and it attains orbital speed well above air drag. **93.** Let the radius be a, and mass of the satellite is m then, $GMm/a^2 = mv^2/a \rightarrow v = \sqrt{GM/a}$; the time period is: $T = 2\pi a/v = 2\pi a/\sqrt{GM/a} = 2\pi/\sqrt{GM}\,a^{3/2}$. Therefore, the radius of the geostationary satellite is: $a = ((GMT^2)/(4\pi^2))^{1/3} = (6.67 \times 10^{-11} \times 6 \times 10^{24} \times (24 \times 3600)^2/(4\pi^2))^{1/3} = 4.2 \times 10^4$ km . **95.** The half of the satellite brought to rest will fall vertically to Earth. The other half, in accord with the conservation of linear momentum will have twice the satellite's original velocity, and will move farther from Earth (actually, it will have enough speed to escape Earth and fly into space). **97.** In accord with the work-energy relationship, $Fd = \Delta\text{KE}$, for a constant thrust F, the maximum change in KE will occur when d is maximum. The rocket will travel the greatest distance d during the brief firing time when it is traveling fastest—at the perigee.

Chapter 11

Reading Check Questions

1. According to Aristotle, all matter was composed of earth, air, fire, and water. **3.** John Dalton first proposed the idea matter is composed of atoms. Albert Einstein explained Brownian motion. **5.** There are about 10^{23} atoms in a gram of water. **7.** A scanning electron microscope allows us to see atoms indirectly. **9.** A model in science is a steppingstone to further understanding and more accurate models. **11.** Nucleons with positive charge are called protons. **13.** Hydrogen is the most abundant element. **15.** Heaviest elements originated in supernovas. **17.** The arrangement of elements on the basis of their atomic numbers makes up the Periodic table. **19.** The periodic table has 7 periods and 18 groups. **21.** As nuclear charge increases nuclear attraction also increases leading to the smaller size of a helium atom. **23.** Mass number is the total number of protons and neutrons in a nucleus. Therefore, even if the number of neutrons in a nucleus is zero its mass number can never be less than its atomic number. **25.** The same, energy of separation equals energy of recombination. **27.** A mixture is a substance mixed together without chemical bonding, for example, sand and salt, or air. In a compound, different elements chemically bond to another and the resultant material is uniquely different from its constituent elements. **29.** When matter meets antimatter, equal masses of each annihilate.

Think and Do

31. Yes, the candle will burn twice as long because there is twice as much oxygen in the twice-as-large jar. **33.** Tell your grandparents that atoms making up their bodies have been around longer than Sun's formation, and will be around after the Sun dies.

Think and Rank

35. c, b, a. **37.** e, a b, d, c.

Think and Explain

39. The shell model is not a scaled-up version of an atom, but is a representation of an atom's properties. **41.** Electrical repulsion prevents the atoms from coalescing and keeping us from falling through the floor. **43.** Two atoms of hydrogen and one atom of sulphur. **45.** Bronze (88% Cu + 12% Sn). **47.** Three different elements contribute to H_2SO_4. The number of atoms is seven. **49.** Partially agree. For stable elements, the number of protons and electrons are the same, but there are instances when elements have different numbers of protons and electrons. Such elements are called ions. **51.** The electrically neutral iron atom has as many electrons as protons, 26. **53.** (a) Carbon. (b) Lead. (c) Radon. **55.** The other inert gases are neon, argon, krypton, xenon, and radon. **57.** Sodium (Na). **59.** Letting the formula $\text{KE} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ guide your thinking, for the same speed the atom with greater mass has greater KE. Greatermass carbon therefore has greater KE than hydrogen for the same speed. **61.** Answers will vary.

Think and Discuss

63. The carbon atoms that make up the author's daughter Leslie's hair or anything else in this world were manufactured in supernovae eons ago. **65.** The tree gains weight because its primary source of mass (carbon, oxygen, and hydrogen) is directly from the air, not from the water and nutrients it absorbs through its roots. **67.** During photosynthesis, plants use solar energy to produce oxygen gas and carbohydrate molecules. These carbohydrate molecules retain that solar energy which they release when burnt, in the form of wood, at a campfire! **69.** Yes, the nucleus is composed of even smaller units, subatomic particles such as the proton and neutron which are composed of even smaller entities called quarks. **71.** Since each atom contains multiple electrons, there will be more electrons in the baseball than ping-pong balls inside Earth. **73.** A titanium atom is less massive than a platinum atom. Thus, there are more titanium atoms than platinum atoms in a gram sample. **75.** The neutrons carry no electric charge and thus have a greater likelihood of passing through the tissue. **77.** With every breath of air you take, it is highly likely that you inhale one of the atoms exhaled during your very first breath. This is because the number of atoms of air in your lungs is about the same as the

number of breaths of air in the atmosphere of the world. **79.** The amount of matter that a given amount of antimatter would annihilate is the same as the amount of antimatter, a pair of particles at a time. The whole world could not be annihilated by antimatter unless the mass of antimatter were or was at least equal to the mass of the world.

Chapter 12

Reading Check Questions

1. Atoms are orderly in a crystalline substance, and random in non-crystalline substances. **3.** An amorphous material is one in which the atoms and molecules are random in orientation. **5.** Both densites are one and the same. **7.** Water has a mass density of 1 g/cm^3, and a normal weight density of 9.8 N/cm^3. **9.** Putty when deformed, remains deformed when the deforming force is removed. **11.** Hooke's law applies to both spring compressions and stretches. **13.** Stretch will be 3 times as much, 6 cm. **15.** Tension is "stretching" of a substance when force is applied; compression is squeezing a substance when force is applied. **17.** I-beams have material removed where strength is not needed, which makes the beam lighter for nearly the same strength. **19.** Long horizontal slabs of stone fracture when carrying a load such as the roof, so vertical columns reduce the lengths of the slabs. **21.** Cement is not needed because compressive forces hold the arch together. **23.** Strength depends on the cross-sectional area. **25.** Surface area increases by four; volume increases by eight. **27.** An elephant has more skin than a mouse, but less skin *per bodyweight* than a mouse. **29.** The saying is a consequence of a small ratio of surface area to volume.

Think and Do

31. Snowflakes melt quickly, so be alert! **33.** You're slightly taller lying down. When standing, compression of your spine occurs. **35.** Pressure decreases when the area being pressed increases. More eggs mean less pressure so less breakage. Then the catenary comes to play with its greater strength.

Think and Solve

37. From density $= m/V$, mass of aluminum $=$ density $\times$ $V = 2.7$ g/cm^3 $\times$ 10 cm $\times$ 10 cm $\times$ 10 cm $= 2700$ grams. For gold, 19.3 g/cm^3 $\times$ 10 cm $\times$ 10 cm $\times$ 10 cm $= 19{,}300$ grams. **39.** 50 N is 5/3 times 30 N, so the spring will stretch 5/3 times as far, **10 cm**. Or from Hooke's law; $F = kx$, $x = F/k = 50$ N/(30 N/6 cm) $= 10$ cm. (The spring constant $k =$ 5 N/cm.) **41.** (a) (1 cm)(1 cm)(6 sides) $= 6$ cm^2; (b) You would need 27 wooden cubes (3 $\times$ 3 $\times$ 3).

Think and Rank

43. d, b, a, e, c.

Think and Explain

45. The atomic bonds in crayons are weak. **47.** Water expands when frozen, so ice is less dense than water. **49.** The silicon in glass is amorphous, whereas in semiconductor devices it is crystalline. Silicon in sand, from which glass is made, is bound to oxygen as silicon dioxide, while that in semiconductor devices are elemental and extremely pure. Hence their physical properties differ. **51.** The balloon shrinks because the air molecules inside it contract when cooled down. **53.** Density of water decreases when it becomes ice. **55.** Lead. **57.** For one thing, drop a steel ball on a steel anvil. It will bounce! **59.** All parts of the spring would be proportionally stretched more. For example, at twice the load all segments of the spring would be twice as far apart. **61.** Case 1: Tension at the top and the compression at the bottom. Case 2: Compression at the top and tension at the bottom. **63.** A horizontal I-beam is stronger when the web is vertical because most of the material is where it is needed for the most strength, in the top and bottom flanges. **65.** A concave bottom better supports the weight of the contents in the bottle due to compression. **67.** Catenaries make up the arches of the ends of an egg. Pressing them together strengthens the egg. But when pressing the egg sideways, which does not constitute a catenary shape, it easily splays outward under pressure and breaks. **69.** No, the steel rods would not be necessary if the arch were an upside down version of a hanging chain. Why? Because compression of the stones in the semi-circular design press outward. Compression in the hanging chain design (catenary) is everywhere parallel to the arch. **71.** Small ice cubes together have a larger surface area than one big chunk of ice, allowing for faster heat transfer. **73.** Faster heat absorption due to larger surface area of the snow. **75.** The sphere chocolate melts slower because it has less surface area. **77.** Crushed charcoal has a larger surface area allowing faster burning. **79.** Cylindrical iron. **81.** Cutting potatoes into chunks increases the surface area exposed to boiling water, resulting in faster cooking. **83.** The greater amount of radiating area of a dog means that it radiates a greater amount of energy, requiring a greater proportion of food daily. **85.** Small animals radiate more energy per bodyweight, so the blood flow is correspondingly greater, and the heart beats faster. **87.** Cells of all creatures have essentially the same upper limit in size dictated by the surface area per volume relationship. Nourishment of all cells takes place through the surface by osmosis. As cells grow they require more nourishment, but the proportional increase in surface area falls behind the increase in mass. The cell overcomes this liability by dividing into two cells. The process is repeated and there is life that takes the form of whales, mice, and us.

Think and Discuss

89. Iron is denser than cork, but not necessarily heavier. A common cork from a wine bottle, for example, is heavier than an iron thumbtack—but it wouldn't be heavier if the volumes of each were the same. **91.** Winding it multiple times increases its thickness. **93.** Tension occurs in the chain; compression in the arch. The red vectors at the top of the arch represent compression, while the red vectors at the bottom of the chain represent tension vectors. **95.** Yes, using a wider, shallow pan means that more surface area of the batter is exposed, which will result in faster baking time. **97.** A child has more need for a drink due to more surface area per volume, and therefore loses disproportionately more water to the air. **99.** Strength varies in approximate proportion to the cross-sectional area of arms and legs (proportional to the square of the linear dimensions). Weight varies in proportion to the volume of the body (proportional to the cube of the linear dimension). So—other things being equal—the ratio of strength to weight is greater for smaller persons.

Chapter 13

Reading Check Questions

1. Pressure is twice as much on the floor when you stand on one foot. **3.** Pressure at the bottom is due to the weight of water above (and total pressure, plus the weight of the atmosphere). **5.** Pressures will be the same at the same depth. **7.** Buoyant force acts upward because there is more force beneath an object due to more pressure at greater depth. **9.** Both volumes are the same. **11.** A submerged body is completely immersed, completely beneath the surface. **13.** Volume of displace water will be 1/2 L. Buoyant force will be 5 N. **15.** Yes. When an object floats, buoyant force equals its weight. **17.** sink; float; neither sink nor float. **19.** It is not a contradiction because in the case of floating, the buoyant force equals both the weight of the object and the weight of water displaced. **21.** If pressure in one part is increased, the same increase in pressure is transmitted to all parts. **23.** A sphere has the least surface area for a given volume. **25.** Adhesion is the attraction between unlike substances; cohesion is the attraction between like substances.

Think and Do

27. An egg is denser than fresh water, but less dense than saltwater. Therefore an egg will float in saltwater, but sink in fresh water. **29.** The wet ball is pulled by surface tension beneath the surface when the system is weightless (dropping). When the can makes an impact the submerged ball that is very much lighter than the water it displaces, the greater buoyant force on it pops the ball out of the water. **31.** The pepper grains float due to surface tension. When the surface tension is diminished by the addition of soap, the grains sink. Intriguing!

Plug and Chug

33. Pressure $= 10$ N/50 cm^2 $= 0.2$ N/cm^2.
35. Pressure $= (10{,}000$ N/m$^3)(10$ m$) = 100{,}000$ N/m^2 $= 1000{,}000$ Pa $= 100$ kPa.

Think and Solve

37. Pressure $=$ weight density $\times$ depth $= 10{,}000$ N/m^3 $\times$ 1 m $= 10{,}000$ N/m^2 $= 10$ kPa. **39.** Added pressure $=$ weight density $\times$ depth $= 10{,}000$ N/m^3 $\times$ 20 m $= 200{,}000$ N/m^2 $= 200$ kPa.

41. The volume can be determined as: volume = mass/density = (1 kg)/(1000 kg/m^3) = 0.001 m^3. Since the wood is cube in shape, the dimension is 0.1 m or 10 cm. **43.** If the sample is authentic aluminum, it should displace a volume of v = mass/density = 1000g/2.7g/cm^3 = 370 cm^3 = 370 mL.

Think and Rank

45. b and d, a and c. **47.** a, b, c.

Think and Explain

49. A sharp knife cuts better than a dull knife because it has a thinner cutting area which results in more cutting pressure for a given force. **51.** A woman with spike heels exerts considerably more pressure on the ground than an elephant! A 500-N lady with 1-cm^2 spike heels puts half her weight on each foot, distributed (let's say) half on her heel and half on her sole. So the pressure exerted by each heel will be 125 N/1 cm^2 = 125 N/cm^2. A 50,000-N elephant with 1000 cm^2 feet exerting 1/4 its weight on each foot produces 125,000 N/1000 cm^2 = 12.5 N/cm^2; about 10 times less pressure. (So a woman with spike heels will make greater dents in a softwood floor than an elephant.) **53.** Your upper arm is at the same level as your heart, so the blood pressure in your upper arms will be the same as the blood pressure in your heart. **55.** No, in orbit where support is absent there are no pressure differences due to gravity. **57.** (a) The reservoir is elevated so as to produce suitable water pressure in the faucets that it serves. (b) The hoops are closer together at the bottom because the water pressure is greater at the bottom. Closer to the top, the water pressure is not as great, so less reinforcement is needed there. **59.** A one-kilogram block of aluminum is larger than a one-kilogram block of lead. The aluminum therefore displaces more water. **61.** The weights would be the same only if the submerged object has the density of the water it is submerged in. **63.** Water seeking its own level is a consequence of pressure depending on depth. In a bent U-tube full of water, for example, the water in one side of the tube tends to push water up the other side until the pressures at the same depth in each tube are equal. If the water levels were not the same, there would be more pressure at a given level in the fuller tube, which would move the water until the levels were equal. **65.** Saltwater is denser than freshwater, which means you don't "sink" as far when displacing your weight. You'd float even higher in mercury (density 13.6 g/cm^3), and you'd sink completely in alcohol (density 0.8 g/cm^3). **67.** The can of diet drink is less dense than water, whereas the can of regular drink is denser than water. (Water with dissolved sugar is denser than pure water.) Also, the weight of the can of diet drink is less than the buoyant force that would act on it if totally submerged. So it floats, where buoyant force equals the weight of the can. **69.** Mountain ranges are very similar to icebergs: Both float in a denser medium, and extend farther down into that medium than they extend above it. Mountains, like icebergs, are bigger than they appear to be. The concept of floating mountains is *isostacy*—Archimedes' principle for molten rocks. **71.** The force needed will be the weight of 1 L of water, which is 9.8 N. If the weight of the carton is not negligible, then the force needed would be 9.8 N minus the carton's weight, for then the carton would be "helping" to push itself down. **73.** The buoyant force on the ball beneath the surface is much greater than the force of gravity on the ball, producing a large net upward force and large acceleration. **75.** While floating, BF equals the weight of the submarine. When submerged, BF equals the submarine's weight plus the weight of water taken into its ballast tanks. So the submerged submarine displaces a greater weight of water than the same submarine floating. **77.** Buoyant force on a sinking swimmer will decrease as she sinks. This is because her body, unlike the rock in the previous exercise, will be compressed by the greater pressure of greater depths. **79.** The buoyant force on the ship does not change. The buoyant force on a floating object is always equal to that object's weight, no matter what the fluid. **81.** More oil will be displaced as compared to water because oil is less dense. **83.** The total weight on the scale is the same either way, so the scale reading will be the same whether or not the wooden block is outside or floating in the beaker. Likewise for an iron block, where the scale reading shows the total weight of the system. **85.** The gondolas weigh the same because they're brim full, and whatever the weight of a floating boat, that same weight of water was displaced when the boat entered the gondola. **87.** If water doesn't overflow, the reading on the scale will increase by the ordinary weight of the fish. However, if the aquarium is brim filled so a volume of water equal to the volume of the fish overflows, then the reading will not change. We correctly assume that the fish and water have the same density. **89.** Because of surface tension, which tends to minimize the surface of a blob of water, its shape without gravity and other distorting forces will be a sphere—the shape with the least surface area for a given volume. **91.** Part of whatever pressure you add to the water is transmitted to the hungry crocodiles, via Pascal's principle. This ever-so-slight rise of water level, and accompanying ever-so-slight increase in pressure at the bottom of the pool, is an ever-so-welcome signal to the hungry crocodiles. **93.** In Figure 13.23, the increased pressure in the reservoir is a result of the applied force distributed over the input piston area. This increase in pressure is transmitted to the output piston. In Figure 13.22, however, the pressure increase is supplied by the mechanical pump, which has nothing to do with the area of fluid interface between the compressed air and the liquid. Many hydraulic devices have a single piston upon which pressure is exerted. **95.** A heavy clip would push deeper into the water surface, overcoming the small force of surface tension and sink, whereas a light clip won't. **97.** The water wets your finger better. Due to the larger surface tension of mercury, no wetting occurs.

Think and Discuss

99. The water cannot be deeper than the spouts, which are at the same height, so both teapots hold the same amount of liquid. **101.** This dramatically illustrates that water pressure depends on depth, which directly relates to Think and Solve 38. **103.** The use of a water-filled garden hose as an elevation indicator is a practical example of water seeking its own level. The water surface at one end of the hose will be at the same elevation above sea level as the water surface at the other end of the hose. **105.** Just as a submerged balloon expands while rising from deep water, it is the same with the expansion of the scuba diver's lungs. It is best that the diver allows exhaling when rising so as not to rupture the lungs. **107.** The hollow sections inside the ship make its total average density less than that of water, helping it float. **109.** When you blow air out of your lungs, like a deflating balloon, the volume of your rib cage decreases, which means buoyant force on you decreases. Your movement is down, so you sink to the bottom! **111.** For the same reason as in the previous exercise, the water level will fall. **113.** Since both preservers are the same size, they will displace the same amount of water when submerged and be buoyed up with equal forces. Effectiveness is another story. The amount of buoyant force exerted on the heavy gravel-filled preserver is much less than its weight. If you wear it, you'll sink. The same amount of buoyant force exerted on the lighter Styrofoam preserver is greater than its weight and it will keep you afloat. The amount of the force and the effectiveness of the force are two different things. **115.** A floating body displaces its own weight of water, any water! So the buoyant force on Greta is the same as when she floats in fresh water. What is different is the volume of water displaced in the two cases. **117.** If the gravitational field of the Earth increased, both the water and the fish would increase in weight and weight density by the same factor, so the fish would stay at its prior level in the water.

Chapter 14

Reading Check Questions

1. The Sun is the energy source for motion of gases in the atmosphere. Earth's gravity pulls air molecules down, keeping most of them from escaping into space. **3.** The cause of atmospheric pressure is the weight of air. **5.** Approximate mass is 1 kg, with weight 10 N. **7.** Both pressures are the same. **9.** It would have to be taller because it's 1/13.6 as dense. **11.** The pressure sensed by an aneroid barometer is calibrated in altitude. **13.** Pressure doubles when volume is halved. **15.** (a) BF equals 1 N. (b) If the BF decreases, the balloon descends. (c) If BF increases, the balloon ascends. **17.** The balloons expand and would likely rupture with increased altitude if fully inflated. **19.** Where streamlines are crowded, pressure is less. **21.** Bernoulli's principle is about internal pressures, whereas pressures that fluids may exert on objects involving abrupt changes of the fluid's momentum that does not involve Bernoulli. This distinction can clear much confusion. **23.** The fluid is pushed up

by the pressure of the atmosphere on its surface. **25.** Some examples are neon signs, fluorescent lamps, and monitor screens.

Think and Do

27. Changes are especially evident with large differences in altitude. **29.** The pressures should be approximately the same. The rigid walls of the tire prevent the pressure calculations from being closer. The calculated value should therefore be somewhat greater. **31.** You would have to reach a column 10.3 m tall to give the same pressure as a column of mercury 76 cm tall. **33.** The gurgling is due to air entering the jar. No gurgling would occur if this were somehow tried on the Moon where there is no atmosphere. **35.** When your finger closes the top of the water-filled straw, atmospheric pressure no longer acts on the top part of the water, which is easily lifted. When you raise your finger the water spills out the bottom. **37.** Water pressure is lowered in the part flowing over the curved part of the spoon, resulting in movement toward the stream instead of away from it.

Think and Solve

39. Volume of the balloon $= (4/3)\pi r^3 = (4/3)\pi(4\text{m}/2)^3 = 33.51\ \text{m}^3$. To calculate the mass of displaced air $m = \rho V = (1.2\ \text{kg/m}^3)(33.51\ \text{m}^3) = 40.2$ kg. **41.** From $P = F/A$; $F = PA = (0.04)(10^5\ \text{n/m}^2)(100\ \text{m}^2) = 4 \times 10^5$ N. **43.** $V = V_2 - V_1 = 4/3\ \pi r_2^3 - 4/3\ \pi r_1^3 = 4/3\ \pi [(6370\ \text{k})^3 - (6370\ \text{k} - 30\ \text{k})^3] = 1.52 \times 1010\ \text{k}^3$

Think and Rank

45. d, b, a, c.

Think and Explain

47. The bottom of a well is deeper in the atmospheric ocean of air and is therefore greater than at the top. **49.** At higher elevations, less atmospheric pressure is exerted on the football's exterior, making relative pressure within greater, resulting in a firmer football. **51.** The air density in a deep mine is greater than at Earth's surface. The air filling up the mine adds weight and pressure at the bottom of the mine, and according to Boyle's law, greater pressure in a gas means greater density. **53.** Airplane windows are small because the pressure difference between the inside and outside surfaces results in large net forces that are directly proportional to the window's surface area. **55.** A vacuum cleaner wouldn't work on the Moon because there is no atmospheric pressure to push dust anywhere. A vacuum cleaner operates on Earth because the atmospheric pressure pushes dust into the machine's region of reduced pressure. **57.** If barometer liquid were half as dense as mercury, then to weigh as much, a column twice as high would be required. A barometer using such liquid would therefore have to be twice the height of a standard mercury barometer, or about 152 cm instead of 76 cm. **59.** Mercury is 13.6 times denser than water, so it can only be lifted 1/13.6 times as high as water. **61.** Not the same. Drinking soda through a straw is slightly more difficult atop a mountain because the reduced atmospheric pressure is less effective in pushing soda up into the straw. **63.** Yes, the higher pressure, the deeper the water pumped. **65.** The buoyant force does not change, because the volume of the balloon does not change. The buoyant force is the weight of air displaced, and doesn't depend on what is doing the displacing. The net lift, however, is greater because of a smaller weight of gas. **67.** According to Boyle's law, the pressure will increase to three times its original pressure. **69.** As the opening is made smaller the speed of ejected water increases in accord with the principle of continuity. **71.** Air speed across the wing surfaces, necessary for flight, is greater when facing the wind. **73.** (a) Speed increases (so that the same quantity of gas can move through the pipe in the same time). (b) Pressure decreases (Bernoulli's principle). (c) The spacing between the streamlines decreases, because the same number of streamlines fits in a smaller area. **75.** Greater wing area produces greater lift, important for low speeds where lift otherwise would be less. Flaps are pulled in to reduce area at cruising speed, where a smaller wing area can provide lift equal to the weight of the aircraft. **77.** The thinner air at high-altitude airports produces less lift for aircraft. This means aircraft needs longer runways. **79.** A solid-walled wharf is disadvantageous to ships pulling alongside because water currents are constrained and speed up between the ship and the wharf. This results in a reduced water pressure, and the normal pressure on the other side of the ship then forces the ship against the wharf. The pilings avoid this mishap by allowing the freer passage of water between the wharf and the ship.

Think and Discuss

81. To begin with, the two teams of horses in the Magdeburg hemispheres demonstration were for showmanship and effect. A single team and a strong tree would have provided the same force on the hemispheres. **83.** If an elephant steps on you, the pressure that the elephant exerts is over and above the atmospheric pressure that already is exerted on you. It is the extra pressure the elephant's foot produces that crushes you. **85.** One's lungs, like an inflated balloon, are compressed when submerged in water, and the air within is compressed. Air will not of itself flow from a region of low pressure into a region of high pressure. Air at atmospheric pressure won't flow of itself (without a pump) to more than a depth of 1 m. **87.** The lead and feathers have the same mass but different volumes, and different buoyancies. So with less buoyancy on the lead, the same mass of lead weighs more than the same mass of feathers. **89.** The end supporting the punctured balloon tips upward as it is lightened by less air. **91.** The buoyant force on each is the same, but is much less effective for the basketball due to its greater weight. Buoyancy is simply more conspicuous on the helium-filled balloon at the ceiling. **93.** The helium-filled balloon will be buoyed from regions of greater pressure to regions of lesser pressure, and will "rise" in a rotating air-filled habitat. **95.** According to Bernoulli's principle, when a fluid gains speed in flowing through a narrow region, the pressure of the fluid is reduced. The gain in speed, the cause, produces reduced pressure, the effect. But one can argue that a reduced pressure in a fluid, the cause, will produce a flow in the direction of the reduced pressure, the effect.

Chapter 15

Reading Check Questions

1. Water freezes at 0°C and 32°F, and boils at 100°C and 212°F. **3.** Only translational kinetic energy determines temperature. **5.** They are two terms for the same thing. Physicists prefer the term *internal* energy. **7.** Hot objects contain internal energy, not heat. They are *not* two terms for the same thing. **9.** Food is burned and the energy release measured. **11.** The energy needed is 4.19 J. **13.** A substance that heats quickly has a low specific heat capacity. **15.** The air above the cooling water warms. **17.** If the rates of thermal expansion differ, cracking of teeth can occur for different temperatures. **19.** Liquids generally expand more for equal increases in temperature. **21.** Ice is less dense than water due to its ice crystals that have open structures. **23.** As temperature increases, microscopic slush melts. **25.** Only when water below is more dense than water above, can water remain at the surface to freeze.

Think and Do

27. This activity brings physics home! **29.** Tell your people that heat is energy in transit, not energy inside something, which you refer as internal energy.

Plug and Chug

31. $Q = cm\Delta T = (4{,}190\ \text{J/kg}\cdot°\text{C})(0.30\ \text{kg})(30°\text{C}-22°\text{C}) = 12{,}570$ J.

Think and Solve

33. (a) The amount of heat absorbed by the water is $Q = cm\Delta T = (1.0\ \text{cal/g}\cdot°\text{C})(50.0\ \text{g})(50°\text{C} - 22°\text{C}) = 1400$ cal. At 40% efficiency only 0.4 the energy from the peanut raises the water temperature, so the calorie content of the peanut is 1400 cal/0.4 = 3500 cal. (b) The food value of a peanut is 3500 cal/0.6 g = 5.8 kilocalories/gram = 5.8 Cal/g.
35. $Q = mc\Delta T = (0.300\ \text{kg})(910\ \text{J/kg}\cdot°\text{C})(50°\text{C} - 30°\text{C}) = 5460$ J.
37. By equation: $\Delta L = L\alpha\Delta T = (1300\ \text{m})(11 \times 10^6/°\text{C})(20°\text{C}) = 0.29$ m, nearly 0.3 m.

Think and Rank

39. c, d, a, b. **41.** Steel, Brass, Aluminum.

Think and Explain

43. You cannot establish your temperature because there would be no temperature difference between your hand and your forehead. **45.** Yes, Kelvin and Fahrenheit scales agree numerically at a reading of 574. **47.** Calorie

is largest, which is 1000 calories. **49.** A molecule in a gram of steam has considerably more kinetic energy, as evidenced by its higher temperature. **51.** No. Greater amount of water samples are needed to measure its temperature accurately, as the thermometer and the sample should be in thermal equilibrium. A drop of water has negligible effect on the temperature of the thermometer. **53.** As the temperature of a confined gas is increased, the molecules move faster and exert a greater pressure as they rebound from the walls of the container. **55.** In the same environment, the slowly cooling object has the greater specific heat capacity. **57.** Less specific heat means shorter time for temperature change, and a shorter hot bath. **59.** The smaller sample will undergo the greater change in temperature as temperature change is inversely proportional to the mass. **61.** Both the pan and water undergo the same temperature change. But water, with its greater specific heat capacity, absorbs more heat. **63.** Bimetallic strips bend because the metals have different coefficients of linear expansion when heated. **65.** In winter months when the water is warmer than the air, the air is warmed by the water. In summer months when the air is warmer than the water, the air is cooled by the water. **67.** Because there are more water particles during a humid day and water, which has a higher heat capacity than air, carries more thermal energy. **71.** When doused, the outer part of the boulders cooled while the insides were still hot. This caused a difference in contraction, which fractured the boulders. **73.** Higher expansion rate would mean greater difference in shape with different temperature, a liability for a telescope mirror. **75.** A chimney undergoes more changes in temperature than any other part of the building, and therefore more changes in expansion and contraction. **77.** Thin glass is used because of the sudden temperature changes. If the glass were thicker, unequal expansions and contractions would break the glass with sudden temperature changes. **79.** 100°C steam hurts more because steam has a greater specific heat as compared to air. **83.** At 0°C it will contract when warmed a little; at 4°C it will expand, and at 6°C it will expand. **85.** Ponds would be more likely to freeze if water had a lower specific heat capacity because the temperature would decrease more when water releases energy; water would more readily be cooled to the freezing point.

Think and Discuss

87. $KE = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$. Since the mass of hydrogen is considerably less than oxygen, the speed must correspondingly be greater. **89.** Water expands when it turns to ice. Discuss how this relates to cracks and potholes that appear in cold places during the winter. **91.** Pour cold water into the inner glass, which cools it. Pour hot water over the outer glass. If it's done the other way around, the glasses will stick even tighter (if not break). **93.** Overflow is the result of liquid gasoline expanding more than the solid tank. **95.** The hot rock will cool and the cool water will warm, regardless of the relative amounts of each. For a hot rock dropped into the Atlantic Ocean, however, the change in the ocean's temperature would be too small to measure. **97.** Yes, the friend is correct. Note 10 Calories, is 10,000 calories. **99.** The heated balls would have the same diameter. Likewise a circular disk and circular ring would have the same increase in diameter if heated. **101.** The gap in the ring will become wider when the ring is heated. **103.** The curve for density versus temperature would appear as the vertical inverse of the volume versus temperature curve. **105.** Open ended, which stresses that heat is not an entity in itself like energy, but is energy in transit. The love in some relationships may be transitory as well.

Chapter 16

Reading Check Questions

1. Loose electrons quickly move and transfer energy to other electrons that migrate through the material. **3.** They are poor conductors, which makes them good insulators. **5.** Volume increases as air rises, and correspondingly cools. **7.** Speeds are increased with compression. **9.** Her hand is not in steam, but in a jet of condensed vapor that has expanded and cooled. **11.** High-frequency waves have short wavelengths. **13.** Terrestrial radiation is emitted by Earth's surface. **15.** Temperatures don't continuously decrease because all object are also absorbing radiant energy. **17.** A black pot both warms faster (and cools faster) than a silver pot. **19.** The pupil appears black because light that enters the eye usually doesn't exit. With flash cameras, however, some of it does. **21.** Plants radiate all the time, but when covered by a tarp they receive more radiation from the tarp than from the dark night sky. **23.** With no greenhouse effect Earth would be a very cold place, with an average temperature about −18°C. **25.** Glass allows high-frequency visible-light radiant energy in, but prevents low-frequency infrared re-radiated energy out like the atmosphere acting as a one-way valve. **27.** The Sun pours 1400 J of radiant energy per second per meter squared at the top of the atmosphere.

Think and Do

29. Butter will melt first on the metal spoon (most conductive), then the plastic spoon, then the wooden spoon (least conductive). **31.** This activity nicely shows that metal is a good conductor of heat. Paper in a flame by itself easily reaches ignition temperature and catches fire. But not when wrapped around a thick metal bar that absorbs energy from the flame. **33.** Tell Grandma how clouds re-radiate terrestrial energy back to Earth's surface, and tell of other examples.

Plug and Chug

35. $Q = cm\Delta T = (130\ \text{J/kg}\cdot\text{°C})(0.300\ \text{kg})(40\text{°C}) = 1560\ \text{J}$

Think and Solve

37. The water will cool from 50°C to 27.5°C.

39. (a) $T_f = m_c C_c T_{ic} / m_c C_c + m_w c_w = (0.45\ \text{kg})(390\ \text{J/kg}\cdot\text{°C})(90\text{°C}) / (0.45\ \text{kg})(390\ \text{J/kg}\cdot\text{°C}) + (1\ \text{kg})(4190\ \text{J/kg}\cdot\text{°C}) = 3.62\ \text{°C}$; (b) The copper losses some heat and that heat is absorbed by the water.

Think and Explain

41. A wall of appropriate thickness keeps the house warm at night and cool in the daytime by slowing the flow of heat from inside to outside. Such a wall has "thermal inertia." **43.** Adding a layer of hollow space serves as an additional insulation so that the contents minimize heat loss and heat absorption to and from the surroundings. **45.** Water is a better conductor of heat than air, so our warmer bodies in water transfer heat to the water more readily than to the air. **47.** Energy "flows" from higher to lower temperature, from your hand to the ice. There is no flow from cold to hot; only from hot to cold. **49.** In touching the tongue to nonconducting wood, less heat is conducted from the tongue and freezing does not happen fast enough for sudden sticking. **51.** Mittens have more air space and the fingers are next to one another than gloves which keeps hands warmer. **53.** A firewalker can walk barefoot across red-hot wooden coals if stepping quickly (like removing the wooden-handled pan with bare hands quickly from the hot oven because very little heat is conducted to the feet. Stepping on red-hot *iron* coals, however, is a different story. That would be a resounding ouch! **55.** It is internal energy that flows—heat—not temperature, which does not flow. **57.** The temperature will be in between, at 70°C, because one decreases in temperature and the other increases in temperature—for equal masses. **59.** Direction of winds change with changes in land and water temperatures. Air flow reverses as relative temperatures reverse. **61.** Agree. If ice cubes were at the bottom they wouldn't be in contact with the warmest part of the tea at the surface, so cooling would be less. **63.** Less density above means more space above for migration. Faster-moving (warm air) molecules migrate upward through the "open window" in the atmosphere, producing upward convection. **65.** No, just the opposite. When we expand a volume of air, we normally take energy out of it (because the expanding air does work on its surroundings). Expanding a volume of air actually lowers its temperature. **67.** In winter you want warm air near the floor, so the fan should push warmer ceiling air downward. In summer you want cooler air near the floor, so the fan should pull the cooler air upward. **69.** A good emitter, by virtue of molecular-or-whatever design, is also a good absorber. A good absorber appears black because radiation that impinges upon it is absorbed; just the opposite of reflection. **71.** No, if good absorbers were not also good emitters, then thermal equilibrium would not be possible. If a good absorber only absorbed, then its temperature would climb above that of poorer absorbers in the vicinity. And if poor absorbers were good emitters, their temperatures would fall below that of better absorbers. **73.** The energy given off by the rock at Earth's surface transfers to the surroundings practically as fast as it is generated. Hence there isn't the buildup of energy that occurs in Earth's interior. **75.** Under open skies, the ground radiates upward but the sky radiates almost nothing back down.

Under the benches, downward radiation of the benches decreases the net radiation from the ground, resulting in warmer ground and, likely, no frost. **77.** Whitewash is applied to the glass to simply reflect much of the incoming radiation. Energy reflected is energy not absorbed. **79.** More energy would escape and Earth's climate would be cooler. **81.** Open-ended.

Think and Discuss

83. Copper and aluminum are better conductors than stainless steel, and quickly establish a uniform temperature over the bottom of the pan to transfer heat to the cookware's interior. **85.** The snow and ice of the igloo are better insulators than wood so you would be warmer in the igloo than the wooden shack. **87.** Agree, for your friend is correct. The gases will have the same temperature, meaning they'll have the same average kinetic energy per molecule. **89.** Air is made up of molecules of different *mass*—some nitrogen, some oxygen, and a small percentage of other gases. So even though they have the same average KE, they won't have the same average speed. The lighter molecules will have average speeds greater than the heavier molecules. **91.** They ride in "thermals," updrafts of air. **93.** No. Taking the temperature difference in both Celsius and Kelvin scales yields the same value. **95.** Turn your heater off altogether and save fuel. Keeping ΔT high consumes more fuel. To consume less fuel, keep ΔT low and turn your heater off altogether. **97.** If Earth's temperature increases, its rate of radiating will increase. A new and higher equilibrium temperature is established. **99.** Assuming 1.0 kW of solar energy over 1 m^2 at Earth's surface, the question is how many square feet are in one square meter, which is a bit more than 10 square feet. 1.0 kW = 1000 W. So (1000 W)/10 = 100 W, as with a 100-W bulb. **101.** Quite simply, the answer is no. Something else always occurs. **103.** Humans consume energy. More humans consume more energy. Consumption relates to energy waste and pollution. Simply put, more humans, more pollution.

Chapter 17

Reading Check Questions

1. In a liquid are a wide variety of molecular speeds. **3.** Evaporation is called a cooling process because the remaining liquid has given some of its KE to the gas and has cooled. **5.** They are opposite processes, evaporation from liquid to gas and condensation from gas to liquid. **7.** On a muggy day you experience condensation from the air, which cancels the cooling due to evaporation. **9.** As the air rises, it cools and condenses to form clouds. **11.** When evaporation occurs beneath the surface of a liquid, it is said to be boiling **13.** Higher temperature, not boiling, cooks food faster. **15.** When water above gushes out, pressure at the bottom is reduced, and then water boils. **17.** The boiling point of water is reduced when pressure of air above is reduced. **19.** Increasing temperature means increased motion, which means more chance of molecule separation. **21.** Foreign ions decrease the number of water molecules at the interface between ice and water where freezing occurs. **23.** The block doesn't separate into two pieces because water above the wire refreezes when pressure on it is reduced. **25.** One calorie; 80 calories; 540 calories.

Think and Do

27. A geyser and a coffee percolator work on the same principle. **29.** The rainfall seen resembles actual rain, in that condensation of vapor leads to drops of water. Natural rain is the result of cooling in clouds of vapor, rather than by condensation on a chilled surface. **31.** When you do this, the ice will end up intact! **33.** Clarify what is meant by saying boiling is a cooling process.

Think and Solve

35. $Q = c_i m_i \Delta T_i + mL_f + c_w m_w \Delta T_w$ = (0.5 cal/g)(150 g)(0°C − -0.5°C) + (150 g)(80 cal/g) + (1 cal/g)(150 g)(100°C − 0°C) = 27,375 calories = 114,537 joules. **37.** The final temperature of the water will be the same as that of the ice, 0°C. The quantity of heat given to the ice by the water is $Q = cm\Delta T$= (1 cal/g·°C)(50 g)(80°C) = 4000 cal. This heat melts ice. How much? From $Q = mL$, $m = Q/L$ = 4000 cal/80 cal/g = 50 grams. So water at 80°C will melt an equal mass of ice at 0°C. **39.** (a) $Q = cm\Delta T$ = (1 cal/g)(200 g)(0°C − 25°C) = −5000 calories (5000 calories must be removed); (b) $Q = mL_f$ = (200 g)(80 cal/g) = 16,000 calories (16,000 calories must be removed). **41.** Note that the heat of vaporization of ethyl alcohol (200 cal/g) is 2.5 times more than the heat of fusion of water (80 cal/g), so in a change of phase for both, 2.5 times as much ice will change phase; 2.5 × 2 kg = 5 kg. Or via formula, the refrigerant would draw away $Q = mL$ = (2000 g)(200 cal/g) = 4 × 10^5 calories. The mass of ice formed is then (4 × 10^5 cal)/(80 cal/g) = 5000 g or 5 kg.

Think and Rank

43. a, c, b.

Think and Explain

45. When sweat evaporates it carries energy from the skin, producing cooling. **47.** The temperature of the water lowers. **49.** When the body tends to overheat, perspiration occurs to cool the body if the perspiration is allowed to evaporate. **51.** Although a fan does not cool the room, it promotes evaporation of perspiration to cool the body. **53.** Visibility of the windows is impaired if there is any condensation of water between the panes of glass. Hence the gas between the panes should contain no water vapor. **55.** Warm moist air generated in the car's interior meets the cold glass and a lowering of molecular speed results in condensation of water on the inside of the windows. **57.** A temperature gradient normally exists in a room, with cooler air near the bottom. Hence frost forms on the colder part of the window, the bottom. **59.** Clouds tend to form over islands because land has a lower specific heat capacity than water, so the land is warmed faster than the surrounding water. This causes updrafts above the warmed land; the rising air laden with H_2O molecules expands and cools, allowing the H_2O molecules to coalesce (Figure 17.8). **61.** Enormous thermal energy is released as molecular potential energy is transformed to molecular kinetic energy in condensation. (Freezing of the droplets to form ice adds even more thermal energy.) **63.** As the bubbles rise, less pressure is exerted on them. **65.** When the jar reaches the boiling temperature, further heat does not enter it because it is in thermal equilibrium with the surrounding 100 °C water. This is the principle of the "double boiler. **67.** High temperature and the resulting internal energy given to the food are responsible for cooking—if the water boils at a low temperature (presumably under reduced pressure), the food isn't hot enough to cook. **69.** The ice is indeed cold. Why cold? Because rapid evaporation of the water has cooled the water to its freezing point. **71.** Cooking time will be no different for vigorously and gently boiling water, for both have the same temperature. Spaghetti is cooked in vigorously boiling water to simply ensure the spaghetti doesn't stick together and with the pan. **73.** The boiling point of water is higher in a nuclear reactor because of increased pressure. The reactor behaves like a pressure cooker. **75.** Water in the pressurized radiator doesn't boil, even when its temperature exceeds 100°C (like water in a pressure cooker). But when the radiator cap is suddenly removed, pressure drops and the high-temperature water immediately boils. **77.** The moisture on your skin freezes only at a temperature below 0°C because it contains salt. Very cold ice in contact with your hand freezes the moisture on your skin and bonding takes place between your skin and the ice. That's why it's sticky. **79.** The water that freezes is pure water. Melt the ice and you'll produce pure water. **81.** The weight of the ice above crushes ice crystals at the bottom, making a liquid layer upon which the glacier slides. **83.** Sugar doesn't freeze with the water in the punch, so half-frozen punch has the sugar of the original mixture—twice the original concentration. **85.** Increased pressure raises the boiling point of water, which transfers more energy to the food. Hotter water cooks food faster. **87.** The temperature of nearby air decreases due to energy absorbed by the melting ice.

Think and Discuss

89. The steel cubes cool a drink only by conduction, whereas an ice cube absorbs energy from the drink as it melts. **91.** The temperature of the ice remains constant as it changes phase, so your statement is better. **93.** Changes of phase of the refrigerant consume much more energy than changing the temperatures of food inside. **95.** Hot coffee poured into a saucer cools because (1) the greater surface area of the coffee permits more evaporation to take place, and (2) by the conservation of energy, the internal energy that heats the saucer comes from the coffee, cooling it. **97.** In this hypothetical case evaporation would not cool the remaining liquid because the energy of exiting molecules would be no different than the energy of molecules left behind. **99.** Coating of ice acts as an insulating

blanket. Every gram of water that freezes releases 80 calories, much of it to the fruit; the thin layer of ice then acts as an insulating blanket against further loss of heat. **101.** The KE of molecules does not change as internal energy is used in breaking the bonds between molecules. Hence, no change in temperature. **103.** The device is a heat pump. In both modes of operation, it is moving heat from a cooler to a warmer place. **105.** You can add heat without changing temperature when the substance is undergoing a change of phase. **107.** You can withdraw heat without changing temperature when the substance is undergoing a change of phase. **109.** The predominant gas in a bubble of boiling is H_2O. Did you think this was a tricky question?

Chapter 18

Reading Check Questions

1. The meaning is "movement of heat." **3.** Its pressure decreases by 1/273 for each 1°C temperature change. **5.** Lowest temperature is −273°C; 0 K. **7.** The first law is a restatement of the conservation of energy. **9.** Heat added equals change in internal energy plus work done. **11.** The adiabatic condition is that no heat enters or leaves the system. **13.** Decrease when work done by the system. **15.** Air temperature rises (or falls) as pressure increases (or decreases). **17.** Temperature inversion is a condition wherein upper regions of air are warmer than lower regions. **19.** Heat never of itself flows from a cold object to a hot object. **21.** Thermal pollution is expelled heat that is undesirable. **23.** Condensation reduces pressure on the backside of turbine blades, allowing a net force to turn them while water is being recycled. **25.** High-quality energy tends to transform into lower-quality energy. **27.** A measure of disorder is called entropy. **29.** The third law states that no system can have its absolute temperature reduced to zero.

Think and Do

31. The volume of the balloon increases in a hot oven, and decreases in the cold interior of a refrigerator. Adiabatic expansion! **33.** Its warmth is due to both the blow of the hammer and the work done by the wood to bring the nail to a stop.

Plug and Chug

35. Ideal efficiency $= T_{hot} - T_{cold} = 500\ \text{K} - 400\ \text{K} = 0.20 = 20\%$

Think and Solve

37. The temperatures must be first converted into the Kelvin scale: 520°C = 793.15 K and 280°C = 553.15. Ideal efficiency $= T_{hot} - T_{cold} = 793.15\ \text{K} = 553.15\ \text{K} = 0.303 = 30.3\%$ **39.** If by "twice as cold" she means one-half the absolute temperature, the temperature would be $(1/2)(273 + 10) = 141.5$ K. To find how many Celsius degrees below 0°C, first subtract 141.5 K from 273 K; this is 273 K − 141.5 K = 131.5 K below the freezing point of ice, or −131.5°C. (Or simply, 141.5 K − 273 K = −131.5°C.) *Very* cold! **41.** (a) Wally's mistake is not converting to kelvins. 300°C = 273 + 300 = 573K, and 25°C = 273 + 25 = 298 K. (b) Then ideal efficiency is $(573\ \text{K} - 298\ \text{K})/573\ \text{K} = 0.48 = 48\ \%$. **43.** The work the hammer does on the nail is $F \times d$, and the temperature change of the nail can be found from $Q = cm\Delta T$. First, convert into convenient units for calculating: 6.0 g = 0.006 kg; 8.0 cm = 0.08 m. Then $F \times d = 600\ \text{N} \times 0.08\ \text{m} = 48\ \text{J}$, and $48\ \text{J} = (0.006\ \text{kg})(450\ \text{J/kg}\cdot°\text{C})(\Delta T)$ which we can solve to get $\Delta T = 48\ \text{J}/(0.006\ \text{kg} \times 450\ \text{J/kg}\cdot°\text{C}) = 17.8°\text{C}$. (You will notice a similar noticeably warm effect when you remove the nail.)

Think and Explain

45. In the case of the 500-degree oven it makes a lot of difference. 500 kelvins is 227°C, quite a bit different than 500°C. But for the 50,000-degree star, the 273 increments either way makes practically no difference. Give or take 273, when rounded off the star is still 50,000 K or 50,000°C. **47.** Not ordinarily. They undergo the same change in *internal energy*, which translates to the same temperature change when both objects are the same mass and composed of the same material. **49.** You do work in compressing the air, which increases its internal energy. This is evidenced by an increase in temperature. **51.** Gas pressure increases in the can when heated, and decreases when cooled. When heated the faster-moving molecules hit the can's wall harder and more often. When cooled, they hit less hard and less often. **53.** The pump gets hot because you are *compressing* the air within. The tire valve feels cool because the escaping air is *expanding*. These are adiabatic processes. **55.** No, as this is a direct violation of the second law of thermodynamics. **59.** Yes, energy given to the room by the open oven raises room temperature. **61.** No, in this case the heat sink is also in the room. That's why the condensation coils are *outside* the region to be cooled. Temperature of the room actually increases because the air conditioner motor warms the surrounding air. **63.** Work must be done to establish a temperature difference between the inside of the refrigerator and the surrounding air. The greater the temperature difference to be established, the more work and hence more energy is consumed. So the refrigerator uses more energy when the room is warm rather than cold. **65.** You do work in compressing the gas, which increases the internal energy. **67.** It does what heat engines do, namely convert energy of one kind (solar) into mechanical energy (the rocking of the bird). **69.** The universe is moving toward a more disordered state. **71.** More energy would be used to extract the energy than would be available from it. So although extracting ocean energy is possible, it is not practical, and cannot produce net power. **73.** No, the entropy principle has not been violated because the order of the salt crystals is at the expense of a greater disorder of the water in the vapor state after evaporation. Even if we confine the system to the crystals themselves, there would be no violation of entropy because there is work input to the system by sunlight or other means. **75.** Entropy of the overall system, of which the chicken is a small part, increases. So when the larger system is taken into account, there is no violation of the principle of entropy.

Think and Discuss

77. Boiling water temperature of 100°C is 373K, and its half is 186.5K, which is approximately −87°C. Hence, your classmate's statement is wrong. **79.** In accord with Carnot's equation, efficiency is higher with greater difference in temperature between the heat source (combustion chamber in the engine) and sink (air surrounding the exhaust). **81.** No—heat flow is temperature dependent, not energy dependent. **83.** This transfer would not violate the 1st law because energy has been transferred without loss or gain. It would violate the 2nd law because internal energy will not freely transfer from a cooler to a warmer object. **85.** The can is crushed by atmospheric pressure when vapor pressure in the can has been significantly reduced. This is accomplished by condensation of the vapor on the surface of water entering the opening in the can. If that water is boiling, then it supplies vapor at about the same rate as condensation occurs, so not net condensation and no crunching. But even hot water less than 100°C, will produce net condensation and a crushed can. **87.** It is fundamental in governing the general tendency throughout nature to move from order to disorder, yet it is inexact based on probability, not certainty. **89.** Your classmate isn't distinguishing between perpetual motion and perpetual motion *machines*. Your classmate is correct about perpetual motion being the normal state of the universe, but what is not possible is a perpetual motion machine that puts out more energy than is put in. **91.** The condenser reduces the pressure of steam against the backside of the turbine blades. Without a difference in pressure on both sides of the blades, the rotor would not spin. Therefore the condenser is essential to the turbine operation.

Chapter 19

Reading Check Questions

1. A wiggle in time is a vibration; a wiggle in space and time is a wave. **3.** The period is the time for a complete to-and-fro swing. **5.** A sine curve is a pictorial representation of a wave. **7.** There are 101.7 million vibrations per second. **9.** Energy. **11.** In a transverse wave vibrations are perpendicular to the direction of wave travel. **13.** The wavelength of a longitudinal wave is the distance between successive compressions or rarefactions. **15.** Speed = wavelength/period. **17.** When more than one wave occupies the same space at the same time the displacements add at every point. **19.** All waves can show interference. **21.** Standing waves can be formed in either transverse or longitudinal waves. **23.** The Doppler effect can be observed with both transverse and longitudinal waves. **25.** To keep up with produced waves, the bug must swim at wave speed; to produce a bow wave, the bug must swim faster than wave speed. **27.** The faster the source, the narrower the V shape. **29.** False, the source may have exceeded the speed of sound earlier.

Think and Do

31. An activity to do! **33.** Boy and girl scouts used to do this.

Plug and Chug

35. f = (30 oscillations)/(5 seconds) = 6 Hz.
37. Wave speed = wavelength/period = 2.4 m/0.060 s = 40 m/s.

Think and Solve

39. (a) Frequency = 2 bobs/second = 2 hertz; (b) Period = $1/f$ = 1/2 second; (c) and the amplitude is the distance from the equilibrium position to maximum displacement, one-half the 20-cm peak-to-peak distance or 10 cm. **41.** $v = \lambda f \Rightarrow \lambda = v/f = 340\frac{m}{s}/650Hz = 0.52$ m **43.** Speed of plane = 1.41 × speed of sound (Mach 1.41). For the sound to go from A to C, the plane goes from A to B. Since the triangle A-B-C is a 45-45-90 triangle, the distance AB is $\sqrt{2}$ = 1.41 times as long as the distance AC.

Think and Rank

45. c, b, a. **47.** A, B, D, C. **49.** A, C, B.

Think and Explain

51. A shorter pendulum swings to and fro with a higher frequency and shorter period. Frequency and period are inverses of each other. **53.** Assuming the center of gravity of the briefcase with books doesn't change, the pendulum rate of the empty case and loaded case will be the same. This is because the period of a pendulum is independent of mass. Since the length of the pendulum doesn't change, the frequency and hence the period are unchanged. **55.** The period increases, for period and frequency are reciprocals of each other; Period = $1/f$. Lower frequency produces wave crests farther apart, so wavelength increases. Wave speed = frequency × wavelength. **57.** Let $v = f\lambda$ guide your thinking, twice the speed means twice the frequency. **59.** Shake the garden hose to-and-fro at right angles to the hose to produce a sine-like curve. **61.** (a) Longitudinal. (b) Transverse. (c) Transverse. **63.** Frequency and period are reciprocals of one another; $f = 1/T$, and $T = 1/f$. Double one and the other is half as much. So doubling the frequency of a vibrating object halves the period. **65.** As you dip your fingers more frequently into still water, the waves you produce will be of a higher frequency (we see the relationship between "how frequently" and "frequency"). The crests of the higher-frequency waves will be closer together—their wavelengths will be shorter. **67.** For mechanical waves, something that vibrates. The source for E&M waves is vibrating electric charges. They both vibrate. **69.** The energy of a water wave spreads along the increasing circumference of the wave until its magnitude diminishes to a value that cannot be distinguished from thermal motions in the water. The energy of the waves adds to the internal energy of the water. **71.** The frequency is higher, in fact doubled, because the bat is approaching the wall that behaves as a source of same-frequency waves. Add the wave speed to the bat's speed and you have a Doppler doubling of frequency. **73.** No, the effects of shortened waves and stretched waves would cancel one another. **75.** Police use radar waves that are reflected from moving cars. From the shift in the returned frequencies, the speed of the reflectors (cars) is determined. **77.** The bow or shock wave is actually the superposition of many lesser amplitude waves that interfere constructively. When the crest of one wave overlaps the crest of another, and then another, a wave of greater amplitude is produced. **79.** A shock wave and the resulting sonic boom are produced whenever an aircraft is supersonic, whether or not the aircraft has just become supersonic or has been supersonic for hours. **81.** Yes, a supersonic fish in water would produce a shock wave and hence a sonic boom for the same reason it would if traveling faster than sound in air. **83.** Open-ended.

Think and Discuss

85. The periods are equal. The pistons in a car engine are simple harmonic, and have the same period as the circularly rotating shaft that they drive. **87.** The periods are the same, for mass doesn't affect period. **89.** The pulses of molecular collisions (the sound) travel more quickly than the molecules causing odor migrate. **91.** The nodes are at the fixed points, the two ends of the string. The wavelength is twice the length of the string (see Figure 19.14a). **93.** The Doppler shifts show that one side approaches while the other side recedes, evidence that the star is spinning. **95.** The conical angle of a shock wave becomes narrower with increased speeds. Sketches should show narrower angles for increasing in speeds.

Chapter 20

Reading Check Questions

1. The higher the frequency, the higher the pitch. **3.** Infrasonic sound is less than 20 hertz, while ultrasonic is above 20,000 hertz. **5.** In a vacuum there is no medium to compress and expand. **7.** Both compressions and rarefactions travel in the same direction of the wave they comprise. **9.** Sound travels faster in warm air. **11.** Sound energy dissipates to heat energy. **13.** A reverberation is sound multiply reflected. **15.** Refraction is caused by bending due to differences in sound speed. **17.** Changes in the speed of sound in different water temperatures are the reason for sound refraction in water. **19.** Sound is louder due to more surface vibrating. **21.** The spoon is elastic whereas the napkin is not. **23.** By tuning the radio to a certain frequency, you are adjusting the receiver circuit to vibrate at that station's frequency only. **25.** Waves will cancel when they are identical and out of phase. **27.** The result is cancellation of sound. **29.** A beat frequency of 4 Hz results.

Think and Do

31. A celebration of forced vibrations and resonance. **33.** Note the different patterns with different types of music.

Think and Solve

35. $v = f\lambda$, so $\lambda = v/f$ = (1530 m/s)/7 Hz = 219 m **37.** The ocean floor is 4590 meters down. The 6.0-second time delay means that the sound reached the bottom in 3.0 seconds. Distance = speed × time = 1530 m/s × 3.0 s = 4590 m. **39.** The single blow you hear after you see Sally stop hammering originated with the next-to-last blow you saw. The very first blow would have appeared as silent, and succeeding blows synchronous with successive strikes. In one second sound travels 340 meters in air, the distance between you and Sally. **41.** Beats frequency: 540 Hz − 534 Hz = 6 Hz.

Think and Rank

43. c, b, a, d.

Think and Explain

45. The Moon is described as a silent planet because it has no atmosphere to transmit sounds. **47.** Sound does not travel in a vacuum. **49.** Bees buzz when in flight because they flap their wings at audio frequencies. **51.** The wavelength of the electromagnetic wave will be much longer because of its greater speed. **53.** The shorter wavelengths are heard by bats (higher frequencies have shorter wavelengths). **55.** Light travels about a million times faster than sound in air, so you see a distant event a million times sooner than you hear it. **57.** When sound passes a particular point in the air, the air is first compressed and then rarefied as the sound passes. So its density is increased and then decreased as the wave passes. **59.** Because snow is a good absorber of sound, it reflects little sound—hence quietness. **61.** If the frequency of sound is doubled, its speed will not change at all, but its wavelength will be "compressed" to half size. **63.** No, refraction depends on the changing speeds in different media or when the media moves, as in winds. The fact that refraction occurs is evidence for the changing speeds of sound. **65.** Sound is more easily heard when the wind traveling toward the listener at elevations above ground level travels faster than wind near the ground. Then the waves are bent downward. **67.** An echo is weaker than the original sound because sound spreads and becomes less intense with distance. **69.** Marchers at the end of a long parade will be out of step with marchers nearer the band because time is required for the sound of the band to reach the marchers at the end of a parade. They will step to the delayed beat they hear. **71.** A harp produces relatively softer sounds than a piano because its sounding board is smaller and lighter. **73.** There are two principal reasons. One is that waves that vibrate more often per second transfer sound energy into heat more rapidly than waves of lower frequency. The other reason is that the natural frequency of large walls, floors, and ceilings, is lower than the natural frequency of smaller surfaces. The large surfaces are more easily set into forced vibrations and resonance. **75.** Certain dance steps set the floor into vibration that may resonate with the natural frequency of the floor. When this occurs, the floor heaves. **77.** Beats result from interference, and not the Doppler effect. **79.** Beats are produced by two sounds of different frequencies. If the waves are of the same frequency they can interfere destructively or

constructively, depending on their relative phase. Two waves must have different frequencies to produce beats. **81.** The possible frequencies are 264 + 4 = 268 Hz, or 264 − 4 = 260 Hz.

Think and Discuss

83. Sound travels faster in moist air because the less massive water vapor molecules, H_2O, travel faster than the more massive N_2 and O_2 molecules at the same temperature. **85.** The short wavelength of ultrasonic waves undergo less diffraction and allow more detail to be seen, which is why blue light is used with microscopes. **87.** These special devices use interference to cancel the sound of the jackhammer in the operator's ears. Because of the resulting low jackhammer noise in the operator's ears, he can hear your voice clearly. **89.** Long waves are most canceled, which makes the resulting sound so tinny. For example, when the speaker cones are 4 centimeters apart, waves more than a meter long are nearly 180° out of phase, whereas 2-centimeter waves will be in phase. The higher frequencies are least canceled by this procedure.

Chapter 21

Reading Check Questions

1. Music is composed of periodic notes; noise is irregular. **3.** High-pitched notes have high frequencies. **7.** A decibel is a measure of sound level, how loud. **9.** A sound of 30 dB is 1000 times more intense than the threshold of hearing. **11.** The fundamental frequency is the lowest pitch of a note. **13.** Musical quality is determined by the variety of partial tones. **15.** The three classes are vibrating strings, vibrating air columns, and percussion. **17.** Fourier discovered that complex waves can be disassembled into the addition of simple sine waves. **19.** Phonographs captured sound by analog, before digital was applied to sound.

Think and Do

21. Open-ended. **23.** Open-ended. **25.** Readings will vary. Two people clapping will increase decibel reading by about 10 dB, about 12%, and not double.

Think and Solve

27. T = $1/f$ = 1/262 Hz = 0.0038 second **29.** If the sound level is increased by 20 db, the intensity will increase by a factor of 100. **31.** The sound level of sound wave A is 20 db. **33.** (a) Period = $1/f$ = 1/256 Hz = 0.00391 s, or 3.91 ms. (b) Speed = wavelength × frequency, so wavelength = speed/frequency = (340 m/s)/256 Hz = 1.33 m.

Think and Rank

35. A, C, B.

Think and Explain

37. Agree, for pitch is the subjective form of frequency. **39.** A low pitch will be produced when a guitar string is (a) lengthened, (b) loosened so that tension is reduced, and (c) made more massive, usually by windings of wire around the string. That's why bass strings are thick—more inertia. **41.** The frequencies of the sound and the oscillating string are the same. **43.** If the wavelength of a vibrating string is reduced, such as by pressing it with your finger against a fret, the frequency of the vibration increases. This is heard as an increased pitch. **45.** The longer tines have greater rotational inertia, so they'll be more resistant to vibrating, and will do so at lower frequency **47.** The thinner string has less mass and less inertia, and therefore a higher frequency. **49.** A plucked guitar string would vibrate for a longer time without a sounding board because less air is set into motion per unit of time, so the energy of the vibrating string decreases more slowly. **51.** The amplitude in a sound wave corresponds to the overpressure of the compression or equivalently the underpressure of the rarefaction. **53.** The right pattern has the greater amplitude so it is louder. **55.** Sound intensity is a purely objective and physical attribute of the amplitude of a sound wave that can be measured by various acoustical instruments. Loudness, though closely related, is a physiological sensation, and can vary from person to person or for one person at different times. **57.** An electronic organ produces the sounds of various musical instruments by duplicating and superimposing the sine waves that make up the overall waves of these instruments. **59.** Your voice sounds fuller in a shower principally because the small enclosure causes your voice to reverberate as it reflects from wall to wall. Your voice reverberates as it reflects from the shower wall to wall. **61.** The range of human hearing, about 20 Hz to about 20,000 Hz, is a factor of about 1000. This is ten octaves because ten doublings of frequency gives a factor of approximately 1000 (1024 to be exact). The range of a piano is a little more than seven octaves. **63.** Frequency of the second harmonic is twice the fundamental, or 440 Hz. The third is three times the harmonic, or 660 Hz. **65.** Not including endpoints, there are 3 nodes in a wave two wavelengths long, and 5 nodes in a wave three wavelengths long. (Make a drawing and count them!) **67.** Wavelength $\lambda = v/f$. For 20 Hz, $\lambda = v/f$ = 340/20 = 17 m, which is about 20 yards on a football field. For 20,000 Hz, $\lambda = v/f$ = 340/20,000 = 0.017 m, in the millimeter range on a ruler.

Think and Discuss

69. Twice as loud, although the acoustical sound intensity is 100 times greater. **71.** The strings warm up and expand during play. Hence they should be tuned while warm so re-tuning is minimized while on stage. **73.** Agree, for your friend is correct. **75.** When a string vibrates in two segments a piece may be placed at the node in its center. For three segments, two pieces can be supported, each one-third the total distance from each end. **77.** Although the speed of sound past a listener on a windy day will change, the wavelength also correspondingly changes, resulting in no change in frequency or pitch. **79.** Tightening the string increases the tension and as a result, the frequency produced will be higher (higher pitch). Loosening the string will produce a lower frequency (lower pitch). **81.** The likelihood is high that you subject yourself to louder sounds than your grandparents heard: louder music, particularly via headphones or earbuds.

Chapter 22

Reading Check Questions

1. Electrical forces can attract or repel, whereas gravitational forces only attract. **3.** The nucleus and its protons are positively charged; electrons are negatively charged. **5.** The normal net charge is zero. **7.** Conservation of charge means charge cannot be created or destroyed, but merely transferred. **9.** One quantum unit of charge is an electron (or proton). **11.** Both laws are inverse-square laws. How they differ is mainly that gravitation is only attractive, whereas electrical forces can repel. **13.** Atoms of insulators are poor conductors because of their affinity for electrons. **15.** A transistor is composed of thin layers of semiconducting materials. Functions include controlling the flow of electrons, amplifying signals, and acting as switches. **17.** Electrons are transferred from one place to another. **19.** Charging by induction occurs during thunderstorms. **21.** A polarized object may have no net charge, whereas a charged object does. **23.** An electric dipole is H_2O. **25.** The direction of an electric field is the direction of force on a positive charge. **27.** The electric field inside a conductor cancels to zero. **29.** No. Several thousand volts are different than the *ratio* of several thousand volts per coulomb. Voltage is measured in volts; voltage/coulomb is energy and measured in joules. Several thousand joules per coulomb isn't much energy if you have very few coulombs.

Think and Do

31. In dry climates this is a common nuisance! **33.** Tell Grandpa the electric field remains zero inside any metal surface.

Plug and Chug

35. $F = (kq_1q_2)/r^2 = [(9 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/C^2})(-3.0 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{C})(5.0 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{C})]/(0.1\ \mathrm{m})^2 = -13.5\ \mathrm{N}$

Think and Solve

37. Suppose at x m, the force is $4F$ N. Then, $4F = kq_1q_2/x^2 \Rightarrow x^2 = kq_1q_2/4F = kq_1q_2/4\,k\frac{q_1q_2}{r^2} = r^2/4$; $\therefore x = \pm r/2$ m

39. (a) $F_G = Gm^2/r^2$ and $F_E = kq^2/r^2$ $\therefore F_G/F_E = Gm^2/kq^2 = 6.67 \times 10^{-11}(1.672 \times 10^{-27})^2/9 \times 10^9\,(1.602 \times 10^{-19})^2 = 8.073 \times 10^{-37}$; $F_E \approx 10^{36}\,F_G$; (b) For, $F_E^p = F_G^p$; $kq_p^2/r^2 = Gm_p^2/r^2 \Rightarrow q_p/m_p = \sqrt{G/k} = \sqrt{6.67 \times 10^{-11}/9 \times 10^9} = 8.61 \times 10^{-11}$ C/kg.

41. $F_{(\mathrm{grav})} = (Gm_1m_2)/r^2 = [(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/C})(9.1 \times 10^{-31})(1.67 \times 10^{-27})]/(1.0 \times 10^{-10})^2$

$= 1.0 \times 10^{-47}$ N. $F_{(elec)} = (kq_1q_2)/r^2 = [(9.0 \times 10^9\ N \cdot m^2/C)(1.6 \times 10^{-19})^2]/(1.0 \times 10^{-10})^2 = 23.0 \times 10^{-8}$ N. The electrical force between an electron and a proton is more than 1,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000 times greater than the gravitational force between them! (Note that this ratio of forces is the same for any separation of the particles.) **43.** The work done by the cell is = q V = 10 C × 24 V = 240 J. **45.** Work done = Potential difference *x* Charge (a) Potential difference = $V_Y - V_X$ = 20 J/0.05 C = 400 V (b) Work done = 400 V × 0.1 C = 40 J

Think and Rank

47. A, C, B.

Think and Explain

49. Something is electrically charged when it has an excess or deficiency of electrons, compared with the number of protons in the atomic nuclei of the material. **51.** The objects aren't charged because of their equal number of protons. **53.** When the disc is wiped it becomes charged, which polarizes and attracts dust particles. **55.** The wires at the toll-collecting stations are used to discharge the cars so that paying the toll is not a shocking experience for the driver or the collector. **57.** The leaves, like the rest of the electroscope, acquire charge from the charged object and repel each other. The weight of the conducting metal foil is so small that even tiny forces are clearly evident. **59.** No, this is charge separation due to *induction*. **61.** By induction. **63.** The electrons don't fly out of the penny because they are attracted to the five thousand billion billion positively charged protons in the atomic nuclei of atoms in the penny. **65.** By the inverse-square law, the force will be four times as great at half the distance, and nine times as great at one-third the distance. **67.** Doubling the distance reduces the force to 1/4, whatever the sign of charge in accord with Coulomb's law. **69.** Doubling both charges quadruples the force. The magnitude of the force does not depend on the sign of charge. **71.** Where the lines are closer, the field is stronger. **73.** At twice the distance the field strength will be 1/4, in accord with the inverse-square law. **75.** Earth is negatively charged. If it were positive, the field would point outward. **77.** The metal spikes penetrating into the ground reduce electrical resistance between the golfer and the ground, providing an effective electrical path from the cloud to the ground. Not a good idea! **79.** The mechanism of sticking is charge induction. If it's a metal door, the charged balloon will induce an opposite charge on the door. If the door is an insulator, the balloon induces polarization of the molecules in the door material. So whether the door is an insulator or a conductor, the balloon sticks by induction. **81.** By charge polarization. **83.** The field is zero because the force on a test charge midway cancels to zero. **85.** A positive charge placed in the vicinity of a proton is pushed away from the proton, hence, the direction of the electric field vector is away from the proton. **87.** Charge will be more concentrated on the corners (Figure 22.21). **89.** When released, its 10 joules of potential energy will become 10 joules of kinetic energy as it passes its starting position. **91.** In a thunderstorm the metal affords a field-free region (called a Faraday cage). Charges on the surface of the metal arrange themselves such that the field in the interior cancels to zero. **93.** Increase the area of the plates or bring them closer together, but not touching. Or you can insert a nonconducting material, called a *dielectric*, between the plates. **95.** 1 Mev is 1 million ev (10^6 eV); 1 Gev is 1 billion eV (10^9 eV), so a GeV is 1000 times larger than a MeV. **97.** No, nor inside any statically charged conducting body. Mutually repelling charges on the surface cancel the electric field inside the body to zero—true for solids as well as hollow conductors.

Think and Discuss

99. When the wool and plastic rub against each other, electrons are rubbed from the plastic onto the wool. The deficiency of electrons on the plastic bag results in its positive charge. **101.** The penny will be slightly more massive with a negative charge, for it will have more electrons than when neutral. If it were positively charged, it would be slightly lighter because of missing electrons. **103.** The law would be written no differently. For example, $Q_1 \times Q_2$ is the same as $Q_2 \times Q_1$ **105.** The half ring has the greater electric field at its center because the electric field at the center of the whole ring cancels to zero. The electric field at the center of the half ring is due to a multitude of electric vectors, vertical components canceling, with horizontal components adding to produce a resultant field acting horizontally to the right. **107.** Your hair will not stand out because you are in a region of zero electric field, even when touching the inner surface. Similarly, you are in a zero electric field inside the car when a lightning bolt hits the car.

Chapter 23

Reading Check Questions

1. Heat must have a difference in temperature. Flow of charge must have a difference in electrical potential. **3.** Electrons in metals are free to wander, whereas protons are imbedded in atomic nuclei, not free to roam. **5.** One kind is a battery, another is a generator. **7.** More water flows through a wide pipe, and similarly more charge flows through a thick wire. **9.** The unit of electrical resistance is the ohm, symbol Ω. **11.** When voltage is halved, current is halved. **13.** The third prong is connected to the "ground," providing a route for unwanted charge. It prevents charge buildup on the appliance. **15.** Current oscillates 60 times per second at 60 hertz. **17.** A capacitor smoothes the pulses when a diode converts ac to dc. **19.** Drift velocity is the net velocity of electrons that make up an electric current. **21.** The error is that the source of electrons is the conducting wires themselves, not the power source. **23.** When you are shocked, your own body is the source of electrons, but not the source of energy imparted to them. **25.** A watt and a kilowatt are units of power. A kilowatt-hour is a unit of energy. **27.** Voltages add, so if voltage in one lamp is 2 V, voltage in the other is 4 V to account for the 6 V impressed across both in series. **29.** The sum of the currents in the branches adds to the current in the voltage source.

Think and Do

31. This is a worthwhile activity.

Plug and Chug

33. $I = V/R = 120\ V/15\ \Omega = 8$ A.
35. $I = V/R = 120\ V/240\Omega = 0.5$ A.
37. $P = IV = (10\ A)(120\ V) = 1200$ W.

Think and Solve

39. Power = Current × Voltage = 0.625 A × 120 V = 75 W.
41. Current = 1500 − W/120 V = 12.5 A. From the previous problem, resistance = voltage/current = 120 V/12.5 A = 9.6 ohms. **43.** P = IV = (10 A)(120-V) = 1200 W = 1200 J/s. The heat energy that will be generated in 5 minutes is E = power × time = (1200 J/s) (5 × 60 s) = 360,000 J. **45.** The resistance of the toaster is R = V/I = 120 V/10 A = 12 ohms. So, when the 110 V is applied, the current I = V/R = 110 V/12 ohms = 9.17. A giving rise to the power is P = IV = 9.17 A × 110 V = 1008.7 W. This is 84.06 percent of the normal power.

Think and Rank

47. A = B = C. **49.** C, B, A. **51.** (a) C, B, A. (b) A = B = C.

Think and Explain

53. The cooling system of an automobile is a better analogy to an electric circuit because like an electric circuit it is a closed system, The water hose does not re-circulate the water as the auto cooling system does. **55.** The circuit in the center is a complete circuit and will light the lamp. **57.** 5 Joules. **59.** The electric toaster. **61.** Only circuit 5 is complete and will light the bulb. (Circuits 1 and 2 are "short circuits" and will quickly drain the cell of its energy. In circuit 3 both ends of the lamp filament are connected to the same terminal and are therefore at the same potential. Only one end of the lamp filament is connected to the cell in circuit 4.) **63.** The chemical energy which is responsible for the batteries to function gets spent when used. **65.** In a series connection if a single bulb gets fused then the whole circuit breaks, and the other bulbs will no longer light up. Either the fused bulb needs to be removed or a wire needs to be connected across the fused bulb to bypass the flow of current allowing the rest of the bulbs to light up. **67.** Electric shock *occurs* when current is produced in the body, which is *caused* by an impressed voltage. So the initial *cause* is the voltage, but it is the current that does the damage. **69.** Electric power in your home is likely supplied at 60 hertz and 110-120 volts via electrical outlets. This is ac. Battery

terminals don't alternate, and current provided flows in one direction and is dc. **71.** Open-ended question. **73.** Current remains the same in all the resistors in a series circuit. **75.** The sign is a joke. High voltage may be dangerous, but high resistance is a property of all nonconductors. **77.** No cause for concern. The label is intended as humor. It describes electrons, which are in all matter. **79.** Birds sitting on a single cable do not complete any electric circuit and hence they do not get electrocuted. **81.** How quickly a lamp glows after an electrical switch is closed does not depend on the drift velocity of the conduction electrons, but depends on the speed at which the electric field propagates through the circuit—about the speed of light. **83.** Bulbs will glow brighter when connected in parallel, for the voltage of the battery is impressed across each bulb. When two identical bulbs are connected in series, half the voltage of the battery is impressed across each bulb. The battery runs down faster for bulbs in parallel. **85.** Bulb C is the brightest because the voltage across it equals that of the battery. Bulbs A and B share the voltage of the parallel branch of the circuit and have half the current of bulb C. If bulb A is unscrewed, the top branch is no longer part of the circuit and current ceases in both A and B. They no longer give light, while bulb C glows as before. If bulb C is instead unscrewed, then it goes out and bulbs A and B glow as before. **87.** Appliances in homes are connected in parallel circuits to draw maximum current, reduce net resistance, and to maintain independence of appliances from each other. **89.** All are the same for identical resistors in parallel. If the resistors are not the same, the one of greater resistance will have less current through it and less power dissipation in it. Regardless of the resistances, the voltage across both will be identical. **91.** All three are equivalent parallel circuits. Each branch is individually connected to the battery.

Think and Discuss

93. A fuse is connected in series with the power supply line, and the fuse ribbon is rated in amperes. If the current flow exceeds the rated value, the fuse ribbon melts and the circuit breaks, preventing overloading. **95.** No, the net resistance will add up in series connection giving rise to 72-Ω. **97.** They will connect 5 resistors in series, giving then the required 50-Ω resistor. **99.** (a) 4 Ω: The circuit can be redrawn as a simple 3-branch 12-Ω parallel circuit. Using the product over sum rule for the top two 12-Ω branches, equivalent resistance for the two is $[(12\ \Omega)(12\ \Omega)]/24\ \Omega = 6\ \Omega$. The same rule again, $[(6\ \Omega)(12\ \Omega)]/18\ \Omega = 4\ \Omega$ for the total circuit. (b) From $I = V/R = 24\ \text{V}/4\ \Omega = 6$ A. (c) Current is divided evenly between the three branches so there is 2 A across each branch. So 2 A flows in the 12-Ω resistor.

Chapter 24

Reading Check Questions

1. Hans Christian Oersted in a high-school classroom noted how a current affects a magnet, thus relating electricity and magnetism. **3.** Moving electrons are the source of the magnetic force. **5.** Magnetic poles cannot be isolated; electric charges can. **7.** The motion of electric charges produces a magnetic field. **9.** A magnetic domain is a cluster of aligned atoms. **11.** Iron has magnetic domains, while wood does not. **13.** A magnetic field forms concentric circles about a current-carrying wire. **15.** Inside the loop lines are more concentrated. **17.** Greater electron flow produces greater magnetic field strength. **19.** Maximum deflecting force occurs when motion is perpendicular to the field; minimum deflecting force occurs when motion is parallel to the field. **21.** Maximum force occurs when current is perpendicular to the field. **23.** When calibrated for current, it is an ammeter; when calibrated for voltage, it is a voltmeter. **25.** Yes, a motor is a sophisticated galvanometer. **27.** Magnetic pole reversals are the flipping of north and south poles, common throughout Earth's history. **29.** Six creatures include bacteria, pigeons, bees, butterflies, sea turtles, and fish.

Think and Do

31. When the nail is whapped when pointing north-south, domains align with Earth magnetic field. If the nail is whapped when pointing east-west, the domains are unaligned with Earth's field. **33.** Another simple activity. No hammering of metal required. **35.** An elegant activity.

Think and Explain

37. Yes. The spinning of an electron produces a magnetic dipole, which is one of the fundamental properties of an electron that gives a magnetic dipole moment. The north and south poles can be decided depending on the direction of the electron's spinning. **39.** The mid-portion of the magnet will attract the least. No, your friend will be wrong in saying so as one cannot separate the poles of a bar magnet; instead, it will create two small magnets. **41.** The poles of the magnet attract each other and will cause the magnet to bend enough for the poles to touch if the material is flexible enough. **43.** The refrigerator magnets are made flat and thin to have a short-range magnetic force field. Having a large surface area makes it easier to attach to the fridge quickly. **45.** By either heating or hammering it for a long time, the magnetism can be destroyed. Magnetism can also be destroyed naturally over a long period of time. **47.** The alignment persists for awhile so that when removed from the initial magnetic source, "residual" magnetism persists. **49.** The magnetic force will be (a) negligible or minimum when the loop is aligned along the field and (b) maximum when the loop is made perpendicular. **51.** Yes, it does. Since the magnet exerts a force on the wire, the wire, according to Newton's third law, must exert a force on the magnet. **53.** The needle points perpendicular to the wire (east or west). (See Figure 24.8.) **55.** Just as a nail is magnetized by beating on it, an iron ship is beat upon in its manufacture, making it a permanent magnet. Its initial magnetic field orientation, which is a factor in subsequent magnetic measurements, is in effect recorded on the brass plaque. **57.** No, an electron has to be moving across lines of magnetic field in order to feel a magnetic force. In an electric field, however, an electron will be accelerated whether or not it is already moving. **59.** (a) Both charges are opposite in sign as they deflected toward opposite poles and (B) Bending will be more if the magnitude of the magnetic field is doubled. **61.** If an electric current is generated in a rotating loop of wire, the field is magnetic. If a force acts only on a moving charge, the field is magnetic. **63.** Singly-charged ions traveling with the same speed through the same magnetic field will experience the same magnetic force. The extent of their deflections will then depend on their accelerations, which in turn depend on their respective masses. The least massive ions will be deflected the most and the most massive ions will be deflected least.

Think and Discuss

65. Agree, for an electron always experiences a force in an electric field due only to its charge. But force in a magnetic field depends on velocity. **67.** Claims (a), (b), and (c) are correct, whereas (d) is wrong (magnetic field decreases as we go deeper inside the earth). **69.** Work done will be zero as magnetic force and velocity make 90 degrees with each other. **71.** To determine only by their interactions with each other which of two bars is a magnet, place the end of the bar #1 at the midpoint of bar #2 (like making a "T"). If there is an attraction, then bar #1 is the magnet. If there isn't, then bar #2 is the magnet.

Chapter 25

Reading Check Questions

1. Independently, they both discovered electromagnetic induction. **3.** Move the loop near a magnet; move a magnet near a loop; change the current in a nearby loop. **5.** Both frequencies are the same. **7.** The frequency of ac used in the USA is 60 Hz, and Europe is 50 Hz. There is no scientific reason behind this discrepancy except for historical reasons—the electrical and electronics companies manufactured with specific frequency-based devices to have a monopoly in the market. **9.** Faraday and Henry made the discovery; Tesla put it to practical use. **11.** No, a generator simply transforms energy from one form to another. **13.** Power is the rate that energy is transferred. **15.** A transformer changes voltage and current, but not energy and power. **17.** Voltage is stepped up in a step-up transformer. **19.** Operation of a transformer depends on changing magnetic field inside the coil, hence the current is ac. **21.** Yes, this is called self-induction. **23.** Eddy currents are induced swirls of electrons in a conducting sheet, as opposed to a conducting wire. **25.** Purpose of transmitting power at high voltage means less current for a given amount of power, so less wasteful heating of wires. **27.** No wires are needed. A smartphone or other personal electronic devices attest to this. **29.** No wires needed when in a vacuum.

Think and Do

31. Open-ended. Interestingly, decades later the photoelectric effect shed brand new thinking about light. **33.** Electromagnetic induction underlies the changing of such devices.

Plug and Chug

35. $140\ \text{V}/20\ \text{turns} = x\ \text{V}/200\ \text{turns}$; $x = 1400$ V. Hence, it is step-up transformer.

Think and Solve

37. 120 V/500 turns = 6 V/x turns, where x = 500 turns × 6 V/120 V = 25 turns. **39.** 120 V (*Primary voltage*)/x *turns* (*Primary*) = 20 V (*Secondary voltage*)/ y *turns* (*Secondary*); or x/y = 120 V/20 *turns* = 6/1 = 6:1, So there are 6 times as many primary turns compared to the secondary turns. **41.** The transformer steps down the voltage by a factor 35/5= 7. Hence, the output voltage for 70 V input will be 70/7 = 10 V. **43.** The voltage step up is 12,000 V/120 V = 100. So there should be 100 times as many turns on the secondary as compared with the primary.

Think and Rank

45. B, C, A.

Think and Explain

47. Magnetic induction will not occur in nylon, since it has no magnetic domains. **49.** Work must be done to move a current-carrying conductor in a magnetic field. It's also a matter of energy conservation. There has to be more energy input if there is more energy output. **51.** Strictly speaking, a car will get better gas mileage if any electrical devices are switched to the off position. These devices operate by way of the car battery, which must be recharged as electric energy is consumed. Recharging is via the alternator in the car that runs off burned fuel. **53.** Eddy currents induced in the metal change the magnetic field, and in turn changes the ac current in the coils and sets off an alarm. **55.** Agree with your friend. Any coil of wire spinning in a magnetic field that cuts through magnetic field lines is a generator. **57.** In the motor effect the force is perpendicular to the wire. In the generator effect the force is along the wire. **59.** Voltage is induced. **61.** In accord with electromagnetic induction, if the magnetic field alternates in the hole of the ring, an alternating voltage will be induced in the ring. Because the ring is metal, its relatively low resistance will result in a correspondingly high alternating current that heats the ring. **63.** The electromagnet is ac, which means a continually changing magnetic field in the copper ring. This induces a current in the ring to become its own electromagnet that is continually repelled by the large electromagnet. **65.** Since all the electric resistance in this case is merely the wire itself (no other external load), twice the wire length means twice the resistance. So although twice the number of loops means twice the voltage, twice-as-much resistance results in the same current. **67.** Agree, voltage and current are induced, not transferred. **69.** When the secondary voltage is twice the primary voltage and the secondary acts as a source of voltage for a resistive "load," the secondary current is half the value of current in the primary. **71.** A step-up transformer multiplies voltage in the secondary; a step-down transformer does the opposite—decreases voltage in the secondary. **73.** The name of the game with E&M is *change*. DC means no change, so no induction. AC is required that changes direction, normally at 60 Hz. **75.** They are linked, however, by changing magnetic fields—the same in each coil. A physical space is between the two. **77.** No, no, no, a thousand times no! No device can step up energy. This principle is at the heart of physics. Energy cannot be created or destroyed. **79.** By symmetry, the voltage and current for both primary and secondary are the same. So 12 V is impressed on the meter, with an ac current of 1 A. **81.** Waving it changes the "flux" of Earth's magnetic field in the coil, which induces voltage and hence current. You can think of the flux as the number of field lines that thread through the coil. This depends on the orientation of the coil, even in a constant field. **83.** Relative to classical physics, the frequencies are the same. **85.** Electromagnetic waves depend on mutual field regeneration. If the induced electric fields did not induce magnetic fields and pass energy to them, the energy would be localized rather than "waved" into space. Electromagnetic waves would not exist.

Think and Discuss

87. Glass and ceramic materials are good electrical insulators that can insulate the electrical poles from the electrical cables. **89.** The heat generated in drilling can be due to friction between the bit and the material. In case of drilling the metal, the bit will gain less heat as the metal is a good conductor and the heat generated can be distributed throughout the whole piece. Whereas in case of wood, which is an insulator the generated heat cannot be dissipated that can heat up the bit to a greater extent compared to drilling a piece of metal. **91.** Next to none. The high voltage of the power line is between the parallel wires, not between the bird's feet. **93.** Yes, agree with your friend. Magnetic braking explains the slowing of the magnet dropped into the conducting copper tube. **95.** Slowness of fall is due to interaction of the magnetic field of the falling magnet with the field induced in the conducting tube. No conduction, as with a cardboard tube, means no induced field and no slowness of fall. **97.** The tossed magnet will induce eddy currents in the wire coil, which produce a magnetic field that tends to repel the magnet as it approaches, and attract as it leaves, slowing it in its flight. **99.** Yes, it can lead to charging of the wings, but the amount of charging is not significant. The accumulated charge is mostly discharged to the atmosphere by the help of discharge wicks.

Chapter 26

Reading Check Questions

1. A changing magnetic field induces a changing electric field. **3.** The source of an electromagnetic wave is vibrating electric and magnetic fields. **5.** If the wave sped up, there would be greater regeneration of waves and energy would increase. Therefore this doesn't occur. **7.** Light occupies about one millionth of 1% of the measured spectrum. **9.** Wavelength = frequency × wavelength. Higher frequencies of light have shorter wavelengths. **11.** Outer space is filled with electromagnetic waves, for one thing. **13.** The resonant frequency of glass is in the ultraviolet region. **15.** The energy of visible light transmits through the glass and passes out the other side. **17.** The average speed of light in glass is less than its speed in a vacuum. **19.** The frequencies of gulps and burps are the same. **21.** Infrared waves cause whole atoms and molecules to vibrate. **23.** Metals are shiny because their free electrons easily vibrate to incoming light. **25.** Umbra is the totally dark part of a shadow; a partial shadow is a penumbra. Moon passes within the shadow of the other, we have an eclipse. **27.** A solar eclipse occurs when Moon's shadow falls on Earth's surface. A lunar eclipse occurs when the shadow of Earth falls on the Moon. **29.** Object on the periphery is best seen when moving.

Think and Do

31. You may be surprised to find that the size of the Moon in the sky is the same whether the Moon is low or high in the sky. The explanation is physiological. **33.** Open-ended and interesting!

Think and Solve

35. From $v = d/t$, $t = d/v = d/c$ = $(2.28 \times 10^{11}\ \text{m})/(3 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s})$ = 0.76×10^{3} s = 760 s (For Mars) $(1.50 \times 10^{11}\ \text{m})/(3 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s})$ = 0.5×10^{3} s = 500 s (For Earth) **37.** (a) From $v = d/t$, $t = d/v = d/c$ = $(3.85 \times 10^{10})/(3 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s})$ = 115.5 s (which equals 1.0 min).
(b) $t = d/v = d/c$ = $(5.6 \times 10^{10})/(3 \times 10^{8})$ = 186.6 s (3.1 min).
39. From $v = f\lambda$, λ = v/f = $(3.0 \times 10^{8})/(3.0 \times 10^{6})$ = 0.01 m = 1.0 cm, about the width of your smallest fingertip.

Think and Rank

41. **c**, a, b. **43.** a = b = c.

Think and Explain

45. No, we cannot. In electromagnetic waves, both are interlinked and cannot be separated. **47.** You see your hand in the past! How much? To find out, simply divide the distance between your hands and your eyes by the speed of light. (At 30 cm, this is about a billionth of a second.) **49.** Night vision cameras work using IR light, which is not visible to the naked eye. **51.** Frequency; a gamma ray has a higher frequency (and therefore more energy per photon) than an infrared ray. **53.** Both travel at the same speed c. **55.** No, it is not possible because in a black hole, the gravity is so strong that it does not allow electromagnetic radiation to escape. **57.** Technically no, as the information cannot be retrieved when the waves travel far away. **59.** Sound requires a physical medium to travel. Light does not. **61.** Wi-Fi uses the radio waves to transmit information from a device to a router. **63.** The refractive index of glass is higher compared to the air medium. **65.** To probe small objects at an atomic level, small wavelengths (x-rays or gamma rays) or higher frequencies will be used, whereas to probe large objects, large wavelengths (radio waves) or smaller frequencies will be used. **67.** Clouds are transparent to ultraviolet light, which is why clouds offer very little protection from sunburn. Glass, however, is opaque to ultraviolet light, and will shield you from sunburn. **69.** A light source smaller than the object creates the sharpest shadow. **71.** The Moon is relatively dimmer as compared to the Sun so the light from the Moon only activates

the rods of the eyes, giving it a white or grayish appearance. **73.** Cats', and most other nocturnal animals', eyes glow in the dark because there is a special reflective layer (tapetum lucidum) at the back of their eyeballs, which increases the capacity of amount of light absorbed in the darkness. **75.** The size of the pupil reduces with age. **77.** The brightness of the star mostly depends on its proximity to the viewer. Yes, you are looking at the past where the light escaped from the star long ago.

Think and Discuss

79. We can see the Sun and stars. **81.** Sound is propagated by using radio waves, and radio waves cannot be heard as they are electromagnetic waves. The receiver of the radio decodes the sound and plays it which is a form or mechanical wave. **83.** Light has both wave and particle characteristics. **85.** Due to the 5-degree tilt of the Moon's orbit relative to Earth's orbit around the Sun, the Moon's shadow generally passes either above or below the Earth without causing a solar eclipse. **87.** A lunar eclipse occurs when the Sun, Earth, and Moon are in perfect alignment and Earth's shadow falls on the Moon. Moonlight is brightest and the Moon is always fullest when the alignment is closest to perfect—on the night of a lunar eclipse. **89.** The crescent-shaped images are of the Sun when partly blocked by the Moon passing partly in front of the Sun. **91.** The Moon is farther away from its average distance from Earth, so it is smaller in the sky. If it were closer, the Moon would appear bigger and the Sun would be entirely blocked when the Moon, Sun, and Earth align. **93.** First, moon observers would see Earth in the path of the sunlight and see a solar eclipse. Second, moon observers would see a small shadow of the Moon slowly move across the full Earth. The shadow would consist of a dark spot (the umbra) surrounded by a not-as-dark circle (the penumbra). **95.** Light from the flash spreads via the inverse-square law to the ground below, and what little returns to the airplane spreads further. Taking pictures at great distances, whether from an airplane or the football stands, with the flash intentionally on is rather foolish.

Chapter 27

Reading Check Questions

1. Blue light has a higher frequency than red light. **3.** When light falls on a material with a matching natural frequency it is absorbed. When light falls on a material with a natural frequency above or below the frequency of incoming light it is reemitted. **5.** A colored piece of glass absorbs light and warms more quickly. **7.** Our eyes are most sensitive to yellow-green. **9.** These three of equal brightness add together to produce white. **11.** Red and cyan add to produce white. **13.** Cyan is the color most absorbed by red paint. **15.** The colors are magenta, yellow, and cyan. **17.** Small bells interact more with high- pitched sounds. Small particles interact more with high-pitched sounds. **19.** The sky sometimes appears whitish due to scattering of particles larger than oxygen and nitrogen molecules in the atmosphere. **21.** The colors of sunsets vary because the atmospheric particles also vary in the atmosphere. **23.** Yes, the redness of an eclipsed Moon is the refractions of Earth's sunrises and sunsets all over the world. **25.** Large droplets absorb light and the cloud becomes darker. **27.** Red light is most absorbed by water. **29.** Water appears cyan because red light has been absorbed by the water.

Think and Do

31. This relates to Think and Discuss 81. **33.** This will be fascinating to skeptics! **35.** Can you convince her that knowledge adds, not subtracts, from nature appreciation?

Think and Explain

37. The interior coating absorbs rather than reflects light, and therefore appears black. A black interior will absorb any stray light rather than reflecting interfere with the optical image. **39.** A pink colored ball has better visibility at night as compared to a red ball. **41.** White. **43.** If the yellow clothes are illuminated with a complementary blue light, they will appear black. **45.** Red and green produce yellow; red and blue produce magenta; red, blue, and green produce white. **47.** The reddish-yellow is complementary to blue, which combines to black. Dark blue police cars would be difficult to see under such light. **49.** No, he is wrong in saying so. The glass appears pink as it absorbs all colors except pink, which it transmits. **51.** The water absorbs most of the red part of the spectrum and behaves as filter, which leaves the blue part. **53.** Green + blue = cyan = white − *red*. **55.** The reflected color is white minus red, or cyan. **57.** Water absorbs different wavelengths of light at different depths starting from the red which has highest wavelength followed by orange and yellow. **59.** Yes, agree. Not many of your friends know this! **61.** Yes. **63.** Through the volcanic emissions, the Moon appears cyan, the complementary color of red. **65.** The foam is composed of tiny bits of liquid that scatter light as a cloud does. **67.** As the thickness of the atmosphere increases, it scatters more of the blue part of the radiation. Thus, the sky will look more blue as compared to the normal atmosphere. **69.** Black is not a color. It indicates absence of colors. If someone's hair appears black, it suggests that the hair absorbs all the components of visible light and reflects none.

Think and Discuss

71. The customer is being reasonable. Under fluorescent lighting, with its predominant higher frequencies, the bluer colors rather than the redder colors will be accentuated. Colors will appear quite different in sunlight. **73.** Red lights are used because it has the highest wavelength and can travel far, providing clear visibility so that pilots can easily identify the danger related to collision and can keep a safe height from those structures. **75.** We see not only yellow green, but also red and blue. All mixed together the colors produce the white light we see. And due to atmospheric scattering the Sun is yellowish. **77.** Yes. **79.** The color black is the result of absorption, what pigments do. But it doesn't apply to light. There is no black in a rainbow. The color black, like white, is not a color of light. **81.** Cats have more rods in their retina as compared to cones. Rods help to identify an object even in scarce light whereas cones help visualize colors. Hence, cats can see better than humans at night, however, they cannot identify the colors precisely. **83.** Black, as there is no atmosphere and hence no scattering. **85.** The sky would appear reddish because red is most scattered from sunlight. Sunsets would appear bluish as blue light best traverses long distances through the atmosphere. **87.** As there is no atmosphere on Mercury, there will be no scattering or change in color of the Sun during sunrise or sunset. **89.** Adding bits of material is akin to color addition on a computer screen. Subtracting material is akin to the way pigments are mixed to produce a printed textbook diagram.

Chapter 28

Reading Check Questions

1. Incident light sets electrons into vibration. **3.** Yes. **5.** Image distance and object distance are the same. **7.** Yes, a surface may be polished for short-wavelength waves such as the mesh on a parabolic dish and not for longer ones. **9.** The angles are not the same when the faces of the glass are not parallel, as with a prism. **11.** The speed is c after exiting a glass lens into air. **13.** Light travels faster in thin air than in dense air. **15.** Yes, to both reflection and refraction. **17.** Dispersion can be undone when the entrance face of the first prism is parallel to the exit face of the second prism. **19.** A viewer only sees a small segment of colors, a single color, dispersed from a faraway drop. **21.** Brightness levels are somewhat bright beyond the secondary bow, darker between the secondary and primary bows, and brightest within the primary bow. **23.** Light inside glass is totally reflected at about 43°, depending on the type of glass; light in a diamond totally refracts at 24.5°. **25.** A converging lens is thickest in the middle, causing parallel rays to come together at a point. A diverging lens is thickest at the edges. **27.** A real image can be cast on a screen; a virtual image cannot. **29.** Small pupils mean small opening with less overlapping of out-of-focus rays.

Think and Do

31. Many Grandmas do not realize that only a half-size mirror gives a full view of oneself. **33.** This is an intriguing activity. **35.** This is an intriguing activity.

Think and Solve

37. 4 m/s, the sum of you both walking at 2 m/s. **39.** The distance between the eye and the image of the bee is 80 + 25 = 105 cm. **41.** According to Snell's law, $n_1 sin\theta_1 = n_2 sin\theta_2$; 1.45 sin 30° = 1.01 $sin\theta_2$ = 46°.

Think and Rank

43. a = b = c (all same). **45.** b, c, a.

Think and Explain

47. Peter's left foot is firmly planted on the table, behind the mirror between his legs. **49.** Only three plane mirrors produce the multiple images of Karen Jo in this large kaleidoscope. **51.** Angle of incidence = Angle of reflection, so the angle reflection will be 45 °. **53.** Such lettering is seen in proper form in the rearview mirrors of cars ahead. **55.** The one captured with selfie mode will be difficult to read as the picture captured will show alphabets laterally inverted. **57.** Window glass typically transmits about 92% of incident light, and the two surfaces reflect about 8%. The person outside in the daylight who looks at the window of a room that is dark inside sees 8% of the outside light reflected back and 92% of the inside light transmitted out. But 8% of the bright outside light might be more intense than 92% of the dim inside light, making it difficult or impossible for the outside person to see in. The person inside the dark room, on the other hand, receiving 92% of the bright outside light and 8% of the dim inside light, reflected, easily sees out. **59.** A pulse of orange light travels faster through a glass block and will exist first. **61.** There will be no impact of distances on the answer of preceding exercise as Jack moves closer, image of jack moves closer as well. If Jack moves farther away his image similarly moves away. **63.** Double the image, that is, $9 \times 2 = 18$ cm. **65.** The person is farsighted. **67.** Agree, as inspection of Figure 28.24 shows. Note wavefronts are closer together in water as compared with in air above. **69.** The Moon is not totally dark while in the shadow of Earth because the atmosphere of Earth acts as a converging lens that refracts light into Earth's shadow. It is the low frequencies that pass more easily through the long grazing path through Earth's atmosphere to be refracted finally onto the Moon. Hence its reddish color—the refraction of the whole world's sunrises and sunsets. **71.** We cannot see a rainbow "off to the side," for a rainbow is not a tangible thing "out there." Colors are refracted in infinite directions and fill the sky. The only colors we see that aren't washed out by others are those that are along the conical angles between 40° and 42° to the Sun-anti-Sun axis. **73.** What is true of the swimmer in the previous exercise is true for the fish above water. Normal vision for the fish is for light going from water to the eye. This condition is met if the fish wears goggles filled with water. **75.** The diamond will lose brilliance because the difference in the speed of light passing from water to diamond is less than from air to diamond. Less change in speed means less refraction. **77.** Cover the top half the lens and you cut out half the illumination of the light. In doing so you don't cut out half the image, as is mistakenly thought. The image is as full as before application of the tape. **79.** A larger pinhole produces a brighter image, but due to overlapping rays of light, a blurrier image. A tiny pinhole image is one of sharpness. **81.** The circular spots are images of the Sun cast through "pinholes" in the spaces between leaves above. **83.** The nature of the image formed on the retina is inverted or upside down. The human brain recognizes the upside-down image correctly or re-inverts the formed image. **85.** No, he cannot be believed. Refractive index less than one means the speed of light is greater inside the medium compared to its speed in vacuum, which is impractical. **87.** The speed of light in the glass and the oil are the same.

Think and Discuss

89. If we view a curved mirror as a succession of small flat ones, then at each place where light meets the surface, the standard law of reflection does apply. **91.** No. A mirage cannot be observed without air. **93.** Windowpanes are frosted to avoid direct reflection or glare of light when seen from the outside. As the incident beam on the uneven surface reflects in various directions, there is direct reflection or glare that causes inconvenience for a viewer outside. As most of the incident rays get scattered in various directions, less light enters the room. **95.** The two pictures do not contradict each other. In both cases light is bent away from the normal upon emerging from the water. That's why the corner of the immersed square appears to be shallower. **97.** Throw the spear below the apparent position of the fish. But in zapping a fish with a laser, make no corrections and simply aim directly at the fish. This is because the light from the fish you see has been refracted in getting to you, and the laser light will refract along the same path in getting to the fish. **99.** The critical angle for water is 48°. If the fish is looking at an angle 50°, which is greater than the critical angle, it will only see a reflection from the bottom of the water. **101.** Your location should be between the rainbow and the Sun. **103.** Very rarely, it is possible to see two rainbows simultaneously in the sky. This happens when the white light from the Sun gets internally dispersed twice from a raindrop. In that case, the colors are inverted in the secondary rainbow. **105.** No. Although light passing through the Earth's atmosphere changes direction, still we cannot assign it to be a lens as it has no physical boundary. Also, the density of air changes from place to place especially it decreases at higher altitudes. **107.** The bending is less because the light is already slowed down in water, and slows only slightly more in your cornea so nearsighted eyes see clearer in water than in air. **109.** The two rays are a sample of many many rays needed to produce a sharp image. The pair of rays merely locate image distance from the lens. The two rays are hardly enough to produce an image.

Chapter 29

Reading Check Questions

1. Every point on a wavefront behaves as a source of new wavelets to form new wavefronts. **3.** Diffraction is more pronounced through a small opening. **5.** Longer wavelength waves diffract more than shorter waves, so the longer AM radio waves bend more around buildings. **7.** They destructively interfere to zero amplitude. **9.** Thomas Young demonstrated the wave nature of light. **11.** Yes. Interference fringes for a single slit can be produced, as Figure 29.19 illustrates. Diffraction gratings and even the ridged surfaces of Grandpa's CD discs show remarkable interference patterns. **13.** An optically flat surface is one where interference fringes are uniform in shape. **15.** Iridescence is produced by light interference. **17.** These colors are all interference colors, resulting from double reflection from two surfaces. **19.** Polarization distinguishes between longitudinal and transverse waves. **21.** When the axes are aligned, light passes through one Polaroid and passes through the other Polaroid. When the axes are at right angles, light that passes through the first Polaroid is absorbed by the second one. **23.** The reflected light is polarized in the direction of the plane surface of reflection. **25.** When the polarization axes for a pair of polarizers is the same, light polarized in the same direction is transmitted. When the axes are crossed, transmitted light from the first polarizer is absorbed by the second crossed polarizer. **27.** Polarization filters at right angles to each other project a pair of images that merge on a screen. These images can reach separate eyes when the screen is viewed through polarization filters at the same right angles to each other. **29.** A hologram shows three-dimensional images, whereas a conventional photograph does not.

Think and Do

31. Diffraction is nicely evident. **33.** This activity reveals polarization in the sky. **35.** Parallax is greater when your finger is closer to your eye.

Think and Explain

37. Earth intercepts such a tiny fraction of the expanding spherical wave from the Sun that it can be approximated as a plane wave. The spherical waves from a nearby lamp have noticeable curvature (see Figure 29.3). **39.** The wavelengths of AM radio waves are hundreds of meters, much larger than the size of buildings, so they are easily diffracted around buildings. FM wavelengths are a few meters, borderline for diffraction around buildings. Light, with wavelengths a tiny fraction of a centimeter, show no appreciable diffraction around buildings. **41.** Yellow light will produce narrower spaced fringes as yellow has shorter wavelength compared to orange light. Out of red light and blue light, the former will produce broader diffraction fringes as it has longer wavelength. **43.** By a one full wavelength, which would compose the central bright fringe. **45.** Best to use slits because straight-line-shaped fringes rather than the fringes of overlapping circles. Circles overlap in relatively smaller segments than the broader overlap of parallel straight lines. Also, the slits allow more light to get through; the pattern with pinholes is dimmer. **47.** Destructive interference will result because a crest and trough meet your eye out of phase. **49.** Soap bubbles are formed by thin film interference. **51.** Diffraction is the principle by which peacocks and hummingbirds display their colors. The ridges in the surface layers of the feathers act as diffraction gratings. **53.** If light from the Sun or the Moon propagates through thin clouds made up of almost uniform sized water or aerosol

droplet, diffraction of light occurs by the edges of the particles. The degree of diffraction or bending of light will depend on the frequency of light and droplet size. This phenomenon leads to the formation ring like patterns known as coronae. **55.** No, it is not possible to get interference patterns even though the sources are monochromatic and separation between the sources is small. As the two laser sources are of two different colors, and hence, they have huge mismatch between the wavelengths, which will not allow the formation of interference patterns. **57.** Each colored ring represents a particular thickness of oil film, just as the lines on a surveyor's contour map represent equal elevations. **59.** Ultraviolet, due to its shorter wavelengths. **61.** The pair of vectors for polarized light have of equal lengths (Figure 29.30c), illustrating that as much light vibrates horizontally as vertically, with no resulting plane of vibration. For polarized light, only one vector occurs. **63.** Yes, if all of incident light is polarized along the axis of the filter, all of it, 100%, gets through. In practice, some absorption occurs and less than 100% gets through. **65.** You can view the polarized light though the polaroid glass and keep on rotating it either clockwise or anticlockwise. The point where you can see maximum intensity will suggest that now the axis of polarization is aligned with the polarized light, which is vibrating vertically. You can then mark the polaroid glass to identify its polarization axis. **67.** The axis of the filter should be vertical as most of the glare coming from the sea surface contains parallel light to the surface of the water. **69.** By cutting down vibrations of light in unwanted direction by the polarized filters, it will achieve better contrast. Hence, LCD TVs are more popular compared to the old TV sets. **71.** Holograms are security features of currency because they are difficult to replicate and easy to detect when replicated.

Think and Discuss

73. Larger wavelengths diffract more (since the ratio of wavelength to slit size is greater), so red diffracts through the greatest angle and blue through the smallest angle. **75.** Wider fringes in air, for in water the wavelengths would be compressed (go back to Figure 28.24), with closer-together fringes. **77.** Longer wavelength red laser light produces more widely spaced fringes. **79.** A serious problem, for depending on the orientation of the polarization axes of the display and the Polaroid sunglasses, no display may be seen. **81.** First of all, a bit of trigonometry. Vertically-polarized light that falls on a filter having an axis 45° will transmit 0.7 of that light (cosine of 45°). In sequence: The amount of light getting through the first (vertical) filter is half (0.5). Then 0.7 of that half falls on the sandwiched filter. Then 0.7 of that passes through the third (horizontal) filter. That's $(0.5)(0.7)(0.7) = 0.25$ the incident light getting through the 3- Polaroid combination.

Chapter 30

Reading Check Questions

1. At these high frequencies, ultraviolet light would be emitted. **3.** One is the classical model, the other is the quantum model. **5.** The atom in a neon tube de-excites and emits light. **7.** Blue light has both a higher frequency and greater energy per photon. **9.** The orange yellow gas is sodium. **11.** A spectroscope is a device that identifies and measures frequencies of light in a beam of light. **13.** There are a greater number of paths between energy levels than the number of energy levels. **15.** In a gaseous phase, emitted light is from well-defined energy levels of outer electron shells in atoms. In the solid phase, smearing of light occurs due to mutual interactions among neighboring atoms in close contact. **17.** Light from the violet-hot star has twice the frequency of red light, and is therefore twice as hot in accord with $f \sim T$. **19.** Fraunhofer lines are spectral absorption lines in the solar spectrum. **21.** Yes, such accounts for the many lines in the spectrum of a simple atom. **23.** Whereas fluorescence is immediate, phosphorescence is fluorescence with a time delay between excitation and de-excitation. **25.** Air contains oxygen, which oxidizes the filament. Argon does not. **27.** A LED is even longer lasting than an incandescent bulb. **29.** Coherent light is a beam of photons having a single frequency that are in phase with one another.

Think and Do

31. Grandma will likely value this information.

Think and Solve

33. (a) The B-to-A transition has twice the energy and twice the frequency of the C-to-B transition. Therefore it will have half the wavelength, or 300 nm. Reasoning: From $c = \lambda f$, $\lambda = c/f$. Wavelength is inversely proportional to frequency. Twice the frequency means half the wavelength. (b) The C-to-A transition has three times the energy and three times the frequency of the C-to-B transition. Therefore it will have one-third the wavelength, or 200 nm.

Think and Explain

35. The variety of colors correspond to the variety of energy levels in different atoms and molecules of different materials. Different colors are due to the different excitations that occur. **37.** More energy is associated with each photon of ultraviolet light than with a photon of visible light, which can cause sunburn-producing chemical changes in the skin that a visible photon cannot do. **39.** If the wavelength of the photon is reduced to half, the energy will be doubled according to $E = hf$ where $f = c/\lambda$. **41.** No, the term neon is generic for all gases that glow in glass tubes. Neon was the first, and other gases were called "neon of different colors." **43.** Observation of rainbows is the best example that confirms the nature of sunlight. A white light can disperse to produce seven colors in a same way the sun rays get dispersed through the prismatic droplets of the water. **45.** No. The true color of Sun is not yellow but white. As earth has an atmosphere that scatters most of the wavelengths except yellow, that is why it appears yellow to us. **47.** Neon lamps produce light of particular frequencies (or color) as the energy levels that cause the electronic transitions are fixed (in the gaseous form). Tungsten filaments, which are solid, produce continuous light as the available frequencies, and the energy levels are numerous, forming a band. **49.** He will have greater number of spectral lines as He has one more electron than H and hence more energy levels possible for it. **51.** Certain creatures, including bacteria, fireflies, jellyfish, etc. possess chemically active molecules in their bodies that produce light. This phenomena in the living beings are known as *bioluminescence*. **53.** Fluorescent jackets illuminate better in the sunlight as well as in low-light, dark streets. At night, when light falls on these jackets, it creates illumination, and alerts the driver of the person on the road, thereby preventing accidents. **55.** Illumination by the lower-frequency light doesn't have sufficiently energetic photons to ionize the atoms in the material, but has photons of enough energy to excite the atoms. In contrast, illumination by ultraviolet light does have sufficient energy for ejecting the electrons, leaving atoms in the material ionized. Imparting different energies produces different results. **57.** The photons from the photoflash tube must have at least as much energy as the photons they are intended to produce in the laser. Red photons have less energy than green photons, so wouldn't be energetic enough to stimulate the emission of green photons. Energetic green photons can produce less-energetic red photons, but not the reverse. **59.** Photons in the laser beam are coherent and move in the same direction; photons in light emitted by an incandescent lamp are incoherent and move in all directions. **61.** Tungsten gas will show light of discrete frequency (overall blueish color) whereas tungsten filament will produce incandescent light of varying frequencies that gives a white light. **63.** We can't see objects at room temperature in the dark simply because our eyes are not sensitive to the radiation the objects emit. Higher temperature, yes. **65.** The metal showing yellow-hot appearance is hotter than the one appears red-hot as the frequency of yellow is higher than red. **67.** Yes, it is possible to measure the speed of the stars by measuring the spectra they emit carefully. Analogous to Doppler effect for moving objects, Doppler shift in light frequencies is also observed for moving stars. The frequency of an approaching star is higher, and frequency of receding star is lower when compared to the frequency emitted by a stationery star. **69.** Six spectral lines are possible. A sketch should show the highest-frequency light emitted in the transition is from quantum level 4 to level 1. The lowest-frequency light emitted in the transition is from quantum level 4 to level 3. **71.** Three spectral lines: from 4 to ground; from 3 to ground; and from 2 to ground. The transition from 4 to 3 would involve the same difference in energy and be indistinguishable from the transition from 3 to 2, or from 2 to ground state. Likewise, the transition from 4 to 2 would have the same change in energy as the transition from 3 to ground state.

Think and Discuss

73. No, the narration is not true, as the excitation energy cannot be larger than the energy of the de-excitation (larger wavelength corresponds to lower energy). **75.** The damage caused by X-rays depends on type of X-ray, part of body being imaged, the dosage, and the exposure time. Assuming low exposure, minimal damage occurs compared with the negative consequences of not treating your teeth or with undiagnosed problems. **77.** When a diode is illuminated by light photons and produces electricity out of that, it is known as a solar cell. In LEDs, electricity is utilized to get light photons. **79.** The moving star will show a Doppler shift. Since the star is receding, it will be a red shift (to lower frequency and longer wavelength). **81.** No. Sodium has D1 and D2 lines. Also, that yellow line can be diffracted by a grating to several colors. Hence, it is not monochromatic. **83.** If it weren't relatively long-lived, there wouldn't be enough accumulation of atoms in this excited state to produce the "population inversion" that is necessary for laser action. **85.** Although no device can put out more energy than is put in, a laser that takes in energy at a certain rate and emits it in a shorter time interval is capable of putting out higher bursts of power than it takes in. **87.** Continued heating of a red-hot piece of metal will increase the peak frequency into the ultraviolet part of the spectrum, with part of it remaining in the blue and violet. So yes, we can heat a metal until it becomes blue-hot. **89.** The electromagnetic waves of violet-light have almost twice the frequency of red-light waves. As average frequency is of the order of temperature, we can say that a violet-hot star is considered to have double the surface temperature of a red-hot star.

Chapter 31

Reading Check Questions

1. If we consider sunlight as particles, it can propagate without a medium. **3.** Planck considered the energy of vibrating atoms as quantized. Einstein later considered energy as quantized. **5.** A quantum of light now is the photon. **7.** Yes, E stands for energy that is measured in joules, or units equivalent to joules. **9.** Photons of microwaves have lower energy than X-rays. **11.** Red light has insufficient energy per photon to initiate the photoelectric effect. A feeble beam of violet light will eject electrons, though not as many as a bright violet beam. **13.** Light stimulates electrons instead of the other way around. **15.** Light behaves as a particle when it interacts with crystals of matter in photographic film. **17.** Light tends to bend at the edges that encroach the expected geometrical shadow region causing this diffraction. This bending effect of light happens due to its wave nature. **19.** No, as the two beams are not monochromatic and are not derived from the same source. **21.** Louis de Broglie proposed that particle's wavelength is equal to Planck's constant divided by momentum. **23.** Traveling through slits, electrons act in a wavelike way. Electrons hit the screen as particle-like. **25.** The product $\Delta p \Delta x$ is equal to or more than $\hbar$. **27.** As with momentum, only value or time can be precise. **29.** Wave and particle aspects of both matter and radiation are necessary, complementary parts of the whole.

Think and Do

31. Insightful to do with your own hair!

Think and Solve

33. Frequency = speed/wavelength: $f = 3 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s} / 10 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m} = 3 \times 10^{13}\ \text{Hz}$. Energy $E = hf = (6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J} \cdot \text{s})(3 \times 10^{13}\ \text{Hz}) = 19.89 \times 10^{-21}\ \text{J} = 2.0 \times 10^{-20}\ \text{J}$. **35.** The ball's momentum is $p = mv = (0.17\ \text{kg} \times 0.0008\ \text{s}) = 1.36 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}$. So, its de Broglie wavelength will be $\lambda = h/p = (6.6 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J} \cdot \text{s})/(1.36 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}) = 4.85 \times 10^{-30}\ \text{m}$. This value is significantly smaller than the wavelength of an electron. Hence, there is no hope to observe an appreciable wavelength even if the ball is rolled slowly.

Think and Rank

37. c, a, b (Wavelength $\sim h/p$).

Think and Explain

39. Classical physics is primarily the physics known before 1900, with Newton's laws and the study of electromagnetism. All characterized by absolute predictability. In quantum physics, particles and waves merge and the basic rules are rules of probability, not certainty. **41.** In accord with $E = hf$, the energy of a photon with twice the frequency has twice the energy. Violet photons are about twice as energetic as red photons. **43.** It makes no sense to talk about photons of white light, for white light is a mixture of various frequencies and therefore a mixture of many photons. One photon of white light has no physical meaning. **45.** Since a beam of red light carries less energy per photon, and both beams have the same total energy, there are more photons in the beam of red light. **47.** It is not the total energy in the light beam that causes electrons to be ejected, but the energy per photon. Hence a few blue photons can dislodge a few electrons, where hordes of low-energy red photons cannot dislodge any. The photons act singly, not in concert. **49.** Protons are held within nuclei deep within atoms. To eject a proton from an atom takes about a million times more energy than to eject an electron. So one would need a high-energy gamma-ray photon rather than a photon of visible light to produce a "photoprotonic" effect. **51.** Some automatic doors utilize a beam of light that continuously shines on a photodetector. When you block the beam by walking through it, the generation of current in the photodetector ceases. This change of current then activates the door to open. **53.** The photoelectric effect is discharging the ball. Some of the excess electrons are being "knocked off" the ball by the ultraviolet light. This discharges the ball. If the ball is positively charged, however, it already has a deficiency of electrons, and knocking off more tends to increase the charge rather than decrease it. **55.** A photon behaves like a wave when in transit; a photon behaves like a particle when it is emitted or absorbed. **57.** By absorbing energy from the impact of a particle or photon, an atom may obtain enough energy to become ionized. **59.** The cannonball obviously has more momentum than the BB traveling at the same speed, so in accord with de Broglie's formula the BB has the longer wavelength. **61.** The twice-as-fast electron has twice the momentum. By de Broglie's formula, wavelength = h/momentum, twice the momentum means half the wavelength. The slower electron has the longer wavelength. **63.** The question is absurd, with the implication that eradicating butterflies will prevent tornadoes.

Think and Discuss

65. As velocity increases, momentum increases, so by de Broglie's formula, wavelength decreases. **67.** No, the uncertainty principle refers only to the quantum realm, and not the macroworld. **69.** Heisenberg's uncertainty principle applies *only* to quantum phenomena, but serves as a popular metaphor for the macro domain. Although we can sway public opinion in a survey, the uncertainty principle has meaning only in the sub-microscopic world. **71.** Light refracting through the lens system is via the wave model of light, and its arrival spot by spot to form the image is via the particle model of light. Even single photons have wave properties that determine where a photon is likely or not likely to go. These waves interfere constructively and destructively at different locations on the film, so the points of photon impact are in accord with probability determined by the waves. **73.** The photon loses energy, so its frequency decreases. (Actually we say one photon is absorbed and another, lower-energy, photon is emitted.) **75.** There will be colors toward the red end of the spectrum where the meter will show no reading, since no electrons are ejected. As the color changes toward the blue and violet, a point will be reached where the meter starts to give a reading. If a color for which the meter reads zero is made more intense, the meter will continue to read zero. If a color for which the meter shows a reading is made more intense, the current recorded by the meter will increase as more electrons are ejected. **77.** Wavelengths are extraordinarily small for moving matter in daily experience. **79.** We don't know if an electron *is* a particle or a wave; we know it *behaves* as a wave when it moves from one place to another and behaves as a particle when it is incident upon a detector. Not so. The unwarranted assumption is that an electron must *be* either a particle *or* a wave.

Chapter 32

Reading Check Questions

1. Most particles remain undeflected because of the empty space within atoms. **3.** Franklin postulated that electricity is an electric fluid that flows from place to place. **5.** Deflection indicates the presence of electric charge in the ray. **7.** Robert Millikan found the mass and charge of the electron. **9.** Rydberg and Ritz discovered that the frequency of a spectral

line in the spectrum of an element equals the sum or difference of two other spectral lines. **11.** Yes, if there is at least one intermediate energy state that the electron can transition to along the way. **13.** The circumferences of orbits are discrete because they are made up of particular whole-number wavelengths of the electron. **15.** A wave explanation holds that electrons don't spiral inward due to being composed of waves that reinforce themselves. **17.** The probability density function is the square of the wave function. **19.** Einstein! He felt that something deeper was fundamental, not quantum mechanics.

Think and Explain

21. Just as a tossed golf ball will bounce backward if it strikes a massive object such as a bowling ball, similarly alpha particles bounce backward when encountering the massive atomic nucleus. **23.** As the incident alpha particles are doubly charged, He nuclei get backscattered or recoiled from the central nucleus. Hence, the nucleus must be made up of positive charges. **25.** Yes, it was believed that because an electron accelerates around its orbit, it must emit radiation. But practically, if this was the case then it would lose energy and will gradually fall into the nucleus following a spiral path. As atoms are quite stable and no such event occurs, this idea was found to be wrong. **27.** It would emit a continuous spectrum. Its energy would change gradually, continuously spiraling inward and radiating at its rotational frequency, which would be continuously increasing. **29.** The same amount of energy is needed to return the electron at the ground level to the first quantum level. **31.** Electrons can be boosted to many energy levels, and therefore make many combinations of transitions to ground level and levels in between. The vast variety of transitions produces many spectral lines. Even hydrogen, with a single electron, has many spectral lines, most of which are in the ultraviolet and infrared. **33.** The particle nature of the electron best explains the photoelectric effect, while the wave nature best explains the discrete levels in the Bohr model of the atom. **35.** Helium's electrons occupy one filled shell. The filled shell means that bonding with other elements is rare. Lithium has two shells, the first filled and the second with only one of eight electrons, making it very reactive with other elements. The shell concept in Chapter 11 was too brief for this question. **37.** No, it is not possible for electrons to emit energy in the form of radiation if they are in the same atomic orbit. Electrons can emit energy in the form of radiation only when they jump from higher excited energy levels to lower energy levels. **39.** The probabilistic model of the atom, where wave model having electrons distributed as clouds is found to be most realistic approach of the atomic models. **41.** The physical state of an electron is commonly described by a wave function Ψ, which is also known as probability amplitude, and $|\psi|^2$ represents the probability density of finding the electron in a particular location of space. **43.** What waves is the probability amplitude.

Think and Discuss

45. Violet line corresponds to higher energy and red line corresponds to higher wavelength. **47.** It is not possible to see a single electron and indeed it is hard to find the charge of a single electron. However, when we talk about electricity that is a classical system and things more predictable and measurable in that case. **49.** Yes, this situation represents Bohr's correspondence principle where situations behave classical at extremely high level of excited states where energy appears continuous and not discrete. **51.** Bohr proposed this correspondence principle in 1913. **53.** No. Newtonian laws will work fine with massive objects, and there is no need to introduce any correction factor to the relations. **55.** If you wish to climb up an inclined slope, you can step anywhere and move ahead, and there is no obstruction. This resembles classical mechanics where energy is continuous. However, in the case of stairs, your foot cannot be placed anywhere; it has to be placed at a single or multiple step height. This gives us an idea about quantum mechanics, where energy is discrete and never continuous.

Chapter 33

Reading Check Questions

1. Roentgen discovered the emission of "new kind of rays." **3.** Becquerel discovered that uranium emitted a new kind of penetrating radiation. **5.** Gamma rays have no electric charge. **7.** A rad is a unit of absorbed energy. A rem is a measure of radiation based on potential damage (roentgen equivalent man). **9.** Yes, the human body *is* radioactive. Radioactive potassium is in all humans. **11.** Protons and neutrons are two different nucleons. **13.** Because the strong force is short range, protons in a large nucleus are farther apart on average than in a small nucleus, and the strong force is less effective between wide-apart protons. **15.** Larger nuclei contain a larger percentage of neutrons. **17.** The half-life of Ra-226 is 1620 years. **19.** A Geiger counter senses radiation by ionization. **21.** A transmutation is the changing of an element to another element. **23.** When thorium emits a beta particle, it transmutes to an element with atomic number increased by 1, atomic number 91. **25.** When an element emits an alpha particle, atomic number decreases by 2. For emission of a beta particle, atomic number increases by 1. For gamma emission, no change in atomic number. **27.** Ernest Rutherford in 1919 was the first to intentionally transmute elements. **29.** Most of the carbon we ingest is carbon-12.

Think and Do

31. Radioactivity is not something new, but is part of nature.

Think and Solve

35. Half-life of the radioactive isotope = 2 years. After 6 years, 2.5/2 = 1.25 g of the element will remain. **37.** $1/8 = (1/2)^3$, so 3×30 years = 90 years. **39.** The intensity is down by a factor 32.05 (from 100% to 3.12%); $2^5 = 32$; $5 \times 5730 = 28,650$ years.

Think and Rank

41. b, a, c. **43.** b, c, a. **45.** B, A, D, C.

Think and Explain

47. Kelvin was not aware of radioactive decay, a source of energy to keep Earth warm for billions of years. **49.** Gamma radiation is electromagnetic, while alpha and beta radiations is of particles having mass. **51.** It is impossible for a hydrogen atom to emit an alpha particle because an alpha particle is composed of four nucleons—two protons and two neutrons. It is equally impossible for a 1-kg melon to disintegrate into four 1-kg melons. **53.** The alpha particle has twice the charge, but almost 8000 times the inertia (since each of the four nucleons has nearly 2000 times the mass of an electron). So the much-greater mass alphas deflect less than betas. **55.** Alpha radiation decreases the atomic number of the emitting element by 2 and the atomic mass number by 4. Beta radiation increases the atomic number of an element by 1 and does not affect the atomic mass number. Gamma radiation does not affect the atomic number or the atomic mass number. So alpha radiation results in the greatest change in both atomic number and mass number. **57.** Gamma radiation predominates in the enclosed elevator because the structure of the elevator shields against alpha and beta particles better than against gamma-ray photons. **59.** An alpha particle accelerates due to mutual electric repulsion as soon as it leaves the nucleus and away from the attracting nuclear force. This is because it has the same sign of charge as the nucleus. Like charges repel. **61.** The equation for KE = $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$ tells us that for large m, v must be small for the same KE. So the more massive alpha particle moves slower than the beta particle for the same KE. **63.** The two protons repel by the electric force, and attract each other by the strong nuclear force. With the help of neutrons, the strong force predominates. **65.** Atomic nuclei with many protons is evidence that something stronger than electric repulsion occurs in the nucleus. Otherwise the repelling electrical force would drive protons apart, and the nucleus wouldn't exist. **67.** The lone proton is positively charged in a hydrogen atom. (Getting this wrong is serious.) **69.** Number of nucleons and electric charge are always conserved in all nuclear equations. **71.** The mass of the element is 157 + 100 = 257. Its atomic number is 100, the transuranic element named fermium, after Enrico Fermi. **73.** After the polonium nucleus emits a beta particle, the atomic number increases by 1 to become 85, and the atomic mass number is unchanged at 218. **75.** Both have 92 protons, but U-238 has more neutrons than U-235. **77.** An element can decay to an element of greater atomic number by emitting electrons (beta rays). Then a neutron in the nucleus becomes a proton and the atomic number increases by one. **79.** If strontium-90 (atomic number 38) emits betas, it should become the element yttrium (atomic number 39); hence the physicist can test a sample of strontium for traces of yttrium by spectrographic means or other techniques. To verify that it is a "pure" beta source, a check is made to be sure that the sample is emitting no alphas or gammas.

Think and Discuss

81. All uranium decays in a cycle that ends with lead. So lead naturally exists in all natural deposit of uranium. **83.** Eight alpha particles and six beta particles are emitted in the decay chain from U-238 to Pb-206. The numbers are the same for the alternate paths. **85.** Radium is a "daughter" element, the result of the radioactive decay of long-live uranium. So as long as uranium exists, radium will exist on Earth. **87.** The elements below uranium in atomic number with short half-lives exist as the product of the radioactive decay of uranium or another very long-lived element, thorium. For the billions of years that the uranium and thorium last, the lighter elements will be steadily replenished. **89.** The radiations encountered in the vicinity of the plant, on the granite outcropping, or at high altitude are not appreciably different than the radiation one encounters in the "safest" of situations. Advise your friend to enjoy life anyway! **91.** You can tell your fearful friend by avoiding the Geiger counters that measures radiation is useless. Your friend might as well avoid thermometers on a hot day to escape the heat. **93.** The reading would be the same for the uranium ore! With a half-life of billions of years, its decreased rate is negligible in a 60-year span. **95.** Carbon dating technique cannot be applied to carved stone tablets. Nonliving stone does not ingest carbon and transform that carbon by radioactive decay. Carbon dating works for organic materials.

Chapter 34

Reading Check Questions

1. A chain reaction doesn't occur because very little uranium in mines is the fissionable isotope U-235. **3.** Critical mass is the amount beyond which spontaneous fission occurs. **5.** The two methods were gas diffusion and centrifuge separation. **7.** Control rods and the presence of U-238 are safeguards to escalation in a reactor. **9.** The isotope is Np-239. **11.** Cadmium and boron. The material should be neutron absorbing. **13.** Plutonium is produced. **15.** Thorium is used to breed fissionable U-233. **17.** Some advantages of fission power: (1) plentiful electricity, (2) saving fossil fuels for materials, (3) no atmospheric pollution. Some disadvantages of fission power: (1) waste storage, (2) danger of weapons proliferation, (3) radioactivity release (4) risk of accident. **19.** Yes, yes, with the form of energy as increased mass. **21.** Figure 34.15 shows mass vs atomic number, while Figure 34.16 shows mass per nucleon vs atomic number. **23.** Mass per nucleon decreases in fission fragments. **25.** The energy of nuclear transformations progressing toward iron means less mass per nucleon. **27.** Helium would have to be fused to release energy. **29.** Deuterium is abundant, found in ordinary water. Tritium is scarce and must be created.

Think and Do

31. Open-ended.

Think and Solve

33. C-12.

Think and Rank

35. B, A, C, E, D.

Think and Explain

37. The fundamental forces in nature are gravity, electromagnetic, the strong force, and the weak nuclear force. The strong force holds the nucleus together and the electrical force, part of the EM force, tends to push it apart. **39.** Non-enriched uranium—which contains more than 99% of the non-fissionable isotope U-238—undergoes a chain reaction only if it is mixed with a moderator to slow down the neutrons. Uranium in ore is mixed with other substances that impede the reaction with no moderator to slow down the neutrons, so no chain reaction occurs. **41.** A neutron makes a better "nuclear bullet" for penetrating atomic nuclei because it has no electric charge and is therefore not electrically repelled by an atomic nucleus. **43.** No, the flattened shape has more surface area, and therefore more neutron leakage, making it subcritical. **45.** The process of assembling small pieces of fission fuel into a single big piece increases average traveling distance, decreases surface area, reduces neutron leakage, and increases the probability of a chain reaction and an explosion. **47.** Only trace amounts of plutonium can occur naturally in U-238 concentrations because of the relatively short half-live of plutonium. Any plutonium initially in Earth's crust has long since decayed. **49.** Thorium is a step in breeding the fuel Pu-229. Thorium-232 captures a neutron to form Th-233, which beta decays into U-233, which is a fissionable isotope. **51.** The initial uranium atom has more mass than its products. It is the "loss" of initial mass that produces the energy of the reaction. **53.** One purpose of a separate water cycle is to restrict radioactive contamination of the reactor water with the reactor itself and to prevent interaction of the contaminants with the outside environment. Also, the primary water cycle can operate at higher pressure and therefore at higher temperature (well above the normal boiling point of water). **55.** The mass of an atomic nucleus is less than the sum of the masses of the separate nucleons that compose it. **57.** Copper, atomic number 29, fused with zinc, atomic number 30, becomes the rare earth element praseodymium, atomic number 59. **59.** Aluminum. (Two carbons fuse to produce manganese, atomic number 12. Beta emission would change it to aluminum, atomic number 13.) **61.** A hydrogen bomb produces a lot of fission energy in the fission bomb "trigger" used to ignite the thermonuclear reaction. Fallout results mainly from the fission. **63.** Although more energy is released in the fissioning of a single uranium nucleus than in the fusing of a pair of deuterium nuclei, the much greater number of lighter deuterium atoms in a gram of matter than the heavier uranium atoms in a gram of matter, results in more energy liberated per gram for the fusion of deuterium. Answers differ for a single nucleus and a gram of nuclei. **65.** Solar energy, always with us, arises from nuclear fusion reactions in the Sun.

Think and Discuss

67. Both chemical burning and nuclear fusion require a minimum ignition temperature to start and in both the reaction is spread by heat from one region to neighboring regions. **69.** $11\,H + 21\,H > 32\,Li$. So the result is lithium. **71.** Estimate the energy per nucleon of the element being fissioned or fused. Compare that value to the average of the product element(s). If the mass per nucleon of the product element(s) is lower on the energy-valley curve than the mass per nucleon of the initial element(s), then energy is released, whether a fission or fusion event. If the value is greater, then energy is absorbed, whether a fission or fusion event. **73.** Multiply the mass difference by the speed of light squared: $E = mc^2$. That's the energy release per reaction! **75.** Fusion fuel (heavy hydrogen) is plentiful on Earth, especially in the world's oceans, whereas fission fuel (uranium and plutonium) is a much more limited resource. Fission produces appreciable radioactive wastes, whereas the chief byproduct of fusion is nonradioactive helium.. **77.** Ruthenium. (U with atomic number 92 splits into palladium, atomic number 46, which emits an alpha particle with atomic number 2. This results in an element having atomic number 44, ruthenium.) **79.** If uranium were split into three parts, the segments would be nuclei of smaller atomic numbers, more toward iron on the graph of Figure 34.16. The resulting mass per nucleon would be less, and there would be more mass converted to energy in such a fissioning reaction. **81.** Splitting light nuclei (which happens in particle accelerators) costs energy. As the curve in Figure 34.16 shows, the total mass of the products would be greater than the total mass of the initial nucleus. **83.** Most of nuclear reactors use radioactive fuel. The presence of water acts as both coolant and moderator that can slow down the produced neutrons in the chain reaction. **85.** Hydrogen bomb based on nuclear fusion is more powerful than a bomb based on fission reaction. **87.** We are moving toward hydrogen as a fuel. However, like electricity, hydrogen is not a source of energy. Hydrogen is a carrier of energy.

Chapter 35

Reading Check Questions

1. Speed relative to the ground is 61 km/h. **3.** Fitzgerald hypothesized that the experimental apparatus shrunk. **5.** The laws of nature are the same in uniformly moving reference frames. **7.** The distances are the same as seen in the rocket frame of reference. **9.** Four in total. Three dimensions for space, a fourth dimension for time. **11.** What is special is that the ratio is a constant, the speed of light. **13.** The stretching of time is called time dilation. **15.** Measurements of time differ by 1.15 at half the speed of light. At 99.5%, time measurements differ by a factor of 10. **17.** When the source approaches you, flashes appear more frequently. **19.** For the moving-away source the flashes are seen twice as long in duration. **21.** Maximum would be when speeds $v = c$, *then* $(c_1c_2)/c^2 = 1$.

Smallest would be zero when either v_1 or v_2 equal zero. **23.** One obstacle is the energy required, and another is shielding the radiation encountered. **25.** Thrown at 99.5% the speed of light, the meterstick would be one-tenth its original length. **27.** In your own frame of reference, no local length contraction would occur. **29.** The evidence is a less-bent trajectory for higher speed particles. **31.** Fissioning a single uranium nucleus produces 10 million times as much energy as combustion of a single carbon atom. **33.** $E = mc^2$ tells us that mass is congealed energy. **35.** The relativity equations hold for everyday speeds, and appreciably differ from classical equations only for speeds near the speed of light.

Think and Solve

37. 0.6 m; $L = L_0\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2} = L_0 0.6$ where $L_0 = 1$ m.
39. $V = (v_1 + v_2)/[1 + (v_1 v_2/c^2)]$; $v_1 = 0.75$c and $v_2 = 0.60$c, V = 1.35 c/1.45 = 0.93 c; that is the missile moves at 93% speed of light relative to the Earth. **41.** Yes. **43.** Gamma at $v = 0.10\,c$ is $= 1/\sqrt{[(1-v^2)]} = 1/\sqrt{[(1-0.01)]} = 1/\sqrt{0.99} = 1.005$. You would measure the passenger's catnap to last 1.005(5 m) = 5.03 min. **45.** γ at v = 0.6 c is $\gamma = 1/\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2} = 1/\sqrt{1-0.36} = 1/0.8 = 1.25$. Multiplying 1 hour of taxi time by γ gives 1.25 h of stationery planet time. Hence, money with respect to stationery plane will bet 25 stellars. Hence, the extra amount needs to be paid will be 25 − 20 = 5 stellars.

Think and Rank

47. C, B, A.

Think and Explain

49. Only accelerated motion, and not uniform motion, can be sensed. You cannot detect your motion. Accelerated motion is easily detected by observing that the surface of the water in a bowl is not horizontal. **51.** In the case of a light beam shining from atop a moving freight train, the light beam has the same speed relative to the ground as it has relative to the train. The speed of light is the same in all reference frames. **53.** The average speed of light in a transparent medium is less than c, but in the model of light discussed in Chapter 26, the photons that make up the beam travel at c in the void that lies between the atoms of the material. Hence the speed of individual photons is always c. In any event, Einstein's postulate is that the speed of light in free space is invariant. **55.** No energy or information is carried perpendicular to the swept beam. **57.** It's all a matter of relative velocity. If two frames of reference are in relative motion, events can occur in the order AB in one frame and in the order BA in the other frame. **59.** Yes, if the distance the rocket ship moves forward in the time it takes the light to reach the rear is greater than the distance by which the light bulb was shifted, the outside observer will still see the light getting to the rear first. **61.** For light traveling for 20,000 years we are talking about distance in our frame of reference. From the frame of reference of a traveling astronaut, this distance may well be far shorter, perhaps even short enough that she could cover it in 20 years of her time (traveling, to be sure, at a speed close to the speed of light). **63.** No, a twin who makes a long trip at relativistic speeds returns younger than his stay-at-home twin sister, but both of them are older than when they separated. A hypothetical reversal would result only for speeds greater than the speed of light. **65.** None. No relativistic effect occurs for the observer and the observed when both are in the same reference frame. **67.** A spaceship passenger sees you narrower as well. **69.** Yes, although only high speeds are significant. Changes at low speeds, although there, are imperceptible. **71.** The density of a moving body is measured to increase because of a decrease in volume for the same mass. **73.** The new feature is the constancy for the speed of light, where v is c. **75.** The stick must be oriented in a direction perpendicular to its motion, unlike that of a properly-thrown spear. At twice its normal momentum it is traveling at 0.87c. The fact that its length is unaltered means that its long direction is not in the direction of motion. The thickness of the stick, not the length of the stick, will appear shrunken to half size. **77.** The momentum of the spaceship will be twice the classical value if its measured length is half its normal length. **79.** Because the high energy particle travels at nearly the speed of light, length contraction will come into the picture, reducing the travel path for high energy beams traveling inside the 25 k path significantly. **81.** To make the electrons hit the screen with a certain speed, they have to be given more momentum and more energy than if they were nonrelativistic particles. The extra energy is supplied by the power utility. The electric bill is more! **83.** $E = mc^2$ means that energy and mass are two sides of the same coin, mass-energy. The c^2 is the proportionality constant that links the units of energy and mass. When something gains energy, it gains mass. When something loses energy, it loses mass. Mass is simply congealed energy. **85.** Yes, for it contains more potential energy, which has mass. **87.** Open-ended.

Think and Discuss

89. Michelson and Morley considered their experiment a failure in the sense that it did not confirm the expected result, namely that differences in the velocity of light would be encountered and measured. No such differences were found. The experiment was successful in that it widened the doors to new insights in physics. **91.** No, for speed and frequency are entirely different from each other. Frequency, how frequent, is not the same as speed, how fast. **93.** Experimental evidence in accelerators has repeatedly shown that as greater energy is put into a particle, it never reaches c. As c is approached, the momentum of the particle approaches infinity, with an infinite resistance to any further increase in momentum, and hence speed. Likewise for kinetic energy. So c is the speed limit for material particles. **95.** The mass of the radioactive material decreases, but the mass of the lead container increases. There is a redistribution of energy within the chunk-container system, but no change in total energy and therefore no change in mass. **97.** First, we as yet have no means of propelling a body as massive as an inhabited rocket to relativistic speeds. Second, if we did, we currently have no way of shielding the occupants of such a rocket from the radiation that would result from the high-speed collisions with interstellar matter. **99.** Rather than say matter can neither be created nor destroyed, it is more accurate to say that mass-energy can neither be created nor destroyed.

Chapter 36

Reading Check Questions

1. The major difference is acceleration in the general theory. **3.** What is equivalent is observations made in an accelerated frame of reference are indistinguishable from observations made in a Newtonian gravitational field. **5.** Only during an eclipse can the stars somewhat behind the Sun be viewed. **7.** The slower clock is the one on the first floor. **9.** We see time slowing. **11.** Newton's law of gravity is valid where the gravitational field is relatively weak. **13.** When rotating, the circumference undergoes length contraction, whereas the diameter does not. **15.** A change in motion produces gravitational waves. **17.** Gravitational waves are difficult to detect because of their weakness. **19.** Newtonian physics indeed was paramount in getting humans to the Moon.

Think and Explain

21. The reference frames of special relativity are of uniform motion—constant velocity. The reference frames of general relativity include accelerated frames. **23.** Artificial gravity can be created either by spinning or by accelerating in a linear direction. Overall acceleration leads to situations like gravity. **25.** The separation distance of two people walking north from the Earth's equator decreases, and if they continue to the North Pole their separation distance will be zero. At the North Pole, a step in any direction is a step south! **27.** Light bent by a gravitational field occurred in the eclipse expedition where starlight grazing the Sun was deflected, evidence that launched Einstein into a science superstar. **29.** Agree. Star light may be bent if there is a black hole or white dwarf in-between that can bend the light coming toward earth from that star. **31.** Distortion of the Sun at sunset is due to atmospheric refraction, which doesn't occur on the Moon due to its absence of an atmosphere. Gravitational deflection of light is too slight to be seen grazing the Moon or the Earth. **33.** The change in energy for light is evidenced by a change of frequency. If the energy of light is lowered, as in traveling against a strong gravitational field, its frequency is lowered, and the light is said to be gravitationally red shifted. If the energy of the light is increased, as when falling in a gravitational field, then the frequency is increased and the light is blue shifted. **35.** The universe is expanding. **37.** Aging will

be faster at the poles as compared to the equator. **39.** Staying in a garden cottage. **41.** The light received at the bottom will be blue shifted as the light comes down the gravity adds energy that leads to blue shift because of increase in frequency. **43.** The astronaut falling into a black hole from the Earth will appear from earth as red-shifted. The time for the astronaut falling into the black hole will slow down as observed from the Earth. **45.** A photon can be trapped by a black hole (the name itself refers to this behavior). Time will stop flowing or remains frozen inside a black hole. **47.** Yes, it is true. **49.** No. The gravitational impact of a black hole is limited to a particular distance beyond which it will interact with other celestial objects only as a gravitating object. **51.** Einstein's theory of gravitation predicts the same results as Newton's theory of gravitation in weak gravitational fields such as those of the solar system. In weak fields, Einstein's theory overlaps, corresponds, and gives the same results as Newton's theory, and therefore obeys the correspondence principle.

Think and Discuss

53. Via special relativity: Like the traveling twin discussed in Chapter 35, Jane moves while Mike remains at rest, so she (and her watch) age more slowly than Mike and his watch. Via general relativity: Jane's watch is like the upper clock in Figure 36.10; it runs faster when she's high above Earth's surface. So there are two reasons for their watches to be out of sync. They work in opposite directions—and are unlikely to cancel. **55.** Technically, time stops flowing inside black hole. If one survives to land inside the black hole, one can survive for infinite time (mathematically). However, as the black holes themselves have a lifetime, and interact or collide with other celestial objects, one can be destroyed at the destruction of the black hole. **57.** Abigail will be younger comparative to Addison. Abigail's time will run slower as he was at the edge of a rotating object.

Appendix E

Exponential Growth and Doubling Time

1. For a 5% growth rate, 42 years is three doubling times (70/50 % = 14 years; 42/14 = 3). Three doubling times is an eightfold increase. So in 42 years the city would have to have 8 similar sewage treatment plants to service 8 times the population. **3.** Doubling one penny for 30 days yields a total of $10,737,418.23.

This page is intentionally left blank

Glossary

A (a) Abbreviation for *ampere*. (b) When a lowercase italic *a,* the symbol for *acceleration*.

aberration A distortion in an image produced by a lens or mirror, caused by limitations inherent to some degree in all optical systems. See *spherical aberration* and *chromatic aberration*.

absolute zero The lowest possible temperature that any substance can have; the temperature at which the atoms of a substance have their minimum kinetic energy. The temperature of absolute zero is −273.15°C, which is −459.7°F and 0 K.

absorption lines Dark lines that appear in an absorption spectrum. The pattern of lines is unique for each element.

absorption spectrum A continuous spectrum, like the spectrum generated by white light, interrupted by dark lines or bands that result from the absorption of light of certain frequencies by a substance through which the light passes.

ac Abbreviation for *alternating current*.

acceleration (*a*) The rate at which an object's velocity changes with time; the change in velocity may be in magnitude (speed), or direction, or both.

$$\text{Acceleration} = \frac{\text{change of velocity}}{\text{time interval}}$$

acceleration due to gravity (*g*) The acceleration of a freely falling object. Its value near Earth's surface is about 9.8 m/s^2 (9.8 m/s each second).

achromatic lenses See *chromatic aberration*.

acoustics The study of the properties of sound, especially its transmission.

action force One of the pair of forces described in Newton's third law. See also *Newton's laws of motion, Law 3*.

additive primary colors Three colors of light—red, green, and blue, for example—that when added in certain proportions will produce any color of the spectrum.

adhesion Molecular attraction between two surfaces that are in contact.

adiabatic The term applied to the expansion or compression of a gas that occurs with no gain or loss of heat.

adiabatic process A process, often of fast expansion or compression, in which no heat enters or leaves a system. As a result, a liquid or gas undergoing an expansion will cool, or undergoing a compression will warm.

air resistance Friction, or drag, that acts on something moving through air.

alchemist A practitioner of the early form of chemistry called alchemy, which was associated with magic. The goal of alchemy was to change base metals to gold and to discover a potion that could produce eternal youth.

alloy A solid mixture composed of two or more metals or of a metal and a nonmetal.

alpha particle The nucleus of a helium atom, which consists of two neutrons and two protons, ejected by certain radioactive nuclei.

alpha ray A stream of alpha particles (helium nuclei) ejected by certain radioactive nuclei.

alternating current (ac) Electric current that rapidly reverses in direction. The electric charges vibrate about relatively fixed positions, usually at the rate of 60 Hz in North America.

AM Abbreviation for *amplitude modulation*.

ammeter A device that measures current. See *galvanometer*.

ampere (A) The SI unit of electric current. One ampere is a flow of one coulomb of charge per second—6.25×10^{18} electrons (or protons) per second.

amplitude For a wave or vibration, the maximum displacement on either side of the equilibrium (midpoint) position.

amplitude modulation (AM) The type of modulation in which the amplitude of the radio-frequency carrier wave is varied above and below its normal value by an amount proportional to the amplitude of the impressed signal.

amu Abbreviation for *atomic mass unit*.

analog signal A signal based on a continuous variable, as opposed to a digital signal made up of discrete quantities.

aneroid barometer An instrument used to measure atmospheric pressure; based on the movement of the lid of a metal box, rather than on the movement of a liquid.

angle of incidence The angle between an incident ray and the normal to the surface it encounters.

angle of reflection The angle between a reflected ray and the normal to the surface of reflection.

angle of refraction The angle between a refracted ray and the normal to the surface at which it is refracted.

angular momentum The product of a body's rotational inertia and rotational velocity about a particular axis. For an object that is small compared with the radial distance, its magnitude is the product of mass, speed, and radial distance from the spin axis.

$$\text{Angular momentum} = mvr$$

antimatter Matter composed of atoms with negative nuclei and positive electrons.

antinode Any part of a standing wave with maximum displacement and maximum energy.

antiparticle A particle that has the same mass as a normal particle but a charge of the opposite sign. The antiparticle of an electron is a positron.

antiproton The antiparticle of a proton; a negatively charged proton.

apogee The point in an elliptical orbit that is farthest from the focus around which orbiting takes place. See also *perigee*.

Archimedes' principle A statement of the relationship between buoyancy and displaced fluid: An immersed object is buoyed up by a force equal to the weight of the fluid it displaces.

armature The part of an electric motor or generator where an electromotive force is produced; usually the rotating part.

astigmatism A defect of the eye caused when the cornea is curved more in one direction than in another.

atmospheric pressure Pressure exerted against bodies immersed in the atmosphere resulting from the weight of air pressing down from above. At sea level, atmospheric pressure is about 101 kPa.

atom The smallest particle of an element that has all the element's chemical properties; consists of protons and neutrons in a nucleus surrounded by electrons.

atomic bonding Linking together of atoms to form larger structures, such as molecules and solids.

atomic mass On the periodic table, atomic mass is the average mass of atoms of an element, calculated using the relative abundance of isotopes in a naturally occurring element.

atomic mass number The number associated with an atom, equal to the number of nucleons (protons plus neutrons) in the nucleus.

atomic mass unit (amu) The standard unit of atomic mass; based on the mass of the common carbon atom, which is arbitrarily given the value of exactly 12. An amu of 1 is one-twelfth the mass of this common carbon atom.

atomic nucleus The core of an atom, consisting of two basic subatomic particles—protons and neutrons.

atomic number The number associated with the atoms of a given element, equal to the number of protons in the nucleus or, equivalently, to the number of electrons in the electron cloud of a neutral atom.

aurora borealis Glowing of the atmosphere caused by ions from above the atmosphere that dip into the atmosphere; also called northern lights. In the southern hemisphere, they are called aurora australis.

average speed Path distance divided by time interval.

$$\text{Average speed} = \frac{\text{total distance covered}}{\text{time interval}}$$

Avogadro's number 6.02×10^{23} molecules.

Avogadro's principle Equal volumes of all gases at the same temperature and pressure contain the same number of molecules, 6.02×10^{23} in 1 mole (a mass in grams equal to the molecular mass of the substance in atomic mass units).

axis (pl. axes) (a) A straight line about which rotation takes place. (b) Straight lines for reference in a graph; usually the x-axis measures horizontal displacement and the y-axis measures vertical displacement.

barometer A device used to measure the pressure of the atmosphere.

beats A sequence of alternating reinforcement and cancellation of two sets of superimposed waves that differ in frequency; heard as a throbbing sound.

bel The unit of intensity of sound, named after Alexander Graham Bell. The threshold of hearing is 0 bel ($10^{-12}\ \text{W/m}^2$). Often measured in decibels (dB, one-tenth of a bel).

Bernoulli's principle The pressure in a fluid along a given streamline decreases as the speed of the fluid increases.

beta particle An electron (or positron) emitted during the radioactive decay of certain nuclei.

beta ray A stream of beta particles (electrons or positrons) emitted by certain radioactive nuclei.

Big Bang A primordial explosion that is thought to have resulted in the creation of our expanding universe.

bimetallic strip Two strips of different metals welded or riveted together. Because the two substances expand or contract at different rates when heated or cooled, the strip bends; used in thermostats.

binary code Code based on the binary number system (which uses a base of 2). In binary code, any number can be expressed as a succession of 1s and 0s. For example, the number 1 is 1, 2 is 10, 3 is 11, 4 is 100, 5 is 101, 17 is 10001, and so on. These 1s and 0s can then be interpreted and transmitted electronically as a series of "on" and "off" pulses, the basis for all computers and other digital equipment.

bioluminescence Light emitted from certain living things that have the ability to chemically excite molecules in their bodies; these excited molecules then give off visible light.

biomagnetism Magnetic material located in living organisms that may help them navigate, locate food, and perform other behaviors.

black hole A concentration of mass resulting from gravitational collapse, near which gravity is so intense that not even light can escape.

blind spot The area of the retina where all the nerves carrying visual information exit the eye and go to the brain; this is a region of no vision.

blue shift An increase in the measured frequency of light from an approaching source; called the blue shift because the apparent increase is toward the high-frequency, or blue, end of the color spectrum. Also occurs when an observer approaches a source. See also *Doppler effect*.

boiling Change from liquid to gas occurring beneath the surface of the liquid; rapid vaporization. The liquid loses energy, and the gas gains it.

bow wave A V-shaped wave produced by an object moving on a liquid surface faster than the wave speed.

Boyle's law The product of pressure and volume is a constant for a given mass of confined gas regardless of changes in either pressure or volume individually, as long as the temperature remains unchanged.

$$P_1V_1 = P_2V_2$$

breeder reactor A nuclear fission reactor that not only produces power but also produces more nuclear fuel than it consumes by converting a nonfissionable uranium isotope into a fissionable plutonium isotope. See also *nuclear reactor*.

British thermal unit (BTU) The amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 pound of water by 1 Fahrenheit degree.

Brownian motion Haphazard movement of tiny particles suspended in a gas or liquid that results from collisions with the fast-moving molecules of the gas or liquid.

BTU Abbreviation for *British thermal unit*.

buoyancy Apparent loss of weight of an object immersed or submerged in a fluid.

buoyant force The net upward force exerted by a fluid on a submerged or immersed object.

butterfly effect The situation in which a very small change in one place can amplify into a large change somewhere else.

C Abbreviation for *coulomb*.

cal Abbreviation for *calorie*.

calorie (cal) The unit of heat. One calorie is the heat required to raise the temperature of 1 gram of water 1 Celsius degree. One Calorie (with a capital *C*) is equal to 1000 calories and is the unit used in describing the energy available from food; also called a kilocalorie (kcal).

$$1 \text{ cal} = 4.19 \text{ J or } 1 \text{ J} = 0.24 \text{ cal}$$

capacitor A device used to store charge in a circuit.

capillarity The rise of a liquid in a fine, hollow tube or in a narrow space.

carbon dating The process of determining the time that has elapsed since death by measuring the radioactivity of carbon from a sample due to the carbon-14 it contains.

Carnot efficiency The ideal maximum percentage of input energy that can be converted to work in a heat engine.

carrier wave A high-frequency radio wave modified by a lower-frequency wave.

Celsius scale The temperature scale that assigns 0 to the melt-freeze point for water and 100 to the boil-condense point of water at standard pressure (1 atmosphere at sea level).

center of gravity (CG) The point at the center of an object's weight distribution where the force of gravity can be considered to act.

center of mass The point at the center of an object's mass distribution where all its mass can be considered to be concentrated. For everyday conditions, it is the same as the center of gravity.

centrifugal force An apparent outward force on a rotating or revolving body.

centripetal force A center-directed force that causes an object to follow a curved or circular path.

CG Abbreviation for *center of gravity*.

chain reaction A self-sustaining reaction that, once started, steadily provides the energy and matter necessary to continue the reaction.

charge See *electric charge*.

charging by contact Transferring electric charge between objects by rubbing or simple touching.

charging by induction Redistributing electric charges in and on objects by the electrical influence of a charged object close by but not in contact.

chemical formula A description that uses numbers and symbols of elements to describe the proportions of elements in a compound or reaction.

chemical reaction A process of rearranging atoms that transforms one molecule into another.

chinook Warm, dry wind that blows down from the eastern side of the Rocky Mountains across the Great Plains.

chromatic aberration A distortion of an image caused when light of different colors (and thus different speeds and refractions) focuses at different points when passing through a lens. Achromatic lenses correct this defect by combining simple lenses made of different kinds of glass.

circuit Any complete path along which electric charge can flow. See also *series circuit* and *parallel circuit*.

circuit breaker A device in an electric circuit that breaks the circuit when the current gets high enough to risk causing a fire.

cloud chamber A device used to detect the paths of particles emitted by radioactive sources.

coherent light Light of a single frequency with all photons exactly in phase and moving in the same direction. Lasers produce coherent light. See also *incoherent light* and *laser*.

compact fluorescent lamp (CFL) A miniature version of a fluorescent lamp, commonly in a spiral shape.

complementarity The principle stated by Niels Bohr that the wave and particle aspects of both matter and radiation are necessary, complementary parts of the whole. Which part is emphasized depends on what experiment is conducted (i.e., on what questions one puts to nature).

complementary colors Any two colors of light that, when added, can produce white light.

component One of the perpendicular vectors that add up to a particular vector (e.g., horizontal and vertical components of velocity).

compound A chemical substance made of atoms of two or more different elements combined in a fixed proportion.

compression (a) In mechanics, the act of squeezing material and reducing its volume. (b) In sound, the region of increased pressure in a longitudinal wave.

concave mirror A mirror that curves inward like a "cave." See also *convex mirror*.

condensation The change of phase of a gas into a liquid; the opposite of evaporation.

conduction (a) In heat, the energy transfer from particle to particle within certain materials, or from one material to another when the two are in direct contact. (b) In electricity, the flow of electric charge through a conductor.

conduction electrons Electrons in a metal that move freely from atom to atom and carry electric charge.

conductor (a) A material through which heat can be transferred. (b) A material, usually a metal, through which electric charge can flow. Good conductors of heat are generally good electric charge conductors.

cones See *retina*.

conservation of angular momentum When no external torque acts on an object or a system of objects, no change of angular momentum takes place. Hence, the angular momentum before an event involving only internal torques is equal to the angular momentum after the event.

conservation of charge The principle that net electric charge is neither created nor destroyed but is transferable from one object to another.

conservation of energy The principle that energy cannot be created or destroyed. It may be transformed from one form

into another, or transferred from one object to another, but the total amount of energy never changes.

conservation of energy for machines The work output of any machine at steady state cannot exceed the work input.

conservation of momentum In the absence of a net external force, the momentum of an object or system of objects is unchanged.

$$mv_{(\text{before event})} = mv_{(\text{after event})}$$

conserved The term applied to a physical quantity, such as momentum, energy, or electric charge, that remains unchanged during interactions.

constructive interference The combination of waves so that two or more waves overlap to produce a resulting wave of increased amplitude. See also *interference*.

convection A means of heat transfer by movement of the heated substance itself, such as by currents in a fluid.

converging lens A lens that is thicker in the middle than at the edges and refracts parallel rays of light passing through it to a focus. See also *diverging lens*.

convex mirror A mirror that curves outward. The virtual image formed is smaller and closer to the mirror than the object. See also *concave mirror*.

cornea The transparent covering over the eyeball that helps focus the incoming light.

correspondence principle If a new theory is valid, it must account for the verified results of the old theory in the region where both theories apply.

cosmic ray One of various high-speed particles that travel throughout the universe and originate in violent events in stars.

cosmology The study of the origin and development of the entire universe.

coulomb (C) The SI unit of electric charge. One coulomb is equal to the total charge of 6.25×10^{18} electrons.

Coulomb's law A statement of the relationship among electrical force, charges, and distance: The electrical force between two charges varies directly as the product of the charges (q) and inversely as the square of the distance between them (k is the proportionality constant $9 \times 10^9\ \text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$). If the charges are alike in sign, the force is repulsive; if the charges are unlike, the force is attractive.

$$F = k\frac{q_1 q_2}{d^2}$$

crest One of the places in a wave where the wave is highest or the disturbance is greatest in the opposite direction from a trough. See also *trough*.

critical angle The smallest angle of incidence for which a light ray is totally reflected within a medium.

critical mass The minimum mass of fissionable material in a nuclear reactor or nuclear bomb that will sustain a chain reaction. A subcritical mass is one in which the chain reaction dies out. A supercritical mass is one in which the chain reaction builds up explosively.

crystal A regular geometric shape commonly found in a solid in which the component particles are arranged in an orderly, three-dimensional, repeating pattern.

current See *electric current*.

cyclotron A particle accelerator that imparts high energy to charged particles such as protons, deuterons, and helium ions.

dark energy The name for the apparent fact that expansion of the universe is speeding up.

dark matter Unseen and unidentified matter that is evident by its gravitational pull on stars in the galaxies.

dB Abbreviation for decibel. See *bel*.

dc Abbreviation for *direct current*.

de Broglie matter waves All particles have wave properties; in de Broglie's equation, the product of momentum and wavelength equals Planck's constant.

decibel (dB) One-tenth of a *bel*.

de-excitation See *excitation*.

density The mass of a substance per unit volume. Weight density is weight per unit volume. In general, any item per space element (e.g., number of dots per area).

$$\text{Density} = \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}}$$

$$\text{Weight density} = \frac{\text{weight}}{\text{volume}}$$

destructive interference The combination of waves so that the crest parts of one wave overlap trough parts of another, resulting in a wave of decreased amplitude. See also *interference*.

deuterium An isotope of hydrogen whose atom has a proton, a neutron, and an electron. The common isotope of hydrogen has only a proton and an electron; therefore, deuterium has more mass.

deuteron The nucleus of a deuterium atom; it has one proton and one neutron.

dichroic crystal A crystal that divides unpolarized light into two internal beams polarized at right angles and strongly absorbs one beam while transmitting the other.

diffraction The bending of light that passes around an obstacle or through a narrow slit, causing the light to spread and to produce light and dark fringes.

diffraction grating A series of closely spaced parallel slits or grooves that are used to separate the colors of light by interference.

diffuse reflection Reflection of waves in many directions from a rough surface. See also *polished*.

digital audio An audio reproduction system that uses binary code to record and reproduce sound.

digital signal A signal made up of discrete quantities or signals, as opposed to an analog signal, which is based on a continuous signal.

digital versatile disc (DVD) Formerly called a digital video disc, a compact disc that contains video material.

diode An electronic device that restricts current to a single direction in an electric circuit; a device that changes alternating current to direct current.

dipole See *electric dipole*.

direct current (dc) Electric current in which the flow of charge is always in one direction.

dispersion Separation of light into colors arranged according to their frequency—for example, by interaction with a prism or a diffraction grating.

displaced The term applied to the fluid that is moved out of the way when an object is placed in fluid. A submerged object always displaces a volume of fluid equal to its own volume. A floating object always displaces a weight of fluid equal to its own weight.

diverging lens A lens that is thinner in the middle than at the edges, causing parallel rays of light passing through it to diverge as if from a point. See also *converging lens*.

Doppler effect The change in the frequency of a wave of sound or light due to the motion of the source or the receiver. See also *red shift* and *blue shift*.

dwarf planet A relatively large icy body, such as Pluto, that originated within the Kuiper belt.

earth science The study of the history, structure, and natural processes of planet Earth.

echo A reflection of sound.

eddy Changing, curling paths in the turbulent flow of a fluid.

efficiency In a machine, the ratio of useful energy output to total energy input, or the percentage of the work input that is converted to the work output.

$$\text{Efficiency} = \frac{\text{useful energy output}}{\text{total energy input}}$$

elastic collision A collision in which colliding objects rebound with no lasting deformation or heat generation.

elastic limit The distance of stretching or compressing beyond which an elastic material will not return to its original state.

elasticity The property of a solid that experiences a change in shape when a deforming force acts on it and then returns to its original shape when the deforming force is removed.

electric charge A fundamental electrical property to which the mutual attractions or repulsions between electrons or protons is attributed.

electric current The flow of electric charge that transports energy from one place to another; measured in amperes, where 1 ampere is the flow of 6.25×10^{18} electrons (or protons) per second.

electric dipole A molecule in which the distribution of charge is uneven, resulting in slightly opposite charges on opposite sides of the molecule.

electric field A force field that fills the space around every electric charge or group of charges; measured by force per charge (newtons/coulomb).

electric potential The electric potential energy (in joules) per unit of charge (in coulombs) at a location in an electric field; measured in volts $(1\,\text{V} = 1\,\text{J/C})$ and often called voltage.

electric potential energy The energy that a charge has due to its location in an electric field.

electric power The rate of electric energy transfer or the rate of doing work, which can be computed as the product of current and voltage.

$$\text{Power} = \text{current} \times \text{voltage}$$

electrical force The force that one charge exerts on another. When the charges are the same sign, they repel; when the charges are opposite, they attract.

electrical resistance Opposition of an object to the flow of electric charge through it; measured in ohms (Ω).

electrically polarized The term applied to an atom or molecule in which the charges are aligned so that one side is slightly more positive or negative than the opposite side.

electricity The general term for electrical phenomena, much like gravity has to do with gravitational phenomena, or sociology with social phenomena.

electrode The terminal—for example, of a battery—through which electric current can pass.

electrodynamics The study of moving electric charge, as opposed to electrostatics.

electromagnet A magnet whose magnetic properties are produced by electric current.

electromagnetic induction The phenomenon of producing a voltage in a conductor by changing the magnetic field near the conductor. If the magnetic field within a closed loop changes in any way, a voltage is induced in the loop. The induction of voltage is actually the result of a more fundamental phenomenon: the induction of an electric field. See also *Faraday's law*.

electromagnetic radiation Transfer of energy by the rapid oscillations of electromagnetic fields, which travel in the form of waves called electromagnetic waves.

electromagnetic spectrum The range of frequencies over which electromagnetic radiation can be propagated. The lowest frequencies are associated with radio waves; microwaves have a higher frequency, and then infrared waves, light, ultraviolet radiation, X-rays, and gamma rays in sequence.

electromagnetic wave An energy-carrying wave emitted by vibrating charges (often electrons) that is composed of oscillating electric and magnetic fields that regenerate one another. Radio waves, microwaves, infrared radiation, visible light, ultraviolet radiation, X-rays, and gamma rays are all electromagnetic waves.

electromagnetism The phenomena associated with electric and magnetic fields and their interactions with each other and with electric charges and currents.

electromotive force (emf) Not a force, any voltage that gives rise to an electric current. A battery or a generator is a source of emf.

electron A negative particle in the shell of an atom.

electron volt (eV) An amount of energy equal to the energy an electron acquires in accelerating through a potential difference of 1 V.

electrostatic induction Charging an object or causing charge to shift within an object without direct contact.

electrostatics The study of electric charges at rest, as opposed to electrodynamics.

element A substance composed of atoms that all have the same atomic number and, therefore, the same chemical properties.

elementary particles Subatomic particles; the basic building blocks of all matter, consisting of two classes of particles: quarks and leptons.

ellipse A closed, stretched-out-circle curve in which the sum of the distances from any point on the curve to two internal focal points is a constant.

emf Abbreviation for *electromotive force*.

emission spectrum The distribution of wavelengths in the light from a luminous source.

energy That which can change the condition of matter. Although energy is commonly defined as the ability to do work, it is actually describable only by examples.

engineering Technology directed to the design, construction, and maintenance of works, machinery, roads, railways, bridges, engines, all manner of vehicles from micro-carts to space stations, and the generation, transmission, and use of electric power. Some main divisions are aerospace, chemical, civil, communication, electrical, electronic, materials, mechanical, mining, and structural.

entropy A measure of the disorder of a system. Whenever energy freely transforms from one form into another, the direction of transformation is toward a state of greater disorder and therefore toward one of greater entropy.

equilibrium In general, a state of balance. For mechanical equilibrium, the state in which no net forces and no net torques act. In liquids, the state in which evaporation equals condensation. More generally, the state in which no net change of energy occurs.

equilibrium rule $\Sigma F = 0$. On an object or system of objects in mechanical equilibrium, the sum of forces equals zero. Also, $\Sigma \tau = 0$; the sum of the torques equals zero.

escape speed The speed that a projectile, space probe, or other object must reach to escape the gravitational influence of Earth or the celestial body to which it is most attracted.

ether A hypothetical invisible medium that was formerly thought to be required for the propagation of electromagnetic waves and thought to fill space throughout the universe.

eV Abbreviation for *electron volt*.

evaporation The change of phase from liquid to gas that takes place at the surface of a liquid; the opposite of condensation.

excitation The process of boosting one or more electrons in an atom or molecule from a lower to a higher energy level. An atom in an excited state will usually decay (de-excite) rapidly to a lower state by the emission of radiation. The frequency and energy of emitted radiation are related by

$$E = hf$$

excited See *excitation*.

exponential decay Decreasing by the same factor (e.g., by a factor of 2) in equal times.

exponential growth Increasing by the same factor (e.g., by a factor of 2) in equal times.

eyepiece The lens of a telescope that is closest to the eye; enlarges the real image formed by the first lens.

fact Something that is closely agreed upon by competent observers of an event or a series of observations of the same phenomena.

Fahrenheit scale The temperature scale that is in common use in the United States. The number 32 is assigned to the melt-freeze point of water, and the number 212 to the boil-condense point of water at standard pressure (1 atmosphere, at sea level).

Faraday's law The induced voltage in a coil is proportional to the product of its number of loops, the cross-sectional area of each loop, and the rate at which the magnetic field changes within those loops. In general, an electric field is induced in any region of space in which a magnetic field is changing with time. The magnitude of the induced electric field is proportional to the rate at which the magnetic field changes. See also *Maxwell's counterpart to Faraday's law*.

$$\text{Voltage induced} \sim \text{number of loop} \times \frac{\text{magnetic field change}}{\text{change in time}}$$

Fermat's principle of least time Light takes the path that requires the least time when it goes from one place to another.

field See *force field*.

field lines See *magnetic field lines*.

flotation See *principle of flotation*.

fluid Anything that flows; in particular, any liquid, gas, or plasma.

fluorescence The property of certain substances to absorb radiation of one frequency and to re-emit radiation of a lower frequency.

FM Abbreviation for *frequency modulation*.

focal length The distance between the center of a lens and either focal point; the distance from a mirror to its focal point.

focal plane A plane, perpendicular to the principal axis, that passes through a focal point of a lens or mirror. For a converging lens or a concave mirror, any incident parallel rays of light converge to a point somewhere on a focal plane. For a diverging lens or a convex mirror, the rays appear to come from a point on a focal plane.

focal point For a converging lens or a concave mirror, the point at which rays of light parallel to the principal axis converge. For a diverging lens or a convex mirror, the point from which such rays appear to come.

focus (pl. foci) (a) For an ellipse, one of the two points for which the sum of the distances to any point on the ellipse is a constant. A satellite orbiting Earth moves in an ellipse that has one focus at Earth's center. (b) For optics, a focal point.

force Any push or pull on an object; a vector quantity measured in newtons. Unbalanced force changes an object's motion.

force field That which exists in the space surrounding a mass, electric charge, or magnet, so that another mass, electric charge, or magnet introduced into this region will experience a force. Examples of force fields are gravitational fields, electric fields, and magnetic fields.

forced vibration The vibration of an object caused by the vibrations of a nearby object. The sounding board in a musical instrument amplifies the sound through forced vibration.

Fourier analysis A mathematical method that disassembles any periodic waveform into a combination of simple sine waves.

fovea The area of the retina that is in the center of the field of view; the region of most distinct vision.

frame of reference A vantage point (usually a set of coordinate axes) with respect to which position and motion may be described.

Fraunhofer lines Dark lines visible in the spectrum of the Sun or a star.

free fall Motion under the influence of gravity only.

freezing The change in phase from liquid to solid; the opposite of melting.

frequency For a vibrating body or medium, the number of vibrations per unit time. For a wave, the number of crests that pass a particular point per unit time. Frequency is measured in hertz.

frequency modulation (FM) The type of modulation in which the frequency of the carrier wave is varied above and below its normal frequency by an amount that is proportional to the amplitude of the impressed signal. In this case, the amplitude of the modulated carrier wave remains constant.

friction Force that acts to resist the relative motion (or attempted motion) of objects or materials that are in contact.

fuel cell A device that converts chemical energy to electric energy, but unlike a battery is continually fed with fuel, usually hydrogen.

fulcrum The pivot point of a lever.

full moon The phase of the Moon when its sunlit side faces Earth.

fundamental frequency See *partial tone*.

fuse A device in an electric circuit that breaks the circuit when the current gets high enough to risk causing a fire.

g (a) Abbreviation for *gram*. (b) When a lowercase italic *g*, the symbol for the acceleration due to gravity (near Earth's surface, $9.8\ \mathrm{m/s^2}$ downward). (c) When a lowercase bold **g**, the symbol for the gravitational field vector (at Earth's surface, 9.8 N/kg downward). (d) When an uppercase italic *G*, the symbol for the *universal gravitational constant* ($6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/kg^2}$).

galvanometer An instrument used to detect electric current. With the proper combination of resistors, it can be converted to an ammeter or a voltmeter. An ammeter is calibrated to measure electric current; a voltmeter is calibrated to measure electric potential.

gamma ray High-frequency electromagnetic radiation emitted by atomic nuclei.

gas The phase of matter beyond the liquid phase that has no definite shape because its molecules move freely, filling whatever space is available.

Geiger counter A device used to detect radiation from radioactive decay and measure its rate.

general theory of relativity Einstein's generalization of special relativity, which deals with accelerated motion and features a geometric theory of gravitation.

generator A machine that produces electric current, usually by rotating a coil within a stationary magnetic field.

geodesic The shortest path between points on any surface.

geosynchronous orbit A satellite orbit in which the satellite orbits Earth once each day. When moving westward, the satellite remains at a fixed point (about 36,000 km) above Earth's surface.

global warming See *greenhouse effect*.

gram (g) A metric unit of mass; one-thousandth of a kilogram.

gravitation Attraction between objects due to mass. See also *law of universal gravitation* and *universal gravitational constant*.

gravitational field A force field that exists in the space around every mass or group of masses; measured in newtons per kilogram.

gravitational potential energy Energy associated with a gravitational field, which on Earth results from the gravitational interaction of a body and Earth. Potential energy (PE) near Earth's surface then equals mass (m) times the acceleration due to gravity (g) times the height (h) from a reference level such as Earth's surface.

$$\mathrm{PE} = mgh$$

gravitational redshift A shift in wavelength toward the red end of the spectrum experienced by light leaving the surface of a massive object, as predicted by the general theory of relativity.

gravitational wave A gravitational disturbance that propagates through spacetime made by a moving mass (undetected as of this writing).

graviton A quantum of gravity, similar in concept to the photon as a quantum of light (undetected as of this writing).

greenhouse effect Warming caused by short-wavelength radiant energy from the Sun that easily enters the atmosphere and is absorbed by Earth, but when radiated at longer wavelengths cannot easily escape Earth's atmosphere.

grounding Allowing charges to move freely along a connection from a conductor to the ground; often done for safety.

group Elements in the same column of the periodic table.

h (a) Abbreviation for hour (though hr is often used). (b) When an italic *h,* the symbol for *Planck's constant*.

hadron An elementary particle that can participate in strong nuclear force interactions.

half-life The time required for half the atoms in a sample of radioactive isotopes to decay. This term is also used to describe decay processes in general.

harmonic See *partial tone*.

heat The energy that "flows" from one object to another by virtue of a difference in temperature; measured in *calories* or *joules*.

heat capacity See *specific heat capacity*.

heat engine A device that uses heat as input and supplies mechanical work as output, or that uses work as input and moves heat "uphill" from a cooler to a warmer place.

heat of fusion The amount of energy that must be added to a kilogram of a solid (already at its melting point) to melt it. See *latent heat of fusion*.

heat of vaporization The amount of energy that must be added to a kilogram of a liquid (already at its boiling point) to vaporize it. See *latent heat of vaporization*.

heat pump A type of heat engine that transfers heat out of a cool environment and into a warm environment.

heat waves See *infrared waves*.

heavy water Water (H_2O) that contains the heavy hydrogen isotope deuterium; can be written D_2O.

hertz (Hz) The SI unit of frequency. One hertz is one vibration per second.

hologram A two-dimensional microscopic interference pattern that shows three-dimensional optical images.

Hooke's law The distance of stretch or squeeze (extension or compression) of an elastic material is directly proportional to the applied force. Where Δx is the change in length and k is the spring constant,

$$F = k\Delta x$$

humidity A measure of the amount of water vapor in the air. Absolute humidity is the mass of water per volume of air. Relative humidity is the absolute humidity at that temperature divided by the maximum possible, usually given as a percent.

Huygens' principle Light waves spreading out from a light source can be regarded as a superposition of tiny secondary wavelets.

hypothesis An educated guess; a reasonable explanation of an observation or experimental result that is not fully accepted as factual until tested over and over again by experiment.

Hz Abbreviation for *hertz*.

ideal efficiency The upper limit of efficiency for all heat engines; it depends on the temperature difference between input and exhaust.

$$\text{Ideal efficiency} = \frac{T_{\text{hot}} - T_{\text{cold}}}{T_{\text{hot}}}$$

impulse The product of force and the time interval during which the force acts. An impulse produces a change in momentum.

$$\text{Impulse} = Ft = D(mv)$$

impulse-momentum relationship Impulse is equal to the change in the momentum of the object that the impulse acts upon. In symbolic notation,

$$Ft = \Delta mv$$

incandescence A state of glowing while at a high temperature, caused by electrons bouncing around over dimensions larger than the size of an atom, emitting radiant energy in the process. The peak frequency of radiant energy is proportional to the absolute temperature of the heated substance:

$$\bar{f} \sim T$$

incoherent light Light that contains waves with a jumble of frequencies, phases, and possibly directions. See also *coherent light* and *laser*.

index of refraction (n) The ratio of the speed of light in a vacuum to the speed of light in another material.

$$n = \frac{\text{speed of light in vacuum}}{\text{speed of light material}}$$

induced (a) The term applied to electric charge that has been redistributed on an object due to the presence of a charged object nearby. (b) The term applied to a voltage, electric field, or magnetic field that is created due to a change in or motion through a magnetic field or electric field.

induction Charging of an object without direct contact. See also *electrostatic induction* and *electromagnetic induction*.

inelastic The term applied to a material that does not return to its original shape after it has been stretched or compressed.

inelastic collision A collision in which the colliding objects become distorted and/or generate heat during the collision, and possibly stick together.

inertia Sluggishness or apparent resistance of an object to change its state of motion. Mass is the measure of inertia.

inertial frame of reference An unaccelerated vantage point in which Newton's laws hold exactly.

infrared Electromagnetic waves of frequencies lower than the red of visible light.

infrared waves Electromagnetic waves that have a lower frequency than visible red light.

infrasonic The term applied to sound frequencies below 20 Hz, the normal lower limit of human hearing.

in parallel The term applied to portions of an electric circuit that are connected at two points and provide alternative paths for the current between those two points.

in phase The term applied to two or more waves whose crests (and troughs) arrive at a place at the same time, so that their effects reinforce each other.

in series The term applied to portions of an electric circuit that are connected in a row, so that the current that goes through one must go through all of them.

instantaneous speed The speed at any instant.

insulator (a) A material that is a poor conductor of heat and that delays the transfer of heat. (b) A material that is a poor conductor of electricity.

intensity The power per square meter carried by a sound wave, often measured in decibels.

interaction Mutual action between objects, where each object exerts an equal and opposite force on the other.

interference The result of superposing different waves, often of the same wavelength. Constructive interference results from crest-to-crest reinforcement; destructive interference results from crest-to-trough cancellation. The interference of selected wavelengths of light produces colors known as interference colors. See also *constructive interference*, *destructive interference*, *interference pattern*, and *standing wave*.

interference pattern A pattern formed by the overlapping of two or more waves that arrive in a region at the same time.

interferometer A device that uses the interference of light waves to measure very small distances with high accuracy. Michelson and Morley used an interferometer in their famous experiments with light.

internal energy The total energy stored in the atoms and molecules within a substance. Changes in internal energy are of principal concern in thermodynamics.

inverse-square law The law that relates the intensity of an effect to the inverse square of the distance from the cause.

Gravity, electric, magnetic, light, sound, and radiation phenomena follow the inverse-square law.

$$\text{Intensity} \sim \frac{1}{\text{distance}^2}$$

inversely When two values change in opposite directions—so that if one increases, the other decreases by the same factor—they are said to be inversely proportional to each other.

ion An atom (or group of atoms bound together) with a net electric charge that is due to the loss or gain of electrons. A positive ion has a net positive charge; a negative ion has a net negative charge.

ionization The process of adding or removing electrons to or from an atom.

iridescence The phenomenon in which the interference of light waves of mixed frequencies reflected from the top and bottom of thin films produces an assortment of colors.

iris The colored part of the eye that surrounds the black opening through which light passes. The iris regulates the amount of light entering the eye.

isotopes Atoms whose nuclei have the same number of protons but different numbers of neutrons.

J Abbreviation for *joule*.

joule (J) The SI unit of work and of all other forms of energy. One joule of work is done when a force of 1 newton is exerted on an object moved 1 meter in the direction of the force.

K (a) Abbreviation for *kelvin*. (b) When a lowercase k, the abbreviation for the prefix *kilo-*. (c) When a lowercase italic *k*, the symbol for the electrical proportionality constant in *Coulomb's law* (approximately $9 \times 10^9\ \text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}^2$). (d) When a lowercase italic *k*, the symbol for the spring constant in *Hooke's law*.

kcal Abbreviation for *kilocalorie*.

KE Abbreviation for *kinetic energy*.

kelvin The SI unit of temperature. A temperature measured in kelvins (symbol K) indicates the number of units above absolute zero. Divisions on the Kelvin scale and Celsius scale are the same size, so a change in temperature of 1 kelvin equals a change in temperature of 1 Celsius degree.

Kelvin scale The temperature scale, measured in kelvins, K, whose zero (called absolute zero) is the temperature at which it is impossible to extract any more internal energy from a material; $0\ \text{K} = -273.15°\text{C}$. There are no negative temperatures on the Kelvin scale.

Kepler's laws *Law 1*: The path of each planet around the Sun is an ellipse with the Sun at one focus.
Law 2: The line from the Sun to any planet sweeps out equal areas of space in equal time intervals.
Law 3: The square of the orbital period of a planet is directly proportional to the cube of the average distance of the planet from the Sun ($T^2 \sim r^3$ for all planets).

kg Abbreviation for *kilogram*.

kilo- The prefix that means thousand, as in kilowatt or kilogram.

kilocalorie (kcal) The unit of heat. One kilocalorie equals 1000 calories, or the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 kilogram of water by 1°C; equal to one food Calorie.

kilogram (kg) The fundamental SI unit of mass; equal to 1000 grams. One kilogram is very nearly the amount of mass in 1 liter of water at 4°C.

kilometer (km) 1000 *meters*.

kilowatt (kW) 1000 *watts*.

kilowatt-hour (kWh) The amount of energy consumed in 1 hour at the rate of 1 kilowatt.

kinetic energy (KE) The energy of motion; equal (nonrelativistically) to mass multiplied by the square of the speed, multiplied by the constant 1/2.

$$\text{KE} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$$

km Abbreviation for *kilometer*.

kPa Abbreviation for *kilopascal*. See *pascal*.

kWh Abbreviation for *kilowatt-hour*.

L Abbreviation for *liter*; lowercase l is used in some textbooks.

laser An optical instrument that produces a beam of coherent light—that is, light in which all waves have the same frequency, phase, and direction. The word is an acronym for **l**ight **a**mplification by **s**timulated **e**mission of **r**adiation.

latent heat of fusion The amount of energy required to change a unit mass of a substance from solid to liquid (and vice versa if that amount of energy is removed). See *heat of fusion*.

latent heat of vaporization The amount of energy required to change a unit mass of a substance from liquid to gas (and vice versa). See *heat of vaporization*.

lava Magma that erupts at Earth's surface.

law A general hypothesis or statement about the relationship of natural quantities that has been tested over and over again and has not been contradicted; also known as a *principle*.

law of conservation of energy Energy cannot be created or destroyed; it can be transferred from one object to another or transformed from one form into another, but the total amount of energy never changes.

law of conservation of momentum In the absence of an external force, the momentum of a system remains unchanged. Hence, the momentum before an event involving only internal forces is equal to the momentum after the event.

$$mv_{(\text{before event})} = mv_{(\text{after event})}$$

law of inertia See *Newton's laws of motion, Law 1*.

law of reflection The angle of incidence for a wave that strikes a surface is equal to the angle of reflection. The incident ray, reflected ray, and normal to the surface are all in the same plane. This is true for both partially and totally reflected waves. See also *angle of incidence* and *angle of reflection*.

law of universal gravitation For any pair of objects, each particle attracts the other object with a force that is directly proportional to the product of their masses, and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between their

centers of masses, where F is force, m is mass, d is distance, and G is the universal gravitational constant.

$$F \sim \frac{m_1 m_2}{d_2} \text{ or } F = G\frac{m_1 m_2}{d^2}$$

least time See *Fermat's principle of least time*.

length contraction Shrinkage of space, and therefore of matter, in a frame of reference moving at relativistic speeds.

lens A piece of glass or other transparent material that can bring light to a focus.

lepton A class of elementary particles that are not involved with the strong nuclear force. It includes the electron and its neutrino, the muon and its neutrino, and the tau and its neutrino.

lever A simple machine made of a bar that turns about a fixed point called the fulcrum.

lever arm The perpendicular distance between an axis and the line of action of a force that tends to produce rotation about that axis.

lift In applications of Bernoulli's principle, the net upward force produced by the difference between upward and downward pressures. When lift equals weight, horizontal flight is possible.

light The visible part of the electromagnetic spectrum.

light-emitting diode (LED) A diode that emits light.

light-year The distance light travels in a vacuum in one year: 9.46×10^{12} km.

line spectrum The pattern of distinct lines of color, corresponding to particular frequencies of light, that are seen in a spectroscope when a hot gas is viewed. Each element has a unique pattern of lines.

linear momentum The product of the mass and the velocity of an object; also called momentum. (This definition applies at speeds much lower than the speed of light.)

linear motion Straight-line motion, as opposed to circular, angular, or rotational motion.

linear speed The path distance moved per unit of time; also simply called speed.

liquid The phase of matter between the solid and gaseous phases in which the matter possesses a definite volume but no definite shape: It takes on the shape of its container.

liter (L) The metric unit of volume; equal to 1000 cm^3.

longitudinal wave A wave in which the individual particles of a medium vibrate back and forth along (parallel to) the direction in which the wave travels—for example, sound.

Lorentz contraction See *length contraction*.

loudness A physiological sensation directly related to sound intensity or volume. Relative loudness, or sound level, is measured in decibels.

lunar eclipse An event in which the full Moon passes into the shadow of Earth.

m Abbreviation for *meter*.

Mach number The ratio of the speed of an object to the speed of sound. For example, an aircraft traveling *at* the speed of sound is rated Mach 1.0; traveling at *twice* the speed of sound, Mach 2.0.

machine A device for increasing (or decreasing) a force or simply changing the direction of a force.

magnet Any object that has magnetic properties—that is, the ability to attract objects made of iron or other magnetic substances. See also *electromagnetism* and *magnetic force*.

magnetic declination The discrepancy between the orientation of a compass pointing toward magnetic north and the true geographic north.

magnetic domain A microscopic cluster of atoms with their magnetic fields aligned.

magnetic field A region of magnetic influence around a magnetic pole or a moving charged particle.

magnetic field lines Lines that show the shape of a magnetic field. A compass placed on such a line will turn so that the needle is aligned with it.

magnetic force (a) Between magnets, the attraction of unlike magnetic poles for each other and the repulsion between like magnetic poles. (b) Between a magnetic field and a moving charged particle, a deflecting force due to the motion of the particle: The deflecting force is perpendicular to the magnetic field lines and the direction of motion. This force is greatest when the charged particle moves perpendicular to the field lines and is smallest (zero) when it moves parallel to the field lines.

magnetic monopole A hypothetical particle that has a single north or a single south magnetic pole, analogous to a positive or negative electric charge.

magnetic pole One of the regions on a magnet that produces magnetic forces.

magnetic pole reversal When the magnetic field of an astronomical body reverses its poles; that is, the north magnetic pole becomes the south magnetic pole, and the south magnetic pole becomes the north magnetic pole.

magnetism The phenomena associated with magnetic fields. See also *electromagnetism* and *magnetic force*.

magnetohydrodynamic (MHD) generator A device that generates electric power by the interaction of a plasma and a magnetic field.

maser An instrument that produces a coherent beam of microwaves. The word is an acronym for **m**icrowave **a**mplification by **s**timulated **e**mission of **r**adiation.

mass (m) The quantity of matter in an object; the measurement of the inertia or sluggishness that an object exhibits in response to any effort made to start it, stop it, or change in any way its state of motion; a form of energy.

mass number See atomic mass.

mass–energy equivalence The relationship between mass and energy as given by the equation

$$E = mc^2$$

where c is the speed of light.

mass spectrometer A device that magnetically separates charged ions according to their mass.

matter waves See *de Broglie matter waves*.

Maxwell's counterpart to Faraday's law A magnetic field is created in any region of space in which an electric field is changing with time. The magnitude of the induced magnetic

field is proportional to the rate at which the electric field changes. The direction of the induced magnetic field is at right angles to the changing electric field.

mechanical advantage The ratio of the output force to the input force for a machine.

mechanical energy Energy due to the position or the movement of something; potential or kinetic energy (or a combination of both).

mechanical equilibrium The state of an object or system of objects for which any impressed forces cancel to zero and no acceleration occurs and no net torque exists; that is, $\Sigma F = 0$ and $\Sigma \tau = 0$.

mega- The prefix that means million, as in megahertz or megajoule.

melting The change in phase from solid to liquid; the opposite of freezing. Melting is a different process from dissolving, in which an added solid mixes with a liquid and the solid dissociates.

meson An elementary particle with a mass number of zero; can participate in the strong nuclear interaction.

metastable state The state of excitation of an atom that is characterized by a prolonged delay before de-excitation.

meter (m) The standard SI unit of length (3.28 feet).

MeV Abbreviation for million *electron volts*, a unit of energy or, equivalently, a unit of mass.

MHD Abbreviation for *magnetohydrodynamic*.

mi Abbreviation for mile.

microscope An optical instrument that forms enlarged images of very small objects.

microwaves Electromagnetic waves that have frequencies higher than radio waves but lower than infrared waves.

min Abbreviation for minute.

mirage A false image that appears in the distance and is due to the refraction of light in Earth's atmosphere.

mixture Substances that are mixed together without chemically bonding.

MJ Abbreviation for megajoules, 1 million *joules*.

model A representation of an idea created to make the idea more understandable.

modulation Impressing a signal wave system on a higher-frequency carrier wave; amplitude modulation (AM) for amplitude signals and frequency modulation (FM) for frequency signals.

molecule Two or more atoms of the same or different elements bonded to form a larger particle.

momentum Inertia in motion. The product of the mass and the velocity of an object (provided the speed is much less than the speed of light). Momentum has magnitude and direction and therefore is a vector quantity. Also called linear momentum and abbreviated *p*.

$$p = mv$$

monochromatic light Light made of only one color and therefore waves of only one wavelength and frequency.

Moon phases The cycles of change of the "face" of the Moon, changing from *new*, to *waxing*, to *full*, to *waning*, and back to *new*.

muon An elementary particle in the lepton family.

music Scientifically speaking, sound associated with periodic tones and regularity.

N Abbreviation for *newton*.

nanometer The metric unit of length that is 10^{-9} meter (one-billionth of a meter).

natural frequency The frequency at which an elastic object tends to vibrate if it is disturbed and then the disturbing force is removed.

neap tide The tide that occurs when the Moon is halfway between a new Moon and a full Moon, in either direction. The tides due to the Sun and the Moon partly cancel, so that the high tides are lower than average and the low tides are not as low as average. See also *spring tide*.

net force The combination of all the forces that act on an object.

neutrino An elementary particle in the class of elementary particles called leptons. It is uncharged and almost massless; three kinds—electron, muon, and tau neutrinos—are the most common high-speed particles in the universe; more than a billion pass unhindered through each person every second.

neutron An electrically neutral particle that is one of the two kinds of nucleons that make up an atomic nucleus.

neutron star A star that has undergone a gravitational collapse in which electrons are compressed into protons to form neutrons.

newton (N) The SI unit of force. One newton is the force applied to a 1-kilogram mass that will produce an acceleration of 1 meter per second per second.

Newton's law of cooling The rate of cooling of an object—whether by conduction, convection, or radiation—is approximately proportional to the temperature difference between the object and its surroundings.

Newton's laws of motion *Law 1*: Every object continues in a state of rest, or of uniform speed in a straight line, unless acted on by a nonzero net force; also known as the law of inertia.

Law 2: The acceleration produced by a net force on an object is directly proportional to the magnitude of the net force, is in the same direction as the net force, and is inversely proportional to the mass of the object.

Law 3: Whenever one object exerts a force on a second object, the second object exerts an equal and opposite force on the first.

node Any part of a standing wave that remains stationary; a region of minimal or zero energy.

noise Scientifically speaking, sound associated with irregular vibrations.

normal At right angles to, or perpendicular to. A normal force acts at right angles to the surface on which it acts. In optics, a normal defines the line perpendicular to a surface about which angles of light rays are measured.

normal force The component of the support force that is perpendicular to a supporting surface. For an object resting on a horizontal surface, it is the upward force that balances the weight of the object.

northern lights See *aurora borealis*.

nuclear fission Splitting of an atomic nucleus, particularly that of a heavy element such as uranium-235, into two lighter elements, accompanied by the release of much energy.

nuclear fusion Combining of nuclei of light atoms, such as hydrogen, into heavier nuclei, often with the release of much energy. See also *thermonuclear fusion*.

nuclear reactor An apparatus in which controlled nuclear fission or nuclear fusion reactions take place.

nucleon The principal building block of the nucleus; a neutron or a proton; the collective name for either or both.

nucleus (pl. nuclei) The positively charged center of an atom, which contains protons and neutrons and has almost all the mass of the entire atom but only a tiny fraction of the volume.

objective lens In an optical device using compound lenses, the lens that is closest to the object observed.

octave In music, the eighth full tone above or below a given tone. The tone an octave above has twice as many vibrations per second as the original tone; the tone an octave below has half as many vibrations per second.

ohm (Ω) The SI unit of electrical resistance. One ohm is the resistance of a device that draws a current of 1 ampere when a voltage of 1 volt is impressed across it.

Ohm's law The current in a circuit is directly proportional to the voltage impressed across the circuit and is inversely proportional to the resistance of the circuit.

$$\text{Current} = \frac{\text{voltage}}{\text{resistance}}$$

opaque The term applied to materials that absorb light without re-emission or reflection, and consequently do not allow light through them.

optical fiber A transparent fiber, usually of glass or plastic, that can transmit light down its length by means of total internal reflection.

oscillation Same as vibration: a repeating to-and-fro motion about an equilibrium position. Both oscillation and vibration refer to periodic motion—that is, motion that repeats regularly.

oscillatory motion Repeating to-and-fro vibratory motion, such as that of a pendulum.

out of phase The term applied to two waves for which the crest of one wave arrives coincident with a trough of the second wave. Their effects tend to cancel each other.

overtone A musical term for the case when the first overtone is the second harmonic. See also *partial tone*.

oxidize The chemical process in which an element or molecule loses one or more electrons.

ozone A gas of oxygen molecules composed of three, rather than the usual two, oxygen atoms. O_3 is formed when the molecule of stable oxygen (O_2) is split by UV radiation or electrical discharge. Found naturally in a thin layer in the upper atmosphere.

Pa Abbreviation for the SI unit *pascal*.

parabola A curved path followed by a projectile acting under the influence of gravity only.

parallax The apparent displacement of an object when viewed by an observer from two different positions; often used to calculate the distance of stars.

parallel circuit An electric circuit with two or more devices connected in such a way that the same voltage acts across each one and any single one completes the circuit independently of the others. See also *in parallel*.

partial tone One of the many tones that make up one musical sound. Each partial tone (or partial) has only one frequency. The lowest partial of a musical sound is called the fundamental frequency. Any partial whose frequency is a multiple of the fundamental frequency is called a harmonic. The fundamental frequency is also called the first harmonic. The second harmonic has twice the frequency of the fundamental; the third harmonic, three times the frequency; and so on.

pascal (Pa) The SI unit of pressure. One pascal of pressure exerts a normal force of 1 newton per square meter. A kilopascal (kPa) is 1000 pascals.

Pascal's principle Changes in pressure at any point in an enclosed fluid at rest are transmitted undiminished to all points in the fluid and act in all directions.

PE Abbreviation for *potential energy*.

penumbra A partially lit part of a shadow from which some but not all of the light from a source is blocked. See also *umbra*.

percussion In musical instruments, the striking of one object against another.

perigee The point in an elliptical orbit that is closest to the focus about which orbiting takes place. See also *apogee*.

period In general, the time required to complete a single cycle. (a) For orbital motion, the time required for a complete orbit. (b) For vibrations or waves, the time required for one complete cycle, equal to 1/frequency.

periodic table A chart that lists elements by atomic number and by electron arrangements, so that elements with similar chemical properties are in the same column (group). See Figure 11.9 on page 265.

perturbation A deviation of an orbiting object (e.g., a planet) from its path around a center of force (e.g., the Sun) caused by the action of an additional center of force (e.g., another planet).

phase (a) One of the four main forms of matter: solid, liquid, gas, and plasma; often called state. (b) The part of a cycle to which a wave (or the Moon) has advanced at any moment. See also *in phase* and *out of phase*.

phosphor A powdery material, such as that used on the inner surface of a fluorescent light tube, that absorbs ultraviolet photons and then gives off visible light.

phosphorescence A type of light emission that is the same as fluorescence except for a delay between excitation and de-excitation, which provides an afterglow that may last from fractions of a second to hours, or even days, depending on such factors as the type of material and temperature.

photoelectric effect The ejection of electrons from certain metals when exposed to certain frequencies of light.

photon Light manifesting as a particle; as a corpuscle of light.

physical model A representation of an object on some convenient scale.

pigment Fine particles that selectively absorb light of certain frequencies and selectively transmit and/or reflect others.

pitch Our subjective impression about the "highness" or "lowness" of a tone, which is related to the frequency of the tone. A high-frequency vibrating source produces a sound of high pitch; a low-frequency vibrating source produces a sound of low pitch.

Planck's constant (*h*) The fundamental constant of quantum theory that determines the scale of the small-scale world.

$$h = 6.6 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J} \cdot \text{s}$$

When multiplied by the frequency of light, Planck's constant equals its energy.

$$E = hf$$

plane mirror A flat-surfaced mirror.

plane-polarized wave A transverse wave confined to a single plane of vibration.

plasma The fourth phase of matter, in addition to solid, liquid, and gas. In the plasma phase, which exists mainly at high temperatures, matter consists of positively charged ions and free electrons.

polarization The alignment of vibrations in a transverse wave, usually by filtering out waves that vibrate in all but a single plane. See also *plane-polarized wave* and *dichroic crystal*.

polished Description of a surface that is so smooth that the distances between successive elevations of the surface are less than about one-eighth the wavelength of the light or other incident wave of interest. The result is very little diffuse reflection.

positron The antiparticle of an electron; a positively charged electron.

postulates of special relativity *First*: All laws of nature are the same in all uniformly moving frames of reference.

Second: The speed of light in free space has the same measured value regardless of the motion of the source or the motion of the observer; that is, the speed of light is invariant.

potential difference The difference in electric potential (electric potential energy per charge) between two points; also called voltage difference or simply voltage. Free charge flows when there is a difference and will continue to flow until both points reach a common potential.

potential energy (PE) The energy of position; usually related to the relative position of two things, such as a stone and Earth (gravitational PE), or an electron and a nucleus (electric PE).

power The rate at which work is done or energy is transformed; equal to the work done or the energy transformed divided by time; measured in watts.

$$\text{Power} = \frac{\text{work}}{\text{time}}$$

precession Wavering of a spinning object, such that its axis of rotation traces out a cone.

pressure Force per surface area, where the force is normal (perpendicular) to the surface; measured in pascals. See also *atmospheric pressure*.

$$\text{Pressure} = \frac{\text{force}}{\text{area}}$$

primary colors See *additive primary colors* and *subtractive primary colors*.

principal axis The line joining the centers of curvature of the surfaces of a lens. The line joining the center of curvature and the focus of a mirror.

principle A general hypothesis or statement about the relationship of natural quantities that has been tested over and over again and has not been contradicted; also known as a law.

principle of equivalence Observations made in an accelerating frame of reference are indistinguishable from observations made in a gravitational field.

principle of flotation A floating object displaces a weight of fluid equal to its own weight.

prism A triangular solid made of a transparent material such as glass that separates incident light by refraction into its component colors. These component colors are often called the spectrum.

projectile Any object that moves through the air or through space, acted on only by gravity (and air resistance, if any).

proton A positively charged particle that is one of the two kinds of nucleons in the nucleus of an atom.

pseudoscience Fake science that pretends to be real science.

pulley A wheel that acts as a lever used to change the direction of a force. A pulley or system of pulleys can also multiply forces.

pupil The opening in the eyeball through which light passes.

quality The characteristic sound of a musical instrument or voice, which is governed by the number and relative intensities of partial tones. It relates to the pattern of the sound wave. Also called timbre, tone, and tonal quality.

quantum (pl. quanta) From the Latin word *quantus*, meaning "how much," a quantum is the smallest elemental unit of a quantity, the smallest discrete amount of something. One quantum of electromagnetic energy is called a photon. See also *quantum mechanics* and *quantum theory*.

quantum mechanics The branch of physics concerned with the atomic microworld based on wave functions and probabilities, introduced by Max Planck (1900) and developed by Werner Heisenberg (1925), Erwin Schrödinger (1926), and others.

quantum physics The branch of physics that is the general study of the microworld of photons, atoms, and nuclei.

quantum theory The theory that describes the microworld, where many quantities are granular (in units called quanta), rather than continuous, and where particles of light (photons) and particles of matter (such as electrons) exhibit wave as well as particle properties.

quark One of the two classes of elementary particles (the other is the lepton). Two of the six quarks (up and down) are the fundamental building blocks of nucleons (protons and neutrons).

rad The unit used to measure a dose of radiation; the amount of energy (in centijoules) absorbed from ionizing radiation per kilogram of exposed material.

radiant energy Any energy, including heat, light, and X-rays, that is transmitted by radiation; occurs in the form of electromagnetic waves.

radiation (a) Energy transmitted by electromagnetic waves. (b) The particles given off by radioactive atoms such as uranium. Do not confuse radiation with radioactivity.

radiation curve of sunlight See *solar radiation curve*.

radio waves Electromagnetic waves of the longest frequency.

radioactive The term applied to an atom having an unstable nucleus that can spontaneously emit a particle.

radioactivity The process of the atomic nucleus that results in the emission of energetic particles. See *radiation*.

radiotherapy The use of radiation as a treatment to kill cancer cells.

rarefaction The region of reduced pressure in a longitudinal wave.

rate How fast something happens or how much something changes per unit of time; a change in a quantity divided by the time it takes for the change to occur.

ray A thin beam of light. Also, a line drawn to show a light path in optical ray diagrams. A beam of radiation (e.g., beta ray).

reaction force The force that is equal in strength and opposite in direction to the action force, and that acts simultaneously on whatever is exerting the action force. See also *Newton's laws of motion, Law 3*.

real image An image formed by light rays that converge at the location of the image. A real image, unlike a virtual image, can be displayed on a screen.

red shift A decrease in the measured frequency of light (or other radiation) from a receding source; called the *red shift* because the decrease is toward the low-frequency, or red, end of the color spectrum. See also *Doppler effect*.

reflection The return of light rays from a surface in such a way that the angle at which a given ray is returned is equal to the angle at which it strikes the surface. When the reflecting surface is irregular, the light is returned in irregular directions; this is diffuse reflection. In general, the bouncing back of a particle or wave that strikes the boundary between two media.

refraction The bending of an oblique ray of light when it passes from one transparent medium to another. This is caused by a difference in the speed of light in the transparent media. In general, the change in direction of a wave as it crosses the boundary between two media in which the wave travels at different speeds.

regelation The process of melting under pressure and the subsequent refreezing when the pressure is removed.

relative Regarded in relation to something else, depending on a point of view or frame of reference. Sometimes referred to as "with respect to."

relative humidity The ratio between how much water vapor is in the air and the maximum amount of water vapor that could be in the air at the same temperature, expressed as a percent.

relativistic Pertaining to the theory of relativity; approaching the speed of light.

relativity See *special theory of relativity*, *postulates of special relativity*, and *general theory of relativity*.

rem Acronym for **r**oentgen **e**quivalent **m**an; a unit used to measure the effect of ionizing radiation on human beings.

resistance See *electrical resistance*.

resistor A device in an electric circuit that is designed to resist the flow of charge.

resolution (a) A method of separating a vector into its component parts. (b) The ability of an optical system to make clear or to separate the components of an object viewed.

resonance The phenomenon that occurs when the frequency of forced vibrations on an object matches the object's natural frequency, producing a dramatic increase in amplitude.

rest energy The "energy of being," given by the equation $E = mc^2$.

resultant The net result of a combination of two or more vectors.

retina The layer of light-sensitive tissue at the back of the eye, composed of tiny light-sensitive cells called rods and cones. Cones are sensitive to different ranges of the visible spectrum enabling the sensation of colors. Rods don't discriminate colors but sense dim light.

reverberation The persistence of a sound, as in an echo, due to multiple reflections.

revolution The motion of an object moving around an axis that lies outside the object.

Ritz combination principle For an element, the frequencies of some spectral lines are either the sum or the difference of the frequencies of two other lines in that element's spectrum.

rods See *retina*.

rotation The spinning motion that occurs when an object rotates about an axis located within the object (usually an axis through its center of mass).

rotational inertia Reluctance or apparent resistance of an object to change its state of rotation, determined by the distribution of the mass of the object and the location of the axis of rotation or revolution.

rotational speed The number of rotations or revolutions per unit of time; often measured in rotations or revolutions per second or minute.

rotational velocity Rotational speed together with a direction for the axis of rotation or revolution.

RPM Abbreviation for rotations or revolutions per minute.

s Abbreviation for second.

satellite A projectile or smaller celestial body that orbits a larger celestial body.

saturated The term applied to a substance, such as air, that contains the maximum amount of another substance, such as water vapor, at a given temperature and pressure.

scalar quantity A quantity in physics, such as mass, volume, and time, that can be completely specified by its magnitude and has no direction.

scale In music, a succession of notes of frequencies that are in simple ratios to one another.

scaling The study of how size affects the relationships among weight, strength, and surface area.

scatter To absorb sound or light and re-emit it in all directions.

scattering Emission in random directions of light that encounters particles that are small compared to the wavelength of light; more often at short wavelengths (blue) than at long wavelengths (red).

Schrödinger's wave equation The fundamental equation of quantum mechanics, which interprets the wave nature of material particles in terms of probability wave amplitudes. This equation is as basic to quantum mechanics as Newton's laws of motion are to classical mechanics.

science The collective findings of humans about nature, and the process of gathering and organizing knowledge about nature.

scientific attitude The scientific method inclined toward inquiry, integrity, and humility.

scientific method An orderly method for gaining, organizing, and applying new knowledge.

scintillation counter A device used to measure radiation from radioactive sources.

second (s) The standard SI unit of time.

self-induction Induction of an electric field within a single coil, caused by the interaction of the loops within the same coil. This self-induced voltage is always in a direction opposing the changing voltage that produces it and is commonly called back electromotive force or back emf.

semiconductor A device made of material not only with properties that fall between those of a conductor and an insulator but also with resistance that changes abruptly when other conditions change, such as temperature, voltage, and electric or magnetic field.

series circuit An electric circuit with devices connected in such a way that the electric current through each of them is the same. See also *in series*.

shadow The shaded region that appears where light rays are blocked by an object.

shell model of the atom The model in which the electrons of an atom are pictured as grouped in concentric shells around the nucleus.

shock wave A cone-shaped wave produced by an object moving at supersonic speed through a fluid.

short circuit A disruption in an electric circuit caused by the flow of charge along a low-resistance path between two points that should not be directly connected, thus deflecting the current from its proper path; an effective "shortening of the circuit."

SI Abbreviation for Système International, an international system of units of metric measure accepted and used by scientists throughout the world. See Appendix A for more details.

simple harmonic motion Vibratory or periodic motion, like that of a pendulum, in which the force acting on the vibrating body is proportional to its displacement from its central equilibrium position and acts toward that position.

simultaneity Occurrence at the same time. In special relativity, two events that are simultaneous in one frame of reference need not be simultaneous in a frame moving relative to the first frame.

sine curve A curve whose shape represents the crests and troughs of a wave, as traced out by a pendulum that drops a trail of sand while swinging at right angles to and over a moving conveyor belt.

sine wave The simplest of waves, with only one frequency and the shape of a sine curve.

sliding friction Contact force that tends to retard motion produced by the rubbing together of the surface of a moving object with the material over which it slides.

solar constant 1400 J/m^2 received from the Sun each second at the top of Earth's atmosphere; expressed in terms of power, 1.4 kw/m^2.

solar eclipse An event in which the Moon blocks light from the Sun, and the Moon's shadow falls on part of Earth.

solar power Energy per unit time derived from the Sun. See also *solar constant*.

solar radiation curve A graph of brightness versus frequency (or wavelength) of sunlight.

solid The phase of matter characterized by a definite volume and shape.

solidify To become solid, as in freezing or the setting of concrete.

sonic boom A loud sound that results from the incidence of a shock wave.

sound A longitudinal wave phenomenon that consists of successive compressions and rarefactions of the medium through which the wave travels.

sound barrier The pileup of sound waves in front of an aircraft that is approaching or reaching the speed of sound; believed in the early days of jet aircraft to affect the control of aircraft by creating a barrier of sound that a plane would have to break through in order to go faster than the speed of sound. The sound barrier does not exist.

spacetime The four-dimensional continuum in which all events take place and all things exist; three dimensions are the coordinates of space, and the fourth is of time.

special theory of relativity The comprehensive theory of space and time that replaces Newtonian mechanics when velocities are very large; introduced in 1905 by Albert Einstein. See also *postulates of special relativity*.

specific heat capacity The quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of a unit mass of a substance by 1 degree Celsius (or, equivalently, by 1 kelvin); often simply called specific heat.

spectral lines Colored lines that form when light is passed through a slit and then through a prism or diffraction grating, usually in a spectroscope. The pattern of lines is unique for each element.

spectrometer See *spectroscope*.

spectroscope An optical instrument that separates light into its constituent frequencies or wavelengths in the form of spectral lines. A *spectrometer* is an instrument that can also measure the frequencies or wavelengths.

spectrum (pl. spectra) For sunlight and other white light, the spread of colors seen when the light is passed through a

prism or diffraction grating. The colors of the spectrum, in order from lowest frequency (longest wavelength) to highest frequency (shortest wavelength), are red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo, violet. See also *absorption spectrum*, *electromagnetic spectrum*, *emission spectrum*, and *prism*.

speed How fast something moves; the distance an object travels per unit of time; the magnitude of velocity. See also *average speed*, *linear speed*, *rotational speed*, and *tangential speed*.

$$\text{Speed} = \frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time}}$$

spherical aberration A distortion of an image caused when the light that passes through the edges of a lens focuses at slightly different points from the point where the light passing through the center of the lens focuses. It also occurs with spherical mirrors.

spring tide High or low tide that occurs when the Sun, Earth, and the Moon are all lined up so that the tides due to the Sun and the Moon coincide, making the high tides higher than average and the low tides lower than average. See also *neap tide*.

stable equilibrium The state of an object balanced so that any small displacement or rotation raises its center of gravity.

standing wave The stationary wave pattern formed in a medium when two sets of identical waves pass through the medium in opposite directions. The wave appears not to be traveling. The result of wave interference.

static friction The force between two objects that are at relative rest by virtue of contact that tends to oppose sliding.

streamline The smooth path of a small region of fluid in steady flow.

strong force The force that attracts nucleons to each other within the nucleus; a force that is very strong at close distances but decreases rapidly as the distance increases. Also called strong interaction.

strong interaction See *strong force*.

subcritical mass See *critical mass*.

sublimation The direct conversion of a substance from the solid to the vapor phase without passing through the liquid phase.

subtractive primary colors The three colors of light-absorbing pigments—magenta, yellow, and cyan, for example—that when mixed in certain proportions reflect any color in the spectrum.

superconductor A material that is a perfect conductor with zero resistance to the flow of electric charge.

supercritical mass See *critical mass*.

superposition principle In a situation where more than one wave occupies the same space at the same time, the displacements add at every point.

supersonic Traveling faster than the speed of sound.

support force An upward force that balances the weight of an object on a surface.

surface tension The tendency of the surface of a liquid to contract in area and thus behave like a stretched elastic membrane.

tachyon A hypothetical particle that can travel faster than light and thus move backward in time.

tangent A line that touches a curve in one place only and is parallel to the curve at that point.

tangential speed Linear speed along a curved path.

tangential velocity Velocity tangent to the trajectory of a projectile.

tau The heaviest elementary particle in the class of elementary particles called leptons.

technology The method and means of solving practical problems by implementing the findings of science.

telescope An optical instrument that forms images of very distant objects.

temperature Measure of the average translational kinetic energy per molecule of a substance; measured in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit or in kelvins.

temperature inversion The condition in which the upward convection of air is stopped, sometimes because an upper region of the atmosphere is warmer than the region below it.

terminal speed The speed attained by an object at which the resistive forces, often air resistance, counterbalance the driving forces, so the motion is without acceleration.

terminal velocity Terminal speed together with the direction of motion (downward for falling objects).

terrestrial radiation Radiant energy emitted from Earth.

theory A synthesis of a large body of information that encompasses well-tested and verified hypotheses about aspects of the natural world.

thermal contact The state of two or more objects or substances in contact such that heat can flow from one to the other.

thermal energy The total energy (kinetic plus potential) of the submicroscopic particles that make up a substance (often called *internal energy* or simply *heat energy*.)

thermal equilibrium The state in which substances that are in thermal contact have reached a common temperature.

thermal pollution Undesirable heat expelled from a heat engine or other source.

thermodynamics The study of heat and its transformation to mechanical energy, characterized by two principal laws:
First Law: A restatement of the law of conservation of energy as it applies to systems involving changes in temperature: Whenever heat is added to a system, it transforms into an equal amount of some other form of energy.
Second Law: Heat cannot be transferred from a colder body to a hotter body without work being done by an outside agent. Also, all systems tend to become more and more disordered as time goes by.

thermometer A device used to measure temperature, usually in degrees Celsius, degrees Fahrenheit, or kelvins.

thermonuclear fusion Nuclear fusion brought about by extremely high temperatures—in other words, the welding together of atomic nuclei by high temperature.

thermostat A type of valve or switch that responds to changes in temperature and that is used to control the temperature of something.

third law of thermodynamics No system can have its temperature reduced to absolute zero.

time dilation The slowing down of time for a moving object as measured by those who see it moving.

torque The product of force and the lever-arm distance, which tends to produce rotational acceleration.

$$\text{Torque} = \text{lever-arm distance} \times \text{force}$$

total internal reflection The 100% reflection (with no transmission) of light that strikes the boundary between two media at an angle larger than the critical angle.

transformer A device for increasing or decreasing voltage or transferring electric power from one coil of wire to another by means of electromagnetic induction.

transistor A device used in electric circuits as a switch or to amplify a signal. See *semiconductor*.

translucent The term applied to materials that allow light to pass through but scatter it in all directions.

transmutation Conversion of an atomic nucleus of one element into an atomic nucleus of another element through a loss or gain in the number of protons due to the emission or absorption of charged particles.

transparent The term applied to materials that allow light to pass through them in straight lines.

transuranic element An element that is higher than uranium in the periodic table.

transverse wave A wave with vibration at right angles to the direction the wave is traveling. Light consists of transverse waves.

tritium An unstable, radioactive isotope of hydrogen whose atom has a proton, two neutrons, and an electron.

trough The lowest part of a wave; in contrast to the highest part, a *crest*.

turbine A paddle wheel driven by steam, water, or other power that is used to do work.

turbogenerator A generator that is powered by a turbine.

ultrasonic The term applied to sound frequencies above 20,000 Hz, the normal upper limit of human hearing.

ultraviolet (UV) Electromagnetic waves of frequencies higher than those of violet light.

umbra The dark part of a shadow where all the light is blocked. See also *penumbra*.

uncertainty principle The principle formulated by Heisenberg, stating that Planck's constant, h, sets a limit on the accuracy of measurement at the atomic level. Accordingly, it is not possible to measure exactly both the position and the momentum of a particle at the same time, or the energy and the time associated with a particle simultaneously.

universal gravitational constant The proportionality constant G that measures the strength of gravity in the equation for Newton's law of universal gravitation.

$$F = G\frac{m_1 m_2}{d^2}$$

unstable equilibrium The state of an object balanced so that any small displacement or rotation lowers its center of gravity.

UV Abbreviation for *ultraviolet*.

V (a) When a lowercase italic *v*, the symbol for *speed* or *velocity*. (b) When an uppercase V, the abbreviation for *voltage* and *volt*.

vacuum Absence of matter; void.

Van Allen radiation belts Two donut-shaped belts of radiation that surround Earth.

vaporization The process of a phase change from liquid to vapor; evaporation.

vector An arrow whose length represents the magnitude of a quantity and whose direction represents the direction of the quantity.

vector quantity A quantity in physics that has both magnitude and direction. Examples are force, velocity, acceleration, torque, and electric and magnetic fields.

velocity The speed of an object and its direction of motion; a vector quantity.

vibration Oscillation; a repeating to-and-fro motion about an equilibrium position—a "wiggle repeating over time."

virtual image An image formed by light rays that do not converge at the location of the image. Mirrors, converging lenses used as magnifying glasses, and diverging lenses all produce virtual images. The image can be seen by an observer but cannot be projected onto a screen.

visible light The part of the electromagnetic spectrum that the human eye can see.

visible spectrum See *electromagnetic spectrum*.

volt (V) The SI unit of electric potential. One volt is the electric potential difference across which one coulomb of charge gains or loses 1 joule of energy. $1\ \text{V} = 1\ \text{J/C}$

voltage Electrical "pressure" or a measure of electrical potential difference.

$$\text{Voltage} = \frac{\text{electrical potential energy}}{\text{unit of charge}}$$

voltage source A device, such as a dry cell, battery, generator, or solar cell, that provides a potential difference.

voltmeter A galvanometer calibrated to read potential differences.

volume The quantity of space an object occupies. Another word for "loudness" of sound.

W (a) Abbreviation for *watt*. (b) When an italic *W*, the abbreviation for *work*.

watt (W) The SI unit of power. One watt is expended when 1 joule of work is done in 1 second; $1\ \text{W} = 1\ \text{J/s}$.

wave A "wiggle in space and time"; a regularly repeating disturbance in a medium or a field that transports energy from one place to the next with no net transport of matter.

wave interference The phenomenon that occurs when two waves meet while traveling along the same medium.

wavefront A crest, trough, or any continuous portion of a two-dimensional or three-dimensional wave in which the vibrations are all the same way at the same time.

wavelength The distance between successive crests, troughs, or identical parts of a wave.

wave-particle duality The exhibition of both a wave nature and a particle nature of light.

wave speed The speed with which waves pass a particular point.

$$\text{Wave speed} = \text{frequency} \times \text{wavelength}$$

wave velocity Wave speed stated with the direction of travel.

weak force Also called weak interaction, the force within a nucleus that is responsible for beta (electron) emission.

weak interaction See *weak force*.

weather The state of the atmosphere at a particular time and place.

weight The force that an object exerts on a supporting surface (or, if suspended, in a supporting string)—often, but not always, due to the force of gravity.

weight density See *density*.

weightlessness The condition in which an object experiences no support force (and exerts no force on a scale), such as when in free fall or in orbit.

white light Light, such as sunlight, that is a combination of all the colors. Under white light, white objects appear white and colored objects appear in their individual colors.

work (*W*) The product of the force on an object and the distance through which the object is moved (when force is constant and motion is in a straight line in the direction of the force); measured in joules.

$$\text{Work} = \text{force} \times \text{distance}$$

work–energy theorem The work done on an object is equal to the kinetic energy gained by the object.

$$\text{Work} = \Delta\text{KE}$$

wormhole A hypothetical enormous distortion of space and time, similar to a black hole but opening out again in some other place in spacetime.

X-ray Electromagnetic radiation, higher in frequency than ultraviolet, emitted by atoms when the innermost orbital electrons undergo excitation.

zero-point energy The extremely small amount of kinetic energy that molecules or atoms have even at absolute zero.

zeroth law of thermodynamics If two thermodynamic systems are each in thermal equilibrium with a third, then they are in thermal equilibrium with each other.

Credits

Text and Art Credits

Chapter 1

p. 23: Cited in "Official Proceedings," Volumes 21-22 by New York Railroad Club. Published in 1910; **p. 27:** M. Maeterlinck quoted in Monday Holidays: Hearings Before the United States Senate Committee on the Judiciary, Subcommittee on Federal Charters, Holidays, and Celebrations, Ninetieth Congress, First Session, on Aug. 1, 1967 (U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967); **p. 35:** Max Born, *Physics in my generation* (Springer-Verlag, 1969); **p. 38:** Scott Kelly, *Endurance: My Year in Space, A Lifetime of Discovery* (Knopf Doubleday Publishing Group, 2017); Will Maynez, "Friends of Diego June 2017," LinkedIn (June 27, 2017). https://www.linkedin.com/pulse/friends-diego-june-2017-will-maynez; **p. 41:** *The Basic Writings of Bertrand Russell* by Bertrand Russell. © 2009 Taylor & Francis.

Chapter 5

p. 105: Courtesy of Paul Doherty; **p. 119:** Hewitt, Paul G., *Conceptual Physics*, 6th Ed., © 1989. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **p. 120:** Hewitt, Paul G.; Lyons, Suzanne A., Suchocki, John A.; Yeh, Jennifer, *Conceptual Integrated Science*, 2nd Ed., © 2013, p. 41. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **p. 121:** *The Journal of the Astronautical Sciences*, Volumes 7-9 (American Astronautical Society, 1960).

Chapter 7

p. 147: *The British Quarterly Review* Vol. 2 (Hodder and Stoughton, 1845); **7.16:** Hewitt, Paul G.; Lyons, Suzanne A., Suchocki, John A.; Hewitt, Leslie A., *Conceptual Integrated Science*, 5th Ed., © 2012, p. 76. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **p. 157:** Hewitt, Paul G.; Lyons, Suzanne A., Suchocki, John A.; Hewitt, Leslie A., *Conceptual Physical Science*, 5th Ed., © 2012, p. 77. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **p. 158:** Archimedes quoted in Peter A. Schouls, *Descartes and the Enlightenment* (McGill-Queen's Press - MQUP, 1989); **p. 162:** Thomas Edison quoted in James Draper Newton, *Uncommon Friends: Life with Thomas Edison, Henry Ford, Harvey Firestone, Alexis Carrel & Charles Lindberg* (Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, 1987), p.31; **p. 164:** Herbert G. Wells, *The Outline of History: Being a Plain History of Life and Mankind*, Volume 2 (Macmillan, 1921); **p. 169-170:** Hewitt, Paul G.; Lyons, Suzanne A., Suchocki, John A.; Hewitt, Leslie A., *Conceptual Physical Science*, 5th Ed., © 2012, pp. 88, 89. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.

Chapter 10

10.19: Isaac Newton, *Philosophiæ Naturalis Principia Mathematica* Volume 3; **p. 247:** Isaac Newton, *System of the World* (University of California Press, 1947); **p. 251:** Hewitt, Paul G.; Lyons, Suzanne A., Suchocki, John A.; Hewitt, Leslie A., *Conceptual Physical Science*, 5th Ed., © 2012, p.113. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.

Chapter 11

p. 259: Richard Feynman, Robert B. Leighton, and Matthew Linzee Sands, *Mainly mechanics, radiation, and heat* (Addison-Wesley, 1963); **p. 274:** Richard P. Feynman (1963). The Problem of Teaching Physics in Latin America. *Engineering and Science*, 27 (2). pp. 21-30; **p. 275:** Richard Phillips Feynman, *The Pleasure of Finding Things Out: The Best Short Works of Richard P. Feynman* (Perseus Books, 1999).

Chapter 13

p. 301: Blaise Pascal quoted in Paul Edwards, *The Encyclopedia of Philosophy*, vol 4 (Macmillan, 1967); Blaise Pascal quoted in William Sloane Coffin, Once to Every Man: A Memoir (Atheneum, 1977); **p. 306:** Jeannette Walls, *Half Broke Horses: A True-Life Novel* (Simon and Schuster, 2009); **13.29:** Suchocki, John A., *Conceptual Chemistry*, 5th Ed., © 2014, p 236. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.

Chapter 15

15.22: Suchocki, John A., *Conceptual Chemistry*, 5th Ed., © 2014, p. 230. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.

Chapter 17

17.5: Suchocki, John A., *Conceptual Chemistry*, 5th Ed., © 2014, p. 239. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **17.16:** Suchocki, John A., *Conceptual Chemistry*, 5th Ed., © 2014, p. 231. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.

Chapter 18

p. 405: Lord Kelvin quoted in Inaugural Lecture: New series, Issues 130-159 (University of Cape Town, 1967); **p. 414:** Napoleon Bonaparte quoted in Sydney John Watson, Carnot (Bodley Head, 1954).

Chapter 19

p. 427: (By trying to understand . . .) Hewitt, Paul G.; Suchocki, John A.; Hewitt, Leslie A., *Conceptual Physical Science*, 5th Ed., © 2012. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.

Chapter 22

p. 483: Benjamin Franklin, *Memoirs of Benjamin Franklin*, Volume 1 (Derby & Jackson, 1859).

Chapter 24

p. 533: Helen B. Walters, *Nikola Tesla: Giant of Electricity* (Crowell, 1961).

Chapter 25

25.13: Hewitt, Paul G.; Lyons, Suzanne A., Suchocki, John A.; Hewitt, Leslie A., *Conceptual Physical Science*, 5th Ed., © 2012, p. 229. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **p. 564:** Hewitt, Paul G.; Lyons, Suzanne A., Suchocki, John A.; Hewitt, Leslie A., *Conceptual Physical Science*, 5th Ed., © 2012, p. 234. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.

Chapter 26

p. 571: John Michels, *Science*, Volume 44 (Moses King, 1916).

Chapter 27

p. 593: Vera Rubin quoted in Timothy Ferris, *The Whole Shebang: A State of the Universe Report* (Simon and Schuster, 1998), p.128; **p. 610:** Pierre-Auguste Renoir quoted in Jack Adler, *Soulmates from the Pages of History: From Mythical to Contemporary, 75 Examples of the Power of Friendship* (Algora Publishing, 2013), p.196.

Chapter 29

29.16: Thomas Young.

Chapter 30

p. 665: Neil deGrasse Tyson quoted in Marcus Chown, *What a Wonderful World: One Man's Attempt to Explain the Big Stuff* (Faber & Faber, 2013); Neil deGrasse Tyson and Donald Goldsmith, Origins: Fourteen Billion Years of Cosmic Evolution (W. W. Norton & Company, 2005); Neil deGrasse Tyson quoted in Patti Digh, Your Daily Rock: A Daybook of Touchstones for Busy Lives (W. W. Norton & Company, 2005).

Chapter 32

32.3, 32.5: Suchocki, John A., *Conceptual Chemistry*, 4th Ed., © 2011, pp. 96, 97. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **p. 718:** Richard Feynman quoted in Mario Bunge, *Epistemology & Methodology III: Philosophy of Science and Technology Part I: Formal and Physical Sciences* (Springer Science & Business Media, 1985), p.169; Albert Einstein, Max Born, and Hedwig Born, The Born-Einstein Letters: Correspondence Between Albert Einstein and Max and Hedwig Born from 1916-1955, with Commentaries by Max Born (Macmillan, 1971); **p. 722:** Richard Feynman, *The Character of Physical Law* (MIT Press, 1967), p. 91.

Chapter 35

p. 800: Soren Kierkegaard quoted in *Tulane Studies in Social Welfare*, Volumes 5-9 (School of Social Work, Tulane University, 1957).

Photo Credits

Front Matter

p. 19: Lillian Lee Hewitt.

Chapter 1

p. 21: John A. Suchocki; **p. 22:** (1) Paul G. Hewitt; (2) Marshall Ellenstein; (3) Judith Brand; (4) Lillian Lee Hewitt; **p. 23:** ART Collection/Alamy Stock Photo; **1.10:** Gretchen Hewitt; **1.11:** Gretchen Hewitt; **1.12:** Peter Barritt/Alamy Stock Photo; **1.13:** NASA.

Chapter 2

p. 43: Jill Evans; **p. 44:** (1) Paul G. Hewitt; (2) Monica Davey; (3) Bob Miner; (4) Pat Hall, City College of San Francisco; **p. 45:** Filip Heijkenskjöld; **p. 46:** World History Archive/ Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 47:** Erich Lessing/Art Resource; **p. 48:** ARCHIVIO GBB/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 50:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **2.10:** Paul G. Hewitt.

Chapter 3

p. 64: (1) Todd Rust; (2) Paul G. Hewitt; (3) Fredrik Jensen; (4) Chelsie Liu; **p. 65:** Brandon Feinberg; **3.1:** Alan Schein/The Image Bank/Getty Images; **p. 76:** Andrew D. Bernstein/NBAE/ Getty Images; **p. 79:** David Manning.

Chapter 4

p. 84: (1, 4) Paul G. Hewitt; (2) Sherry Shopoff; (3) Oliver Furrer/Stockbyte/Getty Images; **p. 85:** Paul G. Hewitt; **4.4:** Paul G. Hewitt; **4.5:** Sharon Talson/Alamy Stock Photo; **4.10:** MiloVad/Shutterstock; **4.15a:** Agnieszka Bacal/Shutterstock; **4.15b:** Perié/Alpaca/Andia/Alamy Stock Photo; **4.17:** Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs.

Chapter 5

p. 104: (1) Exploratorium; (2) Carol Kirk; (3) Toby Jacobson; (4) Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 105:** Paul G. Hewitt; **5.19:** John A. Suchocki; **5.20:** Paul G. Hewitt; **5.29:** Jerry Lin/Shutterstock; **5.30:** Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 120:** Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 122:** (top) Anthony Reid; (bottom) Lillian Lee Hewitt.

Chapter 6

p. 124: Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 125:** Paul G. Hewitt; **6.2:** Rafael Ramirez/Fotolia; **6.4:** Cocoon/Getty Images; **6.7:** Oliver Furrer/ Alamy Stock Photo; **6.9:** Paul G. Hewitt; **6.10:** Paul G. Hewitt; **6.16:** Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 140:** Brad Adams; **p. 142:** Paul G. Hewitt.

Chapter 7

p. 146: (1) Majken Korsager; (2–4) Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 147:** GL Archive/Alamy Stock Photo; **7.3:** Brent Clark/Alamy Stock Photo; **7.4:** Paul G. Hewitt; **7.5:** NASA; **7.10:** Paul G. Hewitt; **7.12:** Paul G. Hewitt; **7.13:** Michael Vollmer; **7.14:** Paul G. Hewitt; **7.16:** Frank Naylor/Alamy Stock Photo; **7.21:** Pat Hall; **7.23:** (left to right) NASA; topseller/Shutterstock; **7.24:** Ashley Cooper/Alamy Stock Photo; **7.26:** David Vasquez; **7.27e:** Courtesy of Geodynamics Limited; **p. 166:** Pat Hall, City College of San Francisco; **p. 170:** Paul G. Hewitt.

Chapter 8

p. 172: (1, 2) Paul G. Hewitt; (3) Anna Marie Darden; (4) Pat Hall, City College of San Francisco; (5) Nihal Coşkun; **p. 173:** Paul G. Hewitt; **8.9:** Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 178:** Paul G. Hewitt; **8.27:** Purple Collar Pet Photography/Moment/Getty images; **8.29:** Peter Nelson; **8.36:** Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs; **8.40:** Juice Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **8.46:** Paul G. Hewitt; **8.48:** Paul G. Hewitt; **8.50:** Paul G. Hewitt; **8.54:** Evolve/ Photoshot/ZUMAPRESS/Newscom; **p. 196:** Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 197:** Brad Adams; **p. 201:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **p. 202:** Pat Hall, City College of San Francisco.

Chapter 9

p. 204: (1) Enrique Baez/JPL; (2) Daday van den Berg; (3, 4) Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 205:** (left) Lori Lamb; (right) Mark Clark; **9.11:** NASA Johnson Space Center; **9.29:** EHT Collaboration.

Chapter 10

p. 230: (1) NASA; (2) Bob Abrams; (3) SpaceX; (4) Pat Hall, City College of San Francisco; **p. 231:** NASA Archive/Alamy Stock Photo; **10.3:** (top) Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs; **10.4:** lzf/Shutterstock; **10.5:** Paul G. Hewitt; **10.8:** Paul G. Hewitt; **10.12:** Bill Greenblatt/UPI/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 238:** Andrew D. Bernstein/NBAE/Getty Images; **10.20:** NASA/Johnson Space Center; **10.25:** Paul G. Hewitt; **10.26:** Diane Schiumo/Fundamental Photographs; **p. 244:** (top) NASA/Goddard Space Flight Center; (bottom) Royal Observatory, Edinburgh/Science Source; **p. 245:** Erich Lessing/Art Resource, NY; **10.34:** NASA/JPL; **10.35:** NASA/JPL; **p. 252:** (left) Judy Luna; (right) axz65/Fotolia.

Chapter 11

p. 257: Angela Hendricks; **p. 258:** (1) Kevin Fleming/Corbis Historical/Getty Images; (2) Theodore Gotis; (3) Mopic/Fotolia; (4) Darlene Tucker; **p. 259:** Bettmann/Getty Images; **11.5:** The Enrico Fermi Institute; **11.6:** Thomas Deerinck, NCMIR/Science Source; **11.7:** IBM Research/Science Source; **11.10:** (Ag) David Toase/Stockbyte/Getty Images; (Hg) MarcelClemens/Shutterstock; (Ti) Scott Camazine/Alamy Stock Photo; (Zn) Pearson Education, Inc.; (C) Fribus Mara/Shutterstock; (He) artjazz/Shutterstock; (Si) GeoStock/Photodisc/Getty Images; (Br) Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs; **11.11:** Paul G. Hewitt; **11.15:** World Perspectives/The Image Bank/Getty Images.

Chapter 12

p. 280: (1) Hope Jahren; (2) PASIEKA/Science Photo Library/Alamy Stock Photo; (3, 4) Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 281:** Hope Jahren; **12.1:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **12.3:** KdEdesign/Shutterstock; **12.4:** Dee Breger/Science Source; **12.6:** Andrew Davidhazy; **12.11:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **12.12:** Paul G. Hewitt; **12.13:** Georgescu Gabriel/Shutterstock; **12.14:** Paul G. Hewitt; **12.15:** Gary Blakeley/Fotolia; **p. 289:** Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 290:** ITAR-TASS News Agency/Alamy Stock Photo; **12.17:** Paul G. Hewitt; **12.19:** Dorling Kindersley ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; **12.20:** Adam Seward RF/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 297:** Paul G. Hewitt.

Chapter 13

p. 300: (1) Mark Rober; (2) Paul G. Hewitt; (3) Alan Spencer Photography/Alamy Stock Photo; (4) Mark Serway; **p. 301:** Artepics/Alamy Stock Photo; **13.2:** Paul G. Hewitt; **13.3:** Rocketclips, Inc./Shutterstock; **13.4:** Corbis Premium RF/Alamy Stock Photo; **13.7:** Tim Moore/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 306:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **13.20:** 4 season backpacking/Alamy Stock Photo; **13.24:** Angela Kendricks; **13.27:** Paul G. Hewitt; **13.29:** Andrei Kuzmik/Shutterstock; **13.30:** Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 322:** (top to bottom) Paul G. Hewitt; Bruce Novak.

Chapter 14

p. 324: (1) Fred Myers; (2) Jens Ekberg; (3) Gaspar Schott's sketch of Otto von Guericke's Magdeburg hemispheres experiment; (4) Jim Culleton; **p. 325:** McKenzie Myers; **14.5:** Paul G. Hewitt; **14.9:** Paul G. Hewitt; **14.24:** Wayne Matthew Syvinski/Shutterstock; **14.25:** Olegusk/Shutterstock; **p. 341:** Angela Hendricks; **p. 342:** Paul G. Hewitt.

Chapter 15

p. 345: Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 346:** (1, 2) Paul G. Hewitt; (3) Terrence Jones/Ranch Systems; (4) Rune Myhre; **p. 347:** FineArt/Alamy Stock Photo; **15.5:** Terrence Jones; **15.8:** Paul G. Hewitt; **15.12:** Robert Elder/Artifact Photography LLC/Alamy Stock Photo; **15.13:** Hu Meidor; **15.14:** AP Images; **15.17:** David A. Vasquez; **15.22:** Sportlibrary/Shutterstock; **p. 361:** Paul G. Hewitt.

Chapter 16

p. 366: Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 367:** Kenneth Fax; **16.3:** Incamerastock/Alamy Stock Photo; **16.6:** Emily Abrams; **16.8:** Paul G. Hewitt; **16.10:** Nancy Roger; **16.16:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **16.17:** Tai McNelis; **16.18:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **16.20:** David Yee; **16.21:** Paul G. Hewitt; **16.22:** Epcot Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **16.23:** Paul G. Hewitt; **16.27:** Dotty Jean Rice; **16.28:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **16.29:** Lillian Lee Hewitt.

Chapter 17

p. 386: (1) © The Exploratorium, www.exploratorium.edu. Photograph by Nicole Minor; (2, 3) Paul G. Hewitt; (4) Lillian Lee Hewitt; **p. 387:** Lisa Strong; **17.1:** Bob Miner; **17.2:** Kara Mae Hurrell; **17.3:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **17.6:** Paul G. Hewitt; **17.15:** © The Exploratorium, www.exploratorium.edu. Photograph by Nicole Minor; **17.22:** Paul G. Hewitt; **17.23:** Keith Srakocic/AP Images.

Chapter 18

p. 404: (1-3) Paul G. Hewitt; (4) Tang Ying; **p. 405:** Chris Hellier/Alamy Stock Photo; **18.5:** Paul G. Hewitt; **18.8:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **p. 405:** Dennis Wong; **18.15:** robertharding/Alamy Stock Photo; **18.18:** Paul G. Hewitt.

Chapter 19

p. 425: Jojo Dijamco; **p. 426:** (1, 2) © The Exploratorium, www.exploratorium.edu. Photograph by Nancy Rodger; (3, 5) Paul G. Hewitt; (4) Kirsten Knight Nardini; **p. 427:** ©The Exploratorium, www.exploratorium.edu. Photograph by Nancy Rodger; **19.4:** Pete Turner/The Image Bank/Getty Images; **19.6:** Sonia B. Greenslade; **19.12:** Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs; **19.15:** Eliot Elisofon/Time Life Pictures/Getty Images; **19.22:** Alliance Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **19.23:** Ted Kinsman/Science Source; **p. 443:** Dennis McNelis.

Chapter 20

p. 446: (1, 2) Paul G. Hewitt; (3) Carl Angell; (4) Duane Ackerman; **p. 447:** Paul G. Hewitt; **20.4:** Paul G. Hewitt; **20.7:** Ron Hipschman; **20.9:** UHB Trust/Stone/Getty Images; **20.10:** Crisod/Fotolia; **20.12:** Paul G. Hewitt; **20.13:** Paul G. Hewitt; **20.21:** Addison Wesley Longman, Inc./Pearson.

Chapter 21

p. 466: (1) Paul G. Hewitt; (2) Jojo Dijamco; (3) Angela Hendricks; (4) Dean Baird; **p. 467:** Geraint Lewis/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 468:** (top to bottom) ZUMA Press, Inc./Alamy Stock Photo; Hoo-Me/SMG/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 469:** Beth A. Keiser/AP Images; **p. 470:** Pacific Press Media Production Corp./Alamy Stock Photo; **21.4:** Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 471:** Andrea Renault/Globe Photos/ZUMAPRESS/Alamy Stock Photo; **21.9:** Tyler Johnson; **p. 472:** Kevin Winter/Getty Images; **21.11:** Ronald B. Fitzgerald; **21.13:** Adam Orchon/Everett Collection/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 474:** Louis-Léopold Boilly;

21.14: Paul G. Hewitt; **21.15:** Hu Meidor; **p. 475:** Daniel DeSlover/ZUMA Press, Inc./Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 478:** Paul G. Hewitt.

Chapter 22

p. 481: Angela Hendricks; **p. 482:** (1) Paul G. Hewitt; (2) Eva Russell; (3, 4) Kobus Nel; **p. 483:** Tomas Abad/Alamy Stock Photo; **22.5:** Little Tomato Studio/Fotolia; **22.6a:** Will Maynez; **22.6b:** Timothy Hodgkinson/Shutterstock; **22.11:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **22.20:** Princeton Physics; **22.22:** Bettmann/Getty Images; **22.29:** Eid Ahmed; **22.30:** Dorling Kindersley ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; **22.31:** Paul G. Hewitt.

Chapter 23

p. 508: (1) Paul G. Hewitt; (2) Lillian Lee Hewitt; (3) Ed van den Berg; (4) Pat Hall, City College of San Francisco; **p. 509:** Pictorial Press/Alamy Stock Photo; **23.2:** Addison Wesley Longman, Inc./Pearson; **23.3:** Billy Hustace/The Image Bank Unreleased/Getty Images; **23.6:** Tim Ridley/Dorling Kindersley ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; **23.10:** Tim Ridley/Dorling Kindersley ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; **23.15:** Paul G. Hewitt; **23.16:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **23.17:** Addison Wesley Longman, Inc./Pearson; **23.18:** Addison Wesley Longman, Inc./Pearson; **23.19:** David Hsouden; **23.20:** Pat Hall, City College of San Francisco; **23.23:** Paul G. Hewitt.

Chapter 24

p. 532: (1) Fred Myers; (2) Gayle Laird; (3) Paul G. Hewitt; (4) Alan Davis; **p. 533:** INTERFOTO/Alamy Stock Photo; **24.2:** Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs; **24.4:** Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs; **24.6:** Duane Ackerman; **24.10:** Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs; **24.11:** STR/AP images; **24.12:** John Suchocki; **24.18:** Addison Wesley Longman, Inc./Pearson; **24.23:** Jamenpercy/Fotolia; **24.24:** Martin Oeggerli/Science Source; **p. 546:** Guy Croft SciTech/Alamy Stock Photo.

Chapter 25

p. 550: (1) Lillian Lee Hewitt; (2) Alok Prakash; (3) Kobus Nel; (4) Alan Davis; **p. 551:** Georgios Kollidas/Fotolia; **25.5:** John A. Suchocki; **25.13:** Will Maynez; **25.15:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **25.16:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **25.18:** Pat Hall, City College of San Francisco; **25.21:** Jimmy Matsler.

Chapter 26

p. 569: Ludmila Hewitt; **p. 570:** (1) CNES French Space Agency; (2, 3) Paul G. Hewitt; (4) Rick Lucas; (5) Paul Doherty; **p. 571:** GL Archive/Alamy Stock Photo; **26.4a:** Linda Novak; **26.4b:** Bruce Novak; **p. 75:** U. S. Patent Office; **26.9:** Dean Baird; **26.11:** Paul G. Hewitt; **23.12:** Diane Schiumo/Fundamental Photographs; **26.13:** Diane Schiumo/Fundamental Photographs; **26.18:** Dean Baird; **26.21:** Ralph C. Eagle/Science Source; **26.24:** Addison Wesley Longman, Inc./Pearson.

Chapter 27

p. 592: (1) Eric Muller; (2) vario images GmbH &Co.KG/Alamy Stock Photo; (3, 4) Peter Lang; (5) Joy Wetherhold; **p. 593:** Emilio Segrè Visual Archives/American Institute of Physics; **27.3:** Cordelia Molloy/Science Source; **27.4:** Hu Meidor; **27.10:** Dave Vasquez; **p. 598:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **27.12:** Paul G. Hewitt; **27.13:** Dave Vasquez; **27.14:** Paul G. Hewitt; **27.15:** Corbin17/Alamy Stock Photo; **27.17:** Hu Meidor; **27.18:** Mark Rutledge/Fotolia; **27.20:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **p. 603:** Paul G. Hewitt; **27.20:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **27.23:** Shannon Stent/E+/Getty Images; **27.24:** Stephen Mcsweeny/Shutterstock; **p. 608:** Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 609:** Fe Davis.

Chapter 28

p. 612: (1) Paul G. Hewitt; (2) Dean Baird; (3) Fred Myers; (4) Cathy Barthelemy; **p. 613:** Emilio Segrè Visual Archives/American Institute of Physics/Science Source; **28.8:** Paul G. Hewitt; **28.11:** Bill Bachman/Alamy Stock Photo; **28.12:** Institute of Paper Science & Technology; **p. 618:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **28.20a:** Ted Mathieu; **28.20b:** ESA/NASA; **28.23:** Robert Greenler; **p. 623:** North Wind Picture Archives/Alamy Stock Photo; **28.37:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **28.43:** Sigurd/Fotolia; **28.47:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **p. 631:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **28.52:** Paul G. Hewitt; **28.54:** Duane Ackerman; **p. 638:** (left) Paul G. Hewitt; (right) Milo Patterson; **p. 639:** (top) Paul G. Hewitt; (center) Barbara Thomas; (bottom) Lillian Lee Hewitt.

Chapter 29

p. 642: (1) Robert Greenler; (2) Paul G. Hewitt; (3) Michael Dreyfuss; (4) Janie Head; **p. 643:** Paul G. Hewitt; **29.1:** Dudarev Mikhail/Shutterstock; **29.7:** PSSC Physics ©1965, Education Development Center, Inc.; D.C. Heath & Company; **29.10:** Ken Kay/Fundamental Photographs; **29.12b:** Science History Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **29.14:** Paul G. Hewitt; **29.14:** PSSC Physics ©1965, Education Development Center, Inc.; D.C. Heath & Company; **29.22:** Fred Myers; **29.24:** GIPhotoStock/Science Source; **p. 653:** Marshall Ellenstein; **29.28:** angelo lano/Shutterstock; **29.35:** Paul G. Hewitt; **29.36:** Diane Schiumo Hirsch/Fundamental Photographs; **29.42:** Marshall Ellenstein; **29.43:** Philippe Plailly/Science Source.

Chapter 30

p. 664: (1) Bloomberg/Getty Images; (2) Paul G. Hewitt; (3) Esther Kutnick; (4, 5) Stuart Kohlhagen; **p. 665:** Everett Collection Inc/Alamy Stock Photo; **30.6a:** GIPhotoStock/Science Source; **30.6b-d:** Department of Physics, Imperial College London/Science Source; **30.13:** Mark A. Schneider/Science Source; **30.14:** Aaron Haupt/Science Source; **30.17:** Jake Hendricks; **30.23:** Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs; **p. 682:** (left) Directphoto Collection/Alamy Stock Photo; (right) Ted Kinsman/Science Source; **p. 683:** Alex Segre/Alamy Stock Photo.

Chapter 31

p. 686: (1) Neil Chapman; (2) Eckerd College; (3) Anne Cox; (4) Craig Dawson; **p. 687:** SSPL/Getty Images; **p. 692:** Archive Pics/Alamy Stock Photo; **31.4:** Amy Snyder, Exploratorium; **31.5:** Albert Rose; **31.7:** Paul G. Hewitt; **31.8:** Paul G. Hewitt; **p. 695:** Meggers Gallery/AIP/Science Source; **31.9:** GIPhotoStock/Science Source; **31.10:** Will & Deni McIntyre/Science Source; **31.11:** P. G. Merli, G. F. Missiroli, and G. Pozzi. "On the Statistical Aspect of Electron Interference Phenomena," *American Journal of Physics*, Vol. 44, No 3, March 1976. © 1976 by the American Association of Physics Teachers; **31.12:** Dr. Tony Brain/Science Source; **p. 699:** Segre Collection/AIP/Science Source; **p. 701:** (top right) Archive Pics/Alamy Stock Photo; (bottom left) InFocus/Alamy Stock Photo; (bottom right) NOAA.

Chapter 32

p. 707: Jean Hurrell; **p. 708:** (1, 2) Paul G. Hewitt; (3) Dean Zollman; (4) Art Hobson; **p. 709:** Smith Archive/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 710:** Library of Congress Prints and Photographs Division Washington [LC-DIG-ggbain-36570]; **32.4:** Hai Ellen Huff; **32.6:** Carlos Clarivan/Science Source; **p. 717:** Bettmann/Getty Images; **p. 720:** Fabrice Coffrini/Staff/Getty Images.

Chapter 33

p. 724: (1) Stanley Micklavzina; (2) Minemero/Fotolia; (3) Roger Rassool; (4) Pat Hall, City College of San Francisco; **p. 725:** Hi-Story/Alamy Stock Photo; **33.1:** National Library of Medicine; **33.5:** Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs; **33.6:** The Asahi Shimbun/Getty Images; **33.8:** Charles D. Winters/Science Source; **33.9:** iStockphoto/Thinkstock; **33.10:** Jerry Nulk and Sra Joshua Baker; **33.11:** Fred Myers; **33.18a:** Wellphoto/Fotolia; **33.18b:** Roger Rassool; **33.20:** Lillian Lee Hewitt; **33.21:** Ernest Orlando; **33.22:** Richard Wareham Fotografie/Alamy Stock Photo.

Chapter 34

p. 748: (1) Science History Images/Alamy Stock Photo; (2) SPL/Science Source; (3) AKG/Science Source; (4) Argonne National laboratory/Science Source; (5) World History Archive/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.7:** Argonne National laboratory/Science Source; **34.8:** Argonne National Laboratory; **34.12:** Johannes Bohnacker/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 761:** Tim Boyle/Staff/Getty Images.

Chapter 35

p. 771: April Dixon; **p. 772:** (1, 3) Paul G. Hewitt; (2) PictureLux/The Hollywood Archive/Alamy Stock Photo; (4) Mark A. Thompson; **p. 773:** Paul G. Hewitt; **35.21:** Mark Paternostro/John F. Kennedy Space Center/NASA; **35.25:** Mike Lucas; **35.26:** Stanford Linear Accelerator Center/Science Source; **35.28:** Gilles Paire/Fotolia; **p. 800:** Jane Jukes.

Chapter 36

p. 802: (1, 4) Paul G. Hewitt; (2) Lillian Lee Hewitt; (3) NASA; **p. 803:** (left) CTK/Alamy Stock photo; (right) R. Hahn; (bottom) Caltech/UPI/Alamy Stock Photo; **36.17:** LIGO Scientific Collaboration; **p. 816:** Zephyrhills Skydiving photographer.

Author Profile

p. 818-819: Paul G. Hewitt.

This page is intentionally left blank

Index

A

AAPT. *See* American Association of Physics Teachers
Aberration, 633–634
Abrams, Bob, 570
Abrams, Emily, 230
Absolute temperature, 331, 372
Absolute zero, 348, 375, 406–407
Absorption
  emission spectra and, 713
  lines, 671–672
  of radiant energy, 373–374
Absorption spectra, 671–672
AC. *See* Alternating current
Academy of Philadelphia, 483
Acceleration, 52
  centripetal, 175
  free fall and, 93–94
  linear motion and, 68–71
  net force and, 86–88, 92, 94–96
  nonfree fall and, 94–96
  Stanford Linear Accelerator, 387, 792
  tangential, 175
Achromatic lenses, 633
Acid etching, 281
Ackerman, Emily, 446
Acoustics, 452. *See also* Sound
Action force, 107–109, 111–112
Adams, J. C., 222–223
Addition of velocities, 788–790
Additive manufacturing, 290
Additive primary colors, 596–597
Adhesion, of water, 316–317
Adiabatic processes, 409
African elephant, 293
Age of Reason, 223
Air. *See also* Atmosphere
  buoyancy of, 332–333
  drag, 88, 94–96, 138
    gravitational fields and, 218–219
    projectile motion and, 235–239, 248
  greenhouse effect and, 377
  lift in, 335
  resistance, 86, 88, 93–97
  sound in, 448–452
Aircraft, 86, 111, 416
  carbon fiber and, 287
  circular loops, 178
  gases and, 330, 335
  sound and, 438–440, 447, 457
  zero-emission, 162
Airport security, 761
Akasaki, Isamu, 677
Alexander's dark band, 626–627
Alexander the Great, 46
Alexandria, Egypt, 23–24, 26
Alice in Wonderland, 260
Alpha Centauri, 788
Alpha rays, 727–728
Alternating current (AC), 515–516, 554–555
  adapter, 559
Altimeter, 330
Aluminum, 263, 488, 536
  buoyant force and, 310
  density of, 284
AM. *See* Amplitude modulation
Amano, Hiroshi, 677
Amber effect, 710
American Academy of Arts and Sciences, 347
American Association of Physics Teachers (AAPT), 65, 231, 482, 613, 665
  of Connecticut, 325
American Civil War, 562, 789
American Communist Party, 427
American Institute of Physics, 447
Ammeter, 542
Ammonia, 272, 407
Amorphous, 282
Ampere, Andre Marie, 510, 533
Amperes, 510, 512, 519
Amplifier, 489
Amplitude, 429–431, 434–436
Amplitude modulation (AM)
  broadcast, 646
  radio, 338, 429–430, 573–574
  radio receiver and, 460, 646
Amu. *See* Atomic mass unit
Analog signal, 474–475
Anderson, Carl, 795
Anderson, Matt, 84
Anecdotal evidence, 36
Aneroid barometer, 330
Angle of attack, 335
Angle of incidence, 615–616, 618, 627
Angle of reflection, 615–616, 627
Angular momentum, 191–194
Angular speed. *See* Rotational speed
Angular velocity, 174
Animals, 292, 545
Anode, 711
Antarctic, 105, 358, 379
Antibiotics, 36, 147
Antigravity, 223
Antimatter, 273–275
Antinodes, 434
Antinoise technology, 458–459
Antiparticle, 273–274, 728, 795
Antiquark, 273
Anti-science, 37
Ants, 358
Apollo Program, 85
Aqueducts, 305
Arbor Scientific, 235
Arches, 288–290
Archimedes, 23, 158
  principle of, 308–309, 332
Arctic, 289, 358, 368, 379
Area
  pressure and, 311–312
  scaling and, 291–293
Argon, 266–267
Aristarchus, 26–29
Aristotle, 31–32, 47–48, 301
  acceleration and, 93, 96
  matter and, 259
  on motion, 45–46
Armagh Observatory, 467
Armature, 555
Art, science and, 35–36
Artificial transmutation, 740
Asia, 353, 358
Astigmatism, 633–634
Astrodome, Houston, 289
Astronauts, 91, 194, 358. *See also* International Space Station
  Hall of Fame, 231
  S. Kelly, 38, 181
  S. Ride, 231
  weightlessness and, 211–212
Astronomy, 23–29, 37
Astrophysics, 665, 808
  Bell Burnell and, 467
Atmosphere, 325–326
  barometers and, 328–330
  color of, 600–605
  condensation and, 390–391
  humidity and, 390
  meteorology and, 409–412
  parcels and, 410–412
  refraction and, 619, 621
  tides and, 216
Atmospheric pressure, 326–330
Atomic bonding, 282
Atomic mass, 270–271
Atomic mass unit (amu), 270–271
Atomic nucleus, 32, 260, 263–266, 269–273
  Bohr, N., and, 709, 714–719
  discovery of, 709–710
  nucleons, 732–735
  radioactivity and, 725–726
    half-life, 735–736
    neutrinos, 728–729
    quarks, 732–733
  strong force and, 732–735
Atomic pile. *See* Nuclear reactors
Atomic spectra, 274, 713–714
Atoms
  antimatter and, 273–275
  atomic hypothesis, 259–260
  Bohr, N., model of, 714–715
  characteristics of, 260–262
  compounds and, 272–273
  correspondence principle and, 719–720
  crystal structure and, 281–283
  dark matter and, 274–275
  imaging and, 262–264
  isotopes of, 270–271
  molecules and, 271–272
  nuclear fission
    breeder reactor and, 755–756
    induced, 750
    introduction to, 750–752
    mass-energy equivalence, 758–761
    power and, 756–757
    reactors and, 752–755
  nuclear fusion and, 396–397, 762–765
  periodic table and, 266–270
  quantum mechanics and, 717–719
  relative sizes of, 269–270
  structure of, 264–266
Aurora australis, 545
Aurora borealis, 545
Automobile
  acceleration and, 68–69
  energy and, 149–150, 154, 158, 160, 163
  heat engine and, 413–416
  internal energy and, 376
  momentum and, 93
Autostereoscopy, 658
Average force, 128–129
Average speed, 66–67

B

Bacon, Francis, 31
Bacteria, 545
Baird, Dean, 65, 386, 577, 582, 603
Baker, Nicholas, 709
Ball bearings, 281
Balmer, Johann Jakob, 709, 713–714
Balsa wood, 281
Barbells, 148–149
Bardin, Tsing, 300
Barish, Barry, 803
Barometer, 265, 301, 328–330
Baseball, 106
  bat, 183, 186, 455
  elasticity and, 285
  momentum and, 128–130, 132
  projectile motion and, 236–237, 243, 249
  rotational motion, 183, 186
Basic Physics (Ford, K. W.), 447
Basic science, 37–38
Bats, 452
Battery, 162–163
  circuits and, 520–524
  life of, 510
  terminals, 500

Beats, sound and, 459–461
BEBC. *See* Big European Bubble Chamber
Becquerel, Henri, 725
Bell, Alexander Graham, 405, 469
Bell Burnell, Jocelyn, 467
Bell Laboratories, 375
Belts, James A., 545
Berlin Observatory, Germany, 223
Bernoulli, Daniel, 334, 336, 474
Bernoulli's principle, 333–337
Beta rays, 727–728
Bifocal eyeglasses, 483
Big Bang, 274, 375, 811
Big Crunch, 811
Big European Bubble Chamber (BEBC), 738
Bilkent Erzurum Laboratory School, 482
Billiard balls, 134, 138, 370
Bimetallic strip, 355, 525
Binary system, 475
Binoculars, 628
Bioluminescent, 674
Biomagnetism, 545
Birefringence, 655
Black color, 594–600, 606
Black holes, 220–222, 803, 809, 812–813
Blank bullets, 133
Blind-spot, 583, 646
The Blog of Phyz, 65
Blomberg, Sara, 302
Blood pressure, 303
Blue color, 593, 595–606
Blueshift, 437
Blue whale, 470
Bohr, Harald, 709
Bohr, Niels, 701, 709, 714–719, 749
Boiling, 391–393
Boron, 268, 753
Boson, 89, 720
Boston University, 575
Bouncing, 369, 778
  momentum and, 131–132
Bowen, Mark, 728
Bow waves, 437–438
Boyle, Robert, 285, 331
Boyle's law, 330–331
Brage, Barbara, 404
Brage, Tomas, 204, 207, 404
Bragg, William Henry, 281
Bragg, William Lawrence, 281
Brahe, Tycho, 244–245
Brain hemorrhaging, 303
Braking, magnetic, 560
Brand, Howie, 124, 131, 404
Brass, 147, 281
  instruments, 435, 447, 469, 472
  temperature and, 355
Breeder reactor, 755–756
British Royal Society. *See* Royal Society
British system of measure
  density and, 283–284
  pressure, 327
  temperature and, 348
British thermal unit (BTU), 351
Bronze Age, 282
Brooklyn College, 613
Brown, Robert, 260
Brownian motion, 260, 691
Bruno, Giordano, 48
BTU. *See* British thermal unit
Bubble chamber, 737–738
Bubbles, 316
Buckminsterfullerene, 258
Building the H Bomb (Ford, K. W.), 447
Buoyancy, 307–310
  of air, 332–333
Buoyant force, 307–312
Bush, George W., 325

C

Cable cars, 156
Cadmium, 268, 753
Calcite, 655, 674
California Academy of Sciences, San Francisco, 387
California Gold Rush, 131
California Institute of Technology (CalTech), 642, 803
California Polytechnic State University, 205
California Space Institute, 231
Calorie, 351–353
Caltech. *See* California Institute of Technology
Cambridge University, 405, 571
Camera, 693
  light and, 617, 625, 630–633
  pinhole camera, 631
Canada, 125, 214, 353, 543, 756
Canadian Rocky Mountains, 606
Candle flame, 159, 371, 615, 654
Cannonballs
  CM and, 187
  momentum and, 128, 133
  projectile motion and, 232–235, 239, 243
Cannon-boring experiment, 349
Capacitor, 500, 516, 553
Cape Canaveral, Florida, 244
Capillarity, 294, 316–317
Carbon, 268
  filaments, 287
  nanotubes, 280
  resistance and, 511
Carbon dating, 740–743
Carbon dioxide, 377
Carlin, George, 261
Carnegie Institution of Washington, 593
Carnot, Nicolas Léonard Sadi, 414
Cassini spacecraft, 249
Catenary, 288–289
Cathode-ray tube (CRT), 711–712
Cavendish, Henry, 207
Cavendish apparatus, 204
CCD. *See* Charge coupling device
CDC. *See* Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
Cell phones, 283, 561, 573–574, 693
Cells, biology of
  radiation and, 731–732
  surface area and, 293
Cell theory, 32
Celsius scale
  absolute zero and, 406–407
  thermometer, 348
Center
  of Earth, 208–210, 217–219, 239, 241–244
  of galaxies, 220–223
  of Moon, 216
Center of gravity (CG), 186–191
Center of mass (CM), 186–191
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), 742
Centigrade thermometer, 348
Centrifugal force, 179–182
Centripetal acceleration, 175
Centripetal force, 177–178
CERN. *See* European Organization for Nuclear Research
Certitude, 23, 534
Cesium, 268, 756
CG. *See* Center of gravity
Chain reaction, 750–754, 757
Challenger shuttle, 231
Chaotic systems, 701
Charge. *See* Electric current
Charge coupling device (CCD), 693
Charging, by induction, 490–492
Chemical reaction, 272
Chemistry, 37–38
Chernobyl reactor, 753, 756
Chiaverina, Chris, 446
Chinook wind, 410
Chlorine, 272–273, 282, 357, 378, 394
Choate Rosemary Hall, Connecticut, 325
The Choice is Ours, 173
Cholera epidemic, 414
Christa McAuliffe Award, 325
Christian doctrine, 46–47
Christianity, 85
Chromatic aberration, 633
Church, 27, 46–48, 85, 551
  Pascal and, 301
Circuits
  breakers, 525
  electric current and, 516–518
  overloading of, 523–524
  parallel, 520–524
  resistors and, 513, 523
  safety fuses and, 524–525
  series, 520–521
Circular motion, 173–177
Circular orbits, 240–242
Circumference, 93–94, 173, 177
  of Earth, 23–26, 812
  orbits and, 716–717
  relativity and, 811–812
Cirrus clouds, 326
City College, San Francisco, 231, 367, 643, 724
Clarinet, 435, 469–473
Classical Electricity and Magnetism, 613
Climate change, 378–379
  meteorology, 409–412
Cloud chamber, 737, 740
Clouds, 162
  atmosphere and, 325–326
  color of, 604–605
  condensation and, 390–391
  heat transfer and, 370–371, 375–376, 378
  lenticular, 411
CM. *See* Center of mass
Coal, 156–157, 162, 292
  power plant, 730, 794
Cobalt, 281, 536, 742
Cochlea nerve canal, 450
Coffee, 373
Cohen, Nathan, 575
Coherent light, 677–679
Cohesion, 294, 317
Cole, K. C., 428
Colleges
  Brooklyn College, 613
  City College, 231, 367, 643, 724
  Eckerd College, 686
  King's College, 571
  Mansfield College, 467
  Marischal College, 571
  Muhlenberg College, 592
  Santa Rosa Junior College, 466
  Thaddeus Stevens College, 324
  Trinity College, 85, 571
  Vassar College, 593
Collision. *See also* Waves
  elastic, 135–136
  inelastic, 135–136
Color
  complementary, 597–598, 602, 605
  introduction to, 593–594
  mixing of light and, 596–598
  pigments and, 598–600
  primary colors, 597–600
  selective reflection, 594–595
  selective transmission, 595–596
  single-color thin-film interference, 651–654
  of sky, 600–605
  water and, 605–606
Color spectrum, 573–574, 584
  rainbows and, 625–627
Combustion engine, 160
Compass, 216
Compass needle, 535
Complementarity, of particles, 700–701
Complementary colors, 597–598, 602, 605
Components, of vectors, 113–116
Compounds, 272–273
Compression. *See also* Pressure
  arches and, 288–290
  solids and, 286–288
  of waves, 432
Compressive forces, 303
Computers, 249, 387, 501
  monitor of, 283
  programming and, 281, 301
Conceptual Academy, 426
Conceptual Physics (Hewitt, Paul G.), 45, 231, 259, 282, 325
  fifth edition, 367, 427
  first edition, 447, 643
Condensation, 389–391
  thermodynamics and, 410–411, 415
Condensation coils, 395–396
Conduction, 367–368
Conduction electrons, 510, 517
Conductors, 488–490, 497

Cones
of eye, 584–585
shock waves and, 439–440
Conservation of charge, 485–486
Constants
Planck's, 666, 688–690
solar, 379
spring, 285
universal gravitation, 690
universal gravity and, 207–208
Constructive interference, 434–435, 438, 457–459
Contact, charging by, 490
Convection, 369–371
Convector, 375
Converging lenses, 629–632
Cooling
Newton's law of, 376
radiation and, 375–376
Coordinate axes, 778
Copernican theory, 27
Copernicus, Nicolaus, 27, 47, 56–57
Copley Medal, 483, 509
Copper, 281, 488
density of, 284
sheet, 560
wire, 511
Coriolis effect, 353
Cork, 329, 332, 367, 381
Cornell University, 665
Corpuscles, 687–688, 691
Correspondence principle, 719–720, 796
Cosmic rays, 544–545
Coulomb, 510
Coulomb, Charles, 487, 533
Coulomb's law, 487–488
Covalent bond, 271
Cox, Anne, 686
Crazy Horse, 306
Crests, 429, 433, 719. *See also* Waves
Crewe, Albert, 262–263
Crick, Francis, 282, 647
Critical angle, of light, 627–629
Critical mass, 751, 764
Crookes, Sir William, 711
Crowe, Richard, 802
CRT. *See* Cathode-ray tube
Crystalline lens, 583
Crystal structure, 281–283
Cubic meter, 283
Cue-ball system, 134
Cumulus clouds, 326
Curie, Madame Marie, 725
Curie, Pierre, 725
Curiosity rover, 204–205
Current. *See* Electric current
Curtis, George, 664
Curtis, Jean, 550
Curvature, of Earth, 237–240, 242
Cyan, yellow, magenta, and black (CYMK), 599–600, 653
Cyclones, 410
CYMK. *See* Cyan, yellow, magenta, and black

D

Dalton, John, 260
Dark energy, 223
Dark matter, 223, 274–275
Darwin, Charles, 33, 405
Davies Symphony Hall, San Francisco, 453
Da Vinci, Leonardo, 24, 292
Davis, Alan, 204
Davis, William, 532
Davy, Sir Humphry, 551
DC. *See* Direct current
Dead spots, 458
De Broglie, Louis, 695–697, 716–719
Deceleration, 69
Declaration of Independence, 483
De-excitation, 666–668, 673–675, 678–679
Degrees, 348
Denmark, 164, 244
Density
Boyle's law and, 330–331
solids and, 283–284
weight density, 283–284, 302–305, 308, 310
Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), 258, 647
damage of, 668, 689
radiation and, 731–732
structure of, 282
Department of Defense, U.S., 245
De Revolutionibus (Copernicus, N.), 47
Descartes, 301
Destructive interference, 434–436, 457–459
Deuterium, 270, 753, 759, 763–764
Dhayal, Marshal, 550
Diamond, 629
Dielectric, 500
Diffraction, 645–647
Diffraction fringes, 646, 659
Diffraction grating, 651
Diffraction patterns, 282–283
Diffuse reflection, 617–618
Digital signal, 474–475
Dijamco, Miriam, 466
Diodes, 516
Dirac, Paul A. M., 226
Direct current (DC), 515–516
Disorder
dispersion and, 416–417
entropy and, 418
Dispersion, 624–626, 629
energy and, 416–417
Displacement method, 307, 309, 312
Distance, 27–29
free fall and, 71–76
gravity and, 209–210
inverse-square law and, 209–210
radial, 174–177, 181, 183, 192, 206–208
speed and, 65–67
work and, 148–150
Diverging lens, 629–630, 633
Diving board, 286
DNA. *See* Deoxyribonucleic acid
Dobson, John, 795
Dogs, 386, 469, 584
sweat and, 388
Doherty, Paul, 104–105, 387, 570
Dolphin, 454–455, 460
Doping, 489
Doppler, Christian, 436
Doppler effect, 436–437, 672, 784
Double-slit experiment, 648–651, 694–695
Drag, 56
air resistance, 86, 88, 93–97
Dreyfuss, Bree Barnett, 642
Drift velocity, 517
Dry-rock geothermal power, 163
Du Châtelet, Émile, 147
Dwarf planet, 223
Dynamic equilibrium, 56

E

Earphones, 458–459
Earplugs, 469
Earth
angular momentum of, 194
center of, 208–210, 217–219, 239, 241–244
circumference of, 23–26, 812
curvature of, 237–240, 242
distance to Moon, 27–28, 677
distance to Sun, 28–29
escape speed and, 248–249
gravitational field of, 218–219
gravity and, 152–153
magnetic field of, 543–555
motion of, 45–49, 56–57
radiation and, 367–368, 370–371, 376
size of, 23–26
solar eclipses, 580–583
spacetime and, 781–787
surface of, 89–91, 155, 161–162
terrestrial radiation and, 372–373
thermonuclear fusion and, 762–765
tides and, 216
universal gravitation and, 207–208, 222–223
uranium and, 751–752, 756
Earthquakes, 432
Richter scale and, 469
Eckerd College, 686
Eclipses, 26–30, 33, 580–583
Eddies, 334
Edinburgh University, 571
Edison, Thomas A., 162, 164, 347
incandescent bulb and, 518, 675
Edison Machine Works, 533
Efficiency, in energy, 159–161
ideal efficiency, 414–416
Eggshell, catenaries and, 289–290
Einstein, Albert, 32–33, 259, 677, 749
Brownian motion and, 260
corpuscles and, 687–688, 691
general theory of relativity, 206, 467
mass and energy, 793–795
Nobel Prize and, 691–692, 709
quantum theory and, 687–688, 691–692
relativity and, 535, 773, 775–779
spacetime and, 778–781
theory of gravitation, 220
unified field theory and, 487
Einsteinian gravitation, 813–814
Elastic collision, 135–136
Elastic film, 315
Elasticity, 284–285, 448, 455
Elastic limit, 285
Electrically polarized, 492–494
Electric current
AC and, 515–516
circuits and, 516–518
overloading of, 523–524
parallel, 520–524
safety fuses and, 524–525
series, 520–521
DC and, 515–516
electromagnetic induction and, 553–561
flow of charge, 509–510
magnetism and, 538–539
Ohm's law and, 512–515
power and, 519–520
resistance and, 511–512
voltage sources, 510–511
Electric dipoles, 493
Electric guitar, 553
Electric lighting, 416
Electric meters, 541–542
Electric motor, 163, 416, 542–543
Electric shielding, 496–497
Electrodes, 337, 513, 533, 667, 675
power production and, 555–556
Electrolysis, 162–163
Electromagnetic induction
AC and, 554–555
Faraday's law and, 553, 556, 561–562
field induction, 561–562
generators and, 554–555
introduction to, 551–552
magnetic braking and, 560
power production and, 555–556
power transmission, 560–561
self-induction, 559–560
transformers and, 556–559
Electromagnetic spectrum, 372, 573–575
Electromagnetic waves, 371–373, 572–573
Electromagnets, 539–540
Electronic musical instruments, 472
Electron microscope, 262–264, 647, 696–697
Electron neutrino, 728
Electrons, 263–265, 267, 269–273
atoms and, 155
discovery of, 710–713
light emission and, 665–670, 672–676
quantized energy levels of, 716–717
quantum mechanics, 717–719
Electron volt, 750
Electrostatics
charge conservation and, 485–486
charges and, 484–485
charging by induction, 490–492
conductors, 488–490
Coulomb's law, 487–488
force field and, 494–497
forces of, 483–484
insulator and, 488–490
PE and, 498–502
polarization and, 492–494

Elements
atoms and, 265–266
periodic table of, 266–270
transmutation and, 738–740
Elephants, 91, 292, 448, 709
scaling and, 290–294
Elizabeth (Queen), 533, 710
Ellenstein, Marshall, 178, 642–643
Elliptical orbits, 242–243
El Niño, 412
Emerson, Ralph Waldo, 418
Emission
of light, 665–666
of radiant energy, 372–373
spectrum, 667–670
Empedocles, 687
Empire State Building, 187
EMV. *See* Europay, Mastercard, Visa
Energy, 147. *See also* Thermodynamics
conservation of, 156–158
satellites and, 246–247
dispersion of, 416–417
efficiency and, 159–161
geothermal energy, 163
KE and, 153
machines and, 158–159
mass-energy equivalence, 758–761
mechanical, 151
PE and, 151–153
phase changes and, 395–398
power, 150–151
recycled energy, 164
in relativity, 793–796
sources of, 161–164
work, 148–150
work-energy theorem, 154–155
Engine, 160
heat engine, 413–416
Enrico Fermi Institute, 262
Entropy, 418–419
Equator, 353
Equilibrium
rule, 53–54, 56
stability and, 189–191
Equivalence, principle of, 804–805
Eratosthenes, of Cyrene, 23–26, 29
Escape speed, 247–249
Escape velocity, 221, 247
Etching, with acid, 281
Ether, 272, 774–775
Ethyl alcohol, 284
Euclid, 46, 687
Euclidean geometry, 46, 690, 810–812
Europay, Mastercard, Visa (EMV) chip, 537
Europe, 353, 515
European Organization for Nuclear Research (CERN), 720, 738
Evans, Bart, 550
Evans, Jill, 84, 160, 508
Evaporation, 387–389
heat of, 397
Excellence in Physics Teaching, 325
Excellence in Science Teaching, 325
Excitation, of light, 666–668
Expansion. *See* Thermal expansion
Expansion joints, 354–355
Exploratorium, San Francisco, 393, 426–427, 532, 692
Science Snackbook, 105
Water Freezer exhibit, 386
Explorer I satellite, 545
Eye. *See* Human eye

F

Fact, 30–34
Fahrenheit, Daniel Gabriel, 348
Fahrenheit scale, 347–348, 351
absolute zero and, 406–407
Falcon Heavy rocket, 150
Falkirk Wheel, Scotland, 300, 311
Family, of elements. *See* Group
Faraday, Michael, 347, 551, 555
Faraday's law, 553, 556, 561–562
FDA. *See* Food and Drug Administration
Feathers, 347, 368
color and, 600–601, 651
Fermat's principle, of least time, 614, 618–621, 623
Fermi, Enrico, 748–749, 752–753
Feynman, Joan, 545
Feynman, Richard, 258–259, 274–275, 642
The Feynman Lectures on Physics (Ford, K. W.), 447
Fiberglass, 368
Fictitious force, 180–181
Field induction, 561–562
Finnegans Wake (James J.), 732
Firewalker, 368
First law of motion, 50–51, 56–57, 192, 309
frame of reference and, 179, 184
First law of thermodynamics, 408–412
work and, 155
First overtone, 471
Fish, 281, 358–359, 454
Fisheye lens, 628
Fission. *See* Nuclear fission
FitzGerald, George F., 774–775, 790
Flanges, 287
Flashlights, 510, 553, 806
Flotation, 311–313
Fluids. *See* Liquids
Fluorescence, 672–674
Fluorescent lamp, 654, 675–676
Flute, 435, 447, 469, 472
Flying squirrel, 95–96
FM radio. *See* Frequency modulation
Focal length, 630, 632
Focal point, 630, 632
Fog, 391. *See also* Clouds
Food and Drug Administration (FDA), U.S., 742
Force, 52–53, 85–86. *See also* Electrostatics; Magnetism
impulse and, 127
Newton's third law, 105–106
pressure and, 301–302
universal gravitation and, 207–208, 222–223
vectors, 306–307
work and, 148–150
Forced vibration, 455–456
Force field, 217. *See also* Gravitational fields
electric field and, 494–498
Force pairs, 107
Ford, Kenneth W., 446–447, 699, 717, 772
Fosbury flop, 188
Fossil fuel, 37, 162, 556
Foucault, Jean, 428
Fourier, Jean Baptiste Joseph, 473–474
Fourier analysis, 473–474
Fovea, 583
Fractals, 575
Fractured rock, 163
Frame of reference, 773–777, 779–782, 785–791
Franklin, Benjamin, 483–484, 491, 710–711
Franklin, Rosalind, 282, 647
Franklin stove, 483
Fraunhofer lines, 672
Free fall, 71–76, 93–94
Freezing, 393–395
Freight car, 135, 141
French horns, 472
Frequency, 429–430, 433–437
of radiation, 372–373, 377
Frequency modulation (FM)
broadcasts, 430, 460, 646
radio, 573–574
Fresco, Jacque, 172–173
Fresh water, 306, 311
density and, 283–284, 304
Friction, 48–50, 56–57
charging by, 490
free surface, 136
Newton's second law, 86–88
sliding friction, 87–88
static friction, 87–88
work and, 149, 152, 154–155, 158–161
Frisch, Otto, 748–749
Frost crystals, 375
Fuel cell, 160, 522
Fukushima, Japan, 753, 756
Fukushima nuclear power plant, 163
Fulcrum, 159, 185
Fuller, Buckminster, 258
Fundamental frequency, 471
Fundy, Bay of, 214
Fusion
control of, 764–765
heat of, 396–397
introduction to, 762–764
latent heat of, 397
thermonuclear fusion, 156, 264, 762–763, 765

G

Gadolinium, 536
Galaxies
centers of, 220–223
M87, 221
Virgo cluster, 221
Galileo, 27
acceleration and, 85, 93–94, 96
friction and, 136
inclined planes and, 47–49, 70–71
leaning tower and, 31–32, 47
pendulum and, 428
scaling and, 290
speed and, 65, 70–71
telescopes and, 246
thermometer and, 347
Galvani, Luigi, 541
Galvanometer, 541–543
Gamma rays, 372, 501, 573–574, 727–728, 742
detection and, 736–737
Ganezer, Ken, 532
Gases. *See also* Phase changes
atmosphere and, 325–326
atmospheric pressure, 326–330
barometers and, 328–330
Bernoulli's principle, 333–337
Boyle's law, 330–331
buoyancy of air, 332–333
greenhouse, 162, 377–378, 756
interstellar, 267
noble, 266–267
plasma and, 337–338
streamlines and, 333–336
Gasoline, 284, 652–654
combustion of, 155
engine, 413–416
pumps, 486
Gateway Arch, St. Louis, 288
Geiger counter, 724, 736
Gell-Mann, Murray, 732
Generator effect, 554
Generators
circuits and, 520–524
induction and, 554–555
turbogenerator power, 555–556
Van de Graaff, 501, 509–510
Wimshurst, 482
wind and, 157
Genesis, 27
Geneva, Switzerland, 540, 720, 738
Geodesic, 811–812
Geography (Eratosthenes), 23
Geometry
Euclidean, 46, 690
relativity and, 810–812
Georgetown University, 593
Geothermal heat pump, 396
Geothermal power, 163
Germanium, 489
Germantown Academy in Pennsylvania, 447
Geysers, 391–392
Gilbert, William, 533, 710
Giraffe, 303
Glacial melting, 378
Glaciers, 358
Glasgow University, 405
Glass, 377
thermo, 380–381
Glastonbury School District, 325
Global Positioning System (GPS), 245, 575, 782, 802, 809
Global warming, 377–378
Glycerin, 284
Gobi desert, 358

Goddard, Robert H., 121
Gold, 281
  density of, 284
  displacement method and, 309
Golden Gate Bridge, San Francisco, 354
Gold-foil experiment, 712
Golf ball, 233, 237, 598, 753
  impact and, 128
Gotis, Theodore, 258
GPS. *See* Global Positioning System
Graphite, 752–753
Gravitation
  Einsteinian, 813–814
  Newtonian, 813–814
  theory of, 220
Gravitational fields, 217–220
  electric field and, 494–498
Gravitational force, 53, 55
Gravitational mass, 206
Gravitational potential energy, 152–153
Gravitational redshift, 807–809
Gravitational waves, 812–813
Gravity
  bending of light and, 805–807
  black holes and, 220–222
  circular orbit and, 240–242
  elliptical orbits and, 242–244
  free fall and, 71–72, 93–94
  gravitational fields and, 217–220
  inverse-square law and, 209–210
  Mercury and, 809–810
  new geometry and, 810–812
  Newtonian synthesis and, 206–207
  nonfree fall and, 94–96
  ocean tides and, 212–217
  pendulum and, 428–429
  red shift and, 807–809
  satellites and, 238–242
  simulation of, 180–182
  universal constant and, 207–208
  universal gravitation, 222–223
  universal law of, 205–207
  weight and, 210–212
  weightlessness and, 210–212
Greek literature, 23
Greek philosophers, 31, 259
Greenhouse effect, 377–378
Greenhouse gases, 162, 377–378, 756
Greenler, Robert, 642
Greenslade, Tom, 432
Greenwich Observatory, England, 223
Grey, Burl, 51, 53–54, 173
Grounding, 491
Group, of elements, 266–269
Guitar, 469, 471–472, 474
Gulf Stream, 353
Gunes, Bilal, 172
Gunpowder, 133, 347

H

Hafnium, 715
Hahn, Otto, 748–749
Hailstones, 294
Haldane, J. B. S., 290
Half Broke Horses (Walls, J.), 306
Half-life, of radioactivity, 735–736
Halley, Edmund, 206
Hamster, 294
Hang time, 76, 238
Harmonica, 483
Harmonic motion, 219, 428–429, 471
Harvard University, 347, 715, 808
Haugland, Ole Anton, 346
Hawaii, 163, 281, 643
Hawking, Stephen, 221
Hawley, Steven, 231
Hayden Planetarium, 665
H-bomb, 764
Head, Janie, 642
Heat. *See also* Thermodynamics
  calorie and, 351–353
  of fusion, 396–397
  internal energy and, 349–351
  measuring of, 351
  radiation, 371–372
    absorption of, 373–374
    emission of, 372–373
    night cooling and, 375–376
    reflection of, 374–375
  specific heat capacity, 351–354
  temperature and, 347–349
  thermal expansion and, 354–359
  transfer of
    climate change, 378–379
    conduction, 367–368
    control of, 380–381
    convection, 369–371
    greenhouse effect, 377–378
    Newton's law of cooling, 376
    radiation, 371–376
    solar power and, 379–380
  windchill and, 376
Heat engine, 413–416
Heat pump, 395–396
Heavy water, 753
Heisenberg, Werner, 698–699
Heisenberg's uncertainty principle, 686, 698–700
Heliocentric hypothesis, 26
Helium, 263, 266–267, 348
  absolute zero and, 407
  atom of, 485
  neon laser, 677–678, 680
Henry, Joseph, 551, 555
Herapathite, 655
Herbert, Don, 387
Hernandez, Richard, 446, 466
Hertz, 429–430
Hertz, Heinrich, 429, 561, 688
Hewish, Antony, 467
Hewitt, Alex, 124, 190
Hewitt, Dave, 525
Hewitt, Gracie, 466
Hewitt, Manuel, 351
Hewitt, Paul G., 31, 508, 686. *See also Conceptual Physics*
Hewitt, Stephanie, 802
Hewitt, Steve, 120
Hiatt, Tucker, 258
Higgs, Peter, 720
Higgs boson, 89, 720
Hindenburg disaster, 332
Hipschman, Ron, 204, 386–387, 393, 664
Hiroshima, Japan, 751
Hitler, Adolf, 687, 749, 773
Hobson, Art, 708
Holography, 658–659
Homebrew Computer Club, 387
Hooke, Robert, 285, 331, 356
Hooke's law, 285, 428
Horizontal force, 108, 112
  projectile motion and, 232–233
Horizontal range, 232, 236
Horsepower, 150
Horseshoe magnet, 534
Housden, David, 522
Hubisz, John, 280
Huff, Brad, 712
Human eye, 583–586
Human heart, 150
Humidity, 390
Hurrell, Phil, 508
Huygens, Christian, 643, 688
Huygens' principle, 643–645
Hybrid cars, 155
Hydraulic devices, 301
Hydraulic pistons, 314
Hydroelectric power, 162
Hydrogen
  atoms of, 162–163
  fuel cell, 162–163, 522
  isotopes of, 270–271
  model of, 263–264
  molecules and, 271–273
  size of, 269
Hydrogen sulfide, 271–272
Hypothesis, 26, 31–33

I

I-beam, 287
IBM Corporation, 263
Ice
  crystals, 356–357
  density of, 284
  freezing and, 393–395
Iceland, 163
ICPE. *See* International Commission on Physics Education
Ideal efficiency, 414–416
Ideal-gas conditions, 331
Ideal machine, 159
Igloos, 289
Imaging
  electrons and, 262–264
  MRI, 457, 540, 546
  NMRI, 546, 742
  SEM, 262–263
Impulse, 126–131
  work and, 148
Impulse-momentum relationship, 127–130
Incandescence, 670–671
Incandescent bulb, 518–519
Incandescent lamp, 670, 675
Inclined planes, 47–49, 70–71
Induced fission, 750
Induced voltage, 553–554, 557–560
Induction. *See also* Electromagnetic induction
  charging by, 490–492
  self-induction, 559–560
Inelastic
  collision, 135–136
  solids and, 284–285
Inertia
  frame of reference, 179
  Galileo and, 49
  moment of, 182
  personal essay on, 51
Infinity, 217
Infrared, 573–574
Infrared thermometer, 349, 373
Infrared waves, 371–373, 377, 578–579
Infrasonic, 448
Ingenuity helicopter, 205
In Love with Flying (Ford, K. W.), 447
Insects, 545
Instantaneous speed, 65–67, 70–72
Institutes
  for Advanced Study, Princeton, 773
  American Institute of Physics, 447
  California Space Institute, 231
  Caltech, 642, 803
  CERN, 720, 738
  Enrico Fermi Institute, 262
  MIT, 105, 347, 600, 803
  Radium Institute, 725
  Swiss Federal Institute of Technology, 773
  Zürich Research Laboratory, 263
Institutions de Physique (du Châtelet, E.), 147
Insulators, 367–368, 488–490
Intensity, of sound, 469–470
Interference, 457–459
  light and, 648–651
  single-color thin-film, 651–654
Interference pattern, 434–436
Interferometer, 774
Internal combustion, 160, 413–416
Internal energy, 349–350
  condensation and, 389
  heat transfer and, 373, 376
  thermal energy and, 407
International Commission on Physics Education (ICPE), 45
International Space Station (ISS), 90
  atmosphere and, 619
  centrifugal force and, 181
  fuel cells and, 163, 522
  GPS and, 245
  weightlessness and, 211–212
Internet, 26, 36, 475, 633, 659
Interstellar gases, 267
Inverse-square law, 209–210
  electric shielding and, 496–497
  Kepler's and, 246
Inverter, 560
Ions, 486
Iridescence, 643
Iridium, 268
  density of, 284
Iron, 281
  crystal of, 536
  density of, 283–284
  magnetic domains and, 536–537

Iron Age, 282
Isostasy, 312
Isotopes, 270–271
  mass and, 758–761
ISS. *See* International Space Station

J

Jahren, Hope, 280–281
Japan, 163, 751, 753, 756
Jefferson Memorial, U.S., 289
Jell-O gelatin, 212–213
Jet Propulsion Laboratory (JPL), 205
Jobs, Steve, 387
Johnson, Bay, 472
Johnson, Dan, 404
Jones, Evan, 324
Jones, Terrence, 346
Joules, 149, 488, 499
Joyce, James, 732
JPL. *See* Jet Propulsion Laboratory
J-tube, 371
Junk science, 158
Jupiter, 222, 246, 249
  escape speed and, 248

K

Kagan, David, 104, 708
Kahyaoglu, Z. Tugba, 482, 550
Karate, 130–131
KE. *See* Kinetic energy
Kelly, Scott, 38, 181, 783
Kelvin, Lord, 23, 348, 405, 407
Kelvin scale, 348, 372
  absolute zero and, 406–407
Kepler, Johannes, 26, 244–246, 356
Kepler's laws, of planetary motion, 244–246
Kilograms, 90–92, 207
Kilogram weight, 308
Kilojoules, 149
Kilopascals, 301, 327
Kilowatts, 150
Kinetic energy (KE), 147, 151, 153
  satellite motion and, 246–247
  temperature and, 349–350
King, Roger, 374, 708
King Kong, 292
King's College, London, 571
Krypton, 266–267
Kuiper belt, 223
Kumar, Shruti, 230

L

Lab Girl (Jahren, H.), 281
Ladybug, 179–180
Laminar flow, 334
Lamps
  emissions and, 675–677
  fluorescent, 654, 675–676
  incandescent, 670, 675
  LED, 338, 519–520, 654, 675–676
  mercury vapor, 667–670, 675–676
  sodium-vapor, 669
Large Hadron Collider, 540, 720
Large Synoptic Survey Telescope, 593
Laser. *See* Light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation
Laser-assisted in-situ keratomileusis (LASIK), 634
Laser interferometer gravitational wave observatory (LIGO), 803, 812–813
LASIK. *See* Laser-assisted in-situ keratomileusis
Latent heat
  of fusion, 397
  of vaporization, 397
Lateral inhibition, 585
Late Show, 105
Lavie, Elan, 482
Lavoisier, Antoine, 347
Laws, 31. *See also* Newton's laws
  Boyle's, 330–331
  conservation of momentum, 132–134
  Coulomb's, 487–488
  Hooke's, 285, 428
  inverse-square, 209–210, 246, 496–497
  of planetary motion, 244–246
  Snell's, 620
  of universal gravitation, 205–207
  of universal gravity, 205–207
  zeroth of thermodynamics, 418
Lead
  buoyant force and, 310
  density of, 284
  deposits, 217
Leaning Tower of Pisa, 32, 47, 96, 189, 804
Least time, principle of, 614, 618–621, 623
LED. *See* Light-emitting diode
Lee, Siu Bik, 631
Lee, Wai Tsan, 537
Leibniz, Gottfried, 147
Length contraction, 790–792
Lenses
  converging, 629–632
  defects in, 633–634
  diverging lens, 629–630, 633
  fisheye, 628
  image formation, 631–633
Lenticular clouds, 411
Lethal doses, of radiation, 731–732
Letterman, David, 105
Lever, 158–159
Lever arm, 185–186, 188, 190
Leverrier, Urbain, 222–223
LFTR. *See* Liquid fluoride thorium reactor
Librero, Darlene, 104
Light, 155. *See also* Color; Quantum theory
  bending of, 805–807
  critical angle of, 627–629
  diffraction, 645–647
  dispersion and, 624–626, 629
  double slit experiment and, 648–651
  electromagnetic spectrum, 573–575
  electromagnetic waves and, 572–573
  emission of, 665–666
    absorption spectra and, 671–672
    de-excitation, 666–668, 673–675, 678–679
    excitation and, 666–668
    fluorescence, 672–674
    incandescence, 670–671
    lamps, 675–677
    lasers and, 677–680
    phosphorescence, 674–675
    spectrum, 667–670
  holograms and, 658–659
  human eye and, 583–586
  Huygens' principle and, 643–645
  interference, 648–651
  inverse-square law and, 209
  lenses and, 629–634
  lunar eclipse and, 580–583
  Maxwell and, 571–573
  monochromatic, 649–652
  opaque materials, 579–580
  polarization and, 654–658
  rainbows and, 625–627
  reflection
    law of, 615–618
    total internal, 627–629
  refraction
    cause of, 622–623
    index of, 620–621
    introduction to, 618–620
    mirage and, 621
  shadows, 579–580
  solar eclipse and, 580–583
  speed of, 577–579
  superposition and, 648–651
  transparent materials, 575–577
Light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation (Laser), 677–680, 765
Light-emitting diode (LED), 338, 519–520, 599, 654, 675–676
Lightning rod, 483, 491–492
Light-year, 788–791
LIGO. *See* Laser interferometer gravitational wave observatory
Lim, Tenny, 204–205
Lincoln, James, 686
Linder, Anne, 44
Linder, Cedric, 44–45
Lindström, Christine, 146
Linear momentum, 191–192
Linear motion
  acceleration, 68–71
  average speed and, 66–67
  deceleration, 69
  free fall, 71–76
  instantaneous speed, 65–67, 70–72
  speed and, 65–67
  velocity and, 67–68
  velocity vectors and, 76–77
Linear polarization, 655
Lines, of electricity, 523–524
Lininger Markham, Diana, 172
Liquid fluoride thorium reactor (LFTR), 756
Liquids, 88
  Archimedes' principle, 308–309
  boiling and, 391–393
  buoyancy and, 307–310
  capillarity, 316–317
  condensation and, 389–391
  evaporation and, 387–389
  flotation and, 311–313
  mercury, 355
  Pascal's principle, 313–314
  pressure and, 301–306
  surface tension and, 315–316
Liter, 150
Lithium, 263, 752, 764–765
Lizards, 358
Locke, John, 223
Lockheed Martin, 367
Lodestones, 533
Longitudinal waves, 432, 447, 457–459
Long-wavelength radiation, 377
Lopez, Efrain, 84
Lorentz, Hendrik A., 775
Lorentz contraction, 790–791
Lorentz factor, 780, 792
Los Alamos lab, 748–749
Loudness, 469–470
Loudspeaker, 450, 459
Lowell Observatory, Arizona, 223
Lucas, Alex, 570
Lukas, Mike, 792
Lunar eclipse, 580–583
Lyons, Suzanne, 592

M

M87 galaxy, 221
Machines, 158–159
Macula, 583
Magenta, 597–600, 602
Maglev, 539
Magnetic braking, 560
Magnetic declination, 543
Magnetic field, 217. *See also* Electromagnetic waves
  of Earth, 543–555
Magnetic forces, 138
Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), 457, 540, 546
  food irradiation and, 742
Magnetism
  biomagnetism and, 545
  cosmic rays and, 544–545
  Earth and, 543–545
  electric currents and, 538–539
  electromagnets, 539–540
  fields and, 535–536
  forces of, 540–543
  introduction of, 533–534
  magnetic domains, 536–537
  poles and, 534–535
Magnetohydrodynamic (MHD) power, 338, 555–556
Magnets, 272. *See also* Electromagnetic induction
  horseshoe, 534
Magnum revolver, 133
Maintenance hole covers, 194
Manhattan Project, 748–749
Manning, Dave, 324
Mansfield College, 467
Mantle, 312
Marischal College, Aberdeen, 571

Mars
Curiosity rover and, 204–205
escape speed and, 248
surface of, 126
Mass, 88–92
action and reaction on, 110–112
density and, 283–284
energy equivalence, 758–761
gravitational mass, 206
momentum and, 125–126
in relativity, 793–796
temperature and, 351–352
Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), 105, 347, 600, 803
Mass extinction, 36
Mass number, 270–271
Mass spectrometer, 758–759, 761
Materials
opaque, 579–580
radioactive, 674
transparent, 575–577
Mathematics, 30–31
Euclidean geometry, 46, 690, 810–812
Galileo and, 49
new geometry, 810–812
trigonometry, 25, 28
Matsler, Karen Jo, 562
Matter wave amplitude, 718
Maximum falling speed, 248
Maxwell, James Clerk, 347, 561–562, 571–573, 688
Maynez, Will, 38, 44, 136, 524
McCarthy, Leilah, 724
McCartney, Paul, 469
McNelis, Dennis, 373
Meadows, Roxanne, 173
Mechanical energy, 151
Mechanical equilibrium, 53–54
Megajoules, 149
Megaverse, 790
Megawatt, 150
Meitner, Lise, 748–749
Mellem, Aage, 346
Melting, 393–395
Memristor, 488
Mendeleev, Dmitri, 267
Merbold, Ulf, 603
Mercury
atomic number of, 266
barometer and, 328–329
density of, 284
escape speed and, 248
flask, 207
Pascal and, 301
temperature and, 347–348, 355
vapor lamp, 667–670, 675–676
Mercury, planetary motion of, 809–810
Merry-go-round, 175
Metastable state, 674, 678–679
Meteorology, 409–412
Methane, 461
Methyl mercury, 266
MHD power. *See* Magnetohydrodynamic
Michelangelo, 48
Michell, John, 533
Michelson, A. A., 774
Michelson-Morley experiment, 774–775
Micklavzina, Stanley, 724
Microphone, 450–451, 458, 460
Microwaves, 372, 573–574, 689, 812
oven, 493–494
Milken Family Foundation Award, 325
Milky Way, 672, 788, 791
Millikan, Robert, 691, 712
Millirem unit, 731
Miner, Ana, 44
Mirage, 621
Mirrors, 615–617
Misconceptions, in science, 34
Mission Street Science Workshop, 550
MIT. *See* Massachusetts Institute of Technology
Mixture, 272–273
Mobile phone, 575, 597
Modulation, 460
Mojave Desert, 411, 412
Molecular forces, 132
Molecules, 271–272. *See also* Atoms
convection and, 369–370
heat and, 348–349
liquids, 303, 315–317
Moment of inertia, 182
Momentum, 125–126, 147
angular momentum, 191–194
bouncing and, 131–132
collisions and, 135–138
conservation of, 132–134
decrease in, 128–131
impulse and, 126–131
increase in, 128
linear momentum, 191–192
Newton's second law and, 127–128, 130, 132, 134
Newton's third law and, 132–134
Monkey, 293
Monochromatic light, 649–652
Monroe, Mary Beth, 172
Moon, 205
center of, 216
distance to sun, 28–29
eclipses of, 603–604
escape speed and, 248–249
motion and, 45, 47–48
New Moon, 213–216
ocean tides and, 212–217
size of, 26–27
solar eclipses, 580–583
speed of, 194
surface of, 90–91, 99
tangential velocity of, 206
tides bulges on, 216–217
Morley, E. W., 774
Mössbauer, Rudolph, 808
Mössbauer effect, 808
Moths, 452
Motion. *See also* Acceleration
air drag and, 235–239, 248
angular momentum, 191–194
Aristotle on, 45–47
centrifugal force, 179–182
Copernicus and, 47
of Earth, 45–49
energy conservation and, 246–247
equilibrium of, 56
equilibrium rule and, 53–54
escape speed and, 247–249
friction and, 48–50, 56–57
Galileo experiments and, 47–49
linear, 65–77
natural motion, 45
net force and, 52–53
Newton's first law, 50–51, 56–57, 192, 309
frame of reference, 179, 184
Newton's second law, 92–93
Newton's third law, 105–109
air lift and, 335
masses and, 110–112
momentum and, 132–134
vectors and, 113–116
projectiles, 232–237
rotational inertia, 182–185
rotational torque and, 185–186
of satellites, 238–247
support force and, 55
violent motion, 45–46
Motor effect, 554
Motor vehicles, 65, 129, 163
Mouse, 294
Mouseion library, 23
MRI. *See* Magnetic resonance imaging
Muhlenberg College, 592
Muller, Derek, 124–125
Müller, Eric, 280
Müller, Erwin, 282
Multiverse, 790
Muon neutrino, 728
Music
analog signal, 474–475
digital signal, 474–475
Fourier analysis and, 473–474
instruments and, 471–472
standing waves and, 435
intensity, 469–470
loudness, 469–470
noise and, 467–468
notes and, 468–469, 472–474
pitch and, 468–469
quality and, 470–471
timbre and, 470–471
Musicology, 472
Musk, Elon, 150, 230
Mutation, 731–732
Myers, Fred, 324–325, 532, 732

N

Nakamura, Shuji, 677
Nanometers, 294, 429
Nanotechnology, 263, 294
National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA), 231
National Women's Hall of Fame, 231
Natural frequency, 455–456
Natural motion, 45
Natural philosophy, 37
Natural transmutation, 738–740
Naval Observatory, U.S., 782
Nazi Party, 687, 709, 803
Neap tides, 214–215
Negative ions, 337, 486, 509, 761
Neon, 266–267
Neon atoms, 337
Neptune, 223, 249
escape speed and, 248
Neptunium, 754
Net force, 52–53, 56
acceleration and, 86–88, 92, 94–96
liquid pressure and, 305, 307
Net torque, 186, 191–192
Neutral layer, 286–288
Neutrinos, 728–729
Neutrons, 264–265, 270–271, 273
electric charge and, 484–486, 501
radiometric dating and, 740–743
strong force and, 732–735
New Moon, 213–216
Newton, Isaac, 85
Age of Reason and, 223
energy concept and, 151
Galileo and, 49
light and, 623
Principia, 49–50, 147
satellite motion and, 239
universal gravitational constant and, 690
Newtonian air lift, 335
Newtonian glasses, 220
Newtonian gravitation, 805, 813–814
Newtonian synthesis, 205–206
Newton-meter, 149–150
Newton's laws
of cooling, 376
first law of motion, 50–51, 56–57, 192, 309
frame of reference and, 179, 184
of gravity
Coulomb's law and, 487
theory of gravitation and, 220
second law of motion
forces and, 85–86
friction and, 86–88
mass and, 88–93
momentum and, 127–128, 130, 132, 134
weight and, 88–92
summary on, 117
third law of motion, 105–109
air lift and, 335
masses and, 110–112
momentum and, 132–134
vectors and, 113–116
Newton's rings, 652, 688
Newton unit, 90–92, 97
New Zealand, 163
Niagara Falls, 533
Nickel, 265, 268, 536
NMR. *See* Nuclear magnetic resonance
NMRI. *See* Nuclear magnetic resonance imaging
Nobel Prize, 263, 283, 375, 677, 728
of Bohr, N., 709
of Curie, M., 725
of de Broglie, 695
of Einstein, 691–692, 709
of Fermi, 748–749
of Feynman, R., 259
of Hewish, 467
of Planck, 687
in relativity, 803, 808
of Thomson, 712
Noble gases, 266–267

Noddack, Ida, 749
Noddy, Tom, 316
Nodes, 434–436
Noise-canceling earphones, 458–459
Noncrystalline solids, 282
Nonfree fall, 94–96
North America, 353, 405, 515
Northern Hemisphere, 353, 543
North Pole, 218, 306, 543
North-seeking pole, 534
Notes, of music, 468–469, 472–474
Novak, Bruce, 574
Nuclear charge, 269
Nuclear fission
  breeder reactor and, 755–756
  induced fission, 750
  introduction to, 750–752
  mass-energy equivalence, 758–761
  power and, 756–757
  reactors and, 752–755
  waste and, 37, 755, 757
Nuclear fuel, 163, 556, 753, 757
Nuclear fusion
  control of, 764–765
  heat of, 396–397
  introduction to, 762–764
  thermonuclear fusion, 762–763, 765
Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR), 457
Nuclear magnetic resonance imaging (NMRI), 546, 742
Nuclear particles, 138
Nuclear power industry, 730
Nuclear reactors, 405
  breeder, 755–756
  Chernobyl, 753, 756
  LFTR, 756
  SMR, 753
  thorium, 756
Nuclear weapons, 753, 757, 773
Nucleons, 264, 270, 732–735
Nucleus, 260, 263–266, 269–273. *See also* Atomic nucleus
Nukes. *See* Nuclear reactors

O

Obama, Barack, 65, 231
Oboe, 472–473
Oceanic crust, 312
Oceans
  color of, 603, 605–606
  phytoplankton, 244
  tides and, 212–217
Octyl methoxycinnamate, 605
Odometer, 66, 74
Oersted, Hans Christian, 533
Ohm, Georg Simon, 509, 512
Ohm's law, 512–515
Oil
  coal and, 156–157
  petroleum, 160–162, 675
  surface tension and, 316
Olfactory organs, 272
Opaque materials, 579–580
Open circuit, 525
Oppenheimer, Frank, 105, 387, 426–428
Oppenheimer, J. Robert, 427, 748–749
Optical fibers, 629
Optical illusions, 586
Optically stimulated luminescence (OSL), 743
Optical resonance, 457
Optical tuning forks, 576
Optic nerve, 583–585
Optics, field of, 206
Orbital, 485
Orbits. *See also* Gravity
  circular, 240–242
  elliptical, 242–243
Organ pipe, 435
Orographic lift, 411
Orr, Garth, 280
Oscillation, 594, 690. *See also* Electromagnetic waves; Waves
Oscilloscope, 468, 470, 473–474
O'Shaughnessy, Tam, 231
OSL. *See* Optically stimulated luminescence
Osmium, 284
The Outline of History (Wells, H. G.), 164
Overloading, of circuits, 523–524
Overtone, 471–472
Oxygen, 292
  atoms of, 162–163
  model of, 263–264
  molecule, 271
Ozone layer, 326

P

Paddle-wheel apparatus, 408
Palace of Fine Arts, San Francisco, 427
Palladium metal, 294
Panofsky, Wolfgang, 613
Parabola, 233, 236–237, 243
  trajectory and, 186–187
Parachutes, 95–96, 100–102, 293
Parallax, 656
Parallel circuits, 520–524
Parallelogram rule, 115–116, 119, 121
Parcels, 410–412
Parrots, 470
Partial tones, 471–472
Particle accelerators, 516
Pascal, Blaise, 301, 313
Pascal's principle, 313–314
Pascal's vases, 300
Pasteur, Louis, 347
Path of totality, 580–581
Patterson, Ryan, 456
Payne, Cecilia, 715
PE. *See* Potential energy
Peak frequency, 670–671
Pedometer, 79
Pelton, Lester A., 131
Pelton wheel, 124, 132
Pendulum, 153
  vibration of, 428–429
Pennsylvania State University, 282
Penumbra, 579–581
Penzias, Arno, 375
Perchbacher, Kirby, 482
Percussion, 471–472
Perigee, 215, 246
Perihelion, 215
Period
  of elements, 266–269
  of wave, 428–430, 433
Periodic table, 266–270
Perpetual motion, 159, 259, 405, 413, 719
Perrin, Francis, 752
Perseverance rover, 205
Perturbations, 222, 225
Petroleum, 160–162, 675
Phase changes
  boiling, 391–393
  condensation, 389–391
  energy and, 395–398
  evaporation, 387–389
  freezing, 393–395
  melting, 393–395
  regelation, 394–395
Phase shift, 651
Phillips, Melba Newell, 613
Philosophiae Naturalis Principia Mathematica (Newton, I.), 85
Phonograph record, 473
Phosphorescence, 674–675
Photoelasticity, 571
Photoelectric effect, 690–693
Photographs, 598–599, 621, 628
  lenses and, 631–633
  Polaroids, 642, 655–658
  production of, 693
Photons, 577–579
  light emission and, 665–668, 672–680
Photorefractive keratectomy (PRK), 634
Photosynthesis, 162, 272, 599
Photovoltaic cells, 380, 692–693
Physics for the Inquiring Mind (Rogers, E.), 447
The Physics Teacher journal, 45
Phytoplankton, 244
Piano, 471–472
Piano keyboard, 468
Piano tuner, 460
Pigments, color mixing, 598–600
Pigs, 388
Ping-pong balls, 356, 449, 493
Pinhole camera, 631
Pioneer 10 probe, 249
Pisa, Leaning Tower of, 32, 47, 96, 189, 804
Piston, 313–314
  absolute zero and, 406
  atmospheric pressure and, 326–327
Pitch, 448, 455
Planck, Max, 687–688, 690–691, 749
Planck's constant, 666, 688–690
Plane mirrors, 615–617
Plane-polarization, 654–655
Planetary Motion, Kepler's laws of, 244–246
Plane waves, 644–665
Plants, 125
  cooling of, 375
  photosynthesis and, 162, 272, 599
  radioactivity and, 732, 741
Plasma, 763
  gases and, 337–338
  power, 338
  temperature and, 555–556
Plastic, 282, 287, 484
  heat transfer and, 381, 488
  sound and, 452
Platinum, 162, 268, 488
  density of, 284
Plato, 687
Plum-pudding model, 712
Pluto, 223, 249, 665, 754
Plutonium, 163, 754–755
Polarization, 492–494, 654–658
Polarizer, 655–657
Polaroid, 642, 655–658
Positive ions, 337, 486, 509–510, 555–556
Positrons, 273, 795
Postulates of the special theory of relativity. *See* Relativity
Potential difference, in charge, 509–510. *See also* Electric current
Potential energy (PE), 151–153
  electric potential and, 498–502
  satellite motion and, 246–247
Pound, Robert, 808
Power, 150–151
  electric
    currents and, 519–520
    production of, 555–556
    transmission of, 560–561
  nuclear fission and, 756–757
  plasma, 338
  turbogenerator, 555–556
Power plant, 163–164, 794
Precession, 191
Presidential Medal of Freedom, 231
Pressure, 301–302. *See also* Phase changes
  Boyle's law and, 330–331
  in liquids, 303–306
  total pressure, 303–305
Primary colors, 597–600
Princeton University, 593, 773, 803
Principal axis, 630
Principia (Newton, I.), 49–50, 147
Principles
  of Archimedes, 308–309
  of Bernoulli, 333–337
  of continuity, 333–334
  of correspondence, 719–720, 796
  of equivalence, 804–805
  of Fermat, 614, 618–621, 623
  of Huygens, 643–645
  of least time, 614, 618–621, 623
  of Pascal, 313–314
  Ritz combination, 714–715
  of superposition, 434
  of uncertainty, 698–700
Prisms, 619, 623–625, 628–630
PRK. *See* Photorefractive keratectomy
Probability
  chaos and, 701
  density function, 718
  electron clouds and, 717
Problem Solving in Conceptual Physics (Hewitt, P. G., Wolf, P.), 31, 686
Procyon star, 789
Projectile motion, 232–237
  escape speed and, 247–249
  satellites and, 238–240
Proper time, 779–780
Protactinium, 739

Protium, 270
Protons, 264–266, 269–273
  electric charge and, 484–488, 494–495
  strong force and, 732–735
Prussian Academy of Sciences, 687
Pseudoscience, 33, 36, 283
Puente, Carles, 575
Pulleys, 158–160
Pulse, sound and, 448–449
Pupil, 583–585
Pupilometrics, 585
Purkinje effect, 585
P waves, 432
Pythagorean theorem, 115, 779

Q

Quadrants, 244
Quality, of sound, 470–471
Quanta, 486, 687
Quantum mechanics, 269, 687, 717–719
Quantum physics, 574, 688–689, 692
Quantum states, 666
Quantum theory, 348, 487
  birth of, 687–688
  complementarity, 700–701
  double-slit experiment, 694–695
  Einstein and, 687–688, 691–692
  electron diffraction and, 695–697
  photoelectric effect and, 690–693
  Planck's constant and, 688–690
  of radiation, 691
  uncertainty principle, 698–700
  wave-particle duality, 693–694
The Quantum World (Ford, K. W.), 447
Quarks, 264, 732–733
Quark theory, 32
Queens University, 125
Quintessence, 45

R

Rabbits, 459, 595
Radar guns, 461
Radial distance, 174–177, 181, 183, 192, 206–208
Radiation
  absorption of, 373–374
  curve, 596
  doses of, 731–732
  emission of, 372–373
  environment and, 729–732
  isotopic dating, 740–743
  night cooling and, 375–376
  radiant energy, 371–372
  reflection of, 374–375
  therapy, 731
  tracers and, 732
  units of, 730
Radioactivity, 674, 741
  coining of term, 725
  half-life and, 735–736
  neutrinos and, 728–729
  quarks and, 732–733
  waste, 37, 755, 757
  X-rays and, 725–726
Radio waves, 371–373
  AM, 338, 429–430, 573–574
  FM, 430, 460, 573–574, 646
  transmitter antenna, 561
Radium Institute, 725
Radon, 266–267
  test, 730
Rad units, 730
Railroad tracks, 176–177
Rainbows, 625–627
Raindrops, 294
Rarefaction, 432, 449, 451, 457–459
Rassool, Roger, 724
Ratio, scaling and, 290–294
Rayleigh scattering, 600
RBG. *See* Red, green, and blue
Rea, Peter, 235
Reaction force, 107–109, 111–112
Reactors
  breeder reactor, 755–756
  Chernobyl, 753, 756
  LFTR, 756
  nuclear fission and, 752–755
  SMR, 753
  thorium, 756
Real image, 632
Rebello, Sanjay, 184
Rebka, Glen, 808
Recycled energy, 164
Red, green, and blue (RGB), 596–597, 600
Redshift, 437
  of gravity, 807–809
Reference, frame of, 773–777, 779–782, 785–791
Reflection, 374–375
  color and, 594–596, 600–601, 605
  diffuse, 617–618
  law of, 615–618
  principle of least time, 614, 618–621, 623
  of sound, 452–453
  total internal, 627–629
Refraction, of sound, 453–455
Refrigerators, 355, 395–396, 534
Regelation, 394–395
Reindeau, Diane, 426
Relative humidity, 390
Relative motion, 66–67
Relative time, 780
Relativistic momentum, 792–793
Relativity, 535
  addition of velocities, 788–790
  correspondence principle and, 719–720, 796
  general theory of, 206, 467
    bending of light, 805–807
    Einsteinian gravitation, 813–814
    gravitational red shift, 807–809
    gravitational waves, 812–813
    Newtonian gravitation, 813–814
    principle of equivalence, 804–805
  length contraction and, 790–792
  mass and energy, 793–796
  motion and, 773–775
  relativistic momentum and, 792–793
  simultaneity, 776–777
  spacetime and, 778–787
  special theory of, 775–776
  time dilation and, 778–787
Religion. *See also* Church
  science and, 35–36
Renaissance, 46
Renoir, Pierre-Auguste, 30
Research Institutes. *See* Institutes
Reservoirs, of heat engines, 413–416
Resistance
  of air, 86, 88, 93–97
  electric current and, 511–512
Resistors, 513, 523
Resonance, 456–457
Resource Based Economy, 173
Rest energy, 793–795
Rest-mass energy, 795
Resultant, 52
Reverberations, 452
Revolutions per minute (rpm), 173–176, 181
Reye's syndrome, 37
Richter scale, 469
Ride, Sally, 230–231
Risk assessment, 37
Ritz, Walter, 714
Ritz combination principle, 714–715
Rober, Mark, 300
Rocket ship, 776
  twin trip and, 782–787
Rock salt, 357
Rock wool, 368
Rocky Mountains, 410–411, 606
Rods, of eye, 584–585
Roentgen, Wilhelm, 730
Roller coaster, 153
Roman aqueducts, 305
Romans, 305
Roosevelt, Franklin D., 749, 773
Rossing, Tom, 446
Rotational motion, 348
  angular momentum, 191–194
  centrifugal force, 179–182
  centripetal force, 177–178
  CG, 186–191
  circular, 173–177
  CM and, 186–191
  fictitious force, 180–181
  inertia and, 182–185
  lever arm, 185–186, 188, 190
  orbits and, 240–242
  stability and, 189–191
  torque and, 185–186
Rotational speed, 173–175, 193
Rotational velocity, 174
Rovers, 204–205
Royal Institution, 551
Royal Society, 285, 347
  Copley Medal of, 483, 509
  of Edinburgh, 571
  in London, 623
  president of, 85, 551
Rpm. *See* Revolutions per minute
Rubin, Vera, 593
Rumford, Count. *See* Thompson, Sir Benjamin
Rutherford, Ernest, 709–710, 712–714, 740, 749
Ryan, Paul, 398
Rydberg, Johannes, 714
Ryle, Sir Martin, 467

S

Safety fuses, 524–525
Sagan, Carl, 665
Sahara, Africa, 358
Saltwater, buoyancy and, 284, 306, 311, 318, 320
San Francisco Sidewalk Astronomers, 795
San Francisco State University, 367, 387
Santa Rosa Junior College, 466
Satellite
  circular orbits, 240–242
  elliptical orbits, 242–243
  energy conservation and, 246–247
  force and, 148
  Kepler and, 244–246
  projectile motion and, 238–240
  Sputnik, 246
  world monitoring by, 244
Saturation, 390
Saturn, 222
  escape speed and, 248
Saxophone, 447, 469, 472
Scalar quantity, 52, 68, 76
Scaling, 290–294
Scanning electron microscope (SEM), 262–263
Scanning tunneling microscope (STM), 263
Schrödinger, Erwin, 717–718
Schrödinger's wave equation, 717–718
Science
  art and, 35–36
  attitude and, 31–33
  chemistry and, 37–38
  junk science, 158
  physics and, 37–38
  pseudoscience and, 36
  religion and, 35–36
  technology and, 36–37
Sciencium channel, 125
Scientific method, 31–33
  misconceptions and, 34
Scientific notation, 207
Scintillation counter, 736–737
Scotland, 162, 300, 311
Scuba diver, 328, 331
Sea-level, 328, 348, 378
Seawater. *See* Saltwater
Second law of motion
  forces and, 85–86
  friction and, 86–88
  mass and, 88–93
  momentum and, 127–128, 130, 132, 134
  weight and, 88–92
Second law of thermodynamics, 412–416
Second overtone, 471
Seesaw, 157
Selective reflection, 594–595
Selective transmission, 595–596
Selenium, 489
Self-induction, 559–560
SEM. *See* Scanning electron microscope
Semiconductors, 489

Series circuit, 520–521
Serway, Ray, 300
Shadows, 579–580
Shakespeare, 48
Sharks, 417
Shell, orbital and, 485
Shock waves, 439–440
Short circuit, 525
Short-wavelength radiation, 377
Silicon, 489
Silver, 265, 267, 352
  density of, 284
  heat and, 367, 375, 381
Simulated gravity, 89, 180–182
Simultaneity, 776–777
Sine curve, 428–429, 431
Sine wave, 473
Single-color thin-film interference, 651–654
Single-wheel skateboard, 190
Sink, of heat engine, 413–416
SI units. *See* Standard international
Skateboards, 233
  single-wheel, 190
Skoczelas, Brenda, 772
Sky, color of, 600–605
Skydiving, 95
Sliding friction, 87–88
Slinky, 430
  longitudinal wave and, 432
  vibrations and, 517–518
Smaller modular reactor (SMR), 753
Small incision lenticule extraction (SMILE), 634
SMAP. *See* Soil Moisture Active Passive
Smartphone, 25–26, 79, 147, 643
  DC and, 516
  electrostatics, 483, 489, 501
  radiation and, 668
Smell, 272
SMILE. *See* Small incision lenticule extraction
Smith, Jim, 306, 482
Smog, 411
Smoke detectors, 730
SMR. *See* Smaller modular reactor
Snapshots, 632
Snell, Willebrord, 620
Snell's law, 620
Snow, 395
  heat transfer and, 368, 374
  snowflakes, 356, 657
Soap-bubble, 652
Sodium chloride
  compound of, 272–273
  crystal of, 282
  DNA and, 647
Sodium-vapor lamp, 669
Soil Moisture Active Passive (SMAP) mission, 205
Solar cells, 692–693
Solar constant, 379
Solar eclipses, 580–583
Solar hybridization, 161
Solar power, 161, 379–380
  specific heat capacity and, 352
Solar system, formation of, 223
Solids. *See also* Phase changes
  arches and, 288–290
  compression and, 286–288
  crystal structure and, 281–283
  density and, 283–284
  elasticity, 284–285
  neutral layer and, 286–288
  scaling and, 290–294
  tension and, 286–288
Something Incredibly Wonderful Happens (Cole, K. C.), 428
Sonic boom, 439–440
Sound. *See also* Music; Waves
  in air, 448–452
  beats and, 459–461
  bow waves, 437–438
  Doppler effect, 436–437, 672, 784
  forced vibration, 455–456
  interference and, 457–459
  natural frequency, 455–456
  nature of, 447–448
  rarefaction and, 449, 451, 457–459
  reflection of, 452–453
  refraction of, 453–455
  resonance and, 456–457
  shock waves and, 439–440
  speed of, 433, 450–451
  waves
    description of, 429–430
    interference, 434–436
    motion of, 430–432
    vibrations and, 427–429
Sound barrier, 438–440
Southern Hemisphere, 353, 545
South Pole, 218, 387
South-seeking pole, 534
Soviet Union, 246
Space
  absolute zero and, 375
  junk, 246
  Mercury and, 809–810
  new geometry and, 810–812
  travel, 788–790
Spacecraft, 161
  sound and, 461
Spacetime, 220, 778–787
SpaceX, 230, 792
Spain, 358
Spark chamber, 738
Special theory of relativity. *See* Relativity
Specific heat capacity, 351–352
  of water, 352–354
Spectrometer, 650–651
  mass, 758–759, 761
Spectroscope, 668–669, 671
Speculation, 33–34
Speed
  escape speed, 247–249
  instantaneous speed, 65–67, 70–72
  of light, 577–584, 774–778, 784–795
    vacuum and, 618, 620
  of liquid, 306
  maximum falling, 248
  rotational, 173–175, 193
  of sound, 433, 450–451
  tangential, 173–177, 180
  terminal, 95–97, 117
Speedometer, 68, 72, 74, 76
Spencer, Percy, 494
Spheres
  aberration, 633
  volume and, 291
Spontaneous fission, 750
Springs
  constant of, 285
  elasticity and, 284–285
Spring tides, 213–216
Sputnik satellite, 246
Stability, 189–191
Stagg Field, Chicago, 752–753
Standard international (SI) units, 97
  heat of evaporation, 397
  Kelvin, 331
  Pascal and, 327
  of pressure, 301
Standing wave, 434–436
Stanford Linear Accelerator, 387, 792
Static electricity, 486
Static equilibrium, 56
Static friction, 87–88
Steam, 370, 379–380
  engine, 408, 415–416
  turbine generator, 556
Steam cycle, 415–416
Steel mills, 164
Steel wool, 292, 371
Steiger, Walter, 737
STM. *See* Scanning tunneling microscope
Stokstad, Paul, 172
Stone, Chuck, 233
Stone Age, 282
Stone arches, 288–289
Stony Brook, 613
Storage, of electric energy. *See* Battery
Storm surges, 215
The Story of More (Jahren, H.), 281
Strassmann, Fritz, 749
Streamer chamber, 738
Streamlines, 333–336
Strength
  arches and, 288–289
  scaling and, 291–293
  tension and, 286–288
Strobe-light photograph, 233
Stroboscopic study, 96
Strong force, 732–735
Styrofoam, 332, 367, 409
Subcritical mass, 751
Sublimation, 388–389
Subtractive manufacturing, 290
Subtractive primary colors, 598–599
Suchocki, John, 386, 426
Sudran, Dan, 550
Summer solstice, 23–25
Sun
  distance to Earth, 28–29
  energy of, 157
  escape speed and, 248–249
  greenhouse effect and, 377
  Kepler and, 244–246
  mass and, 794–795
  motion and, 47–48, 57
  ocean tides and, 213–216
  size of, 29–30
  solar constant and, 379
  terrestrial radiation and, 372–373
Sunlight, 161–162
  radiation curve of, 596
  sunsets and sunrises, 603–605
SunPower solar cells, 692
Superconductors, 489, 511
Supercritical mass, 751–752
Super-Kamiokande neutrino observatory, 729
Supernatural, 35
Superposition, 648–651
Superposition principle, 434
Supersonic, 438–440
Support force, 55, 89, 181, 188
Supporting floor, 210–211
Surely You're Joking, Mr. Feynman! (Feynman, R.), 259
Surface area
  of Earth, 89–91
  scaling and, 291–293
Surface tension, 294, 315–316
S waves, 432
Sweat glands, 388
Swiss Federal Institute of Technology, 773
Switzerland, 540, 720, 738
Sydney, Australia, 125
Syene, Egypt, 23–24, 26
Sympathetic vibration, 456

T

Table salt. *See* Sodium chloride
Tabor-Morris, Anne, 426
Tachyons, 789
T'ai Chi Tu, 701
Tangential acceleration, 175
Tangential speed, 173–177, 180
Tangential velocity, 206
  projectile motion and, 239–240, 242
Tau neutrino, 728
El Tawil-Nassar, Mona, 500
Taylor, Edwin F., 772
Tea, 373, 376
Technology, 36–37
Telephone, 147, 405, 469, 518, 761
Telescope, 72, 467, 623, 628, 633
  advent of, 244, 246
  radio, 593, 613
The Telescope in the Ice (Bowen M.), 728
Television
  color and, 573–574, 597
  monitor, 262, 696–697
  wavelengths and, 562, 665, 679
Temperature. *See also* Phase changes; Thermodynamics
  absolute, 331, 372
  boiling and, 391–393
  freezing and, 393–395
  heat and, 349–351
  introduction to, 347–349
  inversion, 411
  mass and, 351–352
  melting and, 393–395
  mercury and, 347–348, 355
  specific heat capacity, 351–354
  thermal expansion, 354–359
Tension, 286–288
  inertia and, 51, 53–54
  surface tension, 294, 315–316

Terminal speed, 95–97, 117
Terminal velocity, 95–97
Terrestrial radiation, 372–373, 377
Tesla, Nikola, 533, 555
Tesla Roadster, 150, 230
Thaddeus Stevens College, 324
Theory, 27, 32–33
Thermal equilibrium, 412, 417–418
Thermal expansion, 354–359
Thermal inertia, 352, 354
Thermal pollution, 414
Thermal radiation, 670
Thermodynamics
  absolute zero and, 406–407
  adiabatic processes, 409
  energy dispersion, 416–417
  entropy, 418–419
  first law of, 155, 408–412
  heat engine and, 413–416
  Kelvin and, 405
  meteorology and, 409–412
  second law of, 412–416
  third law of, 418
  zeroth law of, 418
Thermometer, 494
  infrared, 349, 373
  temperature and, 347–350, 355
Thermonuclear fusion, 156, 762–763, 765
  reaction of, 264
Thermos glass, 380–381
Thermostat, 355
Third law of motion, 105–109
  air lift and, 335
  masses and, 110–112
  momentum and, 132–134
  vectors and, 113–116
Third law of thermodynamics, 418
Thompson, Sir Benjamin, 347, 351, 408
Thompson, Sir D'Arcy Wentworth, 290
Thompson tube, 532
Thomson, Joseph John, 709, 711–712
Thomson, William. *See* Kelvin, Lord
Thorium, 262
Thorium reactor, 756
Thorne, Kip, 803
3-D printing, 290
Thrust, 56
Thunderstorms, 410, 451, 491
Tides
  calendar of, 215
  energy of, 162
  gravity and, 212–217
  Moon bulges and, 216–217
  neap tide, 214–215
  spring tide, 213–216
Timbre, 470–471
Time
  dilation, 778–787
  gravitational red shift, 807–809
  least time, principle of, 614, 618–621, 623
  in momentum, 126–127
  spacetime and, 781–787
Titanium oxide, 488
Tooth enamel, 286
Torque, 185–186
  net torque, 191–192
Torricelli, Evangelista, 301, 328
Total internal reflection, 627–629
Totality, 580–581
Total pressure, 303–305
Tourmaline, 655
Tracer isotopes, 732
Transamerica Pyramid, 416
Transformers, 533, 556–559
Transistors, 489
Translational motion, 348
Transmission
  color and, 595–596
  of power, 560–561
Transmutation, 738–740
Transparent materials, 575–577
Transverse polarization, 654–655, 657
Transverse waves, 431–432, 457–459, 654, 657
Treatise on Light (Huygens, C.), 644
Tremolo effect, 459
Trigonometry, 25, 28
Trinity College, 85, 571
Tritium, 270, 759, 763–765
Trombone, 469, 472
Troughs, 429, 433, 719. *See also* Waves
Trumpet, 435–436, 469, 472
Tsunami, 431, 753
Tug-of war, 112, 120–121
Tuning forks, 448, 456
  optical, 576
Turbines, 162–163
Turbogenerator power, 555–556
Turbulent flow, 334
Twin trip, 782–787
Tyson, Neil deGrasse, 36, 146, 664–665

U

Ultrahigh frequencies (UHF), 573–574
Ultrasonic, 448, 454–455
Ultraviolet light (UV), 573–574
  DNA damage and, 668
  emission and, 673–676
  radiation and, 605
  speed of, 576, 578
  UV-C, 579
Umbra, 579–581
Umbrella, 337
Unbalanced torque, 189–190, 193
Uncertainty principle, 686, 698–700
Unified field theory, 487
Universal gravitation, 205–207, 222–223
  constant, 690
Universal Product Code (UPC), 680
Universe, dark matter and, 274–275
Universities
  Boston, 575
  of California, 231, 367, 447, 613
  California Polytechnic State, 205
  of Cambridge, 85, 467, 709
  of Chicago, 262, 752–753
  Chinese Academy of Science, 613
  of Copenhagen, 709
  Cornell, 665
  Edinburgh, 571
  of Erlangen, 509
  Georgetown, 593
  of Glasgow, 405, 467
  Harvard, 347, 715, 808
  of Manchester, 709
  of Melbourne, 724
  MIT, 105, 347, 600, 803
  of Munich, 509
  of New York, 613
  of Oslo, 281
  of Oxford, 467
  of Paris, 725
  of Pennsylvania, 282, 483
  Princeton, 593, 773, 803
  Queens, 125
  San Francisco State, 367, 487
  Science and Technology of China, 613
  Uppsala, 45
  of Vienna, 749
UPC. *See* Universal Product Code
Uppsala University, Sweden, 45
Uranium, 163, 264
  density of, 284
  half-life and, 735–736
  isotope of, 751–752, 755–756
  mass-energy equivalence and, 758–761
  radioisotope dating and, 743
  transmutation and, 738–740
Uranium hexafluoride, 751–752
Uranus, 222–223, 754
  escape speed and, 248
Urinary catheter, 483
U-tube, 313
UV. *See* Ultraviolet light

V

Vacuum, 74, 94
  atmospheric pressure and, 326, 328–331
  Pascal and, 301
  sound and, 448
  speed of light in, 618, 620
Valentine vector, 52
Van Allen belts, 544–545
Van de Graaff, Robert J., 501
Van de Graaff generator, 501, 509–510
Van den Berg, Daday, 508
Van den Berg, Ed, 204
Van der Waals force, 282
Vaporization, latent heat of, 397
Vasquez, Carlos, 592
Vasquez, David, 163
Vassar College, 593
Vector quantity, 52, 68, 76
  momentum and, 133–134, 138
  pressure and, 302
Vectors, 52–54
  components of, 113–116
  force vectors, 306–307
  Newton's second law, 92–93
  Newton's third law, 113–116
  velocity, 76–77
Vector sum, 53–55
Velocity, 67–68
  addition of, 788–790
  of electromagnetic wave, 572–573
  vectors, 76–77
Venus, 810
  escape speed and, 248
The Venus Project, 173
Vera C. Rubin Observatory, 593
Veritasium channel, 125
Vernier, Christine, 146
Vernier, David, 146
Very high frequency (VHF), 573–574
Vibration, 594. *See also* Waves
  forced vibration, 455–456
Vibrational motion, 348, 427–429
Violent motion, 45–46
Virgo galaxy, 221
Virtual image, 615–616, 632–633
Visible light, 371–373, 377. *See also* Electromagnetic spectrum
  human eye and, 583–586
  imagery and, 262–264
Vitreous humor, 583
Volta, Alessandro, 511
Voltage
  electric potential and, 499–502
  electromagnetic induction and, 552–561
  sources of, 510–511
Voltaire, 147
Voltmeter, 542
Volume
  Boyle's law and, 330–331
  density and, 283–284
Von Fraunhofer, Joseph, 672
Von Guericke, Otto, 324
Von Jolly, Philipp, 207–208
Von Laue, Max, 281

W

Wall, Dave, 570
Walls, Jeannette, 306
Warping, of spacetime, 806, 811–812
Washington, DC, 353
Waste, of radioactivity, 37, 755, 757
Water. *See also* Liquids; Waves
  adhesion and, 316–317
  atoms and, 260–261
  BTU and, 351
  cohesion and, 317
  color and, 605–606
  expansion of, 356–359
  force vectors and, 306–307
  ice crystals and, 356–357
  specific heat capacity, 352–354
  surface tension and, 315–316
  volume and, 308
  waves and, 643–645, 648, 653
Water-bucket swing, 178
Water Freezer exhibit, 386, 393
Watson, James D., 282, 647
Watt, James, 150
Watts, 519
Wavefront, 433, 436, 622, 630
Wavelength, 428–437
Wave motion, 430–432
Wave-particle duality, 693–694

Waves. *See also* Electrons; Light
amplitude, 429–431, 434–436
description of, 429–430
electron diffraction and, 695–697
frequency, 429–430, 433–437
interference, 434–436
longitudinal energy, 432
period of, 428–430, 433
plane waves, 644–665
Schrödinger's equation of, 717–718
sine curve, 428–429, 431
speed of, 433, 436–438 (*See also* Sound)
standing, 434–436
supersonic, 438–440
transverse motion, 431–432
vibrations and, 427–429
wavelength, 428–437
Weak force, 487
Weapons-grade plutonium, 755
Wechter, Jayson, 51
Weight, 88–92
buoyancy and, 309–310
gravity and, 210–212
Weight density, 283–284, 302–305, 308, 310
Weightlessness, 181, 210–212
Weiss, Rainer, 803
Weisskopf, Victor, 416
Wells, H. G., 164
Westerberg, Karl, 44
Westinghouse, George, 533, 555
Westminster Abbey, 85, 405, 551
Wetherhold, Jeff, 592
Whales, 562
Wheeler, John A., 275, 447
Wheelset, 176
White light, 594–600, 602–605
White noise, 467
Whitlatch, Norm, 474
WHO. *See* World Health Organization
Whole beam, 691
Wiley, Dave, 398
Willemite, 674
Williams, Lynda, 466
Wilson, J. Tuzo, 281
Wilson, Robert, 375
Wimshurst generator, 482
Wind
Bernoulli's principle and, 333–337
Chinook, 410
powered generators, 157
tunnel, 333
turbines, 162, 287, 560
windchill, 376
Wine glass, 376, 457
Wingsuit, 84, 95–96
Wolf, Phil, 686
Wong, Michelle Anna, 466
Wood, 281
as insulator, 367–368
Wool, 367–368, 371, 484
Work, 148–150
energy theorem, 154–155
friction and, 152, 154–155, 158–161
function, 691
World Health Organization (WHO), 36, 742
World War I, 749
World War II, 687, 709, 751
World Wide Web, 387
Wormhole, 221
Wozniak, Steve, 387
Wren, Christopher, 285
Wu, Qiuyan, 664

X

Xenon, 266–267
X-rays, 37, 372, 454, 501, 544
alpha rays and, 727
beta rays and, 727
Bohr, N., and, 715
diffraction, 281–282
DNA damage and, 668, 689
electromagnetic spectrum and, 573–574
neutrinos and, 728–729
radioactivity and, 725–726

Y

Yan, Helen, 231, 366–367, 374, 642
Yin-yang symbol, 701, 709
Young, Thomas, 648–649, 688, 694
YouTube, 125, 300, 643

Z

Zero-emission aircraft, 162
Zero-point energy, 348
Zeroth law of thermodynamics, 418
Zetterberg, Anette, 346
Zetterberg, Johan, 324
Zetterberg, P. O., 324, 404
Zollman, Dean, 708
Zürich Research Laboratory, 263

This page is intentionally left blank

PHYSICAL DATA

Category	Name	Value
Speeds	Speed of light in a vacuum, c	2.9979×10^8 m/s
	Speed of sound (20°C, 1 atm)	343 m/s
Acceleration	Standard acceleration of gravity, g	9.80 m/s^2
Pressure	Standard atmospheric pressure	1.01×10^5 Pa
Distances	Astronomical unit (A.U.),	
	(average Earth–Sun distance)	1.50×10^{11} m
	Average Earth–Moon distance	3.84×10^8 m
	Radius of Sun (average)	6.96×10^8 m
	Radius of Earth (equatorial)	6.37×10^6 m
	Radius of Earth's orbit	1.50×10^{11} m = 1 AU
	Radius of Moon (average)	1.74×10^6 m
	Radius of Moon's orbit	3.84×10^8 m
	Radius of Jupiter (equatorial)	7.14×10^7 m
	Radius of hydrogen atom (approx.)	5×10^{-11} m
Masses	Mass of Sun	1.99×10^{30} kg
	Mass of Earth	5.98×10^{24} kg
	Mass of Moon	7.36×10^{22} kg
	Mass of Jupiter	1.90×10^{27} kg
	Mass of proton, m_p	$1.6726231 \times 10^{-27}$ kg
		938.27231 MeV
	Mass of neutron, m_n	$1.6749286 \times 10^{-27}$ kg
		939.56563 MeV
	Mass of electron, m_e	$9.1093897 \times 10^{-31}$ kg
		0.51099906 MeV
Charge	Charge of electron, e	1.602×10^{-19} C
Other Constants	Gravitational constant, G	6.67259×10^{-11} N·m^2/kg^2
	Planck's constant, h	$6.6260755 \times 10^{-34}$ J·s
		$4.1356692 \times 10^{-15}$ eV·s
	Avogadro's number, N_A	6.0221367×10^{23}/mol
	Blackbody radiation constant, σ	5.67051×10^{-8} W/m^2·K^4

STANDARD ABBREVIATIONS

A	ampere	g	gram	min	minute
amu	atomic mass unit	h	hour	mph	mile per hour
atm	atmosphere	hp	horsepower	N	newton
Btu	British thermal unit	Hz	hertz	Pa	pascal
C	coulomb	in.	inch	psi	pound per square inch
°C	degree Celsius	J	joule	s	second
cal	calorie	K	kelvin	u	unified atomic mass unit
eV	electron volt	kg	kilogram	V	volt
°F	degree Fahrenheit	lb	pound	W	watt
ft	foot	m	meter	Ω	ohm

NUMBERS EXPRESSED IN SCIENTIFIC NOTATION

$$
\begin{aligned}
1\,000\,000 &= 10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 && = 10^{6} && \text{mega}\\
100\,000 &= 10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 && = 10^{5} &&\\
10\,000 &= 10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 && = 10^{4} &&\\
1000 &= 10 \times 10 \times 10 && = 10^{3} && \text{kilo}\\
100 &= 10 \times 10 && = 10^{2} &&\\
10 &= 10 && = 10^{1} &&\\
1 &= 1 && = 10^{0} &&\\
0.1 &= 1/10 && = 10^{-1} &&\\
0.01 &= 1/100 = 1/10^{2} && = 10^{-2} && \text{centi}\\
0.001 &= 1/1000 = 1/10^{3} && = 10^{-3} && \text{milli}\\
0.000\,1 &= 1/10\,000 = 1/10^{4} && = 10^{-4} &&\\
0.0\,000\,1 &= 1/100\,000 = 1/10^{5} && = 10^{-5} &&\\
0.00\,000\,1 &= 1/1\,000\,000 = 1/10^{6} && = 10^{-6} && \text{micro}
\end{aligned}
$$

CONVERSION FACTORS

Length and Volume
1 inch = 2.54 cm (exact)
1 ft = 0.3048 m (exact)
1 m = 39.37 in.
1 mi = 1.6093440 km
1 liter = $10^{3}\,\text{cm}^{3} = 10^{-3}\,\text{m}^{3}$

Time
1 year = $365\frac{1}{4}$ day = 3.1558×10^{7} s
1 d = 86,400 s
1 h = 3600 s

Mass
1 kg = 1000 g
1 kg has a weight of 2.205 lb
1 amu = 1.6605×10^{-27} kg

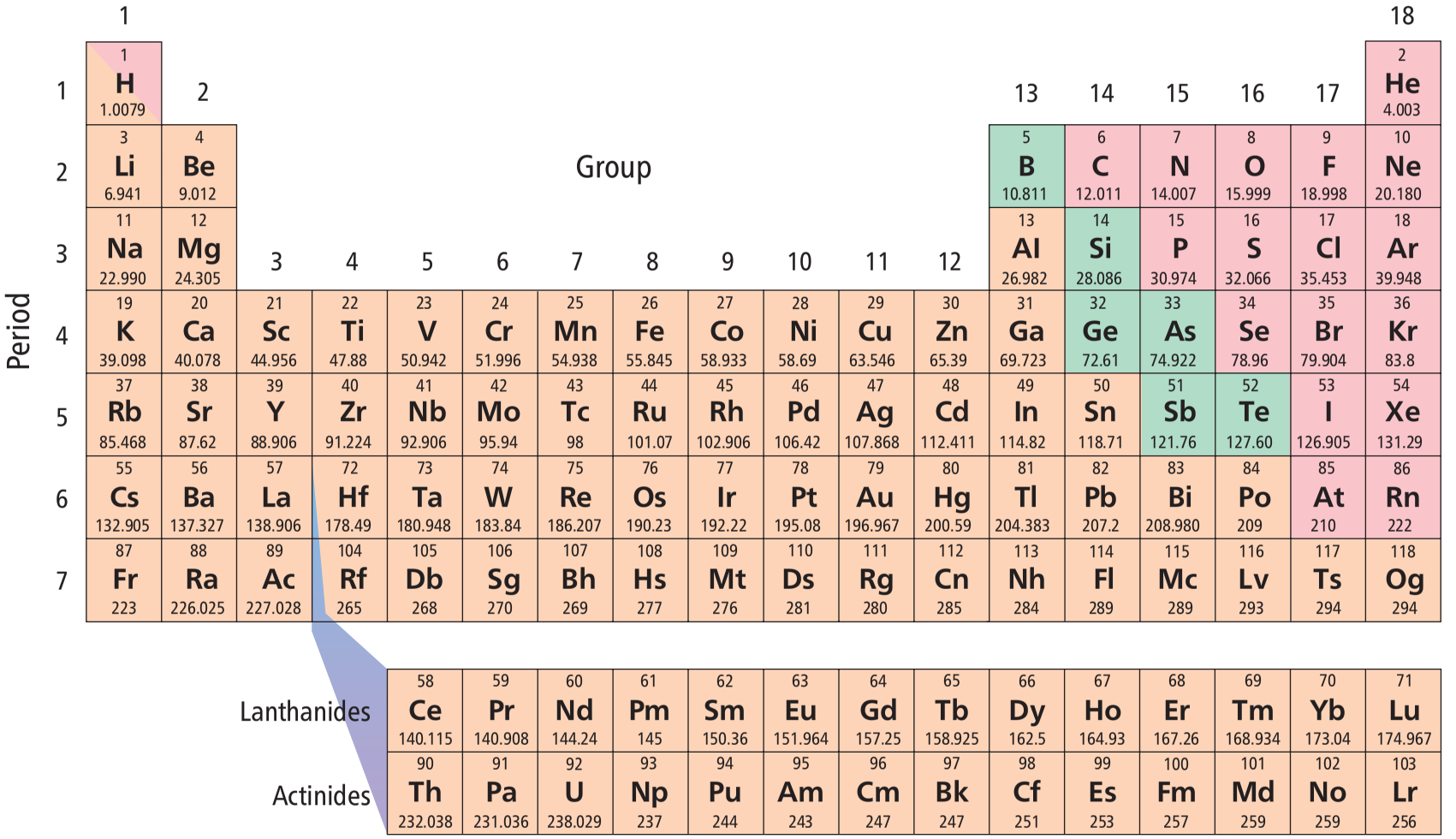
Pressure
1 Pa = 1 N/m^{2}
1 atm = 1.01325×10^{5} Pa
1 lb/in.^{2} = 6895 Pa

Energy and Power
1 cal = 4.184 J
1 kWh = 3.60×10^{6} J
1 eV = 1.602×10^{-19} J
1 u = 931.5 MeV
1 hp = 746 W

Speed
1 m/s = 3.60 km/h = 2.24 mi/h
1 km/h = 0.621 mi/h

Force
1 lb = 4.448 N

PERIODIC TABLE OF THE ELEMENTS



Metal

Metalloid

Nonmetal

Atomic masses are averaged by isotopic abundance on the Earth's surface, expressed in atomic mass units. Conventional IUPAC atomic masses are provided as recommended by G. Kaptay in *J. Min. Metall. Sect. BMetall. 48 (1) B (2012)153 159*. For radioactive elements, this is commonly the whole number nearest the most stable isotope of that element. The elements here are color coded to indicate metal, metalloid, or nonmetal. But please recognize that the heaviest elements, such as 104 and greater, are highly unstable existing only for a fraction of a second within a laboratory setting. Any metallic properties they might exhibit are not discernible.